

PURCHAS

HIS

PILGRIMES.

IN FIVE BOOKES.

The first, Containing Peregrinations and Discoveries, in the remotest North and East parts of *ASIA*; called *TARTARIA and CHINA.*

The second, *Peregrinations, Voyages, Discoveries, of CHINA, TARTARIA, RUSSIA, and other the North and East parts of the World, by English-men and others.*

The third, *Voyages and Discoveries of the North parts of the World, by Land and Sea, in ASIA, EUROPE; the Polare Regions, and in the North-west of AMERICA.*

The fourth, *English Northern Navigations, and Discoveries: Relations of Greenland, Greenland, the North-west passage, and other Arctike Regions, with later RUSSIAN OCCURRENTS.*

The fifth, *Voyages and Travels to and in the New World, called AMERICA: Relations of their Pagan Antiquities and of the Regions and Plantations in the North and South parts thereof, and of the Seas and Islands adjacent.*

The Third Part.

Unus Deus, Una Veritas.



LONDON

Printed by *William Stansby* for *Henric Fetherstone*, and are to be sold at his shop in *Pauls Church-yard at the signe of the Rose.*

1625.

PAVCHIV



TO
THE RIGHT
HONORABLE AND
RIGHT REVEREND
FATHER IN
GOD:
JOHN,

Lord Bishop of LINCOLNE, Lord *Keeper*
of the GREAT SEALE of
ENGLAND, &c.

Right Reverend and Honourable:



THESE PILGRIMS deliuering a Historie of the
World in their owne Trauels by Sea and Land,
not onely needed authoritie from the Ad-
miraltie, but fearing suspition of *Ri-t* with-
out warrantable assemblie, become humble
Sutors for your Lordships fauour. So shall
they in the approbation of both (to apply by
a warrant of *Ego dixi, dy estis*, the Patriarchs
mysticall Dreame to our Historicall purpose)

Gen. 28.12.

finde a *Scala Cæli* to ascend from the ground where they are prostrate
Petitioners, to the Princes Highnesse, whence authorised they may
again *descend* and become the Commons of Common Readers.
Order requires a *Medium* betwixt Princely Height and his Lowli-
nesse, whose function is also termed *Holy Orders*, as further tying
him to that equall inequality; wherein hee beseecheth your Lordship
as by speciall Office and in Propriety to owne that which hee hath
pre-

THE EPISTLE

presumed to offer to the Prince in *Capite*, *Quemadmodum sub optimo rege omnia Rex imperio possidet, Domini domino. Ad reges potestas pertinet, ad singulos proprietas.*

*Source: BnM Cat.
CP.45.*

Many are the reasons which moued the Author to obtrude his **PILGRIMS** on your Lordship; because he is deeply obliged Yours for former fauours, euen then when you were initiated in the Mysteries of Honour (learning by seruice to Command) in the Discipline of that Honorable Worthy, Lord Chancellor **EVERTON**! because some conceptions of this Worke were in your Honourable Iurisdiction of *Westminster*, whither left some traduce *Trauelers* for *Vagrants*, they returne in hope of *Sanctuarie*, not so much trusting to the ancient Liberties, as to your Lordships liberall respect to literate endeauours; because these Trauellers aduenturing the world; seeke like *Iacob* at his going and returne, a Reuerend Fathers *Blessing* and *Confirmation*. The Author likewise being called on for his promised *Europe*, submits himselfe to your Lordships Order, heere tendring of that debt, what hee is able, in ready payment. The worke it selfe also being a Librarie in this kind, presents it selfe to your Honour, the Founder of two famous Libraries; one in *Westminster*, (where the Stones & reuued Fabrikes speake your Magnificence) the other in that famous Nurfserie of Arts and Vertue Saint **IOHNS** Colledge in *Cambridge*, which sometime knew you a hopefull Sonne, but now acknowledgeth your Lordship a happie Father, where also the Author first conceiued with this Trauelling *Geniue*, whercof (without trauelling) he hath trauelled euer since. Learning, the Advancer of your Honour, hath secured her welwillers not to bee reiected in whatsoeuer indeauours (*Scribimus indocti, doctique*) to aduance Learning. The greauest of Nature to goodnesse of Nature, varietie of Estates to a prime Pillar of State, the Historie of Religions to a Religious Prelate, of Antiquities to an Antiquarie, cannot bee altogether vnwelcome; that I mention not the dependance of *London Ministers* Liuiings (*fined* by the Times iniquitie) on your Lordships equall Sentence. These Causes haue moued; One hath inforced; these **PILGRIMS** are your *Seruants*, fitly so called & *Seruando*, saued by your Lordships hand when they were giuing vp the ghost, despairing through a fatal stroke of euer seeing light.

*Aug. de C.D. li.
19. ca. 5.*

Most humbly therefore, sue vnto your Honour, these **PILGRIMS** for acknowledgement, esteeming your Lordships Name in fore-front a cognisance of blest Libertie and best Service; Now when *Ianus* sends many with gratefull emulations to present their acclamations of a *New Teere*, presenting (a wordie rather then worthy Present) a *World*, *yea*, a *New world*, in great part one Age younger to mens knowledge then *America*, sometimes stiled by that Name. I had written other Causes of my addresse to your Honour, but dare not proceed to interrupt Others more weightie. In all humble earnestnesse beseecheth, now in this Festiuall time, the Author with his **PILGRIMS** to finde Hospital

DEDICATORIE

tall entertainment, not at your Honours table, where Great affaires of Church and State are feasted (except some recreation some times permit) but with Schollers and Gentlemen in the Hall, which will welcome such Guests as your Lordship shall Countenance. So

I shall you encourage euer to pray for the increafe of
your Lordships happinesse
in the
Happie Seruice of his
MAESTIE,

Your Lordships

most bounden,

SAMUEL PURCHAS.





THE CONTENTS OF THE CHAPTERS AND PARAGRAPHS

IN THE SECOND BOOKE OF THE SECOND

PART OF PRACHAS HIS

PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I.

¶ The Journal of Friar William de Rubruquis, a French man, of the Order of the Minorite Friars, unto the East parts of the World, Anno Dom. 1253. H. pag. 1.

CHAP. II.

Tartarian and Northerne Relations written in Latin by the famous Friar Roger Bacon. H. p. 52
Relations of Vincentius Beluacensis, the moit of which be received from Friar Simon de Sancto Quintino, one of the foure Friars sent by Pope Innocent the fourth to the Tartars: serving to the illustration of the former. pag. 38.

CHAP. III.

Relations touching the Tartars, taken out of the Historie of R. Wendouet, and Mat. Paris: with certaine Epistles of the same subject. pag. 60.

CHAP. IIII.

The first booke of Marcus Paulus Venerus, or of Maister Marco Polo, a Gentleman of Venice, his Voyages. pag. 65.

¶ 1. The voyages of Maister Nicolo and M. Maffio, from Constantinople to the Great Can, and their coming home to Venice: their second voyage with the Author and returne. ibid.

¶ 2. Obseruations of M. Polo, of Armenia, Turkie, Zorania, Baldach, Persia, Chirmain, Cobniam, Ormus, Knauc-fooles paradise, and other Easterne parts in Asia, and Armenia the lesse. pag. 69.

¶ 3. Of Sapurgan, Balac, Thaican, Scallem, Balaxiam, Balcia, Chesmur, Vochan, Samarchan, Carchana, Peym, the dreadfull Desarts of Lop and Tanguth. pag. 73.

¶ 4. Of Carchoran, the original, proceedings and exploits of the Tartars; of Priest Iohn and his descendants. Customs of the Tartars: Of Bargu, Erginul, Xandu, the Cans Citie and Palace; of Muske: of strange Sorcerers; and anserre Monkes. pag. 77.

¶ 5. Of Cublai Can, his Reigne and Magnificence feasts and huntings, Courts and Councils. His Citie Cambalu and glorious Palace. pag. 81.

¶ 6. The Cans provisions for Embassadors and for Poits, against Dearth; for High-ways; for the Poore in Cambalu, for Astrologers; Tartars Wine, Fuel, Religion, Opinions, Behaviours, Court-meatnesse: Polos proceeding from Cambalu westward. Of Pulilangan, Gouza, Tainfu, Pianfu, Thaigin, Caciaufu, Quenzaufu, Sindinfu, Thebeth, Caidu, Caraiian, Carachan, Cardandan and Vociam. pag. 87.

¶ 7. Of the Province of Mien and Bengala, how they were conquered to the Can: Of Cangigu, Amu, Tholoman, Cintigui, and some other parts of Cataio. And of the Conquest of Mangi. pag. 93.

¶ 8. Of the Cities of Mangi (now called China) and the rarities thereof: the many wonders of Quinfai, the Palaces, Pleasures, Rites and Government, obserued by the Natives, and the Tartars. pag. 96.

¶ 9. The ships of India described, the Ile of Zipangu, the Sea Chin, and World of Islands, the two lauas, Zeilan, and other Islands, with the rarities therein. pag. 102.

¶ 10. Of the firme Land of the Greater India. pag. 104.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.
The Historie of Ayson, or Anthonie the Armenian, of Asia, and specially touching the Tartarian. H.P. pag.108.

§ 1. Of the Kingdome of Cathay, and divers other Princes of Asia, and of the first habitation of the Tartars: and of Cangius, or Cingis his beginning. ibid.

§ 2. Of Cangius Can his second vision and conquest. Of Hoozon, and his three famous expeditions. Of Gino Can, of Mangu Can, who was assisted by the King of Armenia, and his wife; and of the expedition of his brother Hoozon. pag.112.

§ 3. Of Goba Can, the fifth Emperour of the Tartars: and of the warre with Zarcha, and Tartaria quarrell with the Christians. Hoozon's death. His of the Souldan of Egypt. Of Ayoa and other Princes and Successors of Hoozon. pag.117.

§ 4. Of Ayson, the sonne of Ayoa, and Regent to his brother, of Bado, and of the exploits of Ayoa against the Souldan of Egypt, and others. pag.122.

§ 5. Calan dyeth, Carbanda succeedeth; his Ambassage. The Authors entrance into a Religious habit. Of Tamer Can, the sixth Emperour, and of Chakar, Hoochra, and Carbanda, three other Tartarian Kings. pag.125.

CHAP. VI.
Travels and Memorials of Sir John Mandeville. pag.128.

CHAP. VII.
The Voyages of Nicolo di Conti a Venetian, to the Indies, Mangi, Cambalu, and Quinfai, with some observations of these places. pag.138.

CHAP. VIII.
Extracts of Alhacen his Arabike Historie of Tamerlan, touching his Marvellous travels, done into French by Jean du Bec, Abbot of Mortimer. pag.160.

§ 1. Tamerlans birth and person, his Expedition against the Muscovite; his marriage with the Cans daughter; his overthrowing of Calix. ibid.

§ 2. Cataio, Cambalu; Tamerlans Expedition into China, entering the Wall, conquering

the King, and disposing of the Country, and returning to Cataio. pag.164.

§ 3. The difference between Tamerlan and Balacet the Turke, his returne to Samarcand, and Expedition against Balacet, the Souldan, and his wife, his taking of Balacet, and making him his foot-soule. pag.155.

§ 4. Emperale of Samarcand; Affairs of China: Funerals of the Can; comming to Quinfai, and description thereof. His disposition of his estate and death. pag.160.

CHAP. IX.
Reports of Chaggy, Member a Persian of Tabas in the Province of Chahan, touching his travels and observations in the Countries of the Great Can, and M. G. Baptista Ramalho. pag.164.

CHAP. X.
A Treatise of China, and the adjoining Regions, written by Gaspar da Cruz a Dominican Friar, and dedicated to Sebastian King of Portugal, when he was in Portugal. H.P. pag.166.

Of Cambolia and the Eramenes there, the cause of his going to China: Of China and the neighbouring Regions. ibid.

§ 1. Canaan described, the publicke and private buildings, and government. The shipping and husbandrie of China; their contempt of the idle, and provision for impotent poore. pag.170.

§ 2. Of their mechanickall Trades, Merchandises, and Monies: their provisions of fish and fowls; the Persons and attire of Men and Women: their Feasts. pag.176.

§ 3. Of their Lawes, Mandarines, or Magistrates, their creation, privileges, maintenance, of Prison, and Tortures; of the King and of Embassadors. pag.185.

§ 4. Of the Portugall commerce with the Chinese; of the severe Justice executed upon certain Magistrates, for wrongs done to the Portugals. pag.190.

§ 5. Of the Religion in China; difficulties of bringing in Christianity. Terrible Earth-quakes and Tempests in China. pag.195.

CHAP. XI.
The relation of Galeotto Perera, a Gentleman man of good credit, that lay prisoner in China. pag.199.

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the second Booke of the Second part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I.
The beginning of English Discoveries towards the North, and North-east, by Sir Hugh Willoughby, Richard Chancellor, and others; of the Muscovite Trade, as also Voyages by Russia, over the Caspian Sea, and thence divers Regions of Tartaria. pag.211.

§ 1. The first voyage for discovery with three ships, set forth under the charge of Sir Hugh Willoughby, Knight, in which he dyed, and Muscovite was discovered by Captaine Chancellor. ibid.

Some additions for better knowledge of this Voyage, taken by Clement Adams, Schoole-master to the Queenes Henchmen, from the mouth of Captaine Chancellor. pag.218.

The Copie of the Duke of Moscovie and Emperour of Russia his Letters, sent to King Edward the Sixth, by the hands of Richard Chancellor. pag.221.

§ 2. The first voyage made by Master Anthonie Jenkinson, from the Citie of London, toward the Land of Russia, begun the twelfth of May, in the yeere 1557. pag.222.

§ 3. Notes taken out of another mans Relation of the same voyage, touching the Russian Rites. pag.226.

§ 4. The voyage of Master Anthonie Jenkinson, made from the Citie of Mosco in Russia, to the Citie of Boghar in Baetria, in the yeere 1558, written by himselfe to the Merchants of London, of the Muscovite Companie. pag.231.

§ 5. Advertisements and reports of the first voyage into the parts of Persia and Media, gathered out of sundrie Letters written by Christopher Borough; and more especially a voyage over the Caspian Sea, and their shipwracke and miseries there endured by the Ice. pag.233.

A Letter of Master Henrie Lane, to the worshipfull Master William Sanderson; containing a briefe discourse of that which passed in the North-east discovery, for the space of three and thirtie yeeres. pag.239.

CHAP. II.
Observations of China, Tartaria, and other Eastern parts of the World, taken out of Fernam Mendez Pinto his Peregrination. pag.252.

§ 1. Mendez his many miserable adventures, his strange Expedition with Antonio de Faria; divers Castles visited, Pirats tamed, miseries suffered, glorie recovered. pag.252.

§ 2. Antonio Faria his taking of Nouda a

Citie in China, triumph at Liampoo; strange voyage to Calenpley, miserable shipwrack. pag.258.

§ 3. Their shipwrack in which Faria and most of them were drowned; the miserable wanderings of the rest to Nanquin; their imprisonment, sentence and appeal to Pequim; rarities observed in those places and wayes; of the beginnings of the China Kingdome, and of their admirable Wall. pag.261.

§ 4. Mindo Salt pits: Mines of Coretum-baga, Copper-workes; Idolatrie and Christianity; China Trades, and River Faies; their comming to Pequim, trials and sentence. Rarities of Pequim. pag.269.

§ 5. Four buildings incredibly admirable in Pequim, and divers of their superstitions: their Hospitals and provisions for the Poore. The Kings revenues and Courts; their Sects. pag.273.

§ 6. Their remorse to Quansie, quarrels, miseries; Tartarian huge Armie, and loss at the siege of Pequim, reported. Quansie taken, and Nixianco: Mendez his exploit. Their entertainment by the Tartar King, and going to Cauchinchina with his Embassadors, with many Tartarian observations. pag.277.

CHAP. III.
Spanish plantation of the Philipinas, and what entreweaves hath thence hapned betwix them and the Chinois. pag.282.

§ 1. First discovery of the Philipinas: written by Friar Juan Gonzales de Mendoza. ibid.

§ 2. First plantation of the Philipinas, by Michael Lopez de Legaspi. pag.284.

§ 3. Of Limahon a China Robber and Renter, by whose occasion the Spaniards sent into China. pag.286.

§ 4. Friar Martin de Herrada; and other Spaniards entertainments in China, and their returne to the Philipinas. pag.292.

Two Letters taken out of Barolomeo Leonarde de Argensola his Treatise, called Conquista de las Ilas Malucas, printed at Madrid, 1609. pag.336, 337. mentioning the comming of two English ships to China: which seeme to be two ships of the fleet of Benjamin Wood: The former written by the Visitor of Chincheco in China, unto the Governour of the Philipinas, Don Pedro de Acuna. H.P. pag.309.

The Answer of Don Pedro de Acuna, Governour of the Philipinas, to the Visitor of Chincheco in China. pag.310.

CHAP. IIII.

The report of a Mahometan Merchant, which had beene in Cambalu: and the troublefome travell of Benedictus Goes, a Portugall Jesuite, from Lahor to China by land, sheweth the Tartars Countries.

CHAP. V.

A generall collection and historical representation of the Jesuites entrance into Iapon and China, untill their admission in the Royall Citty of Nanquin.

§ 1. Of Francis Xavier, Melchior Nunnes, Valignanus, Ruggerius and Palsius. *ibid.*

§ 2. Iaponian Ambassage to the Pope, Of Nabunanga and Quabacondono their government; Corat invaded, Embassage from China, Taicofamas Temple, and Ogofofamas Succession.

§ 3. Ruggerius enters againe into China with Riccius, and is forced backe to Amacoo; thence sent for againe by the Vice-roy, Sande and Almeida are sent to them, and enter the Countrey as farre as Cequion, and returne to Sciauchin.

§ 4. False brethren and others accusations detected, they are expelled Sciauchin: erect a Seat at Xaucem. Monasterie of Nanhoo and other things of note in those parts. They alter their habit; Voyage to Nanquin; the Lake, Rivers, Fols and other rarities.

§ 5. Nanquin described; Riccius expelled thence, he settles at Nancian, thence goeth to Nanquin againe, and to Pequim; description of it, thence to the Kings Palace, and of Succu, and Hamceu.

§ 6. Letters from Father Longobard and Taifo. Riccius his entertainment at Nanquin and residence there. The Chinois unlearned learning.

CHAP. VI.

A Letter of Father Diego de Pantoja, one of the Companie of Iesus, to Father Luys de Guzman, Provincial in the Province of Toledo: written in Paquin, which is the Court of the King of China, the ninth of March, the yeere 1622.

§ 1. Difficulties of entering China, their dwelling at Nanquin, going from thence to Paquin, with Presents for the King, troubles in the way by an Eunuch.

§ 2. The King sends for them, is delighted with their Clocks and Pictures; they are shut up, after take a House, are admired for learning; Christianitie of China.

§ 3. The description of the Kingdom of China: of Catay and Musk; the division into Pro-

vinces; Cities and Townes described, River, Shipping, Commodities, Diet, and feeding.

§ 4. Their moneyes, apparell, persons, trades, wealth, learning, marriages, superstitions, rites, and opinions.

§ 5. Their bad Souldierie and Artillerie, Degrees, privileges, honours and promotions of learning. Their Authors and Bookes, and Printing. The Mandarin commended.

§ 6. Of the government of China: Of the Mandarins; the China complements and manifold niceties.

§ 7. Of their Women: Of the Tartars Conquest, aits and expulsion. The greatest of the King, and neighbouring States. Of the Queens Eunuchs.

CHAP. VII.

A discourse of the Kingdom of China, taken out of Riccius and Trigautius, containing the countrey, people, government, religion, rites, fets, characters, studies, arts, aits; and a Map of China added, drawn out of one there made with Annotations for the understanding thereof.

§ 1. Of the name, Citty, and greatness; the Tributaries, commodities, arts, printing, scales, inke, pencil-pennes and fannes.

§ 2. Of their Characters and writing downward: their Studies, Ethikes, Astrologie, Physike, authentike Authors, Degrees how taken both Philosophicall and Militarie.

§ 3. Of the Tartarian conquest; Of Humuu the Establisher of the present government. The Revenues. Magistrates in the Courts Royall, Provinces, Cities, Orders, Exaltations, Visitations, Deprivations.

§ 4. Their manifold rites in Salutations, Entertainments, and other civillitie: to the King and Magistrates: Of Burials and Marriages, Birth-dayers; their Men, Women, Names and Games, Habites.

§ 5. Of their Superstitions, Cruelties, feares of Magistrates, of the Kings kindred, of Strangers and Souldiers. Their Duties and three Sets: Priests, Nunnes, Monasteries, Legends, Lyes.

§ 6. Of strangers, and forraigne Religions in China.

§ 7. The Map of China, taken out of a Chinese Map, printed with China Characters; illustrated with Notes, for the understanding thereof.

CHAP. VIII.

A combination of the Jesuites Aits and observations in China till Riccius his death and some yeeres after. Of Hanceu or Quinlay. An Extract of Monfarts travel.

§ 1. The

§ 2. The

§ 3. The

§ 4. The

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the third Booke of the first part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I.

Treatise of Russia and the adjoining Regions, written by Doctor Giles Fletcher, Lord Ambassador from the late Queene, Emer-glorious Elizabeth, to Theodore then Emperour of Russia, A.D. 1588.

CHAP. II.

A briefe discoverie of the Northernne discoveries of Seas, Coasts, and Countreys, delineated in order as they were hopefully begun, and have since happily bene continued by the singular industrie and charge of the Worshipsfull Societie of Mufcouia Merchants of London, with the ten severall Voyages of Captaine Thomas Edge the Author.

§ 1. Greenland first discovered by Sir Hugh Willoughby: the Voyages of Frobilher, Pct, and Iackman, Daus, the Dutch; First Morfe and Whale-killing, with further discoveries.

§ 2. Dutch, Spanish, Danish disturbances; also by Hull men, and by a new Patent, with the succeeding success and further discoveries till this present.

§ 3. The description of the severall sorts of Whales, with the manner of killing them: Where-to is added the description of Greenland.

The description of Greenland.

CHAP. III.

The first Navigation of William Barents, alias Bernards, into the North Sea; Written by Gerard de Veer.

CHAP. IIII.

A briefe declaration of Barents his second Navigation, made in Anno 1595, behind Norway, Mufcouia, and Tartaria, written by Gerard de Veer.

CHAP. V.

The third voyage Northward to the Kingdoms of Cathaia, and China, in Anno 1596. Written by Gerard de Veer.

§ 1. What happened to them at Sea, before they came to build their House.

§ 2. Their cold, comfortlesse, darke and dreddfull winter: the Sunnes absence, Moones light, Sunnes unexpected returne with miraculous speed. Of Beares, Foxes, and many many wonders.

§ 3. Their preparation to goe from thence; they depart in a Boat, and Scute both open, and come to Cola, 1145. miles. Their many dangers by Beares, Ice, Famine, Scorbute, in the

way. This was written by William Barenton in a loose Paper, which was lent mee by the Reuerend Peter Plantinus in Amsterdum, March the seven and twentieth, 1600.

CHAP. VI.

A Treatise of Iuer Bory a Gronlander, translated out of the North language into High Dutch. H.

The Course from Island to Groneland. p. 520.

CHAP. VII.

A description of the Countreys of Siberia, Samoiadia, and Tingoesia. Together with the Iourneys leading unto the same Countreys toward the East and North-east, as they are daily frequented by the Mofcouites.

§ 1. Discoverie of Siberia, and the subjection of the same to the Russes.

§ 2. A briefe description of the Wayes and Rivers, leading out of Mofcouia toward the East and North-east into Siberia, Samoiadia, and Tingoesia, as they are daily frequented by the Russes: with further discoveries towards Tartaria and China.

§ 3. A Note of the travells of the Russes over Land, and by water from Mezen, neere the Bay of Saint Nicholas to Pechora, to Obi, to Yenissei, and to the River Geta, then unto the Frontiers of Cathaia; brought into England by Master Iohn Mericke, the English Agent for Mofcouie, and translated out of the Russe by Richard Finch. H.

CHAP. VIII.

A voyage made to Pechora 1611. Written by William Gourdoun of Hull, appointed chiefe Pilot, for discoverie to Ob, &c. H.

CHAP. IX.

A Letter of Richard Finch to the Right Worshipsfull Sir Thomas Smith, Governour; and to the rest of the Worshipsfull Companie of English Merchants, trading into Russia: touching the former voyage, and other observations. H.

The names of the places: that the Russes saile by, from Pechorskoie Zauorot, to Mongozey: with the manner of their travell, and distance betwene each place, or time of sayling, Halting, and Rowing unto the same.

CHAP. X.

The Voyage of Master Iofias Logan to Pechora, and his wintering there, with Master William Purflogue,

CHAP. XI.

The Voyage of Master Iofias Logan to Pechora, and his wintering there, with Master William Purflogue,

CHAP. XII.

The Voyage of Master Iofias Logan to Pechora, and his wintering there, with Master William Purflogue,

CHAP. XIII.

The Voyage of Master Iofias Logan to Pechora, and his wintering there, with Master William Purflogue,

Purfloue, and Marmaduke Willon. Anno 1611. H. pag. 541.
Extracts taken out of two Letters of Iohas Loggan from Pechora, to Master Hakluyt Prebend of Westminster. pag. 546.

CHAP. XI.

A briefe relation of a Voyage to Pechora, and wintering there, began in the yeere 1611. Written by William Purfloue. H. pag. 547.
Other observations of the said William Purfloue. pag. 550.
The travel from Pechora to Permia, Ougoria, and to the River Ob, and the Townes situated thereupon, over Land. pag. 551.
Commodities for Pechora, Siberia, Permia, Ougoria, and among the Tinguities. pag. 552.
Commodities for the Tinguities. ibid.

CHAP. XII.

Later observations of William Gourdon, in his wintering at Pustozera, in the yeeres 1614. and 1615, with a description of the Samoyeds life. H. pag. 553.

CHAP. XIII.

Divers Voyages to Cherie Island, in the yeeres 1604, 1605, 1606, 1608, 1609. Written by Ionas Poole. H. pag. 556.

CHAP. XIII.

Divers Voyages and Northerne discoveries of that worthy irreconcurable Discoverer Master Henric Hudon. His Discoverie toward the North Pole, set forth as the charge of certaine Worshipfull Merchants of London, in May 1607. Written partly by Iohn Playfe one of the Companies, and partly by H. Hudon. H. pag. 567.

CHAP. XV.

A second voyage or employment of Master Henric Hudon, for finding a passage to the East Indies by the North-east: written by himselfe. H. pag. 574.

CHAP. XVI.

The third voyage of Master Henric Hudon toward Noua Zembla, and as his returne, his passing from Fairre Islands, to New-found-Land, and along to fortie foure degrees and ten minutes, and thence to Cape Cod, and so to thirtie three degrees; and along the Coast to the Northward, to fortie two degrees and an halfe, and up the River meere to fiftie three degrees. Written by Robert Iuet of Lime-house. H. pag. 581.

CHAP. XVII.

An Abstract of the Iournall of Master Henric Hudon, for the discoverie of the North-west passage, begun the 17. of April, 1610. ended with his end, being treacherously exposed by some of the Companie. H. pag. 590.

A larger discourse of the same voyage, and the successe thereof, written by Abacuk Pricke. pag. 597.
A Note found in the Deske of Thomas Widhoufe, Student in the Athenematike, he being one of them who was put into the Stallop. pag. 609.

CHAP. XVIII.

The discoveries of M. M. Nicolo, and Antonio Zeni, gathered out of their Letters by Francisco Marcolino: whereto is added Quirino his shipwracke. H. P. pag. 610.
The shipwracke of Master Piero Quirino, described by Christophoro Fiorauanni, and Nicolo di Michiel, who were present there: heretranslated. H. P. pag. 611.

CHAP. XIX.

Ancient commerce betwixt England and Norway, and other Northerne Regions. pag. 619.

CHAP. XX.

A briefe Memoriall of the great travels by Sea and Land, of Master George Barkley, Merchant of London, in Europe, Asia, Africa, and America, and their Islands. pag. 635.

CHAP. XXI.

Collections out of Martin Bromionius de Bicerfedea sens Ambassador from Stephen King of Poland, re the Crim-Tartar: Containing a description of Tartaria, or Cherfonesus Taurica, and the Regions subiect to the Perecop in Crim Tartars, with their Customes private and publicke in peace and warre. pag. 632.

CHAP. XXII.

Dithmar Bleskens his Voyages, and History of Island and Groeland. pag. 643.
Of the Islanders Religion. pag. 645.
The Life and Manners of the Islanders. ibid.
Of the wonderfull Standing Pools, Lakes, and Fountains in Island. pag. 647.
Of the wonderfull Mountaines in Island. pag. 648.
Of the Riebes of the Islanders. pag. 649.
Of the Iudgements of the Islanders. pag. 650.
Of Groeland. pag. 651.

CHAP. XXIII.

Extracts of Argrinb-Ionas, an Islander, his Chrymogza or History of Island: published Anno Dom. 1609. H. P. pag. 654.
 1. Of Island, the Situation, Discoverie, Plantation and Language. ibid.
 2. A discourse of the first Inhabitants of the Northerne World, supposed to be Giants expelled from Canaan. Of the Islanders Houses, Ferrell, &c. ibid.
 3. Of their Politie, and Religion in old times. pag. 664.
 The

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the fourth Booke of the Second part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I.

A Voyage set forth by the Right Worshipfull Sir Thomas Smith, and the rest of the Muscovic Company, to Cherry Land: and for a further Discoverie to be made towards the North-Pole, for the likelihood of a Trade or a passage that way, in a Ship called the Amitie, of burthen fcutenie tunnes, in the which I Ionas Poole was Master, bunting fourteene Men and one Boy: Anno Dom. 1610. H. pag. 699.
A briefe note what Beasts, Fowles, and Fishes were seene in this Land. pag. 707.

CHAP. II.

A Commission for Ionas Poole our Servant, appointed Master of a small Barke called the Elizabeth, of fiftie tunnes burthen, for Discoverie to the Northward of Greenland, given the last day of May, 1610. H. P. pag. 711.

CHAP. III.

A briefe Declaration of this my Voyage of Discoverie to Greenland, and towards the west of it, as follows: being set forth by the right Worshipfull Sir Thomas Smith, Governour of the right Worshipfull Company of new Traders, &c. written by Ionas Poole. H. pag. 711.

CHAP. IIII.

A Relation written by Ionas Poole of a Voyage to Greenland, in the yeere 1612: with two Shippers, the one called the Whale, the other the Sea-horse, set out by the right Worshipfull the Muscovic Merchants. H. pag. 713.

CHAP. V.

A Iournall of the Voyage made to Greenland with sixe English Shippers and a Pinnasse, in the yeere 1613: written by Master William Baffin. H. P. pag. 716.

CHAP. VI.

A Voyage of Discoverie to Greenland; &c. Anno 1614. written by Ro. Fotherby. H. P. pag. 720.

CHAP. VII.

A true report of a Voyage, Anno 1615, for Discoverie of Sea, Lands, and Islands, to the Northward; as it was performed by Robert Fotherby, the Pinnasse of twenty tunnes called the Richard of London. H. P. pag. 728.

A Letter of Robert Fotherby to Captain Edge, written in Croffe-rodde, July 15. 1615. pag. 731.

CHAP. VIII.

Divers other Voyages to Greenland, with Letters of that which were there employed, communicated to me by Master William Heley, in the yeere 1617.

1618. 1619. 1620. 1621. 1623. pag. 732.
A Letter of Master Robert Salmon to Master Sherwin. In Sir Thomas Smiths Bay, the 24. of June 1618. pag. 733.
A Letter of Master Th. Sherwin: Bell-found this 19. of June, 1618. ibid.
A Letter of James Beuerham to Master Heley. From Fairre-hauen, the 12. of July, 1618. ibid.
A Letter of Iohn Chambers to W. Heley, Bell-found, June 16. 1619. pag. 734.
A Letter of I. Catcher to Master Heley from Fairre-hauen. Laus Deo, this fiftieth of June, 1620. pag. 735.
A Letter of Robert Salmon from Sir Thomas Smiths Bay, July 6. 1621. ibid.
Laus Deo in Fairre-Hauen; the foure and twentieth of June, 1623. pag. 736.
Master Catchers Letter: the nine and twentieth of June 1623. pag. 737.
Captaine William Goodhards Letter: Bell-found this eight of July, 1623. ibid.

CHAP. IX.

The late changes and manifold alterations in Ruffia since Iuan Vasilowich to this present, gathered out of many Letters and Observations of English Ambassadors and other Travellers in those parts. pag. 738.

1. Of the reigne of Iuan, Phedore, his sonne, and of Boris. ibid.

The most glorious and magnificent coronation of Theodor Iuanowich, Emperour of Ruffia, the tenth of June, in the yeere 1584. seen and observed by Master Ierom Horley Gentleman, and servant to her Maestie. pag. 740.

2. Occurrences of principall Note which happened in Ruffia, in the time while the Master Sir Thomas Smith remained there Ambassador from his Maestie. pag. 743.

3. One pretending him selfe to be Demetrius, with the Popes and Poles helps against the Russian Empire: his Arts, Actions, Marriage, favour to the English, and miserable end. pag. 751.

The Copie of a Letter sent from the Emperour Demetriy Euanowich, otherwise called Griffo Otreapouye. pag. 758.

The Copie of the translation of a Commission that was sent from the Mosko, from the Emperour Demetriy Euanowich, alias Gryfcha Otreapouye to a Courtier named Gauryla Samoylowich Salmanou, who was sent downe to the Caffe of Archangell, to Sir Thomas Smith, then Lord Embassador.

<i>Isador.</i>	pag. 759.	<i>couic Merchant, and Master Thomas Lyndes touching a warme Sea to the South-east of the River Ob, and a Note of Francis Gaulle. H.P.</i>	p. 806.
<i>The Copie of the Translation of a new Priviledge that was given to the Company, by the Emperour Demetri Euanowich, otherwise called Grylica Otreapouye, the which Priviledge was sent into England over-land by Olyver Lylliet Merchants, and seruant to the foresaid Company.</i>	ibid.	<i>Discoveries made by Englishmen to the North-west: Voyages of Sir Sebastian Cabot, Master Thorne, and other Ancients: and Master Weymouth. H.P.</i>	ibid.
<i>The Copie of the translation of a Contract, made by the Emperour Demetri Euanowich, otherwise called Grylica Otreapouye, and the daughter of the Palatine Sendamersko, chiefe Generall of Poland.</i>	pag. 761.	<i>The Voyage of Captaine George Weymouth, intended for the discovery of the North-west Passage toward China, with twofye Boates.</i>	pag. 809.
<i>Q. 4. The Copie of the Translation of a Letter sent from the new Emperour Vaffly Euanowich Shoskey to the Kings Maieftie by Master Iohn Mericke.</i>	pag. 765.	<i>James Hall his Voyage forth of Denmarke for the discovery of Greenland, in the yeere 1605. ab- breuiated. H.</i>	pag. 814.
<i>Captaine Margarets Letter to Master Mericke from Hamborough, Jan. 29. 1612.</i>	pag. 780.	<i>The second Voyage of Master James Hall, forth of Denmarke into Greenland, in the yeere 1606. contracted. H.</i>	pag. 821.
<i>Q. 5. Of the miserable estate of Ruffia after Swiskeys deportation, their election of the King of Polands Sonne, their Interregnum and popular estate, and choosing at last of the present Emperour, with some remarkable accidents in his time. H.P.</i>	pag. 782.	<i>CHAP. XVI.</i>	
<i>Pača inter Primarium Ducem Exercitum Regni Poloniae, & inter Heroes Moscovia. p. 783.</i>		<i>The Voyage of Master Iohn Knight (which had bene at Greenland once before 1605. Captaine of a Pinnasse of the King of Denmarke) for the Discovery of the North-west passage, begonne the eighteenth of April, 1606. H.</i>	pag. 827.
<i>CHAP. X.</i>		<i>CHAP. XVII.</i>	
<i>A briefe Copie of the points of the Contrasts betweene the Emperours, Maieftie and the Kings Maieftie of Sweden: in Stolboua the seven and twentieth of February, 1616.</i>	pag. 792.	<i>The fourth Voyage of James Hall to Groeneland, wherein he was set forth by English Adventurers, Anno 1612. and slaine by a Greenclander. Written by William Baffin. H.</i>	pag. 831.
<i>CHAP. XI.</i>		<i>CHAP. XVIII.</i>	
<i>A Relation of two Ruffe Coffacks trauielles, out of Siberia to Catay, and other Countries adjoining therunto. Also a Copie of the last Patent from the Muscovite. A Copie of a Letter written to the Emperour from his Governours out of Siberia.</i>	pag. 797.	<i>A true Relation of such things as happened in the fourth Voyage for the Discoverie of the North-west Passage, performed in the yeere 1615. written by William Baffin. H.P.</i>	pag. 836.
<i>The Copie of the Altine Chars, or golden Kings Letter to the Emperour of Ruffia.</i>	ibid.	<i>CHAP. XIX.</i>	
<i>A Description of the Empires of Catay and Labia, and other Dominions as well inhabited, as places of Pasture called Viultes and Hords, and of the great River Ob, and other Rivers and Land passages.</i>	pag. 799.	<i>A briefe and true Relation or Journall, containing such accidents as happened in the fifth Voyage, for the discovery of a passage in the North-west, set forth at the charges of the right Worshipfull Sir Thomas Smith Knight, Sir Dudley Digges Knight, Master Iohn Mostenholme Esquire, Master Alderman Jones, with others; in the good ship called the Discouery of London; Robert Bileth Master, and my selfe Pilot, performed in the yeere of our Lord 1616.</i>	pag. 844.
<i>CHAP. XII.</i>		<i>CHAP. XX.</i>	
<i>Notes concerning the discovery of the River of Ob, taken out of a Roll, written in the Ruffian tongue, which was attempted by the means of Antonie Marth, a chiefe Factor for the Moscovite Company of England, 1584. with other notes of the North-west. H.</i>	pag. 804.	<i>A briefe Discourse of the probability of a passage to the Westerne or South Sea, illustrated with testimonies: and a briefe Treatise and Map by Master Briggs. H.P.</i>	pag. 848.
<i>The report of Master Francis Cherry a Mos-</i>			

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the Fifth Booke of the second part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

<i>CHAP. I.</i>		<i>Of Trees, Fruits, and Plants.</i>	pag. 987.
<i>Description of the west Indies, by Antonio de Herrera, his Maiefties chiefe Chroni- stle. H.P.</i>	pag. 855.	<i>Of Reedes or Canes.</i>	pag. 983.
<i>The Presidents, Counsellors, Secretaries, and Attorneys, which vnto this present day haue serued, and doe serue in the supreme Councell of the Indies, from their first Discoverie.</i>	pag. 916.	<i>Of venenous apples, wherewith they poison their Arrows.</i>	pag. 985.
<i>The Governours and Vice-royes, which haue gouerned vntill this time, the Kingdomes of New-Spain and of Peru.</i>	pag. 917.	<i>Of Fishes, and of the manner of fishing.</i>	p. 986.
<i>CHAP. II.</i>		<i>Of the increase and decrease (that is) rising and falling of our Ocean Sea, and South Sea, called the Seas of Sur.</i>	pag. 989.
<i>Observations gathered out of the First, Second, Third, and Fourth Bookes of Iosephus Acosta, a learned Iesuite, touching the naturall historie of the Heauens, Ayre, Water, and Earth, at the West Indies. Also of their Beasts, Fishes, Fowles, Plants, and other remarkable rarities of Nature.</i>	pag. 918.	<i>Of the straight or narrow passage of the Land, lying betweene the North and South Sea, by the which Spices may much sooner and easilier be brought from the Islands of Molucca into Spaine by the West Ocean, then by that way whereby the Portugals saile into the East India.</i>	ibid.
<i>Q. 1. Of the situation and forme of Heauens, at the new-found World, and of the Ayre and Winds.</i>	ibid.	<i>How things that are of one kinde, differ in forme and qualitie, according to the nature of the place where they are engendered or grow, and of the beasts called Tigris.</i>	pag. 990.
<i>Q. 2. Of the Ocean that inuiroses the Indies, and of the North and South Seas, their ebbing, flowing, Fishes, fishing Lakes, Rivers, and Springs.</i>	pag. 928.	<i>Of the manners and customes of the Indians of the firme Land, and of their Women.</i>	pag. 991.
<i>Q. 3. Of the qualitie of the Land at the Indies in generall. Properties of Peru, and of new Spaine, and other parts: Of Vulcanes and Earth- quakes.</i>	pag. 935.	<i>Of the chiefe Islands, Hispaniola and Cuba.</i>	pag. 993.
<i>Q. 4. Of Metals in the Indies, and especially of the Gold and Silver, and Quick-silver.</i>	pag. 941.	<i>CHAP. III.</i>	
<i>Q. 5. Of Emeralds, Pearles, Indian Bread, Trees, Fruits, Flowers naturall, and carried thither from Spaine.</i>	pag. 952.	<i>Mexican Antiquities gathered out of the writings of Iosephus Acosta a learned Iesuite.</i>	pag. 1000.
<i>Q. 6. Of Beasts and Fowles in the In- dies.</i>	pag. 962.	<i>Q. 1. Of the ancient Inhabitants of new Spain, and of the fixe Linages of the Nauatlacas. Of the Mexican Exodus, and adventures by the way, the foundation of Mexico, their first King and Tri- bute.</i>	ibid.
<i>Of Fowles that are proper to the Indies, and Venison.</i>	pag. 965.	<i>Q. 2. Of the second King Vitziloutitl, and of his successours and their Acts vntill the reigne of Moteczuma their last King.</i>	pag. 1009.
<i>CHAP. III.</i>		<i>Q. 3. Of the election of great Moteczuma, the last King of Mexico: his pompe and manner of government, prodigious fore-warnings, of his ruine, and the Spanish conquest.</i>	pag. 1013.
<i>Extracts of Gonzalo Ferdinando de Oviedo his Summarie and the generall Historie of the In- dies.</i>	pag. 970.	<i>CHAP. IV.</i>	
<i>Of the Mynes of Gold, and the manner of working in them.</i>	ibid.	<i>Of the ancient superstitions of the Mexicans and Indians of America, gathered out of the fifth booke of Iosephus Acosta.</i>	pag. 1026.
<i>Of the manner of fishing for Pearles.</i>	pag. 972.	<i>CHAP. V.</i>	
<i>Of the familiaritie which certaine of the Indians haue with the Deuill, and how they receive answer of him of things to come, and other superstitions.</i>	pag. 973.	<i>Ciuill Customes and Arts of the Indians taken out of Acostas 6. Booke.</i>	pag. 1050.
<i>Of diuers particular things, as Wormes, Serpents, Beasts, Fowles, Trees, &c.</i>	pag. 975.	<i>CHAP. VII.</i>	
		<i>The Historie of the Mexican Nation, described in pictures: by the Mexican Author explained in the Mexican language; which exposition translated into Spanilh, and thence into English, together with the</i>	

The Contents of the sixth Booke.

the said Picture-historie, are beere prefaced. H. pag. 1066

§ 1. The Mexican Chronicle. ibid.
 § 2. The second part of this Booke containing the particular Tributes, which every Towne subdued payed unto the Lords of Mexico. pag. 1080

§ 3. The third part of this Booke, containeth the private behaviour in Marriages, education of Children, and Trades; with the Martiall, Ecclesiastike, and Civill policie of the Mexican people. pag. 1102.

CHAP. VIII.
 Conquest of Mexico and New Spaine, by Hernando Cortes. pag. 1118.

CHAP. IX.

Larger Relations of things most remarkable observed by the Spaniards at their first coming: Cholollas holies; Popocatepecs ashes. Mutezumas multiforme Magnificence and Maistie; Mexican Citie and Temple, with other Antiquities gathered out of the Third part of the Historie of Francis Lopez de Gomara. pag. 1123.

The Hill called Popocatepec. ibid.

Discription of Mexico as it flourished in the times. pag. 1131.

Other Mexican Antiquities, Letters, Numbers, Teeres, Dayes, Weekes, &c. pag. 1135.

Their reckoning by numbers. ibid.

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the sixth Booke of the Second part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I.

A Briefe Relation of the severall Voyages, undertaken and performed by the Right Honourable, George, Earle of Cumberland, in his owne person, or at his owne charge, and by his direction: collected out of the Relations and Journals of credibill persons Actors therein. pag. 1141.

CHAP. II.

The Voyage to Saint Iohn de Porto Rico, by the Right Honourable, George, Earle of Cumberland, written by himselfe. H. pag. 1150.

CHAP. III.

A large Relation of Port Ricco Voyage; written as is reported, by that learned man and reverend Divine Doctor Eglington, his Lordships Chaplaine and Attendant in that Expedition; very much abbreviated. H. pag. 1155.

§ 1. The Ships employed in the Voyage and accidents on the Coasts of Spaine, in the Canaries, and the Navigation thence to Dominica. ibid.

§ 2. Description of Dominica and the Virgines. Their landing on Port Ricco, March, fights and taking the Towne. pag. 1157.

§ 3. The Fort Mora besieged and taken. The Towne described: the Mines. Purpose to hold the place: altered by the death and sickness of manie. pag. 1162.

A resolution, which they were to traist to. p. 1163.

§ 4. Purpose of returne. Treatie with the Spaniards. His Lordships departure. Description of the Island, the Beasts, Fruits, Plants, &c. pag. 1168.

§ 5. Accidents by Sea in their way to the Azores and there. pag. 1174.

CHAP. IIII.

The first Voyages made to divers parts of America by Englishmen, Sir Sebastian Cabot, Sir Thomas Pert: also of Sir Iohn Hawkins, and Sir Francis Drake, and many others: collected briefly out of Master Camden, Master Hakluyt, and other Writers. pag. 1177.

A briefe Historie of Sir Francis Drakes Voyages. pag. 1179.

A briefe recitall or nomination of Sea-fights, other Englishmens Voyages related at large in the printed Workes of Master Hakluyt. pag. 1186.

CHAP. V.

The Relation of Peter Carder of Saint Verian in Cornwall, within seven miles of Falmouth, which went with Sir Francis in his Voyage about the World, begun 1577. who with seven others in an open Pinnasse or Shallop of five tunnes, with eight Oares, was separated from his Generall by fowle weather in the South Sea, in October, Anno 1578. who returning by the Straites of Magellan toward Brasil, were all cast away, save this one only aforementioned, who came into England nine yeeres after miraculously, having escaped many strange dangers, as well among divers Sauvages as Christians. H. pag. 1187.

CHAP. VI.

Master Thomas Candith his Discourse of his fatal and disastrous Voyage towards the South Sea, with his many misadventures in the Magellan Straits, and other places; written with his owne

of the second Part.

owne hand to Sir Tristram Gorges his Executioner. H. pag. 1192.

CHAP. VII.

The admirable adventures and strange fortunes of Master Anthonie Knivet, which went with Master Thomas Candith in his second Voyage to the South Sea, 1591. H. P. pag. 1201.

§ 1. What befell in their Voyage to the Straits, and after, till hee was taken by the Portuguese. ibid.

§ 2. Anthonie Knivet his coming to the River of Ianero, and usage amongst the Portugals; and Indians: his divers Travels thorough divers Regions of those parts. pag. 1207.

§ 3. His strange travels with twelve Portugals, whom the Sauvages did cate. His life with the Cannibals: and after that with the Portugals, from whom hee fleeth to Angola, is brought backe, and after manifold chances, is shipped to Lisbonc. pag. 1216.

§ 4. The divers Nations of Sauvages in Brasil, and the adjoining Regions: their diversities of Conditions, States, Rites, Creatures, and other things remarkable, which the Author observed in his many yeeres manifold Perceptions. pag. 1225.

The Giants of Port Delire, and Inhabitants of Port Famine: also Angola, Congo, and Maffangana, and Angica; Countries of Africa. pag. 1232.

§ 5. The description of divers Rivers, Ports, Harbours, Islands of Brasil: for instruction of Navigators. pag. 1237.

CHAP. VIII.

Relations of Master Thomas Turner who lived the best part of two yeeres in Brasil, &c. which recited of him in conference touching his Travels. pag. 1243.

CHAP. IX.

The taking of Saint Vincent and Puerto Bello, by Captaine William Parker of Plimouth, the seventh of February, 1601. ibid.

CHAP. X.

Certaine Notes of a Voyage made by David Middleton into the West Indies with Captaine Michael Geare, Ann. Dom. 1601. H. pag. 1242.

CHAP. XI.

The Description of the Ile of Trinidad, the rich

Country of Guiana, and the mighty River of Orenoco, written by Francis Sparrey; left there by Sir Walter Raleigh, 1595. and in the end taken by the Spaniards and sent Prisoner into Spaine, and after long Captivitie got into England by great Iute. H. pag. 1247.

CHAP. XII.

Captaine Charles Leigh his Voyage to Guiana, and plantation there. H. pag. 1250.

CHAP. XIII.

A true Relation of the traitorous Massacre of the most part of three score and seven English men set on Land out of a Ship of Sir Oliph Leagh, bound for Guiana, in Santa Lucia, an Island of the West Indie, the threeth and twentieth of August, written by Iohn Nicol. H. P. pag. 1255.

CHAP. XIII.

The Relation of Master Iohn Willon of Wanstead in Essex, one of the last time that returned into England from Wiapoco in Guiana, 1606. H. pag. 1260.

CHAP. XV.

Part of a Treatise written by Master William Turner, Sonne to Doctor Turner of London a Physician touching the former Voyage. H. pag. 1265.

CHAP. XVI.

A Relation of a Voyage to Guiana performed by Robert Harcourt of Stanton Harcourt, in the Countie of Oxfordshire. pag. 1267.

The names of the Rivers falling into the Sea from Amazonas, to Dessequibe, and of the severall Nations inhabiting those Rivers. pag. 1282.

CHAP. XVII.

A Relation of the habitation and other Observations of the River of Marwin, and the adjoining Regions. pag. 1283.

Rivers from Brabice to the Amazonas. p. 1286

CHAP. XVIII.

A Description and Discouerie of the River of Amazons, by William Davies Barber Surgeon of London. pag. 1287.

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the Seventh Booke of the second part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I.

A Treatise of Brafil, written by a Portugall which had long lived there. H. pag. 1289.
 §. 1. Of the beginning and originall of the Indians of Brafil, and of their Customes, Religions, and Ceremonies. ibid.
 §. 2. Of their manner of killing and eating of Humane flesh: and of their creating Gentle-men. pag. 1294.
 §. 3. Of the diversitie of Nations and Languages, and of the Soyle and Climate. pag. 1297.
 §. 4. Of the Beasts, Land-serpents, and Fowles. pag. 1301.
 §. 5. Of Land-snakes and Serpents. pag. 1303.
 §. 6. Of the Fowles that are in the Land, and are thereon fufamed. pag. 1304.
 §. 7. Of the Brazilian Trees for Fruit, Medicine, and other uses; and their Herbes of rare operations. pag. 1306.
 §. 8. Of the Herbes that yeeld Fruit, and are eaten. pag. 1309.
 §. 9. Of the Fishes that swimme in the Salt water: also Shel-fishes, Trees, and Fowles of the Sea: of Rivers and the Creatures which live therein; and the Beasts and Plants brought thither out of Portugall. pag. 1312.
 §. 10. Birds that doe feed, and are found in the Salt-water. pag. 1316.
 §. 11. Fresh-water Snakes (and Creatures of the water.) pag. 1317.
 §. 12. Of the Beasts, Trees and Herbes, that come from Portugall, and doe grow and breed in Brafil. pag. 1318.

CHAP. II.

Articles touching the dutie of the Kings Maie-ty our Lord, and to the common good of all the estate of Brafil. Written (as is thought) by the Author of the former Treatise. H. pag. 1320.

CHAP. III.

Extracts out of the Historie of Iohn Leri- us Frenchman, who lived in Brafil with Monsieur Villagagnon, Anno 1557 and 58. H.P. pag. 1325.
 §. 1. Of the Beasts, and other living Creatures, and Plants of Brafil. ibid.
 §. 2. Of the warre, Battailles, Fortitude, and Weapons of the Barbarians: and of their Religion. pag. 1333.
 §. 3. Of their Marriages, Education of Chil-

dren, Politie, Hospitalitie, Diseases, Physicians, Funerals and Lamentations. pag. 1341.

CHAP. IIII.

The Travels of Hulderike Schirdel in twenty yeeres space, from 1534. to 1554. abbre- viated. H.P. pag. 1347.
 §. 1. His Voyage up the River of Plate, founda- tion of Townes, their expedition up the River of Parana and Parabol; the people of these parts. ibid.
 §. 2. Martin Eyollas made Generall. Gabre- ros comming: Scherues Voyage. Nunner his in- solence. Divers people and accidents de- scrib'd. pag. 1354.
 §. 3. A long and troublesome March from Al- fumption into Peru. The Authors returne. p. 1362.

CHAP. V.

The Observations of Sir Richard Hawkins, Knight, in his Voyage into the South Sea. An. Dom. 1593. once before published, now reviewed and cor- rected by a written Copie, illustrated with Notes, and in divers places abbreviated. pag. 1367.
 §. 1. What happened in this Voyage before they came neere the Equinoctiall Line, with divers ac- cidental Discoveries usefull for Navigators. pag. 1367.
 §. 2. Considerations of Currents: the Scar- bute: fire in Ships; Fishes which attend them: Sea-hawking and Hunting: their comming to Bra- fil and observations thereof. pag. 1372.
 §. 3. Tharltons treacherie: Discoverie of Land unknowne: Entrance of the Straits, ac- cidents therein, and description thereof: Divers oc- casionall discourses for the furtherance of Marine and Natural knowledge. pag. 1382.

§. 4. Entrance into the South Sea; Discoverie of the South parts of the Straits to be cutt lands; by Sir Francis Drake (which the Hollanders as- cribe to Maire and Schouten.) Of the Island Mo- cha, and the parts adjoining. pag. 1391.
 §. 5. The Vice-roy sends an Armado against the English; which viceroth them and returneth: is againe set forth: their fight; the English yield upon composition: divers Martiall discor- ses. pag. 1398.

CHAP. VI.

A briefe Note written by Master Iohn Ellis, one of the Captaines with Sir Richard Hawkins, in his Voyage through the Strait of Magellan, begun the

the ninth of April, 1593. concerning the said Strait, and certaine places, on the Coast and Inland of Peru. pag. 1415.

CHAP. VII.

A briefe Relation of an Englishman which had bene thirtee yeeres Captive to the Spaniards in Peru, &c. H. pag. 1418.

CHAP. VIII.

The Relation of Alexandro Vrfino concerning the Coast of Terra Firma, and the secrets of Peru, and Chili, where hee had lived foure and thirte yeeres. H. ibid.

CHAP. IX.

Notes of the West Indies, gathered out of Pe- dro Ordonnes de Cevallos, a Spanish Priest, his larger Observations. pag. 1420.

CHAP. X.

Relation of the new discoverie in the South Sea, made by Pedro Fernandez Giron Portugez, 1609. with his Petitions to the King, one English- ed, another in Spanish. pag. 1422.

The Copie of a Petition presented to the King of Spaine, by Captaine Peter Ferdinand de Quir, touching the discoverie of the fourth part of the World, called Terra Australis Incognita: and of the great riches and fertilitie of the same: Prin- ted with license in Siuill, An. 1610. ibid.
 A Note of Australia del Espritu Santo, written by Master Hakluyt. pag. 1432.

CHAP. XI.

The Historie of Lopez Vaz a Portugall (taken by Captaine Withrington at the River of Plate, Anno 1586. with this discourse about him) touch- ing American places, discoveries and occurrences; abridged. ibid.

CHAP. XII.

Briefe extracts translated out of Ierom Ben- zos three bookes of the New World, touching the Spaniards cruel handling of the Indians, and the effects thereof. pag. 1448.

CHAP. XIII.

Observations of things most remarkable, col- lected out of the first part of the Commentaries Roy- all, written by the Inca Garcilasso de la Vega, Na- turalist of Cozaco, in nine bookes; Of the Originall, Lines, Conquests, Lawes and Idolatries of the Incas, or ancient Kings of Peru. pag. 1454.

CHAP. XIIIII.

The suppliment of the Historie of the Incas, briefly collected out of the Authors second part, or Generall Historie of Peru. pag. 1483.

CHAP. XV.

Briefe Notes of Francis Pizarro his conquest of Peru, written by a Spanish Captaine therein em- ployed. pag. 1489.

CHAP. XVI.

The Conquest of Peru and Cusco, called New Castile, and directed to the Emperour by Fran- cisco de Xeres, Secretarie to Captaine Francis Pizarro which conquered them. pag. 1491.

CHAP. XVII.

Relations of occurrences in the Conquest of Pe- ru after Fernand Pizarros departure, written at Xauxa, July 15. 1534. by Pedro Sancho, No- tary Generall in the Kingdoms of New Castile, and Secretarie to the Governour Fr. Pizarro, sub- scribed by the said Governour himselfe and others, and sent to his Maieitie. pag. 1494.

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the Eighth Booke of the Second part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I.

A True Relation of Aluaro Nunez, called Capito di Vacca, concerning that which happened to the Fleet in India, whereof Pamphilo Narvaez was Governour, from the yeare 1527. untill the yeare 1536. who returned vnto Siuill with three of his Companions on- ly: Translated out of Ramusio, and abbre- viated. H.P. pag. 1499.

§. 1. Their Fleet, and admirall and vntard of Tempest: their entrance into Florida: the Lakes,

troublesome passages, encounters, disastrous success, building Boates for returne. ibid.

§. 2. Misery pursues them at Sea, and betrays them to the Indians: their miserable Lines and Death. pag. 1506.

§. 3. Their flight from the Indians to others, wonderfull cures, backe and belly cares: their tra- vels thorow the Country, and hungry adventures. Diners peoples and their Customes. pag. 1514.

§. 4. They come to the South Sea, and travell through a plentifull Country, till they meet with Spaniards: A

of the second Part.

СНАР. II.

СНАР. III.

CHAP. III.

Of the Ile. of Hispaniola.

*March, Anno 42. Elizabethæ Reginae 16:2.
and delivered by Gabriel Archer, a Gentleman in*

Captaine Bartholmew Gilbert, in the yeere 1603
written by Master Thomas Canner, a Gentleman

CHAP. XIII.

tion of the Islands

which are related many English Fleets, Sea-fights
and Prizes. pag. 167

PILGRIMS.

ning of the Plantation 1606. till Anno 1610. for
what abbreviated. pag. 17

CHAP. V

nas Gates, Km

A 2

The Contents of the ninth Booke.

James Towne in Virginia, to seek the Ile of Bermudas, and missing the same, his putting over toward Sagadahoc and Cape Cod, and to backe againe to James Towne, begun the nineteenth of June, 1610. H. pag. 1758.

CHAP. VIII.

A short Relation made by the Lord De la Warre, to the Lords and others of the Council of Virginia, touching his unexpected returne home, and afterwards delivered to the generall Assembly of the said Company, at a Court holden the 25. of June, 1611. Published by authority of the said Council. pag. 1762.

CHAP. IX.

A Letter of Sir Samuel Argoll, touching his Voyages to Virginia, and Actions there: Written to Master Nicholas Hawes. June, 1613. H. p. 1764.

CHAP. X.

Notes of Virginian Affairs in the government of Sir Thomas Dale and of Sir Thomas Gates, till Ann. 1614. taken out of Master Ralph Hamor (Secretary to the Colonie) his Booke. pag. 1766.

CHAP. XI.

A Letter of Sir Thomas Dale, and another of Master Whitakers, from James Towne in Virginia, June 18. 1614. And a peece of a Treatise, written by the said Master Whitakers from Virginia the yeere before. pag. 1768.

To the R. and my most esteemed friends, M. D. M. at his house at F. Ch. in London. ibid.

Part of a Treatise written at Henrico in Virginia, by M. Alexander Whitaker, Minister to the Colonie there, which then governed by Sir Thomas Dale, 1613. pag. 1771.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Letter: Sir Thomas Dales returne the Spaniards in Virginia. Of Pocahuntas and Tomocomo: Captaine Yerdley and Captaine Argoll (both since Knighted) their Governments, the Lord La Warres Death, and other occurrences till Anno 1619. pag. 1773.

CHAP. XIII.

The estate of the Colonie, Anno 1620. and Master Derrmers Letter to me from Virginia, touching his Voyage for the South Sea. pag. 1775.

A Note of the Shipping, Men, and Provisions sent to Virginia, by the Treasurer and Company, in the yeere 1619. pag. 1776.

CHAP. XIII.

A true Relation of a Sea-fight betwene two great and well-appointed Spanish Ships, or Men of Warre; and an English Ship, called the Margaret and John, or the Black Hodge, going for Virginia. pag. 1780.

CHAP. XV.

Virginian affaires since the yeere 1620. till this present 1624. pag. 1783.

Ch. 1. *A Note of the Shipping, Men, and provisions sent and provided for Virginia, by the Right Honorable Henry Earle of South-hampton, and the Company, and other private Adventurers, in the yeere 1621. &c. With other Occurrences then published by the Company.* ibid.

Ships and People. ibid.
And for the benefit of the Plantations: these things following have bene here done this yeere. ibid.
Other Occurrences of note. ibid.

Gifts. pag. 1784.

Ch. 2. *News from Virginia in Letters sent thence 1621. partly published by the Company, partly transcribed from the Originals, with Letters of his Maiestie, and of the Company touching Silke-workers.* pag. 1787.

His Maiesties gracious Letter to the Earle of South-hampton, Treasurer, and to the Council and Company of Virginia here: commanding the present setting up of Silke-workers, and planting of Vines in Virginia. pag. 1787.

Ch. 3. *The barbarous Massacre committed by the Sauvages on the English Planters, March the two and twentieth, 1621. after the Englishs ascent.* pag. 1788.

Ch. 4. *A Note of provisions necessary for every Planter or personall Adventurer to Virginia: and accidents since the Massacre.* pag. 1799.

CHAP. XVI.

English Voyages to the Summer Ilands; Henry Mays Shipwracke there. 1593. The first Colony sent 1612. pag. 1793.

A Copie of the Articles which Master R. More, Governour Deputie of the Summer Ilands, propounded to the Company that were there with him to be subscribed unto, which both he and they subscribed the second of August, in his House, Anno 1612. which about the same time be sent into England, to the Worshipfull Company of the Adventurers. pag. 1795.

CHAP. XVII.

Relations of Summer Ilands, taken out of Master Richard Norwood, his Map and Notes added thereto, printed 1622. The Historie of the Creatures growing or lining therein, being enlarged out of Captaine Smiths written Relations. pag. 1796.

CHAP. XVIII.

Extracts out of Captaine John Smiths Historie of Bermudas, or Summer Ilands; touching the English acts and occurrences there from the beginning of the Plantation. pag. 1801.

CHAP. XIX.

Briefe intelligence from Virginia by Letters, a Supplement of French-Virginian occurrences, and their supplantation by Sir Samuel Argall, in right of

of the second part.

of the English Plantation.

CHAP. XX.

Virginias Verger: or a discourse shewing the

pag. 1805.

benefits which may grow to this Kingdome from American-English Plantations, and specially thoseth of Virginia and Summer Ilands. p. 1809.

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the tenth Booke of the Second part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I.

Briefe Relation of the discoverie and plantation of New England: and of sundrie accidents therein occurring, from the yeere of our Lord 1607. to this present 1622. published by the Presidents and Councell, and dedicated to the Princeps Highnesse, here abbreviated. p. 1827.

CHAP. II.

The voyage of Master Henric Challons, intended for the North plantation of Virginia, 1606. taken by the way, and it used by Spaniards: written by John Stoneman Pilot. H. pag. 1832.

CHAP. III.

Extracts of a Booke of Captaine Iohn Smith, printed 1622. called New Englands trials, and continuing the storie thereof, with Motives to the business of fishing there. pag. 1837.

An Abstract of Letters sent from the Colonie in New England, July sixteene, 1622. p. 1840.

CHAP. IIII.

A Relation or Journall of a plantation sited at Plimoth in New England, and proceedings therein; printed 1622. and here abbreviated. p. 1842.

CHAP. V.

Good news from New England: or, a relation of things remarkable in that Plantation; written by E. Winflow, and here abbreviated. pag. 1853.

CHAP. VI.

Nova Scotia. The Kings Patent to Sir Wil-

liam Alexander Knight, for the plantation of New Scotland in America, and his proceedings therein; with a description of Mawoolthen for better knowledge of those parts.

The description of the Countie of Mawoolthen, discovered by the English, in the yeere 1602. 3, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9. H. pag. 1873.

CHAP. VII.

The beginning of the Patens for New-found-land; and the plantation there made by the English, 1610. delivered in a Letter dated thence from M. Guy, to M. Slany. Also of the weather the three first winters, and of Captaine Welton: with other remarkable occurrences. H. pag. 1876.

Master Iohn Guy his Letter to Master Slany Treasurer, and to the Council of the New-found-land plantation. pag. 1877.

To Master Iohn Slany Treasurer, and others of the Councell, and Company of the New-found-land plantation, the 29. of July, 1612. pag. 1879.

CHAP. VIII.

Captaine Richard Whitbournes voyages to New-found-land, and observations there, and thereof, taken out of his printed booke. p. 1882.

A Relation of New-found-land. pag. 1884.

CHAP. IX.

The names of divers honourable persons and others, who have undertaken to helpe to advance his Maiesties plantation in the New-found-land: written by the said R. W. with extracts of certaine Letters written from thence. pag. 1888.

The second Part of the tenth Booke.

CHAP. X.

Divers warlike Fleets set forth to Sea against the Spaniards, by our English Deputies, Queene Elizabeth, of glorious memorie: Her manifold victories and victories. pag. 1891.

CHAP. XI.

The Popes Bull, the King of Spaines preparations, the Duke of Medinas Expedition, the Duke of Parmas Forces, for the invasion of England: divers Sea-fights twixt the English and Spanish Fleets, the Sea-fights of the Spanish, and mis-

erable disasters in their returne. Their Iyes: The Queenes religious triumph. pag. 1895.

Squadron of the Galeons of Portugal. p. 1898.

Don Alonfo Peres de Gufman, the good Duke of Medina, Sidonia, Countie of Nebla, Marquess of Cathelhe in Africa, Lord of the Citie of Saint Lucar, Captaine Generall of the Ocean Sea, of the Coast of Andalusia, and of this Armie of his Maiestie, and Knight of the honorable Order of the golden Fleece. pag. 1902.

The true relation of the successfe of the Catholike Armie

The Contents of the tenth Booke

Armie against their Enemies, by the Letters of the Post-maſter of Logrono of the fourth of September, and by Letters from Roan of the 31. of Auguſt, and by Letters from Paris of the Kings Embaſſadour there: wherein hee declareth the imprisonment of Francis Drake, and other great Nobles of England, and how the *Queene* is in the field with an Armie, and of a certaine mutinie which was amongſt the *Queenes* Armie, with the ſucceſſe of the ſaid Catholike Armie ſince they entred in the Groynne, till they came on the Coaſt of England, with two Ballets compounded by Chriſtopher Bracco, a blinde man of Cordowa, printed with ſcopce by Gabriel Ramos Beirano printer. pag. 1913.

CHAP. XII.

A diſcourſe of the Portugall voyage, Anno 1589. Sir Iohn Norris and Sir Francis Drake Generalls, written (as is thought) by Colonnell Antonio Wingfield, employed in the ſame voyage, formerly publiſhed by his friend to whom it was written, and here abbreviated. pag. 1914.

CHAP. XIII.

A briefe and true report of the Honourable voyage unto Cadix, 1596. of the overthrow of the Kings Fleet, and of the winning of the Citie, with other accidents, gathered out of Meteranus, Maſter Hackluyt, and others. pag. 1927.

CHAP. XIII.

The voyage to the Iles of Azores, under the conduct of the Right Honorable Earle of Eſſex, 1597. pag. 1935.

§. 1. The relation thereof by the ſaid Earle, and other Commiſſioners. Ibid.

§. 2. A larger relation of the ſaid Iſland voyage, written by Sir Arthur Gorges Knight, collected in the *Queenes* ſhip called the *Watt Spite*, wherein he was then Captaine; with Marine and Martiall diſcourſes added according to the occurrences. pag. 1938.

The Concluſion of the Worke, with ſome later aduerſements touching his Maieſties care for Virginia. pag. 1940.



Maps and Peeces cut in Braſe or VWood in the laſt ten Bookes.

America	p.857	Lituania	p.619
America Meridionalis	p.882	Liunia	p.627
America Septentrionalis	p.853	Magellan Streight	p.900
Map of the Arctike Pole	p.625	Mexican hieroglyphic. hiſtor. cut	
Boruſia or Pruſſia	p.626	in 65. peeceſ	p.1067, &c.
Hondius his Map of China	p.361	to 1117.	
Purchas his Map of China	p.402	Mosconia	p.778
Denmarke	p.622	Norwegia	p.620
England	p.1980	Polonia	p.630
Florida	p.689	Ruſſia	p.220
Great Britaine and Ireland	p.1981	Ngus Scotia	p.1874
Greenland	p.468	New Spaine	p.871
Vlphilas Gottick letters	p.653	Tartaria	p.234
Hiſpaniola	p.861	Taurica Cherſoneſus	p.632
Jſland	p.644	Virginia	p.1692





PEREGRINATIONS
AND DISCOVERIES, IN THE
REMOTEST NORTH AND EAST
PARTS OF ASIA, CALLED
TARTARIA AND
CHINA.

THE FIRST BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

*The Iournall of Frier WILLIAM DE RYBRVQVIS,
a French-man, of the Order of the Minorite Friers, vn-
to the East parts of the World, Anno
Dom. 1253.*



O the most Excellent and most Christian Lord, Lewis,
by Gods grace the Renowned King of France, Frier
William de Rubric, * the meanest of the Minorites * Master Hig.
Order, wisheth health and continuall Triumph in
Christ.

It is written in the Booke of Ecclesiasticus, concer-
ning the Wiseman: He shall traueill into strange Coun-
tries, and good and euill shall bee try in all things. The
very same Action (my Lord and King) haue I achie-
ued: howbeit, I with, that I haue done it like a wise
man, and not like a Foole. For many there bee, that
performe the same Action which a wise man doth, not
wisely but more vndiscreetly: of which number I feare
my selfe to bee one. Notwithstanding, howsoever I
haue done it, because you commanded mee, when I de-
parted from your Highnesse, to write all things vnto you, which I should see among the Tar-
tars, and you wished me also that I should not feare to write long Letters, I haue done as your
Majestie enioyned me: yet with feare and reuerence, because I want words and Eloquence suf-
ficient to write vnto so great a Maiestie. Bee it knowne therefore vnto your Sacred Maiestie,
that in the yeare of our Lord 1253, about the Nones of May, wee entered into the Sea of Pon-
tus, which the Bulgarians call the great Sea. It containeth in length (as I learned of certayne
Merchants) one thousand and eight miles, and is in a manner, diuided into two parts. About
the midle thereof are two Prouinces, one towards the North, and another towards the South.
The South Prouince is called Synopolis, and it is the Castle and Port of the Soldan of Turke-
but the North Prouince is called of the Latines, Gafaria: of the Greekes, which inhabit vpon
the Sea shoare thereof, it is called Caffaria, that is to say, Caffaria. And there are certayne head
lands stretching forth into the Sea towards Synopolis, Also, there are three hundred miles of di-
stance

part of this
Author, but
the whole
worke being
found in Auent
Colledge Li-
brary in Cam-
bridge, I thought
fit to commu-
nicate it to the
World, it being
never publi-
shed, as I
thinke, in any
Language. I
begin with the
Tartars, as be-
ing the first
they met be-
fore the Chi-
nese, yea, China
or Wang, be-
come knowne
by them.
Eccles. 3. v. 31.
Aspen, or
Ginseng.

zika.

63

Eng The T

Chap. 2.
Of the Tatars
and of their
houses.

The benefit of
a Painter in
strange Coun-
tries.

Idols

They use the
like custom in
Florida.

IN Winter time they make excellent drink of Rice, of Mill, and of Honey, being well and high coloured like Wine. Alſo they haue Wine brought vnto them from farre Countries. In Summer time they care not for any drinke, but Cofmoſ, and it ſtandeth alwayes within the entrance of his doore, and next vnto it ſtands a Minſtrell with his Fiddle. There are no ſuch Citerne and Vials as ours commonly be, but many other Muſical Inſtruments which are not vſed among vs. And when the Maſter of the houſe begins to drinke, one of his ſeruant ſtandeth out with a loud voyce, *Ha*, and the Minſtrell plays vpon his Fiddle. And when they make any great ſolemne feaſt, they all of them clap their hands, and dance to the ſayfe of Muckie, the men before their Maſter, and the women before their Miſtris. And when the Maſter hath drunke, then cryes out his ſeruant as before, and the Minſtrell ſayeth his Muckie. Then drinke they all round both men and women, and ſometimes they carowle for the victorie vſing filthy and drunkenly. Alſo when they will prouoke any man, they pull him by the Eares to the drinke, and to luge and draw him ſtrongly to brecht out his throat clapping their hands, and dancing.

Chap. 5.
Of their food
and victuals.

Drying of flesh
in the wind.

Caracósmo

Duke East.
Strore of
Mares, and
Mares milke

against Winter. In the Winter season when Milke fayleth them, they put the foresaid Curds (which they call *Gry-ur*) into a bladder, and pouring hot water thereto, they beat it lively till they have refolued it into the said Water, which is thereby made exceedingly lowre, and that they drinke in stead of Milke. They are very scrupulous, and take diligent heed that they drinke not faire Water by it selfe.

Chap. 7.
Of the beasts
which they cat
eaten, garments
and of
their manner
of hunting.

Our Falconers
vie the left fist.
Another
fringe cu-
soms, which
leave to be
falconers
themselves.

Rest Lords have Cottages or Granges towards the South, from whence their Tenants bring whom Milke and Meats against Winter. The poorer sort provide themselves of such necessities, for the exchange of Rums, and of other beasts skins. The *Tartars* flaves fill their bellies with thicke water, and are therewithall contented. They will neither eat Milke with long tayles, nor any kind of Milke with short tayles. They have also certaine little beasts, called by them, *Sogur*, which live in a Cave twemtie or thurte of them together, all the whole Winter sleeping there for the space of six moneths; and these they take in great abundance. There are also a kind of Conies having long tayles like unto Cats; and on the outside of their tayles grow blacke and white haire. They have many other small beasts good to eat, which they know and discern right well. I saw no Deere there, but a few Hares, but a great number of Roes. I saw wild Ants in great abundance, which be like unto Mules. Also I saw another kind of beast, called *Aruck*, having in all resemblance the bodie of a Ram, and crooked hornes, which are of such bignesse, that I could scarce lift up a pair of them with one hand; and of these hornes they make great drinking cups. They have Faulcons, Gurfalcons, and other Hawkes in great plenty, all which they carry upon their right hands; and they put always about their Faulcons neckes a string of Leather, which hangeth downe to the midst of their gorges, by the which string, when they cast them off the fist at the game, with their left hand they bow downe the heads and breasts of the said Hawkes, lest they should be toffed up and downe, and beaten with the wind, or lest they should have too high. Wherefore they get a great part of their victuals by hunting and hawking. Concerning their garments and attire, be it knowne unto your Maestie, that out of *Ungary*, and other Regions of the East, out of *Persia* also, and other Countries of to South, there are brought unto them Stuffs of silke, Cloth of gold, and Cotton cloth, which they wear in time of Summer. But out of *Russia*, *Mosell*, *Bulgaria* the greater, and *Tajcar*, that is, *Hungary* the greater, and out of *Kerks* (all which are Northern Regions, and full of Woods) and also out of many other Countreies of the North, which are subiect unto them, the Inhabitants bring them rich and costly skins of divers sorts (which I never saw in our Countries) wherewithall they are clad in Winter. And alwayes against Winter they make themselves two Gownes, one with the furre upward to their skine, and another with the furre outward, to defend them from wind and snow, which for the most part are made of Wolves skins, or Foxe skins, or else of Rapions. And when they sit within the house, they haue a finer Gowne to wear. The poorer sort make their vpper Gowne of Goats skins, When they goe to hunt for wild beasts, there meets a great companie of them together, and enuironing the place round about, where they are sure to find some game, by little and little they approach on all sides, till they have gotten the wild beasts into the middle, as it were into a circle, and then they discharge their Arrows at them. Also they make them selves Breaches of skins. The rich *Tartars* sometimes furre their Gownes with pellice or like furs, which is exceeding soft, light, and warme. The poorer sort doe line their clothes with Cotton cloth, which is made of the finest wool they can picke out, and of the coarser part of the said wool, they make Felt to cover their houses, and their chests, and for their bedding also. Of the same wool, being mixed with one third part of Horse haire, they make all their cordage. They make also of the said Felt coverings for their shooles, and caps to defend their heads from the weather: for all which purposes they spend a great quantitie of their wool. And thus much concerning the attire of the men.

Great expense
of Wools.

Chap. 8.
Of the fashion
which the *Tar-
tars* use in cut-
ting their
haire, and of
the attire of
their women.

The men shoue a plot foure square vpon the crownes of their heads, and from the two foremost corners they shoue, as it were, two fumes downe to their temples: they shoue also their temples, and the hinder part of their heads, even unto the nipe of the necke: likewise they shoue the fore-part of their scalp downe to their foreheads, and vpon their foreheads they leave a locke of haire reaching downe vnto their eye-browes: vpon the two hindermost corners of their heads, they have two lockes also, which they twise and braid into *Knots* and so bind and knit them vnder each eare one. Moreover, their women's garments differ not from their mens, saving that they are somewhat longer. But on the morrowe after one of their women is married, she shaves her scalp from the middle of her head downe to her forehead, and wears a wide garment like vnto the hood of a Nunne, yet larger and longer in all parts then a Nunnes hood, being open before, and girt vnto them vnder the right side. For hereafter doe the *Tartars* differ from the *Turkes*: because the *Turkes* fasten their garments to their bodies on the left side: but the *Tartars* alwayes on the right side. They haue also an ornament for their heads, which they call, *Betta*, being made of the bark of a Tree, or of some such other light

ter matters as they can finde, which by reason of the thicke and roundnes thereof cannot be holden but in both hands together: and it hath a square sharpe spire rising from the top thereof, being more then a cubite in length, and fashioned like vnto a Pinacle. The said *Botta* they couer all ouer with a piece of rich Silke, and it is hollow within: and vpon the midst of the said spire or square top, they put a bunch of Quills, or of slender Canes a cubite long and more: and the said bunch on the top thereof, they beautifie with Peacockes Feathers, and round about all the length thereof, with the Feathers of a Malard's taile, and with precious stones also. Great Ladies wear this kind of ornament vpon their heads, binding it strongly with a certaine Hat or Coyke, which hath a hole in the crowne, for the spire to come through it: and vnder the foresaid ornament they couer the haire of their heads, which they gather vpon round together from the hinder part thereof to the crowne, and so lap them vp in a knot or bun-dell within the said *Botta*, which afterward they bind strongly vnder their chins. Hereupon when a great company of such Gentlewomen ride together, and are beheld a fure off, they seeme to be Souldiers with Helmes on their heads, carrying their Lances upright: for the said *Botta* appeareth like an Helmet vnto the eyes. All their Women sit on horse-backe, bestriding their Horses like men: and they binde their hoods or gownes about their waistes with a sky-coloured Silke Skarte, and with another Skarte they girdle about their breasts: and they binde also a piece of white Silke like a Muffler or Maske vnder their eyes, reaching downe vnto their breasts. These Gentlewomen are exceeding fat, and the lesser their noses be, the fairer they are esteemed: they dawbe ouer their sweet faces with grease too shamefully: and they neuer lyein bed for their trauell of child-birth.

The duties of Women are to driue Carts: to lay their houses vpon Carts, and to take them downe againe: to milke Kine, to make Butter and *Gry-ur*, to dreffe skinnes, and to sew them, which they usually sew with thread made of sinewes, for they diuide sinewes in slender threads, and then twine them into one long thread. They make Sandals and Socks; and other Garments. Howbeit they neuer wash any apparell: for they say, that God is then angry, and that dreadfull thunder will ensue, if washed garments be hanged forth to dry: yea, they beate such as wash, and take their garments from them. They are wonderfully afraid of thunder: for in the time of thunder they thrust all strangers out of their houses, and then wrapping themselves in blacke Fels; they lye hidden there, till the thunder be ouer-past. They neuer wash their dithes or bowles: yea, when their flesh is sodden, they wash the platter wherein it must be put, wash halting hot brath out of the pot, and then powre the said brath into the pot againe. They make Felt also, and couer their houses therewith. The duties of the Men are, to make Bowes and Arrows, Stirrups, Bridles and Saddles: to build Houses and Carts; to keepe Horses, to milke Mares, to churme Colmes and Mares Milke, and to make bags wherein to put it: they keepe Camels also, and lay burthen vpon them. As for Sheepe and Goats, they tend and milke them, as well the Men as the Women. With Sheeps Milke thicke and salted, they dreffe: and then their Hides. When they will wash their hands or their heads, they fill their mouthes full of Water, and spowring it into their hands by little and little, they sprinkle their haire, and wash their heads therewith. As touching marriages, your Highnesse is to vnderstand, that no man can haue a Wife among them till he hath bought her: whereupon sometimes their Maids are very faine before they be married, for their Parents alwayes keepe them till they can sell them. They keepe the first and second degrees of Consanguinitie inuolable, as we doe: but they haue no regard of the degrees of Affinitie: for they will marrie together, or by succession, two Sisters. When Widowes marrie not at all, for this reason, because they beleue, that all who haue serued them in this life, shall doe them seruice in the life to come also. Whereupon they are periwaded, that euery Widow after death shall retorne vnto her owne Husband. And here-hence ariseth an abominable and filthy custom among them: namely, that the Sonne-in-law sometimes all his Fathers Wiues except his owne Mother: For the Court or House of the Father or Mother, falleth by inheritance alwayes to the younger Sonne. Whereupon he is to provide for all his Fathers Wiues, because they are part of his Inheritance as well as his Fathers possessions. And then he will, heuileth them for his owne Wiues: for he thinks it no infamie or dishonourment vnto himselfe, although they retorne vnto his Father after death. Therefore when any man hath bargained with another for a Maid, the Father of the said Daughter makes him a feast: in the meane while she fleeth vnto some of her Kinsfolkes to hide her life. Then faith her Father vnto the Bridegroom: *Loe, my Daughter is yours, take her wheresoeuer you can finde her*. Then he and his friends seeke for her till they can find her, and hauing found her, he must take her by force and carry her (as it were) violently vnto his owne house.

Chap. 9.
Of the duties
injoynd vnto
the *Tartars*
Women, and
of their labors,
and also of
their mari-
ages.

Concerning their Lawes, or their Execution of Iustice, your Maestie is to bee advertised, that when two men fight, no third man dare intrude himselfe to part them. Yea, the third dare not helpe his owne Sonne. But he that goes by the worst, must appeale vnto the Court of his Lord. And whosoever else offenceth him any violence after appeale, is put to death. But

Chap. 10.
Of the execu-
tion of Ius-
tice, and of
the death
of the dead.

he must goe presently without all delay : and he that hath suffered the iniury, carrieth him (as it were) captiue. They punish no man with sentence of death, vnlesse he bee taken in the deed doing, or confesse the same. But being accused by the multitude, they put him vnto extreame torture, to make him confesse the truth. They punish murder with death, and Carnall copulation also with any other besides his owne. By his owne, I meane his Wife or his Maid Seruant, for he may vie his Slaue as hee listeth himselfe. Hainous they also or felony they punish with death. For a light theft, as namely, for stealing of a Ram, the partie (not being apprehended in the deed doing, but otherwise detected) is cruelly beaten. And if the Executioner layes on an hundred strokes, hee must haue an hundred felines; namely, for such as are beaten vpon sentence giuen in the Court. Also counterfeite Messengers, because they feine themselves to be Messengers, when as indeed they are none at all, they punish with death. Sacrilegious persons they vie in like manner (of which kind of Malefactors your Maiestie shall vnderstand more fully hereafter) because they esteeme such to be Witches. When any man dyeth, they lament and howle most pittifully for him : and the said Mourners are free from paying any tribute for one whole year after. Also, whosoever is present at the house where any one growne to mans estate lyeth dead, he must not enter into the Court of *Magna-Cam*, till one whole year be expired. If it were a child deceased, hee must not enter into the said Court till the next month after. Neere vnto the graue of the partie deceased, they alwaies leaue one Cottage. If any of their Nobles (being of the stocke of *Chingia*, who was their first Lord and Father) deceaseth, his Sepulchre is vnknowne. And alwaies about those places where they interre their Nobles, there is one house of men to keepe the Sepulchres. I could not learne that they vse to hide Treasures in the graues or their dead. The *Comenians* build a great Tombe ouer their dead, and erect the Image of the dead partie thereupon, with his face towards the East, holding a drinking Cup in his hand before his Nauell. They erect also vpon the Monuments of rich men, Pyramids, that is to say; little sharpe houses or pincines : and in some places I saw mightie Towers made of Bricke, in other places Pyramids made of stones, albeit there are no stones to be found thereabout. I saw one newly buried, and in whose behalfe they hanged vp sixteene Horle-hides, vnto each quarter of the world foure, betweene certaine high polls : and they set besides his Graue Cosmos for him to drinke, and death to eate : and yet they said that he was baptized, I beheld other kinds of Sepulchres also towards the East : namely, large floores or pavements made of stone, fume round, and fume square, and then foure long stones pitched vpright, about the said pavement towards the foure Regions of the world. When any man is sicke, he lyeth in his bed, and causeth a figge to be set vpon his house, to signifie that there lyeth a sicke person there : to the end that no man may enter into the said house : whereupon none at all visit any sicke partie but his seruants only. Moreover, when any one is sicke in their great Courts, they appoint Watch-men to stand round about the said Court, who will not suffer any person to enter within the Precincts thereof. For they feare least euill spirites or winds should come together with the parties that enter in. They esteeme of Soothsayers, as of their Priests.

Chap. 11.
Of our first
entrance a-
mong the Tar-
tars, and
of their Ingra-
titude.

Duke Sarsach.

And being come amongst those barbarous people, me thought (as I said before) that I was entered into a new world : for they came flocking about vs on horse-backe, after they had made vs a long time to awake for them sitting in the shadow, vnder their blacke carts. The first question which they demanded, was whether we had our beere with them heretofore, or not. And giuing them answer that we had not, they began impudently to beg our vituals from vs. And we gaue them some of our Bisket and Wine, which wee had brought with vs from the Towne of *Soldaisa*. And hauing drunke off one Flagon of our Wine, they demanded another; saying, That a man goeth not into the house with one foote. Howbeit we gaue them no more, excusing our felues that we had but a litle. Then they asked vs, whence we came, and whither we were bound? I answered them with the words aboue mentioned : that wee had heard concerning Duke *Sarsach*, that hee was become a *Christian*, and that vnto him our determination was to trauele, hauing your Maiesties Letters to deliuer vnto him. They were very inquisiue to know whether I came of mine owne accord, or whether I went? I answered, that no man compelled me to come, neither had I come, vnlesse I felde had beene willing : and that therefore I was come according to mine owne will, and to the will of my Superior, I tooke diligent heed neuer to say that I was your Maiesties Embassadour. Then they asked what I had in my Carts; whether it were Gold or Siluer, or rich Garments to carrie vnto *Sarsach*? I answered, that *Sarsach* should fee what we had brought, when we were once come vnto him, and that they had nothing to doe as such fuch questions, but rather ought to conduct me vnto their Captaine, and that he, if he thought good, should cause me to be directed vnto *Sarsach*: if not, that I would returne. For there was in the same Prouince one of *Budin* his Kinsmen, called *Sacacai*, vnto whom my Lord the Emperour of *Constantinople* had written Letters of request, to suffer me to passe through his Territorie. With this answer of ours they were satisfied, giuing vs Horses and Oxen, and two men to conduct vs. Howbeit, before they would allow vs the foresaid necessaries for our iourney, they made vs to awaite a long while, begging our bread for

their

their young Brars, wondering at all things which they saw about our Seruants, as their Knives, Gloues, Purfes and Points, and desiring to haue them. I excused my selfe that wee had a long way to trauell, and that we mult in no wise so soone deplete our felues of things necessary, to finish so long a iourney. Then they said, that I was a very varlet. True it is, that they tooke nothing by force from me : howbeit they will beg that which they see very importantly and shamefully. And if a man bestow ought vpon them, it is but colt lost, for they are thanklesse wretches. They esteeme themselves Lords, and thinke that nothing should be denied them by any man. If a man giues them nought, and afterwards stands in need of their seruice, they will do right nought for him. They gaue vs of their Cowes Milke to drinke, after the Butcher was churched out of it, being very sowre, which they call *Apram*. And so we departed from them. And in very deed it seemed to me that we were escaped out of the hands of Diuels. On the morrow we were come vnto the Captaine. From the time wherein we departed from *Soldaisa*, till wee arrived at the Court of *Sarsach*, which was the space of two months, we neuer lay in House or Tent, but alwaies vnder the starry Canopie, and in the open Aire, or vnder our Carts. Neither yet saw we any Village, nor any mention of building where a Village had beene, but the graues of the *Comenians*, in great abundance. The fame evening our guide which had conducted vs, gaue vs some Cosmos. After I had drunke thereof, I swear most extremely for the noueltie and strangenesse, because I neuer dranke of it before. Notwithstanding, me thought it was very fawory, as indeed it was.

On the morrow after we met with the Carts of *Scacatai* laden with houses, and me thought that a mightie Citie came to meete me. I wondered also at the great multitude of huge Droues of Oxen, and Horses, and at the Flocks of Sheepe. I could see but a few men that guided all these matters : whereupon I inquired how many men hee had vnder him, and they told me that he had not aboue fife hundred in all, the one halfe of which number we were come pail, as they lay in another Lodging. Then the Seruant which was our Guide told mee, that I must present some what vnto *Scacatai* : and so he caused vs to stay, going himselfe before to giue notice of our coming. By this time it was past three of the clocke, and they vnloaded their houses neere vnto a certayne water : And ther came vnto vs his Interpreter, who being aduertised by vs that we were neuer there before, demanded some of our vituals, and wee yielded vnto his request. Also hee required of vs some garment for a Reward, because hee was to interpret our Sayings vnto his Maister. Howbeit, we excused our felues as well as we could. Then hee asked vs, what we would present vnto his Lord : And we tooke a flagon of Wine, and filled a Mound with Bisket, and a Platter with Apples and other Fruits. But he was not contented therewith, because we brought him not some rich garment. Notwithstanding, wee entered so into his presence with fear and bashfulness. Hee sat vpon his bed holding a Citron in his hand, and his Wife sat by him : who (as I verily thinke) had cut and pared her Nose betweene the Eyes, that the might seeme to be more flat and saddle-nosed : for the had left her selfe no Nose at all in that place, hauing annoyed the very lame place with a blacke Oyntment, and her Eye-browes also : which sight seemed most vgly in our Eyes. Then I rehearsed vnto him the fame words, which I had spoken in other places before. For it stood vs in hand to vie one and the same speech in all places. For we were well fore-warned of this circumstance by some which had beene amongst the *Tartars*, that we should neuer vary in our Tale. Then I belought him, that he would vouchsafe to accept that small gift at our hands, excusing my selfe that I was a Monke, and that it was against our profession to possesse Gold, or Siluer, or precious Garments, and therefore that I had not any such thing to giue him, howbeit he should receive some part of our vituals in stead of a blessing. Hereupon he caused our Present to be received, and immediately distributed the same among his men, who were met together for the same purpose, to drinke and make merry. I deliuered also vnto him the Emperour of *Constantinople* his Letters (this was eight dayes after the 50 Feast of Ascension) who sent them forth-with to *Soldaisa*, to haue them interpreted there : for they were written in *Greeke*, and he had none about him that was skillful in the *Greeke* Tongue. He asked vs also whether we would drinke any Cosmos, that is to say, Mares Milke : (For those that are Christians among them, as namely, the *Russians*, *Grecians*, and *Alamans*, who keepe Superstition, their owne Law very strictly, will in no case drinke thereof, yea, they account themselves no Christians after they haue once drunke of it, and their Priests reconcile them vnto the Church, as if they had renounced the Christian Faith.) I gaue him answer, that wee had as yet sufficient of our owne to drinke, and that when our drinke fayled vs, we must be contrayned to drinke such as should bee giuen vnto vs. Hee enquired also what was contained in our Letters, which your Maiestie sent vnto *Sarsach*? I answered : that they were sealed vp, and that there was nothing contained in them, but good and friendly words. And he asked what words we would deliuer vnto *Sarsach*? I answered : the words of Christian Faith. Hee asked againe what these words were? For he was very desirous to heare them. Then I expounded vnto him as well as I could, by mine Interpreter, (who had no wit nor any vtterance of speech) the Apostles Creed, which after hee had heard, holding his peace, he shooke his head. Then hee assigned vnto vs two men,

Chap. 12.
Of the Court
of *Scacatai*, &
how the Chris-
tians drinke
no Cosmos.

A causee right
worthy the na-
ting.

Superstition,
the Kingdoms
of God is not
meate and
drinke.

who

He is much de-
cousd.

About this be-
ginning of Au-
gust, the Tar-
tars returne
Southward.

This River is the limit of the East part of *Russia*, and it springeth out of the Fennes of *Moscow*, which Fennes stretch vnto the North Ocean. And it runneth Southward into a certaine great Sea (seven hundred miles about, before it filleth into the Sea called *Pontus Euxinus*). And all the Rivers which we pulled ouer, ran with full streame into those quarters. The forelaide River hath ascended no farther vnto the North: for at that season of the yeere, about the first of August, they begin to returne backe vnto the South. And therefore there is another Cottage somewhat lower thence, where Passengers are ferried ouer in Winter time, and in this place we were driuen to great extremitie, by reason that we could get neither Horses, nor Oxen for any money. At length, after I had declared vnto them, that my coming was to labour for the common good of all Christians, they lent vs Oxen and Men; howbeit wee our felues were faine to trauell on foot. At this time they were reaping their Rye. Wheate prospereth not well in that soile. They haue the feed of Millium in great abundance. The *Russian* women attire their heads like vnto our women. They embroider their Safegards or Gownes on the outside, from their feet vnto their knees with partie-coloured or grey stuffe. The *Russian* men weare Caps like vnto the *Dutch* men. Also they weare vpon their heads certaine sharpe and high-crowned Hats made of Felt, much like vnto a Sugar-loafe. Then trauielled we three daies together, not finding any people. And when our felues and our Oxen were exceeding wearie and faint, not knowing how farre off we should find any *Tartars*, on the sudden there came two Horses running towards vs, which weooke with great ioy, and our Guide and Interpreter mounted vpon their backs, to see how farre off they could descirie any people. At length, vpon the fourth day of our iourney, hauing found some Inhabitants, we reioyced like Sea faring men, which had escaped out of a dangerous Tempest, and had newly recouered the Hauens. Then hauing taken fresh Horses, and Oxen, we passed on from lodging, till at the last, vpon the second of the Kalends of August, we arrived at the habitation of Duke *Sartach* him selfe.

Chap. 16.
Of the Domi-
nion of Sar-
tach, and of his
Subjects. The people of
Mord are Pe-
gans.

The people
called *Mordai*,
being *Saracens*.

The circuit of
the Calfus Sea.

Kergin or Aes.

The *Saracens*
called *Leys*.

He testifieth
by *Dorbent*.

Chap. 17.
Of the Court
of Sartach, and
of the magni-
ficence there-
of. The *Nes-
sarian*, the *Nes-
sarian*.

The Region lying beyond *Tanais*, is a very goodly Countrey, hauing store of Rivers and Woods towards the North part thereof. There are mightie huge Woods which two sorts of people doe inhabit. One of them is called *Moxel*, being metre Pegans, and without Law. They haue neither Townes nor Cities, but only Cottages in the Woods. Their Lord and a great part of themselues were put to the Sword in high *Germanie*. Wherevpon they highly commend the braue courage of the *Almans*, hoping as yet to be deliuered out of the bondage of the *Tartars*, by their means. If any Merchant come vnto them, hee must provide things necessary for him, with whom hee is first of all entertained, all the time of his abode among them. If any lieth with another mans wife, her husband, vntill he be an eye-witnesse thereof, regardeth it not: for they are not iealous ouer their wiues. They haue abundance of Hogs, and great store of Honie and Waxe, and diuers sorts of rich and costly Skins, and plentie of Faulcons. Nest vnto them are other people called *Mordai*, which the *Latines* call *Mordai*, and they are *Saracens*. Beyond them is the River of *Estia*, or *Volga*, which is the mightiest River that euer I saw. And it issueth from the North part of *Bulgaria* the greater, and so tending along Southward, dismembreth into a certaine Lake, containing in circuit the space of foure moneths trauell, whereof I will speake hereafter. The two forelaide Rivers, namely, *Tanais* and *Estia*, otherwise called *Volga*, towards the Northern Regions, through the which we trauielled, are not distant farre from each other, but Southward they are diuided a great space one from another. For *Tanais* descendeth into the Sea of *Pontus*: *Estia* maketh the forelaide Sea or Lake, with the helps of many other Rivers, which fall thereto out of *Persia*. And wee had to the South of vs huge high Mountaines, vpon the sides thereof towards the said Defart, doe the people called *Kergin*, and the *Alani* or *Aes* inhabit, who are as yet Christians, and wage warre against the *Tartars*. Beyond them, next vnto the Sea or Lake of *Estia*, there are certaine *Saracens* called *Leys*, who are in subiection vnto the *Tartars*. Beyond these is *Porta ferrea*, or the Iron gate, now called the *Dorbent*, which *Alexander* build to exclude the barbarous Nations out of *Persia*. Concerning the situation whereof, your Maiestie shall vnderstand more about the end of this Treatise: for I trauielled in my returne by the very same place. Betweene the two forelaide Rivers, in the Regions through the which we pulled, did the *Comantians* of old time inhabit, before they were ouer-
run by the *Tartars*.

And wee found *Sartach* lying within three daies iourney of the River *Estia*: whose Court seemed vnto vs to be very great. For he himselfe had six wiues, and his deere ionne also had three wiues: euerie one of which women hath a great house, and they haue each one of them about two hundred Carts. Our guide went vnto a certaine *Nessarian* named *Coat*, who is a man of great auctoritie in *Sartach* Court. He made vs to goe very farre vnto the Lords gate. For so they call him who hath the O. F. of inter-yeing Ambassadors. In the evening, *Coat* commanded vs to come vnto him. Then our Guide began to enquire what we would present him withall, and was exceedingly offended, when hee saw that wee had nothing ready to present.

We stood before him, and he sate maiestically, hauing mulick and dancing in his presence. Then I spake vnto him in the words before recited, telling him for what purpose I was come vnto his Lord, and requesting to much fauour at his hands, as to bring our Letters vnto the sight of his Lord, I executed my selfe also, that I was a Monke, not hauing nor receiving, nor vying any gold, or siluer, or any other precious thing, save onely our Bookes, and the Vestments wherein wee trusted God: and that this was the cause why I brought no present vnto him, nor vnto his Lord. For I had abandoned mine owne goods, could not be a transporter of things for other men. Then he answered very courteously, that being a Monke, and so doing, I did well: for so I should offend my vow: neither did himselfe stand in need of bughe that we had, but rather was ready to bestow vpon vs such things as we our felues stood in need of: and hee caused vs to sit downe, and to drinke of his Milke. And presently after, hee requested vs to lay our deuotions for him: and wee did so. Hee enquired also who was the greatest Prince among the *Franks*? And I said, the Emperour, if he could enioy his owne Dominions in quiet. No (quoth hee) but the King of *France*. For hee had heard of your Hignesse by Lord *Baldwin* of *Hennault*. I found there also one of the Knights of the Temple who had bene in *Cyprus*, and had made report of all things which hee saw there. Then returned we vnto our Lodging. And on the morrow wee sent him a flaggon of Muscadell Wine (which had lasted verie well in so long a iourney) and a boxe full of Bisket, which was most acceptable vnto him. And hee kept our Seruants with him for that Evening. The next morning hee commanded mee to come vnto the Court, and to bring the Kings Letters and my Vestments, and Bookes with mee: because his Lord was desirous to see them. Which we did accordingly, Iading one Cart with our Bookes and Vestments, and another with Bisket, Wine, and Fruits. Then hee caused all our Bookes and Vestments to be layd forth. And there stood round about vs many *Tartars*, *Christians*, and *Saracens* on Horsebacke. At the sight whereof, hee demanded whether I would bestow all those things vpon his Lord or no? Which saying made mee to tremble, and grieved mee full sore. Howbeit, diffusing our griefe as well as we could, we shewed him this Answer: Sir, our humble request is, that our Lord your Maister would vouchsafe to accept our Bread, Wine, and Fruits, not as a Present; because it is too meane, but as a Benediction, least we should come with an empty hand before him. And hee shall see the Letters of my Soueraine Lord the King, and by them hee shall vnderstand for what cause we are come vnto him, and then both our felues, and all that wee haue, shall stand to his courtiesse: for our Vestments bee holy, and it is vnlawfull for any but Priests to touch them. Then hee commanded vs to inuest our felues in the said Garments, that we might goe before his Lord; and we did so. Then I my selfe putting on our most precious Ornaments, tooke in mine armes a very faire Cushion, and the Bible which your Maistie gaue mee, and a most beautifull Psalter, which the *Queenes Grace* bestowed vpon mee, wherein there were goodly Pictures. Mine Associate tooke a Missall and a Crosse: and the Clerke hauing put on his Surplice, tooke a Censer in his hand. And so we came vnto the presence of his Lord: and they lifted vp the Felt hanging before his doore, that hee might behold vs. Then they caused the Clerke and the Interpreter thrice to bow the knee: but of vs they required no such submision. And they diligently admonished vs to take heed, that in going in, and in continuing out, wee touched not the threshold of the house, and requested vs to sing a Benediction for him. Then we entred in, singing *Salue Regina*. And within the entrance of the doore stood a bench with Cosmos, and drinking cups thereupon. And all his Wiues were there assembled. Also the *Mordai* or rich *Tartars* thrusting in with vs pressed vs fore. Then *Coat* carried vnto his Lord the Censer with Incense, which he beheld very diligently, holding it in his hand. Afterward hee carried the Psalter vnto him, which he looked earnestly vpon, and his Wife also that sate beside him. After that hee carried the Bible: then *Sartach* asked if the Gospell were contayned therein? Yea (said I) and all the holy Scriptures besides. Hee tooke the Crosse also in his hand, and demanded concerning the Image, whether it were the Image of Christ or no? I said it was. The *Nessarian* and the *Armenians* doe neuer make the figure of Christ vpon their Crosses. Wherefore either they seeme not to thinke well of his Passion, or else they are ashamed of it. Then hee caused them that stood about vs, to stand aside, that hee might more fully behold our Ornaments. Afterward I deliuered vnto him your Maisties Letters, with the Translation thereof into the *Arabicke* and *Syracke* Languages. For I caused them to be translated at *Acon*, into the Character and Dialect of both the said Tongues. And there were certaine *Armenian* Priests, which had skill in the *Turkey* and *Arabicke* Languages. The forelaide Knight also of the Order of the Temple had knowledge in the *Syracke*, *Turkey*, and *Arabicke* Tongues. Then wee departed forth, and put off our Vestments, and there came vnto vs certaine Scribes together with the forelaide *Coat*, and caused our Letters to be interpreted. Which Letters being heard, hee caused our Bread, Wine and Fruits to be received. And hee permitted vs also to carrie our Vestments and Bookes vnto our owne Lodging. This was done vpon the Feast of *S. Peter* ad uincula.

No good com-
sequence.

ch OxyBergs

Idoltry.

N. furians.

Sapia a Cille of Calbay.

They are so at this day.

The euil qualities of the Nefarians.

Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.Hence by corruption of manners and ignorance of faith, I esteem the Apostacy of the greatest part of Asia to have happened, first by the Nefarians, who they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.

on the North side of those Mountains to the East Sea, on the South part of *Scythia*, which the Shepherds of *Maad* doe inhabit: All which are tributary vnto them, and all giuen to Idolatry, and report many fables of a multitude of gods, and certaine Deified men, and make a pedigree of the gods as our Poets doe.

The *Nefarians* are mingled among them as Strangers; so are the *Saracens* as farre as *Calbay*. The *Nefarians* inhabit fiftene Cities of *Calbay*, and haue a Bishopricke there, in a Cille called *Hugin*. But further, they are meer Idolaters. The Priests of the Idols of the said Nations, haue all broad yellow hoods. There are also among them (as I vnderstood) certaine Hermits liuing in the Woods and Mountains, of an austere and strange life. The *Nefarians* there know nothing, for they say their Service, and haue holy Bookes in the *Syrian* tongue, which they know not. So that they sing as our Monks doe, who are ignorant of Grammar; and hence it cometh, that they are wholly corrupted. They are great Viuers and Drunkards, and some of them also who liue among the *Tartars*, haue many Wives, as the *Tartars* haue. When they enter into the Church, they wash their lower parts, as the *Saracens* doe. They eat flesh on Friday of the weeke, and hold their Feasts that day, after the manner of the *Saracens*. The Bishop comes feldome into those Countries, perchance, scarce once in fiftie yeares. Then they cause all their little Children (which are Males) to be made Priests, euen in the Cradell; so that all their men almost are Priests: and after this they marrie Wives, which is directly against the decrees of the Fathers: they are also *Bigams*, for the Priests themselves, their first Wife being dead, marrie another. They are all *Simonists*, for they giue no holy thing freely. They are very careful for their Wives and Children, whereby they apply themselves to gain, and not to the spreading of the Faith. Whence it cometh to passe, while some of them bring up some of the Nobilities children of *Maad* (although they teach them the Gospel, and the Articles of the Faith) yet by their euil life and countenance, they drive them further from Christianity: Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them.

Because the life of the *Maadians*, and *Tumians* (who are Idolaters) is more harmful to them, they rather embrace, then (in such passages) his diuinitie. They were later Fathers which made such Decrees, contrary to the Father of truth which ordained marriage in *Leuit*: Priests-hood, and those married men to the Apostleship: and forewarned of another Father, who with Doctrines of Death should prohibite meate and marriage, vnder colour of Priests chastitie, making the Temple fiewes to carnal and pitiful whoredome.

Chap. 26.
Of such things as befall them, departing from *Calbay*, to the Country of the *Naymians*.
Nouemb. 30.

Decemb. 6.

Extreme coll.

Decemb. 7.

A dangerous passage.

WE departed from the foresaid Cille of *Calbay* on Saint *Andrewes* day. And there we found almost within three leagues, a whole Cille or Village of *Nefarians*. Entering into their Church, we sang, *Salme Regine*, &c. with ioy, as loud as we could, because it was long since we had seene a Church. Departing thence, in three daies we came to the entrance of that Prouince, in the head of the foresaid Sea, which seemed to vs as tempestuous as the Ocean, and we saw a great Island therein. My Companions drew neere the shoare, and wet a Linnen cloth therein, to taste the Water, which was somewhat salt, but might bee drunke. There was a certaine Valley ouer against it, from betweene the great Mountains, betweene South and East: and betweene the hills, was another certaine great Sea; and there ranne a Riuer through that Valley, from the other Sea into this. Where came such a continual winde through the Valley, that men puffe with great danger, least the wind carrie them into the Sea. Therefore we left the Valley and went towards the North, to the great hilly Countries, covered with deepe Snow, which then lay vpon the Earth: so that vpon Saint *Nicholas* day we beganne now to haften our iourney much, and (because we found no people, but the *Iani* themselves (to wit) men appointed from daies iourney to daies iourney together, the Mellengers together. Because in many places in the hilly Countries) the way is narrow, and there are but few fields, for that betwene day and night we met with two *Iani*, whereupon of two daies iourneys we made one, and trauelled more by night then by day. It was extreme cold there, for that they lent vs their Goats skins, turning the haire outward.

The second Sunday of *Aduent* in the evening, we passed by a certaine place betweene very terrible Rockes: and our Guide went into me, entreating me to speake some good words, where-with the Devils might be driuen away; because in that passage, the Devils themselves were wont suddenly to carrie men away, so that it was not knowne what became of them. Sometimes they violently snatched a Horse and left the man: sometimes they drew out many bowels, and left the empty carcase vpon the Horse. And many such things did often fall out there. Then we sang with a loud voice, *Credo in Deum*, &c. And by the Grace of God, we passed through (with all our company) vnhurt. After that, they beganne to intreat me, that I would write them Papers to carrie on their heads: and I told them, I would teach them a word which they should carrie in their hearts, whereby their soules and bodies should bee saved eternally. But alwaies when I would teach them, I wanted an Interpreter: Yet I wrote them the Greeke and the Lords Prayer; saying, Heere it is written whatsoeuer a man ought to beleeue concerning God. Heere also is that prayer, wherein we begge of God whatsoeuer is needfull for a man. Whereupon beleeue firmly that which is written here, although you cannot

vnder-

vnderstand it, and aske of God that he do that for you which is contained in this written Prayer: because with his owne mouth he taught it his friends, and I hope he will faue you. I could not doe any thing else, because it was very dangerous to speake the words of doctrine by such an Interpreter, nay almost impossible, because he was ignorant.

AFTER this, wee entred into that plaine where the Court of *Ken-Cham* was, which was wont to be the Countrey of the *Naymians*, who were the peculiar Subiects of *Prophet* *Iohn*: but at that time I saw not that Court, but in my returne. Yet heere I declare vnto you what befall his Ancestry, his Sonne and Wives. *Ken-Cham* being dead, *Baun* desired that *Man* should be *Chen*. But I could vnderstand in certaintie of the death of *Ken*. *Frier Andrew* said, that he dyed by a certaine medicine giuen him: and it was suspected that *Baun* caused it to be made. Yet I heard otherwise, for he humoured *Baun*, to come and doe him homage. And *Baun* took his iourney speedily with great preparation; but he and his Seruants were much afraid, and sent one of his Brothers before, called *Stichin*: who when he came to *Ken*, and should waite vpon his Cup, contention arising betweene them, they lue one another. The Widow of *Stichin* kept vs a while day, to goe into her house and bleffe her, that is, pray for her. Therefore *Ken* being dead, *Mangu* was chosen by the consent of *Baun*, and was then chosen when *Frier Andrew* was there. *Ken* had a certaine Brother, called *Siremon*, who by the counsell of *Ken* Wife and her Vallay, went with great preparation towards *Mangu*, as if he meant to doe him homage, and yet in truth he purposed to kill him, and destroy his whole Court. And when he was neere *Mangu*, within one or two daies iourney, one of his Wagons remained broken in the way. While the Wagoner laboured to mend it, in the meane space came one of the Seruants of *Mangu*, who helped him: he was so inquisitive of their iourney, that the Wagoner reuealed vnto him what *Siremon* purposed to doe. Then turning out of the way, as if hee little regarding it, went vnto the herd of Horses, and tooke the best Horse hee could choofe, and posting night and day, came speedily to the Court of *Mangu*, reporting vnto him what he had heard. Then *Mangu* quickly assembling all his subiects, caused foure rings of Armed men to compasse his Court, that none might goe in or out: the rest he sent against *Siremon*, who tooke him, (not suspecting his purpose had beene discouered) and brought him to the Court with all his followers. When *Mangu* lay the matter to his charge, straightway confessed it. Then he and his eldest Sonne *Ken Cham* were slaine, and three hundred of the Nobility of the *Tartars* with them. The Noble Women also were sent for, who were all beateen with burning fire-brands to make them confesse: and hauing confessed, were put to death. His yongest sonne *Ken*, who could not be capable or guiltie of the conspiracy, was left aloue: and his Fathers Palace was left vnto him, with all belonging vnto it, as well Men as Chettels: and we passed by it in our returne. Nor durst my Guides tunc in vnto it, neither going nor coming: For the Lady of the Nations fate there in heauinelle, and there was none to comfort her.

THEN went we vp againe into the high Countries, going alwaies towards the North. At length on Saint *Stephens* day we entred into a great Plaine like the Sea, where there was not so much as a Mole-hill. And the next day, on the feast of *S. Iohn* the Euangelist, we came vnto the Palace of that great Lord. But when we were neere it, within fise daies iourney, our Host where we lay, would haue directed vs a way farre about, so that wee should yet trauiell more then fiftene daies. And this was the reason (as I vnderstood) that wee might goe by *Onam Kende* their proper Countrey, where the Court of *Chingis-Chan* is. Others said, that hee did it for this purpose, that he might make the way longer, and might shew his power the more. For so they are wont to deale with men coming from Countries not subiect to them. And our Guide obtained with great difficultie, that we might goe the right way. For they held vs vpon this from the morning till three of the clocke. In that way also, the Secretarie (whom we expected at *Calbay*) told me, that it was contained in the Letters which *Baun* sent to *Mangu-Chan*, that we required an Army and ayde of *Sartach* against the *Saracens*. Then I began to wonder much, and to be greatly troubled: for I knew the Tenor of the Letters; and that no mention thereof was made therein: saue that yee aduised him to be a friend to all Christians, and should exalt the Croffe, and be an enemy to all the enemies of the Croffe: and because also the Interpreters were *Armenians*, of the greater *Armenia*, who greatly hated the *Saracens*; left perhaps they had interpreted any thing in euill part to make the *Saracens* more odious and hateful at their pleasures. I therefore held my peace, not speaking a word with them, or against them; for I feared to gainly the words of *Baun*, least I should incurre some false accusation without reasonable cause. We came therefore the foresaid day vnto the said Court. Our Guide had a great horse appointed him, and we three a little Cottage, wherein we could (scarcely) lay our stuffe, make our beds, and haue a little fire. Many came to visit our Guide, and brought him drinke made of Rice, in long straight mouthed bottles, in the which I could discern no difference from the best *Antifiodorens* Wine, faue that it had not the sent of Wine. We were called, and straightly examined vpon what buisnes we came. I answered, that we heard of *Sartach* that he was a Christian: we came

Chap. 27.
Of the Countrey of the *Naymians*, and what befall the flock of *Ken-Cham* his sonne & wives.
8. du.

Stichin and Ken kill one another.

Chap. 28.
Of the coming into the Countrey of *Man*.
8. du.

Chap. 29.
Of the Countrey of the *Tartars*.
Chap. 15.

Baatu hath sent vs hither vnto you. You are they to whom. God hath giuen great Dominion vpon earth; We therefore intreat your Highnesse, to giue vs leave to continue in your Countrey to doe the service of God for you, your Wives and Children. Wee haue neither Gold nor Silver, nor precious stones to present vnto you, but our felues, whom we present to serue, and pray vnto God for you. At the least, giue vs leave to continue while the cold be past. My Companion is so weak, that he cannot by any means traualle on Horse-backe without hazard of his life. For my Companion will me, and desired me, to craue leave to stay. For we supposed we must returne to Baatu, vntill of his speciall Grace he gave vs leave to stay. Then he began to answer: Even as the Sonne spreads his beames euery where, so our power and Baatuers spreads it selfe euery where: so that we haue no neede of your Silver and Gold. Hitherto I understood my Interpreter: but further, I could not interperce any perfect sentence. Whereby I easily found hee was drunke, and Mangu Chan himselte was drunke also, as I thought. Yet with this, (as it seemed to mee, hee ended his speech) that he was displeased that we came first to Sartach, before we came to him. Then seeing the defect of my Interpreter, I held my peace, this onely excepted, that I intreated his Highnesse hee would not be displeased, for that which I spoke of Gold and Silver; because I spoke it not that he had need of such things, or desired them, but because we would willingly honour him with temporall and spiritual things.

Then he made vs rise, and sit downe againe; and after some few words, doing our dutie to him, we went out, and his Secretaries, and that Interpreter of his (who had the bringing vp of one of his Daughters) went together with vs. And they began to bee very inquisitive of the Kingdom of France, whether there were many Rams, Oxen and Horses there, as if presently they should enter and take all. And oftentimes I was faine to bridle my selfe much, in displasing anger and indignation. And answered, There are many good things there which yee shall see, if yee happen to come thither. Then they appointed vs one, who should haue care of vs. And we went vnto the Monke: and when we came out againe, ready to goe to our lodging, the foresaid Interpreter came vnto vs; saying, Mangu Chan hath compassion on you, and giues you two moneths time to stay. Then the extreme cold will be past, and he sendeth to you: Here within ten daies iourney there is a good Citie, called Caracorum, if yee will goe thither, he will cause necessarie things to be giuen you: but if yee will abide here, yee may, and yee shall haue necessaries: yet it will be a troublesome thing for you to follow the Court. And I answered: The Lord prelerue Mangu Chan, and grant him a good and long life. We haue found this Monke here, whom we thinke to be an holy man, and that by the good pleasure of God he came into these parts, wherefore we would willingly stay with him, because wee are Monkes, and wee would pray together for the life of Chan. Then he held his peace and departed. And we went vnto our house, which we found very cold, and without any fuel, as yet fasting, and it was night. Then he, to whom we were recommended, prouided vs fuel, and a little meate. Our Guide was now to returne to Baatu, who desired a Carpet of vs, which (by his Commandement) we left in the Court of Baatu: which we gave him, and he peaceably departed fo, kissing our right hand, and confiding his fault, if he suffered vs to endure hunger and thirst vpon the way. We pardoned him, craving pardon of him and his whole Family, if we had giuen them any euill example.

Chap. 31.
Of Pafcha, of
Mong in La-
tharigat, and
William Bon-
chier the Gold-
smith, a Paris-
Building in
request.

A Certaine Woman of *Mongis* in *Lebarigat*, called *Pafcha*, found vs, who made vs great chere, according to her power, who belong to the Court of that Lady, which was a Christian, of whom I spoke before; who told vs of her strange pueritie which she endured before she came to the Court; but now she was well to lue, for the had a young Husband, a *Resturion* (by whom she had three very faire Children) who was skilfull in building, which amongst them is an excellent Art. Moreover, she told vs, that at *Caracorum*, there was a certaine Goldsmith, called *William*, borne at *Paris*; whose surname was *Boucher*, and his Fathers name *Lawrence Boucher*, and the thinketh he hath a Brother yet vpon the *Great Bridge*, called *Roger Boucher*. And the told me, that he had a certaine young man which he brought vp, whom hee accounted as his Son, who was an excellent Interpreter. But *Mangu Chan* deliuered to the foresaid Goldsmith, three hundred Iacots, that is, three thousand Markes, and fiftie Worke-men to make a piece of worke, fo that the feared he could not fend his Sonne vnto me. For the heard some lay vnto her in the Court. The men which came from your Countrey are good men, and *Mangu Chan* would willingly speake vnto them, but their Interpreter is nothing worth: therefore he was careful for an Interpreter. Then I writ vnto the foresaid Goldsmith, certifying him of my coming hither, and requesting him, that if he could, he would fend me his sonne. And he wrote me answere, that he could not that Moone, but the next, his worke should be perfected, and then he would fend him vnto me. We stayed therefore with other Messengers. And it is otherwise with Messengers in *Baatu's* Court, then in the Court of *Mangu Chan*. For in the Court of *Baatu*, there is one *Jani* on the East side, who receiue all such as come from the West, and fo of other Countries of the world: But in the Court of *Mangu*, they are all together vnder one *Jani*, and they may see and visit one another. In *Baatu's* Court they know not

They also rec-
tion by Moone
in East India.

one another, and know not one of another, whether hee be a Messenger or no; because they know not one another lodging, nor see one another but in the Court: and when one is called, perchance another is not called. For they goe not to die Court, vntill they bee sent for. Wee found there a certaine Christian of *Damasco*, who said he came in behalfe of the *Soldan of Momy Regius*, and of *Cro*; who desired to become friend and tributary to the *Tartars*.

Cro is a strong
torelle of the
Empire in
the Holy Land.

THE yere all before I came thither, there was a certaine Clerke of *Acon*, who called him- selfe *Ramand*, but in truth his name was *Theodolus*; and he tooke his iourney from *Cyprus* with *Eriat Andrew*, and went with him into *Persia*, and got him certaine Infirmities of *Ama- rous* there in *Persia*, who abode there after *Eriat Andrew*. *Eriat Andrew* returning, hee went forward with his Instruments, and came to *Mangu Chan*: who being demanded wherefore he came, said, that he was with a certaine holy Bishop, to whom the Lord sent Letters from hea- ven, written in golden Characters, and commanded him to fend them to the Emperour of the *Tartars*, because he should bee Lord of the whole Earth, and that he should periuade men to make peace with him. Then *Mangu* said vnto him: It is thou hadst brought those Letters which came from heauen, and the Letters of thy Lord, then hadst beene welcome. Then he answered, That he brought: Letters, but they were with other things of his, vpon a certaine wilde and pampred Gelding, which elapied fled from him through the Woods and Mountaines, so that he had lost all. And it is very true, that many such chances often happen: wherefore a man must very warily hold his Horse when he alighteth for necessity. Then *Mangu* demanded the name of the Bishop. He said, he was called *Odus*. Whereupon hee told him of *Damasco*, and *Maister William*, who was Clerke of the Lord Legat. Then *Chan* demanded in what Kingdom it was: To whom he made answer, That it was vnder a certaine King of the *Franks*, called *Moles*: (for he had heard of that which happened at *Maloria*; and he would haue said, that they were of your Seruants) moreover, hee told *Chan* that the *Saracens* were betwene the *Franks* and him, who hindred his way. But if the way had beene open, he would haue sent Messengers, and willingly haue made peace with him. Then *Mangu Chan* asked him, If hee would bring his Messengers to that King, and that Bishop? He told him he would, and allee to the Pope. Then *Mangu* caused an exceeding strong Bow to be made, which two men could scarce bend, and two Arrows, whose heads were of Silver, full of holes, which when they are shot like a whistle. And hee mynored *Moal* whom hee should fend with the said *Theodolus*; Thou shalt goe to that King of the *Franks*, to whom this man shall bring thee, and thou shalt present him with these in my behalfe. And if he will haue peace with vs, we will win it: the Countrey vpon the *Saracens*, even home to him; and will grant him the rest of the Countrey vnto the West: If otherwile, bring backe the Bow and Arrows vnto vs, and tell him we shoot faire, and smite strongly with such Bowes. Then hee caused *Theodolus* to goe forth, wrote Interpreter *Maister William* Sonne was, and in his hearing, hee said vnto *Moal*. Thou shalt go with this man, make well the Waies, the Countreies, and their Castles, Men and Monition. Then the young man blamed *Theodolus*, saying, Hee had done ill, in conducting the Messengers of the *Tartars* with him, for they went for no other cause, but to flye. Then hee answered, That hee would let them on the Sea, that they should not know whence they came, or which way to re- turne. *Mangu* vnto *Moal* his golden Bull, or Tablet, to wit, a plate of Gold of an hand- breadth, and sixe cubit long, wherein his commandement is ingrauen: Who so carieth that, may command what he will, and it is done without delay. So then *Theodolus* came to *Pascha*, determining to passe over to the Pope, that he might deceiue the Pope as hee had deceiued *Mangu Chan*. Then *Pascha* demanded of him, whether hee had Letters to the Pope, because he was a Messenger, and should conduct the Messengers of the *Tartars*? But, not being able to shew the Letters, hee tooke him and spoiled him of all that hee had gotten, and caft him in prison. And *Moal* fell sicke and dyed there. But *Daitsac* sent backe the golden Tablet to *Mangu Chan*, by the seruants of *Moal*: whom I met at *Astora* in the entrance into *Turkie*, who told mee what happened to *Theodolus*. Such Coines runne through the world, whom the *Moallians* kill when they can take them. Now the *Epiphany* was at hand, and that *Armenian* Monke, *Sergius*, by name, told me, That hee should baptize *Mangu Chan* vpon the Holy-day. I intreated him to labour by all means that I might be present; that I might beare witnesse that I saw it: and hee promised he would.

Chap. 32.
Of the daies
the Clerke of
acon, how hee
deceiued Man-
gus Chan, and
was imprison-
ed of Pascha
us.
Eriat Andrew
went from Cy-
prus by Persia.
Blaphemous
flattery.

The Golden
Tablet of the
Emperour of
the Tartars.
Pascha King
of Persia.

Or, Esferam.

Chap. 33.
Of Mangu
Chan Holy-day;
and how his
principall wife
and his child-
ren came to
the Drane ce-
remonies of
the Holyday;
and other things
they would see.

THE feastiual day came, and the Monke called me not, but at fixe of the clocke I was sent for to the Court, and I saw the Monke with the Priests returning from the Court with his Croffe, and the Priests with the Conter and the Gospell. For that day *Mangu Chan* made a feast. And his custom is, that vpon such daies as his South-Ioyers doe appoint write him fea- stiual, or with the *Nestorian* Priests sometimes make Holy-daies, that then he holds his Court: And vpon such daies the Christians come forth in furre, and pray for him and deliue his Cup. They then departing, the *Saracens* Priests come and doe the like. Next after them come the Idolatrous Priests and doe the same. And the Monke told me, that hee onely believed

the Christians, yet will haue all to pray for him; but he lyed, for he beleueth none, as you shall hereafter heare, yett all follow his Court, as flies doe Honey. And he giueth vnto all, and all men thinke they are his Familiars; and all prophesie prosperie vnto him. Then wee late before the Court a long space, and they brought vs by meate, they should prouide vs for at our house. Then they said, gett ye home to your house; because you were invited for no other cause but to eate. Therefore we returned by the Monke, who blushed at the Lye he told me, wherfore I would not speake a word of that matter. Yet some of the *Nestorians* would affirme vnto mee, that he was beprized: to whom I said, that I would neuer beleue it, nor report it to others, seeing I saw it not.

The cold much
preuayleth.

Ther13 of Ian.

Catota Caten
the principall
Wife of *Mangu*
Chen.
Belle the Son
of *Mangu* Chen.

We came to our cold and empty house, they prouided vs bedding and Couerlets, they brought vs also fuel, and gaue vs three the carcase of one little leane Ramme, meate for fixe dayes; and every day a little Platter full of Miller, and lent vs a Caldron and a Triuett to boyle our flesh: which being foddren, we fod our Miller in the broth of the flesh. This was our meate, and it had well sufficed vs, if they had suffered vs to eate in peace. But there are so many hunger-flarred, who are not prouided of meate: that as, soe as they saw vs dreffe meate, they thrust in vpon vs, and mult eate with vs. There I found by experience, how great a Martyrdome liberalitie is in poueritie. Then the cold began much to preuaile: and *Mangu Chen* lent vs three Pelc-coates of the Skinkes of Papions (*Papionum*): whole haire they turne outward, which we thankfully received. They demanded also, how we were prouided of necessary food? To whom I answered, that little meate sufficed vs, but we haue not an house wherein to pray for *Mangu Chen*. For our Cottage was so little, that we could scarce fland vpright in it, nor open our Bookes, as soe as we made fire. Then they brought him word; and hee sent vnto the Monke to know, if hee would haue our company: who gladly answered, that hee would. From that time we were prouided of a better house: and we went downe with the Monke before the Palace of the greatest Lady; and wee in the furieth end towards the East, before the Palace of the last Lady. And that was done the day before *Olden Epiphania*. On the morrow (to wit) in *Olden Epiphania*, all the *Nestorian* Priests came together before day at the Chappell, and smote vpon a board, and sang Matines solemnely, and put on their Ornaments; preparing the Censer and the Incense.

And while they stayed waiting thus, behold, in the morning, the principall Wife *Catota Caten* by name, (*Catota* as much as *Ladie*, and *Catota* her proper name) came into the Chappell with many other Ladies, and with her eldest Sonne, called *Baltu*, and other little ones of hers: And they call themselves *Downe* vpon the Earth, ducking after the manner of the *Nestorians*, and after this, they touched all the Images with their right hands, alwayes kissing their hands after they had touched, and after that, they gaue their right hands to all that stood about them in the Church. For this is the custome of the *Nestorians* when they come into the Church. Then the Priests sang many things, giuing the Lady Incense in her hand, and the put it vpon the fire: then they performed her. After this, when the day was cleere, shee began to put off the Ornament of her head, which is called *Baccha*: and I saw her bare heull, then shee commanded vs to goe forth, and as I went out, I saw a liue Balon brought: whether they baptized her or no, I know not: but I know, they celebrate our Maile in a Tent, but in a standing Church. And in the Easter I saw them baptize, and hollow fount with great Solemnitie, which now they did not.

And while we went into our house, *Mangu Chen* himselfe came, and went into the Church; or Oratory, and a Golden Bed was brought, on which hee laye by his Queene, ouer against the Altar. Then were we sent for, not knowing that *Mangu* was come. And the Doore-keepers searched vs, lest we should haue Knives about vs. But comming into the Oratory, hauing a Bible, and a Breuiary in my boosome, I first bowed downe vnto the Altar, and after to *Mangu Chen*: and so passing by, we stood before the Monke and the Altar. Then they made vs sing a Psalm after our manner, and chaunt it. But we sang of that psalm, *Yeni Sancti Spiritus, &c.* And *Chen* caused our Bookes to be brought before him, the Bible, and the Breuiary: and diligently inquired concerning the Images, what they signified. The *Nestorians* answered him at their pleasure, because our Interpreter came not in with vs. And when I was first before him, I had the Bible in my boosome, which hee commanded to be brought vnto him, who looked earnestly vpon it. Then he departed, and his Ladie remayned there, and distributed gifts to all the Christians there, shee gaue the Monke a *Isaie*, and to the Archdeacon of the Priests another: shee caused a *Nesfite* to be spread before vs (to wit) a piece of Cloth, as broad as a Couerlet of a Bed, very large, and a *Buckram*, which when I would not receive, they sent them to my Interpreter, who had them to himselfe. He brought the *Nesfite* to *Cyprus*, which he sold for eightie Sultaines of *Cyprus*: but it was much the worie for the carriage. Then drinke was brought (to wit) drinke made of Rice and red Wine, like Wine of *Rachell*, and Colmos. * Then the Ladie holding the cup full in her hand, desired blessing vpon her knees, and all the Priests sing with a loud voyce, and shee drunke it

* Vitum buccinum.

* Colmos of
Mares Melkes
Vid. sup.

it vp: and I and my companion must sing. Another time, when all of them were almost drunke, then meate was brought (to wit) the carcase of one Ramme, which was presently deuoured: and after that, great fishes, which are called Carpes, without Salt, or Bread: wherof I eate a little, lo they passed the day, vntill the Eueneng. And when the Lady her selfe was drunke, shee tooke her Chariot (the Priests singing) and went her way. The next Sunday, when (*There* was a *Marriage* in Cana of Galily) is read for the Gospel; *Chen* Some came (whole Mother was a Christian) and did like, but not with so great Solemnitie. For he gaue no gifts, but made the Priests drinke, till they were drunke, and gaue them parched Miller to eate.

Before the first Sunday in Lent, the *Nestorians* fast three dayes, which they call the *Fast* of Io-
10 nan, which is preached to the Ninuites. And the *Armenians* fast five dayes, which they call the *Fast* of *Saint Sarkis*, which is the greatest Saint amongst them.

The *Nestorians* beginne their Fast vpon Tuesday, and end it vpon Thursday: so that vpon Friday they eate flesh. And all that time I saw the Chancellor (to wit, the great Secretarie of State called *Solenmit*) make them a pittance of flesh vpon the Friday; and they blessed the flesh with great Solemnitie, as the Patriall Lamb is blessed: but hee eate none with them, and this I learned of *Williamus Parisiensis*, who was his very familiar friend. The Monke lent to *Mangu* to fast that weeke, which (as I heard) hee did: so that on the Sabbath of *Sepuagefima* (at which time it is as it were Easter to the *Armenians*) we went on Procession to the house of *Mangu*: and the Monke, and we two (being first searched whether wee had Knives) went in with the Priests, before him. And while we went in, one of the Seruants went forth, carrying out the shoulder bones of Rammes, burnt to the blacknesse of Coales. Whereupon I marvelled greatly, what it should meane, wherof after I had inquired, I vnderstood, that hee neuer doth enter the house, before hee haue consulted with those bones. Whereupon hee doth not for soe as suffer a man to enter his house, but first consulteth with that bone, which kind of Diuination, is thus done.

When he purporeth to doe any thing, hee causeth three of those bones to be brought vnto him; and holding them hee thinketh of the thing, wherof hee will consult, whether hee may vnturne; and then deliuereth the bones to bee burnt, and there are alwayes two little doe it or not: and then deliuereth the bones to bee burnt, which are diligently
30 Roomes, hard by the house where hee lyes, where the bones are burnt, which are diligently brought for every day thorow all the Leskar or Tem: dwelling. When they are burnt blacke, they bring them vnto him, then hee looke vpon them, whether the bones (by the heate of the fire) be clef right length-way: as the way is open, that hee may do it. But if the bones be cracked arthwart, or round pices: then out of them, then hee doth it not: for the bone is alwayes clef in the fire, or the thinnest skin which ouer-spreadeth it. And if one of the three be clef forth right, yet hee doth it. When therefore we went in before him (aduised before, that wee should not touch the threshold) the *Nestorian* Priests brought him Incense, and hee put it vpon the Censer, and they censured him. Then they sung, bliding his cup, and after them the Monke pronounced his blessing, and we mult blese last. And when hee saw vs holding the Bible before our breff, hee caused it to be brought vnto him, that hee might fee it, which hee diligently looked vpon. Then
40 after hee had drunke, and the chiefe Priest had wayted on his Cup, they gaue the Priest drinke: After that, we went forth, and my companion stayed last. And when wee were without, my companion (when hee should haue gone out after vs) turned his face to *Chen*, bowing himselfe vnto him: and then, hastily following vs, hee stumbled at the threshold of the house.

And when we went in haste toward the house of *Baltu* his eldest Sonne, they that observed the threshold, layd hands on my companion, and made him flay, that hee should not follow vs, the calling one, and commanding him to carrie him to *Bulgari*, who is the great Secretary of the Court, and iudgeth those that are arraigned of life and death. But I knew it not, yet when I looked backe, and saw him not comming, I thought they detayned him, to giue him some lighter garments: For he was weake, and so laden with Pelc-garments that hee could scarce goe. Then
50 they called our Interpreter, and made him sit with him: but wee went to *Chen* his eldest Sonnes house, who had two Wiues, and was lodged at the right side of his Fathers Court: who as soe as hee saw vs comming, leaping from his bed wherupon hee late, call himselfe vpon the earth, smiting his forehead against the ground, worshipping the Crosse, and aining, caused it to be set vpon a new cloth, in an high place by him, very honourably. Hee hath a Schoolemaster, a *Nestorian* Priest called *Daniel*, a very Drunkard, who teacheth him. Then hee made vs sit, and gaue the Priests drinke, and hee also dranke, receiving the blessing from them. Then we went vnto the Court of the second Lady, which was called *Catota*, who followed Idolaters: whom we found lying sicke a bed. Then the Monke made her rise out of her bed, and worshipping the Crosse, bowing her knees thrice, and ducking toward the ground: hee standing with the Crosse at the West-side of the house, and she on the East: this being done, they changed places, and the Monke went with the Crosse vnto the East, and shee vnto the West. And hee boldly commanded her (although hee were so weake, that hee could scarce stand vpon her feet) that shee should call her selfe downe thrice againe, and worshipping the Crosse, toward the East after the manner of the Christians: which shee did, and hee taught her to make the signe of the Crosse vpon her forehead.

At

January 30

Of the Fast of
the *Nestorian*,
and *Armenians*,
and of their
Processions
vnto the Court
of *Mangu* Chen
his eldest Son,
and Wiues,
Saint Sarkis,
Lent.
Mangu Chen
Conuicted with Processions.

How they di-
uine by the
shoulder blades
of Rammes
burnt blacke.
In *M. Impen-*
sions Voyage a-
mong the *Tar-*
tars, ye may
reade of such
a Diuination.

Threshold-Su-
perstition.
They doe the
like in *Florida*.

Baltus Court
who was eldest
Son of *Mangu*
Chen.

After the lay downe vpon her bed, and praying for her, we went vnto the third house, where a Christian Lady vied to be: who being dead, a young woman succeeded her, who together with the Daughter of her Lord, ioyfully receiued vs: and all that whole house reuerently worshipped the Crosse. And the let it vpon a Velvet cloth in an high place, and they cauted meate to bee brought (to wit) the carcase of one Ramme, which being set before the Ladie, they cauld it to be distributed to the Priests. But I said the Monke were very wane of the meate and drinke, for the meate being eaten, and much drinke drunke, we were to goe to the Damocell *Cerna*, who lodged behind that great house, which was her Mothers: who at the coming in of the Crosse, cast her selfe vpon the Earth, and worshipped it very deuocely, because shee had bene well taught so to doe, and shee let it in a high place, vpon a piece of silke. And all those clothes 10 whereon the Crosse was let, were the Monkes.

A certaine *Armenian* brought this Crosse who came with the Monke (as he said) from *Hierusalem*; and it was of siluer, weighing about some foure markes; and it had foure Precious Stones in the corners, and one in the middle. It had not the Image of our Saviour (because the *Armenians* and the *Nestorians* are alhamas, that Christ should appeare nayled to the Crosse) and hee had presented it (oy the Monke) to *Mangu Chan*. And *Mangu* demanded of him what hee desired; to whom he answered, That he was the Sonne of an *Armenian* Priest, whose Church the *Saracens* had destroyed, and craued his helpe for the building againe of that Church. Then hee asked him, for how much it might be built againe; he answered, for two hundred saliors (that is) for two thousand markes: and he commanded Letters to be given him, to him who he requested the 20 Tribute in *Persia*, and *Armenia* the greater, that they should pay him the said summe of siluer. This Crosse the Monke carried with him euery where. And the Priests feeing the game thereof, began to enuie him. We were therefore in the house of the said Damocell, and shee gaue the Priests much drinke. From hence we went vnto the fourth house, which was the last in number and honour. For hee vied not to come often to that Ladie, and her house was very old, and her selfe notwithstanding gracious. But after *Easter Chan* made her anew house, and new Chariots. Shee likewise as the second knew little or nothing of Christianitie, but followed Soothsayers, and Idolaters. Yet at our coming in, they worshipped the Crosse, as the Monke and the Priests taught her. There also the Priests drunke againe. And from that place we returned to our Oratorie, which was nere therabouts: the Priests accompanying vs with great howling and out-cryes in their drunkennesse, which there is reprehensible neither in man nor woman. Then my fellow was brought home, and the Monke sharply rebuked him because hee touched the threshold. On the morrow *Bulgai* came (who was a Iullice) and diligently inquired, whether any had warned vs to take heed of touching the threshold. And I answered, Sir, wee had not our Interpreter with vs: how could we vnderstand? Then hee pardoned him. But would neuer after suffer him to come into any of the houses of *Mangu Chan*.

The Court of the third Lady. The *Armenians* and *Nestorians* are affirmed to shew Christ fasted to the Crosse. *Mangu* built a Church. The Court of the fourth Lady.

Drunkennesse not reprovable among the *Tartars*.

Chap. 35. How Lady Ceta was cured of Strigus the counterfeit Monke. Li cence is granted him to enter in the Crosse aloft.

Rubarie and the Crosse Miraculous with credulous Superstitious Holy water: not knowne in the East.

Serjus the Armenians Ly.

It happened afterwards, that the same Ladie *Ceta*, which was sicke about *Septuagesima*, was sicke almost vnto death: and humation by Lots of the Idolaters could profit her nothing. *Mangu* sent vnto the Monke, demanding of him, what might be done for her. And the Monke indifferently answered, that if shee were not cured, hee should cut off his head, hauing made that answer, the Monke called vs, declaring the matter vnto vs with teares, intreating to watch with him that night in Prayer: which we did. And hee had a certayne Roote which is called *Rubarie*; and hee cut it almost to powder, and put it in water, with a little Crucifix which hee had, wherein the Image of our Saviour was aduanced: whereof hee reported, that by it he knew, when the sicke should recover or dye. For if they should escape, it flake to the breist of the sicke, as if it were glee, it otherwise it flake not at all. And I still thought that *Rubarie* had bene some holy Relike, which hee had brought from the Holy Land of *Hierusalem*. And he gaue all sicke persons of that water: o drinke: so that it could not bee, but their bowels should be griued with sobbiter a Potion: which alteration in their bodies they accounted a Miracle. Then I told him (when he was about to make such a water) that hee should prepare some of that Holy water, which is made in the Church of *Rome*, which hath great vertue to expell Deuils: because I vnderstood thee was vexed of a Deuill. And at his intreatie, we made him some Holy water, and he mingled *Rubarie* and put his Crucifix all the whole night in the water to temper it. I said moreover, that if hee were a Priest, that the Order of Priest-hood hath great power to expell Deuils. And he said it was very true, and yet hee lyed, because hee had not, nor knew any one Letter: but was a Weauer, as I vnderstood after his Country, when I returned. On the morrow therefore I, and the Monke, and two *Nestorian* Priests went vnto the forefaid Ladie. And there was in a little house, behind her greater house. When we came in, shee fate in her bed, and worshipped the Crosse, and let it honourably by her vpon a cloth of Silke, and drunke of the blessed water with *Rubarie*, and washed her selfe. And the Monke requested me to reade a Gospell ouer her, so I read the P. sion of our Lord according vnto *Iohn*. At length shee was cheered, and felt her selfe better: and shee cauled foure Ialors to bee brought, which the hiy laid at the feet of the Crosse, and after gaue me to the Monke, and reared

40

50

60

ched me one, which I would not receiue. Then the Monke stretching forth his hand, tooke it, and gaue either of the Priests one: so that, at that time shee gaue foure Markes. Then shee cauld Wine to be brought, and gaue it the Priests to drinke; and I must drinke thrice from her hand, in honour of the Trinitie. Shee began also to reach mee the Language, jelling with mee, because I was dumbe, not hauing any Interpreter.

On the morrow we returned to her againe. And *Mangu Chan* hearing that we came that way, made vs come in vnto him, because hee vnderstood that the Ladie was somewhat better, and we found him with a few seruants, supping liquid Tam, to wit, meate made of paste, for comforting the head: and the burnt shoulder-blades of a Ram lay before him: and hee tooke the Crosse in his hand, but that hee kissed or worshipped it, I saw not: but looked vpon it, and asked some questions, I know not what. Then the Monke craued leave to carry the Crosse aloft vpon a Lance; because I had spoken to the Monke before concerning this. And *Mangu* answered, Carry it as you thinke best to doe it. Then doing our duty to him, we went to the forefaid Ladie, and we found her lustie and cheerful; and the still drunke of the blessed Water, and wee read the Passion ouer her. And those miserable Priests neuer taught her the Faith, nor aduised her to bee baptised. But I fate there mute, not able to speake any thing, but shee still taught me the Language: and the Priests neuer find fault with any kind of Sorcerie. For there I saw foure swordes halfe drawne out of the sheath, one at the head of the Ladies bed, another at the feet, and two other, on either side of the doore one. I saw also there one siluer Chalice, of our Chalices, which peraduenture was taken or stolne out of some Church of *Hungary*; and it hung against the walls full of alhes, and vpon those alhes there was a blacke stone. And concerning such things, the Priests neuer teach them that they are euill: Nay, they themselves doe, and teach such things. We visited her three daies, so that shee was restored to perfect health. After that, the Monke made a Banner full of Crosse, and got a Cane as large as a Lance, and we carried the Crosse aloft. I honored him as my Bishop, because hee could speake the Language: yet hee did many things, which pleased me not: for hee cauled a Chaire which may be folded to bee made for him, such as Bishops vse to haue, and Gloues, and a Cap of Peacocks feathers, and vpon it a little Crosse of gold: I was well pleased with the Crosse. Hee had fabled feete, which hee laboured to grace with ointments, and was very presumptuous in speech. The *Nestorians* also repeated certaine verses of the Psalter (as they said) vpon two rods, which were ioyned together, being held of two men. The Monke was present at such things. And many other vanities appeared in him, which displeased me. Yet wee ioyned our felices to his societie for the honor of the Crosse. For we carried the Crosse aduanced through all the Tents singing: *Vexilla Regis prouident*, &c. Wherevpon the *Saracens* were much dismayed.

Sorcerie of foure swordes.

The Crosse carried aloft.

Since we came to the Court of *Mangu Chan*, hee rode but twice towards the South: and from that time hee beganne to returne towards the North, which was toward *Caracorum*. Wherevpon I noted all the way, a thing of which *Malter Baldwinus* of *Hannowa* had spoken to mee at *Constantinople* (who was there) that hee had seene this onely wonderfull, that hee alwaies ascended in going, and neuer descended. For all Riuer came from the East into the West, either directly or indirectly (that is to say) bending towards the South or North. And I enquired of the Priests which came from *Cataya*, who testified this fame. From that place where I found *Mangu Chan*, vnto *Cataya*, were twentie daies iourney, going towards the South and East. To Onan Kerule, which is the proper Countrey of Moill, where the Court of Chingis was, were ten daies iourney right East. And in those parts of the East there was no Cite: yet there were people which are called *Su-Moall*, that is to say, Moall of the Waters: for *Su* is as much to say as Water. These people live vpon Fish, and hunting, hauing neither Flocks nor Herds. Towards the North likewise, there is no Cite, but a sparse people feeding Cattell, who are called *Kerkis*. The Oranger are also there, who kinde fowls file bones vnder their feete, and throw themselves forward vpon the congelated Snow and Ice, with such swiftnesse that they take Birds and Beasts. And many other sparse people there are on the North side, so farre as they may spread themselves for the cold. And they none on the West, with the Countrey of *Pacatir*, which is *Hungaria* the Greater, whereof I haue spoken before. The bound or limit of the North corner is not knowne, for the extremities of the cold: for in that place there are *Northward* fires or beapes of Snow. They were iniquities of the Monitors or monstrous men, whereof *Idarous* and *Solarus* make mention. They told me they neuer saw any such, whereof we much wonder, whether it bee true or no. All the Nations aforefaid (although but poore) yet they must ferue in some trade: for it was the commandment of *Chingis*, that none should bee free from seruaice, till hee were so old, that hee could labour no longer, by any meanes. Vpon a time a certaine Priest of *Cataya* late with mee, clothed with a red coloured cloth; and I demanded of him whence hee had such a colour. And hee told me, that in the East parts of *Cataya* there were high craggie Rock, wherein certaine Creatures dwelt, hauing all parts the shape of men, but that they bow not the knees, but walke (I know not how) leaping: which are not auncient one cubit long, and their whole body is covered with haire: who haue their abode in Caves which no man can come vnto. And they of *Aper*, or else an emblem or Apish faile, and perhaps by the *Shimo* inuented, to tell their wares the date.

Chap. 36. A description of the Countie about the Court of *Mangu Chan*, and of their manner of writing, and their money.

Chap. 37. All Riuer bending towards the South and North runne towards the West.

Chap. 38. *Su-Moall*, that is to say, Moall of the Waters: for *Su* is as much to say as Water. These people live vpon Fish, and hunting, hauing neither Flocks nor Herds.

Chap. 39. *Maturana* commanded the like in *Shimo*.

*A description of the date.

The desire of
on the Pa-
lace.

The Sunday in
the Passion he
goeth towards
Carcassum.

They enter Car-
cassum on
Palme Sunday

Manga Chan
departeth
from Carcas-
sum.

the Vault) blows the Pipe strongly, which goeth to the Angell. And the Angell fets his Trumpet to his mouth, and the Trumpet foundeth very thrill. Then the Seruants hearing, which are in the chamber, eury of them powre forth their drink into their proper Pipe, and the Pipes powre forth from aboue, and they are receiued below in Vessels prepared for that purpose: Then the Butlers draw them, and carry them through the Palace, to men and women.

And the Palace is like a Church, hauing the middle Ile, and the two sides beyond the two rows of Pillars, and three gates on the South. And within before the middle gate stands the tree. And *Chan* himselfe sitteth in the North front, in an high place, that hee may be seene of all. And there are two degrees of steps ascending vnto him, by the one, he that carryeth his cup cometh vp vnto him, and by the other he descendeth. That space which is in the middle, betwene the tree and the steps whereby they ascend vnto him, is voyde. For there standeth hee that watcheth on his Cup, and the Messengers, which bring Presents. And hee sitteth there aboue like a God. On the right side (to wit) toward the West are the men on the left women. For the Palace stretcheth it selfe out in length from North to South by the Pillars. On the right side are places full of seates lifted vp, like the Sellar of an house, whereon his Sonnes and Brethren sit. On the left side is the like, where his Wives and Daughters sit. One only woman sitteth there aboue by him, but not so high as hee. When therefore hee had heard, that the Worke was finished, hee commanded the chiefe Workeman to set it in his place, and make it fit.

And about Passion Sunday, hee went before with small houses, leaving his greater houses behind: And the Monke and we followed him; and he sent vs another Bottle of Wine. And hee 20 passed betwene the hilly Countries, where there was great wind, and an extreme cold, and there fell a great Snow. Whereupon he sent about mid-night to the Monke and vs, intreating vs to pray vnto God, that hee would mitigate that wind and cold, because all the beasts which were in the trayne were in icopardie, especially because all that time they were with young and ready to bring forth. Then the Monke sent him Incense, requiring him to put it on the coales and offer it to God: which, whether he did, I know not. But the Tempest ceased, which had now continued two dayes, and now the third day drew nere. On Palme Sunday we were nere *Carcassum*: In the dawning of the day we blessed the Willow boughes, whereon as yet there appeared no bud, and about nine of the clocke we entered the Citie, carrying the Crosse aloft with the Banner, passing through the middle of the street of the *Saracens*, 30 where the Market and Faires are vnto the Church: and the *Nestorians* met vs on Procession. And entering into the Church, we found them prepared to celebrate the Masse: which beeing celebrated, they all communicated, and they asked mee, whether I would communicate: I answered that I had drunke before, and the Sacrament should not be receiued but fasting. Masse beeing said, it was now Euening. Master *William* brought vs with great ioy to his Inne to sup with him: who had a Wife, the Daughter of a *Lebanian*, borne in *Hongarie*, who could speake the *French* and the Language of *Armenia*. We found also there a certayne other man called *Basilius*, the Sonne of an *Englishman*, borne in *Hongarie*, who also was skilfull in the foresaid Languages. Supper beeing ended, they brought vs to our Cottage, which the *Tartars* had appointed vs, in a certayne part of ground nere the Church, with the Oratory of the Monke. On the morrow *Chan* himselfe entered into his Palace. And the Monke and I, and the Priests went vnto him. They suffered not my companion to goe, because he stumbled at the threshold. I much deliberated with my selfe what I should doe, whether I should goe or no. And fearing offence, if I should depart from other Christians, and because it pleased him: and fearing lest that good might be hindred, which I hoped to obtaine, I chose rather to goe, although I saw their actions full of Sorcery and Idolatrie: nor did I any other thing there, but pray for the whole Church with a loud voyce, and also for *Chan* himselfe, that God would direct him to the way of eternall saluation. We therefore went into that Court which was sufficiently ordered, and in the Summer Riuer are conveyed into euery place, whereby it is watered. After this we entered into the Palace, full of men and women, and stood before *Chan*, hauing the foresaid Tree at our backs, which with the Vessels thereof tooke vp a great part of the Palace. The Priests brought two little Loues, and fruit in a Platter, which they presented vnto him, blessing them. And the Butler brought them vnto him sitting aloft in a very high place, much raised. And hee presently began to eate one of the Loues, and sent another to his Sonne, and to a certayne younger Brother of his, who was brought vp by a certayne *Nestorian*, and knew the Gospell, who also sent for my Bible, that he might see it. After the Masse the Monke said his Prayer, and I, after the Monke. Then he promised, that the next day he would come vnto the Church, which is great enough, and faire, and all the feeling aboue was covered with silke wrought with Gold. The next day he went his way, willing the Priests to excuse him, that he durst not come to the Church, because the vnderwood the dead were carried thither. But we, and the Monke remyned at *Carcassum*, and other Priests of the Court, that they might celebrate Easter there.

Maudie

Maudie Thursday drew nere, and Easter, and I had not our Vestments, and I considered the manner how the *Nestorians* made the Sacramentall Bread, and I was much troubled, what I should doe whether I should receiue the Sacrament of them, or should celebrate it in their Vestments, and Chalice, and vpon their Altar, or should altogether abstayne from the Sacrament. Then there were a great multitude of *Christians*, *Hungarians*, *Armenians*, *Rutemans*, *Georgians*, and *Armenians*, all which had not seene the Sacrament since they were taken: because the *Nestorians* would not admit them to their Church, vntill they were baptized of them, as they said, yet they made no mention of this to vs. And they offered their Sacrament freely to vs, and made me stand in the doore of the Quire, that I might see their manner of Consecration. And also on the Vigil of Euen before Easter, by the Font, that I might see their manner of baptizing. They say, they haue of that Oyntment, wherewith *Mary Magdalene* annoynted the feet of our Lord, and they power in as much of that Oyle, with that which they lay aside, and kneade their bread therewith. For all those people of the East put fat in their bread, in stead of Leuen or Butter, or Suet of a sheepe's tayle, or Oyle.

They say also that they haue of the flowre, whereof the bread was made, which the Lord consecrated: and alwayes powre out so much Oyle with it, as the flowre they lay aside. And they haue a Chamber hard by their Quire, and an Oyle, where they take the bread, which they must consecrate with great reuerence. They therefore make one Loafe of an hand breadth, with the foresaid Oyle, which they first breake into twelue pieces, according to the number of the Apostles: and after diuide those pieces, according to the multitude of the people: and the Priest giues the bodie of Christ to euery one in his hand. And then euery man taketh it out of the Palme of his hand with reuerence, and stretcheth his hand to the top of his head.

The foresaid Christians, and the Monke himselfe were very earnest, intraiting vs for Gods sake, that we would celebrate, Then I made them bee confessed, by an Interpreter, as I could, reckoning vp the tenne Commandements, and the seuen deadly Sinnes, and other things, for the which a man ought to be grieved, and confessed. All of them publicly excused themselves concerning Theft, saying, that without Theft they could not liue, because their Masters provided them neither food nor payement. Then considering, that they had taken away the persons and their substance without iust cause, I said vnto them, that they might lawfully take necessities, of the goods of their Masters, and I was ready to maintain it to the face of *Manga Chan*.

Some of them also were Souldiers, who excused themselves, that they must needs goe to the Warres, or else they should bee slaine: I firmly forbad them to goe againe: the Christians, and that they should not hurt them, they should rather suffer themselves to bee slaine, for so they should become Martyrs. And I said, that if any would accuse mee of this Doctrin be *Manga Chan*, I would be ready to preach the same in his hearing. For the *Nestorians* themselves of the Court were present, when I taught this, of whom I was suspicious, lest they should report ill of vs. Then Master *William* caused an Iron to be made 40 for vs, to make Hosts; and hee had certayne Vestments which hee had made for himselfe, for he had some knowledge in Learning, and behaued himselfe as a Clerke. Hee caused the Image of the blessed Virgin *Mary* to bee grauen after the *French* fashion, and ingraued the History of the Gospell (in the Calcements) very faire, and made a certayne silver Boxe, to lay vp the bodie of Christ therein, and the Reliques, in certayne little holes cunningly made in the sides of the Boxe.

Hee made also a certayne Oratorie vpon a Chariot, very fairly painted with holy Histories. I therefore tooke his Vestments and blessed them, and wee made Hosts, after our manner, very faire; and the *Nestorians* assigned mee their Font for Baptisme, wherein there was an Altar. And their Patriarch sent them from *Baldach*, a square Hike like a portable Altar, made with Chrisme, which they vse in stead of consecrated Stone. Therefore I celebrated on the Day of the Lords Supper, in their silver Chalice and Dish, which were very great Vessels; I did the like also on Easter day. And wee communicated the people with the blessing of God, as I hope. But they baptized in the Vigil of Easter note then threecore persons very orderly. There was great ioy generally among all Christians.

Then it hapned that Master *William* was grievously sicke, and when hee was vpon recovery, the Monke visiting him, gaue him Rubarbe to drinke, so that hee had almost killed him. Then visiting him, when I found him so ill at ease, I asked him, what hee had eaten or drunke: And hee told mee, the Monke had giuen him the foresaid Potion, and hee drunke two little Dishes full, thinking it had bene Holey Water. Then I went to the Monke, and said vnto him, Either goe as an Apostle doing Miracles indeed, by vertue of Prayer, and the Holy Ghost, or doe as a Physician according to the arte of Medicine. You gaue a strong 60

with the Lords Supper vnto him, and annoynted him beeing ready to dye. Hee reproveth the Monke for his

Chap. 39.
The manner
how the *Nestorians*
make the
Sacramentall
Bread. The
Christians
confesse them-
selves, and re-
ceiue the Sa-
crament of
Frier *William*
in the dayes
of the Lords
Supper, and Easter

The Christians
desire the Sa-
crament
Confession.
Theft exclu-
ded the ten
Commande-
ments: per-
haps the fel-
lows were of
those Border-
ers minde,
which thought
K. Henry had
purged the
Decalogue.

The Patriarch
of the *Nestorians*
sent remyneth
at *Baldach*.

Chap. 40.
William *Rutemans*
which is sicke
the Monke gi-
ueth him Ru-
barbe; the
Priest iustia is
sicke: Frier
William adui-
sorecures.

E

Pos.

Chen-Chan is
called Charmis,
of the name of
Pian Caprin

of the Moalls, but he was a *lyar*, and with him you sent your Embassadors to Chen-Chan. After Chen-Chan was dead, your Embassadors came to his Court. Charmis his wife sent you Cloths, called *Nafie*. But to know matters appertaining to Warre and Peace, and to settle the great World in quiet, and to see to doe good, that wicked woman, more vile then a Dog, how could hee know how to doe it? Those two Monkes which came from you unto Sartach, Sartach sent them to Baatu: but Baatu, because Mangu Chan is the greatest over the World of the Moalls, sent them unto vs. But now, that the great World and the Priests, and the Monkes might live in peace, and enjoy their goods, that the commandment of God might be heard among you, we would have sent our Embassadors of Moall, with your Priests: but they answered, that because vs and you there was a warlike Nation, and many bad men, and troublesome wars; so as they feared they could not bring our Embassadors safe unto you, but if we would deliver them our Letters, conveying our commandment to King Lodowick, they would carrie them. For this cause we sent not our Embassadors with them: But we have sent the commandment of the eternal God by your said Priests. It is the commandment of the eternal God, which we have given you to understand. And when you shall heare and beleve it, if yee will obey vs, send your Embassadors unto vs, so shall we be certified, whether yee will have peace with vs, or warre. When by the power of the eternal God, the whole World shall be in unitie, joy, and peace, from the rising of the Sunne, to the going downe of the same, then shall it appeare what wee will doe. When yee shall heare and understand the commandment of the eternal God, and will not hearken to it, nor beleve it, saying, our Country is farre off, our Hills are strong, our Sea is great, and in this confidence, shall leave an Army against vs, to know what we can doe, Hee which made that which was hard, easie; and that which was farre off, neere; the eternal God himselfe knowes it.

He departed
the 9. of July.

Note.

They stayed
there from the
27. of Decem-
ber unto the 9. of
July.

They depart
from the
Court to Ca-
racaram.

And they called vs your Embassadors in the Letters. Then I said unto them, call vs not Embassadors, for I said well to Chan, that wee are not the Embassadors of King Lodowick. They went unto him and told him. But when they returned, they said unto me: that he held it much for our good, and that he commanded them to write as I should direct them. Then I told them, they should leaue out the name of Embassadors, and call vs Monkes and Priests. In the meane time, while these things were doing, my Companion hearing that wee must returne by the Wildernesse to Baatu, and that a man of Moall should be our Guide, he ranne (without my priuie) to Bulgai the chiefe Scribe, signifying to him by signes that he should die, if he went that way. And when the day came, wherein we should haue our Palle (to wit) a fortnight after the Feast of Saint Iohn; when we were called to the Court, the Scribes said unto my Companion, Behold Mangu pleasure is, that your Companion returne by Baatu, and you say, you are sicke, and it appeareth for Mangu sayth thus, If you will goe with your Companion, goe: but let it be your owne fault; because peraduenture you may remayne with some Iane, that will not prouide for you, and it will be an hindrance to your Companion. But if you will stay, he shall prouide necessities for you, till some Embassadors come, with whom you may returne more easily, and by a way where there are Villages. The Friar answered, God grant Chan a prosperous life; I will stay. Then I said unto the Friar; Brother, be aduised what you doe, I will not leaue you, you leaue not me (sayth he) but I leaue you; because, if I goe with you, I fee the death of my bodie and soule, because I haue not patience in intolerable labour. Then they held three Garments or Coats, and said unto vs, Yee will not receive Gold, or Siluer, and yee haue stayed long here, and prayed for Chan: hee entreates you, that at the least yee may receiue a single Garment; that yee depart not empty from him. Then we must receiue them, for reuerence of him: for they account it a very ill thing, when their gifts are contemned. First, he cauled vs to be often asked, what we would haue? And we alwaies answered the same thing: so that the Christians insulted over the Idolaters, who seeke nothing but gifts. And they answered, that wee were fooles: because if hee would giue them his whole Court, they would willingly take it and should doe wisely to. Receiuing therefore the Garments, [they] bought vs to make our prayers for Chan; which we did. So, taking our leaue, we went to Caracaram. But it happened vpon a certaine day, while wee were with the Monke, farre from the Court, with other Embassadors; that the Monke cauled the Table to be stricken to hard, that Mangu Chan heard it, and demanded what it was: Then they told him. So he asked, why he was removed so farre from the Court. They told him, because it was troublesome to bring him Horses and Oxen every day vnto the Court; and said further, that it were better, that he should stay at Caracaram. Then Chan sent vnto him, saying, if hee would goe to Caracaram, and stay there, neere about the Church, he would giue him all things necessarie. But the Monke answered, I came from the holy Land of Ierusalem hither, by the commandment of God, and to settle the same Cite, wherein there are a thousand better Churches then that of Caracaram. If he please that I stay here and pray for him, as God commanded me, I will stay; if not, I will returne to the place from whence I came. So that every evening Oxen were brought him yoked to the Carre, and in the morning he was brought vnto the place, wher he was to be before the Court. And a little before we departed thence, a certaine Negroman came, who seemed to be a wife man: Bulgai the chiefe Secretarie placed him before his Court; to whom Chan sent his children, that he should blisse them.

We came therefore to Caracaram. And while wee were in Matter William houle, my Guide came vs vnto me, and brought me ten Licots, wherof he left hie in Matter William hand, willing him to spend them in the behalfe of Chan, for the Friars necessities, which remained there: other such he left in the hand of the Man of God, my Interpreter, commanding to spend them vpon the way, for my necessities. For Matter William had giuen them such instructions, without our knowledge. I presently changed one into money, and distributed it another in buying necessarie things for vs, as garments, and other things, which were wanted. With the third, the Man of God himselfe, bought some things, wherein hee gayned somewhat. Which was profitable vnto him: we spent the rest, and chat to; because since we came into Persia, sufficient necessities were no where giuen vs: nor yet any where among the Tartars; but we feldome found any thing to be sold there. Matter William, sometimes your Citizen, thence a certaine Grisle for wi. h. a certaine precious stone, which they vie to wear against thunders and lightning, and infinitely salutes you, always commending you to God with his prayers: for whom, I shall neuer be able to render sufficient thanks to God and you. Wee baptized there in all like soules. Wee therefore departed one, with my Interpreter, my Guide, none remaining with Matter William; and I returning alone, with my Interpreter, my Guide, and one servant; who had commanded me to take one Mutton in foure dayes, for vs, for one. We came therefore in two moneths and ten dayes from Caracaram to Baatu, and neuer law Towne, nor taken of any houle, but Graues, except one Village, where in we ate no Bread. Nor did we euer rest, in those two moneths, and ten dayes; I aue one day, because we could not get Horses. We returned for the most part by the same kind of people, and yet through other Countries altogether: for we went in the Winter, and returned in the Summer, and by the higher parts of the North by farre; except that fiftene dayes journey we must goe and returne alwaies hand by a certaine Riuer, betwene the Mountains, where there is no lodging, but by the Riuer side. We went two dayes, and sometimes three dayes, taking no food but Cosmos. Once we were in great danger, not being able to finde any people, our prouision fayling vs, and our Horses tiring. When I had travelled twentie dayes, I heard newes of the King of Armenia, that he had passed by.

In the end of August I met with Sartach himselfe, who went to Mangu Chan with Flockes and Herds, and with his Wiues and Children: yet his great Families remayned betweene Tartars and Elias. And I did my dutie to him, saying, I would willingly stay in his Country; but Mangu Chan would not haue mee returne, and carrie his Letters. Hee answered, that I must performe the will of Mangu Chan. Then I asked Cosmo for my Clothes, and they were in the Court of Baatu carefully recommended. I also required to haue my Clothes, and my Bookes againe: who answered, Did yee not bring them to Sartach? I said, I brought them to Sartach, but I gaue them not vnto him, as yee know; and I replied to him, what answere I sayd, when he demanded whether I would giue them to Sartach. Then hee answered, you say true, and none can resist the truth. I left your goods with my father, who remayneth neere Sarai; which is a new Towne Baatu hath made vpon Entia, on the East shore: but our Priests haue some of the vestiments. If any thing like you (said I) keepe it, for my Bookes be restored, then he told me, he would report my words to Sartach. I must haue Letters (said I) to your Father, to restore me all. But he was ready to bee gone, and said vnto mee, The frame of the Ladies followeth vs neere at hand. Yee shall alight there, and I will send you Sartach's answere by this man. I was very careful he should not deceiue me; yet I could not contend with him. Late in the evening the man came vnto me, whom hee shewed me, and brought two Coats with him, which I thought had bene all of Silke, vnto: and hee said vnto me, Behold two garments: the one, Sartach hath sent to you; and the other, if it seeme good to you, you shall present to the King, on his behalfe. To whom I answered, I wear no such garments, I will present them both vnto my King, in honour of your Lord. Then said hee, doe with them what you please; but it pleased me to lend them both vnto you, and I send them to you by the bearer of these presents. Hee deliuered him Letters also to the Father of Chan, to restore mee all which appertained vnto me, because he had no need of any thing which was mine. So we came to the Court of Baatu the same day I departed thence, the yeere past: the second day after the Exaltation of the blessed Crosse. And I found our young men in health, yet much afflicted with penurie, as Gosset told me. And if the King of Armenia had not comforted them, and recomended them to Sartach, they had perished: for they thought I had bene dead. The Tartars also demanded of them, if they could keepe Oxen, or milke Mares. For, if I had not returned, they had bene brought vnto their crueltie.

After this, Baatu cauled me to come vnto him, and made the Letters (which Mangu Chan sends vnto you) to be interpreted vnto him. For Mangu wrote vnto him, that if it pleased him to adde any thing, or leaue out, or change, hee should doe it. Then said hee, yee shall carrie these Letters, and caute them to bee vnderstood, Hee demanded also what way I would goe, whether by Sea, or Land? I said, the Sea was shut, because it was Winter, and I must goe by Land.

Chap. 46.
They come to
Caracaram. Re-
turning, hee ac-
companied him
a whole
month; hee
departed, he
came toward the
South to the
Towne Sarai.

He returned
by Persia.
A precious
stone good a-
gainst thunder
and lightning.

From Caracaram to the Ri-
uer of Persia, 12
two moneths,
and ten dayes
journey.

A Riuer be-
tweene the
Mountaines
of these
dayes journey.

The end of
August he met
Sartach in his
returne going
to Mangu.
Chap. the Priests
of Sarai.

Sarai is new
Towne built
vpon Entia, on
Persia.

They come to
the Court of
Baatu, Sep-
tember 16. 1544.
Chap. 47.
The King of
Armenia com-
forted them.

The Sea is
shut in Winter.

A short way by
Hungarie.
" *Bigarimus* -
wane-travel-
ling with *Baa-*
ta a whole mo-
neth.
His Guide was

They depart from *Baidu*, 17. of October, going right South. The seven mouths of the River of *Volga*. The Village *Summerkent*, or *Afracan* is in the latitude of 45. degrees. They goe no further downe, then *Summerkent* of *Afracan*. The River of *Volga* frozen over.

He commeth
to *Sarai*.
Sarai is vpon
the East side of
Etilia. This
place is now
called *Uchoog*,
from *Uchoog*.

Chap. 47.
From Sarai
they pass by
the Mountains
of the *Alami*,

Land. For I thought you had been yet in *Syria*, so I directed my journey towards *Perse*. For if I had thought you had passed into *France*, I would have gone into *Hungarie*: so I should sooner have come into *France*, and by a more easy way then into *Syria*. Then we travelled ¹⁰ a month with him, before we could have a Guide. At length, they appointed me a certain *Jugur*, who understanding I would give him nothing, and that I would go forth-right into *Armenia*, caused Letters to be made, to conduct me to the *Soldan of Turke*, hoping he should receive gifts of the *Soldan*, and that he should gayne more that way. Then we took our journey speedily (fifteen days before the Feast of All-Saints) towards *Sarai*, going forth right Southward, descending neere to *Estilia*, which is diuided into three Armes there below: euerie one where-
of is almost twice as big as the River of *Domatia*. It maketh four other lesser Armes; so that we passed that River in eleven places by Boat. Upon the middle Arme is the Village, called *Su-
merkent*, without a wall: but when the River overflows, it is compassed with water. The
Tartari were eight yeeres about it before they could take it: and so the *Alani*, and the *Saraceni*
were in it. There we found one *Ducob-man*, with his wife, a very good man, with whom *Goffe*
stayed in the Winter: for *Sartach* sent him thither to ease his Court. About those parts was
Basin on the one side of the River, and *Saratch* on the other, about Christmas, and they goe no
further down. And it falleth out, that all the River is frozen, so they passe over. There is great
flood of graffe, and there among the Causes theusid him themselves, till the Ice melt. *Cinckie* fast,
receiving *Sartach* Letters, returned myne veilmets unto mee, except three Albes and an
embroidered trimmed with Silke, and a Stole, and a Girdle, and a Tualia adorned with golden
embroider, and a Surplice. He referred also unto mee a silver Plate, except the Censer, and
the little Boxe where the Chrismes was. All which, the Priest which was with *Saratch* had
10
Hoe referred my Bookes, except our Ladies Plate, which he kept with my leaue, because I
could not denie it him: for he said, *Saratch* took me much delight in it. He also requested me,
that if it happened, that I returned unto those parts againe, I would bring them that man that
knew how to make Parchment: for he made a great Church (by the Commandment of *Saratch*)
upon the West side of the River, as he said, and a new Towne. Yet I know not that *Saratch*
meaneeth no such matter. *Sarai* and the Palace of *Basin*, are upon the Easterne side of the River,
And the Valley through which the Armes of the River are spread abroad, containeth more then
seven leagues in breadth. And there is great flood of fish there. A Bible also in verbe, and a cer-
tain Book in the *Arabian*, worth thurcie Sultanies, and many other things I neuer recovered.

SO departing from him on the Feast of All-Saints, always going toward the South, in the Feast of Saint *Martin*, we came to the Mountaines of the *Alani*. Between *Baetu* and *Savari* in fifteen days we found no people, but one of his sonnes, who went before him, with Falcons, and his Falconers, who were many, and one little Village. From the Feast of All-Saints, for fise dayes, we found not a man : and were almost in great danger by reason of thirt, one whole day and a night finding no water, till about the third of the Clocke the next day, we came in those Mountaines yett hold out, so that, of ten of the Subjects of *Sartach*, two muft come to guard the bright and narrow passages of the Hills, left the other eight to the Mountaines, and fleate their Cattell in the Playne. Between the *Alani*, and *Porta Ferrea*, which is two dayes journey thence, where the Playne of *Aracati* beginneth, between the *Caspian* Sea and the Mountaines, there are certaine *Saracens* called, *Lefgi*, betwene the Mountaines, who likewise reit : so that those *Tatars*, who dwell at the foot of the Mountaines of the *Alani*, were faine to give vs twentye men, to bring vs beyond the Iron gate, or *Porta Ferrea*. And I was glad, because I hoped to see them armed. For I could neuer see their Armour, though I had beene very desirous. And when we came to the dangerous Passage, of twentye there were two which had Halberions. And I demanded, whence they had them ? They said, they had gotten them of the *Alani* aforesaid, who are good Work-men for such things, and excellent Smiths. Whereupon, I thinke, they have small force of Armour, but Quivers, and Bowes, and Leather Jackes. I saw them presented with Iron Plates, and Iron Sculls (*capillus*) out of *Perfid*. And saw two alfo, who presented themselves to *Mungu*, armed with Coats made of Hogs skins bent inward, of rough Leather, which were very vnfit, and vniwily. Before we came to *Porta ferrea*, wee found a little of the *Tatars*, which was *Mungu Choni*: for hee had subdued that. These are the first fford *Vincul*.

retseuen with the Wall. Beneath that Citie, the Countrey was wont to bee like a Paradiſe.

retreaten with the Wall, benificiall Cities called *Samaras*, wherein there were many *Sunder a Ci-*
Two dayes journey hence, we founde another Citie called *Samaras*, wherein there were many *Sunder a Ci-*
Tenes. And when we pass'd it, we sawe low walles descending from the Mountaines to the Sea. And *inclosure*
leaving the way by the Sea by those walles, because it bent towards the East, we went up in *the inclosure*
the high Countries towards the South. On the morrow, we pass'd through a certaine Valley, *the inclosure*
wherein the foundations of walles appeared, from one mountaine to another, and there was no *the inclosure*
wall through the tops of the Mountaines. These were sometimes the Inclosures or walles of *the inclosure*
Alexander, restraining the fierce Nations, (to wit) the Shepherds of the Wilderness, that they *the inclosure*
could not invade the inhabited Countries and Cities. There are other walles or Inclosures where *the inclosure*
to Iewes are. The next day we came unto a certaine great Citie, called *Samar*. And after this, we *the inclosure*
entered into a great Plaine, called *Meam*, through which the Ruer *Cur* floweth, of the which *the inclosure*
the *Curgibae* beares the name, whom we call *Georgians*. And it runneth through the middle of *the inclosure*
Tifis, which is the Metropolis of the *Curgibae*, and in comes directly into the West running of *the inclosure*
East, to the foreland *Caspian* Sea, and it hath excellent Salubrity, which cometh from the greater *the inclosure*
Arars againe. All that plaine comes from the South, of which it is called the Land *Ararat*, which is *the inclosure*
Armenia, from betwixt the South and West, of which it is called the *Kingd* it is said of the Sonnes of *Sennacherib*, that *the inclosure*
Armenia it selfe. Whereunto the booke of the *Kingz* it is said of the Sonnes of *Sennacherib*, that *the inclosure*
they haue taken the Land of *Ararat*. To the West then of that most beautiful Plaine is *Corgia*, in *the inclosure*
the which Plaine the *Croft* men were wont to be. And there is a great Citie in the entranceth of *the inclosure*
Mountaines, called *Ganger*, which was their Metropolis, hopping the *Georgians* that they could *the inclosure*
not come downe into the Plaine. Then we came to the Bridge of Ships, which were fastned *the inclosure*
together with a great Yron chaine, stretched forth crosse the Ruer, where *Cur* and *Araxes* meet *the inclosure*
together. But *Cur* lofeth his name there.

A fter that, wee went alwayes upward by *Araxes*, whereof it is said; *Pontem designatur A-* Chap. 48.
Araxis, *Araxes* disdaines a Bridge; Leaving *Perfa*, and the *Calpian* mountains on the left
hand, towards the South: on the right hand, *Cargia*, and the great Sea toward the West: going
South-west, betweene the South and the West. We walked through the meadowes of *Bacchi*, who
is General of that Armie, which is there within *Araxis*: And hee hath made the *Cargia*,
30 *Turke*, and *Perfian* libbert to him. There is another Gouverneur (*in Perfa* at *Tawinnur*, ouer the
Tribes) called *Arum*. Both which *Mangy Chan* hath called home to giue place to his Brother
comming into those Countries. That Countrey which I haue described to you, is not properly
Perfa, but was sometimes called *Hyspaine*. I was in *Bacchus* house, and hee gaue vs Wine to
drinke, and he himselfe dranke *Cofus*, which I would willingly haue drunke, if he had giuen it
me: yet it was the best new Wine: but *Cofus* is more wholsome for a hunger-starued man.
We went up therefore by the Riuer *Araxes*, from the East of *Saint Clement*, vnto the second
Sunday in Lent, till we came to the head of the Riuer. And beyond that Mountaine where it
40 rieth, is a goodly Citie, called *Arform*, which belongeth to the *Soldan* of *Turkie*. And
neare therabout *Euphrates* ariseth towards the North, at the foot of the Mountaines of *Cargia*:
to whose Spring I had gone, but the Snow was so great, that no man could goe out of the trodden
path: on the other side of the Mountaines of *Caucasus*, towards the South ariseth *Tigris*.

When we departed from *Bacchus*, my Guide went to *Taurinus* to speake with *Argon*, carry-
ing my Interpreter with him. But *Bacchus* called me to be brought to a certaine Cite, called
Naxos, which sometimes was the head of a certaine great Kingdome and the greatest and fair-
fallest Cite; but the *Tartari* have made it a Wildernes. And there were sometimes Eight hun-
dred Churches of the *Armenians*: now there are but two little ones; for the *Saraceni* have
destroyed them: In one of them I saw the Reliques of the *Seraph* *Bartholomew*, with our
Cite. And the other I saw following the Priest of that Church dyed: to whose buriall came
a certaine Bishop, with twelve Monks of the high Countries. For all the Bishops of the *Arme-
nians* are Monks, and of the *Greekes* likewise for the greater part. That Bishop told me,
that there was a Church neere that, where *Saint Bartholomew*, and likewise *Saint Iudas Thaddaeus* were
martyred: but there was no way open for Snow. He told me also, that they have two Prophe-
ties: The first or chief is *Methodius* the Martyr, who was of their Country and plainly Pro-
phesied of the *Ismaelites*, which Prophecie is fulfilled in the *Saraceni*. The other Prophecie is called
Adonem, who when he dyed, Prophecie of the Nation of the *Armenians* shall come from the
North; and in the following of the Conquest shall fill all the Countries of the East: and should spare the
Kingdome of the East, that he might give them the Kingdome of the West. But he saith, our
Friers the *Frankes* being Catholikes, beleuee them not: And they shall possesse the Countries
from North to South: and shall come unto *Constantinople*, and shall take the *Pope of Constanti-
nople*. And one of them, who shall be called a Wife man, shall enter the Cite: and seeing the
Churches and rites of the *Frankes*, shall cause himselfe to be Baptized, and shall conuince
the *Frankes*, how they may kill the Emperour of the *Tartari*; and there they shall be confounded,
Hearing this, the *Frankes* which shall be in the middle of the Land, (to wit) *Hierusalem*, shall be
venged

Te. Asperocolo
Descriptio
Simas.

Patriarcha No-
rianorum.
S. S. S. S. S.
Abbas Episto-
lia ordinat.

Idolatra.
Templa Campa-
na.

Telesia.
Cestaria.
collegia Sacer-
dotum.
Corda nucle-
um.
Ingeci.

Tebeth.
Tangut.
Catal. Orienta-
lia.
Chinixitum.
hodie cultu.
multitudine.
et chetellum.
Caracteres Phi-
losofici.

bona cognoscunt vires boni barum, & totius medicinie potestatem. Multi ex eis sunt apud Tartaros. Et igitur Cataiorum moneta vulgaris est charta de bambusa in qua imprimunt quidam literas. Nec mirum; Cum Ruteni, qui prope nos sunt, habent pro moneta factum. Hesperopolim. Et ista Catia non distat per 120. dietas a terra in qua moratur Imperator. Et in illa terra sunt reges excellē, in quibus habitant quedam creature habentes per omnia formam humanam; non tamen genua fecerunt; sed ambulanti saltando: sed non sunt longitudo maius, quam cubiti; & vestitus totum cor suu erubuit. Et venatores portant aurum, & faciunt fouas in rupibus ad modum cyborum: Et illa animalia veniunt & bibunt ceruissim, & inebriantur, & dormiunt, & sic capiuntur: Et venatores legunt eis manus & pedes, & aperiant venam in collo, & extrahunt tres vel quatuor guttas sanguinis, & dissolunt eas, & permittunt abire. Et ille sanguis est preciosissimus pro purpura.

Secundo vero, quod a principio Cataiz magna migratio fuit ad finem Orientis sunt principes I. dolatra: sed mixti sunt inter eos Saraceni & Tartari, & Nestoriani, qui sunt Christiani imperfecti, habentes Patriarcham suum in Oriente, qui visitat Regiones, & ordinat in sanctis in eunabulis ad sacros ordines: quia ipse solus ordinat, & non potest venire ad unum locum nisi quasi in quinquecentis annis. Et ille dicit se habere auctoritatem a Romana Ecclesia ab antiquo; & paratus est obedire, si via esset aperta. Et isti decem filios Nobilitum Tartarorum Evangelium & fidem, & alios quando possunt. Sed quia pauper sunt, & sunt maiorum morum, ideo Tartari despicunt eos. Et conseruant in ipsis unum patrum latum ad modum palme, & dividunt primo in duodecim partes, secundum numerum Apostolorum, & postea istas partes diuidunt secundum numerum populi. Et Sacerdos dat vniuersique corpus Christi in manibus suis, & tunc quilibet assumit de palma sua cum reuerentia. Sed I. dolatra prevalens in multitudine magna, Et ideo Ecclesia Græcorum & totius Orientis noluit habere campanas. Ruteni tamen habent & Campanas & in Castris.

Omnes Sacerdotes eorum nudum caput & barbam, & seruant castitatem ex quo radium caput: Et vniuersum vel decemque in una congregatione. Diebus quibus intrant Templo ponunt duo scannia & sedent e Regione aliorum contra chorum in terra, habentes libros in manibus quos aliquando deponunt super illa scannia: & habent capita ad scoperta quamdum sunt in Templo legentes in silentio: & nullo modo loquuntur in Templo nisi circa officij sui. Habent etiam in manibus quocunque vadunt quandam cordam idem vel decemque nucleorum sicut nos Pater noster: & dicunt super hec verba. On, Maio, Baccan, id est, Deus tu noster. Hac sunt communia omnibus I. dolatra. Sed tamen logres, qui habitant in terra ubi Imperator moratur, differunt ab alijs. Nam alij non ponunt unum Deum, sed plures, & creaturas adorant. Illi vero propter Viciniam Christianorum & Saracenorum ponunt unum Deum. Et sunt optimi scriptores: unde Tartari accipiunt literas eorum: & illi sunt magni scriptores Tartarorum. Et isti scribunt a sinistris in dextram, & a sinistris in dextram multiplicant literas & legunt. Tebeth scribunt sicut nos, & habent figuras similes nostris. Tangut scribunt a dextra in sinistram sicut Arabes, sed multiplicant literas ascendendo. Catai Orientales scribunt cum pueris, quos pingunt pictores: & faciunt in una figura literas comprehendentes unam diuisionem. Et ex hoc videntur Characteres, qui habent multas literas simul. Vnde veri Characteres & Philosophi sunt Compositi ex literis, & habent solum diuisionem. Et tota terra a Danubio vsq; in Orientem vocatur apud Antiquos Scythia, a qua Scythæ. Et omnes Regiones Tartarorum sunt de Scythia: & etiam Rulua, & totum vsq; ad Almatiam.

And thus much ex quatuor partu Compendij Study Theologie F.R. Baconi.

Relations of VINCENTIUS BELVACENSIS, the most of which hee received from Frier SIMON de Sancto Quintino, one of the foure Friers sent by Pope INNOCENT the Fourth to the Tartars: serving to the illustration of the former.

P.R. Spec. lib.
lib. 3.
J.M. Michon.
L. e. e. 1. 1. 1.
two of them
went to the
Cham: but they
were wo-
thers sent an-
other way, John
de Plana came
and his fellow
whole flow
in M. H. 1. 1.
in the said
Vincent. 1. 3.

Others call
him Occidali Cam

ANNO. 1246. Cuyne, who is also called Gog Cham, was advanced to the Imperial Throne of the Tartars. All their Barons being assembled, placed a golden seat in the midst, wheroun they caused him to sit, and let a sword before him, saying, Wee will, and desire, & command thee to rule ouer vs. He demanded if they were contented, to doe, come, goe, flay as he should command. They answered yea. Then said he, The word of my mouth shall henceforth be my sword, & they all consented. After this they spread a felt on the ground, and let him thereon, saying, Looke upwards and acknowledge God, and looke downe on the felt wheroun thou sittest. If thou shalt gouerne well, wilt be liberal, wilt not beowen thy Princes according to their dignitie, wilt thou shalt reigne magnificient, and the whole World shall be subiect to thy Dominion, and God will giue thee all thy heart's desire: if otherwise thou shalt be miserable and poore, that the felt shall not be left thee wheroun thou sittest. This done, they let his Wife with him on the felt: & lifted them vp both so sitting, and proclaimed them Emperour and Empreesse of the Tartars. After which they brought before him infinite store of Gold, & Silver, and Gemmes, with all which remayned to Chagadan, who distributed what he pleased, and returned the reit. Then began they to dance vntill night after their manner; and afterward fudden flesh came in Cartes without Sale, & as

mongt foure or fise they distributed a ioynt thereof. They call him Cam, concealing his proper name, and he boasts himselfe the Sonne of God. Helath a Prince in the Confines of Persia, called Baioth Noy (Noy, significth his dignitie, Baioth is his name) which hath subdued the Countreies of Christian and Saracens to the Mediterranean Sea. Another called Corecan remayneth in the West Frontiers with threecore thousand vnder him. The greatest Prince is Baiuth, who hath vnder him one hundred and threecore thousand Tartars, & foure hundred and fiftie thousand Christian and others. The Chams forces are innumerable.

Ann. Dom. 1247. Frier Ascelinus sent by the Pope, came into the Campe of the Tartars with other Fris Preachers: where the Capteyn Baiuth-noy by Messengers demanded, whol Melfenger they were. Frier Ascelinus answered for them all, I am the Melfenger of the Lord Pope, fongers they were. Frier Ascelinus is greater then any man, reputed a Father and Lord. They replied, who amongst Christians is greater then any? Knowes he not that the Cham is Son of God, and Baiuth-noy and Babo are his Princes? Ascelinus answered, the Pope knowes no more, but heares that the Tartars haue come out of the East, and had destroyed infinite multitudes. And had he knowne the names of Cham or his Princes, he would not haue omitted their names in the Letters which we bring. But being grieved for the slaughters of so many, especially Christians, with the aduice of his Brethren the Cardinals, he hath sent vs to the next Tartarian Armie we could find, to exhort the Generall thereof to cease ffrom attempts, and to report of that which they haue done. The Melfengers were and came diuers times betwixt, & every time in change of Garments, and were very sollicitous for Gifts and Presents which the Friers had none to giue. And besides they denyed to performe the Ceremonies of kneeling to Baiuth-noy, lest they should thereby intimate a subiection of the Pope to the Tartars: whereupon hee conspired to put them all foure to death, to which a Melfenger sent from the Great Cham would not consent. The Frier only would put vp their hoods & bow the head: wherat a Tartar asked whereas you Christians adore stokes and stones, that is Croffes imprinted on them; why doe you refuse to doe so to Baiuth-noy, whom Cham the Sonne of God hath commanded to be adored. Ascelinus answered, Christians adore not stokes and stones, but the signe of the Croffe theron, for his sake which dyed on a Croffe, adorning it with his members as precious Jewels and consecrating it with his blood, purchasing thereby our filiation. So cannot we doe to the Cham, which they refused. Then he sent for the Letters which were translated first into Persian, and thence into the Tartar Language. Hee held them there with many Trickes and Illusions, many weeks with hard fare and ill vllage. And after much adoe he returned with Baiuth-noys answer, hauing first had a Melfenger with Letters from the Cham.

The foure
were diuision
Albiteri, Alex-
ander, and Si-
mon.

See a de-
scription
of Baiuth, Aug-
in P. 1. 1. 1. 1.

Baiuth-noys Letter was this to the Pope. The word of Baiuth-noy. Pope, know this; thy Messengers came and brought thy Letters to vs. Thy Messengers spake great words; we knew not whether thou guesst them so in charge, or whether they spake it of themselves. In thy Letters thou hadst written: yee kill, slay, and destroy many men. The precept of God stalle and firme, who contains the face of the whole world, unto vs is this. Whosoever shall beare the Statute on our own Land, let them yield Water and Patrimonia, and let them deliver power to him which containeth the face of the whole World. But whosoever will not beare the Precept and Statute, shall doe otherwise, let them be rooted out and destroyed. Now we send to you touching that Statute and Precept. If yee will yield Water and Patrimonia on our Land, it is meet that thou Pope thy selfe in this person come to vs, and to him which containeth the face of the whole Earth: and if thou wilt not beare the fable Precept of God and of him which containeth the face of the whole Earth, we know not, God knoweth. It is meet that before thou comest, thou sendest Messengers, and that thou signifyest to vs whether thou comest or no; whether thou wilt compound with vs, or be Enemy. And send an Answer of the Precept quickly to vs. This Precept by the hands of Aying and Sargis, we haue sent in the month of Iuly, the twentieth day of the Month. In the Territorie of the Castle Sitians.

The Copie of the Chams Letters to Baiuth-noy. By the Precept of the living God Cingil-cham the Sonne of God, sweete and venerable faith, that God is high ouer all, bee in God immortal, and upon Earth Cingil-cham, is Lord alone. Wee will that this come into every place to the hearing of all, to the Princes obeying vs, and to the Princes, obeying against vs. It is therefore meete that thou O Baiuth-noy excite them and make it knowne to them, that this is the commandment of the living and immortal God: that thou alke insufficiently make knowne thy desire touching this, and notifie my commandment in all places, where a Melfenger may come. And whosoever shall gamsay thee shall be hunted, and his Land shall be wasted. And altho thou shalt be aforesaid, thou shalt not beare this my Mandate, shall bee deafe, & whosoever shall doe according to this my judgement, knowing peace and not doing it, shall be lame. Let this my Ordinance come to the knowledge of all, whosoever shall beare and neglect to observe it shall be destroyed and flaine. Manifest this O Baiuth-noy. And whosoever desireth the profit of his House, and will serue vs, shall bee saved and honoured. And whosoever shall contradict, studie thou to correct them at thine owne pleasure.

Voco

De Bellis cap.
* This seems
to be that Sa-
rachin Rubric
Ercalibay pre-
tended Letter
in Vincent's ap.

Vnto *Lewis* the French King were sent certayne Messengers from a great man, called *Ercalibay*; * and there was present *Frier Andrew of Lomenele a Dominican*, who knew *Danid* the chiefs of them, hauing scene him in the Armie of the *Tartars*. These brought Letters in *Persian* and *Arabicke* Letters. They reported also that a great King of the *Tartars* called *Cham* was become a Christian, with most of his followers. And now the said *Ercalibay* had receiued Baptisme and was come forth from *Cham* with a great Armie to aduance the Christian Faith, and to destroy the Aduersaries thereof; and much desired the French Kings love. They thought also that the said *Ercalibay* would the next Easter beseege *Bababek*. These told the King also of the *Tartarian* Affaires. Whereupon he sent Messengers with Letters and Jewels to *Ercalibay*, with a Tent or Chappell of Scarlet fairly embroidered, with the Storie of the Passion, with Ornaments thereto and things fitting for Diuine Seruice, with a piece of the wood of the Holy Crosse, exhorting him to proceed in the Faith. The Messengers were the fore said *Frier Andrew* with two other *Friers* and two Clerkes. Transcripts of all were sent into France.

CHAP. III.

Relations touching the Tartars, taken out of the Historie of R. WEN-
DOVER, * and MAT. PARIS: with certayne
Epistles of the same subject.

* Hee was Au-
thor of a great
part of this hi-
story, which is
wholly ascrib-
ed to Paris
by the mo-
nastic in here,
as often by la-
ter Authors
corruptly ta-
ken for De-
marle.
The Dacia of
the ancients
comprehend-
ed Transilua-
nia, Valachia,
and Moldauia.

A Caluiss con-
cise.
See briefwand
and my Pilgr.
L. 4. c. 4.
c. 1.

ANNO 1239. the *Tartars*, inhumane Nations, which had made great slaughter, and had with hostile forces invaded the borders of Christendome, in the greater *Hungarie* were vanquished and most of them slain, being encountered by free Kings, *Christians* and *Saracens*, herein confederate. After which the King of *Dacia* and the King of *Hungarie* caused the Confinnes (before by the King of *Dacia* brought in manner to a Wilderness) to be inhabited by *Christians*, which they sent thither. Of which out of *Dacia*, alone went more then fortie thips.

ANNO 1240. the detestable people of Satan, to wit, an infinite number of *Tartars* brake forth from their Mountayne-comples, and Rocks-defended Region, like Devils loosed out of Hell (that they may well be called *Tartarians*, as *Tartarus*;) and like Grashoppers covering the face of the Earth, spoyling the Easterne Confinnes with fire and Sword, ruining Cities, cutting vp Woods, rooting vp Vineyards, killing the people both of Citie and Countrey. And if they spared any, they vied them in the fore-front of their battels to fight against their Allies, that if they were therein faine or fayned, themselves at their backes might kill them: if otherwise it was without reward. They are rather Monsters then men, thirsting and drinking blood, tearing and deuouring the flesh of Dogges and Men; clothed with Ox-hides, armed with Iron Plates, in stature thicke and short, well set, round in bodie; in hand inuincible, in labour infatigable, behind vnarmed; drinking the blood of their beafts for Dainties, &c. These *Tartars* of detestable memory, are thought to be defended of the ten Tribes which went away (forsaking the Law of *Moses*) after the golden Caluiss; whom *Alexander* the Macedon sought to inclose in the *Caspian* hill, to which labour, exceeding humane power, hee inclosed the assistance of the God of *Israell*, and the tops of the hills ioyned together, and the place became inaccessible and impassible. And though it be doubtful, because they vie not the *Hebrew* Tongue, nor Law of *Moses*, nor are gouerned by any Lawes; yet is it credible, that as their hearts then in *Moses* gouernment were rebellious, Reprobatly-cruell and Idolatrous, so now more prodigiously their heart and Language is confounded, and their life inhumane and brutishly inhumane. They are called *Tartars* of a certayne River called *Tartar*, running alongst their hills.

ANNO 1241. that inhumane and brutish, lawlesse, barbarous and savage Nation of *Tartars*, horribly spoyling the North and North-east parts of the *Christians*, caused a great feare and horrour ouer all Christendome. For they had now brought in manner to a Wilderness, *Frisia*, *Gothia*, *Polonia*, *Bohemia*, and both *Hungaries*, the most part of the Princes, Prelates and people being dead or slaine: as by this Letter appeareth.

TO the Beloued and alway worthy to be beloued Lord, our Father in Law, the Illustrious Prince the Duke of Brabant, Hc. by the grace of God Earle of Loraine, Palatine of the Saxons, he himselfe seruice. The perills set forth in holy Scripture, now brake forth because of our finnes. For a certayne cruell and innumerable people, savage and lawlesse, invadeth and possesseth the Confinnes next bordering vs, and are now come to Poland, many their Land being passed and peoples destroyed, wherof specially our vntime Messengers, as by our beloued Confin in the King of Bohemia, we are fully certified and are invited speedily to succour and defend the faithfull. For we know for certayne that about the Ombres of Easter, the Tartarian Nation will invade cruellly and forcibly the Lands of the Bohemians, and if not

prevented, will there perpetrate vnhad of slaughter. And because our next neighbours house is now on fire, and the next Countrey ieth open to waste, and some are already wasted, we earnestly and pitifully entreat the aye and counsell of God and of our neighbour-brethren for the vniuersall Church. And because delay is full of danger, with all our hearts we beseech you, that you make all possible speed to arme as well for your as our deliuerance, making strong preparations of store of Souldiers; diligently exciting the noble, mightie and courageous, with the people [subiect] to them, that yet may have them in readinesse, when we shall next direct our Messengers to you. And we, by the ministerie of our Prelates, Preachers, and Minors, cause the Crosse (because the busynesse belongs to him which was crucified) to be generally preached, fasts and prayers to be appointed, and our Land in common to be called to the warre of Ihesu Christ. Here we add that a great part of that detestable Nation, with an other Armie aduanced to them, vnto the flesh Hungaria with vnhad of tyrannie, in such sort that the King is fad to have retained but a small part to himselfe. And to speake much in few words, the Church and People of the North is so oppressed and brought to such Straits, as is neuer was so fowled since the World began. Dated the yere of grace 1241. on the day on which is Iung Letare Ierusalem.

And this was the Letters sent to the Bishop of Paris by the Duke of Brabant. The like was written by the Arch-bishop of Colen to the King of England. Therefore for this grievous tribulation, and for the discord betwixt the Pope and the Emperour, so hurtfull to the Church, there are appointed fasts and prayers, with larger Almes in diuers Regions; that our Lord being pacified with his people, who as a magnificent triumph is as itrong in a few as many, may destroy the pride of the *Tartars*. The French Kings mother, *Queene Blanche*, with deepe sighs and plentifull teares spake heretof to her sonne. What shall we doe my dearest sonne about this lamentable euent, the terrible rumour whereof is come to our Confinnes: general destruction of vs all and of holy Church hangs ouer our times by the impetuous inuasion of the *Tartars*. The King with mournfull voice, not without the Spirit of God, answered: The heauenly comfort, Mother, exalt vs; and if they come on vs, either we shall lend againe thole *Tartarians* to their Tartarian places whence they came; or they shall exalt vs to Heauen.

THE Emperour certified heretof, wrote to the Princes, and especially to the King of England in this forme. *Fredenke Emperour &c. to the King of England greeting. Wee cannot conceale, though it seemeth lately come to our eares, but give you notice of a thing which concerneth the Roman Empire (as prepared to the preaching of the Gospell) of all seadown Christian Kingdoms in the World, threatening general destruction to all Christendome. A Christian Nation hath lately come from the Southern Region, which had long layne dead under the torrid Zone, and after towards the North by force passing Regions long remaining is multiplied as the Conker worme, called *Tartars* we know not of what place or originall, not with us the fore-sense iudgement of God is referred to these last times, to the correction and chastisement of his people, God grant our losse of all Christendome. A publicke destruction hath therefore followed, the common desolation of Kingdomes, and poise of the fertile Land, which that wicked people hath passed thorow, not sparing sexe, age, or dignitie, & hoping to extinguishe the rest of mankind, whiles it alone goeth about to diminish and reigne euer where by their immense and incomparable power and number. Now all things which they have beene able to see yet on being put to death and spoyl, leaving vnfull desolation behind them, these *Tartarians* (yea *Tartarans*) when they had come to the well peopled Colonie of the Cumani (prodigall of their line, having Boves their most familiar Armes, with Darts and Arrows which they continually use and are stronger in the armes then other men) they vnterly queried: w them, and with bloody sword killed all which escaped not by flight. Whose neighbour hood scarcely warned the Rutheni: not farre distant to take heed to themselves. For they suddenly fire thither, to prey and spole as the wrath of God and lightning hurles it selfe, and for their sudden assault and barbarous inuasion take Cleua the chiefe Citie of the Kingdom: and all that noble Kingdom was wasted to desolation, the Inhabitants being slayne. Which yet the neighbouring Kingdoms of the Hungarians who should haue taken warning, neglected: whose flaggish King too secure, being required by the Tartars messengers and letters, that if he desired that he and his should live, he should beseech their fauour by yielding himselfe and his Kingdom: yet was not hereby terrified and taught to fortify against their irruptions: that they ignorant or insolent contempters of their enemies, secure in their enemies approach, trusting in the nature fortification of the place, unexpectedly compassed and appressed at vnawares by them, and were a while round-appressed their Tent against them. And when the Tartars Tent were fine miles from the Hungarian, the Tartarian fore-men in the dawning of the morning, rushed suddenly and compassed the Hungarians, and first slaying the Prelates and chiefe men, killed an infinite number, with such vnhad of slaughter as scarcely is recorded euer to haue happened in one battell. The King hardly escaped by flight on a swift Horse, which fled with a small companie to the brotherly portion of the Hyllian Kingdom, there to be protected; the Enemy passing the Tent and by the sword, and now wasting the nobler and greater part of Hungarie beyond Danubius, consuming all with fire and sword, they threaten to confound the rest, as by the venerable Bishop V. vicentius the Ambassadors of the said Hungarian King, not ceasing to our Court first as he passed, being desired to the Roman Court, we are also heretof inly certified by the Letters of our deare sonne Conrad, eldest King of Romans, Almay Augustus, and borne of the Kingdoms of Ierusalem; and of the King of Bohemia, the Duke of Austria.*

Austria and Bauria; by the Messengers words also instructed experimentally of the Enemies needre-
 needre. Nor could we learne these things without great griefe. Truly, as the report goeth, their undere-
 determined damnable Armie, by our Lords sufferance, hath proceeded divided purposely in three parts.
 For one being sent by the Prudent, and entering Poland, the Prince and Duke of that Land were slayne
 by them, and after that all the Region spoiled. The second hath entred the bounds of Bohemia, and be-
 ing entred hath made slay, the King manly opposing himselfe. The third hath runne thorow Hungaria,
 bounded by Aultia. Whence the feare and trembling having beginning from furie, doe excite and invite
 all necessitie vergeth to withstand them, the danger being neerer; the general destruction of the world, and
 specially of Christendome, calls for speedie helpe and succour. For these People is brutish, and without
 law, ignorant of humanitie; yet followers, and hath a Lord whom it obediently obserueth and worshipeth, 10
 calls, The God of the earth. The men are of short stature, but square and well set, rough and courageous,
 at the becke of their Leader rushing on any difficulties: have broad faces, frowning looks, horrible cries
 agreeing to their hearts. They wear raw Hides of Oxen, Asse, or Horses, with Iron plates sewed on for
 defense. Armes hiterto: but now, with griefe we see kee it, out of the spoiles of conquered Christians, they
 are more decently armed, that in Gods anger wee may be the more dishonorably layde by our owne wea-
 pons. They are also furnished with better Horses, full with damier face, adorned with finer rayment.
 The Tartars are incomparable Archers; carrie fewed down artificially made, by which they passe Rivers
 and waters without lesse. When first they enter, their Horses are sayd to be content with barles and leaues of
 Trees, and roots of Herbs: when yet they finde soft and hardy. And we fore-seeing all these things,
 often by Letters and Messengers are mindful to request your excellencie, as also other Christian Princes, 20
 earnestly soliciting and warning, that peace and lone may flourish amongst kinsmen, and discord being
 appeased (which often endamage Christendome) agreeing together to sit stay to them which have lately
 showed themselves; forasmuch as fore-warmed are fore-armed, and that the common enemies may not
 reioyce, that to prepare their wayes, so great diffinitions breake forth amongst Christian Princes. Ob
 God, how much and how often would we have humbled our selves, doing the utmost that the Roman
 Bishop might have forced from the scandal of diffinition against vs which is gone thorow the World;
 and would more temperately have reuoked his passions from impetuosity, which we might be able
 to quiet our subiects by right, and rule them more peaceably; nor that be would protest against Rebels, the
 greatest part of which is by him fostered: that things being settled, and the Rebels averted against whom
 we have must neede treasure and labour, our power might be advanced against the common Enie- 30
 mie. But will being to him for a Law, not ruling the superbie running of his tongue, and displaying
 to abysme from manifold diffinition which he hath attempted; by his Legats and Messengers be hath
 commanded the Crosse to be published against mee the Arme and Advocate of the Church, which hee
 ought to have exercised against the tyrannie of the Tartars or Saracens, invading and possessing the Holy
 Land, whiles our Rebels insult and consule grievously against our honour and fame. And now that our
 greatest care is to free our selves from domestike and familiar Enemies, how shall we also repell Barba-
 rians? seeing that they by their spies which every where they have sent before, they (howsoever directed
 without Diuine Law, yet well trayned in Martiall stratagem) know the publick discord, and the confor-
 mity and weaker parts of the Lands: and bearing of the heart-burning of Kings, and the strife of King-
 domes, are more encouraged and animated. O how much doth triumphing courage adde to strength? Wee 40
 will therefore by Gods providence conuertyed, apply our strength and industrie to both, that we may drive away
 the scandal domestike and barbarous on this side and on that, that from the Church, and we may ex-
 pressly sent our deare fowle Countie, and other Princes of our Empire, that they may powerfully with-
 stand the assaults of our barbarous Enemies, and repress their outrage. And heartily we aduise your Ma-
 iestie in behalfe of the Common necessitie by our Lord Iesus Christ, that taking heed to your selfe, and to
 your Kingdomes (which God keepes in prosperitie) with instant care and provident deliberation, you dili-
 gently prepare freely ayde of strong Knights, and other armed men and Armes: this we require in the
 friendship of the bloud of Christ, and at the league of assistance in which we are ioynd. And so let them be
 ready with vs manfully and prudently to fight for the diluersion of Christendome; that against the Enemie
 now proposing to enter the confines of Germanie, as the Gate of Christendome, by vntied force, 50
 flarie to the praise of the Lord of Hosts may be obtained. Neither let it like you to passe over these things
 with dissimulation, or to suspend them by deferring. For if (which God forbid) they invade the Ger-
 mane confines without obstacle, let others looke for the lightning of a sudden tempest at the doores; which we
 beleeue to have hapned by Diuine Iudgement, the world being diversly infected, the lone of many waxing
 cold (by whom sinners ought to be: preached and converted) and their pernicious example slaying the world
 with Vices, and sinners other kinds of Simonie and Ambition. Let your Excellency therefore provide;
 and while the common enemies are outrageous in the neighbour Regions, wisely consule to resist them:
 because they have come out of their Lands with this intent, not regarding the perils of life, that they
 might subdue to them (which God avert) all the West, and may perturb and subvert the Faith and
 Name of Christ. And in respect of vnexpected victorie, which hiterto by Gods permission hath fol- 60
 lowed them, they are growne to that exceeding madnesse, that now they thinke they have gotten the King-
 domes of the world, and to tame and subiect Kings and Princes to their vile seruices. But wee hope in our
 Lord Iesus Christ, under whose Standard wee haue hiterto triumphed, being delivered from our Enie-
 mies, that they also which have broke forth of their Tartarian fens, their pride being abated by oppo-

The Pope to
 have his will
 against the Em-
 perour, expo-
 seth Christian
 Princes to mu-
 tuall quarrells,
 which he should
 have opposed
 to the Tartars,
 neuer ceasing
 till he had rui-
 ned that Fa-
 milled and the
 Empire.
 Their Spies.

This Emperour
 first, a misre-
 dited Sinner
 to his King.

sed forces of the West, these Tartars shall be thrust downe to their Tartara (or Hell) Nor shall they
 bost to have passed so many Lands, overcome so many peoples, perpetrated so many mischiefs, uncon-
 quered, when their vnnarie Deslinie, yea Satan, shall haue drawne them to the conquering Eagles of pas-
 sent Imperiall Europe to their death. Where Germanie volentarily raging and prone to warres,
 France the mother and nurse of Souldiers, warlike and daring Spane, fertile England prone to warre,
 and a furnished Naples, Almaine full of impetuous Warriours, Strip-fringe Denmarke, vntamed Ita-
 lie, Burgundie ignorant of Peace, vnguest Apulia, with the Tyrannicall and inuincible Isles
 of the Grecke, Adriaticke and Tyriene Seas, Crete, Cyprus, Sicill, with the Sea neighbouring Islands and
 Regions, bloudie Ireland, with sumble Vales, marishie Scotland, Icie Norway, and every Noble and
 famous Region in the West, will cheerfully find then chose Souldiers under the Colours of the quacking
 Crosse, which and not enely rebellious men but aduersē Demits dread. Dated in our returne after the
 yeeling and depopulation of Fauentia, the third of Iuly.

Some (Papalines) ha' predicted that the Emperour had hatched this Tartar-pessilence like La-
 cifer or Antichrist, to get the Monarchie of the world and to subvert Christianity, and that the
 secret Counsels and wayles: wayes of the Tartars were fraught with Imperiall Counsels. For
 they conceal their Language, varie their Armes, and if one be taken, knowledge of them or their
 purpose can by no tortures be extorted from him. And where (say they) should they lurke, in
 which of the Climates till this? whence their lo ferret and fraudulent Conspiracie? They
 are Hircans; and Scythians; lauge bloud-luckers, who with the confederate Cumans, through the
 Emperours deulfe, haue overthrowne the King of Hungarie, to make him seeke shelter vnder the
 Imperiall wings and doehim homage, &c.

Needs must they goe whom the Deuill drives; or how else but by mad malice, and furious
 faction, or an Antichrist might, could such impotibilities haue beene conceived? Of their driv-
 ing the Turkes and the Chosroviour out of Persia is well-known spoken. Of the Popes entran-
 tlement of the Tartars, Messengers, Anno 1248. close Conferences with them and gifts to
 them, with diuers other discourses in the said author or Authors I omit. Only this Epistle
 following, as containing both the strange adventures of an Englishman, and his relations of the
 Tartars from better experience, I could not but adde heere, making so much to the Readers pur-
 pose and ours. It was written by one Two of Narbena a Clergie man, which being accused of
 Heretic to Robert de Curzon the Popes Legat, fled, and liued one while with the Patariens,
 another with the Beguines, and at last writ this Letter containing a discouerie of his trauels, amongst
 them in Italie and Germany. He begins Girardo De gratia Burdegalensi Archiepiscopo, Tuo dictu
 Narbonensi (surnamed olimousissimus Clericorum, salatem, &c.) and after some premisses of the Pata-
 riens and Beguines (too long for this place) hee proceeds; Hoc igitur & multis alijs peccatis inter
 nos Christianos emegitibus utatus Dominus, &c. In English, Our Lord therefore being angry with
 us and other sinners falling out among vs Christians, is become as it were a destroying enemy.

Part of an Epistle written by one Yvo of Narbena vnto the Archbishop of Bur-
 deaux, containing the confession of an Englishman, as touching the barbarous
 demeanour of the Tartars, which had liued long among them, and
 was drawne along perforce with them in their expedition against
 Hungarie: Recorded by Matthew Paris in the year
 our Lord 1243.

The Lord therefore being provoked to indignation, by reason of this and other sinnes committed a-
 mong vs Christians, is become, as it were, a destroying enemy, and a dreadful scourge. This I may
 iustly asseme to be true, because an huge Nation, and a barbarous and inhumane people, whose Law is
 lawlesse, whose wrath is furious, even the rod of Gods anger, overranne, and utterly wasteth infinite
 Countreys, cruelly abetting all things where they come, with fire and sword. And it is present Summer,
 the foresaid Nation, being called Tartars, departing out of Hungarie, whch they had oppressed by reason,
 layd siege vnto the very same Towne, where I my selfe abode, with many thousand of Souldiers:
 neither were there in the said Towne on our part above Fifty men of warre, whom together with twenty
 Corse-bowes, the Captaine had left in Garrison. All these, on certaine high places, besiding the ene-
 mies waste Armes, and abhorring the beastly cruelty of Antichrist his complices, signified forthwith vnto
 their Gouverneur: the hideous lamentations of his Christian subiects, who suddenly being surprised in all
 the Province aduising, without any difference or respect of condition, Fortune, sexe, or age, were by ma-
 nifold crueties, all of them destroyed: with whose carcases, the Tartarian chieftaines, and their brutish
 and savage followers, glutting themselves, as it were delicious cars, left nothing for a naturall but the bare
 bones. And as forage thing it is to consider, that the greedy and ravenous vultures disdained to pray
 upon any of the carcases which remained. Old and deformed Women they gaue, as it were for daylie su-
 perstition, vnto their Countie: the beautiful denuded theye not, but smothered them, lamenting and
 shrieking, with forced and vnnaturall ravishment. Like barbares miscreants, they quelled Virgins
 100

vnto death, and cutting off their tender papps to present for daunties vnto their Magistrates, they encourage themselves with their Bodies.

Howbeit, their spials in the meane time discrijng from the top of an high mountaine the Duke of Austria, the King of Bohemia, the Patriarch of Aquileia, the Duke of Carnithia, and (as some report) the Earle of Baden, with a mighty power, and in battell array approaching towards them, that accident drew immediately vanquished, and all those Tartarian Vagabonds retired themselves into the distressed and vncompassed land of Hungarie: who as they came suddenly, so they departed also on the sudden: which their desperate caused all men to stand in borrow and astonishment of them. But of the said fugitives, the Prince of Dalmatia rooke eight: one of which number the Duke of Austria knew to bee an Englishman, who was perpetually banished out of the Realme of England, in regard of certaine notorious crimes by him committed. This fellow on the behalfe of the most tyrannicall King of the Tartars, had bene twice, as a messenger and interpreter, with the King of Hungarie, menacing and plainly foretelling those mischiefs which afterward happened, vnlesse he would submit himselfe and his Kingdome vnto the Tartars yoke. Well being allowed by our Prince: to confesse the truth, he made such outcries, and protestations, as (I thinke) the Devil himselfe would haue bene trusted for. First therefore hee reported of himselfe, that lately after the time of his banishment, namely, about the thirtieth yeare of his age, hauing left all that he had in the Citie of Acon at Dice, euen in the midst of Winter, being compelled by ignominious hunger, wearing nothing about him but a shirt of sacke, a paire of shooes, and a haire cap onely, being thauken like a foole, and vnto a vncooth noyle as if hee had bene dumbe, hee rooke his journey, and so trauellling many Countries, and finding in diuers places friendly entertainment, hee prolonged his life in this manner for a season, albeit every day by ralhnes of speech, and incontinency of heart, hee endangered himselfe to the Deuill. At length, by reason of extreme trauaile, and continuall change of ayre and of meates in Caldea, hee fell into a grievous sickness, insomuch that he was weary of his life. Not being able therefore to go forward or backward, and staying there while to refresh himselfe, hee began (being some what learned) to commend to writing those words which he heard spoken, and within a short space, to apply to pronounce and to vnto them himselfe, that he was reputed for a native member of that Countreie: and by the same dexteritie hee attained to manie Languages. This man, the Tartars hauing intelligence of by their spies, drew him perforce into their locuties: and being adcomfished by an oracle or vision, to challenge dominion ouer the whole earth, they allured him by many rewards to their faithful service, by reason that they wanted Interpreters. But concerning their manners and disposition of the disposition and stature of their bodies, of their Countreie and manner of fighting, &c. hee protested the particulars following to be true: namely, that they were above all men, courteous, hasty, deceitfull, and mercilesse: notwithstanding, by reason of the rigour and extremities of punishments to be inflicted vpon them by their superiours, they are refrained from brawling, and from mutuall strife and contention. The ancient founders and fathers of their tribes, they call by the name of Gods, and at certaine set times they doe celebrate solemne Feasts vnto them, many of them being particular, and but foure onely generall. They thinke that all things are created for themselves alone. They esteeme it none offence to exercise cruelty against rebels. They be hardy and strong in the breast, faine and pale-faced, rough and huffe-shouldred, hauing flat and short noses, long and sharpe chinnes, their vpper jawes are low and declining, their teeth long and thin, their eye-browes extending from their fore-heads downe to their noses, their eyes inconstant and blacke, their countenances writen and terrible, their extreame ioynts strong with bones and sinewes, hauing thicke and great thighes, and short legs, and yet being equall vnto vs in stature: for that length which is wanting in their legs, is supplied in the vpper partes of their bodies. Their Countreie in old time was a land vnto desert and waste, situated farre beyond Chaldaea, from whence they haue expelled Lyons, Beares, and such like vntamed beasts, with their bowes, and other engines. Of the hides of beastes being tanned, they vse to shape for themselves light, but yet impenetrable armour. They ride fast bound vnto their Horses, which are not very great in stature, but exceedingly strong, and maintained with little prouender. They vse to fight constantly and valiantly with lauelins, maces, battle-axes, and swordes. But especially they are excellent Archers, and cunning warriors with their bowes. Their backs are slightly armed, that they may not flee. They withdraw not themselves from the combat, till they see the chiefe Standard of their Generall glue backe. Vanquished, they aske no fauour, and vanquishing, they shew no compassion. They all persist in their purpose of subduing the whole world vnder their owne fiction, as if they were but one man, and yet they are moe then millions in number. They haue 60000. Courriers, who being sent before vpon light Horses to prepare a place for the Armie to dis campe in, will in the space of one night gallop three dayes journey. And suddenly dissuiping themselves ouer an whole Prouince, and turning all the people thereof vnarmed, vnprouided, disperfed, they make such horrible slaughters, that the King or Prince of the land invaded, cannot finde people sufficient to wage battell against them, and to withstand them. They delude all people and Princes of regions in time of peace, pretending that for a cause, which indeed is no cause. Sometimes they say that they will make a voyage to Colles, to fetch home the three wife Kings into their owne Countreie: sometimes

time, to punish the avarice and pride of the Romans, who oppressed them in times past; sometimes to conquer barbarous and Northern nations; sometimes to moderate the fure of the Germans with their owne meele and inefte; sometimes to learne waile fates and stratagems of the French; sometimes for the finding out of fertile ground to suffice their huge multitudes; sometimes againe in derision they say, that they intend to goe on a Pilgrimage to Saint James of Galicia. In regard of which sleights and collusions certaine vndiscreet Gouernours concluding a league with them, haue granted them free passage thorow their Territories, which leagues notwithstanding being violated, were an occasion of ruine and destruction vnto the foresaid Gouernours, &c.

To the Reader.

I Found this Booke translated by Master Hakluyt out of the Latine. But where the blind leade the blind both fall: as here the corrupt Latine could not but yeeld a corruption of truth in English. Ramusio, Secretarie to the Decemviri in Venice, found a better Copie and published the same, whence you haue the worke in manner new: so remeued, that I haue found the Trouerise true, that it is better to pull downe an old house and to build it a new, then to repaire it; as I also should haue done, had I knowne that which in the euent I found. The Latine is Latine, compared to Ramusio's Gold. And hee which hath the Latine hath but Marco Polos Carcase, or not so much, but a few bones, yea, sometimes stones rather then bones; things diuers, avarice, avarice, peruerced in manner, distorted in manner, beyond belief. I haue sent some Authors maymed, but neuer any so maymed and so mingled, so present and so absent, as this vulgar Latine of Marco Polo; not so like himselfe, as the three Polos were at their returne to Venice, where none knew them, as in the Discourse yee shall find. Much are we beholden to Ramusio, for restoring this Pole and Lead-stroke of Asia, out of that mire poole or puddle in which hee lay drowned. And, O that it were possible to doe as much for our Countryman Mandeuill, who next this (next) was the greatest Asian Traueler that euer the World had, for hauing fallen amongst the heathen, neither Priest, nor Lennie can know him, neither haue we hope of a Samaritan to releue him. In this I haue endeavored to giue (in what I giue) the truth, but haue bridged some things; to prevent politizie and tastelesse in this voluminous a stroke, leaving out nothing of substance, but what elsewhere is to be found, in this Worke: and feeling rather the lesse then a stricter verball following our Authors words and sentence. As for the Chapters I find them diuersly by diuers expressed, and therefore haue followed our owne method.

CHAP. IIII.

The first Booke of MARCVS PAVLVS VENETVS, or of Master MARCO POLO, a Gentleman of Venice, his Voyages.

§. I.

The Voyages of Master M. NICOLO and M. MAFFIO from Constantinople to the Great CAN, and their coming home to Venice: their second Voyage with the Authour and returne.

IN the time of Baldwin Emperour of Constantinople, * where vsually remained a Magistrate of Venice, called Master la Dafe, in the yeare of our Lord 1250, Master Nicolo Polo, Father of Master Marco, and M. Maffio his Brother, Noble, Honourable and Wisemen of Venice, being at Constantinople with store of Merchandize, kept many Accounts together. At last they determined to goe into the Great (or Euxine) Sea, to see if they could increate their stocke, and buying many faire and rich Jewels, they departed from Constantinople and sailed by the said Sea to a Port called Soldania: * from whence they trauelled after by Land to the Court of a great Lord of the Tartars, called Barba, who resided in the Cities of Bolgara and Asira, and was reputed one of the most liberal and courteous Princes that euer had bene amongst the Tartars. He was very well pleased with their coming, and did them great honour. They hauing made heu of their Jewels, and seeing they pleased him, freely bestowed them on him. He, loth placed in chirim (not Armes) on the North-side of the Euxine Sea. First Barba before came to Soldania in

Bacca, or Bog-
bar in Gaelic,
or which see
M. Jenkinson.

They come to
the Great Can.

They are sent
Ambassadors
from the *Can*
to the Pope.

Golden table
vised as a Com
mission under
the broad
Scale.

6324

IC yee

3C W

co

60 1

Actor: Actor,
 then in possi-
 tion of the
 Christians, so
 before 18, c. 4
 Pope Clement
 the fourth.
 * Another c
 pie hath 25,
 x For the
 Book was
 written by a
 Gentleman
 Genoa from
 mouth; and
 therefore still
 in *Ravenna*
Marco is men-
 tioned in the
 third per on
 and not in
 first: at lea
 much of it w
 is written a
 the whole p
 lified by be
 D the tenth
 that name.
 Letters, and
 Preaching
 are sent: v
 the *Taylor*.

for The Citic
and *mensis*.

be- The adora
oi of the Tar

*Marcus P. made one of the Chancery Clerks, a Courtier, Master Leitch. His wife died in travail in a far Country. * This 26th are to be returned in winter time in which this book is written, from 1272. to 1275 in the Relation appears that it is that it was 26th of the year he began a Courtier. They delivered, &c.*

Argon, a King
of the Indians
Argon is a Na-
tion of Indis.
And this King
gouerned the
same.
The will of
Queene Bol-
gina.
Coration.

why they would put themselves on dangerous a journey: and if they wanted dies, he would give them twice as much as they had: and in great love would not permit their departure. Yet in the mean place it happened, that a King of the *Indians*, named *Argon*, sent three wise men unto the Court of Great *Cubai*, whose names were *Vlati*, *Ampico*, *Cosa*, to treat with him, that he would deliver him a wife; for his name *Balgona* being lately dead, begged this grace of him, that he would give him a wife, who should be his only wife, and should not marry a wife of another Family then her own, which was the *Case*, King *Cubai* being very yielding to his request, caused to be brought out from a faire young Mayden of fifteen years of age, named *C. Gatin*, daughter of the said *Queenes Rocco*, and to be the wife of *Argon*.

These Embassadors departing, rode eight moneths the faine way they came, but found ſo hot warres betwixt the *Tartars*, that they were conſtrained to returne, and acquainted the *Chan* with their proceedings. Meane-whiles, *Malter Marco* had returned from the parts of *India*, where he had bene employed with certaine ſhips, and declared to the *Chan* the nouelties of the places, and the ſcueritie of thoſe Seas: which words hauing paſſed him, the Embaſſadors conferred with the *Venetians*, and agreed that they with the *Queene* ſhould goe to ſee the *Great Chan*, and deſire leave toourney by Sea, and to haue the three *Latines*, men ſkilfull in Sea affaires, with them to the Countrey of King *Argon*. The *Great Chan* was much pleaſed with their requeſt, yet vpon their petition granted it: and called *Nicola*, *Maffio*, and *Marco* to come to his preference, and after much demonſtration of his loue, would haue them promiſe to come to him, after they had ſpent ſome time in Chriſtendome, and at their owne houſe. And he cauſed to giue them a Tablet of Gold, in which was written his commandment, for their licenſe and ſcueritie thorow all his Dominions, & that expenſes ſhould be giuen them and theirs, and a Guide or conſoy for faſe palſage; ordaining alſo that they ſhould be his Embaſſadors to the Pope, the Kings of *France*, of *Spainy*, and to other Chriſtian Kings. He cauſed fourteen ſhips to be prepared, each hauing four *Matts* and able to beare nine *Sayles* in ſayling, the forme of which is too long here to relate. Foure of them, or five, had from two hundred and fifty to two hundred and fixtie Mariners each of them. In theſe ſhips the Embaſſadors, the *Queene*, and *Nicola*, *Maffio*, and *Marco*, ſet ſayle, hauing firſt taken leave of the *Great Chan*, who gaue them many Rubies and other precious gems, and expenſes for two yeeres.

After three months they came vnto a certaine Iland, named *Iana*, and from thence sayling 30
through the *Indian Sea*; after eighteen months, they came vnto the Countrey of King *Ambo*.
fixe hundred men of the Mariners and others, but one of the Women and Damfels died in
the iourney, and onely *Cosa* of the three Embassadors was liuing. When they came to the
Countrey of King *Ambo*, they found that hee was dead, and that one *Chiactao* gouerned
the Kingdome, for his sonne-being ioung. They sent to acquaint him with their buisnes; i who an-
swered, that they should giue him to *Gafan* the Kings kinne, then in the parts of *Arbor Secce*, in
the Countrey of King *Ambo*, to fight with him, and performe for the cause of certaine passages against his
enemie. Hasing done so, *Nicola*, *Merito*, and *Marco* returned to the Countrey of King *Ambo*, and layed there
nine months. After this, taking leave, *Chiactao* gave them foure Tables of Gold, and a cupit
long, five fingers broad, of the weight of three or foure Markes: in which was written, that
in the power of the eternall God, the name of the Great Can should be honoured and praised 40
many yeeres; and euerie one which should not obey, should be put to death, and his goods con-
fiscate. It was further contayned, that thefe three Embassadors should be honoured, and seruice
done them in all Lands and Countreys, as to his owne person: and that *Horfes*, *Comoyes*, ex-
penses and necessaries should be giuen them. All which was duly put in execution, that some-
times they had two hundred *Horfes* for their Iategard. In this their trauell they heard that the
Countrey of King *Ambo* was full of men, and then all hope of returning thither. They rode till they
came to *Trabesino*, and from thence to *Trabesino*, and then to *Negropontis*, and at last came
with great riches late to *Venice*, Anno 1295. And thus much may serue for a Preface to the fol-
lowing worke, whereby might appeare, how *Marco Polo* could come to the knowledge of the
things therein contayned.

To supply a little more, delivered by Tradition and recorded by Ramfuo: he says that these three being come to Venice, his Vlyties at Ithaca, none knew them, all fleeing them long since dead. Besides, their voyage had so altered them, that they seemed rather Tartarians than Venetians; having in manner forgotten their native Language; and their habit also was of thick Cloth, like the Tartars. They went to their house in Saint John Chrysolitome Street, and is there full to be seen, then a faire Pair, and, now called, The Court of monkeys: which name is had by reason of Marcos relations of so many things, as he has written in his *Travels*, of the several sorts of monkeys, and of their manners. They found there inhabiting some of their kindred, and others of other Nations. Therefore, as I have often heard of Magnifico Messer Gisparto Malipiero, a very able Gentleman of his own Country, from the report of his Father and Grandfather, &c. they agreed to invite many of their kindred, and to be prepared in honourable manner with much Magnificence, in which at first all three came forth in Crimfon Satten Jutes, and after the Guests were set, Ripped themselves, and gave them to the Serivants, comming forth in Crimfon Damask; as at the next Rince in Crimfon Velvet, and after in the com-

man habit, giving still the former to the waiters. Dinner ended and the *Servitors* put forth, Marco brought forth three baskets of thick Cloths in which they had come home, and thence took and set upon the table an incredible quantity of Jewels artfully sewed therein, which was no less marvellous to the brothers, than evidence of their being of the Polo family as they pretended. Maffio was made a Magistrate in Venice, Marco still frequented with the youth ; and all wanne great reputation. In few months after, Lampa Doria General of a fleet of Genois being come to the Ile Curzola with fiveantie Gallies, Andrea Dandolo was sent against them, and in that Fleet Marco was made Captain of a Galley, which by disaffection of the Warre was taken and he carried prisoner to Genoa. Where his strange behaviour and the Jewels he brought, did so much, that he was taken for a Prince, and his travels being made knowne, a certaine Gentleman daily referring him to the Duke of Genoa (his admiration) caused and helped him to write this Poeme, having sent it to Venice for his Notes. The book was first written in Latine, and thence translated into Italian. One of which Latine Copies very ancient and happily copied out of this Cite of the house of the Ghisly my speciall friend, which holds it in speciall esteemme. Nowe I might say some thing, in respect that his Father wanted an heire to his wealths remarkable. Nowe I might say that by his wife three Children. Marcos worthines obtained that which no moneys worth could doe, and being at libertie hee returned and married, and had two Daughters (but no more) Maria and Faustina, and

That Gentleman of Genoa made a Preface to the Booke, and Francisco Pipino a Frier Preacher which translated the same, Anno 1320. one of the *Vulgar* (the Latine being rare, as well it might before Printing and perhaps never seen of him) into Latine. Both these Prefaces are in Ramfius: the latter commendeth M. Polo for a devout and honest man, and saith his Father confirmed the truth of this Booke, and his uncle Maffio on his Death-bed to his Confessor. Pipino abbreviated the Booke and perhaps gave occasion to that corruption which was after increased by others.

δ. II.

*Observations of M. P o l o, of Armenia, Turkie, Zorzanian, Baldach, Persia, Chir-
main, Cobniam, Ormus, Knaue-fooles Paradise, and other Easterne
parts in Asia, and Armenia the lesse.*

Here are two *Armenia's*, the greater and the lesse. In the lesse the King abides in a Citie called *Sebastia*, which in all this Countrey openeth Iustice and good Government, the Kingdome itselfe hath many Cities, Portreffes and Castles: the soyle also is fertile, and the Countrey lacketh no necessary thing, nor doth it want game of Beasts and fowle: the ayre is not very good. The Gentlemen of *Armenia* in times past were stout warriors, but become now effeminate and nice, give themselves to drunkennes and ryot. There is a certaine Citie in this Kingdome called *Seu*, among the *Seu's* dwelling an excellent Hauus wether much more than in any other part of diuers Countreys, euen from *Armenia* and *Armenia* Hauus merchants brough thither, especially *Seu's* of sundry sorts, and certaine other precious riches brought thither out of the East Countreys for trading: for this place is it selfe a certaine part of all the East Countreys.

In *Turcomania* are three sorts of Nations; to wit, the *Turcomans* or *Turk-men*, which obferne the law of *Mahomet*. They are men vnclearned, rude, and wilde, inhabiting the Mountains and inaccessible places, where they keepe as patures: for they lue only of their beasts. There are good Horses, called *Turk-men*, (or *Turke* horses) Mules, of great estimation. The other Nations are *Grecians* and *Armenians*, who poffesse the Cities and Townes, and bestow their labours on Marchant-lue and Arres. They make the best Carpets in the world. And they haue many Cities, the chiefe whereof are *Cognor*, *Iscumun*, *Calafia*, and *Schafie*, where *Saint Basil* suffered martyrdom.

Martyrdom for *Christ*, and they acknowledge the name of the Kings of the *Tartars* for their Lord. *Armenia* the greater, being a very large Empire, tributary to the *Tartars*, hath many Cities and Towns, and is famous for the Wine called *Armenian*, and the beft wine is made there. The moft wholesome hot waters alfo fpring there, for the walking and curing of men's bodies. And the other more famous Cities next to the Metropolis, are *Argiron* and *Darziç*. In the Summer time, very many *Tartars* refort thither with their Flocks and hearls, allured through the fatnes of the pafure : and againe in the Winter depart for a certaine time by reason of the abundance of Snow. The *Arke of Noah* remained in the Mountains of this *Armenia*. This Countrey hath the Province of *Mefopotamia*, bordering on the Eaft. But on the North, yet is it not known, how far it extendeth, and how far it is from which liquor life & health, yet is it unpvofitable for the feafoning of meat, but late Camels for the making and maintaining of Lampes, and to annoynt other things enough to lade Camels.

In *Zorzanis* is a King called *Danid Melioz*, or *King David*: One part of the Province is subiect to him, the other payeth tribute to the King of the *Tartars*. The Woods there are of *Boxe-tree*. The Countrey abutteth on the two Seas, *Mar-maggiore*, and that of *Abaccu*.

The man
of the Inha
rants.
Giara.

Turkie.

Of the Gr

Georgia:

(or the *Cafian*) which containeth in Circuit twentie eight hundred Miles, and is like a Lake, not mingled with other Seas. In it are many Ilands, Cities and Castles, some of which are inhabited by those which fled from the *Tartars* out of *Perfia*. The people of *Zorcania* are Christians, observing the rites of the *Christians*. They keep their hayre short, like the *Welsh* Clergie. The Inhabitants have many Cities and Castles, and abound with Silke, of the which they make very faire Cloathes.

Moxal.

Moxal is a Province in which dwell people of many forces, one called *Arabi* which are *Ma-lumetians*, other are *Christians*, some *Nestorian*, others *Jacobites*, and others *Armenians*; and they have a Patriarch called *Lacidi*, which ordaineth Archbishops, Bishops, and Abbots, and lends them thorow all parts of *India*, and to *Cairo* and *Baldach*, and all parts where Christians dwell, as doth the Pope of *Rome*. And all the cloathes of Gold and Silke called *Moflins* are wrought in *Moxal*. But in the Mountaines of this Kingdome dwell the people called *Corda*, whereof some are *Nestorian*, other *Jacobites*, and some followers of *Mahomet*. They are wicked men and rob Merchants. Neare to them is another Province, called *Mus* and *Meridin*, wherein grows infinite flore of Cotton or Bombait, whereof they make Buckrams and other works. This Countrey in the winter they dwell in the *Tartars*.

Baldach.

Chif.

Balfara.

Baldach is a great Citie, in which was the *Chalifa* that is the Pope of all the *Saracens*. A River runnes thorow it, from whence to the Sea is ordinarily leauntene dayes journey. They sayle by a Citie called *Chif*: but before they come thither is *Balfara*, about which grow the best Dates in the world. In *Baldach* are many cloathes of Gold and Silke: in manner is Carften-dome come thence. In that Citie is studied the law of *Mahomet*, *Negromencie*, *Physicke*, *Astro-nomie*, *Geometrie*, and *Philosome*: It is the chiefe Citie in those parts. When the *Tartars* began to raigine, there were four Brethren, the eldest of which, *Mongraier* lived in *Sedia*, thither purposing to subdue the world, went one to the East, another to the North, the South a third, which was *Olau*, and the other to the West. In the year from the Incarnation of our Lord 1250, *Olau* having a great Army of one hundred thousand Horse, besides Foot, yet viced pollice, and hauing had a great part of his men brought by faied flight, the *Caliphs* into his ambush, and tooke him, and the Citie: in which he found infinite store of treasure, inso much that he wondred.

He sent for the *Califa*, and reproved him that in that waste hee had not therewith provided himselfe of Souldiers for defence: and commanded that hee should be inclosed in that Tower, where his Treasure was, without other sustenance. This seemed a iust iudgement from our Lord Iesus Christ on him. For he in the year 1255, seeking to convert the Christians to *Mahomet*: And taking advantage on that place of the Gospell, that *hee which hath Faith as much as a graine of Mustard-seed, should be able to remove mountaines*, hee converted all the *Christians*, *Nestorian*, and *Jacobites*, and propounded to them in ten dayes to remove certaine Mountaines, or turne *Mahometians*, or be slaine, as not hauing one man amongst them which had the least faith. They therefore continued eight dayes in Prayer: after which certaine Shoemaker by reuelation to a Bull p, was designed to performe it. This Shoemaker once tempted to lust by sight of a young Woman in putting on her Shoe, zealously had fulfilled that of the Gospell, and literally had put out his right eye: He now on the day appointed with other Christians following the Crosse and lifting his hands to Heauen, prayed to God to haue mercy on his people, and then with a loude voyce commanded the Mountaine in the name of the Father, Sonne, and holy Ghost to remove, which presently with great terrour to the *Califa* and all his people was effected. And that day is since kept holy, with fasting also on the euen.

Tauris.

Tauris is a great Citie in the Province of *Hirace*. It is a most populous Citie. They liue of Arts and Merchandise. They make Cloathes of gold and silke. Foraine Merchants make there great gaine, but the Inhabitants are generally poore: a mixed people of *Nestorian*, *Armenians*, *Jacobites*, *Georgians*, and *Perfians*, and *Mahometians*. These last are perfidious and treacherous, thinking all well gotten which they steal from men of other Religions. And this wickednesse of the *Saracens* hath converted many *Tartars* thereto. If the Christians kill them in their robbery, they are reputed Martyrs. From *Tauris* to *Perfia* are twelue dayes journey. In the confines of *Tauris* is the Monastery of Saint *Barfaim*, the Monks whereof are like *Carmelites*; they alway make gridles which they lay on the Altar, and giue to their friends, which devoutly esteeme of them.

The eight Kingdome of Persia. Moxal. Afs.

The Inhabitants.

Perfia containeth eight Kingdomes: whereof the first is called *Cafian*, the second *Curdistan*, the third *Lor*, the fourth *Suafistan*, the fifth *Spaan*, the sixth *Serau*, the seventh *Sonara*, the eighth *Timebaim*, which is neere *Arboreffco* towards the North. Faire and great Horles are there, whence they are sold into *India*. There are also very goodly and excellent Afses farde dearer then the Horles, for that they eat little, carrie much and farre. They haue Camels but not so Iwitt. There are necessary in those Countreys, which sometime in a long way yeeld no gralle. The people in those Countreys are very wicked, contentious, Theues, and Murthners, professing the faith of *Mahomet*. Merchants are euery where slaine by those Theues, vnlesse they trauell in troups. Yet are there excellent Artificers in the Cities, who make wonderfull things in gold,

silke, and Embroiderie. They abound with Silke-wormes, Wheat, Barley, Milium, and other kinde of Corne; and haue also plenty of Wine and fruits. And though their Law forbid wine yet they haue a glosse to correct or corrupt the text, that if they boyle it, then it changeth the taste, and therefore the name alio of Wine.

Lafdi is a great Citie in the confines of *Perfia*, where much Trading is exercised. It hath also cunning Artificers who labour in Silke.

The *Chermians* is a Kingdome in the confines of *Perfia* to the East, subiect to the *Tartars*. In the confines of the Mountaines the stones are found, commonly called *Turckish*; veines also of *Azuo* and *Andalus*. There are also made all Armes and munition for warre, and by the Women excellent needle-works in Silkes, with the portraiture of all sorts of Creatures verie admirable. There are the best Falcons in the world, venie Iwitt of right, red breasted, and vnder the trayne, lesse then those of other Countreys. Proceeding further, you goe through a great Plaine, and hauing ended eight dayes journey, you come vnto a certaine descent. In the Plaine many Partridges are found, and also Cattles and Townes. But in that steepe descent are many trees and thistle fruitfull, but no habitation is there but of Shepheards. This Countrey in the winter time hath intolerable cold.

After this you come vnto a certaine great Plaine, where a certaine Citie is seated, named *Camandu*, which in times past was great, but is now destroyed by the *Tartars*, and the Countrey is called *Rosharle*. There grow Pomgranates, Quinces, *Adami* apples, and diuers other fruits, which grow not in our cold Countreys. It hath also very great Oxen, and all white, thin hayred with thicke blunt short hornes, with a Camels bunch on the backe, accustomed to beare great burthens. And when the packe-saddles are set vpon the bunch, they bow the knee like Camels, and hauing received the burthen rise againe, being so taught by men. The Sheepe of that Countrey are no lesser then Afses, bearing so long and broad a trayle, that they weigh thirty pound weight. They are very faire and fat, and good meat. Moreover, in the plaine of this Countrey are many Cities and Townes, with high walls of Mud to defend them from the *Camandus*, that is *Mestians*, or mingled people of *Indian* women and *Tartars*, ten thousand of which be conducted by one *Nugader*, the nephew of *Zagabab* who ruled in the greater *Turkie*. This *Nugader* hearing of the *Malabar* subiect to Soldan *Afsim*, without his Vncles knowledge went and tooke *Dely* with other Cities, and erected a new Seignorie, and mixing with the *Indian* women procreated these *Camandus*, which goe vnto and downe to rob and spoyle in *Rosharle* and other Countreys. There they leaured magicall and diabolicall Arts, by which the ayre is so darkened in the day time for a long space, that none may see them or prevent them. *Al. Marco* one time thorow such darkness did almost fall into their hands, but made thift to escape to a Cattle called *Confalini*: but many of his company were taken or slaine.

That Plaine wherof I now speake is five daies journey extended towards the South. But at the end thereof, the way beginneth by litle and litle to descend for twenty miles together, & the way it selfe is very bad, and not without danger by reason of Theues. At length you come to very goodly Plaines, which extend themselves two dayes journey in length, and the place it selfe is called *Ormus*. That Countrey aboundeth with Riuers of water and Palme trees. There is also plenty of diuers Fowles, especially of Poppin-jays, which are not like to ours. From hence you come vnto the Ocean, where on an Iland is seated, a Citie called *Ormus*, whereto many Merchants resort, bringing Spices, Pearles, precious Stones, cloath of Gold and Silkes, and Elephants teeth, and all other precious things from *India*. That Citie is a great Mart, hauing Cities and Castles vnder it, and is head of the Kingdome *Chermian*: the King is called *Ruchmedin Ach-mach*, who yeelds obedience to the King of *Chermian*. He makes himselfe heyre, if any Merchant dyes there. In Summer they by reason of the heat betake themselves to their Garden houses built on waters. And from nine till noone there blowes a winde with such extreme heat from the fands, that it swallowes vp a mans breath and stifeth him, which makes them lye in the water. The King of *Chermian* sent an Armie of sixtene hundred Horse, and five thousand Foot, against the Lord of *Ormus* for not paying his tribute, which were all surprisid and stifed with that winde. The Inhabitants of the place ate no Bread made of Corne and flesh, but feed vpon Dates, figs, Fish, and Onions. They haue not very good Ships: for they fasten them not with yron nuyles (by reason that the wood is brittle and would cleaue) but with wooden pins, with certaine threds made of the shels of *Indian* Nuts. These shels are dressed after the manner of Leather, out of the which, threds are cut, and of the threds exceeding strong cordes are made, which are able to indure the force and violence of the water, and are not easily corrupted thereby. Those Ships haue one Mast, one sayle, one beame, and are covered but with one decke. They are not chalked with Pitch, but with the Trane of Fishes. And when they croffe the Sea to *India*, carrying Horles and other freight with them, they lose many Ships, because that Sea is very tempestuous, and the Ships are not strengthened with yron. The Inhabitants of that Countrey are blacke, and addicted to the Law of *Mahomet*. It is the custome of this Countrey, when any Master of a family dyeth, that the wife left behind him should mourne for him foure weekes, once a day. They haue women which professe the practise of mourning and are thereto hired, to mourne daily for their dead.

Fine distinctly on, as in a Popish faith.

1691.

Camandu.

Oxen with a bunch on the backe. Sheepe of the biggnes of Afses.

Their Inchantments. The Authors danger.

Ormus.

Parats.

Their Ships.

An outward shell which grows vpon the Case Nut, and yeelds a cheddy substance.

Returning.

Returning from *Ormus* to *Chermain* is a fertile Plaine, but the bread made there, cannot be eaten of them, who are not accustomed therunto, it is so bitter by reason of the bitter water put therein, whereof are store of hot Bathes good against diseases.

Going from *Chermain* in three dayes riding you come to a Defart, which continued till you come to *Cobinam*, seven dayes Journey, which is extended. In the first three dayes you shall have no water, save a very few, and those salt and bitter, of a greene colour in shew, as if it were the ioyce of Herbs: and who so tasteth but a little thereof, cannot escape a loosenesse of the belly. The like also happeneth, if any taste the Salt made of that water. It is therefore needfull, that Travellers carrie some water with them, if they will not be endangered through thirst. The beasts also which are compelled to drinke that water, escape not without scouring. In the fourth day they find a fresh River vnder ground: the three last dayes are as the first.

Cobinam is a great *Mahometan* Citie goodly, and great Locking Glasses of Steele, are made there. *Twia* also which cureth the eyes; and *Spodo* and that, after this manner. That Country hath Mines, out of which they digge Earth, which they boyle casting it into a ferrie Furnace, an Iron grate receiving the ascending vapour from above, in the which, the conglutinated and clammy vapour becommeth *Twia*. But the groffer matter remaying in the fire, is called *Spodo*. The Inhabitants of this Country, are followers of *Mahomet*.

Leaving the Citie *Cobinam*, you meet with another Defart eight dayes Journey in length, and in it there is great drynesse: it wanteth trees, and fruits, and waters which it hath are very bitter, so that the very beasts refuse to drinke them except they mixe meale therewith, and Travellers carrie water with them. But having passed ouer this Defart, you come to the Kingdome *Timochaim* in the North Confines of *Perfia*, where many Cities and Castles are. There is a great Plaine in which a great tree groweth, called the tree of the Sunne, which the Christians call the *Tree of Tree*. This tree is very great and thicke, and hath thick leaves, which on the one side are white, and on the other side greene. It produceth a prickly thistle like those of a Chestnut, but nothing in them. The wood is solide and strong, yellow like Boxe. There is no tree within one hundred miles, except on one side, on which are trees within ten miles. In this place the Inhabitants say, that *Alexander* the Great fought with *Darius*. The Cities are plentiful of good things, but *Mahometan*, and of temperate Aire. It hath also goodly men, but specially women, the most beautiful in my judgement in the World.

Machet. *Machet* is in *Saracen* Language, as much to say as a place of Heretikes, and of this place they call the men *Machetici*, that is, Heretikes in their Law, as with vs *Peetars*. Having spoken of the Country, the old man of the Mountayne shall bee spoken of, of whom *Marco* heard much from many. His name was *Alondine*, and was a *Mahometan*. His Valley betwixt two Mountaynes very high, made a goodly Garden, furnished with the best trees and fruits he could find, adorned with diuers Palaces and houses of pleasure, beautified with gold Workes, Pictures, and Furnitures of like. There by diuers Pipes answering diuers parts of those Palaces were sent to runne Wine, Milke, Honey and cleere Water. In them hee had placed goodly Damoels skilfull in Songs and Instruments of Musike and Dancing, and to make Sports and Delights vnto men whatsoever they could imagine. They were also rarely attyred in Gold and Silke, and were faine to goe continually sporting in the Garden and Palaces. He made this Palace, because *Mahomet* had promised such a sensuall Paradise to his devout followers. No man might enter: for at the mouth of the Valley was a strong Castle, and the entrance was by a secret passage.

Alondine had certaine Youthes from twelue to twentie yeares of age, such as seemed of a bold and vndoubtful disposition, whom hee instructed daily touching *Mahomets* Paradiſe, and how hee could bring men thither. And when he thought good, hee called a certaine Drinke to bee giuen vnto ten or twelue of them, which cast them in a dead sleepe: and then hee caused them to be carried into diuers Chambers of the said Palaces, where they saw the things afore said as Drinckes, and all varieties of pleasures to them, insomuch that the Fooles thought themselves in Paradise defined. When they had enjoyed those pleasures foure or fve dayes, they were againe cast in a sleepe, and carryed forth againe. After which, hee caused them to be brought into his presence, and questioned where they had beene, which answered, by your Grace, in Paradise, and recounted before all, before mentioned. Then the old man answered, this is the commandment of our Prophet, that whosoever defends his Lord, hee make him enter Paradise: and if thou wilt bee obedient to mee, thou shalt haue this grace. And hauing thus animated them, hee was thought happie whom the old man would command, though it cost him his life: for that other Lords and his Enemies were slaine by these his *Asselines*, which exposed themselves to all dangers, and contemned their liues. Hereupon hee was esteemed a Tyrant, feared in all those parts; and had two Vicars one in the parts of *Damasco*, and another in *Cuadisa*: which observed the same order with young men. Hee vied also to rob all which passed that way. *Flaw* in the year 1265. sent and besieged his Castle, which after three yeares siege they took, slue him and turned his Paradise, not being able for want of victuall to hold out longer.

A Defart in which is Salt, bitter, laxative, greene water.

Cobinam, *Twia* and *Spodo*.

A Defart of eight dayes Journey.

Timochaim.

Tree of Sun, or Arbo Seco, a River.

Machet.

Alondine the old man of the Mountayne.

Knave-fooles Paradise.

* It is likely that the *Asselines* mentioned in the eight & ninth Bookes were branches of this flock. Diocles of his Syrian Vicar of this of them.

§. III.

of Sapurgan, Balac, Thaicar, Scaffem, Balaxiam, Balcia, Chelmur, Vochan, Samarcian, Carchan, Peym, the dreadfull Defart of Lop and Tanguth.

Departing from the fore said place, you come vnto a certayne Country pleasant enough, which hath Hills, Plaines, and excellent Pasture, and lusty, fruits in great plenty: for the soyle thereof is very fruitful. This continues sixe dayes, and then you enter a Defart of fortie or fiftie miles, without water. After this you come to the Citie *Sapurgan*, where plenty of all victuall is found; especially, Pompons the best in the World, sweet like Honey.

Passing from thence, we came vnto a certayne Citie, named *Balach*, which in times past was great and famous, having sumptuous Marble Palaces: but now ouerthrowne by the *Tatars*. In this Citie they report, that *Alexander* tooke the Daughter of King *Darius* to wife. To this Citie (on the East and North-east) continue the Confines of *Perfia*. But if you goe from hence, and proceed betwene the East, and the North-east, you cannot finde any Habitation for two dayes Journey: because the Inhabitants of the place having endured for many grieuances by Theues and Robbers, are compelled to flye vnto the Mountaynes, to wit, places of more safetie. Many waters are found there, and very much game of wild beasts: Lyons also are there, and because Travellers find no food in that Journey, they carrie victuall with them, which may suffice them for two dayes.

That two dayes Journey ended, which we mentioned, we met with a certayne Castle, called *Thaicar*, where is great plenty of Corne, and very goodly fields. The Mountaynes also on the South are high, some of which are of white and hard Salt, and the Inhabitants thither dayes Journey about fetch it from thence, being the best Voyage, so hard that they must break it with Iron Instruments, so much that the whole World may have sufficient Salt from thence. The other Mountaynes have store of Almonds and Pistaches. Going betwene the East and North-east from hence the Country is fruitful, the Inhabitants Murtherers, Perfidious, *Mahometan*, Drunkards: Their Wine is boyled and excellent. They goe bare-headed, save that the men bind vp their heads with a certaine string of ten handfull long. But they make them clothing of the skinned of the wilde beasts which they take, as Breeces and Shooes, and vse no other Garments.

After three dayes Journey is the Citie *Scaffem* seated in a Plaine, and hath many Castle, in the Mountaynes round about it. A certayne great Ruer a floweth through the middle thereof. There are many Porcupines in that Country, which they hunt with Dogges by the Hunters: and they contracting the felles with great furie, call their prickly Quills against the men and the Dogges, and wound them. That Nation hath a particular language: the shepherds therefore abide in the Mountaynes, hauing made Caves for their Habitation. You goe hence three dayes Journey without any Habitation at all, to the Province *Balcia*.

Balcia is a *Mahometan* Province, and hath a peculiar Language. Their Kings who succeed one another by hereditarie right, are reported to haue deuiſed their descent from *Alexander* the Great, and from the Daughter of *Darius*, and are called *Zucarnum*, which is to say, *Alexander*. There are found the *Bullaffs*, faire precious stones, and of great value. No man without danger of life, dare either digge such stones, or carrie them out of the Country, but with the licence and consent of the King: for all those stones are the Kings, and hee sendeth them to whom hee pleaseth, either for a Present, or payment of Tribute: hee exchangeth also many for Gold and Silver. And this hee doth lest the stone whereof there is such plenty should become vile and cheaper. Other Mountaynes also in this Province yeeld stones, whereof the best Azure is made, the like whereof is not found in the World. The Mines also yeeld Silver great store, and Brasse and Lead. The Country is selfe is very cold. It hath many Hories, and those excellent, great, and swift, which haue so hard and strong hooves on their feet, that they need no Iron Shooes, although they runne through Rocks. It is said that not long since there were Hories of the Race of *Alexanders* *Bucephalus*, all with his forehead-marke, in the possession only of the Kings Vncler, who was slaine for denying the King to haue of them: whereupon his Widow in angry spite destroyed the whole Race. There are also excellent Falcons. The soyle thereof beareth notable Wheat, and Barley without huskes, and Oyle made of Nuts and Sulphure, which is like to faze (red, more fauourable than other Oyle. There are itrair passages and many forme places. The men are good Archers and Huntsmen, clothed with beards skinned. The hills are steep and high, large plaines, Rivers amongst the ruptures; and if any haue an Ague with abiding two or three dayes on the hills hee recovereth, which *Marco* proceed in himselfe after a yeares sicknesse. The women in the skirts of their Garments put fixtie or eightie yards of Cotton, the greatest Bumie Boncer (seeming the goodliest Lasse.

Large pleasant Country.

A Defart, *Sapurgan*, Pompons.

Starys, *Balach*, *percha* in *Sajsa*.

Thaicar, Salt-mountaynes.

Scaffem.

Porcupines, *Parsi* *Gin*.

Balcia.

Couragious Hories, and vnclothed. *Bucephalus* breed.

Balsia

The Prouince *Balsia* is ten dayes Iourney toward the South, distant from the Countrey *Balaxiam*. And the Countrey it selfe is very hot: whereby it cometh to passe, that the people are browner: they are expert Magicians, and continually attend thereto. They haue a peculiar Language: and wear Golden and Silver Eare-rings with Pearles and Stones artificially wrought in them. They eat fish and Rice, and are Idolaters, craftie and cruell.

Chesmar

The Prouince *Chesmar* is five dayes Iourney distant from *Balsia*. The Inhabitants thereof haue a peculiar Language, and are Idolaters: beyond all others cunning Incubansers, forcing their Idols to speake, and darkning the day. They are the chiefeft Idolaters, and Idols are defended from them. From thence you may go to the *Indian Sea*. The men and women are browner, not wholly blacke, the heat some-what tempered: their food is fish and Rice, yet are they exceeding leane. There are many Cities and Townes there. Their King is tributarie to none. There are certaine Heremites in this Prouince, who in Monasteries and Cels worship Idols, honouring their Gods with great abstinence of meate and drinke, and oblerue great Chastitie, are very cautious not to offend their Idols, and lue long. Of these are many Abbeyes, and the people giue them great reuerence. The men of this Prouince kill no quicke creatures, and shed no blood: and if they will eat flesh, it is necessary that the *Saracens* which lue amongst them, kill the creature. Corall is here sold dearer then any where. Wee will leaue the way to *India* now and returne to *Balaxiam* and direct our way towards *Cutay*, betwixt the East and North-east. Beyond *Balaxiam* is a certaine Riuer, whereon stand many Cattles and Villages belonging to the King of *Balaxiam*: Brother: and after three dayes Iourney is the Prouince *Uochan*, hauing in length and breadth three dayes Iourney. The Inhabitants thereof haue a peculiar Language, and worship *Mahumet*. They are good Liuers, stout Warriours, and good Hunters: for that Countrey aboundeth with wild beasts. If you depart hence betwixt the North-east and the East, you must ascend for three whole dayes together, vntill you come vnto an exceeding high Mountayne, then the which, there is said to be none higher in the World. There also betwene two Mountaynes, a great Lake is found, whence by a Plaine runneth a very goodly Riuer, nere vnto which are excellent Pastures, for that in them a leane Horse, or an Ox, may be fattened in ten dayes. There is also plentie of wild beasts: especially, exceeding great wild sheepe, hauing hornes some of them five palmes or fass long, of the which they make diuers kinds of vessels. That Plaine contayneth twelue dayes Iourney in length, and is called *Pamer*: nor is there any humane Habitation there, and Travellers must carry victuals with them. No Bird also appeareth there, by reason of the cold, and (it is reported for a Miracle) if fire be kindled there, it is not so bright nor so effectual to boyle any thing, as in other places. From hence the way leadeth forrie dayes further, betwene the East and the North-east through the Mountaynes, Hills, and Valleys, in the which many Riuers are found, but no humane habitation, nor any herbe: and the Countrey it selfe is called *Balero*. Habitations of men are fene in the top of those high Mountaynes, but such as are fauagie, wicked, Idolstrous, who lue by hunting, and are clothed with the skinnes.

Vochan

Highest mountayne

Pamer

Bilao

Cafchar

Carbas

Wennes by bad waters happen also in the dyet, eatam the nam ota Prouince and chiefe Citie.

After this you come to the Prouince *Cafchar*, which is tributarie to the great *Cham* and a *Mahumetan*. In it are Vines, greene Gardens, fruitfull trees, Cotton, Flaxe, and Hempe, and a fertile soyle. The Inhabitants haue a peculiar Language, and are Merchants, and Artificers; who are so courteous, that they eat that which is bad, and drinke worse. Some *Nestorian Christians* are found there, who also haue their Churches. The Countrey inlargeth it selfe five dayes Iourney.

Samarcan is a great and famous Citie in that Countrey, where are goodly Gardens and a fertile Plaine. It is subiect to the Nephew of the Great *Cham*. In it the *Christians* dwell with the *Saracens*, whence little agreement is betwixt them. It is reported, that in this manner a Miracle happened, the brother of Great *Cham*, named *Zugaius*, gouerned that Countrey, about one hundred yeares agoe, being persuaded to become a Christian, the *Christians* through his fauour built a Church, in honour of *Saint Iohn Baptist*, with such cunning that the whole Rooft thereof, was supported by one Pillar in the midst, vnder which was set a square stone, which by reason of their Loyd was taken from a building of the *Saracens*. *Zugaius* some time succeded after his death in the Kingdome, but not in the faith: from whom the *Saracens* obteyned that his Christians should be compelled to restore that stone. And when they offered a sufficient valuable price, the *Saracens* refused to receive any other composition then the stone. But the Pillar lifted vp it selfe, that the *Saracens* might take away their stone, and go continueth.

Departing againe from this Citie, you come into the Prouince *Charchan*, about five dayes Iourney in length. This Prouince hath plentie of all victuals, being subiect to the Dominion of the Nephew of Great *Cham*. The Inhabitants worship *Mahumet*, yet among them certaine *Nestorian Christians* dwell. They are great Artificers, and haue most of them great legges, and a great Wenne or Bunch in the throat, by reason of the waters which they drinke.

The Prouince *Cotam* followeth betwene the East and the North-east. It is subiect to the Dominion of the Nephew of Great *Cham*, and hath many Cities and Townes. The chiefe Citie thereof is called *Cotam*. The Prouince is extended eight dayes Iourney in length. There is no want therein of any thing, appertayning to the maintenance of life. It hath plentie of Cotton,

ten, Flaxe, Hempe, Corne, and Wine. But the people are not warlike, yet good Artificers and Merchants. They acknowledge *Mahumet*.

Proceeding further through the same Countrey, you meet with the Prouince *Peim*, extended *Peim*, five dayes Iourney in length. It is subiect to Great *Can*, and hath many Cities and Cattles. The chiefe Citie thereof is called *Peim*, nere which runneth a Riuer, wherein precious stones are found, to wit, Iasper stones and Chalcedonie. The Inhabitants of this Prouince, that when any *humet*, and are Artificers and Merchants. There is a custome in this Prouince, that when any married man goeth into another place and returneth not home within twentie dayes, it shall be lawfull for the Wife to marrie another Husband, and the men also whereof they goe doe in the like. All those Prouinces aforesaid, to wit, *Cafchar*, *Cotam*, *Peim*, to the Citie of *Lop*: are in the bounds of Great *Turkie*.

Carcan is subiect to the *Tartars*, the name of the Prouince and chiefe Citie, it hath many Cities and Cattles. Many precious stones are found there in the Rueters, especially Iaspers and Chalcedonies, which Merchants carrie euen to *Ouchback* to sell and make great gain. From *Peim* to this Prouince, and quite thorow it also, it is all Sand, with many bad waters and few good. When any Arme passeth through this Prouince, all the Inhabitants thereof with their Wives, Children, Cartell, and all their household stuffe, the two dayes Iourney into the sands, where they know bad waters are, and fly there: and carrie their Come thither also to hide it in the sands after Haruest for like teares. The wind doth so deface their steps in the sand, that their Enemies cannot find out their way. Departing from this Prouince, you are to trauell five dayes Iourney thorow the sand, where no other water almost then that which is bitter is to be found, vntill you come vnto the Citie named *Lop*.

Lop is a great Citie, from whence is the entrance of a great Defart, called also *Lop*, seated betwene the East and the North-east. The Inhabitants are *Mahumetans*, subiect to the Great *Can*. In it Merchants who desire to passe ouer the Defart, cause all necessities to be provided for them. And when victuals beginne to faile in the Defart, they kill the Ases and Camels and eat them. They most willingly vnderstand, because they are fustigued with little meate and beare great burthens. They must provide victuals for a month to suffice it ouer: thwart for to goe the length, would aske a yeares time. They goe thorow the sands and barren Mountaynes, and daily find water, yet is it sometimes so little, that it can scarcely suffice fittie or one hundred men with their beasts: and in three or foure places the water is salt and bitter: the rest (which are eight and twentie) good. In it are neither beasts nor birds. They say that there dwell many spirits which cause great and mercurious Illusions to Travellers to make them perill. For if any fly beind that he cannot see his company, he shall be called by name, and to going out of the way is lost. In the night they heare the noyse as it were of a company, which taking to be theirs they perill likewise. Other apparances as of their companions, or of enemies haue caused some to miscarrie. Comforts of Muscical Instruments are sometimes heard in the Ayre, likewise Drummes, and noyses of Armes. They goe therefore nere together, hang Bells on their beasts neckes, and let markes if any fly.

Hauing passed ouer the Defart, you come vnto the Citie *Sachin*, betwixt the East and North-east, subiect to the Great *Can*, in the Prouince of *Tangub*, where among the Worshippers of *Mahumet*, a few *Nestorian Christians* are found. Many Idolaters are also there, who haue their proper Language. The Inhabitants of this Citie, lue not of Merchandize, but the fruits of the Earth. This Citie hath many Monasteries, consecrated to diuers Idols, in the which many Sacrifices are offered, and great reuerence. And when a Sonne is borne vnto a man, he presently commendeth him to some Idoll, and in honour thereof, nourisheth a sheepe that yeete in his house, which he prentendeth before it together with his Sonne, the next Festival Day of that Idoll, with many Ceremonies and great reuerence. Afterward the flesh of the sheepe is boyled, and left to long before the Idoll, while their Prayers are fulfilled, which they make for the consolation of their Sonne, and the Idoll hath ficked out the favour of the meate, after which their friends all his kindred being gathered together, eat that flesh at home with great deuotion and ioy: but orderly keepe the bones in caruey vessels. The Priests haue the heete, head, inward, skinnie, and some part of the flesh for their fare. In celebrating the Funerals of such as were of esteeme, the dead bodies are burned after this manner. The kindred fend for the Astrologers, and tell them what yeare, month, day, and houre, hee who dyed was borne: who perceiving the constellation, declare the day when hee is to be burned: so that when the Planet sits not, they refuse the dead bodie sometimes seuen dayes, and sometimes fixe monethes, preparing a Cheft for it at home, and ioyning the fleshes together with such cunning Art, that no think can suffice forth. They also imbalme the bodie it selfe with Spices, and couer the Cheft fairly painted with a costly cloth: and euer day that the dead corp is kept at home, at the houre of Dinner, a Table is prepared nere the Cheft, setting wine and meate thereon for the space while one might well eat a meale-meal, supposing that the soule of the dead, feedeth of the fauour thereof. The Astrologers sometime forbid to carrie it forth at the chiefe gate, pretending fume distastful flammes thereto, and cause them to carrie it another way, and sometimes brake the

wall which is opposite to that place which the Planet makes more luckie; for otherwise the spirits departed would be offended and hurt of the house. And if any such evil happen, they ascribe it to the dead thus wronged. When the bodie is carryed through the Cite to be burned without, wooden Cottages are erected in the way, with a porch covered with Silkes, in which they lay the bodie, and let before it Bread, Wine, and Fleish, and Delicate Cates, supposing the spirit to be refreshed therewith, which must be presently present at the burning of the bodie.

And when they come vnto the place of burning, they write and paint vpon Papers made of the barkes of Trees, the Images of Men and Women, Horses, Camels, Money, and Garments. (All the Instruments of the Cite meane-while reforming) all which are burned together with the dead bodie. For they say, that that dead man shall haue to many Men-servants, and May-servants, Cattell, and Money, in another life, as resemblances, and Pictures were burned together with him, and shall perpetually live in that honour and riches.

The Province *Chammul* lyeth in the great Province *Tanguh*, subiect to the Great *Can*, having many Cities and Townes: the chiefe Cite is called *Chammul*. The Land butteth vpon two Deserts, to wit, the great Defart, whereof wee haue spoken before, and a certaine other, that is lesse of three dayes Iourney. It aboundeth with such things, which a man needeth for the sustentation of life. The Inhabitants are Idolaters, haue a peculiar Language, and seeme to be borne for none other purpose, but to apply themselves to sporting, singing, dancing, writing and reading after their fashion, playing on Instruments, and to giue themselves delight. When a Traveller passing by, turneth into any mans house for entertainment, the Master of the Family receiveth him with great joy, and commandeth his Wife and all the Family, that they as long as he will abide with them, they him in all things. In the meane times, he departeth not to returne so long as the Guest remaineth in his house. And meane-while hee lyeth with the Wife, Daughter, and the rest, as with his owne Wives. The women of that Country are beautilfull, and readie to obey all those Commandements of their Husbands, who are so beloved with this folly, that they thinke it a glorious thing for them, and acceptable to their Idols, for which they prosper with plenty of all things. *Mangu Can* having heard of this folly, commanded them to obtaine this detestable custome no longer; which they did about three yeares, and then seeing not their wanted fertility, and troubled with some Domestical crosses, sent Ambassadors to the *Can*, and instantly entreated, that he would renouke to grieuous an Edict, and not abolish that Tradition which they had received from their Elders. The *Can* answered, seeing you desire your reproch and shame, let it be granted you. Goe and doe herein after your wont. The Messengers returning with this Answer, brought great joy to all the people: this custome is observed by that people vntill this day.

After the Province of *Chammul*, followeth the Province of *Chinchintalar*, which on the North boundeth vpon the Defart, and is sixteene dayes Iourney in length, subiect to the Dominion of Great *Cham*. It hath Cities and many Castles. The people thereof are diuided into three Sects. Some few acknowledge Christ, and these are *Nestorians*: others worship *Molochem*, the third, adore Idols. In this Province there is a Mountaine where are Mines of Steele and Andancium, and also Samanders, of the which cloth is made, which, if it be cast into the fire, cannot be burned. But that cloth is made of the Earth in this manner (as one of my companions, a *Turke* named *Carsaph*, a man indid with singular industrie, informed me) who had die charge of the Minerals in that Province. A certaine Minerall of Earth is found in that Mountaine, which yieldeth threads, not vnlike to Wooll, which being dried in the Sonne, are beuiled in a brazen Morter, and afterward washed, and whatsoever earthy substance cleaueth vnto them, is taken away: lastly, those threads so purged and made small, are spunne like other Wooll, and woven into cloth. And when they will whiten those clothes, they cast them into the fire for an houre, and then they are taken out of the flaming fire vnhurt, whiter then Snow. After the like manner they cleane them, when they haue taken any spots: for no other washing is added to them, besides the fire. But touching the Salamander, the Serpent, which is reported to live in the fire, I could search out nothing in the East Countries. They say, there is a certayne *Naykman* at *Rome*, wouen of the Salamander, wherein the Handkerchiefe of the Lord is kept wrapped vp, which a certayne King of the *Tartars* sent vnto the Bishop of *Rome*.

This Chapter is in the *Ramou* of the *Italian* Cote which I haue printed 1599) yet is mentioned there among the Provinces of *Tanguh*.

And I haue not a little troubled in Travelling to find this Salamander, but haue found not a little in the Middle of my shroues, which makes mee throw away that conceit. *Succur*. *Rubarbe*. Of this *Ramou* hath been a large discourse from the Relation of *dugei* *stereu*, which haue beene in the parts.

After the Province of *Chammul*, followeth the Province of *Chinchintalar*, which on the North boundeth vpon the Defart, and is sixteene dayes Iourney in length, subiect to the Dominion of Great *Cham*. It hath Cities and many Castles. The people thereof are diuided into three Sects. Some few acknowledge Christ, and these are *Nestorians*: others worship *Molochem*, the third, adore Idols. In this Province there is a Mountaine where are Mines of Steele and Andancium, and also Samanders, of the which cloth is made, which, if it be cast into the fire, cannot be burned. But that cloth is made of the Earth in this manner (as one of my companions, a *Turke* named *Carsaph*, a man indid with singular industrie, informed me) who had die charge of the Minerals in that Province. A certaine Minerall of Earth is found in that Mountaine, which yieldeth threads, not vnlike to Wooll, which being dried in the Sonne, are beuiled in a brazen Morter, and afterward washed, and whatsoever earthy substance cleaueth vnto them, is taken away: lastly, those threads so purged and made small, are spunne like other Wooll, and woven into cloth. And when they will whiten those clothes, they cast them into the fire for an houre, and then they are taken out of the flaming fire vnhurt, whiter then Snow. After the like manner they cleane them, when they haue taken any spots: for no other washing is added to them, besides the fire. But touching the Salamander, the Serpent, which is reported to live in the fire, I could search out nothing in the East Countries. They say, there is a certayne *Naykman* at *Rome*, wouen of the Salamander, wherein the Handkerchiefe of the Lord is kept wrapped vp, which a certayne King of the *Tartars* sent vnto the Bishop of *Rome*.

After you are habited in this Province, you go betwix the East and North-east ten dayes Iourney, in which few Habitations or things remarkable are found; and then you come to the Province *Succur*, which hath many Habitations and Townes. The chiefe Cite thereof is called *Succur*. In this Province, among many Idolaters, a few Christians are found: they are subiect to the Great *Can*. They apply not themselves to Merchandize, but live of the fruits of the Earth. The best *Rubarbe* is found in great quantitie in this Province, which is carryed thence by *Troges*, by reason of venomous herbs, which in their beards should eate them: those of their hooles, but those of that Country know and auoyd them. The general name of this Province, and of the two following is *Tanguh*.

Campion is a great Cite, the principall in the Countrey of *Tanguh*. In it are *Christian* Churches (which haue three great and faire Churches, *Mohometan*, and *Idolaters*. The *Idolaters* haue many Monasteries, where they worship their Idols. Moreover, those Idols are made either of stone, wood, or clay, some ouer-layed with gold, and very artificially wrought. Among these, some are so great, that they containe ten paces in length, fastned to the earth, as if they lay vpright, neere vnto the which, little Idols are placed, which seeme to giue reuerence to the greater, and both are much reuerenced. The Religious men seeme to lue more honestly then other *Idolaters*, abstayning from certaine things, as Lecherie, and other things; although Lecherie seemes no grieuous sinne: for they say, if a woman seeks for kine to a man, he may vie but more with sinne, but not, if he seeks first to her. They reckon the whole circuit of the yere by 10 Moones. In these Moones, they observe five, or foure, or three dayes, wherein they kill no Beasts, or Bird, nor eat Fleish (as is the vse with vs on Friday, Saturday, and Vigils.) The Lay-men marrye twentie or thirtie wives, as they are able to maintayne: yet the first is accounted the moste worthe, and more legitimate. The husband receiveth no dowrie from the wife, but hee himselfe assigneth conuenient dowrie, in Cattell, seruants, or money, according to his abilitie. If the wife become hatefull to the husband, it is lawfull for him to diuorce her from him, as he pleaseth. They take for wives their Kind-women or Mothers in law. *Marus*, together with his Father, and Vnde, remayned a yeres space in this Cite, for the dispatch of certaine affaires. From the Cite *Campion*, you goe twelue dayes Iourney to the Cite *Egina*, bordering vpon the 30 fandy Defart towards the North, countreyed in the Province of *Tanguh*. Many Camels are there, and many other beasts, and Hawkes of diuers kinds, The Inhabitants are Idolaters, liuing of the fruits of the Earth, forbearing merchandize.

Campion is a great Cite, the principall in the Countrey of *Tanguh*. In it are *Christian* Churches (which haue three great and faire Churches, *Mohometan*, and *Idolaters*. The *Idolaters* haue many Monasteries, where they worship their Idols. Moreover, those Idols are made either of stone, wood, or clay, some ouer-layed with gold, and very artificially wrought. Among these, some are so great, that they containe ten paces in length, fastned to the earth, as if they lay vpright, neere vnto the which, little Idols are placed, which seeme to giue reuerence to the greater, and both are much reuerenced. The Religious men seeme to lue more honestly then other *Idolaters*, abstayning from certaine things, as Lecherie, and other things; although Lecherie seemes no grieuous sinne: for they say, if a woman seeks for kine to a man, he may vie but more with sinne, but not, if he seeks first to her. They reckon the whole circuit of the yere by 10 Moones. In these Moones, they observe five, or foure, or three dayes, wherein they kill no Beasts, or Bird, nor eat Fleish (as is the vse with vs on Friday, Saturday, and Vigils.) The Lay-men marrye twentie or thirtie wives, as they are able to maintayne: yet the first is accounted the moste worthe, and more legitimate. The husband receiveth no dowrie from the wife, but hee himselfe assigneth conuenient dowrie, in Cattell, seruants, or money, according to his abilitie. If the wife become hatefull to the husband, it is lawfull for him to diuorce her from him, as he pleaseth. They take for wives their Kind-women or Mothers in law. *Marus*, together with his Father, and Vnde, remayned a yeres space in this Cite, for the dispatch of certaine affaires. From the Cite *Campion*, you goe twelue dayes Iourney to the Cite *Egina*, bordering vpon the 30 fandy Defart towards the North, countreyed in the Province of *Tanguh*. Many Camels are there, and many other beasts, and Hawkes of diuers kinds, The Inhabitants are Idolaters, liuing of the fruits of the Earth, forbearing merchandize.

The yeres of the Moone. Their many wives.

Egina.

§. IIII.

Of *Carchoran*, the Originall proceedings and exploits of the *Tartars*; of *Priest* *Ion* and his descendants. *Customes of the Tartars*. Of *Bargu*, *Erginul*, *Xandu* the *Cans* Cite and Palace; of *Muske*: of *strange Sorcerers*, and *austrer Monkes*.

30 **A**U the Provinces and Cities aforesaid, *Saccin*, *Chemul*, *Chinchintalar*, *Succur*, *Campion*, and *Egina*, pertaine to *Tanguh*. Having passed ouer the foresaid Defart, you come vnto the Cite *Carchoran*, which is in circuit three miles, strongly rampired with earth, for they want stone. Neere it is a great Castle, and in it the Gouernours faire Palace. This was the first place neere which in old times the *Tartars* assembled themselves. And now we will declare how they began to raigne. They dwelt in the North parts, to wit, in *Carza* and *Bargu*, where are many and great Playnes without Cities and Townes, but goodly Pastures, Riuer and waters. They had not a Prince of their Nation, but payed tribute to a certayne great King, named as I haue heard, in their language *Vman*, which in some mens opinion is our tongue signifieth, *Preceptor* (or *Father*) *Idol*. To him the *Tartars* gaue yerely the tenths of all their beaulls. In proceesse of time the *Tartars* so encreased in multitudes, that *Vman* was afraid of them, and thought to disperse them into seuerall parts of the world. And therefore when any rebelled hee sent three or foure of an hundred of the *Tartars* into those parts, to diminish their power; and the like he did in his other occasions, deputing some of their principalls to that purpose. They seeing their ruine intended and loth to be separated one from another, went from the places where they dwelt to the Defart towards the North, where by remoteness they might be safe and denyed to *Vman* their wanted Tribute.

It hapned that about *An* 1162. the *Tartars* hauing continued some time in those parts, chose a King among themselves, a wife and valiant man, named *Cingis Can*. He began to reigne with such iustice, that he was beloved and feared of all as a God rather then a Prince, in so much that his fame brought all the *Tartars* in all parts to his subiection. And hee seeing himselfe Lord of so valiant men would needs leaue those Defarts, and commanding them to provide Bowes and other weapons, began to subdue Cities and Provinces, in which *Conquists* hee placed such iust Gouernours, that the people were not offended. The chiefe of them hee carried along with him with great prouisions and gifts. Seeing therefore that he was aduanced to goe glorie, and power, he sent Embassadors politely to *Vman* to intreat, that he would beflow his daughter vpon him to be his wife, which he taking in very full part, answered with indignation, and rejecting the Embassadors of *Cingis*, laid, doth my seruant demand my daughter? Get ye out of my sight and tell your Master, if hee euer make such demand againe, I will make him die a miserable death. But King *Cingis*, leuying a great Army, went forth with an hostile minde, and incamped in a certayne great Plains named *Tondou*, sending vnto the King, and signifying vnto him, that he should defend himselfe. But he, coming with a mightie Army, descended to the Playnes and pitched his Tents within ten miles of the Campe of the *Tartars*. Then *Cingis* commanded his Astrologers to shew him, what event and successe the battell should haue. They cutting a Reed length-

Carchoran, vide *Tabl. of Carchoran*. The originall of the Dominion of the *Tartars*.

The fruit of a wide gouernment.

Cingis goeth forth against *Tondou*. *Tondou*. Hee consulted with the Magicians.

lengthwise in two parts; set the pieces themselves into the ground, and wrote vpon the one, *Cingis*; and on the other, *Vomac*; and laid vnto the King: In the meane space, while wereade the Coniurations, it shall come to passe by the Lords power, that these two parts of the Reed shall fight together: And whole part shall ascend vpon the other, that King shall obtayne victorie in the battell. The multitude therefore running together to behold that spectacle, the Altrogers beganne to numble their prayers, and reade their incantments, when presently the parts of the Reed being moued, fought together, vntill at length the part of *Cingis* ascended vpon the part of *Vomac*. Which being seene, the *Tartars* stood of the figure victorie, were encouraged to the battell, and *Vomac* being layne, the Victorie, and *Cingis*, and *Vomac* daughter remayned to *Cingis*. *Cingis* reigned sixe yeeres after this, in the which hee got many Prouinces: and lastly, when hee endeouored to winne a certaine Cattle, called *Thaigun*, and came somewhat neere, being shot in the knee with an Arrow, he died, and was buried in the Mountaine *Altai*.

The first King of the *Tartars*, was called *Cingis*; the second, *Cy Can*; the third, *Bathy Can*; the fourth, *Esi Can*; the fifth, *Mangu Can*; the sixth *Cublai Can*, whose power is greater then all his Predecessors, hauing inherited theirs, and adding by Conquest in manner the rest of the World. For hee liued neere fiftie yeeres in his Government. The name *Can* signifies Emperor. All the great *Cans*, and Princes of that blood of *Cingis*, are carried to the Mountaine of *Altai* to be buried, whereto they take a deliuous one hundred dayes Iourney from it. And they which carrie the Corps to the buriall, kill all those that they meet in the way, saying: goe, and frine our Lord the King in another life. They kill also the better Horses. When the bodies of great *Cham Mangu*, the Predecessor of *Cham Cublai*, was brought vnto the Mountaine *Altai* to be buried, the Souldiers accompanying the funeral, are reported to haue layne about ten thousand men, vpon the foresaid occasion.

The *Tartars* women are most faithfull to their husbands. Adulterie is a great shame with them: yet it is accounted lawfull, and honest, that euery one may marrie as many wiues as he is able to maintayne, although the first be iudged to be more principall and honorable then the rest. These liue together in the same house without one ill word, in admirable concord, make their merchandises, buy, and sell, and chaffer all things necessarie to their husbands and households, the men medling with nothing but their hunting, hawking, and things pertaining to Armes. They haue the best Falcons in the World, and so they haue of Dogs. They liue onely of Fleish and Milke, and what they take in hunting. They eat Horses, Camels, Dogs, if fat, and drinke Mares milke, called *Chemurs*, or vint, that it is like white wine. If the father dies, the sonne may haue all his wiues except his owne mother and sisters. So, the brother being dead, it is lawfull for the brother who remayneth alieue, to marrie the widow of the brother. The husbands receiue no dowrie from the wiues, but they themselves assigne dowry to the wiues, and their mothers. Through the multitude of wiues, the *Tartars* haue many children. Nor is the multitude of Wiues very burdennome vnto the *Tartars*, seeing they gaue much through their labours. Besides, they are very carefull for the gouernement of the familie, and preparation of food: and with no lesse care, execute the other duties of the house. But the men apply themselves wholly to hunting, fowling, and exercise of Armes. The *Tartars* nourish many herds of Oxen, Rocks of Sheepe, and other Beasts, and Cattell, and abide with them in places of Pasture, in the Summer time, in the Mountaines, and colder places, wher they finde Pasture, and Wood: but in the Winter, they remove vnto the hotter Countreys, where they finde Pasture for their Cattell: and goe forth-on two or three monthes together. Their houses are couered with thickes and felts, ordinarily round, which they carrie with them on Carts or Waggones of foure wheeles, whither soeuer they goe. For they can find and extend them, let them vp, and take them downe: and they turne the doore of them alwaies to the South. They haue also neat Carts of two wheeles couered with Felt, so well that rayne cannot pierce them) drawne by Oxen, and Camels, wherein they carrie their wiues, children, and necessarie household-stuffe with them, and defend them from the iniurie of foule weather, and rayne.

The *Tartars*, if they be rich, are clothed with Sables, Ermins, and Cloth of gold, and all their furniture is costly. Their Armes are Bowes, Swords, Polaxes, and some Lances, but they can best vse their Bowes, whereto they are vied from their childhood. They are haue, valorous, cruell, will continue two dayes and nights on horse-backe armed: exceeding patient of difficulties, and exceeding obedient to their Lords. Their Callio are ardent.

The Law and Faith of the *Tartars* is this. They say, that there is a great God, high and heavenly, of whom with daily incense they desire good vnderstanding and health. They haue another, which they call *Natigay*, which is like an Image couered with Felt, or some other things, which euery one hath in his house. To this God they make a wife and children, placing the wiues Image at the left hand, and the representations of children before his face. This they call, The God of earthly things, which keepeth their Children, and their Beasts, and their Corne: and is of great reuerence. Before they eat themselves, they anoint the mouthes of the Images with the fat of the foddren Fleish, and they call the brot out of doores, in honour of other

Spirits.

Spirits, saying, that their God with his familie haue had their part; and after they eate and drinke at pleasure.

If the Iohne of any *Tartar* die, who hath not yet bene married, and also the daughter of another die vnmarrried, the parents of both the deceased parties meet together, and make a marriage between the dead: and making a daughter in writing, of that contract, they paine men, and women for seruants, Horses and other creatures, with clothes of all sorts and monies, in paper, and burne them together with the writing of contract: by the fumes wherof, they say that all diuelish things are carried to their children in another world, where they are married, and the fathers and mothers think they are ioynd together through such a bond of affinitie, as if their marriages had bene celebrated, while the married couple yet liued.

When the *Tartars* goe to warre, their Prince conducteth about one hundred thousand Horfe, appointing Heads our tens, hundreds, thousands, ten thousands, by which orderly disbursement, commands are easily effected. Euery hundred is called a *Tuc*; ten, a *Toman*. When they set forth, they fend out men euery way, as Scouts that no Enemy may assault them vnperceiued. Of Horfe and Mares, there are for euery man about eighteen. They carrie also their like Felt houses, vnder the which they shelter themselves in the time of rayne. When there falls out some important employment, they will ride ten dayes together without victuals boyled, and lue of the blood of their Horses, cutting a vein, and sucking it. They haue Milke dried like Pailie, which they make, boyling the Milke, and taking the Creame which swims on the top, put in another vessel, and cleere it make Butter: After, they let the Milke in the Sunne, and drie it; and when they got in the Arme, carrie ten pounds thereof, and euery morning take halfe a pound, and put it into a little Flaske or Bottle of leather, with as much water as he pleaseth: which while he rides, beats together: and this is his dinner. When they encounter with their Enemies, they ride here and there shooting, and sometimes make shew of flight, shooting as they flee, and finding the Enemies broken, reintegrate their forces, and pursue the victorie: hauing their Horses at command, with a figure to turne any way. But now the *Tartars* are mixed in diuers parts, and so are their falions.

They punish malefactors after this manner. If any steale a thing of small value, and hath not delerred to be depriued of life, he is taken then, taken with a Cudgell, or feauteneere, or feuten, or twenty, or thirty fenten, or forty and fenten, giving the strokes according to the measure and qualitie of the offence, and that vnto an hundred, some doe often times dye, through these strokes. But if any haue stolen an Horfe, or something, for the which hee deserveth ten dayes, he is cut asunder with a Sword in the middle: but if hee will redeeme his life, he shall restore the theft nine fold. Such as haue Horses, Oxen, or Camels, brand them with their markes, and lend them to the pastures without a keeper.

Leaving the Citie of *Caracorum*, and the Mountaine *Altai*, you come vnto the champaigne Country of *Bargu*, which extendeth it selfe Northwards about fixte dayes Iourney in length. The Inhabitants of those places are *Achacut*, and they are subiect to great *Chan*, vining the manners of the *Tartars*. They are wilde men, and eate the fleish of Beasts which they take by hunting, especially of Stagges, wherof they haue great plenty, and they make them for rams, that they may ride them. They want Corne and Wine. In the Summer they exercise great hunting and taking of wilde Beasts and Fowle, with the fleth wherof they may liue in the winter: For in Winter, as with fowle as other liuing creatures flee from thence, by reason of the exceeding and vnolerable cold of that Countrey. After the end of those dayes Iourney, you come vnto the Ocean, neere which is a Mountaine where *Astors*, and strange Falcons breed, which are caried thence vnto the Court of great *Chan*.

Here we must returne vnto the Citie *Campion*. If therefore you proceed further fixe dayes Iourney from the Citie *Campion* towards the East, (in the places lying in the middle, horrible voyces of Drulls are heard in the night time) you come to the Kingdome *Erginal*, in the Prouince of *Tangut*, subiect to the great *Chan*. In this Kingdome are many other Kingdomes which are Idolaters. There are some *Nighistan* Christians, and *Turkes*. There are many Cities and Castles, of which *Erginal* is chiefe. From hence, if you proceed further to the Southward, you may goe to the parts of *Cabai*, going Southward towards *Cathai*, there is a certaine famous Citie named *Cingay*, (the name also of the Prouince) tributarie vnto great *Chan*: contained in *Tangut*: the people are some Christians, some *Mahometans*, others Idolaters. They are also found wilde Oxen, neere as great as Elephants, very fat, hauing white and blacke hairy, short in other parts, and on the shoulders three palmes long, fine and white beyond filke: of which *Marco* brought home to *Venice* as a rare thing. Many also of these Oxen are tamed, and made to engender with tame Kine, and the breed of them are fitter for businesse then any other creatures, becaue great burthens are yoked vnto the plow, and doe twice as much as others. The best Muske in the world is found in this Prouince, and is of a goodly beast of the benefite of a Goat, whose grosse hayre like a Stagge, feet and tayle like a Gazelle but without hoines: it is white teete twice two above, and two beneath of the length of three fingers, fable, and white as towrie, and a faire haire to see to, when the Moone is at full, neere the naill vnder the belly there grows

White Ozen of the tigne, as to be, haue. The best Muske.

Hee vngin-
th the Ele-
me by warre.

Hee dieth with
the shot of an
Arrow.

Cy's an.
Cy's an.
Cy's an.

Cy's an.
Cy's an.
Cy's an.

Cy's an.
Cy's an.
Cy's an.

Cy's an.
Cy's an.
Cy's an.

Cy's an.
Cy's an.
Cy's an.

Cy's an.
Cy's an.
Cy's an.

Cy's an.
Cy's an.
Cy's an.

Cy's an.
Cy's an.
Cy's an.

Cy's an.
Cy's an.
Cy's an.

Cy's an.
Cy's an.
Cy's an.

Cy's an.
Cy's an.
Cy's an.

Cy's an.
Cy's an.
Cy's an.

Cy's an.
Cy's an.
Cy's an.

Cy's an.
Cy's an.
Cy's an.

Cy's an.
Cy's an.
Cy's an.

Cy's an.
Cy's an.
Cy's an.

Cy's an.
Cy's an.
Cy's an.

Cy's an.
Cy's an.
Cy's an.

Cy's an.
Cy's an.
Cy's an.

Cy's an.
Cy's an.
Cy's an.

Cy's an.
Cy's an.
Cy's an.

Cy's an.
Cy's an.
Cy's an.

Beastie prefer-
red to No-
bilitie and ri-
ches.
Feasants.

Egypcia.

Gog and Magog

The Citie Sin-
dhu.

Idia.
Caucasus.

Five forts of
Cranes.

Xandu.

Hunting with
Leopards.

A goodly
house of plea-
sure.

A soleme Sa-
crifice.

Mares milke.

to this beast an impostume or bladder full of blood, and at the full then they goe to hunt the said beasts and take away that swelling, which is dried in the Sunne, and is the best Muske: the flesh also is good to eat. Master *Merce* brought to *Venice* the head and feet of this beast dried. The men here of Merchandise and Artes, and have abundance of Corne: they are Idolaters, of a fat body and a little Nose, blacke haired, having no beard but foure hayres on their chin. The women are faire and white. And when the men desire to marry wives, they rather like the beautiful, then the noble or rich. Whereby it cometh often to passe, that a great and Noble man marryeth a poore wif, but beautiful, assigning dowrye to her mother there. This Province extendeth it selfe faine and twentie dayes journey in length, and is very fertile. In it are exceeding great Feasants, having traynes eight or ten handiuls long. Many other kindes of Birds are also found there, which have very goodly feathers, distinguished with diuers and excellent colours.

Proceeding further towards the East, after eight dayes journey, you meet with the Province *Egypcia*, in the which are many Cities and Castles, all still in *Tangutis*. The principall Citie is called *Calacia*. The Inhabitants thereof are Idolaters, there are three Churches of *Nestorian* Christians, and are subiect to the great *Chan*. In the Citie *Calacia*, Chamlets are made, wouen of white wooll and the layre of Camels, then the which, there are scarce any fairer found in the world.

Going to the East from the Province *Egypcia*, the way leadeth vnto the Province *Tenduch*, in the which are many Cities and Castles: where also *Presbyter Iohannes* vieth to abide, who now payeth tribute to great *Chan*. This King of that progenie of Priest *Iohn* is named *George*, and is a Priest and a Christian, and most of the people are Christians. All the Great *Chans*, after his death who was slaine in battell by *Cingis*, gaue their Daughters to those Kings to wife. This King *George* holds not all that Priest *Iohn* before held, and is the fourth of that progenie. There is a Nation there called *Argon*, more goodly men and fitter for Merchandise then the rest, descended of Idolaters and *Mahumetians*. There are also two Regions where they raigine, which in those parts are called *Og* and *Magog*, but they which dwell there call them *Yng* and *Mongul*: in *Yng* are *Gog* and in *Mongul* the *Tartars*. Riding East seauen dayes towards *Calacia*, are many Cities peopled with Idolaters, *Mahumetians*, and *Nestorians*. There is one Citie called *Sindhu*, where very faire and excellent Armes are made of diuers sorts, fit for Armes. In the mountaines of this Province are great Mines of silver, and manifold game of wilde beasts, and the Countrey of the mountaine is called *Idia*. Three dayes journey distant from the foresaid Citie, standeth another Citie *Iangamur*, that is *White Lake*, wherein is a Palace, in which the great *Chan* most willingly remaineth, because there are many Lakes and riuers, many Swannes, and in the plaines, Cranes, Feasants, and Partridges, and store of other fowle. There are five sorts of Cranes there: some have black wings like Crows, others are white and bright, having their feathers full of eyes like Peacocks, but of a golden colour, the necke blacke and white very beautifull; a third sort of bignesse not vnlike ours; a fourth, little and very faire, intermingled with red and blew colours; the fifth, of a grizzell or gray colour, having red and blacke heads, and these are very great. And nere vnto this Citie is a certaine valley where many Cottages are, in the which 40 an exceeding number of Partridges is maintained, which are kept for the King, coming to lodge there for a time.

This Citie is three dayes journey Northward to the Citie *Xandu*, which the great *Chan* *Cublay* now raigining built; erecting there a marvellous and artificiall Citie of Marble and other stones, which abuteth on the wall on one side, and the midst of the Citie on the other. He included sixteen miles within the circuit of the wall on that side where the Palace abuteth on the Citie wall, into which none can enter but by the Palace. In this inclosure or Parke are goodly meadows, springs, riuers, red and fallow Deere, Fawnes carried thither for the Hawkes, (of which are there mewed about two hundred Gerfalcons which hee goeth once a weeke to see) and hee often vieth one Leopard or more, sitting on the Horfies, which hee leeth vpon the Stages 50 and Deere, &c. having taken the beast, giueth it to the Gerfalcons, and in beholding this spectacle hee taketh wonderful delight. In the middelt in a faire Wood hee hath built a royall House on pillars gilded and vermilied, on euery of which is a Dragon all gilt, which winneth his sayle about the pillar, with his head bearing vp the loft, as also with his wings displayed on both sides the couer all of Redd gilt and varnished, so that the rayne can doe it no iniurie, the feeds being three handiuls thicke and ten yards long, split from knot to knot. The house it selfe also may be sundred, and taken downe like a Tent and erected againe. For it is furnished, when it is set vp, with two hundred silken cords. Great *Chan* vieth to dwell there three months in the year, to wit, in Iune, Iuly, and August. On the eight and twentieth day of August, he departeth to make a soleme sacrifice. He hath an herd of white Horfies, and white Mares, about ten thousand of the milke whereof none may drinke except hee be of the progenie of *Cingis* *Can*, except one family, called *Boriat*, priuiledged hereto by *Cingis* for their valour. And these beasts as they goe vp and downe feeding are much reuerenced, nor dare any goe before them or hinder their way. The Astrologers or Sorcerers tell *Chan* that on the twentie eigh of the Moone of August, he

he should disperse that milke heere and there, for the honour of all spirits and his Idols, that they might be carefull preferers of all those things which he posseltheth.

There are two sorts of Idolaters, Sorcerers called *Thebels* and *Chesuir*, which in the midst of formes attend the Palace and suffer no rayne to fall theroon; which they make the people beleue comes to passe by their sanctitie: and therefore they goe loudly and regardless of the persons, neuer wathing nor combing themselves. They also have a horrible custome to dreffe and eat such as are condemned to death, but not those which dye naturally. They are called also *Bachis*, which is the name of their Order, as Friars Predicans or Minors with vs. They seeme by Magicke to doe what they list, when the great *Can* in his Hall sits at his Table, which is 10 eight yards high: and in the midst of the hall a good distance from the table is a great Cupboard of plate furnished: They caule that the peeces hall of Wine or Milke or other viands of themselves, fill the goblets without any hand touching them, and goe ten paces in the ayre into the great *Can* hand; and when he hath drunke, returne to their place. This they doe in the presence of any man, when their Lord commands. These *Bachis* also when they will make feasts to their Idols, goe to the *Can* and say: Sir, know that if our Idols be not honoured with Sacrifice, they will bring plagues to Corne and Beasts. And therefore wee pray you to giue the fish of so many Sheepe with blacke heads, and so many pounds of Incense and Lignum aloes, that we may make them due sacrifice and honour. This they spake not to him themselves, but by certaine Lords deputed to that Office, who spake to the *Can* and obtaine it. On the fraist day they 20 sacrifice the said beasts, and sprinkle the broath beere by the Idols.

They have great Monasteries some of the bignesse of a Citie, in some of which are about two thousand Monkes which seru Idols, sequestered from the Laitie in their shauing and garments. For they shau their heads and beards, and were a religious garment. There in the solemnities of their Idols sing with solemne songs and lights, some of them may marry. These are some of great abstinence called *Soyims*, leaue an austere life, for they ate nothing but Meale mingled with water till all the daye, and ate the braune without any sauce. These worship the Fire, and the men of other rules say that these which are so austere, are Hereticks against their Law, because they worship not Idols as they doe; and there are great differences betwixt them: and these marry not in any case. They shau their Head and Beard: they wear black hempen garments, and bright yellow. They sleepe in thicke Mats, and lue the surest life in the world.

§. V.

Of *CYBLAI CAN*, his Raigine and Aits, Magnificent feasts and Huntings, Court and Counsell. His Citie Cambala and glorious Palace.

40 **I**N this Booke I purpose to write of all the great and marvellous Aits, of the present *Can* called *Cublay Can*, which is in our Tongue *Lord of Lords*, the greatest Prince in peoples, Cities and Treasures, that euer was in the world. Hee being descended from the Progenie of *Cingis*, the first Prince of the *Tartars*, is the sixth Emperour of that Countrey, beginning to raigine in the year of our Lord 1256, being twentie seauen years old and ruling the people with great wisdom and grauitie. He is a valiant man, exercised in Armes, strong of bodie, and of a prompt minde for the performance of matters, before he attained to the dignitie of the Empire (which by his wisdom hee did against the will of his Brethren) hee often showed himselfe a valiant Soldier in the warres, and carried himselfe like a wifer and bold Captaine, then euer the *Tartars* had. But since hee swayeth the Kingdome, hee went but once into the Field, but sends his Sonnes, and other Captaines in expeditions. 50 In the year of our Lord 1286, his Vnde named *Naiman*, being thirtie years of age, and having the command of many people and Countreys, for that hee was able easily to bring together foure hundred thousand Horfe. Being puffed vp through youthfull vanitie, would now no longer be subiect, but would needs take away the Kingdome from his Lord *Cublay*, and sent to another great Lord named *Caydal*, Lord of the parts towards great *Turkie*, who was nephew of the Emperour *Cublay*, yet hated him, who yielding consent to Rebellion, promised to come in person with an hundred thousand Horfe.

Both of them began to gather Forces, which could not bee done so secretly but *Cublay* heard of it, and presently tooke order to set guard to the wayes that no iniurie might passe that way: and then assembled all the Forces within ten dayes journey of *Cublay* with great speed, 60 so that in twentie dayes, were gathered together three hundred & fixtie thousand Horfe, and one hundred thousand Foot, a great part of them Falconiers and men of his Household. With these hee made all haste day and night towards *Naimans* Countrey, where at the end of euentie five dayes hee arrived, altogether vnlooked for: and rested his men two dayes. Then hee called his

Astrolon.

Buriall without
the Citie.

Harlots of the
Suburbs.

The number of
the horse-men
of the Courtiers.
The Guard.

Solemne feasts.

The order of
them that sit
downe.

Therethrough
the Nobles
men that carry
dishes, cover
their mouths.
The ceremony
while the
King drinketh
Consorts of
Musick.

The birth day
of Cadiz.

New Moone
feast.

The presents
of the men of
Dignitie, sub-
iects to him
The like Gu-
is full-
fied by the
gold, as al the
New-yeares
days.

The twelve
Barons.

The payers of
donors Religi-
ous.

New-yeares day

The white co-
lours accom-
panied
New-yeares
gifts.

See Sir T. Roe
of the presents
to the Masell.
The Kings Es-
tablishment.

burned without the Suburbs, where the dead bodies of other sects are buried. And because a huge multitude of Sorcerers congregate alwayes there, they have about twentie five thousand Harlots in the Suburbs and in the Citie, and these have a Captain appointed over every hundred, and thousand; and one General; whose office is, that when Embassadors come, or such as have business with the *Can* whose charges he findeth, this Captain gieth every Embassador and every man of his family, change of women nightly at free cost: for this is the *Queanes* tribute. The Guards every night call those in prison which they finde walking late: and if they be found guilty they are beaten with Cudgels: for the *Backs* tell them that it is not good to sinned mans blood. But many die of those beatings.

The great *Can* hath in his Court twelve thousand Horse-men, which they call *Cassins*, faithful Souldiers of their Lord, who guard his person more for state then for fear. And four Captains have the charge of these, whereof every one commandeth three thousand, when one Captaine with three thousand Souldiers within the Palace, hath guarded the King for three days and nights, another Captaine with his Souldiers againe succedeth: and so throughout the whole yeare, this course of watching by course is observed.

When through occasion of any feastfull day hee keepeth a solemne Court, his Table being higher then the rest of the Tables, is set at the North part of the Hall, and his face is to the South, having the greater *Queene* on his left hand, to wit, his principall wife, and his Sonnes, and nephews, and they of the blood royall on his right. Yet their table is in a lower place, so that they leave touch the Kings feet with their heads: the rest of the eldest being higher then the rest. The Barons and Princes, sit in a lower place then that. Their wives also keep the like order, first the *Can* himself and his kinsmen, sit lower on the left hand, and after, those of the Lords and of every Captaine, and Noble-man, each in her degree and order. And the Emperor himselfe, while he sitteth at his table, may cast his eyes vpon all that feast with him in that Hall. There are not Tables for all to sit, but the greatest part of the Souldiers and Barons eate on Carpets. At all the doores stand two giantly fellows with Cudgels, to see that none touch the Threshold, which if hee doe they take his garments away; which he must redeme with so many blowes as shall be appointed, or else loie them. They which serve the King sitting at the Table, all of them cover their mouths with Silke, lest their breathing should by any meanes touch the Kings meat or drinke. And when he hath minde to drinke, the Damozell which giues it, goeth back three paces and kneeleth downe, and then the Barons and all the people kneele, and the Musicians sound their Instruments. There is no cause why I should write any thing concerning the meats which are brought to the Table, how dainty and delicate they are, and with what magnificence and pompe they are served in. All the *Tartars* observe this custom, to celebrate the Birth day of their Lord most honourably. The Festiual birth day of *Cadiz*, is kept the twentie eight of September, and this day hee accounteth more solemne, then any of the whole yeare, except the first of February, wherein they begin their yeare. The King therefore in his Birth day is clothed with most precious garment of Gold, and about two thousand Barons and Souldiers, are clothed of the same colour of gold (though of Silke stuffe) and a girle wrought with gold and silver, which is given them with a payre of shoes: some wear Pearles and Gemmes of great price, namely, the *Queens*, which are next to the *Can*: and these garments are not worn but on their three solemne Feasts according to the thirteen Moones of the yeare; all then clothed like Kings. This custom is also observed with the *Tartars*, that on the birth day of great *Chem*, all the Kings, Princes, and Nobles, which are subiect to his Dominion, should send presents vnto him, as to their Emperour. And they who desire to obtaine any place of Dignitie or office of him, offer their requests vnto twelve Barons appointed for this purpose, and what they decree, is all one, as if the Emperour himselfe had answered them. All people also, of what Faith or sect soever, whether *Christians*, or *Jews*, *Saracens*, or *Tartars*, and other *Pagans* are bound, seemly to call vpon their Gods, for the life, safetie, and prosperitie of Great *Can*.

On the day of the *Kalends* of February, which is the beginning of the *Tartars* yeare, great *Can* and all the *Tartars*, where soever they are, celebrate a very great and solemne Feast, and all sell men as women, desire to bee clothed in white Garments. For they beleue, that the white garment is a token of good lucke: Therefore that fortune might fauour them all the yeare, they wear white in the beginning of the yeare. Moreover the Rulers of Cities, and Governours of Provinces, mindfull of their duty, send vnto their Emperour on this day presents of Gold and Silver, Pearles and Precious stones, many white Cloathes, and other white things, and many Horles of a white colour: the rest of the *Tartars* at the beginning of the yeare, send white presents one to another. It is the custom of those which bring presents, if they can, of each to present nine times nine; as if they send Horles, to present nine times, that is a ghte one, and so of Horles, Cloaths, & other things, that sometimes he hath by this reckoning one hundred thousand number. Also at this good lucke, all the Elephants which the Emperour hath (five thousand in number) are brought vnto the Court, covered with Tapistrie, wherein the similitudes of diuers Beasts and Fowles are portrayed, carrying vpon their shoulders two Cheells full of golden and silver

Silver vessell. Many Camels also are brought, couered with fine Silken cloths, which bring other things, necessarie for the Court. And this day in the morning, all the Kings, Captaines, Barons, Souldiers, Physicians, Astrologers, Falconers, and the Governours of Provinces, and Armies, and other Officers of the Emperour, assemble in the great Hall before the King, and they who happen to have no place there, for the multitude of men, stand in another place where he may see them. All being placed in their order, and degree, one after another as it were some Prelate, and Priest, out with a loud voice, *Bow downe, and adore*. And presently all doe reverence, bending downe their foreheads to the earth. Then he sayth, *God preserve our Lord with long life and joy, and all answers, God grant*. Then he sayth, *God increase and advance his Empire, and preserve his Subiects in peace, good-will, and prosperitie*: and all answers, *God grant*. And thus they doe soate times. The adoration finished, the said Prelate goeth to an Altar richly adorned, on which is a red Table, wherein is written the name of the *Can*, and taking a Censer, and putting odoriferous Spices thereon, they perfume the Table and the Altar with great reverence, in the honour of great *Can*, and to returne to their places. After which, are offered the gifts wherof we have spoken; and then the Tables are prepared, and a most delicious Dinner held, eating and drinking with great joy with their wives, in manner before described. And lastly, a domesticall Lion is brought vnto the King, which lying at his feet, like a gentle Whelp, acknowledgeth his Lord.

In these three months, in which as we said before, the Emperour remayneth in the Citie of *Cambala*, to wit, in December, Ianuarie, and Februarie, all the Hunters which the Emperour hath in all Provinces, round about the Province of *Cashan*, apply themselves to hunting, and use all the greater wilde-beasts, to wit, Stags, Beeres, Roe-bucks, wilde Boares, Doeres, and such like, vnto their Governours: who (if they be content from the Emperour Court, let them hunt, thurte dayes long) send his letters taken, by Wayes, and Ships vnto the Emperour, having first bewailed them. But such as are forie dayes journey distant from his Court, send onely the skinned, which are necessarie for the making of Armour. Hee hath many Leopards, and Wolves for hunting, and many Lions also, greater then those which are in *Babylon*, as hee hath wherof, certaine little beames appeare of diuers colours, to wit, white, blacke, and red, and they are accommodated to catch Boares, Beeres, Stags, Roe-bucks, wilde Alles, and wilde Oxeen, and it is marvellous to see, the Lions ferocitie and dexteritie in the chase. Two Lions vie to be carried in one Wagon, when they goe to hunt, and with them a Dog, with which they are armed; and they carrie them on this fashion, because of their ferie and vnrulnede: and they must carrie them contrary to the wind; for else the beasts would fang them, and die. Hee hath many tame Eagles, which are so ferce, that they take Hares, Roe-bucks, Deere, and Foxes, among which fowles they feare not with great violence, to take vpon Wolves, and vexe them to death, that without labour and danger, they may be taken by him.

The great *Can* hath in his Court two which are brethren, one called *Bayem*, the other, *Mastars* called in the *Tartar* language, *Casai*; that is, Masters of the Game, which of either hath the charge of ten thousand men: they which are vnder one of them, are clothed in red; the other in skel-colour, alway when they hunt. These keepe diuers sorts of Dogs, to the number of five thousand, and Mastiffs and other. In hunting they goe with their people, one on the right, and the other on the left hand of the King; and they take vp to great a length of the Playne, that from one end to the other is a dayes journey, so that hee cannot escape them; and it is great pleasure when the *Can* goes in the midst, to see the Dogs follow Hares, Beeres, and other beasts. And these Brethren are bound by covenant, from the beginning of October to the end of March, as being to the Court, one thousand heads of beasts and birds, besides Quails, and fillets, which they can, in great proportion.

The month of March comming in, great *Can* departeth from the Citie of *Cambala*, and priuily Hawking, ceedeth North-eastward towards the Ocean distant thence two dayes journeyes, bringing with him about ten thousand Falconers, who have Falcons, Hawkes, Gerfalcons, and other kinds of Fowles of prey, fit for hawking. These Falconers disperse themselves by a hundred or two hundred in a Companie; and the birds that are taken, for the most part, are brought vnto the King, who by reason of his Court, sitteth in a wooden house, which two Elephants carrie, and the Kings are clothed with the skins of Lions, and within hanged with cloth of Gold, having with him his recreation, to see the choice Hawkes, and well known Courtiers; many Nobles in a Souldiers ride, who guard the King person. Also, when they see Pelicans, or Cranes, or other birds flying in the air, declare it to the Falconers which are neere vnto the King; and they, signifying the same vnto the King, vnto the Kings House, and let their Falcons and Hawkes flye, and the King sitting on his bed, beholdeth the passinge of the birds. Other ten thousand men allogg with the King, who in that hawking, runne hither and thither, by two and two, and make whither the Falcons and Hawkes flye, that are call from the fist, that (if need bee) they may helpe them. And these, in the *Tartar* Language, are called *Tasals*, that is to say, Watch-men or Markes-men, being skillfull in a certain kind of whistle, wherewith they call in the Hawkes that are flowne. Nor is it needfull, that the Falconer who let the Hawkes flye,

The office of the
Principal
Hunters.

Tame Leo-
pards, and
Lions.

Eagles
to be taken
by the fowles.

The Masters
of the Game.

recon. Falco-
ners.

the Kings
carrie, and
the Kings

the Kings
carrie, and
the Kings

the Kings
carrie, and
the Kings

the Kings
carrie, and
the Kings

the Kings
carrie, and
the Kings

who follow her, seeing they, of whom I now speake, are busily employed in taking up the Hawkes, and are careful that by no means they be hurt or lost. And every flying Hawke carrieth a little table of silver on her foot, figured with the mark of her Master or Falconer, that if she be lost, she may be restored to her owner. But if the marke cannot be knowne, the Hawke is delivered to a certaine Baron, who for this cause is called *Bulanger*, to whom are brought all lost things (otherwise the Finder would be counted a Thief) and to him Losers resort to inquire of things lost. He hath a most eminent place, noted by his Ensigne, that in so great an assembly of people he may be knowne.

Whiles they are thus busied in sporting and hawking, they come vnto a certaine great Plaine, called *Caccarmen*, where the Tents of the King and all the Courtiers are prepared, about ten thousand in number. The first and chiefe is the *Can* Paulion, vnder which ten thousand Souldiers stand, besides Barons and Noble-men, with the doore to the South: furnished with three Pillars, wrought with diuers curious and excellent carued workes, and covered with the skinnes of Lions (and frakes of diuers colours) which keeps out rayne. But within, the walls of the Paulions are covered with most colly skinnes of *Armelines* and *Sables*, although in those Countries these skinnes are accounted most precious, thus sometimes skinnes worth two thousand Souldiers of gold are scarce sufficient for one pair of Vells. The *Tartars* call the *Sable*, the *Queen* of *Furres*. The Cordes, wherewith their Paulions are supported, are of silke. There are also other Paulions erected, wherein the *Wives*, *Sonnes*, and *Hand-maides* of the King remaine. Further also, the *Falcons*, *Hawkes*, *Owles*, *Garfalcons*, and other Birds, which ferre for Hawking, haue their Tents wherein they are contained. For, there is so great a multitude of Tents, that to them that come thither, a farre off it seemeth that a famous Citie is built there. The King remaineth all March in that Plaine, and taketh innumerable Beasts and infinite multitudes of Fowle. For no man may else hunt in all the Prouinces of that Kingdom, at the least within his dayes journey one way, ten another, and fiftene a third way of the *Can* Court: nor keepe an hunting Dogge, or an Hawke and specially, from the beginning of March vntill the month of October, no man is permitted to vse any deuise or engine whatsoever, to take Stagges, Doers, Roe-bucks, Hares, lest he should hinder their breede: and whereupon it is that there are such fere.

It is incredible what multitudes of People, Merchants, and merchandises of all sorts are seen in *Cambala*. The Money of the Great *Can* is not made of gold or silver, or other metall, but they take the middle barke from the Mulberrie Tree, and thus they make firme, and cut it into diuers and round pieces, great and little, and imprint the Kings marke thereon. Of this matter therefore, the Emperour causeth an huge masse of money to be made in the Citie of *Cambala*, which sufficeth for the whole Empire: and no man vnder paine of death may lawfully coine any other, or spend any other money, or refuse it in all his Kingdomes and Countries. Nor any coming from another Kingdom, dare spend any other money in the Empire of Great *Can*. Whereby it cometh to passe, that Merchants often coming from farre remote Countries and Regions vnto the Citie of *Cambala*, bring with them gold, silver, pearls, and precious stones, and receive the Kings money there. And because this money is not received in their Countries, they change it againe in the Empire of Great *Can* for merchandise, which they carrie away with them. He also payeth stipends to his Officers and Armies of the mentioned money; and lastly, whatsoever thing he needeth in his Court he buyeth with this money. Wherefore, there is not a King to be found in the World, who exceedeth him in Treasure, nor expended on the Mint as elsewhere.

The Great *Can* hath twelue Barons, as is said before, which are his Councell of Warre, and dispose of martiall affaires, and the exalting or disgracing of Captaines and Souldiers. Their office is called *Thai*, that is, *The high Court*, because they haue none about them but the *Can*. Other twelue Barons are appointed Counsellors for the foure and thirte Prouinces, which haue a faire Palace in *Cambala*, in which is for every Prouince a Iudge & many Notaries. These haue power to choise Gouernours of the said Prouinces, and present their names to the *Can* which confirms them. These also haue the charge of the Treasure to exact and dispende the same. Their office is called *Singh*, that is, *The second Court*, subiect to none but the *Can*, yet reputed lesse noble then the former, that being a martiall State.

§. VI. 66

§. VI.

The Cans prouisions for Embassadors and for Posts; against Dearth; for High-ways; for the Poore in Cambala; for Astralers; Tartars Wine, Fuel, Religion, Opinions; Behaviour; Court-neatnesse: P o l o s proceeding from Cambala Westward. Of Pulifangan, Gouza, Tainfu, Pianfu, Thaign, Caciafu, Quenzanfu, Sindinfu, Thebeth, Caidu, Caraijan, Carachan, Cardandan and Vociam.

Without the Citie of *Cambala*, many publike wayes conduct to the neighbouring Prouinces, and in every one of them alway at the end of five and twentie or thirte miles, are Lodgings or Innes built, called *Lamb*, that is, *Post-houses*, with great and faire Palaces, Chambers furnished with Beds and other Prouisions, meete to entertaine great Men, yea to lodge a King; the prouisions laid in from the next adjoining places: where about foure hundred Horses are in readinesse for Messengers and Embassadors, which there leave their ridden Horses and take fresh. And in mountainous places, where are no Villages, he sends People to inhabit at a place where these *Lamb* are built, which till the ground for their prouisions; and this continueth vnto the furthest limits of the Empire: so that in the publike wayes, throughout the whole Empire, about ten thousand of the Kings Innes are to be found. And the number of the Horses, appointed for the seruice of the Messengers in those Innes, are more then two hundred thousand, a thing almost incredible to tell: so that in a little while with charge of Men and Horse, intelligence might flye to the Court. And if a wonder how so many men and beasts should be provided for, he must consider that the *Chaores* and *Gentils* haue many women, and flore of children, some having thirte sonnes which follow them armed; and for victuall they fow three feeds, Rice, Panike and Kili, which yield hundred fold: they make not bread, but boile thefe with Mille or Fleth. Wheat will not so encrease with them: nor suffer they any ground, which will beare, to lye vntilled. And their Cattell alway increase, that each of them carries with him six, eight, or more Horses into the field for his owne perion. These Horses also take turnes, that of the foure hundred also said two hundred are in the stables readie, the other two hundred at graffe by monethly courses. Their Cities adjoining to Rivers or Laks, are appointed also to haue ferry Boats in readinesse for the Posts. And Cities adjoining to Deserts, are sold at Horses and prouisions thorow those Deserts, but haue contribution from the *Can*. In cases of great import, the Posts ride with a Gersilcon Table and is trusted so that he will ride two hundred miles in a day, or two hundred and fiftie, sometimes also they ride the night, Foot-Posts running by with lights, if the Moore time not. They wade a Horse that the fresh Horses may be brought forth for them to mount presently, and haue their bellies and heads girded runne as fast as the horse can stand those which are able to endure this excessive riding are of great reputation.

There are also betwene the said Innes other habitations, three or foure miles distant one from another, where there are a few houles wherein Foot-Posts dwell, haue all girdels full of thrill sounding bells. These are alwayes readie, and as often as the Kings Letters are sent vnto them, convey them presently to the next habitation: who hearing the found of the Foot-Post coming, asseure off, expect him, and receiving his Letters, presently carrie them to the next watch: and so the Letters passing through diuers hands, are conveyed without any delay, vnto that place whither they ought to come. And it cometh often to passe, that the King vnderstandeth newes, or receiveth new fruits from a place, ten dayes journey distant, in two dayes: as fruits growing at *Cambala* in the morning, the next day at night at *Xandu*. But all this mentioned Poile, are free from all exaction of Tribute, and receive a good recompence of their labours from the Kings Rent gatherers besides. Some also are appointed to examine these Posts monethly, and to punish their faules.

He sends yearly vnto diuers Prouinces, subiect to his Empire, to inquire whether any harme be done to the Corne, by Tempests, Locusts, Wormes, or any other plague. And when he hath notice giuen him, that any Prouince or Citie, hath sustained any damage, he remitteth Tributes to that people for that yeere, and sends Graine for victuall and for Seede, out of his owne Garners. For, in the time of great plentie, the King buyeth abundant flore of Corne, and keepeth it with great care of Officers, three or foure yeeres in Garners, that when ther shall be scarcitie of Corne in one Country, that scarcitie may be supplied out of the Kings Store-houles. He selleth his graine for the fourth part of other mens price, and alway prouideth that his flore-houles be flored. Likewise, when any muren lighteth among Cattell, he sends them other Cattell which he hath for Tents in other Prouinces. And if a thunder-bolt hath stricken any beast of any Herd or Flock, he will haue no Tribute thereof for three yeeres, so the Herd neuer so great: nor cuttome of a Thunder-stricken ship, thinking God is angry with them which are so stricken. Likewise, that Trauellers may find the way in all places capable to beare Treas, He hath caused

Posts and Innes. The Romans also had publike Stables, as appeares by consulting Zed. l. x. and Plinius who in three dayes would ride from the Confinnes of the Empire to Rome. For example, See l. 7. c. 19.

Foot-Postes. See l. 1. c. 10.

Their Prish lodges.

Prouisions against dearth.

Furberly Roy. alie.

Hence per-
haps the walk
from *Lazur* to
Aga was oc-
casioned.
Their Ri-
vers.

Coals taken
out of mines,
a thing ſtrange
to *Pol* in *A-
lus*, but com-
mon with vs,
called *Syn-cils*,
because they
are brought by
Ses from *Yen-
taſſa*. *Recolect*
as *Syn-cils* and
the *Chia* lo-
cates have
sold wonders
of theſe black
ſtones, a won-
derfull diance
bounty indeed
to this Land,
and ſpecially
to this *Citie*.
Can charitable
to the Poor.
The Tenets
paid to the
Can.
Weekly Labour
for him.
The Devil an
Angel of
light.
Aſtologers.

Tartarian com-
putation of
times.

Their Reli-
gion.

* *Shattendi*
i
demis.
Opinions of
the ſoule.

Their Cu-
ſtomes.

Courte reue-
rence.

Trees to be planted, a little diſtance one from another, neare unto the principall wayes; and in Sandie and ſtate places, he hath cauſed to ſet Stones and Pillars for that purpoſe: and Officers are appointed to looke to theſe things. Hee plants Trees the rather becauſe his Aſtologers tell him, that planting Trees lengthens the life.

They make excellent drinke, in the Prouince of *Cathai*, of Rice and diuers Spices, which in the taſte thereof excelleth the ſweetneſſe euery Wine. And they who drinke more greedily thereof then reaſon iudgeth to be fit, for the nature of the drinker requirerth ſooner become drunke then if they had drunke Wine.

Throughout the whole Prouince of *Cathai*, certaine blacke ſtones are digged out of the Moun-
taines, which put into the fire burne like wood, and being kindled preſerue fire a long time, as if
they be kindled in the Evening, they keepe quite fire all the night. And many viſe thoſe ſtones,
becauſe that though they haue ſtore of wood, yet is there ſuch frequent viſe of Stones and Bathes
(thrice euery weeke) that the wood would not ſerue.

It is not amiſſe alſo, hauing ſpoken of his Prouiſions abroad, to mention his care for the poore
of *Cambalu*. When he heares of any honourable Familie decayed by diſaduentures, or of any
which cannot worke, and I haue no meanes: he cauſeth to giue to ſuch Families the whole yeares
expences; each of ſuch Families going to the Officers for that purpoſe, and theſe Officers their Bill
of allowance, receiue prouiſions accordingly. There is a Palace deputed for ſuch Families. They are
prouided alſo of garments for Winter, and for Summer; the *Can* hauing the Tenth of all Wool,
and Silke, and Hennes, which he cauſeth to be made into Clothes in a houſe thereto appointed: ſo
for all Trades are bound one day in the weeke to worke for him. He prouides alſo apparel for his
Armies, and in euery *Citie* cauſeth Cloth to be made of his title wool. You muſt wonderfull
that the *Tartars* ancient cuſtoms knew no almes, but rather vbraided ſuch as were in needeſſe,
as laſted of God. But the Idolaters, eſpecially theſe *Backſ*, haue propounded it a good worke
acceptable to God, and haue taught him to be thus bountifull, ſo that in his Court bread is neuer
deuoyed to any which aſke: and there is no day in which is not giuen away twentie thouſand
Crownes in Rice, Millett and Panike, whereby he is eſteemed as a God.

There are alſo in *Cambalu* of *Chriſtians*, *Saracens*, and *Cathayans*, about ſixe thouſand Aſtologers
and Diuiners, which the Great *Can* prouideth yearly of food and daiments, as thoſe poore
abouted. Theſe haue an Aſtrolabe in which are marked the ſignes of the Planets, the houres and
points of all the yeere. Herein all theſe Aſtologers, each Religion apart, view the courſe of the
yeere, according to euery Moone, obſeruing the diſpoſition of the weather, referring alway to
God to doe more or leſſe after his owne pleaſure. They write alſo vpon certaine ſquares (they
call them *Tacanni*) the things which are to come that yeere, which they fill to thoſe that will
buy them, and ſuch as ſpeake moſt truth are moſt honored. If any intend any great worke, or to
goe a farre iourney, and will know the euent before-hand, he makes reſourſe to theſe Aſtologers,
to ſee it with their eyes in the Heauens, which they doe, comparing the preſent Conſtellation
with that of his Birth (which they demand of him) fo foretelling him the good or euill.

The *Tartars* reckon the computation of their yeeres by twelues, the ſign figured by a Lion,
the ſecond by an Ox, the third by a Dragon, the fourth by a Dogge, and ſo thorow the whole
twelue: ſo that if a man be demanded when he was borne: he will anſwer, ſuch a point of ſuch an
houre, of ſuch a day in the yeere Lion (this their fathers exactly ſet downe in a booke) and
when the twelue is complete, they goe ouer the ſame againe.

Of their Religion we haue ſaid that they are Idolaters, and for their Gods haue a Table ſet
a-loft in the wall of their Chamber, on which is written, a Name representing the *High God of
Heauens*, and there euery day, with a Center of incenſe, they adore it in this manner. They lift
vp their hands aloft, and ſtrike their teeth thrice, praying it to giue them a good vnderſtanding
and health; and deſire thereof nothing elſe. Beſides, on the ground they haue another ſtable, called
Natigat, The God of earthly things, with his Wife and Children (as before is ſaid) whom
likewiſe they worſhip with incenſe, ſtriking * or gnawing the teeth, and lifting vp the hands;
and deſire thereof temperature of the aire, fruits of the earth, children, and the like. They hold
the Soule to be immortal, and that when a man dies, it enters into another body better or worſe,
according to the merits in the former life, as of a poore man to become a Gentleman, and after
of a Prince or Lord, ſo to higher till it be aſſumed in God: or if it hath ill deſerued to be a poore
man, after a Dogge, alway deſcending to the loweſt ranke of beaſtes. They haue a comely
ſpeech, ſalute cheerfully and honeſtly, haue a gracefull carriage, and feed cleanly. They beare
great reuerence to their Parents, and ſo by vniuſual, or helpſe to their needeſſe, there is
a public Office deſigned to this purpoſe, to puniſh vniuſual or diſobedient children. Priſoners
are releaſed at three yeeres end, and marked in the cheek, to be knowne Malefactors.

The Barons and People which goe to the Grand *Can*, obſerue three Riues. Firſt, within halfe
a mile of the place where the *Can* is, all is huſht and quiet: without noyle or cryes, or any loud
ſpeech; and euery Baron carries continually a little faire veillet to ſpit in, after which he comes
in, none daring to ſpit on the Hall. They haue Furres buſkins of white leather, which they put on
when they enter the Hall, putting off the former and giuing them to the ſervants, as if they
ſhould ſoile the faire artificiall Carpets.

Ten miles off *Cambalu*, is a certayne great Ruer, named *Palsungan*, emptying it ſelfe into
the Ocean, by which many thiups with much merchandize attend. And in that place, there
is a very faire Bridge, all of Serpentine ſtone curiouſly wrought, containing three hundred pa-
ces in length, and eight in breadth, that ten men may ride abreſt. On each ſide it is fairely moun-
ted with a wall of marble, and Pillars ſet on a row: and in the height of the aſcent a great and
high Pillar, at the foot whereof is a great Lion, and on the top another. And lo quite thorow
the Bridge one pace and halfe diſtant are Pillars with Lions on the top, and a faire well-wrought
marble worke betwixt, to keepe men from falling.

Hauing paſſed ouer the Ruer and Bridge, proceeding thirte miles weſtward (in which Pala-
ce the Ocean, by which many thiups with much merchandize attend. And in that place, there
is a very faire Bridge, all of Serpentine ſtone curiouſly wrought, containing three hundred pa-
ces in length, and eight in breadth, that ten men may ride abreſt. On each ſide it is fairely moun-
ted with a wall of marble, and Pillars ſet on a row: and in the height of the aſcent a great and
high Pillar, at the foot whereof is a great Lion, and on the top another. And lo quite thorow
the Bridge one pace and halfe diſtant are Pillars with Lions on the top, and a faire well-wrought
marble worke betwixt, to keepe men from falling.

20 *Taiſu* is the name of the Kingdome, and of the chiefe Citie which is great and faire, hath
much trading with ſtore of munition, ſit for the *Can* Armies. The Weſtward of this Citie li-
eth the whole Prouince. Seuen dayes further weſtward is a goodly Countrey, beautified with
many Caſtles and Cities, in which alſo great trade of merchandize is viſed. After which,
you come to a Citie very great, named *Piaſu*, in which there is great abundance of Silke
and Trading.

Weſtward from *Piaſu* ſtandeth a very goodly Caſtle, named *Thaiſin*, anciently built by a
King called *Dor*. In it is a ſpacious Palace, wherein is a faire Hall, in which are painted all the
famous Kings which haue reigned there; a faire ſpectacle. Of this King *Dor* they ſay that he
was potent, and was attended only by young Daiments, whereot his Court had great ſtore.
30 They alſo when hee liſted to take his pleaſure, carried him in a ſmall light Chariot thorow the
Caſtle, which is ſo fortified by Art and Nature, that the Gouernour thereof feared none, no not
Venue his Lord, againſt whom hee rebelled. But ſeuen men profeſſing ſcience and ſeruice to
Dor, took him at aduantage in hunting, and brought him captiue to *Preſbyter John* or *Venue*,
who put him in vile clothes, and appointed him to keepe his Caſtell, and let on him a ſtrons
guard till two yeeres were ended: after which, he commanded him to be brought before him,
and attayed him in Princely apparel, and giuing him his pardon after ſharpe admonition, ſent
him fo well attended to the reſpoſſeſſion of his Kingdome.

About twentie miles beyond the Caſtle *Thaiſin*, is the Ruer *Caramoran*, which by reaſon of
the exceeding beddeth and depth thereof, hath no Beddeth: and floweth to the Ocean. On
the ſhoare thereof are many Cities and Caſtles built; wherein much trading is exerciſed. This Coun-
treys aboundeth with Ginger, Silke, and Fowle, eſpecially Reſtants, that three of them are bought
for a great *Venue*. There growe Reeds infinite ſtore, of great that ſome are a foot, ſome are a
foot and halfe in compariſon, and ſome are many fives. After two dayes iourney
is the famous Citie called *Caramuſu*, where many clothes of Gold and Silke are made: here
grows Ginger, Galangale, Spike, and many Spices. The people are Idolaters. Proceeding
ſeuen dayes iourney Weſtward, many Cities, and Townes, goodly Fields and Gardens are found;
and euery where Mulberries for Silke-wormes. And they are Idolaters: but there are alſo *Chri-
ſtians*, *Turkes*, *Netherians*, and ſome *Saracens*. There is much both of wilde Beasts and Fowle.
If you proceed ſeuen dayes iourney further, you ſhall come to a certaine great Citie, named
50 *Quenſanſu*, which is the chiefe Citie of the Kingdome, in which haue raigned many famous
Kings: and at this day, the ſonne of great *Can*, called *Mangalu*, hath the command thereof. That
Countrey yieldeth great plenty of Silke, Cloth of Gold, and all other things neceſſarie for
furniſhing of an Armie, and for preferuention of the life of Man. The Inhabitants worſhip Iuda-
ism, and there are ſome *Chriſtians*, and *Turkes*, and *Saracens*. Five miles weſtward the Citie ſtandeth
the Palace of *Mangalu*, ſeated in a Playne, where are many Springs, Riuerets, and places of
Game. There is a high wall encompassing fiv miles, where are all wilde Beasts and Fowles,
in the midſt an excellent Palace, hauing many Halls and Chambers great and faire, all painted
with Gold and Azure, and infinite Marbles adorning. The King with his Courtiers applieth
himſelfe to hunting of wilde Beasts, and taking of Fowle, and followeth his fathers ſteps in
60 Iuſtice and Equitie, much beloved of his people.

Going three dayes iourney Weſtward from the ſaid Palace, thorow a certaine goodly Playne,
where many Cities and Caſtles are (and abundance of Silke, Mercenaries, and Arts) is a moun-
tainous Countrey, where, in the Mountains and Vallies are frequent Habitations, and ſore of
Lodgings, of the Prouince of *Cunbun*. The Inhabitants are Idolaters, and Husbandmen. Alſo
Iuſtice and Equitie, much beloved of his people.

Going three dayes iourney Weſtward from the ſaid Palace, thorow a certaine goodly Playne,
where many Cities and Caſtles are (and abundance of Silke, Mercenaries, and Arts) is a moun-
tainous Countrey, where, in the Mountains and Vallies are frequent Habitations, and ſore of
Lodgings, of the Prouince of *Cunbun*. The Inhabitants are Idolaters, and Husbandmen. Alſo
Iuſtice and Equitie, much beloved of his people.

An admirable
B-ridge.
Cathay hath
giuen a pi-
ſure, ſeem-
ing more.

The Citie
Gauze.

Taiſu.
Armes.

Dor and his
Daſſel-counte.
The King of
Aſien, and
the *Mogul*, doe
likewiſe in
part.

Caramoran.

Caramuſu.

Quenſanſu.

King *Mangalu*.

Cunbun.

in that Countrey they hunt Lions, Beares, Stags, Roe-bucks, Deere, Wolves. That Plaine is two dayes journey, and the Countrey is twentie dayes Westward all inhabited, hauing Mountaines, and Valleys, and many Woods.

*Abbaluch
Mangi.*

After that, twentie dayes towards the West, is a Prouince, named *Abbaluch Mangi*, that is, *The white Citie of the borders of Mangi*, which is wel peopled. This Prouince for two dayes journey hath a Plaine, with infinite habitations. After which follow Mountaines, Valleys, and Woods, all inhabited twentie dayes journey Westward. It hath flocks of wilde beasts, and of chiefe creatures which yield Muske. In this Prouince Ginger groweth in great plentie, as also Corne and Rice.

*Mangi,
Sindafra.*

After twentie dayes journey throw those hills, is a Playne, and a Prouince in the Confinnes of *Mangi*, named *Sindafra*. The chiefe Citie hath the same name, but the old King dying, left three sonnes Succellors of the Kingdome, which diuided the Citie into three parts, compassing euery part with their proper walls, all which notwithstanding were contraynd within the former wall. But great *Can* subiected that Citie and Kingdome to his Dominion. Thorow this Citie runne many Riuers, in many places, and round about, some halfe a mile ouer, some two hundred paces, very deepe, and on them are many Bridges of stone, very faire, eight paces broad, set on both sides with marble Pillars, which beare vpon a timber Frame that couers the Bridge, each Bridge hauing ffeetes and shops all along it. When these Riuers are past the Citie, they become one great riuier, called *Quan*, which runneth one hundred dayes iourney beate to the Ocean. Neere these Riuers are many Cities and Castles, and ships for Merchandise. Proceeding five dayes iourney, euery day through a certaine Playne, many Cities, Castles, and Villages are found, in which kin Lawres are in great abundance. Many wilde Beasts also are there.

Riuier.

The greatest
of the
Prouince of
Tebeth.

After the Playne whereof we now speake, is the Prouince of *Tebeth*, which is great *Can* vanquished, and wasted: for in it are many Cities destroyed, and Castles ouerthrowne by the space of twentie dayes iourney. And because it is become a Wildernesse, wanting Inhabitants, wilde Beasts, and Lions there are encreased abundantly: and it is needfull that Trauellers carrie victuals with them. Very great Canes grow in this Countrey ten paces in length, and three paces in the kniffe, and as much from knot to knot. When Trauellers therefore will rest by night, they take great bundles of the greener Reeds, and putting fire vnder, kinde them. Which make such a cracking, and so great a noyse, that it may be heard two miles off. Which terrible sound the wilde Beasts hearing, flee away. Moreover, Horses, and other Beasts which Merchants vie for their iourney, hearing this noyse and cracking, are very much afraid, and many beaking the chutes to flight, haue escaped from their Masters: but the wiser Trauellers binding their feet together with Fetters, desayne them with violence.

The subtil
deuise of
Trauellers.

Twentie dayes iourney ended, hauing passed ouer the Prouince of *Tebeth*, we meet with Cities, and very many Villages, in which, through the blindness of Idolatry, a wicked custome is vsed: for, no man there marryeth a wife that is a Virgin. Whereupon, when Trauellers and Strangers coming from other parts, passe through this Countrey, and pitch their Paulions, the Women of that place hauing marriageable daughters, bring them vnto Strangers, desiring them to take them, and enioy their companie as long as they remaine there. Thus the pretier are choien, and the rest returne home forrowfull. And when they will depart, they are not suffered to carrie any way with them, but faithfully restore them to their Parents. The Mayden also requireth some toy or small Present of him who hath deflowered her, which free may shew as an argument and proofe of her ielouring. And she that hath bene loued, and abused of most men, and shall haue many such fauours and toys to shew to her Woods, is accounted more noble, and may more easily and honourably be married. And when there will goe honourably attired, her hangeth all her Louers fauours about her necke, and the more acceptable free was to many, of so much the more honour is free adiu'dged worthie. But when they are once married to husbands, they are now no more suffered to be coupled with strange men. And the men of this Countrey are very wary, that they offend not one another in this matter. They are Idolaters, and cruell men, thinking it no sinne if they rob, and exercise theft. They lye by hunting, and the fruits of the earth. Many beasts also are found with them, yielding Muske called by them, Gudderi. They haue a proper Language, and haue no money, not the Paper money of *Can*, but spend Corals for money, and are clothed with the skins of beasts, or coule Hempe. This Countrey appertayneth to the Prouince of *Tebeth*: for *Tebeth* is a very large Prouince, and hath bene sometime diuided into eight Kingdomes, hauing many Cities, and Townes, with many Mountaines, Lakes, and Riuers, where Gold is found. The women wear Corall about their neckes, and hang about the neckes of their Idols, as a precious thing. In this Countrey there are very great Dogs, as big as Ases, which take wilde Beasts, specially wilde Oxen, called Beyamini. They are exceeding Necromancers, curing tempests, lightning, thunderbolts, and many other wonders. There are many flocks of Spices neuer brought into their parts. This *Tebeth* is (as all the former Prouinces) subiect to the *Can*.

In this
book
the
like
of
the
C
p
r
a
m
t
e
r
i
s
the
book
chapter 1.

Whose
glorie
is
in
their
name.

Corall money.

Eight
King
domes
of
Tebeth.

Caia.

On the West of the Prouince of *Tebeth*, bordereth the Prouince of *Caia*. Sometimes govern

ned by her owne Kings, now by the Gouernours of the *Can*. By the West you must not understand that the Countrey are in the West, but that we departing from those parts which are betwixt the East and North-east come hither Westward: and therefore reckon them Westward. The people are Idolaters, haue many Cities, the chiefe called by the name of the Prouince, *Caia*, built in the entry of the Prouince. There is a great salt Lake, in which is store of Pearles, white, not round, so abundant, that the price of them would become little worth, if they were suffered to be carried away at mens pleasures. Whereupon, it is prouided vpon payne of death, that none should presume to fish for Pearle in this Lake, without the licence of great *Can*. There is also a Mountaine in which is found a Minerall of Turkeish Stones, confined to the like licence. Many Gadderi are also in this Prouince, which yield Muske. That Lake also which ingendeth Pearle in such plentie, is surrounded with Fifes: and the whole Countrey is full of

ingendeth Pearle in such plentie, is surrounded with Fifes: and the whole Countrey is full of

ingendeth Pearle in such plentie, is surrounded with Fifes: and the whole Countrey is full of

ingendeth Pearle in such plentie, is surrounded with Fifes: and the whole Countrey is full of

ingendeth Pearle in such plentie, is surrounded with Fifes: and the whole Countrey is full of

ingendeth Pearle in such plentie, is surrounded with Fifes: and the whole Countrey is full of

ingendeth Pearle in such plentie, is surrounded with Fifes: and the whole Countrey is full of

ingendeth Pearle in such plentie, is surrounded with Fifes: and the whole Countrey is full of

ingendeth Pearle in such plentie, is surrounded with Fifes: and the whole Countrey is full of

ingendeth Pearle in such plentie, is surrounded with Fifes: and the whole Countrey is full of

ingendeth Pearle in such plentie, is surrounded with Fifes: and the whole Countrey is full of

ingendeth Pearle in such plentie, is surrounded with Fifes: and the whole Countrey is full of

ingendeth Pearle in such plentie, is surrounded with Fifes: and the whole Countrey is full of

ingendeth Pearle in such plentie, is surrounded with Fifes: and the whole Countrey is full of

Gadderi.

Cloues.

Ginger, Cin-
amon.

The Inhab-
itants are Idol-
aters and
Bandits.

Money of Salt.

The Riuier
Bram yielding
Gold.

The seven
Kingdomes of
Caia.

The Citie Iaci.

Money of
Succinea.

Rare Beasts.

Crangan,
Riuers yield-
ing gold at
places that
with in yel-
dels from the
land & earth.
Great Dra-
gons.

The taking
of them.

* Pay'on and
Dogs dung.

A wicked ca-
stome.

Cerdandis
Princis.

The reverence
of Siluer.
Golden coun-
sings for the
teeth.

* Strake in his
third booke
mention th
the same to be
done with the
Symbas in
some places.

Apollonius re-
porteth the
like custom
with the Tribi-
ren. See us
of the Brisslins.
Tallies of con-
victs.

The detestfull
medicine of
the Magicians.

cight, fixe, or five paces long, which are taken after this manner. In the day time they vie to lie hid, by reason of the heat, in holes, out of the which they gue by night to seeke their prey, and decoure what feuer they get, Lions, Wolves, or others: and then goe to seeke water, leauing such a track with their weight in the sands, as if some piece of timber had bene diuine there. Whereupon the Hunters fasten vnder the sands thre iron prickes in their viall tactis, whereon they are wounded and dayne. The Crows pretye by rugg, his kuell, and by their crawing cries inuite the Hunters, which come and flay him, taking forth his gall, profitable for diuers Medecines (amongst other things, for the biting of mad Dogs, a penne weighe is giuen in Wine; and far women in trauell. For carbuncles and pulues) and they sell the fl. thicare at being exceeding delicate. There are breal great Hories in this Prouince, which by Merchants are carried vnto India. They vie to take one bone out of the tayle, left le should bend his tayle hither and thither, and esseme it more comely that it hang dwine right. They vie long Struppas of the *Franchomen*; which the *Tartars* and other Nations out their shooting vie short, because when they shoot, they rlie vp. They vie Targets and Armour in the Warres, made of the hides of Buffals: they haue Lances and Grosse-bowes, and poyson all their Arrowes. Some of them which are ill minded, are said to carrie * poyson about them cutt ually, that if they be taken, they may suddenly swallow it and death together, to prevent cure. For which cause the great Lords haue Dogs dung ready, which they force them to swallow, that if they be taken, they vomit the poyson. Before the great *Can* subiected them, they vied, that when any Stranger which seemed of good preface and parties lodged with them, they flue him by night, supposing that thofe good parts of that man might abate afterwards in that house and this was the death of many.

Going from the Prouince *Carasau*, after five dayes journey Westward, is the Prouince *Cerdandis*, which also is subiect to great *Can*. The chiefe Citie thereof is called *Pocim*. The Inhabitants thereof vie Porcelanes and weighed pieces of Gold in stead of money: for in that Country, and many other lying round about, Siluer mines are not found, and they gue one ounce of Gold for five ounces of Siluer, and great gayne is made by the change. The men and women of that Country couer their teeth with thune plates of Gold, which they fo fit vnto them, that the teeth themselves seeme (as it were) to be set in the plates. The men about their armes and legs make lills, pricking the places with Needles, and putting thereon a blacke indelible tincture. And these lills or marks are esteemed with them a great galantie. They gue their minds to nothing but riding, hunting, hawking, and exercises of Armes, leaving the household cares to the women, who are helpe'd therein by slauies which they buy or take in Warre. When a woman is brought to bed, shee orfakes the bed, wafeth the child and dresseth it, and then the husband * lieth downe and keeps the child with him fortie dayes, not suffering it to depart: is visited meane while of friends and neighbours, to cheare and comfort him. The woman lookes to the house, carrie the husband his bristles to his bed, and giues sucke to the child by him. Their Wine is made of Rice and Spice, their meat Rice, and raw flesh dressed, as is before mentioned. In this Prouince there are no other Idols, save that euerie familie adoreth the oldest man in the house, of whom they gue some thumbrings and all they haue. They dwell for the most part, in wilde and mountainous places. But forraigne countries, to those Mountains, because the ayre would kill them, being in Summer very corrupt. They are no leuers, but make their Contracts and Obligations by tallies of wood, the leife whereof the one keepeth, and the other, the other: which being afterward payd, the tallie is rendered. There are no Physicians in this Prouince, nor in *Candis*, *Vociam* and *Carasau*: but when any is sicke, they call the Magicians, or Idol Priests together, and he sicke partie declareth his disease vnto them: then the Magicians dance, and found certaine instruments, and bellow forth songs in honour of their Gods, while at length the Duill entrench into one of them skipping and playing in the dance. Then leauing the dance, they confle with him that is possid, for what cause that disease happened vnto him, and what is to be done for his recovery. The Duill answereth by him, because he hath done this or that, or because he hath offended this or that God: therefore, he fell into this disease. Then the Magicians treat that God to whom that offence is promised, that if the sicke partie recouer, he shall offer a Sacrifice of his owne blood. But if the Duill thinke the weake partie to be sicke of such a disease, that he cannot be freed from the same, he vieth to answer: This man hath so grievously offended that God, that he cannot by any sacrifices be appeased. But if he thinke he shall recouer, he commandeth to offer to many Rammes hauing blacke heads, and to prepare so many Magicians with their wuses, by them to offer Sacrifices, and that God may then be appealed towards him. Which being heard, his kinsmen quicly caute those things to be done which the Duill commanded: they kill Rammes, and sprinkle their blood in the ayre, and the Magicians assembled with their Witches, light great Candles, and perfume the whole house with incense, making fume of *Lignum Aloes*, and sprinkle the broth of the flesh in the ayre, together with the potion made of spices: all which being duly performed, they skip about againe in a dance in honour of that Idol, which is supposed to haue bene fauourable to the sicke, singing, and making an horrible noyse with their voyces. These things

things being done, they aske the possessed againe, whether by these things the Idol be appeased. The answer, No, they presently prepare themselves to fulfill another command of his. But if he answer, that he is satisfied, they sit downe at the Table, and eat the flesh offered to the Idol with great ioy, and drinke the confectiions. And dinner being ended, and the Magicians payed, euerie one returneth to his owne house. And when the sicke hath thus escaped the disease of God, and hath bene reformed to health, they attribute it to the Idol through the providence of God, and hath bene reformed to health, they attribute it to the Idol whom they laudatise. But if he die, then they say, the Idol was defrauded, and that some of the Sacrificers calted thereof first. This is not done to all but to the Richer, the Duill deluding their blindness.

§. VII.

Of the Prouince of Mien and Bengala, how they were conquered to the Can: of Cangi-gu, Amu, Tholoman, Cintigui, and some other parts of Canasio. And of the Conquest of Mangi.

Two Dms. 1272. The Great *Can* sent an Armie into the Kingdomes of *Vociam*, and *Carasau* to guard it, to the number of twelue thousand expert warriors, vnder the conduct of *Nesfardis* a wife Captaine. As soon as the King of *Mien*, and the King of *Bengala* heard of their coming, assembling their forces, they ioynd Horle and Foot together, about thre score thousand, and about a thousand Elephants bearing Cables, and in euerie Cattle twelue or fixteene * armed men were placed. With this Armie the King of *Mien* speedily marched towards the Citie *Vociam*, where the Armie of the *Tartars* reposed. *Nesfardis* comming forth with a mainly courage to fight against the Enemy, encamped against a certaine great Wood, knowing that the Elephants would not be able to enter into the Wood. Then the King of *Mien* marcheth forth to meete them. But the *Tartarian* Horles perceiving the Elephants to be present, which were placed in the first front of the battaille, were terrified with so great feare, that they could not by any violence or policy be provoked against the Elephants. The *Tartars* therefore were compelled to alight from their Horles, and tying them to the Trees of the Wood, they came to fight on foot against the Elephants. In the front of the battaille, all the *Tartars* purposely shot a multitude of Arrowes against the Elephants, which not able to endure the strokes of the Arrowes, speedily betooke themselves to flight, and with swift course went all vnto the next Wood, add brake their Cables, and ouer-threw the armed men sitting in fall upon the Kings Armie with great violence: and many of either Armie fell, at length the King of *Mien* being put to flight, left the victorie to the *Tartars*, who hasten to the Wood, and taking many Captives, vied their helpe to take two hundred of these Elephants. And euer since Great *Can* hath vied Elephants in his Armies which before hee had not accustomed. Hereupon also he vanquished the Countries of the King of *Mien* and *Bengala*, and subiected them to his Empire.

Departing from the Prouince of *Cerdandis*, is a great descent, which continueth two dayes and a halfe, nor is there any habitation there, but a very large Playne, in the which, three dayes in the weeke many men meete together for Trailing. Many descend from the great Mountaines of that Country, bringing gold with them to change for siluer, to wit, giuing one ounce of gold for five ounces of siluer: whereupon many Merchants from forraigne Nations come thither, who bringing siluer carrie away gold, and bring thither merchandises to sell to those people. For to those high Mountaines, in which, they who gather gold in that Country, dwell, no stranger can come, seeing the way is vnpassable and intricate. When you are past that Playne, going toward the South, *Mien* bordereth vpon India, and the way lyeth fiftene dayes journey in places not inhabited and woody, in which innumerable Elephants, Vnicornes, and other wild beaists wander.

After that fiftene dayes is found *Mien*, a great and noble Citie, the head of the Kingdomes, and subiect to Great *Can*. The Inhabitants thereof haue a peculiar language, and are Idolaters. In this Citie there was a King, who being reade to die, commanded that neere to his Sepulchre, there should be made two Towers in Pyramide fashion, one at the head, the other at the feet, both of Marble, of the height of ten fathoms. On the top was a round Ball. He caused one to be covered all ouer with gold a finger thicke, and the other with siluer. And vpon the top round about the Balls, many little golden and siluer Balls were hanged, which at the blowing of the winde gaue a certaine sound. The Monument or Sepulchre was also couered with Plates, partly of gold, partly of siluer. He commanded this to be made in honor of his Soule, and that his memory should neuer decay among men. And when Great *Can* minded to subdue this Citie, hee sent a valiant Captaine, and the greatest part of his Armie were letters, of which his Court is always furnished. These winning the Citie, would not violate that Monument without the *Canes* knowledge.

* This by relation, for they vie not to carry about three or foure.

Eight & fiftie of Elephants.

Market in a dis-habited Playne. Change of gold and sil. uer.

Vnicornes or Rhinoceroses.

knowledge, who hearing that the deceased had made it for the honor of his Soule, would not suffer it to be stirred: for the manner of the *Tartars* is, not so violate those things which belong to the dead. In this Province are many Elephants, wild Oxen, great and faire Stagges and Deere, and other wild Beasts of diuers kinds.

The Province *Bengala* bordereth vpon *India* toward the South, which *Great Can* subdued, when *Marco Polo* lived in his Court. The Country hath a proper King, and peculiar language. The Inhabitants thereof are all Idolaters: they haue Maisters which keepe Schooles and teach Idolatries and Incantments; a thing common to all the great Men of that Country. They eat Fiehl, Rice and Milke: they haue Cotton in great plentie, and by reason thereof, much and great trading is exercised there: they abound also with Spike, Galangal, Ginger, Sugar, and diuers other Spices. Hage Oxen also are there, comparable with Elephants in height but not in thickness. Many Eunuchs are made in this Province, which are afterwards sold vnto Merchants. This Province continueth thirte dayes journey, in the end whereof going Eastward is the Province of *Cangiu*.

Cangiu hath his proper King and peculiar language. The Inhabitants thereof worship Idols, and are Tributaries to *Great Can*. Their King hath about three hundred Wives. Much gold is found in this Province, and many Spices, but they cannot easily be transported, seeing that country is farre distant from the Sea. There are also many Elephants in it, and much game of many wild Beasts. The Inhabitants thereof liue with Fiehl, Milke and Rice. They want Wine, but they make good drinke of Rice and Spices. As well the Men as the Women vie to embroider their Faces, Necks, Hands, Bellies and Legs, making the Images of Lions, Dragons and Birds, and so firmly imprint them that they cannot easily bee put out: and the more such Images any one hath, by so much is hee esteemed the more gallant. And there be Professors of this foolish Art of such embroidery, which vie no other Trade but this Needle-work, and dying of Fooles-skinneres.

Amu is an Easterly Province subiect to *Great Can*, whose Inhabitants worship Idols, and haue a peculiar language, which Merchants bring into *India*. They haue also many Buffes and Oxen, because there are delicate Pastures there. As well Men as Women, wear bracelets of gold and silver of great value on their armes, also the like on their legs: but those of the Women are of most value. From *Amu* to *Cangiu* are five and twentie dayes journey.

The Province *Tholman* is eight dayes journey distant to the East from *Amu*, subiect vnto *Great Can*, hauing a peculiar language, and worshipping Idols. The Men and Women thereof are tall and goodly, of a browne colour. The Country is very well inhabited, hauing many and strong Castles and Cities. The men are exercised in Armes and accustomed to warre. They burne the bodies of their dead, and inclosing the Reliques of their bones in a Chest, hide them in the Caves of the Mountaines, that they cannot bee touched either of man or beast. Gold is in great plentie there, and in stead of money they vie Porcelaines brought from *India*, as also in *Cangiu* and *Amu*.

From the Province *Tholman*, the way leadeth towards the East on a River, by which are many Cities and Castles, and at the end of twelue dayes you come to the great City *Cingiu*. The Country is subiect to *Great Can*, and the Inhabitants thereof are addicted to Idolatrie. Excellent Clothes are made in this Country of the barks of Trees, wherewith they are clothed in the Summer. Very many Lions are there, so that for feare of them, none dare sleepe without doores by night. The ships which goe vp and downe the River, for feare of the Lions, are not fastned to the banke. There are great Dogs in the same Country, so hardie and strong, that they feare not to adventure on the Lion: And it often happeneth, that two Dogs and one Archer kill a Lion: for the Dogs first on by the man give the onlet, and the Lions nature is presently to seeke helter for some Tree, that the Dogs left he should seeme afraid: but he holds his stately pace, the man meanwhile shooting, and the Dogs falling on his hinder parts, but with such quicknesse, that when the Lion turnes on them they are gone. And then doth this magnanimous beast hold on his way againe to seeke such Tree laccour, that with Bitings and Arrowes he sometimes comes flory, and with expence of blood dyeth by the way. This Country aboundeth with Silke, which by Merchants is carried to diuers Provinces by the River. They liue on Merchandise, their money is Paper. They are valiant in Armes. At the end of ten dayes is the City *Sidin*, and twentie dayes from thence is *Gingiu*, and foure dayes thence is *Pacassu* towards the South, and is in *Catalu* returning by the other side of the Province. The people are Idolaters and burne their dead. There are also certaine *Christians* which haue a Church: all vnder the *Can* and vie Paper money. They make Clothes of Gold and Silke, and Laues very fine. By this City (which hath many Cities vnder it) goes a great River which carries load of merchandise to *Cambalu*, made by many Channels to passe thither. But wee will passe hence, and proceeding three dayes journey, I speake of *Cianglu*.

Cianglu is a great City toward the South of the Province of *Catalu*, subiect to the *Can*; the Inhabitants are Idolaters, and burne their dead. Their money is the (Malberce) Paper come of the *Can*.

Can. In this City and the Territories they make store of Sale, for that Earth is very falc, and out of it they get Sale, after this manner. They heape vp Earth in manner of an Hill, and poure water vpon it, which drawes the saltnesse of the Earth vnto it, and then runnes into certaine Conduits, and is boyled in Pannes till it be congealed to Salt faire and white, to the *Can*, and their great gaine, being carried into the other Countries to sell. There are great Peaches very good, which weigh two pound a piece. Famed *Cianglu* (journey beyond the City *Cianglu*, in *Catalu* Southward standeth another City, named *Janglu* (in which way are many Cities and Castles all subiect to the *Can*) through the middle whereof runneth a great Riuer, very conuenient for shipping laden with merchandises.

Six dayes journey thence to the South (all which way hath great Cities and Castles of Idolaters) is the noble Kingdome and great City *Tadufu*, which hath his proper King, before it was subdued to *Great Can*, Anno 1275. and hath eleven Royall Cities, famous for Traffick, subiect to the iurisdiction thereof. It is very delectable for Gardens and Fruits, rich in Silke. The *Can* sent to the government hereof one of his Barons, named *Luanfur*, with eight thousand Horse: who rebelled against his Lord, but was thine by a power of one hundred thousand vnder two other Barons sent against him, and the Country reduced to obedience. Seven dayes off (siding by many Cities and Castles of Idolaters, plentifull of all things) towards the South is the famous City, named *Singumata*, vnto the which on the South, a certaine great Riuer runneth, which being diuided by the Inhabitants of the place into two Rivers, floweth partly to the East towards *Catalu*, and partly to the West towards *Mangi*. By these Rivers, innumerable Vessels for multitude, and incredible for their greatnesse and wealth, bring necessaries to both Provinces. If you goe sixteen dayes journey towards the South from *Singumata*, you still meet with Cities and Townes where much trading is exercised. The Inhabitants of these Countries are Idolaters, subiect to *Great Can*.

After that sixteen dayes, you come vnto a great Riuer, named *Caramorus*, which is said to flow out of the Kingdome of *Can* or *Pragel* into the North. It is very deepe, and carryeth Ships of great burthen: it is also stored with Fish. Within one dayes journey of the Sea there are in this River fifteen thousand Saile, each of which carryeth fiftene Horses and twentie Men, besides Vithalls and the Mariners. This is the *Can*'s Fleet kept there in readinesse, to carrie an Armie to any of the Islands in the Sea, if they should rebell, or to any remote Region Neere the bankes of the Riuer where these Ships are kept, is *Coguanza*, and ouer against it *Quanzan*, one a great City, the other small. After you are past that Riuer, you enter into the noble Kingdome of *Mangi*. And doe not thinke that wee haue handled in order the whole Province of *Catalu*: yea, I haue not spoken of the twentieth part. For *Can*, *Polo* passing by the said Province, hath only described the Cities in his way, leaving those on both hands, and those betwixt thine, to present tediousness.

The Province of *Mangi* is the most rich and famous that is found in the East: And *Can*, Anno 1269, had a certaine King, named *Fanfuf*, richer and mightier then any which had reigned there in an hundred yeeres, but a man peaceable and full of almesdeeds, so beloved of his subiects, that thereby, and by the strength of the Countie, he seemed invincible. Whereby it came to passe, that the King as well as the People, lost the vie and exercise of Warre and Armes. All the Cities were compassed with Ditches, a Bow shoot broad, full of Water. Hee held in pay no Horses, because he feared none. And hence it came to passe, that the King giuing himselfe to pleasure more then was meete, enioyed continuall delights. Hee maintayned about a thousand goodly Lasses, with which hee passed his time in pleasure. He nourished Iustice, and preferred Peace. No man durst offend his Neighbour, and disturbe the Peace, for feare of severe vnpartiall punishment. So that Artificers would often leaue their Shops full of Warres open by night, and yet none would presume to enter into them. Trauailers and strangers most safely walked day and night, throughout that whole Kingdome, fearing no man. The King himselfe also was pitifull and mercifull towards the Poore, and forsooke not them that were oppressed with needefulle, or pinched with penurie.

Besides, every yeere hee tooke vp twentie thousand young Infants, call off by their Mothers, which through povertie were not able to keepe them, which he brought vp and fet them when they were growne to some Trade, or married the young Men with the Maids which hee had in like sort educated.

Nobal Can was of a differing disposition to *Fanfuf*, and delighted onely in Warres and Conquests, and to make himselfe Great he sent a great Arme leuiel of Horse and Foot, and made one, named *Chingfu* *Bala* (that is, one hundred eyes) Generall thereof. Hee, therefore, comming with his Arme and a Fleet to the Province of *Mangi*, first summoned the City *Coguanza* to yield obedience to his Emperour. Who refusing the same, hee departed without any assault giuen to the City: and required the same of the second City, which likewise refusing, hee marched forward to the third, and fourth, and received the like answer of them all. But hee assaulted the next with great courage, and vanquished the same by force, and slue every mother child therein; which so affrighted and terrified the rest, that they all presently yielded. Moreover, *Great Can* sent another great Arme after the former, with both which Armies hee marched against the chiefe City *Quanzan*.

Quinfai the Earthly City of Heaven, O how much better is the heavenly City on Earth in grace, & more than incommensurable than heavenly City of Heaven in glory! *Quinfai*, p. 31. The situation 15000 bridges. The Ditch.

Ten Market places.

The high street. The main Channel.

The Markets.

Pears of ten pound.

Trades of divers sorts.

A busy City.

The Quinfai Citizens and their conditions.

come to *Quinfai*, which for the excellency hath that name (interpreted *City of Heaven*) for in the World there is not the like, in which for so many pleasures, that a man would think he were in *Paradise*. In this *City* *Marcus Polo* hath often bene, and considered the fame with great diligence, observing the whole state thereof, setting downe the fame in his memorials, as here shall be declared briefly. This *City* by common opinion, is an hundred miles in circuit; for the streets and channels thereof are very wide. There are Market places exceeding large. On the one side a close Lake of fresh water, on the other a great River which enters in many places, and carries away all the filth of the *City*, and so runneth into that Lake, thence continuing his course to the Ocean: which causeth a good ayre, and commodious passage both by land, and by tide channels. There may goe both Carres and Barks to carrie necessities: and the report is, that there are twelve thousand Bridges great and small, and those on the chiefe channels are so high that a ship without her Malt may passe vnder, and above, Chariots and Horses.

On the other side the *City* is a Ditch, about fortie miles long, which endeth it on that side large and full of water from the River, made by the ancient Kings of that Prouince, both to receive the overflowings of the water, and to fortifie the *City*: the earth which was taken out being layd within as a bank or hill encompassing. There are ten chiefe Market-places (besides infinite others along the streets) which are square, halfe a mile in each square. And from the forefront of them is a principall street fortie paces wide, running right from one end of the *City* to the other, with many Bridges trauesing it. And every foure miles is found such a Market-place, two miles, as is said, in compass. There is also one large channel, which runnes against the said street, behind the Market-places, on the next bank whereat are erected great Store-houses of stone, where the Merchants from *India*, and other parts lay up their Merchandise, at hand, and commodious to the Market-places. In each of these Market-places is a concourse three dayes in the weeke of perions betwixt force and fiftie thousand, which bring thither all things that can be desired for mans life, of all beastes of game, and fowles; that Lake yielding fish commodiouly to bring them up, that for a *Ventian* groat you may haue two Geese, and foure Ducks for as much. Then follow the *Banckes* of Veale, Beefe, Kid, and Lambe, which the great and rich men eat; for the poore eat vnderane meats without respect. There are all sorts of herbes and fruits continually, and amongst the rest *large Pears*, weighing ten pounds a piece, white within like paste, and very fragrant: Peaches yellow and white very delicate: Grapes grow not there, but are brought from other places dried very good, and Wine also, but not so esteemed in those parts, that of Rice and Spices contenting them. Every day from the Ocean is brought up the River (which is the space of five and twentie miles) great quantitie of fish, besides that of the Lake, so much as a man would thinke would neuer be bought, and yet in a few houres is gone. All those Market-places are encompassed with high houles, and vnderneath are shops of Artificers, and all sort of Merchandise, Spices, Jewels, Pearles, and in some other Rice-wine. Many Chinese answers one another in the said Market-places. In some of them are many Baths of cold waters accommodated with attendants of both sexes, a thing which from children they vie themselves vnder. There are chambers also in the said Baths with hot waters for strangers which are not accustomed to the cold waters. They wash every day, neither doe they eat before they have washed.

In other streets are mercenarie Prostitutes in such number, that I dare not report it: and not only neere the Market-places, where they haue their places appointed, but thorow all the *City* they stand very pompously with great odours, many seruants, and their houles adorned. There are very practise in making sports, and dalliances, and sweetest pleasures trauesing (sole) forth of themselves. In other streets are the Physicians, the Astrologers, they which teach to reade and write, and infinite other Trades. At each end of every Market-place is a Palace, where Lords and Gouernours are appointed by the King to determine difficulties which happen betwixt Merchants or others, as also to looke to the Guards on the Bridges, punishing the negligent. Alongst the principall Street (whereof wee spake) on both sides are great Palaces with Gardens; and neere them houses of Artificers, and such multitudes of people continually going to and fro, that a man would wonder whence such multitudes should be provided of victuals. And *Matter Marco* learned of an officer of the Customs-house in *Quinfai*, that by reckoning a prepared the daily expence of Pepper in *Quinfai*, to be three and fortie Sums, and every Sum is two hundred twentie three pounds. Hence may be guessed the quantitie of Victuals, Fieles, Wine, Spices, were there spent.

The Inhabitants are Idolaters, spend Paper money, are white and faire complexion, apperled for the most part in Silke, which grows in all that Territorie abundantly, besides that which is brought from other places. There are twelve principall Mysteries, each of which haue one thousand shops; and in each shop or standing, are ten men, fiftene, or twentie at worke, and in some fortie vnder one Master. The rich Masters doe no worke with their hands, but stand ciuilly adorned, or rather pompously, especially their wives, with Jewels inualluable. And although the ancient Kings ordaind, that the child should bee of the fathers Trade; yet the rich

rich are permitted not to worke, but to keepe shop, and men working in the same Trade. Their Houles are well ordered, and wrought richly, adorned with Pictures and other splendid costs. The Natives are peaceable, know not to manage Armes, nor keepe them in their Houles: nor is there strife and debate amongst them. They make their worke with great fantasticie. They loue in chere amitie, that one Street seems as one Houle, without jealousies of their Wives, which they hold in great respect, and it would be reputed great disgrace to speake a dishonest word to a married Woman. They entertayne Merchant-Strangers kindly, both in their houles, and with best aduice for their affaires. But they are loth to see Souldiers and the Guards of the Grand *Can*, as bounteous, by whom they are bereft of their naturall Lords and Kings.

- 10 About the Lake are built faire Buildings and great Palaces of the chiefe men: and Temples of their Idols with Monasteries of many Monks. In the midst of the Lake are two Ilands, vpon each of which is a Palace with incredible numbers of Rooms; whether they resort vpon occasions of Marriages or other Feasts; where Prouisions of Veffels, Napery, and other things are maintayned in common for such purposes, one hundred sometime accommodated at once in several Rooms. In the Lake also are Boates and Barges for pleasure, adorned with faire Seates and Tables, and other prouisions for Bankets, couered above and plaine, vpon which men stand with Poles to make the Boat goe, the Lake being but shallow. Within they are painted; without, are windowes to open and shut at pleasure. Nor can any thing in the World seeme more pleasant then in this Lake to haue such an object, the *City* so fully presenting it selfe to the eye, with so many Temples, Monasteries, Palaces, Gardens with high Trees on the Waters, Barges, People: for their culture is to worke one part of the day, and to dispende some part to this solace with their Friends, or with Women in the Lake; or else by Chariots riding thorow the *City*, which is also another of the *Quinfai* pleasures. For all the streets are paved with stone; as also are all the high Ways in the Prouince of *Mangi*, only for the Postes is left on the side, a space vnepaved. The principall street of *Quinfai* is paved ten paces on each hand, and in the midst it is full of Grauell which passages for the Water, which keepe it alway cleane. On this street are alway innumerable long close Chariots, accommodated with Clothes and Cushions of silke, for six persons, which close themselves in the street, or goe to Gardens, and there passe the time in places made by the Gardeners for that purpose, and returne at night in the said Chariots.

- 30 When one is borne, the Father sets downe the print of Time, and with that note goes to the Astrologer to consult of his future fortunes. Of these Astrologers are a great number in every Market-place. They will not celebrate a marriage without such consultation. When one dies that is of note, his Kindred clothe themselves in Canuade, and so both Men and Women accompany him to the burning place, playing on Instruments, and singing all the way prayers to their Idols: and being come to the place, cast into the fire many Papers of Cotton, whereon are painted Saints, Horses, Camels, Clothes of gold and silke, Monies, which they thinke hee shall really possesse in another World; and make such mirth, in conceit of the ioy wherewith the Idols there receive his Soule, where hee beginneth (they say) to lay awew. In every street are 40 Towers of stone, within in danger of fire they vie to carrie their goods, their timber houles being such subiect to such casualties.

- The *Can* hath ordaind that on the most part of the Bridges, day and night, there stand Wardens, a court ten Guardians, five by day and five by night: and in every Guard is a Tabernacle of Wood with a great Balcon, whereby they know the houres of the day and night, which at every houres end the Wardens strike to notifie what hour, one, two, &c. beginning at the Sunne rising, and then againe at the beginning of the night. They walke up and downe, and if any haue a light or fire after the departed time, they cause him to answer it before the Iustices or Gouernours abroad; or if any walke later. If any be not able to worke, they carrie him to Hospitals, of Hospitals, which are exceeding many founded by the Kings of old, with great reuenues, thorow the *City*. When they are well againe, they are compelled to worke. If a fire happen; these from diuers places come to quench it, and to carrie the goods into Boats, or the Ilands, or those Towers: for in the night the Citizens dare not come out, but those who are in danger. The *Can* alway keepeth here store of his best and faithfulllest Souldierie, as being the best and richest place in the World. Within a mile of each other are builded Rampiers of wood, where a found is made to be heard further off, for like purposes.

- When the *Can* had reduced all *Mangi* to his obedience, hee diuided it (being before but one Kingdom) into nine parts, and set a King ouer each, which these administer iustice. Every yeere they give account to the *Can* Officers of the reuenues, and other accidents; and every third yeere are charged, as all other Officers are. One of these Deputie-Kings is resident at *Quinfai*, who is Gouernour of about one hundred and fortie Cities, all rich and great. Nor may this be wondered, seeing in *Mangi* there are twelve thousand Cities, all inhabited with rich and industrious people. In euery of which the *Can* maintayneth a Garrison, proportionable to the greatness and occasions, one thousand, ten or twentie thousand; not all *Tartars*, but *Catays*; for the *Tartars* are Horle-men, and keepe where they may exercise their Horses. Into *Cathay* he sends

Nine Vice-royes in *Mangi*.

12000 Cities, and their Garrison.

chose of *Mangi*, and *Cahayan* hither such as are fit for Armes, of which he makes choise every third yeere : and sends for foure or fve yeeres together into places twentie dayes journey from their Countrey, and then suffers them to retorne home, others succeeding. And most part of the *Can* Reccits are this way expended : and if any Citie rebell, he suddenly from the next Garrison rayleth an Arme to reduce or destroy them. This Citie of *Quinsai* hath in continuall Garrison thirtie thousand Souldiers ; and that which hath least, hath one thousand in Horse and Foote.

Fanfurs Palace To speake now of the Palace of King *Fanfurs* ; his Predecessors caused to enclose a place of ten miles circuit with high walls, and divided it into three parts. That in the middle was entered by one Gate ; on the one side and the other were great and large Galleries, the Roofs sustayned by 10 Pillars painted, and wrought with gold and fine azure ; these were smaller at the entrie, and the further the greater ; the fairest at the end, the Roofs fairly adorned with gold, and on all the Walls were painted the stories of the former Kings artificially. There every yeere on certaine I-doll holy-dayes, *Fanfurs* kept his Court and feasted his principall Lords, the great Masters, and rich Artificers of *Quinsai*, ten thousand at a time vnder those Terraces. This dured ten or twelve dayes with incredible magnificence, every guest endeavouring to present himselfe in gayerest pompe. Behind this middle-most building was a wall, and going out which diuided the Palace in which was, as it were, a Cloyster with Pillars, sustayning the Porch or Terrace round about the Cloyster : wherein were Chambers for the King and Queene curiously wrought. From this Cloyster was entrance into a Gallerie six paces wide, in length extending to the Lake, all covered. On each side of this Gallerie were ten Courts, answering one another fashioned like Cloysters, each Court having fiftie Chambers with their Gardens, and in them one thousand Ladies abode, which the King kept for his seruice, who sometimes with the Queene, sometimes with them, went in his barge on the Lake for solace, or to visit his Idoll Temples.

12000 Women
in 1000 chambers.

Great Parks.

The other two parts of the Serrail were diuided into Groves, Lakes, Gardens planted with Trees ; in which were inclosed all sorts of beasts, Roes, Bucks, Stags, Hares, Conies ; and there the King solaced himselfe with his Damfels in Charets or on Horse-backe, no man entring there. There did he cause *Tsife* to hunt with his Dogs, weane whereto they went into those Groves, which answered one another over the Lakes, and there leaving their garments came forth naked, and let themselves a swimming in the Kings presence. Sometimes hee would take his repast in those Groves being serued by those Damfels, without once thinking of Armes, which *tsueh* meat cost him the foure *saue* yee have heard. All this was told mee by a rich old Merchant of *Quinsai*, whiles I was there, one which had beene an inward familiar of King *Fanfurs*, and knew all his life, and had seene that Palace flourishing into which he would needs bring me. The Viceroy now resides there ; and the first Galleries remaine as they were wont, but the Damfels Chambers are ruined ; the wall also which encompassed the Woods and Gardens is fallen to the ground, the Beasts and Trees being gone.

The Sea Gam-
ing.

1600000 house-
holds in *Quinsai*.

Revenues of
Quinsai, &c. the
appurtenances
twentie three
Millions of
Duckats, and
1000000.
Customs.

Twentie five miles from *Quinsai* is the Ocean betwixt the East and North-east, neere to which is a Citie, called *Gampu*, a goodly Port, where arriue the *Indian* ships of merchandise. Whiles *M. Marco* was in *Quinsai*, account being giuen to the Grand *Can* of the Revenues, and the number of the Inhabitants, he hath seene that there have bene enrolled one hundred and sixtie Toman of fires, reckoning for a fire, the Familie dwelling in one house : every Toman containeth ten thousand, which makes sixteen hundred thousand Families : of all which there is but one Church of *Christians*, and those *Nestorian*. Every house-holder is bound to have written over his door, the names of the whole house-hold, Males and Females ; also the number of Horses, the names added, or blotted out as the Familie increaseth or decreaseth. And this is observed in *Mangi* and *Catau*.

Those also that keepe Innes, write in a Booke the names of their Guests, and the day and house of their departure, which Booke they send daily to the Lords or Magistrates, which reside at the Market-places. In *Mangi* the poore which are not able to bring vp their children, sell them 50 to the rich.

The Revenues which accrew to the *Can* from *Quinsai*, and the others pertaining thereto, being the ninth part of the Kingdoms of *Mangi*, are first, of Salt every yeere eightie Toman of gold (every Toman is eightie thousand *Sazzi* of gold, and every *Sazzo* is more then one Florin of gold) which will amount to six Millions and foure hundred thousand Duckats. The cause is, that that Province being nigh the Sea, there are many Lakes where the water in Summer is coagulated into Salt, where with fve other Kingdomes of that Province are serued. There is flore of Sugar growing, which payeth as all other Spices doe, three parts and a third in the hundred. The like of Rice-wine. Also those twelue mysteries (which we said had twelue thousand shops) and the Merchants which bring goods hither, or carrie any hence by Sea, pay the same price. They which come from faire Countreies and Regions, as from the *Indus*, pay ten per cento. Likewise, all things there breeding, as Beasts, and growing out of the Earth, and Silke, pay nine to the King. And the computation being made in the computation of *M. Marco*, besides Salt before mentioned, yearly amounts to two hundred and ten Toman, which will bee sixteen millions of gold and eight hundred thousand.

From

FROM *Quinsai* one dayes journey to the South-east are all the way Houses, Villages, faire Gardens, plentifull of Victuals, at the end whereto is *Taprasu*, a faire and great Citie, in the iurisdiction of *Quinsai*. Three dayes thence South-east is *Yguin*, and two dayes further may you ride that way, all the way finding Castles, Cities, and cultivated places, in such Neighbour-hoods, that they seeme to Travellers all one Citie ; all in the same iurisdiction of *Quinsai*. There are great Canes fifteen paces long and foure palmes thicke. Two dayes journey thence is the Citie *Gongui*, faire and great, and travelling further South-east are inhabited places, full of People and Trades. And in this part of *Mangi* are no Muttons, but Beues, Buffals, Goates, and Swine in great plenty. At the end of foure dayes journey is found the Citie *Zengian*, built on a Hill in the midst of a River, which with her parted Armes embraceth and encompasseth it, and then runne one to the South-east, the other to the North-west. They are in the iurisdiction of *Quinsai*, are Merchants, Idolaters, haue flore of Game. Three dayes journey thence, thorow a goodly Countrey exceedingly inhabited, stands *Giesu*, a great Citie, the last of *Quinsai* Kingdomes, after which you enter into another Kingdome of *Mangi*, called *Concha*. (The principall Citie thereof is *Fugui*) by the which you trauell, six dayes journey South-east, thorow Hills and Dales, alway finding places inhabited and flore of Game of Beasts and Fowle. They are Idolaters, Merchants, subiect to the *Can*. There are foure Lions ; three growes Ginger and Galingale plantie, with other sorts of Spices, eightie pounds of Ginger for a *Sassian* gnat. There is an herbe, whose fruit hath the cheere and giues the colour and smell of Saffron, but is not Safron, vnder in their meates. They voluntarily eat mans flesh, if they die not of sickness, as daintier then others. When they goe to Warres, they shawe to the eares and paint their faces with azure, they are all Foot save the Capitaine which rideth, and vie Swords and Launces : are very cruell, and when they kill an Enemie, presently drink his blood, and after eat his flesh.

After those six dayes trauell is *Quinsai*, a great Citie with three Bridges, each eight paces broad and about one hundred long ; the Women faire, delicate ; and they haue flore of Silke and Cotton, are great Merchants, haue flore of Ginger and Galingale. I was told, but saw them not, that they haue Hennes without feathers, hayrie like Cats, which yet lay Egges and are good to eat. Store of Lions make the way dangerous. After three dayes, in a populous Countrey which are Idolaters, and haue flore of Silke, is the Citie *Ynguen*, where is great plenty of Sugar, sent thence to *Camblin*, which they knew not to make good till they became subiect to the *Can* ; in whose Countrey were *Babylonians*, which taught them to refine it with ashes of certayne Trees, they before only boyling it into a blacke paste. Fifteene miles further is *Cangie*, still in the Realme of *Concha* ; and here the *Can* kepten an Arme in readinesse for guard of the Countrey. Thorow this Citie passeth a River a mile broad, fairly built on both sides, and stored with Ships of Sugar and other lading. This River disembokes from hence fve dayes journey South-east, at *Zaitum*, a Sea Port, from whence the rich Ships of *India* come to this pleasant and fertile Citie, as is the way betwixt, in which are Trees or Shrubs of *Cassia*.

Zaitum is a famous Port, where many Ships arriue with merchandise, thence dispersed thorow all *India*. There is fast flore of Pepper, that the quantitie which comes to *Alexandria* to the West, is litle to it, and as it were one of a hundred : the concourse of Merchants is incredible, it being one of the most commodious Ports of the World, exceeding profitable to the *Can*, which Custometh ten of the hundred of all merchandise. They pay so much for hire of ships also that there is not about one halfe of their merchandise remaining entree to themselves, and yet is that moitie very gainfull to them. The Citie is *Isakroun*, giuen to pleasure ; in it is much embroidery and Aras work. The River is great, very wide and swift, and one as it were it goeth to *Quinsai*, at the parting of which it *Tangui* issue, where Porcelaine dishes are made (as I was told) of a certaine Earth which they cast vp in great Hills, and set le to it all weathers for shurtie or fortie yeeres without flurring : after which retining by time, they make Dishes, paint them and then put them in the Furnace. You may there haue eight Dishes for one *Venian* Groat. In this Kingdome of *Concha* the *Can* hath as great Revenue also as of the Kingdome of *Quinsai*. In these two *M. Marco* was, and in none of the other nine Kingdomes of *Mangi* (in all which is one speech vied, with variatie of Dialect, and one sort of writing) and therefore will speake no more of them ; but in the next Booke discourse of *India* the Greater, the Middle, and the Lesse, in which hee was both in the seruice of the *Can*, and also in his retorne with the Queene to *Argon*.

§. IX.

The Ships of India described, the Isle of Zipangu, the Sea Chin, and World of Islands, the two Iauas, Zeilan and other Islands, with the rarities therein.

Here begins
the third book
of *At. Polo*.
Ships of India.

WE now enter into *India* and begin with their Ships, which are made of Firre, and the Zipango Tree, with one deck, on which are twentie Cabbins (or Iellias) the Ships are in quantitie each for one Merchant. They have a good Roofter, and four Malls with four Sailes, and some two Malls, which they reef or take downe at pleasure. Some greater Ships have thirteene *Cuts*, or divisions, on the infide made with boards inclosed, that if by blow of a Whale or touch on a Roke water gets in, it can goe no further then that division; which being found is soone mended. They are all double, that is, have two course of boards one within the other, and are well talked with Ocam, and naved with Iron, but not pitched (for they have no Pitch) but anointed with the Oile of a certayne Tree mixed with Lime and Hemp beaten small, faster then Pitch or Lime. The greater Ships have three hundred Mariners, others two hundred, one hundred and fiftie, as they are in biggnes, and from five to fix thousand bags of Pepper. And they were wont to be greater then now they are; the Sea having broken into two Islands, that the defect of water, in some places, causeth them to build less. They vie also Oares in these Ships, four men to one Oare: and the greater Ships have with them two or three ships lesse, able to carry a thousand bags of Pepper, hauing fixtie or more Mariners, which lesse ships serve sometimes to tow the greater. They have also with them ten small Boats for fishing and other seruises, fastned to the sides of the greater ships, and let downe when they please to vise them. Also they slea their ships after a yeres voyage, so that then they have three course of boards; yea proceed on in this manner sometimes till there be fix courses, after which they brake them vp. Hauing spoken of the ships, we will speake of *India*, and first of certayne Islands.

Zipangu.

De maribus ma-

iora: golden

fishes, and

make differ-

ences betwee

his owne Re-

lations and

those which

he had in the

second booke

although it be

true of each

gulfing in Eden

chap. 4. v. 40. 3.

This punish-

ment the Mo-

guls visit to Co-

from Cap-

taines and in

many things

you shall see

Sir T. More and

our *M. G. R.*

relations agree

with those of

Polo the *Mogul*

being of *Tartar*

original.

Now for *China*

Can *Zeilan* is

pronounced

Chia

The Monfoun

Zipangu is an Island in the East, one thousand and five hundred miles distant from the shoares of *Mangi*, very great, the people white and faire, of gentle behauior, in Religion Idolaters, and have a King of their owne. They haue gold in great store, for f.w Merchants come thither, and the King permits no exportation of it. And they which haue had commerce there tell of the Kings house covered with Gold, as Churches here with Lead, gilded Windows, Floors of gold: there are many Pearles, Once, the fame of these riches made *Cublai Can* to lend to conquer it, two Barons, with a great fleet of ships, one named *Abbacatan*, the other *Confinen*, which going from *Zeilan* and *Quinsai* arrived there, but failing out betwixt themselves, could take but one Citie, and there beleaded all they tooke fave eight persons, which by an indurated precious stone inclosed in the right arme betwixt the skinne and flesh, could not be wounded with Iron; whereupon, with wooden Clubs, at the command of the two Barons they were slaine. It happened one day, that a Northerne wind made great danger to the ships there riding, so that some were lost, some returned further into Sea, and others with the two Leaders and 40 other Principals returned home. Out of many broken ships some escaped by boards, and swimming on an Island not inhabited four miles off *Zipangu*, and were about thirte thousand, without provisions of victuals or Armes, against whom the *Zipanguanders*, after the Tempest was calmed, set out a fleet of ships and an Armie. These coming on Land to seeke the wracked *Tartars* without order, gave occasion to the *Tartars* to wheele about, the Island being high in the midst) and to get vnto the ships, which were left vnmann'd with the Streamers displaid; and with them they went to the chiefe Citie of *Zipangu*, where they were admitted without suspicion, and found few others but Women. The King of *Zipangu* beleeged them six months, and they hauing no reliefe yielded themselves, their lues laued: this happened *An. 1264*. The *Can* for this disorder of his two Commanders, cut off the head of one, and sent the other to 30 salvage Island, called *Torea*, where hee causeth Offenders to die, by sewing them, their hands bound, in a new-layed hide of a Bull, which drying thirteenth day as it puts them in a little hole to a miserable death. The Islands in this and the adjoining Islands are made with heads of Kings, Swine, Dogs, and other fashions more monstrous, as with faces on their shoulders, with four faces, or an hundred hands (some, and to these they ascribe most power and do most reverence) and say, that so they learned of their Progenitors. They sometimes eat the Enemies which they take, with great ioy, and for great daunties.

The Sea in which this Island standeth, is called the Sea of *Chu* or *Chin*, that is the Sea against *Mangi*; and in the language of that Island, *Mangi* is called *Chin*: which Sea is so large, that the Mariners and expert Pilots which frequent it, say, that there are fouen thousand four hundred and fortie Islands therein, the most part inhabited, and that there grows no Tree which yeelds not a good smell, and that there grows many Spices of diuers kinds, especially *Lignum Aloe*, and Pepper blacke and white. The ships of *Zeilan* are a yere in their voyage, for they goe in Winter and returne in Summer, hauing Windes of two sorts, which keepe their seasons. And

this Countrey is farre from *India*. But I will leaue them (for I neuer was there, nor are they subiect to the *Can*) and returne to *Zeilan*. From hence sayling South-westward one thousand five hundred miles, passing a Gulfe called *Cheinan* (which continues two moneths sayling to the Northward, still continuing on the South-east of *Mangi*, and elsewhere with *Ania*, and *Toloman*, and other Provinces before named) within it are infinite Islands, all in manner inhabited. In them is found store of Gold, and they trade one with the other. This Gulfe is named another World.

After one thousand and five hundred miles sayling oerthwart this Gulfe, is the Countrey *Zi-Zianba*, ambirich and great, hauing a King and Language proper, Idolaters, and paying tribute to the Grand *Can* of twentie Elephants, and *Lignum Aloe* in great quantitie yearly. *Anno 1268*, the *Can* hearing of the riches of this Island sent thither *Sagun* with an Armie, to invade it. *Accumbale* the King thereof was old, and made this composition of tribute. There are many Woods of blacke Ebonie.

Saying thence betwixt the South and South-east one thousand & five hundred miles, is *Iaua*, a saying thence betwixt the South and South-east one thousand & five hundred miles in circuit, supported by Mariners, the greatest Island in the World, about three thousand miles in circuit, vnder a King which payeth tribute to none, the *Can* not offering to subiect it for the length and danger of the voyage. The Merchants of *Zeilan* and *Mangi* fetch thence store of Gold and Spices. South and South-westward fix hundred miles from *Iaua* are two Islands, one *Sondar*, which is the greater, the other *Candari*, lesse, both detolate. Fifty miles South-east from them is a Province of firme land, very rich and great, named *Loche*; the people Idolaters, hauing a Language and King peculiar. There grows Brazil-wood in great quantitie, store of Gold, Elephants, wilde beastes, and fowle, a fruit called *Berchi*, as great as Limons, very good. The place is mountainous and farge, and the King permits not many to come thither, if they should know his secrets. There is store of Porcelaine shells for money triump. And other places.

Five hundred miles Southward from *Loche* is the *Pentan*, a farge place, which produceth in all the Woods sweet Trees: sixtie miles of the way the Sea is in many places but foue fathoms: after which being sayled to the South-east, thirte miles further is the Island and Kingdome of *Malsur*, which hath a peculiar King, and is a farge place, encompassed with chandele of Spices. From *Pentan* one hundred miles South-east is *Iaua* the Isle, encompassed about two thousand miles, and hath in it eight Kingdomes, and as many Languages. They are Idolaters, haue store of Treasure, Spices, Ebonie, Brazil, and are so farre to the South, that the North Starre cannot there be seen. Master *Mares* was in fixe of those Kingdomes, of which shall here be spoken, leaving the other two, which he saw not.

One of thole eight Kingdomes is *Felch*: here the Idlers by frequent Trade of *Saracens* are conuerted to the Law of *Mahomet*, in the Cities, the Mountaines being beauly, eating mans flesh and all impure food; and we whip all day what they first see in the morning. Next to that is *Bafma*, which hath a Language by it selfe; they live without Law, like beasts, and sometimes lend Hawkes to the *Can* (who challengeth all the land) for Presents. They haue wilde Elephants, and Vnicornes make lesse the Elephants, like the Bulls in haire. Their feet like Elephants feet. They haue one borne in the midst of the fore-head and hure no bodie thir hardy therewith; but with the tongue and knye. For on their tongue on him, and preffe by it downe with their knie, and when they hurt any, they trample on him, and preffe by it downe with their knie, and then wound him with their tongue. The head is like to a wilde Boare, which hee carries downwards to the ground, and they lye to stand in the mire, and are filthy beasts, and not fuch as they (*Vnicornes*) are said to be in our parts, which suffer themselves to be taken of Maidens, but quite contrary. They haue many Apes and of diuers fashions. They haue Goshawkes all blacke as Ruens, great, and good for prey. There are certaine small Apes faced like men, which they put in Boxes, and prelerue with Spices, and sell them to Merchants, who carrie them thar we the World for *Pigmeys*, or little men.

Samaris is the next Kingdome where Master *Mares* stayed five moneths against his will, forced by ill weather. There none of the Starres of *Charles wane* are seen. Hee decened led on land with two thousand people, and there fortie for thar five moneths, for fear of chollish man-eaters, and traied meane while with them for victuals. They haue exorbitant White of the Dite-re, very medicinal for Punticke, Dropie, distates of the Spleene, to re white, some red; and *India* Nuts as big as a mans head, the middle whereof is full of a pleasant liquor, better then Wine: they eat all fish, but eat out any difference.

Dragon is more of that kind. Kingdome, dymed by the *Can*, hauing a proper King and Language. I was told of an about the Citie, that when one is sicke, they tend to enquire of the Sorcerers whether hee shall keape if the Deu is answere, No; the kindred lend for some whole eate it, to strangle the sick, partie, after which they cut him in pieces, and the kindred eat him with great ioy, euen to the marrow of the bones, for (say they) if any substance of him should remaine, vermes would breed thereof, which would waste food, and so die, to the great torture of the soule if the deceased. The bones they after take and carrie into some Cauer in the hills, that no bait may touch them. If they take any strang-er they also eat him.

Land

Lamb. i.

Lambri is a fifth Kingdome of *Iana* in which is store of Brailf, of the seeds whereof *Maister Marco* brought to *Vence*, and sowed them, but in wayne, the soyle being too cold. Some men (the most) in this Kingdome have tayles more then a palme long, like Dogs, but not hairy; and these dwell in the Mountaines our of Cities. They have Vnicornes in great plentie, and chafe of beards and fowles.

Fur. Sec.

Sage, (see in

F. Dr. 47, and

rebre Indian

Rivins.

Heinic Wood.

Canfir, the sixth Kingdome hath the best Canfir, which is sold weight for weight with Gold. In that Province they take meale out of great and long trees, as great as two men can fathom, whence taking the thinn bark and wood about three fingers thicke, the pith within is meale, which they put in water, and stirre well, the lightest droife swimming, and the purer settling to the bottom; and then the water being cast away, they make thereof palle, of which *Maister Marco* brought to *Vence*, calling like Barley bread. The wood of this tree throwne into the water sinkes like Iron, whereof they make Lances, but thort, for the long would be too heauie to beare: these they shapen, and burne at the tops, which so prepared will pierce an Armour sooner then if they were made of Iron.

Nocuran.

Angaman.

Zeilan.

About one hundred and fiftie miles from *Lambri*, sayling Northwards, are two Ilands, one called *Nocuran*, in which they lue like beafts, goe all naked, men and women, and worship Idols, haue excellent Trees, Cloues, Sanders white and red, *Indian Nuts*, Brailf, and other spices: the other, *Angaman*, liuages as the former, and I was told, they had Dogs heads and teeth.

Saying hence one thousand miles to the West, and a little to the North-west, is *Zeilan*, two thousand and four hundred miles in circuit, and of old encompassed three thousand and fixe hundred miles, as is seene in the Maps of the Mariners of these parts, but the North winds haue made a great part of it Sea. It is the best Iland of the World. The King is named *Senderbas*. The men and women are Idolaters, goe naked (save that they cover their priuities with a cloth) haue no Corne, but Rice, and Oyle, of *Sclariuo*, Milke, Fleth, Wine of trees, abundance of Brailf, the best Rubies in the World, *Saphires*, *Toyazes*, *Amethysts*, and other Gems. The King is said to haue the best Rubie in the World, one palme-long, and as big as a mans arme, without spot, shining like a fire, not to be bought for money. *Indus Can* seue and offered the value of a Cite for it, but the King answered, he would not giue it for the treasure of the world, nor part with it, hauing bene his Ancestours. The men are vassal for warres, and hire others when they haue occasion.

B. X.

Of the firme Land of the Greater India.

Malabar.

See my Pilg.

4. 56. 11.

Bread-ducation.

Most of these following customs are still in vye, as in *Ungitton*, and in my Pilg. 45. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30. 31. 32. 33. 34. 35. 36. 37. 38. 39. 40. 41. 42. 43. 44. 45. 46. 47. 48. 49. 50. 51. 52. 53. 54. 55. 56. 57. 58. 59. 60. 61. 62. 63. 64. 65. 66. 67. 68. 69. 70. 71. 72. 73. 74. 75. 76. 77. 78. 79. 80. 81. 82. 83. 84. 85. 86. 87. 88. 89. 90. 91. 92. 93. 94. 95. 96. 97. 98. 99. 100.

Rom *Zeilan* sayling fiftie miles to the West is the great Province of *Malabar*, which is not an Iland, but firme Continent, called *India the greater*, the richest Province in the World. There are in it four Kingdoms, the chiefe of which is *Senderbas*, in whose Kingdoms they fish for Pearles, to wit, betwixt *Malabar* and *Zeilan*, in a Bay where the Sea is not above ten or twelue fathome, in which diuers descend, and in bags or nets tryed to kill the Fishermen, they hire certaine *Bramines* to charme them (being skilfull to charme all sorts of beafts also and birds) and these haue the twentieth, the King the tenth. The Oylers are found all April, and till the midst of May, and not else: in September they finde them in a place about three hundred miles off, and till the midst of October. The King goeth as naked as the rest, save that he weareth some honorable Ensignes, as a Coller of precious liones about his necke, and a threed of Silke to his breast with one hundred and foure tie Pearles (as Beads) to number his Prayers, of which he must daily say so many to his Idols: like Bracelets he weareth on three places of his armes, and likewise on his legs; and on his fingers also and toes. The prayers which he sayeth are *Pacauca*, *pacauca*, *pacauca*, one hundred and foure times. This King hath one thousand women, and if any please his sense he takes her; as one he did from his brother, whence warres had followed, but the mother threatening to cut off her breasts which had nourished him, if they proceeded, Rayed the broyle. He hath many Horsemen for his Guard which alway accompany him, who when the King dies, throw themselves voluntarily into the fire wherein he is buried to doe him seruice in the next World. This and his brethren the Kings of *Malabar* bury their Hories from *Ormu*, and other parts. The Countrey breeds none, and if it beaynes sometimes, yet are they there bred ill-favoured and naught. Condemned persons will offer themselves to die in honour of such an Idol, which is performed with twelve Knives, and twelue wounds in diuers parts of the bodie, at every blow, saying, *I kill my selfe in honour of that Idol*, and the last he thrusts in his heart; and then is buried by his kindred. The viues also cast themselves into the fire with their husbands; they being disputed which refuse it.

They worship Idols, and most of them Beecus, and would not eat of so filthy flesh as Beefe, nor

for all the World. There are some called *Gauri*, which eat those Beecus which dye alone, may not kill them, and dawbe out their houles with Oxe dung. These *Gauri* are of the Posteritie of those which flue *Saint Thomas*, and cannot enter the place where his bodie is, if ten men should carrie them. They sit on Carpets on the ground in this Kingdome, they haue no Corne but Rice, are no Warriours, kill no beafts, but when they will eat any get the *Saracens* to doe it, or other people: wash twice a day, morning and evening both men and women, and will not otherwise eat, which they which obsecure not, are accounted Heretikes. They touch not their meat with the left hand, but vie that hand only to wipe, and other vncleane offices. They drinke each in his owne pot, and will not touch another mans pot, nor suffer their owne to touch their mouth, but hold it out and powre it in. To strangers which haue no pot they powre drinke into their hands to drinke with them. Iustice is leuely executed for Crimes, and Creditors may encompass their Debtors with a Circle, which he dares not passe till hee hath paid or giuen security: if he doth, he is to be put to death: and *M. Marco* once saw the King himselfe on Horse-backe thus encircled by a Merchant whom he had long delayed and frustrated, neither would the King goe out of the Circle which the Merchant had drawne till he had satisfied him, the people applauding the Kings Iustice.

They are very scrupulous in drinking Wine of the Grape, and they which doe it are not admitted to be Witnesse: a thing denyed also to him which layles by Sea, for they say such men are desperate. They thinke Leachery no sinne. It is very hot, and they haue no raime but in June, Iuly, and August, without which refreshing of the Ayre they could not liue. They haue many Phylonomers and Sooth-sayers, which obsecure beafts and Birds, and haue an vnluckie houre every day of the weeke, called *Chinack*, as on Munday betwixt two and three, on Tuesday, the third houre, on Wednesday the ninth, &c. throw all the yeare set downe in their Bookes. They curiously obsecure Natuities: at thirteen years old they put the Boyes to get their owne liuings, which come by some way down to buy and sell, haue a little stocke giuen them to begin: and in the fallowen they buy a few Pearles, and sell them againe to the Merchants, which cannot well endure the Sunne for little gaine. What they get they bring to their Mothers to dedde for them, but may not eat at their Fathers cost.

They haue Idols Males and Females, to which they offer their Daughters, which when the Monkes (or Priests) appoint, sing and dance to cheere the Idols, and duers times set victuals before them saying, that they eat, leauing it the space of a meale, singing the while, and then they fall to eating in deed, after which they returne home: The cause of these folacies is the household quarrels betwixt the God and his Goddesse, which if they should not thus appease, they should lose their blessing.

The great men haue Litters of large Canes, which they can fasten artificially to some vpper place, to preuent *Taramulata* bying and Fleas, and other Vermines; and for fresh Aire. The place of *Saint Thomas* his Sepulchre, is a small Cite, finally frequented by Merchants, infinitely by Christians and *Saracens* alike. The place is called *St. Thomas*, and call him a great Prophet, and call him *Andra*, that is a holy man. The Christians take of the Earth where he was layne, which is red, and

40 carry it with them with great reuerence, and giue it mixed with water to the sick. *Ann. 1588.* A great Prince hauing more Rice then room to lay it in, made bold with *Saint Thomas* his Church in the room where Pilgrimes were receiued, but by a vision of *Saint Thomas* in the night was so terrified that he quickly freed the place. The Inhabitants are black, not so borne, but often anoynt themselves with *Sessimene* Oyle to obayne that beautie: they paint the Deuill white, and their Idols black. The Beecus worshippers carry with them to battell, some of the haire of a wild Oxe as a preteruatiue against dangers: and therefore such haire are dearely prized.

Morpilis or *Monsul* is Northward from *Malabar* five hundred miles, they are Idolaters. They haue Diamonds in their hills, which they search for after great rains. West-wards from *Saint Thomas* is *Lae*, whence the *Bramines* haue originally, which are the true Merchants in the World, and will not vie for any thing, and trustfully keepe any thing committed to their custody, or sell, or better Merchandise for others. They are knowne by a Cotton threed which they weare out the sholder tyed vnder the arme cooling the breest. They haue but one Wife, are great Diuiners, of great abstinence and long life: obsecure their owne shadow in the Sunne when they are to buy, and thence coniecture according to their Discipline. They vie to chew a certayne Herbe which makes their teeth good and helps digestion. There are some Religious of them called *Tingus*, which goe altogether naked, lue austere, worshipping the Beecus, whereof they laue a little brailf Image on their forehead, and of the Oxe bones alies make an Ointment, wherewith they anoynt their bodies in diuers places with great reuerence. They nor kill nor eat any quick creature, nor herbe greene, or Root before it is dryed, esteeming all things to haue a soule. They vie no Dishes but lay their Vands on dry leaues of *Aples* of *Paradise*. They doe their Excrements in the Sands, and then disperse it: higher and chuter, left it should breed Wormes which must presently dye for want of food. Some of them lue to one hundred and fiftie yeares, and their bodies after death are burne.

Deuile.

Boyes put to selling.

Their Idols & Vnities.

Malabar is by this Author extended to Chromadit: also

Morpilis.

Lat. Bramines.

Strongest Belief of the Cited Deuils.

In *Zeilan* I had forgot to tell of a high Mountayne, which none can ascend but by Iron chains, as I was told, in the top whereof the *Saraceni* lay is *Adem's* Sepulchre, the Idolater say it is the body of *Sogomonbarchan* the first Idol-founder, sonne to a King of that Island, which gave himselfe to a solitary life on the top of this hill, whence no pleasures nor perfections could draw him. His Father made an Image after his death to represent him, all of Gold adorned with Gemmes, and commanded all the Islanders to worship it, and hence began Idolatry. Higher they come from farre places in Pilgrimage; and there his haire, teeth, and a dish of his are revered, and solemnly thought. The *Saraceni* say they are of *Adem*, which report caused the *Can* Anno 1281, to send Ambassadors thither, who obtained two teeth, and a dish, and some of his haire by grant of the King of *Zeilan*, which he caused to be received by the whole people of *Cam-10 balu*, without the City, and brought to his presence with great honour.

Cam is a great City governed by *Ashir*, one of the four Brethren, very rich and a good vser of Merchants: he hath three hundred women. All the people have a custome to carry in their mouths chawing, a leafe called *Tumbul*, with Spices and Lime, *Conlam* is five hundred miles North-west from *Malabar*, they are Idolaters; there are also *Christians* and *Jewes* which haue speech by themselves. They have Pepper, Brasil, Indico, Lions all blacke, Parrots of diuers sorts, all white as Snow, others Azure, others Redd, and some very little: Peacocks and *Pachens* much differing from ours, and greater, as are their fruits. They are lecherous, and marrie their sisters and kindred. There are many Astrologers and Physicians. In *Camari* are Apes so great that they seeme men: and here we had fight of the North starre. *Dely* hath a proper King and Language: the people Idolatrous and haue store of Spices. The shippes of *Mangi* come thither.

Malabar is a Kingdome in the West, in which and in *Gauzerat* are many Pirats, which come to Sea with about one hundred Sails, and rob Merchants. They bring with them their wives and children, and there abide all Summer. In *Gauzerat* is store of Cotton, the Trees fix fathoms (or paces) high, and round twenty yeeres; the Cotton of the old Trees is not good to spin, after they are past twelve yeeres old, but for Quills. There are many * Vncomers: they haue artificiall embroideries. In *Camari* is store of Frankincense; it is a great City, where is great trade for Horles. In *Cambaria* is much Indico, Buckram, and Cotton. *Serwanah* is a Kingdome of a peculiar language, Idolaters, Merchants, a good people. *Chyfrancense* is a great Kingdome of Idolaters and *Saraceni*, the last Province of the greater *India* towards the North-west (according to the *Author* according to his journey from China or *Mangi* by Sea) five hundred miles from which, are said to be two lands, one of Men, the other of Women, those coming to them there stay March, Aprill, and May. The Women keepe their Sonnes till twelve yeeres, and then send them to their Fathers. It seemes the Ayre admits no other course. They are *Christians* and haue their Bishop, subiect to the Bishop of *Socotera*; they are good Fishers and haue store of Amber. *Socotera* hath an Archbishop, not subiect to the Pope, but to one *Zatulus* which resides in *Baldach*, who chooleth him. The *Socoterans* are Incanters and great Witches, as any in the world (howsoever excommunicated therefore by their Prelate) and raise Windes to bring backe fische ships as haue wronged them, in despite of all contrarie working.

A thousand miles thence Southward is *Magesther*, one of the greatest and richest Illes of the World, three thousand miles in circuit, inhabited by *Saraceni*, governed by foure old men. The People live of merchandise, and sell great store of Elephants teeth. The Currents in these parts are of exceeding force. They tell of Bowles, called *Roch*, like an Eagle, but of incomparable greatness, able to carrie an Elephant (but I am not able to carrie it). *Zereibar* also is said to be of great length, &c. there are Elephants, Giraffes, thence vnlike to ours, the Men and Women are very deformed. I haue heard Mariners and great Pilots of those parts report, and haue seen in their writings, which haue compassed the Sea of *India*, that there are in it twelve thousand and fouen hundred Islands, inhabited or desert. In *India maior*, which is from *Malabar* to *Chyfrancense* are thirteene Kingdomes. *India maior* is from *Zimbabue* to *Marsili*, in which are eight Kingdomes, besides Islands many. The second or middle *India*, is called *Abasica*, the chief King is a *Christian*; there are six other Kings, three *Christians*, and three *Saraceni*, subiect to him; there are also *Jewes*. Saint *Thomas* hauing preached in *Nubia*, came to *Abasica*, and there did the like, and after to *Malabar*. They are great Warriors, alway in Armes against the *Soldan* of *Adem*, and the people of *Nubia*. I heard that An. 1288, the great *Abbasica* would haue visited *Ierusalem*, but being dissuaded by reason of *Saraceni* Kingdomes in the way, he sent a Bishop of holy life to doe his deuotions, who in his returne was taken by the *Soldan* of *Adem*, and circumcised by force: whereupon the *Abbasica* rayled a power, discomfited the *Soldan* with two other *Abbasica* Kings, tooke and spoiled *Adem*. *Abasica* is rich in gold. *Efeor* is subiect to *Adem*, foure miles distant South-east: where is store of white Frankincense very good, which drops from small Trees by incision of the bark; a rich merchandise, &c. Some in that Country for want of Come make Biskets of Fish, whereof they haue great plenty. They also feede their beaulls with fish. They take them in March, April, and May, &c.

Hauing spoken of the Prouinces on the Coast, I will now returne to some Prouinces more to the North, where many *Tartars* dwell, which haue a King called *Caidu*, of the Race of *Cingis* *Caidu* and his *Can*, but subiect to none. These observe the customes of their old Progenitors, dwell not in Cities, Castles, or Fortresses, but abide with their King in the Fields, Playnes, Valleys, and Forests, and are esteemed true *Tartars*. They haue no corn of Corne, but live of Flesh and Milke in great peace. They haue flocks of Horles, Kine, Sheep, and other beaulls. There are found great White Beares, twentie palmes long, black Foxes very great, white Ailes, and little beaulls called *Rondes* which beare the Sable Fures, and *Vari acutini*, and those which are called *Pharus rats*, which the *Tartars* are cunning to take. The great Lakes which are frozen except in a few months of the yeere, cause that the Summer is scarce to be trauelled for myne. And therefore the Merchants to buy their Fures, for fourteene dayes journey thorow the Desert, haue set vp for each day a booke of Wood, where they abide and barter: and in Winter they sleepe without wheeles, and plaine Wood, riding with a semi-circle at the top or end, drawe easily on the Ice by beaulls like great Dogs * fix yoked by couples, the *Sledman* only with his Merchant and Fures sitting therein.

In the end of the Region of these *Tartars*, is a Countrey reaching to the furthest North, called *Darkness*, because the most part of the Winter months the Sunne appears not, and the Ayre is thicke and darkish, as betimes in the morning with vs. The men there are pale and great, haue no Prince, and live like beaulls. The *Tartars* oft rob them of their Cattell in those dark months, and left they should lose their way, they ride on Mares which haue Colts sucking, which they leaue with a Guard at the entrance of that Countrey, where the Light beginneth to faile, and when they haue taken their prey they reynes to the Mares, which hasten to their Colts. In their long continued day of Summer they take many the finest Fures (one occasion of the *Tartars* going to rob them) of which I haue heard some are brought into *Russia*. *Russia* is a great Countrey in that Northern Darkness, the people are *Grecky Christians*, the Men and Women faile, and pay Tribute to the King of the *Tartars* of the West, on whom they border on the East. There is store of Fures, Waxe, and Minerals of siluer. It reacheth, as I was told, to the Ocean Sea; in which are store of Geralkons and Falcons.

* Perhaps these are a kind of Deere. *Darkness*.

the North, where many *Tartars* dwell, which haue a King called *Caidu*, of the Race of *Cingis* *Caidu* and his *Can*, but subiect to none. These observe the customes of their old Progenitors, dwell not in Cities, Castles, or Fortresses, but abide with their King in the Fields, Playnes, Valleys, and Forests, and are esteemed true *Tartars*. They haue no corn of Corne, but live of Flesh and Milke in great peace. They haue flocks of Horles, Kine, Sheep, and other beaulls. There are found great White Beares, twentie palmes long, black Foxes very great, white Ailes, and little beaulls called *Rondes* which beare the Sable Fures, and *Vari acutini*, and those which are called *Pharus rats*, which the *Tartars* are cunning to take. The great Lakes which are frozen except in a few months of the yeere, cause that the Summer is scarce to be trauelled for myne. And therefore the Merchants to buy their Fures, for fourteene dayes journey thorow the Desert, haue set vp for each day a booke of Wood, where they abide and barter: and in Winter they sleepe without wheeles, and plaine Wood, riding with a semi-circle at the top or end, drawe easily on the Ice by beaulls like great Dogs * fix yoked by couples, the *Sledman* only with his Merchant and Fures sitting therein.

In the end of the Region of these *Tartars*, is a Countrey reaching to the furthest North, called *Darkness*, because the most part of the Winter months the Sunne appears not, and the Ayre is thicke and darkish, as betimes in the morning with vs. The men there are pale and great, haue no Prince, and live like beaulls. The *Tartars* oft rob them of their Cattell in those dark months, and left they should lose their way, they ride on Mares which haue Colts sucking, which they leaue with a Guard at the entrance of that Countrey, where the Light beginneth to faile, and when they haue taken their prey they reynes to the Mares, which hasten to their Colts. In their long continued day of Summer they take many the finest Fures (one occasion of the *Tartars* going to rob them) of which I haue heard some are brought into *Russia*. *Russia* is a great Countrey in that Northern Darkness, the people are *Grecky Christians*, the Men and Women faile, and pay Tribute to the King of the *Tartars* of the West, on whom they border on the East. There is store of Fures, Waxe, and Minerals of siluer. It reacheth, as I was told, to the Ocean Sea; in which are store of Geralkons and Falcons.

30 To the Reader.

I N this admirable Voyage of Polo, I confesse, Inopem me copia fecit; the Translation which I had of *Maister* Blakelys from the corrupted Latine, being lesse than nothing (nimirum damno auctus fui) did me no stead but loss, whiles I would compare it with the Latine, and thought to amend it by the Italian; and was forced at last to reuise both Latine and English, and after much vexation to present thus this, as it is, out of Ramulio. I haue not given thee word for word as an exact Translator, but the sense in all things; substantially, with longer Relations than I haue admitted in others, because many which haue read M. Paulus, neuer saw M. Polo, nor know the worth of the worstest Voyage, that perhaps any man hath written; a man credible in that which he saw himselfe, in some things received by Relation, rather telling what he heard, than that which I dare beleue, and specially toward the end of his third Booke, which I haue therefore more abridged. Pitye it is that time hath growne and eaten some-where, and some-where denoued utterly many his names and Traits, which I haue found in some of his old Copies, especially one since his time in those parts haue caused. And farre easier by the Sans greatest if then, and his employments vnder him, might hee know the World in those times; then in the combinations long since begonne and still continued in diuersified and quarrelling States it is possible: the *Saracens* quarrelling with Ethnikes, *Christians* and other *Saracens*; the *Tartars* diuided into many quarrelling, some Serpentine heads, whereby that buggerly is broken in pieces; the Chinois and others; prohibiting intermixt of their own, that I mention not Ethnikes and Moorish *Dynasties* amongst themselves. In the same time with Polo, lived this following Armenian, of whom Ramulio relateth, and this *Dyscouer* misremembers that the Holy Land being quite lost, Pope Clement the Fifth wanted to recover it, was given to understand of 44-5.

helps which might be gotten from the Tartars, and withall of this Haiton or Antonie a *Kingman* of the King of Armenia, then living a Monk or Frier of the Order Premonstratensis in Episcopus of Cyprus; who in his young time had been exercised in the Warres betwixt the Tartars and Egyptian Soldans, by whom he might receiue the best Intelligence of Tartarian Affairs. He therefore (as he first removed the Court from Rome to France, where it abode twentie yeeres) caused the said Haiton to be brought from Cyprus to France with all his Memorials and Writings of that subiect, and being come to Poitiers, caused one Nicolo di Falcon a Frenchman to write in French, which the other dictated in Armenian, which was done Anno 1297. A Copie of this Story written about two hundred yeeres since concerned the *Tartars*, omitting the rest, or remitting rather his Reader to M. Polo. Betwixt which two some difference may forme, but so little, that I will need no advertisement thereof.

One thing is remarkable, that the *Author* and the next, who in many Geographical Notes agrees with him, diuide Asia into two parts, one called profound or deepe, the other the greater, and diuided in the mid

Histon and
Mardacalla
give in many
the, &c.
The reason of
our method in
thus ordering
our Figures,
* Strab. l. 11. ad
eum Nat. Ca-
fub.
* Dury. Alex.
veteris are, vid.
* English. com.

midst by the Caspian Sea, and Caucasus, which our Armenians call Cocas, which Alexander passed not, nor was ever well knowne to the Ancients, who called all beyond that Hill Scythia, as we now call the mist of it by a general name Tartaria. Strabo * hath made like division of Asia into the inner and vicer, Taurus being the Empire, which Hill (with divers Appellations) beginning at Pamphylia runnes Eastwards thorow the midst of Asia to the Indies, that part to the North being called Asia Rhetica (Taurus) and that to the South Asia without. Some ancient Geographers as Dionysius mentions, extended Europe to the Caspian Sea, which most of the Ancients thought to conuerne with the Ocean, as the Mediterranean, Arabian, and Persian doe. Dionysius his Verbes are worth obseruation,

Μέσση * γὰρ μέση ἄνευ ἑσθιᾶς ὁρίζεται.
Ἀρξὴν αὖτε τῆς ἡπείρου λέγουσιν ἑσθίαν, &c.

They called it Taurus, as there follows of the Bull-forme, &c.

Οὐκ ἔστι τῶν ποταμῶν τῶν ἐν Ἀσίᾳ ὁμοῦ ὡς ἐν ἡμῶν.

Hereof we are the more curious, to give to the more curious; a reason of our method in this Work, who in our former Tome have first encompassed the Shores of Asia from the West to the East: and then in the In-land parts have in the eight and ninth Bookes principally (as Voyages game leave) serued Asia without Taurus, and to the South of the Caspian: but this Profound or inner, more unknowne part we survey here, where we handle the Voyages and Discoveries of those parts of the World, which the Ancients knew very little or not at all. And indeed, how little was Mangi, Cataio, or Tartaria knowne, till the Tartars observed upon the World, a terrible knowledge of themselves, in manner as Rubruquius and the former Friars, which be of Gentlemen, Polo and Hæton describe? Tea, how were they by ignorance of following times buried againe, till Portugall, England, and other moderne Voyages, haue reuined them, as it were in a resurrection? and that often in new Nations, as if they had suffered that sursum-rogem, so often here rehearsed, and so much credence many Religions of these Eastern Nations, whence it comes that they are hardly knowne to be the same. The Reader must pardon me (or go to the Author himselfe) if I haue here omitted some pieces of Hæton, which you haue had in Polo and others before, specially now so pertinent to our present Tartarian Subject. The figures next the Chapters, after the Latine, from which Ramusius Division is much diuided, and we therefore from both.

CHAP. V.

The Historie of AYTON, or ANTHONIE the Armenian, of Asia, and specially touching the Tartars.

§. I.

Of the Kingdome of Cathay, and diuers other Provinces of Asia, and of
the first habitation of the Tartars: and of CANGIUS, or
CINGIS his beginnings.

The largenesse
of the King-
dome of Ca-
thay, lands.

Of the Olie.

Their arro-
gant pre-
sump-
tion,
Effeminate
fearfulness.



He Kingdome of Cathay, is the greatest that is to be found in the World, and is replenished with people and infinite riches; being situated on the shore of the Ocean Sea; In the which there are so many Ilans, that their number can no wayes be knowne. For neuer was there any man that could say he had seene all those Ilans; But those of them which haue been frequented, are found to abound with innumerable wealth and treasures; and that which is there most esteemed, and deerest Gould, is Oyle of Oliues, which the Kings and Commanders there cause to be kept with great diligence, as a Soueraine Medicinable thing; And moreover, in the Kingdome of Cathay, are many marvellous and monstrous things, which I forbear to mention. The Inhabitants of those parts are exceeding wile and subtil, replenished with all kind of skill and cunning, insomuch, that they disdain the endowments of all other Nations, in all kind of Arts, and Sciences: saying, that they only see with two Eyes, the Latins but with one eye, and that all other Nations are blind. And albeit they are exceeding sharpe-sighted in the exercise of all bodily workes and labours; yet is there not amongst them any knowledge of spiritual things: so boldly workes and labours; yet is there not amongst them any knowledge of spiritual things: so such as beate Armes; yet are they very ingenious, and haue oftner had victorie of their enemies by Sea, then by Land: the money used in those parts, is of square peeces of Paper, signed with the

the Kings signe, according to which signe or marke: the peeces are of greater or smaller value; and if they begin by age to be wasted, or worn out, hee that bringeth them to the Kings Court shall haue new for them; of Gold and other Metals, they make Vessels, and other ornaments. Of this Kingdome of Cathay it is said, that it is in the beginning of the World, because the head thereof is in the East, and there is not knowne any other Nation to inhabit more Easterly thereabouts; on the West it continueth on the Kingdome of Tarfa, on the North with the Desert of Beligan. And on the South-side are the Ilans of the Ocean, afore mentioned.

2. In the Kingdome of Tarfa are three Prouinces, whose Rulers are also called Kings, the men of that Countrie are called *Tagars*, they haue alwayes worshipped Idols, and yet doe except the ten Kindreds of those Kings, who by the guiding of a Starre came to worship the Natutie in *Babilonia*. And there are yet to be many great and noble among the *Tartarians* of that Race, which hold firmly the Faith of Christ. But the rest which are Idolaters in those parts, are of no estimation in matter of Armes, yet are they of a piercing wit for the learning of all Arts and Sciences. They haue peculiar Letters or Characters of their owne. And almost all the Inhabitants of those parts abstayne from eating of flesh and drinking of Wine, neither would they by any meanes bee brought to kill ought that hath life. Their Cities are very pleasant and they haue great Temples in which they worship their Idols. Corne groweth there abundantly, and all good kind of Graines. But they are without Wine, and hold it sinne to drinke it, as doe also the *Agarens*. This Kingdome of Tarfa on the East-side continueth with the Kingdome of Cathay, as afore said; on the West it bordereth on the Kingdome of Turquestan, on the North on a caryene Desert, and on the South-side it adioyneth to a very rich Prouince called *Sym*, which is situate betwene the Kingdome of India and Cathay, and in that Prouince are found Diamonds.

3. The Kingdome of Turquestan on the East side is confin'd with the Kingdome of Tarfa, on the West side with the Kingdome of Persia, on the North side with the Kingdome of the *Corasmiens*, and on the South it reacheth to the Diare of India. In this Kingdome are but few good Cities, but there are large Plaines and good feeding for their flockes, therefore the Inhabitants for the most part are Shepherds, dwelling in Tents, and houses that may easily bee removed from place to place. The greatest Citie of that Kingdome is called *Orma*, there groweth but little Barley or Wheate: no Wine at all. Their Drinke is *Curfia*, and other made Drinke, and Milke, they eat Rice and Millet, and flesh, and are called *Turks*. And almost all of them are of the Sect of wicked *Mahomet*, yet there are some amongst them of no Faith nor Religion. They haue no peculiar Characters of their owne, but doe use the *Arabike* Letters in their Cities or Campes.

4. The Kingdome of the *Corasmiens*, is well stored with good Cities and Townes, and there are many Inhabitants, because the Land is fruitful and pleasant, and wheate, and other graine, is there in great quantitie; but they haue little Wine. This Kingdome is confin'd with a Wilderness of one hundred dayes Iourney, in length on the West-side, it reacheth out to the *Caspian* Sea. On the North it bordereth on the Kingdome of *Cumania*, and on the South it hath the Kingdome of *Turquestan*. The chiefe Citie of that Kingdome is called *Corasme*, and the people are called *Corasmiens*, being Pagans, which haue neither Learning, nor Religion. But those which are called *Soldanis*, are very fierce in Armes, and haue their Language and Letters, and Ceremonies of the *Greekes*, and make the bodie of Christ after the *Ormaie* manner, and are obedient to the Patriarkes of *Antioch*.

5. The Kingdome of *Cumania* is very great: yet by reason of the disfigurement of the Ayre, it is ill inhabited: for in the Winter season, the cold is so great in some places, that neither man nor beast can any way liue therein. And againe in some places, the heate of Summer is so great, that none can endure the same, nor the flies which abound there. This Kingdome of *Cumania*, is in a manner all plaine, and there are no Trees, nor any Wood to be found therein, vntill it be about some Cities, which haue certaine Orchards. The people inhabit in 50 Fields, and in Tents burning the dung of beasts in ffeed of Wood: This Kingdome of *Cumania* on the East-side, hath the Kingdome of *Corasme*, and a certaine Desert or Wilderness; on the West-side is the great Sea called *Pontus Euxinus*, and the Sea of *Tanis*: on the North-side it River called *Enil*, which euery year is frozen, and sometimes remaineth all the year so hardly frozen, that men and beasts goe thereon as on Land, on the banks of that River, are found certaine small Trees. But beyond and on the other side of that River, are diuers and sundry Nations inhabiting, which are not accounted of the Kingdome of *Cumania*, and yet are obedient to the King thereof: And some there are which inhabit about the Mountayne *Cacas*, which is exceeding great and high. The *Agares* and other rauenous Birds, breeding 60 in that Mountayne, are all white, and that Mountayne is seated betwene two Seas: for on the West is the great *Euxine* Sea, and the *Caspian* Sea on the East, which *Caspian* Sea had no entrance into the Ocean, but is as a Lake which only for his greatness hath the name of a Sea, for it is the greatest Lake that is to be found in the World, reaching from the said Mountayne *Cacas*, euen to the head of the Kingdome of *Persia*, and diuideth all *Asia* into

See Sir Iohn
Mandeville tra-
uels.

Of the King-
dome of Tarfa.

Wile and incli-
nation.

Manners and
Rites.

Sym.

Of the King-
dome of Tur-
questan. The Inhab-
itants Shep-
herds.

Orma.
Curfia.
Turks.

Of the King-
dome of the
Corasmiens.

Corasme,
Soldani.

Of the King-
dome of Cu-
mania. This exten-
sive comes by
the long pre-
sence in Sum-
mer, and abun-
dance of the
Sunne by
Winter.

Cacas or Ca-
casia.

See after
Chapter 4.

India.

Note that of
Alexander the
great, the Sa-
racens and Pa-
gans have ma-
ny and strange
Fables, neuer
heard of in
these parts, as
here of *Orlan-
do, Arthur, O-
gins, and O-
beris*, in
Seyn Pa's,
Pérfa and
Medea are o-
mitted.

Armenia.

Mirala, or the
Iron gate, now
Derbes.

Georgia.

Chalde.

Mesopotamia.

Emperatores
Turpie.

two parts, whereof that which is towards the East is called *Asia profunda*, and that which is on the West is called *Asia maior*, or the greater *Asia*, and many good Ines are in that Lake.

6. The Kingdom of *India* is very long, and situated on the Ocean Sea, in these parts is called the *Indian Sea*. This Kingdom beginneth from the Confines of *Perfia*, and extendeth by East vnto a Province called *Balaria*, in which are found the precious Iones which we call *Balayer*. On the North-side is that long and great Defart of *India*, where the Emperor *Alexander* is said to have found to many Serpents, and such diuinities of Beasts inhabiting. In that Kingdom it is that Saint *Thomas* preached the Faith of Christ, and converted many people and Provinces. But because they are so farre distant and remote from other places and parts of Christendome, the Christian Religion is there much diminished, for there is but one Cite that is inhabited with Christians, the rest hauing wholly forsaken the profession of Christianitie. On the South-side of this Kingdom is a very long reach of the Ocean, in the which are many Lands, but their Inhabitants be all blacke, going altogether naked for heat, and worship Idols like foles. In those Lands are found precious Iones, Pearles, and Gold, and sundry Spices, and medicinable drugs, helpful vnto men. There is also a certayne Iland called *Celan* or *Zeilan*, knowne in ancient time by the name of *Taprobana*, in which are found Rubies and Saphires, and the King of that Iland hath the greatest and best Rubie that is any where to be found, which when he is to be crowned King, he holdeth in his hand riding round about the Cite, and is afterwards obeyed of all as King.

9. In the Land of *Armenia* there are foure Kingdomes: yet haue they alwayes bene subiect to one King only. The length of the Kingdom of *Armenia* beginneth at the Confines of *Perfia*, and reacheth out West-ward euen to the Kingdom of *Turkie*. The breadth of *Armenia* begins at the Cite *Mirala*, called the *Iron Gate*, and extendeth euen to the Kingdom of *Media*. In *Armenia* there are many great and very rich Cities, of which *Tauris* is the chiefe: they haue both Characters of their owne, called the *Armenian Letters*, and others also which they call *Halen*. In *Armenia* is the highest Hill or Mountayne that is in the World, which is commonly called *Ararat*, or *Ararat*, and on the top of that Mountayne, the Arke of *Noah* rested first moony called. And albeit for the abundance of Snow which is alwayes on that Mountayne, both Winter and Summer none is able to goe vp the fame, yet is there alwayes seene in the top thereof a certaine blacke thing, which men ascribe to be the Arke.

10. The Kingdom of *Georgia* on the East-side, beginneth from a certayne great Mountayne, called *Alburis*, or *Albur*. There doe inhabit many Nations, and thereof that Province is called *Alania*, or *Albania*, from whence the Kingdom of *Georgia* reacheth West-ward on the North-side to some Lands of the Kingdom of *Turkie*: the whole length of this Kingdom of *Georgia* lying vpon the great Sea, and on the South-side it is confined with *Armenia* the Great. This Kingdom of *Georgia* is diuided into two Kingdomes, one of which is called by the name of *Georgia*, and the other knowne by the name of *Albania*, or *Albacea*: and they haue bene alwayes gouerned by two feuerall Kings. The one of which is subiect to the Emperor of *Asia*; namely, the King of *Georgia*. But the Kingdom of *Albania* being mightie in people, and strongly fortified, could neuer yet either by the Emperours of *Asia*, or by the *Tartarians* be subdued. In this Kingdom of *Georgia* is a marvellous strange Wonder or Miracle, which I durst not haue reported or beleueed, if I had not seene it with my eyes. But because I haue personally bene there, and bene made the eye witness thereof, I say, that in those parts there is a Province or Countrey called *Hamfer*, being in circuit about three dayes journey, whose whole extent is all covered ouer with such thicke and palpable darknesse, that none can see any thing therein, neither doe any dare to goe into that Land, because they know not the way out against those that inhabit neere about it, affirme, that they haue often heard the found of mens voices crying, of Cocks crowing, and the neighing of Horses in the Wood, and by the course of a Riuer that runneth out from that place, there appeare certaine signes that there are people inhabiting therein.

11. The Kingdom of the *Chaldeans* beginneth on the East-side from the Mountaynes of *Media*, and reacheth out vnto *Ninive*. The Inhabitants of *Chaldea* are called *Nestorians*, because they are followers of the Error of *Nestorius*, and they haue their peculiar Chaldean Characters, others there are amongst them that vse the *Arabian Letters*, and are of the Sect of the seducer *Mahomet*.

12. The Kingdom of *Mesopotamia* on the East-side, beginneth at the great Cite *Mesol*, (called of the Ancients *Selenicia*) which is seated neere the Riuer *Tigris*, and stretcheth out vnto the Riuer *Emperatores*, and the Cite of *Robais* (or *Edessa*).

13. When the *Turkes* had invaded the Kingdom of *Turkie*, and possessed themselves thereof, they could not preuayle against the Cite of *Trapezond*, nor the Territories thereof, because of their strong Castles and other Fortifications, by reason whereof it remyned still vnder the gouernment of the Emperor of *Constantinople*, who vsed yearlyly to send thither a Ruler or Gouernour as his Deputie there, vntill at length one of them rebelling against him, made himselfe King in such sort that he which now holdeth that Land, is called Emperor of *Trapezond*.

Inhabitants are *Greekes*. In the Kingdom of *Turkie* are four Nations inhabiting: namely, the *Greekes*, *Armenians*, and *Iacobites*, (or *Iacobites*, which are *Christians*, liuing on merchandise and manuring the Earth-) and the *Turkes*, which are *Saracens*, that haue invaded that Land, and gotten the Government from the *Greekes*. Some of them liue on merchandise, and labouring of the ground inhabiting in Cities and Townes others keeping in the Woods and Fields, both Winter and Summer being Shepherds, and very good Bowmen.

14. *Cilicia* at this day is called *Armenia*, by reason that after the enemies of the Christian faith had gotten that Countrey, and held it a long time from the *Greekes*, the *Armenians* enclosed themselves so well that they wonne it againe from the *Pagans*. In so much that the King of *Armenia*, by the grace of God ruleth ouer *Cilicia* at this day: In the Kingdom of *Syria* are diuers Nations inhabiting, namely, *Greekes*, *Armenians*, *Iacobites*, *Nestorians*, and *Saracens*. There are also other Christian Nations, namely, the *Syrians* and *Maronites* (or *Maronites*).

16. The Countrey in which the *Tartarians* first inhabited, lieth beyond the great Mountaine *Beizian*, mentioned in the Histories of *Alexander*. And there they liued like brutish People without learning or Religion, feeding herds of Beasts, and going from place to place to seeke pasture. And being not exercised in armes they were depriued of other Nations, and payed tribute to al. Of these in ancient time there were many Nations which by a common name were called, *Moghs*, who vpon their encrease were after diuided into seuen principall sorts esteemed more noble than the rest. The first of these Nations was called *Tatar*, from the name of that Province wherein they first inhabited: The second, was named *Tangut*. The third, *Coman*: The fourth, *Talar*: The fifth, *Souche*: The sixth, *Armgos*: And the seventh, *Torbis*. And whilst these feuer Nations liued vnder the rule of their first Rulers, as is aboue said, it happened that a poor old man, being a Smith, saw a Vision in his sleepe; namely, a man armed all in white Armour, and mounted on a white Horse, which calling him by his name, laid vnto him, *Changius*, It is the will and pleasure of the immortal God, that thou be Lord and Ruler ouer these Nations of the *Moghs*, and that by thee they be delivered from the Dominion of their Neighbour, under which they haue long remyned: and they shall rule ouer their Neighbours, and receive Tribute of them to whom they formerly paid Tribute. *Changius* hearing this Word of God, was replenished with exceeding joy, and made publickly knowne the Vision which he had seene. But the Rulers and Commanders would not giue credite to the Vision, but rather despised and mocked the old man. But the night following, they themselves saw the same Vision of the Horic-man armed in white, who commanded them from the Immortal God, that they should be obedient to *Changius*, and cause all to obey his command. Whereupon, all the said Chieftaines and Gouernours of the seuen Nations of the *Tartarians*, calling the people together made them to yeild obedience and reuerence to *Changius*. Then afterwards placing a Chaire for him in the midst of them, and spreading a blacke Felt Carpet on the ground, they set him thereon, and then the seuen chiefe Rulers lifting him vp, did place him in the Throne, or Chaire of State, with great triumph and acclamation, calling him *Chang* their first Emperour, and doing him solemaue reuerence, with bowing their knees as to their Lord and Gouernour.

Now, at this solemnitie of the *Tartarians*, and at the simplicitie of their blacke Cloeth, vsed in the creating of their first Emperour, none ought much to wonder, either because haply they were not then furnished with any faires (such as State, or elite were so rude and ignorant at that time, that they knew no better or fairer habitation of State. But at this men might rather marvel, that the *Tartarians* hauing since that, conquered many Kingdomes, and gotten infinite riches, (and namely, commanding ouer the Dominions and wealth of *Asia*, euen to the confines of *Hungaria*) they will not yet leaue their ancient and accustomed manner; but at the confirmation of every Emperour obteine the like order in euery point, whereof I can well be a witness, hauing bene personally present at the ceremony vsed at the Confirmation of one of their Emperours. But to returne to our purpose, *Changius* (as being thus made Emperour by common consent of all the *Tartarians*, determined he) he attempted any thing, to make triall, whether they would all performe faithfull obedience to him, to which end he made certaine Ordinances to be obserued of all.

The first was, That all the *Tartarians* should beleene and obey the Immortal God, by whose will hee was promoted to the Imperial Dignitie: which Commandement they obserued and from thenceforth vntill this day haue euer continued to call on the Immortal God in all their occasions. Secondly, Hee willed that all the men that were able to beare Armes should be numbered, and that ouer every ten should be one appointed, and ouer every ten thousand a great Commander, and that alio ouer every thousand should be a Colonel, or Conductor of a Regiment, and he called an Armie of ten thousand Souldiers, a Regiment. He commanded also the seuen Rulers ouer the Nations of the *Tartarians*, that they should forswear thaimselfe themselves of their former disputes, which they relinquished immediatly. But another of his Ordinances was very strange and admirable, which hee decreed in which Ruler hee would bring euery of them his eldest sonne, and each with his owne hand to cut off his head. Which Commandement appearing to be most cruel and vniust, yet was there none that would in any way gainiay

Nations of
Turkie.

Syria.

Cilicia, how it
came to be called
Armenia.

Capas. Of Em-
pire Syria is omi-
ted.

Of the Coun-
try where the
Tartarians for-
merly inhabi-
ted.

Such names
as the *Saracens*
and *Alans*
haueed *Alexan-
der* when they
call *Bizans* &c.
as before.
Moghs
Changius or
Cingis.

See page 112.

Halic, an eye-
witness of the
Tart. Coronati-
on.
Changius ordai-
neth Lawes.

it, because they knew him to be set over them by Gods providence, and therefore they presently fulfilled it. When *Changius Can* had seen that they were ready to obey him, even unto death, he appointed them all a certaine day in which they should be ready to fight. And then they rode against them which bordered next unto them, and fobdred them. Whereby, they which had bene Lords over them, were brought into subjection vnder them. After, hee invaded diuers other Nations, which hee conquered with great celeritie: For hee did all his exploits with a small troupe of men, and was successefull in his enterprises.

Yet, one day it tell out, that being accompanied with a small number hee was encountered with a great troupe of his Enemies, in such sort, that the fight being begun betwene them, whiles hee valiantly defended himselfe, his Horse was slaine vnder him. And the *Tartarians* seeing their Lord overthrowne, betooke themselves to flight; so that the Enemies being all bueing in flight of those that fled, and having no knowledge of the Emperour, whom they had vnhoised and overthrowne; hee ranne and hid himselfe among certaine shrubs for safety of his life. Whither when the Enemies were returned, with purpose to spoile the dead Carcasse, and to seeke out such as were hidden, it happened that an Owle * came and fate vpon those little trees or shrubs which hee had chosen for his covert, which when they perceived, they thought no further in that place, supposing that the said Bird would not haue fate there, if any man had bene hidden vnderneath. By which means in the dead time of the night hee found means to escape thence, and came by diuers vnexpected wayes vnto his owne people, and discoursed vnto them what had befallen him. For which the *Tartarians* rendered thanks vnto the Immortal God. And that Bird which vnder God was held to be the means of his escape, hath ever since bene held in such reuerence among them, that happie is he that can get but a Feather of an Owle, which they weare in their heads with great reuerence. Which I thought fit to set downe in this Booke, that the cause might be knowne for which the *Tartarians* vſe commonly to weare Feathers on their heads.

But their Emperour *Changius Can* hauing giuen great thanks to God: for his deliuerance out of so great dangers gathered his Armie together, and fiercely assailed his former Enemies againe and brought them all vnder subjection, and so became Emperour of all the Countreys lying on that side of the Mountaine *Belgian*, and possessed them quietly without disturbance, vntill it happened him to haue another Vision as shall after be declared. Neither is it any marvell that in these Histories I haue not set downe the certaine time, because albeit I haue sought of many to know the certaintie thereof, yet could I neuer finde any to instruct me fully therein: the reason thereof I take to be, because the *Tartarians* at the first were ignorant of all Learning, and knew no letters, and so passed ouer the times and memorable actions without any Record or Register thereof kept, whereby they came afterwards to be forgotten.

Þ. II.

Of *Changius Can* his second Vision and Conquests. Of *Hococota* and his three Sonnes expeditions; of *Gimo Can*; of *Mangv Can*, who was visited by the King of Armenia, and baptised; of the expedition of his Brother *Haloon*.

17. **A**fter that *Changius Can* had subdued all the Kingdomes and Countreys on that side of the Mountaine *Belgian*, hee saw another Vision in the night. For the selfe same Horse armed in white Armour appeared vnto him againe, saying, *Changius Can*, it is the pleasure of the Immortal God, that thou passe ouer the Mountaine *Belgian*, and direct thy course Westwards, where thou shalt possess Kingdomes and Countreys, and subdue many Nations. And that thou mayest be assured that the words which I speake vnto thee are from the Immortal God: *Arise* and goe with thy people to the Mountaine *Belgian*, to that part thereof which is next to the Sea, there thou shalt alight from thy Horse, and kneeling downe nine times towards the East; thou shalt worship nine times the Immortal God, and be which is Almighty will shew thee the way by which thou mayest easily passe ouer the Mountaine. At this Vision *Changius* reioyced exceedingly, and arose without farther doubt or delay: because the truth which hee had found in the first Vision gaue him assurance of the other: in such sort that hee forthwith speedily assembled his people, and commanded them to follow him with their wives and children, and all that they had. And so they went forwards vntill they came to the place where the great and deepe Sea did beate against the Mountaine, so that there appeared no way nor passage for them.

There presently *Changius Can* as had bene commanded him by God, alighted from his Horse, and all his followers in like manner, worshipping nine times on their benighted knees toward the East, they beseeched the Almighty and euerming God, that of his infinite mercy and grace he would vouchsafe to shew them the way and passage thence where they continued in prayer all that night. And in the morning arising, they saw that the Sea was departed from the Mountaine,

taine, and had left them a way of nine feet in breadth to passe. Whereat they being all astonished exceedingly, and rendering thanks to the Immortal God most devoutly, they passed on the way which they saw before them, and directed their steps towards the West. But as the Histories of the *Tartarians* doe mention, after they had passed ouer those Mountaines, they endured some hunger and thirst for certaine dayes, because the land was Desert, and the waters were bitter and faine, which they could not by any means drinke; vntill at length they came where they had all necessities abundantly. In which place they abode many dayes. And there it happened by the will of God, that *Changius Can* grew dangerously sicke; in such sort that the Physicians despaired of his recovery.

10. By reason whereof hee called before him his twelve sonnes; and perswaded them to vnitie and concord by an Example. For, hee commanded each of them to bring with him an Arrow, which when hee had received, and bound them altogether hee willed the eldest to breake them; if hee could, which when hee had tried, but could not performe, hee deliuered them to the second, and then to the third, and then to all the rest, but none of them could breake them as they were. Then hee commanded his youngest sonne to take the Arrows severally and breake them, which hee easily accomplished. Then said *Changius Can* to his sonnes: In like manner will it be with you; for, as long as you remaine in concord and vnitie, your Empire shall continue; but as soon as there cometh diuision amongst you, your power is easily overthrowne. Many other good examples were given by him, and gathered by the *Tartarians*, which in their Language they call, *Isach*, or Instructions of *Changius Can*. And afterwards hee caused the wisest and best of his sonnes, called *Hococota Can*, to be received as his Successor in his Empire, before hee died: and then rested in peace. And his sonne, called *Hococota Can*, was placed in his Seat.

But before we end this Historie we must here how the number of Nine came to be of reuerence and sacred estimation among the *Tartarians*: for of a memoriall of the nine kneeling which they made in the Mountaine *Belgian*, when they worshipped the immortal God, according to the direction of him that appeared in white Armour, and their way of the breadth of nine feet, through which they passed, they hold that number Nine in very high estimation. Insomuch, that if any will offer a Present to the *Tartarian* Emperour, it must be presented in some of nine several things, if hee will haue it graciously accepted; and so that the number of Nine be offered the gift is reputed happie, which Custom is yet observed at this day among the *Tartarians*.

18. *Hococota Can*, who succeeded in the Empire, was a man of much valour and wisdom, which made him very well beloued of the *Tartarians*, who were alwaies faithfull and obedient vnto him. Hee therefore be thought himselfe in what manner he might best subdue all *Asia*, and thought good to make trall first of the mightie Prince therein before he attempted himselfe in person. On that enterprise therefore hee sent forth ten thousand Horse-men vnder the conduct of a wife and valiant Leader, called *Gebekade*, and commanded him to seeke out diuers Kingdomes and Townes, and when hee met with an Adversarie too mightie for him, to returne. Hee marched on, and tooke diuers Castles and Townes, and cruelly vied those which hee vanquished in battell, for terror to others, putting out their eyes, and taking away their Horses and Viuals; dealing kindly with the weaker. Thus hee proceeded to the Iron Gates which *Alexander* built at the foot of *Cochus*, and razed it, lest it might hinder his returne. *Tumano* the Prince of *Georgia* came out against him, and in a Plaine, called *Adogran*, they fought, but the *Tartarian* overcame; and proceeded to *Arser* a Citie of the *Soldan* of *Turkie*, who was so well provided to entertaine him, that *Gebekade* seeing his forces decayed, returned to *Hococota Can*, then in *Cambala*. Hee desiring to subdue all *Asia*, called three of his sonnes, giuing to each a great Armie, *Iechi* the eldest hee sent Westward to *Tigris*; *Baydo*, to the North; *Chagdaye*, to the South; and he diuided *Asia* among his three sonnes. *Hococota Can* made choise of another skillfull and valiant Captaine, called *Baydo*, to whom hee gaue thirtie thousand *Tartarian* Soldiers, termed the ten thousand went before, and commanded them to see: further the very same way that the other ten thousand went before, and not to make Hay in any place till they came to the Kingdome of *Turkie*, and to trie whether they could withstand the *Soldan* of *Turkie*, which was held the mightiest of all the Princes in *Asia*. And if they could not, they were to fight with him, and make choise of some place where they might rest themselves till they had received supply of further aide from some of his sonnes which should be nearest vnto them, and that afterwards they might with more safety set vpon him. *Baydo* accordingly with his thirtie thousand *Tartarians* came to the Kingdome of *Turkie*; and there hee vnderstood that the *Soldan* which had discomfited the first *Tartarians* was dead, and that his sonne *Giasatin* succeeded him. And this man hearing of the *Tartarians* coming, was very much afraid, and got all the Mercenaries that hee could to his succour both *Barbarians* and *Latiners*, and amongst others hee had to his aide two thousand *Laines*; vnder his two Captaines, the one called, *Iohn de Lomando*, who came from the Ile of *Cyprus*, and the other *Bonifacio de Molin*, who was borne at *Genoa*. The *Soldan* also lent to his Neighbours, promising many fauours and benefites to such as would assist him, by which means haue

The mirrour
of law.

The fit kinde
of *Changius Can*.

His allegorical
rebus of his
sonnes to
vinitie.
The like fit
their hath
Stanc
from 8. of
Sclatun
the
stands also
of the
fountes
of
Attile
diligence.

His death.

The number
of Nine, and
among
the
Tartarians.
So they
vſe
it
to the
Attile
of the
Emperour
of the
Tartarians.

Gebekade.

The Turke
to come by
the Tartarians.

Of Gine Can
the third Em-
perour.

The former
Futtes moribus
decevo, i. i. d.

Plur mo i. d.
was with the
former, and
Futtes with
Mango.

Mango Can
drowned.
Cahia, an Cahia
Can.

Is the great
City.

Is the great
City.

Sec 47. Chap.

The ſucceſſor
of Baydo North-
ward.

His viduor
uer the Com-
muniſ, to call
as may ſeeme
of the Cille
Communiſ, may
tioned by Plur
L. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1.

Now ſucceſſor
drowned
in Aſia.

His poſteritie,
a Chion after
47. Chap.

Canagay en-
terprie.

Of Brother of
Baydo for the
ſucceſſors of
Ischi, were na-
tured in the 100
Chap.

Of Mango Can
the fourth
Emperour.

affembled a great number of men, hee went towards the place where the Tartarians made their abode, whom they found ſitting aſſoniſhed at his approach; for they manfully gave him battle at a place called *Confepa*, where they overthrew the Armie of the Turke, and fo the Tartarians wonne the Kingdom of Turke, in the yeere 1244.

19. And aſter a litle time *Hecoca Can* dyed, and a ſonne of his ſucceeded in the Empire, called *Gine Can*, whoſe life was but ſhort, and after him ſucceeded a Kinſman of his, called *Mango Can*, who was of very great power and ſubdued many Provinces, and at length with a great ſhip he went into the *Cahayan* Sea to take a certaine Iland, which he held belleged, the Inhabitants of thoſe parts being very ſubtile and ingenious, ſent certaine Divers ſecretly under water, who continued to long under the Ship, in which hee was, untill they had made many holes therein, ſo that the water came into it (no man obſerving nor ſtopping the leaks) untill the Ship ſunk, and *Mango Can* was drowned therein. Whereupon the reſidue of the Tartarians returned home and choſe his brother, called *Cahia Can*, for their Emperour, who reigned over them two and fortie yeeres, became a Chriſtian, and founded a certaine Citie, called *Ieni*, in the Kingdom of *Cahay*, which is reported to be greater then *Rome*; and in that Citie he dwelt untill his dying day. But leaving him, let vs ſpeake of the three ſonnes of *Hecoca Can*, of *Hacalan*, and of his Heires.

20. *Ischi*, the eldeſt ſonne of *Hecoca Can*, rode toward the Weſt with all that people which his Father had given him, and there finding fruitful and pleaſant Countries, abounding in all kinde of riches, hee led his Tents, and ruled over the Kingdom of *Turkeſſan*, and the leſſer *Perſia*, even to the River *Phaſis*, where his people inhabiting ever ſince, are exceedingly multiplied in perſons and riches, and the Heires of *Ischi* have ſucceeded one the other in thoſe Dominions to this preſent, and thoſe Countries are at this day ruled by two Brothers, the one called *Chapar*, the other *Doas*, who have divided thoſe Countries between them, and doe poſſeſſe them peaceably.

21. *Baydo*, the ſecond ſonne of *Hecoca Can*, with the Tartarians which his Father gave him, rode towards the North, untill he came to the Kingdom of *Comania*, where the *Comunians* hauing many armed men, oppoſed themſelves, and defended their Land againſt them. But being at length over-come, they fled to the Kingdom of *Hungaria*, where are yet many *Comunians* inhabiting. *Baydo* having beaten the *Comunians* out of their Countrey, went to the Kingdom of *Ruſſia* and conquered it, and poſſeſſed the Land of *Casaria* (which is in the Northern part of *Taurica*) and the Kingdom of *Bulgaria*, and by the way which the *Comunians* had fled, he came to the Kingdom of *Hungaria*. Afterwards the Tartarians went towards the parts of *Germanie*, till they came to a certaine River that runneth through the Dukedome of *Auſtria*: where they thought to haue paſſed over a Bridge which they found there. But *Fredrick*, the Duke of *Auſtria*, and others, that bordered neere it, had fortified the Bridge ſo that the Tartarians were denyed paſſage. *Baydo* thereupon, incenſed with ſurie, commanded that all ſhould paſſe through the water, and himſelfe was the firſt that entred, expoſting thereby himſelfe and all his followers to apparant danger of death: for ſuch was the breadth of the River and the violence of the frame, that their Horſes were wearied before they could come to the farther ſhore of the River. Which the reſidue ſeeing which were not yet entred into the water, they were confounded with griefe, and returned to *Ruſſia* and *Comania* which they formerly had conquered, as hath beene declared; and neuer ſince that haue the Tartarians attempted againſt *Germanie*. But the poſteritie of *Baydo* hath ever ſince ſucceſſfully held thoſe Lands which hee ſubdued. And he which now reigneth there, is called *Tachai*, and ruleth peaceably and quietly.

22. *Canagay* (or *Chagaday*) with thoſe Tartars which his Father gave him, rode towards the South, untill he came to the parts of *India* the leſſer. There he found many Deſerts, Mountains, and drie Lands not inhabited, ſo that hee could not paſſe that way: but hauing loſt many of his People, Horſes, and other Beasts, he turned him towards the Weſt, and after much labour came to his brother *Ischi*, to whom he related what had befallen him: who taking compaſſion on him, ſo brother, gave him and his people a good part of thoſe Countries which hee had: and euer after, thoſe two brethren dwelt together and their Progenie, untill this day inhabit in thoſe parts, yet in ſuch fort, that thoſe which defended of the younger brother, doe beare a kinde of reuerence to the poſteritie of the Elder, and fo being content with their Portions, they lye peaceably and quietly together: and that Succelor of *Ischi* that now liueth, is called *Berendi*.

23. In the yeere of our Lord 1253, *Hayton*, the King of *Armenia*, ſeeing that the Tartarians had in a manner ſubdued all the Kingdomes, Countries, and Lands, even to the Kingdom of *Turke*, taking Counſell of the wife, he reſolved to goe in perſon to the Emperour of the Tartarians, the better to inſinuate himſelfe into his fauour, and to make league with him. But firſt he ſent his brother, *Lord Smabdeli*, Conſtable of the Kingdom of *Armenia*, to obayne ſafe conduct for him: who carrying with him many Preſents, and going attended with a goodly compa- ny, diſpatched in good order the buſineſſe for which he was ſent, yet ſtaied he by the ſpace of four dayes before he came backe to *Armenia*: but at his returne, he related to the King what he had ſeene and done: who without delay departed in ſecret manner diſguiſed, becauſe it might

be dangerous for him to be knowne in the Kingdom of *Turke*, through which hee muſt needs make his iourney: and as God would, at his coming thither, he found that the *Soldan of Turke* was overthrown by a Tartarian Captaine, whom hee met with there and made himſelfe knowne vnto him, who when hee vnderſtood him to be the King of *Armenia*, and that hee was going toward the Emperour, entreated him very honorably, and cauſed him to be conducted to the Kingdom of *Comania*, and beyond the Iron gate.

And afterwards, other Tartarian Captaines cauſed him to be conducted ouer all other Countries and Places, untill he came to *Amalech* (or *Cambala*) where *Mango Can* their Emperour reſided; who reioyced much at the coming of the King of *Armenia*, and the rather for that from the coming of *Changay Can* ouer the Mountain *Belgian*, no other great Prince had come to meet him, and therefore hee receiued and entertained him with much honour and love, and giue him himſelfe ſome of the greateſt perſons of the Court to attend, and affoſiate him at his pleaſure, and did him many other fauours; But the King of *Armenia* hauing reſided certaine dayes, intreated the Emperour to vouchſafe him Audience in thoſe affaires, for which hee was come, and to que him licence to returne. The Emperour very graciously answered him; that hee would moſt willingly accompliſh all his deſires, and that it was very acceptable vnto him that hee came of his owne accord.

The King with good deliberation made ſeven Petitions. Firſt, He deſired that the Emperour and all his people would be baptized in the Chriſtian Faith, leaving all other Sects. Secondly, That there might be a perpetual peace and friendſhip eſtabliſhed between the Chriſtians and the Tartarians. Thirdly, That in all Countries which the Tartarians either had conquered or ſhould conquer, the Churches and Churchmen, whether ſecular or religious, might be free and exempted from all ſeruitude and payments. Fourthly, That he would deliuer and free the holy Land, and the holy Sepulcher of our Lord, out of the hands of the Saracens, and reſtore them to the Chriſtians. Fifthly, That he would endeavour the deſtruction of the *Caliph of Balach*, who was the head and chiefe Deſpot of the Sect of *Mohometans*. Sixthly, Hee required that a ſpecial Charter might be granted him, that of whatſoeuer Tartarians ſpecially ſuch as ſhould be neareſt to the Kingdom of *Armenia* hee ſhould be occaſioned to demand aſide, they ſhould forthwith be readie to ſuffiſt him. Seventhly, Hee craued that all the Lands of the iuriſdiction of the Kingdom of *Armenia*, which the Saracens had inuaded, and were or ſhould happen to be recovered by the Tartarians, might be reſtored to the King of *Armenia*, and that ſuch as hee ſhould get from the Saracens, hee might peaceably and quietly enjoy. *Mango Can* hauing conſidered the Petitions of the King of *Armenia*, calling before him all his chiefe Captaines and Counſellers in their preſence, made him anſwere after this manner. Becauſe that the King of *Armenia* of his owne accord, and not of compulſion, is come vnto vs from remote parts; it becometh the Imperiall Maieſtie to yeeld him all his demands that are lawfull and honeſt: Therefore to you, O King of *Armenia*, Wee returne this anſwere, That wee will accept of all your Requeſts made, and will caſe them all (God-willing) to be duly accompliſhed: firſt, I my ſelfe being Emperour and Lord of the Tartarians, will be baptized in that Faith which the Chriſtians hold: this day; willing and admiſſing all my Subjects to doe the like: yet not under paine to force any thereunto. To your ſecond, We will and agree that there be a perpetual peace between the Tartarians and Chriſtians, yet with this caution, that you ſell be a chiefe Pledge and Suretie that the Chriſtians obſerue on their behalfe the like peace and amitie towards vs, as wee for our part intend inuiolably to keepe towards them. Wee grant alſo, That all the Churches of Chriſtians and their Clergie-men whatſoeuer, either Secular or Religious, ſhall enjoy their Priuledge and Immunitie of Libertie and Exemption throughout the Dominions of our Empire, and that none ſhall moleſt them any kinde of ways. Touching the matter of the holy Land, we ſay, That if we could conueniently we would willingly goe thither in perſon, for the reuerence we beare to our Lord Ieſus Chriſt. But becauſe we haue many occaſions of importance to Ray vs in theſe parts, we will take order with our Brother *Haleon* for the due accompliſhment of that ſeruiſe in all points as it becometh, for the freeing of the Citie of *Hieruſalem* and all the holy Land, out of the hands of the Pagans, and reſtoring it to the Chriſtians.

Concerning the *Caliph of Balach*. We will giue order to *Baydo*, our Captaine of the Tartarians, which are in the Kingdom of *Turke*, and the reſt thereof, that they be all obedient to our Brother, whom wee will haue to deſtroy the *Caliph* as our capitall and deadly Enemy, and that he be drawne according to his deſire, and wee are readie in all things to conſent to. Laſtly, whereas the King of *Armenia* requirith, That the Lands of his Kingdom, which the Saracens had taken from, and haue ſince beene recovered by the Tartarians, may be reſtored vnto him, we freely and frankly accord it; willing our Brother *Haleon* to ſee ſuch reſtitution made without delay.

24. After that *Mango Can* had thus liberally accorded the Requeſts of the King of *Armenia*, and confirmed them by Charters, hee would forthwith receiue the Sacrament of Baptiſme, and was accordingly baptized by the hands of a certaine Biſhop, who was Chancellor of the King of the

Haſim King of
Armenia his
iourney.

c It ſeemes
Armenia
which then
was Amalech,
the Kings Ci-
ty, or Cambala,
in Ramſay,
haſim.

The King of
Armenia his
Demands.

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.
- 6.
- 7.

The anſwere
of the Tar-
tians.

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.

See the 18.
and 24 Chap.

6.

7.

See ſtill that
Haleon, Plac.

Armenia,

The Soldan
entertained
g. in the Goshoga.

Salomon prepa-
ring to en-
counter the
warriors, then.

Abaga his Son
and successor.

Bendakar Sol-
dan of Egypt
inadequately
Armenia, Ramo-
cal his son Bas-
bucker.

He concluded
a truce with
the Soldan.

* That the
Greke Monke
changed their
names, appa-
rently by the
sample of Alex-
ander cameus
in Nise, p. 43, 6,
and of Alexan-
der the Em-
peror in Gre-
ce, p. 147,
and of Cassi-
us, the Em-
peror in Cal-
cedonia, lib.
Abaga entered
the Kingdom
of Egypt, and
destroyed
Turkie.
Turkica.

31. Whiles *Haeloon* was buie in the warre with *Baren*, as hath bene said, the *Soldan* of *Egypt* assembling his Armie came to the Province of *Palestina*, and in a place called *Hamaelach*, he fought battaile with *Goshoga* and his *Tartars*, where *Goshoga* was slaine, and his Armie de-
feated. The *Tartars* which escaped went into *Armenia*, and by this means the Kingdome of *Syria* was wholly subdued by the *Saracens*, having certayne Cities of the *Christians*, which were seated neere the Sea. When *Haeloon* understood how the *Soldan* of *Egypt* had invaded *Syria*, and driven thence his people, he gathered his Armie and sent to the King of *Armenia*, and to the King of *Georgia*, and the other *Christians* of the East to prepare themselves against the *Soldan* of *Egypt* and the *Saracens*, and when his Armie was in readinesse a sicknesse seized him, of which he languished the space of a fortnight, and then dyed, by whose death the enterprize of the Holy Land had an end. *Abaga* his Sonne held the Dominion of his Father, who intreated the Em-
peror *Cokila Cas* being his Vnkle, to confirme him therein, to which he willingly accorded. So he was called *Abaga Cas*, and began to reigne in the year of our Lord 1264.

32. *Abaga* was wise and governed prosperously in all things, two only excepted, one that he would not be a *Christian*, as his Father had bene, but worshipped Idols, beleuing the Idolatrous Priests. The other, that he was always in warres with his Neighbours, by reason where-
of the *Soldan* was long in quiet, and the power of the *Saracens* much increased. Those *Tartars* (or rather *Turks*) which could escape from out the Dominion of the *Tartars*, fled vnto the *Soldan*, seeking to avoid the heauie burthens which the *Tartars* imposed on them. And the *Soldan* dealt politically, for he sent Messengers by Sea to the *Tartars*, in the Kingdome of *Cumania* and *Russia*, and made composition and agreement with them, that whensoever *Abaga* should moue warre against the Land of *Egypt*, then they should inuade his Countrey, for which he promised them great gifts, by means whereof *Abaga* could not well inuade the Land of *Egypt*, but the *Soldan* could easily without resistance inuade the *Christians* in the parts of *Syria*, inasmuch, that the *Christians* lost the Citie of *Antioch*, and diuers other places of strength, which they held in that Kingdome.

33. Moreover, *Bendakar* the *Soldan* of *Egypt* was so fortunate that he much abated the Kingdome of *Armenia*. For it hapned that the King of *Armenia* with many of his men was gone to the *Tartars*, which the *Soldan* hearing, sent a Coytaine of his to inuade the Kingdome of *Armenia*. The Sonnes of the King of *Armenia*, gathering together all that could beare Armes, encountered the *Egyptians* in the Confinnes of their Kingdome, and refuted them courageously; but the Armie of the *Armenians* being ouerthrowne, one of the Kings Sonnes was taken, and the other was slaine in battaile. So that the *Saracens* thereby wasted and spoyled all the Kingdome of *Armenia*, and carreyed infinite riches thence to the great damage of the *Christians*, whereby the Enemies power was much encreased, and the Kingdome of *Armenia* woefully weakened. The King whole endeavour was wholly bent about the destruction of the Infidels, having heard this most vniuersall newes of his owne Countrey, busied his thoughts night and day how to as-
sist the *Saracens*, and oft-times very earnestly dealt with *Abaga*, and his *Tartars* to attempte the ouerthrow of faithlesse *Mahomet*, and the reliefe of the *Christians*. But *Abaga* excused himselfe by reason of the warres, in which he was daily entangled with his Neighbours. The King of *Armenia* saying that hee could not haue any present ayde of the *Tartarians*, sent and made truce by his Messengers with the *Soldan* of *Egypt*, that he might redeeme his Sonne which was Prisoner. The *Soldan* also promised him that if he restored him a friend of his called *Angeldacar* whom the *Tartars* held captiue, and yielded vp the Cattle *Tempsack*, and some foulds of the Citie of *Halappi*, which he had gotten in the time of *Haeloon*, hee would set his Sonne at li-
bertie. Whereupon the *Soldan*, hauing receiued his friend, and the Cattle of *Tempsack* being yielded, and two other Calles throwne downe at his appointment, deliuered his Sonne out of Prison, and restored him accordingly. Then afterwards King *Haythou* of famous memorie, ha-
uing reigned fortie five yeares, and done much good to the *Christians*, yielded vp his Kingdome and Dominion to his Sonne *Lumene*, whom he had deliuered out of captiuitie, and renouncing this Kingdome of the World became professed in Religion, and was called *Melebachius*, changing his name (according to the custome * of the *Armenians*) when they enter into Religion, and in short time after dyed in peace in the year of our Lord 1270.

34. This King of *Armenia Lumene* was wife, and governed his Kingdome prudently, and he-
ing much beloved by his owne People, and by the *Tartars*, he laboured earnestly to destroy the *Saracens*, so that in his time *Abaga* made peace with all his neighbors, who of long time had ben his enemies. Then the *Soldan* of *Egypt* entered the Kingdome of *Turkie*, and slue many of the *Tartars*, and draue them out of many Townes. For a *Saracen*, called *Paruana*, being Captaine ouer the *Tartars* that were in *Turkie*, rebelled against *Abaga*, and sought the destruction of the *Tartarians*. *Abaga* hearing thereof, posted thither so speedily, that in fiftene dayes hee rode fortie dayes journey. The *Soldan* hearing of his coming departed suddenly, not daring to make any longer abode. Yet could not so speedily withdraw himselfe, but that the *Tartars* following swiftly, outtook the reward of his Armie in the entrie of the Kingdome of *Egypt*; in a place called *Pasloacke*. There the *Tartarians* rushing on them, tooke two thousand men of

the *Saracens*, beside much riches, and five thousand of the *Cordones* which liued in that Countrey. *Abaga* being come to the Confinnes of *Egypt*, was perswaded to goe no farther for heat: for that Land is very hotte, and his *Tartars*, and their beasts hauing come speedily from farre, could hardly haue endured it, by reason whereof he returned into *Turkie*, and spoiled and waited all the Countreys that had rebelled, and yielded to the *Soldan*. But he caused the Traitor *Paruana* with his partakers to be cut alunder in the midst, after the *Tartarian* manner, and part of his flesh to be leued in all his meats, whereof he and his Captaines did eat. Such was the reuenge of King *Abaga* on the Traitor *Paruana*.

35. *Abaga* hauing effected his desires in *Turkie*, and enriched his *Tartars* with the spoyle of the rebellous *Saracens*, he called to him the King of *Armenia*, and offered him the kingdome of *Turkie*, in regard that his father and hee had bene euer faithful to the *Tartarians*. But the King of *Armenia* being discreet and wife, redired great thanks to *Abaga* for so great a Present, but excused himselfe from the accepting thereof, as vnable to gouerne two Kingdomes. For the *Soldan* of *Egypt* was in his full strength, and earnestly bent against the Kingdome of *Armenia*: so that hee had enough to doe to provide for the defence thereof. Yet aduised him to fetter and dispoise the Kingdome of *Turkie* in such sort ere his departure, that there might bee no feare of Rebellion afterwards: and in any case to permit no *Saracen* to command there. Which aduice *Abaga* accepted of, and neare after suffered any *Saracen* to beare rule in that Countrey. The King of *Armenia* then desired him to thinke of deliuering the Holy Land out of the hands of the *Pagans*, wherein he promised all his best endeavour: and wished the King to fend messen-
gers to the Pope, and to other Princes of *Christendome* for their assistance. So *Abaga* hauing orderd the affaires of *Turkie*, returned to the Kingdome of *Coracen*, where hee had left his familie. *Bendakar* the *Soldan* of *Egypt*, after he had received such damage by the *Tartars*, was poisoned, died in *Damascus*: whereof the *Christians* of those parts were very glad. And the *Saracens*; very sorrowfull: for they had not his like after, as they themselves commonly reported. For his sonne, called *Melebachius*, succeeded him, who was loone driven out of his Dominion by one called *Elfi*, who violently vsurped, made himselfe *Soldan*.

36. The time appointed being come, when *Abaga* was to begin his warre against the *Soldan* of *Egypt*, hee appointed his brother *Mangodanior* to goe to the Kingdome of *Syria* with thirtie thousand men, being *Tartars*, and courtiers, to ouercome the *Soldan*, if he came in bat-
telle against him: or otherwise to take in the Castles and Holdes of the Countrey, and deliuer them to the *Christians*, if the *Soldan* should than the fight. When *Mangodanior* with his Armie, setting forward, was come neere the Confinnes of *Armenia*, hee sent for the King of *Armenia*, who came presently vnto him with a goodly companie of Horse: so that they entered the Kingdome of *Syria*, and went spoyleing and foraging, till they came to the Citie *Aman*, now called *Camela*, which is seated in the midst of *Syria*. Before this Citie lieth a faire great Playne, where the *Soldan* of *Egypt* had assembled his Power, intending to fight with the *Tartarians*. And there the *Saracen* on the one side, with the *Christians* and *Tartars* on the other side, fought a great battell. The King of *Armenia* with the *Christians* ruled and commanded the right wing of the
40 Armie which inuaded the *Soldan*: left wing manfully, and put them to flight, and pursued them three dayes journey, euen to the Citie *Aman*. Another part of the *Soldans* Armie was also routed by *Amalech* a *Tartarian* Captaine, who pursued them also three dayes journey, to a Citie called *Turara*. When they thought the *Soldans* Power vtterly ouerthrowne, *Mangodanior* who neuer had seene the conflicts of warre before, being afraid without any reasonable cause of cer-
taine *Saracens*, called *Beduini*, withdrew himselfe out of the field, hauing the better, forsaking the King of *Armenia*, and his Captaine which had preyraied against his enemies. When the *Soldan*, which thought hee had lost all, saw the field cleere, and all abandoned, he got vpon a little hill, with foure hundred men, and stood there. The King of *Armenia* returning from the pursuit, and missing *Mangodanior* in the field, was much astonished, and imagining which way hee should be gone, followed after him.

30 But *Amalech* returning from the enemies whom hee had pursued, abode two dayes expecting his Lord, supposing that hee had followed after him, as he thought, for the further subduing of his enemies, and the Countrey which they had ouercome: till at last, hauing heiged of his retreat, leaving his victorie, hee made speed after him: whom hee found on the banke of the Riuer *Enphrates* staying for him. And then the *Tartars* returned to their owne Province. But the King of *Armenia* sustained much losse, and hard aduantage in his reture: for the Hories of the *Christians* of the Kingdome of *Armenia*, were lo wearied and spent with the length of the way, and want of Fodder, that they were not able to trauell, so that the *Christians* going featerly by vni-
uersall wayes, were often found out, and slayne without mercy by the *Saracens* inhabiting those
60 parts: Inasmuch that the greatest part of the Armie was lost, and in a manner all the Nobility, and this misadventure of *Mangodanior* happened in the yeere of our Lord 1283.

When *Abaga* vnderstood the successe hereof, he assembled all his people, and when hee was ready to set forward with all his power against the *Saracens*, a certaine *Saracen*, the sonne of the Deuill, came to the Kingdome of *Perfia*, and preyraied by giuing great gifts to me that

Paruana cut
alunder and
eaten.

King Lumene
refused the offer
of the King-
dome of Tur-
kie.

Hee vrged the
deliuering of
Ierusalem from
Pagans.

Coracen.

The death of
the Soldan.
Melebachius
his sonne and suc-
cessor.
Elfi the Soldan.

Mangodanior
depured Ge-
nerally by his
Brother.

He commeth
to battell a-
gainst the
Soldan.

Tartars.

Amalech.

The King of
Armenia, his
great losse at
his retreat.

1282.

Abaga prepa-
red to set forward
with all his power
against the
Saracens.

He is poisoned
with his Bro-
ther.

Tangodor the
brother and
Sue for of
Abaga.

Of a Christian
rune in Sa-
ra-
can.

Hee seeketh
to betray
the Kings of
Armenia and
Georgia.

Hee is accused
to Cebile Can.

He slayeth his
Brother.

Argon of a
Prisoner is
made King.

His revenge
on Tangodor.

ferued neere about *Abaga*, in such fort, that both he and his brother *Mangador* were poisoned both in one day: and died both within eight dayes after. The truth whereof was afterwards disclosed by the mischievous Malefactors themselves. And so died *Abaga Can* in the yeere of our Lord 1285.

37. After the death of *Abaga Can* the *Tartars* assembled themselves, and ordyned over them a brother of his, called *Tangodor*, who had ouergone the rest of his brethren. In his youth hee had receiued the Sacrament of Baptisme, and was baptised by the name of *Nicholas*. But being come to riper yeeres, and keeping companie with *Saracens*, whom hee loued, hee became a wicked *Saracen*, and renouncing *Christian* Religion, would be called *Mahomet Can*, and laboured by all meanes to turne all the *Tartarians* to that irreligious Sect of *Mahomet* the sonne of Iniquitie: in such fort, that those that hee could not compell by violence, hee lured by preferments and rewards: in such manner that in his time many of the *Tartarians* became professed *Saracens*, as at this day appeareth. This Child of perdition commanded the Churches of the *Christians* to be destroyed, and forbade them to vse any of their religious Rites or Ceremonies. Hee caused the doctrine of *Mahomet* to be publicly preached, the *Christians* to be banished, and their Churches in the Citie of *Tauris* vtterly to be destroyed. Hee sent Messengers also to the *Soldan of Egypt*, and concluded a Peace and a League with him, promising that all the *Christians* within his Dominion should become *Saracens*, or els lose their heads, which gaue the *Saracens* cause of much reioicing, and made the *Christians* very sad.

He sent moreover to the King of *Armenia* in *Georgia*, and to the other *Christian* Princes of those parts to come vnto him without delay. But they refused rather to die in battell then to obey his commandement, for other remedie they could finde none. And the *Christians* being God (which was his purpose) and bitternesse of heart, that they rather desired to die then to liue, euen a Brother of this *Mahomet*, with a few of his trust in him) sent consolation to them all. And rebelling against him for his will decreed to slay him, and his Brother *Argon*, opposing themselves, *Tartarians*, how hee had forsaken the steps of his Ancestors, and was become a wicked *Saracen*: labouering with all his might to bring the rule of *Tartary* to be *Saracens* also. Which when *Cebile Can* vnderstood hee was much displeased thereat: in such manner that hee sent and required *Mahomet* to reforme his euill wayes, for otherwise hee would proceed against him. Which message so replenished him with wrath and indignation, in such manner that hee being perswaded there was none that durst gainsay his proceedings but his Brother and his Nephew *Argon*, hee caused his Brother to be slayne: and intending the like to his Nephew, hee went against him with a mightie Armie. *Argon* being not of strength to withstand his forces, betooke himselfe to a strong Hold among the Mountaines, which that Sonne of Iniquitie besieged with his deuillish Armie.

Argon finally yielded himselfe, with condition that he might still enjoy his Dignitie and Dominion. But *Mahomet* deliuered him to the Constable and others of the Nobilitie, to be kept in Prison. And departing towards the Citie of *Tauris*, where he left his wives and children, he gaue direction that his Armie should come forthly after him: but appointed the Constable, and such as he trusted most, to put his Nephew to death secretly, and to bring him his head. These things thus hastily ordered and directed, there was amongst those that had receiued the command of that bloody execution, a man of some Place and Authoritie, brought vp vnder *Abaga* the Father of *Argon*, who having compassion of his distresse,ooke Armes, and in the night time slue the Constable of *Mahomet* and all his followers, and deliuered *Argon* made him Lord and Ruler of all: some for feare, and others for love being obedient to his will and commandement. *Argon* being thus established, accompanied with his faithful followers, pursued presently after *Mahomet*, whom hee ouertooke and seized on before hee came to *Tauris*, and caused him after their manner, to be cut asunder in the midst. And such was the end of that cursed Catiff *Mahomet*, before hee had fate two yeeres in his seat.

¶ IIII.

OF ARGON the Sonne of ABAGA, and REGAITO his Brother, of BAIDO, and of the exploits of CASAN against the Soldan of Egypt, and others.



In the yeere of our Lord 1285, after the death of *Mahomet*, *Argon* the sonne of *Abaga Can*, would not take on him the title of *Can*, vntill hee had receiued commandments from the great *Can* Sovereigne Lord and Emperour, to whom hee dispatched Messengers which were honourably receiued, and entertained by the great *Can*, who reioiced much of his successe against *Mahomet*, and sent some of his great Officers, to confirme *Argon* in his Dominion, who was thenceforth called *Can*, and much respected of all. For he was of a goodly aspect and presence, courageous and wise in his proceedings, much regarding and

Argon is con-
firmed by Ca-
bile Can.

honouring the *Christians*. The Churches ouer-throwne by *Mahomet* he repayed. The Kings of *Armenia* and *Georgia*, with the other *Christian* Princes of the East, came vnto him, desiring his best counsaile, and helpe that the holy Land might be freed from the *Pagans*. *Argon* very graciously answered, That he would gladly doe any thing that might tend to the honour of God, and the aduancement of *Christian* Religion, and that he intended to make peace with his Neighbours, that hee might the more freely and securely follow that enterprise. But *Argon*, before the execution of these good deligments, dyed in the fourth yeere of his reigne. And a Brother of his, called *Regaito*, succeeded him, who was a man of small valour, as shall be after declared.

He dyeth.

38. In the yeere of our Lord 1289, after the death of *Argon Can*, his brother *Regaito* was his Successor, being a man of no Religion: in Armes he was of no valour, but was altogether igne over to beastly Luxurie, and satiating his insatiable appetite with superfluous meates and drinckes: and did nothing else by the space of six yeeres which he reigned, in such manner that being lured of his subjects and contemned of strangers, hee was finally strangled by his Peeres. After whole death *Baido*, a Kinman of his succeeded him, who was vpright and constant in Religion, and did many fauours to the *Christians*, but hee soone ended his dayes, as shall be declared.

Baido succede-
deth him.

40. In the yeere of our Lord 1295, after the death of *Regaito*, his Kinman *Baido* ruled over the *Tartars*. He being a good *Christian* builded the *Christian* Churches, and commanded that none should Preach or publish the Doctrine of *Mahomet* amongst the *Tartarians*. But because those of the Sect of *Mahomet* were many, they could hardly be induced to bee obedient to that commandement of *Baido*, and therefore sent Messengers secretly to *Casan* the sonne of *Argon*, promising to giue him the Dominion which *Baido* held, and to make him their Lord and Ruler, if hee would renounce the *Christian* Religion.

Casan caring little for Religion, and being greatly affected with Dominion, agreed to doe what hee desired, and began an open rebellion, whereupon *Baido* assembled his people, thinking to haue taken *Casan*, not knowing of the Treason which his people had wrought against him. But when they came to the Field, all the *Mahometists* leaving *Baido*, fled vnto *Casan*, so that *Baido* being forsaken, thought to haue escaped by flight, yet was pursued and slaine by his Enemies.

The death of
Baido.

41. After the death of *Baido*, *Casan* being made Ruler over the *Tartars*, at the beginning of his reigne, durst not gainsay what hee had promised the *Mahometists*, that had promoted him thereto, and therefore shewed himselfe for a while very austere to the *Christians*. But when hee found himselfe well and firmly settled in his Dominion, hee began to honour and cherish the *Christians*, doing them many fauours as shall be declared. First, therefore hee destroyed many great Ones, who had beene Perseuters with him to become a *Saracen*, and to persecute the *Christians*. Then hee commanded all the *Tartars* within his Dominion, to bee readie with their Armour and all necessarie furniture, to attend him for a Conquest of the Kingdom of *Egypt*, and ouerthrow of the *Soldan*, and sent to the King of *Armenia*, and the King of *Georgia*, and other *Christian* Princes of the East in that behalfe.

Casan succede-
deth.

39. At the beginning of the Spring *Casan* gathered his forces, and first first turned towards *Baldado*: and at length turned towards the Land of *Egypt*. The *Soldan*, called *Melchamser*, who had long before lost intelligence of the coming of the *Tartars*, assembled all his power, and came before the Citie of *Aman*, which is seated in the middle of the Kingdom of *Syria*. *Casan* vnderstanding that the *Soldan* meant to giue him battaile, forbore to besiege any Citie or Cattle, but halted speedily to the place where the *Soldan* was, and pitched his Tents but one dayes iourney from him in certaine Meadows, where was plentie of forrage and feeding, where hee reited his Followers and their Horses which were wearied with their trauell. Amongst whom was a *Saracen*, called *Calphack* (or *Capchick*) who had serued the *Soldan*, and was fled from him to *Casan*, for feare of imprisonment and punishments for his misdeemerits. This *Calphack* had receiued fundrie fauours and rewards of *Casan*, who repayed great confidence in him: yet, like a wicked Traytor, hee defiled the counsaile and purpose of *Casan* to the *Soldan* and *Saracens*, acquainting them by Letters how *Casan* meant to abide in those Meadows, vntill they had sufficiently reited their Horses which were wearied, whereby he might easily ouer-come the *Tartarians*.

Melchamser
the Soldan.

The *Soldan* who thought to haue expected the *Tartars* at the Citie of *Aman*, did hereupon change his resolution, and with a chosen companie halld with all speede to assaile *Casan* as vniawares. But his Eypals and Scouts giuing him notice of their approach, *Casan* commanded his men presently to be let in order and manfully to resist them. Hee himselfe more bold then a Lion with such companie as hee had about him, rode to meete the *Saracens*, who had approached to neere that they could not auoid the battaile. *Casan* seeing that the residue of his companie were spread farre abroad in the Countrey for the feeding of their Horses, that they could not suddenly come to him, hee commanded those that were with him to dismount from their Horses, and placing them in a Circle, made as it were a Wall of them, and with their Bowes and Arrows caused his men to expect their Enemies, and not to shoote vntill they were fure to reach them, by which meanes the *Tartars* shooting altogether, wherein they are very skillfull and readie, wounded the foremost Horses of their Enemies in such sort that they fell before the rest, where-

Calphack do-
le dealing.

40. abide in those Meadows, vntill they had sufficiently reited their Horses which were wearied, whereby he might easily ouer-come the *Tartarians*.

The *Soldan* who thought to haue expected the *Tartars* at the Citie of *Aman*, did hereupon change his resolution, and with a chosen companie halld with all speede to assaile *Casan* as vniawares. But his Eypals and Scouts giuing him notice of their approach, *Casan* commanded his men presently to be let in order and manfully to resist them. Hee himselfe more bold then a Lion with such companie as hee had about him, rode to meete the *Saracens*, who had approached to neere that they could not auoid the battaile. *Casan* seeing that the residue of his companie were spread farre abroad in the Countrey for the feeding of their Horses, that they could not suddenly come to him, hee commanded those that were with him to dismount from their Horses, and placing them in a Circle, made as it were a Wall of them, and with their Bowes and Arrows caused his men to expect their Enemies, and not to shoote vntill they were fure to reach them, by which meanes the *Tartars* shooting altogether, wherein they are very skillfull and readie, wounded the foremost Horses of their Enemies in such sort that they fell before the rest, where-

Hee deathen
likely.

by the rest following on with great furie, and finding the former ouerthrowne, fell themselves head-long ouer them: insomuch, that of all the *Saracens* there escaped few, which were not either ouerthrowne or else wounded to death, with the Arrowes of the *Tartars*.

The *Soldan* himselfe being in the Armie, fled as fast as hee could, which *Cafan* perceiving, made his men get vp on their Horses, and manfully to set on their Enemies, being himselfe the foremost amongst them that entred the Armie of the *Soldan*, who with some small companie remayning so long, suffayned the brunt, vntill the *Tartars* came in Troupes well ordered to fight, and I came the whole Armie on both sides to battaile, which endured from the Sunne rising till the Ninth hour. But in the end, the *Soldan* with his *Saracens* fled, being not able to withstand the courage of *Cafan*, who did wonders with his owne hand, and pursued them with his people, killing on euery side vntill it was darke night, and made so great slaughter of the *Saracens*, that the Earth was couered euery where with their dead carcasses. That night *Cafan* rested at a place, called *Casero*, reioicing exceedingly at that great victorie which God had giuen him against the *Saracens*. This fell out in the yeere of our Lord 1301. on the Wednesday before the Feast of the Nativity.

42. Then *Cafan* sent the King of *Armenia*, and a Leader of the *Tartars*, called *Malay*, with fortie thousand Horse, to pursue the *Soldan* as farre as the Desert of *Egypt*, being twelue dayes journey distant from the place where the battaile was fought, and willed them to expect him or some Messenger from him at the Citie *Gazara*. And they departed speedily before the Sunne rising, to follow after the *Soldan*. But some three dayes after, *Cafan* sent for the King of *Armenia* to returne, because he purposed to besiege the Citie of *Damascus*, and willed *Malay* with the fortie thousand *Tartars* to pursue with speede after the *Saracens*, and to put what hee could take to the sword. Yet the *Soldan* himselfe flying very swiftly, and riding on Dromedaries both night and day, in the conduct and companie of certaine *Bedouins*, escaped into the Citie of *Babylon* very strangely. But others of the *Saracens* fled several wayes, as they thought they could best saue themselves, and a great number of them going by the way of *Tripolis*, were slaine by the *Christians*, which inhabited the Mountayne of *Libanus*. The King of *Armenia* returning to *Cafan*, and his Armie was brought into his presence, which was so great that euery one maruailed, why the *Soldan* carried so much treasure with him when he went to fight. *Cafan*, when he had gathered together all the riches and spoiles which they had gotten, bestowed them bountifully among the *Tartars*, and the *Christians* his followers, whereby they all made rich.

And I Friar *Haydon*, the Compiler of this Historie, who was present in all Expeditions and Battailles, which the *Tartars* had with the *Soldan*, from the time of *Halson* to this day, yet did I neuer see nor heare that any of the *Tartarian* Lords accomplished more in two dayes then did *Cafan*. For the first day, with a small companie of his owne, he ouer-came a great Armie of his Enemies, and did such exploits in his Person, that he wanne fame and commendations about all the rest. On the second day, such was his largesse, and so great this liberality of his heart, that of all the infinite wealth and treasure which he got, hee kept nothing for himselfe, but a Sword and a Purse, in which was contayned certaine writings concerning the Land of *Egypt*, and the number of the *Soldans* Armie. And this was most maruailous about all the rest, how in so little a body, and of so little preference (for he seemed like a Monister) there could be so much vertue and rigour contayned: for among neere two hundred thousand Soldiers, there could hardly one of these litle or of worse aspect be found. Therefore, because this *Cafan* liued in our time, it is fitting we may make the more ample narration of his Acts. And in regard that the *Soldan* who was ouerthrowne by *Cafan*, is yet liuing at the writing of this Historie, they which intend to destroy, or any wayes to damage the *Saracens*, may recue many aduertisements out of these Collections.

After some few dayes rest, *Cafan* directed his course towards the Citie of *Damascus*: where the Citizens hearing of his approach, and fearing lest if hee tooke them by force, they should die without mercy, by the aduice of the wisest amongst them, sent with one consent their Messengers unto him with offer of their Citie, which hee willingly accepted, and after a while rode towards the Riuer of *Damascus*, on whose Bankes hee pitched his Tents, forbidding any damage to be done to the Citie. Then the Citizens sent him diuers gifts, and plenty of victuals for his Armie. There *Cafan* made his abode five and fortie dayes with all his Followers, except those fortie thousand *Tartars* which were sent with *Malay*, who stayed his coming at the Citie of *Gazara*.

43. While *Cafan* repozed himselfe neere *Damascus*, there came newses unto him, how a Kinsman of his called *Baydo*, had entred into the Kingdome of *Persia*, and committed great spoile therein in his absence: and thereupon hee refused to returne to his owne. Leaving therefore his chiefe Captaine *Cotolusa*, with part of his Armie for the custodie of the Kingdome of *Syria* (whom hee willed *Malay* and the rest of the *Tartars* to be obedient vnto as to his Lieutenant) he set Ruler and Governours ouer all the Cities, and committed the government of *Damascus* to the Traytor *Calfach*, being not yet acquainted with his trayterous disposition. Then calling

to him the King of *Armenia*, and acquainting him with his purpose, hee told him that hee would willingly haue deliuered the Land which hee had conquered into the *Christians* hands, if they had come to him, and that if they came hee would giue order to *Cotolusa* to restore them the Lands which they had formerly held: and to yeeld them convenient supply for the repaying of their Cailles and Fortresses. These things thus ordered, *Cafan* tooke his journey towards *Mesopotamia*, but when hee came to the Riuer *Emphrates*, hee sent word to *Cotolusa*, that leauing twentie thousand *Tartars* vnder the command of *Malay*, hee should come speedily to him with the rest of the Armie. *Cotolusa* did as was commanded him, so that *Malay* remayned Lieutenant in *Syria* for *Cafan*, who eft-soones by perswasion of the Traytor *Calfach*, remoued towards the parts about *Ierusalem*, to a place called *Gazer*, to finde good feeding and prouision for his Horses.

But in the Sommer time, *Calfach* (who had formerly hatched Treason in his heart against *Cafan*, sent word secretly to the *Soldan*, that hee would restore him *Damascus* with the other Townes which *Cafan* had taken. The *Soldan* liked hereof, and covenanted to giue him *Damascus* in perpetuall keeping, and part of his treasure with his sister to wite. Insomuch, that thoutly after, *Calfach* became Rebell, and caused all the strong places to rebell against the *Tartars*, bearing themselves bold on the heate of Sommer, in which they knew the *Tartars* could not ride nor yeeld any aide vnto their friends. When *Malay* perceived that they rebelled vnto where, hee durst not stay any longer with so small a companie, but tooke the shortest way towards the Kingdome of *Mesopotamia*, and signified thence to *Cafan* all that had hapned in the Kingdome of *Syria*. Who seeing hee could not any way redresse it at that season, by reason of heate, yet when the Winter approached, hee made very great preparation on the bankes of the Riuer *Emphrates*, and sent ouer *Cotolusa* before with thirtie thousand *Tartarian* Horse-men, directing him that when hee came to the parts of *Antiochia*, hee should call vnto him the King of *Armenia*, and the other *Christians* of the East, and of *Cyprus*, and which that strength should enter into the Kingdome of *Syria*, whiles hee prepared to come after with the strength of his Armie. *Cotolusa* did as hee was commanded, and with his thirtie thousand *Tartars* went forwards till hee came to *Antioch*, and then sent to the King of *Armenia*, who came vnto him with his Armie. The *Christians* also in the Kingdome of *Cyprus* hauing heard of the coming of *Cotolusa*, came speedily with their Gallies and other Vessels to the Ile called *Antiochia*, among whom was the Lord *Tyrus* brother to the King of *Cyprus*, Master of the Hospitall of the Temple, with their Brethren of their Societie. And these being all ready to vnder-see the seruice of Christ, there came a rumour that *Cafan* was dangerously sicke, that men dispyred of his recouerie. Whereupon *Cotolusa* with his *Tartars* returning towards *Cafan*; the King of *Armenia* returned also into his Country; and the *Christians* at the Ile of *Antiochia* to the Kingdome of *Cyprus*, by which means the businesse of the Holy Land was verily abandoned, which happened in the yeere of our Lord 1301.

Again, in the yeere of our Lord 1303, *Cafan* assembling a mightie Armie, came with great preparation to the Riuer *Emphrates*, intending to enter into the Kingdome of *Syria*, and there to destroy the whole Sect of *Mahomet*, and to restore the Holy Land to the *Christians*. But stand him when they lay treaped and gathered their Corne and other fruits of the Earth, and had might not find victuals for themselves, nor for forrage for their beasts. When *Cafan* vnderstood what the *Agarims* had done, and how they had waited all the Land, considering that his horses could not there be fed nor sustayned, hee refused to remayne that Winter vpon the bankes of the Riuer *Emphrates*, and to beguine his Journey at the beginning of the Spring, when the grasse began to sprout. For the *Tartars* are euery more careful of the Horses then of themselves, being contented with the smallest pittance of any kind of nourishment for themselves.

Then *Cafan* sent for the King of *Armenia*, who came to him without delay, and lodged himselfe on the Riuer. *Cafan* extended three dayes Journey in length, euen from a certaine Castle called *Iacabe*, to another Castle called *Bir*, which Castles appertayned to the *Saracens*, yet *Cafan* yielded without any assault vnto *Cafan*. But while *Cafan* abode there, expecting the coming hands, the Deuill cast a new Obstacle in his way, for hee had newes againe that *Baydo* had entred his owne, whereat being much grieved, in respect that hee was contrayned so long to delay the businesse of the Holy Land, hee commanded his Cantaine *Cotolusa* with fortie thousand *Tartars* to enter into the Kingdome of *Syria*, and to take *Damascus*, and kill all the *Saracens*; and that the King of *Armenia* should ioyne his people with *Cotolusa*. *Cafan* then returned into *Persia*, and *Cotolusa* and the King besieged the Citie *Ames*; and hauing certaine Intelligence that the *Soldan* was at the Citie *Gazara*, and would not stirre thence, they tooke it by assault, and slew the *Saracens* one with another to the sword. There they found great store of wealth and munition.

Hee out-cometh.

Casero.

Gazara.

Bedouins are wilde Arabes.

Armen yielded. Arsen present at the other Expeditions, from Halson till this time.

Cafan dwarfish stature and ill-favoured features.

1307.

cotolusa.

Calfach was son. Gazer.

Tyrus.

Cafan remoued to Syria.

The Saracens burne and waste their owne Countrey.

*Cotuloffas be-
ing d.*

*The obstinate
of Cotuloffa.*

*The Soldan a
wary Warrior.*

*Cotuloffa's
tempt.*

*The Tartars
dangred by
the waters.*

*He dyeth him
with men and
mony.*

Thence they went to the Citie of *Damascus* to besiege it, but the Citizens sent their Mes-
sengers, desiring a Truce for three dayes which was granted them. The Scouts of the *Tartars* be-
ing almost a dayes Journey beyond *Damascus*, took certain *Saracens* whom they sent to *Cotuloffa*
that he might examine them. *Cotuloffa* being advertised by thele that there were about
twelue thousand *Saracen* Horsemen, with in two dayes Journey from thence, which expected
daily the coming of the *Soldan*. He rode presently with all speed, hoping to take them at un-
awares: But it was almost night before *Cotuloffa* and the King of *Armenia* could reach thither,
and they had Intelligence that the *Soldan* was come newly before them. Therefore being de-
ceiued of their expectation to assaile those twelue thousand alone, some aduiled them for the best
to repose themselves that night being now somewhat late, and to set vpon the Enemy in the
morning. But *Cotuloffa* despising the *Soldan*, and his people would not hearken to any aduice,
but commaunded his Armie to bee forthwith put in order: which the *Saracens* perceiving, kept
their standing, being on the one side fenced with a Lake, and with a Mountayne on another side,
and knowing that the *Tartars* could not come to assaile them without danger, they would not
goe forth to fight, but remained in the place where they were, and when the *Tartars* thought
without any impediment to have assailed their Enemies; they found a small Riuer betwixt
them, which in some places had no passage over: by means whereof much time was spent be-
fore they could passe over the Riuer; but after they had passed the greatest part ouer the Riuer,
they set manfully on their Enemies. Yet the *Soldan* stood still and would not remoue from the
place he was in, betwixt the Lake and the Mountayne: which *Cotuloffa* perceiving, because the
darke night approached, he withdrew his company for that night, and lodged them neere the
Mountayne only about a thousand *Tartars*, which could not passe the Riuer, but as before,
he would by no means come forth to fight, but defended himselfe in that place of advantage.
So the *Tartars* continuing their assault from the morning vntill the ninth houre, being thirte
and ouer-wearied for lacke of water they retried themselves in good order, leaving the *Soldan*
and came to the Plaine of *Damascus*, where they had plenty of pasture and water at will,
where they determined to abide vntill they had sufficiently reposed themselves and their
Horses.

But the Inhabitants knowing, that the Armie of the *Tartars* was spread abroad in that
Plaine, opened the Sluces of the Riuer in the night time, whereby the waters rose so high
in eight houres ouer all the Plaine, that the *Tartars* were constrained on the sudden to arise and de-
part, so that the night being darke, and the Ditches all filled with water, and no wayes nor
paths to be seene, they were all amazed in such sort that many Horses perished, and much Ar-
mour was lost, inasmuch, that the King of *Armenia* endured much losse, yet the day coming
through the goodness of God, they escaped the waters, but the Bowes and Arrowes of the
Tartars being their chiefe weapons which they vse, and the rest of their Armour being all wet
and vicerely vnderminable, they were so affonied therewith, that if their Enemies had then per-
sued them, they might have bene taken or flaine. Afterwards, the *Tartars* by reason that ma-
ny had lost their Horses, returned softly by small Iournies to the banks of the *Riuer Euphrates*,
yet none of their Enemies durst follow or pursue them, but the Riuer being risen and swelling
through the abundance of raine that fell, or by the *Armenians*, as also of *Georgians*, perished
therein, more then of the *Tartars*, whose Horses knew better to swimme: so returned they in-
to *Persia* ruined and disgraced, not by the power of the Enemy, but by accident partly, partly
by euill aduice. A great cause whereof was the obstinacie of *Cotuloffa*, who would not regard any
aduice that was giuen, for if he would have hearkened to the counsell of the wise, he might easily
have prevented those dangers.

And I *Frier Haydon* the Compiler of this Historie, was present at all these proceedings: and
if happily I reate more largely thereof than shall be thought conuenient. I craue pardon in re-
gard that I doe it to this end, that on like occasions happening these courses may be called to
minde. For these actions that are ordered by counsell, haue commonly good and commendable
events, but the rash and impudent Enterprizes, doe usually faile of their wished success.
After that the King of *Armenia* had passed the *Riuer Euphrates* with some losse, he resolved to
goe to *Cafan* before he returned to his Kingdom of *Armenia*, and therefore he went first to
the Citie of *Ninive* in which *Cafan* then resided. He enterprized the King with much honour,
kindnesse, and magnificence, and being compassionate of his losses to make him some recompence
of especiall fauour vnto him, he granted him a thousand *Armenian* Horsemen yearly at his
charge for the defence of his Kingdom, and also granted him out of the Kingdom of *Turkie*, a
yeerely pension, for the maintenance of another thousand *Armenian* Horsemen yearly at his
pleasure, the King thus recompenced, having taken his leave, returned to the Kingdom of *Ar-
menia*, which *Cafan* had enioyned him to watch warily ouer, vntill God pleased to enable him
personally to goe to the reliefe of the Holy Land.

¶ V.

¶ V.

CASAN dyeth, CARBANDA succeedeth his Apostasie. The Authors
entrance into a Religious Habit. Of TAMOR Can the sixth Empe-
rour, and of CHAPAK, HOCHTAI, and CAR-
BANDA, three other Tartarian
Kings.

10 The King of *Armenia* returned safely to his Kingdom, but after hee came thither hee
found little rest there, for after it so pleased God, that *Cafan* was surprized with a
griuous infirmite, and haung gouerned wisely in his life, hee was no lesse willing
that his widome should bee commended in his death. Therefore hee made his last
Will and Testament, appointing his Brother *Carbanda* (or *Carbaganda*) his Heire and Successor
and haung ordered all things concerning the Affaires of his Kingdom and his Houle in prudent
manner, he made many good Ordinances and Lawes which for a memoriall he left behind him,
being at this day inuicibly observed by the *Tartarians*. Then dyed *Cafan*, and his Brother *Car-
banda* succeeded in his Kingdom.

*Carbanda his
Successor.*

20 This *Carbanda* was the Sonne of a Ladie of famous memorie, called *Erockaton*, who was very
devout and religious in Christianitie, while hee liued, and had every day Divine Service celebra-
red before her, keeping a Priest and Chappell of her owne, so that this *Carbanda* was baptized
and named *Nicholas* in his Baptisme, and continued a pious Christian, as long as his Mother
liued. But after his Mothers death, delighting in the societie of *Saracens*, hee forsake the
Christian Religion to become a *Mahometist*. The King of *Armenia* vnderstanding of the death
of *Cafan*, was much troubled therewith, and his Enemies began to liue vp their Crests very high.
For the *Soldan* of *Babylon* the repon fought by all means to damage him and his people,
sending all the yeare almost euery moneth great troups of armed Souldiers, which foraged and
waited the Kingdom of *Armenia*, and did more damage and ipoyne on the plaine Countrey
then they had euer sustayned before in any mans memorie. But the Almighty, and most mercif-
ull God who neuer forsaketh altogether those that put their trust in him, had compassion on
the poore afflicted Christians: for it fell out that in the moneth of Iuly, seuen thousand *Saracens*
of the best Families vnder the *Soldan*, made a roade into the Kingdom of *Armenia*, waisting and
spoyling all as farre as the Citie of *Tharsus*, in which the blessed Apostle *Saint Paul* was borne,
and when they had committed many spoiles in that Prouince, and were vpon their returne, the
King of *Armenia*, haung gathered his people together, encountered and set vpon them neere
the Citie of *Giasca*, where more by Gods goodnesse then their own worth, they were vtterly ouer-
throwne in such sort, that of seuen thousand *Saracens* there escaped not three hundred, but
were either taken or flaine, albeit they thought in their Pride, they could haue ouer-runne the

*The Soldan
maketh roades
into Armenia.*

*The King of
Armenia ouer-
throweth his
Enemies.*

*The Victorie
bringeth peace.*

40 whole Kingdom of *Armenia*, and deuoure all the Christians therat a morill. This was per-
formed on the Lords Day, being the eighteenth of Iuly, after which conflict, the *Saracens* durst
no more enter into the Kingdom of *Armenia*. But the *Soldan* sent to the King of *Armenia* to
make truce with him, which was agreed betwixt them.

45 I *Frier Haydon*, hauing bene present at all the said proceedings, had purposed long be-
fore to haue taken a Regular Habit vpon me, and to haue entred into Religion. But by reason
of many impediments and difficulties in the Affaires of the Kingdom of *Armenia*, I could not
with my honour forsake my friends, and kindred in such extremities. But seeing that Gods
goodnesse had bene so gracious vnto me, as to leaue the Kingdom of *Armenia*, and the *Chri-
stian* people there after my manifold labours and trauels in quiet, and peaceable estate, I then
took the time to performe that Vow which before I had vowed. Therefore hauing taken my
leave of my Lord the King, and of the rest of my kindred and friends, I came in that field where
God gaue the Christians Victory ouer their Enemies, I beganne my Iourney, and coming to
Cyprus in the Monaisterie of *Epiphania*, took a Regular Habit of the Order *Premonstratensis*, to
the end that hauing serued the World as a Souldier in my youth, I might finde the rest of my
life in the Service of God, forsaking the pompe of this World, which was in the yeare of our
Lord 1305. Therefore I render thanks vnto God, that the Kingdom of *Armenia*, is at this
day in a good and peaceable estate, and well reformed by the Moderate King *Linus*, Sonne to
King *Haydon*, who is a Looking-glasse or patterne to all other Kings in all kinde of eminent
vertue.

*He tooketh the
Habit of this
monasterie.
An. Dom. 1305.*

60 Moreover, the Compiler of this Worke affirmeth, that he hath come three manner of wayes
to the knowledge of those things which hee declareth and writeth in this Booke. For from the
beginning of *Chomengus Can*, who was the first Emperour of the *Tartars* vntill *Mango Can*,
who was their fourth Emperour, I continually drew what I gathered out of the Histories of the
Tartarians. But from *Mango Can* to the death of *Halson*, I wrote, that which I receiued from
M 3

*There is a
this Historie.*

Vncle of mine, who writ the fame by the commandment of *Haiton* King of *Armenia*, and was present then at all the forefaid occurrences, and with great diligence did often difcoufe & make rehearfall of them to his Sonnes and Nephewes, that they might remayne the better to Pofterity, and from the beginning of *Abaga Can* to the end of this third part of this Booke, the Author relateth thofe things which hee knew of himfelfe, as hauing bene present at them all, whereby he is enabled to give teftimonie of the truth. Now albeit we haue hitherto treated of the Hiftories and Deeds of the *Tartarians*, there remaineth yet fomething to be faid concerning their Power and Dominion, especially of thofe that are now living, that it may the better be knowne.

Tamor Can.

Lang, or Lang,
see page 19 & 21.Three in'two
Kings of the
Tartars.Chapar,
Hochtai,
Carbanda,
Chapay.Hochtai of who
came the *Tar-
gany Tartars*,
and *Tanulans*.
* Thence doe
Hans of whom
the *Hungarians*
had originall
Celtians.The diuifion of
Asia.The Derbent,
The Citie call-
ed the Iron
Gate.The Birds call-
ed *Syfyrach*.

47. The great Emperor of the *Tartars* which now holdeth the Empire, is called *Tamor Can*, being their fixt Emperor, who keepeth his Refidence in the Kingdome of *Cathay*, in a very great City called *Lang*, which his Father caufed to be built, as is aboue declared, his power is very great. For this Emperor alone is able to doe more then all the *Tartarian* Princes together, and the Nations vnder his government are reputed more noble and rich, and better stored of all neceffaries, becaufe that in the Kingdome of *Cathay*, in which they now live, there is great abundance of riches.

Befides this great Emperor, there are three other great Kings or Princes of the *Tartars*, which rule each of them ouer many Nations, yet are they all fubieft to the Emperor, and acknowledge him their natural and Leige Lord. And the differences which happen betwene them are decided in the Emperours Court, and determined by his Iudgement. The first of thefe 20 Kings is called *Chapar*, another *Hochtai*, and the third *Carbanda*. This *Chapar* hath his Dominion in the Kingdome of *Turfan*, being the neereft to the Emperor. It is thought that he is able to bring into the field foure hundred thoufand Horfemen, and thefe are bold and good Warriors, but not fo well furnished of Horfe and Armour as were expedient. The Emperours fubieft doe many times make warre vpon them, and they on the other fide doe often inuade the people of *Cathay*. The Dominion of this *Chapar* was in ancient time fubieft for the greatest part to a Lord called *Doyay*.

Hochtai keepeth his Seat of Refidence in the Kingdome of *Cumania*, in a Citie called *Afara*, (or *Sara*) and it is faid, that he is able to bring fix hundred thoufand Horfemen to the fight, yet are they not fo much commended in Feats of Armes, as the men of *Cathay* albeit they haue bet- 30 ter Horfes. Thefe make warre fometimes ouer the Subiefts of *Carbanda*, fometimes againft the *Hungarians*, and fometimes amongft themfelves. But *Hochtai* who ruleth at this prefent holdeth his Dominion peaceably and quietly.

Carbanda hath his Dominion in the Kingdome of *Asia* the Great, and maketh his chiefe abode in the Citie of *Tauris*, being able to bring three hundred thoufand Horfemen to the field. But thefe are gathred out of diuers parts being rich and well furnished with neceffaries. *Chapar* and *Hochtai* doe fometimes make warre vpon *Carbanda*, but hee neuer medleth firft with them: neither moueth warres againft any but that he fometimes inuadeth the *Soldan* of *Egypt* againft whom his Predecessors haue fought many Battails. *Chapar* and *Hochtai* would willingly take from *Carbanda* his Dominion, if they were able to effect it.

The reafon whereof is this, *Asia* is diuided into two parts, the one part whereof being called the *Lower* or *Deepe Asia*, is inhabited by the Emperor, and thofe two Kings called *Chapar* and *Hochtai*. The other part being the higher, is called *Asia the Greater*, in which *Carbanda* inhabiteth and hath Dominion. Now there are only three wayes by which men may paffe out of the *Deepe* or *Lower Asia*, vnto the higher Country called *Asia the Greater*. The one is out of the Kingdome of *Turfan*, to the Kingdome of the *Perfians*: another way there is called *Derbent*, which lyeth neere the Sea where *Alexander* built the Citie called the *Iron Gate*, as in the Hiftories of *Cumania* appears; the other way is to goe ouer the Sea, called *Mare maus*, which way lyeth through the Kingdome of *Barca*. By the firft way the fubiefts of *Chapar* cannot paffe to the Territories of *Carbanda*, without great danger and difcufte, becaufe they fhould find no good feeding for their Horfes in many dayes trauiels. The Land being fo dry and barren, that before they could come to any fruitful inhabited Country, their Horfes would be ftarued, or at leaft fo faint and wearied that they might be eafily overcome, and therefore that way they would not take. By the way of *Derbent* the people of *Hochtai* may paffe into the Country of *Carbanda*, only fixe months in the year, which is in the Winter time. But that way *Abaga* hath caufed great Trenches and Fortifications to be made in a place called *Ciba*: and is alwayes kept and especially in the Winter with a Garrifon of armed men to defend the paffage. The people of *Hochtai* haue affayed many times to paffe that way by stealth and fecretly: but they neuer could, neither can by any means doe for in a place called *Mongra*, there are alwayes in the Winter time certaine Birds about the biggnes of Pheafants hauing very faire feathers to behold, and thefe Birds (which are called *Syfyrach*) when any people come into that Plaine, flraight fly away ouer thofe Watchmen and their Trenches, whereby the Soldiers there are fteefed afured of the coming of their Enemies, and preuent the furturizee and by the way of the Sea called *Mare maus*, they neuer attempted, becaufe that way goeth through the Kingdome of 60

Barca, which is fo mightie in people and fo ftrongly fituated, that they are without hope to prevaile there, and by means hereof hath *Carbanda* and his Predecessors bene fecured from the power of fo potent Neighbours. Now we will briefly fay fomething of the manners and fafhions of the *Tartars*.

48. The *Cataians* do fo much differ from other Nations in their fafhions and manner of living, that it were tedious to treat of the manifold diuerfities and ftrange varieties found among them. They acknowledge and confite our Immortal God, and they call vpon his Name yet they neither faft nor pray, nor any wayes affect nor humble themfelves, for feare or reverence of him, nor doe any good workes. The killing of men they hold to be no finne: but if they happen to

10 leave their Bridle in their horfe's mouth when hee fhould feed, they thinke therein they offend God mortally. Fornication and Lecherie is held by them as no finne. They marrie many waiues, and the custom is, that the Sonne muft marrie his Step-mother after the death of his Father: and the Brother is married to his Brothers Wife after his deceafe. In matter of Armes they are very good, and more obedient to their Superiour then other Nations are: and doe eafily know by certaine fignes in Battaille the will of their Commander: whereby the Arme of *Tartarians* is eafily ruled and commanded. Their Lord beftoweth not any tipend on them, but they live on hunting and fuch prey as they can get: and their Lord may take from them when hee lift whatfoeuer they haue.

When the *Tartars* ride vpon any enterprize, they take with them great ftores of Horfe, drinking their Milke, and feeding on their flefh which they reckon very good food. The *Tartars* are very readie and excellent Archers on horfe-backe, but on foot they are but flow, they are dexterous and ingenious in using of Cities and Gallies, and are for the moft part victorious ouer their Enemies, yet will they not forbear to turne their backs in the skirmifh if it be for their advantage. And this advantage they haue in the field that they will fight with the Enemies when they lift themfelves, and yet they cannot be compelled to fight but at their pleasure. Their manner of fight is very dangerous, fo that in one conflikt or skirmifh of the *Tartars* there are moreaine and wounded then in any great Battaille of other Nations, which hapneth by reafon of their Arrowes, which they fhoot ftrongly, and furely out of their Bowes; being indeed fo skillfull in thearte of fhooting, that they commonly pierce all kind of Armour, and if they happen to be routed, yet they flye in troups and bands fo well ordered, that it is very dangerous to follow or purfue them, becaufe they fhoot their Arrowes backwards in their flight, wounding and killing oftentimes both men and horfes that purfue them.

The Arme of the *Tartars* maketh no great thew, becaufe they goe trooping clofe together, fo that an Arme of one thoufand *Tartars* will feare feeme five hundred. The *Tartarians* doe courteoufly entertaine ftrangers, giuing them part of their Viands, and expect the like offers to be made them, for otherwife they will take it by violence. They are much more skillfull in conquering of Countries then in keeping of them. When they are weakie they are humble and gentle; ftout and proud when they are growne the ftronger. They cannot endure lying in other men, yet themfelves are much giuen to lying, vntill it be in two effentiall things. The one being in matter of Armes, in which none dareth affirme, that he did any exploit which was not done by him, or denie any faire Act which hee hath committed; The other is, That whofoeuer hath done any offence, though it deferveth death, hee confeffeth it prefently to his Lord if he be examined thereon. This may fuffice at this time, concerning the manners of the *Tartars*, becaufe it were long to rehearfe all the different customes and kinds of beauiour.

The other Chapters which follow, pertaining rather to aduice fitting thofe Times, and the holy Land affaires, then the Tartarian Hiftorie, I haue omitted. And in the next place will prefent fome Extratts of our Countriman, that famous Traveller Sir Iohn Mandevile, whofe Geographie Ortelius commendeth, but fower be acknowledged his Works fhould with Fables. For my part, I cannot but deplore the loffe of fuch a Treafure, but know not how to recover or repaire it (as Ramifio hath done for Polo) and here haue bene forced to deale with him, as Hiftorians doe with our famous Authour, daring to fay little, becaufe others haue dared fo much and fuch incredible things. For his merit, and for his Nation I haue given a touch of him, the few Latine Extratts; referring him thus to a Mafter Haktius firft Edition of his Voyages, where his Name in Latine is to be feene at large. I fuppofe that fome later Faileur out of the Tales of Ogerus the Dane hath fhuffed this ftoorie, fome of which, for a taile, I haue here left remaining; not that I like pleafure in lies, but that thou muft fee, from what Fontaine I fuppofe this corruption flowed: and in that mifchiefe Age (when humankind learning was inhumely imprifoned, and Diuine Scripture was vulgarly buried, and Printing not at all borne) what Hufkes poore Chriftian Prodigals (prodigall to beleefe fuch lies) were fid with in ftead of Bread; not only in the Church by Legends, but in their priuate Iudges, by Archbifhops, Orlando, Beufies, Guyes, Robin Hoods, Palmerins, and I know not what monftrous chaneeling-births of Hiftorie. Such was this Ogerus: and in great part fuch was Odeticus a Friar and Traveller, in whom perhaps some Friar hath traueiled, with him at leaft in this Author (whoſe age was before him, and therefore could not crie ouer out of him.) Neither is it for nothing (though for worfe then nothing, a lie is both) that Ptolemy is in this ftoorie fo often mentioned and prayed: I fmeck a Friars (Lyars) hand in this bufineffe. Our Man.

Barca in the
Latine Copie
is called *Armen*.The Religion
of the *Cataians*,
or *Tartarians*
of thofe parts
Impious of
Mandaghter.

Polygamie.

Waiues.

Exting of
Heathenifh.Their Hoſpi-
tality.Delight in
lying.Ogerus a Deceit-
ful man, of whom
it is faid that he
conquered Ido-
latry.Odeticus in M.
H. 4. published.

Mandevile travelled from Ierusalem beyond Ierico, from Christendome to remotest Ethnikes, and hath fallen among Theeues: *The Fraily Priest and Leuite not only neglected him, but I am afraid played the Theeues thus to rob and wound him; saying: he two former parts, and mugging in the third, which I have therefore chopped off; not daring in the former but with the Nilus Dogge to taste and away, for feare of a false Crocodile. Here you may finde bys by retailed effica, afficta, affixa, to this Mandevile; who there, it was made a maunde vile full of such pederie, unworthy thy sight.*

CHAP. VI.

Briefe Collections of the Travels and Observations of Sir Iohn Mandevile; written by Master BALE, Cent. 6.

The Obi Mandevile, Knight, borne in the Towne of Saint Albons, was so well giuen to the studie of Learning from his childhood, that he seemed to planta good part of his felicity in the fate: for he supposed that the honor of his birth would nothing avail him, except he could render the same more honorable by his knowledge of good Letters. Having therefore well grounded himselfe in Religion by reading the Scriptures, he applied his studies to the Art of Physick, a Profession worthy a noble vnt: but amongst other things, hee was raiſed with a mightie desire to see the greater parts of the World, as Asia and Africa. Having therefore provided all things necessary for his journey, he departed from his Countrey in the yeere of Christ 1332. and as another Wyſer returned home, after the space of foure and thirtie yeeres, and was then knowne to a very true. In the time of his traualle hee was in Syria, the greater and lesse Armenia, Egypt, both Lybia, Arabia, Syria, Media, Mesopotamia, Persia, Chaldæa, Greece, Ibyrium, Tartarie, and diuers other Kingdomes of the World; and having gotten by this meanes the knowledge of the Languages, let so many and great varieties, and things miraculous, whereof himselfe had beene an eye wit. Iste, should perill in obliuion, hee committed his whole Trauell of three and thirtie yeeres to writing in three diuers Tongues, English, French, and Latine. Being arrived againe in England, and having ſent the wicke-nelly of that Age, hee gave out this Speech: In our time (said hee) it may bee ſpoken more truly then of old, that Vertues is gone, the Church is vnder foot, the Clergie is in error, the Deuill reigneth, and Simonie beareth the sway, &c. Hee dyed at Lege, in the yeere 1372. the 17. day of Nouember, being there buried in the Abbey of the Order of the Guisilmites.

The Tombe and Epitaph of Sir John Mandevile, in the Citie of Lege,
spoken of by Ortelius, in his Booke called Itinerarium Belgie,
in this sort.

Magna & populoſa Leodij ſuburbia, ad collum radices, in quorum iugis multa ſunt, & pulcherrima Monasteria, inter que magnificum illud, ac nobile D. Laurentio dicatum, ac Reginado Episcopo. Eſt in hac quoq; Regione, vel ſuburbij Leodij, Guisilmitum Canobium, in quo Epitaphium hoc Iohannis Mandevile, excepimus.

Epitaphium.

Hic iacet vir nobilis, D. Iohannes Mandevile, aliter dictus ad Burbam, Miles, Dominus de Camph, natus de Anglia, Medicinæ Proſector, deuotiſſimus orator, & bonorum largiſſimus pauperibus erogator, qui totum quæ orbe luſtrato, Leodij domum vitæ ſue cluſit extremum Anno Dom. 1371. Menſis N. uemb. 17. die 17.

Hæc in lapide in quo elata viri armati figura, Leonem calcantis, hæ hæ biforcata, ad caput manus 50 benedicens, & veruacula hæc verba: Voq; quæſtes for mî, pour l'amour des peccés por mî. Citem erat vacuum, in quo olim fuſſi decubans lammam oram, & eu in ea ſtitem celata iſignia. Leonem videlicet argenteum, cui ad pedum lammula rulea in campo cerebula, quem Lombus ambræ deſtenuatus ex auro. Eius nobis oſtendebat, & cultros, episcopos, & calcaria quibus ſum fuſſe aſſectant, in peragrande toto fere terrarum orbe, ut claris reſtatur eius Itinerarium, quid typi etiam excuſum poſſum habetur.

Epitola.

Princeps Excellentiſſimo, præ cunctis mortalibus præcipue venerando, Domino Edwardo, iſe nominis Tertio, diuina prouidentia, Francorum & Anglorum Regi Sereniffimo, Hieronie Domino, Aquitanie Duci, mari ac eius Inſulis Occidentibus dominant, Chriſtianorum Imperio Principi quoque inuicti, milibus Alexia dri Sequaci, ac vniuſeri Offici tremendo, cum reuerentia non quæ decet, cum ad talibus, & tantam reuerentiam minus ſufficienter extiterit, ſed quæ paritas, & poſſibilitas mitentis ac æquiferis ſe extendunt, contenta traduntur.

Cmm

Cum terra Hierosolymitana, terra promissionis filiorum Dei, dignior cunctis mundi terris sit habenda multis ex causis, & præcipue illa quod Deus conditor celi & mundi ipsam tanti dignatus fuit altitudo, ut in eo proprium filium Saluatorem mundi Christum exhiberet generi humano per incarnationem ex intermatâ Virgine, & per eius conſolationem humillimum in eadem, ac per dolorosam mortis sue consummationem ibidem, atq; inde per eius admirandam Reſurrexerunt, ac Aſcenſionem in celum, & poſtremò quia creditur illic in fine ſæculi reuerſum, & omnia iudicaturus: certum eſt, quid ad omnibus qui Chriſtiano nomine à Chriſto dicuntur, ſit tamquam à ſuis proprijs hereditibus diligenda, & pro cuius potestate ac modis honoranda. Verum quia iam noſtris temporibus verius quam olim dici poteſt, Virtus, Eccleſia, Clerus, Demoni, Simonia, Cellat, calcat, errat, regnat, dominatur, & ſeſſe uſſe Dei iudicij, creditur eſſe terra tam incerta, & ſacrificia impium mandis Saracenum, quod non eſt alijs, delire ſibi mentibus audientibus, & reſoluentibus. Ego Iohannes Mandeuil militum & diuiti ſaltem terra nomie, natus & educatus in ſula Sancti Albani, ducebor in Adoleſcentiam tali inſpiratione, ut quoniam non per potentiam, nec per virtutem propriam poſſem præſentem terram ſua hereditibus recuperare, rem tamen per aliquod temporis ſpacium præſentem videre, & ſalutem aliquantulum de propinquo, Unde in Anno ab Incarnatione Domini 1332. impoſui me navigationi Martiliensis maris & viſſi, in hoc temporis, Anno 1335. ſcilicet, per 33. annos in tranſmarinis partibus manſi, peregrinatus ſim, ambulans, & circuitus multis, ac ductus Patrias, Regiones, Prouincias, & Inſulas, Turciam, Armeniam maiorem & minorem, Aegyptum, Lybiam eſſem & aliam, Syriam, Arabiam, Perſiam, Chaldaeam, Aethiopiam partem magnam, Tartariam, Azamoziam, in multis minorum, & medium, ac partem magnam de maioris, & in iſſe, & circuitus iſſas Regiones, multas Inſulas, Ciuitates, Vrbes, Caſtra, Villas, & loca, ubi habitant varie gentes, appetunt, morum, legum acritudinem diuerſorum: Attamen quia ſonno deſiderio in terra promiſſionis eram, ipſam diligenter, per loca veſtigiorum ſilij Dei perſequiri curauit, & diuitius in illa ſeſi. Quæpoſt & in hac prima parte huius operis tam peregrinandi, quam nauigandi, à partibus Angliæ ad ipſam deſcribo, & loca nobiliter ſcilia, quæ tam præſentibus ſunt breuiter commemorare & diligenter, quoniam peregrinus tam in itinere quoniam promiſſione uoluit hoc deſcribere in aliquo deſcripto.

Qui de Hibernia, Anglia, Scotia, Noruegia, aut Gallia iter eripit ad partes Hierosolymitanas poteſt ſaltem viſſi, ad Imperium Grecæ Ciuitatem Conſtantinopolim eligere ſibi modum preſcendi, ſum per Terras, ſue per Grecas. Et ſi peregrinando alibi tranſigere uoluerit, tendat per Coloniam Agrippinam, & ſe per Almaniam in Hungariam ad Monſtrum Ciuitatem, ſicam Regis Hungariæ. Si eſt Rex Hungariæ multum potens iſſis temporibus. Nam tenet & Soluaniam, & magnam partem Regni Comanorum, & Hungariam, & partem Regni Ruſſiæ. Oportet ut peregrinus in finibus Hungariæ tranſeant magnam Danubij flumen, & vadat in Belgradum: Hoc flumen oritur inter montes Almanix, & currens verſus Orientem, recipit in ſe 40. flumina antiquam finiatur in mare. De Belgrade intrat terra Bulgarix, & tranſiit per Pontem petrinum ſinui Matroy, & per terram Pyrcenar, & tunc intrat Græcia, in Ciuitates Steines, Almopæ, & Andrinopolis, & ſe in Conſtantinopolim, ubi communiter eſt ſedes Imperatoris Græciæ. Qui autem uiam eligat per aquas verſus Conſtantinopolim nauigare, accipit ſibi portum, prout uoluerit, propinquo ſue remotius, Italia, Piliſ, Janus, Venetia, Remæ, Neapoli, ubi abſit: ſed, tranſit Tuſciam, Campaniam, Maritim, Corſicam, Sardiniam, ſiquis uoluerit, & ibidem appellatur Mons Gibelle, & præter illos habentur ibi loca Golthan ubi ſunt, ſepem loca quæ, ſemper ignem ſpirantes: ſecundum diuinitatem calorem harum flammarum eſtimate Incola annis ſeritibus fore, vel ſeritibus, ſicem vel humiſum 2. miliaria. Sunt autem in Sicilia aliqua Pomeria in quibus uenerunt ſeritibus, ad iſſa loca ſunt 2. miliaria. Sunt autem in Sicilia aliqua Pomeria in quibus uenerunt ſeritibus, ad iſſa loca ſunt 2. miliaria. Sunt autem in Sicilia aliqua Pomeria in quibus uenerunt ſeritibus, ad iſſa loca ſunt 2. miliaria. Sunt autem in Sicilia aliqua Pomeria in quibus uenerunt ſeritibus, ad iſſa loca ſunt 2. miliaria.

Quinque pedes paſſum faciunt, paſſus quoque centum
Viginti quinque ſtadium, ſi milia deſe
Obſi facis Italia, duplicatum dat tibi leuca.

Conſtantinopolis pulchra eſt Ciuitas, & nobilis, triangularis in forma, firmiterq; murata, cuius dua partes includuntur mari Hellogoni, quæ ſuorum modo appellantur brachium Sancti Georgij, & alia quæ Buke, Troia uetere. Verſus locum ubi hoc brachium exit de mari eſt lata terra plasticæ, in qua antiquitus ſitit Troia Ciuitas de qua apud Poeta multa ſunt leuatur, ſed nunc ualde modica apparuit reliquæ, ac ſuper omnia, præſentioſa (Vrax Chriſti, ſeu maior pars illius, & tunc pars poſtuli, ſeu ſpongia & arundine, & uno clauorum, & dimidia parte Corone ſineæ, cum altera modica ſeruitur in Capella Regis Franciæ, Pariſij. Nam & ego indignus diligenter pluribus vicibus reſpectis partem reſpecti: dabatur quoq; mihi de illa Pariſij unica ſima, quam viſſi, nunc præſeſ conſtru, & eſt iſſa ſima non ignea ſed uelut de uicis marinis rigida, & poſuetina. Eccleſia Conſtantinopolitana in loco ſancto Sanctæ Sophiæ, id eſt, inſubſtitu de ſapientia dedicata dicitur, & nobiliſſima conuerſorum

Parte prima, conueniens capia 33.

Cap. 1. Compendioſius breuis terræ Hierosolymitane.

Itam Mandeuil peregrinatus: per 33. annos continuatus.

Cap. 2. Iter ad Angliam tam per terras quam per aquas per 120. annos continuatus.

Mont Etna.

Æolides Inſula.

Temperies Sicilia Inſula.

Luca Lombardica.

Quid ſit dicit.

Cap. 2. De vrbe Conſtantinopolis, & reliquis ibidem cõtinentis

Eccleſia Sanctæ Sophiæ.

sed & de ordinibus Minorum, & Predicatorum, qui tamen ibi non mendicant, est magna pluralitas ex
diversis Nationibus Mercatorum. Per Regionem nascitur vinum valde bonum, quod appellatur Bi-
gon. Et ad locum extra Civitatem, Abbatia magna est, non de Religione Christiana sed Pagana: & in ea
forissimum, fere bonum magnum videtur, circa velut confusum arboribus & arbutis in cuius emita
medio mons altus simul & latus, habens hortum ubi solum inhabitant bestiola mirabiles, scilicet Simia,
marmota, Lembo, papione, foreti & huiusmodi ad varia & multa genera, & ad numerosum infinitum.
Omnes autem de post refectionem conveniunt Abbatia, qui est valde Monachorum, defertur reliquia
civibum cum magna adulatione, in casti auri lucentibus ad hunc hortum: & ad sanctorum Campana
argentea, quam Episcopus facit ad circumum more descendentes, qui occurrunt de bestiolis duo milia aut plures
qui componunt vestimenta ad circumum more descendentes, illi pauperes non habentur, quod si invenirentur,
siquid de his civibz, ac deno audiret eorum, respicerentur: Cumque non tamquam redarguen-
tes, dicere, cur hoc non daretis eorum, respicerentur: Cumque non tamquam redarguen-
tes, potius tamen diti debentur bestiola. Habet enim eorum perfructus, & Pagani, quos nonnulli
hominum post mortem ingredi corpora arborum, & animalia quodlibet corpora bestiarum in-
nobilitatem & vilium ad laudem videlicet criminis, donec peracta penitentia transcant in Paradisum, idem
que nuntiant, prout dicunt, huiusmodi bestias, sine bestiolis, quod a quibusdam nobilibus funda-
tur in principio hac Abbatia. Adhuc sunt alia mira in hac Civitate, de quibus sciat, quod non omnia
vobis recitabo.

Cap. 33. Insula Pygmeorum non est protensa, sed fortis 12. Civitatum. Quarum una est grandis, & bene mi-
nita, & quam Grand Can facit cum fortibus armaturis curiose servari, contra Regem Mangi.
Hinc procedit per Imperium Grand Can, ad multas Civitates, & Villas morum mirabiliter disor-
form, usque in Regnum lamcham, quod est vnum de 12. Provinciis: maximam, quibus dicitur lamcha-
reum Imperium Tartarorum, Nobiliter Civitas huius Regni seu Provincia dicitur lamcha, abundans
mercimoniis, & dicitur infestis, & multa praefata proprio Regi tributa, quoniam scilicet ibi de Civitate
facit, unde dicitur Mercimonium: in hac sunt tres Ecclesie Monasteriorum: reditus simul af-
cendit ad 12. Regum Oedericus, Pater Caman est decem milibus, Summa tributi anni, quinquagies
ita milia milium Florenorum, in illis namque partibus magna numerorum summa essent per Cam-
man, numerum 10 milium qui & per Flamingo dicitur lile. Ad quoniam lilem ad hac Civitate est
alta dicta Meke, in qua sunt de quodam altissimi genere ligni Naves maxime cum Asia & Tholoni,
ad multas adficio, tanquam Palatium villare fundum.

Inde per idem Regnum ad viam cito dicitur per aquam dulcem, multas per Civitates, & bonas
Villas, venimus: Laucherim, (Odericus appellat Leyum) urbem formam quoniam magnam, sitam
super flumen magnam b Camameran. Hoc flumen transit per medium Cathay, cui aqua inferis
demonum, quando nimis inundat, sicut Padus in Ferraria, Mogus in Heripoli: & illud sequens
interitum principalem Provinciam Imperii Tartarici, dicitur Cathay Cathay: & ista Provincia est mul-
tum diffusa, ac plena Civitatibus: Oppidi bonis, & magnis omnibus, referta mercimoniis, maxi-
me Sericis operibus, & Aromaticis si cibis.

Navigando per dictum flumen versus Orientem, & itinerando per hanc Cathay Provinciam ad
multas dicitur per plures Urbes & Villas, venimus in Civitatem Sugamago, abundantem omnibus
in mercimoniis, autem dicitur quando sericem est hic visissimum quodamque libere habent ibi per
com Florentiam, ad hac Civitate, multis Civitatibus peragratis versus Orientem, vni ad Civitatem
Cambay, qui est antiqua in Provincia Cathay: Hanc postquam Tartari ceperunt, ad dimidium mi-
liare fecerunt vnum Civitatem nomen Caydo, qui habet duodecim portas, & a porta in portum duo sunt
grossa miliaria Lombardica, faciem inter medium flumen Civitatum habet tribus plenum est & civitas
cuiuslibet istarum ambo de, miliaria Lombardica, qui faciunt ibi Teutonica. In hac Civita-
te Cambay regit Imperator Magus Can, Rex Regum terrestrium, & Dominus Dominionum terre-
strium. Atque vltimus in Orientem intravit vltimus vltimus Caydo, ubi conveniunt vni flum
sedem Imperialem Grand Can suus Palatio. Ambus autem vltimus Caydo, est viginis fere leucarum,
duodecim habens portas & a distantes amplius quam stadia 24.

Palatium Imperatoris Grand Can, quod est in Caydo Civitate, continet in circuitu proprii muralis
vltura duca leuca & sunt in ea eule quam plures, in forma nobilis, & in materia nobilioris. Aula ante
sedis, qui est maxima ceterarum, habet intrinsecum pro sui sustentatione 24. arborum columnas factas opere
flore, de auro puro, & omnes parietes ad intra operas pelibus quodam animalium, qui vocantur
Pantherae: haesque sunt coloris, & ita emicantes, ut Sole desuper relucens, vix oculis valeat bu-
manus sufferre splendorem, tantum si agerentur ibi illi approximari non possent ac infestis, unde & ista per-
tinet parietem appreciatur Regi regem auctum laminarum, &c.

Isti autem offit aula, dum in ea residet, aut deambulat Imperator, multis Barones ingressum servant
mentem & ita tamen tangit, quod hoc habent per aurgio: & bene verberantur, qui imperatore pre-
sente, nemo nisi aliquid in quacunque camera, vel habitatione immittitur, donec interrogati infir-
Imperator. Latius autem nobis Balnice affuso ad speciem de mei pedibus centum & longitudo vltura
perit.

Præter, iuxta Palatii ambitum, habetur grandis parci spaciolum, diversis generis arboribus
repletum, fructibus feracibus variis, & nobis immixtis, & in parte pacula, aula super excelsum collem de

Eidem narrat
narrat.

Cap. 33.

Lamcha.

Caman.

Civitas Meke.
Maxime na-
tura, quales ho-
die obstat
China.
a Siue Lante-
rin.
b Vel Care-
moron.
Cathay Calay.

e Engermago.
Vilnaferici.
Vol Cambi-
leck.

Caydo Cui-
tas.

Cap. 34.
De Palatio
Imperatoris
Grand Can.

Mandevillum
suis pedibus
mesuravit
solum Imper-
atoris.

tam mira & pulchra fructura, ut eius nobilitas de facili ad praesens non possit describi. Et vndique, per
collum gryum aqua solissimum profundum, & latum, vltura quod ponit vnicuique ducit ad collem. Atque ex duo-
bus montibus lateribus, flagnum cum diversorum copia piscium, & volucrum indemonium, ut aucuparum,
anatum, cigorum, cicorum, ardarum, & colletorum in magna pluralitate: nec non & per partem,
multa & bellissima bestia, & bestiola quatuor per aqua fenestras passim Dominus pro solatio respicere volu-
crum occupationes, bestiarum conationes, & piscium captiones.

Præter palatium hoc in Caydo, habet Imperator similitudine tria: vnum in civitate Sadus, versus Sep-
tentrionem, qui completens est frigus, ibi moratur in estate. Camalu, qui completens calor, ibi moratur
hyeme. Tertium in civitate longi, in quo & in Caydo, ibi sequi formal sedem, & quod in istis est
aer magis temperatus, quoniam super calidum videtur Nostratibus.

Sciatis quod ego, meo, sodales, pro forma magnificentie huius Imperatoris, tradidimus non solum
duos dies in guerra, contra Regem Mangi prenominationis. Et scimus apud ipsum 15. mensibus, &
certis innumum multo maiorem partem hominum, in mediam partem nobis non fuisse relatum: hominum
(exceptis custodiis bestiarum & volucrum) qui intra palatium certa gerunt ministeria est numerus
decem eum.

Nota. Triaxi moram in Cambalu tribus annis: fratres nostri locum habent in Curia sua specia-
ter, & scilicet diebus statuti dant benedictionem. Oedericus. Et quoniam Imperator habet satis plures,
quoniam decem mille Elephantis edomatis, & velut ultra numerum alias bestias (quoniam quodam tenen-
tibus in acaulis, sicut in modis, vel venia) nec non & aures rapaces, & Accipitres, Falcones, Ostru-
a, lites, quatuor requiritur numerus hominum de istis curia & laborum gerentium, vltura sex eum.

Præterea ingreditur ad Curiam equites cum planis armaturis, quibus cumque, & de pedibus cum pra-
dictis per Curia recipiunt. Sic enim omnes de natione quatuor mundi veniunt ibi, qui petunt de-
Physicis, aut sine his Medicis Christianis ducentes, & totidem & his, quoniam ibi Grand Can
maioris gerit confidendum in Medicis Christianis, quam in sua propria natione medicis.

Hoc ergo primum fecit, quod de Curia Regis accipit necessaria sua ingreditur ultra triginta eum
hominum, prout expensis animalium & volucrum, cum tamen in istis materiis sint homines proprii in
duplato tantum. Nec valet hic Dominus deficiunt vltura peti pecunie, & quod in terra sua non currit moneta
de argento, vel auro, alio metallo, sed tantum de corio vel papyro: hunc enim forma denariorum
signo Imperatoris impressum precatur memoris aut maioris valoris, secundum diversitatem impressio-
nis, qui per visitationem, dicitur vel rapit, cum ad Regis thesaurum deferunt, protinus datur pro
illius mona.

Quater in anno celebrat Imperator solennitates solennes. Primum de die propria Nativitatis. Se-
cundum, de die sua prima profectio: omni in eorum Templo, quod appellatur Molach, ubi & sit in, de
quo dicitur genus circumcissionis. Tertium, in thermis, ita in locis in Templo. Quartum, de die
quod dicitur capere dare respicere, seu fere diabola mira. Huius enim in anno non tenet solennitates, nisi
si quando nuptias sibi aut filios celebrat. Itaque, in istis solennitatibus est populi multitudine afflu-
moro, &c.

40 Celebrat post hoc prandio satis morose, quia nunquam esset vltura semel edendum in die de quo & cum
administratione nunc longum esset scribere, ad nos egliciatos, mira visio, facinosa, audito pulchra, me-
nibus, brachijs, humeris, capibus, & toto corpore, ac ad singulos gestus, correspondentes debito vicio suo.
Et semper hunc horum mirabilium censenda subterfugium multorum. Ex hoc vocaliter per afflu-
sum & Magi, qui sunt incantantibus praesent praesentia multa.

Certum illi huiusmodi esset subterfugium ad quodlibet sua artes, & ingeniosos ad fraudes super om-
nes, quia non mundi partes, unde & ante se dicunt proverbia, se solos videre duobus oculis, & Chri-
stiana, unde ceteros autem homines ceteros, sed multum iniquitas sibi, quoniam ipsi vident solo cetero
terrenis & transiit, & non Christianis duobus, quia cum terrenis videntur spiritualibus & manibus & perfer-
rit enim Naz, id est, homines genera hominis cum illis fidei, ut erant omnes oculos dextros, scilicet
50 et spirituales.

Prius anno Christi 1100. prima Tartaria fuit nimis oppressa fermitate sed Regibus circumiacentium
sibi nationum. Quando autem D'oplacim, maiores illius Tartarici elevarunt de fossis sibi Regem
dictum Gius Can, cum & promissum subterfugium obediunt. Idem enim esset praesent & strenuus
12. viriles habens filios, debellavit cum ipsi & populo suo, & vicit, ac subiecit cunctis in circuitu Regibus
quibus terra indebita diti subiacuerat. Quoniam etiam apparente sibi in visione Angeli. Deo velus milite in
alio equo, & candido armis, & horante se, ut transiret Alpes, per brachium
maris, ad terram Cathay, & ad alia illic plurima regimina transiit, & caput cum sibi filios aliquos
ex illis debellavit, & fugerunt, Deo in omnibus adiuvante poterit. Et quoniam in equo alio alio
apparet, qui etiam alio alio, per aditum mari nomen orationes Deo facere iussit, adeo successore vltura
60 moris per equos alios, & numerorum numerum habens pro ceteris in gratia. Dux, Gius Can
fimal colligatorem, quia a nullo filiorum pariter & equo poterat, sed filios vnumquodque, per se facie
frangebatur: sic filij (nisi) dilectissimi, si per concordiam sui unumque dilectissimi, & vicerat seniori
fratri obediens, confido in Deo iuxta promissionem mihi ab Angelo factam, quod omnem latissimum
N 2

Itinam ac-
currit long.

Cap. 35.
De quatuor
solennitatibus
quas Magus
Can cele-
brat in anno.

Vixit in Cam-
balu tribus
annis.

Sex eum in
mulum.
Quare Cum-
mum viginti.
Decem Cum-
mum pedum.
Medici Chri-
stiani, 200 in
cap. 32.

Vnus Continet
decom milia, ut
in cap. 32.
Moneta de co-
rio vel papyro.

Quatuor filia.

Circumcissio
quardam.

Cap. 36.
De diebus
prestitis in
vno festo, & de
vno comitatu.
Senei in die
comitatu.

Magni insignis.
Insignis sen-
tentia.

1. sam. 11.

Cap. 37.
Qua de causa
dicitur Grand
Can.

Vera ratio ho-
minis
Can.

Gius Can.
Vel Belgium.
Cur alio equi,
& novuarius
vnum in
finito.

a. 1000. 1516.

Quemlibet eorum in suo loco confiteretur Regem, quatenus Christiana religio in illa Orbis superficie semper stabili permaneret, tradidit illi Presbytero Iohanni superiorem Indiam, cum 4000. Infulis, Regibus, & plurimam Imperatorem super reliquis cognovit, ut ex eorum tributa impenderent, & in omnibus obediarent, atq; ex tunc omnes successores Indiarum sunt vocati Presbyter Iohannes, & illi in bodiernum tempus boni manserunt Christiani, & Religionis emulatores, &c.

CHAP. VII.

The Voyage of NICOLO DI CONTI a Venetian, to the Indies, Mangi, Cambalu and Quinsai, with some Observations of these places.

This is taken out of Ramusio's discourse of this voyage.



NICOLO DI CONTI a Venetian, having travelled quite thorow India, after five and twenty yeeres returned home; and because he saw his life he had made denyall of his Faith, he went to the Pope (then Eugenius the Fourth, A. 1444.) being at Florence to obayne absolution; who enquired him in way of penance, & only to make Narration of his Voyage, and whole Pergrimage to his Secretarie Poggius, who wrote it in the Latine tongue. 20 Ramusio fought for it in Venice and other Cities of Italie in vaine, and at last heard that it was translated into Portugall by the care of King Emanuel, A. 1500. a Copy whereof he procured from Lisbon, but so corrupt, that he doubted to publish it, which yet for want of better he did; and we out of him these Observations.

Niccolo di Conti a Venetian being a young man, then at Damasco, and having learned the Arabicke Language, went with his merchandise in a Caravan of six hundred Merchants, with Defarts of Arabia, and thence into Chaldea, till he came to Eufrates. In the wilde Arabs comming to rob them, but saw a great multitude passe by nere their Tents without hurting them, which some of the Merchants said were Dentils which hunted these Defarts, 30 where the Sea ebberth and floweth. After five dayes saying therein, he came to Calcut, and after to Ormuz; thence to Calcut a Port of Persia of great traffick, where he remained to learne the Persian tongue. Afterwards clothed in the habit of the Country (which he used to doe in all his journey) he went with certaine Moores and Persians, having sworn to be faithful to each other, and sayled to Cambalu, and after to Pacamuria and Delu, where flore of Ginger grows.

Thence they went farre into Sea, and came to Bisnagar six miles about, at the foot of a high Mountayne; in which are one hundred thousand men fit for armes; they marry as many wives as they will, which are burned with them when they die. The King is the mightiest King in India, and hath twelve thousand Women, four thousand of which attend him on foot whether he goeth, and are buisied in the service of his Kitchen; four thousand others ride on Horse, or are carried in Litters; two thousand are to burne with him, which is holden a great honor. Pekingia is subject to him, eight dayes journey thence and ten miles in circuit: from whence in twente dayes by Land he came to Pindisetaia (leaving in the way Odachiria, and Cenderghisa, where red Sanders grow) and thence went to Malpur where Saint Thomas is buried in a great and faire Church. The inhabitants are Nestorians, which are Christians dispersed thorow all India, as Jewes amongst vs. And all this Province is called Malabar.

At the end of that Country is Zelam a famous Island, two thousand miles about, where are Rubies, Saphires, Cats-eye stones; and store of good Cinamon; the Tree like a Willow but thicker, the boughs growing more in breadth then height, the leaves like those of the Bay Tree, 30 but greater: the Barke of the boughs is bell, that of the Trunk is not good: the fruit like Bay-berries of which they make good Oile to anoint them. There is a Lake in which is a Cite of three miles circuit, governed by Bramines, which spend their lues in the studies of Philosophie, and are much given to Astrologie.

After that is a great Island called Sumatra, which the Ancients called Taprobana, where live sayed a yeere. There grows the best Pepper, the Tree like to Ivy. In a part of the Island, called Batech, they cate many fesh. Thence he sayled to Ternagari: and thence to the mouth of Gangee, and vp the streame (which is very great) to Cernemou, and to Maarazai; whence crossing over Land he came to Racha, and thence in fouteente dayes to Aza fiftene miles about, where they are much given to spend the Time in drinking and fellowship both Men and 40 Women. There are certaine old women which get their living by telling Bels of gold, silver, brasse, of the bigneffe of Nuts, which they put in mens yards betwixt the skin and fesh, when they are of age to vie Women, and in fhorre time cure the place; and the men much please themselves to heare the found of them as they goe. Here the Copy is defective.

M. 1516.

Mangi is full of Elephants of which the King nourisheth ten thousand: they serve him in the warre, and carrie Castles in which stand eight, ten, or twelve men with Lances, Bowes and Slings. They take them with a tame female Elephant, vied to feed in a place encompassed with a wall with two gates to goe in and out; into which in the coupling season the male enters at one gate, and thence flees out at the other, many men attending with deuces to take him, both gates being shut; and with fasting, and accustoming other tame Elephants to him, tame him in few dayes.

The men of this Country have but one wife, and all both men and women paint or embroider their skinnies with Iron penes, putting indelible tinctures thereunto. They worship Idols, to yet when they rise in the morning, they turne to the East, and with hands iointed, say, God in Trinitie keepe us in his love. This Country produceth Serpents as grosse as a man, fize cubits long, without feet, which they cate for great damies; as they doe also certaine red Ants. There is a beast headed like a Swine, rayled like an Oxe, with a horse in the forehead like an Vnicorne a cubit long, of the colour and stature of an Elephant; with whom leue continually fighteth. The horse is much esteemed against poyson. In the further parts of this Country towards Catay, are white and blacke Kine, some haired and tayed like Horses, some with haire like feathers of which they make Fannes.

Beyond Mangi is the greatest Province in the World, called Catay, the Lord whereof is called the great Can which signifieth Emperour: and the chiefe Citie is called Cambalu, which is foure square and hath eight and twelve miles in circuit. In the midst thereof is a Fortrelle, and in it a Palace for the King; and at every of those foure corners is a Cattle, each foure miles about, in which are Armouries of diuers sorts, and Engines for battery. From the Palace is a way on the wall to all those Castles, that if the people rebell he might betake himselfe thither. Beyond this Citie fiftene dayes journey is Quinsai another great Citie, which within this little while hath bene newe by this King. In thirty miles compasse, and is more peopled then the former. In these two Cities it was told him that the House and Palaces are after the manner of Italie, and the men richer and wiser then in other places.

After he was gone from Aza alongst the River to the Sea in fouteente dayes he arrived at Zaiton, a great Port, where heooke Sea, and in ten dayes came to a great and populous Citie, 30 called Pacamuria, which is of twelve miles compasse where he stayed four monthes. There are a few Vines, which runne vpon Trees, and they make no Wine of them. There grow Abbricocks, white Sanders, and Camphure, &c.

I am loth to returne into India with this Author, whose desells and corruptions have made him so little seruiciable, together with the changed names of places since his time. It is remarkable that he sayth that the Indian Mariners sayled by the Starres Amavake, and not by the compasse; citing certaine menspores and rules in that Starre-observation. Hee also relateth the huge greatvies and terrible beating of their Ships. But of India, whereof all his Relations are, wee have already given you something that is more particular, methodicall, and credible Authors. Yet before we leave him, let us observe what Aeneas Sylvius, or Pope Pius Secundus hath, set out of him. Hee sayth, that hee sayled the Indian Sea a month beyond Ganges, and then came to the River Ratta, which being sayled in five dayes, hee found a Cite called by the same name. And thence after fouteente dayes passing defart Hills hee came into champagne Countries; which having passed in a fortnight with great labour, hee found a River greater then Ganges, called Dua; and having sayled therein a month, came to a famous Cite fiftene miles in circuit, named Dua, where the women are exceedingly libidinous, the men contented with one wife. The Province is called Macin, full of Elephants, ten thousand of which the King keepes for his warres, and is himselfe carried on a white Elephant, wearing a golden Chayne distinguished with 30 gemmes, and hanging to his feet. The men and women rafe themselves, &c. as before but of the Kine hee sayth, that the same Kine have tayles long and hairy to the feet, the haire fustile like Feathers, of much essence, and used on the tops of Lances as Ensignes. These things hath this Nicholas (sayth Silvanus) of Macin, noting without doubt, the Region Serica. For our age places the Eastern S.ythians in Cathay. That of Dua greater then Ganges, and that of ten thousand Elephants nourished by a King not knowne by fame, are hard to be beleaved: but longinquitie cannot easily be confuted.

Either this story is not true, or this Mangi is not China, but Persia, or some other place.

Catal.

Note.

Zaiton. Pacamuria perhaps Pacamuria.

No compasse; which yet in the next age wisthere in vte.

See Sylva 2. Asiae, c. 10.

Macin, where by appears his Macin is about Siam or Pegu, &c.

* And yet, how many things more incredible are now found true?

TO THE READER.

Reader, I here present thee a piece of a Historie, so much as abuts on Tartaria, and China. Althace, I cleared Mahumetan was the Author; whether an exact Historian, every where literally to be understood; or whether in some part he be parabolicall, and presents a Tamerlane like Xenophon 60 Cyrus, (in some things rather what he should have bene, and what the Author could say, then what he was) I undertake not to determine. The Abbat of Mortimer takes for a mist Story, and so doth Knaflo in his Turkish Historie. If it be an Historie partly parabolicall, yet doth the account excell of the Author a verisimilitude every where of actions and places (sufficient to procure our pardon, if not thankes) the verities of a great part being evident in other Stories. It is true that faine things

1516.

ſeems falſe for want of truth in our intelligence, rather than in themſelves. And ſo hath it ſaved with all (the ſubject of this Booke) Tartarian and Chineſe affairs: of which we had as little knowledge as of Tamerlan, further then terrory of Tartarian Armes, and ſome more ſpeciall occaſions and travels have given vs light. Even the Summe riſeth in theſe parts; while it is not day-break with vs, and hath attained almost his Noon-point before we ſee him: and worthy we are ſill to abide in a blacke night of ignorance, if we welcome not what light we can get (if we cannot get what we would) from ſome remote an Eaſt Ocean Tartarian affairs (as it happens in Conqueſts) were changeable, and their New Moone was quickly at the full; diuers changes and changes ſucceeding after Poles dayes to theſe; ſuch wealth whetting the Tartars to get and hold, and no leſſe the Chinois to recover, the China State being quiet ſo long as the Tartar greatly continued, and freed (for the moſt part) with their diſpoſition to ſing, and diſpoſition into diuers Eſtates. As for theſe times of Tamerlan (if it is Story he exact) it is like the Can be held the North parts of China from Quinſay forward, with Cataio; and the King of China the riſt; then Nanquin being the Seat Royall, as ſince the expulſion of the Tartars Paquin. Or perhaps the Quinſay being mentioned, is that which Conti hath in the former Page told vs, was laſtly built by the Can: and not that which Polo ſpeakes of; in Cataio and not in China: which cleareth this doubt of the Can's reſidence and rule in China. To reconcile all doubts is for mee too hard a taſke, becauſe Cataio and China are even ſill beſeyled, and leave their ſurveyors perplexed, bounding the ſearch of the world curious in ſearching their way bounds, how farre they are the ſame or differing; where- in our ſciences will more amuſe and amaze vs (where we will cleare our ſelves as well as we can) when we come to them. I have promiſed Conti, though Tamerlan be a little Elder for his Religious ſake, to and to recreate with a little Relation, before this longer Story.

CHAP. VIII.

Extracts of ALHACEN his Arabike Hiſtorie of TAMERLAN, touching his Martiall Travels, done into French by JEAN DV BEC, Abbas of Mortimer.

§. I.

TAMERLAN'S Birth and Perſon, his Expedition againſt the Muſcovites; his Marriage with the Cans daughter; his overthrowing of CALIX.



Worthy Hiſtories doe attribute, as a great want vnto the happy fortune of Tamerlan, not to haue a Writer in his dayes, which might haue left in writing his Hiſtorie vnto poſteritie. But without any caule did they mean him, inſomuch as his Hiſtorie is very famous amongst the Turkes, and Arabians; his Conqueſts very largely diſcourſed, and many of his worthy and notable ſayings collected, with an infinite number of Noble deeds left vnto the memoriall of poſteritie.

Very true it is, that he had not an Homer, but a great and worthy perſon, learned as well in natural Philoſophie, as in Aſtrologie, who was in the time of this Prince, a companion and familiar of his Conqueſts, named Alhacen, an Arabian by birth, and of Mahomet Religion. This Authour then being fallen into my hands, in my Voyage into the Eaſt Countrey, I cauſed the ſame to be interpreted vnto mee by an Arabian, who did ſpeake Franke (as they terme it) that is to ſay, Italian, and ſome time I ſpent, in aſſociating my ſelfe to with this man, who commended greatly vnto mee the clequence and grauitie of this Authour, wondering at his digreſſions, and entering againe into his matter fo well to the purpoſe. It grieved mee much that I had not the perfection of this Language, to be a helpe vnto the riches of this Hiſtorie, for to deliver it vnto my Nation with ſome grace: but I tooke thereof as much as I could in his Language, which was corrupted, as is the Franke Tongue (for they terme it) which is a kinde of Italian, mingled with Slaue, Greeke, and Spaniſh Tongues very common at Conſtantinople, with the Arabian and Turkiſh Tongues: ſo as I could not gather but only the truth thereof, and not the drifts and grauitie of the Declaration, wherein the Authour had collected it for poſteritie (and as he ſaid) by the commandement of the Prince, who was a lover of learning, and excellent in the knowledge of Aſtrologie and Diuinitie, as the cuſtome of thoſe Nations is to ioyne them ordinarily together, ſtudying vpon the vertue of names, and of the turning of letters, even in 60 their placing, writing them in ſunderneath ſtarges, whereof they make ſentences, by means whereof they wrought miraculouſly in the things of Nature. This is that Zoroaſtrien and Baitres Science, that of Balanus, and ſome others in my opinion, which hath ſucceeded vnto ſo many

Arabians.

CHAP. 8. §. I. Fables of Tamerlan, His Birth, Perſon, diſpoſition: firſt Warre. 141

Arabian Aſtrologians. Now then, this Prince was endued with ſuch knowledge, as made him admired of the people where he commanded, who are for the moſt part great wonderers, inſomuch as thus cauſed him to be accounted a Prince accompanied with the Diuine vertue, conſiſting the iuſtice he vied in all his actions. This hath proceeded euen fo farre that ſome Italiani have written fooliſh things thereof, as of certaine kinds of Tents which he cauſed to be pitched, when he beſieged any Citie; one white, ſignifying peace, it yielding vnto his mercy; another red, ſignifying cruelty to follow; and the third blacke, ſignifying mourning to enſue. But I ſhinde not this in our Author, and I beleue them to be fables.

I will now declare vnto you with my Arabian, who this great Prince Tamerlan was. Hee was then of the blood of the Tartarian Emperours, and his father Og had for his portion the Countrey of Saſbey, whereof hee was Lord. This Countrey lying betweene the North and the Eaſt, is the ancient Countrey of Parthia, vpon the Coaſt of the Zogdians, and the cheefeſt Citie of his Eſtate was Samereand ſituated vnto the Ruer of Jaxartes. Some of our Hiſtoriographers would needs haue him to be the ſonne of a Shephard; but this haue they laid, not knowing at all the cuſtome of their Countrey, where the principall reuenue of the Kings and Nobles conſiſteth in Cattell, deſpising Gold and Siluer, but making great reckoning of ſuch riches, wherein they abound in all forts: this is the occaſion wherefore I call them Shephards, and ſay alſo that this Prince deſcended from them. So his Father Og was Prince of Aſchety, abounding in ſuch kinde of wealth. And being come vnto the age of fifteen yeeres, his father being already old, deliuered vp vnto him the government of his Kingdome, with the commandement ouer all his Men of warre. His father Og being giuen vnto peace, withdrew himſelfe vnto a ſolitary life, for to ſerue God, and end the reſt of his dayes in quiet. Hee gaue vnto his ſonne Tamerlan (which ſignifieth Heavenly grace in their Tongue) two ſufficient perſonages to guide and aſſiſt him in the government of his Eſtate: the one was called Odam, and the other Aly, perſons in great dignitie and credit with his father. Now this Prince was well inſtructed in the Arabian learning, and exerciſed himſelfe much therein, and at ſuch time as they thought him to be either in the Bathes, wherein they are very curious in that Countrey being their cheefeſt delicacies, he was in the contempt of them and ſtude of ſeueral things. This Prince had within him ſuch a ſhrewd ſpirit, being full of ſuch might, that one could hardly ſo dare the light of them without doing at their eyes, and they which talked with him, and did often behold him, became dumbe, inſomuch as hee was abſhayed with a certaine modestie and comelineſſe, to looke vpon him that diſcourſed vnto him. All the reſt of his viſage was courteous and well proportioned: he had but little haire on his chinne; hee did weare his haire long and curled, contrary to the cuſtome of his Countrey, who are ſhaved on their heads, hauing the ſame alwaies couered, but he contrariwiſe was alwaies in a manner bare-headed, and ſaid, his mother came of the race of Samſon, for a mark: whereof ſhee aduiled me to honour long haire. This was the cauſe that made him reſpect of his men of Armes, and the moſt part of them did beleue there was ſome vertue in thoſe haire, or rather ſome ſatall deſtinee, the which many did beleue to be ſo; and verily they were of a dusky colour drawing toward a violet, the which moſt beautiful 40 that any eye could behold. His ſtature was of the middle ſort, ſomewhat narrow in his ſhoulders, he had a faire leg and ſtrong, the ſtrength of his body was ſuch as no body did ſurpaſſe, and often on the feſtiuall dayes he made waile with his ſtrength with the moſt ſtrong: and thus he did with ſuch grace and humanity, that he whom hee overcame had himſelfe therein moſt hapie, although it be a disgrace amongst the Tartarians to be throwne to the ground in wraſting. Now, as he was Martiall, and deſirous of glorie: the firſt warre that hee attempted was againſt the Muſcovites, who came and ſpoyle a Citie which had put it ſelfe into his protection, and had entred alſo into his Countrey, and being retired, proclaimed open warre againſt him, gaue him battell neere to the Ruer Maſcha, although the Muſcovite had a great Arme, which hee had gathered together long before. On the other ſide, the Prince determining to reſiſt him, 50 ſembled all his forces, and thoſe of his allies. Now the Muſcovite had very great forces, and men well trayned vp in the warres, hauing had alwaies warres with his neighbours, the King of Polonia, with whom hee had then friendſhip, and the ayde of ten thouſand very good Horſe. There were alſo with him many Hungarian Gentlemen, led by Vladelas a Hungarian Gentleman, who had brought with him more then eight thouſand Horſe; the opinion was, that hee had in his Arme foureſcore thouſand Horſe, and a hundred thouſand foot-men. Our Prince Tamerlan had in his Arme about fix ſcore thouſand Horſe, and a hundred and fifty thouſand men on foot, but not ſo ſkilfull in points of warre as thoſe of the Muſcovites, for our Eſtate had long enjoyed peace, and our Soldiers were indeed trayned vp in diſcipline of warre, but not in ſtrategicke thereof. The order of Tamerlan was this; that is, hee cauſed all his Armes to be diuided into ſquadrons, each conſiſting of ſixe thouſand Horſe, except his owne, which was of ten thouſand, ſo as he made eighreene ſquadrons, his owne being reckoned which made nineteene. The Avant-guard was conducted by Odam, who led nine ſquadrons, flanked with ſtorie thouſand men on foot, diuided both on the right and left ſides, who ſhould ſhoot an infinite number of Arrowes. The Battell was conducted by Tamerlan, who led ten ſquadrons, his owne being

The off-ſpring of the rocks of Tamerlan.

The flockes of the Tartarian Kings are their flockes, and the Tartar beaſts are then beſt wealth.

This name ſeems deriued from Saſbey, mentioned before in theſe ſtories.

Of whom the Tartars are ſill called Zogdians, Tamerlan's name: ſome make it to ſignifie I am leg.

I am leg by reſon of that accident, falling from his Horſe.

Muſcovite, Tamerlan's ſtudies and learning.

Miſchiefe in his eyes. The like is reported of Auguſtus.

The cuſtome of the Tartarians.

Tamerlan wore long haire, and why hee did ſo.

The deſcription of Tamerlan.

Our Authors ſell vnto was lame, and that hee was therefore to be called.

The firſt warre againſt the Muſcovites.

The name of the Muſcovite. The Arme of Tamerlan.

The order of Tamerlan's Battell.

Good directi-
on from Ta-
merlan.

Prince of *Thanaï*, without whom he could not doe any thing, for that hee led the Aungard. Thus was the Army deuided in two parts; the King of *China* remayning long before he was ad- uertized of all this, and thought he had all the forces both of the *Tartarians* and *Parthians* vpon his Armes, so as this was of no small importance to fauour our Affaires: for *Tamerlan* had especially giuen commandement, that the pallages which are easily gotten, might as diligently be kept, to the end that the King of *China* should not be aduertized of the tumult. Then *Tamerlan* set forward his Aungard vnder the leading of *Odmar*: hee promised vnto himselfe shortly a happie successe in his Affaires, and aduertized the Emperour of all: but it came vnto him when he was sicke. And surely it was high time for *Tamerlan* to march forward, or else all had bene reuolted, so leauing his Footmen, he made great Iournies. Now during the time that he had bin aduertized, and made his shode to confult, which was the space of two moneths: *Calix* hauing presented himselfe with a hundred thousand fighting men before *Cambalu*, a very great Citie, and chiefe of the Prouince of *Cataio*, the Inhabitants thereof came out to meete him; and did also relieue him with all the joy that might be.

Now whilst our Army marched towards *Caindo*, and from thence vnto *Calatia*, whether our Army went easily, looking for the Forces of his Native Countrey of *Zuchetay*, to come and ioyne with him: he did not yett forget to fend forward daily of our Souldiers towards *Cambalu*, so as they suppled all our Forces to be on the necke of them already, which gaue great terror vnto the people. *Calix* perceiving that the people did repent, hee thought best to withdraue himselfe out of *Cambalu*, determining to oppose himselfe against *Tamerlan*, and sent for his power from all places, putting all vpon the euent and hazard of a battell. He drew out of *Cambalu* full fiftie thousand men, as well Burgeeses, as Souldiers which were in Garrison, ha- uing wounde all the Captaynes which the old Emperour had placed there in Garrison, amounting vnto the reuolt of this great Citie. To make it short, hauing assembled all his Forces, he had fourecore thousand Horse, and a hundred thousand Footmen, the which hee had gathered toge- ther from all parts. Our Army then marched with all diligence, in such sort as certayne Scouts which were two thousand Horse, had newes of the Arme of *Calix*, the which came forward directly towards vs, whereof they caused the Emperour to be certified speedily, who sent thi- ther two thousand Horses more, to the end they should keepe the passage of a River called *Browe*, by the which our victuals were conueyed vnto the Arme, and also for to winne alwayes time, the Prince knowing right well that the motions of Cuill Warres bee furious at the beginning, and that it is the best to refill them slowly, drawing them alwayes out at length if it be possible. For the people in the end acknowledging their faults, their meanes and money fyinge them, and oftentimes victuals also. On the contrary side in a Royall Army none of all this doth happen, where all things are fauourable, and the Souldiers well disciplined, obedience and order becom- wifely obserued. Then had the Emperour the guiding of his owne purposes, for he had receiued commandement from the Emperour his Vncle, to hazard therein all for all, deliuering vp into his hands the life of his life and estate, that he might thereby end his dayes in peace, willing him likewise to punish this arrogant fellow and his partakers. By this meane came forces from all parts vnto *Tamerlan*; but on the contrary part, the Enemies Army was then in his chieft force, and began to feele the want of victuals.

Calix was of the age of fortie, he was a Captayne renowned with the great *Chem*, hee was one of the chieft in dignitie and place, and they had alwayes respected him within *Tartaria* as a perion most worthy of the Empire, if the glory of *Tamerlan*, and his reputation had not so far excelled. The Armes began to be viewed the one of the other about eight of the clock in the morning, where there were very many skirmishes before they came vnto the mayne Battayle (according to the fights of chiefe Nations) it was a great Plaine wherein they met at that time, with like advantage on either part; *Odmar* led the Aungard, wherein there was fortie thou- sand Horse, and threecore thousand Foot-men; he made three Squadrons, whereof hee led for- ward one before him that began the Battayle. *Tamerlan* marched in the same order, but his Squadrons were much stronger, the Foot-men both of the Aungard and of the Battayle were on the right and left wings. *Tamerlan* had drawne out fixe thousand *Parthian* Horse, and two thousand *Tartarian* for the Arrier-ward, and had committed the charge thereof vnto a faithfull Seruant of his called *Axalla* (a *Germoe* borne) a man of great iudgement, his vnderstanding being good and quick, and a Captayne in great estimation amongst the Souldiers, although hee worshipped God in another manner then wee did, and was a Christian. And hee had many of them with him, whom hee caused to come from the *Georgians*, and from *Pont Exen*, who fought with great agilitie; this day did hee shew his great fidelitie and courage vnto his Prince. *Calix* on the other side, who was a well spoken man, was encouraging his Souldiers to fauour his fortune, and the libertie of his Nation: he had diuided his trouper into three mayne Battayles only, his Foot-men vpon the right hand, his owne person was in the middest of the mayne Battayle, with many Foot-men which compassed him round about (according as wee vfe to fight.)

Axalla.

Many Chri-
stians.

In the end, valiantly fighting, he fell into *Axallas* hands, which with one voyce hee proclaymed through all his Campe, which ouerthrew the courage of all his Souldiers. He was kept vntill the next day, and was iudged by all the Councill worthy of punishment: whereupon *Tamerlan* caused his head to bee smitten off, the which hee sent to bee preferred vnto the Inhabitants of *Cambalu*: hee caused the like to be done vnto all the chiefe Leaders, not for cruelty, but for ne- cessitie, knowing very well, that the meane to cutt off the Foot of cuill warres, is to punish the Heads of the same, for they be *Hydras* which grow vp too fast.

Calix taken
prisoner by
Axalla.
Calix be-
headed.

§. II.

30 *Cataio*, *Cambalu*; *TAMERLAN'S* expedition into *China*, entering the *Wall*, conquering the *King*, and disposing of the *Countrey*, and returne to *Cataio*.

After this the Arme marched into the Kingdome of *Cataio*, a Countrey rich in graffe, and in all kinds of pastures, abounding with great quantitie of Beasts, and People, which knew not what warre meant. The Prince gaue commandement that these people should not be accounted as Enemies, but his good Subjects, that hee would vie all the Cities well, as *Cargi*, *Sedgi*, *Gouze*, *Tagni*, *Tagera*, *Conga*, which had resulted and were come to sue for pardon at his hand, in humbling themselves before him; the which hee granted unto them, enjoying them only to provide sufficient victuals for his Arme: which was of no small importance for the appealing of others, who had put all their hope in extremity, which is in losing their owne liues to make others doe the like: and especially the Inhabitants of *Cambalu* had taken this resolution: but being informed of the Emperours clemency, changed their opinions. In the meane while our Arme daily approached, and at such time as we came neere it, the more did the feare of all the Citie increas, inasmuch as the Prince was aduertised daily from those which fauoured his file, of all things within the Citie; and he was assured that euery one determined to obey the Conqueror, and to doe whatsoever he commanded. The which be- ing knowne vnto the Prince, he left all his Arme at *Gouze*, and himselfe went directly vnto the Citie of *Cambalu*, where all things were made quiet, by the meanes of thirtie thousand Soul- diers, being the ordinarie Garrison, whom hee caused to enter therein before him, and two houres after entered into the same himselfe, being received with great magnificence, not yielding as yet to pronounce the word of pardon, referring all vnto the Emperour, and to the ordinarie course of Iustice. He stayed for the returne of one of his Fauourites, whom hee had sent vnto the Emperour, to carry him newes of the victorie, and of the death of *Calix*, and that the chiefe of this Faction remayned prisoners with him; also to know what Iustice the Emperour would appoint to bee inflicted on those Citizens, which were the first beginners of the reuolt of this Citie: for the Prince being desirous to be esteemed mercifull, and to win loue within this great Citie, would not execute iustice of himselfe, nor in his owne name, but by the Emperour his Vncle, whom hee did gratifie herein, leauing the authoritie wholly vnto himselfe, and by this meanes hee was not esteemed cruell. Thus the Prince after hee had remayned there eight dayes, departed. He was not many dayes journey from the Citie before hee receiued tydings, how the great *Chem* his Vncle, willed that iustice should be executed on them which were the first Mouers of this reuolt: the which was executed accordingly in the name of the Emperour, and by his speciall ministers; in such sort, that as the people accused the crueltie of the Empe- rour, they commended the mercy of *Tamerlan*. Thus was this warre brought vnto an end, to the great honour and reputation of *Tamerlan*.

The ordinarie
Garrison as
Cambalu of
30000 Soul-
diers.

As soone as our Prince was returned vnto his Army where hee found *Odmar*, who there at- tended his coming, hee was receiued of his Souldiers, and with a loud voyce called by all his Captaynes and Souldiers; *Most great Emperour and most victorious*, as they were accustomed to doe amongst the *Tartarians*. The Prince after hee had long discoursed with his Captaynes both of the beaurie and greatnesse of the Citie of *Cambalu*, hee arrived at his Tent, where after hee had declared vnto *Odmar* in what sort all things had passed at *Cambalu*: hee asked his aduice, whe- ther hee should goe and visit the Emperour his Vncle. *Odmar* well pleased that the Prince de- sired it, and called vnto his remembrance the honour which hee had receiued when hee was at *Quizeai*, and that hee would haue bene very willing to spend the Winter with the Emperre, staying for the Spring for to returne vnto the enterprize of *China*, with a long speech disad- uising him. The Emperour answered him, that hee had neuer knowne his fidelitie and loue, and that the cause of his fidelitie was, for that hee did not find in himselfe abilitie to recompence the same: and that when hee was thought to giue himselfe some ease, then was the time hee was in stead of the delicacies and pleasures of *Quizeai*, make the Delarts of *Cyprius* the resting place from the trou- bles of his new victorie: that it was ended, and his purposes determined: I haue also heard the Prince say, that *Odmar* did not speake vnto him like an earthly but diuine man, and that hee verely beleued that God by his meanes did call him back from some misle- path which would haue light vpon him, to make his glorie increas the more. Now; the rumour was already

Tamerlan wel-
comed vnto
his Arme,
with arch and
strange accla-
mations.

spere

Tamerlan his
Oration unto
his Souldiers
upon his going
towards the
King of China.

spread over all, that the Princes determination was to goe and visit the Emperours his Vncler, the which tickled every man with desire to returne into his Countrey, hoping to minie the sweetness of his native soyle. When as commandement was given for a generall review of the whole Armie, where the Emperour spake unto his Souldiers in this manner: *Wee have long since passed even beyond the Mountaynes the Tartarian name; but wee were driven to our great griefe by the fault of our weapons, of those our unsatisfull Citizens; and at times past with us afflicted mee. It grew me that I cannot as well bridge of the felloe Peoples of a stranger, as I may your own selves making trvall of my first times against the boldesse of the fierce Molocaut, at 10 though for this last could victorie I am further undervnto you, for your greater endeavour, and hazardous, whereof I cannot speake without standing of tears, desiring rather to burie such a viltarie, what glorie and honour sever we have gotten thereby. Neither doe I recomend these things unto you, but for to manifest that I forget not your satisfishness, and the great trouble you have endured with mee. Wee must not therefore be morose, but must turne our weapons against those which thinke that we are greatly troubled, whereas we are victorious. Wee have left our Companions, who have temporized to heare the enen and successe of our affaires, all our munitions bee there: wee must in that place (my Souldiers and friendly Followers) passe over the rest of Winter: our Companions look for vs, The Enemy is secure and ludgeth not for vs at this season of the yeere: for bee perished 20 that your Armie which is there is not sufficient for offence, but onely for defence. You shall receive double pay, the better to furnish you against the invasions of cold: and as wee shall bee clothed with double garments, I hope wee shall bee also appeared with double glorie. Let vs march on merrily, I my self will goe with you, and bee of compassion of your glorie. After hee had thus spoken unto his Souldiers, they all cried, *One God in Heaven, and one Emperour on the Earth*: and bowing their heads all their heads in token of humilitie, they shewed how agreeable they were to obey that which hee commanded.*

The griefe of the
Souldiers upon
the Emperours
Oration.

Thus every one returned into his Tent, where they abode yet eight dayes more. The Prince sent back againe *Zamas* unto *Sachetay* with some five and twentie thousand Horse, and fiftie thousand Foot-men, for the safetie of his estate in those parts. Thus after prayers were said, all the Armie being assembled together in the presence of the Prince (according to the cullome of our Emperours) our Armie began to march forward. Hee forgot not likewise to dispatch one unto the Emperour his Vncler, to give him understanding of all this resolution, the which hee very well liked. The Prince by the same Messenger did beseech him, to lend unto him in the Spring of the yeere some fiftie thousand men to repayre his Armie, and certayne money also for the payment of his men of Warre, which hee granted him. Moreover, the condition of good food of warlike munition, and plenty of victuals for to renew ours: for this importance which the loss of the Lordships of *Pagan* and *Quiss* was unto them, whereby the King of China had greatly strengthened and assured his state, in so much as hee might at 40 the pleasure enen upon the *Tartarians*, and the *Tartarians* could not enterpise against him without great forces, for that hee had caused a wall to be builded hereby from the ordinarie incursions, which was *fortie leagues long*, so as they were debayled from the spaces of the Mountaynes, which continually did greatly enrich them, because they brought much Cattell through the same, wherein the Countrey of China doth greatly abound, by reason it is situated in a temperate ayre, being neither too hot nor cold. This was the cause that made the Emperour his Vncler to desire this warre: whom our Prince, according to his dutie, would to the vttermost of his power gratifie, as also his new Subjects.

A wall builded
by the King of
China towarde
the Tartarians
leagues long,
wherein the
Prince did
cause to be
builded
the space of
the Mountaynes,
which continually
did greatly enrich
them, because they
brought much
Cattell through
the same, wherein
the Countrey of
China doth greatly
abound, by reason
it is situated in a
temperate ayre,
being neither too
hot nor cold.

So wee began to march, and in thirte eight dayes were arrived at *Cyprius*, the Armie having found great difficulties: there had wee newes of *Caliber*, who was very glad to understand how the affaires had passed: hee came to visit the Prince, who shewed unto him a very good countenance, and gaue him particular understanding of his determination, and understood at large of *Caliber*, all that had passed within the Kingdome of China. The next day the Prince mounted on horse-back, and came unto *Pasansin*, where the forces commanded by *Caliber* were then met, and the which had often fought with and tryed the forces of the *Chinois*: but found all the forces which were with *Caliber*, and after he beheld the countenances of these Souldiers throughout all their ranks, hee caused them to mutter, and to receive money, every one crying, 50 *God save the victorious and invincible Emperour*, according to their cullome.

The Prince of *Thanas* (who by comma. had the Armie in *Caliber* absence, going to meet *Tamerlan*) with great diligence had marked the Wall, and the places by the which hee might enter by 60 force, and sent many Spies into the Countrey of China by certayne little wayes that were within the Mountaynes, who advertised him of all. Hee had also gayned through his courtiers a Lord of the same Mountaynes (called the Lord of *Vauchefu*) who ruled a great Countrey, with

whom

whom hee had so well profited, that hee made him desirous of a new Master, and to submit himselfe unto the Emperour, receiving daily great discommodities by the warres which the *Tartarians* and *Chinois* made: so as hee coming to visit the Prince of *Thanas*, hee assured him of his desire to doe the Prince service, and to helpe him in the warre against the *Chinois*, the which the Prince of *Thanas* had wisely concealed from *Caliber*. But as loone as the Prince was arrived, he imparted the same unto him, the which made *Tamerlan* desirous to haue some speech with him, so that as loone as the Prince had received commandement from the Emperour, hee sent unto *Vauchefu* to advertise him of the Princes arrivall, and of the commandement which hee had received: whereof the other was very glad, and having appointed a day, the Prince tooke his journey (without stirring of the Armie) into the campe of the Prince of *Thanas*, which was neere unto the River of *Languenne*, whither hee had caused this forsaide Lord to come, who met him there.

Then the Prince after hee had heaped upon him gifts of faire Horses, rich Furses, and other rare things, hee willed him to venter that which hee had to say unto him. This Lord spake then in this manner: *Know my Lord, that it is but little of time to thinke, that with your Armie you should be able to force the Wall, which the Chinois have built against the new fons of your Subjells: the Defendants haue too much advantage therein. I doubt not of your Souldiers stoutesse, and of their courage, I know you have conquered many Nations with them, and that whatsoeuer you command them, they will doe or doe the same. I know you have great and wise Captaines with you, that 20 your Person is onely of all the World worthy to command them: but all this will bee but in vaine against the Wall of the Chinois, where I assure you there are fiftie thousand men to keepe it, and you cannot stay there so short a time, but there will come thither fiftie thousand more, led by the *Xianxi* who hath such a commandement. The King of China will himselfe march forward also, who will give you battell with two hundred thousand Horse and as many Footmen. After you have fought, I beseech that the fortune and valour of your men may obtayne the victorie, the which will cost you deere: but for to shew unto you how much the reputation and misdeeds of your men hath bound mee unto them, I will shew you a meane by the which you may cause fiftie thousand men to enter into the Kingdome of China, whom I my selfe will conduct; and they shall bee on them which keepe the Wall, so as manner as before as they shall perceive it. In the meane time you shall cause your men to goe unto a place that I will tell you, which will bee very discommodious unto the Chinois, by reason of a Mountaine over against them, which you may cause them to mine: for I assure my selfe, that when they shall perceive your Souldiers to bee passed, they will lose their courage, and you may easily winne the passage for to favour those men of yours which shall bee passed over with mee. And for to shew unto you the affection and fidelitie of that I speak, I will deliver unto your hands an onely Sonne I have, and two little Daughters: with my Wife: I have also one Brother, who I am assured will follow mee to doe your service. The Prince having heard this Lord spake, received great joy thereof, hoping that his affaires should happily succede, and this hee kept very secret, for euen the Prince of *Thanas* knew not the meane that this Lord had, seeing there was onely present the Prince and an Interpreter, and the Prince after hee had thus spoken vnto him, gratifying him with all hee could possibly, this Lord retired himselfe, accompanied with the Prince of *Thanas*, who conducted him backe againe with all the honour that might be desired. So the Emperour returned from thence into his quarter, and the next day after hee had imparted the whole unto *Odmer*, and heard *Caliber* concerning that which hee had learned of the departing of the King of China, and of his preparation, which was great. This enterpise seeming hard unto him, after due reuerence yielded vnto the Prince, hee spake unto him in this manner: *Know my Lord, that I am your Slave for to obey you: but seeing you require mee to give you an account of all that I know of the estate of the Kingdome of China, for that I have remayned these six months upon the borders by your commandement, to hinder them from passing the same, whereby they might hurt your enterprises, I can assure 50 assure unto you, that the King of China, who reigneth at this present, is of great reputation, and hath increased the limits of his Kingdome more then any of his Predecessors. His strength consisteth in this Wall opposed against vs, the which hee hath caused to be made by reason of the ordinarie roades of our Nation. I am of opinion, that there bee betweene fiftie and threethou of the King of China, and his best Souldiers, and I know no good meane to force this Wall without great hazard and much losse of your men. I have understood, that towards the Lake *Hoguen* you may find a more easie entrance into the Kingdome: after every one had declared his opinion, hee said, that hee hoped the great God (the Vniter, of whom hee would maintaine against such Idolaters) and his iust right shoulde know the reasons which doe contradiet his purpose, and the valiant arme of his Souldiers shall avenge our wrongs: whosoever opposeth it selfe against the same; and concealed from his Souldiers that which hee held as assured to execute it, to the end, the honour of a happy conducting might be ascribed unto him onely.**

Now, our Prince having satisfied every one of the Kings and Lords that did accompany him, hee appointed the meeting place for his Armie to bee at a certayne place, where hee meant to charge

The speech of
the Mountaine
Lord unto Ta-
merlan.

Caliber Ori-
on vnto Prince
Tamerlan.

The Lais
Hoguen.

Paginfou

Fifteen thousand men sent into China by a secret passage, under the leading of the Prince of Thanaui and Asalla.

A secret way found into China, by the conduct of the mountaine Lord.

Asalla overthrew the Chinois that kept the will of partition.

Quanton.

The custom of the Chinois in religion.

The Emperor's woman the wail of China.

The mountain Lord rewarded with great government.

A good advice to merit for General.

chose fiftie thousand fighting men, and deliuer them vnto the commandement of the Prince of Thanaui, vnto whom he toynd the Lord *Asalla* a *Geminio* (for that hee knew him to be discrete) for to accompany him, commanding him to give credite vnto him, for his experience and indelible. The day appointed being come, the Lord with his brother came to the Emperor, hauing viewed the place againe, and found it to bee forcible and fit to passe, assuring the Prince once againe of the happy successe of their enterprise, and the Prince beinge assembled with them to conferre together, reioiced in the end, that his person with all the Armie should approach vnto the wall, directly ouer against *Quaginfou*, in which meane space the fiftie thousand men should march forwards vnto the place appointed, and where they were assured to passe, conducted by the *Chinois* Lord, vnder the charge of the Prince of Thanaui and *Asalla*. The Emperor hauing not failed to deliuer vnto them the best soldiers of his Armie, and having set downe the order by them to be obserued, hee willed that the Lord *Asalla* should leade twentie thousand of them, and should march the first, the rest by the Prince of Thanaui, and that euery one should haue one of those Lords to guide them, that by their meanes the enterprise might be more safely directed. So hauing marched ten leagues, they arrived at the passage, the which was won, not finding any man there to resist them: and hauing taken a light repast, they beganne to march forward other ten leagues which yet remained, where the *Chinois* were, who suspected no such thing, hauing only an eye vnto them which marched for to force their wall, assuring themselves to haue the mastery, considering their advantage.

But it fell out much otherwise, for euen at the very same time the *Chinois* did perceiue the Princes Armie to approach vnto their wall, as some did they dicke *Asalla* with twenty thousand men, who advanced forward being followed by the Prince of Thanaui with thirtie thousand souldiers shosen out of the whole Army, who without any communication set vpon the *Chinois*, which came presently vnto them, hauing left a certaine number of their Campe for the guard of the wall: but they were presently won by the footmen led this day by *Odmar*, who passed ouer so as the *Chinois* were cut off betweene our Armies. When *Asalla* began the battaile, hee ouerthrew them in a manner all, the Prince of Thanaui not hazarding himselfe therein: there was great riches gotten this day, the King of *China* his Cousin (whom hee called King) was taken prisoner: There was a great quantity of gold amongst them, as well on their armes as on their horse and furniture: they shewed no great stoutnesse.

The newes hereof being come vnto the King of *China*, who at that present time was at *Quanton*, brought vnto him great astonishment, for that hee iudged it a thing that could not possibly come to passe, you might haue teene euery one filled with fright, teares and cries, bewailing the loss of their friends. The King gathering together souldiers from all parts (as the custom is of these people) called all the Princes and such as had the charge of holy things to come vnto him, and after exhortations vied, hee (as their head) commanded them to offer sacrifice vnto their Gods, of whom the Sunne is the principall commanding in heauen (whom they hold opinion to be the chiefeft cause of their being, accounting it immortal and impassible, mouing it selfe only for the benefit of liuing creatures) this did hee command to bee obserued through out all his Cities; and the second thing was, that euery one able to beare armes should mount on horsebacke, and come vnto the King at *Paginfou*, whither hee doubted that we would go, because it was one of the neerest townes vpon the borders.

I haue forgotten to declare that this Lord who had the charge to conduct fiftie thousand men vnto the frontiers, at such time as they which were there had need thereof, was soone in a readinesse, and came to oppose himselfe against the Princes Armie which entered, and being skillfull in the wayes of the country, troubled much the Armie: for a great number of his men were on horsebacke. The Prince determined to beate downe all the walls, the better to assure his retreating, as also all the fortresses which were there vpon all the passages, all of them hee yielded themselves after his victorie, shewing himselfe very courteous vnto the people of these townes, *Archey*, *Tumely*, *Falaginfou*, *Enly*, *Caboufou*, *Quelly*, *Paly*, *Quatinou*, who came and deliuered vp their keyes vnto him, being neighbours vnto this Lord, and gaue him the government of the frontier province of *Kianzy*, shewing himselfe to be a Prince of his word, and acknowledging the notable seruices the which this Lord had done him. Hee referred the honouring of his brother vntill hee had meanes to doe the same: the Prince had receiued newes, how that the King of *China* assembled his forces & marched forwards, and that hee was there in his owne person, & that hee strengthened also his Cities which are sufficiently fortified, and vpon these doubts hee thought good to haue the aduice of his Captaines, and after sundry opinions, his resolution was, to leaue nothing behind him, and to assault some famous Citie, and take it, by meanes whereof hee may nourish his Armie, and secondarily call the enemy vnto battell. The which the conqueror should alwaies seeke, & the defender the latest he can hazard the same. For that it is a very doubtfull thing to commit themselves vnto a battell, his dutie being rather to delay, vndermining the conqueror by length hand by wearisome, and lights skirmishes, then to fight in open field.

1:

It was concluded, and the aduice of euery one was, to conquer the Countrey by litle and litle, so as their enterprise was to draw directly vnto *Paginfou*, which as it was a great Citie, and one of the chiefeft, so is it also strongly fortified, and well replenished with people.

Then hee dispatched *Odmar* with fourteen thousand Horse, to aduance forward and summon the same, as for to hinder victuals from beinge conveyed thence out of the champaigne Countrey: to the end that the Cartell remayning in the fields, should be a meane to maintaine and nourish his Armie. I had forgotten to tell you, that for the acknowledging of the Lord *Asalla* his seruices, the Prince had made him Captaine generall of all his Foot-men, which was one of the principall honours of the Armie. Hee called the said Lord *Asalla* to march after *Odmar*, with all the Foot-men, which was very nere a hundred and fifty thousand men, well trained vp in the warres, and good expert fighters. Hee marched himselfe immediately after with all his Horsemens, Artilleries, Engines, and other munitions belonging vnto warre, directly vnto *Paginfou*. *Odmar* did ride twentie French leagues this day, so as hee arrived there contrary to their expectation, looking rather for the King then for the Enemy, and hauing taken much Cartell, wherewith the Countrey greatly aboundeth, he pitched his Tents, leaving the Citie betweene him vs, and layed for his footmen, who marched forwards in the meane space, sending continually vnto the warre, for to wearie the Enemy. This endured three or foure dayes, vntill our footmen led by this braue Christian *Geminio*, shewed themselves in the Playne of *Paginfou*. Then the Citie was summoned to yeeld obedience vnto the Emperor, or else they should receiue the Law of the Conquerour. They made answere, that they were determined to lye and die in the seruice of their Prince.

Now you must vnderstand that it was fortie yeeres, or thereabouts, since the Father of the King which reigneth at this present ouer the *Chinois*, had conquered it from the Empire of the *Tartarians*, and hauing driuen out all the Inhabitants, had planted therein new Colonies, so thorowly, that there were but few of the first remembrance, but only they of the flat Countrey, and small walled Townes, who came from all parts and brought their Keyes, most willingly submitting themselves vnto the obedience of the Prince: so as there was great abundance of victuals within our Armie: and if wee had beene within our owne Countrey, there could not haue come greater force: a thing which made our Prince hope for a happy successe, there being no other difficultie which for the most part can ouerthrow a great Armie as ours was, and withdraw them from their enterprise. And thus the Citie of *Paginfou* is besieged, and our footmen camped round about within an Arrowes shot of the walls. They within the Citie did vie great endeavour for their defence, and our Prince omitted nothing for their offence.

Asalla hauing viewed a great and strong Suburbe, which was in length almost halfe a league, supposed that those of the Citie kept no watch there: that this must needs be, for that they would not make him obstinate; hee had a determination to winne it in the night, and hauing imparted it vnto the Prince, vpon the first watch all his men were ready, all of them hauing made provision of Ladders, and of such things as are necessary for winning thereof with hand-blows, and hauing assaulted it on sundry parts, after the fight had continued two houres, *Asalla* remayned the Conquerour, and cut in pieces eight thousand men at the least which were within the same: the spoyle was great, there were many of *Asalla* his men layne of one side, which was that by the which they doubted to be assaulted. But on the other side, by the which it was taken, there was scarce any one layne. The taking of this Suburbe did greatly alonish those of the Citie, who had marked the lustinesse of our men, and beganne to enter into doubt that the situation of the Citie was of hard access, being seated vpon a Playne, the which was looked it on front vpon the North side, where was a Valley by the which they passed, and there did runne a Riuer: on this side the Suburbe situated which had been taken, so as the meanes to succour the Citie was stopped, our Souldiers keeping the passages of these Mountaines, the which were in the old time the borders of the Kingdom: for *Paginfou* was once gouerned by the *Tartarians*, which kept it for a defence against the *Chinois*, but had left the same, and these Mountaines were the limits of *China* against the aforesaid *Tartarians*, who gouerned *Paginfou* at that time, so as these Mountaines were of hard access, and there remayned no other way but on the side of the Suburbe, the which a Riuer compasseth about, running all along the side of a bordering Mountaine, vpon the which were cauled many bridges to be built, for to haue thready a way for to succour our Souldiers, which kept the passages of the Mountaines on the enemies side.

In this meane time the King of *China*es Armie approached which was very great, as they brought vs word daily, the Prince determining to goe in person and meet with the Enemy, accompanied with his principall Hor-men, and to leaue the greatest part of his Foot-men at the defence where he had a great desire, omitting nothing that might wearie the besieged, who defended themselves courageously. So the Prince beganne to harry, causing his Engines to approach; as Rammes, and other munitions: in somuch as the Citie was assaulted on two sides ve-

O 3

The siege of Paginfou.

17

ry courageously. In the end through the valour of *Asalla*, who gave an assault with twenty thousand of his best Souldiers, he wonne the wall, and lodged there, the Prince having so commanded him to doe, to stop the heat of the Souldiers from going any further. Now the Princes purpose was to compound for the Citie, and not to force it, for two reasons. The first was, for that he feared, the Citie being great and rich, that when the Souldiers should sacke it, the Enemy who was but thirty leagues from thence, should come upon them, and by this meanes his Armie should be found in disorder, also rich Souldiers neuer serve well: The other was, for that hee would draw out of that Citie which was rich and wealthy, those commodities which were necessary for the sure accomplishing of his enterprise, seeing it was necessary to have such a Citie for to make a Store-house of necessary things for the Armie. Thus although the wall was won, the Enemies wanted to defend themselves valiantly, looking for yelding according to the newes they had received, that the Kings Armie marched forward. Whilest these things were in doing, one of our Engines shooting a bullet, flew the Gouverneur, whereupon they did refuse for to yeld themselves unto the Princes mercy, saving their lives, and there came out of the Citie eighteen thousand Souldiers, the Inhabitants remaying in a manner all: there were therein thirty thousand Souldiers at the beginning: the siege continued two months. The honour of taking the Citie and the happy successe therein was attributed unto *Asalla*, to whom was given the government of the Citie with the Countrey already conquered. But hee beseeched the Prince that it would please him to bestow it upon some other, and for himselfe hee referred the hope of his Master, wherein hee should have part. This answer did greatly content the Prince, for hee greatly desired the service of *Asalla*. Upon his refusal this charge was bestowed upon the Prince of *Thomas*, with the Title of Vice-roy. Now, as I have already told you, our Prince after hee had given such order as was necessary, and advertised his friends in all parts, and aboute all the Emperour, hee marched forward, having contented his Souldiers, and made a generall muster of his Armie, as well of the horse as footmen, the which hee found to be diminished of ten thousand men onely. Now, our Prince after hee had solemnly called upon the Immortall, Invincible, and Incomprehensible God, and spent one whole day in prayer, wee entered to goe on forward, and to goe directly unto the Enemy, who was at *Simeles*, with all his owne forces, and of all his Allies. As soone as hee received newes that our Armie was passed over the River of *Cheliff*, the King of *China* marched directly unto vs with great magnificence: there was nothing to be seene but gold and precious stones in his Armie: hee himselfe was commonly in a Chariot, wherein there was such a quantitie of gold and rich stones, that every part was full of Diamonds, Rubies, and Pearles.

The King of *China* was of the age of three and thirty yeeres, who for the most part had beene brought up in pleasures, and not in military exercises, nor vnder the bloudie ensigne of *Mary* laden with Iron, boytous and furious, not with gold, precious stones, and with such kind of riches: so as he was very insolent in threatnings, brauadoes, and in defying unto the battaile. Hee often said that we had surprised him, and had not warned him to prepare himselfe, and that we had stricken him without speaking any word: for this is the custome of the people in those parts, to doe in this manner. Hee had two or three Kings also with him, his Neighbours and Allies, who marched with the same preparation. The rumour of these riches gave great courage to the Souldiers, for they were courteous of ill payne, as is that gotten by a battaile. So both our Armies were forward each to approach the other, and there was a Citie yeelded unto the Prince called *Tiancheouy*, the which helped our Armie greatly. The next day, to the end we might give occasion unto the Enemy for to approach neerer, we went to summon, and at the same time to take possession of the Citie of *Pamibin*, the which in advancing forward we left a little behinde vs. The King of *China* had put many men therein, and it was a Citie sufficiently well fortified: from *Tiancheouy* to *Paguinfu* there were ten leagues. Hee advanced his Armie within a league of the Citie *Tiancheouy*, about noone the next day they had more certaine advertisement of the Enemies coming. The Prince commanded his Armie to take the place for the battaile, which hee had chosen in his iudgement with most advantage, and having let downe vnto *Odmar* the order hee would have to be observed, hee desired to see the coming of this Armie: so finding before him five or six thousand Horse as Scouts, hee advanced forward, and *Calibes* with him. After hee had seene this great confused Armie which continually came forward, hee commanded *Calibes* to retire himselfe as soone as they drew neere unto him, and bring vnto him this great cloud, the which hee hoped soone to disperse. So the Prince returned backe vnto his men for to assure them of the battaile: hee caused all his footmen to be placed all along by a great Mountayne, so as they had but one head for to doubt. And hee planted great force of Artillery for the guard of his footmen. I am of opinion, that the Prince had about six score thousand footmen, whereof many were armed after the *Christian* manner, and all they were commanded by sundrie Captaines; but all obeyed *Asalla*, who commanded them as Generall.

Our Horse-men were in battaile array in a great leuell Playne, having the Footmen on the left

It was concluded, and the aduice of every one was, to conquer the Countrey by little and little, so as their enterprise was to draw directly vnto *Paguinfu*, which as it was a great Citie, and one of the chiefest, so it was also strongly fortified, and well replenished with people.

Then hee dispatched *Odmar* with fourteen thousand Horse, to advance forward and summon the time, as for to hinder victuals from being conveyed therto out of the champaign Countrey: to the end that the Cattell remaying in the fields, should be a meane to maintaine and nourish his Armie. I had forgotten to tell you, that for the acknowledging of the Lord *Asalla* made his seruices, the Prince had made him Captaine generall of all his Foot-men, which was one of the principall honours of the Armie. Hee caused the said Lord *Asalla* to march after *Odmar*, with all the Foot-men, which was very neere a hundred and fifty thousand men, well trayned up in the warres, and good expert fighters. Hee marched himselfe immediately after with all his Horsemen, Artilleries, Engines, and other munitions belonging vnto warre, directly vnto *Paguinfu*. *Odmar* did ride twentie French leagues this day, so as hee arrived there contrary to their expectation, looking rather for the King then for the Enemy, and having taken much Cattell, wherewith the Countrey greatly abounded, he pitched his Tents, leaving the Citie betwixt him and vs, and layed for his footmen, who marched forwards in the meane space, finding continually vnto the warre, for to wearie the Enemy. This endured three or four dayes, vntill our footmen led by this braue Christian *Gennois*, shewed themselves in the Playne of *Paguinfu*. Then the Citie was summoned to yeld obedience unto the Emperour, or else they should receive the Law of the Conquerour. They made answer, that they were determined to lue and die in the seruice of their Prince.

Now you must vnderstand that it was forty yeeres, or thereabouts, since the Father of the King which tugheth at this present ouer the *Chinois*, had conquered it from the Empire of the *Tartarians*, and having driuen out all the Inhabitants, they had planted therein new Colonies, so thorowly, that there were but few of the first remembrance, but only they of the flat Countrey, and small walled Townes, who came from all parts and brought their Keyes, most willingly submitting themselves vnto the obedience of the Prince so as there was great abundance of vsuals within our Armes: and if wee had bene within our owne Countrey, there could not haue come greater store; a thing which made our Prince hope for a happy successe, there being no other difficulty which for the most part can overthrow a great Armie as ours was, and withdraw them from their enterprise. And thus the Citie of *Paguinfu* is besieged, and our footmen camped round about within an Arrowes shot of the walls. They within the Citie did vie great endeavour for their defence, and our Prince omitted nothing for their offence.

Asalla having viewed a great and strong Suburbe, which was in length almost halfe a league, supposed that those of the Citie kept no watch there: that this must needs bee, for that they would not make him obstinate; hee had a detrimention to winne it in the night, and having imparted it vnto the Prince, vpon the first watch all his men were ready, all of them having made provision of Ladders, and of such things as are necessary for winning thereof with hand-blows, and having assaulted it on sundry parts, after the fight had continued two houres, *Asalla* remayned the Conquerour, and cut in pieces eight thousand men at the least which were within the Citie: the spoyle was great, there were many of *Asalla* his men layne of one side, which was that by the which they doubted to be assailed. But on the other side, by the which it was taken, there was scarce any one layne. The taking of this Suburbe did greatly almight those of the Citie, who had marked the lustinellie of our men, and beganne to enter into doubt of their safety, which vnto this day they accounted as most assured. Now you must vnderstand that the situation of the Citie was of hard access, being seated vnto a Playne, the which was enuironed round about with Mountaines, one of them onely approaching the Citie, which overlooked it on front vpon the North side, where was a Valley by the which they passed, and there did runne a River: on this side was the Suburbe situated which had been taken, so as the meane to liuccour the Citie was stopp'd, our Souldiers keeping the passages of these Mountaines, the which were in the old time the borders of the Kingdome: for *Paguinfu* was once gouerned by the *Tartarians*, which kept it for a defence against the *Chinois*, but had lost the same, and these Mountaines were the limits of *China* against the aforesaid *Tartarians*, who gouerned *Paguinfu* at that time, so as these Mountaines were of hard access, and there remayned no other way but on the side of the Suburbe, the which a River compasseth about, running all along the side of a bordering Mountaine, vpon the which were caused many bridges to be built, for to have thereby a way for to succour our Souldiers, which kept the passages of the Mountaines on the enemies side.

In this meane time the King of *Chinnes* Armie approached which was very great, as they brought vs word daily, the Prince determining to goe in person and meet with the Enemy, accompanied with his principall Horse-men, and to leave the greatest part of his Foot-men at the siege, whereunto hee had a great desire, omitting nothing that might wearie the besieged, who defended themselves courageously. So the Prince beganne to batter, causing his Engines to approach; as Rammes, and other munitions: inso much as the Citie was assaulted on two sides ve-

The Citie of Paguinfu yeelded vnto Tamerlan vpon the death of the Gouverneur, *Asalla* choise.

Tamerlan his kind of gold-nuffe.

The King of China his magnificence.

The custome of the *Chinois*.

Tiancheouy.

Pamibin.

Tiancheouy.

The order of the Princes battaile against the King of *China*.

Note these changes of face betwixt the *Tartars* and *Chinois*.

A great Suburbe wonne by *Asalla* in the night.

The situation of the Citie of *Paguinfu*.

The siege of *Paguinfu*.

The Cite of
Paguinu yeel-
ded vnto Ta-
merlan vpon
the death of
their Gouer-
nour.
Acalla's choice.

Tamerlan his
kind of godli-
nesse.

The King of
China his mag-
nificence.

The custome
of the Chinese.

Tamucheng.

Pamiba.

Tamucheng.

The order of
the Princes
battailie a-
gainst the
King of China.

ry courageously. In the end through the valour of *Acalla*, who gaue an assault with twenty thousand of his best Souldiers, he wonne the wall, and lodged there, the Prince hauing to com-
pelle him to doe, to stop the heat of the Souldiers from going any further. Now the Princes pub-
licly feared, the Cite being great and rich, that when the Souldiers should take it, the Enemy
should be found in disorder, also rich Souldiers neuer serue well: by this means his Armie
would draw out of that Cite which was rich and wealthy, those commodities which were ne-
cessary for the full accomplishing of his enterprize, seeing it was necessary to haue such a Cite
for to make a Store-house of necessary things for the Armie. Thus although the wall was won, yet
the Enemies wanted not courage yet to defend themselves valiantly, looking for ayde according
to the newes they had recieued, that the Kings Armie marched forward. Whilest these things
were in doing, one of our Engines shooting a bullet, slue the Gouernour, whereupon they did
refuse for to yeeld themselves vnto the Princes mercy, faining their liues, and the Souldiers en-
cying their horse and weapons. The conditions were agreed vpon, and there came out of the
Cite eighteen thousand Souldiers, the Inhabitants remaining in a manner all: there were
therein thirtie thousand Souldiers at the beginning: the siege continued two months. The
honour of taking the Cite and the happy successe therein was attributed vnto *Acalla*, to whom
was giuen the government of the Cite with the Countrey already conquered. But hee be-
seged the Prince that it would please him to bestow it vpon some other, and for himselfe hee re-
ferued the hope of his Maister, wherein hee should haue part. This answer did greatly content
the Prince, for hee greatly desired the seruice of *Acalla*. Vpon his refusal this charge was be-
stowed vpon the Prince of *Tamiba*, with the Title of Vice-roy. Now, as I have already told
you, our Prince after hee had giuen such order as was necessary, and aduertised his friends in all
parts, and aboute all the Emperour, he marched forward, hauing contented his Souldiers, and
made a general muster of his Armie, as well of the horse as footmen, the which hee found to
be diminished of ten thousand men onely. Now, our Prince after hee had solemnely called vpon
the Immortall, Inuincible, and Incomprehensible God, and spent one whole day in prayer, we
enterprised to goe on forward, and to goe directly vnto the Enemy, who was at *Sinchen*, with
all his owne forces, and of all his Allies. As soone as hee receiued newes that our Armie was pa-
ssed ouer the Riuier of *Chulisy*, the King of China marched directly vnto vs with great mag-
nificence: there was nothing to bee seene but gold and precious stones in his Armie: hee himselfe
was commonly in a Chariot, wherein there was such a quantitie of gold and rich stones, that
every part was full of Diamonds, Rubies, and Pearles.

The King of China was of the age of three and thirtie yeeres, who for the most part had bene
brought vp in pleasures, and not in militarie exercises, nor vnder the bloody enigne of *Mars*,
laden with Iron, boylerous and furious, not with gold, precious stones, and with such kinde
of riches: so as he was very insolent in threatnings, brauadoes, and in deying vnto the battailie:
He often said that we had surprised him, and had not warned him to prepare himselfe, and that
we had taken him without speaking any word: for this is the custome of the people in those
parts, to doe in this manner. Hee had two or three Kings also with him, his Neighbour and
Allies, who marched with the same preparation. The rumour of their riches gaue great courage
to the Souldiers, for they were curious of lust gayne, and is that gotten by a battailie. So both
our Armies went forward each to approach the other, and there was a Cite yielded vnto the
Prince called *Tamucheng*, the which helped our Armie greatly. The next day, to the end we
might haue occasion vnto the Enemy for to approach neerer, we went to sunnnon, and at the same
time to take possession of the Cite of *Pamiba*, the which in aduancing forward was left a little
behinde vs. The King of China had put many men thereto, and it was a Cite sufficiently well
fortified: from *Tamucheng* to *Paguinu* there were ten leagues. He aduanced his Armie within
a league of the Cite *Tamucheng*, about noone the next day they had more certaine aduertise-
ment of the Enemies coming. The Prince commanded his Armie to take the place for the
battailie, which hee had chosen in his iudgement with most aduantage, and hauing set downe vnto
our *Odmar* the order hee would haue to be observed, he desired to see the coming of this Armie:
so sending before him five or six thousand horse as Scouts, hee aduanced forward, and *Calbes*
with him. After hee had seene this great confused Armie which continually came forward, hee
commanded *Calbes* to retire himselfe as soone as they drew neere vnto him, and bring vnto
him this great cloud, the which hee hoped soone to disperle. So the Prince returned backe vnto
his men for to assure them of the battailie: hee caused all his footmen to be placed all along
by a great Mountayne, so as they had but one head for to doubt. And hee planted great force
of Artillerie for the guard of his footmen. I am of opinion, that the Prince had about six
score thousand footmen, whereof many were armed after the Christian manner, and all
they were commanded by iudric Captaines; but all obeyed *Acalla*, who commanded them
as General.

Our Horse-men were in battailie array in a great Iuell Playne, hauing the Footmen on the
left

left hand, and on the right was the coming of the Enemy, so as vpon the least disfauour that
might happen, hee would retire to bee assailed by his footmen. Wee had foure score thousand
horse: *Calbes* with the *Scythians* were in the Avantguard, and had the commandement of thirtie
thousand horse, who should receiue him at such time as hee did draw on the Enemy, as he was
commanded. It was diuided into three troupes, each one consisting of ten thousand. *Odmar*
had also thirtie thousand horse who should assile him. The Prince remayned in the Arrier-ward
at the one of the wings of his footmen, which held one of his principall forces: his purpose
was to suffer the three score and six thousand horse to maintaine the fight against the *Barbarians*,
being led by two good Captaines, and if any of them remayned, the Emperour hoped after of
them to haue a good marker, by causing his footmen to march forward, and himselfe with whom
there abode twentie thousand of the best horse, which were sufficient without hazarding his
Person for to giue a new battailie, if so be that any disfauour should happen vnto them: for hee
had vnderstood that this was the custome of the Kings of China, to enclose themselves within
the middlest of their Chariots with their footmen, and not to hazard themselves but vpon the
extremities. So the Enemy sayled nothing at all to march directly vnto *Calbes*, and all the Ar-
mie marched after following of him and letting vpon him, and hee euen as the *Scythians* are al-
wayes accustomed to doe, with his six thousand horse in retiring gaue many charges, killing
some of them, and they likewise killing some of his men. It was a beautiful sight to see this
great Armie march: for it seemed to bee worse as great as ours, therein being an infinite number
of armed Chariots, wherein hee put his principall trust against the furie of our Souldiers: so ma-
ny gildings of gold and silver as well in the trappings of their Horses, as on their Armour, that
it glittered, and was of vs all much admired. The Prince who with a troupe of horse did see the
Armie march after *Calbes*, commended greatly the manner of causing their men out of the
ranks, for to compell this troupe vnto fight, and did see this Armie come in good order, and he
tried with his eye to note the place where the Kings Person was, hauing neere him the *Chinois*.
Lord to instruct him, who knew well their manner of fighting. Now, they had neither Avant-
guard nor battailie, but onely an Arrier-ward commanded by the King, and inclosed (as I haue
said) with his Chariots: the which being thrust vnto him by this Lord, the Prince turned
himselfe vnto vs, and in our language said: *Ten must we this day disperse this cloud here so gilded.*

Now, hauing seene the Enemy so secretly aduanced, and judging that hee had seene them
march a good league, he thought it not convenient to suffer them for to take breath, nor for to
put themselves againe into the order: hee sent vnto *Calbes* for to will him to set forward the
fight, and that if those whom hee had led with him should be weary, they should come vnto him;
but it was not in *Calbes* power to haue this commandement obserued. For as soone as they
heard this word of fighting vntoed, they required the first charge, with a young Lord, who
commanded ouer them, called *Zinababanes*, who made appareare vnto the *Chinois* to what end
their flight was, charging very busily vpon the foremost of the Enemies, the which was an oc-
casion to begin the first fight. And I assure you, there could not be seene a more furious thing,
nor any for to fight with more desire to manifest the valour of his Nation, and for to procure honour
vnto his Prince. Now, this endured a long hour before the *Chinois* had ouerthrowne *Calbes*.
The Prince did see all patiently, saying alwayes, that the great multitude how confused
it were, would carry it away from the order and valour of his Souldiers: you could not yet per-
ceiue any alteration in the Princes countenance, Aduerfite and Prosperitie were to indifferent
vnto him. His thirtie thousand horse were all *Scythians*, who obserue not the same order the
Parthians doe. Now, before the Prince retired with his men, hee did see the first charge giuen,
Calbes being wounded, retired himselfe neere vnto the Prince, hauing with him two thousand
Prince, who commanded that they should cure *Calbes*, viewing the place of his wound, hee
caused him to bee conducted behind his footmen, and the other which were hurt with him. Now,
Now, *Calbes* was not able to pierce through this Armie, being beaten back; but *Odmar* which
almost all the *Parthian* horse-men, did handle them more roughly, for hee ranne cleane thorow
them, and returned by one of the right wings of the Armie, where hee fought most valiantly,
and hauing beaten them backe euen within the Kings Chariots, hee thought that he should not doe
wilely to goe about to breake such forces.

The King of China coming forward, and the horse-men which had bene broken by *Od-
mar*, ioyning themselves together for his ayde, *Odmar* onely remayning in the battailie sent vnto
the Prince for the footmen, and for to let forward the Artillerie, and that hee should assure
himselfe of the victorie. The Prince, who had already set forward, kept aloofe off, and sent
vnto him fiftie thousand footmen, with a part of the Artillerie, giuing charge thereof vnto
Acalla, who forthwith set forward, hauing commandement to let vpon the Chariots, and to make
an entrance: hee set forward the Artillerie before him, the which did greatly astonish the
enemies: for the Gouernours of the horses, belonging to the Kings Chariots, could not hold
them; it made also a great poyle. As soone as hee perceived this disorder, hee set forward, and

The beautie
and richnesse
of the King of
China's Armie.

Tamerlan his
speech of the
King of China.

The battailie
betweene the
King of China
and Tamerlan.

The King of
China wounded
and taken Pri-
soner.
Tamerlan vi-
sibly over the
King of China.

came to hand-blows, there were a hundred and fiftie thousand men, as yet about the Kings person. *Asalla* full of courage fought so valiantly, that they never beheld any doe more bravely. *Odmar* during this fight charged againe the Horsemen, who were retired vnto the Kings aide, whom he put to flight. Then the Prince advanced forward with the rest of his Foot-men, gave aide vnto *Asalla*, and came euen vnto the person of the King of *China*, who was as yet had fought two or three houres, the Horse-men assisting the Foot-men, and they principally whom the Prince had retired, the King remayned wounded within the power of the Prince, the battaile being wonne, and all the Enemies Camde wounded within the power of the Prince, and it was euen night, which faued the lues of many of the Enemies. There were slaine two Kings the Allies of the King of *China*, and one taken Prisoner: there were inestimable riches gotten, as well in golden Vessels precious Stones, and the most rich and faire Charoits that could be fene.

The Prince would not see the captiued King vntill the next day, being mounted on Horse-backe, and passing through the Campe of the Battayle for to stay the slaughter, and to ioyne together againe his men, to the end the accustomed watch might be kept, whereof hee gave the charge vnto *Asalla*; to whom hee gave likewise commandment to keepe the King of *China* within the middle of his Souldiers, haue him already dressed of a wound he had received in his right arme. It was a strange thing to behold the Enemies Weapons, and the diversitie of streamers wherewith they were decked, the which seemed vnto vs as far off as beautiful, as the diversitie of 20 colours plentifull. But to say the truth, the multitude was great which this King had, notwithstanding there was much difference betweene their valour and ours: and it is reported, that hee had ranged in Battayle this very day three hundred and fifty thousand men, whereof there were an hundred and fiftie thousand Horse-men, the rest on foot: the greatest part of them were rude and barbarous people, which suffered themselves to be slaine one vpon another, not marking their advantage, nor haueing any Warlike knowledge, as our men haue: there were slaine of the Enemies fowre thousand. Now the next day after the buriall of the dead, the Prince haueing giuen thanks vnto God for his victorie, ordered the wounded to be cured, and amongst the others *Caliber*, who by reason of the vntemperatenesse of the Ayre, rather then by the blow of the wound he had received, found himselfe very ill, yet would hee not omit his dutie, to 30 command alwayes his Auant-gard, the which was a great pleasure vnto the Prince, for hee alone had Commandement ouer the Emperours Forces, being a *Scythian*, and greatly beloued of his Nation.

The Prince dispatched away thirty thousand Horse in the pursuit of one of the King of *China* Brothers, who was fled away, haueing ioyned together againe some twelue or fiftene thousand Horse. The Prince sent to summon *Pannibis*, the which did yeeld it selfe vnto him: whereupon our Army approached neere vnto it, for to aduance our felues the further into the Country. Now I forget to declare how the Prince haueing the next day caused his Tents to be pitched most lately, and his Guards ordered according to his greatness, the principall of his Army being also neere his person: for all the night hee had remayned continually on Horse-backe, 40 vntill about two of the clocke, when as they brought him a Tare and his water, for hee neuer dranke Wine; and lay downe on a Carpet where hee palled the rest of the night. I was neere vnto him and neuer left him: but I neuer heard any vaunting or boasting to proceed out of his mouth. Then hee sent a commandement vnto *Asalla* to bring vnto him the imprisoned King: who being come, the Emperour issued out of his Tents, and went to receive him. This King of *China* came with a very proud and haughtie countenance, and like a courageous man, approaching neere vnto the Emperour, hee demanded of *Asalla* by an Interpreter, which was the Emperour, and being shewed him, hee spake fiercely vnto him after this manner: The Gods whom I worship, being provoked against my Nation and people, and conspire 50 against my good fortune, haue made mee at this day thy Prisoner: but forasmuch, as it is reported ouer all the World, that *Tamerlan* maketh warre for the honour of his Nation: thou shouldst be contented that thou hast wonne it this glory, that the Lord of the World, the Child of the Sunne, is in thy power, to receive such Law as it shall please thee to prescribe him. This hee said in a braue manner, and without any other humbling of himselfe. The Emperour on the other-side haueing flattered him very courteously, led him into his Tent.

Hee is surely a great Prince, and which hath had two hundred famous Cities within his Kingdom. There be many Mynes of Gold and Silver, much Muske, and also of an Herbe which the *Christians* call *Rubarbore*. There be in like manner within the Kingdom of *China* fiftene very large Prouinces, the which haue Governours, the which we call *Chinos*, the which they in 60 their Language name *Tame*, and the people *Tamies*, the which we call *Chinos*, the which they in 60 doth abound in fife, and in great numbers of wild-fowle, by reason of the great abundance of running waters which doe ouerflow the Country, the which is reasonable temperate: they abound greatly in Silkes, and the meanest are apparelled therewith, haueing fmall quantities of Woolle.

left hand, and on the right was the coming of the Enemy, so as vpon the least disfauour that might happen, hee would retire to be assisted by his footmen. Wee had foure thousand horse: *Caliber* with the *Scythians* were in the Auant-gard, and had the commandement of thirte thousand horse, who should receive him at such time as hee did draw on the Enemy, as hee was commanded. It was divided into fower troupes, each one consisting of ten thousand, *Odmar* had also thirte thousand horse who should assist him. The Prince remayned in the Arier-ward at the one of the wings of his footmen, which held one of his principall forces: his purpose was to suffer the threethoures and six thousand horse to maintaine the fight against the *Barbarians*, being led by two good Captaines, and if any of them remayned, the Emperour hoped after of 10 them to haue a good marker, by causing his footmen to march forward, and himselfe with whom they abode twentie thousand of the best horse, which were sufficient without hazarding his Person for to give a new battaile, if so be that any disfauour should happen vnto them: for hee had vnderstood that this was the custome of the Kings of *China*, to enclose themselves within the middle of their Chariots with their footmen, and not to hazard themselves but vpon the extremitie. So the Enemy fayled nothing at all to march directly vnto *Caliber*, and all the Arme marched after following of him and letting vpon him, and hee euen as the *Scythians* are al- 20 wayes accustomed to doe, with his six thousand horse in retiringe gaue many charges, killing some of them, and they likewise killing some of his men. It was a beautiful fight to see this great Arme march, for it seemed to be twice as great as ours: therein being an infinite number of armed Chariots, wherein hee put his principall trust against the furie of our Souldiers: so many gildings of gold and silver as well in the trappings of their Horses, as on their Armour, that it glittered, and was of vs all much admired. The Prince who with a troupe of horse did see the Arme march after *Caliber*, commended greatly the manner of casting their men out of the ranks, for to compell this troupe vnto fight, and did see this Arme come in good order, and hee 30 tried with his eye to note the place where the Kings Person was, haueing neere him the *Chinois* Lord to instruct him, who knew well their manner of fighting. Now, they had neither Auant-gard nor battaile, but only an Arier-ward commanded by the King, and indolent (as I haue said) with his Chariots: the which being shewed vnto him by this Lord, the Prince turned himselfe vnto vs, and in our language said: *Tu must see this day disperse this cloud here so gilded,*

The beautie
and richnesse
of the King of
Chinas Arme.

Tamerlan his
speech of the
King of Chinas

30 *and the King of China and my selfe must make a partition thereof.*
Now, haueing seene the Arme so suddenly aduanced, and judging that hee had had scene them march a good league, hee thought it not convenient to suffer them for to take breath, nor for to put themselves againe into their order; hee sent vnto *Caliber* for to will him to set forward the fight, and that if those whom hee had led with him should be weary, they should come vnto him; but it was not in *Caliber* power to haue this commandement ouer them. For as soone as they heard this word of fighting uttered, they required the first charge, with a young Lord, who commanded ouer them, called *Ziochabans*, who made appeare vnto the *Chinois* to what end and their flight was, charging very stiffly vpon the foremost of the Enemies, the which was an occasion to begin the first fight. And I assure you, there could not be fene a more furious thing, nor 40 any for to fight with more desire to manifest the valour of his Nation, and for to procure honour vnto his Prince. Now, this endured a long houre before the *Chinois* had ouerthrowne *Caliber*. The Prince did see all patiently, saying alwayes, that the great multitude how confused soeuer it were, would carry it away from the order and valour of his Souldiers: you could not yet perceive any alteration in the Princes countenance. Adversitie and Prosperitie were so indifferent vnto him. His thirty thousand Horse were all *Scythians*, who observe not the same order the *Parthians* doe. Now, before the Prince retired with his men, hee did see the first charge giuen, *Caliber* being wounded, retired himselfe vnto the Prince, haueing with him two thousand horse ioyned together againe, and many more ioyning themselves together neere vnto the Prince, who commanded that they should cure *Caliber*, viewing the place of his wound, hee 50 caused him to be conducted behind his footmen, and the other which were hurt with him also. Now, *Caliber* was not able to pierce through this Arme, being beaten back: but *Odmar* with almost all the *Parthian* horse-men, did handle them more roughly, for hee ranne cleane thorough them, and returned by one of the right wings of the Arme, where hee fought most valiantly, and haueing beaten them backe euen within the Kings Chariots, hee thought that hee should not doe wisely to goe about to breake those forces.

The battaile
betweene the
King of China
and Tamerlan.

The King of *China* coming forward, and the horse-men which had beene broken by *Odmar*, ioyning themselves together for his aide, *Odmar* only remayning in the battaile sent vnto the Prince for the footmen, and for to set forward the Artillerie, and that hee should assure himselfe of the victorie. The Prince, who had already set forward, kept aloofe off, and sent vnto him fiftie thousand footmen, with a part of the Artillery, giuing charge thereof vnto *Asalla*, who forthwith set forward, haueing commandment to set vpon the Chariots, and to make an entrance: hee set forward the Artillery before him, the which did greatly astonish the enemies: for the Governours of the horse, belonging to the Kings Chariots, could not hold them; it made also a great poyle. As soone as hee perceived this disorder, hee set forward, and 60

The King of
China wounded
and taken Pri-
soner.
Tamerlan vi-
sitory over the
King of China.

came to hand-blows, there were a hundred and fiftie thousand men, as yet about the Kings perion. *Axalla* full of courage fought valiantly, that they neuer beheld any doe more brauely. *Odmur* during this fight charged againe the Horsemen, who were retyred vnto the Kings ayde, whom he put to flight. Then the Prince aduanced forward with the rest of his Foot-men, gaue ayde vnto *Axalla*, and came euen vnto the perion of the King of *China*, who was as yet encloded within a second ranke of Chariots with thirty or forty thousand men: and after hee had fought two or three houres, the Horse-men afflicting the Foot-men, and they principally whom the Prince had refused, the King remayned wounded within the power of the Prince, the battaile being wonne, and all the Enemies Campes forced: the fight endured eight houres, and it was euen night, which faued the liues of many of the Enemies. There were slaine two thousand the Allies of the King of *China*, and one taken Prisoner: there was infinitime riches gotten, as well in golden Vellillas precious stones, and the most rich and faire Chariots that could be fene.

The Prince would not see the captured King vntill the next day, being mounted on Horsebacke, and passing through the Campe of the Battayle for to stay the laughter, and to toyne together againe his men, to the end the accustomed watch might bee kept, whereof hee gaue charge vnto *Axalla*: to whom hee gaue likewise commandement to keepe the King of *China* within the middle of his Soldiers, having bin already dressed of a wound hee had receiued in his right arme. It was a strange thing to behold the Enemies Weapons, and the diuersitie of firearmes wherewith they were decked, the which seemed vnto vs as far off as beautiful, as the diuersity of 30 colours plentifull. But to say the truth, the multitude was great which this King had, notwithstanding there was much difference betweene their valour and ours: and it is reported, that hee had ranged in Battayle this very day three hundred and fifty thousand men, whereof there were an hundred and fiftie thousand Horse-men, the rest on foot: the greatest part of them were rude and barbarous people, which suffered themselves to bee slaine one vpon another, not marking their aduantage, nor having any Warlike knowledge, as our men haue: there were slaine of the Enemies some three score thousand. Now the next day after the buriall of the dead, the Prince hauing giuen thanks vnto God for his victorie, cauled the wounded to bee cured, and amongst the others *Calibet*, who by reason of the vnperpetuall of the Ayre, rather then by the blow of the wound hee had receiued, found himselfe very ill, yet would hee not omit his dutie, to command alwayes his Auant-guard, the which was a great pleasure vnto the Prince, for hee alone had Commandement ouer the Emperours Forces, being a *Seythian*, and greatly beloued of his Nation.

The Prince dispatched away thirty thousand Horse in the pursuit of one of the King of *China* Brothers, who was fled away, hauing ioyned together againe some twelue or fiftene thousand Horse. The Prince tent to summon *Pammin*, the which did yeeld it selfe vnto him: wherevpon our Army approached neere vnto it, for to aduance our felues the further into the Country. Now I forget to declare how the Prince hauing the next day cauled his Tents to bee pitched most stately, and his Guards ordered according to his greatness, the principall of his Army being all neere his perion: for all the night hee had remayned continually on Horse-backe, 40 vntill about two of the clocke, when as they brought him a Tart and his water, for hee neuer dranke Wine, and lay downe on a Carpet where hee busied the rest of the night. I was neere vnto him and neuer left him: but I neuer heard any vaunting or boasting to proceed out of his mouth. Then hee sent a commandement vnto *Axalla* to bring vnto him the imprisoned King: who being come, the Emperour lifted out of his Tents, and went to receiue him. This King of *China* came with a very proud and haughtie countenance, and like a courageous man, approaching neere vnto the Emperour, hee demanded of *Axalla* by an Interpreter, which was the Emperour, and being shewed him, hee spake fiercely vnto him after this manner: The Gods whom I worship, being prouoked against my Nation and people, and conspired against my good fortune, haue made mee at this day thy Prisoner: but forasmuch, as it is 50 reported ouer all the World, that *Tamerlan* maketh warre for the honour of his Nation: thou shouldest be contented that thou hast wonne it this glory, that the *Lord of the World, the Child of the Sunne*, is in thy power, to receiue such Law as it shall please thee to prescribe him. This hee said in a braue manner, and without any other humbling of himselfe. The Emperour on the other-side hauing saluted him, very courteously, led him into his Tent.

He is surely a great Prince, and which hath had two hundred famous Cities within his Kingdome. There be many Mynes of Gold and Silver, much Muske, and also of an Herbe which the *Cherians* call *Rubarb*. There be in like manner within the Kingdome of *China* fiftene very large Prouinces, the which haue Gouvernours. It is reported that hee hath three score and tenn Kings wearing Crownes, Tributaries vnto him. We call this Region *China*, the which they in 60 their Language name *Tame*, and the people *Tamgy*, the which we call *Chinas*. This Kingdome doth abound in fish, and in great numbers of wild-fowle, by reason of the great abundance of running waters which doe overflow the Country, the which is reasonable temperate: they abound greatly in Silkes, and the men are apparelled therewith, hauing small quantities of Woolle

300. Cities.
A description
of China.
Rubarbo.

Tam, or Tami
and Tamgy.

Woolle, and not vnting the same: they haue much Cotton and Linnen in stead thereof. The men doe weare their haire long, the women combe them: they haue as many Wiues as they are able to maintayne. Next vnto the King, there is a Gouverneur Generall whom they call *Tamen*, the which was the Brother vnto the imprisoned King. The Prince hauing assembled his counsell to the end he might be aduised how he should vie his Prisoners and the rest of the Victory: hee receiued newes by *Odmur*, how that the Kings Brother was arrued at *Quanton*, the which hee had fortified, and that great store of forces did layne themselves vnto him. This was the cause 20 to conuene the Prisoners vnto *Paguisin*, and from thence after they had made absolute there, to passe ouer the Mountaynes, and to remayne at *Borda* (a Citie of old time faithfull vnto the Emperours of *Seythia*) and there to keepe them faithfully. The pride and refolution of the Prince was, that it behooued to assault *Quanton*, and to flut vp, it it were possible, the Kings Brother within the same, being one of the principall feates belonging vnto the King of *China*, and a Citie greatly peopled and strong: it was forty leagues from the place where the battayle was fought. But *Odmur* being aduanced thither, would not retyre before hee had expresse Commandement from the Prince, who hauing fene thither, pitched his Tents round about the said Citie: hauing summoned many small Cities, the which yeelded themselves wholly vnto the Princes mercy, making great lamentation for their King taken. Notwithstanding, the gentleness 30 vied by the Conquerour made them to take all their losses with patience: and because it was also reported, that hee had sold the King most friendly, and all the Prisoners: the Kings Brother had sent *Enkashidours* to obayne leave for to know of the Kings health, and for to see him, the which the Prince did willingly suffer, to the end this other should not declare himselfe King, who would haue brought him more trouble then the other. He attended for the euent of *Quanton*, and had his eye vpon the successe of this siege. Now the Kings Brother hauing receiued newes of the Affaires of the besieged, he determined either to succour it, or to fight a Battle, and came straight vnto *Porchio*, and made a bridge of Boats, whereof there be great store in these 40 same Countreys.

Now being enforced when the halfe part were passed, which was fiftie thousand men good, *Odmur* finding them in very ill order, and nothing at all aduertised of the Enemies nearness, gaue the charge, and vnto ouerthrow them: there remayned dead vpon the ground some fiftie thousand men, but it was not without great fight, strengthened with the fauour of water, and a great Marsh wherein they were encamped. Notwithstanding, our Foot-men hauing wonne the bankes of the Riuer, beganne also to winne the Boats, and to teeter them by the meanes of a great Boat, the which we with diligence aimed to runne downe being full of artificiall fire, so 50 as at the same very time that they which were within the Boate did draw neere, they retyred out of the same, hauing first killed the fire within the Boate, the which with a great force rushed against the Bridge of Boats and ouerthrow it, and where it was refilled did burne. This did greatly abash them that were passed, to see their returne out off. The Kings Brother was not yett passed vnto the other-side of the water, and hee which first had gone ouer was the King 40 of *Caucima*, who was slayne at the first charge, fighting very valiantly, in the fore-front. The Kings Brother did see his men slayne and drowned, and could not remedie the same. This second ouerthrow was of no small importance, although it was but the third part of the Kings Brothers Army, and that there remayned vnto him as yet a hundred thousand fighting men: but there was no great hope that hee durst present himselfe before our Army. The newes hercof being reported at *Quanton*, they desired to make tryall of the Emperours Clemency. *Axalla* dispatched one of his faithfull friends of his Countrey vnto the Prince, to carry vnto him the good newes: which was more welcome vnto the Prince, then the ouerthrow hee had giuen vnto the Enemy, and agreed vnto all that *Axalla* demanded, referring all vnto his sufficiency and fidelity. The Kings Brother hauing sent to demand safety for to treat, the Prince granted it much vnto them, for such as would come vnto him.

50 In this meane-time *Quanton* yeelded it selfe into the hands of *Axalla*, who cauled the Garrison to come out of the same, receiued the Inhabitants into the Princes protection: and they which would might remayne therein waarmed: and hee entred therewith with the joy of all the Inhabitants, who did determine to receiue the Emperour into the lame with all the magnificence that might be. He cauled thirty thousand men of War to enter thither: vnto whom was money deliuered for to maintayne them there, vntill such time as all the Foot-men should receiue pay for three monethes due vnto them, whereof the Inhabitants of *Quanton* did furnish the Prince, to the summe of eight hundred thousand Tentins, the which do amount vnto four hundred and fifty thousand crownes or thereabout. The Prince at this present sent mee vnto *Axalla*, 60 whom I found feasting of his Captaines and souldiers, staying for the commandement that I brought vnto him, the which was to remayne within *Quanton*, and to caule all his footmen to fet forward directly vnto him, the which was done by the Prince, to the end it should strike a greater terror into the minds of the enemies, who hee with his footmen arrued, he supposed they would nothing doubt (*Quanton* being taken) but that hee would march forward, in such

Quanton.

Borda.

Porchio.

Odmur let vpon
the Kings
Brother as the
passing of a Ri-
uer, and thus
fifty thousand
of his men.
Astragum.

as he hoped this would greatly advance his Affaires, considering the estate they were in. Irened, from *Quantouson* vnto the Emperor, having seen a beautifull and great Citie well fortified, and wonderfully people, and round about it there was a fruitfull Country.

An Embassy
from the King
of China Bro-
ther vnto Ta-
merlan to treat
for peace, and
the Kings de-
liverance.

Conditions as-
sured upon
betweene Ta-
merlan and the
Chinese.

Thus the Embassadors being arrived, who were of the Kings chiefest Vassals, *Tamerlan* received them with all humanitie, causing his greatnesse to appeare vnto them, and therewithall the agilitie of his Horsemen, to make them see with their eyes, that it would be the destruction of the *Chinese* name, if he proceeded any further. So having saluted the Emperor with all reverence, they vttered their Embassy vnto him, which was that the Kings Brother had sent vnto him to treat for two causes: the one, was for the liberty of their King, the other, for preservation of their Country. The Prince having heard them, answered them, that they had reason to trust vnto his mildnesse, and seeing at this present, they desired it, he would yield thereto. Thereupon the Prince rote vp, and caused to be said vnto them, that they should deliver their offers in writing, and that present answer should be made therunto. Thus went they out of the Princes presence with great joy, and as it were assured of Peace, and to recover their former prosperities. The conditions which they offered, were to leave *Tagunson*, and all the Country beyond it, with all the Fortresses of the Mountaynes; that they would pay all the charges of his Army, since the day of and were made vnto his Embassadors; that they would give two Millions of Gold, for their King. This being preferred vnto the Lord, he made answer thereto, which was, that he would keep that which hee had conquered within the Country, which was his owne iudly, leaving his armes had given vnto him; that hee would have the River where he was now encamped, to be his Port, stretched vnto *Hochy, Tobacozang, Caueho, Lulun*, euen vnto *Pekho* bordering upon the Sea; that the King of *China* should pay vnto him yearly three hundred thousand Crownes, the which should be delivered at *Tagunson*, for acknowledgement of submision vnto the Empire, as well for his Successors as himselfe; that they should pay five hundred thousand Crownes in ready money for the charges of the Army; that the King of *China* should be delivered, and all the *Chinese* Prisoners should pay ransom vnto particular men that took them, except those which carried the name of Kings, who should pay one hundred thousand Crownes for peace with his Armes; that no *Chinese* should be kept as slave, nor sold for such hereafter, being vnder the Princes obedience; that the Traffique and Entercourse of Merchants should be free betweene both the Nations; that the King of *China* should deliver his Brother as Prisoner, and two Kings named, with twelve principall men of the Country for assurance of the peace. They accepted of such conditions of peace as pleased the Conquerour, hoping that time would bring againe vnto them their ancient liberty, and that for a time it beuolued them to beare with patience the yoke of their bondage. Now the Prince had sent two thousand Horse, to fetch the King of *China*, to the end that being at liberty, he might sweare to the peace honestly, the which hee having performed at *Quantouson*, whither the Prince caused him for to come, he brought with him vnto *Pagun*, all the pledges, and amongst the rest, the Kings eldest Sonne, and his Brother. The King being departed for to performe his promise, according to the Treaty by him confirmed, he was received, and as it were worshipped within his Country, with all the joy that might be.

Odmor left Co-
utour of
China for Ta-
merlan.

In the meane-time the Emperor, after hee had prouided for the assurance of his new conquest, he left *Odmor* there to gouerne them, and gave vnto him an estate of thirty thousand Horse and fifty thousand Foot-men, to furnish all the Fortresses and strong places, the Prince having led with him many of the new conquered people, to desire to haue them for to dwell within his Country, and to send other Colonies in their places, to assure himselfe the better of the lightnesse of this people, having noted them to be inclined vnto Nouelties. Hee gave in charge vnto *Odmor* to make his principall abode at *Quantouson*, and to fortifie well the passage; and also commanded a Fortresse to be made at *Dermio*, the better to strengthen his Borders; and after hee had left him all things necessary, he recommended vnto him the seruices of that Lord, who had manifested vnto him his great affection. The Emperor having well tried his faithfulness in his Affaires as they fell out, hee carried with him a Brother of his, vnto whom hee gave great gifts within *Sachetay*.

Then we turned our faces straight vnto *Cambalu*, having aduertized the Great Cham of the happy successe of our Affaires. The Prince remained in the King of *China*, holding in his possession, two of the fairest and greatest Cities of all the whole Country, having in hundred good leagues thereof vnto himselfe, and many lesser Cities, having extended his Borders vnto a River, by which he might goe vnto the Enemy, but they could not come vnto him without passinge over the same: having good meanes to keepe it and with advantage. Now the Prince desired to aboue all that the Idols which were within his Conquest, should be beaten downe, and commanded the worship of one God, establishing the same after the forme of his owne Country, for hee made account that in short time all would be reduced vnto our cultomes. Our Army wherein was much sickness, began to march, and on the third day having newes of forces which came towards vs, the Prince sent them a Commandment not to come any further forward, and that they should march straight he vnto *Cambalu*, where the Prince did suppose to finde the Emperor

his Vncle, who had led forward towards that place to haue the good hap for to see him, being determined to receive him at *Cambalu* with magnificence and triumphs, as hee well deserved.

Now I will declare by the way, how *Odmor* being leaured from vs, all the Princes fauour was turned vnto *Asalla*, vnto whom hee committed the whole charge of his Armes, inasmuch as *Asalla* although he was alwaies in great reputation, notwithstanding the fame was much encreased by the Prince at *Quantouson*, where the Prince did trust him with the Armes, in so weighty an enterprise as that was, and the which hee so gloriously achieved: likewise the manner of entering into the Kingdoms of *China*, the intelligence hee had: so as the report of his valour did the throughout all the Empire. *Calibes* led the Avant-guard, and *Asalla* was in the battell nere vnto the Emperor, who gaue him the chiefest place, bestowing vpon him two hundred thousand crownes yearly, for to maintayne his ordinary expenses. After certaine dayes journey, we received newes of the Emperours arrival at *Cambalu*, the Prince having left his Armes in a faire Country for to winter, where hee dismissing many of our Soldiers, we arrived within foure leagues of *Cambalu*, whither all the Princes of the Emperours Court came for to receive him, together with all the principall Inhabitants, for to gratifie our Prince for his happy Voyage. The Prince hauing received every one, according to his wonted curtesie, retaining notwithstanding conuenient Maieitie, hee was beheld to the great contentment of all his Subjects. Hee had with him the Emperesse his wife, who had not left him in his Voyage. The next day the Emperor did him to much honour, as to come and meet him with all the richest Charots, and fairest Horses hee had wonne. Hee gaue a present vnto the Emperor his Vncle, of all the richest Charots, and fairest Horses hee had wonne. The Emperor was very desirous to see his daughter: hee called her Chariots to bee recovered, and called her to enter into his: but the Prince remayned on Horse-backe, whom the eyes of all the people could not be satisfied with admiring. The Prince presented *Calibes* vnto the Emperor, and making a recital of his faithfulness, and the endeavour of every one, hee caused the Emperor to give vnto him an hundred thousand crownes of encrease vnto his pension. *Asalla* was also presented vnto the Emperor, who being informed of his valour, hee was received with all the best fauours that might be, and hee gaue vnto him of the reuenues belonging vnto the Empire, an hundred thousand *Tatars* of gold in a Principallitie, that he might the better declare vnto him how much hee esteemed of his fidelitie.

Tamerlan turned his fauour vnto *Asalla*.

seecoon crownes
of syley sent
vnto vnto
Asalla by Tamer-
lan.

The meeting
betweene the
great Cham
and Tamerlan at
the Crys of Cam-
bala in Catia.

Asalla reman-
ded by the
great Cham
for his good
felicie and
fidelitie.

§. III.

The differences betwixt TAMERLAN and BIAZET the Turke; his returne to Samercand; and expedition against BIAZET; the battell, and victorie, his caging of BIAZET, and making him his Foot-soule.

His joy and pleasure continued with vs all the Winter, where the Prince hauing received advertisement: how *Biazet* Emperor of the Turke, had enterprised to ioyne the Empire of Greece vnto his owne, and fully determined to besiege *Constantinople*, the which hee vnderstanding, and succour being required of him by the *Greeke* Emperour, hee dispatched one towards *Biazet*, for to declare vnto him his pleasure hereat, and warned him on his behalfe, not to trouble the Emperour *Paleologue* who was his confederate. Now this motion came from Prince *Asalla*, who had wrought this league, being of kinne vnto *Paleologue*, and also thrust forward with desire to maintayne his Religion in Greece, where he was perour, asking what hee had to doe therewith, and that hee should content himselfe, with enjoying his Subiects, and not vnto others, seeing hee was not borne his Subiect. This answer being made, *Asalla* procured to be very ill accepted of the Emperour, and in such sort, that hee determined to hinder this enterprise of the Ottomans.

A message sent
by Tamerlan
vnto Biazet.

The proud an-
swer of Biazet.

Now the Prince had obtained of the Emperour his Vncle an hundred thousand Foot-men, and fourescore thousand Horse, hoping to haue as many from *Sachetay*, besides the Lords who would accompanie him for to winne glorie, from whom hee made account also of fifty thousand souldiers to deliuer him from his, besides the other forces. Hee supposed that hee had departed, leaving the Emperour of Greece from the bondage of the Ottomans. Thus the Prince his age: it was not without a hart farewell of the Emperours part towards his Nephew; but more grievous on the Princes part towards his wife, who had neuer left him since the time they were married: but nothing withheld our Prince, where there was either glorie, or meanes to encrease his reputation, and profit the Common wealthe: saying often, that hee was borne to this end, and that hee must take in these exercises his principall delight: for every other thing whereof hee did exercise himselfe was but borrowed, being appointed and called of God to pursue the

Heauyparting:

A notable say-
ing of the
lun.
pride

Tamerlan his
dilectie.

Tamerlan's
surrender
against
the Turke.

Tamerlan's
returne
from the
conquest
of China
vnto
Samerand.

Confultation
about the way
the Arme
should take
to the Turke
Empire.

Tamerlan his
chiefest trust.

Bachu.

Tamerlan
hunted
by the way
towards the
Turke.

Baiget
marched
vnto the
siege of
Constanople.

The govern-
ment of
Asia
did change.

Notable
issue
amongst
the Turanians.

pride of Tyrants. Neither will I here omit a dreame, which our Prince had the night before he departed from *Cambala*, which was, that he did see as he thought, a great multitude of recurrent men, who put forth their hands vnto him, requiring his succour against the violence of certaine Tyrants, who did afflict them with sundry kinds of torments: he said, that he did neuer fee more reuerent countenances, & that some of them were apparelled in white, and others in cloth of gold, some hauing as it were Crowns of gold vpon their heads, and it seemed vnto the Prince, that he gaue them his hand, and lift them very high. This dreame he recited vs the next morning, but no body was able to giue him the interpretation thereof, & himselfe thought no more of it.

The Prince was accompanied also with *Calibes*, & he commanded the Prince of *Tamui*, to take vpon him the fiate of Colonell of the footmen, which *Asalla* had left: vnto whom he gaue the charge of Lieutenant general within his Arme, with commandement to leade his Auant-guard, and *Calibes* the Arre-ward, being accompanied with farre greater forces then euer he had in any of his Armies: for they came vnto him from all parts. The *Chimois* Lord was licensed by *Odmar* to goe with 20000. men of the subiects newly conquered, being desirous to hew himselfe vnto the Emperour, as also for to leaue our manners and fashions. The Prince tooke his Voyage directly vnto *Samerand*, the place of his birth, three yeeres being past since hee had bene there. *Zamas* came to meet him, and I verily beleue, a million of men, blessing and praying him in all manner of songs. All the Princes of the Countrey also ranne to visite him; he abode there a moneth. *Asalla* in this meane time was already at the meeting place at *Oczra*, who prepared all things, looking for the Princes commandement for to goe vnto him, aduertising him often of the doings of *Baiaiet*.

We departed from *Samerand*, for to goe vnto *Oczra*, where was the meeting place for all the Princes troups: and hauing in that place taken aduice for his journey, that is to say, for to know whether should be most expedient and fauorable, either to goe by the coasts of *Mysicome* directly vnto *Capla*, or rather on the other side of the Sea *Bachu* to passe by the skirts of *Perfia*. It was refused in the end, after sundry opinions, although the way were the longer, to passe vnto *Capla* for to come vnto *Trefisunda*, and to the *Georgians*, and from thence to enter into the limits of the *Ottomans*. Then our Arme after the accustomed ceremonies & prayers made vnto God, wherein our Emperour hoped to finde his principall succours, we drew straight vnto *Maranis*, where the Arme abode three dayes, looking for the forces which *Odmar* did send, whereof they received 30 newes, There did the Emperour cause all his Arme to be payd, and a generall muster was made. He had newes also there of the forces that the *Mysicome* did send vnto him: he likewise caused an infinite quantitie of victuals, and the most part of his furniture to be conveyed by the Sea of *Bachu*, there being some euentide leagues where was want of water and victuals, through the which our Arme must needs passe, causing all things necessary to be carried by water, the which was a great commoditie vnto vs; and there was a commandement giuen at all the shoares of the Sea, that they should bring all the vessels for to carrie the munition of the Arme: so as this fore-
sight did greatly ease our Arme. The Prince went continually coasting the Sea-shore, passing away his time in hunting, and his Arme came not neere him by ten leagues, except such as came to seeke necessities for the Arme, the which did extend it selfe some twenty leagues, it was so great. The Prince abode at *Sarash* during the time his Army passed the Riuer of *Edel*, at *Met*, and at two or three other Bridges, the which they had caused to be made; there had he certaine newes how *Baiaiet* marched vnto the siege of *Constanople*, hauing reduced vnto his obedience all *Byrhina*, and *Borsia* a very noble Citie, the which hee caused to be fortificed, and diuers other Cities, vnto all the cruelties that might be, inasmuch as all the adioyning Provinces yielded themselves his tributaries: amongst the rest the noble Citie of *Capla*: the Citie was by the Prince giuen vnto *Asalla* for to dispose of the same: which hee did, going thither to see his kind-folke, and to take such order there, as he thought was for the preferation of the Citie, as neere not vngratefull vnto his Countrey: he rather placed his hope in this little flourish of *Aden*, *Mauis*, then in the limits of *Scythia* and *China*, and for to succored after his Master vnto all his great conquests, for that he had all the Souldiers at his commandement, and great credit amongst all the people over whom his Prince commanded. *Baiaiet* hauing a very great and mightie Arme, neither beleueed, nor once thought that wee would come vpon him, so exceeding barbarous was he, that he would not indure any man so much as to speake onely vnto him of our Arme, as depicting it, to make vs proud: and there he caused all the bordering people publicly to be forbidden, to make any vowes and prayers for our prosperitie. Iustice raigned lo amongst vs, inasmuch as if a Souldier had taken but an Apple, he was put to death, and this was feuerly obserued our all, a thing vsuall, and especially in this Journey, the which was the onely cause of overthrowing the tyrannie of the *Ottomans*, and of this proud *Baiaiet*. So we arrived at *Bachicheke*, where the Arme refreshed it selfe for the space of eight dayes. Vnto this place came the Embassadors of *Ginney*, vnto the Emperour, whom the Prince did greatly reuerence for his holinnitie. The Emperour after he had caused generall prayers to be published, *Tamerlan* Arme departed from *Bachicheke*, and they reckoned that there was in our Arme, three hundred thousand Horse-men, and two hundred thousand Foot-men, of all kinds of Nations. Our

Arme

Arme came vnto *Garga*, where it passed the Riuer *Exuprator*, the Auant-guard at *Chinifrig*; and the generall meeting of the Arme was appointed to bee at *Gianich*, the which did yeeld it selfe: and there had we newes that *Baiaiet* his Arme was neere vnto vs, within some thirty leagues, which caused vs to march more clofe. All the Cities yeelded, the Emperour receiving them graciously, and those which refused obedience, were cruelly punished, especially such Inhabitants as were *Turkes*, but the *Christians* let in full libertie, vnder the name of the *Greek* In-Emperour *Emanuel*, whom the Emperour would wholly gratifie, *Asalla* hauing received this commandement from the Prince: so hee caused them to be rewarded themselves in very great order. Now, the Prince of *Clarcen* had diuided his men into two troups, and giuen commandement vnto the first troupe, that as soone as they perceived the Enemies to pursue the hundred Horse, they should rescue them, and retyre ioyntly together. Now, hee had the rest of his power in a valley neere vnto a Wood, and hauing suffered some two thousand of the Enemies Horse, *Turke* Auant-curers to passe by him, he charged them behind, and fought with them, they not fighting but fleeing as soone as they did see themselves pressed: many were slayne, and many were taken prisoners. This was the first time wee fought, and carried away the victorie: all the prisoners were sent vnto the Prince, amongst the rest the *Bassa* of *Natolia*, who led this troupe. The next day *Baiaiet* his Arme drew neere vnto the fight of ours, the which marched might haue heard such noyle of Horses, as it seemed the heavens were full of voyces, the aire did trail of his valour. Vnto the *Scythian* Nation, the which is delicious of goods, they propounded the great riches they should get by the victorie over the *Ottomans*. Vnto the *Perthian* Nation ambitious of rule, the honour and glorie of the Nation, being Conquerors of them, who onely were able to take from them the Empire of *Asia*. The *Christians* who made the fourth part thereof, assured themselves to conquer their greatest Enemy. Behold, now euerly one spake during the night time, according to his humour. The Prince this night went through his Campe hearing

The causes of
Tamerlan
were against
the Turke.

A stratagem.

How Tamerlan
Arme possed
the night be-
fore the battell
fought: against
the Turke.

all this, and was very glad to see the hope that euerly one of his Souldiers did conceiue already of the victorie; and I being neere him, he did heare all the honour to tell me, that at the time hee fought the battell against the *Mysicome*, hee did heare all the kindes of songs, the which some good hap, and I trust to rescue the like now. Now after the second watch the Prince returned vnto his lodging, and casting himselfe vpon a Carpet hee meant to sleepe: but the desire of it y would not suffer him; he then commanded me to giue him a booke, wherein hee did read: therein was contayned the lues of his Father, and *Grandfather*, and of other valiant Knights, the which hee did ordinarily reade: he called me, hauing light vpon (in reading) the discourse of a battell that his Grandfather had lost against the *Persians*, the which hee had thought to haue gotten (very vnlickeely) hauing assaulted his Enemy, many aduantages being propounded vnto him, whereof he might haue made good vse, all which hee neglected, trusting vnto his own valour and that of his Souldiers. And hauing ended his speech, hee commanded me to read the same before him, and said vnto me, I would reade this before I beginne a battell, to the end I should not so much trust vnto the Lions skin, wherein I wrap my arme, that I should not ferue in a place of aduantage, and he went out of it to seeke his Enemy, who was lodged strongly, and whatsoever his men said to him, hee went on heading, thrusting his eares against all the counsell and aduice of his seruants.

Seeing the *Turkish* Foot-men march, whom they doe call *Tanizaries*, the which were placed 50 in the middle, and vpon the two fronts, two great squadrons of Horse-men, the which seemed to be thirty thousand Horse, and another which advanced and covered the battell of the *Tanizaries*: Hee thought this order to be very good, and hard to breake, and turning himselfe vnto *Asalla*, who was neere vnto him, he said, I had thought to haue fought on foot, but it became too much this day to fight on horsebacke, for to giue courage vnto my Souldiers to open the great battell: and my will is, that they come forward vnto me as soone as they way: for I will advance forward an hundred thousand Foot-men, fifty thousand vpon each of my two wings, and in the middle of them forty thousand of my best Horse. My pleasure is, that after they haue tryed the force of those men, that they come vnto my Auant-guard, of whom I will dispose (and fifty thousand Horse more) in three bodies, whom thou shalt command, the which did thousand Foot-men behind me, wherein shall be mine owne person, hauing an hundred thousand Horse, and fifty thousand Foot-men, who shall march in two troups; and by the Arre-ward will make choise of ten thousand of the best Horse, whom I will find into euerly part where I shall thinke needfull within my Arme, for to impart my commandments. Ouer the first forty

Tamerlan his
cullome be-
fore a battell.

Tamerlan his
cullome be-
fore a battell.

The manner
of the march
of the Turkish
Foot-men.

The order of
Tamerlan his
battell.

P

the vntail

White the
Turk leaues
his be.

Mamulukes.

Tamerlan his
principall in-
surrection was.

The battell
betweene Ta-
merlan and Ba-
jazet.

Tamerlan his
notable victo-
rie obtained
against Bajazet
was taken pri-
soner.

Tamerlan his
wiltome the
cause of the
victorie, and
wherein put
for mist.

thousand the Prince *Circian* commanded: ouer the foremost footmen was the Lord *Synops*, a *Genuis*, kinsman vnto *Axalla*, and he which was his Lieutenant ouer the footmen, a Captaine of great estimation. That ouer which the Prince *Axalla* commanded, consisted of five hundred of horsemen. *Bajazet* his Armie seemed faire and great, which was aduanced continually forward towards vs, who stirred not one whit from the place of the battaile. There were many light horsemen, as well *Scythians*, *Parthians*, as *Moscouites*, who left their ranks, and shot Arrows, and brake Lances before ouer all for the wents of his Armie: but purposed to fight in the middell of those *Ianiarics*, where he meant to fight; that hee did not forget to mount on horse-back, giuing order ouer all for the wents of his Armie: but purposed to fight in the middell of those *Ianiarics*, who are a number of trusty men, brought vp in exercises from their youth to all manner of warfare, and chosen out of all Nations, the fairest and strongest men, so as they are invincible. By this bringing vp the which they haue had together, they doe fight with a great force and courage for their Prince and Lord, who being in the middell of them, they are in a halfe circle within the Armie. Now, they were thirty thousand men in this order, wherein *Bajazet* put his principall hope: he had many other footmen, but gathered together of all sorts. His battaile of horse was very faire, amounting vnto the number of an hundred and fortie thousand horse, well exercised in all manner of fights. The *Soldes of Egypt* hauing ayded him with thirty thousand *Mammulukes*, very good horsemen, and with thirty thousand footmen. Their Armie in that order seemed almost as great as ours: for they were not knit together as we were, our forces being directly one after the other, and theirs all in front.

So the Enemies Armie aduanced forward continually with an infinite number of cries, and ours was in great silence. After that common prayer was ended, the Emperour himselfe aduanced continually forward, beholding the first charge giuen, and caused *Axalla* to set forward after he returned into his order, continually exhorting his men before hee left them. There could not be seene a more furious charge giuen, then was performed by the *Ottomans* vpon the Prince of *Circian*, who had commanded them to fight before they came vnto him: there could not haue beene chosen a fairer Player, and where the skillfull choise of the place was of lesse aduantage for the one then for the other, but that we had the Ruer on our left hand, the which was some aduantage for the Emperour, hauing giuen commandement, that in any case they should not lose the same, and that the Enemies, whatsoeuer came thereof, should not win it: this hee did for to haue the aduantage of the hand in fight. The Emperour, who aboute all Maximes of warre, did vse to deale in such manner, that the Enemy might see the first Assault, hee had straightly commanded them which were appointed for the first charge, to suffer the Enemy for to giue the on-set. Now (as I haue already declared) this young Prince of *Circian* with his forty thousand horse was almost wholly ouerthrowne, hauing fought as much as hee could, but hee entered euen into the middell of the *Ianiarics*, where the person of *Bajazet* was, putting them in disorder, where hee was slaine. About this time *Axalla* set vpon them with the Avantguard, where as he was not in any such danger; for hauing surprised one of the enemies wings, hee cut it all in pieces, and his footmen coming to ioyne with him, as they had bene commanded, hee faced the Battallion of the *Ianiarics*.

The Prince seeing the charge *Axalla* had vpon his arme, sent ten thousand horse from his battaile for to liuccor him, and knit together the mayne battaile of *Axalla*, and to giue once againe a charge vpon another Battallion of footmen, the which did hee selfe, and came to ioyne with and strengthen that of the *Ianiarics*, who behaued themselves valiantly for the sake of their Prince. This fight continued one hour, and yet you could not haue seene any scattered, fighting resolutely the one against the other. You might haue seene the Mountaynes of horses rull one against another, the men die, crye, lament, and threaten at one very time. The Prince had patience to see this fight ended, and when hee did perceiue that his men did giue place, hee sent ten thousand of his Horse to ioyne againe with the ten thousand appointed for the Arriward, and commanded them to assist him, at such time as hee should haue need thereof. At this very time the Emperour chargeth, and made them giue him room, causing the footmen to assault, ouer whom the Prince of *Themas* commanded; who gaue a furious on-set vpon the Battallion of the *Ianiarics*, wherein was yet the person of *Bajazet*, who had sustayned a great burden. But the multitude, and not valour, did preuaile; for as much as might be done in fight, was by the *Ianiarics* performed, for to preferre the person of their Prince. But in the end the Horsemen, wherein was the Emperours person, gaue a new charge, and his Avantguard was wholly knit againe vnto him, hee renewed another forcing, and was fully victorious. *Bajazet* hauing retired on horse-back out of the troupe of *Ianiarics* wounded, fell alie into the hands of *Axalla*, vnto whom hee yielded himselfe, supposing it had bene *Tamerlan*: Lord of the *Ottomans*, twenty thousand horse did not fight at all, but only in pursuing the victorie, and they made a great slaughter. The Prince had his horse slaine vnder him with the blow of a Lance, but hee was loone re-mounted againe on horse-back. This day the wilcome of the Emperour gaue the victorie vnto his Soldiers: for the iudgment which hee had in tying of the strong forces

forces of the *Ottomans*, was the safeguard of his. For if all had gone vnto the battaile in one front, surely the multitude had put it selfe into a confusion: but this manner of aduancing his men made euerie one profitable. The Emperour iudging (like a great Captaine) of the need that euerie one of his soldiers had, so that this manner of proceeding was the getting of the victorie. They accounted therefore thousand men slaine of the *Ottomans*, and twentie thousand of ours. The Prince of *Tircis* was slaine, as I haue said: the head of the *Georgians* slaine, *Calibes* was verie fortie hee had loosed a reckoning in his Arriward, being very courageous, and a gentle Knight: the Despot of *Sernia* was taken prisoner, who did accompanie *Bajazet*, and was a Christian: they gaue him this day of battaile much reputation. The Emperour gaue vnto him very good entertainment, reproaching him, for that hee did accompanie *Bajazet* against him, who did come in fauour of his kinde Emperour. Hee answered him, that it was not according to his durie, but the prosperitie of *Bajazet*, vnto whom it seemed, that all the world did bend for to subiect it selfe vnto him, and that his fauour had caused him to set forward. The Emperour presently thereupon gaue him leave to depart at his pleasure. Hee tooke care to get into his hands *Bajazet* his children: hee gaue commandement that *Bajazet* should be cured, and after brought before him: who at such time as hee was there neuer made any shew of humilitie. The Emperour saying vnto him, that it lay in him to cause him to lose his life, he answered: Doit, that losse shall be my happinesse. And demanding of him what made him so rash, for to enterprise to bring into subiection so noble a Prince as was the Emperour of the *Greekes*. Hee answered him, the desire of glorie and rule.

Wherefore dost thou (said the Emperour vnto him) vse so great cruelty towards men, so farre forth that neither thou nor thine dost pardon either sex or age? This doe I (answered hee) to giue the greater reuerence to my enemies. Then said the Emperour, if thou thus receiue the like reward; and causing him to bee conveyed againe out of his presence, hee turned vnto his followers, and said, behold a proud and fierce countenance, hee deserveth to be punished with cruelty, and it is necessarie that hee be made an exemplarie punishment to all the cruell of the world, of the iust wrath of God against them. I acknowledge that God hath this day deliuered into my hands a great enemy, we must giue thanks vnto God for the same: the which was performed, being yet day: for the battaile was wonne at foure of the clocke, and there was as yet five houres of day-light. The children of *Bajazet* were brought before him: hee caused them to bee vided courteously, and as the children of an Emperour. The next day hee commanded the dead to be buried: they found the Prince of *Tircis* dead in the middell of the *Ianiarics*, where he remained enclosed. The Emperour did greatly lament this young Prince, who was his kinsman, and would haue bene one day worthe for to doe him great seruice. In that battaile there died manie Captaine, & almost the chiefe *Ottomans*. This was a great Battaille, the which was fought from Iuen vnto foure of the clocke, in such fort that they knew not vnto whom the victorie did incline. Our Armie flayed vntill the next day, euerie one causing his friends to be buried. The Prince of *Tircis* was emballed, and conveyed with two thousand horse vnto *Samarand* vntill the Emperour returned. All the other dead bodies were buried at *Samas* with all the honour that might be. *Axalla* was much grieved for his kinsman, because hee was verie well beloued of the Prince: his charge was giuen vnto one of his brethren who was verie famous; in fighting this same day, we might iudge the courses of the matters of the world. Behold this Emperour *Bajazet*, who was, as hee thought, superiour to fortune, which in an instant found himselfe and his estate by one battaile only ouerthrowne euen vnto the lowest place, and at such time as hee thought least thereof. Hee vied to say, that was iustly punished, for despising the multitude we had, for the assurance that hee had in the fauour of his kindred, and especially of his *Ianiarics*. Hee was three dayes (as they report) before hee could be pacified, as a desperate man, seeking after death, and calling for it. The Emperour did not vnderstand him at all courteously, but caused small account to be made of him: and for to manifest that hee knew how to punish the proud: vpon festiuall dayes, when as hee mounted on horseback, they brought this proud man vnto him, and hee serued him in stead of a foot-stoole: this hee for to manifest the folly and ingratitude of men, and how iustly God had humbled him. The next day the Prince marched directly towards *Bursia*, whither all the remainder of *Bajazet* his Armie was retired, with the *Bassa Mustapha*. All the countrie yielded vnto vs, and the Prince caused all the holdes and fortresses to bee ouerthrowne and destroyed, and punished all those which were so ill counsell as to stay vntill they were besieged. I had forgotten to declare, how hee caused the Prince of *Tircis* bodie to bee accompanied with diuers prisoners chained and tied together, whom hee did send vnto *Samarand*, the which the Prince had determined to make great, for a perpetuall memorie of his gratelesse. Euen so hee had of those greedy people with people of *China*, which had bene taken in the Battalles, and of those likewise which were taken out of the two great Cities, *Pagunifon*, and *Quang-toufou*. Now thus bare hee did bring great abundance vnto all the countries possessed by *Bajazet*, and no bodie resisted vs, euen vnto *Bursia*, whither this Armie was fled, and therein were also two sonnes of *Bajazet* verie young. *Axalla* being alwaies aduanced forward before

Bajazet brought before
Tamerlan, with
his pride.

Tamerlan his
laying of *Bajazet*.

The despise
of *Bajazet* af-
ter the victo-
rie was ta-
ken pri-
soner.

Bajazet Tamer-
lan's sonne
to mount on
horse back.

Tamerlan his
pollicie for to
conquer his
Gone *Samar-
and*.

*Axalla cruel
against the Ot-
tomans for the
delivry of
Gesta.*

*Princes sent
by Tamerlan
vnto the great
Chine his
Viceroy.*

our Armie, with fortie thousand Horse, and an hundred thousand Foot-men without any carriages, who hindered the Enemies from joyning themselves againe together: and hee made a cruell Warre vnto the *Ottomans*, delivring the *Gracians* from the tyrannie of *Baiazet*. Hee approached neere vnto *Baiazet*, where the *Ottomans* did not flay the coming of *Axalla* Armie, but only they which could not runne remained behind. *Baiazet* his two Sonnes were sent vnto the *Greeks* Emperour for to bring them vp, and to haue mercie vpon them; the rest went vnto *Gilipoli*, for to goe vnto *Andromepoli*, the which they held, hauing conquered it from the *Gracians*. Now the Prince (for to returne vnto my purpose) dispatched towards the Emperour his Vncle, and vnto the Emperesse his Wife, one of his Familiars, called *Liban*, Captaine of his Chamber, for to carrie him newes of this Victorie, and to ioyne it also vnto all the rest. He sent him *Baiazet* his Sword and Bow, and the Caparions of his Horse, the which was esteemed to be worth aboue two hundred thousand Duckets. You may easily thinke that Prince *Liban* was well entertained of the old Emperour, and of the young Princesse, bringing word vnto them, that all the World did bend it selfe to make our Prince victorious, who lately recieued these Victories from God without infolencie, and at such time as hee sent him most glory, then did his men note him to be least puff'd vp. He was neuer bold, but in the day of battaile, and on the Eue for to command feuerely, and with greater Majesty. To tell you what he was in aduersitie, I did neuer see him in that estate: but it is to be thought, that they which bee not infolent in prosperitie, are not faint-hearted in aduersitie. So our victorious Prince marched directly vnto *Baiazet*, laden with Spoyle and Trophies which hee daily got; departing from the Cities which hee did come and yeeld themselves vnto him, therein obseruing the same manner of proceeding, the which wee did in the Conquest of *China*; they which did yeeld vnto him without fighting, were well vied, and the obstinate well punished, the Prince knowing that reward and punishment are the Moderators of Common-wealthe, the one to bee vied towards the good, and the other towards the euill. In the end wee recieued newes by *Axalla*, that hee had recieued *Baiazet* in the Emperours name, and how the Inhabitants thereof had punished the Gardens of *Baiazet*, hauing driven them away, and slaine many.

But I dare not follow our Author any further from Tartaria, for whose sake I haue entertained him. Leaving therefore his agreement with the Greeke Emperour, and secret visiting Constantinople, his coming to Ierusalem, and Expedition against the Soldan, with his Exploits in Egypt, Syria, Petia, we will returne with him to Samarcand.

§. III.

Encrease of Samarcand; Affaires of China: Funerals of the Can; coming to Quinzan, and description thereof. His disposition of his estate and death.

*Tamerlan his
Vnto vnto God*

Respect as long as hee liued was much affected vnto him: which greatly serued him for the keeping as well of *Syria*, as of the *Soldans* Empire, leaving continually men there, and drawing out Colonies, the better to settle his Affaires in those places. So the Emperour leaving the Prince of *Thanaie*, with his Army to attend his pleasure, he marched with therewith his forces into his owne Countrey with all the loyes and Triumphs that might be possible, the chieftest Prisoners marching before the Emperour, amongst the which was *Baiazet* Emperour of the *Turkes* all chayned, and was a Spectacle vnto all the World of Fortunes incantancy: hee continued notwithstanding in the same fiercenelle hee was wont to be in him. So wherefoerer the Emperour passed, the people assembled themselves by thousands, praying and singing his Victories. Wee arrived at the last at *Samarcand* with all our spoyle, in very great magnificence: where after we had bene the space of one month or two in Feasting and Manifestions, the Emperour with his accustomed Deuotion, hauing in great solemnitie vowed a Church and Hospitall vnto his God, the most magnificent that might be desired. Whereupon to performe the same, he began to search out all sorts of Handicraft men for to honour this Cite, the which hee had a desire to make one of the flateliste Cities in the World. And in one of the corners thereof he began, and did build there his Temple and Hospitall, making an account to increase yet this Cite, as large againe as it was, and to perpetuate the same, with many several kinds of people and Nations as hee had brought with him, giuing libertie vnto them all to frame and build their Houses, causing money to be distributed to the same, and giuing all kinds of Priviledges and Freedoms vnto the Prisoners, for to reuenge them a greater desire to build and settle themselves there: and hauing caued the streets and places to be plotted, and hauing appointed a place for every one to build vpon, heeooke no other pleasure, neither had hee any other care then the preferring the good will of his most famous Soldiers, whose name hee hauing caued to be written in a general Muster-booke, the which hee

commanded to be made, from day to day, they (not thinking thereof) receiued honour, and good turnes of the Prince, in recompence of their great seruices. Now hee declared the death of the Emperour his Vncle vnto his Councell (of which hee before had receiued Intelligence, but kept it close) and forgot no Ceremony due vnto the honour of the said Emperour outwardly, shewing the grieffe hee conceiued for his death; where after hee had rested some eight dayes, hee determined to goe vnto *Quinzan* for to see the Emperesse, and hauing left *Baiazet* in the custodie of the Gouernour of *Zhetay*, the Emperour left footward with his ordinary Court which was of forty thousand Horse, and threecore thousand Foot-men.

The Emperour being come vnto *Cambala*, recieued newes of the Battell *Odmar*, had wonne against the King of *China* vnto *Cambala*, and how hee pursued his Victory, hauing taken three or four great and rich Cities, the which did yeeld themselves vnto him, and that againe the *Chines* did desire peace. The Emperour sent the Articles hee required, which were that beefore all other things the King of *China* should pay the Arrerages of the Tribute, the which hee had agreed with the Emperour. First, hee should come in person to doe homage vnto his Majesty, and acknowledge himselfe as Vassall vnto his Empire. That the Army should withdraw it selfe during his Voyage, and hee should deliuer vp vnto him all his Cities, sauing three such as the Emperour should nominate; and that the things should be restored vnto the same estate they were in before the Warre, when the Emperour made the first peace; that hee should pay the Army for sixe monthes, and should also satisfie all the expences of the War, seeing hee had begunne it, and was Author of the breach of peace. Then the Emperour gratified *Odmar*, sending vnto him for Wife one of his Sisters with all magnificence that might be, for to make him the more affectioned vnto him. I will declare how the Emperour was receiued at *Cambala* by his Subjects, with all the magnificence possible, the Emperour for to gratifie them, hauing restored their Priviledges, the which hee had taken from them, for the Rebellion they had committed with *Cadix*: so as the Emperour went ouer all gratifying his Subjects for this new Succession that was lately fallen vnto him, all the Companies coming vnto him: for in these Countreys they haue no certayne dwellings, they are alwayes wandring in troups wherefoerer they goe: either the Emperesse (hauing left Prince *Axalla* to gouerne at *Quinzan*) came vnto him. The Prince remained there almost two monthes, hauing in this place giuen order for all the Affaires hee had. *Cambala* was also neere vnto mount *Altay*, where they vie to bury the *Sybian* Emperours, whom we doe call the great *Chen*.

The Emperour caused the body of the Emperour his Vncle to be brought thither, and himselfe would conduct it with all pompe, honouring not only his body, but also all that hee had leued in the World, and although it was not the custome to cause women for to assist the Funerals, yet would hee afford this honour vnto the Emperesse, that she should assist the bringing of the body, going neere vnto the same. This hee did, the more to make appeare how much hee honoured the memory of his late Emperour in his Wife, being his Daughter, and also to the end that it God did take him away, his children being small: the should haue the greater authority, and bee the better acknowledged worthy to gouerne in the minority of his Children; and also for that hee had bene brought vp alwayes in authority, since euene hee was married. The Prince desiring thereby the more to acknowledge the honour the Emperour his Vncle had done him, by adopting him as his Sonne, and in hauing left him so great and large an Empire, as that was, whereof hee left vnto him the possession. Now the Emperour loved her onely, hauing no other affection in such pleasure, but only the happinesse of a faire Offspring, the which hee hoped for. Now the body of the late Emperour being come vnto *Cambala*, hee determined to conduct it vnto the buriall according vnto the accustomed Ceremony, and to put the body with the Kings and Emperours his Ancestors. After hee had from point to point performed the last Will and Testament of the late Emperour, hee returned from thence vnto *Cambala*, where hee spent all Winter in Tilt and Turnyng, going a hunting, making his abode there, because hee was in a place neere vnto the Kingdome of *China*, to know how matters passed there, hauing now brought thither his last Affaires, purposing to goe thither in person the next Winter, if *Odmar* did not make an end of the Warre already begunne, and if the King of *China* did not submit himselfe wholly vnder his obedience, hauing determined not to depart from *Cambala*, vntill this Countrey were pacified, the marke hee shot at, being only to keepe that which his valour was able to conquer through his good fortune, being desirous to spend the rest of his life in enjoying the fruits of his triualls, and for to publish his prayes vnto his people, and with Millions to maintayne them in peace. Hee had also a purpose to bring vnto an end that which hee had determined to doe at *Samarcand*.

Now *Axalla* was at *Quinzan*, as well vnto the contentment of all the men of Warre, as the Inhabitants, who desired much to see their Prince, and hauing caused Prince *Axalla* in their behalfe to beleeched it, that it would please the Emperour to cause his Sonne to be brought vp among them there, the which hee did grant vnto them in fauour of the said Prince *Axalla*, establishing him for to command in the absence of the Prince his Sonne, whom hee made Gouernour of *Quinzan*, from *Cambala* even vnto the Sea. This Countrey was replenished with some three hundred Cities, and was in largenesse more then foure hundred leagues, besides an infinite

*Articles of a
new agreement
betwene Tamerlan
and the
King of China.*

1
2
3
4

*The magnificence
Funerals
of the great
Chen at Tataria.*

*Tamerlan his
vnto vnto God*

*The young
Prince made
Gouernour of
Quinzan and
ouer all the
Countrey;
which seemed
to be the
North parts
of China; and
perhaps in
times, Nam-
ow was the
Scarcitie of
the King of
Quinzan, of
Tataria.*

Avalla appointed the young Princes Countess, and authorized to rule all the Kingdoms of Tamerlans, as Governor general.

The King of China came vnto the Emperor Tamerlan's Court, and did sweare vnto him once againe obedience.

The meane apparrell of Tamerlan.

** This battell for brevities sake is omitted, as is also the most part of the Booke.*

The description of the Citie of Quinsay, with the wonderfull situation thereof.

Tamerlan received with great magnificence into Quinsay, with much rich and rare presents.

The order hee tooke for his sonnes education.

Tamerlan his notable saying of succession in his Empire.

The Emperesse delivered of another sonne at Samersand in Persia.

Tamerlan his recreation, and noble living thereof.

The admiration and exceeding love the people of Quinsay did beare vnto their Emperor.

The nature of the people of Quinsay towards their Emperor.

number of Villages. To make short, it was that the Emperor's Vncler gouerned, where this Prince *Avalla* was his Lieutenant general, vnder the authoritie of the young Prince his sonne, vnto whom he deliuered him in charge for to be his Governor, authorizing him vnto the gouernement general of all his Kingdomes: for the great wisdomme that was in this Knight, made him beloued in all the Countreys vnder the Emperours obedience: the seruises also and great victories the which he had caused the Emperour to obtayne by his flour courage and good conduct, who for these occasions put his principall trust in him, and after himselfe hee thought him onely worthe to preferre for his children his Kingdome and Emperrie.

The King of *China* came to visit him at his Court, according vnto the countenants offered vnto him, the which hee accepted: he did sweare once againe obedience vnto the Emperour, who was at the Court, who kept no more promise then pleased himselfe. Hee was astonished to behold so many Souldiers, and the Countrey so well replenished with people; and about all, that they fed little curiositie of riches in their apparrell and garments, wondering that the Emperour was apparrelled in meane Cloth of one colour, without any other fashion: but to counterualle that, he had about him men which seemed to bee Kings. At the same time when the King of *China* was at the Court, the Emperour received newes of the victory against the *Seldens*, for the which the Emperour reioyced, making feasts and turneys in his Court in token of mirth, and this reioycing continued for the space of eight dayes. After the Emperour had giuen order for the double paying of his Arme that came into *Persia*, vnder the conduct of the great Chamberlaine, and *Synops* Colonnell general in the Imperiall Arme, the Emperour went vnto *Quinsay* for to see his sonne, and visit the people of this Countrey.

The Emperour arriving neere vnto *Quinsay*, Prince *Avalla* comming to meet him two dayes journey off, with all the chiefe Lords of the Countrey, together with the principall Citizens, who were preparing for the Emperour the most magnificent reioicing that might bee, as well by water as by land. As this Citie is one of the richest in the world, to is one of the greatest, and of the most wonderfull situation, being all wholly diuided and overthwarted with channells, vpon the which are framed wonderfull and stately channells, accompanied with an infinite number of Bridges, vpon the which they passe ouer channells: this Citie aboundeth with all kinde of spices, and in great quantitie, likewise with all manner of merchandises. The Emperour as soone as he was arrived, received presents of the Citizens, the which were esteemed to be worth about two millions of Gold, with a wonderfull variety of all rare and singular things, the which they presented vnto him, for to testifie the loue and obedience they did owe vnto him. The Emperour was desirous to see his sonne, whom they brought vp with the accustomed greatnesse of Princes: and hauing caused the child to be brought before him, being of the age of fifteen yeeres: hee looked from hence forward they should suffer him to weare any thing vpon his head, and himselfe did hang a Bowe about his necke, saying aloud, that they which from their birth were called vnto touraignties, should bee vnto cold and heate, and should bee exercised in Armes betimes, and not brought vp delicately and easily, reprehending them which had the bringing of him vp, demanding of them, if they meant to make a man of him? And they answering, that he was tender. If he be not borne (said he) for to be strong in Armes, he will not be worthy to succeed mee: for he must not be an effeminate Prince, that shall preferre the *Parthian* Empire. Now hee had sent the Emperesse vnto *Samersand* to be deliuered, where shee was honourably received, hauing neuer benee there since shee was married. Hee received newes that shee was there deliuered of another goodly sonne, a thing which hee caused to be published our all, and himselfe in token of ioy, made feasts fiftene dayes, with all kindes of magnificent turneys: this hee did for to shew his agilitie vnto this people, to the end, that as hee excelled all his Court in vertues, that they should also iudge him worthe to gouerne them about all other men. After hee continued there a moneth, and hauing visited all the Seatownes neere vnto *Quinsay*, hunting all kindes of chales, neglecting nothing notwithstanding, to exalme him in the paines of his publike affaires wherunto God had called him. Hauing vpon his returne called together all the people, hee published his lawes, which were all reuerenced of this people, as though they had proceeded from the Diuinitie, so much admiration had euery one of the greatnesse of this Prince. The which I will truly declare vnto you, that so long as the Emperour was there, this people did almost nothing, being for the most part busied in holding of him, not finding any greater contentation then that. Some of his Countreys, and amongst the rest, Prince *Avalla* did also vnto him, that this was a Citie fit for his abode. O my friend, it is not so: if they should see mee daily, they would make no more account of mee. It is a maxime, that the Lord of this great Citie must not goe thither but once in ten yeeres, and when he is there, it beehoueth him to temper his actions, as if he were vpon a Scaffold ready to play some Comedie, where grauitie and good grace is necessary for to content the beholders: for the people doe easily receiue an euill impression of their Prince, as they also doe a good, if you performe it well vnto them.

Now I haue forgotten to tell you how the Emperour sent Prince *Avalla* in his name from *Quinsay* into *China*, and his Imperiall Maiestie did not depart out of the Prouince before hee returned, he went thither with great diligence for to establish peace there. Prince *Avalla* went towards *Pagun*, where he was receiued of the Gouernour with all possible honour. After hauing assembled all the Emperours forces, hee left forward towards the borders of *China*, for an interview at *Pochio*, where the meeting place was agreed vpon. Hee passed by *Quinsay* went forward vnto *Pochio*, whither the King came also to meet with him; and hee entered full fiftie leagues into the Countrey newly conquered. It seemed vnto him a thing too much derogating from the greatnesse of the Emperour, the maiestie of whose person hee represented, if he went any further for to see this barbarous King, being more fit that hee should come forward into the Countrey conquered lately from him by *Odmar*, after hee had obtained the victory, then to goe into his Countreys although hee had subiected them vnto the Emperour, and did pay a very great tribute. So the King of *China* arrived within a league of *Pochio* with all his Court; hee left forward vnto a Plaine, where hee and Prince *Avalla* did see each other, who was much better accompanied from whom the King did as much diller as from the Emperours owne person. They met three severall times together: the King desired to bee admitted into a Citie, which the Emperour had granted vnto him by the treatie. Prince *Odmar* declared that it was of great importance, therefore Prince *Avalla* was by the Emperour appointed for to bee Iudge of this controuersie. In the end they required another further within the Countrey, the which the King accepted: so hee was put into possession of that Citie, the situation whereof was very pleasant, being compassed about with a Lake. *Avalla* hauing discouered that this barbarous King, did earnestly desire it onely for his pleasure, and not for any other euill intent, the Citie which hee deliuered being feated vpon a River further within his Countrey, and that other further out the Countrey compassed about with our fortresses: but *Odmar* did not allow of that, and wished for to see for an euill purpose, as for to contraine newe prizes. *Odmar* being an old man, who knew the Kings vanitie, although hee had made him know it well enough vnto his smart, hauing (as I haue said) wonne twenty or thirty Cities from him; and about fourescore leagues of Countrey, at such times hee obtained the last Battell, during the time that the Emperour was in his last Voyage against the *Persians*.

So the enterue continued yet betweene Prince *Avalla* and the King of *China* on the Plaine, a Tent being pitched, whither Prince *Avalla* did come vnto him, whom hee continually honoured as much as the Emperours owne person, where after they had long time treated by Interpreters, it was in the end agreed, that the King of *China* should enter againe into *Quinsay*, not suffering him to put any Garrison into it, nor to fortifie the same: but euen as a Prisoner and Subiect vnto the Emperour, hee should enioy it, and it should bee his owne, enioying all the reuene thereof, neither should hee carrie any kingly Ensignes, without the expresse leave of the Gouernour for the Emperour: hee should notwithstanding haue a guard of three hundred men for his person; and should giue knowledge vnto the said Gouernour of his iourney, before hee entered into the Emperours Countreys, the which hee must passe for to goe thither. Now the Citie was situated in the midst of a very great Lake, in the which were many Landes, wherein there were an infinite number of houses of great pleasure, and it had benee alwaies a very delicate place, where the Kings of *China* were wont to recreate themselves in all kindes of pleasures that were there to be found: in so much as this barbarous King did not respect the conditions propounded vnto him, so as he might make his abode there, as it were in an Hermitage. Hauing left vnto his brother the gouernment of his whole Kingdome, returning in the displeasure hee had of his bondage wherunto he was brought; a courage certainly magnanimous, and worthe a Nation made cuill with the best learning, and vnworthe the name of a Barbarian wherewith we called him.

Three times in the weeke at *Samersand*, *Tamerlan* ministred open iustice vnto the meane, so in his Imperiall Maiestie, a thing which made him beloued of the people ouer whom hee commanded. In the other dayes hee gaue a secret audience for the affaires of his Estate, and tooke aduice for matters of importance, which were decided daily in his presence. Hee had such familiarity in his counsell, that they must needs deale truly before him, and without all passion in discoursing: notwithstanding, hee alwaies shewed himselfe courteous in his conuersation, and made himselfe both beloued and feared of his people: hee neuer changed his seruants, except they committed great faults against him: of all the seruants of the late Emperour his Vncler hee did not change one of them, but hee did withall encrease their estates, making them in this change to feele his liberalitie, which hee made strangers for to talke also, vnto whom hee was accustomed to giue, to binde them vnto him. Hee drew great store of money yearly for tribute of the *Moscovites*: but hee distributed it within the same Countrey for to maintaine his authoritie there, winning thole for his which might haue hurt him, by meanes of giuing vnto them. Hee had great care of his reuenues, and hee had such a readinesse, that hee did see his estate from three monthes vnto three monthes within one hour, both the ordinarie and extraordinarie expences, they presented it to well digested vnto him.

Prince Avalla sent into China for to establish a peace there.

The meeting of Prince Avalla with the King of China at Pochio.

The resolution of the meeting betweene Avalla and King of China.

King of China brother succedeth.

The iustice of Tamerlan his great liberalitie.

Prince Avalla sent into China for to establish a peace there.

The death of
the Emperour
Tamerlan,
Prince Sauto-
chio proclay-
med Emperour
and signed di-
spatches.

Prince Sauto-
chio nineteen
yeeres old
when he came
unto his Em-
pire.

* or Gilan.

REPORTS OF GRACIEMENET A Persian of Tabas in the Province of * Chilan,
touching his Travells and Observations in the Countrey of the Great Can,
UNTO M. G. BAPTISTA RAMUSIO.

Succur and
Campion mention-
ed by M.
Polo.



E said that he had bene at Succur and Campion, Cities of the Province of Tan-
guis, in the entrance of the State of Grand Can, who (said he) was called Daimir
Can, and sent his Officers to the government of the said Cities, which are the
first toward the Moslemans, and are Idolaters. He went thither with a Car-
avan, which went with merchandises out of Persia, and from the places adjoy-
ning to the Caspian Sea, for the Regions of Catai, which Caravan they permit
Ambassadors to the great Can.

Nothing in
it to the Coun-
try.
Succur defini-
bed.

Rhubarbe de-
scribed.

The Root and
juice and pro-
pating.

A cold climar.

Six Saggi
make an
ounce.

This Cite of Succur is great and populous, with faire houses of hewen stones after our man-
ner; and hath many great Temples with their Idols of stone. It is situate in a Playne where
runne infinite Rioulets; is abundant in victuals of all sorts, and yeelds like there made of
the black Mulberies in great quantitie: hath no Wine growing, but they make a drinke with Honey
as it were Ale. Of fruits, by reason the Countrey is cold, there grow none but Peares, Apples,
Apricocks, Peaches, Melons and Cucumers. Hee said that Rhubarbe (of this commoditie Memo-
re had brought great store at that time to Venice) growes all ouer the Countrey; but the best, in
certaine high stony Hills neere adjoyning, where are many Springs and Woods of diuers sorts of
high Trees, and the Land is of a red colour, and by reason of many Raynes and Springs almost al-
way myrie. He shewed out of his house a picture of the Plant, brought out of the Countrey
(which Ramusio in his Preface to M. Polo hath also presented with this discourse) the description of
which is this. The leaues, hee said, are ordinarily two spans long, more or lesse as the Plant is in
bignesse; narrow below and broad above, downy with (as it were) small hayres in their cir-
cumference; the stalk or trunk is Greene foure fingers high, and sometimes a span from the
ground; the Greene leaues with age grow yellow and spread on the ground. In the midst of the
trunk growes a thin branch with flowers fastned within, like the Memle violets in forme, but of
the colour of Milke and Azure, of a tawny colour in the barke, some as bigge as a mans
thigh within ground is a span or two long, of a tawny colour in the barke, some as bigge as a mans
thigh of legge, out of which growe little Roots or Sprigs, which spread in the ground, and are
cut away from the great Roote; which within is yellow with many reynes of faire red, full of
red and yellow juyce, cleaving to the fingers and making the hand yellow; and being cut in
peeces the viscous juyce issueth out and the roote becomes light; they lay them therefore on
boards turning them vp and downe diuers times a day, that the juyce should incorporate there-
in, lest it lose the goodnesse; after foure or six dayes hanging them to drie in the winde, where the
Sunne may not come at them, being in two monthes drie and perfect. They ordinarily take
it out of the ground in the Winter, the vertue being then most vnted in the Roote (the Spring 60
there beginning at the end of May) which at other times is dispersed into the leaues and flowers,
that yee also being gone and the roote light and hollow.

They sell one of their Cart loads of Roots with leaues for fixteene silver Saggi (not much vn-
like ours) for they haue no Coynes, but make their gold and silver in small thin rods, and thence

cut peeces of a Saggio weight, which in silver is twentie Soldi Venetian, and in gold a Duckett
and halfe. He said that they would not gather it; if forren Merchants should not come to trade
for it, themselves making no reckoning thereof; and that the Merchants of China and India car-
ry away the greatest part; who if they should cut and dreffe it as before is exprested, after it is
brought in Caris, in foure or six dayes it would corrupt; and seven burdens Greene (hee said)
would not yeeld aboute one drie. When it is Greene it is intolerably bitter; and in Catai they
vie it not for medicine, but beate and mixe it with other odoriferous compositions for perfumes
to their Idols. In some places there is such fire that they burne it dried in stead of wood; o-
thers giue it their craied horses, so little doe they esteeme it in Catai. But there they much
prize another small Roote, which growes in the Mountains of Samarcand, where the Rubard
grows, and call it Mambromi cini, very deere, vnto all diseases, those specially of the eyes; nor
did hee thinke any of it was brought into these parts. He said also, that in all Catai they much
vie the leaues of another herb, which they call Chisi Catai, which growes in a place of Catai,
called Cacaufu. They boyle it, whether new or drie, and taking off a Beaker or two of that de-
jection fasting (as hot as can be borne) takes away the Feauer, payne of the Head or Stomack,
Back, loyns, and other diseases, especially the Gowr, and it is good for digestion. They vie to
carry it with them in their Voyages, and will giue a sack of Rubarb for an ounce of Chisi Catai.
And the Cataians say, that if our Merchants, Persians and Frankes, knew the goodnesse thereof,
they would buy no Ramand Cini, so they call Rubard.

I asked him of his Voyage from thence to Constantinople, and hee answered mee by Mambro
our Interpreter, that hee returned not that way he went with the Caravan, by reason that the
Greene-head Tartars called Iesitibus, sent an Embassador at that time when hee was to come a-
way, with a great company, by the way of Tartaria Deserta, aboute the Caspian Sea to the great
Turke at Constantinople, to make a league against the Persian their common enemy. Whereupon
he thought good to come with them, and so did to Caffa. I asked of the way he went. He said
he should haue returned from Campion to Gansu in six dayes (eight Farlanges, each of which is
three Italian miles, are a dayes journey, but on the Hills and Deserts they goe in at halfe so much)
from Gansu to Succur in five dayes, from Succur to Camul in fifteene, here the Mahomedans (or
Mahomedans) begin; from Camul to Tarsus is thirteene. From Tarsus they passe three Cit-
ies, Chialis ten dayes journey thence, after that Cuchia other ten, and after that Asia in twen-
tie. From Asia to Casfar are other twentie dayes all rough Desert, all the former way being
thorow places inhabited. From Casfar to Samarcand are five and twentie dayes. From Sa-
marcand to Buchara in Corassam, five; from Buchara to Eri, twentie; from thence to Veremi
in fifteene; from Veremi to Cassin in six; thence to Solsema in foure, and thence to Tauris in
six dayes.

Now for some particulars of those places, he related that Campion is subiect to Daimir Can,
great Emperour of the Tartary; the Cite placed in a fertile Playne all cultivated and abundant in
provisions. They are apparelled in black Cotton cloth, furred in Winter with skins of Wolves
and Sheepe if they be poorer; the richer with Sables and Martens of great price. They wear
black Bonnets thatt like a Sugar-loafe, the men rather small than great, wearing beards as we
doe, specially a charye a time of the yeere. Their houses are of stone like ours, with two or
three lotts, slope-roofed, and dierly painted, and they haue one street onely of painters. The
great men for magnificence make a great Loft or Pageant, and thereon erect two Tents of silke
embroidered with gold, silver, pearlys, and jewels, and there stand with their friends. This
they caule to bee carried by fortie or fiftie Slaues, and so goe thorow the Cite in solace. The
Gentlemen are carried on a simple Pageant, by foure or six men without other furniture. There
Temples are made like our Churches, so great that they may containe foure or fife thousand
persons; and huse in them two Statues, of a Man and a Woman, each fortie foot long, all of one
peece, stretched on the ground, and all gilded. They haue excellent stone cutters. They bring
quarry Stones two or three months journey on sleds Cart of fortie wheeles very high, drawne
by foure or six hundred Horses and Mules. There are also small Images with six or seven heads
and ten hands, all holding diuers things, one a Serpent, another a Bird, a third a Flower, &c.
There are some Monasteries in which live men of holy life, immured within their houses, which
they cannot goe out whiles they live, and haue victuals euery day brought them. There are in-
numerable, like our Friars, which goe vp and downe the Cite. They haue a custome, when
one of their kindred dyes, to clothe themselves in white many dayes make of Cotton; then gar-
ments are made long to the ground with fewe sleeves. They vie Printing of their Books, which
he thought somewhat like those I shewed him at M. Thomas Gunter printing house. Their Cite
is fortified with a thick wall, within filled with earth, able to carry foure Cars abreast, with
60. Towers and Artilly as thick as those of the great Turke. The Ditch is wide and drie, but they
can make it runne with water at their pleasure. They haue a kind of very great Oxen with
long, thin and with hayre. The Cataians and Idolaters are forbidden to goe out of their Coun-
tries, to goe on merchandize thorow the World.

By ynd the Desert aboute Corassam to Samarcand, and till the Idolaters of it.

Mambromi cini.

The way of
the Caravan
between Tauris
and Campion
in Catai.

Campion de-
scribed.
Apparcell.

Bea ded men
Houses.
Pageants.

Ten paces and
Idols.

Huge cart-
wheels.

Anchorites.

Friars.
White moun-
tains.

Printing.

Bea ded oxen
with hayre.

The *teffels* or
Green-head
Tartars.

*climie, Simia,
Lima.*

Prating mount-
ebanks and
juggling
knives.

rule, which are *Tartars*, *Musulmans*, wearing greene sharpe Turbants of felt, so making a difference betwixt them and the *Perfians*, which wear them red and betwixt them two for diuersitie of opinions in Religion are continual warres, and disagreement about their Confines. *Bucna* and *Samaucand* are two Cities of these Green-heads, each a Signorie of it selfe. They haue three particular sciences, (*huma* in the same sense as here) *Lima*, to make and caule lowe, and *Simia*, to make men fee that which is not. The moneys which they haue are not Coyne, but every Gentleman and Merchant makes thin rods of gold and silver, as is before said of *Campion* and *Succurri*. In the market place of *Campion* are euery day many Mountebanks which call science of *Simia*, which compassed with a great multitudine present fringes fights, as to caule a man to cutt off his arme, or thrust himselfe thorow with a sword, and seeme to bee all in bloody, with other like.

CHAP. X.

A Treatise of China and the adioyning Regions, written by GASPARD A CRUZ a Dominican Friar, and dedicated to SEBASTIAN King of Portugall: here abbreviated.

§. I.

Of Camboia and the Bramenes there; the cause of his going to China: Of China and the neighbouring Regions.

*Camboia,
Siam,
Champa.*

Being in *Malaca* building an house of my Order, and preaching, was informed that in the Kingdome of *Camboia* (which is subiect to the King of *Siam* and lyeth toward the parts of *China*, and doth confine with *Champa*, whence cometh the most precious *Calambach*) was great oportunitie to preach the Gospell, and to respoine fruit. Having leaue of my Prelate, I tooke the iourney in hand. And after the passing many troubles and hunger in the iourney, with dangers and sicknesses, I came a land, and after I had reasonably informed my selfe by a third person, conuersing with the People and with the Fathers, euen before I knew it I found all to the contrary of that which they had told, and that all were deceits of the simple Laytie, which of light matters were moued to presume of the people that which was not in them. And besides this, I found many hindrances for the obteyning of my desires and intent; for first, the King is a *Bramene*, and the *Bramenes* are his principall men and his fauourites, and most familiar, because they are Wittches, for they are much giuen to bee pleased with witchcrafts, and they doe nothing without consulting the Wittches and *Bramenes* that are in the Kingdome (for by this means they thrive) by the Deuill. And to the first thing that the King asked me, was if I were a Witch.

King of Camboia a Bramene.

Prelat misur.
Prelatissur.

Prepat prepat
misi.

Men alius
worshipped.

The *Bramenes* doe worship among others one God, which they call *Probat misur* (which they said made the Heauens and the Earth; and another God, which they call *Pratocissur*, this also hauing obteyned power of another which they call *Pratissur*, for to giue this licence to *Probat misur*) and I diewed them, that not onely he had not made the Heauen and the Earth, but that hee had bene a very wicked man and a great sinner: wherefore these Priests said, that they would worship him no more, hauing worshipped him thitherto with their God *Prepat prepat misur*: whereupon the hatred of the *Bramenes* increased towards me, and from thence forward I had disfauous of the King, which was moued for the zeale of his God, and the God of his *Bramenes*. There met about these matters, the Priests of the Idols, and all of their troupe, which goe for Priests, and hold themselves for religious men, and in their conuersation and life they are separated from all other people, which to my thinking is the third part of the people of the Land; the King thereof setting an hundred thousand men in the field. This religious people, or that holds it selfe for such, are exceedingly proud and vaine, and alius they are worshipped for gods, in sort that the interior among them doe worship the superiour like gods, praying vnto them and prostrating themselves before them: and so the common people haue a great confidence in them, with a great reuerence and worship: in sort that there is no person that dare contradikt them in any thing, and their wordes among them are held for so sacred, that in no wise they will endure to be gainisayd. Infomuch that it hapned sometimes whiles I was preaching, so many round about me hearing me very well, and satisfying themselves of that which I said vnto them; if there came any of these Priests, and said this is good, but ours is better, they would all depart and leaue me alone. Further, they being very ignorant presumed to be very wise, and the common people did hold them for such, all their knowledge being ignorances and Heathenish follicie.

They

They make feuen and twenty Heauens, some where there is meate and drinke and faire women when they say all liuing things doe goe, euen the Fla and the Lowrie, for they say, that as they haue souls, that they must liue in the other World. And to these, they say, all doe goe that are not R.igious men as they are. They place others higher, whether they gine, their hely Priests doe goe that liue in the Wildernesses, and all the edictie they giue them there, is to sit refreshing themselves with the wind. They place others yet higher, the gods of the which, they say, haue round bodies like Bowles, those which goe to these Heauens, and the honour w.ich they giue them is, to giue them round bodies as the Gods themselves haue. And euen as they make many Heauens, so they doe many Hels, for they make thirtene, to the which they goe according to the grieuoulnesse of the sinnes of euery one, eyther higher or lower.

They haue a diuision of their religious men, for some they call *Maffinraches*, which are as supreme, which sit about the King: others they call *Nasendeches*, which are as our Bishoppes here. These sit equal with the King. Others they call *Mistres*, which are in the common degree of Priests, which do sit vnder the King: vnder the which there are yet two degrees, which they call *Chaymes* and *Sacer*. And all these they ascend in degree, so they doe in vanitie and pride, and are more reuerenced. Besides all this, there is another very great inconuenience, that exceede the Priests and all those that hold themselves for Religious men, all the rest are slaues of the King, and when the owner of the House dyeth, all that is in it returneth to the King, and let the Wife and Children hide what they can, and begin to licken a new life: the people of the

Country is of such a nature, that nothing is done that the King knoweth not: and any bodie be neuer so simple may speake with the King; wherefore euery one seeketh newes to carry vnto him, to haue an occasion for to speake with him: whereby without the Kings good will nothing can be done, and wee haue already shewed before, that hee is vnwilling to the matter of Christianity. To these things was ioyned some disorders of the *Portugals*, so that by all means I found croffes and inconueniences for to obteyne my desires and my pretence: wherefore I hauing bene in the Country about a yeare, and seeing I could make no fruit beside the passing of grieuous sicknesses, I determined to leaue this Country, and because they told me many things of *China*, and the people of it to haue a disposition to Christianity, and that they loued reason, I determined, seeing in this Country I did not goe, I nor baptizd more then one *Gemile*, which I left in the Cause, to goe to *China* in a ship, of *China* which was then in the Country; in which they carryed me with a very good will, giuing me the best room in the ship, not taking any interest of me: yea, they dealt very charitably with me. This name *China* is not the proper name of the people of this Country, nor of the Country it selfe, neither is there commonly in the Country notice of such a name, onely among all the people of *India*, and among those which dwell in the South parts, as in *Malaca*, *Siam*, *Laos*, this denomination of *Chinas* goeth current, and also among those *Chinas* which doe traffique among vs. The proper name of the Country is *Tame*, the e. not well pronounced, but almost drowning it: and the name of the people of the Country is *Tamgan*, whence this name *China* doth come, which is current among the strangers we know not, but it may be conjectured, that the people which in old time did say: to those parts, because they passed by the Coast of a Kingdome, which they call *Candochina*, and traffique in it, and vidual, and take refreshings there for the Iourney of the Country that lyeth forward, which is diuided into three parts, in the which Kingdome they liue after the manner of the *Chinas*, and is subiect to the *Chinas*, it remeth, that omitting *Candochina*, from the denomination of this other Kingdome, they called all the Country that lyeth along *China*.

China is a great part of *Seychia*; for as *Herodotus* saith, *Seychia* extendeth it selfe vnto *India*, which may be vnderstood, because the *Chinas* did possesse many parts of *India*, and did conuert them of old time, whereof at this day there are some Monuments, as in the Coast of *Choromandel*, which is towards the Coast of the Kingdome of *Narsinga*, on that side which we call *Saint Thome*, because there is a House build by the Apostles, and the Reliques of his bodie. There is at this day a great Temple of Idols, which is a make for the Nauigators to know the Coast which is very low, the which as the men of the Country affirme, was made by the *Chinas*, of whom there remayned among them a perpetual memory, and therefore they call it *Temple of the Chinas*, which is to say, Temple of the *Chinas*. And in the Kingdome of *Calicut*, which is the head of *Malabar*, there be very ancient fruit-trees which the men of the Country say were planted by the *Chinas*, and on the South side of *Chilao*, by the men of the Country, a great Army of the *Chinas* to be cast away which came for *India*, which was lost, because the *Chinas* were but young in that Navigation. And in the men of the Country say the *Chinas* were Lords of all *Laos*, and of *Laotana*, which is the Kingdome of *Malacca*, *Siam*, and of *Chapoa*, as it is commonly affirmed in those parts: wherefore some doe affirme, many of this people to be like the *Chinas*, that is, hauing small eyes, flat noses, and long faces, for the great commixture that the *Chinas* had with all of them, especially with them of *Laos*, which commonly are more *Chinalike*. But the King of *China* seeing that his Kingdome tended to decay, and was in danger by

Twenty four
Heauens.

Thirtene
Hels.

*Maffinraches,
Nasendeches,
Mistres.*

* As this word
Tame in English

The *Tartars* rather let forth
Bees from *China*
to these Ex-
ploits as in *Po-*
you read.

An old man of *China* did affirme vnto me, that sometimes when they came against the Countreies of *China*, if the wind stood on that side where they came, they were discerned by their smell: and when they goe to warre they carry the flesh raw vnder them for to eat, they eat it in this manner, and anoint themselves with the blood to make themselves the more furdie and strong, and to provoke themselves to cruelty in the Warre: these also fight on Horsebacke with Bowes and Arrows, and vie short Swords. With these is the continual Warre of the *Chinas*, and as I haue said the *Chinas* haue an hundred leagues (others saying there are more) of a Wall betweene them and the other, where are continually Garrisons of men for the defence of the entrie of the *Tartarians*. It may bee beleued that this Wall is not continued, but that some Mountaynes or Hills are intermixt betweene; for a Lord of *Perfia* affirmed to me, that the like Workes were in some parts of *Perfia*, with intermixing some Hills and Mountaynes.

Wall of *China*.

It was affirmed to the *Portugals* which were Captiues, and in Prison in their Dungeons, in the year 1530, that some years there is Truce betweene the *Chinas* and the *Tartarians*: and in the same years the *Tartarians* made a great entry in *China*, in the which they took a very principall Citie from them: but a great number of people of the *Chinas* coming and besieging the Citie, and not being able to enter it by force of Armes, by the Councell of a man of low degree, they had a means whereby they killed them and their Horses, and remayned Lords againe of the Citie. The same *Portugals* which afterward were set at libertie, affirmed, that all the Prisoners made great Feasts, and made a great stirre when the *Tartarians* made this entry, with the hope of being set at libertie by the meanes of the *Tartarians*, if they did possesse *China*.

In the Citie of *Canton* I saw many *Tartarian* Captiues, which haue no other captiuitie then to serue for men at Armes in other places farre from *Tartarie*, and they were for a difference of Caps, in all the rest they are like the *Chinas* which whom they live: they haue for their maintenance a certayne stipend of the King, which they haue paid them without faile. The *Chinas* call them *Tais*, for they cannot pronounce the Letter *r*. About the Lake where *Tartaria* hath his beginning, they doe confront with the skirts of high *Almayne*, although on the side of *Europe*, and betweene them and *Almayne* are Hills that doe diuide them: and of these people of the skirts of the Mountaines, the *Chinas* say that the King of *China* hath many men of Warre in pay, that doe keepe the weak passages and the Walls on the side of the *Tartarians*: and say, they are great men with great Beards, and wear cut Holes, and Caps, and blunt Swords, and the *Portugals* that was carryed captiue the Land inward, told me that he heard the *Chinas* say, that they called these *Alimenes*.

See *Pinto*.
* Here followed the description of the Countrey into shires or Kingdomes, with their Cities, &c. which were referred to last and better intelligence.

2. II.

Canton described; the publike and private buildings and Government. The shipping and Husbandry of China; their contempt of the idle, and provision for impotent poore.

BEing to intreate of the Citie of *Canton*, I gae first a warning to the Readers, that as there are many Noble Cities, *Canton* is one lesse Noble, then many of *China*, and faire inferior in building then many other: although it be more populous then many cities is said by him that saw it, and trauelled within the Land, where they saw many other. This aduice presupposed, it is to be noted, that *Canton* in his compasse, is of very strong Walls, very well made, and of a good height, and to the sight they seeme almost new, being eighteen hundred years since they were made, as the *Chinas* did affirme: they are very cleare without any cleft, hole, or rift, or any thing threatening ruine. They are of free stone about mans height, and from thence upward of bricke made of a clay like vnto that of the Porcelaine Dishes, whence it causeth them to bee so strong, that I building a Chappell in *Malacca*, one of these (which was brought from *China*) could scarcely bee broken with a good Pick-axe. Jointly with this there is in this Citie and in all the rest an Officer of the King, which only hath care to ouer-see the Walls, for the which he hath a good stipend. And every year when the Countour of the Borders cometh to visit the Prouince, hee doth visit this as well as the other Officers, to know if he doth well his Office, and finding him in any fault, or negligence, hee is put from his Office, and punished. And if he standeth in need of any expence for the mending of the Walls, the Over-seeer of the Rents is bound to gae him that which is necessarie, vnder paine that if the mending remayneth vsdone, he shall bee well punished. For this cause the Walls of all the Cities are continually kept found and in good reparation. These Walls are within the Citie little more then the walke of the same Citie in their height, which is the cause of being much more cooler. The Walls haue in compasse 12350. paces, and it hath eighty three Bulwarks.

The walls of *Canton*.

This Citie (and so all thereth) hath on the one side the River, along the which, as well this as the other, built almost in a Valley; and on the other side they haue a Ditch full of water of a good breadth, betweene the which and the wall remayneth a good distance where there may runne together a good troupe of people, and the Earth that was taken out of the Ditch, was cast betweene it and the wall, whereby the face of the wall remayneth a great deale higher then the other ground. Besides the ditch, notwithstanding, the wall hath a great steeple, for it hath on the contrary side to the River without the walls, and the ditch a little, Hillcocks that discouereth all the Citie withing the walls.

The River and Town-ditch.

This wall hath seven gates: the entrie of the which are sumptuous and high, strong and well made, with Pinacles aboue, not square but made like Steps. The other places of the walls haue no Pinacles: the wall at the entring of the gates is twelve paces thicke: the gates are all ouer plated with Iron, and all of them haue their draw-bridges very strong, which are alwayes vp, and are neuer let down, but are ready against they be needfull: all the gates at the entring haue Courts, and the Courts that are toward the side of the Suburbs, which lyeth along the River haue euery one three gates, one in the front and two on the sides, which remayne for the seruice of the streets that lyeth along the wall, the walls of the Courts are almost of the height of them within: the gate which is in the front in the Court, is like vnto that of the walls within: it hath also a draw-bridge: the gates which are in the side of the Courts are small. The Courts that are on the other side of the field, where no Suburbs is, haue no more but one gate, and this not right against that of the walls, but stand on the one side: the streets of the Citie are all drawne by a Line very straight without any manner of making a nooke or winding: all the crooke wayes are as straight as the streets: in sort that there is neither street nor traueise that maketh any turning. All the streets and traueses are very well paved, the pavements going along the Houses, and lower in the middle for the coure of water: the principall streets haue triumphant Arches which doe crosse them, high and very well made, which make the streets very beautiful, and enoble the Citie: the principall streets haue along the Houses close Portals, in the which and vnder the Arches many things are sold.

The Gates.

Draw-bridges.

Gate courtes.

Street streets and paved.

The Houses of them which rule the Countrey, are at the entring very sumptuous, with high Portals, great and well wrought of Maltens worke: they haue in the fore-front very great gates, like the gates of a Citie, with two Galleys painted with Clubs in their hands: I saw foure in one *Pagode*, (which is a Temple of Idols) drawne naturally from some, which they say, the King hath to keepe his wealdest passages from *Tartaria*. They are of great members, of about twelve or thirteene spans high. On the street side it hath right against the principall Porch a receite not very great. It hath built along the street a good wall of a good height right against the gate, that when the gates are open they that are within may not be gazed on by them that goe by the street: this gate is such nor, neither is it opened but for dispatching of matters of Iustice, and the principall of the House goe in and out at them, and others that are as honourable or more then they: at the one side of this principall gate is another very great gate, but not so big as the principall, which is for the seruice of the House, and of the Prisoners when the principall gate is shut: when this principall gate is shut, they set a glued Paper crosse ouer both the leaves, on which is written the name or firme of the principall of the House, and for to open it againe, an Officer of the House bringeth the same firme or marke on a playstered board to the Porter, that hee may open it, without the which token hee may not open it vnder a great punishment.

Houses of Masters of Justice.

Or little Court.

Enteing by this gate, there is a great Court and almost square, which is almost a Horse-race, and it hath a Gallery betwixt the length of the gate, which is leade straight from the gate to a very great Table that stands at the end of the Court, the which is all paved with square stones with leuings as high as a mans waiste, and it is high in the entrie of the gate, and there remayneth only one step in the end of it to the Table, and the coure in the sides of the Gallery is low, that they goe downe to it by steps: this Gallery of the middle is of such respect and honour, that in no wile it is lawfull for any one to passe through it, but only some of the with the Officer of the House when they enter in at the gate, they must goe presently to one gaine by steps vnto the Court which hath very great Trees for shadow, and they goe vp a. In the end of this Table in all his length there is a step, and within the step a very great walke, all paved with square stones as the Table without it, and very high and all wrought with Maltens worke: in the middle of it leaning to the wall of the Court, which is very great. Before them, a little distant the one from the other, are two Chaires, with two left hand, (serueth for the Governour of that house, and the other right hand is void, for if there should come another of a higher dignitie then hee, to sit him downe. To euery one of the sides there are two spaces which runne behind this Governour, and are of a good breadth, being placed along the sides of these two spaces in euery one five Chaires, with five Tables before them, and as the distance from them to the principall Governour is good, they remayne though behind,

Subdrie of Courts, and seruice of his Masters.

in light of the principal Goutour. These fence for ten Affluents which are with the principal at the dispatching of waighty matters. From these Galleries inward are gate Lodgings, as well for the Goutour of the House, as for the Ministers of the House, and for all the other Ministers and Officers of the House, which are many, as we will show in their place.

Great Prison.

On every side of the Court are very great Prisons and great Lodgings, as well for the Jours (which also are of great authority) as for the Watchmen that watch by night and by day, but neither these Prisons nor the Chambers of the Ministers of the House, nor the Lodgings of the chief of the House are fence outward, for they are fenced of all things, the doors that have continually their Porters. There are in Canton four of these Houses for four principal Officers, and in every Province in the City, that is, the Head of the Province there are four of these Houses: in Canton there are but four; for as the Goutour of Canton is also Goutour of the City, he is not resident in Canton, but in a City that is in the Borders of one of the Provinces, the recourse in the Affairs of both the Provinces may be the easier. Besides, these principal Houses of the chief Goutours, there are many other in Canton, the which though they be not of so great Majesty as they, they are notwithstanding very great, of other inferior Officers, and chiefly those of the chief layour which are very great. There is on the walls of Canton, on the contrary side of the River a high Tower all close behind, that they which are in it may not be seen, nor gazed on from the Hillcock or Mount aforesaid, that was without the walls, and it is built in length along the wall, so that it is longer than broad, and it is all made in Galleries very sumptuous, from whence they discover all the City, and the Marshes and Fields beyond the River, which serve for the recreation of them that rule. In the other Cities are such buildings which serve for recreation, many and very sumptuous, and of singular building.

Private houses.

The Houses of the common people in the outward show are not commonly very faire, but within are much to be admired; for commonly they are white as Milk, that they seeme like sleeked Paper, they are paved with square stones along the ground; of a faine little more; else, they are dyed with Vermilion, or almost blacke; the Timber is all very smooth and curv, and finely wrought and placed, that it seemeth to be all polished, or dyed, or in white and gold, there is in white to faire and pleasant to the sight, waked Damaske-like, as it were Gold, and to bright that they should doe it injurie in painting it. I conceive, in truth, that I never saw so fine Timber as that. It hath after the House that is at the entrie, a Court with folces of small Trees; and Bowers with a faire little Fountayne: and then at the entring of the House where the women doe with-draw themselves, it hath a certaine manner of a Gallery open before towards the Court, where they have verie great Cubberds finely wrought, which takes the one square of the House, in the which they have their Oratories, and Gods made of Wood, or of Clay: these Oratories are more or lesse outward according to the abilitie of euerie one: all the Houses are tiled with very good Tiles, better, and of more continuance then ours: for besides, they being well made, they are of verie good Clay: those which recieve the water are broad and short, and the uppermost that close, the others are narrower, and as they extend toward the street side, they are garnished with fine Workes made of Lime: for many yeeres they have no need to be tiled againe, for as the Clay is very good, they are not so mouldring as ours, or so rough, but they are very smooth and warme, and being so well set they breed no Rishneffe. There be many Houses faire within, and very few with Lofts, the most are low Houses.

Temple and Melique Suburbs.

They have in the middle of the City a Temple of Idols with high Towers, the walls of the which we will speake of hereafter: they have their Melique with *Alexan* very high with his Pinacle on the top. The Suburbs without are very great and of many Houses, in such sort that some *Portugals* would have compared them in bignesse with them of *Lisbon*, but to mee and to others they seemed lesse, though they be bigger and of more Houses then the City within the walls. It is very populous, and the people is so much, that at the entring of the gates on the River side yee can scarce get through. Commonly the people that goeth out and in, do carry and make a great noyse to the place to them that carrie burthens. And the Rulers of the City commanding to enquire what viidwals were spent euerie day, it was found to spend only five or six thousand *Porkes*, and ten or eleven thousand *Ducks*; besides which, they ate great store of Beues and Buffe, and many Hens, and an infinite deale of fish, whereof the Markets and streets are full, and many Frogs and Sheldrifs, great store of Fruits and all other Pulse. Hereby little more or lesse may be scene what people are in Canton, and whether it may be compared with *Lisbon*.

Suburbs.

The Houses of the Suburbs are like those of the walls within; the streets are so well and leuelled by Line as those within, and all for the most part paved also, and some of them are verie broad, and have triumphant Arches, but very few. Some streets, as well without as within the walls, on the one side and the other along the Houses, have Trees for to make the lowes. In all the streets of the Suburbs at the ends of them are gates with special Porters, whose Office is to locke them euerie night under paine of fore punishment, and euerie street hath a Constable and a Layle. He stands bound, either to yield the Malefactor which by night doth any harme in the street, are to pay for it; whereof all the streets have euerie night a watch, the Neighbours dividing

uinding them thus in quarters: and they make euerie night fixe quarters or watches, and for a signe that they are awake, in euerie street they found a Drumme, where they haue all the night a Lanthorne with a light. The gates of the City are shut as loone as it is night, and on the two leaves is let a paper, with the chief Caprains make on euerie one of them, and they are opened with the Sunne, with a token from the *Capitaine* to them all, with his mark written on a white board. Euerie gate hath a *Capitaine*, a very honest man, and euerie one hath certaine Soldiers, which continually doe watch euerie one of the Gates by day and by night.

Here followed much of other Cities; but because the Author hath them not, but recited his intelligence from *Peking*, I retire you to him. Other China Cities. High-ways.

In some Cities the water runneth almost thorow euerie street, and on the one side and the other of the street are Tables made of stone, for the common service of the people: and thorow all the streets are very good and well wrought Bridges to passe from one place to another: and thorow the middle of the streets is great traffike by water that goe from one place to another. In those places whereby the water entred in to the City, they have made in one place to another very good gates, which have very strong Iron grates for to shut by night: and the most of the streets to the land inward are very well paved with stone, and (where is no stone) with small tile. In all the Mountains and Hills where there are wayes, they are very well made, cut with the Pick-axe, and paved where they are needfull. This is one of the good works of China, and it is very general in euerie place of it. Many Hills on the side of the *Bramas*, and of the *Loos*, are cut in steps, very well made; and in the height or Hill is made a low place, very well cut; in the which is a very high Tower, which about doth equal with the height of the Mountain, 20 which is very strong, the wall of one of the Towers was measured at the entring of the gates, and it was fixe fathome thick and an halfe. There are on this side many of these workes, and there may be in other places. I haue a Guardeman of credit, called *Galate Perera*, Brother to the chief Iustice of *Arcangel*, which abode in *Canton*, being Captaine, that (with the houses of these kindmen of the King, being so many and so great) the City was so bigge that it seemed they occupied very little of it, and make a very little show in it: and so he had it written in a Rudder of his, whence I took a great deale * of that which is here spoken of: in such sort that the greatnesse of the City did hide in it selfe the multitude and greatnesse of the houses.

Which is therefore here omitted.

As in the Country there is great store of Timber and very cheape, and much Iron and cheape, and it is very good, there are infinite number of ships and shippings; for through the Country are infinite Groves of Fire trees, and other trees, whereby it is easie for any one though of a little skilldome, to make a ship and haue shippings, and this causeth the great profit and gayne that is of them with the necessitie the Country hath of them: for it hath not only a great number of Islands along the coast, but also a very great coast where they Nauigate: and besides this, all China is hith navigated, and runne through Rivers which doe cut and water it all, which are many and very great. So that yee may saye to the ends of the Land, and goe in shippings. Any Capraine along the coast may in a little while scyue two hundred, three hundred, euen to a thousand ships; if he stand in need for to fight. And there is no small Towne along the River that is not plentifull in small and great ships. Along the City of Canton, more then halfe a league off the River, is so great a multitude * of shipping, that it is a wonderfulling to see them, and that which is most to wonder, is that, that this multitude neuer decreaseth, nor fayleth almost all the yeere: for if thirty, forty, or an hundred goe forth one day, as many doe come in againe the next: I say, the multitude neuer to diminish nor fayle, for though sometimes there be more, some lesse, alwayes there remaineth a marvellous multitude; and that which is more, all those that goe forth, goe laden; and all that come in, come laden; carrying goods, and riches thereof; and that which the wealth much the noblenesse of the Country, the plenty of provisions and other goods, some doe goe into the Land, others come from within the Land, and nothing cometh from without China, neither goeth out of it: and that which the *Portugals* doe carrie, and some that they of *Siam* doe carrie, is so little in comparison of the great traffike of the Country, that it almost remaineth as nothing, and vnperceiued; seeing that out of China there goeth no more but that which the *Portugals*, and they of *Siam* doe carrie; which is as much as though they brought nothing out of China, but of fire ships coming laden with Silke and Porcelaine: the great plenty and riches of the Country doth shew, that it can sustaine it selfe alone: Pepper and lacune which is the principall that the *Portugals* doe in all the Cities within the Land, which as we haue said, are almost all built along the Rivers. The *Chinese* haue a common speech for to shew the noblenesse of their Kingdom, that the King of China can make a Bridge of ships from China vnto Malacca, which are nere five hundred leagues, the which though it seemeth to be impossible, yet by Metaphor it signifieth the greatnesse of China, and the multitude of ships that it can make.

Riches of China in silke.

The great ships they call *Lunks*, besides which there are ships for warre, made like great ships, to the which they make great Fore-castles and high, and likewise abate, to fight from them: in such manner that they out-muster their adversaries, and because they vie no Ordnance, all their

Prouch.

Lunks for war, and for trade, Ship-fighters. No Ordnance.

their life is to come many together, and compassing the adventures ship, they board it: and as the Canoes let they cast a great deal of Lime to blinde the adventures, and as well from the Canoes as from the tops they cast many sharp pikes burned at the end, which serve for Topdars, of a very thick wood: they vie also great store of stone, and the chiefest labour for is to break with their ships the dead workes of their adventures, that they may be masters over them, haue them vnder them, and being destitute of any thing to shilther them: and as soone as they can enter, they come to the Pike or handy-blows, for the which they haue long Pikes, and broad-pointed Swords hanging at their sides. There be other lunkes for lading of goods, but they are not so high as those of warre, though there be some very great. All these ships do rowe or warre as by burchen vie two Oares a-head: they are very great, and foure or five men do rowe euery one of them, laying them along the ship they moue them with such a sleight, that they make the ship goe forward, and they helpe very much for to goe out and in at a barre, and letting vpon the enemies for to board them: they call these Oares, *Lioflus*: in all manner of their shippings they vie the *Lioflus*, neither doe they vie any other manner of Oares in any kinde of shipping. There be other lesser shippings then Lunkes, somewhat long, called *Bancones*, they beare three Oares on a side, and rowe very well, and lade a great deal of goods: there be other life, called *Lantes*, which haue fixe or seuen oures on a side, which doe rowe very swift, and beare a good burthen also: and these two sorts of ships, viz. Bancones and Lantes, because they are swift, the theues doe commonly vie. The rowing of these Oares is standing, two men at euery Oare, euery one of his side, setting one foot forward, another backward. In the lunkes goe foure, five, or fixe men at an Oare.

They vie also certaine shippings very long, like vnto Gallies, without Oares or beake-head, which doe lade great store of goods: and they make them so long, because lading bringing a great burden they may sayle the better by the Ruers, which sometimes are not rough. They haue many other shippings of burthen, which is superfluous to tell of euery one. There be many small boats of poore people, in which are husband and wife, and children, and they haue no other dwelling but in their boat in a middle decke, for defence of the Sunne, and of the raine: as also haue the Bancones, and Lantes, and others which wee said were like Gallies, and these deckes are in su, h, fort, that vnder them are very good lodgings and chambers in the great ships, in the decke of the poore, they are much inferior: there they breed their Pigs, their Hennes, and there they haue also their poore little Garden, and there they haue all their poore state and harbouring. The men goe to worke about the Citie to helpe to maintaine their little house: the women goe in the boats, and with a long cane that reacheth well to the bottom of the Ruer (at the end of the which is a little basket made of rods, wherewith they get shell-fish) with their industrie, and pulling of people from one side to another, they helpe to sustaine their household. These poore people notwithstanding doe not live so poorely and beggarly in their apprell, as those which live poorely in *Portugall*. There are other great shippings, where in is the stocke of them both, which haue great lodgings where they may bestow a great deal of stufte: these haue a great stocke; they haue certaine Cages made all the length of the ship with canes, in which they keepe two or three thousand Ducks, more or lesse as the vessel is: some of their belong to Lordships, and their seruants goe in them: they feed these Ducks, as followeth.

After it is broad day, they giue them a little foddren Rice not till they haue enough, when they haue giuen it them, they open a doore to the Ruer where is a Bridge made of canes, and the moule they make at their going forth is wonderful to see them goe tumbling one ouer another, for the great abundance of them, and the time they take in going out: they feed all the day vntill night among the fields of Rice, those which are owners of the shipping doe recuse a fee of them that owe the fields, for letting them feed in them, for they doe cleanse them, eating the grasse that groweth among them. When night cometh they call with a little Taber, and though they be in luminy Barks, euery one knowes their owne by the found of the Taber, and goe vnto it; and because alwayes in time some remayne without that come not in, there are euery where many flocks of wilde Ducks, and likewise of Geese. When I saw such a multitude of Ducks in euery one of these Barks, and all of one bignesse, and thinking they could not be hatched by Ducks or Hens, for if it were so, some would haue beene bigger then some, seeing so many could not be hatched in one, two, or fifteene daies, I was willing to know how they hatched them: and they told mee, it was in one of two foyers. In Summer, laying two or three thousand Eggs in the dung, and with the heate of the weather and the dung, the Eggs are hatched. In the Winter, they make a Hurdle of canes very great, vpon the which they lay this great number of Eggs, vnder the which they make a slacke fire, continuing it of one fort a few daies till the Eggs be hatched. And because they are hatched in this sort, there are so many of one bignesse, and all along the Ruer are many of these Barks, whereby the Countreys are well prouided of this food.

There are some ships wherein the Rulers doe sayle, which haue very high lodgings, and within in houses very well made, gilt, rich, and very sumptuous: and on the one side, and the other

Said ships are people.

They vie Oares.

Small ships.

A kinde of Gallies.

Dwelling in ships.

The husband and wife.

Duck-weeders.

Artificiall broods.

See an example in the picture of this magnificent.

they haue great windowes with their Nets wouen of Silke, and very fine small rods let before them, that they within seeing all them without, may not be seen of them. Toward the side of the *Laos* and the *Bramas*, are continually watches and wards in the Ruers in many ships, euen a whole moneths Iourney in length vnto the Citie of *Casfi*: these ships are in the places where the Ruers make any armes, because of the many theues which commonly are in these parts, being the vttermost of the Kingdome: and because the Ruers haue many armes, many ships are placed in those parts: in euery place where these shippings are, there be two small ships, which continually doe goe night and day from one watch to another, because they are very swift, and those of the great ships doe continually sende themselves into watches at their quarters, for to watch as well in the small as in the great ones. The ships of passage goe alwayes a great number together, that they may defend themselves, one another, while the ships of warre, and the watches doe come to them, and at the watch where they make night, there they stay till the morning, and by the small boats they are deliuered late to the next watch forward, and so from watch to watch they are accompanied of the small vessels till they be let in safetie. From the Citie of *Doucheo*, that is, where the Gouverneur of *Casfi* and *Cantan* is resident, vnto the boundes of the Prouince of *Casfi*, which are places more dangerous, are continually Armadas of fortie or fiftie ships. All these watches are paid of the common Rents of the Kingdome.

China is almost all a well husbanded Countrey: for as the Countrey is well inhabited, and people in abundance, and the men spenders, and vying themselves very deliciously in eating and drinking, and apparell, and in the other seruices of their houses, especially that they are great eaters, euery one laboureth to get a living, and euery one seeketh wayes to earne their food, and how to maintaine their great expences. A great helpe to this is the idle people to be much about in this Countrey, and are very curious to see, and that labourer will not shall not care, for commonly there is none that doe giue almes to the Poore; wherefore, if any poore did aske almes of a *Portugall* and he did giue it him, the *Chinam* did laugh at him, and in mockage sayd: why giuest thou almes to this, which is a Knaue, let him goe and earne it: onely some fewesters haue some reward, going to some high place gather the people, and telleth them some fables to get something. The Fathers and Priests of their Idols are commonly abhorred and not esteemed, because they hold them for idle people, and the Rulers for any light fault doe not spare them, but giue them many stripes. Wherefore, a Ruler whipping once before a *Portugall* a Priest of theirs; and he asking him wherefore he did vie their Priests to ill, and held them in so little esteeme, answered him: these are idle and wretched Knaues. One day, I and certayne *Portugalls* entering into the house of the Ouer-seer of the goods, about the deliuerie of certayne *Portugalls* that were in prison, because the matter belonged to him, for the great profit that came thereof to the King, much people came in with vs to see vs, among the which there was a Priest: as soone as the Ruler had set them downe, all of them ran away in great haste, the Priest running as all the rest, it was the whip.

Euery one laboureth to keepe a living: for that which he earneth hee enjoyeth freely, and spends it as he will, and that which is left him at his death remaynes to his children and grandchildren, paying only duties Royall, as well of the fruits that they gather, as of the goods they deale in, which are not heauie. The greatest Tribute they haue, is euery married man, or that hath house by himselfe, payeth for euery person in his house two Mases, which are fixte Reys. From *Champaa*, which as we said, doth confine with *Canchinchina* vnto *India*, are many profitable grounds, and made Wlderneffes and Woods, and the men are generally little curious to get or gather together, for they neuer gayne or get so much but it is tyrannized from them, that which they haue is onely theirs as long as the King listeth, and no more. In such fort that as soone as the King knoweth that any of their officers hath much money, hee commandeth him to be put in prison, and they vie him so hardly, that they make him call all that hee hath gotten: wherefore there are many in those parts, that if they get any thing or money one day or one weeke, they will not labour till they confume all that they haue earned in eating and drinking, and they doe it because if any tyrannic should chance to come, they may finde nothing to take from them. From hence it cometh, as I say, that they haue in *India* many ground's in diuers places vnprofitable; which is not so in *China*, for euery one enioyeth the fruits of his labour.

Hence it cometh that all the ground that in *China* can yeeld any kinde of fruit receiving feede, is husbanded. The high places which are not so good for Come, haue very faire Groves of Pine Trees, lopping also betwene them some Pulle where it may be in the drie Lands and thife they flow Wheate and Pulle: in the Marthes which are ouerflowed, which are many and very long, they rowe Rice: and some of these Marthes doe yeeld two or three Crops a yeere. Onely the Mountaynes that are high and beaten with the weather, and are not fit to plant any thing, remayne vnprofitable. There is nothing lost in the Countrey but it neuer faile for the bones, as well of Dogs as of other Beasts, they doe vie making toys, and with workes instead of Iurie, they let them in Tables, Beds, and otheraire things: they lose not a Ruge of any quality, for as well of the line as of the counte, that are not of Woolle, they make fine and coarse Paper, and they make Paper of barks of Trees, and of Canes, and of fallen Rages, and in the Paper made

Ships for guard.

Fleets.

Industrie, cause of pliancie.

Idleness hinders.

Almes desired.

Idle Loll-priests punished with vniuersal subiect of profane bulle Rulers, which foules the looff and worst part of themselves, and a God of their goods.

that is sd. Tyranie grows poore by seeking to grow rich.

Thriftie hab-bands.

Nothing left.

Paper of divers matters.

Near fish.

made of silke they write: the rest keth for to roll betwene the pieces of silke: euen the dung or men yeelds profit, and is bought for money or in change of herbs, and they carry it from the houses: in for that they give money or money worth, to suffer them to cleanse their houses of office, though it inletheth euill through the Citie: when they carry it on their backs, they carry it in Tubs very clean without, and although they go vncouered, notwithstanding it leweth the cleanness of the Country and Citie. In some Citie these Tubs vie to go couered not to annoy.

Pomps which goe by the feet.

They vie in all things more flight then force, whereby they plow with one Oxe, making the Plough in such fashion that it cutteth well the Earth, though the furrowes are not so bigges among vs. A Ship be it neuer so bigge, and haue it neuer so great a leake, the Pomps are made by one man alone sitting mowing his feet as one that goeth up a paire of stayes, in a very little space he pomps it out: these pomps are of many pieces as a water wheele, laid along the side of the ship betwene the rib and rib, every piece haue a piece of wood of halfe a yard little more or lesse, one quarter well wrought: in the middelt of this piece of wood is a square little board, almost of a hand breadth, and they joyne one piece into another in such manner as it may double well, the joynts which are all very close, whereby this manner of pompe doth run, and within of the breadth of the little board of every one of the pieces, for they are all equal: and this manner of pompe bringeth so much water as may contayne betwene the two little boards. The *China* vie also Puppers, with the which they make representations. They bring vp Nightingales in Cages which sing all the yeere, and are vied to Puppet representations also.

Provision for impotent persons. Sec of these things Puts.

It is a thing worth the noting, that the blinde haue a labour appointed them for to get their food, which is to ferue in a Horle-mill like Horles grinding Corne: and commonly where is a horle-mill there are two, because two going together, they may recreate themselves in talking one with another, as I saw them going about with Fannes in their hands cooling themselves, and talking very friendly. The blinde Women are the common Women, and they haue Nurses that doe dress them and paint them with Vermillion and Ceruse, and recieue the wages of their euill vie. The lame and the creeple which either haue no kindred within a certayne degree, or if they haue them they doe not prouide for them that which is necessarie, or are not able to helpe them, they make their Petition to the Ouer-seer of the goods of the King, and his kindred being examined by his Officers, if among them are any that can maintayne them, they doe binde the necesse to take them to them to their charge and maintayne them, and if their kindred be not able to maintayne them, or if they haue no kindred in the Country, and the Officers of the goods commandeth they be receiued into the Kings Hospitall: for the King hath in all the Cities great Hospitalls which haue many lodgings within a great inclosure. And the Officers of the Hospitall are bound to administer to those that are bedred all things necessarie, for the which there are sufficient Rents appointed out of the Kings Exchequer. The lame that keepe not their bed, haue every month a certayne quantitie of Rice, with the which, and with some Hens or a Pigge, which they bring vp in the Hospitall, they haue sufficient to maintayne themselves, and all these things are very well paid without faile: and because commonly those which are receiued into these Hospitalls are incurable, they recieue them for life: and all those which are receiued by commandement of the Ouer-seer, are enrolled, and every yeere the Officers of the Hospitall doe yeeld account of the expences, and of the prouision of the poore sickle, and if any fault or negligence be found in them of that which they are bound to doe, without remission they are well punished for it.

§. III.

Of their mechanicall Trades, Merchandises and Monyes: their provisions of Flesh and Fish, the persons and attire of Men and Women: their Feasts.

Shoemakers.

Here are in this Country many workmen of all Trades, and great abundance of all things necessarie for the common vie, and so it is requisite, for the people is infinite. And because shooes are the thing that most is spent, there are more workmen of Shoo-makers than of any other Trade. In *Canton* are two particular streets of Shoo-makers very long, one where they sell rich shooes, and of silke, another where they sell common shooes of leather: and besides these two streets, there are many workmen scattered about the Citie. The rich Bootes and Shooes, are couered with coloured silke, embroydered ouer with twist, of very fine leather and thence downward, and in some places are shooes of three pence. So that the rich and the very poore may wear shooes: and the rich as they list: the shooes of

three pence, or of a Riall, are of straw, and I say of three pence, for there is money that aboundeth about three pence. Their best money is their lowest money, that let men by the wayes with many of these straw shooes for their shooes: Travellers find it is no wonder to haue this charitie among these *Indians*: for in that part of the *Indies* are many rich *Chinese* which haue very great houses, wherein they spend continually much Rice, giving foule to all the poore of what qualitye soeuer, that will come thither to see: and by the wayes they haue shew their to give drinke to the poore Travellers. There are also many Carpenteres, and very good workmen of all manner of worke. They haue continually many shooes made of many sorts, some furnished with a very faire tawell, others painted, others lynced with feather, and likewise of other sorts. They haue continually a great number of *Chinese* made, some of very faire white wood, and other fairely gild and shurely very finely wrought.

They haue also Chaires wherein the *Indians* are carried on mens backs through the Citie, Chaires which are very rich, of a good price and very rare: they haue another manner of Chaires, which are high, very rich and pleasant all close: with a little window on each side very faire with a net made of linnen, or of stone, or of wood, through the which they that goe within doe see on the one side, and on the other of the street without being seen: these are for to carry the Women about the Citie when they goe abroad. The face is of the height of one of our Chaires, where they goe sitting with their legs bent. There be many of these Chaires very rich, and of a great price: and there are some plain, and bare *Pinkies* on the tops very faire: where are also many bed-steads very pleasant and very rich, all close round about, of wood finely wrought. I being in *Canton* there was a rich one made wrought with silke; and of a sweet wood, which they call *Caylague*, and of *Sandalum*, that was prized at foure hundred Crownes, and of little Boxes gilt, and Maundes, and Baskets, Dishes, and Tables, all as well gilt as with silke without number: Gold-lineths, Silke-lineths, Copper-lineths, Iron-lineths, and of all other Trades there be many and perfect Workmen, and great abundance of things of every Trade, and very perfect. They vie in the Vellis of Latten, and from *China* they furnish all *Jake* and *Siam*, with these Vellis, which in *Indies* they call *Balayun*; and they are in every kind very perfect. They vie Silles, and Gaining silles, and other Vellis of cast Iron, and not only they doe cast their Vellis of Iron, but also they haue them to buy them againe for to cast them. There are many Merchants of pieces and Cloths of silke, because they spend many in the same Countre, and in *Siam*, and there are pieces of Damaske and Taffeta among themselves so rich, that they bring them not to vs, because they give them not for them: what they are worth within the Land: they sell all great store of fine and coarst Serge of sundry colours. There are many Merchants of white and dyed Linnen cloth; for it is that which is most spent in the Countre. They gaue me a piece of Linnen cloth of about ten cubits, which was valued at tenne Crownes, there is both fine and coarst as every one will haue it.

And howeuer the Porcelaine which is vied in all the Countre of *China*, and in all *Indies* is of common Clay notwithstanding, there is very much coarst Porcelaine, and other very fine, and there is some that is lawfull to be sold commonly, for the *Indians* they vie it because it is red and of green, and gilt, and yellow: some of this is sold very little, and that secretly. And because there are many opinions among the *Portugals* which haue bene in *China*, about where this Porcelaine is made, and touching the substance whereof it is made, some saying, that of Oysters shells, others of dung rotten of a long time, because they were not informed of the truth. I thought it convenient to tell here the substance whereof it is made, according to the truth of Fables of it. The thing that I saw it. The substance of the Porcelaine is a white and soft Stone, and some is redde, which is not so fine, or in better speaking, it is a hard clay, the which after well beating and grinding it and laying in Cisternes of water (which they haue very well made of fine Stone, and some playsted, and they are very cleane) and after it is stirred in the water, of the *China* that remaineth on the top they make the very fine Porcelaine: and so the lower the *causse*, and of the dredge they make the coarst and base, which the poore people of *China* doe vie. They make them first as the potters doe any other velleil; after they are made, they drie them in the Sunne, and then paint them as they list with Azure, which is so fine as we see: after their Pictures are drie, they lay on the Glasse, and then harden them.

The principal streets of the Merchants, are the most principall streets, which haue couers on the one side and the other, notwithstanding, the chiefeil face of the Porcelaine is in the Gates of the Cities, and every Merchant hath at his doore written in a Table all that is sold within his shop: those which sell simples for medicines, haue at their doore dyed and hanging in a firing, a piece of every thing. There is in *China* great store of Rubies, but it is not brought to *Canton*, but Iodden, there is none found raw. As the goods of *China* are very great kinds, and many, so the rents which the King of *China* hath in every part of his Kingdom are very great. Some *China* Merchants did affirme that *Canton* did yeeld every yeere to the King three thousand Picos of Siluer, and every three Picos make one Bar, every Bar hath foure Kintall, every Kintall hath foure Arrobas: so that one Bar is sixteen Quarters, and three thousand Picos, making one thousand Bars, by consequence, one thousand Bars make 168000 pound weight of siluer.

Almes not almes the fruit of v. in glorie not of mercy.

Chaires.

Silles.

Porcelaine.

Fables of it.

How it is made.

Merchants.

Rubies.

Kings C.

Arrobas.

Quarters.

Y.

Wh.

mount.

to 40000 pound weight of siluer.

and

* Which is
40000 pound
weight of Sil-
ver.

Very Mez-
chant.
Vizalia.

Porkes floor.

Frogs.

Markets.

Herbs.
Fruits.

Lechins.

Victualling
houses.

Excursio.

and Quarters; and we speak of weights, for in *China* is no money of Gold or Silver, but only of Brass, the Gold and Silver goeth by weight. But these are they are popular people, though occupied in the traffic of the Country, it seems they know not well the truth of this, and that the summe is greater which is collected of the *Roya*, for the Country is very great, and the merchandise many and very substantial. I was informed by means of the Rulers, which is a more certain information, because the rents doe trade through their hands, that the rent of the Salt in *Canton* did yield alone to the King 200. Peas of Silver, which doe make 1000 Bars, which are 400. Kintals, that are 16000. quarters of Silver.

Every one hath a pair of scales and weights in his house, which all are exceedingly perfect. The weights that they commonly have, are from ten crowns to one, and from ten Tans to one, one Tan is nine pecks. By the name of their Countie, the lesser great weight is of one Tael, one Tael is sixe Mazes, one Maze is the sixtieth part of a Tael, the smallest is one Cunderin, ten Cunderins make one Tan, or one Maze; one Cunderin hath ten Caxos; and because the common that goeth in stead of money is Silver by weight, every one hath weights of his owne, as above said; for one labourer by silke means here can deceive the other, none doe trust the scales and weights of the other, and every one that goeth to buy in the Market, carrieth a weight and balance, and broken Silver, and the balance is a little beam of lute with a weight hanging at the one end with a string, and on the other end is a little scale, and the string of the weight runneth along by the beam, which hath his marks from one Cunderin to ten, or of one Maze unto ten. These scales serve for to buy by retale, for to buy by grose they have perfect scales very curious and fine, which very perfect weights. They carrie the Silver commonly full of mixture, and because they exchange it with the mixture, from hence commeth that he which will make good markets in the Countie of *China*, and that may be cheap, carrieth Silver rather than goods, for by the exchange which the *China* make of the Silvers with the mixture, they give the merchandise good and cheape for the Silver. The Merchants are commonly false and lyars.

There is great abundance of Rice in all the Countie, for there are many marishes, which yield two or three crops every yeere. There is also much and very good Wheat, whereof they make very good Bread, which they learned to make of the *Portugals*; their vfe before were Cakes of the same Wheat. There be many *French* Beanes, and other Pulse: there is great store of Beefe, and Buffes flesh, which is like Beefe: there are many Hens, Geese, and innumerable Duckes; there are infinite Swine, which is the flesh they most love: they make of the Hogs many singular fittches, whereof the *Portugals* carrie an infinite number to the *India*, when they goe thither by way of traffike. The *Chinas* doe esteeme the Porkes so much, that they give to the ficke. They eat *Frogs* also, which are sold in great Tubfull of water at the gates, and they that sell them are bound to fry them. All flesh is sold by weight alone, except Beefe, and Buffes flesh, and Porkes, which commonly is sold by the pound, except if they doe buy it whole, for then they are to weigh it whole and that it may weigh the more, they fill them likewise with water and drinke: the Hens to make them weigh the more, they fill them likewise with water, and their crops full of sand and other things. The pound of the Hen, Goose, Ducke, and Frog, is all at one price; the Porkes, Beefe, and Buffes flesh is worth lesse, and all at one price. The fish is exceeding much, and all very good, and it never wanteth in the markets: there be many Cabs, and Oysters, and other shell-fish, and all is very good: and of all these things the markets are full. The Markets are commonly at the gates of the Cities, and under the triumphane Arches which are in the large and principall streets, as we said before, and along the Portals of the same streets: but not to sell here flesh or fish, for there be particular streets, excepting quicke flesh, which is sold every where.

There are many Garden-herbes, *se. Turneps, Radishes, Cabbage*, and all smelling Herbs, *Garlick, Onions*, and other herbes in great abundance. There are also many fruits, *fe. Peaches, Damsons*, and another manner of Plummes which wee have not, with long, round, and sharp stones at both ends, and of these they make Prunes: There are many Nuts, and very good, and many Chestnuts both small and great. There is a kinde of Apples that in the colour and rinde are like gray Peares, but in smell and taste better than they. There is a fruit whereof there are many Orchards, it groweth on great and large-boughed trees, it is a fruit as bigge as a Plumme round and a little bigger, they call the huske, and it is very singular and rare fruits, none can have his fill of it, for alwaies it leaveth a desire of more, though they eat neuer so much, and doeth no hurt. Of this fruit there is another kinde smaller, but the biggest is the best, they are called *Lechins*. There are Oranges, Figs, and many other fruits, which were to long to recite. And though there be particular streets of Victualling houses, yet there is through all the Cities almost in every street of these houses. In these Victualling houses is great store of meat dressed. Many Geese, Hennes, and Duckes roasted and sod, and store of other flesh and fish dressed: I saw at one doore hanging, a whole Hog roasted, and let one aske where he will, for all is very cleanly dressed: the shewe of all the meat that is dressed is at the doore, almost inciting them to passe. At the doore is a vessell full of Rice, well coloured and dressed, and because the matters

of Iustice are commonly almost from ten of the clocke forward, and many have their houses farre because the Cite is very great, or because they which come from out of Towne wish businesse, as well Inhabitants as Strangers doe eate in these houses. When any man meeteth any acquaintance of his that cometh from abroad, or that he hath not seene him a long time, saluting one another, he asketh him presently if he hath dined, and if he answereth no, he carrieth him to one of these houses, and there they eate and drinke priuily, for there is great store of Wine, and better then in any place of *India*, which they make of confitions: if he answereth that he hath dined already, he carrieth him where they have only Wine and Shell-fish, where-with they drinke, of which houses there are also many and there he doeth fast him.

10 There is also in *Canton* along the wall on the outside, a street of Victualling houses, in the which they sell Dogg cut in quarters, boiled, and raw, with the heads pulled, and their eares; for they call them all like Pigs, it is a meate which the base people doe eate, and they sell them also about the Cite in Cages: through every street they sell flesh, fish, herbes, fruit, and all things necessarie, crying that which they sell. In the end of Februarie, in March, and part of April, when the great flowings are, there cometh great store of fish from the Sea to *Spawne*, in the mouths of the Rivers along the Sea, where there lieth infinite small fish of many sorts in the pools of the Rivers. Of these *Spawners* in these times all the Fishers along the Sea coast doe meet in their boats, and there meet so many that they cover the Sea, and lie neere the pools. And these Fishers doe take great quantities of this small fish, and cast it in Coppers, which they have made with stakes, and a very thicke Net made of wyer, where they do feed them, to the end of the fishing time: and at this time there are wont to come a great number of Barkes from all places of *China* within the Land (for I said already that all *China* is filled by Rivers, for it is all cut and watered with great Rivers) and these Barkes doe bring a great many baskets within and without, which are all lined with oyled paper, that it may hold water, and every one of these Barkes doe buy the fish they have need of. Then they carrie this fish in these baskets through all the Countie inward, changing every day the water, and all men of any possibilitie, within their grounds and inclosures have great store of fish in ponds, for the which they buy the baskets they have need, they feed this fish in the ponds in a very short time with Cow dung and Buffes dung, where-with it is groweth very fast. In all the ditches of the Cities likewise they breed great store of fish in the same sort, of which the Rulers are served. 30 In all the Cities which I said already are built along the Rivers, The King hath many Sea Crowes in Coopes, in which they breed, which the which they make *Royall* sailings many times: all the Barkes that are bound to goe a sailing with these Cormorants, doe meet and set round in the River, those that have charge of the birds, doe tie them about the crops, that they cannot swallow them, and they cast them to fish in the River. They fish till they fill their crops of middle fish, and if it be great, they bring it in the beake, and come to the Barke, where they cast all the fish they have fished, forcing them to cast it: and in this manner they fish the quantitie they will, till they have to their contentment: after they have fished for the Barke they vntye them, and let them goe fish for themselves: after they be full, they come to the Boats, and are put in the 40 Coops: these birds doe fish very much. The King doeth give for a favour to the Rulers one or two of these Barkes, according as the person is of qualitie for the maintayning of his house with fresh fish.

Though that the *Chinas* commonly are ill-favoured, having their faces and noses flat, and are beardless, with some few haire in the points of the chime: some notwithstanding there are which have very good faces, and well proportioned, with great eyes, their beards well set, and their noses well shapen; but these are few, and it may be they are of other Nations. They wear long Coats commonly with plates after our good ancient vfe: with a flappe over the breast to tie on the side, and all in general have very long sleeves to their coats, they wear commonly blacke Coats of Linnen, or of very fine Serge or course of diuers colours, some wear them of Silke, many doe vfe them on the Feast dayes of Silke: the Rulers wear commonly fine Serge, and on their Feasts they vfe very fine Silkes, chiefly crimson, which none in the Countie may wear but they: the poore people wear commonly Coats of white Linnen, because it costs but little: on the head they wear a high Cap made of very fine twigs, and it is round interwoven with blacke Silke, and very well made, they vfe their Stockins whole footed, which are very well made and stitched, and they wear Boots or Shoes, as the curiofite or abilitie of every one is, either of Silke or of Leather: in Winter they wear Stockins of Felt, either fine or course, but the cloth is made of Felt: they vfe also in Winter their garments lined with Martines, chiefly about the necke: they vfe quilted Jackets, and some doe vfe them of Felt in Winter vnder their Coats.

They vfe long haire like women, which they wear finely combed, and they combe it many times a day, they wear it tyed on the crowne of the head, and through the knot thrust through with a long small Silver pin: those which are not married, to wit, the young Bachelors doe wear for a deuise a fillet or ribband dressed very well made, their Cap remayning above it, that it may be seene: they have a superstition in their haire, therefore they wear it so long, holding that by

Dogg-flesh.

Fishing with
Cormorants.

Their person.

The Attire of
the men.

Long haire.

Enignes of
dignitie, girdle
and canopie.

The Taffie or
Shirriff.

The Chaor
Indge of the
Circuit, or
Villitor.

The Quincbau
Commissio-
ners extraor-
dinarie.

The third
yeeres Vi-
sitor.

we spake of the buillings, and fue doe sit on the left hand: these in matters of importance are at the dispatching with the principall of the houle, and the Principall dying or by any other meanes wanting, one of these according to his antiquitie remayneth in his seat: and if it be necessary to goe through the Prouince about some matter of importance, that appertayneth to the dignitie in whose houle they asist, one of these doe goe with all the authoritie of the Principall. The fue that sit on the right hand, haue a greater degree and dignitie then the fue on the left hand. And as the dignitie consisteth in their Girdles and Canopies, those of the right hand wear Girdles of gold and Canopies of yellow, and those of the left hand wear Girdles of silver and Canopies of blew, or of changeable colour. The Girdles are little lefse then three fingers broad, and an inch thick, and all about of gold or of silver were wrought made of peeces. The Canopies are very large and faire, which an Officer doth beare vpon a staffe a fathom long, of a Cloute tree very faire, and they are lined with silke.

Besides these Assitants and the fue Principall, there is among the inferior one of greater dignitie, which is the chiefe laylor, whom they call *Taffie*, which haue very great houes of great receipts, where they haue great prisons, but neither this nor any that are vnder him wear girdle of gold nor siluer, nor a yellow Canopie, except hee bee an Officer or Captaine of men of warre, that for fauour of a Gentleman may haue a yellow Canopie: the rest wear girdles of Tartanage, or of other matter made like them of gold or silver, and their Canopies are of changeable stuffe or blew, and all these Inferiour doe speake to the Superiour, when they are before them on their knees, and doe kneele as long as they are with them, except the *Taffie*, who when he cometh in kneeleth and riseth vp presently, and is alwayes standing. Euery one of the great ones haue many inferior Officers vnder his iurisdiction, for the matters and businesse necessary to the Office of euery one, all which as they are the Kings officers haue the Title of *Louhis* and their badges or signets. The fue Principall with their Assitants doe wear for a Badge the Kings Armes on their breasts, and on their backs, which are certayne Serpents wouen with gold thred.

Euery yeere there is one sent to euery Prouince as a Iustice, which is called *Chaor*, which cometh to take account of all the *Louhis*, great and small, and examineth all the Students and chooseth *Louhis*, and visiteth the Prisons, and all that is necessary to be seene and provided for in all the Prouince. He visiteth all meanes to speake to their briberie and iniustice, and hath power to displace or preferre. When this entrench newly into this Citie, it is not lawfull for any to worke, they shut their doores and no body walketh through the street, and to preferre his worship and authoritie they will not boldly communicate in sight of the people, and many Officers with Banners displayed of crimson silke, and all the *Louhis* both great and small are bound to goe and meet him. The same entertainment is vied to euery one of the fue, when he cometh newly to the Prouince where hee is to administer his office. There bee other dignities about all these, which are called *Quincbau*, which is to say, a *Plate or Scale of gold*: which are not sent but about very inferior matters of great importance, for the Kingdome, or the King. Euery *Louhis* of what qualitie soeuer hee bee, high or low, hath for a signe or badge, besides the about-fad, a high Cap and round with certayne crosse a-crosse, made of small twiggles wouen 40 with twitt.

All the Offices are given from three to three yeeres, and none is given for longer time, and all giuen to men that are not borne in that part of the Land, because they may not be mooued by affection in matters of Iustice that belong to their offices, and also because they may not become mightie, thereby to preferre iniustices. The offices are distributed by the King with the counsell of the Eunuchs. And because the Eunuchs are those with whose counsell the offices are distributed, they are many times mightily bribed.

The *Chaors* which the King doth send euery three yeeres, commonly are found men, and bring commonly more authoritie then the rest. And the (besides the yearly *Chaor*) are sent the third yeere, when euery Officer endeth his office. After that the *Chaors* haue taken these accounts of the *Louhis*, they visit the Prisons and give audience to the Prisoners. After this hee with the other principall *Louhis* doe visit the Schollers, and all those that hee findeth to haue studied well, he fauoureth and giueth them good hopes, and those which haue not studied well, if hee see they haue abillie for it, he commandeth them to bee whipped. And it already they haue bene whipped and haue not amended, he commandeth them to bee put some dayes in prison, besides the whipping of them, that with these punishments from thence forward they may haue a better care. If hee findeth that they neither learne, nor haue abillie, hee thrusts them out of the Schooles.

This doe onely the *Louhis* which come euery three yeeres, after they haue dispatched the businesse of the Prouince, hee busieth himselfe in making *Louhis*: which hee maketh in forme following. He commandeth to come to the principall Citie of the Prouince, all the Students that haue well studied, from all the Cities of the Prouince, and from all the great Townes, where the King hath Schoole-masters of free Schooles, maintayned at his charge (for the Students did learne the Lawes of the Realme, maintayned at their fathers charge.) And all the principall

Louhis

Louhis of the Prouince assembled with *Chaor*, these examine very well euery one of the Students, demanding of him many things concerning their Lawes: and if he answereth to all well, they command him to be put apart, and if he be not yet well instructed, either they send him to learne more, and if it be through his default, either they whip him, or being whipped they send him to Prison, as the *Portugals* saw many in Prison for that fault, where they were in Prison also. After the Examination ended, the *Chaor* riseth vp, and all the *Louhis* with great Ceremonies, Feasts, Musicks, and Playings, they give the degree to euery one of them they found sufficient, which is to giue him the Title of *Louhis*. And after the passing many dayes in Feasts, and Banquets, they lead them to the Court to receive the Badges of *Louhis*, which are Caps with earres, broad Girdles and Canopies, and there they shew the distribution of Offices. So that in this manner they make the *Louhis*, which in the Countrey are to administer Iustice. The *Louhis* for warre are made by Chiualliers and famous Deeds which they did in warre. So that in these Countreys men are much honoured by their Learning, or by their Chiuallrie, and yet more for their Learning, because of the Learned doe commonly come the fue principall *Louhis* and the Assitants.

Notwithstanding, there are many *Louhis*, which are made for simple fauours, either for doing some particular seruice to the King, or to the Realme, or in some Towne, or having some particular fauour or qualitie. As they did to a young man of *China*, because the *Portugals* being in Prison, hee serued for an Interpreter, whereby the *Louhis* gaue him the title and badge of *Louhis*, because he could speake *Portugall*. But these and such other doe not commonly. The Offices of the King, but enjoy onely the Liberties of *Louhis*: as the Gentlemen *Portugals* haue their Liberties which some enjoy by fauour of the King. And these *Louhis* haue great Liberties in the Countrey: for none can doe him any iniury without punishment, neither can they be imprisoned but for heinous crimes, and they may imprison any that doe wrong them, and many of the *Chiuines* did studie naturall Philosophie, the truth is that there is no other Studies nor Vniuersities in it nor particular, but onely the Schooles Royall of the Lawes of the Kingdome. The truth is that some are found that haue knowledge of the courses of Heauen, whereby they know the Eclipses of the Sunne and of the Moone. But these if they know it by any Writings that are found among them, they teach it to some person, or persons in particular, but of this there are no Schooles.

The *Chiuas* haue no certaine Letters in their Writing, for all that they write is by Characters. Their lines are not outward as in the Writings of all other Nations, but are written vp and downe.

When the *Louhis* are dispatched at the Court with Offices for the Prouinces, where they goe to gouerne, they depart carrying nothing of their owne more then the Apparell they are to wear, and some few Seruants to serue him, euen when they haue no Offices, neither need they carry any prouision for the Iourney, nor carriage or shipping at their owne charge: for though all the wayes where he goeth are prouisions, as well of shipping as of necessary carriage; and necessary food for all the Kings Officers, which are prouided of the Royall Rents. In all the Cities and small to lodge in, and all those which by any meanes are the Kings, haue sufficient Rents for which is to be giuen to euery one for his Expences in the House according to his degree. And that lodge there being come, the Officer of the House cometh to him, and asketh him if hee will manie, as farre as the money doth extend, hee is to giue him, very well and cleanly drest, either flesh, Fish, Duckes, or Hennes, or what hee will. And any *Louhis* that doth lodge there, may command the Host of the House to be whipped, if hee serue him not to his will. And if any *Louhis* the inferior *Louhis* doe also sometimes, either to spare some money, or to bee merry at their *Pouchas* haue the charge to giue them sufficient prouision that it doe not want. And at the yeares end account is taken of the Officers of the House of the Expences hee made.

By the wayes at euery League, and at euery two leagues are Houses which onely haue Beds, and Chairs for the Trauellers to rest and sleepe themselves. And some of those that haue care of the *Louhis* come to the Citie where they are to be sent: others giue nothing but *Chau*. At the Houses, where they are to lodge according to the Offices they haue great or small, greater or smaller. In these Houses they find all the Seruants necessary, Scriveners, Porters, and all other Ministers necessary for their Offices. For these are continually in the houses, for to minister ceas. at all times all the Offices of the Houses where they lene. And euery Officer according to his House and person hath his prouision necessary for his meate, drinke, and his apparell (limited so that it suffice him well) which is payed to him without faile, euery moneth.

Commence-
ment or Ad.
of this see
more in the
following Re-
lations of the
Islands.

Other forme of
Lanchis.

Their Pri-
ndis.

Publick Of-
fices wholy
maintayned
of the publick.

Houses for
Officers.

Publick Innes.

Inferiour Of-
fices.

Rest in
with
dignite.

Reuerent.

Nimie
seueritie
pauis
conseruam.

Tut.

When the *Louthias* are old and wearied in the charges and Offices of the Kingdome, they are lodged in their owne Countries or where they will, and the King alloweth them every moneth so much according to their qualitie for their maintenance till they dye. And because the Ordinaries of the *Louthias* are commonly Iudges, and with some abundance, they may always speake some thing to please their Wives and Children. Before the inferior Minifters these Officers doe all things of their Offices and matters of Iudice, for they are present at all things, to prevent Bribes and partialitie; Whiles the *Louthias* is sitting in the chaire to hear the parties and dispatching of matters, the Porters, Stewards, Sergeants and other Minifters are at the doore; and when any person cometh with any matter, one of the Porters with a high voice that he may be heard where the *Louthias* sitteth (for it is farre off) telleth who and wherefore he cometh. And none passe to the *Louthias* but upon both their knees on the ground, and commonly they speake a prettie space distant from him. And from thence with a high voyce well understood, he propoundeth his case, or sheweth him his Petition writtē in Paper, and lifting vp the hand deliveth him to receive it, and to shew him Iudice; to whom a Minifter runneth, the *Louthias* making a signe to him, and presenteth it unto him. After the *Louthias* readeth it, he either dispatcheth him of that which he asketh, writing at the foote of the Petition with redde Inke, or remitteth the party to an inferior Officer to be dispatched. So I saw it done to a Petition which a woman presented to the *Penchaf*.

The promptnesse and readinesse wherewith the *Louthias* are served, and how feared they are, cannot be writtē with the Pen, nor exprest with the Tongue, but it must be seene with the eye for to know what it is. All doo their meynes running and with great speed, not only the Scriveners and Sergeants, and other Minifters, but also the inferior *Louthias* to the Superior. And if any fawleth neuer so little of his diligence and accustomed speed, or committeth the lesse negligence in the world before the *Louthias*, hee hath not any remission, but immediately they put a little fledge in his hand, and he must hold it in his hand kneeling untill the parties be dispatched: and then the *Louthias* commandeth to give him the stripes that he thinketh good: and the stripes are such as hereafter we will speake of. Wherby all the Minifters in the Houses of the *Louthias* are playfully marked with the stripes, so that already among themselves they hold it a disgrace not to be marked with the stripes, because it is a thing generally common among them. And when the *Louthias* waxeth angry or is moved at any thing, it is a wonder to see the trouble and feare that is in all the flanders by.

I being in the House of the *Penchaf* with certayne *Portugals*, intreating for the delivrance of certayne *Portugals* that were Captives, and imprisoned in the layle, for the which were carried him eight Ounces of Amber (which at that time was much esteemed of them, and now by carrying so much it is not so much esteemed) we not being willing to give him the Amber, without giving vs both the *Portugals*, he tooke an occasion for to terrifie vs, to waxe angry against the youth, servant of a *Portugal* which was in our company and was our Interpreter. Wherfore he rose out of the Chaire and became red as blood, and his eyes were inflamed, and for one foote forward putting his thumbs vnder his Girdle, looking to the flanders by with a terrible countenance: stepping forward, lift vp his foot and stampe on the ground with it, and said with a terrible voyce, *Tut*, which is to say, Whippe. It was a wonderful thing to see in how little space they tooke the youth, tyed his hands behind with a Cord, and laid him on his belly with his thighs bare, and two Beadles placed them selves on each side one, with one foote forward, and their Whip readie for to give him the stripes that they should bee commanded to give him. Certainly it was all done in a moment. The Merchants that came in our fauour were troubled, and stood aside shaking with feare. At this time one of the Prisoners said, Sirs, be not afraid, for he cannot whip that youth. And in truth we knew it was so, for according to their Lawes there was no fault, whereby he might command him to be whipped, and there was a penaltie if hee did it. The *Louthias* hearing the voyce of the Prisoner, commanded to carry him with speed to the layle againe. And the *Louthias* did this for nothing else but to make vs afraid, that we should give him the Amber for one of the Prisoners, for he could not give vs the other, because he was alreadye adjudged to dye, and the sentence confirmed by the King, which was irrevocable, and he was willing to have the Amber, for he hoped to have of the King a greater Reward then to be *Penchaf* for the Amber. For he did eat it for to sustayne life, and many dayes were past since they had demanded it of the *Portugals*, but as they knew not the name we vied for it, they neuer understood one another till that the yere after they had for the *Astas* of *Cantua* a little for the delivrance of a *Portugal*: wherby he was advanced to *Penchaf*. And this would also have for the same effect the Amber at our hands for to be advanced.

Notwithstanding, we seeing our selves tyed and without an Interpreter by whom to speake, and the youth in disposition of whipping, we gave him the Amber. There came presently a Chaire-dish for to proue it, and the Prisoner cast a little in the fire, and seeing the smoke ascend right vp, he was contented, and cattering the smoke hee set his Nose out it and said, *Hoe*, which is to say, it is very good. And commanded presently to delivier vs the Prisoner free. It was wonderful to see with what speed it was weighed, and the pieces told and put in a Paper, and

and noted by the Scrivener before them all the number of the pieces, and the waight that was there. And after that Paper another, all glued presently. And after that another. And in the third, the *Penchaf* set his Marke with Red Letters, and what was contained within. And at the same instant came a little pipe, and being put in it was presently Repped, and upon the counter a Paper glued, and upon it the Marke of the *Penchaf*: and presently came an inferior *Louthias* Captayne of the Army with his Soldiers, and all afaire off kneeled downe, and said at every word *Quee*, which is to say, Yes, inclining their heads and hands to the ground. And receiving his message, presently as he came running, he returned running with the Boxe to take shipping for to carrie the Amber to the *Tutan*, to bee sent from him to the King. All this that I have spokē was done in a trice before we were flirred from the place where we were. This was also defirous to have the Amber of vs before the *Louthias* of that state did come, which was looked for every day to come a new; for this was onely a Lieutenant.

When any *Louthias* that is not of the flue, neither the *Chaen*, neither very inferior, but as they say of the meane sort, goeth abroad into the Citie, he hath before him a good space two Minifters with two Maces that seeme to be of silver, upon long staves, made almost after our fashion, and the one goeth on the one side the street, the other on the other side. After these a little distant, goe other two, each with a straight Cane, or Pole in his hand. After these goe other two in the same distance with two Canes traying along the Pavements, which are the Instruments of Iudice wherewith they doe whip. After these goe other two with two Tables like two Targets bowed and plystered, wherupon is writtē the Title of the Officer that passeth. The foremost figure in their Maces, that he which passeth is in his Office in the Kings place. And the two straight Rods, the right of Iudice which he ought to doe. Those which carrie the Instruments of whipping, doe carrie for a signe certayne long Red Laces, with two great round Tassels at the ends. And all doe carrie very gallant Plumes very well made of the points of a Peascocks Tayle. And those that goe before doe now and then say with a loud voyce *Humph*, which is to say, *Give place, or beware*. While these doe passe it is not lawfull in any wife for any one to croffe, or goe in the middle of the street, vnder paine of being whipped without any remission.

It chanced two *Portugals* went through the middle of a street in *Cantua* walking, and behind them came an inferior *Louthias*, which had but foure Minifters, which came crying according to their custome they should give place. The *Portugals* either gaue no heed or made no regard of those that came: wherfore a Minifter coming, gaue a great thrust to the one of them, and the *Portugal* answered him with a boxe on the eare and being bound with his hands behind him, was to goe to Prison. It was necessary for the *Portugal* to come to the *Louthias*, and pacifie him with faire words, and he made an end of pacifying him with foureteen Crownes that hee gaue him. After the Minifters cometh the *Louthias* in a rich Chaire gilt and very faire, on four men backes. These Chaires are great and sumptuous, and the *Louthias* goeth compassed with all the Scriveners and other his Minifters. And all of them while hee goeth by the street, goe alwayes running. And the *Louthias* weareth a long blacke Coate of fine Searge with long sleeves, which is the common wearing: he carrieth the armes a croffe like a Friar, and his eyes low without looking to any side: for euen with their eyes they will not communicate with the common people, for to preserve their authoritie the more with them, that may be more feared.

When any of the foure *Louthias* goeth abroad, except the *Tutan*, or the yearly *Chaen*, they goe accompanied with many Minifters, and fixe Officers doe carrie them on their backes, and they leade a spare Horse with a faire Saddle, and a cloth of Silke ouer it: the Chaire wherewith they goe is more sumptuous and richer, they carrie before foure, five, or fixe Maces, and two or three Instruments and more Minifters.

When the *Chaen* that cometh every three yeres cometh into the Citie, or for forme important affaires goeth abroad, or some *Quinchay*, they shut vp all the doores in the streets where he passeth, and none doth worke, nor is any scene in the street when hee passeth. The floups are 30 shut vp, and every thing of fale is out of sight. The Officers with coards along the street, doe make three lanes, where the triumphing Arches are made in three Arches: and through the middle passeth the *Louthias* onely, and the Officers on the two sides. And it is not lawfull for any to passe through the middle: they are accompanied of many inferior *Louthias* that goe on foot. And on the one side of the street, and the other are many armed men and others with Banners of red Silke advanced, all standing in good order. In the Court of the house where he is to goe in, are many Kettle-drummes set vpon high flukes to be well played vpon, which are cued downe to the ground with clothes of Silke quartered. After these are many placed in order, with Flags of Silke on high. After these in the same order, are many with Trumpets, and all are in great silence. As soone as the *Louthias* appeareth they all found their Instruments in order: the found of the Instruments ended, they remayne all in to greata silence, as if there were no bodie in the Court, being a great multitude of people. The people at they come in, doe place themselves on the sides, the middle betweene the Instruments remayne voyde, wherewith the *Louthias* passeth. Before these *Louthias* goe commonly many inferior *Louthias*, of those that carrie Maces when they goe abroad. There are also in this Court many men at Armes with

Manner of
their pompe in
the street.

Pompe of the
greater Officers.

Chaen and
Quinchay
splendour.

Noyse and
silence.

lung

long gilt Lances, and with very faire Armour. This is all in the first Court. In the second, along the Gallerie whereof wee spake above, when wee treated of the houses of the great men, that only the *Loubias* pisse through them) on the one side and the other are many inferior *Loubias* with Head-pieces on their heads, some gilt, some with Silver, and with 5 swords hanging at their beltes, and with Coats and Callocks made in fashion of Frockes with fluxes of Gold Silke, which seemeth like vpon plates, but it is a very fine worke made vpon very fine Silke, which seemeth only for brauerie and ornament. Some vie on their heads white Head-pieces garnished with Gold, but are of a very fine leafe and thinne, that seeming an Armour, are not. In this manner also are the *Loubias* inferiours, which doe enuiron the superiour *Loubias*. The Chaires where these doe goe are very rich and of great price, and very sumptuous. The Tables whereon is written the titles of dignitie of these Great men are written with letters of Silver. And when any of these doth enter newly in any Citie with these faile and entertainments, all the *Loubias*, great and small, receiue him at a house (where hee landeth very rich and noble) and from thence they accompanie him vnto his lodging, and being lodged, all doe take their leave with many curtesies. In these receiuing they vie no sumptuous apparel. The great men (when most) wear Coats of red Silke. In their owne seats in their houses, and secretly and in rich attires.

Manner of
inquisition.

No Oaths.

Bribe-crises.

Cane-whip-
ping. Much
is here written
of Prisons and
Executions,
which I haue
omitted.
* Huge Rectors,
or Canees.

Miserable ex-
ecution of misery.

Whensoever by way of inquire or examination any Witenesses are demanded, the *Loubias* doe it in publicke before the Officers and ministers of his Office, and before all the rest that by any means chance to be there present, and this because no fallhood may be vied, nor any sleight in the manner of inquiring; and by consequence in writing. And first they examine the Witenesses severally, and if they doe agree, they ioyne them, and examine the one before the other, till they bring them to alterations and quarrelling by words, that by the words the one speaketh to the other they may come to the knowledge of the truth. And so by this means they doe not comprehend the truth, they give them many stripes and tortures that by one means or other they may know the truth of the matter they enquire or examine: they vie no Oath, for they esteeme nothing of their Gods. They have notwithstanding a respect in the witnessing the persons of quality, and of whom is presumed that they will not easily lye. When they examine any matter of great weight, or a grave person, then they write themselves, the process of the examination. It chanceth sometimes that some of the *Loubias* for a great bribe, or for great friendship let some Prisoner loose, and put another in his place, for there neuer they bring him in by deceit, deceiving him with words, and making the matter light vnto him, or giving him some interest, they name him as the Prisoner they will let loose, that the faults and punishments of the guiltie may fall vpon the innocent. And when sometime in this sort they cannot let the guiltie person loose, they labour to bribe all the Officers to give him for dead among those that die in the prisons. But these inuentions are not vied but where the bribes are great, or the adherents very great and mightie. And so to clew the inconveniences which sometime fall out, when any are imprisoned for weightie matters, or the Prisoners haue great aduersaries, they let downe all the marks of the Prisoners, and cause them to be let at the foot of the writing, that so they may not vie any of the malices abovesaid.

With how much pietie and leasure they kill, with so much cruelty and speed they whip, for in this case they forgoe none. The stripes are such that with reason it might be a sufficient punishment for to amend, for the canes wherewith they whip are plaited below about fourre finger moles a finger thicke (for in those parts are canes as big as a mans leg. And because in *Perugall* are many witenesses of knowledge of the same, I dare simply affirme it, and they are eighty or ninety (spans long.) And their whips are made of these canes of the height of a middle statured man, and his legs layd along, and his hands layd behind. And the Beadles butchering, as they are commanded, the *Loubias* are altogether void of compassion, talking one with another, eating and drinking, and picking their teeth. The cruelty is such, that the Court is full of blood: and when they haue made an end of whipping them, they carrie them not, but like Butchers with much cruelty they draw them by one leg to the Prison. And when the Beadles are whipping, they tell with a loud voice the stripes. If the miserable Prisoners which are in the Prison for grievous faults at the time that this correction is to be done can get a piece of a cord, wherewith they may hang themselves, they goe to buffets who shall hang himselfe first, that the butcherie of the stripes be not executed on them. And the *Perugall* affirmed, which were in Prison, that in one day fortie Prisoners did hang themselves in the Prison where they were, to escape the stripes they were rather willing to lose their liues. And they affirmed, that the cord was very thort, that scarcely there was so much as to come about the necke to tie it, and on a flicke which they flucke in the wall, and because the flicke was very lowe, they pulled one another till they were choaked, going to buffets who should hang himselfe first. When any doth

deeth kill himselfe, or dieth in the Prison, it is the order in *China* to call him in the house of office, and there to be three dayes, where the Rats doe eate him vp. And sometimes the *Chinies* Prisoners doe eate of them with hunger.

Every Citie that is the Head of the Prouince, hath thirteene Dungeons, and in fixe of them are the men condemned to death: there are in *Canton* upward of fifteene thousand Prisoners. There are in every Dungeon only for the condemned to death, one hundred and twenty men that serue for watchies, and haue a *Loubia*ouer them as their Captain, or Gentleman of the round. There be two sorts of tortures, one for the hands, another for the feet, which are murthered by certain flukes to the bruising or breaking of the fingers or toes with cruel paines.

The King hath as many wives as he listeth: and within doores all the seruice is almost of women: whereof he hath a great multitude: and likewise great store of Eunuchs, and there is no other people within the house. The first son that is borne vnto him of any of his wives succeedeth in the Kingdome. The rest he marrieth, and at such time as he marrieth them they are lodged in some of the Cities that he best liketh; where they are well provided of all things necessary for their maintenance, as sonnes to the King. But they neuer see the Kings face any more after they are marrie.

All the Embassadors that come to *China*, with Embassages from Kings or Princes, receiue of the King great rewards and fauours, and they give him Cap and signes of *China*, whereby he hath great priuileges in the Countrey. They may whip and punish the *Chinies* themselves, so that they cannot put any *Loubia* small or great: for to meddle with these would breed great inconveniences. This was the cause that *Fernando * Perez de Andrade* going for Embassador to *China*, that the *Chinies* did rise against him, and hee escaped with his hands on his head, losing some ships: because hauing done vnaccustomed Iustice in *China*, and vpon the *Chinies*, and they forbore him, he would stretch his hand to the *Loubias*. The goods of the Embassador, and of his is free from customes, and to him and to his they give lodgings to dwell in, and all things necessary while they are in the Countrey. No man, nor a *Loubia* may disturbe him in any thing, nor any thing of his. One *Loubia* would haue whippied one of *Siam*, for hauing carried a message to the Prison to certaine *Portugals* that were in Prison. One of the Officers liued vnto him that was present, that he was of *Siam* of the Embassage, whereof being satisfied therewith to let him goe in peace, desiring him he would not doe so againe.

With the *Chinies* being so great as at the beginning we said and declared, the King hath such meanes and industrie in the gouernement thereof, that every month he knoweth all that passeth through all the Realme, and he knoweth it in this manner. All matters of Iustice and of Warre, and all annuities with all that is worth the knowing in every one of the Prouinces is referred by the *Loubias*, and by other persons to the *Pomchais*, and the *Pomchais* make a relation of all by writing to the *Tuan*. The *Tuan* is bound to send a Post every month to the Court, which carrieth the information in writing to the King of all things that passeth in that month. They count their months by the Moones, and they are to be dispatched in such sort, that at the beginning of every Moone the Posts from all the Prouinces are to be at the Court, that the first day of the Moone it may be presented to the King, as relations of all things happened in every Prouince. And although some Prouinces are farre distant from the Court, that the Posts cannot come within a month to the Court: notwithstanding in such manner they agree that every Moone the King is to haue the relation of every Prouince, though the one be of more time then another, because of the one Prouince being farre and the other neerer.

The manner of the Poits is as among vs, they carrie a Horne which they winde when they come neere to any Towne, that they may haue a Horse ready in every Towne within a certaine distance. They are bound when they heare the Horne to haue a Horse ready for him, which is sent with such diligence as all the other seruices of the Officers. And where hee is to passe a Ford, as soone as hee windeeth his Horne with great speed, they carrie him a Boat, as I saw once going to the Citie of *Canton*, in a Towne that was in the way, called *Quaman*. Sometimes it hapneth by the malice of some *Loubias*, when they haue any interest in it, to keepe some thing concealed that the King knoweth not: but woe to them if the King come to know it, for they are grievously punished, as wee shall see in a case hereafter following. Being in *India*, and also in *China*, I was informed that sometimes the King of *China* doth send some men of great altitude disguised through diuers parts of *China*, that they might see how his Officers did serue him. And if there were any nouelties or changes whereof they had not priuie, or made him know, things that were necessarie to provide.

Store of free people, and therefore store of bond, by abused liberitie and force.

The King his wives, children and seruants.

Embassadors priuileges.

* Lay Soder, sent Vice-roy, ad. 1519, and sent this Perez, with a fleet to China, and therein Thomas Perez, Embassador, who were well entertained there. But some Portugals usurping Tamsu, a Chinese Island, and exercising all ouersight, caused a Perce after 4. months travel from Canton to the Court to be taken for a spee, and sent back to Canton, where hee died in Prison among misde-actors. See Masimys, p. 64. who seemeth to disagree: or a little his people, who were accused vnto him. For hee had left 6. ships there, when he went to Canton.

Disguised Intelligence.

Of the Portugall commerce with the Chinois; of the severe Justice executed upon certain Magistrates, for wrongs done to the Portugals.

BEcause we speake many times before of *Portugals*, captives in *China*, it will be a convenient thing that the causes of their Captivitie be knowne, where many notable things will be shewed. Yee are to know, that from the yeere 1554. hitherto, the businesse in *China* are done very quietly and without danger: & since that time till this day, there hath not one ship bene lost but by some mischance: having lost in times past many. Because as the *Portugals* and the *Chinos* were almost at warres, when the Armies came vpon them, they weighed anchor and put for the Sea, and lay in places vnsheltered from tempests, whereby the stormes coming, many were lost vpon the coast, or vpon some shelues. But from the yeere 1554. hitherto, *Lionel de Sosa*, borne in *Algarve*, being chiefe Captaine, and married in *Chaul*, made a covenant with the *Chinases* that they would pay their duties, and that they should suffer them to doe their businesse in their Ports. And since that time they doe them in *Chaul*, which is the first port of *China*: and thither the *Chinases* doe resort with their Silkes and Muske, which are the principall goods the *Portugals* doe buy in *China*. There they haue sure Houses, where they are quiet without danger, or any one disquieting them, and so the *Chinases* doe now make their mercandize well: & now both great and small are glad with the traffike of the *Portugals*, and the fame of them runneth through all *China*. Whereby some of the principall of the Court came to *Canton* only to see them having heard the fame of them. Before the time done with great trouble, they suffered not a *Portugall* in the Countrey, and for great hatred and loathing called them *Fenci*, that is to say, *Men of the Devil*.

Portugals called *Fenci*, and hated. Name-policy.

Lawes of Navigation.

Customes lawes.

China Pirates. *Liampo*.

Chinases, *Nampoi*, or *Nampuz*.

Now they had not commerce with them vnder the name of *Portugals*, neither went this name to the Court when they agreed to pay customes, but vnder the name of *Fangsin*, which is to say, *People of another Coast*. Note also, that the law in *China* is that no man of *China* doe sayle out of the Realme in paine of death. Only it is lawfull for him to sayle along the coast of the same *China*. And yett along the coast, not from one place to another in *China* it selfe it is lawfull to goe without a certificate of the *Louhis* of the Countrey whence they depart: in which is set downe, whither they goe, and wherefore, and the markes of his person, and his age. If he carrieth not this certificate he is banished to the Frontiers. The Merchant that carrieth goods carrieth a certificate of the goods hee carrieth, and how hee payed duties for them. In euery Custom-house that is in euery Province hee payeth certaine duties, and not paying them hee loseth the goods, and is banished to the frontier parts. Notwithstanding the abuse of lawes some *Chinases* doe not leaue going out of *China* to traffike, but these neuer returne againe to *China*. Of these some doe line in *Malacca*, others in *Siam*, others in *Pataue*, and so in diuers places of the South: some of these that goe out without licence are scattered. Whereby some of these which line already out of *China* doe returne againe in their ships vnto *China*, vnder the pretence of some *Portugall*: and when they are dispatched the duties of their ships they take some *Portugall* their friend to whom they giue some bribe, that he may dispatch it in his name and pay the duties. Some *Chinases* desiring to get their lining, doe goe very secretly in these ships of the *Chinases* to traffike abroad, and returne very secretly, that it bee not knowne, nor to his kindred, that it bee not spread abroad, and they incur the penalty that the law doe incur. This law was made because the King of *China* found that the much communication of the strangers might be the cause of some riings. And because many *Chinases* with an excuse of sayling abroad became theues and robbed the Countreys along the Sea coast, and yett for all this diligence there are many *Chinases* robbers along the Sea coast.

These *Chinases* that line out of *China*, and doe goe thither with the *Portugals*, since the offence of *Fernando Peres*, of *Andrada* did direct the *Portugals* to begin to goe to traffike to *Liampo*; for in those parts are no walled Cities nor Villages, but many and great Townes along the coast, of poore people, which were very glad of the *Portugals*, and told them their prouision wherof they made their gayne. In these Townes were these Merchants of *China* which came with the *Portugals*, and because they were acquainted, for their sake the *Portugals* were better entertained. And as these *Chinases* which were among the *Portugals* and the Countrey Merchants in their buyings and sellings, they reaped a great profit thereby. The inferior *Louhis* of the Sea coast receiued also great profit of this traffike, for they receiued great bribes of one and of the other, to giue them leave to traffike, to carrie and recurre their goods. So that this traffike was among them a long while concealed from the King, and from the superior *Louhis* of the Province. After these matters had for some space bene done secretly in *Liampo*, the *Portugals* went by little and little forward, and began to goe and make their merchandise to *Chinches*, and to the llands of *Canton*. And other *Louhis* permitted them already in euery place for the bribes sake, whereby some *Portugals* came to traffike beyond *Nampoi*, which

which is very farr from *Canton*, without the King being witting, or hauing knowledge of this traffike. The matters fell out in such sort, that the *Portugals* wintered in the llands of *Liampo*.

Some *Chinases* that were among the *Portugals*, and some *Portugals* with them, came to colour themselves in such manner that they made great fealties and robberies and killed some of the people. These evils encreased so much that the clamour of the iniured was so great, that it came not only to the superior *Louhis* of the Province, but also to the King. Who commanded presently to make a very great Armada in the Province of *Fuquien*, to driue the theues from all the coast, especially those that were about *Liampo*, and all the Merchants as well *Portugals* as *Chinases* were reputed in this number of theues. Being ready they went forth along the coast of the Sea. And because the windes serued them not for to goe for *Liampo*, they went to the coast of *Chinches*, where finding some of the *Portugals*, they began to fight with them, and in no wife did they permit any wares to come to the *Portugals*; who stayed many dayes there (fighting sometimes) to see if they could haue any remedie for to dispatch their businesse. But seeing they had no remedie, they determined to goe without it. The Captaynes of the Armie knowing this, sent a message to them very secretly by night, that if they would that any goods should come to them, that they should send them something. The *Portugals* very glad with this message, prepared a great and sumptuous present, and sent it them by night because they were so aduised. From thence-forward came many goods vnto them, the *Louhis* making as though they tooke no heed thereof, dissembling with the Merchants. And so were the businesse ended that yeere, which was the yeere 1548.

The yeere following, which was 1549. there was a straighter watch vpon the Coast by the Captaynes of the Armada, and greater vigilance in the Ports and entranes of *China*, in such sort that neither goods nor viuals came to the *Portugals*; but for all the vigilance and watching there was, (as the llands along the Coast are many, for all they ranne in a row along the *China*) the Armies could not haue so much vigilance, that some wares were not brought secretly to the *Portugals*. But they were not so many that they could make vp the ships ladings, and the vetering those goods which they had brought to *China*. Wherefore leauing the goods which they had not vetered in two ships of *China*, of such *Chinases* as were already dismembered from *China*, and Traffique abroad vnder the shadow of the *Portugals*, (in the which they left thirte *Portugals* in charge with the ships and with the goods) that they might defend the ships, and in some Port of *China* where be they could they should sell the goods that remained in change for some Wares of *China*, and hauing ordained this they departed for *India*.

As the people of the Armie of the *Chinases* law the two ships remaine alone, the other ships being gone, they came vpon them, being induced by some Merchants of the Countrey, which discouered to them the great store of goods that remained in those vessels, and the few *Portugals* that remained to keepe them. Then they layd an ambush for them, dressing some *Chinases* alhoare, which being in armes made as though they would set vpon the ships to fight with them, because they were close to the Land, that the *Portugals* being prouoked, should come out of the ships to fight with them, & so the ships might remaine without defence to them of the Armada, which lay watching in an ambush, & did accordingly set vpon the two vessels with great furie & celeritie, saye they, some *Portugals* that were in the ships, and wounding others they took the on: some *Chinases* that hee tooke with him the *Portugals*, hee laboured to perswade foure *Portugals* which had more appearance in their persons than the rest, that they should say, they were Kings of *Malacca*, hee perswaded them in the end, because hee promised to vie them better then the rest, and therewith hee prouoked them. And finding among the clothes that hee tooke a Gowne and a Cap, and asking of one of those *Chinases*, that were taken with the *Portugals* what habit that was, they put in his head, that it was the habit of the Kings of *Malacca*, wherfore hee commanded presently to make three Gownes by that patterne, and three Caps, and so hee appalled them all turre in one fort, to make his taying true, and his victory more glorious. To this was joyned the countenenance of the *Lutbiffi* to see if hee could detayne the many goods that hee had taken in ships.

And to doe this more safely, not to be taken in a lye, hee did great executions vpon the *Chinases* which hee tooke of the *Portugals*, and killing some of them determined to kill the rest. Their things comming to the eares of the *Atiao*, which was his superior, hee disliked greatly that which hee had done, and sent to him presently that hee should kill no more of those which remained, but that hee should come to him presently bringing with him all the prize as well of the things that were yett alive, as of the goods. The *Lutbiffi* ordering his Iourney for to goe to the *Atiao*, as he was commanded, hee commanded foure Chaires to be giuen to them, to whom hee had giuen title of Kings, to be caried in them with more honour. And the other *Portugals* were caried in Coopes with their heads out fast by the neckes betweene the boards that they could not pull them in, but hauing some wounds in their heads, they went bare headed to the Sunne and to the Dew, and were caried on mens shoulers. The *Lutbiffi* went with this Prize through the Countrey with great Majestie, hee carried before him foure Banners displayed, on the which

Disorders of Outragious Chinois, and insolent Portugals.

Briberie.

Mountaine Moule-lark.

Shallowne admiring relation to the same.

Pillory Coops.

were written the names of the four Kings of Malacca. And when he entered into the Townes, he entered with great noyse and Majestic, with sound of Trumpets, and with Cryers which were crying the great victory, the *Loubisi* (naming him) had gotten of the four great Kings of Malacca. And all the great men of the Townes went to receive him with great Reals and Honours, all the Townes running to see the new Victorie.

There is a
nisi.

When the *Loubisi* came with all his pompe and glory where the *Aitao* was, after the giving him particular account of all things passed and of his victory, he manifested to him his pretence and agreed with him to divide the goods between them both, and that he should continue the faying of the Kings of Malacca, that both might receive of the King Honours and Rewards. This being set downe they both agreed that to keep this in secret, the *Loubisi* should go forward in that which he had begun, to wit, he should slay all the *Chinas*, that came there captive. And presently they commanded presently to put it in effect, and so they slew ninetie and odd *Chinas*, among whom were some young youths faire. They left notwithstanding three or four youths and one man, that by them (bringing them to their owne hand) they might certifye the King all that they would, that was to make of the *Portugals* Theues, and conceale the goods which they took: certifying also by these that thole four were Kings of Malacca. And the *Portugals* not having the Language of the Countrey, neither had any person to intreat for or favour them would perish: and they being mightie would make their owne Tale good, following the end by them intended. And for this cause they slue not the *Portugals*, but left them alive, for the greater triumph of the victorie.

The *Loubisi* could not doe this so secretly, but many of those which they slue had kindred in the Countrey, which did grieve at the death of theirs. Whereby, as well by these, as by some *Loubis* that were zealous of Justice, and would not give consent in to great evils and fraudulent dealings, this matter came to the Kings eares, and hee was informed how the *Portugals* were Merchants which came to traffique with their Merchandize to *Chinchoe*, and they were no theues, and how they had falsly given the Title of Kings to four of them, to the end the King should shew great favours, and doe them great honours; and how they had swiped great store of goods: and that for to conceale these evils, they killed men and children without fault.

The Kings
Lust.

As soone as the King was informed of all above said, hee dispatched present from the Court a *Quinchoy*, (of whom we spake before, that is to say *plate of Gold*) And with him he sent other two men of great authority also, of the which the one had bene *Panchea*, the other *Anchoa*, these two as Inquisitors and Examiners of this matter: Commanding and commending to the *Chao* which that yeare went to visit the Province of *Fuquen*, and to the *Panchea* and *Anchoa*, of the same Province, their ayde and assistance to the *Quinchoy*, and the two Inquisitors in all things necessary for them in these busineses. The two that came with the *Quinchoy*, as Inquisitors, went presently to certayne great Houses which had in the midst a great Court, and on the one side of the Court were certayne great and faire Lodgings, and on the other side others in the same sort. Each of the Inquisitors entered in one of these Houses aforesaid. The Prisoners were presently brought to them, and were presented to the one of them, who for courteous remitted them to the other, that he should examine them first, with many words of courtesie. The other sent them againe with great thankfulness. So they were sundry times carried from one to another, each of them willing to give the hand to the other of beginning first, till that one of them yielded and began. And as the matter was of great import and much commended to them, all that the guiltie and the accusers did speake these Officers did write with their owne hands. The *Portugals* had for a great Enemy a *China* man and Pilot of one of the shippes that were taken, and a *China* youth which was a Christian, which from a child was brought up among the *Portugals*: for they were both made of the part of the contrarie *Loubis*, mooved by gifts and promises: the *Loubis* being already depoted of their Offices, and held for guiltie, for the which they were accused before the King.

Manner of ex-
amination.

But though they were thus handled, they were so mightie and so favoured, that they could take from the *Portugals* a *China* youth that served them for an Interpreter, which upon their Petition was againe delivered them. They examined them in this order, the accused were first brought and examined by one of these Officers, and they carried them to the other to be examined againe. And while the other was re-examining the accused, the accusers were brought to him that examined first. And as well the accused as the accusers were all examined by both the Officers, that afterward they both hearing the confessions of the one and the other, they might see if they did agree. And first they examined every one by himselfe. Afterward they examined them altogether, for to see if the one did contrary the other, or did contend and revile one another, that so by little and little they might gather the truth of the case. In these examinations the two were contrary, to wit, the *Pilot*, and the *Christian China* youth, and had many stripes, because they agreed in some things. The *Loubis* did always shew themselves glad to heare the *Portugals* in their defence, who alleged in their defence, that if they would know who they were, and how they were Merchants and not Theues, they should tend to enquire of them along the Coast of *Chinchoe*, that there they should know the truth, which they might

R. 109

know of the Merchants of the Countrey, with whom a great many yeeres agoe they had dealt, and that they might know that they were no Kings, for Kings do not abate themselves so much as to come with so few men to play the Merchants, and if before they said the contrary, it was by the deceit of the *Loubis*, and to receive better value of him in their perils.

Having this information of the *Portugals*, presently with the opinion of the *Quinchoy* and the other Officers, they went to *Chinchoe* both of them, to enquire of the truth of that which the *Portugals* had told them; and discovering there the truth of the *Portugals* matter, and the lies of the *Loubis*, and of the *Aitao*, they dispatched presently a Post; wherein they commanded to put the *Loubis* and the *Aitao* in Prison, and in good safeguard. Wherefore from thence forward all men began to favour them very much. If notwithstanding this examination had bin made in *Chempoo*, as it was in *Chinchoe*, the *Portugals* could not have chosen but have paid it ill, according to the greatness of the evils they had done there. After the *Loubis* returned from *Chinchoe*, they commanded to bring the *Portugals* before them, and comforted them very much, shewing them great good-will, and saying to them, that they knew already they were no theues, but were honest men: and they examined againe as well they as their adversaries, to see if they contradicted themselves in any thing of that which before they had spoken. In their later re-examinations the *Pilot of China*, which before had shewed himselfe against the *Portugals*, and had bene on the *Loubis* side, seeing that the *Loubis* were already in Prison, and that now they could doe them no good, and that the *Portugals* were already favoured, and that the truth was already knowne, hee gained himselfe of all that he had said, and said that it was true, that the *Portugals* were no theues nor Kings, but Merchants, and very good men, and discovered the goods which the *Loubis* had taken when hee surprised the *Portugals*. And that till then hee had said to the contrary, was for the great promises which the *Loubis* promised him, and for the great threats they vied to him if hee did it not. But seeing they were already in Prison, and hee knew they could doe him no hurt, hee would now speake the truth. They then commanded to torment him, and whip him very sore, to see if he would gain say himselfe, but hee still continued in the same confession.

When the
fall out.

The *Quinchoy*
magnificent
entertainment.

All the examinations and diligences necessarie in this businesse ended, the *Quinchoy* willing to depart for the Court with his company, would first see the *Portugals*, and give a sight of himselfe to the Cite. The sight was of great brightness in the manner hee went abroad in the Cite, Ancients displayed and very faire, and with many Trumpets and little drummes, and many other things which in such pompes are vied. And accompanied in this manner, hee went to certaine noble and gallant houses. And all the great men taking their leave of him, hee commanded the *Portugals* to come neere him, and after a few words hee dismissed them: for this was not but only to see them. Before these *Loubis* departed they commanded the *Louthias* of the Countrey, and the *Laysors*, that all of them should favour the *Portugals*, and give them good entertainment, and should command to give them all things necessarie for their persons. And commanded every one to set his name in a piece of Paper, because that while they were at the examinations, and the matters were dispatching, they should not craftily make some misting. And let them communicate with any person. Being gone from the Cite, they lodged in a small Towne, where they set in order all the Papers, and ingrossing only that which was necessarie. And having ingrossed all that they were to carry to the Court, they burned all the rest. And because these three men which they took for helpers should not spread abroad any thing of that which they had seene, or heard, or written, they left them thus up with great vigilance, that none should speake with them, commanding to give them all things necessarie very abundantly vntill the Kings Sentence came from Court, and were declared. The Papers being very presented in Court, and all seene by the King and by his Officers, he pronounced the Sentence in manner and forme following.

* It is here
abridged.
The Kings
Sentences.

Pimpu by commandment of the King. Because Chaipuu, Huchin Tutan without my commandment, or making mee priue thereto, after the taking of so much people, commanded them to see *Jaime*: hee being willing to provide them with Justice, first to know the truth by Quantium, my *Quinchoy*, who taking with him the *Louthias* which I sent to examine the truth of the *Portugals*, and *Quinchoy* of the *Aitao* and *Luthi*, which had informed mee, that the *Portugals* were theues, and that they came to all the coast of my Dominion to robbe and to murder. And the truth of all being knowne, they are come from doing that which I commanded them. And the Papers being seene by my Pimpu, all. And likewise I commanded them to be perused by Aimpu, and Aitu Chuan, and by Aithayuli Chuquin, whom I commanded to oversee those Papers very well, because the matters were of great weight; wherein I would provide with Justice, which thus being seene and perused by them all, it was manifest that the *Portugals* came many yeeres before to the coast of *Chinchoe* to doe their affaires, which was not convenient they should doe in the manner they did it, but in my Markets, as was alwayes the custome in all my Ports. These men of whom I know not: I know now that the people of

Chinchoe

Chincheo went to their ships about their affairs, whereby I know already that they are Merchants and not thieves, as they had written to me they were.

And I do not blame Merchants to help Merchants, but I put great fault in my Louthias of Chincheo: because that when any ship came to my Port, they should have known if they were Merchants, and if they would pay their duties, and if they would pay them, to write presently unto mee. If they had done so, so much evil I did not become done. Or when they were taken, if they had let mee know it, I had commanded to let them at liberty. And although I see a custom in my Ports the ships that come unto them to be searched. I by custom for to pay their duties: they being very farre off, it was not necessarie but to let them do their business, and goe for their Countries. Besides, this my Louthias "which knew these men to be Merchants did not tell it mee, but concealed it from mee, whereby they were the cause of many people being taken and slaine. And those that remayned alive as they could not speake, did so much 10
towa'd Heaven, and demanded from their hearts justice of Heaven (they could not speake, did so much premeore the Heavens) Besides these things I know that the Aitao, and the Luthiuli did so much evil for contenting of the many goods which they took from the Portugals, having no regard whether those which they took, and took the goods from, were good or evil men. Likewise the Louthias along the Sea coast knew these men to be Merchants, and certified mee not. And all of them, as they were, were the cause of so much evil. I know more by my Quinchey, that the Aitao, and the Luthiuli had Letters, by the which they knew that the Portugals were not thieves: but Merchants, and knowing this they were not contented with the taking of them, but they wrote many lies unto mee, and were not contented with killing of the men, but killed children also, cutting off the feet of some, of others the hands, and at last the heads of them: writing unto mee they had taken and slayne Kings of Malacca. Which 20
case I believing to be true, grieve in my heart.

And because hitherto so many cruelties have become used without my commandement, from hence forward I command that they be not done. Besides thus the Portugals resisted my Armie, being better to have let them: for they have taken, to kill my people. Moreover, it is long since they came to the coast of my Dominion, and about their affairs in manner of thieves, and not as Merchants: wherefore if they had beene naturall as they are strangers, they had incurred paine of death & loss of goods, wherefore they are not without fault. The Tutan by whose commandement these men were taken, said "that by this deed I should make him greater, and the people that he commanded to be slayne, after they had no heads, their hearts, 30
(as they were) and their blind" required justice of Heaven. I seeing so great evil to be done, my eyes could not endure the sight of the Papers without teares, and great griefe of my heart. I know not, my Louthias seeing they took these people, wherefore they let it not goe, that I might not come to know so many cruelties and so great. Wherefore seeing all these things, I do create Senufu chiefe Louthia, because hee did his duty in his charge, and told mee truth, I create also chiefe Louthia Quinchio, because hee wrote the truth to mee of the Pontoo which went to doe their merchandize in secret with the Portugals to the Sea. Those which are evil I will make them better, then they which were Rice.

Likewise because Pachou did traffike with the Portugals, and for bribes did permit the Merchants of the Country to traffike with the Portugals, and yet doing these things, wrote unto mee that the Portugals were thieves, and that they came to my Dominions only in steale. And the same hee said also to my Louthias (which presently I heard, that hee had said so, for they knew already the contrary). And therefore 40
such a one, and such a one (he nameth ten Louthias) It is nothing that all you be banished red Caps, to the which I condemn you: but you deserve to be made better, as I do make you. Given for taking these men thou saydst thou shouldst be greater, and being in the doing of so much evil thou saydst thou didst not feare mee: such a one, and such a one (he nameth nine) for the taking of these men yee say, I would make you great, and without any feare of mee yee all had, such a one, and such a one (he nameth many) I know also yee took bribes. But because you did so, I make you base, (he depriveth them of the dignitie of Louthias.)

Such a one, and such a one (he nameth many). If the Aitao and the Luthiuli would kill so many people, wherefore did you suffer it? But seeing that in consenting you were necessarie unto their death, all are in the same fault. Chifutau, and Chianchutau, were also agreeing to the will of the Aitao and the Luthiuli, and were with them in the laughter, as well those that were as those that were not in fault. Wherefore I condemn you all to red Caps. Lupuu let him have a good heart, because the Tutan being willing to kill this people, he said that he should let mee first know it. To him I will doe no harme, but good, as he deserves, and I command that he remayne Louthia. Sanchi I make my Anchaft of the Cite of Canan. The Auteixo I command to be depofed of his honour. Affau seeing hee can speake 50
with the Portugals, let him have honour and wisdom, and he shall be carried to Chacquean, where hee was borne. (This is the youth with whom the Portugals did defend themselves, seeing them for Interpreter, they gave him title of Louthia, and mayntenance.) Chinque Head of the Merchants that went to the Sea to traffike with the Portugals, and deceived them, bringing great store of goods: a land it shall be demanded of him, and (as in good signeford for the maintenance and expences of the Portugals, and I condemn him and his foure Companions to red Caps, and they shall be banished whether my Louthias shall think good.

To the rest guilty and imprisoned for this matter, I command my Louthias to give to every one the price.

punishment be deserved. I command the Chien to bring me hither the Tutan, that his faults be being perswaded by the great men of my Court, I may command to doe justice on him as I shall thinke good. (This Tutan was also a contentor in the wickednesse of the Aitao and the Luthiuli: for the Luthiuli, and the Aitao made him partaker, and gave him part of the booties which they took from the Portugals, and as the head he should hold for good that which they did: for in truth they durst not have done that which they did if he had not given consent, and agreed with their opinion. This hearing what was judged against him, hung himselfe, saying, that seeing the Heaven had made him whole, that no man should take away his head. The Poutooos which were in Prison, shall be examined againe, and shall presently be dispatched. Chiuichu shall presently be depurged from 10
being a Louthia, without being heard any more. Chibee, head of fixe and twenty, I command that hee and his be all set at liberty, for I find but little fault in them. Those which owe any money I shall bee recovered of them presently. Famichin, and Tomichet shall dye, if my Louthias doe thinke it expedient, if not let them doe as they thinke best. Alfonso of Pauu, and Peter of Cea (these were Portugals) Antonie and Francisco (these were laues) finding them to be guilty of killing some men of my Armie, shall with the Luthiuli and Aitao be put in Prison, where according to the custome of my Kingdom, they all shall dye at leasure. The other Portugals that are alive with all their Servants which are in all this one, I command them to be carried to my Cite of Canan, where I command they be well treated, seeing my heart is so good towards them that for their sake I punish in this sort the people of my Countrey, and deale so well with them for it is my custome to doe justice to all men. The Louthias of the 20
Armada, finding they are in little fault, I command they be set free (I deale in this sort with all men, that my Louthias may see that all that which I doe, I doe it with a good zeale.) All these things I command to be done with respect. Hitherto the sentence of the King.

The Portugals that were freed by the sentence, when they carried them whither the King commanded, found by the way all things necessary in great abundance, in the Houses about the Cite, that the King had in every Towne for the Louthias when they travell. They carried then in faxes of Chaires made of Canes on mens backs, and they were in charge of income, till they were delivered to them to have all things necessarie through all places where they had no more of the King every month but one Pom of Rice (which is a measure as much as a man 30
can beare on his backe) the rest they had need of, every one did keepe by his owne industry. Afterward they dispersed them againe by two and two, and three and three through divers places, to prevent that in time they should not become mightie joyning themselves with others.

Those that were condemned to death, were presently put in Prison of the condemned. And Alfonso of Pauu had a meane to give the Portugals to understand that the condemned, And welcome they had given him presently fortie stripes and intreated him very cruelly, throwing himselfe comforted in the Lord. Those which were at liberty, now some and then some, came to the great gifts they received of the Merchants of Portugall, which made their Merchandize in the Cite of Canan.

¶ VI.

Of the Religion in China; difficultie of bringing in Christianity.
Terrible Earth-quake and Tempests in China.

IN the Cite of Canan in the middelt of the River which is of fresh water and very broad, is a little Ile, in the which is a manner of a Monasterie of their Priests; and within this Monasterie I saw an Oratorie high from the ground very well made, with certayne gilt steps before it, made of carved worke; in which was a woman seated with a childe about her necke, and in hand a Lampe burning before it. I suspecting that to be some sheue of Christianity, demanded of some Lay-men, and some of the Idoll Priests which were there, what that woman signified, and none could tell it mee, nor give mee Saint Thomas left there, or by their occasion made, but the conclusion is, that all is forgotten: 50
it might also be some Gentile Image. The greatest God they have is the Heaven, the letter that signifieth it, is the principall and the first of all the Letters. They worship the Sun, the Moone, Images of Louthias, which they worship for having beene famous in some one thing or other. And likewise Statues and Images of some Priests, of the Idols, and some of other men for respect particular to them. And not only worship they these Images, but whatsoever stone they erect on the Altars in their Temples.

The Tanten hanging himselfe, greuous the Himman, or grooved the Hangman rather.

What became of the Portugals.

Heaven is fit both God and Character.

Omiffions and
their offerings.
* A Perilous
fo called.

Lot.

Cruell men to
their foolish
Gods.

Offerings.

The Devil
worshipped.

Paper Offer-
ings.

Two sorts of
the
Moxes.

Seculars.

Fests.

Traditionall
Fables.

They call commonly these Gods *Omiffions*, they offer them Incense, Benjamin, Cinnamon, and another Wood which they call *Cayo*, * *Laque*, and other smelling things. They offer them likewise *Ooba*, whereof I mention made afore. Every one hath a place to pray, and at the entry day in the morning and at Evening they offer Incense and other perfumes. They have in many places (as well in the Townes as out of them) Temples of Lots. In all the ships they faye in, they make presently a place for to worship in, where they carrie their Idols.

In all things they are to enterprize either Journeys by Sea or by land, they vie Lots & cast them before their Gods. The Lots are two sticks made like halfe a Nut-shell, flat on one side, and round on the other: and as bigge as an halfe Nut, and joynted with a string. And when they will call Offings, they speak first with their God, perfwading him with words, and promising him some Offing if he giue him a good Lot, & in it shew him his good Voyage or good successe of his busines. And after many words they call the Lots, And if both the flats sides fall vpward, or one vp another downe, they hold it for an euill Lot, and turne them toward their Gods very melancholy, they call them Dogs, with many other reproaches. After they are wearie of rating them, they soothe them againe with faire milde words, and aske pardon, saying, that the Melancholy of not giuing them a good Lot, caused them to doe them iniurie, and speake injurious words vnto him: but that they will pardon them, and giue them a good Lot; and they promise to offer him more such a thing (because the promises are the better for them that promise them, they make many and great promises and offerings) and so they call Lots so many times till so they fall both on the flat sides which they hold for a good Lot, then remanynge well contented, they offer to their Gods that which they promised. It happeneth many times when they call Lots about any weighty matter, if the Lot fall not out good, or launching a ship to the Sea it goeth not well, and euill eull came to it, they runne to their Gods and cast them in the water, and put them in the flame of the fire, sometimes, and let them scorche a little, and burning them often, and then they carrie them vnder foot, and giue them rayling words, till their businesse be ended, and then they tread them with playing and feasts, and giue them their Offerings.

They hold for a great Offering a Hogges head boyled: they offer Hennes, Geefe, Duckes and Rice all dreft, and a great pot of Wine. After they present it all to the Gods, they set his portion apart, which is, to put in a Dish, the small points of the Hogs eare, the bills, and the points of the claws of the Hennes, Geefe, and Duckes, a few cornes of Rice very few, and put in with great heed, three or foure drops of Wine very heartily, that there fall not many drops from the Pot. These things so set in a Bason that they set them on the Altar to their Gods for to eate, and they let themselves there before the Gods to eate all that which they bring.

They worship the Deuill also, which they point after our fashion: and say that they worship him because he maketh those which are good, Deuills, and the euill, he maketh Buffes, or Kine, or other beasts. And they say that the Deuill hath a Master that teacheth him his Knaueries: these things say the bafe people: the better sort say they worship him because hee shall doe them no hurt.

When they will lanch any new ship to the Sea, their Priests being called by them come in to the ships to doe their Sacrifices with long side Garments of Silke. They fet about the ships many flags of Silke, they paint in the prow of the ship the Deuill, to which they make many references and Offerings, and say they doe it because the Deuill shall doe no hurt to the ship. They offer to the Gods Papers with diuers Images painted, and other of sundry kinde of cuttings, and they burne them all before the Idols with certayne Ceremonies and well tuned Songs, and while their fingring doth last, they ring certayne small Bells, and among all they vie great store of eating and drinking.

In this Countrey are two manner of Priests, the one that haue their head all shauen, these wear on their heads certayne course Caps like vnto Canopie cloth, they are high, and flat-bedd (higher before then behind a hand breadth) made like a Mitre with Pinales: that their wearing is white Coates after the Lay-mens fashion. These live in Monasteries, they haue dining places, and Cels, and many pleasures within their walls. These be others whom commonly the people doe vie for their Burials and Sacrifices, these wear their haire, and blacke like Coates, or of Serge or Linnen, and long like the Lay-men, hauing for a token their haire made fall in the Crowne of the head with a thicke very well made like a clofed land, varnished blacke. None of these Priests haue Wines, but they liue wickedly and filthily.

The first day of the year, which is in the new Moone of March, they make throughout all the Land great Feasts, they visit one another, the chiefe principally doe make great Banquets. How much these people are curious in the rule and government of the Countrey, and in their common Traffique, so much they are beastly in their Gentilities, in the vltage of their Gods and Idols. For besides that which is said, they haue many Gentilical Lyes, of men that were turne into Dogges, and afterward into men, and of Snakes that were converted into men, and many other ignorances.

I entered one day into a Temple and came to an Altar: where were certaine stones fet vp

which they worshipped, and trusting in the little estimation they held their Gods in, and in being men that would be satisfied with reason, I threw the stones downe to the ground, & whereas some ranne very fiercely at me and angry, asking me wherefore I had done that, I went familiarly to them, and smiling, said to them, because they were so inconsiderate that they worshipped those stones. They asked me wherefore should they not adore them? and I shewed them how they were better then they, seeing they had the vltage of reason, feet, hands, and eyes, whereas they did diuers things that the stones could nor doe, and that seeing they were better they should not abate and esteeme so little of themselves as to worship things so vile they being so noble. They answered me that I had reason, and went out with me in company, leaving the stones on the ground: so that there is likelihood and shew of their becoming Christians. And it maketh also much to this purpose, their not making any difference of meate, as all the people of India doth. And seeing that among all the meates they esteeme the Porke most, it is almost impossible for them to become *Turks*.

Notwithstanding, there are two very great inconveniences to make any Christians in this Countrey. The one is, that in no wife they will permit any noueltie in the Countrey, as in some sort it may be scene in the matter of the *Moorers*. So that whatsoever noueltie that is in the Countrey, the *Lambias* take order presently how to repress it; and it goeth no further. Whence it happened in *Canton*, because they saw a *Portugall* measure the entries of the Gates, they fet presently Watches that none should come in without licence, nor goe vpon the Walls.

The second is, that no strange person may enter into *China* without leave of the *Lambias*, nor be in *Canton*, which doe giue him a certaine time to be in *Canton*. The time of the licence ended, presently they labour to haue them depart. Wherefore because I and those which were with me were one month longer in *Canton*, they let vp written boards that none should keepe nor harbour vs in their houses, vnder payne of felle, till wee held it our best cheape to goe to the Shipy. To the absurditie is toynd the common people to be greatly in feare of the *Lambias*, wherefore none of them durst become a Christian without their licence, or at the least many would not do it. Therefore as a man cannot be fettered in the Countrey, he cannot continue Preaching, and by consequence he cannot fructifie and preferre the truth. Thetie was notwithstanding one way how to Preach freely, and fruit might be made in the Countrey, without any doggebarking at the Preacher, nor any *Lambias* doe him hurt any way: which is, if hee haue a licence for it of the King: And it might be obtained if a *solomon* *Smith* were sent vnto the *Emballador* to obtaine the licence to goe about the Countrey, bearing themselves to bee *not* with our Armes. And how our *Law* is so preiudicial to his Dominion and Government, but a great helpe that almightie obey him and keepe his Lawes: This only remedie there is in *China*, to reape any fruit, and not any other (speaking humbly). And without this it is impossible for any Religious man to Preach or fructifie, and because I had not this remedie, holding the absurditie inconuenient, I came to see how the *Portugals* might be able to obtaine the licence to goe about the Countrey, and to fructifie the same.

This people hath besides the ignorances afore said, that filthy abomination, that they forbear no lexe among them. Notwithstanding, Preaching sometimes, as well publicke as priuately against this vice, they were glad to hear mee, saying, that I had reason that which I sayd; but but that they neuer had any that told them that was a sinne, but they say thing euill done. It seemeth that because this sinne is common among them, God was willing to send them a grievous punishment in some places of the earth, the which was common in all *China*. Thetie in the Cite of *Canton*, and being willing to know of a rich *China* Marchant the euils that had happened in the Countrey, and hee not able to tell it me by word of mouth, gave mee a Letter which they had written vnto him of what had happened: saying to me, that I should translate it and giue it him againe: I but not truiting me hee translated it presently, and remanynge with the copie gave me the principall, which I translated into *Portugall* with the helpe of one that could speake our Language and theirs, the tenour of the Letter is this.

The principall *Louision* of *Sauon* and of *Sauon*, wrote vnto the King, saying, that in those Prouinces the earth did shrike terribly, and the dayes waxed darke like night (but I sayd not how long) a South-fayer told them all that should happen. In the yeere before in the month of Sept. the winter, the earth opened in many places, and vnder it were heard great noyses like the fourth of Bells, there followed a great wind with much rayne, and the wind rane about all the Compasse. This winde is called in *China*, *Tyfaune*, and many yerres it hath blowne thus, and it is so raging, that it drieth a Ship vnder faye on the Land a great pace, and the men cannot keepe their feete, nor leaning and holding one by another, and it doth things worseable admiration and incredible. In the yeere that I was in *China*, in the part where the *Portugals* were, they heved the Boat of a Ship of a good bignesse, and the place where it was a land (that this the winde had such force, that it carried it tumbling till it blew into the Sea. And all the houses the *Portugals* had made of timber, and covered with strawe, which were many and

No noueltie.

Precious as
saintly say
of Seagulls.

Note

Chinese Sodo-
mites.

Plagues hap-
ping in *China*

Tofan a terri-
ble reep.

were built upon great stakes, and not very high, it threw them all downe breaking the stakes, And one houc being fastened with four Cables, where many *Portugals* retired themselves, at the last fell also, and onely one that was fastnered with a high place escaped that it fell not, at blow downe these houses was nothing, for within many other things incredible. This wind is most about the points of the Compass, With this wind, and the Lands being shaken with the Earthquakes, many Cities fell and were made desolate, in the which dyed innumerable people.

[illegible]

In a Country called *Cochue*, with fire from Heauen and with many waters of a Flood; many perished, and the land remayned fable to be culminated againe. In a Country called *Enchemen*, at midnight the houles fell, and the Citie remayned defolate and ruined, where perished neere one hundred thousand foules, and in a Citie called *Enchemen*, in one day and a night, the Riuer did flow and ebbe ten times, and with the great flood many people perished. Hitherto the translation of the Letter: that which followeth, was heard by word of mouth of the *Portingals* that were in the Pore of *Canton* in the moneth of May, and I received the Letter in September.

In A Citie called *Saxxi*, from midnight till five of the clocke in the morning, the earth shooke three times, the eighteenth of Ianuarie, 1556. and the next day after, from midnight till noone, happened the fame : the next day following, the twentieth of the Iayd moneth, the earth shooke mightily after midday with great Thunder and Lightning, and all the Prouince was burnt, and all the people thereof, and all the Suburbs, Townes, and Cities : they say it is from bound to bound, fiftie or fixte leagues, that there was not one faued but a Childie, sonne to a kinl- man of the King, which was carried to the King. And the third of Februarie in the fame yeere, in the Citie of *Panguin* where the King is, fell a shower of rayne like blood. These newes brought one of *China* that came to *Canton*, from a Citie neere to *Saxxi*, to giue newes to a *Leshu* that hee should report to his owne houle, and said, that the Citie where hee was a dweller was ouerlowne, and that he knew not whether it would perishe with the rest. That which ought to bee held for truth, is, that in thre Prouinces which commonly are layd to be destroyed, there was no more destruction then of those places wherof the Letter maketh mention, or little more. The agreeing in the Childie, sheweth that the Towne wherof the Letter maketh mention with the childie, was in the Prouince of *Saxxi*. This hath more apparence of truth, because the Letter was written from the Court, then to say that all the three Prouinces perished.

After the happening of the things above said: the fame year in the Province of *Costan*, a woman which went to the *Panchufi*, told him that the Province of *Canfi* would be destroyed with power from Heaven, the which after *hee* was well whipt; was imprisoned: but in the month of May of the fame year, there fell great floure of raine verie hot, with the which the earth seemed to burne, and many people perilled with the great heate; but the Province perished not altogether: wherefore this woman was carried to the King, which was in prison in the place where the *Peringis* were, which told this,

Reader, forasmuch as this Author hath often mentioned, and related also the storie of certaine Portuguese Prisoners in China (one of which was namely Galotto Perera) from whom hee received great part of his China intelligence: I have thought good to adde hither Pereras relations, translated long since out of Italian, and published by R. Willes; having abbreviated some things; in the Erier, that you might have made them at the first hand from this Gentleman which saw them: but abbreviated to present tediousness.

CHAPTER XI.

*The relation of GALEOTTO PERERA, a Gentleman of good credit,
that lay Prisoner in China.*

This Land of *China* is parted into thirteene * Shires, which sometimes were each one a Kingdome by it selfe, but these many yceres they haue beene all subiect vnto one King. *You shal haue a more full description of the

The King maketh alwayes his abode in the great Citie *Pachin*, as much to fayn in our language (as by the name thereof I am aduertised), the * *Towne of the Kingdom*. This Kingdom is so large, that vnder five monthes you are not able to trauell from the *Townes* by the Sea side, to the Court and backe againe, no not vnder three monthes in *Poltz* at your vrgent buisines. The *Polt-horres* in this Countrey are litle of bodie, but i swift of foote. Many do trauell the greater part of this iourney by water in certaine light *Barkes*, for the multitude of *Riuers*, commodious too passage from one Citie to another.

[illegible]

From these places in number infinite, you shall come unto two Cities very populous, and being compared with *Conce*, not possibly to be discerned which is the greater of them. These Cities are as well wall'd as any Cities in all the world. As you come into either of them, standeth to great and mighty a Bridge, that the like thereof hath never scene in *Portugal*, nor else wherefore these Bridges are made so great, is for that the Countrey between the Sea very plaine though it be well proportioned unto the length thereof, yet are they equally built, no higher in the middle than at either end, in such wise that you may directly see from the one end to the other, the tides are wonderfully well engrained after the manner of *Rome* works. But that wee did most marvell at, was therewithall the hugeesse of the stones, the like whereof, as we came into the City, we did see many fey vp in places ditcht by the way, to no small charges of theirs, howbeit to little purpose, whereas no body feeth them but such as do come by. The Arches are not made after our fashion, vnailed with sundry fones for together; but pased; as it were, whole fones reaching from one Pillar to another, in such wise that they lie both for the Arches head, & gallantly serve also for the high-way. I haue beene aforesaid to behold the hugeesse of these aforesaid stones, some of them are twelue paces long and vpward, the least eleven good paces long, and halfe. The wayes each where are gallantly pased with four-square Stone, except it be where for want of Stone they vye to lay Bricke: in this voyage we trauelled our certaine Hills, where the wayes were pitched, and in many places no worfe pased than in the plaine ground.

Wyses pased
bricked, as

The Country is so well inhabited, that no one foot of open ground is left till'd: ^{the} small store of cattell here we fence this way, we saw only certain Oxen wherewithall the country-men doe plough their ground. one Ox draweth the Plough alone, not only in this Shire, but in other places also, wherein is greater store of cattrell. The country-men by art doe this in tillage, which we are constrained to doe by force. Here be sold the woydings of Cloths, footes, although there wanteth not the dung of beests: and the excrements of man are good manurance throughout all *China*. The Dung-farmers sleeke in every three by exchange to buy their durtie ware for Hearbs and Wood. The custome is very good for keeping the Cities cleane. There is great abundance of Hennes, Geefe, Duckes, Swine, and Goates, Wethers have they none: the Hennes are sold by weight, and so are all other things. Two pound of Hennes helth, Goose, or Ducke, is worth two Foit of their money, that is, three halfe penny. Swines flesh is sold at a penny the pound. Beefe beareth the same price, for the scaritie thereof, howbeit Northward from *Fuzumpe*, and further from the Sea coasts, there is Beefe more plentie, and sold better cheape. Beefe only excepted, great abundance of all these Viands we here had in all the Cities were passed through. And if this Country were like unto *India*, the Inhabitants whereof eat neither Hen, Beefe, nor Porke, but keepe that only for the *Portugals* and *Moorcs*, they would be sold here for nothing. But it to fall out that the *Chinese* are the greatest eaters in all the world, they doe feed upon all things, specially vpon Porke, the fatter that is vnto them, the lesse lothsome. The highest price of these things aforesaid, I have set downe, better cheape shall you sometimes buy

*You shal hie
a more full de-
scription of the
Country by la-
ter Authors :
who yet could
not so well as
this, tell their
judicial pro-
ceedings, fenc-
ing, prisons,
executions,
&c. these 13.
are to be va-
derifd be-
sides the
royall Proun-
ces.
Fechin, Pochang,
or Pequim,
or Pequim.
*Cambals fig-
nifeth the
same, and so
the *Meagles* call
this Citie.
Poste Horke.
Their months.
Excellent wals
and an admi-
rable bridge.

**Magnificent
Flowers.**

Wayes paved,
bricked, or
pitched.
Culture and
husbandry.

buy them for the great plenty thereof in this Countrey. Frogs are sold at the same price that is made of Hennes, and are good meat amongst them, as also Dogs, Cats, Rats, Snakes, and all other vnclean meats.

Building of the Cities.

The Cities be very gallant, specially nere vnto the Gates, the which are marvellously great, and couered with Iron. The Gate-houles built on high with Towers, the lower part thereof is made of Bricke and Stone, proportionally with the walls, from the walls vppward, the building is of Timber, and many stories in it one aboue the other. The strength of their Townes is in the mightie Walls and Ditches; Artillerie haue they none. The streets in *China*, and in all the rest of the Cities we haue seene are very faire, so large and so straight that it is wonderful to behold. Their houles are built with Timber, the foundations onely excepted, the which are laid with Stone, in each side of the streets are paintedes, continuall Porches for the Merchants to walke vnder: the breadth of the street is neuertheless such, that in them fiftene men may ride commodiously side by side. As they ride they must needs passe vnder many high Arches of triumph, that crosse ouer the streets made of Timber, and carued diuersly, couered with Tile of fine Clay: vnder these arches the Mercers do vnder their smaller wares, and such as list to stand there are defended from raine, and the heat of the Sunne. The greater Gentlemen haue these Arches at their doores: although some of them be not so mightily built as the rest.

Archers.

Loutas.

I shall haue occasion to speake of a certaine order of Gentlemen, that are called *Loutas*, I will first therefore expound what this word signifieth. *Loutas*, is as much to say in our languages *Sir*, and when any of them calleth his name, he answereth, *Sir*. The manner how Gentlemen are created *Loutas*, & do come to that honour and title, is by giuing a broad Girdle not like to the rest, and a Cap, at the commendement of the King. The name *Loutas* is more general and common vnto mee, than equalitie of honour thereby signified, agreeth withall. Such *Loutas* that doe serue their Prince in weightie matters for iustice, are created after triall made of their learning: but the other which serue in smaller affaires, as Capitaines, Constables, Sergeants by Land and Sea, Receiueurs, and such like, whereof there be in euery Citie, as also in this, very many are made for fauour: the chiefe *Loutas* are serued kneeling.

Chien, al. Chien.

The whole Prouince *China* is diuided, as I haue said, into thirteene Shires, in euery Shire at the least is one Gouverneur, called there *Tuan*, in some Shires there be two. Chiefe in office next vnto them be certaine other named *Chien*, that is, high Commissioners, as you would say, or Visitors, with full authoritie in such wife, that they doe call vnto an account the *Tuanes* themselves, but their authoritie lieth not in many Shire longer than one yeere. Neuertheless, in euery Shire, being at the least seven Cities, yea, in some of them fiftene or sixteene, besides other Boroughs and Townes, not well to be numbred, these Visitors where they come, are so honoured and feared, as though they were some great Princes. At the yeeres end their circuit dooe, they come vnto that City which is chiefe of others in the Shire, to doe Iustice there: finally bullying themselves in the searching out of such as are to receiue the order of *Loutas*, whereof more shall be said in another place.

Pomchishi.

Anchishi.

al. Heachi.

Taisi.

Prisons and

sentencing

offenders.

Loutas Com-

mendement

or

AC.

Quer and besides these officers in the chiefe Citie of each one of these aforesaid thirteene Prouinces, is resident one *Pomchishi*, Capitaine thereof, and Treasurer of all the Kings reuenues. This Magistrate maketh his abode in one of the four great houles that be in all the chiefe Cities. In the second great house dwelleth another Magistrate, called *Anchishi*, a great officer also, for he hath dealings in all matters of Iustice. *Taisi*, another officer so called, lieth in the third house, a Magistrate of importance, specially in things belonging vnto warfare, for therewith he charge. There is resident in the fourth house a fourth Officer, bearing name *Taisi*. In this house is the principall prison of all the Citie. Each one of these Magistrates aforesaid may both lay euill doers in prison, and deliuer them out againe, except the fact bee heynous and of importance: in such a case they can doe nothing, except they doe meet altogether. And if the deed defile death, all they together cannot determine thereof, without recourse made vnto the *Chien* whereloeuer he be, or to the *Tuan*: and iftonnes it falleth out, that the case be referred vnto higher power.

In all Cities, not onely chiefe in each Shire, but in the rest also are meenes found to make *Loutas*. Many of them doe studie at the Princes charges, wherefore at the yeeres end they resort vnto the head Cities, whither the *Chien* doe come, as if hath bene earst said, as well to giue these degrees, as to fit in iudgement ouer the prisoners.

The *Chien* goe in circuit euery yeere, but such as are to be chosen to the greatest offices, meet not but from three yeeres to three yeeres, and that in certain large halls appointed for them to be examined in. Many things are asked them, whereunto if they doe answer accordingly, they are found sufficient to take their degree, the *Chien* by and by granteth it them: but the Cap and Girdle whereby they are knowne to be *Loutas*, they were not before that they be confirmed by the King. Their examination dooe, and triall made of them, such as haue taken their degree want to be giuen them with all Ceremonies, vnto banquet and feast many daies together (as the *Chien* fashion is to end all their pleasures with eating and drinking) and for maiue chosen to doe the King service in matters of learning. The other examines found insufficient to proceed, are sent backe to their studie againe. Whole ignorance is perceived to come at neglig-

gence and default, such a one is whipped, and sometimes sent to prison, where were lying that yeere when this kinde of AG was, wee found many thus punished, and the commanding the cause thereof, they find it was for that they knew not how to answer vnto certaine things asked them.

It is a world to see how these *Loutas* are serued and feared, in such wife, that in publicke assemblies at one shrike they gae, all the seruitors belonging vnto Iustice, tremble thereof. At their being in these places, when they list to moue, be it but euen to the gate, these Seruitors doe take them vp, and carry them in seats of beaten Gold. After this sort are they borne when they goe in the Citie, either for their owne business abroad, or to see each other at home. For the dignitie they haue, and office they doe beare, they be all accompanied: the very meaneit of them all that goeth in these seats is vndered by two men at the least, that cry vnto the people to giue place, howbeit they need it not, for that reuerence the common people hath vnto them. They haue also in their company certaine Sergeants, with their Maces, either siluered, or altogether Silver, some two, some foure, other six, other eight, conueniently for each one his degree. The more principall and chiefe *Loutas* haue going orderly before these Sergeants, many other with Staues, and a great many Catch-poles with Rods of Indian Canes dragged to the ground, for that the streets being paved, you may here a farre off, as well the noise of the Rods, as the voyce of the cryers. These fellows serue also to apprehend others, and the better to be knowen, they wear hurrie-red Girdles, and in their Caps Peccock Feathers. Behinde these *Loutas* come such as doe beare certaine Tables hanged at haues ends, wherein is written in Silver letters the name, degree, and office of that *Loutas*, whom they follow. In like manner they haue borne after them Hats agreeable vnto their titles: if the *Loutas* be meane, then hath he brought after him but one Hat, and that may not be yellow: but if hee be of better sort, then may hee haue two, three, or foure: the principall and chiefe *Loutas*, may haue all their Hats yellow, the which among them is accounted great honour. The *Loutas* for warres, although hee bee but meane, may notwithstanding haue yellow Hats. The *Tuanes* and *Chien*, when they goe abroad, haue besides all this before them led three or foure Horles, with their Guard in Armour.

Furthermore, the *Loutas*, yea, and all the people in *China*, are wont to eat their meat sitting on Stools at high Tables as we doe, and that very cleanly, although they vse neither Table-clothes nor Napkins. Whatsoever is set downe vpon the board is first carued, before that it be brought in: they feed with two Sticks, refraining from touching their meat with their hands, euen as we do with Forkes, for the which respect, they leaue doone any Table-clothes. Neither is the Nation onely ciuill at meat, but also in conuersation and in courtesie they seeme to exceede all other. Likewise in their dealings, after their manner they are so eadie, that they faue passe all other *Gentiles* and *Moors*: the greater States are so vaine, that they line their clothes with the best filke that may be found. The *Loutas* are an idle generation, without all manner of exercises and pastimes, except it be eating and drinking. Sometimes they walke abroad in the fields, to make the Soldiers shoot at Pricks with their Bowes, but their eating passeth: they will hand-eating euen when the other doe draw to shoot. The Price is a great Blanket spread on certaine long Poles, he that striketh it, hath of the best man there standing a piece of Crimfon Taffeta, the which is knit at one his head: in this sort the winner is honoured, and the *Loutas* with their bellies full, returne home againe.

The Inhabitants of *China*, bee very Idolaters, all generally doe worship the heauens: and as we are wont to say, *God knoweth it*: so say they at euery word. *Tian*, *Tauter*, that is to say, *The Heauens* doe know it. Some doe worship the Sunne, and some the Moone, as they thinke good, for none are bound more to one them to another. In their Temple, the which they doe call *Meen*, they haue a great Altar in the same place as we haue, true it is, that one may goe round about it. There set they vnto the Image of a certaine *Loutas* of that Countrey, whom they haue in great reuerence for certaine notable things he did. At the right hand standeth the Deuill, much more vgly painted then we doe vse to set him out, whereunto great homage is done by such as come into the Temple to aske counsell, or to draw lots: this opinion they haue of him, that he is malicious and able to doe euill. If you aske them what they doe thinke of the foules departed, they will answer, that they be immortall, and that as loone as any one departeth out of this life, he becometh a deuil, if he haue liued well in this world, if otherwise, that the same deuil chanceth him into a Bulle, Oxe, or Dog. Wherefore to this Deuill doe they much honour, to him do they sacrifice, praying him that he will make them like vnto himselfe, and not like other beasts. They haue moreover another sort of Deuill, wherein both vpon the Altars, and also on the walls doe stand many Idols well proportioned, but bare headed: These be the *Omofoons*, accounted of them spirits, but such as men heauen doe neither good nor euill, though they be such men and women, as haue chafely liued in this world in abstinence from Fish and Flesh, fed onely with Rice and Salates. Of that Deuill they make some account, for these spirits they care little of nothing at all. Againe, they hold opinion, that if a man doe well in this life, the heauens will giue him many temporall blessings, but if he doe euill, then shall he haue infirmities, diseases, troubles.

Their Maefie.

Manner of eating.

We, that is, the Indian and Spaniards.

Shooting.

Idolany.

Deuill most respected.

troubles, and penurie, and all this without any knowledge of God. Finally, this people knoweth no other thing, then to lue and die, yee because they be reasonable creatures, all seemed good vnto them we speake in our language, though it were not very sufficient.

So did the Roman
Augustus,
Sodomie fre-
quents,
New and full
Mooones,
Birth-dayes.

New yeares
day.

Iustice.

Our manner of praying is well liked them, that in prison importunately they be sought vs to write for them (what as concerning heauen, the which we did to their contentation, with such reason as we knew, howbeit not very cunningly). As they doe their Idolatry they laugh at themselves. The greatest fault we doe finde in them is *Sodomie*, a vice very common in the meaner sort, and nothing strange amongst the best. Furthermore the *Lontues*, withall the people of *China*, are wont to solemnize the daies of the new and full Mooones in visiting one each other, and making great banquets, for to that end, as I haue said, doe tend all their paines and penning their daies in pleasure. They are wont also to solemnize each one his birth day, and their kindred and friends doe resort of custome, with presents of Jewells or Money, receiving againe for their reward good cheere. They keepe in like manner a generall Feast, with great Banquets that day their King was borne. But their most principall and greatest Feast of all, and best cheere, is the first day of their new yeare, namely, the first day of the New Mooone of *February*, so that their first month is *March*, and they reckon the times accordingly, respect being had vnto the reigne of their Princes: as when any deed is written, they date it thus: Made such a day of such a Mooone, and such a yeere of the reigne of such a King.

Now will I speake of the manner the which the *Chineans* doe obserue in doing Iustice. Be cause the *Chineis* King maketh his abode continually in the City *Pachin*, his Kingdome so great, the shires so many, as before it hath bene said: in it therefore the Gouernours and Rules, much like vnto our Sheriffes be so appointed suddenly, and speedily discharged againe, that they haue no time to grow negligent. Furthermore, to keepe the State in more securitie, the *Lontues* that gouerne one shire, are chosen out of some other shire distant farre off, where they must needs their Wives, Children, and Goods, carrying nothing with them but themselves. True it is, that at their coming thither they doe find in a readinesse all things necessarie, their House, Furniture, Seruants, and all other things in such perfection and plentie, that they want nothing. Thus King is well serued without all feare of Treason.

In the principall Cities of the shires be foure chiefe *Lontues*, before whom are brought all matters of the inferior Townes, throughout the whole Realme. Diuers other *Lontues* haue the managing of Iustice, and receiving of Rents, bound to yeeld an account thereof vnto the greater Officer. Other doe see that there be no euill rule kept in the Citie: each one as it behoueth him. Generally all these doe imprison Malefactors, cause them to be whipped and racked, haling them vp and downe by the armes with a cord, a thing very vsuall there, and accounted no shame. These *Lontues* doe vfe great diligence in the apprehending of the Theues, so that it is a wonder to see a Thiefe escape away in any Towne, Citie, or Village. Upon the Sea nere vnto the shore many are taken, and looke euen as they are taken, so be they first whipped, and afterward laid in Prison, where shortly after they all lye for hunger and cold. At that time, when we be in Prison, there dyed of them about threescore and ten. Their wives be certaine pie-ces of Canes, cleit in the middle, in such sort that they seeme rather plaine then sharpe. He that is to be whipped lyeth groueling on the ground. Upon his thighes the Hangman lyeth on blowes mightily with these Canes, that the standers by tremble at their crudelie. Tenne stripes draw a great deale of blood, twentie or thirtie spoyle the flesh altogether, fiftie or threescore will require long time to be healed, and if they come to the number of one hundred, then are they incurable.

The Italian
call the Bra-
pado.
Head Prisoners,
Beating with
Canes.

Examinations.

Oathes.

Prisoner
bearing.

The *Lontues* obserue moreover this: when any man is brought before them to be examined, they aske him openly in the hearing of as many as be present, be the offence neuer so great. Thus did they also because themselves vs. For this cause amongst them can there be no false witness as Iudge amongst vs it falleth out. This good cometh thereof that many being always about the Iudge to heare the Euidence, and heare witness, the Proccesse cannot be falsified, as it hapneth sometimes with vs. The *Moorers*, *Gentiles*, and *Lontues*, haue all their sundry Oathes, the *Moor* doe sweare by their *Mosques*, the *Brachmans* by their *Pile*, the rest likewise by the things they doe worship. The *Chineans*, though they be wont to sweare by Heauen, by the Mooone, by the Sonne, and by all their Idols, in judgement neuertheless they sweare not at all. If for some offence an Oath be vied of any one, by and by with the least excuse hee is tormented, so be the Witnesses he bringeth, if they tell not the truth, or doe in any point disagree, except they be men of worship and credit, who are beleueed without any further matter: the rest are made to confesse the truth by force of Torments and Whips. Besides this order obserued of them in Examinations, they doe feare so much their King, and he where he maketh his abode kepeth them so low, that they dare not once stirre. Again, these *Lontues* as great as they be, notwithstanding the multitude of *Notaries* they haue, not trusting any others, doe write all great Proccesses and matters of importance themselves. Moreover, one vertue they haue worthy of great praise, and that is, being men to well regarded and accounted of as though they were Princes, they be

patient about measure in giuing audience. Wee poore strangers brought before them might say what we would, as all to be Lyes and Falaces that they did write, nor did we stand before them with the vsuall Ceremonies of that Countrey, yet did they beare with vs so patiently, that they caused vs to wonder, knowing specially how little any Advocate or Iudge is wont in our Countrey to beare with vs. For wherefore in any Towne of Christendome should hee accuse a well-knownne man as we were, I know not what end the very Innocents cause would haue: but wee in a Heachen Countrey, hauing our great Enemies two of the chiefeit men in a whole Towne, wanting an Interpreter, ignorant of that Countrey Language, did in the end see our great Adversaries callt into Prison for our sake, and deprived of their Offices and Honour for not doing

Seuerer Iustice.

Iustice yee, not to escape death, for as the rumour goeth, they shall be beheaded.

Some what is now to be said of the Lawes that I haue bene told in this Countrey, Lawes.

And first, no Theft or Murder, at any time pardoned: Adulterers are put in Prison, and the first once proued, condemned to dye, the woman Husband-murderer: this order is kept with men and women found in that fault, but Theues and Murthers are imprisoned as I haue said, where they shortly dye for hunger and cold. If any one haply escape by bribing the Jaylor to giue him meate, his Proccesse goeth further, and cometh to the Court where hee is condemned to dye. Sentence being giuen, the Prisoner is brought in publicke with a terrible band of men that lay him in Irons hand and foot, with a board at his necke one handfull broad, in length reaching downe to his knees, cleit in two parts, and with a hole one handfull downe ward in the Table fit for his necke, the which they enclose vp therein, naying the board fast together, one handfull of the board standeth vp behind in the necke: the sentence and cause wherefore the felon was condemned to dye, is written in that part of the Table that standeth before. This Ceremonie ended, he is laid in a great Prison in the company of some other condemned persons, the which are found by the King as long as they doe lue. The board aforesaid is made to turne with the Prisoners very much, keeping them both from the rest, and eke letting them to eate commodiously, their hands being manacled in Irons vnder that board, so that in fine there is no remedie but death. In the chiefe Cities of euery shire, as we haue before said, there be foure principall Houses, in each of them a Prisoner: but in one of them where the *Taifo* maketh his abode, there a greater and a more principall Prison: then in any of the rest: and although in euery Citie there be many, neuertheless in three of them remaine onely such as be condemned to dye.

A Pillorie
board.

Their death is much prolonged, for that ordinarily there is no execution done but once a yeere, though many dye for hunger and cold, as we haue seene in this Prison. Execution is done in this manner. The *Chian*, to wit the Chief Commissioner or Lord Chiefe Iustice, at the yeares end goeth to the head Citie, where hee heareth againe the causes of such as be condemned. Many times he deliuereth some of them, declaring that board to haue bene wrongfully put about their neckes: the visitation ended, he chooleth out fouen or eight, not many more or lesse, of the greatest Malefactors, the which, to feare and keepe in awe the people, are brought into a great Market place, where all the great *Lontues* meete together, and after many Ceremonies and Superstitions, as the vte of the Countrey is, are beheaded. This is done once a yeere: who lo

suppects that day, may be sure that he shall not be put to death all that yearre following, and so remaineth at the Kings charges in the greater Prison. In that Prison where wee lay were alwayes one hundred and more of these condemned persons, besides them that lay in other Prisons.

These Prisons wherein the condemned captiues doe remaine are so strong, that it hath not bene a heafe, that any Prisoner in all *China* hath escaped out of Prison, for indeed, it is a thing impossible. The Prisons are thus builded. First, all the place is mightily walled about, the wals be very strong and high, the gate of no lesse force: within it three other gates, before you come where the Prisoners doe lye, there many great Lodgings are to be seene at the *Lontues*, *Notaries*, *Partitions*, that is, such as doe there keepe watch and ward day and night, the Court large and paved, on the one side whereof standeth a Prison, with two mighty gates, wherein are kept

Execution.

rich Prisoners as haue committed enormous offences. This Prison is so great, that in it are streets of Trade, buying and selling, and letting out beds to hire: some are daily sent to Prison, some daily deliuered, wherefore this place is neuer voyd of fouen or eight hundred men that goe at liberty.

Into one other Prison of condemned persons shall you goe at three Iron gates, the Court paved and vaulted round about, and opene as it were a Cloyster. In this Cloyster be eight Rooms with Iron Doors, and in each of them a large Gallerie, wherein every night the Prisoners doe lye at length, their feet in the stocks, their bodies hampered in huge wooden gages that keepe them from sitting, so that they lye as it were in a Cage, sleepe if they can: in the morning they are loked againe that they may go into the Court. Notwithstanding the strength of this Prison, it is kept with a Garrison of men, part whereof watch within the Houle, part of them in the Court, some keepe about the Prison with Lanthornes, and Watch-bells, answering one another hie times euery night, and giuing warning lo lowde, that the *Lontues* telling in a Chamber not nere therunto may heare them. In these Prisons of condemned persons remaine

Strength of
the Prisons.

Store of Prison-
ners.

patient

some fiftene, other twentie yeares imprifoned, nor executed, for the loue of their honourable Friends that feeke to prolong their liues. Many of thefe Prifoners bee Shoemakers, and haue from the King a certayne allowance of Rice: fome of them worke for the Keeper, who fuffe-
 reth them to goe as libertie without fetters and boards, the better to worke. Howbeit when the *Louies* calleth his Checke Roll, and with the Keeper vieweth them, they all weare their Lincies, that is, boards at their neckes, Ironed hand and foot. When any of thefe Prifoners dyeth, he is to bee liewe of the *Louies* and *Negriers*, brought out as a gate fo narrow, that there can but one be drawne out there at once. The Prifoner being brought forth, one of the afore-
 said *Paribans*, striketh him thrice on the head with an Iron fledge, that done, hee is deliuered vnto his friends, if hee haue any, otherwise the King hireth men to carrie him to his buriall in the fields.

Courte for Debtors.

Thus Adulterers and Theeues are vfed, Such as are imprifoned for Debt once knowne, lye there vntill it be paid. The *Taufis* or *Louies* calleth them many times before him by the vertue of his Office, who vnderftanding the caufe wherefore they doe not pay their Debts, appointeth them a certaine time to doe it, within the compaffe whereof if they difcharge not their Debts being Debtors indeed, then they be whipped and condemned to perpetuall Imprifonment: if the Creditors be many, and one is to be paid before another, they doe, contrary to our manner, pay him firft, of whom they lart borrowed, and fo ordinarily the reft, in fuch fort that the firft Lender be the laft Recouer. The fame order is kept in paying Legacies: the laft named, recouereth his portion firft.

When I faid that fuch as be committed to Prifon for Theft, and Murder, were judged by the Court, I meant not them that were apprehended in the deed doing, for they need no tryall, but are brought immediately before the *Tifan*, who out of his hand giuefth fentence. Other not taken fo openly, and doe need tryall, are the Malefactours put to execution once a yeare in the chiefe Cities, to keepe in awe the people: or condemned, doe remayne in Prifon, looking for their day. Theeues being taken, are carried to Prifon from one place to another in a Cheft vpon mens fhoulders, hired therefore by the King, the Cheft is fixe handfuls high, the Prifoner feteth therein vpon a bench, the couer of the Cheft is two boards: amidft them both a Pillory-like hole, for the Prifoner his necke, there feteth he with his head without the Cheft, and the reft of his bodie within, not able to moue or turne his head this way or that way, nor to plucke it in: the necke-
 ties of nature he voideth at a hole in the bottome of the Cheft, the meate he eateth is put into his mouth by others. There abideth he day and night during his whole Journey: if happily his Porters ftumble, or the Cheft doe jogge, or be fet downe carelefly, it turneth to his great paines that fiteth therein, all fuch motions being vnto him hanging as it were. Thus were our compa-
 nions carried from *Chiesse*, feuen dayes journey, neuer taking any reft: as afterward they told vs, and their greateft griefe was to flay by the way: as foon as they came beting taken out of the Chefts, they were not able to ftand on their feet, and two of them dyed fhortly after.

Enquies.

When we lay in prifon at *Enquies*, we came many times abroad, and were brought to the Palaces of Noble men, to be feene of them and their wiues, for that they had neuer feene any *Perungall* before. Many things they asked vs of our Country, and our fufions, and did write euery thing, for they be curious in nouelties about meafure. The Gentlemen fiew great curtefie vnto ftangers, and fo did we finde at their hands, and becaufe that many times we were brought abroad into the Citie, fomewhat will I fay of fuch things as I did fee therein, being a gallant Citie, and chiefe in one of the thirteene fhires afore-faid. The Citie *Enquies*, is very great and mightily walled with fquare ftone both within and without, and as it may feeme by the breadth thereof, filled vp in the middle with Earth, laid ouer with Bricke, and covered with Tyle, and after the manner of Porches or Galleries, that one might dwell therein. The ftayres they vfe, are fo eafily made, that one may goe them vp and downe a Horfe-backe, as eftfoons they doe: the ftayres are paved, as alreadie it hath bene faid: there bee a great number of Merchants, euery one hath written in a great Table at his doore fuch things as hee hath to fell. In fo like manner euery Artizan painteth out his craft: the Market places be large, great abundance of all things there be to fold. The Citie ftandeth vpon water, many ftreames runne through it, the banks pitched, and fo broad that they ferue for ftreets to the Citie vfe. Ouer the ftreames are sundry Bridges both of Timber and Stone, that being made leuall with the ftreets, hinder not the paffage of the Barges to and fro, the Channells are fo deepe. Where the ftreames come in and goe out of the Citie, be certayne Arches in the Wall, there goe in and out our *Paras*, that is a kind of Barges they haue, and this onely in the day time: at night thefe Arches are clofed vp with gates, fo doe they fhut vp all the gates of the Citie. Thefe ftreames and Barges doe embellifh much the Citie, and make it as it were to feeme another Venice. The buildings are euen, well made, high not lofted, except it be fome wherein Merchandize is laid. It is a World to fee how great thefe Cities are, and the caufe is, for that the houfes are built euen, as I haue faid, and doe take a great deale of room. One thing we faw in this Citie that made vs all to wonder, and it worthy to be noted: Namely, ouer a Porch at the coming into one of the afore-faid foure Houfes, the which the King hath in euery fhire for his Gouernours as I haue before faid, ftan-

Paras.

Another Venice.

ftandeth a Towre built vpon foure Pillars, each one whereof is but one ftone, each one foure handfuls or grane long: in breadth or compaffe twelue, as many of vs did meafure them. Befides this, their greatneffe fuch in one piece, that it might feeme impoffible to worke them: they bee moreover couered, and in colour, length, and breath fo like, that the one nothing difcreeth from the other.

Towre ftanding on foure Pillars, each of one ftone.

Wee are wont to call this Country *China*, and the people *Chineus*, but as long as wee were Prifoners, not hearing amongst them at any time that name, I determined to learne how they were called: and asked fometimes by them thereof, for that they vnderftood vs not when we called them *Chineus*, I answered them, that all the Inhabitants of *India* named them *Chineus*, wherefore I prayed them that they would tell me, for what occafion they are fo called, whither peraduenture any Citie of theirs bare that name. Herunto they alwayes answered me, to haue no fuch name, nor euer to haue had. Then did I afke them what name the whole Country beareth, and what they would answer being asked of other Nations what Country-men they were? It was told me, that of ancient time in this Country had bene many Kings, and though preiently it were all vnder one, each Kingdome neuertheleffe enioyed that name it firft had, thefe Kingdomes are the Prouinces I fpeake of before. In conclusion, they faid, that the whole Country is called *Tamen*, and the Inhabitants *Tamegues*, fo that this name *China* or *Chineus*, is not heard of in that Country. I doe thinke that the neareneffe of another Prouince therabout called *Cochinchina*, and the inhabitants thereof *Cochingues*, firft difcouered before that *China* was, lying not farr from *Malacca*, did giue occafion both to the one Nation and to the other, that of that name *Chineus*, as alfo the whole Country to be named *China*. But their proper name is that afore-faid.

Tamen the proper name of China. Ta ling-nica is the name of the Malagasy, the name of the Polos name of the Malagasy.

I haue heard moreover, that in the Citie *Nangum*, remayneth a Table of gold, and in it written a Kings name, as a memorie of that refidence the Kings were wont to keepe there. This table ftandeth in a great Palace, couered alwayes, except it bee in fome of their feftiuall dayes, at what time they are wont to let it bee feene: couered neuertheleffe as it is, all the Nobilitie of the Citie goeth of dutie to doe it euery day reuerence. The like is done in the head Cities of all the other Shires, in the Palaces of the *Pouchingins*, wherein thefe aforefaid tables doe ftand with the Kings name written in them, although no reuerence be done therunto but in folemne Feasts.

Tables reuerenced.

I haue likewife vnderftood that the Citie *Pachon*, where the King maketh his abode, is fo great, that to goe from one fide to the other, befides the Suburbs, (which are greater then the Citie it felfe) is requifite one whole day a horfebacke, going hackney pace. In the Suburbs bee many wealthy Merchants of all forts. They told me furthermore, that it was Moted about, and in the Motes great ftore of Filh, whereof the King maketh great gynes. It was alfo told mee that the King of *China* had no King to wage battell withall, beſides the *Tamers*, with whom hee had concluded a peace more then fourecore yeeres agoe.

Their enemies.

There bee Hofpitals in all their Cities, alwayes full of people, we neuer faw any poore bodie beg. We therefore asked the caufe of this: answered it was, that in euery Citie there is a great circuit, wherein bee many houſes for poore people, for Blinde, Lame, Old folke, not able to trauell for age, nor hauing any other meanes to liue. Thefe folke haue in the aforefaid houſes, euery plenty of Rice during their liues, but nothing elfe. Such as bee recieued into thefe houſes, come in after this manner. When one is ficke, blinde, or lame, hee maketh a fupplication to the *Pouchingins*, and prouing that to bee true he writeth, hee remaineth in the aforefaid great lodging as long as hee liueth: beſides this, they keepe in thefe places Swine and Hennes, whereby the poore bee releued without going a begging.

I fay before that *China* was full of Riuer, but now I minde to confirme the fame anew: for the farther we went into the Country, the greater we found the riuer. Sometimes we were fo farre off from the Sea, that where wee came no Sea-filh had bene feene, and Salt was there very deare, of freſh-water Filh wee there great abundance, and that Filh very good: they keepe it good after this manner, Where the Riuer doe meete, and fo paffe into the Sea, there lieth great ftore of Boates, fpecially where no falt-water cometh, and that in March and April. Thefe Boates are fo many that it feemeth wonderfull, neither true they for other then to take fmall filh. By the riuer fides they make leynes of fine and strong Netts, that lye three handfuls vnler water, and one about, to keepe and nourifh their Filh in, vntill fuch time as other filhers doe come with Boates, bringing for that purpoſe certaine great Chiefe lyned with paper, able to hold water, wherein they carrie their filh in euery Citie, Towne, and Village, where they paffe, vnto the people as they need it: moſt of them haue Net-leyes to keepe Filh in alwayes for their prouifion. Where the greater Boates cannot paffe any farther forward, they take leſſer, and becauſe the whole Country is very well watered, there is fo great plenty of diuers forts of Filh, that it is wonderfull to fee: alſurely, wee were amazed to behold the manner of their prouifion. Their Filh is chiefly nourifhed with the dung of Buſſes and Oxen, that greatly fatteth it. Although I fayd their filhing to bee in March and April,

Plentie of filh, and their keeping of them.

at what time we saw them doe it, neuertheless they told vs that they fished at all times, for that vially they doe feed on Fish, wherefore it behooueth them to make their provision continually.

When we had passed *Faquien*, we went into *Quinquen-Shire*, where the fine Clay vessel is made, as I say before: and we came to a Cite, the one side whereof is built vpon the foote of a hill, whereby passeth a River nauigable: there we tooke Boate, and went by water toward the Sea: on each side of the River we found many Cities, Townes, and Villages, wherein we saw great store of Merchandise, but specially of fine clay: there did we land by the way to buy vials and other necessaries. Going downe this river Southward, we were glad that we drew neere vnto a warmer Country, from whence we had bene farre distant: this Country wee lay passed through in eight dayes, for our iourney lay downe the streame. Before that I doe say any thing of this Shire we came into, I will first speake of the great Cite of *Quin*, wherein alwayes remaineth a *Tutan*, that is a Gouernour, as you haue seene, though some *Tutans* doe gouerne two or three Shires.

That *Tutan* that was condemned for our cause, of whom I spake before, was borne in this Country, but hee gouerned *Faquien-Shire*: nothing it auayled him to bee for great an Officer. This Country is so great, that in many places where we went, there had bene as yet no talk of his death, although hee were executed a while yere before. At the Cite *Quanche* whither wee came, the river was so great that it seemed a sea, though it were so little where we tooke water, that we needed small Boates. One day about nine of the clocke, beginning to goe near the walls with the streame, we came at noone to a bridge made of many Barges, orer-linked all together with two mightie chaynes. There layed we vntill it was late, but we saw not one goe either vp thereon, or downe, except two *Loucheis* that came about the going downe of the Sunne, came and let them downe there, the one in one file, the other on the other side. Then was the bridge opened in many places, and Barges both great and small to the number of fixe hundred began to passe: those that went vp the streame, at one place, such as came downe, at another. When all had thus shot the Bridge, then was it shut vp againe. Wee heard say that euery day they take this order in all principall places of Merchandise, for paying of the custome vnto the King, specially for Salt, whereof the greatest reuenues are made that the King hath in this Country. The passages of the bridge where it is opened, bee so neere the shore, that no-thing can passe without touching the same. To stay the Barges at their pleasure, that they goe no farther forward, are vied certaine yron inplements. The Bridge consisteth of one hundred and twelue Barges, there stayed we vntill the Evening that they were opened, lothfully oppressed by the multitude of people that came to see vs, so many in number, that we were enforced to goe aside from the bank vntill such time as the bridge was opened: howbeit, wee were neuertheless thronged about with many Boates full of people. And though in other Cities and places where we went, the people came so importunate vpon vs, that it was needfull to withdraw our selues: yet were wee here much more molested for the number of people, and this bridge, the principall way out of the Cite vnto another place so well inhabited, that where it was walked about, it might bee compared to the Cite. When we had shot the bridge, we kept along the Cite vntill that it was night, then met we with another river that ioined with this, we rowed vp that by the walls, vntill we came to another bridge gallantly made of Barges, but lesser a great deal then that other bridge ouer the greater streame: here stayed we that night, and other two days with more quiet, being out of the preale of the people. These rivers doe meete without at one corner-point of the Cite. In either of them were so many Barges great and small, that we all thought them at the least to bee about three thousand: the greater number thereof was in the lesser river, where we were. Amongst the rest, here lay certaine greater vessels, called in their language *Parai*, that serue for the *Tutan*, when hee taketh his voyage by other rivers that ioine with this, towards *Pachin*, where the King maketh his abode. Desirous to see those *Parai* we got into some of them, where we found some chambers bedd forth with gilded Bedds very richly, so other furnished with tables and feates, and all other things so neate and in perfection, that it was wonderful.

Quinquen-Shire, as farre as I can perceiue, lyeth vpon the South. On that side we kept at our first entrie thereinto, travelling not farre from the high mountaines we saw there. Asking what people dwelleth beyond those mountaines, it was told me that they bee *Therues*, and men of strange language. And because that vnto sundry places neere this River, the mountaines doe approach, whence the people issuing downe, doe many times great harme, this order is taken at the entrie into *Quinquen-Shire*. To guard this River whereon continually goe to and fro *Parai* great and small fraught with Salt, Fish powdered with pepper, and other necessaries for that Country: they doe lay in diuers places certaine *Parai*, and great Barges armed, wherein watch and ward is kept day and night in both sides of the River, for the safetie of the passage, and securitie of such *Parai* as doe remayne there, though the traouellers neuer goe but many in company. In euery roade there bee at the least thirtie, in some two hundred men, as the passage requireth.

This

This guard is kept vially, vntill you come to the Cite *Oncha*, where continually the *Tutan* of this Shire, and eke of *Cantan*, maketh his abode. From that Cite upward, where the river waxeth more narrow, and the passage more dangerous, there be alwayes armed one hundred and fiftie *Parai*, to accompany other vessels fraught with merchandise, and all this at the Kings charges. This seemed vnto me one of the strangest things I did see in this Country.

When we lay at *Faquien*, we did see certaine *Mogores*, who knew little of their self, that they could say nothing alle, but that *Mabomat* was a *Mogore*, my father was a *Mogore*, and I am a *Mogore*, with some other words of *adhoran*, wherewithall, in abundance from Swines flesh, they lye vntill the Doull take them all. This when I saw, and being sure, that in many

10 *Chunshi* Cities the reliques of *Mabomat* are kept, as if none as we came to the Cite where they followes mee, I informed my selfe of them, and learned the truth. Telle *Mogores*, as they told me, in times past came in great Ships fraught with merchandise from *Pachin* ward, to a Port granted vnto them by the King, as hee is wont to all them that traffike into this Country, where they being arrived at a little Towne standing in the hauens mouth, in time conuered vnto their selfe the greatest *Louche* there. When that *Louche* with all his family was become *Mogorish*, the rest began likewise to doe the same. In this part of *China* the people bee at liberty, euery one to worship and follow what him liketh best. Wherefore no bodie tooke heed thereto, vntill such time as the *Mogores* perceiving that many followed them in superstition, and that the *Louche* fauoured them, they began to forbid wholly the eating of Swines-flesh.

But this Country men and women, choosing rather to forsake Father and Mother, then to leaue off eating of Pork, by no means would yeeld to that proclamation. For besides the great desire they all haue to eat that kind of meat, many of them did lye in ambush: and therefore the people complained vnto the Magistrates, accusing the *Mogores* of a conspiracy pretended betwixt them and the *Louche*, against their King. In this Country, as no suspicion, nor not one trayterous word is long borne withall: so was the King speedily aduerted thereof, who gaue commandment out of hand that the aforesaid *Louche* should bee put to death, and with him the *Mogores* of most importance: the other to be layd first in Prison, and afterward to be sent abroad into certaine Cities, whete they remayned perpetual slaues vnto the King.

To this Cite came by hap men and women therefore and odde, who at this day are brought 30 to five men and foure women, for it is now twentie yeres agoe this happened. Their offspring passeth the number of two hundred, and they in this Cite, as the rest in other Cities, whither they were sent, haue their *Majesties*, whereunto they all resort euery Friday to keepe their Holiday. But, as I thinke, that will no longer endure, then whiles they doe lye, that came from thence, for their posteritie is so confused, that they haue nothing of a *Mogore* in them, but abundance from Swines-flesh, and yet many of them doe eate thereof priuily. They King, and the *Indis* Country will knowe vnto them. It may be soe, as long as they did see our seruants (our seruants were *Peruans*) they iudged them to bee *Indians*: many of their words founded vpon the *Perfick* tongue, but none of vs could vnderstand them.

40 whether they conuered any of the *Chunshi* Nation vnto their selfe: they answered me, that with much ado, they conuered the women with whom they doe marrie, yielding me no other cause thereof, but the difficultie they finde in them to bee brought from eating Swines-flesh, and drinking of Wine. I haue learned more oer, that the Sea whereby the *Mogores* that came to *China* were wont to trauell, is a very great gulf, that filleth into this Country out from *Tartaria* and *Perfia*, leauing on the other side all the Country of *China*, and land because that these *Mogores*, the which we haue seene, bee rather browne then white, whereby they they themselves to come from some warmer Country then *China* is, neere to *Pachin*, where the Rivers are frozen in the winter for cold, and many of them so vehemently, that Carts may passe oer them.

50 We did see in this Cite many *Tartars*, *Mogorites*, *Bremes*, and *Loucheis*, both men and women. The *Tartars* are men very white, good horse-men, and Archers, confining with *China* on that side where *Pachin* standeth, separated from thence, by great Mountaines that are betwixt these Kingdomes. Ouer them bee certaine wayes to passe, and for both sides, *Cafiles* continually kept with Soldiers: in time past, the *Tartars* were wont alwayes to haue wres with the *Chineans*, but these foure yeres past they were quiet, vntill the second yere of our Imprisonment.

The *Mogores* bee in like manner white, and Heathen were are aduerted that of one side they border vpon the *Tartars*, and confine with the *Perfick Tartars* on the other side, whereof we saw in them some tokens, as their manner of clothes, and that kind of Hat the *Sa-racens* doe weare. The *Mogores* affirmed, that where the King lye-h, there bee many *Tartars* and *Mogorites*, but I thought not *China* certaine Blewes of yeare value.

As to the *Bremes*, who be seene in this Cite *Chunshi* certaine men and women, amongst whom, there was one that came not long since, hauing as yet but assayetted vp after the *Pe-*

He speaketh of
Faquien thure
Quanche where
Porcelaine is
made.

Ain Chench.
Great River
and Boares
Boates.

Bridge of 112
Barges.

3000 Barges.

Parai, Barges
with faire
rooms.

Mogores.

That is their
Temple.

From
there
from
the
Canton.

All, And
Tartars.

Monte Vigne.

Mogore.

Bremes.

gues

Southward
from Chenchu
to the Sea.

Anians.

Chenchu.

gues falshon: this woman, and other moe with whom a blacke *Moor* damofell in our company had conference, and did vnderstand them well enough, had dwelt in *Peghu*. This new come woman, imagining that wee meant to make our abode in that Citie, bid vs to bee of good comfort, for that her Countrey was not distant from thence aboute five dayes journey, and that out of her Countrey, there lay a high way for vs home into our owne. Being asked the way, shee answered that the first three dayes the way lyeth ouer certaine great mountaynes and wildernesie, afterward people to bee met withall againe. Thence two dayes journey more to the *Bremes* Countrey. Wherefore I doe conclude, that *Chenchu* is one of the confines of this Kingdome, separated by certaine huge Mountaines, as is hath bene already sayd, that lye out towards the South. In the residue of these mountaines standeth the Prouince *Sian*, the *Leysu* Country, *Cambala*, *Chimapa*, and *Cochinchina*.

This Citie, chieft of other threene, is situated in a pleasant Playne, abounding in things necessarie, Sea-fish onely excepted, for it standeth farrre from the Sea: of fresh Fish so much more, that the Market-places are neuer emptye. The walls of this Citie are very strong and high: one day did I see the *Loucas* thereof goe vpon the walls, to take the view thereof, borne in their leates I spake of before, accompanied with a troupe of Horse-men, that went two and two: It was told me they might haue gone three and three. Wee haue seene moreover, that within this aforesaid Citie the King hath more than a thousand of his kindred lodged in great Palaces, in diuers parts of the Citie: their gates bee red, and the entrie into their houses, that they may be knowne, for that is the Kings colour. These Gentlemen, according to their nearenesse in blood vnto the King, as soone as they bee married, receiue their place in Honour: this place neither encreaseth nor diminisheth in any respect, as long as the King lieth, the King appointeth them their Wiues and Familie, allowing them by the month all things necessarie abundantly, as hee doth to his Gouvernours of Shires and Cities, howbeit, not one of these hath as long as hee lieth, any charge or government at all. They giue themselues to eating and drinking, and bee for the most part burley men of bodie, insomuch that espying any one of them, whom wee had not seene before, wee might know him to bee the Kings Cousin. They bee neuertheless very pleasant, courteous, and fayre conditioned: neither did wee finde, all the time we were in that Citie, so much honour and good entertainment any where, as at their hands. They bid vs to their houses, to eate and drinke, and when they found vs not, or we were not willing to goe with them, they bid our seruants, and slaues, causing them to sit downe with the first. Notwithstanding the good lodging these Gentlemen haue to commodious that they want nothing, yet are they in this bondage, that during life they neuer goe abroad. The cause, as I did vnderstand, wherefore the King so visiteth his Cousins, is that none of them at any time may rebell against him: and thus bee shutteth them vp in three or foure other Cities. Most of them can play on the Lute: and to make that kinde of pastime peculiar vnto them onely, all other in the Cities where they doe lue, bee forbidden that Instrument, the Curtizans and blinde folke onely excepted, who bee Musicians, and can play.

No Lords but
of the blood
reysil.

This King furthermore, for the greater securitie of his Realme, and the auoyding of tumults, letteth not one in all his Countrey to bee called *Lord*, except hee be of his blood. Many great Estates and Governours there be, that during their office are lodged Lord-like, and doe beare the port of mightie Princes: but they bee so many times displaced, and other placed anew, that they haue not the while to become corrupt. True it is, that during their Office they be well provided for, as afterward, also lodged at the Kings charges, and in pension as long as they lue, payed them monthly in the Cities where they dwell, by certaine officers appointed for that purpose. The King then is a Lord onely, not one besides him as you haue seene, except it bee such as be of his blood. A Nephew likewise of the King, the Kings Sisters sonne, lyeth continually within the walls of the Citie, in a strong Palace built. Castle-wife, euen as his other Cousins doe, remayning alwayes within doores, serued by Eunuches, neuer dealing with any matters. Their festiual dayes, new Moones, and full Moones, the Magistrates make great banquetts, and so doe such as bee of the Kings blood. The King, his Nephew, hath name *Yan-fu*, his Palace is walled about, the wall is not high, but foure square, and in circuit nothing inferior to the walls of *Gos*, the out-side is painted red, in every square a Gate, and ouer each gate a Tower, made of timber excellently well wrought: before the principall Gate of the toure, that openeth into the high-street, no *Loucas*, bee he neuer so great, may passe on horsebacke, or carriad in his seate. Amidst this quadrangle, standeth the Palace where that Gentleman lieth, doubletse, worth the sight, although wee came not in to see it. By report the roofes of the towers and house, are glazed greene, the greater part of the Quadrangle let with fangee Trees, as Oakes, Cheinuts, Cypresses, Pine-apples, Cedars, and other such like that wee doe want, after the manner of a Wood, wherein are kept Stagges, Oxen, and other beasts, for that Lord his recreation neuer going abroad, as I haue said.

One preheminence this Citie hath about the rest where wee haue bene, and it of right as we doe thinke, that besides the multitude of Market-places, wherein all things are to bee sold,

fold, that eue every threene continually are cryed all things necessarie, as Fleth of all sorts, fresh Fish, H. aibes, Oyle, Vineger, Meale, Rice, *In summa*, all things to plentifully, that many houses need no seruants, euerie thing being brought to their doores. Most part of the Merchantes remayne in the Suburbs, for that the Cities are shut vp every night, as I haue sayd. The Merchants therefore, the better to attend their businesse, doe chioose rather to make their abode without in the Suburbs, then within the Citie. I haue seene in this Riuer a pretie kinde of Fishing, not to bee omitted in my opinion, and therefore will I set it downe. The King hath in many riuers good store of Barges full of Sea-crowes, that breed, are red, and doe dye therein, in certaine Cages, allowed monthly a certaine prouision of Rice. These Barges the King bestoweth vpon his greatest Magistrates, giuing to some two, to some three of them, as hee thinketh good, to Fish therewithall after this manner. At the houre appointed to Fish, all the Barges are brought together in a circle, where the Riuer is shallow, and the Crowes tyed together vnder the wings, are let leape downe into the water, some vnder, some above, worth the looking vpon: each one as hee hath filled his barge, goeth to his owne Barge and emptieth it, which done, hee returneth to fish againe. Thus hauing taken good store of Fish, they set the Crowes at liberty, and doe suffer them to fish for their owne pleasure. There were in that Citie, where I was, twentie Barges at the least, of these aforesaid Crowes. I went almost every day to see them, yet could I neuer bee thoroughly satisfied to see so strange a kinde of Fishing.

Fishing with
Cormorants,
they tie their
gorges, that
they swallow
one their prey.
One hath pre-
dicted this in
London.



PEREGRINATIONS,
VOYAGES, DISCOVERIES,
OF CHINA, TARTARIA, RVSSIA,
AND OTHER THE NORTH AND
EAST PARTS OF THE WORLD,

By *English-men*, and others.

THE SECOND BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

*The beginning of English Discoveries towards the North, and North-east,
by Sir HUGH WILLOUGHBY, RICHARD CHANCELLOR, and others; of the Muscovie Trade, as also Voyages by Russia, over the Caspian Sea, and thorow
divers Regions of Tartaria.*

§. I.

*The first Voyage for Discoverie with three ships, set forth under the charge of
Sir HUGH WILLOUGHBY Knight, in which he died; and
Moscovia was discovered by Capitaine
CHANCELLOR.*



IN the yeere of our Lord 1553. the seventh of the Raigne of King Edward the sixth famous memorie, *Sebastian Cabota* was Gouverneur of the Myllerie and Companie of the *Merchants Adventurers* for the discoverie of Regions, Dominions, Islands, and places unknowne. Certaine intr. Chions were agreed on by him and the said Companie, subscribed by *Matter Cabota*, the ninth of May: the Kings Letters also procured unto remote Princes in divers languages, and the fleet of three Ships set forth at that time under the command of Sir *Hugh Willoughby* Knight, Capitaine generall. which went in the *Bona Esperanza* Admirall, a ship of an hundred and twenty tunnes, having with her a Pinnace and a Boat: *William Gessersow* was Master of the said ship. The *Edward Bonaventure* was of an hundred and sixty tunne, and had with her a Pinnace and a Boat, in which went *Richard Chancellor*, Capitaine and Pilot Maier of the fleet, and *Stephen Burrough* Maier. The *Bona Confidentia* of ninety tunnes, had with her a Pinnace and a Boat, of which *Cornelius Dufworthe* was Master.

See Cabota.

See the particulars in *Matter Burroughs* printed Voyages, Tom. 1.

The first Voyage.
* This discovery was found written in the *Synonym* which winced a *dragat*, where all the Comjans were forced to death.
Roß Islands.

The Captains and Masters were sworn to doe their true intent, and the ships provided of necessaries let forth on the tenth of May, 1553. for the discoverie of *Cathay*, and divers other Regions, Dominions, Lands, and places unknowne. The fourteenth of July they discovered Land Eastward, and went on shore with their Pinnace, and found thirty little houses, the Inhabitants fled. The Land was full of little Islands, called as they after learned, *«Aegland»* and *«Hal»* geland, in 66. degrees. The distance betweene *Orfordness* and *Aegland* two hundred and fifty leagues. Then we layled from thence twelve leagues North-west, and found many other Islands, and there came to anchor the nineteenth day, and manned our Pinnace, and went on shore to commet vs. In which place there was an innumerable fort of Islands, which were called the *Roß*, being under the Dominion of the King of *Denmarke*; which place was in latitude 66. degrees and 30. minutes. The winde being contrarie, we remained there three dayes, and there was an innumerable fort of Fowles of diuers kinds, of which we tooke very many.

Stanfrew har-
bour.
Lofoot.

The two and twentieth day, the winde coming faire, we departed from *Roß*, flying vnto the Land, which was still East off vs: then went forth our Pinnace to seeke harbour, and found many good harbours, of the which we entred into one with our ships, which was called *Stanfrew*, and the Land being Islands, were called *«Lofoot»*, or *«Lofot»*, which were plentifully inhabited, and very gentle people, being allover the King of *Denmarke*: but we could not learne how faire it was from the mayne Land: and we remained there vntill the twentieth day, 20 being in latitude 68. degrees, and from the foresaid *Roß* about thirtie leagues North-west.

August.

The thirtieth day of July about noone, we weighed our anchors, and went into the Seas, and layled along these Islands North North-east, keeping the Land still in sight vntill the second of August: then hailing in close aboard the Land, to the intent to know what Land it was, there came a Skiffe of the Island aboard of vs, of whom wee asked many questions, who showed vnto vs, that the Land was called *Synnam*, which is the latitude of kuentie degrees, and from *Stanfrew* thirtie leagues, being also under the King of *Denmarke*; and that there was no merchandise there, but only dried fish, and Trane-ole. Then we being purposed to goe vnto *Finmarke*, inquired of him, if we might haue a Pilot to bring vs to *Finmarke*; and he said, that if we could beare iuy, should haue a good Harbour, and on the next day a Pilot to bring vs to *Finmarke*, vnto the Ward-house, which is the strongest Hol in *Finmarke*; and most referred to by report. But when he would haue entred into an Harbour, the Land being very high on every side, there came thick flaxes of wind and terrible whirle-winds, that we were not able to beare in, but by violence were constrained to take the sea againe, our Pinnace being vnshipt: we failed North and by East, the wind encreasing so fore, that we were not able to beare any fayle, but tooke them in, and lay adrift, to the end to let the storme ouer-passe. And that night by violence of winde, and thicknes of mists, we were not able to keepe together within sight, and then about midnight we lost our Pinnace, which was a discomfort vnto vs. As soone as it was day, and the fogge came less, we looked about, and at the last we descried one of our ships to lee-ward off vs: then we sent an hullcocke of our fore-fayle, and bare roome which her, which was the *Confidence*, but the *Ed-ward* we could not see. Then the flaw somthing abating, we and the *Confidence* layled vnto our fayles the fourth day, laying North-east and by North, to the end to sail with the Ward-house, as we did consule to doe before, in case we should part companie. Thus running North-east and by North, and North-east fifty leagues, then we foundled, and had one hundred and sixty fathoms, whereby we thought to be farr from Land, and perceived that the Land lay not as the Globe made mention. Wherefore we changed our courte the sixth day, and layled South-east and by South, eight and forty leagues, thinking thereby to finde the Ward-house.

The Edward
lost, our Pinnace
came two liest;
and the Ed-
ward found
and entered the
Bay of Saint
Nicolas.

The eighth day much winde rising at the West North-west, we not knowing how the coast lay, brooke our fayles, and lay adrift, where foundled and found one hundred and sixty fathoms as before. The ninth day, the winde bearing to the South South-east, we layled North-east five and twenty leagues. The tenth day we foundled, and could get no ground, neither yet could see any Land, whereas we wondered: then the winde coming at the North-east, we ran South-east about eight and forty leagues. The eleventh day the winde being at South, we foundled and found forty fathoms, and faire sand. The twelfth day, the winde being at South anby East, we lay with our fayle East, and East anby North thirty leagues.

W. W. Lightly into
Land, in 72
degrees.

The fourteenth day early in the morning we descried Land, which Land we bare withall, huying out our Boat to discover what Land it might be: but the Boat could not come to Land, the water was so low, where was very much Iceallo, but there was no similitude of habitation, and this Land lieth from *Synnam* East and by North, one hundred and sixty leagues, being in latitude 72. degrees. Then we plyed to the Northward, the fifteenth, sixteenth, and seventeenth dayes.

The eighteenth day, the winde coming at the North-east, and the *Confidence* being troubled with bilge water, and flooked, we thought it good to keepe harbour for her rest: then we bare roome the eighteenth day South South-east, about twenty leagues. The one

and twentieth day we foundled, and found ten fathoms, after that we foundled againe, and found but seuen fathoms, to shallower and shallower water, and yet could see no Land, whereas we maruelled greatly: to auoid this danger, we bare roome into the Sea all that night North-west and by West.

The next day we foundled, and had twenty fathoms, then shaped our course, and ranne West South-west vntill the three and twentieth day: then we descried lowe Land, vnto which we bare as nigh as we could, and it appeared vnto vs vnhabitable. Then we plyed Westward along by that Land, which lieth West South-west, and East North-east, and much winde blowing at the West, we layled into the Sea North and by East thirtie leagues: Then the winde coming about as the North-east, we layled West North-west: after that, the winde bearing to the North-west, we lay with our fayles West South-west, about fourteen leagues, and the decried Land, and bare in with it, being the eight and twentieth day, finding shallow water, and bare in till we came to three fathoms, then perceiving it to be shallow water, and also seeing drie sands, we haled out againe North-east along that Land, vntill we came to the point thereof. That Land turning to the Westward, we ranne along sixteen leagues North-west: then coming into a faire Bay, we went on Land with our Boat, which place was vnhabited, but yet it appeared vnto vs that the people had bene there, by crosses, and other signes: from thence we went all along the coast Westward.

The fourth day of September we lost sight of Land, by reason of contrarie windes, and the September. eighth day we descried Land againe. Within two dayes after we lost the sight of it: then running West and by South about thirtie leagues, we gat the sight of Land againe, and bare in with it vntill night: then perceiving it to be a lee shore, we gat vs into the Sea, to the end to haue Sea roome. The twelfth of September we were haled to the weather-ward againe, hailing then indifferente winde and weather: then being nere vnto the shoare, and the tide almost spent, we came to an anchor in thirtie fathoms water. The thirteenth day we came along the coast, which lay North-west and by West, and South-east and by East. The fourteenth day we came to an anchor within two leagues off the shoare, hailing sixtie fathoms. There we went aloft with our Boat, and found two or three good Harbours, the Land being rocky, and high, but as for people could we see none. The fifteenth day we ran still along the coast vntill the founteenth day: then the winde being contrarie vnto vs, we thought it best to returne vnto the Harbour which we had found before, and so we bare roomer with the same, howbeit wee could not accomplish our desire that day. The next day being the eighteenth, we entred into the Hauen, and there came to an anchor at six fathoms. This Hauen runneth into the Mayne about two leagues, and is in breadth halfe a league, wherein were very many Seale-fishes, and other great fishes, and In this Hauen vpon the Mayne we saw Beare, great Deere, Foxes, and diuers furred beasts, as * Guloines, and such other which were to vs vnknowne, and also wonderful. This remaining in this Ha- wen the space of a weeke, seeing the yeere fare spent, and also very euill weather, as Frost, Snow, and Hayle, as though it had bene the dege of Winter, we thought best to winter there. Wherefore we sent out three men South South-west, to search if they could finde people, who went three dayes journey, but could finde none: after that, we sent out other three Westward four dayes journey, which also returned without finding any people. Then sent we three men South-east three dayes journey, who in like sort returned without finding of people, or any similitude of habitation.

In this Hauen
they died.
* Or, Eleans.

The River or Hauen wherein Sir Hugh Willoughby with the companie of his two ships perished for cold, is called *Arzina* in Lapland, nere vnto *Keger*. But it appeareth by a Will found in a ship that Sir Hugh Willoughby, and most of the companie were alive in January, 1554.

Here endeth
Sir Hugh Will-
oughby his
note, which
was written
with his owne
hand.

A Letter of RICHARD CHANCELLOR, written to his Vncle Master CHRISTOPHER FROTHINGHAM, touching his discoverie of *Moscovia*.

Forasmuch as it is meet and necessarie for all those that minde to take in hand the traueill into strange Countries, to endeavour themselves not only to vnderstand the orders, commodities, and trustfulness thereof, but also to apply them to the setting forth of the same, whereby they may encourage others to the like traueill: therefore haue I now thought good to make a briefe relation of the orders of this my traueill in *Russia*, and *Muscovia*, and other Countries thereto adjoining: because I was my chance to fall with the North parts of *Russia*, before I came towards *Moscovia*, I will partly declare my knowledge therein. *Russia* is very plentiful both of Land and People, and also wealthie for such commodities as the Trane Oyle, the most wherof is made by a River called *Duina*. They make it in other places, but not so much as there. They haue also a great trade in fetching of salt water. To the North part of that Country are the places wherof they haue their Fures, as *Sables*, *Martenes*, greifles *Bewers*, Foxes white, blacke, and red, *Minkes*, *Ermines*, *Mimur*, and *Harts*. There are also a fishes teech, which fish is called

Duina.

Note. called a *Moske*. The takers thereof dwell in a place called *Poffetora*, which bring them upon *Hatts* to *Lampas* to sell, and from *Lampas* carry them to a place called *Colmogro*, where the high *Moske* is holden on *Satan Nicolas* day. To the west of *Colmogro* there is a place called *Gratanoue*, in our language *Noungorde*, where much fine *Flaxe* and *Hempe* groweth, and also much *Waxe* and *Hone*; called *Pleico*; and thereabout is great store of *Flaxe*, *Hempe*, *Waxe*, *Hone*; and that *Towne* is from *Colmogro* one hundred and twenty miles.

Vologda. There is a place called *Vologda*; the commodities whereof are *Tallow*, *Waxe*, and *Flaxe*; but not so great plenty as in *Gratanoue*. From *Vologda* to *Colmogro* there runneth a River called *Duna*, and from thence it falleth into the *Sea*. *Colmogro* groweth *Gratanoue*, *Vologda*, and the *Moske*, with all the Country thereabout with *Salt* and *salt Fish*. From *Vologda* to *Ierisslaue* is two hundred miles, to which *Towne* is very great. The commodities thereof are *Hides*, and *Tallow*, and *Corne* in great plenty, and some *Waxe*, but not so plentiful as in other places.

The *Mosco* is from *Ierisslaue* two hundred miles. The Country betwixt them is very well replenished with small Villages, which are so well filled with people, that it is wonder to see them: the ground is stored with *Corne*, which they carry to the City of *Mosco* in such abundance that it is wonder to see it. You shall meet in morning seven or eight hundred *Steds* coming or going thither, that carry *Corne*, and some carry *fish*. You shall have some that carry *Corne* to the *Mosco*, and some that carry *Corne* from thence, that at the least dwindle a thousand miles off; and all their carriage is on *Slids*. Those which come so farre dwell in the North parts of the *Duke's* Dominions; where the cold will suffer no *Corne* to grow, it is so extreme. They bring thither *Fishes*, *Eggs*, and *Beasts* skinned. In those parts they have but small store of *Cattell*.

Moske. The *Mosco* is five times great: I take the whole *Towne* to be greater then *London* with the *Suburbs*; but it is very rude, and standeth without all order. There houses are all of timber very dangerous for fire. There is a faire *Castle*, the walls whereof are of brick, and very high: they say they are eighteen feet thick, but I do not believe it, it doth not so seeme; notwithstanding, I do not certainly know it; for no stranger may come to view it. The one side is decayed, and on the other side runneth a River, called *Moskva*, which runneth into *Tartarie*, and so into the *Sea*, called *Blare Calpinum*; and so on the North side there is a bafe *Towne*, the which hath also a *Brick* wall about it, and so it is togeth with the *Castle* wall. The Emperor dwells in the *Castle*, whereon are nine faire *Churches*, and therein are religious men. Also there is a *Metropolitan* with divers *Bishops*, I will not stand in description of their buildings, nor of the strength thereof, because we have better in all points in *England*. They be well furnished with Ordnance of all sorts.

The Emperours or *Dukes* house neither in building nor in the outward shew, nor yet within the house is so sumptuous as I have scene. It is very lowe built in eight square, much like the old building of *England*, with small windows, and so in other points.

Now to declare my coming before his *Majestie*: After I had remained twelve dayes, the Secretary which hath the bearing of strangers did send for mee, advertising me that the *Duke* please was to come to come before his *Majestie*, with the King my Masters Letters: whereof I was right glad, and so I came mine attendance. And when the *Duke* was in his place appointed, the Interpreter came for me into the outer Chamber, where sate one hundred or more Gentlemen, all in cloth of Gold very sumptuous, and from thence I came into the inner Chamber, where sate the *Duke* himselfe, with his Nobles, which were four companies: the first sate round about the Chamber on high, yet so that he himselfe sate much higher then any of his Nobles; in a Chair high, and in a long garment of beaten Gold, with an Imperial Crowne upon his head, and a Staffe of *Gold* and *Gold* in his right hand, and his other hand bafte lay upon his Chaire. The Chancellor stood up with the Secretary before the *Duke*. After my dutie done, and my Letter delivered, he bade me welcome, and enquired of mee the health of the King my Master, and I answered, that he was in good health at my departure from his Court, and that my trust was, that he was now in the same. Upon the which he bade me to dinner. The Chancellor presented my Present upon his Grace bare-headed (for before they were all covered) and when his Grace so had received my Letter, I was required to depart: for I had charge not to speake to the *Duke*, but when he spake to mee. So I departed unto the Secretaries Chamber, where I remained two houres, and then I was sent for againe unto another Place, which is called, The golden Palace, but I saw no cause why it should be so called; for I have scene many fairer then it in all points: and so I came into the Hall, which was small and not great as is the Kings Maistries of *England*, and the Table was covered with a Table-cloth; and the *Marshall* sate at the end of the Table with a little white rod in his hand, which *Boord* was full of vessel of *Gold*; and on the other side of the Hall did stand a faire Cupboard of *Plate*.

Dine with the Duke. From thence I came into the dining Chamber, where the *Duke* himselfe sate at his Table without Cloth of estate, in a Gowne of *Silver*, with a *Crowne* Imperial upon his head, he sate in a Chair without high: there sate none neere him by a great way. There were long tables set round about the chamber, which were full sit with such as the *Duke* had at dinner: they were all in white. Above the place where the tables stood were higher by two steps then the rest of the house. In the middle of the chamber stood a Table or Cupboard to set Plate on: which had full of Copes of *Gold*; and among all the

rest there stood four marvellous great Pots or Crudenes as they call them, of *Gold* and *Silver*: I think they were a good yard and a halfe high. By the Cupboard stood two Gentlemen with Napkins on their Shoulders, and in their hands each of them had a Cup of *Gold* set with Pearles and Precious Stones. And when the *Duke* sawe drinking Cups: when he was disposed, hee drinke them off at a draught. And for his service at meate is come in without order, yet it was very rich service: for all were served in *Gold*; not only he himselfe, but also all the rest of us, and it was very much: the Cops all were of *Gold* and very massive. The number that drinke there was, and so doth reverence and do: then must all men stand up, and doe at all times when these words are spoken. And then left off all be geth the *Marshall* Bread, whereof he eateth before the *Duke*; Grace, and so doth reverence and do: And as I said before, the service of his meate is in no order, but cometh in Dish by Dish: and then after his *Crowne*, and in Dinner time two *Crownes*; so that I saw three severall *Crownes* upon his head in good day.

And then when his service was all come in, hee gave to every one of his Gentlemen *Waters* 20 meate with his owne hand, and so likewise drinke. His meat thereby is, as I have heard, that every man shall know perfectly his servants. Thus when Dinner is done hee calls his Nobles before him name by name, that it is wonder to heare how he could name them, how many as hee hath. Thus when Dinner was done I departed to my Lodging, which was an house within my house.

I will leave this, and speake no more of him nor his Household: but I will somewhat declare of his Land and people, with their nature and power in the warres. This *Duke* is Lord and Emperor of many Countries, and his power is marvellous great. For hee is able to bring into the field two or three hundred thousand men: hee neuer goeth into the field himselfe with under two hundred thousand men: And hee leaveth the borders of *Lithland* for sixte thousand men, and upon the borders of *Letto*, sixte thousand men, and toward the *Negs* as *Tatars* sixte thousand, which is wonder to heare of: yet doth hee no Foot-men, but such as goe with the Ordnance and Labourers, which are thirte thousand. The *Horse-men* are all Archers, with such Bows as the *Turkes* have, and they ride forth as doe the *Turkes*. Their Armour is a Coate of Plate, with a skull on their head. Some of their Coats are covered with Velvet or Cloth of *Gold*: their desire is to be sumptuous in the field, and especially the Nobles; and Gentlemen belemed it: but the *Duke* himselfe is richly attyred above all measure: hee is covered finely with Cloth of *Gold* or *Silver*, and so set with stones that it is wonderfull to see it. I have scene the Kings Maistries of *England* and the French Kings *Paulins*, which are farre yet not the unto him.

And when they be sent into farre or strange Countries, or that strangers come to them, they be very glorious. If the *Duke* himselfe goeth but nearly in apparel: and when hee goeth betweene place and another hee be but reasonably apparelled over other times. In the while that I was in *Mosco*, the *Duke* sent two Ambassadors to the King of *Poleland*, which had at the last fine hundred *Horse*, their Gold, and Cloth of *Silver* set with Pearles, and not scant. What shall I further say? I neuer heard of their doing in but meane. And now to the effect of their Warres: They are men without all order in the field. For they run hurrying on heape, and for the most part they never give battayle to their Enemies: but which they do, they do it alby stealth. But I beleve they be such men for hard living as arent under it shall freeze more then a yard thick, the common *Souldier* hath in the field two months, at such time as his head: the most defence they have against the weather is a Felt, which is set against the wind and thereby. Thus doe the most of all his men except they be Gentlemen which have other provision for their provision for himselfe, and his *Horse* for a month or two, which is very wondrous full. For hee himselfe shall eat greene wood, and eat-meale mingled together cold, and drinke water thereto: his *Horse* yet will be labour and frack him right well. I pray you amongst all our boasting *Warriors* how many should we find to endure the field with them but one month. I know no such Region about us that be broken to order and knowledge of *Civill* Warres: If this Prince had within his Countries such men as could make them to understand the things afore said, I do beleve that two of the best or greatest Princes in *Christendome* were not well able to match with him, considering the greatness of his power and the

Golden Vessel.

Shiver of use.

Crownes chaine.

Dukes forces.

Armour and rich attyre.

Exercises.

Vindicated the Souldiers.

Hittinesse.

hardnesse of his people, and straight lining both people and Horse, and the small charges which his Wars stand him in: for hee getteth no wages, except to strangers. They have a yearly spend and not much, as for his owne Countrymen, every one serveth of his owne proper will and clages, saving that hee giveth to his Harquebushers certayne allowance for Powder and shot: or else no man in all this Countrey hath one penny wages. But if any man hath done very good service, hee giveth him a Ferme, or a piece of Land, for which hee is bound at all times to be ready with so many men as the Duke shall appoint: who considereth in his mind, what that Land or Ferme is well able to find and so many shall be bound to serveth at all and every such time as Warres are holden in any of the Dukes Dominions. For there is no man of living, but hee is bound likewise, whether the Duke call for either Soldier or Labourer, to furnish them with all such necessaries as to them belong.

Also, if any Gentleman or man of living doe without Issue Male, immediately after his death the Duke entreats his Land, notwithstanding hee have never so many Daughters, and peradventure giveth it forth with to another man, except a small portion that hee shalbe to marry the Daughters withall. Also, if there be a Rich man, a Fermour, or man of Living, which is stricken in age or by chance is mayned, and be not able to doe the Duke service, some other Gentleman that is not able to live and more able to doe service, will come to the Duke and complaine, saying, your Grace hath such an one, which is comete to doe service to your Highnesse, who hath great abundance of wealth, and likewise your Grace hath many Gentlemen which are poore and lacke living, and we that lacke are well able to doe good service, your Grace might doe well to looke upon him, and make him to be like those that want. Immediately the Duke sendeth forth to inquire of his wealth: and if hee be so provided, hee shall be called before the Duke, and it shall bee said unto him, Friend, you have too much living, and are unprofitable to your Prince, life will serve you, and yett will serve other men that are more able to serve. Whereupon immediately his living shall be taken away from him, saving a little to find himselfe and his Wife on, and he may not once repine thereat: but for as much hee will say, that hee hath nothing, but it is Gods and the Dukes Graces, and cannot say, as were the common people in England say, if wee have any thing that it is Gods and our owne. Men may say, that they were as it were wonderfull great ayes, and obedience, that thus one must give and grant his goods which hee is without bene fraying, and for nothing hee is to be at his Princes pleasure and commandment. Oh, that our sinfull Rebels were had in the like subjection to know their duty toward their Prince. They may not say as some Swages in England say, I would faine the Queene as to serve in my place, or make his Friends to live at home if they have the upper hand. No, no it is not so in this Countrey: for hee shall make humble sute to serve the Duke, and whom hee findeth most to the Warre: hee thinketh hee is most in his favour: and yet as I before have said, hee getteth no wages. If they knew their strength, no man were able to make match with them: for they that dwell weere them should have any rest of them. But I think it is not Gods will: For I may compare them to a young Horse that knoweth not his strength, whom a little Child ruleth and guideth with a bridle, for all his great strength: for if hee did, neither Child nor man could rule him. Their Warres are holden against the Crimee Tartarians, and the Nagayans.

I will stand no longer in the rehearall of their power and Warres. For it were to tedious to the Reader. But I will not part declare their Lawes, and Injuments, and the execution of Justice. And first I will begin with the Common of the Countrey, which the Gentlemen have rule on: And that is, that every Gentleman hath Rule and Justice upon his owne Tenement. And as if it so fall out that two Gentlemen, or two more doe disagree, the two Gentlemen examine the matter, and have the parties before them, and so give the Sentence. And yet cannot they make the end betweene them of the Controversie, but a third of the Gentlemen must bring his Servant or Tenant before the high Justice of that Countrey, and there present them, and declare the matter and cause. The Plaintiffe saith, I require the Law, which is granted: then cometh an Officer and arreisteth the partie Defendant, and serveth him contrary to the Lawes of England. For when they attach any man, they beate him about the legs, untill such time as hee findeth Swearer to answer the matter: And if not, his hands and necke are bound together, and hee is led about the Towne, and beaten about the legs, with other extreme punishments hee come to his Answer: And the Justice demandeth if hee be for Debt, and sayth: Owest thou this man any such Debt? Hee will, perhaps, say nay. Then saith the Judge: Art thou able to deny it? Let vs beare him? By Oath, saith the Defendant. Then hee commandeth to leave bearing him further theyr be had.

Their order in one point is commendable. They have no man of Law to plead their Cause in any Court: but every man pleadeth his owne Cause, and giveth Bill and Answer in writing: contrary to the order in England. The Complaint is in manner of a Supplication, and made to the Dukes Grace, and delivered him into his owne hand, requiring to have Justice as in his Complaint is alleged. The Duke giveth Sentence himselfe upon all matters in the Law. Which is very commendable, that such a Prince will take paines to see ministrations of Justice. Yet notwithstanding it is wonderfully unjust, that thereby the Duke is much deceived. But if it fall out that the Officers be abused in their Justice, they have most condigne punishment. And if the Plaintiffe can nothing prove, then the Defendant must sweare his Oath upon the Crucifixe, whether hee be in the right or no. Then demandeth, if the Plaintiffe be any thing able further to make proove: if hee be not, then sometimes hee will say, I am able to prove it by my body and hand, or by my Champions body, so requiring the Campe. After the other hath his Oath,

it is granted as well to the one as to the other. So when they goe to the field, they swear upon the Crucifixe, that they be both in the right, and that the one shall make the other to confesse the truth before they depart forth of the field: and so they goe both to the battell armed with such weapons as they use in that Countrey: they fight all on foot, and seldom the parties themselves doe fight, except they be Gentlemen, for they stand much upon their reputation, for they will not fight, but with such as are come of as good an house as themselves. So that if either partie require the combat, it is granted unto them, and no Champion is to serve in their rowes; where in no deceit; but otherwise by champions there is. For although they take great oaths upon them to doe the battell truly, yet is the contrary often scene: because the common Champions have no other living. And as for the one partie hath gotten the victorie, hee demandeth the debt, and the other is carried to Prison, and there is himselfe to bid take order.

There is also another order in the Law, that the plaintiffe may sweare in some cases of debt. And if the partie defendant bee poore, hee shall be set under the Crucifixe, and the parties plaintiffe must sweare over his head, and when hee hath taken his oath, the Duke taketh the parties defendant home to his house, and serveth him as his handmaiden, and putteth him to labour, or letteth him for hire to any such honest man, untill such times as his friends make provision for his redemption: or else hee remaineth in bondage all the dayes of his life. Again, there are many that will sell themselves to Gentlemen or Merchants, to be their bond men, to be during their life, meate, drinke, and cloath, and at their coming to have a piece of money, yea, and some will sell their wives and children to be bonds and drudges to the buyer. Also they have a Law for Fellons and pickers: contrary to the Lawes of England.

For by their Law they can hang any man for his first offence: but may keep him long in Prison, and oftentimes beate him with whips and other punishment: and there bee shall remaine untill his friends be able to buy him. If hee be a picker or a cut-purse, and have been very many, the second time hee is taken, hee hath a piece of his Nose cut off, and is burned in the fore-head, and kept in prison till hee findeth for his good behaviour. And if hee be taken the third time, hee is hanged. And at the first time hee is extremely whipped, and not released, except hee have very good friends, or that some Gentleman require to have him in his house, and to be his servant, and in so doing, hee shall enter into great bonds for him: by which means the Countrey is brought into good quietness. But they be naturally given to great deceit, except extreme beating doe bridle them. They be naturally given to hard living as well in lodging. I heard a Russian say, that it was a great deal more living in Prison then forth, but for the great beating. For they have meate and drinke without any labour, and get the charite of well disposed people: But being at libertie they get nothing. The poore is very uncomely, and live most miserably: for I have seen them eat the pike of Herring and other stinking Fille: nor the rich cannot bee so stinking nor rotten, but they will eat it and suffer it: to bee more whole some then other fish or fowle meate. In mine opinion there be no such people under the Sonne for their hardnesse of living. Well, I will leave them in this point, and will not part declare their Religion.

They doe observe the Law of the Greekes with such excess of superstition, as the like hath not bene heard of. They have no graven Images in their Churches, but all painted, to the intent they will not break the Commandment: but for they painted Images they use such Idolatrie, that the like was never heard of in England. They will neither worship nor honour any Image that is made forth of their owne Countrey. For their owne Images, if they have Pictures to declare what they be, and how they be of God, and so be our ours: they say, looke how the Painter or Carver hath made them, so wee doe worship them, and they worship none before they be Christened. They say we be but halfe Christians: because we observe not part of the old Law with the Turkes. Therefore they call themselves more by then us. They have none other learning but their mother tongue, nor will suffer no other in their Countrey. All their service in Churches is in their mother tongue, nor will suffer the old and new Testament, which are daily read among them: and yet their superstition is no lesse. For when the Priest doe read, they have such trickes in their reading, that no man can understand them, nor no man give order to them. For all the while the Priest readeth, the people sit downe and one talketh with another. But when the Priest is at service no man sticheth his egle and daunce like a many Geese.

As for their prayers, they have but little skill, but use to say, As much as they say, Lord have mercy upon me. For the result man within the Land cannot say the Pater noster. And as for the Creed, no man may be so bold as to meddle therein but in the Church: for they say it should not be spoken of in the Church. They have Christ much more adored by his precious Death and Passion: therefore, (say they) wee observe little or none thereof. And I doe beleve them. For if they were given fore, (say they) wee observe little or none thereof. And I doe beleve them. For if they were examined of their Law and Commandments together, they should agree but in few points. They have the Sacrament of the Lords Supper in both kindes, and more ceremonies then we have. They present them in a dish at all such times as any shall require. They be great officers of Candle, and sometimes of money, which wee call in England, smoke penny, with more ceremonies then I am able to declare.

They have four Lent in the yeere, whereof our Lent is the greatest. Looke as we doe begin on the Wednesday, so they doe on the Monday before: And the weeke before that they call the Butter-weeke. And in that weeke they eat nothing but Butter and Milke. Howbeit I beleve there bee in no other Countrey the like people for Drunkennesse. The next Lent is called Saint Peters Lent, and begun

Bondage.

Punishments for Crimes.

Beating.

Miserable poore.

Superstition.

Images and Pictures.

Mother tongue.

Service.

Prayer.

Creed.

Commandments.

Sacraments.

Candles.

Four Lenten.

Chief Saints.

with always the Monday next after Trinitie Sunday, and ends on Saint Peters Euen. If they should break that Fast, their belief is, that they should be come in at Heaven gate. And when any of them dies, they have a solemnall with them on the Coffin, that when the soule cometh to Heaven gate it may deliver the same to Saint Peter, which delivereth that the partie is true and holy Russian. The third Lent begins fifteen dayes before the laste Lady day, and ends on our Lady Euen. The fourth Lent begins on Saint Martins day, and ends on Christmas Euen: which Lent is fulfilled for Saint Philip, Saint Peter, Saint Nicholas, and Saint Clement. For they were the principal and greatest Saints in that Countrey. In these Lents they eat neither Butter, Egges, Malt, nor Cheese; but they are very straitly kept with Fells, Cabbages, and Ruters. And not of this Lent, they observe truely the Wednesdays and Fridays throughout the yeare: and on the Saturday they do fast still. Furthermore, they have a great number of Religious men: which are Black Monks, and they eat no flesh throughout the yeare, but Fish, Malt, and Butter. By their order they with other nations, at Raddo and such like. Their drinks is like our penia Ale, and is called Cunn. They have Service daily in their Churches: and use to go to service two houres before day, and that is made by day light. At none of the clocks they goe in Masse: thus ended, to Dinner: and after that to firste place the expostion of the Gospels that day: how how they weat and mine the Scripture and that together, by report it is wonderfull. As for Whoredoms and Drunkennes there be none such thing: and for Extortion, they be the least commodious under the sunne. Below index of their badness. They have much at much Land as the Duke himselfe hath: but hee is reasonable even with them, as they: When they take heries of any of the power of the Duke, hee hath it in order, when the Advers of any of their Houses dyeth, then the Duke hath all his goods moveable and immovable: so that the Successor buyeth all at the Dukes hands: and by this means they be the best Farmers the Duke hath. Thus with their Religion I make an end, trusting hereafter to know a better.

Vices.

Abbies.

Some additions for better knowledge of this Voyage, taken by CLEMENT ADAMS, Schoole-master to the Quenes Children, from the month of September CHANCEROR.

Thuse this booke of Clement Adams, is Latine, written in a very elegant hand and elegantly stile to King Philip (as I thinke) the very original.

Master Chancelor with his Ship and companie being thus left alone, and become very penurie, heauie, and faguetfull, by this dispersion of the Fleet, hee (according to the order before taken), dispatch his course for Ward-house in Norway, there to expect and abide the arrivall of the rest of the Ships. And being come thither, and having stayed there the space of seven dayes, and looked in vaine for their coming, hee determined at length to proceede alone in the purposed voyage. And as hee was preparing himselfe to depart, it happened that hee fell in companie and speech with certaine Scottish-men: who having vnderstanding of his intention, and willing well to his actions, began earnestly to dissuade him from the further prosecution of the discourse, by amplifying the dangers which hee was to fall into, and committed a reason that might serve to that purpose. But hee holding nothing so ignominious and reproachfull, as inconsistency and leuitie of minde, and perswading himselfe that a man of valour could not commit a more dishonourable part, then for feare of danger to auoid and shun great attempts, was nothing at all changed or discouraged with the speeches and words of the Scots, remayning steadfast and immovable in his first resolution: determining either to bring that to passe which was intended, or else to dye the death.

And so for them which were with Master Chancelor in his Ship, although they had great cause of discomfort by the losse of their companie (whom the feroce tempest had separated from them), and were not a little troubled with cogitations and perturbations of minde, in respect of their doubtfull course; yet notwithstanding, they were of such content and agreement of minde with Master Chancelor, that they were resolute, without all feare or mistrust of future dangers, which cogitation of minde in all the companie did exceedingly increate their Captaines carefulnesse: for hee being swallowed up with like good will and love towards them, feared lest through any error of this, the safety of the companie should bee endangered. To conclude, when they saw their desire and hope of the arrivall of the rest of the Ships to be every day more and more frustrated, they provided to Sea againe, and Master Chancelor held on his course towards that unknown part of the world, and sayled so faire, that hee came at last to the place where hee found no night at all, but a continuall light and brightnesse of the Sunne shining cleerely vpon the huge and mightie Sea. And hauing the benefite of this perpetuall light for certaine dayes, at the length is pleased God to bring them into a certaine great Bay, which was of one hundred miles or there about quere. Whereinto they entred, and somewhat farre within

They arrive in the Bay of Saint Nicholas.

within it cast anchor, and looking every way about them, it hapned that they espied a farre off a certaine Fisher-boate, which Master Chancelor, accompanied with a few of his men, went towards to common with the Fishermen that were in it, and to know of them what Countrey it was, and what people, and of what manner of living they were: but they being amazed with the strange greatnesse of his ship, (for in those parts before that time, they had never seen the like) began presently to auoid and to flee: but hee still following them, at last outooke them, and being come to them, they (being in great feare, as men halfe dead) prostrated themselves before him, offering to kisse his feete: but hee (according to his great and singular courtesie), looked pleasantly vpon them, comforting them by signes and gestures, refusing those duties and seruences of theirs, and taking them vp in his loving from the ground. And it is strange to consider how much favour afterwards in that place, this humanity of his did purchase to himselfe. For they being dismissed, spread by and by a report abroad of the arrivall of a strange Nation, of a singular gentlenesse and courtesie: whereupon the common people came together, offering to these new-come guests victuals freely, and not refusing to traffique with them, except they had bene bound by a certaine religious vfe and custome, not to buy any foraine commodities, without the knowledge and consent of the King.

By this time our men had learned, that this Countrey was called *Russia*, or *Muscovie*, and that *Ivan Oskimich* (which was at that time their Kings name) ruled and gouerned farre and wide in those places. And the barbarous *Russer* asked likewise of our men whether they were, and what they came for: whereunto answer was made, that they were English-men sent into those coasts, from the most excellent King *Edward* the sixth, hauing from him in commendement certaine things to deliver to their King, and seeking nothing else but his amitie and friendship, and traffique with his people, whereby they trusted not, but that great commodity and profit would grow to the subjects of both Kingdomes.

The Barbarians heard these things very gladly, and promised their ayde and furtherance to acquaint their King out of hand, with so honest and a reasonable request. In the meane time Master Chancelor intreated victuals for his money, of the Gournour of that place (who together with others came aboard him) and required hostages of them likewise, for the more assurance of safetie to himselfe and his companie. To whom the Gournours answered, that they knew not in that case the will of their King, but yet were willing in such things as they might lawfully doe, to please him: which was as then to afford him the benefit of victuals.

Now, while these things were a doing, they secretly sent a messenger vnto the Emperour, to certifie him of the arrivall of a strange Nation, and wishall to know his pleasure concerning them. Which message was very welcome vnto him, inasmuch that voluntarily hee invited them to come to his Court. But if by reason of the tediousnesse of so long a journey, they thought it not best so to doe, then hee granted libertie to his Subjects to bargain, and to traffique with them: and further promised, that if it would please them to come to him, hee himselfe would beare the whole charges of poe Horles. In the meane time the Gournours of the place, deferred the matter from day to day, pretending diuers excuses, and saying one while, that the consent of all the Gournours, and another while, that the great and weightie affaires of the Kingdom, compelled them to differ their answer: and this they did perpetually, so long to protract the matter, vntill the messenger (sent before to the King) did returne with relation of his will and pleasure.

But Master Chancelor, (seeing himselfe held in this suspense with long and vaine expectation, and thinking that of intention to delude him, they possted the matter off so often), was very instant with them to performe their promise: Which if they would not doe, hee told them that hee would depart and proceed in his voyage. So that the *Muscovites* (although as yet they knew not the minde of their King) yet fearing the departure indeed of our men, who had such wares things necessary, and to conduct them by land to the presence of their King. And to Master Chancelor began his journey, which was very long and most troublesome, wherein hee had vpon of certaine sleds, which in that Countrey are very common, for they are carried themlselves vpon sleds, and all their carriages are in the same sort, the people almost not knowing any other manner of carriage, the cause whereof is, the exceeding hardnesse of the ground congealed in the Winter time by the force of the cold, which in those places is very extreme and horrible, whereof hereafter we will say something.

But now they hauing passed the greater part of their journey, met at last with the Sled-man (of whom I spake before) sent to the King secretly from the Iuitices or Gournours, who by some ill hap had lost his way, and had gone to the Sea-side, which is neere to the Countrey of the *Tartars*, thinking there to haue found our ship. But hauing long erred and wandered out of his way, at last in his direct returne, hee met (as he was coming) our Captaine on the way with all courtesie and in the most loving manner that could be: wherein expresse commandeement was given, that poe Horles should be gotten for him and the rest of his company without any money. Which thing was of all the *Russer*, in the rest of their journey so willingly done.

The Discourte of Russia.

Messenger sent to the Emperour.

The Emperours courteous letters to Master Chancelor.

that they began to quarrell, yet, and to fight also in striving and contending which of them should put their poole horks to the Sled: so that after much adoe, and great paines taken in this long and wearie journey, (for they had travelled very neere fiftene hundred miles) Master Chancellor came at last to *Adofce*, the chiefe Citie of the Kingdome, and the seate of the King.

HONDIVS his Map of Russia.



Riphean hills,
a tale of Anti-
quities.

Roskomakka,
a strange beast.

The sharpness
of the winter
in Moscovie.

Touching the *Riphean* Mountaines, whereupon the Snow lyeth continually, and where hence in times past it was thought that *Tanus* the river did spring, and that the rest of the wonders of nature, which the *Grecians* fained and invented of old, were there to be seen: our men which lately came from thence, neither saw them, nor yet have brought home any perfect relation of them, although they remayned there for the space of three moneths, and had gotten in that time some intelligence of the language of *Moscovie*. The whole Countrey is plaine and champaign, so and few hills in it: and towards the North, it hath very large and spacious Woods, wherein is great store of Firre trees, a wood very necessarie, and fit for the building of houses: there are also wilde beasts bred in thole woods, as Buffes, Beares, and blacke Wolvers, and another kinde of beast unknown to vs, but called by them *Roskomakka*: and the nature of the same is very rare and wonderful: for when it is great with young, and ready to bring forth, it seeketh out some narrow place betwene two flakes, and so going through them, presseth it selfe, and by that means is eased of her burthen, which otherwise could not be done. They hunt their Buffes for the moit part a horse-backe, but their Beares a foot, with wooden forks. The North parts of the Countrey are reported to be so cold, that the very Ice or water which distilleth out of the mytt wood which they lay upon the fire, is presently congealed and frozen: the quierne groweth so saluine to be so great, that in one and the selfe same fire-brand, a man shall see both fire and Ice. When the winter doth once begin there, it doth last more and more increate by a perpetuall cold: neither doth that cold like, untill the force of the Sunne beames doth dissolve the cold, and make glad the earth, returning to it againe. Our Mariners which we left in

the ship in the meane time to keepe it, in their going vp onely from their cabbins to the hatches, had their breath oftentimes so suddenly taken away, that they eft-soones fell downe as men very neere dead, so great is the thinnesse of that cold Climate: but for the South parts of the Countrey, they are somewhat more temperate.

* The rest of
M. Adams con-
sidering a de-
scription of the
Country, &c. is
here omitted.

The Copie of the Duke of Moscouie and Emperour of Russia his Letters,
sent to King Edward the Sixth, by the hands of
RICHARD CHANCELOVA.

The Almighty power of God, and the incomprehensible holy Trinitie, rightfull Christian Beliefe, &c. We great Duke Iuan Vasiliuich, by the Graces of God great Lord and Emperour of all Russia, great Duke of Volodermer, Moico, and Nouograd, King of Kazan, King of Altcrac, Lord of Plesko, and great Duke of Smolensko, of Twertia, of Ioughoria, of Permia, of Vadska, Rezan, Polotskoy, Rostoue, Yarulaudey, Bealozera, Liefland, Oudoria, Obdoria, and Condensa, Commander of all Siberia, and of the North parts, and Lord of many other Countreies, greeting. Before all, right great and worthy of honour Edward King of England, &c. according to our moit heartie and good zeale, with good intent and friendly desire, and according to holy Christian Faith, and great Governancie, and being in the light of great understanding, our Answer by this our Honourable, with his company, as they shall let you wisely know is this. In the strength of the twentieth years of our Governancie, he it seemeth, that at our Sea-coasts arrived a ship, with one Richard, and his company, and said, that he was desirous to come into our Dominion: and according to his request, both (seeing our Maiestie, and our eyes) and both declared unto us your Maiesties desire, as that we should free Marti, with all sorts of Merchandizes, and upon our Dominion, and among our Subiects, to frequent they have also delivered us your Letters which declare the same request. And hereupon we have given, and said, that wherefore your faithfull Servant Hugh Willoughbie, land or touch in our Dominion, to be well entertained, who as yet is not arrived at your Servants Richard can declare. And we with Christian belief and faithfulness, and according to your Honourable request, and my your ships and vessels, when and as often as they may have passage, with good allowance on our part to see your Merchants may with all kinds of Wares, and where they will make their Market in our Countreies, they shall have their full share with all free Liberties through my whole Dominion, with all kinds of Wares, to come and goe at their pleasure, without any let, damage, or impediment, according to this our Letter, our Word, and our Scale which we have commanded to be under sealed, written in our Dominion, in our Citie and our Palace in the Castle of Mosco, in the year 7060. the second Month of Februarie.

This Letter was written in the *Moscouie* Tongue, in Letters much liketo the *Greeke* Letters, very faire written in Paper, with a broad Scale hanging at the same, sealed in Paper upon of a man on Horse-backe in complete Harness fighting with a Dragon. Under this Letter was ten in the *Moscouie* Letters. Thise Letters were sent the next year after the date of King Edwards Letters, 1554.

After this, entrance of Letters and Embassages passed betwixt King Philip and Queene Marie, and the *Moscouie* Company was infiltrated and received, *Princed* both from their owne and that *Foraine* Prince, a second Voyage being for *Foribria* May, 1555, and Master George Killingworth was made their first agent: the particulars whereof are found at large in Master Hakluyts first Tome of Voyages, as also other things touching that Trade then sailed: which beere I omit, and come to Master Jenkinson's Voyage to Mosco, and thence to Tartaria.

* Here made
three others
after, one as
Embassador
from Queen
Elizabeth to the
Majestie.

II.
The first * Voyage made by Master ANTHONIE JENKINSON,
from the Citie of London, toward the Land of Russia, begunne
the twelfth of May, in the year
1557.

Inf, by the grace of God, the daye above mentioned, I departed from the said Citie, and the same day at *Gravefend*, embarked my selfe in a good ship, named the *Primrose*, being appointed, although unworthy, chiefe Captaine of the same, and also of the other three good ships, to say, the *Iohn Euangelist*, the *Ana*, and the *Trinitie*, having also the conduct of the Emperour of Russia, his Ambassador named *Off Nopis Gregorovich*, who passed with his company in the said *Primrose*. And thus our four tall ships being well appointed, as well for men, as victuals, as other necessary furniture, the said twelfth day of the month of May, we weighed our Anchors, and departed from the said *Gravefend*, in the after-noon, and plying downe the *Thames*, the wind being Easterly, and faire weather, the thirteenth day we came a ground with the *Primrose*, vpon a land called the blacke tayle, where we fate fast vntill the fourteenth day in the morning, and then God bee prayed, shee came off: and that day we pleyed downe as farre as our Ladie of *Holland*, and there came to an Anchor, the wind being Easterly, and there remayned vntill the twentieth day: then we weyed and went out at *Goldsmere* gate, and from thence in at *Balfy* lade, and fo into *Orwell* wades, where we came to an Anchor: but as we came out at the said *Goldsmere* gate, the *Trinitie* came on ground on certayne Rockes, that lye to the North-west of the said gate, and was like to be the one and loft. But by the ayde of God, at the last she came off againe, being very leake: and the one and twentieth day the *Primrose* remaining at an Anchor in the wades, the other three ships bare into *Orwell* Hauen, where I caused the said *Trinitie* to be grounded, searched, and repaired. So we remayned in the said Hauen, vntill the eight and twentieth day: and then the wind being Westerly, the three ships that were in the Hauen, weighed and came forth, and in coming forth the *Iohn Euangelist* came on ground vpon a Sand, called the *Andrus*, where she remayned one tyde, and the next full Sea she came off againe without any great hurt, God be prayed.

The nine and twentieth day in the morning all four ships weighed in the Wades, and that tyde went as farre as *Orfordness*, where we came to an Anchor, because the wind was Northerly: And about fixe of the clocke at night, the wind vered to the South-west, and we weighed Anchor, and bare cleere of the Nefle, and then set our course North-east and by North vntill mid-night, being then cleere of *Tarnouth* lands. Then we winded North and by West, and North North-west, vntill the first of Iune at noone, then it waxed calme, and continued so vntill the second day at noone: then the wind came at North-west, with a tempest, and much raine, and we lay close by, and caped North North-east, and North-east and by North, as the wind shifted, and so continued vntill the third day at noone: then the wind vered Westerly againe, and we went North our right course, and so continued our way vntill the fourth day at three of the clocke in the after-noon, at which time the wind vered to the North-west againe and blew a fresh gale, and so continued vntill the fueneth day in the morning, we lying with all our ships close by, and caping to the Northwards: and then the wind vering more Northerly, we were forced to put roomer with the Coast of *England* againe, and fell ouerthwart *New-castle*, but went not into the Hauen, and so pleyed vpon the Coast the eight day and the ninth.

The tenth day the wind came to the North North-west, and wee were forced to beare roomer with *Flamborough* head, where we came to an Anchor, and there remayned vntill the fueneth day. Then the wind came faire, and we weighed, & set our course North and by East, and so continued the same with a merry wind vntill the one and twenryeth at noone, at which we took the Sunne, and had the latitude in fixtie degrees. Then we shifted our course, and went North North-east, & North-east and by North, vntill the fuen and twentieth day. Then we discovered certain Lands, called *Holick* Lands, lying from vs North-east, being in the latitude of fixty six degrees, fortie minutes. Then we went North and by West, because we would not come too nigh the Land, and running that course foure houres, we discovered, and had sight of *Roff* Lands, joyning to the mayne Land of *Finnmarke*. Thus continuing our course along the Coast of *Normay* and *Finnmarke*, the fuen and twentieth day we took the Sunne, being as farre (not as *Lefost*, and had the latitude in fixtie nine degrees. And the same day in the afternoone appeared ouer our heads a Rain-bow, like a Semicircle, with both ends vpward. Note, that there is betwene the said *Roff* Lands and *Lefost*, a Whirl-pool called *Maltstrand*, which from halfe ebbe vntill halfe flood, maketh such a terrible noyse, that it shaketh the Rings in the doores of the Inhabitant Houses of the said Lands ten miles off. Also it there commeth any Whale within the current of the time, they make a pitfull cry. Moreover, if great Trees be carryed by by force of streames, and after with the ebbe be caft out againe, the ends and boughes of them haue beene so beaten, that they are like the stalkes of Hempe that is bruized. Note, that all the Coast of

Holick Lands
in 66. degrees
40. minutes.
Roff Lands.

Maltstrand a
strange whirl
pool.

Finnmarke is high Mountaynes and Hills, being couered all the yeare with Snow. And hard about the shore of this Coast, there is one hundred, or one hundred and fiftie fathomes of water in depth. Thus proceeding and laying forward, we fell with an Island called *Zenam*, being in the latitude of fuenitie degrees. About this land wee saw many Whales, very monstrous, about our ships, some by estimation of fixtie foute long: and being the ingendering time they roared and cryed terribly. From thence we fell with an land, called *Kettlewike*.

This Coast from *Roff* vnto *Lefost* lyeth North and South, and from *Lefost* to *Zenam* North-east and South-west, and from *Zenam* to *Kettlewike*, East North-east and West South-west. From the said *Kettlewike* we layed East and by North ten leagues, and fell with a Land called *Inger* found, where we fished, being becalmed, and took great plenty of Codds. Thus plying a long the Coast, we fell with a Cape, called the North Cape, which is the Northernmost Land that we passe in our Voyage to *Saint Nicolas*, and is in the latitude of fuenitie one degrees and ten minutes, and is from *Inger* found East, and to the North-wards fiftene leagues. And being at this North Cape the second day of Iuly, wee had the Sunne at North foure degrees above the Horizon. The third day we came to *Wardhouse*, having such mists that wee could not see the Land. This *Wardhouse* is a Cattle standing in an Island two miles from the mayne of *Finnland*, subiect to the King of *Denmarke*, and the Easternmost Land that he hath. There are two other Islands nere adjoining vnto that, whereon the Cattle of *Wardhouse* handeth. The Inhabitants of these three Islands liue mostly by fishing, and make much Stock-fish, which they dry with Fire: their mozt feeding is fish, which they haue none, but such as is brought thence from other places. They haue small flocks of Cattle, which are also fed with fish.

From *Wardhouse* we layed South South-east ten leagues, and fell with a Cape of Land called *Keger*, the Northernmost part of the Land of *Lappia*. And betwene *Wardhouse*, and the said Cape is a great Bay, called *Dommers haff*, in the South part whereof is a Monastery of Monkes of the *Ruffe* Religion, called *Techinchem*. Thus proceeding forward and laying along the Coast of the said Land of *Lappia*, winding South-east, the fourth day through great mists and darknesse we lost the company of the other three ships, and met not with them againe, vntill the fueneth day, when we fell with a Cape or head-land called *Sweetness*, which is the entring into the Bay of *Saint Nicolas*. At this Cape lyeth a great fenne, to which the Barkes that passed there by, were wont to make Offerings of Butter, Meale, and other Victuals, thinking that whelpe they did lo, their Barkes or Vessels should there perish, as it hath beene oftentimes fenee: and there it is very darke and mythe. Note, that the fix day we passed by the place where Sir *Hugh Willoughby* with all his company perished, which is called *Arctura* rock, that is to say, the Ruier *Arctura*.

The Land of *Lappia* is an high Land, hauing snow lying on it commonly all the yeere. The people of the Country are halfe Gentiles: they liue in the Summer time nere the Sea side, and vie to take fish, of which they make bread, and in the Winter they remove vp into the Country into the Woods, where they vie hunting, and kill Deere, Beares, Wolves, Foxes, and other beasts, with whose flesh they are nourished, and with their skins apparelled in fish (strange fashion, that there is nothing fenee of them bare but their eyes. They haue none other habitation, but only in Tents, removing from place to place, according to the season of the yeere. They know no arte nor facultie, but only shooting, which they exercise daily, as well men as women, and kill such beasts as ferue them for their food. Thus proceeding along the coast from *Sweetness*, afore said, the ninth day of Iuly we came to Cape *Grace*, being in the latitude of 66. degrees and 45. minutes, and is at the entring in of the Bay of *Saint Nicolas*. Aboard this Land there is twentie or thirte fathoms water, and sandy grounds good to anchor in. The current at this Cape runneth South-west and North-east. From this Cape wee pceeded along Cape *Grace*, which is fuen leagues from the said Cape South-west: and from this land, we fet out to the other side of the Bay, and went South-west, and fell with an Head-land, called *Foxenose*, which is from the said land fye and twentie leagues. We entering

of this Bay from *Crosse* land to the nereft Land on the other side is fuen leagues ouer. From *Foxenose* proceeding forward the twelfth day of the said month of Iuly, all our four ships arrived in safety at the Road of *Saint Nicolas*, in the Land of *Russia*, where we anchored, and layed from *Lindon* vnto the said Road fuen hundred and fiftie leagues. The *Ruffian* Ambassadour and his compaignie with great ioy got to shore, and our ships heere forthwith discharged themselves: and being laden againe, and hauing a faire winde, departed toward *England* the first of August. The third of the said month I with other of my compaignie came vnto the Citie of *Colmogro*, being an hundred veriles from the Bay of *Saint Nicolas*, and in the latitude of 64. degrees 24. minutes. I tarried at the said *Colmogro* vntill the fifteneeth day: and then I departed in the Boat vnto the Ruier called *Purga*, which runneth very swiftly, and the selfe faine day passed by the mouth of a Ruier called *Purga*, leaving it to our left hand fiftene veriles from *Colmogro*. On both sides of the mouth of this Ruier *Purga* is high Land, great Rocks of Albaster, great Woods, and fine-apple trees lying along within the ground, which by report haue lyen there fince *Noe* flood. And thus proceeding forward the nineteenth day in the morning, I came to

Zenam Island.

Kettlewike Island

Inger found, The North Cape.

Wardhouse.

Cattell fed with fish.

The Monastery of Techinchem.

Arctura rock where Sir Hugh Willoughby was frozen.

The Lappians couered all finging their eyes.

The current at Cape Grace.

The entring of the Bay of Saint Nicolas: fuen leagues broad at the least.

August.

Purga River.

The Towne of
Temp.
Vllug.

The descrip-
tion of their
Natives.

Good counsell
for Travellers.
December.

Emperour of
Cafan.

Makindeof
Guests.

to a Towne called Temp, an hundred verites from Colmogre. All this way along they make much Tarre, Pitch, and albes of Aspen trees. From thence I came to a place called Ufing, an ancient Citie, the last day of August. At this Citie meet two Riuers: the one called Ing, and the other Scana, both which fall into the aforesaid Riuers of Duina. The Riuers Ing hath his spring in the Land of the Tartars, called *Chromicene*, issuing to the Countrey of *Permia*: and Scana hath his head from a Lake not farre from the Citie of Vologda. Thus departing from Ufing, and passing by the Riuers Scana, we came to a Towne called Temp. About this place the water is very shallow, and stonie, and troublesome for Barkes and Boats. About this place the water is called *Nafades*, and *Dofnecke*, to passe that way: wherein merchandise is transported from the aforesaid Colmogre to the Citie of Vologda. These vessels called *Nafades*, are very long builded, broad made, and close about, flat bottomed, and draw not above four foot water, and will carrie two hundred tonnes: they have no Iron appertaining to them but all of Timber, and when the winde ferueth, they are made to sayle. Otherwise they haue many men, some to hale and draw by the neckes with long small ropes made fast to the said Boats, and some set with long poles. There are many of these Barkes vpon the Riuers of Duina: And the most part of them belongeth vnto the Citie of Vologda: for there dwell many Merchants, and they occupie the said Boats with carrying of Salt from the Sea side vnto the said Vologda. The twentieth of September I came vnto Vologda, which is a great Citie, and the Riuers passeth through the midst of the same. The houses are builded with wood of Firre trees, ioyned one with another, and Birch barkes, and wood ouer the same: Their Churches are all of wood, two for every Parish, one to be heated for Winter, and the other for Summer. On the tops of their houses they lay much earth, for feare of burning: for they are sore plagued with fire. This Vologda is in 59. degrees 11. minutes, and is from Colmogre, one thousand verites.

All the way I neuer came in houle, but lodged in the Wilkennesse, by the Riuers side, and carried provision for the way. And he that will trauell thofe wayes, must carrie with him an Hatchet, a Tinder boxe, and a Kettle, to make fire and seethe meat, when he hath it: for there is small succour in those parts, vntill he be in Townes.

The first day of December, I departed from Vologda in posse in a Sled, as the manner is in Winter. And the way to Moscou is as followeth. From Vologda to *Commelki*, seven and twentie verites; so to *Olmur* five and twentie verites, so to *Telystke* twentie verites, so to *Ore* thirtie verites, so to *Volskoye* thirtie verites, then to *Terskoye* thirtie verites, which standeth vpon the great Riuers *Volga*, so to *Koskoye* fiftie verites, then to *Rogarin* thirtie verites, so to *Perskoye* ten verites, which is a great Towne, standing hard by a faire Lake. From thence to *Drunskoye* thirtie verites, so to *Goderoye* thirtie verites, so to *Omskoye* thirtie verites, and last to the Moskou five and twentie verites, where I arrived the fixt day of December.

There are fourteen Posts called *Tames*, betwene Vologda and Moskou, which are accounted five hundred verites afunder.

The tenth day of December, I was sent for to the Emperours Caffe by the said Emperour, and deliuered my Letters vnto the Secrerarie, who talked with mee of diuers matters, by the commendement of the Emperour. And after that my Letters were translated, I was answered that I was welcome, and that the Emperour would giue mee that I desired.

The five and twentieth day, being the day of the Natiuitie, I came into the Emperours presence, and kissed his hand, who fate aloft in a goodly Chaire of estate, hauing on his head a Crowne most richly decked, and a staffe of Gold in his hand, all apparelled with Gold, and garnished with precious stones. There fate distant from him about two yards his Brother, and next vnto him a Boy of twelue yeeres of age, who was Inheritor to the Emperour of *Cafan*, conquered by this Emperour eight yeeres past. Then fate his Nobilitie round about him, richly apparelled with Gold and Stone. And after I had done obaylance to the Emperour, he with his owne mouth calling me by my name, bade me to dinner, and so I departed to my lodging till dinner time, which at fixe of the clocke, by Candle light.

The Emperour dined in a faire great Hall, in the midst whereof was a Pillar foure square, very artificially made, about which were diuers Tables set, and at the vppermost part of the Hall fate the Emperour himselfe, and at his Table fate his Brother, his Vncles sonne, the Metropolitan, the young Emperour of *Cafan*, and diuers of his Noblemen, all of one side. There were diuers Embassadors, and other strangers, as well *Christians* as *Heathens*, duetly apparelled, to the number of five hundred men, which dined in the said Hall, besides two thousand *Tartars*, men of warre, which were newly come to render themselves to the Emperour, and were appointed to serue him in his warres against the *Leslanders*, but they dined in other Halls. I was set at a little Table, hauing no stranger with mee, directly before the Emperours fate. Being thus set and placed, the Emperour sent mee diuers bowles of Wine, and Meade, and many dishes of Meate from his owne hand, which were brought mee by a Duke, and my Table serued all in Gold and Silver, and so likewise on other Tables, there were set bowles of Gold, set with Stone, worth by estimation 400. pounds sterling one cup, besides the Plate which serued the tables.

There

There was also a Cupboard of Plate, most sumptuous and rich, which was not vied: among the which, was a piece of Gold of two yards long, wrought in the top with Towers, and Dragons heads, also diuers barrels of Gold and Silver, with Cattles on the hungs, richly and artificially made. The Emperour, and all the Hall throughout was ferued with Dukes; and when dinner was ended, the Emperour called mee by name, and gaue me drinke with his owne hand, and so I departed to my lodging. Note, that when the Emperour drincketh, all the company stand vp, and at every time he drincketh, or tasteth of a dish of meate he blesteth himselfe. Many other things I saw that day, not here noted.

The fourth of Ianuarie, which was Twelft-tide with them, the Emperour, with his brother and all his Nobles, all most richly apparelled with Gold, Pearles, Precious stones, and costly Furres, with a Crowne vpon his head, of the *Tartarian* fashion, went to the Church in Procession, with the Metropolitan, and diuers Bishops and Priests. That day I was before the Emperour againe in *Ruffe* apparel, and the Emperour asked if that were not I, and his Chancellour answered, yea. Then he bade me to dinner: then came he out of the Church, and went with the Procession vpon the Riuers, being all frozen, and there standing bare-headed, with all his Nobles, there was a hole made in the ice, and the Metropolitan halloweth the water with great solemnitie and feruice, and did cast of the said water vpon the Emperours fonne, and the Nobilitie. That done, the people with great thronging filled pots of the said water to carrie home to their houses, and diuers children were throwne in, and sicke people, and plucked out quickly againe, and diuers *Tartars* christened: all which the Emperour beheld. Also there were brought the Emperours best Horses, to drinke at the said hallowed water. All this being ended, he returned to his Palace againe, and went to dinner by Candle light, and fate in a wooden house, very fairely gild. There dined in the place, about three hundred strangers, and I fate alone as usual before, directly before the Emperour, and had my Meate, Bread, and Drinke sent mee from the Emperour.

The Citie of Moskou is great, the houses for the most part of wood, and some of stone, with windowes of Iron, which ferue for Summer time. There are many faire Churches of stone, but more of wood, which are made hot in the Winter time. The Emperours lodging is in a faire and large Caffe, walled foure square of Bricke, high, and thick, situated vpon an Hill, two miles about, and the Riuers on the South-west side of it, and in hath fixtene gates in the walls, and as many Bulwarkes. His Palace is separated from the rest of the Caffe, by a long wall going North and South, to the Riuers side. In his Palace are Churches, some of stone, and some of wood, with round Towres fairely gilded. In the Church doores, and within the Churches are Images of Gold: the chiefe Markets for all thinges, within the said Caffe, and for sundry things sundry Markets, and euery science by it habd. And in the Winter there is a great Marketplace without the Caffe, vpon the Riuers being frozen, and there is sold Corne, earthen Potes, Tubs, Sleds, &c. The Callois in circuit two thousand and nine hundred paces.

The Countrey is full of marish ground, and Playne, in Woods and Riuers abundant, but it bringeth forth good colonicie of Corne. This Emperour is of great power: for he hath conquered all, as well of the *Leslanders*, *Poles*, *Lettos*, and *Suebens*, as also of the *Tartars*, and *Geniles*, called *Samoses*, hauing thereby much enlarged his Dominions. Hee keepeth his people in great subiection: all matters passe his iudgement, hee they neuer so small. The Law is sharpe for all offenders.

The Metropolitan dealeth in matters of Religion, as himselfe listeth, whom the Emperour greatly honoureth. They vie the Ceremonies and Orders of the *Greeke* Church. They worship many Images painted on Tables, and specially the Image of Saint *Nicholas*. Their Priests be married, but their wives being dead, they may not marry the second time, and so become Monks, whereof there are a great number in the Land. They haue foure Lents in the yeere, and the weeke before Shrouetide, they call the Butter weeke, &c.

They haue many sorts of meats and drunks, when they banquet and delight in eating of gross meats and drinking filth. Before they drinke they vie to blow in the Cup: their greatest friendship is in drinking: they are great Talkers and Lyars, without any fith or trust in their words, Flatterers and Dissemblers. The Women be there very obedient to their Husbands, and are kept straightly from going abroad, but at some seasons.

At my being there, I heard men and women that drunke away their children, and all their goods at the Emperours Tauerne, and not being able to pay, hauing impaired himselfe, the Tauerne bringeth him out to the high way, and beats him vpon the legs: then they that passe by, knowing the cause, and hauing persaduenture compassion vpon him, giue the money, and so hee is ransomed. In euery good Towne there is a drunke Tauerne, called a *Curfeme*, which the Duke or Gentleman, in recompence of his seruice: and for that time he is Lord of all the Towne, robbing and spoiling, and doing what pleaseth him: and then hee being growne rich, is taken by the Emperour, and sent to the warres againe: where hee shall spend all that which hee hath gotten by all means: so that the Emperour in his warres is little charged, but all the burden

Killing viſed in
the Grete
Church.

dayes, they come and take one another by the hand: the one of them ſaith, *the Lord or Chriſt iſ riſen*, the other anſwereth, *it is ſo of a trauſe*, and then they kiſſe and exchange their Egges both men and women, continuing in kiſſing foure dayes together.

His Maieſtie heareth all Complaines himſelfe, and with his owne mouth giueth ſentence, and iudgement of all matters, and that with expedition: but Religious matters he medleth not withall, but referreth them wholly vnto the Metropolitan. His Maieſtie retaineth and well rewardeth all ſtrangers that come to ſerue him, and eſpecially men of Warre. He delighteth not greatly in Hawking, Hunting, or any other paſtime, nor in hearing Inſtruments or Muſicke, but leteth all his whole delight vpon two things: Firſt, to ſerue God, as vndoubtedly hee is very deuout in his Religion, and the ſecond, how to ſubdue and conquer his enemies.

He hath abundance of Gold and Siluer in his owne hands or Treſurie: but the moſt part of his know not a Cawſe from a Counter, nor Gold from Copper, they are ſo much cumberd therewithall, and he that is worth two, three, or foure Grotes, is a rich man.

Monasteries
and Monkes.

They haue both Monkes, Priers, and Nunnes, with a great number of great and rich Monasteries: they keepe great Hoſpitalitie, and doe releue much poore people day by day. I haue bin in one of the Monasteries called *Triniet*, which is walld about with Bricke very ſtrongly like a Caſtle, and much Ordnance of Brasse vpon the walls of the ſame. They told mee themſelues that there are ſeuē hundred Brethren of them which belong vnto that Houſe. The moſt part of the Lands, Townes, and Villages which are within fortie miles of it, belong vnto the ſame.

Images.

They ſhewed mee the Church, wherein were as many Images as could hang about, or vpon the ſi-
dels of the Church round about, and euen the Rooſe of the Church was painted full of Images. The chiefe Image was of our Ladie, which was garniſhed with Gold, Rubies, Saphires, and o-
ther rich Stones abundantly. In the midſt of the Church flood twelue Waxe Tapers of two
yards long, and a fathome about in bigneſſe, and there ſtoode a Kettle full of Waxe with about
one hundred weight, wherein there is alwayes the wicke of a Candle burning, as it were a
Lampe which goeth not out day nor night.

Miracles.

They ſhewed mee Coffin couered with Cloth of Gold, which ſtood vpon one ſide within
their Church, in which they told mee lay a holy man, who neuer eate or drinke, and yet that he
liueth. And they told mee (ſuppoſing that I had beleued them) that he healeth many Diſeaſes,
and giueth the blind their ſight, with many other Miracles, but I was hard of beliefe, becauſe I
ſaw him worke no miracle whilſt I was there.

Drinkes and
Veffels.

After this they brought mee into their Sellers, and made mee taſte of diuers kinds of Drinkes,
both Wine and Beere, Meade and Quaffe, of fundry colours and kinds. Such abundance of Drinke
as they haue in their Sellers, I doe ſuppoſe few Princes haue more, or ſo much at once. Their
Barrels or Veffels are of an vnmeaſurable bigneſſe and ſize: ſome of them are three yards long
and more, and two yards and more broad in their heads: they containe fixe or ſeuē tuns ſpice:
they haue none in their Sellers of their owne making that are leſſe then a tunne. They haue
nine or ten great vaultes which are full of choſe Barrels: which are ſeldome remoued: for they
haue trunks which come downe through the Rooſe of the vaults in fundry places, through
which they powre drinke downe, hauing the Caſke right vnder it to receiue the ſame, for it
ſhould be a great trouble to bring it all downe the ſtaires.

The Hoſpita-
lities of
the Monasteries.

They giue Bread, Meate, and Drinke vnto all men that come to them, not onely while they
are at their Abbey, but alſo when they depart, to ſerue them by the way. There are a great
number of ſuch Monasteries in the Realme, and the Emperours Maieſtie ſendeth oftentimes from
one to another of them, and lyceth at them three or foure dayes together.

Monke Mer-
chants.

The ſame Monkes are as great Merchants as any in the Land of *Ruffia*, and doe occupie buy-
ing and ſelling as much as any other men, and haue Boates which paſſe to and fro in the Riuer
with Merchandize from place to place where any of their Countrey doe traſſique.

Dyered Ap-
parell.

They eate no fiſh during their lues as it is reported: but vpon Sunday, Munday, Tuſday,
Thuſday, and Saturday it is lawfull for them to eate Egges, Butter, Cheeſe, and Milke, and ſo
at all times to eate fiſh, and after this ſort they lead their liues. They weare all blacke Garments,
and ſo doe none other in all the Land, but at that Abbey onely.

Wane of Pre-
chers cauſe of
great igno-
rance and Ido-
latry.

They haue no Preachers, not one in all the Land to inſtruct the people, ſo that there are
many, and the moſt part of the poore in the Countrey, who if one aſke them how many Gods
there be, they will lay a great many, meaning that euery Image which they haue is a God: for
all the Countrey and the Emperours Maieſtie himſelfe will bliſſe and bow, and knocke their
heads before their Images, inſomuch that they will cry earnestly vnto their Images to helpe
them to the things which they need. All men are bound by their Law to haue choſe Images in
their Houſes, and ouer euery gate in all their Townes and Cities are Images ſet vp, vnto which
the people bow and bend, and knocke their heads againſt the ground before them: as often as
they come by any Church or Croſſe they doe in like manner. And when they come to any
Houſe, they bliſſe themſelues three or foure times before they will ſalute any man in the
Houſe.

They reckon and hold it for great ſinne to touch or handle any of their Images within the
Circle

Circle of the board where the painting is, but they keepe them very daintily, and rich men deck
them ouer and about with Gold, Siluer, and Stones, and hang them ouer and about with Cloth
of Gold.

Sinnes of Sa-
pentiſia.

The Prieſts are married as other men are, and weare all their Garments as other men doe,
except their Night-caps, which is cloth of ſome ſad colour, being round and reacheth vnto the
eares: their crownes are ſhauen, but the reſt of their haire they let grow, as long as Nature will
permit, ſo that it hangeth beneath their eares vpon their ſhoulders: their Beards they neuer
ſhauē: if his Wife happen to dye, it is not lawfull for him to marry againe during his life.

Prieſts.

They miniſter the Communion with Bread and Wine after our order, but hee breaketh the

Sacraments.

10 Bread and putteth it into the Cup vnto the Wine, and commonly ſome are partakers with them:
and they take the Bread out againe with a Spooone together with part of the Wine, and ſo take
it themſelues, and giue it to others that receiue with them after the ſame manner. They will
not permit any Nition but the *Greekes* to be buried in their ſaued Burials, or Church-yards. All
their Churches are full of Images, vnto the which the people when they aſſemble, doe bow and
knocke their heads, as I haue before ſaid, that ſome will haue knobs vpon their fore-heads with
knocking, as great as Egges. All their ſeruite is in the *Ruffian* Tongue, and they and the com-
mon people haue no other Prayers but this, *Gloſſode Ieſu Chriſtus eſne vnae panoua neſte*. That
is to ſay, O Lord Ieſu Chriſt, Son of God haue merce vpon vs: and this is their Prayer, ſo that
the moſt part of the vnlearned know neither *Pater Noſter*, nor the Beliefe, nor Ten Comman-
dements, nor ſcarcely vnderſtand the one halfe of their ſeruite which is read in their Churches.

All their ſer-
uite is in their
Mother
tongue.

When any child is borne, it is not baptiz'd vntill the next Sunday, and if at chance that it be
not baptiz'd then, it muſt tarry vntill the ſecond Sunday after the birth, and it is lawfull for
them to take as many God-fathers and God-mothers as they will, the more the better.

Baptiſme.

When they goe to the Church, the Mid-wife goeth foremoſt, carrying the Child, and the
God-fathers and God-mothers follow into the midſt of the Church, where there is a ſmall Ta-
ble readie ſet, and on it an Earthen Pot full of warme water, about the which the God-fathers
and God-mothers, with the Child, ſettle themſelues: then the Clerke giueth vnto euery of
them a ſmall Waxe Candle burning, then cometh the Prieſt, and beſmecth to lay certayne
words, which the God-fathers and God-mothers muſt anſwer: word for word, among which
30 one is, that the Child ſhall forſake the Deuill, and as that name is pronounced, they muſt all ſpit
at the word as often as it is repeated. Then he bliſſeth the water which is in the Pot, and doth
breatheth ouer it: then he taketh all the Candles which the Goffits haue, and holding them all in
one hand letteth part of them drop into the water, and then giueth euery one his Candle againe,
and when the water is ſanctified, he taketh the Child and holdeth it in a ſmall Tub, and one of
the God-fathers taketh the Pot with warme water, and powreth it all vpon the Childes head.

After this he hath many more Ceremonies, as anoynting Eares and Eyes with Spittle, and
making certayne Croſſes with Oyle vpon the backe, head, and beſt of the Child: then taking
the Child in his armes, carryeth it to the Images of *Saint Nicholas*, and our Ladie, &c. and ſpea-
keth vnto the Images, deſiring them to take charge of the Child, that he may liue, and beleeue
40 as a Chriſtian man or woman ought to doe, with many other words. Then coming backe
from the Images, he taketh a paire of ſheares and clippeth the young and tender haire of the
Childes head, in three or foure places, and then deliuereth the Child to the God-fathers and
God-mothers lay a hand: then the Prieſt chargeth them that the Child be
brought vp in the faith and feare of God or Chriſt, and that it be inſtructed to clinge and bow
to the Images, and ſo they make an end: then one of the God-fathers muſt hang a Croſſe about
the necke of the Child, which hee muſt alwayes weare, for that *Ruffi* which hath not a Croſſe
about his necke they eſteeme as no Chriſtian man, and thereupon they lay that wee are no Chri-
tians, becauſe we doe not weare Croſſes as they doe.

Their Matrimonie is nothing ſolemnized, but rather in moſt points abominable, and as neere
50 as I can I am in this wiſe following.

Of their ſep-
aration.

Firſt, when there is loue betweene the parties, the man ſenſeth vnto the woman a ſmall
Clieſt or Boxe, wherein is a Whip, Needles, Threed, Silke, Linnen Cloth, Sheares, and ſuch ne-
ceſſaries as ſhall occurre when ſhe is a Wife, and pen haſt ſenſeth therewithall Raiſins, Figs,
or ſome ſuch things, giuing her to vnderſtand, that if hee doe offend, the muſt be beaten with the
Whip, and by the Needles, Threed, Cloth, &c. that hee ſhould applye her ſelfe diligently to ſew,
and doe ſuch things as the coulde beſt doe, and by the Raiſins or Figs hee meaneth if hee doe ſell,
no good thing ſhall be with-drawne from her, nor be too deare for her: and theſe ſenſeth vnto
him a Shirt, Handkerchers, and ſome ſuch things of her owne making. And now to the effect.

When they are agreed, and the day of Marriage appointed, when they ſhall goe towards the
60 Church, the Bride will in no wiſe conſent to goe out of the Houſe, but reſteth and ſtrieth
with them that would haue her out, and tyneth her ſelfe to weare, yet in the end, two wo-
men get her out, and lead her towards the Church, her face being couered cloſe, becauſe of her
difſimulation, that it ſhould not be openly perceiued: for ſhee maketh a great noiſe, as though ſhe
were llobbing and weeping, vntill ſhe come at the Church, and then her face is recovered. The

man cometh after among other of his friends, and they carrie with them to Church a great Pot of Wine or Meade: then the Priest coupleth them together much after our order, one promising to loue and serue the other during their liues together, &c. which being done, they beginne to drinke, and first the woman drincketh to the man, and when he hath drunke he letteth the cup fall to the ground, haſting immediately to tread vpon it, and to do so the, and whether of them tread first vpon it, muſt haue the victorie and be Maſter at all times after, which commonly happeneth to the man, for he is readieſt to ſet his foot on it, becauſe he letteth it fall himſelfe, then they goe home againe, the womans face being vncouered. The Boyes in the ſtreets cry out, and make a noiſe in the meane time, with very diſhoneſt words.

When they come home, the Wife is ſet at the vpper end of the Table, and the Husband next vnto her: they fall then to drinking till they be all drunke, they perchaunce haue a Minſtrel or two, and two naked men, which led her from the Church, dance naked a long time before all the company. When they are wearie of drinking, the Bride and the Bridegroom get them to Bed, for it is in the Evening always when any of them are married: and when they are going to Bed, the Bridegroom putteth certayne Money, both Gold and Silver, if he haue it, into one of his Boote, and then ſitteth downe in the Chamber, croſſing his legges, then the Bride muſt pluck off one of his Boote, which the will, and if she happen on the Boot wherein the Money is, ſhee hath not only the Money for her labour, but is alſo at ſuch choice, as ſhe need not euer from that day forth to pull off his Boote, but if ſhee miſſe the Boot wherein the Money is, he doth not only loſe the Money, but is alſo bound from that day forwards to pull off his Boote continually.

Then they continue in drinking and making good chere three dayes following, being accompanied with certayne of their friends, and during the ſame three dayes, he is called a Duke, and ſhe a Dutcheſſe, although they be very poore perſons, and this is as much as I haue learned of their Matrimony: but one common rule is amongst them, if the woman be not beaten with the Whip once a Weeke, ſhe will not be good, and therefore they looke for it orderly, and the women ſay, that if their Husbands did not beat them, they ſhould not loue them.

They viſe to marry there very young, their Sonnes at ſixteene and eightene yeares old, and the Daughters at twelue or thirtee yeares or younger: they viſe to keepe their Wives very cloſely, I meane thoſe that be of any reputation, ſo that a man ſhall not ſee one of them but at a chance, when ſhee goeth to Church at Chriſtmaffe or at Eaſter, or elſe going to viſit fome of her friends.

The women
of Ruſſia paint
their faces.

The moſt part of the women viſe to ride a ſtride in Saddles with ſtirrups, as men doe, and ſome of them on Sleds, which in Summer is not commendable. The Husband is bound to find the Wife colours to paint her with all, for they viſe ordinarily to paint themſelues: it is ſuch a common practice among them, that it is counted for no ſhame: they greaſe their faces with ſuch colours, that a man may diſcerne them hanging on their face almoſt a ſight ſhoot off: I cannot ſo well liken them aſto a Millers Wife, for they lookeaſe though they were beaten about the face with a bagge of Meale, but their Eye-browes they colour as blacke as ſea. The beſt property that the women haue, is that they can ſewe well, and imbroideur with Silke and Gold excellently.

Of their Bu-
rall.

When any man or woman dyeth, they ſtretch him out, and put a new paire of ſhoes on his feet, becauſe he hath a great Iourney to goe: then doe they wind him in a ſheet, as wee doe, but they forget not to put a teſſimonie in his right hand, which the Priſt giueth him, to teſtifie vnto Saint Nicholas that he dyed a Chriſtian man or woman. And they put the Corſe alwayes in a Coffin of Wood, although the partie departed carrie in their hands ſmall Waxe Candles, and they weep, and howle, and make much lamentation. They that be hanged or beheaded, or ſlew like, haue no teſtimonie with them: how they are recieued into Heauen, it is a wonder, without their Paſſport.

Bread made of
Brow.
The vnumer-
fulneſſe of the
poore,
Stoues or
Baths vſuall
with the Muſ-
covites.

There are a great number of poore people among them which dye daily for lacke of ſuſtenance, which is a pittifull caſe to behold: for there hath bin buried in a ſmall time, within theſe two yeares, aboute eighte perſons young and old, which haue dyed only for lacke of ſuſtenance, for if they had had ſtraw and water enough, they would make ſhift to liue: for as the leaſt they are forced in the Winter to dye ſtraw and ſtamp it, and to make bread thereof, or as the leaſt they eate it in ſtead of bread. In the Summer they make good ſhift with graſſe, herbes, and roots: barkes of Trees are good meat with them at all times. There is no people in the World, as I ſuppoſe, that liue ſo miſerably as doe the poouerte in thoſe parts: and the moſt part of them that care not how many they ſee dye of famine or hunger in the ſtreets.

It is a Country full of Diſeaſes, diuers, and euill, and the beſt remedie is for any of them, as they hold opinion, to goe often vnto the Hot-houſes, as in a manner euery man hath one of his owne, which he heareth commonly twice euery weeke, and all the houſhold ſit with, and with themſelues therein.

The

The firſt and principall Meade is made of the iuyce or liquor taken frome Berrie, called in *Ruſſia*, *Maiden*, which is of a marvellous ſweet taſte, and of a Carmolint colour, which Berrie I haue ſeene in *Perſia*. The ſecond Meade is called *Vſſona*, becauſe it is made of a Berrie ſo called, and is like a blacke Goosbeerie; but it is like in colour and taſte to the red Wine of *France*. The third Meade is called *Anarodina* or *Smorodina*, ſhort, of a ſmall Berrie much like to the ſmall *Raiſin*, and groweth in great plentie in *Ruſſia*. The fourth Meade is called *Cheremichka*, which is made of the wild blacke Cherrie. The fifth Meade is made of Honey and Water, with other mixtures. There is alſo a delicate Drinke drawne from the Root of the Birch Tree, called in the *Ruſſe* Tongue *Berucenites*, which drinke the Noblemen and others viſe in April, May, and Iune, which are the three monthes of the Spring-time: for after thoſe monthes, the ſap of the Tree drieth, and then they cannot haue it.

Diuers forts
of Ruſſian
Drinckes, re-
ported by The-
man ſaid.

I haue by me a Letter of Maſter Chriſtopher Holdeſen, written the ſeuenteenth of Nouember 1555, wherein he writes, that it ſeemes, there is no great punishment for breaking their Region, ſome of them aduenturing to eate Milke with him on a Fasting day, which yet others reſiſted. *Tarſallyſy* (ſo he calls the Towne where he writ) is ſarier then *Vſſiga*, the Riuer almoſt a mile broad: he was asked ſeuſen *Alines* for a Sturgeon, he had giuen at *Dauke* nine Markes for a worſer: neither had he ſeene ſuch abundance of Ling in *England*, as there of Sturgeons, there being in that dayes Market, about three thouſand.

20

¶ IIII.

The Voyage of Maſter ANTHONIE JENKINSON, made from the Citiſe of Moſco in Ruſſia, to the Citiſe of Boghar in Bactria, in the yeare 1558. written by himſelfe to the Merchants of London, of the Moſcouic Company.

THE three and twentieth day of April, in the yeare 1558. (having obtained the Emperours of *Ruſſia* his Letter, directed vnto ſundry Kings and Princes, by whole Dominion I ſhould paſſe) departed from *Moſco* by water, hauing with mee two of your Seruants; namely, *Richard Iohnſon*, and *Robert Iohnſon*, and a *Tartar* *Tolmach*, with diuers parcels of Wares, as by the Inuentorie appereth: and the eight and twentieth day wee came to a Towne, called *Colom*, diſtant from the *Moſco* twentie leagues, and paſſing one league beyond the ſaid *Colom*, we came vnto a Riuer, called *Occa*, into the which the Riuer *Moſco* falleth, and loſeth his name: and paſſing downe the ſaid Riuer *Occa* eight leagues, wee came vnto a Cattle called *Terreutukis*, which wee left vpon our right hand, and proceeding forward, the ſecond day of May, wee came vnto another Cattle, called *Perſelua*, diſtant eight leagues, leaving it alſo on our right hand. The third day we came vnto the place where old *Ruſſia* ſate, ſix leagues: the fourth day we paſſed by a Cattle, called *Terreconia*, from *Razan* twelue leagues, and the ſixth day we came to another Cattle, called *Caffin*, vnder the government of a *Tartar* Prince, named *Oſcar Zegalin*, ſometime Emperour of the worthy Citiſe of *Cazan*, and now ſubiect vnto the Emperour of *Ruſſia*. But leaving *Caffin* on our left hand, the eighth day *Moſcom*, we came vnto a faire Towne, called *Moſcom*, from *Caffin* twentie leagues, where wee tooke the Sunne, and found the latitude ſixty ſix degrees: and proceeding forward the eleuenth day, wee came vnto another faire Towne and Cattle, called *Nyſe Nouogrod*, ſituated at the falling of the ſoreſaid Riuer *Occa*, into the worthy Riuer of *Volga*, diſtant from the ſaid *Moſcom* ſix and twentie leagues, in the latitude of ſixty ſix degrees eighteen minutes. From *Razan* to this *Nyſe Nouogrod*, on both ſides the ſaid Riuer of *Occa*, is rayſed the greateſt Rore of Waxe and Honey for all the Land of *Ruſſia*. We tarried at the ſoreſaid *Nyſe Nouogrod* untill the nineteenth day of the ſumming of a Captaine which was ſent by the Emperour to rule at *Aſtracae*, who being arrived, and hauing the number of ſix hundred great Boates vnder his conduct, ſome laden with Victuals, Soullins, and Munition: and other ſome with Merchandize, departed altogether the ſaid nineteenth day from the ſaid *Nyſe Nouogrod*, and the two and twentieth wee came vnto a hand. This Towne or Cattle had his name of this Emperours Father, who was called *Vaſilum*, and Gored in the *Ruſſe* Tongue is as much to ſay, as a Cattle, ſo that *Vaſilum* is to ſay, *Vaſilum* Cattle: and it was the ſirtheſt place that the ſaid Emperour conquered from the *Tartars*. But this preſent Emperours ſonne, called *Iuan Vaſilumetits*, and *Gentiles*, but eſpecially againt the *Tartars*, enlarging his Empire alſo to the *Caspian* Sea, having conquered the famous Riuer of *Volga*, with all the Countreys thereabout adjacent. Thus proceeding on our journey, the ſix and twentieth day of May aforeſaid,

Moſco in 58 de-
grees, 10 mi-
nutes.

Occa,

Regin.

Caffin.

Nyſe Nouogrod.

Vaſilumetits.

Suyake.

Cazan stands in
55 degrees 33
minutes.The Iland of
M. ch. int.The River of
Cama.

Vaches.

Mogast or Na
57° 10' 15"

Hords.

The Crime
Tatars.

we came to another Cattle called *Sabonbare*, which we left on our right hand, distant from *Vaslingrod*, sixteen leagues. The Countrey hereabout is called *Mardons*, and the Habitants did profess the Law of the *Gentiles*: but now being conquered by this Emperour of *Russia*, most of them are christened, but lye in the Woods and Wildernesse, without Towne or Habitation.

The leuen and twentieth day we passed by another Cattle, called *Suyake*, distant from *Sabonbare* aforesaid, twentie five leagues: we left it on our right hand, and the nine and twentieth came vnto an Iland one league from the Citie of *Cazan*, from which falleth downe a River called *Cazankareca*, and entrench into the forefaid *Volga*. *Cazan* is a faire Towne after the *Ruffes* or *Tartars* fashion, with a strong Cattle situated vpon a high Hill, and was walled round about with Timber and Earth, but now the Emperour of *Russia* hath giuen order to plucke downe the old walls, and to build them againe of free stone. It hath bene a Citie of great Wealth and Riches, and being in the hands of the *Tartars*, it was a Kingdome of it selfe, and did more vex the *Ruffes* in their Warres, then any other Nation: but nine yeares past, this Emperour of *Russia* conquered it, and tooke the King captive, who being but young is now baptized, and brought vpon his Court with two other Princes, which were also Kings of the said *Cazan*, and being each of them in time of their Raignes in danger of their Subiects through caull discord, came and rendered themselves at severall times vnto the said Emperour, so that at this present there are three Princes in the Court of *Russia*, which had bene Emperours of the said *Cazan*, whom the Emperour vish with great honour.

We remained at *Cazan* till the thirteenth day of Iune, and then departed from thence: and the same day passed by an Iland called the Iland of Merchants, because it was wont to be a place where all Merchants, as well *Ruffes* and *Cazankares*, as *Nagayans* and *Crimmes*, and diuers other Nations did resort to keepe Mart for buying and selling, but now it is forsaken, and standeth without any such resort thither, or at *Cazan*, or at any place about it; from *Mosco* vnto *Mex Calpinn*.

Thus proceeding forward, the fourteenth day we passed by a goodly river called *Cama*, which we left on our left hand. This River falleth out of the Countrey of *Permia* into the River of *Volga*, and is from *Cazan* fiftene leagues: and the Countrey lying betwixt the said *Cazan*, and the said River *Cama* on the left hand of *Volga* is called *Vachen*, and the Inhabitants be *Gentiles*, and lye in the Wildernesse without House or Habitation: and the Countrey on the other side of *Volga*, ouer against the said River *Cama*, is called the Land of *Chebreuaces*, halfe *Gentiles*, halfe *Tartars*, and all the Land on the left hand of the said *Volga*, from the said River vnto *Afracan*, and so following the North and North-east side of the *Caspian* Sea, to a Land of the *Tartars* called *Twerem*, is called the Countrey of *Adagast* or *Nagayans*, whose Inhabitants are of the Law of *Mahomet*, and were all destroyed in the year 1558. at my being at *Afracan*, through Civil Warres among them, accompanied with Famine, Pestilence, and such Plagues, in such sort that in the said year there were consumed of the people, in one fort and another, about one hundred thousand: the like Plague was neuer fene in those parts, so that the said Land of *Nagayans*, being a Countrey of great Pasture, remaineth now vnreplenished to the great contentment of the *Ruffes*, who have had cruel Warres a long time together.

The *Nagayans* when they flourished, liued in this manner: they were diuided into diuers companies called *Hords*, and euery *Hord* had a Ruler, whom they obeyed as their King, and was called a *Murfe*, Towne or House they had none, but liued in the open fields, euery *Murfe* or King hauing his *Hords* or people about him, with their Wiues, Children, and Cattell, who hauing consumed the Pasture in one place, removed vnto another: and when they remove they haue Houses like Tents set vpon Waggones or Carts, which are drawne from place to place with Camels, and therein their Wiues, Children, and all their Riches, which is very little, is carried about, and euery man hath at the least foure or fve Wiues besides Concubines. Vfe of money they haue none, but doe barter their Cattell for apparell and other necessaries. They delight in no Art nor Science, except the Warres, wherein they are expert, but for the most part they bee putting people, and haue great store of Cattell, which is all their Riches. They eat much flesh, and especially the Horse, and they drinke Mares Milke, wherewith they be oftentimes drunke: they are tedious and inclined to Theft and Murder. Come they slow not, neither doe they any Bread, mocking the Christians for the same, and disabling our strenghts, saying, wee lye by eating the top of a Weed, and drinke a Drinke made of the same, allowing their great devouring of flesh, and drinking of Milke to be the increase of their strenght. But now to proceed forward to my Iourney.

All the Countrey vpon our right hand the River *Volga*, from ouer against the River *Cama* vnto the Towne of *Afracan*, is the Land of *Crimmes*, whose Inhabitants be also of the Law of *Mahomet*, and lye for the most part according to the fashions of the *Nagayans*, hauing continual Warres with the Emperour of *Russia*, and are valiant in the field, hauing countenance, and support from the great *Turke*.

The sixteenth day of Iune we passed by certayne Fishermens Houses, called *Petose*, twentie leagues

leagues from the River *Cama*, where is great fishing for Sturgeon, so continuing our way vntill the twoid twentieth day, and passing by another great River called *Samar*, which falleth out of the aforesaid Countrey, and runneth throught *Nagayans*, and entrench into the said River of *Volga*. The eight and twentieth day we came vnto a great Hill, where was in times past a Cattle made by the *Crimmes*, but now it is ruined, being the iust mid-way betwixt the said *Cazan* and *Afracan*, which is two hundred leagues or thereabout, in the latitude of six and fiftie degrees, fortie leuen minutes. Vpon all this thow growth abundance of *Licoris*, whose Root runneth within the ground like a Vine.

Thus going forward, the sixt day of Iuly we came to a place called *Perouolog*, so named because in times past the *Tartars* carried their Boats from *Volga*, vnto the River *Tanais*, otherwise called *Don*, by Land, when they would rob such as passed downe the said *Volga* vnto *Afracan*, and also such as passed downe by the River *Tanais*, to *Afion*, *Cassa*, or any other Towne situated vpon *Mare Euxinum*, into which Sea *Tanais* falleth, who hath his Springs in the Countrey of the *Arcan*, ouer of a plaine ground. It is at this freight of *Perouolog* from the one River to the other, two leagues by Land, and is a dangerous place for Thebes and Rubbers, but now it is not so full as hath bene by reason of the Emperour of *Russia* his Conquests.

Departing from *Perouolog*, hauing the Wildernesse on both sides, wee saw a great Heard of *Nagayans* pasturing, as is aforesaid, by estimation about a thousand Camels drawing of Carts with Houses vpon them like Tents, of a strange fashion, seeming to be as if fire off a Towne: that Herd was belonging to a great *Murfe*, called *Smile*, the greatest Prince in all *Nagayans*, who hath flaine and driuen away all the rest, not sparing his owne Brethren and Children, and hauing peace with this Emperour of *Russia*, hee hath wiait benecheid, and nether alone to chat now the *Ruffes* lye in peace with the *Nagayans*, who were wont to haue mortal Warres together.

The fourteenth day of Iuly passing by an old Cattle, which was Old *Afracan*, and lasing it vpon our right hand, we arrived at New *Afracan*, which this Emperour of *Russia* conquered six yeares past, in the year 1558. It is from the *Mosco* vnto *Afracan* fixe hundred leagues, or thereabout. The Towne of *Afracan* is situated in an Iland vpon a Hill side, hauing a Cattle within the same, walled about with Earth and Timber, neither faire nor strong: The Towne is also walled about with Earth: the Buildings and Houses (except it be the Captaines Lodging and certaine other Gentlemens) most bare & simple. The Iland is most destitute and barren of wood and pasture, and the ground will beare no Come: the Air is there most infected, by reason (as I suppose) of much fish, and specially Sturgeon, by which only the Inhabitants lye, hauing great scarcity of flesh and bread. They hang vp their filth in their Streets and Houses to dry for their provision, which causeth such abundance of flies to increase there, as the like was neuer fene in any Land, to their great Plague. And at my being at the said *Afracan*, there was a great Famine and Plague among the people, and specially among the *Tartars*, called *Nagayans*, who the same time came thither in great numbers to render themselves to the *Ruffes* their Enemies, and to seek for succour at their hands, their Countrey being destroyed, as I said before: but which lay all the Iland through in heaps, and for they dyed a great number of them for hunger, hold: many of them were also sold by the *Ruffes*, and like to bealls vntured, very pittifull to behold: the time it had bene an eue thing to haue converted that wicked Nation to the Christian vnto other Nations, when they are not mercifull vnto their owne. At my being there I could haue bought many goodly *Tartars* Children, if I would haue had a thousand, of their owne Fathers and Mothers, to say, a Boy or a Wench for a Loafe of bread worth five pence in England: but we had more need of victuals at that time then of any such Merchandise. This *Afracan* is the furthest I had that this Emperour of *Russia* hath conquered of the *Tartars* towards the *Caspian* Sea, which he kept very strong, sending thither euery yeare provision of men, and victuals, and Timber to build the Cattle.

There is a certayne Trade of Merchandize there vied, but as yet so small and beggerly, that it is not worth the making mention, and yet there come Merchants thither from diuers places, den Vels, Bridles, and Saddles, Knives, and other Trifles, with Come, Bacon, and other Victuals. The *Tartars* bring thither diuers kinds of Wares made of Cotton Wool, with diuers kinds of wrought Silkes and they that come out of *Perfia*, namely, from *Shamack*, doe bring for Girdles, Shirts of Male, Bowes, Swords, and such like things: and some yeares Come, and that bring the same, that it is not worth the writing, neither is there any hope of Trade in all this part worth the following.

This forefaid Iland of *Afracan* is in length twelue leagues, and in breadth three, and lyes to the East and West in the latitude of fortie leuen degrees, nine minutes: we tarried there vntill the

The River
of Samar.Licoris in
great plentie.
Perouolog,
Don or Tanais.

Afracan.

Store of Stur-
geons, & ByesMiserable Fa-
mine.

his favour, and Pursport to travell thorow his Countrey, and not to be roibed or spoyled of his people: which request he granted me, and entertayned me very gently, commanding me to be well texted with flesh and Mares milke: for Bread they vie none, nor other drinke except water: but money he had none to give me for such things as he tooke of me, which might be of value in *Russe* money, fifteen Rubbles, but hee gave me his Letter, and a Horse worth seven Rubbles. And so I departed from him being glad that I was gone: for he was reported to be a very tyrant, and if I had not gone vnto him, I vnderstood his commandment was, that I should haue bene robbed and destroyed.

This *Sultan* liued in the fields without Castle or Towne, and fate, at my being with him, in a little round house made of reeds couered without with Felz, and within with Carpets. There was with him the great Metropolitane of that wilde Countrey, esteemed of the people, as the Bishop of *Rome* is in most parts of *Europe*, with diuers other of his chiefe men. The *Sultan* with this Metropolitane demanded of mee many questions, as well touching our Kingdomes, Lawes, and Religion, as also the cause of my coming into those parts, which my further presence in good part. So hauing leaue I departed, and outtooke our Carauan, and proceeding on our journey, and traueled twentie dayes in the *W. Ilerneffe* from the Sea side without seeing Towne, ceasing to eate one of my Camels and a Horse for our part, as other did the like: and during the brackish and salt, and yet sometimes passed two or three dayes without the same. And the first day of October ensuing, we came vnto a Gulfe of the *Caspian* Sea againe, where we found the water very fresh and sweet: at this Gulfe the Customers of the King of *Turkemen* met vs, who tooke cuttome of euery five and twentie one, and fuen ninths for the said King and his brethren, which being receiued they departed, and we remayned there a day after to refresh our selves.

Note, that in times past there did fall into this Gulfe the great *Riuer Oxus*, which hath his Springs in the Mountains of *Parapamisus* in *India*, and now commeth not so far, but falleth into another Riuer, called *Ardeek*, which runneth toward the North, and cometh himselfe in the ground, passing vnder the ground about five hundred miles, and then issueth out againe and falleth into the Lake of *Khatay*.

We hauing refreshed our selves at the foresaid Gulfe, departed thence the fourth day of October, and the tenth day arrived at a Citie called *Sellizure*, where the King, called *Asim* *Can*, remayned with three other of his brethren, and the ninth day I was commanded to come before his presence, to whom I deliuered the Emperours Letters of *Russia*: and I also gaue him a Present of a ninth, who entertayned me very well, and caused me to eate in his presence as his brethren did, fasting me with flesh of a wilde Horse, and Mares milke without Bread. And the next day he sent for me againe, and asked of me diuers questions, as well touching the affaires of the Emperour of *Russia*, as of our Countrey and Lawes, to which I answered as I thought good: so that at my departure he gaue mee his Letters of safe conduct.

This Citie of *Sellizure* is situated vpon an high Hill, where the King called the *Can* liues, whose Palace is built of earth very base, and not strong: the people are but poore, and haue little trade of merchandise among them. The South part of this Citie is low land, but very fruitful, where growe many good fruits, among which there is one called a *Dymie*, of a great bignesse, and full of moisture, which the people doe eate after meate in stead of drinke. Also there growes another fruit, called a *Carbasse*, of the bignesse of a great Cucumber, yellow, and sweet as Sugar: also a certaine Corne, called *Agur*, whose stalk is much like a Sugar cane, and as high, and the Graue like Rice, which groweth at the top of the cane like a cluster of Grapes: the water that issueth all that Countrey is drawne by driues out of the *Riuer Oxus*, vnto the great destruction of the said Riuer, for which cause it shall not in the *Caspian* Sea, as it hath done in time past, and in short time all that Land is like to be destroyed, and to become a Wildernesse for want of water, when the *Riuer of Oxus* shall faile.

The fourteenth day of the month wee departed from this Citie of *Sellizure*, and the sixteenth of the same wee arrived at a Citie called *Orgence*, where we payed Cuttome as well for our owne heas, as for our Camels and Horses. And hauing there Iourned one month, attending the time of our further travell, the King of that Countrey called *Ali Sultan*, brother to the fore-named *Asim Can*, returned from a Towne called *Corasjan*, within the borders of *Perfia*, which he lately had conquered from the *Persians*, with whom hee and the rest of the Kings of *Turkemen* haue continuall warres. Before this King *Ali* I was commanded to come, to whom I likewise presented the Emperours Letters of *Russia* and he entertayned me well, and demanded of me diuers questions, and at my departure gaue me his Letters of safe conduct.

This Citie or Towne of *Orgence* standeth in a plaine ground, with walls of the earth, by estimation foure miles about it. The buildings within it are, as of earth, but ruined a deal of good order: it hath one long street that is couered above, which is the place of their Market, it hath bene wonne and lost foure times within seven yeeres by ciuill warres, by means whereof there

Twentie dayes
traueled in the
Wildernesse,
with scantie
of water.

Another Gulfe
of the *Caspian*
Sea.

Will. de Fabrica
de'cribeth this
Riuer, to drinke
ca. 4.

Sellizure, or
Sibazure.

Letters of safe
conduct.

Orgence, in 45.
degrees 48. min.

are but few Merchants in it, and they very poore, and in all that Towne I could not sell above foure Kerleys. The chiefe commodities there sold are such wares as come from *Beghar*, and out of *Perfia*, but in most small quantitie not worth the writing. All the Land from the *Caspian* Sea to this Citie of *Orgence*, is called the Land of *Turkemen*, and is subiect to the said *Asim* King called *Can*, but he is little obeyed, which bee due in number, and one of them hath the name of the chiefe: for euery one will be King of his owne portion, and one brother seeketh alwaies to destroy another, hauing no naturall loue among them, by reason that they are begotten of diuers women, and commonly they are the children of slanes, either *Christians* or *Gentiles*, which the father doth keepe as Concubines, and eury *Can* or *Sultan* hath at the least foure or five wiues, besides ten young maidens and boyes, liuing most viciously: and when there are warres betweene the brethren, (as they are seldome without) he that is overcome if he be not slaine, fleeth to the field with such companie of men as will follow him, and there lieth in the Wildernesse, referring to watering places, and so robbeth and spyleth as many *Carauans* of Merchants and others, as they be able to overcome, continuing in this sort his wicked life, vntill such time as he may get power and aide to invade some of his brethren againe. From the *Caspian* Sea vnto the Citie of *Sellizure* aforesaid, and all the Countreies about the said Sea, the people liue without Towne or habitation in the wilde fields, remoouing from one place to another in great companie with their Cattell, whereof they haue great flocks, as Camels, Horses, and Sheepe both tame and wild. Their sheepe are of great stature with great buttocks, weighing fixtie or eighty pound in weight. There are many wilde Horses which the *Tartars* doe many times kill with their Hawkes, and that in this order.

The Hawkes are lured to leize vpon the beasts neckes or heads, which with chafing of themselves, and fore beating of the Hawkes are tyed: then the Hunter following his game doth slay the Horse with his Arrow or Sword. In all this Land there groweth no grasse, but certaine brull or heath, whereon the Cattell feeding become very fat.

The *Tartars* neuer ride without their Bowes, Arrows, and Sword, although it bee on hauking, or at any other pleasure, and they are good Archers both on horse-backe, and on foot also. These people haue not vie of Gold, Silver, or any other coyne, but when they lacke apparell or other necessaries, they barter their Cattell for the same. Bread they haue none, for they neither till nor sowe: they be great deuourers of flesh, which they cut in small pieces, and eate it by handfulls most greedily, and especially the Horse flesh. Their chiefe drinke is Mares milke fowled, as I haue said before of the *Nagayans*, and they will be drunke with the same. They haue no Rieters nor places of water in this Countrey, vntill you come to the foresaid Gulfe, distant from the place of our landing twentie dayes iourney, except it bee in Wells, the water whereof is saltish, and yet distant the one from the other two dayes iourney and more. They eate their meate vpon the ground, sitting with their legs double vnder them, and so allo when they pray. Arte or Science they haue none, but liue most idly, sitting round in great companie in the fields, deuising, and talking most vainely.

They fixe and twentieth day of Nouember, wee departed from the Towne of *Orgence*, and hauing traueled by the *Riuer Oxus* one hundred miles, wee passed our another great Riuer called *Ardeek*, where wee payed a certaine petite cuttome. This Riuer *Ardeek* is great, and very swift, falling out of the foresaid *Oxus*, and passing about one thousand miles to the Northward, it then consumeth it selfe in the ground, and passing vnder the same about five hundred miles, issueth out againe, and falleth into the Lake of *Khatay*, as I haue before declared.

The fourth of December following, we arrived at a Citie called *Kait*, subiect to a *Sultan* called *Sarames Sultan*, who meant to haue robbed all the *Christians* in the *Carauan*, had it not bene for feare of his brother the King of *Orgence*, as we were informed by one of his chiefe Counsellours, who willed vs to make him a present, which he tooke, and deliuered: besides we payed at the said Citie for Cuttome, of eury Camell one hide of *Russia*, heides petite gifts to his Officers.

Thus proceeding in our iourney, the tenth day at night being at rest, and our watch set, there came vnto vs foure Horsemen, which we tooke as *Spies*, from whom we tooke their weapons, and bound them, and hauing well examined them, they confessed that they had sene the tract of many Horsemen, and no toothing of Camels, and gaue vs to vnderstand, that there were Roners and theecues abroad: for there traueled few people that are true and peaceable in that Countrey, but in companie of *Carauan*, where there be many Camels: and Horse-fleets new without Camels were to be doubted. Whereupon we consulted and determined amongst our kinsmen, and sent a Post to the said *Sultan* of *Kait*, who immediately came himselfe with three hundred fraightly, and threatened them in such sort, that they confessed, there was a banished Prince which they themselves were of his companie.

The *Sultan* therefore vnderstanding, that the Theecues were not many, appointed vs eightie

The Countrey
of *Asim*.

The Riuer of
Ardeek falleth
into the Lake
of *Khatay*.

The Citie of
Kait.

men well armed with a Capitaine to goe with vs, and conduct vs in our way. And the Sultan himselfe returned backe again, taking the foure theues with him. These fouldiers trauelled with vs two dayes, consuming much of our victuals. And the third day in the morning very early they set out before our Carauan, and hauing ranged the wilderness for the space of foure houres, they met vs, coming towards vs as fast as their horse could runne, and declared that they had found the tract of horses not farre from vs, perceiving well that wee should meete with enemies, and therefore willed vs to appoint our felues for them, and asked vs what wee would giue them to conduct vs further, or else they would returne. To whom wee offered as we thought good, but they refused our offer, and would haue more, and so wee not agreeing they departed from vs, and went backe to their *Sultan*, who (as wee coniectured) was priuie to the conspiracie. But they being gone, certaine *Tartars* of our companie called holy men, (because they had bene at *Mecca*) called the whole Carauan to stay, and would make their prayers, and diuine how we should prosper in our iourney, and whether wee should meete with any ill companie or no: To which, our whole Carauan did agree. And they tooke certaine sheepe and killed them, and rooke the blade bones of the same, and first fed them, and then burnt them, and tooke of the blood of the said sheepe, and mingled it with the powder of the said bones, and wrote certaine Characters with the said blood, vying many other ceremonies and words, and by the same diuination found, that wee should meete with enemies and theues (to our great trouble) but should overcome them, to which forcerie, I and my companie gaue no credit, but wee found it true: for within three houres after that the fouldiers departed from vs, which was the fifteenth day of December, in the morning, wee eleyed faire old diuers horsemen which made towards vs, and we (perceiving them to bee rousers) gathered our felues together, being fortie vs we well appointed, and able to fight, and wee made our prayers together eury one after his Law, prostrating to our and dye one with another, and so prepared our felues. When the theues were with bowes, arrows, and swords, and the Capitaine a Prince banished from his Countrey. They willed vs to yeeld our felues, or else to bee slaine, but wee defied them, wherewith they shot at vs all at once, and we at them very lustily, and so continued our fight from morning vntill two houres without night, diuers men, horses and camels being wounded and slaine on both parts: and had it not bene for foure hand-guns, which I and my companie had and vied, wee had bene ouercome and destroyed: for the theues were better armed, and were also better Archers then wee: But after we had slaine diuers of their men and horses with our Guns, they durst not approach to nigh, which caused them to come to a truce with vs vntill the next morning, which wee accepted, and encamped our felues vpon a hill, and made the fashion of a Castle, walling it about with packes of warres, and layd our Horses and Camels within the same, to saue them from the shot of arrows: and the theues also incamped within an arrow shot of vs, but they were betwixt vs and the water, which was to our great discomfort, because neither wee nor our Camels had drinke in two dayes before.

Thus keeping good watch, when halfe the night was spent, the Prince of the Theues sent a messenger halfe way vnto vs, requiring to talke with our Capitaine, in their tongue, the Carauan *Bajla*, who answered the messenger, I will not depart from my companie to goe into the halfe way to talke with thee: but if that thy Prince with all his companie will sweare by our Law to keepe the truce, then will I send a man to talke with thee, or else not. Which the Prince vnderstanding as well himselfe as his companie, swore fouldre that wee might all heare: And then we sent one of our companie (reputed a holy man) to talke with the same messenger. The message was pronounced aloud in this order. *Our Prince demandeth of the Carauan Bajla, and of alv that hee Buffians, (that is to say, Circumcised) not despoile your felues, that you deliver into his hands as many Capshars, that is, unbelievers (meaning vs the Christians) as are among you with their goods, and in so doing, hee will suffer you to depart with your goods, in quietnesse, and on the contrary, you shall bee handled with no lesse cruelty then the Capshars, if you are overcome, as hee desired not.* To the which our Carauan *Bajla* answered, that hee had no Christians in his companie, nor other strangers, but two *Turks* which were of their Law: and although hee had, hee would rather dye then deliuer them, and that wee were not afraid of his threatnings, and that should hee know when day appeared. And so passing in talke, the Theues (contrary to their oath) carried our holy man away to their Prince, crying with a loude voyce in token of victorie, *Ela, ela*. Wherewith wee were much discomforted, fearing that that holy man would betray vs: but hee being cruelly handled and much examined, would not to death confesse any thing which was vs prejudiciall, neither touching vs, nor yet what men they had slaine and wounded of ours the day before. When the night was spent, in the morning wee prepared our felues to battell againe: which the theues perceiving, required to fall to agreement, and asked much of vs: And to be briefe, the most part of our companie being loath to goe to battell againe, and hauing little to lose, and safe conduct to passe, wee were compelled to agree, and to giue the theues twentie ninth (that is to say) twentie times nine fustall things, and a Camel to carrie away the same, which being received, the theues departed into the wilderness to their elle

habitation,

habitation, and wee went on our way forward. And that night came to the River *Oxus*, where wee refreshed our felues, hauing bene three dayes without water and drinke, and tarried there all the next day, making merrie with our flane Horses and Camels, and then departed from that place, and for feare of meeting with the said theues againe, or such like, wee left the high way which went along the said River, and passed through a wilderness of land, and travelled foure dayes in the same before wee came to water: and then came to a Well, the water being very brackish, and we then as before were in need of water, and of other victuals, being forced to kill our Horses and Camels to eat.

In this wilderness also, wee had almost fallen into the hands of Theues: for one night being at rest, there came certaine scouts, and carried away certaine of our men which lay a little separated from the Carauan where with there was a great shout and crye, and we immediately fled our Camels, and departed being about midnight, and very darke, and drove fore till we came to the river *Oxus* againe, and then we were feared nothing being walled with the said river: and whether it was for that wee had gotten the water, or for that the same theues were farre from vs when the Scouts discovered vs, we knowe not, but wee escaped that danger.

So vpon the three & twentieth day of December, we arrived at the Citie of *Boghar* in the land of *Bactria*. This *Boghar* is situated in the lowest part of all the Land, walled about with a high wall of earth, with diuers Gates into the same: it is diuided into three partitions, whereof two parts are the Kings, and the third part is for Merchants & Markets, and eury Science hath their dwelling and market by them selfe. The Citie is very great, and the houses for the most part of Earth, but there are also many Houses, Temples, and Monuments of stone fustalliously builded, and gilt, and specially Bath-houses for artificially built, that the like thereof is not in the world: the manner whereof is too long to rehearse. There is a little river running through the midst of the said Citie, but the water thereof is most vnholeesome, for it breedeth sometimes in long, which lyeth commonly in the leg, betwixt the flesh and the skin, and is pluckt out after the Ache with great care and cutting, the Surgeons being much practised therein, and if shee breake in plucking out, the patient dyeth, and eury day the cometh out about an inch, which is rolled vp, and so worketh till the bee all out. And yet it is there forbidden to drinke any oyled or beaten most cruelly through the open markets, and there are Officers appointed for the same, who haue authoritie to goe into any mans house, to search if hee haue either *Aquema*, Wine, or Brag, and finding the same, doe breake the vessels, spoyle the drinke, and punish the masters of the house most cruelly; yea, and many times if they perceive but by the breath of a man that hee hath drunke, without further examination hee shall not escape their hands.

There is a Metropolitan in this *Boghar*, who causeth this law to be so strictly kept: and hee is more obeyed then the King, and will depose the King, and place another at his will and pleasure, as hee did by this King that reigned at our being there, and his predecessor, by the means whereof was a Prince that slew all Christians well.

This Countrey of *Boghar* was sometime subiect to the *Persians*, and doe now speake the *Persian* tongue, but yet now it is a Kingdome of it selfe, and hath most cruel warres continually the *Persians* with their warres is, for that the *Persians* will not cut the hayre of their upper lips, as the *Bogharians* leuellers, as they doe the Christians.

The King of *Boghar* hath no great power or riches, his revenues are but small, and hee is most maintained by the Citie: for he taketh the tenth partie of all things that are there sold, as well by the Craftsmen as by the Merchants, to the great impoverishment of the people, whom hee keepeth in great subiection, and when hee lacketh money, hee sendeth his officers to the Shops of the said Merchants, to take their wares to pay his debts, and will haue credit of force, as the like hee did to pay me certaine money that he owed me for nineteene pieces of Kerfey. Their money is silver and copper, for gold their is none current: they haue but one piece of silver, and that is worth twelue pence *English*, and the copper money are called *Peeles*, and one hundred and twentie of them goeth to the v-lue of the said twelue-pence, and is more common payment then the silver, which the King causeth to rife and fall to his most advantage eury other month, and sometimes twice a month, not caring to oppress his people, for that hee looketh not to raigne about two or three yeares, before hee either liue or driuen away, to the great destruction of the Countrey and Merchants.

The twentieth sixth day of the month, I was commanded to goe before the said King, to whom I presented the Emperour of *Russia* his letters, who entertained vs most gently, and caused vs to eat in his presence, and diuers times hee lent for me, and desired, with me familiarly in his secret chamber, as well of the power of the Emperour, and the great *Turke*, as also of our Countreys, Lawes, and Religion, and caused vs to shoote in hand-guns before him, and did himselfe

The Citie of Oxus.

A wilderness of land.

Boghar a Citie of Bactria in 39. degrees 10. minutes.

A strange Worme in mens leg.

These are the Persian Tartars.

The Coyne of Boghar.

practise

practise the vse thereof. But after all this great entertainment, before my departure he shewed him selfe a very *Tartar*: for he went to the warres owing me money, and law me not payed before his departure. And although indeed hee gave order for the same, yet was I very ill satisfied, and forced to rebate part, and to take waies as payment for the rest contrary to my expectation: but of a bigger better payment I could not haue, & glad I was so to be paid and dispatched.

But yet I must needs praise and commend this barbarous King, who immediately after my arrival at *Boghar*, having understood our trouble with the *Tatars*, sent one of his undred men well armed, and gave them great charge not to returne before they had either flame or taken the sayd thesses. And according to their commission ranged the wilderness in such sort, that they met with the said companie of *Theues*, and flew part, and part fled, and foure they tooke and brought vnto the King, and two of them were fore wounded in our skirmish with our Guns: And after the King had sent for me to come to see them, hee caused them all foure to be hanged at his Palace gate, because they were Gentlemen, to the example of others. And of such goods as were gotten againe, I had part reformed me; and this good Iustice I found at his hands.

There is yearly great resort of Merchants to this Citie of *Zoghar*, which traueill in great Caravans from the Countries thereof adjoining, as *India*, *Persia*, *Babylonia*, *Russia*, with diuers others, and in times past from *Cathay*, when there was passage: but these Merchants are so beggely and poore, and bring so little quantitie of wares, lying two or three yeeres to sell the same, that there is no hope of any good trade there to be had worthy the following. The chiefe commodities that are brought thither out of these forelaide Countries, are these following.

The *Indians* doe bring fine Whites, which the *Tartars* doe all robe about their heads, and all other kinds of Whites, which serue for apparell made of Cotton-wooll and *Craspe*, but Gold, Silver, precious Stones, and Spices they bring none. I enquired and perceived that all such trade palleth to the Ocean feare, and the reynes where all such things are gotten are in the subiection of the *Portugals*. The *Indians* carrie from *Boghar* againe wrought Silkes, red Hides, Slaues, and Hories, with such like, but of Kerlesis and other cloth, they make little account. I offered to barter with Merchants of those Countries, which came from the farthest parts of *India*, euen from the Country of *Bengala*, and the riuer *Ganges*, to giue them Kerlesis for their commodities, but they would not barter for such commodities as Cloath.

The *Persians* doe bring thither *Craspe*, Woollen-cloth, Linnen-cloth, dyers kinds of wrought fine Silkes, Argomacks, with such like, and doe carrie from thence red hydes with other *Ruffe* wares, and Slaues, which are of diuers Countries, but cloth they will buy none, for that they bring thither themselves, and is brought vnto them as I haue inquired from *Allope* in *Syria*, and the parts of *Turkie*. The *Russes* doe carrie vnto *Boghar*, red hydes, sheepe skintes, woollen cloth of diuers sorts, woollen vessels, dryed fishes, with such like, and doe carrie away from thence dyers kinds of wares made of cotton-wooll, dyers kinds of filkes, *Craspe*, with other things, but these are but small veritance. From the Countries of *Cathay* are brought thither in time of peace, and when the way is open, *Muske*, *Rubarbe*, *Saffron*, *Damask*, with diuers others things. As my being at *Boghar*, there came Caravans out of all the forelaide Countries, except from *Cathay*: and the cause why there came none from thence, was the great wars that had durd three yeeres before my coming thither, and yet durd between two great Countries and Cities of *Tartars*, that are diuident in the way betwixt the said *Boghar* and the said *Cathay*, and certaine barbarous wild people, as well *Gentiles* as *Mahometists* bordering to the said Cities. The Cities are called *Taukent* and *Cauker*, and the people that warre against *Taukent* are called *Cockacks* of the law of *Mahomet*: and they which warre with the said Country of *Cauker* are called *Kings*, *Gentiles* and *Idolaters*. These two barbarous Nations are of great force, lying in the helles without House or Towne, and haue almost subdued the forelaide Cities, and so stopped vp the way, that it is impossible for any Caravan to passe freely employed: so that three yeeres before our being there, no Caravan had gone, or vied trade betwixt the Countries of *Cathay* and *Boghar*, and when the way is cleare, it is nine moneths journey.

To speake of the said Country of *Cathay*, and of such newes as I haue heard thereof, Thus thought it best to referre it to our meeting. I hauing made my sojourn at *Boghar*, in the winter time, and hauing learned by much inquisition, the trade thereof, as also of all the other Countries thereto adjoining, and the time of the yeere being come, for all Caravans to depart, and also the King being gone to the warres, and no more come that hee was fled, and I absented by the Metropolitan himselfe, that I should depart, because the Towne was like to be besieged: I thought it good and meete, to take my journey some way, and determined to haue gone from thence into *Persia*, and to haue leente the trade of that Country, although I had informed my selfe sufficiently therof, as well at *Africana*, as at *Boghar*: and perceived well the trades not to be much unlike the trades of *Tartaria*: but when I should haue taken my journey that way, it was let by diuers occasions: the one was, the great warres that did newly begin betwixt the *Sophs*, and the *Kings* of *Tartaria*, whereby the wayes were destroyed: and there was a Caravan destroyed with routes and thesses, which came out of *India* and *Persia*, by safe conduct: and about ten dayes journey from *Boghar*, they were robbed, and a great part flame. Also the Metropolitan

Caravan destroyed.

tion of *Boghar*, who is greater then the King, tooke the Emperours letters of *Russia* from me, without which I should haue bene taken Slaue in euery place: also all such wares as I had received in barter for Cloath, and as I tooke perforce of the King, and other his Nobles, in payment of money due vnto me, were not vendible in *Persia*: for which causes, and diuers others, I was constrained to come backe againe to *Mare Caspium*, the same way I went: so that the eight of March, 1599. we departed out of the said Citie of *Boghar*, being a Caravan of fixe hundred Camels: and it wee had not departed when we did, I and my companie had bene in danger to haue lost life and goods. For ten dayes after our departure, the King of *Samarcand* came with an armie, and besieged the said Citie of *Boghar*, the King being absent, and gone to the warres against another Prince his kinsman, as the like chanceth in those Countries once in two or three yeeres. For it is marvellous how King reigns there about three or foure yeeres, to the great destruction of the Country and Merchants.

The five and twentieth of March, we came to the forelaide Towne of *Urgence*, and escaped the danger of foure hundred rours, which lay in wayte for vs backe againe, being the most of them of kindred to that companie of thesses, which wee met with going forth, as we perceived by four spyes, which were taken. There were in my companie, and committed to my charge, two Ambassadors, the one from the King of *Boghar*, the other from the King of *Balk*, and were sent vnto the Emperour of *Russia*. And after hauing tarried at *Urgence*, and the Castle of *Sellysere*, eight dayes for the assembling, and making ready our Caravan, the second of April we departed from thence, hauing fourte moe Ambassadors in our companie, sent from the King of *Urgence*, and other *Sultans*, his brethren, vnto the Emperour of *Russia*, with answer of such Letters as I brought them: and the same Ambassadors were also committed vnto my charge by the said Kings and Princes: to whom I promised most faithfully, and iure by our Law, that they should be well vied in *England*, and suffered to depart from thence againe in safetie, according as the Emperour had written also in his letters: for they somewhat doubted, because there had none gone out of *Tartaria* into *Russia*, of long time before.

The three and twentieth of April, we arrived at the *Mare Caspium* againe, where we found our Barke which wee came in, but neither Anchor, Cable, Cooke, nor Sackling: nevertheless we brought Hempe with vs, and spun a Cable our felues, with the rest of our Rayle, and made vs a fayle of cloth of Cotton-wooll, and rigged our Barke as well as wee could, but bore and anchor we had none. In the meane time being desirous to make an heere of wood of a Carr-wheele, there arrived a Barke, which came from *Africana*, with *Tartars* and *Russes*, which had two Anchors, with whom I agreed for the one: and thus being in a readinesse, wee set sayle and departed, I and the two *Johnsons*, being Master and Marinier our felues, hauing in our Barke the said fixe Ambassadors, and twentie more *Russes*, which had bene Slaues a long time in *Tartaria*, nor euer had before my coming, libertie, or meanes to get home, and these Slaues serued to row when need was. Thus sailing sometimes along the coast, and sometimes out of sight of land. The thirteenth day of May, hauing a contrary winde, we came to an anchor, being three leagues from the shore, and there arose a fowle storme, which continued fortie foure hours, and our cable being of our owne spinning, brake, and lost our anchor, and being off a lee shore, and hauing no boate to helpe vs, wee hoied our sayle, and bare roomer with the said fowle storme, looking for present death: but as God provided for vs, we ranne into a creeke full of Oze, and so found our felues with our Barke, and liued in great discomfort for a time. For although wee should haue escaped with our liues the danger of the sea, yet if our barke had perished, we knew we should haue bene either destroyed, or taken slaues by the people of that Country, who liue wild in the field, like beasts, without house or habitation. Thus when the storme was seafed, wee went out of the creeke againe: and hauing set the land with our Compass, and taken certain marks of the time, during the time of the tempest, whilst we rid at our anchor, we went directly to the place where we rid, with our Barke againe, and found our anchor which we lost: wherewith the *Tartars* were much maruelled, how we did it. While wee were in the creeke, we made an anchor of wood of our Carr-wheeles, which we had in our Barke, which we threw away, when we had found our Iron anchor againe. Within two dayes after, there arose another great storme, at the North-east, and we lay a triie, being driuen farre into the sea, and had much ado to keepe our Barke from sinking, the billow was so great: but at the last, hauing faire weather, wee tooke the Sunne, and knowing how the Land lay from vs, we fell with the Ruet *Tak*, according to our desire, wherewith the *Tartars* were very glad, fearing that we should haue bene driuen to the coast of *Persia*, whose people were vnto them great enemies.

Note, that during the time of our Navigation, we set vp the red Crosse of Saint George in our flagges, for honour of the *Christians*, which I supposed was neuer seen in the *Caspian* sea before. We arrived in safetie at *Africana*, and there remained till the tenth of Iune following, as may be prepared vs small Boates, to goe vp against the streame of *Volga*, with our goods, as also for the companie of the Ambassadors of *Tartaria*, committed vnto me, to be brought to the presence of the Emperour of *Russia*.

He returneth the eighth of March, 1599.

Samarcand.

Urgence.

The King of Balk, or Balgh.

The Caspian sea.

Wooden anchor.

Dangerous tempest, and vfe of the Compass.

The English Bag in the Caspian sea, the Country there.

A not-ble de-
scription of
the Caspian Sea.

This *Caspian Sea* (so say something of it) is in length about two hundred leagues, and in breadth one hundred and fiftie, without any issue to other Seas: to the East part whereof, ioyneeth the great delart: Countrey of the *Tartars*, called *Turkmen*: to the West, the Countreys of the *Chyrcasses*, the Mountaines of *Caucasus*, and the *Maré Caucasus*, which is from the said *Caspian Sea*, a hundred leagues. To the North is the river *Volga*, and the land of *Nagay*, and to the South part ioyne the Countreys of *Media* and *Persia*. This Sea is fresh water in many places, and in other places as salt as our great Ocean: It hath many goodly Rivers falling into it, and it awoydeh not it: selfe except it bee vnder ground. The notable Rivers that fall into it are first the great River of *Volga*, called in the *Tartar* tongue *Edell*, which springeth out of a lake in a morrill or plaine ground, not farre from the Citie of *Novogrode* in *Russia*, and it is from the spring to the Sea, about two thousand English miles. It hath diuers other goodly Rivers falling into it, as out of *Siberia*, *Tate*, and *Tem*: Allo out of the mountaines of *Caucasus*, the Rivers of *Cyrus* and *Arax*, and diuers others.

As touching the trade of *Shemake* in *Media* and *Tebria*, with other Townes in *Persia*, I have enquired, and doe well vnderstand, that it is euen like to the trades of *Tartaria*, that is little vterance, and small profite: and I have bene aduertised that the chiefe trade of *Persia* is into *Syria*, and to transported into the *Leuant* Sea. The few ships vpon the *Caspian* Seas, the want of Mart and port Townes, the pueritie of the people, and the Ice, maketh that trade naught.

At *Afracan* there were Merchants of *Shemake*, with whom I offered to barter, and to give them Kerles for their wares, but they would not, saying, they had them as good cheape in their Country, as I offered them, which was fixe rubbles for a Kerle, that I asked: and while I was at *Boghar*, there were brought thither out of *Persia*, Cloth, and diuers commodities of our Countreys, which was sold as good cheape, as I might sell ours.

The tenth day of Iune, wee departed from *Afracan* towards the *Mosco*, having an hundred gunners in our companie at the Emperours charges, for the safe conduct of the *Tartar* Ambassadors and me. And the eight and twentieth day of Iuly following, we arrived at the Citie of *Casau*, having been vpon the way from *Afracan* thither, fixe weekes and more, without any refreshing of victuals: for in all that way there is no habitation.

The fourth of August following, wee departed from *Casau*, and transported our goods by water, as farre as the Citie of *Moscow*, and then by land: so that the second of September, wee arrived at the Citie of the *Mosco*, and the fourth day I came before the Emperours Maiestie, kissed his hand, and presented him a white Cowes tayle of *Catber*, and a Drum of *Tartaria*, which hee well accepted. Also I brought before him all the Ambassadors that were committed to my charge, with all the *Russe* Russes: and that day I dined in his Maiesties presence, and at dinner, his Grace lent me meate by a Duke, and asked me diuers questions touching the Lands and Countreys where I had bene. And thus I remained at the *Mosco* about your affaires, vntill the seventeenth day of Februarie that your wares were sent downe: and then having licence of the Emperours Maiestie to depart, the one and twentieth day I came to your house to *Volgograd*, and there remained vntill the breaking vp of the yeere: and then having seene all your goods laden into your Boates, I departed with the same, and arrived withall in safetie at *Colmogre*, the ninth of May 1560. And here I cease for this time, intrating you to beare with this my large discourse, which by reason of the varietie of matter, I could make no shorter, and I beseech God to prosper all your attempts.

I have certain notes which seeme to have bene written at *Boghar* by some of Master Ienkinsons companie: which containe intelligences there received touching Cathay and the wayes thither, But I hope thereof in that which followeth to give better intelligence. It is there said that the people of Comoron are very beautifull, and that they use Koines and Forkes of gold and silver to eat their meate, not touching it with their hands: that the *Stank* beast is as big as a Hound. In Teray they worship the Fire, which is thierie four dayes journey from Cathay. At *Calcar* is resident the Can, from Cathay to Cocheke is foure weekes, it is the first Land of the Emperour of Cathay: and then to *Calcar* five dayes by land, and to *Cataio* eight weekes. In this last journey is plenty of all things: both Horses to be had, and Women at too easie rate, &c. which as newes to them I have bene touched, rather then related.

I have also by me, the last Will of Gabriel Willoughbie, kinsman to that honorable Martyr of English Northerne Discoweries Sir Hugh Willoughbie, mentioned in the beginning of this Chapter, and subscribed with his Name, the worth whereof hath caused here also this subscription. It was found in the Ship where they were frozen.

Memorie of
Sir H. Willoughbie
Will.

See more certaintie in Oset.

§. V.

Advertisements and reports of the sixth Voyage into the parts of Persia and Media, gathered out of sundry Letters written by CHRISTOPHER BVAROVON; and more especially a voyage over the Caspian Sea, and their shipwracke and miseries there endured by the Ice.

* The other
voyages are in
Matter: Hadley,
this I have for
Tartaria and
the Caspian Sea
brought hither.

Saint Nicholas.

Colmogre.

Vlyng.

Yerusalem.

Niznagrad.

Casau.

Great store of
Liquores.

Sadom.
Strange iudge-
ment.

Persia.

Tjarsie.

10 I If it is to bee vnderstood, that the ships for the voyage to Saint Nicholas in *Russia*, in which the Factors and merchandise for the *Persian* voyage were transported, departed from *Gransend* the nineteenth of Iune, 1579, which arrived at Saint Nicholas in *Russia*, the two and twentieth of Iuly, where the Factors and Merchants landed, and the merchandise discharged and laden into Dozhnikes, that is, barks of the Countrey, to be carried from thence vp by River vnto *Volgoda*. And the five and twentieth day of the said Iuly, the Dozhnikes departed from *Rose* Island by Saint Nicholas vp the river *Dvina Peremene*, that is to say in poste, by continuall sayling, rowing, setting with poles, or drawing of men, which came to *Colmogre* the feuen and twentieth day, and departed thence the nine and twentieth of Iuly vp the said river *Dvina*, and came to *Vlyng* (which is at the head of the river *Dvina*, and mouth of *Svoboz*) the ninth of August, where they stayed but a small time, providing some victuals, and thither certain of their *Cosacks* or *Batmen*, and it departed thence the same day vp the *Svoboz*, and came to *Toma* (which is counted somewhat more then halfe the way from *Vlyng*) the fiftenth day, where they thifted some of their *Cosacks*, and departed thence the same day, and came to the Citie *Volgoda* the nineteenth of August, where they landed their goods, and stayed at that place till the thirtieth of the same. Having provided at *Volgoda*, Telegas or Waggones, whereupon they laded their goods, they departed thence with the same by land towards *Tersalane*, the said thirtieth of August at eight of the clocke in the morning, and came to the East side of the river *Volga*, over against *Tersalane*, with five and twentie Telegas laden with the said goods, the tenth of September at five of the clocke afternoon. Then the three fireoos or barks, provided to transport the said goods to *Afracan*, (where they should meete the ship that should carrie the same from thence into *Persia*) came over from *Tersalane* vnto the same side of the river *Volga*, &c. there tooke in the said goods. And having prepared the said Barks ready with all necessarie furniture, they departed with them from *Tersalane* down the river of *Volga*, on the fourteenth day of September at nine of the clocke in the morning, and they arrived at *Niznagrad* the seuenteenth day at three of the clocke afternoon, where they shewed the Emperours letters to passe free without paying any custome, and carried the same threes to provide necessaries, and then departing, arrived at *Casau* (or neere the same Towne) on the two and twentieth of September at five of the clocke afternoon, where (through contrary winde, and for providing new *Cosacks* in the places of some that there went from them) they remained till the fixe and twentieth day, at what time they departed thence about two of the clocke after noone, and arrived at *Tersalane*, which is on the *Crim* side of *Volga*, and in latitude 55 degrees 22 minutes, the eight and twentieth day at ten in the forenoone, where they anchored, and remained about three houres, and departing thence came to *Oueak*, which is on the *Crim* side (on the Westerne side of *Volga*) the first of October about five of the clocke in the morning. This place is accounted halfe the way between *Casau* and *Afracan*: and here there groweth grees. The latitude of *Oueak* is 51 degrees 30 minutes. At this place had bene a very fine Iron Caille called by the name *Oueak*, and adjoining to the same was a Towne called by the *Russe* *Sadom*: this Towne and part of the Caille (by report of the people that inhabited the same, there was a piece of a Scutchion allo vpon one of the stones, which had characters grauen on it, as if it seemeth haue bene layd noble personages: for vpon a tombe stone might be perceived the forme of a Horse and a man sitting on it with a Bow in his hand, and Arrows girt to his side: there was a piece of a Scutchion allo vpon one of the stones, which had characters grauen on it, as if it seemeth haue bene confirmed with the weather, and the rest left vnperfect: but by the fauour of them that remained, we iudged them to be characters of *Armenia*; and other characters were grauen allo vpon another tombe stone. Now they departed from *Oueak* the said first of October at five of the clocke after noone, and came to *Persaulok* the tenth day about eleven or twelue of the clocke that night, making no abode at that place, but passed along by it. This word *Persaulok* in the *Russe* tongue doth signifie a narrow straight or necke of land between two waters, and it is so called by them, because from the river *Volga* at that place, to the river *Don* or *Tamais*, is counted thirtie versts, or as much as a man may well trauell on foot in one day. And from versts beneath, vpon an Island called *Tjarsie*, the Emperour of *Russia* hath thirtie Gunners all Summer time to keepe watch, called by the *Tartar* name *Carnuol*. Betweene this place and *Afracan* are foue other *Carnuols* or watches.

§. V.

The Furit is named *Kamen Caravool*, and is distant from *Perranick* one hundred and twentie verities. The second named *Stupus Caravool*, distant from the first fiftie verities. The third called *Poloy Caravool*, is one hundred and twentie verities distant from the second. The fourth named *Keskeyur Caravool*, is fiftie verities distant from the third. The fifth named *Ickeghe*, is thirtie verities distant from the fourth, and from *Ickeghe* to *Afracan* is thirtie verities.

Ice in Afracan
for four moneths.

The sixteenth of October they arrived at *Afracan*. The nineteenth of November the wind being northerly, there was a great frost, and much Ice in the River: the next day being the twentieth of November, the Ice stood in the River, and fo continued vntill Easter day.

The sixth of January being Twelfth day (which they call *Chrephenia*) the *Raffes* of *Afracan* broke a hole in the Ice vpon the River *Volga*, and hallowed the water with great solemnitie, according to the manner of their Countrey, at which time all the Souldiers of the Towne shot off their small Peeces vpon the Ice, and likewise to gratifie the Captain of the Cattle, being a Duke, whose name is *Michalouich Trouconaria*, who stood hard by the ship, beholding them as they were on the River, was thoe off all the Ordnance of our ship being fiftene Peeces, viz. two Faucons, two Fauconets, four Fowlers, four Fowlers Chambers, and three or four small Peeces made for the Stroogs to shoot Halfe-stones, and afterwards the great Ordnance of the Cattle was shot off.

An Eclipse.

On the one and thirtieth of January there happened a great Eclipse of the Moone, which began about twelue of the clocke at night, and continued before it was cleere an houre and an halfe by estimation, which ended the first of Februarie about halfe an houre past one in the morning: there was wholly darkened by the space of halfe an houre.

The variation of the
Compass in Afracan,
was 15 de-
grees 40. min.

The sixteenth of April, the variation of the Compass obscured in *Afracan*, was 12. degrees 40. minutes from North to West. This Spring there came newes to *Afracan*, that the Queene of *Perfia* (the King being blind) had bene with a great Armie against the *Turkes* that were left to possesse *Medis*, and had giuen them a great overthrow: yet notwithstanding *Derbent*, and the greatest part of *Medis* were still possessed and kept by the *Turkes*. The Factors of the Companie consulting vpon their affaires, determined to leaue at *Afracan* the one halfe of their goods with *Arthur Edwards*, and with the other halfe, the other three Factors would proceed in the ship on their purposed Voyage to the coast of *Medis*, to see what might be done: where, if they could not finde safe traffique, they determined to proceed to the coast of *Gilan*, which is a Prouince nere the *Caspian* Sea bordering vpon *Perfia*: and thereupon appointed the said goods to be laden aboard the ship, and tooke into her also some merchandize of *Tifke* or *Perfian* Merchants.

Gilan.

Volchoe.

Shallow water.

Flat.

Chetara Baynari.
The Caspian
Sea.

45. deg. 10. mi-
nutes.
The first obser-
uation in the
Caspian Sea.

The second of May they weighed, and plyed downe the River *Volga*, toward the *Caspian* Sea. The fiftenth of May in the morning, they passed by a Tree that standeth on the left hand of the River as they went downe, which is called *Mahomet Agatch*, or *Mahomet* Tree, and about three verities further, that is to say, to the Southwards of the said Tree, is a place called *Volchoe*, that is to say, The *Raffes* Wear: (but *Ochoog* is the name of a Wear in the *Tartar* con- tie) where are certaine Coages, and the Emperour hath lying at that place certaine Gun- ners to guard his Fisher-men that keepe the Wear. This *Volchoe* is counted from *Afracan* fixty verities: they proceeded downe the said River without staying at the *Volchoe*. The ninth and tenth dayes they met with shallow water, and were forced to lighten their ship by the *Panos*: The eleventh day they sent backe to the *Volchoe* for an other *Panos*: This day by mischance the ship was bigged on the grapple of the *Panos*, whereby the companie had suitably great losses, if the chiefe part of their goods had not bene layd into the *Panos*: for notwithstanding their pumping with three Pumps, heauing out water with Buckers, and all the best shifts they could make, the ship was halfe full of water: the leake could be found and stoped. The twelfth day the *Panos* came to them from the *Volchoe*, whereby they lighted the ship of all the goods. The thirteenth day in the morning there came to them a small Boat, sent by the Captain of *Afracan*, to learne whether the ship were at Sea cleare off the flats. The fiftenth day by great indurie and trauell they got their ship cleare off the shoales and flats, wherewith they had bene troubled from the ninth day vntill then: they were forced to passe their ship in three foot water or lesse. The sixteenth day they came to the *Chetara Bongari*, or land of four Hillockes, which are counted fortie verities from *Volchoe*, and are the furthest Land towards the Sea. The feuenth day they bare off into the Sea, and being about twelue verities from the Foare hillockes, riding in five foot and a halfe water about eleuen of the clocke in the fore-noon, they tooke their goods out of the *Panos* into the ship, and filled their ship with all things necessarie. The eighteenth day in the morning about seuen of the clocke, the *Panos* being discharged departed away towards *Afracan*, the wind then came at South-east, they rode fill with the ship, and 60

about nine of the clocke before noone, at which time it fell calme: the eleuation of the Pole at that place 45. degrees 13. minutes. The one and twentieth, hailing the wind at North-west, they let fayle, and steered thence South by West, and South vntill eleuen of the clocke, and had then nine foot water: and at noone they obserued the latitude, and found it to bee 44. degrees 47. minutes: then had they three fathoms and a halfe water, being cleare off the flats. It is counted from the Foare hillockes to the Sea about fiftie verities. From the said noone-tide vntill foure of the clocke, they layed South by East five leagues and a halfe: then had they five fathoms and a halfe, and brackish water: from that till twelue at night they layed South by East halfe a league, East ten leagues: then had they eleuen fathoms, and the water fayre. From 10 that till the two and twentieth day three of the clocke in the morning, they layed three and fiftie leagues, then had they sixteene fathoms water: from thence they layed vntill noone South and by West seuen leagues and a halfe, the latitude then obserued: 43. degrees 15. minutes, the depth then eight and twentie fathoms, and shallow ground: from that vntill eight of the clocke at night, they layed South by East five leagues and a halfe, then had they three and fortie fathoms shallow ground. From thence till the three and twentieth at foure of the clocke in the morning, they layed South South-west three leagues and a halfe: then could they get no ground in two and fiftie fathoms deepe. From thence vntill noone they layed South nine leagues, then the latitude obserued, was 42. degrees 30. minutes. From that till the foure and twentieth day at noone, they layed South by West seuenteen leagues and a halfe, then the latitude obserued, was one and fortie degrees two and thirtie minutes. From noone till seuen of the clocke at night, they layed South South-west foure leagues, then had they perfect sight of high Land or Hills, which were almost covered with Snow, and the mist of them were West from the ship, being then about twelue leagues from the nearest Land: they founded but could finde no ground in two hundred fathoms. From thence they layed South-west vntill mid-night: about three leagues from thence till the five and twentieth day, foure of the clocke in the morning, they layed West three leagues, being then little wind, and nere the Land, they tooke in their fayles, and lay hulling: at noone the latitude obserued, was 40. degrees 54. minutes: they founded but could get no ground in two hundred fathoms. At foure of the clocke in the after-noon, the wind North-west, they let their fayles: and from thence till the six and twentieth day at noone, they layed East South-east foure leagues. From thence they layed till eight of the clocke at night South-west three leagues, the wind then came at North. From thence they layed vntill the seuen and twentieth day two of the clocke in the morning, West South-west eight leagues, the wind blowing at North very much. From the said two till foure of the clocke, they layed South by West one league: then being day light, they saw the Land plane, which was not past three leagues from them, being very high ragged Land. There were certaine Rocks that lay farre off into the Sea, about five leagues from the same Land, (which are called *Barmake Talb*) they layed betweene those Rocks and the Land, and about five of the clocke they passed by the Port *Bilbil*, where they should haue put in but could not: and bearing long the shoare about two of the clocke after noone, they came to *Bilbil* in the Countrey of *Medis* *Bilbil*, 40 or *Sheruan*, against which place they anchored in nine foot water. Presently after they were at anchor, there came aboard of them a Boat, wherein were seuen or eight persons, two *Turkes*, the rest *Perfians*, the *Turkes* vassals, which bade them welcome, and seemed to be glad of their arrival, who told the Factors that the *Turke* had conquered all *Medis*, or the Countrey *Sheruan*, and how that the *Turkes* *Batha* remayned in *Derbent* with a Garrison of *Turkes*, and that *Shady* was wisely spoiled, and had few or no Inhabitants left in it. The Factors then being desirous to come to the speeche of the *Batha*, sent one of the *Tifkes* (or Merchants that went out with them from *Afracan*, passengers) and one of the Companies seruants, *Robert Guldin*, with those Souldiers, to the Captain of *Bachu*, which place standeth hard by the Sea, to certifie him of their arrival, and what commodities they had brought, and to desire friendship to haue quiet 50 and safe traffique for the time. *Bachu* is from *Bilbil*, the place where they rode, about a dayes journey, on foot easily to be trauelled, which may befixe leagues the next way our Land: it is a walled Towne, and strongly fortified. When the said Messenger came to the Captain of *Bachu*, the said Captain gaue him very friendly entertaynement.

Brackish water
from the
Sea.

43-degrees
15. minutes.

41-degrees
32. minutes.

40-degrees
54. minutes.

Batha Port.

In the morning very early, hee sent Horle for the rest of the companie which should goe to *Derbent*, sending by them that went, ten Sheepe for the ship. Whilst they were at breakfast, *Malter Turnbull*, *Malter Tailboyes*, and *Thomas Hindes* the Master of the ship, came thither, and when they had all broken their faits, they went to *Bachu*. And from *Bachu* they proceeded towards *Derbent*, as it was by the Captain promised, being accompanied on their way for their safe conduct, with a Gentleman, and certaine Souldiers, which had the Captain of *Bachu* his 60 Letters to the *Batha* of *Derbent*, very friendly written in their behalfe. In their iourney to *Derbent* they forsooke the ordinarie wayes, being very dangerous, and trauelled through Woods till they came almost to the Towne of *Derbent*: and then the Gentleman rode before with the Captaines Letters to the *Batha*, to certifie him of the English Merchants coming, who receiving the Letters, and vnderstanding the matter, was very glad of the newes, and lent forth to re-

they incurred were great: for oftentimes, when the Ice with force of wind and Sea did brake pieces of it were tumbled and driven one upon another with great force, terrible to behold, and the same happened at sometimes to neere unto the Lighters, that they expected it would have over-whelmed them to their utter destruction: but God who had preferred them from many perils before, did also save and deliver them then.

Travell upon
the Ice.

Chetara Babbar.

Within three or four dayes after the first landing of the Ice, when it was firme and strong, theyooke out all their goods, being fortie and eight Bales or Packes of Raw Silke, &c. laid it on the Ice, and covered the same with such provisions as they had. Then for want of victuals, &c. they agreed to leave all the goods there upon the Ice, and to go to the shore: and thereupon brake vp their Chefts and Carboys, where with, and with such other things as they could get, they made Sleds for every of them to draw upon the Ice, whereon they layed their clothes to keep them warme, and such victuals as they had, and such other things as they might conveniently carrie, and so they departed from the said goods and *Panofes* very early, about one of the clocke in the morning, and travelling on the Ice, directed their way Northward, as neere as they could judge, and the same day about two of the clocke in the after-noon, they had sight of the *Chetara Babbar* (four Hillocks of lands so called) vnto the same they directed themselves, and there remained that night. The goods and *Panofes* which they left on the Ice, they judged to be from thofe *Chetara Babbar*, about twentie Versts. And the next morning departed thence East-wards, and came to the *Chetara Bourgoris* (or foure lands before (spoken of) before noon (the distance betweene those places is about fiftene Versts) where they remained all that night, 20 departing thence towards *Afracan*: the next morning very early they lost their way through the perils of the *Ruffes* which were with them, taking to much towards the left hand (contrary to the opinion of Master Hudson) whereby wandering upon the Ice four or five dayes, not knowing whether they were entred into the *Crimme Tartars* Land or not, at length it fortuned they met with a way that seemed to be a Ruffe, which crookt back-wards towards the Sea: that way they tooke, and following the same, within two dayes trauell it brought them to a place, called the *Crasvoyare* (that is to say, in the English Tongue) *Red Cliff*, which duers of the company knew.

The English
ship cut in pie-
ces with Ice.

There they remayned that night, hauling nothing to eat but one Loafe of Bread, which they happened to find with the two *Ruffes* that were left in the ship, to keepe her all the Winter (as 30 is aforesaid) whom they chanced to meet going towards *Afracan*, about five miles before they came to the said *Crasvoyare*, who certified them that the ship was cut in pieces with the Ice, and that they had hard escaping with their lives.

In the morning they departed early from *Crasvoyare* towards the *Ouchbooge*, and about nine of the clocke before noon, being within ten Versts of the *Vebooge*, they met *Amos Riak*, with the Carpenter, which he found at *Ouchbooge*, and a Gunner newly come out of England, and also fixtie hue Horles with so many *Chiffacks* to guide them, and fiftie Gunners for guard, which brought prouision of victuals, &c. and were sent by the Duke to fetch the goods to *Afracan*. The meeting of that company was much joy vnto them.

December.

The Factors then backe with *Amos Riak*, and the said company to fetch the goods, *Thomas Jo Hudson* the Master, *Tobias Paris* his Mate, and so they the said Factors and their company marched on to the *Vebooge*, where they refreshed themselves that day, and the night following. And from thence proceeded on towards *Afracan*, where they arrived the last day of November. Thence that went for the Factors after their departure from the said *Vebooge*, travelled the same day untill they came within ten Versts of the *Chetara Babbar*, where they rested that night. The next morning by the brake of the day they departed thence, and before noon were at the *Chetara Babbar*, where they stayed all night; but presently departed thence *Thomas Hudson* with the Carpenter and Gunner to seeke where the goods lay: who found the same, and the next day they returned backe to their company at the *Chetara Babbar*, and declared vnto them in what fort they had found the said goods.

Assailed by
Tartars.

The third day early in the morning, they departed all from the four *Babbar* towards the said goods, and the same day did lade all the goods they could finde upon the said sleds, and withall convenient speed returned backe towards *Afracan*. And when they came to the *Chetara Bourgoris*, where they rested the night, in the morning very early before the brake of day, they were assailed by a great company of the *Wagays Tartars* Horle-men, which came shouting and hallowing with a great noyse, but our people were so inured with the sleds, that they durst not enter upon them, but ranne by, and shot their Arrows amongst them, and hurt but one man in the head, who was a *Ruffe*, and so departed presently. Yet when it was day, they shewed themselves any more. The same day our men with their carriages, about three of the clocke in the after-noon, where our people greatly rejoiced of their great good hap to have escaped so many hard entes, troubles and miseries, as they did in that Voyage, and had great cause therefore to prayse the Almighty, who had so mercifully preferred and delivered them.

They

They remayned the Winter at *Afracan*, where they found great fauour and friendship of the Duke, Capraine, and other chiefe Officers of that place: but that Winter there happened no great matter, worth the noting.

In the Spring of the yeere 1581, about the miditt of March, the Ice was broken vp, and cleare gone before *Afracan*.

The breaking
vp of the Ice.

A Letter of Master HENRIE LANE to the worshipfull Master WILLIAM SANDERSON, containing a briefe discourse of that which passed in the North-east discovery, for the space of three and thirtie yeeres.

After Sanderfon, as you lately requested me, so have I sought, and though I cannot finde some things that heretofore I kept in writing, and lent out to others, yet perusing at London copies of mine old Letters to content one that meaneth to please many, I have briefly and as truly as I may, drawne out as followeth: The rough heaving may bee planned as your pleasure, or as pleaseth him that shall take the paines.

First, the honorable attempt to discover by Sea North-east and North-west maine for Cathay, being chiefly procured by, privileges from King Edward the first, and other his Nobility, by and as the chief and lots of Master Sebastian Cabotta, then Governour for Discoveries, with Sir Andrew Lucie, Sir George Barnes, Sir William Garrard, Master Anthony Hulfie, and a company of Merchants, was in the last yeere of his Maiesties reigne, 1533. The general charge whereof was committed to one Sir Hugh Willoughbie Knight, a goodly Gentleman, accompanied with sufficient number of Pilots, Masters, Merchants and Mariners, having three Ships well furnished, to wit, The Bona Speranza, the Edward Bonaenture, and the Confidentia. The Edward Bonaenture, Richard Chancellor being Pilot, and Steuen Burrough Master, having discovered Ward-house upon the Coast of Finmark, by storme or fogge departed from the rest, found the Bay of Saint Nicholas, now the chiefe Port of Russia, there wintered in safetie, and bad ayde of the people at a Village called Newnow.

The other two ships attempting further Northwards (as appeared by Pamphlets found after written by Sir Hugh Willoughbie) were in September encountered with such extreme cold, that they put backe to seeke a wintering place, and missing the said Bay fell upon a desert Coast in Lappia, entering into a River immediately frozen up, since discovered, named Arzua Rea, distant East from a Russian Monastrie of Monks called Pechingho, from whence they neuer returned, but all to the number of fiftene persons perished, which was for want of experience to have made Canes and Stows. These were found upon the Ship the next Summer, Anno 1554. by Ruffe-fishermen: and in Anno 1555. the place first vnto by English Merchants, as heretofore appeareth.

Anno 1554. the said ship Edward Bonaenture (although robbed homeward by Flemings) returned with her company to London, shewing and setting forth their entertainment and discovery of the 40 Countries, euen to the Cite of Molco, from whence they brought a privilege written in Ruffe with the Kings or great Dukes seale, the other two ships looked for and vntaken to them where they were.

Anno 1555. the said company of Merchants for a discovery upon a new supply, sent thither againe with two Ships, to wit, the Edward Bonaenture, and another bearing the name of the King and Queene, Philip and Marie, whose Maiesties by their Letters to the said Mulcoute, recommended sundry their subiects then passing, wherof certaine, to wit, Richard Chancellor, George Killingworth, Henrie Lave, and Arthur Edwards, after their arrivall at the Bay, and passing up Dwina to Nologda, went first up to Molco, where, upon knowledge of the said Letters, they with their trayne had speciall entertainment, with houses, and shortly permitted to the Princes presence, they were with Gentlemen brought through the Cite of Molco, to the Castle and Palace, replest with numbers of people, and some gunners. They entred sundry rooms, furnished in them with ancient grave personages, all in long garments of sundry colours, Gold, Tissue, Balacke, and Quier, as our Vestments and Coats haue beene in England, but able with Caps, Jewels, and Chances. These were found to be no Courtiers, but ancient Mulcoutes, inhabitants, and other their Merchants of credit, as the manner is, furnished thus from the Wardrobe and Treasurie, waiting and wearing this apparel for the time, and so to restore it.

Then entring into the Presence, being a large room floored with Carpets, were men of more estate, and richer cloze, in number above one hundred (if I figure: who after the said English-men came in, doing reverence, they all stood up, the Prince only sitting, and yet rising at any occasion, when our King and Queene names were read or spoken. Then after speeches by interpretation, our men kissing his hand, and holding up to dinner, they layd in another room, and at dinner brought through, where might be seene much finer and gilt Plate, some like the and as bigge as Kildermine, and Wallis: bowles, and standing the Dining place, being the greater room, the Prince was set bare-headed, his Crowne and rich Cap hanging upon a spike by. Not farre distant from his Metropolitan, with others wher of his kinde, and chiefe Tartarian Captaines: none (as our against him, or any, at wher Tailer, their backs towards him:

Entertainment
by the
Duke.

h. 6

which tables all furnished with guests set, there was for the English-men, named by the Russes, Ghosti Carabelski, to wit, Strangers or Merchants by ship, a table in the midst of the room, where they were set direct against the Prince: and then began the service, brought in by a number of his young Lords and Gentlemen, in such rich attire, as is above specified: and still from the Prince's table (sitting) standing him by name to them, by their fewer all Christian names, as they sat, viz. Richard, George, Henry, Arthur, Lukewig, bread and sundry drinks of purified Mead, made of fine white and clarified Honey. At their rising, the Prince called them to his table, to receive each one a Cup from his hand to drink, and took into his hand, Master George Killingsworths beard, which was both over the table, and pleasantly delivered it the Mervopolitane, who seemed to bless it, said in Ruffe, This is Gods gift. At indeed at that time it was not only thick, broad, and yellow coloured, but in length five foot, and two inches of girth. Then taking leave, being night, they were accompanied and followed with a number, carrying pots of drink, and dishes of meat dressed, to our lodgings.

This year the two Ships, with the dead bodies of Sir Hugh Willoughbie, and his people, were sent unto by Master Killingsworth, (which remained there in Moko Agent almost two years) and much of the goods and vessels were recovered and saved.

Anno 1556, the disastrous voyage. The Company sent two Ships for Russia, with extraordinary Masters and Souldiers to bring home the two ships, which were frozen in Lappia, in the river of Arzina afore said. The two ships sent this year from England sailing from Lapland to the Bay of Saint Nicholas, took in sailing with passengers, to wit, a Ruffe Ambassador, named Ioseph Napier, and some of his men shipped by Richard Chancellor in the Edward. But so it fell out that the two which came from Lappia, with all their Master and Mariners: never were heard of, but in foule weather, and wronge State, after three years wintering in Lapland, became, as is supposed, vesselless, and sunk, wherein were drowned all diverse Russes, Merchants, and servants of the Ambassador. A third ship the Edward afore said, sailing on the North parts of Scotland, upon a rocke was also lost, and Master Chancellor with divers other, saved, were sent for into Scotland, from the King, Queene, and Merchants, (the messenger being Master Doctor Laurence Haffie, and others:) And then, as in the Chronicles appeareth, honourably entertained and received at London.

Serchthrift. This year also the company furnished and sent out a Pinasse, named the Serchthrift, to discover the Harbours in the North coast from Norway to Wandhoche, and so to the Bay of Saint Nicholas. There was in her Master and Pilot, Stephen Borough, with his brother William, and eight other. Their discovery was beyond the Bay, toward the Samodei, people dwelling near to the River of Ob, and found a sound or sea with an Island called Vaigats, first by them put into the Card or Map. In the place they threw Snow out of their said Pinasse, with shovels in August, by which extremitie, and lacke of time, they came backe to Russia, and wintered at Gologmorg.

Anno 1557. Boghar voyage. The company with foure good Ships, sent backe the said Ruffe Ambassador, and in company with him, sent as an Agent, for further discovery, Master Antonie Ienkinson, who afterwards Anno 1558. with great favour of the Prince of Mulcouie, and his letters, passed the river Volga rians encountered, and in danger: but keeping company with Merchants of Baictira, or Boghar, and Vigne, travelling with Camels, he with his company, went to Boghar, and no further: whose entertainment of the King is to be had of Master Ienkinson, which returned Anno 1559. to Mulcouie. And Anno 1560. he, with Henrie Lane, came home into England: which yeere was the first safe returne, without loss of shipwracke, or dead freight, and burnings. And at the time was the first traffique to Narue in Lituonia, which confines with Lithuania, and all the Dominion of Russia: the Reports were taken by Henrie Lane, Agent, and delivered to the company, 1561. The trade to Rie, and Reuel, of old time hath been long since frequented by our English Nation, but this trade to the Narue was hitherto concealed from us by the Danskers and Lubekers.

Anno 1561. the said Master Antonie Ienkinson went Agent into Russia, who the next year after, passing all the river of Volga to Afracan, and over the Caspian Sea, arrived in Peria, and opened the trade thither.

Also betwene the yeeres of 1568. and 1573. sundry Voyages after Master Ienkinson, were made by Thomas Alcock, Arthur Edwards, Master Thomas Banister, and Master Geoffrey Duket, whose returne (if by the river Volga had not proceeded by routing Treves) had altogether failed saying it true. By virtue small things grow great, and by contention great things become small. The may hee understand betwixt the Company. The forwardness of some few, and enill doing of some wittier Factor, was cause of much of the enill success.

Arthur Edwards was sent againe 1579. and dyed in the voyage at Afracan. About which matters, are to be remembered the Voyages of Master Thomas Randolph Esquire, Ambassador Anno 1567. And late of Sir Icomie Bowes, Anno 1583. both remaining and treating for further Discoveries, Freedomes, and Priviledges, wherewith I meddle not. But in conclusion, for their paces and

Atacke in
Prin.
Foster dyed
in Media.
Edwards dyed
at Afracan.

and adventures this way (as divers doe now adways other wayes) as worthy Gentlemen sent from Princes, to do their Country good, I put them in your memory, with my heartie farewell. From Saint Margrets neere Dartmouth in Kent.

To the Reader.

I Have had much trouble to give thee this Author, both for his Language, being Portugall (which for this, and some other parts of this work, I was forced to get as I could) and for the variety of his Relations, seeming both in themselves so suspitious, and not seconded in many things, that I say not contrariety, by other Authors. Besides his booke came not out, till himselfe was gone out of the world. I answer, that Riccius the Iesuite his Relations came not to us, till himselfe was likewise gone; and that this might rather plead not only for the Materiall, but the sinceritie, by that Callian rule, Cui bono? for whom should a dead man flatter, or for what should hee lye? Tea, hee little shares his owne companion and Native, but often and eagerly layeth open their vices: and which is more, I finde in him little boasting, except of other Nations; none at all of himselfe, but as if he intended to expresse Gods glory, and more merit of nothing but miserie. And howsoever it seems incredible to remember such infinite particulars as this Booke is full of, yet an eagle memory holdeth strong impression of good or bad: Scribant in marmore latius, I said of one; and of the other, Omnia que curant fecit meminit. Neither is it likely but that the Author wrote Notes, which in his manifold disadventures, were lost otherwise, but by that writing written the firmer in his memory, especially now whetted, filed, polished with so many companions of miserie, whom in that state, He olim meminit iustitias: their best miserie in their chames and wandring being the mutual reckonings of things fene, dead, suffered. More maner it is, if a liar, that he should not forget himselfe, and contradikt his owne Relations; which sometimes he may seeme to doe in the numbers of the yeere of the Lord; yea, and other numbers: but his leaves were left open at his death, and those numbers perhaps added by others after: and besides, mine owne experience shall often find figures mistaken from my hand, which being by the Compositor set at large, become at times by ten times so much; and girt in other places as narrow with the tenth place diminished, or one figure set for another, and so I suppose not so truly as theirs: for I think that he neuer had Arte, or Instrument to calculate the same, but contented himselfe in the writing of this Booke to lead the blind into error: no printed Map that I have seene being true; and so the blind whom the papers were brought uninfused might out of those Maps doe it; erring other of ignorance, (which we have often seene in Cards of remote places East and West) printed, to conceal it from others, that which they have found sweet and gainfull, the Mariner and Merchant not looking with the general eyes of the ingenious, ingenious Seebler.

For his respect at home: it was dedicated to King Philip the Third of Spaine; which impudencie would not have beene divided (if altogether a tale) on such Masters; licensed by the Holy Office, and printed at Lisbon: translated into the Spanish by the Licentiate, Francisco de Herrera Maldonado, Canon of the Church Rial of Avila, and dedicated to a Clergy-man Secreter de Faria, Printed 1620. at Portugall, and in Cathle to another should be dedicated, a frivolous tale and doublet. I add the Authors first, who religious, and his often professions, his credit, as Herrera reporteth with the Spanish Translators: Apologie at large, and out of him Fr. Andreada the Portugall Chronicler, testimony.

If this move thee not to beleene, yet beleene thou much, that I have no minde to deceine thee, but give thee what I found, only much contralled, and not going all the way with our Author, whose original Booke is above one hundred and fifty sheets of paper in folio, but contented with his China and Tartar Relation, that also too much, if not true. And yet I would not have an Author vented for fit meniaia dicere, if hee would not ventur; that is, if he be so credulous to beleene, or so imprudent to proffer to others: such probable falsehoods related by others (as I will not insure but of himselfe hee might mislike, and by others be mislike) the Chinos here might relating these rarities to him enlarge, and de magnis maioru loqui: so he be fittly religious in a wit and true deliverer of what himselfe hath seene, and believeth his own eyes: the former is rashness and distaffill, the later is dishonesty and detestable. Once, the Summe Rising hath found many misapprehensions, but the Western Summe is never night; and never obscure and meaner than our Western affaires then the China. Rares of the East; and were mere Backes and Omles not to beleene a greater light then our Sunne: see and say. All China Authors how diversified sever in their lines, yet concur in a centre of Aymuranda Sinaum, which if others have not so largely related as this, they may thank God they payed not so dear a price to see them; and for mee, I will rather beleene (where reason enuils not au cesteione fima) then seize to see

Note for num-
bers (if great
care be not
had) how ea-
sily how dan-
gerously mis-
taken.

So it seemes
by those words
of his, lat.
And que cer-
tiffi que me
falte o milhor,
que te fides o
negotio para

See a exten-
der e clima e a
Alura das
guas do

Falle gradua-
tions a com-
mon thing in
Maps of East
and West-
Indies.

Religion
great issue
wrote a booke
with that title

at the Author's rate; and if he hath robbed the Altars of Truth, as he did those of the Calomny
 idols, yet in Pequignity we will not cut off the thumbs (according to Nanquin rigour) upon her
 justice without any evidence against him. How ever, cheaper I am sure he is by farre to thee than to me,
 who would have beene loth to be so true a labourer in a lying Author, willingly or commonly (in my
 conceit) [s]litting his owne fight, though perhaps not seldom deced in things taken up on China
 truth, or entered into their China Bookes, such as he here often citeth. Men refuse not Silver for
 the Oure: gather the Rose without the prickles; neglect not Harneit mixed with weeds, [w]ith
 with the chaffe, Fruit for the shell, and hate not Honie for the Bees sting; nor will I either in progre-
 ssive faith beleave all, or be so penurious as to reject the most of that which here I present. Use then
 thy freedom, and him as thy pleasure (I say not mee) and if thou wilt not pardon such a briefe to
 collection, then wouldst kindly give. Callian entertainment to all, and more then all, often yielding
 brands and enlarging flourish of stile, beyond a translation, as if his Author had not said enough.
 The variety, if it had beene merely doubtful, presents I know not how many enterconferences as interludes
 of Comick and Tragick scenes, more worthy the reading then most in this kinde; and as fit to recreate:
 how much more, where veritie is (as I suppose) the ground and substance, though perhaps inlayed with
 other phantasies among. That the Teluties in some things differ, is their authoritie against him, who as
 more learned and judicious, and longer experienced, might finde out some truths better then hee; as his
 various fortunes, and that time, might let him see many particularities; which they could not, writing
 sixtie yeeres after. In many things they both agree: and Galpar de Cruz hath many the same things;
 and that his strange Relation of the Crosse in China and the Hungarian of the Mount Sinai, is also
 covered by Lucena, perhaps learned by some of His companie: and these exceptions by mee mentioned, are
 rather preoccupations of censorious judging my judgement, then my iudiciall sentence, which the indi-
 cious will suspend, and leave to better experience. Lucidius posteri: veritas Temporis filia.

CHAP. II.

Observations of China, Tartaria, and other Easterne parts of the
 World, taken out of FERNAM MENDEZ PINTO
 his Peregrination.

§. I.

MENDEZ his many miserable adventures, his strange expedition with
 ANTONIO DE FARIA; divers coasts visited, Pirats
 tamed, miseries suffered, glorie
 recovered.

Fernam Mendez Pinto, borne at old Montemor in the Kingdome of Portugal, was
 placed in seruice at ten or twelve yeeres of age in Lisbon, the thirteenth of De-
 cember, An. 1521. on the day of breaking the Scythians, or publike mourning
 for King Emanuel. A yeere and halfe after he fled upon occasion of a sudden ac-
 cident, and got aboard a Caruile which was taken by a French Pirat, which
 would have made sale of them at Larache to the Moors. But a fortnight after
 taking another Portugall ship coming from Saint Thome worth 40000. Duckets, they re-
 turned for France, carrying some with them for Sea seruice, the rest they set on fire by night on
 the shoare of Melidies, naked; which came to Santiago da Cacem, where they were relieved.
 Thence he went to Setuval, and serued Francisco de Faria a Gentleman belonging to the Master
 of Santiago, and after that was Page to the Master himselfe. But his meanes being short he
 left his seruice.

* See of Gama
 tom. i. pag. 26.
 Straight of
 Mecca or the
 Red Sea.
 Portugall For-
 tresse in Suez
 taine before the
 Arabs Con-
 quist.
 A Martyr of
 Mahomet. Mar-
 tyrism non par-
 sed casus.

An. 1537. he went for India in a Fleet of five ships; the Admirall was Don Pedro de Sylva,
 sonne of Vasco * da Gama (first Discoverer of the Indies, whose bones he carried with him in
 the ship at his returne, which were receued by King Iohns appointment in greater Funerall
 pompe, then had beene fene done to a Subiect.) They arrived at Diu the fifth of September.
 Thence after seuenteen dayes he went with two Phisits for the Straight of Mecca, and came in
 sight of Curia Muria, and Abudicena, a small franced with fowle weathier, and coming to
 Sacatona, weered nere the Fortresse which Francisco d' Almeida first Vice-roy of India, had
 built, 1507. Having receued some refreshing of the Christians there, they departed, and in the
 height of Madaga took a ship, but fue men being therein left of eightie; one of which was
 the Captaine, a Renegado of Malagasy, who for loue of a Malagasy woman had denyed his Faith,
 and refusing to returne to Christianity, notwithstanding all perswasions, wee boord him hand

and foot, and threw him into Sea with a great stone tyed about his necke: The ship also sunke,
 and litle was saved.

They went to Aruica (then) in the Countrey of Preste Iohn; to deliuer a letter to Aurique
 Barboza, the Factor of Antonio Syluara, sent three yeeres before by Nuno de Cunha, who with
 fortie others escaped from the rebellion Xael, in which Dom Manuel de Almeida, with one hun-
 dred and sixtie Portugals were taken, four hundred thousand Duckets, and fixe Portugall Ships,
 which were those that Solymán Bassa A. 1538. brought with prouision for his Armada to the
 siege of Diu the King of Xael having sent them with fixtie Portugals for a Caue present; the
 fleet hee bestowed as almes on Mahomet's house at Mecca. I with three others, were sent some
 dayes journey into the Countrey to Barboza, then in the Port of Gleyter in guard of the Queene,
 mother of the Preste Iohn, who welcomed them, as the night drew to the flowerie Garden, and as
 Helena to Ierusalem. so were they (said she) to her eyes.

But (to leaue those things) he went thence to Ormus, and then to Goa; there offered his
 seruice to Pero de Faria Captaine of Malacca, which entertained him. The occurrences of Bata,
 Achem, Acor in Samatra, Benda in the continent, and his employments in those parts, as also
 of Siam, Paou, Patane, Iomit.

He saith that hee was wrecked at Sea coming from Acor; of eight and twentie, fue onely
 escaping, two of which the Crocodiles deuoured. Hee was taken and sold to a Moore, which
 carried him to Malacca. Thence Pero de Faria sent him to Patane in triall to free thence againe,
 employed by Antonio de Faria to Lagor, Coia Acor a Concarate Pirat set upon them, cooke, and
 killed all, Borall and Pinto onely escaping, which leaping into the Sea were reloued by a Barke,
 and sent to Patane, Faria afraid to returne to Malacca, where he was lo indebted for thole goods, vowed
 to be reuenged of the Pirat. And by helpe of his friends armed a Junke with fixe & fifty Soldiers,
 of which I and Borall (extremely both indebted and wounded) were. From Patane we fet forth
 in May, 1540. and to a Hauen called Bralapisen, some fixe leagues off the firme Land, where we
 found a Junke of the Leguier, bound for Siam with an Embassadour of Namsaquim de Londeu,
 Prince of the Ile of Tosa situate in fix & thirty degrees, which seeing vs come, halted away with
 all speed. Faria sent a Chinese Pilot to them with faire offers of loue and courtserie, who returned
 with a present, a rich Sword, and fixe and twentie Pearles in a Boxe of Gold, with this answer,
 That the time would come, when they should communicate with vs in the Law of the true God of infinite
 mercy, who by his death had giuen life to all men, with a perpetual inheritance in the house of the good:
 and hee blessed that this should bee after the halfe of the halfe of time were past. Neither could
 Antonio de Faria returne any thing in recompence, they being gotten farre into the Sea.

Heere wee watered, and after coasted to search the Riuer of Pulo Cambin, which diuides the
 Kingdome of Champaa, from the Seniorie of Cambosa in the height of nine degrees. Thither we
 came in the end of May, and the Pilot went vp the Riuer three leagues, to a great Towne called
 Caimpario, where we stayed to take in prouision twelue dayes. Faria being curious, desired to
 knowe whence that Riuer came, the originall thereof (they told him) was a Lake called Prater.
 Eastward from that Sea, two hundred and sixtie leagues in the Kingdome of Quirvan; which
 Lake was compassed with high Hills at the bottome of which, along the waters side, were eight
 and thirtee Townes, thirteen great, the rest small. One of these Great ones was named Xim-
 calon, where there was a great Gold Mine, whence euery day was taken a Barre and a halfe of Gold,
 which in our money amounted by the yeere to two and twentie millions of Gold. Four
 Lords are Barres, and are filld at water for a private proprietie. They said that one of these called
 Raisidan, in the Court of his house in iare, had let vp to the necke in earth fix hundred Bars of
 Gold in powder, as good as that of Menacabo in Samatra; and that if three hundred of our men
 were feet thither, with one hundred Caluier, they would without doubt become maisters thereof.
 They said also that in Baguirm, another of those Townes, was a Rocke of Diamonds, better
 then thole of Laue, and of Tansampura in the Ile of Laue.

Proceeding along the Coast of Champaa, from Pulo Cambin, we came to a shiffe called Saly-
 sacum, and the next day to the Riuer Tobosay, in the mouth whereof a Junke passed by, to which
 we offered the courtserie of the Sea, and they in forme made shew of a Negroes Buttocks, with
 many trumpets and other illitie. Hence grew displeasure in the night three Barke came to assaile
 vs, which we tooke, with the Captain, two Achens, a Turke, & the Negro. This Negro confes-
 sed himselfe a Christian, illue to Gaffer de Mello a Portugall, whom that dogge (he pointed to the
 bound Captaine) flew two yeeres since in Liampou, with fixe and twentie Portugals besides with
 him in the Ship. What said Faria, is this Samila? Yea, said he, and he had thought in so small
 a Barke, there had not beene about fixe or seuen, and hee would have bound your hands and
 feet, and impaled you as hee serued my matter. Faria hauing learned his and his with the same
 face, tooke the Junke, in which was thirtee fix thousand Taels of Iapan Silver, which make fit-
 tie four thousand Cruzados or Duckets, besides much good merchandise.

Faria proceeded along the Coast of Champaa, and came to the Riuer Tiamoun, by our men
 called Varella: into which enter the Ships of Siam and the Malaya Coast, which goe for China,
 and Truck for Gold, Calamba and Iuory, whereof that Kingdome hath store. Many Parrots
 are taken.

Brulapsem.
 Tofa, Spen Luffa.

A strange an-
 swere.

Caimpario.
 Lake Prater.
 Quirvan.

Ximcalon.
 11. Millions
 Duckets.
 Gold mines, &
 iron mines.

Rocke of Dia-
 monds.

Samila? Pi-
 rate taken.

Tiamoun, or
 Tiamoun, or
 Varella, Truck
 for gold.

The other *Necodas* or Captaynes of the Lunkes, seeing what *Faria* had done, consulted together, and seeing he might alio doe as much to them, sent two chiefe men to him, desiring him as *King of the Sea*, to give them scourtie to passe, in dispatch of their businesse before the *Monfoon* were ended, and that as his Tributaries, they would give him twentie thousand *Tais* of *Silver*: to which he swore, and said: no *Talefe* should rob them: and with a Present received the *Mo-ney* brought him within an houre after. A Boy which wrote their *Passes*, gayned in thirtee dayes above foure thousand *Tais* (besides gifts for dispatch) each Lunkie giuing fise *Tais* and the lesse *Barques* two. The *Vice-Roy* alio of *Amoy* sent him a rich Present, with a Letter to in- treat him to fence the *Summe* of the *Summe* as Admirall from *Lampoon*, at ten thousand *Tais* annuall wages, besides (after three yeares end) further advancement: whereat he excused by his vowchance, and departed to *Quang-poo*, a Citty of fiftie thousand *Houffs*, and he coasted all alongh the Iland of *Amoy* seven monethes space, till the *Souldiers* were wearied, and required their shares as had beene agreed: which was quietted with promise to winter at *Siam*, and having there made *Mooney* of all to give each man his part.

Quang-poo.

Tiba dei Lala-
net.Miserable
wrecker, and
then fort-
night's mis-
tics.Rifles almost
miscellaneous.
Admirable
Wonderfull
provision.Admirable
riple.

Quang-poo.

Candy.

New Moone.
Temple in
China.
Guzen.

Falls Quirin.

With this agreement they came to an Iland, called *Thames Land*, because standing out of the Bay, it is their place to take the first of the *Monfoon*. Here at the new Moone in October were encountered with a cruell *Tempest* in the night, by which the foure *Vessels* were broken in pieces, five hundred eightie fixe persons drowned, of which eight and twentie *Portugals*; three and fiftie vs by Gods mercie saved, *Faria* being one, and one and twentie other *Portugals*, the rest *Slaves* and *Mariners*. They spent two dayes and a halfe in Buriall of their dead, and to get some of their provision, which yet having taken Salt-water, would not last above five dayes of the fiftieene they stayed there. *Faria* comforted them saying, that God would not permit his muche evil but for a greater good: nor would heane taken from them five hundred thousand and *Cruzados*, but to give them five hundred thousand: God doth not punish with both hands, his mercie curing the wounds which his Justice maketh.

Thus we walked naked, and bare-foot on the Strand & in the *Wildernes*, suffering hunger and cold, many of our companions dying, not so much for want of food, as for the stinke and the South winde blowing thereon. In this disconolate plight, a Sea-kite came flying from behind the South Cape of the Iland, and fell from his Talons a Mullet a span long, which he taking up with great prayse to God, and Prayer to Iesus Christ, not to consider their merits, but his merits for them, hee caused it to be roasted and given to the sickie. Looking to the place whence the *Fowl* came, they saw more of them flying vp and downe, and going thitherwards, discovered a Valley with diuers Fruit-trees, and before they came at it, they found a Deere which a Tygre had newly killed, and with their generall cry was scarred from it, having begun to eat it. We feasted with it, and with many Mulletts which those Sea-kites got, and (scarred with our cries) fell full. This fishing they continued from Munday till Saturday, and then (seeing a faile they hid themselves in the Woods. It was a *Lantea* or Barke with Oares, which came thither with thirte persons to wood and water; and whiles they were disposing themselves, and had left their Barke unmanned, *Faria* apprehended the occasion, and having instructed them, at the name of Iesus they all ranne vpon it, entred without gain-saying, and loosing the *Prow* put to Sea. The *Chinow* (seeing they were taken, but fearing the shore, feared) committing the Iron-piece out of their *Lantea*, they fled to the Thickets. We presently fell to eat, what an old man was dressing for the *Chinow*, and after searched and found Silkes, Damaskes, Muske, and other goods worth foure thousand *Cruzados*, besides Rice, Sugar, Hennes, which we most esteemed for recovery of the sickie. There was a Boy of twelue or thirtee yeares old, whom *Faria* asked, whence and whose the *Lantea* was: hee answered, it was his *Fathers*, from whom they had unhappily taken lesse then an houre, all hee had gotten in above thirte yeares: hee came from a place, called *Quoanum*, where in barter for *Silver* hee had gotten those goods, which hee was going to sell to the *King* of *Siam* in the Port of *Combay*: and now hee going to supply his want of water, you have taken away his goods without feare of the Justice of Heaven. *Faria* promising to vfe him as his Sonne; then, said hee, see me on flowers in that miserable Land where my true Father is, whith whom I had rather dye then live with so bad people. Much reasoning passed, and he said, they could speake well of God, but little vied his Law: neither would hee ate in three dayes space.

We determined to goe for *Lampoon*, two hundred and fixtie leagues Northwards from thence, and to get if we could, a better Barke, this being little, and hardly able to brooke those New Moone-stormes on the Coast of *China*. At Sun-set wee let sayle, and next morning going North-east, came to an Ile called *Quirin*, where weooke a fifteen-barke with fiftie of fresh fish, whence weooke what we thought fit, with eight men of her, twelue to serve for the *Lantea*, our men being weakie. They told vs that eightene leagues thence was a good River, called *Xing-guan*, within which was poore fittier-village, called *Kamor*, and three leagues higher vp, a Citty of good Trade. The next day in the evening we came to *Xamoy*, where a Lunkie rode fitter for *Faria* purpose, which in the night heooke, the men being all aspe; whom he bound, threatening to kill them all if they made any cry; and sayled presently with her to the Ile *Palle Quirin*, nine leagues off, and in three dayes after to an Iland called *Luxitay*, where for the recovery of the sickie

sicke hee stayed fiftene dayes. In the Lunkie hee found no Merchandize but Rice, the most of which hee cauto into the Sea to lighten her, and fit her for our Voyage. Thence wee put forth for *Lampoon*, where we heard were many *Portugals* from *Malaca*, *Zunda*, *Siam*, and *Patane*, which vied there to winter.

In the way we encountered, after two dayes sayling, with a Lunkie of *Patane*, which belonged to a *China* Pirate, called *Quay Panian*, a great friend of the *Portugals*, of whom he had thirte in his company entertained in his pay. They not knowing vs, began with a terrible salutation of fiftene Peeces of Artillery, but by Crofies in their Banner, we knew them and made signes, by which both congratulated each other with heartie greetings, and *Quay Panian* and hee joynd in league to pursue their Fortunes together. They now purposed to goe to *Chinchoo*, and there found five sayle of *Portugals*, which told them of a great Fleet of foure hundred Lunkes, with one hundred thousand men gone to the King of *Goto*, in succour of *Sacan* of *Pontor*, who had voluntarily subjected himselfe to the Ile of *Goto*, in one hundred thousand *Tais* Tribute yearly. Weooke out of those five ships thirte Lunkes and five Souldiers more, and proceeded on our way for *Lampoon*. In the way we encountered a small *Parao* with eight *Portugals* sorely wounded, whereof *Antonio Anriquez*, and *Memo Taborda* were, rich men of great effence.

These recounted to him that a *Gazerate* Rouer, *Cia Acom*, with three Lunkes and foure *Lanteas* (in which were five hundred men, one hundred and fiftie of them *Moors*) set vpon them (having parrel fiftene dayes agoe from *Lampoon*, for *Malaca*, purposing to goe for *India*, if the *Monfoon* had permitted) before the Ile *Gumbor*, and after some houres fightooke them: eightie two persons (eighteene of them *Portugals*) were slaine, and as many others captiued, with one hundred thousand *Tais* valuen their Lunkie: one of the *Pyrras* Lunkes was fired and burnt to the water. These few in the fute of the entry elapsed in the little Boat which hung at sterne; they being buied in the *Ipoyale* and the *Sunne* then set, could not follow, but went into the River with much triumph.

Faria and *Quay Panian* who had kindred at *La Toa*, provided themselves these of Powder, Lead, Viduals, and other necessaries for *Mooney*, by the name of the *Mandarine*, (no Country in the World being like *China* for all kind of provisions) and there got two greater Lunkes in truck of the other, and two *Lanteas*, and one hundred and fixtie *Mariners*, so that they were in all fixe hundred persons, of which ninetie fixe were *Portugals*, they had one hundred & fixty *Harquebuses*, forty *Brasse* Peeces, & sixty Quintals of Powder, nine hundred pots of Powder, foure thousand Darts headed with Iron, Arrows, and many Fire-works, with other Weapons. Thus provided, they set forth in pursuit of *Cia Acom*, and by a Fisher-boe learned that hee was in the River *Tuolien*, there to turnish and fit the Lunkie lately taken from the *Portugals*, to goe with it and two others for *Siam* (where hee was borne) about ten dayes thence. *Faria* sent *Piente* *Morajo* in the *Fishing* with the rest, hee easily did, and brought word aboard of the easinesse of the atting nothing till they came in sight, and *Faria* crying up the River in the morning, the enemy knowing to them, to them, *Santiago*, off went the Ordinance, the small shot succeeded, that none now in the Lunkes durst appeare. His small Vessels (*Lanteas*) committing the shore with succour were fired with great shot that they could not helpe themselves, and by our small Vessels were fired with the fire-pis; in three of them two hundred persons were slaine. Out of the fourth they leaped into the water, and were most flaine by *Piente* men.

Cia Acom which before was not knowne, seeing his *Moors* ready to try the waters courtesie to escape those fiery enemies, armed in Buff, with Plates fitted with Gold, cryed out aloud that he might be heard, *La Hal ih Allah Muhammed rogolabab: what shall you Mohammedans and off men of the Law of Mahomet, suffer your selves to be conquered of so feeble a Nation as are these Doggers, which have no more heart then white Hens, and bearded women to them, to them, the Booke of Flowers, hath given promise from our Prophet to you and me, to bathe our selves in the blood of these faithlesse they ranne on our Swords. *Faria* on the other side heard him in the name of Christ crucified, and with a zealous ferour reached *Cia Acom*, with a blow with a two hand Sword on his Head-piece of Maile, that hee sunk to the ground, and with another blow cut off his legges, whereupon his men with such fure assailed *Faria*, not caring for thirte *Portugals* which stood space, eight and fortie of the Enemies lay dead vpon *Cia Acom*, and the rest they flue all but into the water with *Cia Acom*, and the King of *Bintans* chefe *Captain*, or Priest, the *Spadder* and the drinker of *Portugall* blood, as hee killed himselfe in the beginning of his Writings, for which he was of that cursed Sect much honoured.*

Of the Enemies were slaine three hundred and eightie, of ours fortie two (eight of which were *Portugals*, *Faria* searched the Iland, and found a Village eleven of fortie or fiftie houses, which *Cia Acom* had sacked, slaying some of the Inhabitantes. Not farre off was a great house for

Quay Panian
the Pyrras

Chinchoo.

Goto.

Newes of cia
Acom.Optima India,
cia Acom
slaine.The Capti-
vity of Chri-
stians.

seeming a Temple full of sick and wounded men, ninety six in number, which the Pyrat had there in cure, whom he burned, setting the house on fire in divers places, those that sought to escape being rescued on Pikes and Launches. The Lunke which they had taken from the *Portugall*, six and twentie dayes before, *Faria* gave to *Mom Taborda*, and *Antonio Arrington* in Almes for remission of his finnes, taking their Oath to take no more but their owne. He took special care of the wounded, and caused the illnes to be set free. After all this, there remayned of these gaires, one hundred and thirte thousand Taels in Silver, of *Japan* and other goods, which that Pyrat had taken along that Coast from *Sambor to Fiches*.

§. II.

ANTONIO FARIA his taking of Nouda a Citie in China, triumph at Liampoo; strange Voyage to Calemplay, miserable shipwracke.

Faria wracked the second time.

Violent wind.

Nouda.

China perilous Coast.

Faria having recovered his sick men, set saile for *Liampoo*, and being come to the point of *Micay* in sixe and twentie degrees, by a storme he was driven upon a Rock in the darke night, and was forced to cast out all the goods, and cut all their Masts over-board; and with much ado we escaped with their helpe (two and twentie drowned by ouer-halfe) to the Lunke of *Mom Taborda*. The second day after came two *Portugalls* from *Quay Panian* Lunke, and plained to vs their almost like misfortune (one gust having taken away three men, and cast them a stones cast into the Sea) and the losse of the small Lunke with fiftie perions, most of which were *Christians*, and seven *Portugalls*. One of the *Lantea* came and told of their disadventure, the other *Lantea* lost, only thirteene men escaping, which the Countrey people carried Captives to *Nouda*; so that two Lunkes and a *Lantea* with about one hundred persons were lost, and in Munition and other goods, about two hundred thousand Cruzados, the Captayne and Souldiers having nothing left but that on their backes. The Coast of *China* is subject to these strokes more then other Countreys, so that none can saile thereon one yeare without disasters, except at the full and change, they betake them to their Ports, whiche are many and good, without barred entres, except *Loosan* and *Sambor*.

Faria went and anchored before *Nouda* and sent some to sound, and to take some of the people to enquire of his men, who brought a Barke with eight men and two women, one of whom (having first sworn by the Sea, that it below, and the winds above should persue him if he brake his Faith, and the beauty of the starres whose eyes he beheld all wrong, as the *Chinese* requested) told him that he taking them to be Sea Routers and Robbers, had taken them and cast them in Irons. *Faria* writ to the *Mandarins* by two of those *Chinois*, with a Present worth two hundred Duckets to returne his men, which returned the next day with an Answer written, that himselfe should come and demand Justice at his feet, and he would doe as hee saw cause. Hee wrote againe, offering two thousand Taels for their Redemption, signifying that hee was a *Portugall* Merchant, which came to trade at *Liampoo*, and payd Customes without any Robbery; and that the King of *Portugall* his Lord was in true amitie with his Brother the King of *China*, and in *Malacca* his subjects vied the *Chinois* justly. This calling the King of *Portugall* the King of *China* Brother, hee took so haughtily, that he caused the *China* Messengers to be whipped, and their eares cut, and sent them backe with a railing Answer written to *Faria*, which had so proudly blasphemed, calling his King the Brother of the Sonne of the Sonne, the Lion crowned with incredible power in the Throne of the *Paniers*, under whose feet all Countreys of all that governe the Earth, are placed with all their *Seniores*, as all Writers assever in their Histories. For this Heretie he burned his Writing with his Picture, as he would doe to himselfe, charging him presently to set saile, and be gone. *Faria* enraged, refused to assault the Towne, having three hundred men, (beside of them *Portugalls*) with the company of *Quay Panian*, for that feat.

Nouda assaulted.

Having therefore taken foure Barks, the next morning betimes with them, three Lunkes and a *Lorche* or *Lantea*, he went up the River, and had sixe fathomes water and an flasse anchoring by the walls. And striking saile without salutation of Artillery, we put off our flasse of contract, after the *China* custome, to fulfill all complements of peace, sending new offers of loue and further satisfaction for the Prisoners. But the *Mandarins* full of indignation, hardly vied the Messengers on the wall in sight of the Armada; whereupon, *Faria* desperate of doing any good that way leaving order with the Lunkes continually to shoot at the Euemie where they were thickest, he with his company landed without contrailion, and marched to the Towne. When we were come within little more then a Calseur hot of the Ditch without the wall, there stiled by two gates one thousand, or twelue hundred about one hundred of them Horsemen, or Hackney men rather (for they rode on leane lades) which began to skirmish in such disorderd sort, encountering one with another, and many of them falling to the ground, that they

seemed to be of some neighbour Villages, which came more of force then with force or heart to the bulwark. *Faria* expected them, encouraging his men, and making a signe to the Lunkes.

The Horsemen dauided themselves, and wheeled about, as if that would have feared vs, which seeing, without effect they joynd in one bodie or heape rather; whereat the Captayne commanded all the Calseurs to shoot off at once, with such success, that the former halfe of the Horsemen fell to ground. And then we were with all till that time had food full, gave the assault, crying on the name of Iesus, inasmuch that they fled so confusely, that they fell one upon another, and when they came to the Bridge over the Ditch, they thronged themselves so that none could goe forward. In this case we came on them, and flew about three hundred, none of them hardly drawing Sword to defend themselves. We prosecuted the victory to the gate, in which was the *Mandarins* with six hundred men, fairly mounted, armed with a Corlett of Cimind Velvet gilded, which we knew after to have belonged to *Tome Peres*, which King *Emmanuel* of glorious memorie had sent Embassador to *China*. Hee and his began a fight with vs in the entrie of the gate, more valorous then the former, till a Boy of ours dismounted the *Mandarin* from his Horse with a Harquebuss shot thorow the breast, which caused the rest disorderly to flee, and we with them into the Towne. They calling downe their weapons ranne out at another gate toward the Countrey, none remayning. *Antonio Faria* gathering his compaignie together, marched orderly to the *Chifanga*, the Prison where our men were, brake up the gates and grates, and freed his men. Then did he appoint halfe an houre to his people for spoile, himselfe going to the *Mandarins* house, and had some twelve of Silver there, & five great boxes of Musket: the rest he gave to the Boyes, which were some Silke twined, and vnmwined, Damaske, Sateen, Porcelaine; the sacke was so rich, that four Barks or Vessels in which they came, within four times laden therewith to the Lunkes, that there was neither Boy nor Mariner which had not a Chitt or Chitts of pieces, besides what they had secretly. Having spent an houre and halfe, hee seeing night now come on, left fire in ten or twelve parts of the Citie, which being built of Pine timber suddenly arose into such a flame, that it seemed a Hell. And without impediment, he embarked his company with much riches, and many faire Girles tied by fours and fiftes with Match, they crying, ours triumphing.

It was now late, yet had *Faria* care of the wounded, which were fiftie of them, eight *Portugalls*, and to burie the dead, which were nine only one *Portugall*; and keeping good watch that night, as loone as it was day, he went to a Village on the other side of the water, and found not one person in it, the houses full furnished with goods and provisions, with which hee laded the Lunkes and departed for a desert land fiftie leagues from *Liampoo*, called *Pulo Huber*, where was good water and anchorage. After wee had layd five dayes betwixt the Isles *Comelin* and the continent, *Premata Gandel* a Roare which had done much damage to the *Portugalls* in *Panama*, *Sanda*, *Siam*, taking vs for *Chinois*, set upon vs with two great Lunkes, in which were two hundred fighting men besides Marines, and grappling with the Lunke of *Mom Taborda*, had almost taken it, when *Quay Panian* came to her succour with such a stroke on her quarter, that both Lunke; the three *Lorche* which *Faria* brought from *Nouda* coming in, laded most of our men, the enemies being all drowned, and *Mom Taborda* dead. Meane while, *Premata Gandel* had with two hookes and Iron chaines fastned himselfe to *Faria* Lunke, both in the poope and prow, such a cruell battell following, that in lesse then an houre most of *Faria* men and himselfe were wounded, and taken in danger of taking, when the three *Lorche*, and a little Lunke which *Pere Sylva* had twice at *Nouda*, came in to his succour, so that eightie fixe *Morrs* which thence entering the Pirats Lunke, which had coopered our men before in the poop-ropes; and this victorie cost fiftene of ours their liues, five of them of the best *Portugall* Souldiers, besides three and fortie wounded. The prize was valsed at eightie thousand and Thren, the most of *Lapan Siluer*, which the Pirate had taken in three Lunkes, come from *Franda* bound for *Chino*.

In the other Lunken Lunkes was said to be as much. With this prize *Faria* went to a little land, called *Buncalon*, foure leagues off, and staid there eightene dayes, making Cottages for the wounded, which there recovered health. Thence they departed, *Quay Panian* going in that Lunke of the Pirate, with 2000. Taels over and about for his part: in sixe dayes we came to the Ports of *Liampoo*, which are two lles, in which the *Portugalls* made at that time their contraction, and was a Towne of one thousand houses and sixe or seven Churches built by them, with Sheriffs, an Auditor, Alcaldes, and other Officers; the Notaries vying to write, *I. N. pelisse Notarie for the King our Lord, in this Citie of Liampoo*, &c. as if it had beene feare of four thousand Cruzados, and such was their forwardnes, that some houses cost thre or foure thousand Cruzados, all which were razed afterwards by the *Chinois*; so viceratane are the things of *China* (which in these parts are so esteemed) so subject to disasters and disadventures.

When *Faria* was come to *Portas de Liampoo*, he sent *Mom Taborda*, and *Arrington* first to acquaint the Towne-men what had passed, who sent *Jeronymo da Rega* with two *Lanteas*, to thanke him for the bountie shewed in the case of *Cous Aem*, and with refreshings; and for the

Thomas Peres.

The *Mandarin* slain.

Prisoners looted. The Towne sacked.

Comelin Islands. *Premata Gandel* a Pirate.

Another sea fight. *Panien* Lunke, and another Lunke. *Faria* victorie.

20000 Cruzados.

Bancalon.

Liampoo, a *Portugall* Towne on the coast of *China*, foure leagues from *Liampoo*.

Civill warres
in the Bay of
Nanquin.

Portugall triumph

Calcmplay.

Currents in
the Bay of
Nanquin.

Angier.

Nangui's.

Silepagan.

Bay of Na-
guin.

Buxipalem.

Strange Fishes

business at *Nouda*, he need not be afraid there to winter, the King of *China* being as they said, lately dead, and civil warres succeeding, thirteen competitors being in Arms, to enforce their pretended right: and that the *Tutan No*, which was next person to the King in all the Government, with meere and mixt Empire of Maileite Regall, was belieged in the Citie of *Quin*, the King of *Tartaria* Emperour of *Cauchina*; in whose favour it is holden for certaine, that this troubled estate *Nouda* would not be thought of, which was in comparison of many other triumph and glorious shewes, made of his owne Fleet, and of the many Boats, Barkes, and Citizens which came to fetch him, there being three hundred men in festiuall apparell, with many Gold Chaines, and gilded Swords, till he came into the Port, in which rode in a row, twentie six Ships, and eightie Junks, besides a greater number of smaller vessels, fastned one before another in sweet herbs, the Ordinance thundring on both sides a congratulation. The *Chinese* wondered, and asked if he were Brother or neere Kinsman to their King, they received him in such honour: Nay, said a conceited *Portugall*, but his father hooded the Kings Rector, and therefore is he worth this honour. Hereat they were more then amoz'd, and said, There were no King in this World, of which their Authours had no mention, and the King of *Portugall* seemed one of them, and much to exceed the *Cauchino*, or the *Tartar*, and it were no sinne to he may Others confirmed the same, alleging the great riches which the bearded men generally possessed. A glorious *Lancia* was purposely adorned for his person in which he went, with many Musical Instruments of the *China*, *Malayor*, *Chempai*, *Siamites*, *Borneo*, *Leguis*, and other thofe Seas.

I should woe me to let you see the rest of this pompous spectacle, and more to heare their Orations preferring him before Alexander, Scipio, Annibal, Pompey, Cæsar: Neither will Religion let me go with him to their Mass: nor doe I ever discusse how at *Alcmene* Feasts; and others will grudge me as Comedies: all which pompes I will leave to our Author, enlarged by the Spanish translator, Canon of the Church of Arbas, as dedicated to Manuel Severin de Faria. There hee stayed five 30 moneths, spending the time in Hawking, Hunting, Fishing, Feasting, *Quing Pandan* in this time dyed. After hee made ready to goe to the Mines of *Quangapagan*. Others disguised him by reason of warres in those parts, and a famous Pyrat called *Similau*, told him of an Island called *Calcmplay*, in which seuentene Kings of *China* were buried with much treasures, in Vells, and Idols of Gold, and other incredible riches; which hee on no other testimonie embraced, (without consulting with his friends, who not a little blamed him therefore) and went with *Similau* in search of this Land, setting out May the fourteenth, 1542.

He set forth with two *Panacas*, which are as it were Frigots, but somewhat higher: Junks he yad not, both for feceritie, and because of the Currents which let out of the Bay of *Nanquin*, which great ships cannot flenne, by reason of the ower-flowings from *Tartaria* and *Nixian* 40 a Priest, and fortie eight Mariners of *Patane*, and fortie two Slaves: more our Pilot *Similau* would not admit, fearing suspicion in traueising the Bay of *Nanquin*, and entry of many Riuers much inhabited. That day and night wee cleared the Isles of *Angier*, and followed our voyage thorow a Sea before neuer layed by *Portugals*. The first five dayes, we layed with good winde, in sight of land to the entrie of the Bay of *Nanquin* shippings, and passed a gulf of five leagues, and had sight of a high Hill called *Nangui*, about which we ranne to the North five leagues, at the end whereof, *Similau* put into a small Riuer, the people whereof were white, of good ture, with small eyes like the *Chinese*, but differing in speech and behauiour. After three dayes the tempest ceasing, we let sayle East North east leuen ayles together in sight of land, and crossing another gulf, there was a straight open to the East, called *Silepagan*, ten leagues in the mouth, within which we layed five dayes in sight of many Townes and Cities very faire; and this Riuer or strait was frequented with innumerable shipping; insomuch that *Faria* was afraid to be discouered, and would needs againt *Similau* monde turne some other way. Thus out of the Bay of *Nanquin* (*Similau* cilling them a moneths voyage of sayling by the Riuer *Sunbepagan*, one hundred and seuentee leagues distant thence to the North) we layed five dayes, at the end whereof wee saw a very high Hill called *Faria*, and coming nere it, entred a goodly rode, where one thousand ships might ride at anchor. Wee layed thence thirteene dayes along the coast, and came to the Bay of *Buxipalem* in 49. degrees. Wee layed thence thirteene what cold and faw Fishes of strange shapies, some like Thornebacks, about foure braces or faw 50 thoms compasse, flat nosed like an Ox; some like great Lizzards, speckled blacke and greene, with three reues of prickles on the backe, like Lizzards, three fpannes long, very sharpe, the rest of the body full, but of thorer: these Fishes will contract themselues like Hedge-hogs and looke fearfully; they haue a sharpe blacke snout with tuskes, after the manner of a Bore, two fpannes long.

long. Other deformities and diuersities of Fishes we saw. Fifteene leagues further, we came to another fairer Bay called *Calmdin*, six leagues in compasse set round with Hills, diuersified with Woods and Riuers, foure very great.

Similau sayd that the fifth of dead Carcases of creatures, proceeding from the owerflowings, specially in November, December, and Ianuarie, at the full of the Moone, caused the generation of that diuersitie of Fishes and Serpents in that Bay, and the former, which were not leene in other parts of that Coast. *Faria* asked him whence those Riuers came, and hee said that he knew not, but if it were true which was written, two of these came from a great lake called *Alcmene*, and the other two from a Province of great Mountaines, which all the yeere were couered 10 with snow, called *Alcmene*, and in Summer when great part of the snow was melted, they continued impetuous, as seuen now say: and for the Riuer in the mouth whereof we were entred, called *Pastelcom*, wee were now in the name of the Lord of heauen to turne the Prow to the East, and East South-west: to search againe the Bay of *Nanquin*, which we had left behind two hundred and sixtie leagues, all which way we had made higher then *Calcmplay*. The second day we came to a high Mountaine called *Barnofan*, stored with diuers kindes of wilde beasts, which continued nere fiftie leagues and sixe dayes sayling: and after came to another Hill as wilde as the former, called *Ganguiam*, and all the way forward was mountainous, and so thicke of trees that the Sunne could not pierce. *Similau* sayd, that in ninetie leagues space there was no habitation; and in the skirts thereof liued a deformed savage people only by their Hunting, and some Rice which they got in *China*, by exchange of wilde beastes skines, which hee sayd came to about a million yearly: Of these *Gigambos*, wee saw a beardless youth with sixe or seuen Kine before him, to whom *Similau* made a figne, and hee layed till we came to the Bankes side, and shewing him a piece of greene Taffata (which hee sayd they much esteemed) with a harli voyce he sayd, *Agiape paran fonsu*, words which none vnderstood. *Faria* commanded to giue him three or foure Carcases of a Goat, and sixe Porcelaines, which hee receiued with much ioy, saying, *Par param pery pary* pary pary, saying with his hand to the place whence hee came, and teasing his Kine hee ranne thither. Hee was clothed with a Tygers skin, the hayre outward, his armes, head and legges bare, with a shude pole in his hand: well shaped, seeming ten palms or fpanns long, his hayre hanging on his shoulders. Within a quarter of an houre hee re- 30 turned with a line Deere on his backe, and thirteene persons with him, eight men and five women, with three Kine tyed in cords dancing at the found of a Drum, giuing now and then five strokes on it, and other five with their hands, crying aloude, *Car car himan falem*, *Assou de Faria*, called to shew them five or sixe pieces and many Porcelaines. All of them were clothed in like manner, only the women had on their wratts greffe bracelets of Tin, their hayre longer then the men, and full of Flowers, and on their neckes a great necke-lace with coloured Shells, as big as Oyfter-shells. The men had great poles in their hands, furred halfe way with such Pelts as they wore; they were strong fey, with thicke lippes, flat noses, great open nostrils, bigge eyes. *Faria* caused to measure them, and none of them were higher then two fpannes and a halfe, one old man might eleuen, the women not ten: but I suppose the most sauge 40 that euer yet were discouered. *Faria* gaue them three corges of Porcelaine, a piece of greene Taffata, and a basket of Pepper: and they fell on the ground, and lifting vp their hands with their fists thus, sayd, *Omangadules omangadules lapen, lapen, lapen*. They gaue vs threethree Kine and the Deere, and after many words, in three houres continuance returned with like dance as they came.

Wee followed our way five dayes more vp the Riuer, about fortie leagues, in which we had sight of that people, and sixteene dayes more without sight of any, at the end of which we came to the Bay of *Nanquin*, hoping in five or sixe dayes to effect our desires. *Similau* would *Faria* not to let his *Portugals* be seene. And hauing sayed sixe dayes East and East North-west, we had sight of a great Citie called *Silepagan*, and entred into the Port two houres within night, 50 a faire Bay almost two leagues in circuit, where abundance of shipping rode at anchor, seeming about three thousand: which made vs so afraid, that our againe we went, and crossing the Riuer (which may be about sixe or seuen leagues ouer) we ranne alongst a great Champaine the rest of the day with purpose to get some refreshing, hauing passed thirteene hungry dayes. We came to an old building called *Tamamadi*, and got prouision to our mindes. This place, the *Chinese* which we found there, told vs, belonged to an Hospitall two leagues thence for entertainment of the Pilgrims, which visited the Kings Sepulchres. Wee continued our voyage seuen dayes more, hauing spent two moneths and a halfe time wee came from *Liampon*, and now *Faria* could no longer conceale his discontent, that hee had thus followed *Similau*, proudly, and receiving of him answer little to the purpose, had stabbed him with his Dagger if others had not interposed. *Similau*, the night following as wee rode at anchor nere the land, (swam a thore, the watch not perceiving, which *Faria* hearing was so impatient, that going on thore to seeke him, hee returned frustrate, and found of his sixe and fortie *Chinese*, two and thirthe left. Full now of con- 60 fusion, it was by counsell refused to seeke *Calcmplay*, which could not be farre off: and the next night entred a Barke riding at anchor, andooke five men sleeping therein; of whom hee learned

Calmdin.

Alcmene.

Pastelcom.

Barnofan.

Ganguiam.

Gians.

Their wilde dance.

A Corgesse.

Silepagan.

Tamamadi.

learned that *Calempuy* was ten leagues off, and with their helpe found it, eightie three dayes after he had set out on that enterprise.

This land was seated in the midst of the River, and seemed to be a league in Compasse. Hither came *Faria* with trouble and feare, three houres within his night, suffering about a chamber thot from it: In the morning it was agreed, first to goe to the *Chinies* so far, that ontrances it had, and what impediments might befall their designe. The land was all environed with a rampire of Heaven Marble, five and twentie fpannes high, so well cut and set together, that all the worsted but one piece, the like whereof wee had neuer scene in *India*, or elsewhere: first the bottom of the water to the brim, it contained other five and twentie fpannes. In the top was border of the same worke round ingirted, like a Priests girdle, of the biggnesse of a musket of twelve gillions, on which were set grates of Latten turned, every five fathoms fastned into holes of the same Latten; in each of which was the Idol of a woman, with a round ball in her hands, none knowing what it signified. Within these grates, was a row of many Monstres of cast Iron, which in manner of a dance hand in hand, compassed the Ile round. Further inwards from these monstrous Idols, in the same ranke, was another of Arches of stich worke pleasant to behold. And all from hence inward, was a groue of dwarfe Orange-trees thicke set; in the midst whereof were builtes three hundred and fixtie Hermitages, dedicated to the Gods of the yere, whereof thoe *Paganes* have many fabulous praies. A quarter of a league higher, on a hill to the East, were scene buildings with fene fronts of houles like Churches, all from the top to the bottome wrought with gold, with high Towers ferring Bell-Heeples; and without, two ftreets with Arches which encompassed these buildings, of the same worke with the fronts; and all from the highest top of the fteeple pinacles to the bottome wrought with gold; whereby we judged it some sumptuous and rich Temple.

After this view taken, *Faria* resolved (though it were late) to goe on shore, to see if he could speake with any in thoe Hermitages; and so leaving sufficient guard in the Barkes with fortie Souldiers, twentie Slaves, and foure *Chinies*; (which knew the place, and had beene sometimes there, and might serve vs for Interpreters) he committed the two Barkes to Father *Diego Lopez*, and entered at one of the eight Entrances; walking thorow the Orange-tree-groue to an Hermitage, two Caliver shots from our landing-place, with the greatest silence that might be, and with the name of *Iesus* in our hearts and mouths. Having yet scene no person, he felt at the doore of the Hermitage with his Halberd, and perused it locked on the inside: hee bade one of the *Chinies* knocke, which having done twice, he heard an answer within answering, *Praised be the Creator which guided the beatusimus Hieronimus, god above and I will know thy business.* The *Chinies* went about and entering the backe doore, opened that where *Faria* stood, who with his companie going in, found one man ferring above one hundred yeeres old, in a long Rustie Damaske garment, by his presence seeming Noble (as after wee learned he was) who seeing such a troupe fell downe, trembling hand and foot. A good while it was before hee could speake, and then asked what wee were, and what we sought. The Interpreter answered by *Farias* command, that hee was the Captaine of these strangers of *Siam*, who bound for the Port of *Lienpue* in trade of Merchandise was wracked at Sea; hee and these escaping miraculously, and therefore vowed to come to that Holy land on Pilgrimage, to praise God for delivrance from so great a danger, and was now come to fulfill it; and wished to demand somewhat in almes to relieve him for his returne, protesting after three yeeres to restore it double whatsoever hee now took.

Hieron (that was his name) answered, *I have well heard what thou hast said, and thus deserve the desire whereto thy kindnesse (as the Pilot of Hell) hath drawn thee and thine associates: to the bottom of the lake of woe.* For in stead of thanks for so great a benefit, thou comest to rob: and what I pray thee will the Divine justice repay thee as thy last breath? change thou thy purpose, and (belesse me) God will change thy punishment. *Faria* prayed him, hee would not be angry, saying, hee had no other remedie of life: whereat the Hermit lifting his hands and eyes to Heauen, sayd, weeping, *Blissed be thou Lord, which sufferest sin on earth men, which take for remedie of life these offences, and for certaintie of sinne will not serve thee one day.* And then turning his eyes to the companie which were rising the Hangings and Chests, taking the silver from amongst the bones of the deceased therein, hee fell twice from his feate with griefe; and pensively put *Faria* in minde of his last breath, of restitution, of penance perpetuall to his flesh, and liberrall and discrete communicating to the poore, that the servant of night should have nothing to accuse him in the day of account: paying him also to command his companie, to gather up the bones of the Saints, that they should not lye contemptible on the ground. *Faria* gave him many good words and complements, professing himselfe (which hee whispered neerer) forie of what had passed, but if he should not doe it, his companie had threatened to kill him. If it be so, said the Hermit, then shall thy paine be less than these ministers of night, whom as *herby Dogs*, it seems all the silver of the world would not satisfy.

Thus with many good words hee tooke leave of the Hermit (having taken all they could get) who told him his knowledge might make his sinne more penall. *Quoniam Oculis* praying him not to be

so angry for so small a matter, hee replied, *More small is the feare which thou hast of death, when leaving spent thy life in foule facts, thy soule shall stand as foule at the passage of this dung-hill of life.* And if thou shouldst more silver to filthy infernall appetite, thou must finde in the bones, adorning enough to make it fit, as well in danger of Hell for this already, as in more burthened thou shalt defende thyselfe to the last. Pray, sayd *Coelho*, take all in patience, for to God hath commanded in his holy Law: the Hermit shaking off his head, sayd, I now see that which I neuer thought to have heard, *Inbred wickednesse and verine saved, the same man feeding and preaching:* and turning to *Faria*, prayed him that hee would not suffer them to spee on the Altar, being leifer to dye a thousand times then to see it, which he promised. Hee then demanded of *Faria*, what persons lived in all those houles; who answered, three hundred and fixtie *Talagres* commonly, and fortie *Menigres* which served them without, for their prouision, and the care of the sicke. Hee asked if the Kings vied to come thither: no sayd he, *The King being sonne of the Sunne, can absolve all, and none may condemn him.* Asked of their Armes, hee sayd, *To goe to Heauen, there needed no armes to offend, but patience to suffer.* For the mixture of that Silver with leal bones in the chests, hee answered, that it was the *Almes* which the deceased carried with them, to provide them of necessaries in the heauen of the *Moone*. Asked of women with them, hee sayd, that the *Bees* living those which eat the honey, and pleasures of the flesh needed not to the life of the Soule. And thus parted hee from the Hermit with embraces, with purpose to returne the next day (it being now night) to the other houles, and not taking aboard with him this Hermit, as hee was advised, saying, his gowtie legges could carrie no tydings of vs: which yet hee did, creeping to the next, and bidding him goe call the *Bonay*.

For an houre after midnight, wee saw fires in a row, which our *Chinies* told vs, were signes of our discourteie, and therefore advised vs to haste away. *Faria* was awakened, and would needs a thoure with sixe men, and ranne like a mad-man from one place to another: his companie requested him to haste away, and he answered, for his honour hee would first see the danger, and intreated them to stay one halfe houre, and wearing hereto, away hee goeth, and follows the found of a Bell to an Hermitage, in which were two men in religious habites; the place was richer then the former wee had bene in. They tooke thence an Idoll of Silver from the Altar with a myrrer of Gold on his head, and a wheele in his hand, and three Candlesticks of silver with long chaynes; and taking the two Hermits with them, returned about the Barkes with great halfe. Of one of these, they learned that *Pilaw Angroo* had come to the house of the Sepulchers of the Kings, and cryed out to them to awaken out of their sleape, telling them of their oath to the Goddess *Amida*, of Strangers with long beards and Iron bodies, which had robbed the Saints, and would kill them all, whence followed the fires, and tending to give notice to the Cities *Coriplem* and *Fumbana* for ayde, their Religion prohibiting them to handle any thing which might draw blood. *Faria* now having gone downe the River a great way, was much enraged for omitting such opportunitee, plucking his beard, and beating himselfe with anguish, till not long after his heate was cooled.

¶ III.

Their shipwracke in which Faria and most of them were drowned; the miserable wanderings of the rest to Nanquin: their Imprisonment, Sentence and appeal to Pequim; varieties observed in those places and wayes; of the beginnings of the China Kingdome, and of their admirable Wall.

Seven dayes wee layled thorow the Bay of *Nanquin*, the force of the current carrying vs more speedily, and came all discontent to a Village called *Suyogomem*, and there provided our selues of victuall and instruction, and entered into a straight called *Xalungau*, in which wee ranne in nine dayes one hundred and fortie leagues, and turning to enter the same Bay of *Nanquin*, which was there ten or twelve leagues wide, wee layled with grees and two thinke, there a *Tufan* or tempest from the South, tooke vs with winles and rames decking more then natural, and the winde chopped into the North North-west, the Sea going so high that (except our prouision and Chests of plate) we threw all into the Sea, cut both our masts out-board, and about midnight heard a great cry in the *Panora* of *Senia* de *Faria*, *Mary Lord* God, whereby wee imagined fire was cast away; we recoiled the same cry, but heard no answer. Our Baile also the next day, split on a Rocke, and of five and twentie *Portugals*, eleven were drowned, besides eightene *Christian* boyes, and seven *China* Mariners. This hapned the fifth of August, 1542.

Wee fourteen which escaped, the next day travelled into the Land, along a Hill, and discovered a Lake, without the w of Land, which made vs returne backe, where wee found our men

The Hermitages, ges, Hermites & attendants, as Lay brethren, Papill-pow.

They arde, covered.

Xalungau.

Coast of China.

Faria drowned, and the Barkes were lost.

cast on floare, to the renewing of our sorrow, and the next day buried them, that the Tigris (of which there are many) should not eat them. In this, having nothing but our hands to do it, and they thirtie fixe now flinking, we spent the most part of the day. Thence we went Northward thorow the Woods three dayes, till wee came at a straight, without fight of any perion. In swimming over three men and a boy were drowned, being fat, the current strong, and the water somewhat spacious: the men were two brethren *Belbicio* and *Gaspar Barboza*, and *Francisco Borges Cayero*, all of *Ponte de Lima*, and of good account. Wee which remained (eleuen men and three boys) passing that obscure nights winds, rains, and cold, imitated by our discomfite fights, tears, and feares, faw before day a fire Eaffward, and went right towards it, commending our felues to God our only hope. And traueiling along the Riuer, we came to the evening where fue men were making Coles, and casting our felues at their feet, desired them to take pitie on vs, and helpe vs to some place where we might finde relief. They gaue vs a little Rice and warme water, and shewed vs the way to a Village where was an Hospital, to which wee came an houre within night, and found there foure men appointed to that charge, which vsed vs charitably.

The next day they asked what wee were, and whence: and wee told them, strangers of *Siam*, which came from the Port of *Lampoo* to the fishing at *Nanquim*, where by tempest we lost all but our barested flesh. They asked what wee intended to doe, and wee answered, to goe to *Nanquim*, to get passage to *Canton*, or *Amoy*, where our Country-men haue trade by the shadow of *The Sunne of the Sunne*, the *Lum* crummed in 20 the *Throne of the World*, for whole fawe we desired all them to let vs stay there till we had recovered strength to trauell, and to giue vs some clothing to cover vs. They carried vs about the Village, and begged some old clothes and victuals, and two Taxis in money for our reliefe, and gaue vs two Taxis of the Houfe; and with words of much comfort to trust in God, they gaue vs a Letter of commendation to the Hospital of *Siley laca*, which was in a great Towne three leagues thence, and had better maintenance. Thither we went, and they shewed our Letter to the Querlers of *Buataedao*, in the said Village of *Catharina* to the Officers of this Houfe, which fate then at Table in confultation, and the Scribe reading the Letter, they accommodated vs in a neat room with foureene Beds, a Table, and many Stooles, and Meate; and next morning examined vs, were answering as before. They gaue charge to a Physician to cure vs, and wrote 30 our names in a Booke, to which we subscribed. In eighteene dayes wee all recovered, and went thence to a place called *Suzangane*, five leagues off, and late downe wearie at a Well, where one came to us with a handfull of Wheat eares, which he wetted in the water, and adured vs holding the same in our hands, by their substances of bread and water, which the high Creator had made for the sustenance of man to tell the truth what wee were, &c. which we did, answering as before; and he gaue leave to his neighbours to relieue vs. They layde vs in a Church Porch, and gaue vs victuals, and the next day we begged from doore to doore foure Taxis, which well helped our wants.

Thence we went two leagues to *Xiangule*, with intent to goe to *Nanquim*, one hundred and fortie leagues distant. Comming thither late, three boyes which were feeding Cartell, ranne 40 into the Towne with an out-cry of *Thornes*; the people running out, and so welcoming ming vs, that one of the boyes died with the blowes. They kept vs two dayes in a Confinement of water vp to the waste, full of Hor-leaches, without victuals, and our hands bound; whence by a man of *Suzangane*, we were freed, reporting better things of vs. Thence we went to *Fingulian* (in the way finding good reliefe at a Gentlemans house) still auoyding Cities and Townes of note, for feare of stricter iustice, two monthes holding on our way, sometime in, sometimes out, from Village to Village, one of which was *Chauin*, where a woman was then buried which had made the Idol her Heire, and we were inuited as poore men to eat at her Graue, and had five Taxis giuen vs to pray for her soule. At *Tapor* an Officer charged vs to be Rogues, begging against the Law, and therefore layd vs in Prison, where we continued fixe and twentie dayes, 50 in which *Rodrigues Bravo*, one of our companie died. Thence we went to *Nanquim*, and there continued fixe weekes in a miserable Prison (in which was laid to be foure thousand Prisoners) where two of our companie and a boy died of the whipping, and the rest hardly escaped; being besides fenced also to haue our thumbs cut off as theues.

After this bloody whipping, they brought vs to a house within the Prison where wee were cured, being as it were an Hospital for the sicke, where in eleuen dayes wee were prettily well recovered, but lamenting the cutting off our thumbs according to the rigour of the Sentence which had beene giuen, one morning came in two honourable persons which were Procurers of the poore. They questioned vs of our case, and hearing the same, made a Petition to the *Cham* on our behalfe, and the eight *Combaes*, which are as they are Criminal Judges; and being there desired, they made another Petition to another Table, called *Xinfaa nicor pitau*, where are four 60 and twentie *Talagropes* assistants, aultere Religious men, as *Capuchins* amongst vs, which reuiew the cases of the poore, which prohibited the *Cham* to proceed, and granted an appeale to the *Aissa* of *Anau* in *Peguina* to moderate the Sentence, which the two Procurers brought vs.

After this bloody whipping, they brought vs to a house within the Prison where wee were cured, being as it were an Hospital for the sicke, where in eleuen dayes wee were prettily well recovered, but lamenting the cutting off our thumbs according to the rigour of the Sentence which had beene giuen, one morning came in two honourable persons which were Procurers of the poore. They questioned vs of our case, and hearing the same, made a Petition to the *Cham* on our behalfe, and the eight *Combaes*, which are as they are Criminal Judges; and being there desired, they made another Petition to another Table, called *Xinfaa nicor pitau*, where are four 60 and twentie *Talagropes* assistants, aultere Religious men, as *Capuchins* amongst vs, which reuiew the cases of the poore, which prohibited the *Cham* to proceed, and granted an appeale to the *Aissa* of *Anau* in *Peguina* to moderate the Sentence, which the two Procurers brought vs.

Wee and thirtie others were embarked, chained with long chaines, the two Procurers procuring vs some clothing, and Rice, and commanding vs to *Chofe*, the Officer or Captaine appointed to carrie vs with a Certificate in our behalfe to procure vs salutes. The Riuer being then high swollen hindered our iourney. Three dayes we stayed at a Village called *Chinca-nem*, where *Chifu* dwelt, and embarked his wife and children; we were tyed to the rats where we rowed, and could not haue perfect fight of the Cities, yet thus much we observed. *Nanquim* is in 39. degrees and a third, washed by the Riuer *Batampina*, which signifieth *The flower of fish*, which Riuer, as I was then told and after faw, comes from *Tartaria*, out of the Lake *Fenghu*, nine leagues from the Citie *Langame*, where *Tamela* King of the *Tartary* resided. This Lake is eight and twentie leagues long, and twelue broad, very deepe, and yeelds five Riuer; first, thos *Batampina*, running thorow the midit of *China* three hundred and sixtie leagues, and entering the Bay of *Nanquim* in 36. degrees. The second *Lechune* which goeth along the Hills of *Panquim*, & diuiding the Land of *Chuchim*, and *Catebenas*, which within the Countrey confine the Kingdom of *Champa* in 16. degrees. The third is *Tanquiday*, that is, *The mother of waters*, passing West North-west by the Kingdom of *Nacatan* (a Land whence *China* was people) and falls into the Sea in the Kingdom of *Siam*, or *Sum*, by the Barre of *Cuy* an hundred and thirtie leagues beneath *Patane*. The fourth Riuer is *Batobafy*, which passing by the Prouince of *Sunjin* (which was drowned *An*, 1556.) goeth into the Sea by the Barre of *Cef-mim* in the Kingdom of *Pegu*. *Lefacotay* is the fifth, runneth Eastward to the *Archipelagus* (as the *Chinois* say) of *Xinacupin*, which confineth the *Moluccas*, entering into a Sea inauatible, as being in 70. degrees of latitude. The *Chinois* affirme, that in *Nanquim* are eight hundred places; one hundred and thirtie thambles, each hauing eighte blocks; eight thousand streets, of which the five hundred principall haue grates of Latten on both sides all along; two thousand three hundred *Pagodes* or Temples, one thousand of which are Monasteries of Religious persons, richly built, with Towers of fixtie or seuenie Bells of Metall and Iron, which make a sonner, and an Hospital. The houses of the *Mandarines* are of earth, encompassed with Walls and Ditches, with haire Bridges, and great Arches. The principall Magistrates haue high Towers with gilded pinates, where are their Armories and Treasures. The Street-arches with their loomes, one hundred and thirtie Gates in the strong wall, with as many Bridges over the ditches (a Porter, and two Halbarriers in each to see what goeth in or out) twelue Fortresses, with Bulwarks and Towers, but without Artillerie, the value to the King three thousand *Cruzados*, by Bulday, or two thousand Taxis, I can but touch. The rarities of *China*, compared with the things I fene at home, seeme doubtful or incredible.

In the first two dayes wee faw in our iourney by the Riuer no notable Citie or Towne, but of Villages a great quantitie which seemed to be of Filler-men and Labourers, and within a Land as farre as we law, appeared woods of Pines and other trees, Orange groues, fields of the *Grandes*. Cartell appeared along the Riuer as much as in *Prate lobos* Countrey. On the tops of Hills were seene Temples with gilded Steeple shining farre off. On the fourth day we came to a good Citie called *Pocessy*, twice as big as *Canton*, well walled with Townes and Bulwarks, in manner like ours, with a Hauen before the wall of two Balcon thos long, fastned thither from all parts. In the end of the Towne on a Mount stood a Castle with three Bulwarkes and five Towers, in one of which the *Chinois* told vs, that the Father of this King held so much to redeeme him as was demanded. In this Citie, *Chofe* gaue leave to three of vs nine, to goe with foure Halbarriers to guard vs) and begge Almes, which in fixe or seuen streets gat the worth of twentie *Cruzados* in clothes and money, besides *Rice*, *Fruits*, and Meale; a iust conceit of people that day, being tolemne to the King, and that this Kings Grand-father was chamber he had dedicated this Temple in that Place. All the Building with the Offices, Gardens, and all the appurtenances are founded in the air on three hundred and sixtie Pillars (each dayes of the yeere) and in each of them is a featt with much almes, bloody Sacrifices, and dances to the Idoll of that day and Pillar, which stands thence richly enframed, with a Silver grates, on doores for the people which come to choise feasts.

Over the house where the *Q-ene* was buried was a round Chappell all lined with Silver, seeming richer in the worke then matter. In the midit was a silver Throne of fiftene steps, round

The *Chinois* place this Citie in 32. and 33. degrees of latitude, they likewise disagree in their calculations. The reason I suppose is, that *Pegu* neuer obserued the height by itself, but by the height of the sun, not perhaps had skill there by his heliograph, as he confesseth in his pag. 222, but followed the *Mandarin* Maps which shew the height below, which place *Nanquim* in 32. degrees, fallily, as I conceiue to keepe others from the reckoning of the place; a thing usual in the old Maps of the East and West of the World: and sometimes they did giue place fully of ignorance.

The height of the place is 222, but followed the *Mandarin* Maps which shew the height below, which place *Nanquim* in 32. degrees, fallily, as I conceiue to keepe others from the reckoning of the place; a thing usual in the old Maps of the East and West of the World: and sometimes they did giue place fully of ignorance.

The height of the place is 222, but followed the *Mandarin* Maps which shew the height below, which place *Nanquim* in 32. degrees, fallily, as I conceiue to keepe others from the reckoning of the place; a thing usual in the old Maps of the East and West of the World: and sometimes they did giue place fully of ignorance.

The height of the place is 222, but followed the *Mandarin* Maps which shew the height below, which place *Nanquim* in 32. degrees, fallily, as I conceiue to keepe others from the reckoning of the place; a thing usual in the old Maps of the East and West of the World: and sometimes they did giue place fully of ignorance.

The height of the place is 222, but followed the *Mandarin* Maps which shew the height below, which place *Nanquim* in 32. degrees, fallily, as I conceiue to keepe others from the reckoning of the place; a thing usual in the old Maps of the East and West of the World: and sometimes they did giue place fully of ignorance.

The height of the place is 222, but followed the *Mandarin* Maps which shew the height below, which place *Nanquim* in 32. degrees, fallily, as I conceiue to keepe others from the reckoning of the place; a thing usual in the old Maps of the East and West of the World: and sometimes they did giue place fully of ignorance.

The height of the place is 222, but followed the *Mandarin* Maps which shew the height below, which place *Nanquim* in 32. degrees, fallily, as I conceiue to keepe others from the reckoning of the place; a thing usual in the old Maps of the East and West of the World: and sometimes they did giue place fully of ignorance.

The height of the place is 222, but followed the *Mandarin* Maps which shew the height below, which place *Nanquim* in 32. degrees, fallily, as I conceiue to keepe others from the reckoning of the place; a thing usual in the old Maps of the East and West of the World: and sometimes they did giue place fully of ignorance.

to the top encompassed with fixe rewes of filuer grates with the tops gilded. On the highest of them was a great Globe, and thereon a Lion of filuer, bearing vp a chift of Gold three spans square, in which they laid were her bones, by the blind people worshipped as great Reliques. There hung on foure filuer tyres which crossed the Houle, forrie three filuer Lampes (so many yeares the lued) and feuen of Gold in memory of her feuen Sonnes. Without at the entry were two hundred fiftie three filuer Lampes great and rich, which the *Chinois* and great men Wiues presented in her honour. Without the doores were in fixe rewes round about Statues of Giants fiftene spans high, well proportioned of Brasse, with Halberds and Maces in their hands, which the *Chinois* said were twelve hundred. Amongst them were foure and twentie Serpents of Brasse very great, each hauing a woman sitting thereon with a Sword in her hand of the same metal, and a filuer Crowne on the head: *so many had sacrificed themselves at her death to do her service in the next World.* Another compasse enuironed that of the Giants, all of triumphant Armes gilded, with a great quantity of filuer Bells hanging on filuer chains, which by the motion of the Aire continually yielded a strange sound. Without those Arches in the same proportion stand two ranks of Latten grates encircling the whole worke, set in spaces with Pillars of the same, and thereon Lions set on balls, which are the *Arms of the Kings of China.*

The Incits say
his armes are
golden Dra-
gons.
Monstrous sta-
tures.

At the foure corners were placed foure Monsters of Brasse, one (which the *Chinois* call the *Demouring Serpent of the deepe Cane of the House of smoke*) in the figure of a dreadful Serpent with feuen Serpents coming out of his brest, spotted with greene and blacke with many 20 prickles more then a span long, quite thorow the bodie like Hedge-hogges, each hauing in his mouth a woman couthward, with disheuelled haire, looking deadly. The old or great Serpent holds in his mouth a Liz-ard halfe out, of about chirie spans in length, as bigge as a Pipe, with nose and tips full of blood, and in his hands he holds a great Elephant so forcibly, that his entrails seeme to come out of his mouth all to naturally represented, that it is most dreadful to behold. The folds of his tayle were about twentie fathome long, enfolowing therein another Monster, which stands with both his hands in his mouth, which is as bigge as a gate, the teeth set in order, and the blacke tongue hanging out about two fathomes. Of the two other, one was the *Figure of a woman*, named *Nadefan*, Lucentie fathomes long, and fixe about, from whole waist 30 issued a beake or face about two fathomes, which cast smoke out of the nostrills, and flames of fire out of the mouth, which they make thier in continually, saying, *thee is the Queen of the Fierie Sphere, and shall burne the Earth: a the end of the World.* The fourth is *like a man*, set cowering with cheekes puffed like ships sayles, so monstrous that a man could not endure the sight. The *Chinois* call him *Uanguenabou*, and say, that it is hee which makes Tempests in the Sea, and throwes downe Houles by Land, to which the people giue much Almes not to hurt their Lunkes.

Xintigan.

The second day we went from *Pocasso*, and came to another Cite called *Xintigan*, very great, well built, walled with Tyles, ditched about with two Castles at the end, hauing their Townes, Bul-warkes, and Draw-bridges: in the midst of each Castle was a Towre of fixe 40 Lofts with many workes painted, in which the *Chinois* said, were fiftene thousand Picos of filuer, of the Rents gathered in that *Archebispago*, which this Kings Grand-father there layd vp in memory of his Sonne *Lequinquin*, which signifieth the *my all*, holden for a Saint, because he dyed a Religious man, and lyes there buried in the Temple of *Quay Uenard*, the God of all the *Filices in the Sea*, of whom they haue large Legends. In that Cite and another fixe leagues from it is made the great est part of the Silke of that Kingdome, the waters there giuing quier colours (they say) then in other parts. The Weavers Loomes of these Silkes, which they affirme thirteenth thousand, pay yearly to the King three hundred thousand Taels. Going further vp the River, wee came the next day Evening to a great Champagne, continuing ten or twelue leagues, in which were many Kine, Hories, and Mares, pastured for the fables 30 as well as other fesh, and kept by many men on Horse-backe. These Champagnes past, we came to a Towne, called *Junguilen*, walled with Tyles, but without Towres or Bul-warkes. Here we saw a stone Monument with an Inscription, *Heere lyeth Transmome Modular, Viceroy to the King of Malacca, who dyed before hee was reuenged of Captaine Alboqueque, the Lim of Sea Robberies.* We enquiring hereof, an old *Chinese* said, that about fortie yeares agoe, the man there interred had come Embassadour from a King of *Malacca*, to sue to the Sonne of the Sonne, for succour against a Nation of a Land without name, which had come from the end of the World, and taken *Malacca*, with other incredible particularities printed in a Booke which hee made thereof. Hauing spent three yeares in this Suite, and brought it to some maturity, hee sickned of the *Aire* one night at Supper, dyed in nine dayes, and left this 30 Memoriall.

Junguilen.

Alboqueque.
See item, Lib. 1.
pg 31.

The Spanish
hath the Fally,
and it seems
a kind of Polle
gotten by
stroke or bla-
sting of the
Aire.

Wee proceeded on our way the River growing lesse, but the Countrey more peopled, for a fones cast free of some Houle, cyther of a *Pagode*, or Labourer. And two leagues higher on a Hill compassed with Iron grates were two Brasse Statues standing on their feete, one of a

man, the other of a woman, both fuentie foure spans long with their hands in their mouths, and puffed cheekes; fastned to Calt-Iron Pillars, fenten fathomes high. The Male was named *Quay Xingatalor*, the woman *Apacatator*. The *Chinois* told vs that the man was Fire-blower in Hell to torment such as in this life gaue no Almes: the woman was the Hell-Porter, which suffered the Almes-giues to flye by a River cold water, called *Ocheldady*, and led them their from the Devils hurting them. One of our company laughed at this Tale, whereat a *Bonso* was so offended, that hee set *Chifu* in rage with vs, who bound vs hand and foot, and gaue vs one hundred stripes a-piece. Twelve Priests were incensing these Monstres when wee were there with Silver-centfours full of sweet Odours, saying, *as wee see thee, helpe thou vs: another company of Priests answering: So I promise thee as a good Lord.* And thus went they on Procession about the Hill an houres space following certayne Bells causing a dreadful noyse.

Hence wee walked vp the River euen dayes, all peopled with Cities, Townes, Villages, Castles, in many places, scarcely a Caluier there distant one from another: and all the Land in compasse of our light had store of great Houles, and Temples with gilded Steeples, which amazed vs with the sight. Thus wee came to the Cite *Sampitay*, where wee stayed five dayes by reason of the sickness of *Chifu* Wife. There by his laue wee went thorow the sheets, a begging, the people wondering at vs, and giuing vs largely. One woman amongst others which busily questioned with vs, shewed vs a Croffe branded on her left arme, asking if wee knew that signe, and wee devoutly answering, yes, she lifted vp her hands to Heauen, and sayd, *Our Father which art in Heauen, halloved be thy Name, in Portugall, and could I praye no more, but proceeded in China speech, and procured leave to lodge vs at her Houle those five dayes; telling vs she was named Inez de Leiria, and was the Daughter of Thomas Perez, which came Embassadour to China, and by reason of a Rebels Portugall Captaine, wee was taken as a Spyve with twelue others beaten that fue dyed, the other iueen hindered to diuers places, where they dyed in misery, only *Vasio Calao*, being now left aloue. Her Father, the said, was banished to this Towne, and there married with her Mother hauing somewhat to maintaine her, and by him made a Christian. They lued together many yeares like good Catholikes, and converted many to the Faith of Christ, in that Cite three hundred affembled on Sundayes to her house to their holies. She shewed vs an Oratorie in which was a Croffe of wood gilded, with a Canellstick and filuer Lampe. Wee asked her what they did, when they came thither, and she said, nothing but kneele before that Croffe, with their hands and eyes lifted to Heauen, and say, *Lord Iesus Christ, as it is true that thou art the true Sonne of God, conceived by the Holy Ghost in the womb of the Holy Virgin Mary, for the saluation of Sinners, so pardon our sins, that wee may obayne to see thy face in the glory of thy Kingdome, where thou sittest at the right hand of the Highest.* Our Father which art in Heauen, halloved be thy Name. In the Name of the Father, and of the Sonne, and of the Holy iueen friendly with each other. They embraced one another and went home aloue I. *Chinois* had fholne away, so that now they could say no more. Whereupon we promised to leaue China Letters the Lords Prayer, *Our Mary Creed, Salve Regina, Tenne Commandemens, and giue vs this leaue, and to vie vs kindly, and the Christians there gaue vs fiftie Taels of Silver, and Inez de Leiria other fiftie clothy, de ring vs to remember her in our Prayers.**

We continued our journey vp the *Batampina*, to a place called *Luympin*, of tenne or twelue thousand Houles. Neere to the wall stood a long Houle with thirte Furnaces for the purifying of filuer which was taken out of a Hill fixe leagues distant, called *Taxenaypin*; in which Mines the *Chinois* told vs, there continually laboured on thousand men, and that it was the King yearly fixe thousand * Pikes of filuer. We departed thence in the Evening, and the next daye our *Nacae*, both well walled and builded. These two Cities occasion mee to recite wally the haue heard often heard read in the thirteenth Chapter of the first Chronicle of the fourleone there was a Land, called *Quangtuen*, in which lued a petite Prince, called *Turhan*, which had fiftene (still much esteemed in *Japan*, *China*, *Canchin-china*, *Cambodia*, *Siam*, of which I haue then liuing was against this, and married his filie with *Silua a Priest*, and fise *Tin-shan*, where the called *Pilamara*, that is, the refuge of the poore. Foure yeares after *Silua* prepared a Fleet of thirte Barkes to destroy her and all her faction, thinking that her Sons coming off of age might dispose him. But the hauing Intelligence, haung of men, women, and children, not above one thousand and three hundred persons, and but three or four: Boats not sufficient to comeigh away thole few, by common consent and aduice appointed a three dayes Fast thiereto to begge for our

Two mon-
strous statues
and their de-
uotions.

Frequent use of
China people,
Sampitay.

See Map 16.
The Portugall
Rebels had
taken, and raised
a Fort in the
land, whence
followed that
our rage to Pe-
ters since foute
moneths travel-
led from Can-
ton to the
Court, Leger
Source, which
lent Peter to
China, was
Vico-roy, a
1551.
China Christi-
ans and Chri-
tianities.

Luympin,
Myres of Tax-
enaypin.
10000 Picos
is a Million of
Taels.
Taeen and Ne-
tan.

China Chri-
stian and Chri-
stians.

Depository of
the Book of
the

of God, in all which time none might eat about once, in paine of death. This Fast ended they call Lors and the Lord fell on a Boy of seven years old, which was also named *Silau*, whom after all Ceremonies ended they hid live by his hands to Heaven, and tell them some remedie to these dangers. Who prophesied Victory to her over the Tyrant *Silau*, commanding her to imbarke hers in her Enemies Barkes, and at the found of the waters to runne along the Land, till God showed where she should found a habitation of great name, which through all times should fend out his mercy with voyces and blood of strange Nations: after which words the Boy fell downe dead.

The thirty Barkes came (fith the Storie) five dayes after without any people therein: for at a place called *Catehagay*, a blacke Cloud arose over them, which rayned on them scalding drops, which destroyed them all. *Namcau* with teares and thanks embarked her three Sonnes and the rest, and went downe the River conducted by the found fortye fire dayes, and then came to the place where *Pequin* now stands. Five dayes after they came a land, was the first stone layd thereof by *Pequin*, eldest Sonne of *Namcau*, and the Citie called by his owne name. And a fluer shield length on the Arch of the chiefe gate *Pommicetay*, and hath this inscribed, in which are fortye Wardens, and in the rest ordinarily but foure. The day also of the foundation (being the third of August) is kept with great Solemnitie, and thereon the King vifeth to them himselfe to the people. The later Kings also have made a Law that no Strangers, except Embassadors and Slaves should enter the Kingdome. The two other Brethren founded the two Cities, called by their owne names *Pacan* and *Nacau*, and their Mother founded *Namquin*, which tooke the name of hers.

In the fift Booke of the chiefe places of that Empire, is written, that King *Crisnegel* (which reigned as we may accord our computation with theirs) about the year of our Lord 1588 bulded the wall, the people contributing ten thousand Pikes of fluer (which are fifteen Millions of Cruzados) and two hundred and fiftie thousand men (thirtie thousand Officers and the rest Labourers) which was continued feuen and twentie yeares, and then finished, being, faith that Booke the length of feuentie laons (every laon is foure leagues and an halfe) which make three hundred and fiftie leagues. The Priests and Iles are said to contribute as many, and the King and Officers another third, so that feuen hundred and thirtie thousand men laboured therein. This wall I have fceene and meafured, being generally fixe fathomes high, and forie fpannes thick, and foure fathomes runneth a kind of Rampire, twice as thicke as the wall strengthened with a Bituminous substance on the out-side like Potters worke; and in stead of Bulwarkes it hath houses of two lofty with beames of blacke wood, called *Candefcan*, that is, *Iron-wood*, seeming stronger then if they were of stone-woode. This wall or *Chanfcan* (so they call it, that is, *strong resistance*) runneth with an equal course till it encounters with Hills, which are all Chanfied and made for that it is stronger then the wall it selfe, the wall being only in the spaces twixt Hill and Hill, the Hills themselves making up the rest.

In all that way are but few entrances, caused by the *Tartarian* Rivers, which with impetuous force cut the Countrey about five hundred leagues entring the Sea of *China*, and *Canchin-china*: And one of them more forcible then the others enters the Kingdome of *Sernau* (commonly called *Siam*) by the *Barre of Cuy*. At every of those five entrances the King of *China* hath one Fort and the *Tartar* another: in every of the *China* Forts there are feuen thousand men, fix thousand foot, and one thousand Horse, in continuall pay; most of them Strangers, *Mogers*, *Cham-paui*, *Pannau*, *Coracones*, and *Gicauos* of *Perfus*, the *Chinois* being but meane Soldiers. In all the space of this wall are three hundred and twentie Regiments, each of five hundred men (in all one hundred & sixty thousand) besides Ministers, Commanders, and their retinue which the *Chinois* said, made in all two hundred thousand men, allowed by the King only sustentance, all or most of them being consigned to that service, and therefore receiving no pay. And in *Pequin* is a great and admirable Prison-house, in which are Prisoners continually for the Fabricke of this wall of three hundred thousand men and vpyards, most of them from eightene to feue and fortye years old: whereof foure are men of good qualitie, which for their ill behaviours and enormities are hither sentenced, expecting to be removed hence to the service of the wall: whence they may have returne according to the Statutes thereof made, and approved by the *Chansu*, which therein dispense the Regall power with meere and mixt Empire. There are twelue of them which may pay to the King a Million of Gold for Rent,

Legend of Pe-
quim.

No danger
may enter Chi-
na.

The wall of
China.

See how the de-
fect of the wall
is of great dan-
ger.

The river
Chien-chen
is the source of
the wall.

Five Rivers
entring
the wall.

Wall-ports.

Thus in Spain,
Mole-dons
are extended
to the Gallies,
or Gallions
of Oran, Penon,
Huge Pillon,
Cham of the
wall.

§. IIII.

Minde Salt-pits: Mines of Coretumba, Copper-works; Idolatry and Chri-
stianitie; China Trades, and River Faures; their coming to
Pequin, tyral and sentence. Rarities of
Pequin.

10 **O**ur returne to our Voyage, from *Pacan* and *Nacau*, wee passed vp the River to *Minde*, a greater Citie then either of the former, which on the Land side had a great Lake of Salt-water, with great store of Salt-pits therein, which the *Chinois* said, did ebbe and flow like the Sea, from which it is about two hundred leagues distant; and that this Citie Rents to the King yearly one hundred thousand Taelis, of the thirds of the Salt, and as much more of the Silkes, Sugars, Porcelaine, Camfire, Vermillion, Quick-silver, which are there in great quantitie. Two leagues about this Citie were twelve low Houses, in which many men were founding and purifying Copper, making such a noyse with the Hammers that this place (if any on Earth) may resemble Hell. In each House were forty Furnaces, twentie on a side, with fortye great Anvils, on each whereof eight men were hammering round, with such quickness as scarce permitted the eyes obferuance; so that in each house there were three hundred and twentie continuall Labourers, besides Workmen of other kinds. Wee asked how much Copper they might make yearly, and they answered, betwixt one hundred and ten, and one hundred and twentie thousand Pikes, of which the King had two parts, because the Mines were his; the Hill where the Mine was, is called *Coretumba*, that is, *River of Copper*, which in two hundred yeares (so long was since the Discovery) was not emptied.

About these Houses one League nearer the River, wee saw on a Hill encompassed with three rews of Iron Grates, thirtie Houses in five ranks, very long, with great Towers of Bels of Metall, and Cast-Iron, with gilded Pillars and carved workes, and artificiall Frontispieces of stone. Here we went on Land by *Chifus* leave, because hee had so vowed to that Pagode, which is called *Bigaypotim*, that is, the God of one hundred and ten thousand Gods, *Corchoo*, *Guac*, *guac*, *guac*, strong & great (say they) above all the rest. For they hold every thing hath a particular God which made it and preserves it in its nature, & that this *Bigaypotim* brought forth all of them at his arme-pits, and that of him they all hold their being, as of a father by filiall waion, which they call *Biaparentisay*. In *Pegu* where I have bene sometimes, there is a Pagode like this (there called *Guococinana*, the God of all greatness) whose Temple was built by the *Chinois* when they ruled in *India*, which was after their Computation accorded with ours from *Anno Dom.* 1013. till 1072. conquered by *Oxtuagan*, whose Successor seeing how much blood was payd for so little good, voluntarily relinquished it. In those thirtie Houses stood a great quantitie of Idols of gilded wood, and as many more of Tinnel, Copper, Latton, Iron, Porcelaine, so many that I dare not mention the number. Wee had noe gone thence fixe or feuen leagues, when we saw a great Citie runned by the houses and walls on the ground, seeming a league in circuit. The *Chinois* said, that it had bene called *Cobilonaca*, that is, *Flower of the field*, sometimes prosperous; and that one hundred forty two yeares since, as is written in a Book named *Taxefalem*, there came in company of Merchants from the Port of *Tanacum*, a man which wrought Miracles, in a months space raising vp five dead persons, the *Boncos* saying, he was a Witch, and because they could not hold dispute with him, prouoking the people against him, saying, that if they did not kill him, God would punish them with fire from Heaven. The enraged multitude killed one *Iobu* a Weaver, where hee sojourned, and his two Sonnes in Law, and his Sonney which fought to defend him, and when they had gone about to burne him, in vaine the fire being extinct, the *Boncos* stoned him, preaching Christ unto them, which had come Works. They say, that the bodie was call into the River, which for the space of five dayes would not runne lower, and thereby many were moved to professe that Religion: and as wee doubled a point of Land, we saw a Crosse of stone on a little Hill enuironed with Trees. *Chifus* Wife falling into trauell (of which shee dyed) we stayed there nine dayes, and did our Deuotions thereto, prostrate on the Earth. The people of the Village (called *Xifang*) marvelling, came running to the place and falling on their knees, kissed the Crosse often, saying, *Christe Iesu, Iesu Christe, Maria Mican, late impone Mondel*, that is, was a Virgin in his Conception, Birth, and after it. They asked if they were Christians, and we affirming it, had vs to their Houses and vied vs kindly, being all of that Weavers Posteritie and Christians. They also confirmed that which the *Chinois* had told vs, and shewed vs the Booke printed of his Miracles, which they said was named *Mattheu Escandel*, an Hungarian by Nation, an Heremite of Mount *Sinay*, borne at *Buda*. That Booke tells that nine dayes after his death, the Citie *Cobilonaca* (sooke it, that the people ranne out into the fields, and abode in Tents; to whom the *Boncos* came and bid them feare nothing, for they would beleeve *Quiny Tignareu*, The God of the night, to command the Earth.

The customes
300000. Cru-
zados.

340. Ham-
mer men.
A Pico is 1000.
Taelis.

Bigaypotim.

Chien-chen
was India.

Cobilonaca.

A Christian
married.
Iobus hath
this floric.

A Crosse.

Met. Escandel
an Hungarian.
Earthquake.
The Chins
Pilate.

to doe no more, otherwise they would giue him no Almcs. This went the Priests alone in Procession to that Idols Houfe, and making their night-Sacrifices and Perfumes, the Earth quaked about cleuen of the clocke at night, and ouerhrew the whole Citty (one only of about foure thousand *Bonzes* remaying aloue) into a Lake more then one hundred fathomes deepe, called after this *Fuengangoua*, that is, *punished from Heauen*.

Hence we came to a great Citty, called *Langkuanau*, very rich, with many Turkes and Barkes, where we stayed five dayes, *Chifu* there celebrating his Wives Exequies, and giuing vs food and payment for her soule, freeing vs from the Oare, and giuing vs leave to goe on Land: when we would, without our Collers, which was very great ease to vs. Thence we went vp the River, still being on both sides many and faire Cities and Townes, and other very great populations, so strongly walled, and Fortified alongh the water with Towers and rich Houles of their Sects, with innumerable cattell in the fields, and shipping in the River, in some places five hundred, five hundred, yea, one thousand sayle, in which were sold all things could be named. Many *Chinois* affirmed, that there were as many lived in that Empire on the water, as in Cities and Townes: so many in both, that were it not for the good gouernment of their Trades, they would eate one another. As in Duckes, one trades in buying and hatching the Eggs, and selling the young; another in breeding them for sale when they are great, others in the feathers, others in the heads, and in wares, others in the Eggs, &c. none interloping the others Trade vnder paine of thirtie stripes. In Hogs, one trades in selling them together aloue, others kill them, and sell them by weight, others in Bacon, others in Piggies, others in Soule. So in fish, he which fish fresh may not sell salt, some sell them aloue, &c. and so in Fruits and other things. And none may change his Trade without licenfe. They haue also along this River of *Batampian*, in which we went from *Nanquin* to *Peguin*, (the distance of one hundred and eighty leagues) such a number of Ingenios for Sugar, and Prefes for Wines, and Oyle, made of diuers sorts of Pulfe and Fruits, that there are streets of them on both sides of the River, of two or three leagues in length. In other parts are many huge store-houles of infinite prouisions of all sorts of flesh, in which are salted and smoked Beefe, tamed wilde Hogs, Ducks, Geese, Cranes, Bultards, Emes, Deere, Buffalo, Ants, Horfe, Tygers, Dogs, and all flesh which the Earth brings forth, which amazed and amazed vs exceedingly, it seeming impossible that there should bee people in the World to eate the same. Wee saw also great store of Barkes fenced at Poupe and Prow, with Reedes of Canes full of Ducks to sell, in diuers lots one another, which goe out at foure strokes of a Drumme, fixe or seuen thousand together to feed, where they set them at the found of the Drumme returning againe, with like exceeding crie. In the like sort they let them out to lay on the grasse. They that hatch them haue long houles with twentie Furnaces full of dung, with some hundreds of Eggs covered therein, and hatched by that heate, the mouth stopped till they stinke fit time, then putting in a Capon halfe plucked and wounded on the breist, they flue it againe, and after two dayes, the Capon hath drawne them all forth, and they put them into holes provided for them.

We saw along the River in some places store of Swine wild and tame kept by men on Horke-backe, in other places tame Deere kept by Footmen, all maymed in the right foreleg, that they shoud not runne away, which they doe when they are young. Wee saw Pennes full of little Ducks to sell, Barkes full of Piggies, others of Lizards, Frogs, Snakes, Snails, all being tame with them. In these (being of small price) they may sell many kinds. Yea, the dung of men there sold, and not the worse Merchandize, that stinke yielding fewer wealth to some, who goe tabouring vp and downe the streets to signifie what they would buy. Two or three hundred sayle are seene sometimes freighted with this lading in some Part of the Sea; whence the famed foyle yields three Harbets in a yeare.

We came to a Faire of *China* where on the water 3000. Barkes, besides small Boats which goe vp and downe and small Barkes were assembled in one place, and made a Citty with streets in the water aboue a league long, and a third part of a league broad. These Faires are principally so on the Holy day of some *Pagode*, whose Temple is by the waters side. In this *Water-citty*, by the order of the *Aitao* of *Bitampian* (who is chiefe President of the thirtie two Admirals of the thirtie two Kingdomes of this Monarchie) are fixtie Captaynes appointed; thirtie for the gouernment and ordering of the same in matters of Iustice, and other thirtie to guard the Merchants in comming safely secured from Theeues. Ouer all these is a *Chacm*, which hath Merit and mixt Rule in Causes Ciuill and Criminall without Appeale. These Faires last from the new Moon to the full, in which it is a goodly thing to see two thousand streets or raikes strait, enclosed with high Barkes, most of them being in the water. There are also many small boats, in which are sold all things that can be desired, in others Mechanike Trades, & in the middle Boats going vp and downe with people to trade without any confusion or tumult. As soone as it is night, the streets are enclosed with Cables. In euery three or ten Lanthomes lighted on the Masts (which yields a fairer lustre then the former light by day) to see who goeth by and what is his business. In each of these streets is a Watch-bell, and when that of the *Chacms* sounds, all the vessels and with as strange an Object to the Eare as the former to the Eye. In euery of these Vowes are

Inuoluit uas.

Sem colares, sem almas.

How such infinite numbers live.

Sugar-houles. Infinite prouisions and store houles.

Pastures of beasts.

Dogs for meat.

Moueable Cities on the water.

Beauties and glories of this River-Citty.

Oratories built on Barkes with gilded Tents; where the Idoll and Priests receive the deuotions and Offerings of the people.

Amongst other remarkable things we saw one row or street of aboue one hundred Barkes laden with Idols of gilded wood of diuers sort, which are sold to be offered in the *Pagodes*; and besides, feet, legs, armes and heads, which sicke folks offer for deuotion. Other Barkes there are with Tents of Silke, in which *Comedies* and pastimes are represented. In others are sold *Lettres of Exchange*, the Priests giuing them Bills to receive in Heauen what their folly lay downe there, with great increase (*Our Seruantes would faine grow rich here with that Trade*) others are laden with *deeds of dead men*, they dreaming that all the Almcs of those men, whose skulls these 10 haue bene, shall belong to their soules, and that the *Porter of Heauen* seeing them come with thus many attending, will open to him as an honourable person: Others haue *Cages of Birds*, and call to men to see free those Captiues, which are the creatures of God, God with their Almcs which they which dog, let loose the Bird and bid him tell God what he hath done in his Seruice: others do the like with *living fishes*, offering their freedom to the charitable Redeemers (which *them selves will not give them; much like the sale of Indulgences*) saying, they are Innocents which neuer sinned, which freed by Almcs are let goe in the River with commendations of this their Redeemers Seruice to the Creator. Other Barkes carry *Edifiers and Musicians* to offer their Seruice: Others (the Priests) sell *Hornes of sacrificed Beasts*, with promise of 1 know not what Feasts in Heauen: others had Tents of *furrow*, *Tombs* and all *Funerall apparances with Women-mourners*, to be let out for Burials: others laden with *Books of all sorts of Historie*, and these also haue Scriveners and Proctors; others haue such as offer their seruice to fight in defence of their honour; others haue *Widowes*, others *Nurses*; others carry *grasse* men and women to comfort those that haue lost Husbands, Wives, Children, and the like disconolate persons: others Boyes and Girles for seruice; others offer *Commodities* in Cases of Law or Learning; others *Physicians*; and to conclude, nothing is to bee bought on the Land which is not here to be found in this *Water-citty*.

Once, the cause of the greatness of this Kingdom of *China*, is this easie concourse of all parts by water and Rivers: some of which in narrow places haue bridges of stone like ours, and some made of one only stone laid ouer, sometimes of eight, ninetie, or one hundred spanner, long, and fiftene or twentie broad. All the High-ways haue large Causes made of good stone, 30 with Pillers and Arches fauily wrought inscribed with the *Famoules names* and *praises* in golden Letters. In many places they haue Wells to refresh the Travellers. And in more barren and leese inhabited places are single women which giue free entertainment to such as haue so monie, which abuse and abomination, they call a worke of Mercie, and is provided by the deceased for good of their soules, with Rents and maintenance. Others haue allo bequeathed in the like one and twentie yeares before their death, and fires for Trauellers, water and Lodging. I haue in my testimonie be worthy credit, all together is not comparable to *China* alone: such are the endowments of nature in a whole some *Ayre*, *Soye*, *Rivers*, and *Seas*, and their Police, Iustice, Riches and State, that they obscure all the lustres of other parts. Yet such is their 40 bestiall and Deuillish Idolatry, and filthy Sodomitie publicly permitted, committed, taught by their Priests as a vertue, that I cannot but grieve at their vngodly trade.

Departing from this admirable Citty, we sailed vp the River, till on the ninth of October, on Tuesday we came to the great Citty of *Peguin*, whither we were sent by Appeale. We went three and three as Prisoners, and were put in a Prison called *Gosaria* where for an entrance they gaue each of vs thirtie stripes. *Chifu* which brought vs presented to the *Aitao* our Progers, sent one of their company with two Notaries, and fixe or seuen Officers to the Prison make petition to the *Chacm*, of the holy Office by our Proctors, and gaue vs a Tacit for their great Rooome, where he heard many Prisoners Causes, three houres together, and then caused execution to be done on fuen and twentie men, sentenced two dayes before, which all dyed with the blowes to our great terror.

And the next day wee were collared and manacled, being much afraid that our *Calemploys* business would come to light. After foure dayes the *Tangouers* of the Hospital of that Prison came again. By their meanes the *Conchalis* petitioned the *Chacm* to reskue the Sentence of cutting off our thumbs, seeing there was no testimonie of theft by vs to diuers dates, and 60 the more needed pittie then regour. He heard the pleading for and against vs, but being our power the Promotor or Fiscal laying hand against vs that we were theuets, but being able to proue nothing, the *Chacm* suspended him from his Office, and condemned him in twentie Tails to vs, which was brought vs. And at last we were brought into a great Hall painted with diuers res presentations of execution of Iustice for seuerall crimes there written, very fearful to behold: and at the end a fairer gilded roome crossed the same, where was a Tribunall with seuen steps, thid.

Bridges, and high-ways admirable. Filthy charity.

The Authors opinions. Peguin.

Their hand vices.

Their Cause. The Fiscal (set on work) it seems by vs, Judge which had sentenced them; zum.

**Tribunal and
pompe.**

Quaffs Works.

The Kings
alm: s.

Description of
Pequin, or as
the *Chinois* call
it *Pequin*.
Aquesendoo a
Booke written
of *Pequin*.
1600. houses
for Deputies.

24800. f

Hospitals 500.

24000. Barge.

14000. Pur-
veyors.
Curtesan
Street.

100000. Land-
derers.
1300. Mona-
stries.

* By letting the houses to other men.

360. Gates
and Cattle.

3800. Temples

Four chief
Scots.

con-paffed with three rewes of grates, Iron, Latun, and blacke Wood; inlayed with Mother of pearl, having a Canopie of Damask fringed with Gold and Greene Silke, and vnderneath a Chaire of Silver for the *Chanc*, and a little Table before him, with three *Knives* attending on their knees richly attired, with chaines of gold on their neckes; the middlemost to read him his Penne, the other two to receive Petitions and to present them on the Table; two other *Knives* standing at his side in exceeding rich aray, the one representing *Iustice*, the other on the right hand *Mercy*, without which conioyned, the Judge (they say) becomes a Tyrant. (The rest of the *State* and ceremony I omit) we kneeling on our knees, with our hands lifted vp, and our eyes cast downe to the ground, heard glailly our Sentence of absolution. Only we were for one yeare banished to the workes of *Quarry*, and eight moneths of that yeare ended to have free payne to goe home, or whither we would. After the Sentence pronounced, one of the *Councellers* stood up, to the times demanded aloud if any could take exception against the Sentence; and all being silent, the *Knives* representing *Iustice* and *Mercy*, touched each others *Embriges* which they had in their hands, and thus spake, *Let them be free according to the Sentence*, and presently two *Chumbers* tosse off our Collars and Chains, and all our bonds. The four moneths (the had we been rich, we must have frused the same) were over. They gave vs foure Tises of almes and went to the Captaine which was to goe for *Quarry* to commend vs to their Charitie, which I did vs accordingly.

*P*equin may be called the Mother City of the Worlds Monarchie for the wealth, govern-
ment, greatness, iustice, prouisions. It stands in the height of 41. degrees to the North; it
containeth in circuit, as the *Chine* (and as Iafter heard from a list of Books written of the
greatnesse thereof, called *Ayngfudo*, which I brought with mee into this Kingdome) three
leagues, ten in length, and five in breadth, all which place is enuironed with two Walls, and in-
numerable Towers and Bulwarks. Withouth is a larger place, which they say, was anciently
peopled, which now hath but Hamlets, and scattered Houses, and Garden-houles (of which
fiftie thousand there be) in the which are the fixtured hundred Proctors for the fixtured
hundred Cities and Townes of note, in which are the fixtured hundred Kingdomes of this Monar-
chie, which reside there three yeeres for the said Townes. Withouth this Wall, there are
in the space of three leagues broad, and fuen long, foure and twentie thousand Sepulchres
Mandares, with their little gilded Chappels, encompassed with grates of Iron and Latten,
with rich Arches at their entries. Neere to them are Gardens, Groues, Tanks, Fountaines; in
the which the Kings sit with fine Porcelaine, adorned also with Lions and Pinacles of diuers pain-
tings. There is in this place a great number of Gallies, called Houses of the Sonne of the Sunne,
for entertainment of Souldiers maimed in the Kings wars (before the Sunne for the old
and sick) euerie of which receive their monthly allowance, and haue in them as the said two
hundred men, in all one hundred thousand. Wee saw another fleet very long, where lived
four and twentie thousand Rowers for the Kings shipping: and another about a league long,
where lived four hundred thousand Taumers for prouision for the Court; and another where were
four hundred thousand men from all places, which the office of the Citie pay for feruice of the Court,
many running from their husbands, and here protected by the *Taiwan* of the Court, which is lu-
cious in safes of the Kings house.

In that compaffie alfo lue the Landers of the Citie, which were, as they told vs, above one hundred thouland, there being many Tankes or Ponds compaffed with flone and Ruers. There are therein, as that Booke fayeth, thirteenth hundred Houfes of Religious men and women, which profefle the three chiefes of the two and thirte which are in that Kingdome : fome of which, they fay, haue aboute one thouland perfons within them befides feruitors. There are other houfes fure with great walls in which are Gardens, and Groves with game for hunting ; and as are it were the Halls of Companies where many refort to fee Playes, and the great men fo maintained by Companies, which have incredible coffs. Some of thefe houfes coft aboue a million, maintained by Companies, whofe members, which are faide to gaine much thereby. And when any will make a feild, he goeth to the *Xpian*, which is faide to be much thereby. And when is contyried the order of Feasts and Iynnes (which Booke I haue fene & heard read) of all forts, and of what prices they are, whether Sacred to their Idols, or Secular, (*of which our Author hath a large Chapter, hereby omitted.*)

Now for *Pegum*, it hath three hundred and fixtie Gates, each having a *Cafilet* with two Towers, and a Draw-bridge, a Notarie, and four Warders, to take notice of those which goe in and out, and an Idoll proper according to the dayes of the yeare, *vizt* which is *fullim* in one of them. The *Chinos* reported that there are therein three thousand eight hundred Temples or Pagodes, in which are continually sacrificed birds and wilde beaſts, which they ſay, are more acceptable then meat: thoſe eſpecially very faire which are of the *Menipreps*, and *Conquias*, and *Talegreps*, the Priests of the foure chiefe Seſts, of *Xaca*, *Amida*, *Gison*, and *Cason*. The ſtreets are long and large, the houſes faire, of one or two floors, accompanied with Iron and Lat-

ten grates, and at the fiftene are triumphall arches, clofed at night; in the chiefe are Watch-
bells, vpon every three hath a Capraine and foure Quarter-maisters or Corporals, which euen ten
mayes acquaint the *Lanchers*, or *Chains* with occurrents. That Booke reports of one hundred
and twentie water-paffages, fixe fathome deepe of water, and twelue wide, with many fone
bridges, which are faid to be eightene hundred rich and faire, with arches, pillars, and chaine:
it tells alfo of one hundred and twentie Market-places, each of which haue their monthly
faire, (which make fome foure faires a yere thorow the cities) of which we fay ten or twelue
in our two monthes free abode, very full of horse-men and good men with all commodities to be
fold. There are one hundred and twentie shambles, each hauing one hundred blockes for Fleefh of
all firs, the price of the same shewen on every blocke, and besides the shop-weights, are weights at
every Gate to examine the weight againe. And besides those generall shambles, euen three
hath fixe or fixe shops which sell all kind of Fleefh: houses also for Poultrie, and for Bacon,
and hanged Beefe.

8. V.

*Four Buildings incredibly admirable in Pequín, and diuers of their superstitions :
their Hospitals and provisions for the Poore. The Kings reuenues
and Courts ; their Seats.*

But now seemed me more admirable, then the Prison, called *Ximangabell*, that is, the Prison of the exiled, whose compall counteneth about two leagues square, as well in length as breadth, walled high and ditched deepe, with draw-bridges hanging on Iron cast pillars very great. It hath a high arch with two towers, whereon are six great watch-tells, at the fount whereof the rest within anflow, which are sayd to bee one hundred. In this Prison are continually three hundred thousand men from sixteen to fiftie years of age, all condemned to banishment, for the fabrike of the wall betwixt the said *China* and the Kingdome of *India*, which yearly they pay for. These men have fustie for their cloathes, and they live freely, the King forbidding them to receive sentence in satisfaction of their labour. And if one worthe expell, he is also freed. There are two hundred & ten thousand employed in that service, of which yearly in those that dye, are maidm or freed, one third part is set off, and supplied from that Prison, which was build by *Goxley* the successor of *Crispalad*, the founder of the wall, brought thither from all parts of the Realme, and sent to the Castle of the wall at his appointment. These prisoners are sent from other prisons, being loole, save that they weare at their necke, a board of a fpanne long and foure fingers broad, inscribed with their name, and sentence of exile, such a time. In this Prison are two Faires yearly, one of which we saw, kept in June and Ianuarie, franke and free without payment of tolls; as which are thought to assemble three millions of persons: the Prisoners being, mean-while that last. The Prison hath three Towers, as it were, walled with stone, besides the *Chamels* lodgings, fit to entertaine a King. There are also all necessities fold. There are groues, and tankes of water for walking, Hospitals also and twelve Monasteries, with rich houses, wanting nothing that a rich and noble Citizen should have: the Prisoners hauing their Wives and Children with them, the King allowing a competent house for them.

Another building that was great as that, was the *Muscipara*, or *treasure of the Dead*, compailed with a strong wall and ditch, with many stone Towers and painted pinnacles : the wall on the top in lead of battlements, was compailed with Iron gates, close to which were set great store of Idols of different figures, of Men, Serpents, Hories, Oxen, Elephants, Fishes, Snakes, monstrous forms of Wormes, and creatures never leene; all of Braile and caft Iron, and some of Time, and Copper; a sight more admirable to the view, then can be imagined. Passing by a bridge over the ditch, we came to a great Hill, ^{Another admirable Fabrick.} at the first entrie all enuironed with thick garres of Latten, floored with stones white and blacke, so finishing that a man might fee himselfe therein, as in a glaffe. In the midst of that Hill stood a marble pillar of sixe and thirtie fpannes high, all seeming to be but one stone : on the top thereof stood an Idoll of filver with a womans face, with both hands griping a Serpent spotted with blacke and white. And further, before the gate (which flood betweene two high towers, borne vpon foure and twentie bigge stone pillars) stood two figures of men with Iron maces or battle Axes, in their hands, as guarding the passage, one hundred and fortie fpannes high, with dreadfull countenances, called *Exceprian Xalicans*, that is, the *Blowers of the Houfe of Smoke*. At the entrie of the gate, flood twelue Halberdiers, and two Notaries at a table, which writ downe all that ened. After we were entred, we came into a large street led on both sides with rich Archers, with infinite beds of Latten hanging theroon, by litten chaynes, by the moouing of the ayre yeelding a great found. The street was almost halfe

120, Rincetti,
1800, Bridges.
120, Market-
place.

160. Shambica.

Prison of the
exiled, to the
Tartarian wall,
almost eight
leagues com-
pact.
*Or 18, 19, 45

* Before he
said 200,000.

Huge Fairs:

Another admirable Fabrike.

*TCTCTT, and
so after.

Fire-blowers
of Hell.

200 H. ufes
all to the sk.

China Chancel
or Paragite.

The Death
banne sym-
pans in Ru-
pendous Ser-
pents; then
which neither
figure nor
erecture hath
bene more a-
bured to sup-
flure is a glo-
rying of that
his conquest,
Gen. 3. though
a bronze lion
he repte end
by the brazen
Serpent, Job 3.
hath taken the
old Serpent and
did captiv-
ise capar, and
brice the Ser-
pent's head,
which here
seemes inter-
ted with En-
durance.

The third
Strange Edi-
fice of Nacapi-
ran, the last of
China.
140. Mones-
tics.

Tartarian cru-
elty.

Namens (sacred
to diuers Gods

The Porters of
Hell.

Isister or God
of Rayne.

* Entedid-à
burnt fide.

a league long, and within those arches were two ranks of houses, like as it were great Churches with gilted pinnacles, and painted inuentions, in number as the *Chinois* affirmed three thousand. Bones, reaching to the routes of the houses, of the same length or halfe a league and very broad. We asked the *Chinois*, if any account were kept thereof, and they answered, that the *Talagor* per which had the government of those houses, had registers for them all, and that every house yielded two thousand Tais rent, left thereto by the deceased for their foules discharge, the King fourth part was spent on the exiled Prisoners of *Xuanzangubalen*.

We walked thorow the street, and in the midst saw a great hill round encompassed with two reues of Latten grates; in the midst whereof was a brazen Serpent, about thirte fathoms in her circles, well proportioned, notwithstanding that incredible massifne. This monstrous Snake Buller of cast Iron of two and thirte fpannes circumference. About twentie paces further, was hands another bullet, which (crying the Serpent with an angry visage) made as though he threw vp to him as in admiration; in and in four wyres or of their knees, with hands lifted two fluer Candlesticks, each having fixe, seven, and ten noles. This Idoll gaue named to all the bones of the dead, and that Serpent coming to rob them, he threw the *Chinois*, the *Treasure* of all the bones, and hee to the darke bottom of the house of smoke, where God had cast her for her badnelle: And that three thousand yeeres before hee made the former throw, and that three thousand yeeres alter, he shall make another, and so each three thousand yeeres another, till that fifth which shall kill her: after which all these bones shall returne to their bodies, to remaine pie, whose bones are thither brought, so that no day passeth in which two thousand bones not brought thither. And they which are too farre distant to haue their bones brought, send a Tooth or two, which with their almes will doe as much good as the whole: so that I suppose there are teeth enough in those houses to lade many ships.

A third building was low without the walls, sumptuous and rich, named *Nacapiuran*, which signifieth, *The Queen of Heauen*; which they meant not of the Virgin *Mary*, but thinke that as temporal Kings are married, so also is the Heauenly, and that the Children which hee get then one of thofe Children dye, all his brethren weeping so many teares, that the Clouds are therewith filled, and water the earth, and make it fruitful, as being the almes which God giues for the foule of the deceased. Wee saw heere one hundred and forty Monasteries, of their wicked Religious men and women; in eury of which, were layd to bee four hundred persons, which come to fixe and fiftie thousand; besides Eratours, which haue not yet vowed the profession, as those within, who goe in sacred habite of red with greene foles, their beads and heads with beades about their neckes, for their prayers, but aske no almes, having suffenance of their owne proper. In this Edifice of *Nacapiuran*, the Tartarian King lodged, Anno 1544, when hee layd siege to this Citie, as shall after bee declared; wherein for a diuillish and bloudie Sacrifice, rather, the Daughters of the chiefe men of the Kingdome, and Religious, professed of the Sects of *Quay Fiegan*, God of the *Mount of the Stone*, and of *Quay Ninadel*, God of the *Battell*, and of *Compuian*, and of foure others, *Quay Manu*, *Quay Colompon*, *Quay Mubole*, and *Mube Lacafia*, whose five Sects, are the chiefe of the other, almost a league compasse, borne vp with stone arches, and in stead of battlements, surrounded with Latten grates, and at eury five fathoms, Iron workes on pillars of Brasse fastened one to another, whereon by chaynes hung innumerable bells, making a continuall strange noyse, with the motion of the wyre.

At the great Gate of this second wall, in terrible fpaces, stood the two Porters of Hell (as they call them) *Barabram* and *Quayfau*, with Iron Maces in their hands, terrible to behold. Passing vnder an Iron chayne, fastened to the brefts of these Drudges, wee came into a faire fiers long and wide, compulled with painted arches, on the top whereof were two ranks of Idolls that length, in which were about five thousand Images, wee knew not of what matter, being all gilted, with Mytes on their heads of diuers inuentions. At the end of this street, was a great reuel of Idolls set with blacke and white shining stones, the whole square compulled with foure rows of Giants of metall, each of fiftene fpannes, with Halberds in their hands, and gilted borders. At the end of all stood *Quay Hiaon*, God of the *Raine*, feet vp against a battion or border, fiftene fpannes long, and his head to high, that it reached to the battlements of the tower, (which were about twelue fathoms) by his mouth, eyes, nostrils, and brefts, issuing out water, which the people below gathered as a great relique. This water came from the top of the tower

by secret pipes. Wee passed vnder his legges, which stood as a great portall, and came to a large house like a Church, with three lles on gilted pillars, and on the walls on both sides, many Idols great and small of diuers figures, all marble, set on their bases in good order. At the end of this house on a round of fiftene steps, stood an Altar made in fiftion of a Throne, and thereon the Image of *Nacapiuran* like a gooly woman, with her layre loose, and her hands lifted to heauen, all of gold so burnished, that it dazzled the eyes. About that tribunal in the foure first steps, stood twelue Kings of *China* crowned in fluer. And beneath, were three reues of gilted Idolls on their knees, with their hands lifted vp, many fluer Candle-sticks hanging about them. Going thence, wee came to another three of arches like the former; and from thence by two others of rich buildings, to a great hall, in which were eightie two Bells of metall very great, hanging by chaynes from Iron beames sustained with Iron Columns. Thence wee went to a strong Gate twice foure towers, in which stood a *Chifu* with thirte Halberdiers, and two Noraries, which tooke the names of all passengers, to whom wee gaue thirte Reis for entrance.

The fourth remarkable and famous building, was in the Riuer of *Batampina*, in an Island about a league in compasse, walled round with stone eight and thirte fpannes about water, within gilted with earth, round encompassed with two reues of Latten grates; the vttermost fide fpannes high for people to leane on, the inner of nine, holding fluer Lions with balls, the Armes of the *China* Kings. Within these grates in good order, were placed one hundred and thirte Chappels, in manner of round Bulwarkes; in each of them, was an alabaster Sepulchre seated on the heads of two fluer Serpents, with faces of women and three hornes on their heads. In eury of them were thirte Candlesticks of fluer, with seven lights in each burning. In the midst of a spacious place compasse with three reues of grates, with two ranks of Idolls, stood a high Tower with five fteepes of diuers paintings, and on their tops, Lions of fluer; in which tower the *Chinois* layd, were the bones of the one hundred and thirte Kings, worshipped by them for great reliques. These bones lay they, eury New Moone, fast on with another, whereupon the vulgar at those times, offer to them infinite store of Fowles of all fices, Rice, Kine, Hogges, Sugar, Honey, and other prouision; which the Priests receive, and decerne them in recompence, with as it were lables, of plenary Indulgences, and remission of finnes as they Indulgence.

In this Tower wee saw a rich house all lined with fluer plates, from the top to the bottom, in which stood thofe one hundred and thirte Kings ituaues, and the bones of each the King in his owne statue; and they lay, that by night these Kings communicate and passe the time together, which none may see but the *Cabincondes*, (a higher degree of *Boncos*, as that of *Cardinals* with vs) which fables they beleue for very certaintie. In this great circuit wee told three hundred and forty Bells of metall and cast Iron, in fiftene places, by twentie in a place, which all found on thofe New-moone feasts aboute. Neere to that tower, in a rich Chappell built on feuen and thirte coloures, stood the Image of *Amida* made of fluer, with the hayres of gold on a Throne of fiftene fteps, all wrought with gold, the hands deuided to Heuen; 40 beneath her shoulders, hung (like liles of beades) many little Idolls, as big as the middle finger; and the secret parts were couered with two great Oyster-pearles, garnished with gold: They being demanded the meaning of this myserie, I sayd, that after the general Flood in which all mankind was drowned, God lent *Amida* from the Heauen of the Moone, (being great Chamberlaine to *Nacapiuran* his wife) to restore the destroyed world; who feting here teete in *Ca-templey* before mentioned, being lately freed of the waters, fhe turned it into gold, and there standing on her feet with her face in heauen, a great quantite of Creatures issued from downe her arme; downe her right hand Males, and Females downe the left; hauing no other place in her bodie whence to bring them forth, as other women of the world, whom for sinne God hath subiected to filthinefle of corruption, to fhow how filthy sinne is. After fhee had finished 50 this trauell or child-birth of 33333. Creatures, (as they number) one third part Males, and two parts Females, fhe remained so weak, hauing no bodie to prouide her any thing, that with dizziness fhe fell to the ground dead without recovery. Whereat the Moone in condoling her death couered her selfe with sorrow, which are thofe shadowes wee fee from the earth; which say they, shall remaine so many yeeres as the produced Creatures (33333) & then the Moone shall put off her maske of sorrow, and the night shall bee after as cleere as the day. Such and other like mad stuffe did they tell, which might make one wonder, and more to weepe, that the Deuill should gull them with fuch manifest lies, being otherwise fo vnderstanding a people.

From this Hill wee went to another Temple of Nuns, sumptuous and rich, in which they told vs was the Mother of this King, *Nbay Camfama*, but fupposed not to be enter being Strangers. Thence by a street of Arches, wee went to a haue called *Hiebario Topien*, where was store of strange shipping of diuers Kingdomes, which come continually to that Temple for a plenary Indulgence, which the King with many priuileiges hath granted them, and dyet on free cost. To fpeake of other Temples and matters of *China*, which wee saw in our two monthes libertie were infinite.

Golden statue
of Nacapiuran.

The fourth
glorious Edi-
fice.

119. Chappels,
and their com-
muns
14.9. Candle-
sticks.

Lady Amida
Emper.

Amida Cham-
berlaine to Na-
capiran, as is
to fene: a stile
perhaps a little
higher than the
Raine bow ad-
uantant, Gen. 1.
2. which fole-
wed from Gen.
3. 16.

A Nunneit.

Ho pital for children.

How the poor children are placed to Trades.
Span. Amos.

Provisiⁿ for all sorts of poore.

Provisiⁿ against sterility, and for the poore. See f^o 26.

Royall revenues: how disposed. The *Infatigable* is put up, the King cannot as please dispense it.

Not to compare China with what we see here. Admirable Pequim.

Minapau the Kings Palace: the number of Eunuchs perhaps is mistaken by the Printer: the Span. hath 10000. one either 1. 50. Yet Pallas (1616) that yeere when he writ, were chosen 3000. out of 10000. and in the Palace were 16000. Eunuchs.

The King of China most reideth at *Pequin*, for so he sweareth at his Coronation. There are certain streets severall in this Citie by themselves, wherein are houles called *Lag nampai*, that is, *The Schoole of the poore*, in which Orphans which know no father are taught to write and read, and mechanic trades to earne their livings. Of these Houles they have about two hundred, and as many more of poore Nurses which give sucke to Children, expelled or cast forth by their Parents (which are punished if they be knowne) and after they are weaned, are committed to the former houles. And if any by naturall defect are unable to learne a Trade, they apply to in other cases. Besides, no Tradesman may keepe shop without licence, which is not granted but of those blinde persons, and clothes, and fifteen shillings yearly, which when hee dieth he may give for his soule, that no poore should perish, according to the fourth precept of *Amos*. For Cretples which cannot goe, they place them with makers of Fraises, Baskets, and other handiworkes: and those which cannot vfe their hands have great Hampers given them, and Baskets to serue for Porters to carrie what men buy, from the Markets to their houles; such as have neither hands nor feet to vfe, are placed in great houles like Monasteries, where are many mercenary women which pray for the dead, halfe of the Offerings remayning to them, the other halfe to the Priests. If they be dumbe, they place them in a houle like an Hospital, where they are sustayned with the fines imposed on Regretate and folding women. For common women which are diseased they have other houles, where they are cured and provided for, at the costs of other common women, each paying a monthly fee. The Dowries or Ioynters of convicted Adulterers are bestowed on the Hospitals of female Orphans, that honestie may gaine by dishonesties losse. Other honest poore men are maintayned in other streets, at the charges of Solicitors and Lawyers which maintayne vniuist Suits, and of partiall bribed Judges.

For the provision of the poore I have further heard read out of their Chronicles that *Cheng ran Pungar*, Grece Grandfather of the King now reigning, desiring to doe God service (being blinde after a sicknes which he had) ordained that in every Citie there should be store-houles of Wheat and Rice, that if any dearth should happen, there might be a yeeres provision, and the poore should not perish: and to this purpose he applied the tenth part of the Kings Customs. They say, that God recompensed this his charitie with restitution of his sight, which continued fourteen yeeres after till his death. This charitie with restitution of his sight, which continued fourteen yeeres after till his death. At Harath the old is deuised to the Inhabitants as they that the store be not diminished. But if the yeere prove barren, it is diuided to them without gain: and that which is given to the poore which have not to satisfie, is paid out of the Kings Rents of that place, as the Kings Almes. And all the rest of the Royall revenues are diuided into three parts: one for maintenance of the Kings estate, and for the government of the Kingdom; the second for the defence of the Country, for Ports, Fleets, and the like; the third being deputed for defence of the Kingdome against the *Tatars*, and other warres with neighbouring Kings; this part of the treasure is called *Chidampar*, that is, *The wall of the Kingdome*. For they say, that if such occasions happen, the King shall not lay tribute whiles that lasteth, nor shall the people be vexed, as in other Countries, where such providence is not vied.

I neede I ree to particularize all that we saw in this Citie, lest the Reader should doubt of matter at the tartie, measuring things by that little they have leene, and judging by their owne haughtie spirits, and large vnderstandings, that measure not other flates by the mieries and more pardonable in others to doubt, forasmuch as I verily coultie, that I my selfe which I held them with mine eyes, an often amazed, when with my selfe I recount the greatnes of *Pequin*, in the admirable estate of that *Gemile* King, in the splendor of the *Chans* of Iustice, sumptuousness of the Houles and Temples of their Idols; and of all the rest therein. For only in the Citie *Minapau* which stands within the wall of the Kings Palace are 100000. Eunuchs, and 30000. women, 10000. men for his Guard, and 12. *Tatars*, which is the greatest dignitie, and commonly called the Sun-beames, as the King is called, the Sonne of the Sunne, whole priuities, as *Anchazy*, *Asyter*, *Pondachy*, *Lautauan*, and *Chumbin*, all which in the Court are about 500. and none of them have leffe then 300. men depending, the greater part of which are *Magores*, *Perfians*, *Carsagans*, *Monses*, *Calimundans*, *Tariars*, *Cauibins*, and some *Bramans*; the 63. husbandrie. The women are white, chaste, more given to labour then the men.

The earth is fertile, which their ingratitude rather ascribes to the merit of their King, then the providence of God. Some Priests alio barter with them upon Bills of exchange to be re-

payed an hundred for one in Heauen, which Letters they call *Cuchimines*. Other Priests are of another Sect, called *Nausfins*, which deny the Soules immortallitie, and therefore teach to take their pleasures in this life. Another Sect is called *Tramaces*, which holds, that a man shall follow lie in his Graue as hee hath liued above ground; after which, by the prayers of their Priests, the Soule shall returne into another creature fiened dayes, and then seeke for the old bodie left in the Graue, to carrie it to the Heauen of the Moone, where it shall sleepe many yeeres, till it be conuerted into a Starre, and there remayne fixed for euer. Another beauly Sect, called *Gisem*, holds that Beasts orther shall enioy Heauen, in recompence of their penance and troubles here lustayned, and not Men which follow their lusts, except they leaue to Priests at their death, to pray for them.

¶ VI.

Their remove to Quany, quarrells, miseries; Tartarian huge Armie, and losse as the siege of Pequim, reported. Quany taken, and Nixiáncó: MENEZ his exploit. Their entertainment by the Tartar King, and going to Cauchinchina with his Embassadors, with many Tartarian obseruations.

After we had two months and a halfe gone vp and downe in the Citie of *Pequin*, on Saturday the thirteenth of January, 1544. they carried vs to *Quany* to fulfill our Sentence, where we were brought before the *Chuen*, who made vs of his Guard of eightie Halburiers allowed him by the King, which made vs thankfull to God, being a place of little labour and more maintenance and liberty. But after a month, the Devil fouled liue betwixt two of our companie, which in reasoning about the Families of the *Madureyras*, and the *Fenfeas*, whether were more eminent, grew to hate, thence to haining wounds, and after to blowes and wounds, not only of those two, but by part takings of fure of the rest. The *Chuen* and *Anchazy* sentenced vs to thirtie blowes a man, which made vs more bloody then our wounds. Then they carried vs to a prison, where we lay in Irons fixe and forty dayes. After which we were brought to the Barre, and received other thirtie stripes, and removed to another prison, where we stayed two months, then removed to certaine Iron-works fixe monthes, much pinched in backe and belly, and being diseased with a contagious sicknes, they sent vs forth to begge, which wee did foure monthes. In this miserie we sware to each other to lue Chritillianly and louingly, and that each month one should be chiefe, whom all the rest should obey, whereby we aiter liued in peace.

Christofan Borralle the chiefe for that month, distributed vs by couples to take their times weekly to begge, two to fetch water, and make ready what we got, two to get wood. I and *Caspar de Mopres* went one morning to the Wood, and *Mopres* being Musiciall played on his Viail, and singing a thing pleasing to the people, which spend much time in pastime and banquets, and profitable to win procuring almes. As we went, we met with a Funerall pompe with Musike in the midst: one of which Musicians knowing *Mopres*, prayed him to play and sing as loud as he coult, that this dead man we now carrie to buriall may heare slues, to comfort him in leauing his wife and children, whereto he was much affected. Hee modestly refusing, the other angrily answered, and others interceded, and almost forced him to goe with them to the burning Buriall after their coutume. I thus left alone, went and got my bundle of wood on my backe. In the way homeward I met in the way an old man, clothed in blacke Damask furred with white Lambe, who hauing shewed mee a filier Croffe, told me, that he was a poore

Portugall, *Vasco Caluo*, which leuen and twentie yeeres since was captured with *Tome Pirez*, whom *Lope Soares* had sent Embassador to China, which had a miserable successe by reason of a *Portugall* Captaine. Hee brought me to his house, and told me the storie of his and his fellows adventures, and I ous to him: and at his request I fetched the rest of our companie to his poore house. Hee brought vs to another room, where his wife was, with her two little sonnes, and two small daughters. Shee entertained vs lovingly, and shewed vs her Closet with an Altar, and a Croffe thereon, fiercely kept, shee also and her children said a *Portugall* Prayer, with the *Pater noster*, *Credo*, and *Aue Maria*, to our great ioy.

Eight months being spent in this our miserie and beggerie, on Wednesday the thirteenth of Iuly, a great tumult and cry arose amongst the people, by reason or newes of the *Tartarian* King his coming to *Pequin*, with a greater power then euer any King had in the World; that there were in his Armie 180000. men, 60000. of which were Horse-men, which had come by Land from *Lac game*, and *Fanfist*, and *Mench*, with 80000. Bads to carrie their prouisiⁿ. Twelve hundred thousand Foot-men had come in fixteene thousand Laules and Iargis downe the *Butampina*. And because the King of China durst not resist to great a power, hee was sent

Sects in China
Cuchimines,
Nausfins,
Tramaces.

Gisem.

Quany.

Portugals quarrell.

Paritie a peace-breaker.

Musick for the comfort of the dead.

Vasco Caluo.
See the account note §. 3.

Newes of the Tartarian King, as hee came, as hee came of Pequim.
Lopare.
Kishan, etc. etc.

that fanned. One of the twelve Scepter-boys told *Mitaquer* from his Sister, that the King commanded hee should not goe away, which he tooke for a great grace, and wee returned to our Tents.

Tartaric acid.
 Consultation

Singe of Pe-
quim breaks
vp.

The Kings re-
turne into Tow.
12712.

Language

Y-aminic acid

The *Mogor* is now much altered, & since that time Lord of *India*,

CARAT.

A Marriage
treated on be-
twixt the *Catan*
and *Tartar*.

They depart
from *Tartaria*.

Uruguay. 3

An Univerſitie.

Guns of wood.

Fortie and three dayes, hee came to the Campe Royall (in which place were many fights between the befiegers and befieged, two affaies by killing all the *Tartari* Ioffe) the *Tartarian* called a Councell, where were assembled fuen and twelue Kings, and many great men & Captaines, which agreed that feing Winter was now coming, and many great men that had rifen and forfey the Trenches, and many were fick (four or five thoufand dying daily) that it was better to rayle the fiege. The King therefore embarked the Foot-men with the munitions, fired the Tents, and went away with 30000. Horfe by land, and 40000. Tartar 450000. men 10
being found by accounts, to haue dyed in this expedition, molt of fickneffe, 30000. Horfe and 60000. Tartar, for want of prouifions the two laft mentioned and a halfe this Siege. (Hee endured five moneths and a halfe) Befides, 300000. had runne to the *Chinoi*, woomen in their great pay. Hee lodged the firft night of his departure at a Riuer called *Quayraguen*, the next day he came to *Gumpuen*, which hee found wholly forlaken; thence to *Lampuen*, and after fix or feven dayes (eight leaues a day) he came to *Guanixim*, and forced it, committing therein came to *Gaulo*, and hee medled not with being great and ftrong, hauing therein 50000. men, of which 10000. were *Armen*, *Caschimi*, and *Champaas*, better Souldiers then the *Chinoi*. Thence hee paied to the walls of *Quayraguen*, and the next day to *Xipato*, and then went away 20
molt of his Souldiers, fending fuen 10000. men in the pay, and execution of Iuftice on Prifoners. Thence difcontent, hee went to *Lanxuen* by water, (with only one hundred and twentie Tartars, in which were fome ten or twelue thoufand men) where fix dayes after hee arrived in the night without any pompe.

There he stayed five and twentie days, till all his company were come both of horse and foot, after which he went to a greater Citie called *Thymican*, where he was personally visited by confining Princes and Ambassadors from remoter Kingdoms, *Xatama* of *Perfia*, *Siam*, the Emperor of the *Greec*, which within the Countrey confine with *Brance* of *Tangse*, the *Calamano* of the East of the brute force of Elephants, the *Sorow* of *Odiss*, (intituled King of *Siam*) whose Segniorie comprehendeth feuen hundred leagues of coast, from *Tanacurim* to *Chempas*, containing feuen thousand Kingdomes; the King of the *Mogely* whose Kingdomes lyes within land, betwixt *Cocinas* and *Perfia*, and the Kingdome of *Dowly* and *Chitor*, and an Emperour called *Ceras*, whose Segniorie comprehendeth within the Mountaines of *Conchadon*, with a Nation which the Naturals call *Macaby*, of whose name I have not time to come in this Citie, ruddie, of bigge stature, with shooes, and furred cloathes, having long latine wavy haire, and a long beard, and a long nose, and a long chin, and *Christiani*, and much giuen to vnnaturall lust. To the great admiration of that Prince *Ceras*, better entertainment was giuen then to all the rest. Hee brought with him one hundred and twentie men of his guard, with Arrows and gilded quivers, all cloathed in Shagreen, and two skinnies and twentie of his right hands with rich embroidered Furnitures. After whom followed twelue men of high rank, in *Chayres* and collers of Silver, muzzled. Then came twelue Boyes, faire and well proportioned of quick feature in gallant array, & next them *Leisigau* the Ambaffador himselfe, in a Chariot (they all a *Pirange*) with three wheeles on a side, garnished with Silver and a Chayre of the same, sitting there with fourie Foot-men in marrie and greene, yielding a goodly sight, all things manifest to vntill him. We were one day in his lodging with *Chitraguer*, who was a Lord, and a great friend of his, and amongst other strange things, we saw few rooms hanging with Tapesties, Silver-tables, Furniture and State, all rich. This Ambadour came not only to welcome home the *Tartar*, but to treat also of all Marriage for his Lord, with one of the *Tartari* *Sis* so often seen in their Festiual dayes.

Mataque at our request mentioned vs to the King, who sayd, he would send vs with his Ambassador shortly to *Chuchenchina*; and caufd vs to be brought, againe to his prefence with great Armeonie of State and Maiestie as before at *Pequim*, where hee had petitioned for vs to the King, which wee exulting sayd, we had Wiues and Children in our owne Country; and *Seque Mendez*, hee accepted. Eight of vs were commended to the Ambassador, which was to be to *Paxangum* in *Chuchenchina*; & we went in the fame Barke. We fet forth from *Taypey* the tenth of May, and came to a Schoole or Vniuersitie called *Guatnapum*, where we lodged in the night (or Monastirie) called *Nasipum*. Next morning wee followed our voyage downe the 60 riuer, and two houres withiin night came to *Paxangum*; a fmall Citie, well fortified with towers and Bulwarks after our fashion, with store of Artillerie of wood, like the Pumps of Iron, the flocks where the Barrells were fastned being plated with Iron, and carrying a bullet as bigge as a Falcon: which inuention they say, they receiued of a people called *Almamy*, of a land

named *Maicoe*, which by a great and deepe lake of faine water, came thither with nine Barkes of
cane, in company with *Laily*, which was layd to be exiled out of her Country by a king of
Denmarke. The next day we came to *Linxau*, and fure dayes after we continuing our course
came to the River, came to *Singafauri*, a huge Temple, more then a league in compasse; in which
place were built one hundred and sixtie four large and long houses full of Skuls, the other bones
lying without in great piles. On a Hill compailed with nine grades of Iron, was standing againe
a strong fone wall, a monstrous farge of Iron thurttie brasse high, and fix broad, in both his hands
holding a bullet fixe and thurttie fpannes above, of cast Iron allo. (This to wound the Serpent
which came to robbe them) himselfe being hee which should one daye restore the fello to their
owne bones, if they gave Almes, otherwise to the most vnable and putrid; his name *Pachina-
ran Duheleim Pimafuque*, who 70000. yeeres agoe, was borne of a *Tierifee* named *Mafuau*,
and of a Sea-borne one hundred and thurttie brasse long, named *Tierimouk*. The Ambassadors
told vs, that of his Confraternities, they were afoote to fiftie of small rent about 10000. Taets, and
as much more of the Sepulchres of the dead, which were by themfelves; that there belonged
to him twelue thousand Priests preying on him, and praying for the dead, who might not with-
out their service, and licence depart out of that Circuit. These Priests once a yeare may defile
themselves in fornication without that Circuit; without, as oft as they will, without finne, the
Chijanees permitting egerfe. There are many women allo enfolded, who by their *Lilangu* or
Pierafuque lace, nermyt themselves to thofe Priests.

The second day after, we came to a great City on the River side called *Quangnam*, where the Ambassadors stayed three days for provision, and by reason of a Feast at the entrance of *Talac-poor of Lechna*, who is there as a Pope : who had privileged their inhabitants to be all Priests, authorized to Sacrifice and give Bulls of exchange for money to be repayed in Heaven. He gave the Ambassadors grace to legitimize in his Country for money, and to give cyrtes of Honor ; which he recompensed, giving to the Priests all the money they pleased. The Priests made the King know that he gave vs fivefcore in the hundred, Fourty dayes we passed downe the River to *Lechna*, the mother City of that false Religion of *Gemulita*, as *Rama* is with vs, wherein is a sumptuous Temple, in which are feuen and twentie *Tartar* Emperours buried in rich Chappells lyned with Silver, hauing abundance of filuer Idols. On the North-side a little from the Temple, was a notable strong great wall, within which were built two hundred and eightie Monasteries, of men and women ; in which were fayed to bee two and forty thousand religious professed, besides heretics, in thofe Houses are many Brazen pillars with Idols of their Saints therein, to whom they are much addicted. I observed, that the King of *Lechna*, which had beene brother of *Kaia Benen*, Prince of *Pagua*, after his wife's death there entered Religion with sixe thousand people. The Ambassadors visited her, and kissed her foot as a Saint.

Departing thence down the River hue waters, we came to a great Citie called *Rendacolum*, *Rendacolum*.
in the confines of *Taricia*. And thence forwards began the Seigneurie of *Xinalagray*, thowrh *Xinalagray*.
where we trauelled four dayes, and then came to a Towne called *Voulem*, where the Amba-
fadors were well received, and provided of Pylots for thofe Rivers ; which were defended fe-
ven dayes without feeing any thing of note, and then came to a ftraight called *Quatangu*, into
which the Pylots entred to ekcape a *Pyrat*, who had fpyed the moft part of the Countrey.
Thus we came to the Lake *Singamapor*, called by the Naturals *Cunchebe*, and layd to content
fixe and thirrie leagues in Circuit. Four Rivers runne thence, *Venirau* Eaftward thowrh *Siam*,
entering the Sea by the barre of *Cistiabou*, in twentie fixe degrees ; *Langmau* Southward by
the *Loai* and *Gues*, and part of *Dabambu* enter the Sea at *Marianau*, in the Kingdome of *Pegu* ;
Pumflun runnes thowrh all *Casimier* and *Sacrag*, and all the Empire of *Mongioquo*, with part
of *Melaya* and *Soand*, and lo to the barre of *Cyfinu*, neere *Arrac*. Of the fourth River the
Ambafadors could giue no vñ informations, but fome thought it to be *Ganges*. In fuen dayes
more, we came to a place called *Calypute*, where they throwe ittes at bys, and would not fuffer

vs to land. Thence we layd by another larger River nine days, and came to *Tarnu* a good Towne, subiect to the *Canchum*, where we were well received: and in feuen dayes more came to a good Citee called *Xolr*. There were Silver mines, in which one thousand men were at worke, whence they layd was yearly taken five thousand Pikes, which makes eight thousand Quintals of ours. Thence we went other fye dayes by that great River, the Countrey being well peopled, and came to the Citee *Managuelan* at the foot of the Hills *Combay* in the borders of *China*, and *Canchum*: thence to *Tinamaryu*. Thence they went their four Barques to *Husangue*, the chiefe Citee of *Canchum*, and went by Land to *Panauernu*, where the King was.

Their entertainments there and journey thence to Japan, I omit, with their following long Pilgrimage in that Easterne world; wherein I am afraid to wander in places and affairs so uncustom. Wearie already of things so strange, and therefore uncertaine, I will passe to other Authors; and first to the Philippina's and Spanish Commerce of China. The Voyage of Legaspi, is taken out of a Latine Manuscript, the rest out of Mendoza, his Spanish discourse of China, and certaine Friars which went thither; the two Letters except, borrowed of an Italian Author.

CHAP. III.

Spanish plantation of the Philippinas, and what entercourse hath thence
baped betwixt them and the Chinois.

§. I.

First *discouerie* of the Philippinas : written by Frier IVAN
GONZALES DE MENDOZA.

Magilanes
straights.



Magilanes, was the first that discovered these Ilands, having passed the straight
(which vnto this day beareth the tytle of his name) and came vnto the Iland of
Zebu, whereas they did Baptise certaine of the Inhabitantes, and afterwards in
a banquet, the same Ilanders did kill him, and other sortie of his companions,
which was the occasion that *Sebastien de Guetaria*, a naturall *Bikin* borne, for to
escape with his life, did put himselfe in a ship that remayned of the voyage
(which afterwards was named the *Vitorie*) and in her, with a few people of the
with the fauour of God hee came vnto *Sinili*, hauing compassed the whole world, from the O.
vnto the *Ponent*, a thing which caused vnto all men great admiration, but in gifts and fa-
uours vnto the sayd *Sebastien de Guetaria*, he gaue order that a new Armie should be made re-
de, and to returne againe in demand of the sayd Ilands, and to discover that new world.

The second
Voyage.

Villa Lobos.

So when all things were in a readinesse, for to depart on their Voyage (the which was
with great breuitie) they ordeined for Generall of that fleet, one *Villa Lobos*, commanding
him to goe by the *Nueva Espana*. The *Villa Lobos*, arrived at the Ilands of *Maluca*, and at
those of *Terraten*, and at other Ilands, joyning vnto them, the which Ilands were layd to goe
by the aforesayd Emperour vnto the Crowne of *Portugall*. In these Ilands they had great waies
by means of the *Portugals*, and seeing themselves with little helpe and small resistance, for to
goe forwards with their conquest, they left it off, and went to the most part of them with the
aforesayd *Portugals*, vnto the *India of Portugall*, from whence afterwards, they sent them as
prisoners vnto the sayd King of *Portugall*, as offenders, that had entred his Ilands without his
licence : who did not only leaue to doe them any harme, but did increase them very well, and
sent them vnto their owne Countrey of *Spain*, and gaue them all things necessarie for their iour-
ney, and that in abundance.

Then certaine yeeres after, *Don Philip* King of *Spain*, being very willing that the discou-
ering should goe forwards, which the Emperour his father had so earnestly procured, sent and
commanded *Don Luyz de Velasco*, who was his Vice-roy of the *Nueva Espana*, that hee would
ordayne an armie, and people for to returne and discouer the sayd Ilands, and to send in the sayd
fleet for Gouvernour, of all that should bee discovered. *Miguel Lopez de Legaspi*, who did com-
pish all that his Maiestie had commanded, and made the discouerie thereof as followeth,
to bee declared.

When the *Spaniards* came vnto them, they were without Lord or head, or any other to whom
they should shew dutie, but hee which had most power and people, did most command : so that
this (and that there were so many of equall power) was the occasion that ciuill waies continu-
ed, without any respect of nature, kindred, or any other dutie, but like vnto brute Beasts, kil-
ling, ioyling, and captiuing one another, the which was a great helpe vnto the *Spaniards*, for to
subiect that Countrey with so great ease vnto the King, and called them the Ilands *Philippinas*,
in respect of his name. They did vfe amongst them, to make Captiues and Slaues, such as they did
take in vniuersall waies, and for trifling matters, the which God did remedie, by the going
thither of the *Spaniards* : for you should haue a man with fortie or fiftie friends in his companie,
or seruants, that vpon a sodaine, would goe and iet vpon a small Village of poore people and vi-
provid, and take and binde them all, and carrie them away for Slaues, without any occasion or
reason, and make them to serue them all the dayes of their life, or else sell them to other Ilands.
And if it chanced, that one did lend vnto another, a basket or two of Rice (the which might
bee worth a Ryall of plate) with condition, to returne it againe within ten dayes : if the debtor
did not pay it the same day, the next day following hee should pay it double, and afterward to
double it euerie day, so long as hee did keepe it, which in conclusion, would grow to bee so great,
that to pay the same, hee was forced to yeld himselfe for Captiue and Slaue.

But vnto all such as were captiued in this order, or in such like, the King of *Spain* hath com-
manded to geue libertie, yet this iust commandement is not in euery point fulfilled and accom-
plished, because such as should execute the same, haue intert therein. All the Ilands were
Genetes and *Idolaters*, but now there is among it them many thousands Baptized, vnto whom the

King

King hath shewed great mercie, in sending vnto them the remedie for their soules in so good
time : for if the *Spaniards* had stayed any more yeeres, they had bene all *Moores* at this day,
for that there were come vnto the Iland of *Burnes*, some of that Sect that did teach them, and
lacked little, for to worship that false Prophet *Mahomet*, whole false, peruerse and corrupt me-
mory, was with the Gospel of Christ easily rooted out.

In all these Ilands they did worship the Sunne and Moone, and other second causes, figures of
men and women, which are called in their Language *Maganitos*, at whole Feasts (which they
doe make very sumptuous, with great Ceremonies and Superstition) they doe call *Magadanas*.
But amongst them all, they haue in most veneration an Idoll, whom they called *Batala*,
to which reuerence they had for a Tradition, yet can they not say what should be the occasion that
he should deserve more then any of their, to be had in so great estimation. In certayne Ilands
not farre off, called the *Illoes*, they did worship the Deuill, and made vnto him many Sacrifices,
in recompence of a great quantitie of Gold hee had giuen vnto them, but now by the goodness
of God, and the great diligence put and done by the Fathers of the Order of Saint *Augustin* (who
were the first that passed vnto those parts, and liued worthily) and also by the Friers of Saint
Francis, which went thither ten yeeres after, all these Ilands or the most part of them are bapti-
zed, and vnder the Ensigne of Iesus Christ : and the rest which doe remayne and are not, is more
for lacke of Ministers and Preachers, then for any obnitiue of their parts. There is now gone
thither certayne Fathers of the Order called Iesuits, who will be a helpe vnto them with their
accustomed zeale and labour. And now goeth thither many other Religious men, very well lear-
ned and Apollitike, of the Order of Saint *Dominique*, who will doe their endeavour to conuert
them vnto Christ, as it behoueth Christians to doe.

The Deuill was
worshipped.

They of these Ilands were accustomed to celebrate their Feasts aforesaid, and to make Sacrifi-
ces vnto their Idols, by the order of certayne women which were Witches, whom they doe
call in their Language *Helenas*, that were had in as great estimation amongst them, as be the Priests
amongst *Christians*. These did talke ordinarily with the Deuill, and many times in publike, and
doe Deuillish Witchcrafts both in wordes and deedes : into which it is to bee beleued that
that the Deuill did enter, for that straight-ways they did answere vnto all things that were
demanded of them, although for the most part they would tell a Lye, or else such words that
might be giuen diuers interpretations of, and of diuers vnderstandings. They did also vfe to cast
Lots, they were great *Agorismers*, or obseruers of times : in so much that if they beginne any
Journey, and at the beginning they meete with a *Cayman* or Lizard, or any other sauge Worme,
they know it to be a signe of euill fortune, whereupon they would straight-ways leaue off
their Journey, although it did import them very much, and returne vnto their Houses, saying,
that the Heauen will not that they should goe forward on that Journey : but all these lyes and
fallensse haue bene taught them, and they perfwaded to by the Deuill, are ouerthrowne and
taken away by the Law of the Gospel (as aforesaid) and haue now amongst them many Mona-
sties full of Religious men, of the Order of Saint *Augustin*, Saint *Francis*, and of Iesuits. Ac-
cording vnto the common opinion, at this day there is conuered and baptized more then foure
hundred thousand soules, which is a great number : yet in respect of the quantitie that are not as
yet conuered, there are but a few. It is left vndone (as aforesaid) for want of Ministers, for
that, although his Maiestie doth ordinarily send thither, without any respect of the great charge
in doing the same, yet by reason that there are so many Iland, and euerie day they doe discouer
more and more, and being so farre off, they cannot come vnto them all, as necesse requireth.
Such as are baptized doe receiue the faith with great firmnesse, and are good *Christians*, and
would be better, if that they were holpen with good examples : as those which haue bene
there so long time are bound to doe : that the lacke thereof doth cause some of the Inhabitants
so much to abhorre them, that they would not see them once painted vpon a wall. For proofe
whereof (and for to moue such as haue power and authoritie to put remedie in the same, I will
declare vnto you here a strange case, the which royally did passe of a truth in one of these Ilands,

Spaniards showed
in the *Indisippi-
nas*.

and is very well knowne amongst them : that is, there chanced to dye an Ilander, a principall
man among them : a few dayes after that he was baptized, being very contrite for his finnes,
the which hee had done against God before he was baptized, and after hee dyed. So after by the
Diuine permission of God hee appeared vnto many of that Iland whom hee did perfwade forth-
with to receiue the Baptisme, with reasons of great efficacy, and declared vnto them (as one
that had experienced the same) the reward of that good deed which without all doubt should
bee giuen vnto them, if they would receiue the same, and liue after conformable, and according
vnto the Commandements of Christ, for the which hee told them, and said, that forth-with he
saw as he was dead, he was carried by the Angels into glory, there whereas all things were of
delight, pleasure, and content, and did communicate onely in the sight of God, and that there
was none that entred therein, neither could enter, except he were baptized, according vnto the
preaching of the *Spaniards*, of whom and of others that were like vnto them, there was an in-
finite number. Therefore, if so be that they would goe and enioy of those benefites and delights,
it is necessary that first they should be baptized, and afterwards to obserue and keepe the Com-
man-

Spaniards report
of a Vision.

The Indians would not go into Heaven because there were Spanish Soldiers.

mandements that be preached vnto them by the Fathers, that are amongst the *Castillas*, and therewith be vanished away, and they remayned treating amongst themselves, concerning that which they had heard, and was the occasion that some of them forthwith received the Baptisme, and that others did delay it, saying, that because there were *Spaniards* Soldiers in glorie, they would not goe thither, because they would not be in their company. All this hurt is done by one peruerse or impious man, and with one euill example, the which amongst many good, as you haue in those parts: but especial amongst them in particular, it ought to be reprehended and punished severely with rigour.

Citrus.
Honey.
Cinnamon.
Lined Oyle.

These Islands at the first discovery of them, had the fame to be *Mal Saus*, or ynnwhelome, but since experience hath shewed and proued it to the contrary: It is a Countrey marvellous fertile, and yielded very much Rice, Wheate, Coates, Hennes, Deere, Buffes, Kine, and great store of Hogges, whose flesh is so fauourie as the Mutton they haue in *Spain*: there be also many Cuts that yield Cist, great store of fruits which be very good and fauourie: great abundance of Honey, and Fish, and all sold at so small a price, that almost it is sold for nothing. Also there is great store of Cinnamon, but no Oyle of Oliues, but that which is carried thither out of the *Newe Espania*: they haue much Oyle of *Alfonsi*, and of *Flaxe*-seed, the which they doe spend ordinarily in that Countrey, so that the Oyle of Oliues is not misfed with them.

There is great store of Cloues, Saffron, Pepper, Nutmegs, and many other Drugges: great store of Cotton and Silke of all colours, the which is brought vnto them by Merchants of *China*, euery yeare a great quantitie from whence cometh more then twentie ships laden with pieces of Silkes of all colours, and with Earthen Vessell, Powder, Saltpeter, Iron, Steele, and much Quick-silver, Brasse, Copper, Wheate, Flowers, Walnuts, Bisket, Dates, Linnen Cloth, Counting Chests very gallantly wrought, Calls of Net-works, *Burats*, *Esquimons*, Balons and Ewres, made of Tinne, Parchment Lace, Silke Fringe, and also of Gold, the which is punne and wrested after a fashion neuer seene in all Christendome, and many other things of great curiositie, and all this aforesaid is sold very good cheape. Likewise such things as the Islands doe yeeld, are sold very good cheape, for you shall haue foure Roues of Wine, which cometh of the Palme-tree for foure Rials of Plate (the which for lacke of that made of Grapes is very good) twelue Haneages of Rice for eight Rials of Plate, three Hens for one Riall, a whole Hogg for eighthe Rials, a whole Buffe for foure Rials, a Deere for two Rials, and yet it must bee both great and good, foure Roues of Sugar for sixe Rials, and the like.

B. II.

First Plantation of the Philippines, by MICHAEL LOPEZ DE LEGASPI.

* This I translated out of a Manuscript Latin with M. Fink.

Nouus Port.
Isla de los Reyes.

Isla Ladrones.

The Philippines called also the Islands of the Ponent or West.
Ria de Sibuyan.

Michael * Lopez de Legaspi, General of the Spanish Armada, on Tuesday the one and twentieth of November, Anno Dom. 1565, set forth of the Haven of Natuzie in New Spain, and sailed betwixt the South and the West, and after West-ward, till he came in nine degrees; in that height seeking the Islands of *los Reyes*, thence to make for the Philippines. After eight dayes, the ship called *Saint Luke* was mysing, the Captayne wherof was *Alfonso de Ardeano*, suspected to haue maliciously with-drawne himselfe. The Fleet continuing their course in nine and ten degrees after fittie dayes had light of an Island of Fishermen and many other small Islands not inhabited, which they passed by. It was agreed that they should heighten their course to thirteenth degrees, in which way they came on Monday the fourteenth of January, 1566. to one of the Islands of Theues, called *Goan*, and lying toward it, sixe miles off, fiftie or sixtie *Paras* swift sailing Barks with eight or ten men quite naked met them and invited them to their Habitations, where at night they anchored. The next morning, sixe hundred of their *Paras* came about them with victuals to sell, Rice, Honey, Sugar-canes, Plantans, Fruits of diuers kinds, and Ginger wherof there groweth great store naturally. Their principall desire in barter was Iron Nails, giving a large sacke of Rice for a Naily; their sackes deceitfully filled with grauell and chaffe, with Rice in the top. These people are well proportioned and strong. They fought with the *Spaniards* which were watering, and in the time of fight would be trucking with the ships, as senseless of their danger. A Mariner which staid behind was flaine, whose death they reuenged with many of the Sauiages flaine in the night, one of them being taken and sent into New Spain. Their name fits their Theeuish disposition.

Eleuen dayes after the fleet renewed their Voyage, and course in thirteenth degrees eleuen dayes longer, and then had light of the Philippines, hauing sailed from the Port of Natuzie, eight thousand miles. They anchored in a faire Bay called *Baya de Sibuyan*, and there rode ten dayes; whiles two Boats went to discouer, one to the North, the other Southward.

A Gentleman of one of them was flaine by an *Indian*, rashly leaping on shoare. These *Indians* haue Iron Lances, with a head or tongue a handfull and halfe long. They haue also shields, Bowes and Arrowes. In making peace each man takes two or three drops of bloud of his arme or brest and mixe both in some Vessell together, which is drunken with Wine and Water. Many *Paras* came to the *Spaniards* with a white flag in the Prow, in token of peace, and the Admiral erected the like in her Poop to signify their leau to enter. These *Indians* are clothed, but bare-foot. The *Spaniards* demanded prouision, which the other promised, but gave only to the Captayne a sucking Pigge and an Egge. These people are very timorous, perfidious, and therefore suspicious. The Islands beare Hogges, Goats, Hennes, Rice, Millet, Potatoes, Pome-citrons, 10 Frijoles, Cocos, Plantans, and many sorts of Fruits. They weare Bracelets, and Earrings, and Gold Chaines, and whitherouer the Fleet went, they were of Gold in the Land, wherof Gold they digge but for necessary vies: the Land is their Money bagge.

The Fleet departed hence, and two dayes after came to the Port of the Ile *Tandina*, where a *Tandina* small Ruier enters; by which they went in Boats, and came to a Towne called *Camaro*. There *Camaro*, they were well entertained, and had victuals for them: which whiles they were eating an *Indian* spake some Spanish words, and asked for *Antonie Baptista* *Villalobos*, and Capitaine *Cabeza de Vaca*: for which the Lord of the place was angrie with him, and hee appeared no more. The next day the *Spaniards* returning found them armed, threatening them if they came on shoare. They minding not to deale cruelly, *Martin de Goye* was sent to discouer some convenient harbour, who law the Citie *Tandina*, and other Townes of other neere Islands, and hauing gone fixteene miles found the great Bay where was *Cabulita* a Towne well inhabited. Thither went the Fleet, and the Inhabitants fled. Only *Camatuan* the sonne of *Malatague* a blind man, chiefe of that place, came to them, whom they detayned thinking thereby to get some prouision; but in vaine. He sent forth Soldiers which brought him fure and fortie Hogs, leauing in lieu somwhat for exchange, and dismissing *Camatuan*, who had taught the Capitaine the names of the neighbouring Islands, and of their Gouvernours. Hee brought them to *Mefagua* two and thirte miles off, and then was sent away apparelled and joyfull. The Island *Mefagua* hath bene frequent, but then had but twentie inhabitants, which would not see the *Spaniards*. They went to another land where the people were fled with their goods. Then went they to *Butan* which is fiftie miles 30 to the Ile *Pindana* of the Islands *Corrientes*. The winde draue them to *Babol*, where they anchored. The next day they law a Island and sent a Boat to it, which wounded some of their men. They had Arrowes and Lances and a Bale, and two brasse Peeeces. They cryed to the *Spaniards* *aborda, aborda*. The *Spaniards* sent out another Boat better fittied, which tooke eight, the rest were flaine or fled, hauing fought valiantly. In the lunkie they found white sheetes painted; Silke, Almayzarez, Callicoes, Iron, Tin, Brasse, and some Gold. The lunkie was of *Borneo*, and so were these *Moors*. All was restored (their intent being to get friends, and the *Borneo* 30 was fatished.

The Capitaine sent the *Saint Iohn* to discouer the Coast of *Butan*, and learne where the Cinnamon was gathered, and to find some good Port in fit place to build. The *Borneo* told the Capitaine the cause of the *Indians* flight, that about two yeares before some *Portugals* bearing themselves for *Spaniards*, had come thither from the *Melanes*, and hauing made peace with them, set on them and slue about a thousand *Indians*, the cause of that depopulation. This the *Portugals* did to make the *Spaniards* odious, that if they came thither, they might not be aduicited. The Capitaine sent a well furnished ship to search the Coast, which came to a place where the *Borneo* Gouverneur said he had friends, and trapping on shoare hee was flaine of the *Indians*. The *Saint Iohn* returned from *Butan*, which said, they had seene the King, and two lunkes of *Moors* in the Ruier at anker, and that the land was great and rich, and exchanged with them fine Gold for Tektens, one for six in equal weight. They bought Wax of the *Moors* but had Earth inclosed in the Cakes; they also incensed the *Indians* against the *Castilians*, which would have made purchase of them, but were forbidden by the King. They said, they had there seene Wax, Cinnamon, Gold, and other precious things.

On Easter Euen the other ship returned to their great ioy, which had thought her lost, hauing flaid twentie dayes longer then her limited time. They had sailed about the Island *Isla* the space 150. of six hundred miles: and in their returne came to *Saba* a well peopled land, and plentifull of *Saba*. all things. The Capitaine determined to goe thither to buy prouision, or else to force them. For *Magelane* had bene there; and the King, and most of the Inhabitants were baptised, and acknowledged the Catholike King; *Magelane* also dying in their detence, and three other Soldiers in *Matan*. They also had broken league and slaine some of *Magelane* Soldiers. On Friday April twentie foure, the Fleet arrived at the Port of *Saba*, and one came from King *Tapan* to them, saying, that hee with ten chiete men would come to them. The Capitaine expected them a whole day and the next, in which space the Islanders hid their goods in the Woods. The third day the Capitaine sent his brother *Andrew* and the Camp-masser, to admonish the King in the *Malayan* tongue, to receiue them, as Vassals of the Spanish King. Which not succeeding, hee resolved to vse force. The *Indians* out of other Islands had assembled together to the number of 1200.

Wicked policy, an Indian which fence had inhabited other.

Moors to be nage.

See tome. 1. 1. c. 2.

two thousand, which prouoked our men, but at the report of the Ordinance ran away, and the Spaniards went the Towne. Many signes of Gold and Gemmes appeared in the Iland, And being situate to neere to the richest Regions, the Governour hopeth accesse thereby to the increase and glorie of the Spanish Crowne, the Spanish Colonies be there planted. The Captaine from the Citie of Subulente the Admirall ship with his brother *Admiral de Vidanera*, to certifye the L. *Conde de Velsco*, the sounce of the Vice-roy, what had bene done.

This which
followeth is es-
taken out of *Fray*
Don Gonzalez de
Nacenda his
Spanish Relati-
on of China, &
is here much
abbreviated.
Manila.

Miguel Lopez de Legaspi, General of the Fleet, and Governour of the Countrey which they should discover, dyed in the said Ilands with the Title of *Adelantado*, having first peopled some circuit: in which is seated the Citie of *Lufon* (called also *Manila*) as the Metropolitane of all the Iland, where the Governours have settled their residence ever since the first discovery. They have there founded a Cathedral Church, and Friar *Don Domingo de Salazar* was consecrated the first Bishop thereof in *Madrid*, 1579. At this present there be three Monasteries were consecrated Commandment of his Majesty did enter into these Ilands, preaching the Law of the Gospel, lyes in doing it the other Monasterie is of barefoot Friars of the Order of *S. Francis* of the Province of *S. Ioseph*, who have him great Examples, with great profit vnto them of those Parts. The third are of the Order of *S. Dominick*, or Preachers, who have done their dutie in all things so well as the other. These three Orders were alone in those Ilands for certayne years, till now of late time have gone thither Iesuits, which have him a great ayde and helpe vnto their Religion.

When these Spaniards were come vnto these Ilands, they had straight-ways notice of the mightie Kingdome of *China*, as well by the relation of them of the Ilands (who told vnto them the maruells thereof) as also within a few dayes after, they did see and vnderstand, by ships that came into those Ports with Merchants, that brought Merchandize and riches thereof. This being knowne vnto the Religious people of *Saint Austine*, who at that time were alone in those Ilands: but in especial vnto the Prouinciall, Friar *Martin de Heredia*, feeling the great capacitee or towardnesse which the Chinoise had more then those of the Ilands in all things, but in especial in their gallantnesse, discretion and wit: hee straight-ways had a good desire to goe thither with his fellow to preach the Gospel vnto those people, of so good a capacitee to receive the same: who with a pretended purpose to put it in vnto effect, he began with great care and studie to learne that Language, the which he learned in few dayes: and did make there Merchants that came from *China* for to procure them to carrie them thither, and many other things, the which did shew their holy zeale: yea, they did offer themselves to bee slaves vnto the Merchants, thinking by that means to enter in to preach: but yet none of these diligences did take effect, till such time as the Duine Majesty did discover a better way, as shall bee declared vnto you in this Chapter following.

¶ III.

Of *Limaon* a China Robber and Rouer, by whose occasion
the Spaniards sent into China.

The Spaniards did enjoy their neere habitation of *Manila* in great quietnesse & in obedience vnto the Christian King *Don Philip* and in continuall Traffick with the Chinoise. But being in this securitie and quietnesse, unlooked for, they were beset with a mightie Armada or Fleet of ships, by the Rouer *Limaon*, of whose vocation there are continually on the Coast, the one by reason that the Countrey is full of people, whereas of necessitie must be many idle persons: and the other and principall occasion, by reason of the great tyrannie that the Governours doe vnto the Subjects. This *Limaon* came vpon them with intent to doe them harme as you shall vnderstand. This Rouer was borne in the Citie of *Tucheon*, in the Prouince of *Cuytan*, which the Portuguese doe call *Caxim*. He was of meane Parentage, and brought vp in his youth in libertie and vice. He was of meane Inclination. He would learne no Occupation, but was gotten to rob in the high-ways, and became so expert that many came vnto him and followed that Trade. Hee made himselfe Captaine over them which were more then two thousand, and were so strong that they were feared in all that Prouince where as they were. This being knowne vnto the King and to his Council, they did straight way command the Vice-roy of the Prouince whereas the Rouer was, that with all the haste possible he should gather together all the Garrisons of his Frontiers, to apprehend and take him, and if it were possible to carry him alive vnto the Citie of *Taybin*, if not his

*Limaon a Chi-
na Rouer.*

*Whence Lima-
on was borne.*

head. The Vice-roy incontinent did gather together people necessary, and in great haste to follow him.

The which being knowne vnto *Limaon* the Rouer, who saw that with the people hee had, he was not able to make resistance against so great a number as they were, and the eminent danger that was therein, hee called together his Companies, and went from thence vnto a Port of the Sea, that was a few leagues from that place: and did it to quickly and in such secret, that before the people that dwelt therein, could make any defence (for that they were not accustomed to any such affairs, but lived in great quietnesse) they were Lords of the Port, and of all ships that were there: into which they imbarked themselves straight-ways, weighed Anchor and departed to the Sea, whereas they thought to be in more securitie the more Land (as it was true). Then hee seeing himselfe Lord of all those Seas, beganne to rob and spoyle all ships that hee could take, as well strangers as of the naturall people: by which means in a small time hee was prouided of Mariners, and other things which before hee lacked, requisite for that new Occupation. Hee lacked, robbed and spoiled all the Townes that were vpon the Coast, and did very much harme. So hee finding himselfe very strong with fortie ships well armed, of those hee had out of the Port, and other that hee had taken at the Sea, with much people such as were without shame, their hands imbrued with Robberies and killing of men, he imagined with himselfe to attempt greater matters, and did put it in execution: he assaulted great Townes, and did a thousand cruelties. So hee following this trade and exercise, hee chanced to meete with another

Rouer as himselfe, called *Patequin*, like wise naturally borne in *China*, who was in a Port vnto any care or mistrust, whereas *Limaon* finding opportunitie, with greater courage did fight with the ships of the other: that although they were three score ships great and small, and good Souliiers therein, hee did overcome them, and tooke five and fiftie of their ships, to that *Patequin* escaped with five ships. Then *Limaon* being himselfe with a fleet of sixtie ships, well armed, and with many stout people in them, knowing that if they were taken, they should be all executed to death, setting all feare apart, gaue them selves to attempt new inventions of euill, not only in robbing of great Cities, but also in destroying of them.

For the which, commandment was given straight-ways vnto the Vice-roy of that Prouince (whereas hee used to execute his will) that with great expedition he might be taken, who in few dayes did set forth to Sea, one hundred and thirtie great ships well appointed, with fortie thousand men in them, and one made Generali over them all, a Gentleman called *Omoncor*, for to goe seek for and follow this Rouer with expresse commandment to apprehend or kill him. Of all this prouision, *Limaon* had aduertisement by some secret friends, who seeing that his Enemies were many, and hee not able to countervale them, neither in ships nor men, determined not to abide their coming, but to retire and depart from that Coast: so in flying hee came vnto an Iland in secret, called *Tomanacatlan*, which was farre leagues from the firme Land, and is in the right way of Nauigation to the Ilands *Philippinas*.

From this Iland they did goe forth with some of their ships robbing and spoyleing all such as they met with Merchandize, and other things that they carried from one Iland to another, and from the Iland vnto the firme, and coming from thence amongst them all, they cauld to take two ships of *China* which came from *Manila*, and were bound to their owne Countrey. And having them in their power, they searched them vnder hatches, and found that they had rich things of Gold, and Spanish Rials, which they had in trucke of their Merchandize, the which they caried to the Ilands. They informed themselves in all points of the State, and fertilitye of that Countrey, but in particular of the Spaniards, and how many there were of them in the Citie of *Manila*, who were not at that present above seuentie persons, for that the rest were separated in the discouraging and populating of other Ilands newly found, and vnderstanding that these few did lye without any suspicion of Enemies, and had neuer a Fort nor Bulwarke, and the Ordinance which they had (although it was very good) yet was it none in order to defend them nor offend their Enemies, hee determined to goe thither with all his fleet and people, for to destroy and kill them, and to make himselfe Lord of the said Iland of *Manila*, and other adjacent there nigh the time. So with this determination hee departed from those Ilands whereas hee was retired, and went to Sea, and sailing towards the Ilands *Philippinas*, they passed in sight of the Ilands of the *Ilocoi*, which had a Towne called *Fernandina*, which was new founded by the Captaine *John de Salzedo*, who at that instant was in the same for Lieutenant to the Governour: Four leagues from the same they met with a small Galley, which the said *John de Salzedo* had sent for victuals. Hee called out towards her, and with great call did take her, and did burne and kill all that was in her, and pardoned one of them. This hee did not in such secret, but that hee was discovered by the Dwellers of the Towne of *Fernandina*, who gave notice thereof vnto the Lieutenant of the Governour aforesaid, as a wonder to see so many ships together, and a thing neuer seen before at those Ilands. Likewise it cauld admiration vnto him, and made him to thinke and to imagine with great care what it might be, hee saw that they did beare with the Citie of *Manila*, and thought with himselfe, that so great a fleet

*Patequin a
Rouer, as
by this Rouer.*

One hundred
and thirtie
great ships of
Warre with
fortie thousand
men.

Fernandina.

as that was, could not goe to the place which they bare in with, for any goodnesse towards the dwellers therein, who were vnde of all care, and a small number of people, as aforesaid: Wherewith he determined with himselfe with lo great speed as it was possible, to ioyne together such Spaniards as were there, which were to the number of thirtie foure, and to depart and procure to get the fore-hand of them, to aduertise them of *Manila*, and to aide and helpe them to put their Artillerie in order, and all other things necessarie for their defence.

1574.

This *Limahon* was well provided of provision, and all other things necessary, and having the wind faire, hee was alwaies in the fore-front, and came in the fight of *Manila* vpon Saint *Andrewes* Eue, in the yeere 1574. whereas hee came to an anchor that night with all his whole estate.

For all the contradiction of the winde this fame night the foure hundred *Chinos* did put themselves within a league of the Citie, vpon Saint *Andrewes* day at eight of the clocke in the morning, whereas they left their Boats and went on land, and in great haste began to march towards in battell aray diuided in two parts, with two hundred Harquebusses afore, and immediately after them other two hundred Pike-men: and by reason that they were many, and the Countrey very plaine, they were straightwaies discovered by some of the Citie, who entred in with a great noile, crying, *Arme, arme, arme, the Enemies come*. The which aduice did little profit, for that there was none that would beleue them: but beleued that it was some false alarme done by the people of the Countrey for to mocke them. But in conclusion, the Enemies were come vnto the house of the Generall of the Field, who was called *Martin de Goyti*, which was the first house in all the Citie that way which the Enemies came. And before that the Spaniards and Souldiers that were within the Towne could be fully perswaded the rumour to be true, the Enemies had first vpon his house, and the like him, and all that were within.

Martin de Goyti house.

Guido de Labacater Gouernour.

A fort erected.

Citie burnt.

Paganinas.

Paganinas.

* Iohn de Salcedo who succeeded Goyti, and was likewise vnto the Citie of Legaspi.

At this time, by the order of his Maiestie was elected for Gouernour of these Islands *Philippinas*, *Guido de Labacater*, after the death of *Miguel Lopez de Legaspi*, who vnderstanding the great might and power of *Limahon* the Rouer, and the small resistance that was in the Citie of *Manila*, with as much speed as was possible, hee did call together all their Captaines and dwellers therein: and with a generall consent they spared no person of what qualitie and degree soeuer he was, but that his hand was to helpe all that was possible, the which endured two dayes and two nights, for so long the Rouer kept his ships and came not abroad. In which time of their continuall labour, they made a Fort with Pipes and Boards filled with sand and other necessities thereto belonging, such as the time would permit them: they put in carriages, foure excellent Peeeces of Artillerie that were in the Citie. All the which being put in order, they gathered all the people of the Citie into that little Fort. The night before the Enemie did give assault vnto the Citie, came either the Captaine *Iohn de Salcedo*, Lieutenant vnto the Gouernour. The Rouer in the morning following, before the breake of the day (which was the second after he gaue the first assault) was with all his fleet right against the Port, and did put a land fixe hundred Souldiers, who at that instant did set vpon the Citie, the which at their pleasure they did sacke and burne. They did assault the Fort with great cruelty, as men fleshed with the last slaughter, thinking that their resistance was but small. But hee did not out as they did beleue, for having continued in the fight almost all the day, with the losse of two hundred men, that were slain in the assault, and many other hurt, hee straightwaies departed from thence, and returned thence: fame way that he came, till they arrived in a mightie River, fortie leagues from the Citie of *Manila*, that is called *Paganinas*, the which place or soyle did like him very well, and where he thought he might be sure from them, who by the commandement of the King went for to seeke him. There hee determined to remayne, and to make himselfe Lord over all that Countrey, the which hee did with little trauell, and built himselfe a Fort one league within the River, whereas he remayned certaine dayes, receiving tribute of the Inhabitants thereof, as though he were their true and naturall Lord: and at times went forth with his ships robbing and spoyleing all that hee met vpon the coast. And spread abroad, that hee had taken to himselfe the Islands *Philippinas*, and how that all the Spaniards that were in them, were either slayne or fled away. With this consideration they entred into counsell, and did determine to ioyne together all the people they could, and being in good order, to follow and seeke the Rouer. Then the Gouernours commanded to be called together all the people bordering thereabouts, and to come vnto the Citie, whereas hee was. Likewise at that time hee did give aduice vnto such as were Lords and Gouernours of the Islands, called *Pontados*, commanding them to come thither, with such ships as they could spare, as well Spaniards as the naturall people of the Countrey. The Generall of the field with the people aforesaid, did depart from *Manila* the three and twentieth day of March, Anno 1575. and arrived at the mouth of the River *Paganinas* vpon tenable Weinsday in the morning next following, without being discovered of any. Then straightwaies at that instant the Generall did put a land all his people and foure Peeeces of Artillerie, leaving the mouth of the River that vp with his shipping, in choyning the one to the other, in such sort, that none could enter in neither yet goe forth to give any aduice vnto the Rouer of his arrival: he commanded some to goe and discover the fleet of the Enemie, and the place

place whereas he was fortified, and charged them very much to doe it in such secret sort, that they were not discovered: for therein consisted all their whole worke. Hee commanded the Captaine *Gabriel de Rivera*, that straightwaies he should depart by Land, and sit at vpon a sudden he should strike alarme vpon the Enemie, with the greatest tumult that was possible. Likewise he commanded the Captaines *Pedro de Caceres* and *Lorenzo Chacon*, that either of them with forty Souldiers should goe vp the River in small ships and light, and to measure the time in such sort, that as well thole that went by land, as thole that went by water, should at one instant come vpon the Fort, and to give alarme both together, the better to geue thorow with their presence: and hee himselfe did remayne with all the rest of the people, to watch occasion and time for to aide and succour them if need be required. This their purpose came so well to passe, that both the one and the other came to good effect: for thole that went by water, did set fire on all the fleet of the Enemie: and thole that went by land at that instant had taken and set fire on a Trench made of timber, that *Limahon* had caused to be made for the defence of his people and the Fort: and with that fire they ille more than one hundred *Chinos*, and tooke prisoners twenty women which they found in the same Trench, but when that *Limahon* vnderstood the rumour, hee tooke himselfe straightwaies to his Fort which hee had made for to defend himselfe from the Kings Naue, if they should happen to finde him out.

The next day following, the Generall of the field did bring his Souldiers into a square battell, and beganne to march towards the Fort, with courage to assault it if occasion did serue thereto: hee did pitch his Campe within two hundred paces of the Fort, and found that the Enemie did all that night fortifie himselfe very well, and in such sort, that it was perilous to assault him, for that hee had placed vpon his Fort three Peeeces of Artillerie, and many Barges, besides other Engines of fire-work. Seeing this, and that his Peeeces of Artillerie that hee brought were very small for to batter, and little force of munition, for that they had spent all at the assault which the Rouer did give them at *Manila*, the Generall of the field, and the Captaines concluded amongst themselves, that seeing the Enemie had no ships to escape by water, neither had he any great store of victuals for that all was burnt in the ships, it was the best and most sure way to besiege the Fort, and to remayne there in it vntill that hunger did constrain them either to yeeld or come to some conclusion: which rather they will then to perish with hunger.

This determination was liked well of them all, although it fell out cleane contrarie vnto their expectation: for that in the space of three months that siege endured, this *Limahon* did so much that within the Fort hee made certaine small Barges, and trimmed them in the best manner hee could, wherewith in one night hee and all his people escaped.

It happened vpon a day, that there came to the Campe a ship of *Miguel de Loarcha*, wherein was *Frisar Martin de Herrada* Prouinciall of the *Angustine* Friars. Seuen leagues after they were out of the mouth of *Paganinas*, they met with a ship of *Sangleyes*, who made for the Port, and thinking them to be Enemies, they bare with them (having another ship that followed them for their defence) and had no more in them but the said Prouinciall and five Spaniards, besides the Mariners. This ship of *Sangleyes* seeing that hee did beare with them, would haue fled, but the winde would not permit him, for that it was to him contrary, which was the occasion in a small time came within Cannon shot. In one of the ships there was a *China*, called *Sinsay*. This *Sinsay* went straightwaies into the fore-ships, and demanded what they were, and from whence they came: and being well informed, hee vnderstood that hee was one of the ships of warre that was sent out by the King of *China*, to seeke the Rouer *Limahon*, who leaving the rest of the fleet behind, came forth to seeke in those Islands to see if hee could discover him to be in any of them: and the better to be informed thereof, they were bound into the Port of *Batanao*, from whence they came with their two ships: from whom they would haue fled, then king they had bene some of the Rovers ships. Being fully perswaded the one of the other, they ioynted together with great peace and friendship: the Spaniards straightwaies entred into the Port, and went vnto the ship of the *Chinos*, and carried with them the aforesaid *Sinsay*, for to be their Interpreter, and to speake vnto the *Chinos*. In the said ship came a man of great authority, who was called *Omoncon*, who brought a Commission from their King, and shewed it vnto the Spaniards, and vnto the Father Prouinciall: in the which the King and his Counsell did pardon all those Souldiers that were with *Limahon*, if that forthwith they would leaue him and returne vnto the Kings part: and likewise did promise great gifts and fauour vnto him that did either take or kill the aforesaid Rouer. Then did *Sinsay* declare vnto him the coming of the Rouer vnto the Islands, and all that happened in the siege of the Citie, as aforesaid: and how they had him besieged in the River of *Paganinas*, from whence it was not possible for him to escape.

The Captaine *Omoncon* reioyced very much of these newes, and made many signes of great content, and did embrace the Spaniards many times, and gaue other tokens whereby hee did manifest the great pleasure hee receiued, and would that straightwaies depart vnto the

Limahon after three months three months escape.

C. 3.

p. IIII.

Friar MARTIN DE HERRERA, and other Spaniards entertainment
in China, and their returne to the Philippines.

Tanſay, or
Tanſay.

The little while after, *Omoncon* and his companie arrived at the Port of *Tanſay* hard by, vpon Wednesday in the evening, being the ſixt day of Iuly. This *Tanſay* is a gallant and freſh Towne of foure thouſand Houſholders, and hath continually a thouſand Souldiers in Garriſon, and compaſſed about with a great and ſtrong wall, and the gates fortified with plates of Iron, the foundations of all the houſes are of Lime and Stone, and the walls of Lime and Earth, and ſome of Bricke: their houſes within very fairely wrought, with great Courts, their ſtreets faire and broad all paved. Before that *Omoncon* did come vnto an anchor, they ſaw all the Souldiers and the people of the Towne were gathered together vpon the Rocks that were ioyning vnto the Port, all armed ready vnto the battell, amongst whom there was a principall Capitaine, and three more of his companions, that were ſent him by the Governour of *Chinchea*, whom they doe call in their language, *Inſuano*, who had vnderſtanding of the coming of *Omoncon*, when the ſhip entred into the Port, *Omoncon* did ſalute the Towne with certaine Peeces of Artilerie, and diſcharged all his Harquebuſſes ſix times about, and therewithall rooke in her ſayle, and let anchor fall. Then ſtraightwaies the Capitaine whom the *Inſuano* had ſent, came aboard the ſhip, who had expreſſe commiſſion, not to leaue the companie of our people after that they were diſembarked, till ſuch time as they came whereas he was, but to beare them companie, and to provide them of all things neceſſarie: the which he did accompliſh.

Enſignes to
know the
Loyall.

All theſe Captaines and Miniſters of the King doe wear certaine enſignes for to be knowne from the common people, to wit, broad Waſtes or Girdles embroſſed after diuers manners: ſome of Gold and Siluer, ſome of the Tortoiſe ſhell, and of a ſweet wood, and other ſome of Iuorie, the higher eſtates hath them embroſſed with Pearles and precious ſtones, and their Bonnets with two long eares, and their Buſkines made of Satin, and vnlorne Velvet.

Boards licence.

Then after, ſo ſoone as they were come to an anchor in the Port, the Iuſtice did ſend them a Licence in writing for to come forth of the ſhip, as a thing neceſſarie, for that without it the Waiters or Guards of the water ſide, will not ſuffer them to put foot on land. This Licence was written vpon a board whiter, and ſigned by the Iuſtice, whole charge it is to gree the Licence. Then when they came aſhoare, there were the Souldiers that were appointed by the *Inſuano* in a readineſſe to beare them companie, and did direct and leade them vnto the Kings houſes of the ſaid Citie: the like hath euery Citie almoſt throughout all the Kingdome, and there they bid lodge them. Theſe houſes are very great and very well wrought, and gallant, with faire Courts below, and Galleries above: they had in them Stanges or Ponds of water full of fiſh of ſundry ſorts.

The vie of
their banquet

The people of the Citie did preſſe very much to ſee theſe ſtrangers, ſo that with the preſſe, as alſo with the great heat, they were marvellouſly afflicted: which being perceived by the Iuſtice, he gaue order that they might be eaſed of that trouble, and cauſed Sergeants to keepe the doore, and their Yeomen to make reſiſtance againſt the people. When night was come, the Iuſtice of the Citie did make a Banquet according to the faſhion of the Countrey: and it was in the faſhion following. They were carried into a Hall that was very curiouſly wrought, wherein were many Torchés and waxe Candles light, and in the miſt thereof was ſet for euery one of the Gueſts a Table by himſelfe, as is the vie and faſhion of that Countrey: euery Table had his covering of Damask or Satin very well made, the Tables were gallantly painted, without any Table-clothes, neither doe they vie any, for they haue no need of them, for that they doe eate all their victuals with two little ſtickes made of Gold and Siluer, and of a manuellous odoriferous wood, and of the length of little Forkes, as they doe vie in *Italie*, with the which they doe feed themſelves ſo cleanly, that although their victuals be neuer ſo ſmall, yet doe they let nothing fall, neither ſoule their hands nor faces. They were ſet downe at theſe Tables in very good order, and in gallant Chaires, in ſuch fort, that although they played with great content, ſome one time and ſome another. The Inſtruments which they commonly doe vie, are Hoybuckles, Cornets, Trumpets, Lutes, ſuch as be vſed in *Spain*, although in the faſhion there is ſome difference. There was at this Banquet (which endured a great while) the Capitaine that was ordained for their Guard, and the Capitaine *Omoncon*, and *Sanſay*. When Supper was

Wine of a
Palme tree.

done, they were carryed into very faire Chambers, whereas were faire Beds, where they ſlept and eſied themſelves.

The next day in the morning, was brought vnto them their ordinarie victuals, and that in abundance, as well of Fiſh as of Fruits and Wine, to be dreſſed vnto their owne content, and according vnto their manner: they would take nothing for the ſame, for ſo they were commanded by the *Inſuano*. This was brought vnto them euery day, ſo long as they were there, & in the way when as they went vnto *Chinchea*. The ſame day arrived a Capitaine of ſortie Ships in the ſame Port, and ſo ſoone as hee was aſhoare, he went ſtraightwaies vnto the Palace for to ſee the ſtrangers: who being aduerted of his coming, came forth and received him at the Palace gate, whereas was vie betwixt them great courteſie. The Capitaine came with great Maieſtie, with his guard of Souldiers and Mace-bearers before him, with great muſicke of Hoy-buckles, Trumpets and Drums, and two Whiffles, or Typ-flaues, that made roome, putting the people aſide: alſo there came with him two executors of Iuſtice, hauing each of them in their hands a Set made of canes, which is an inſtrument wherewith they doth whip and puniſh offenders. When this Capitaine came vnto the Palace gate, whereas the Father Friars and their companions did receiue him, hee was brought on the ſhoulders of eight men very richly appareled, in a chayre wrought of Iuorie and Gold, who ſtayed not till they came into the inner Chamber, whereas hee did alight from the chayre, and went ſtraight vnder a Cloath of eſtate, that was there ordinarily for the ſame purpoſe, and a Table before him: there hee fate downe, and ſtraightwaies aroſe vp, and ſtanding hee did receiue the ſtrange gueſts, who did courteſie vnto him according vnto their fiſhion, which is to ioyn their hands together, and to ſtoope with them and their heads downe to the ground: hee gratified them againe, with bowing his head a little, and that with great grauitie. Theſe ſpeeches being finiſhed, there was brought fourth certaine pieces of blacke Silke of twelve vares long a piece. And his Officers did put on the Friars ſhoulders each of them two, which was for either ſhoulder one, and was brought about their bodies and girt therewith: the like was done in order vnto the *Spaniſh* Souldiers, and vnto *Omoncon*, and *Sanſay*, and to their Interpreters. But vnto *Omoncon*, and *Sanſay*, was giuen vnto either of them a branch or Noſegay made of Siluer, which was ſet vpon their heads, which is accuſtome honour, that is done vnto ſuch as haue done ſome great enterpriſe, or ſuch like. After that this ceremonie was done, they played vpon the Inſtruments aforeſaid, which came with the Capitaine. In the meane time of their muſicke, there was brought fourth great ſort of Conſerues, *March-pans*, and things made of Sugar, and excellent good Wine: and ſo being on foot ſtanding, hee cauſed them to eate, and hee himſelfe from the Chayre whereas hee fate, did giue them to drinke euery one in order, with our riſing vp, which is a ceremonie and token of great fauour, and of loue.

This being done, hee aroſe from the chayre vnder the Cloath of ſtate, and went and fate downe in that which was brought on mens backs, and with declining of his head a little, hee departed out of the Hall and out of the houſe, and went vnto his owne houſe, whereas by the counſell of *Omoncon*, and *Sanſay*, within an houre after they ſhould goe and viſite him, the which they did: hee receiued them maruellouſly well and with great courteſie: who maruelled at his great Maieſtie and ſuborities, for that *Omoncon* and *Sanſay*, when they did talke with him were vpon their knees, and ſo did all the reſt. Hee gaue them againe in his owne houſe a gallant banquet, of diuers ſorts of Conſerues and Fruits, and excellent Wine of the Palme-tree, and did talke and reaſon with them in good fort, and was more familiar than at his firſt viſitation.

After that the Fathers with their companions had remained two dayes in the Port of *Tanſay*, the third day they departed in the morning towards *Chinchea*. At their going forth of the Towne, they were accompanied with a great number of Souldiers, both Harquebuſſes & Pikes, and before them a great noyle of Trumpets, Drums, and Hoy-buckles, till ſuch time as they came vnto the Riuer ſide, whereas was a Brygandine provided and made readie in all points, to carrie them vp the Riuer: all the ſtreets alongſt whereas they went, there followed them ſo much people that it was innumerable, and all to ſee them. All alongſt the Riueres whereas they went, was ſeated with Villages very gallant and freſh, both on the one ſide and on the other.

At the end of the two leagues, they came vnto a great Bay, where was at an Anchor a flecter of more then one hundred and ſiftie Ships men of warre, whole General was this Capitaine, whom wee haue ſpoken of. At ſuch time as the flecter did diſcouer them, they began to ſalute them, as well with great pieces of Artilerie, as with Harquebuſſes, and other kinde of paſtimes, which commonly they doe vie at ſuch times.

Our *Spaniards* did trauell vp the Riuer more than three leagues, hauing continually both on the one ſide and on the other, very many and faire Townes, and full of people. In the end of the three leagues, they went aland halfe a league from the Towne of *Tanſay*, whereas ſtraightwaies all ſuch things as they carried with them, were taken vpon mens backs, and carried vnto the Towne before them, whereas they were tarrying their coming, for to giue them great entertainment. At their going aſhoare, they found prepared for the two Religious men, little Chayres to carrie them vpon mens backs, and for the Souldiers and the reſt of their companions hoſte. The Fathers did reſuſe to be carried, and would haue gone a foot, but *Omoncon*, and the

Captaine of
ſortie Ships.

Sergeant.

Tanſay.

other Captayne would not consent thereunto. The Fathers obeyed their reasons, and entred into the Chayres, and were carryed with eight men a piece, and the other their companions with foure men a piece, according vnto the order giuen by the Gouverneur. Those that carryed the Chayres, &c. it with so good a will, that there was striving who should first lay hands to them. This Towne of *Tanjoa*, hath three thousand Souldiers, and is called in their language *Ca-an*: at the entering in, it hath many Gardens and Orchards and a street where through they carryed the *Spaniards* vnto their lodging, they all med to bee halfe a league long, and all the street whereas they went, was full of booths and stalls, whereon was layd all kinde of Merchandise very curious, and things to bee eaten, as fresh Fish and salt, Fish of diuers sorts, and great abundance of Fowle, and Flesh of all sorts, Fruits and Greene Herbes in such quantitie, that it was sufficient to seruise such a Citie as *Samitis*. They were brought vnto the Kings house, which was very great, maruelously well wrought with stone and bricke, and many Halls, Parlours, and Chambers, but none about, but all below. So soone as they were a foote, there was brought from the Captaynes Iustice of the Towne, whom they doe call *Ticoma*, a message, bidding them welcome, and therewith a present, which was great store of Capons, Hennes, Teales, Ducks, Geese, Flesh of foure or five sorts, fresh Fish, Wine, and fruits of diuers sorts, and of so great quantitie, that it was sufficient for two hundred men. All the which they would haue giuen for a little coole ayre, by reason that it was then very hot weather; and againe, the great number of people that came thither to see them did augment it the more. In the Euening the two *Spaniards* Souldiers went forth into the streets to walke abroad, and left the two Priars within their 20 lodging, vnto whom afterwards they did giue intelligence of all things that they had seene, which did cause great admiration: the wall of the Towne was very broad, and wrought with lyme and lime, full of loopholes and watch-towers. And as they passed through the streets there came forth of a house a very honest man, as it seemed, who was very well appparelled and stayed them, for that in the same house, there were certayne Dames principall personages, that did see them a farre off, and not content therewith, they did request them with great curtesie for to enter into the house, that they might the better see them: the which they did straightwayes accomplish, and entering in, they were brought into a court, whereas was let Chayres for them to sit downe, and the Ladies were there a little from them, beholding them with great honestie and grauitie. Then a little after, they set them a banquet with March-panes and sweet 30 meats made of Sugar, which they did eate without any curtesie, and drunke after the same. The banquet being done, they made signes and tokens vnto them, that they receiued great content with their light, and that they might depart when that their pleasure was, the which they did, after that they had made great curtesies with thanks, for their friendship receiued of both parts. So after they had taken their leave, they went to see a House of pleasure, that was hard by the Towne-wall, wrought vpon the water, with very faire galleries and round about to banquet in, made of Malons worke, and therein many Tables painted, and open lodges to banquet in, where in was store of Fish, and joyning vnto them Tables of very faire Alabaster, all of one stone, and the least of them was of eight spannes long: and round about them were brookes of running water, that gate a pleasant sound in the meane time they were banquetting, and high thereto many Gardens full of all sorts of Flowers. And a little from that place they saw a Bridge all of Malons worke, and the stones very well wrought and of a mightie bignesse, they measured some of them, that were twentie and two and twentie foote long, and five foote broad, and seemed vnto them, that it was a thing impossible to bee layd there by mans hands. Of this bignesse, yea and bigger they did see layd vpon many other Bridges, in the discourse of their voyage, going to *Chincheo* and *Aucoche*. The next day in the morning when they were vp and ready, they found in the house all things in a readinesse and in very good order, for their departure, as well their little Chayres, and Horfes, as for men to carrie their stuffe and apparell, which did not a little make them to maruell, how that euery one of them with a water vpon their shoulders, did divide their burden in two parts, fixe rows before and fixe rows behinde, and did trauell 30 with the same with so great ease and swiftnesse, that the Horfe could not indure with them. They went vnto the *Therian* his house. They found him with great Maistie, but yet gaue them great and good entertainment. Hee did likewise put vpon each of them, two pieces of Silke, in the same order as the Gouverneur of *Tanjoa* did.

From this Towne of *Tanjoa* vnto *Chincheo*, is thirteene leagues, and so layne way that it 30 giueth great content to trauell it: in all the way they could not see one spanne of ground but was tilled and occupied. The like they doe say, is of all the ground that is in the whole Kingdom: it is full of people, and the Townes one neere to another, that almost you can not iudge them to bee many Townes but one, for to there was but a quarter of a league distant, one Towne from another, and it was told vnto them that in all the Prouinces of the Kingdom, it is so peopled in the same order, All their ground they till is watered, which is the occasion of the fruitfulness thereof, so that they doe gather fruit all the yeere long, and our *Spaniards* did see in all places whereas they came, that they were gathering of Rice, some new spring vp, some with eares, and some ripe. They doe plough and till their ground with Kine, *Bufalos*, and Bulles, whereate

very came, and although they bee very great, yet be their homes but of a spanne long and turning backwards to the tayle, in such sort that they cannot doe any hurt or harme with them: they doe gouerne them with a cord that is made fast to a ring that is in their nole, and in like sort doe they gouerne the *Bufalos*. They doe feed them commonly in the fields of Rice, for that they haue no other graings, and all the time that they are feeding, a Boy doth ride on euery one of them to dilburthe them, that they doe no harme therein. But to eate the weedes and grasse that doe grow in the Rice.

All the high-ways are covered with the shadow of very faire Orchards, which doe garnish it very much, and they are planted in very good order: and amongst them there are Shops, where- 10 as is sold all manner of Fruits, to the comfort of all such as doe trauell by the way, which are infinite number, some on horse, some on horse-backe, and others in little chayres. Their waters by the high-ways, are very good and light. The same day when they had trauelled halfe way, they saw a targe off coming marching towards them in very good order, a Squadron of Souldiers, which at the first caused them to maruell, and to bee afraid, till such time as they drew nigher, it was told vnto them, that it was the Captayne of the guard vnto the *Insano*, or Gouverneur of *Chincheo*, who came by his order to receiue them with foure hundred Souldiers, very well armed with Pikes and Harquebusses, and well appparelled. So soone as the Captayne came vnto them, hee was mounted on a bay Horie, but of small stature, as they for the most part bee in all that Prouince, hee alighted and came vnto the Fathers, and his companions (who likewise 20 did alight from their little Chayres) and did salute the one the other with great courtesie.

The Captayne came very well appparelled with a Chayne of gold about his necke, a man of a good audacie and vnderstanding. Hard vnto his stirrop hee had a Page that went with him, and carryed a great *Tera sol*, made of Silke, that did shadow him all ouer. Hee had before him great musicke of Trumpets and Hobybusses, wherein they played in great concord. This Cap- 30 tayne with his foure hundred Souldiers, did continually guard them for pompe, not necessitie; for the people may not wear weapons but the Souldiers. In this high-way continually there went and came many pocke-Hories, laden with Merchandise and other things, but the most part of them were Mules. The high-ways are very broad, that twentie men may ride together on a ranke, and one not hinder another, and are all paved with great stones.

30 Vpon a Saturday being the eleuenth of Iuly, came our *Spaniards* vnto the Citie of *Chincheo*, foure houres before it was night. This Citie is of the common sort in that Kingdom, and may haue thence thousand households. It is of great traffike and well provided of all things, for that the Sea is but two leagues from it: it hath a mightie River running along by it downe into the Sea, by which is brought by water and carryed downe all kinde of merchandise. There is a Bridge ouer the sayd River, which is supposed to bee the fairest that is in all the world: it hath 40 a drawe bridge to serue in time of warres, or for any other necessitie: the Bridge is eight hundred paces long, and all wrought with stones of two and twentie foote long, and five foote broad, a thing greatly to bee maruelled at: as the entrie thereof, there were many armed Souldiers ready to fight, who when they came within Harquebush shot did salute them in very good order. There was nigh vnto the sayd bridge in the River rising at anchor, more then a thousand Ships of all sorts, and to great a number of Boates and Barkes, that all the River was couered, and euery one full of people that had entred into them for to see the *Captaine*, for so they did call the *Spaniard*: in that Country, for the streets in the Suburbs, nor in the Citie could not hold them, the number was so great, yet their streets are as broad as our ordinary streets in any Citie in all *Spainne*. This Citie is compassed with a strong Wall made of stone, and is sixteen fathoms high, and foure fathom broad, & vpon the Gates many towers, wherein is placed their Artillerie, which is all their strength, for that they doe not vse in their Kingdom strong Castles, as they doe in *Europe*. The 50 houses of the Citie are all built after one sort and fashion, but faire, & not very high, by reason of the Earthquakes which are ordinarily in that Country. All the streets (but especially that wherein they passed at their coming thither) haue on the one side and on the other, Sheds, vnder the quall distance the one from the other, many triumphant Arches which doe set out the streets, which haue excellent Market-places, and of great value, and very curious. They haue in euery much, and is vield in euery principall street throughout all the Kingdom, in the which they haue excellent Market-places, whereas is to bee bought all things that you will desire to be eaten, as well of Fish, as of Flesh, Fruits, Hearbs, Coniunges, Conferences, and all things so good cheape, that it is almost bought for nothing.

The *Insano* or Gouverneur of the Citie, did send that forthwith they should goe vnto his House, for that hee had great desire to see them. In the midst of the streete, where was no lesse 60 number of people then in the other, whereby they entred into the Citie, they met with a *Loytia*, that came to entertaine them with great Maistie, and had carryed before him many Banners, Mace-bearers, and Tipstauers, and others which carryed Sticks or Whips, which they did traile after them, made fast vnto long fitches, which were the Executioners, the which doe goe alwayes making of way, parting the people before the *Loytia*, as you haue heard. The mightie

Chinese Women.

House of pleasure.

Stone-bridge.

Thirteenth village.

Plowing with *Bufalos*.

Passenger.

High ways.

Chinese hath counted thousand households.

Fairst Bridge.

A thousand Ships in one River.

They haue no View Castle.

Earthquake is in this Country.

In this Merchandise.

Triumphance Arches.

The *Insano*.

An Affliction.

Serpents known
red the Kings
Armes.

and company wherewith he came was so great, that they verily did beleue him to be the *Infuante*: but being certified, they vnderstood that it was one of his Counsellors that came from the Gouvernours home to his owne house, which was in the same street whereas he came from them. This Counsellor was carried in a Chaire of Iuorie, garnished with Gold and with Curtaines ther of Cloth of Gold, and on them the Kings Armes, which are certayne Serpents knotted together (as hath bene told you). But when he came tight against the *Spaniards*, without any flaying his house, which was hard by: the Captaines did straight-ways obey his commandement, and returned with them. The Counsellor entered into his house, which was very faire, hee had in a faire Court, and therein a gallant Fontaine and a Garden. After him entered the *Spaniards* all along, the rest remained without in the street at the *Loyus* commandement, hee entertained them with very good words of semblance, and commanded a Banquet to be brought forth, and Wine to drinke, he began first both to charge and drinke. Then he commanded to call in the Captaine, vnto whom was given the charge to beare them companie, and did chide with him very sharply and severely, because he did carrie them on foot (they could not vnderstand whether it were done for a policie, or of a truth, although the effects wherewith hee did chide seemed of a trust) hee straight-ways commanded two rich Chaires to be brought forth to carry the Fathers, and to giue vnto their companions Horses: the which being done, hee willed them to goe and visit the Gouvernour, who did tarrie their coming: and that another time at more leisure he would see and visit them.

Goodly fight.

The Palace.

They followed their way all along the street, which seemed vnto them to be more faire then the other wherein they entered, and of more faire houses and triumphant Arches; also then the others, in so ample sort, that what therewith, as also the great number of people which they saw, they were so amazed, that they were as people from themselves, thinking it to be a dream. To conclude, after they had gone a good while in that street, delighting their eyes Soldiers in good order with their Harquebuses, Pikes and other Armour in a readinesse, appalled all in a Liurey of Silke, with their Ancients displayed. At the end of this place, was there a very faire and sumptuous Palace, the gate was wrought of Malons worke of Istone, very great and full of figures or Personages, and about it a great window with an Iron grate all gilt: they were carried within the gates, the Soldiers and the people which were without number, remained without and could not be auoyded but with great difficulty. When they were within the first Court, there came forth a man very well apparelled and of authority, and made signes with his hand vnto them that brought the *Spaniards*, that they should carrie them into a Hall that was vpon the right hand, the which was straight-ways done. The Hall was all did dore the one from the other in their fashion: the Altar was rich and very curiously trimmed with burning Lamps: the Altar-cloth was of cloth of Gold: and the frunler of the same.

State-ceremonie.

After awhile that they had bene there whereas the Idols were, there came a Seruant from the Gouvernour and said vnto him in his behalfe, that they should send vnto him the Interpreter: they straight-ways commanded him to goe. And the Gouvernour said vnto him that he should aduise the Fathers and the rest of his companions, that if they would talke and treat of such businesse as they came for, that it must be done with the same ceremonie and respect, as the Nobles of that Province doe, vnto to salke with him, which is vpon their knees (as afterwards they did see many times vnto) if not that they should depart vnto the House whereas they were lodged, and there to tarrie the order that should be sent from the Vice-roy of *Anches*.

The *Spaniards* were of diuers judgements, striding amongst themselves a good while, but yet in conclusion, the Religious Fathers, whom the Gouvernour of the Islands had ordyned and sent as principals in this matter, and whose judgement they should follow, said, that they ought to accept the condition, seeing that by no other means they could not come vnto that they pretended: and not to leave it off for matters of small importance, for that therein they make no offence vnto God, and it may be a mean to the conuertyng of that mightie Kingdome.

When that the *Infuante* vnderstood that the *Spaniards* would enter with the reuerence accustomed, and in such order as was declared vnto them, hee straight-ways commanded that they should come into the Hall whereas hee was, they entered into another Hall as bigge as the first: whereas were many Soldiers with their weapons in their hands in very good order, and richly apparelled, and next vnto them were many Tipstaves and Sergeants, with different Ensignes or Badges, all apparelled with long Robes of silke, garned and embroidered with Gold, and every one of them had a Helme on his head, some of silke and other some of Tinne gilt; and they were as a gallant thing to see: all had long haire and died yellow, which hang downe behind their eares vpon their backes: they were placed in very good order, and made a lane that the *Spaniards* might passe thorough: then they came into a Gallerie, which was joyning vnto the Chamber where the Gouvernour was, and there they heard such a noyse of Instruments of diuers kinds,

Great Maistrie.

The Infuante
petition and en-
treatment.

which endured a good while, and was of so great melody, that it seemed vnto them that they neuer before heard the like: which caused vnto them great admiration to see so great Majestie amongst Gentiles. When the Musike was ended, they entered into the Hall aforesaid, and had not gone many steps, when as they met with the Counsellor that met with them in the street afore-said, and with him other two of his companions all on foot and bare-headed before the Gouvernour, and their Ensignes of Majestie left off: which is generally vnto in all the Kingdome, the inferior to make any leue when that he is before his Superior. Then they made signes vnto them to goe to kneele downe, for that the *Infuante* was nigh at hand in a rich Towre, vnder a Canopie of great Riches, and did reuel to great Majestie as the King himselfe: hee did enter-
tayne them with tokens of great loue, and humanitie, and told them by their Interpreter, that they were very well welcome, and that hee did greatly reioyce to see them, with many other words of great fauour. This Gouvernour was a man of goodly person, well fauoured, and of a merry countenance, more then any that they had seen in all that Countrey. Hee caused to be put vpon the shoulders of the Fathers and of the Soldiers that were with him, euerie one of them two pieces of filke, which was crossed about them like Skarfes, and likewise to either of them a branch of filute: the like courtesie hee did vnto the Captaine *Omoncon*, and vnto *Sinsay*, and commanded to giue vnto all their Seruants euerie one of them a Mantle of Cotton painted. This being done, the Fathers did giue vnto him the Letters which they carried from the Gouvernour and Generall of the field, and a note of the Present that was sent him: craving pardon for that it was so small, but time and oportunitie would not suse as then to send vnto him a thing of greater price and valour: certifying him, that if the friendship which they pretended did goe forward, and come to be established, that then all things should be amended and amplified. Hee answered vnto their proffers with words of great fauour, and made signes vnto them to arise, and to goe and take their reits there, whereas they were lodged: the which they did, and found all things in very good order and well furnished, as well of Beds as of all other necessities, which was done by the commandement of the Gouvernour. Before they departed out of the Palace the Captaine of the guard did carrie them vnto his Lodging, which was within the Court, and there he made them a Banquet with Confects, and Fruits in abundance: the which being done, hee and other Gentlemen of the Palace did beare them companie until they came to their Lodgings, which they greatly desired, for that they were weerie of their Tourney, and also with the trouble of the great presse of people that pressed on them in the streets, & otherwise for to see them: the which Captaine of the guard did appoint a Company of Soldiers for to guard them both night and day, the which was done more for Maistie then for needecesse or security of their persons. They had a Steward appointed to provide them and all their company of all things necessary, and that in abundance, and not to take of them any thing, which was giuen by particular commandement by the Gouvernour.

The next day, many of the Gentlemen of the Citie did goe vnto the *Spaniards* to visit them, and such as could not goe themselves did send their Seruants, bidding them welcome. The *Spaniards* did make answer, and gratified them all, in the which visitation they spent all the whole day, having great admiration to see the good behauiour, nurture, and gallant demeanour of those Gentlemen, and the great discretion they had in the demanding of any thing they would know as also in their Answeres made to our requests. The next day the *Infuante* sent a commandement wherein he willed the two Fathers to remaine in their Lodgings and take their ease: but the two Soldiers *Pedro Sarmiento*, and *Miguel de Loarcha*, should come and speake with him, (who was a *Chino*, and vnderstood the Language of the *Philippines*, but so badly, that they could not by his Interpretation talke of any matter of importance. So when they came thither, they were brought whereas he was, but with lesse ceremonie, he requested them to declare vnto him the whole circumstance of the coming of *Limon* the Rouer, vnto the Islands, and how the *Spaniards* dealt with him: that although he had bene informed particularly in all things, by the Captaine *Omoncon* and *Sinsay*, yet he was in a ielousie that they told him not the truth. Hee was nothing deceiued in that he suspected,) for after that our Soldiers had made a true Relation of the coming of the Rouer vnto *Manilla*, and of all the rest, hee found that they differed very much, the one from the other, for that they did attribute it wholly vnto themselves to get honour when that he perceived that *Limon* was neither dead nor Prisoner, but onely beieged, he offered giue vnto them five hundred ships of warre, with people sufficient to sieue both by Sea and Land, and more if they would returne againe vnto *Paganian* vpon him whereas he was, hee would giue vnto them as much more request. They answered him, that all such cost and labour were but in vaine, for that the Generall of the field who hath him in siege, with the people and ships that he hath are sufficient to end that Enterprize, and to send him either alive or dead, and that long before that their fleet should come thither. And besides that, their Islands were poore of victuals, and could not sustaine so great an Arme many dayes. Being satisfied with these reasons, hee gaue place that the Interpreter which they brought should come in where as they were.

Vaine glory.

Boo thing.

Mantled
Trous.

were, for he remained at the doore without, for that hee would bee fully certified to avoid the suspitions double he had before he come in presence, yet he did helpe them very much. So when their Interpreter was come in, the *Spaniards* seeing good occasion and opportunitie for to declare that which passed the day before, betwixt them and the *Fathers*, touching the speaking vnto him on their knees; and seeing, as it seemed vnto them, that he was at that time in a good mind for to heare them, they did vtter vnto him all the whole contention (after that they had declared many reasons of great consideration, to giue them to understand that it was not convenient to doe it, but especially to religious men, who were there as principals ouer the rest, vnto whom the King of *Spain* (their Lord) himselfe doth stand on foot, when as they doe interue of any matter, although it be but of small importance: for that they are Priests and Ministers of God, whom he doth worship and reuerence.

The *Infamto* with a merry contentid did answer them, that vnto that time hee understood no more of them, then in that he was informed by the Capitaine *Omoncon*, and did not acknowledge them to bee any other but *Castills*: without knowing wherefore they came, nor from whom, for lacke of the Letters sent from their Gouernour, and Generall of the field, the first time that hee spake with them: neither had hee any knowledge of the custome of their Country: yet notwithstanding, that which hath passed here, without any exception of person, if they would take it in good part, in that which is to come shall be amended: and from that day forwards, at all times when hee will, it were their pleasure to come of themselves, or at such time as they were lent for, to for to talke with him as they doe vnto *Castilla* or *Spain*, vnto such of their dignitie and vocation, the which hee granted with a very good will: although hee not grant vnto any that pre-eminence, no not vnto a Vice-roy, except he were an Ambassadors sent from some King.

Spaniards Ea.
flut.
Table-ric.A Comedy &
other sports.

The Viands.

The next day, the Gouernour called a Gentleman of his House vnto him, and commanded him to goe and visite the *Spaniards*, and to informe himselfe of them if that they lacked any thing. And also that he should in his name inuite them for the next day following to dine with him in his House. This Gentleman went vnto them and accomplished his message: and the *Spaniards* answered, kissing his hand for the great care hee had of them: they were carryed into a Hall that was below in the second Court, whereas were many Chaires of Veluet and Tables that were painted with their frontals before. In the first Chaires they caused the Friers to sit downe, every one at a Table by himselfe, and each of them other fixe Tables, placed in order, compassing round like a Circle: then were the *Spanish* Souldiers set in the same manner, and each of them had fixe Tables, and next vnto them the Capitaine of the guard belonging vnto the Gouernour, and two other Capitaines: and every one of them had three Tables. For that it is the custome of that Country to make a difference in the qualitie of the guests, by the number of the Tables. All these were placed in circle or compass (as aforesaid) that they might see one another. In the midst betwixt them there was a round compass, whereas was represented a Comedie with much piftime, and indured all the Dinner time, and a good while after. There was also great vnto of very good and excellent Musicke, accompanied with gallant voyces, also litters with Puppets, and other things of great piftime, to drue the time away. On the first Tables was set to euery one of the guests, litle Baskets wrought with Gold and Siluer wyre, full of sweet meates made of Sugar, as March-panes, Caffles, Pitchers, Pots, Dishes, Dogges, Bulls, Elephants, and other things very curious, and all gill: besides this there were many Dishes full of fiesh, as Capons, Hennes, Geese, Turkes, Gamons of Bacon, pieces of Beefe, and other sorts of fiesh wherewith all the Tables were replenished, sauing that wherest they did sit to dine, which was replenished with victuals that was dressed (for all the other was raw) and was of so great abundance, that there was at times more then fiftie dishes, and they were serued with great curiositie. They had Wine of diuers sorts, and of that which they doe make in that Country of the Palme-tree, but of so great excellencie, that they found no lacke of that which was made of Grapes. The Dinner endured four houres, in so good order that it might haue bene giuen vnto any Prince in the World.

Their Seruants and Slaues that they brought with them at the same time did dine in another Hall high vnto the fame, with so great abundance as their Matters. When Dinner was done, the Gouernour commanded the people to come vnto him, with whom hee did talke and common with great friendship, and good conuersation, and would not consent that they should kneele downe, neither to be bare headed. So after that hee had made vnto them tokens of friendship, and dayned them a while, in demanding of many things, lastly he told them that there was an order come from the Vice-roy of *Auche*, that they should goe thither with great speed. So hee tooke his leaue of vs with great friendship and courteisie. At their going forth out of the Hall, they found the Capitaine that did dine with them, and with him many other Gentlemen that tarried their coming for to beate them company vnto their Lodging: going before them many Seruants, that did carrie the raw meate, and that was vpon the other Tables our and about that which they did eate, the which was done for great Maestie, and a Ceremonie very much vsed in that Kingdome, so many times as they doe make any Banquet.

Wm

When they came vnto their Lodging they found that the *Infamto* had sent them a very good Present, in the which was for euery one of them four pieces of silke, and coming clothes of other things, and certayne painted Mantles for the Seruants and Slaues. After they had taken their leaue of the Capitaine and Gentleman that did beate them company home, they beganne with great ioy to put all things in order for their Iourney the next day following.

The next day in the morning, before that the *Spaniards* were stirring, there was within the House all things necessary for their Iourney, as well of Litter chaires, as of Horses and Men for to carrie them, and their stuffe, the which they did with so good a will (as aforesaid) that they did fall out and strive amongst themselves, who should be the first that should receiue their 10 burthen. So all things beeing in good order, they departed, hauing in their company the same Capitaine and Souldiers, that vnto that time had bene their guard, vntill they came vnto the Citie of *Auche*, whereas the Vice-roy was. This day by reason they understood that they should depart, the pfeale and multitude of the people was so great, that although they had Tip-staves before them, to beate the people away and to make roome, yet was it almost night before they could get out of the Citie: so that they were constrained to remaine in a Towne there hard by all that night, whereas by the commandement of the Gouernour they were very well lodged, and their Supper made readie in very good order, as it was in fouen dayes together, till such time as they came vnto *Auche*, without taking for the fame, or for any other thing necessary for their sustentation, any price or value. There went continually before them a Post 20 with a prouision from the Gouernour, written in a great board wherein was declared who they were, and from whence they came, and commanding that there should be provided for them all things necessary in abundance, vpon the Kings cost, which was the occasion that so much people came for to see them, that in the high-waies they were many times disturbed with great trouble, the third day they came vnto a Citie which was called *Megoa*, which was sometimes the head government, the which was of forty thousand holduolds, but a great part thereof was depopled: the occasion thereof they told vs (and was) that about thirtie yeares past, the *Iapones*, who brought for their Guides three *Chinois*, came vpon that Citie (to reuenge themselves of an iniurie that was done vnto them): so that when they put in execution with so great secrecie and policie, that they made themselves Lords of the Citie without any danger or hurt vnto them- 30 selves: for that fiftie *Iapones*, men fit for that purpose, did apparell themselves in *Chinois* apparell without being knowne, and came vnto a Gate of the Citie, whereas the Souldiers that had the charge thereof were void of all suspicion. And within a litle while after that, followed two thousand that did disimbarke themselves in a secret and unknowne place, and came in very secret order, because they would not be discouered, and did beset that gate of the Citie, whereas their companions were, which they sent before: who so loone as they saw them night after, drew out their weapons, the which they carried hid vnder their apparell, & set vpon the Souldiers (that were void of feare and vnarmed) with so great fure and force, that they being amazed were easily slain, so that they were Lords of the Gate, whereas they left very good guard, and followed 40 the victorie, and made themselves Lords of the Citie, without any danger vnto their persons, and did possesse the same certaine daies, and did sacke the same in spite of them all, with great harme and losse vnto the Inhabitants thereof, vntill such time as the Vice-roy of *Auche* did leaue an Armie together of threefore and ten thousand men, but they seeing that they could not defend themselves against so many, in one night they left the Citie and went vnto their ships, whereas they had left them in very good order, and carried with them the spoile of the Citie, leauing it beaten downe.

So loone as they came thither, the Friers remained in their Lodgings, but *Pedro Sarmiento* and *Miguel de Loucha* went to visite the Gouernour, vnto the *Spanish* courteisie with him: and hee received them with great ioy and courteisie. After they had taken their leaue and returned vnto their Lodgings, the Gouernour sent to visite them *El Tyu*, who is the ancientest of his Countie. At their departure from this Citie, travelling towards *Auche*, they passed ouer a mightie 50 cell. After a Bridge all made of stone: the goodlie and greatest that euer they had seen, whose greatnesse did cause wonderfull admiration, so that they stayed and did measure it from one end to another, that it might be put amongst the wonders of that Country, which they tooke a note of. They found that it was one thousand and three hundred foot long, and that the least stone wherewith it was built, was of seuenteen foot, and many of two and twentie foot long, and eight foot broad, and seemed vnto them a thing impossible to be brought thither by maner, for that all round about so farre as they could fee, was plaine ground without any Mountains: by which they judged them to be brought from farre. When they were passed that Bridge, they travelled all the rest of the day till night vpon a Cawfie that was very broad and 60 other Seeds: and so full of people as in the streets of a good Towne or Citie.

After they had travelled more then halfe a league in the Suburbs of the Citie of *Auche*, they met with a Post that came from the Vice-roy: who brought order that they should re-

Auche.

Megoa a great
Citie spoiled
by Iapanders.

Stratagem.

Admirable
stone bridge.

Suburbs of Auecho.

mayne in a house that was appointed for them in the fynd Suburbs. So loone as they were alighted, there came a Gentleman to visite them, sent from the Vice-roy to bid them welcome, and to know how they did with their journey, and also to see that they were well provided for that night, of all things necessarie, and that in abundance. After this Gentleman, came other Captaynes to visite them, and brought with them great store of Confeutes, Wine and Fruit: which is a common custome amongst them, when that they goe in the like visitation, and it is carryed by their seruants in litle Baskets very curiously wrought, or else in Barrels made of earth all gile. Within two houres after their coming thither, there came another messenger from the Vice-roy, with many men laden with Capons, Hennes, Geese, Teales, gamons of Basson, and Confeutes of diuers sorts, and of great abundance, sufficient for one hundred men to suppe that night, and for their dinner the next day. The next day in the morning very early there came much people vnto their lodging, sent by the Vice-roy, and broughe with them two rich Chayres, for to carrie the Fathers in, and the Curtaines tyed vp, that they might the better see, and for their companions very good Hories, falled after the fashion which they doe vnto them. They forthwith made haste for to depart, and although they made great speed, yet were vnto them that they had travelled two leagues in the Suburbs: well peopled, faire houses, and many shops full of Merchandise.

Palace open on each side.

State.

Before they came vnto the Gates, they passed a mightie Riuer three times ouer Bridges, that were great and very faire, and the Riuer so deepe, that great Ships came vp the same, but then two mailes toopeing downe, to passe vnder the bridges. This Citie is the head Citie of all the Province, verie rich and fertile, and many Townes belonging vnto it, and but eight leagues from the Sea. They had no leisure to tell the Souldiers, but they saw that from the Gate vntill they came vnto the Vice-royes Palace on both sides, which was a good way, to be full of them, and all richly appparelled and of one colour. The people that were at the windowes and the street, betwixt the houses and the Souldiers were so great a number, that it seemed to be done day, and that all the people in the world were there ioyned together in that street. When they came vnto the Palace which was two houres after day, the Gentlemen that were their guides, did caule the *Spaniards* to enter into a roome which was hard by, till such time as the Gate was open, for that it is open but once a day, and so continue no longer time then the audience endeth. After he doth enter into audience, there is shot off four peeces of Artillerie, with a great noyse of Trumpets, Drums and Waytes. And there is no day that passeth without audience, as our people did see by experience so long as they were there, and were likewise informed of others. The house being come, and the ceremonie done as aforesayd, the Gates were opened, and there was in the Court many Souldiers, appparelled in the same luerie that those were of in the street. From the midst amongst them came forth a Gentleman, who was as it were told them, the Captayne of the guard of the Vice-roy, who came with great grauitie and authoritie, towards the place whereas our people were, and after they had saluted the one the other, hee made signes vnto them, that they should goe towards the gates of the Palace. When they were within the first Court, which was great and wrought with mightie pillars, there was a great number of Souldiers, and many Sergeantes, that entred into another great court, and mounted vp a payre of Haytes that was on the one side, whereas all the people were with great silence, lauing the Captayne of the guard, who went with our people till they came to the gates of the Hall, where was the Vice-roy, at which gate hee slayed with his head discovered, and made signes vnto ours that they should doe the like.

Ceremonie.

Vice-royes state.

Then straightwayes came forth of the Hall a man appparelled in a long Robe, of good personage, and asked of the *Spaniards*, if they would speake with the Vice-roy, and they answered, yea: then asked hee againe from whom they came, and by whom they were sent, they answered, that they were sent by the Gouverneur of *Philippines*, who was seruant vnto the mightiest King in all Christendome. When he had this answer, he returned againe into the Hall, and within a litle while after he came forth, and bad them come in, but gave them to vnderstand, that in entering into the hall whereas the Vice-roy was, that they should kneele downe, and talke with him in that order, till hee commanded to the contrary, if they would vif this Ceremonie, that then they should come in, if not, that they should returne backe againe. They sayd, that they would obserue the order giuen vnto them. Therewith hee went in, who seemed to be the Master of ceremonies, making a signe that they should follow after him, and doe that which hee willed them to doe. At the entering in at the doore, they flayed a litle, and then kneeled downe right ouer against there whereas the Vice-roy sat, in a Chayre very high like vnto a Throne, with a Table before him, and was in so darke a place that almoth they could not see his face very good well. On the one side of him, there were some like vnto Heralds of Armes, with Scepters in their hands, and on the other side, two men of a gallant comelinsse armed with Corlets, made of scales of Gold downe to the calf of their legges, with Bowes in their hands of gold, and Quivers at their backs of the same. Both the one and the other were vpon their knees. There was

vpon

vpon the Table before him, paper and all things necessarie to write: which is an ordinarie vse amongst them at all times, when there is any publicke audience, and on the one side of the board a Lion made of blacke wood, which was (as after they vnderstood) the Armes of that Province. So straightwayes hee made signes vnto them to draw neere, which they did, and kneeled downe a litle from the Table which was whereas the Master of Ceremonies did wille them. In this fort they began to talke with him by their Interpreter, and told them the occasion of their coming into that Citie and Kingdome, and from whom and vnto whom they were sent. But hee made signes vnto them that they should arise, the which they did with a very good will, and did persueue in their intent. But the Vice-roy did cut them off before they could make an end, and asked if they had brought any Letter from their King, vnto the King his Lord, whom they would goe to see and talke with: but when they answered no, hee straightwayes tooke his leave of them, saying, that they were welcome, and that they should depart vnto their lodgings and to take their ease, for that afterwards they should haue occasion to declare their mindes vnto him, and hee would giue them their answer, for that the King was faine off, and it required along time to come whereas hee is, but hee would write vnto him, and according vnto his commandement, hee would make them answer. And therewith hee tooke the Letter, and the memorill of the present, and commanded in his presence, to put about the neckes of the *Friars* in manner of a scarf, to either of them fixe pieces of Silke, and vnto the Souldiers their companions, and vnto *Ommenon*, and *Sinsay*, each of them foure pieces, and to euery one of their seruants two a piece, and to giue vnto the two *Friars* and the Souldiers, *Ommenon*, and *Sinsay*, euery one of them two branches of Siluer.

With the Silke about their neckes, and with the branches in their hands, they returned out of the Hall and downe the stayres the way they came, and so through the court into the streets, from whence they saw them that the Court gate with so great a noyse, as when they did open it. From thence at the request of *Ommenon*, and *Sinsay*, they went vnto the house of *Totoe*, who is the Captayne general of all the men of Warre, and vnto the house of *Cagnioe*, who is the chiefe Standard-bearer of their houses: were nigh the one the other, very faire and great. They found them with as great Maistie as the Vice-roy, and in the same order, with a Table before them, and had on each side of them armed Souldiers, kneeling on their knees. Yet did they not see our men with the courteste that the Vice-roy vied, to caule them to stand vp, which was the occasion, that straightwayes they made a shew that they would depart and bee gone, complaining of *Ommenon*, and *Sinsay*, for that they did carrie them thither, and told them with answere, that the Gouverneur of *Manilla*, did intreat them in a different sort, who was there resident for the mightiest Prince in all the world, and they but ealie Merchants, neither was their going thither to bee equalled, vnto the benefite that they came thither for. This discontent the which they received, was the occasion that they would not goe to make any more visitations, although the sayd *Ommenon*, and *Sinsay*, for their owne interest, would haue carryed them to the houses of other Officers, and Gentlemen of the Court.

At their coming thither, they found all their stufte in good order, and their dinner marueils well provided, and the whole house bandaged and trimmed, as though it had bene for the Kings owne person, with many wayting men and Souldiers, those which did guard them both day and night, and hanging at the doore two tables or boards (commanded by the Vice-roy) whereon was written who they were, that were there lodged, and from whence they came, and wherefore, and that none whoeuer, should bee so barlike as to offer them any wrong or disturbance, vpon paine to bee for the same offence feuerly punished. In this house they were more in quiet, then in any other place, whereas they had bene, neither did the people giue them so much trouble, by reason of the great care which the Iudges had in putting order for the same, by the commandement of the Vice-roy, yet was it the greatest Towne and most populated, of all that Province (although in other Provinces theretoe that be much bigger) and is admired that the Citie of *Taylin*, or *Soniam*, (where the King and his Court is resident) hath three hundred thousand households, and yet there is a bigger Citie in the Kingdome called *Lanchon*.

This Citie of *Auecho*, hath a very faire and strong Wall made of stone, which is fixe fathom high, and foure fathom broad, the which was measured many times by our people, for that they haue a care out of their lodging that did open to the same. This wall is all covered ouer with tyles to defend the raine-water for hurting of it, which could not to the contrary but receive damage, for that there is no lyme vif in the whole wall. They haue not one Cattle in all this Citie, neither is there any vif in all that Kingdome, for all their force and strength is in their Gates, the which be made very strong, with a double wall, within very broad, betwixt the which are continually many Souldiers, such as doe keepe watch and ward both day and night. Vpon these gates they haue much Ordnance, but very ill wrought. The whole wall is full of battlements, and thereon written the names of such Souldiers as are bound to repaire thither in the time of necessitie. At euery hundred paces they haue lodgings, the which are very huge and great: there whereas in the time of necessitie doe remaine and dwell their Captaynes,

D d

Lions the Armes of that Province, perhaps this discovered Place, who mislooke then (seeing them common on pillars, &c.) to be the Kings Armes, which were but of some place.

Totoe.
Cagnioe.

Reports of Pagan, called
Taylin also and
Soniam.
Lanchon for
Nanchon, or
Nanchon, See
Ricci.

Auecho described.

Ordnance bid

fo

10 To long as their troubles doe endure, all the wall is fortified with two great mores or ditches, the one within and the other without, the which they doe fill at all times when they please, by sluices which they have from the River for the same purpose, and doe fence of water almost all the houses in the Citie, whereas they have their stages for the most part full of Rocks, this mightie Citie is situated in a great playne, and compassed round about with mightie Rocks and Mountaines, which is the occasion that it is not so healthfull, and the inhabitants say, that it is by reason of the Mountaines, and many times it is over-flown in the winter, by fring-tydes from the River. And in that yeere that this doth happen, it doth destroy and ruinate a great part of the Citie, as it was at that time when our people did see it, for that in the winter before they were troubled with these great tydes, which did them much harme.

The next day after that our people came into the Citie, the Vice-roy did send to invite them to dinner to his owne house, whereas he made them a great banquet in the forme following. At this coming vnto the Palace there came forth a great number of Gentlemen, servants vnto the Vice-roy, to bid them welcome, with a great store of muske and tokens of mirth. Being entered into the first Court, they brought them into a mightie Hall that was marvellously well trimmed, wherein was a great number of Tables set in such order, as they were in the banquet that was made them by the Gouverneur of *Chuncheo*, (as hath bene told you) although the number and furniture did farre exceed the other. But before they did sit downe, there came vnto them two Captaynes principall men, vnto whom the Vice-roy had committed the charge of the banquet, to doe all things in his name, for that it is a custome in that Kingdome, that Noble men must not be present in their banquets they make. So the charge was given vnto them, to make them be merrie, & to bid his guests welcome. When they came vnto them they did great respect, and passed away the time in gallant discourses, till it was time to go to dinner, at which they began to bring in their victuals. Then before they did sit downe, the Captaynes did take each of them a cup in his hand, in manner of a *Sorlus*, as they doe vnto, and being full of Wine, they went together whereas they might discouer the Heauen and offered it vnto the Sunne, and vnto the Saints of heauen, adding thereto many words of prayers: but principally they did request that the coming of their new guests might be profitable vnto them all, and that the friendship which they did pretend to establish, might be for good both vnto the one and to the other. This their prayer being done, they did spill out the Wine making a great courtesie, then were they 30 straight-ways filled againe, and making reference vnto their guests every one by himselfe, they let the Cups downe vpon the Tables whereas the Fathers should dine, whereas they were let a merrie one by himselfe. This being done, the first service was first vpon the boards, and the Captaynes were let at other Tables. The time which the banquet endured (which was very late) there was great store of muske of diuers Instruments, as of *Vials*, *Gitterns*, and *Rebuckles*, and with them many letters did make them merrie at their dinner. The which being done, the layd Captayns did beare their guests compaigne out of the Palace, whereas they did anew invite them to dinner for the next day, in the same Hall: they obeying their request did come, whereas was made vnto them a banquet more notable than the first. This day at the banquet was present the *Toroe*. In this second banquet they had as the day before, very much muske, and a Comedie 40 that indured long, with many prettie and merrie iests: there was also a Tumbler, who did his feates very artificially, as well in vaulting in the ayre, as vpon a staffe that two men did hold on their shoulders. Before the Comedie did begin, by their Interpreter the signification thereof was told them, that the better they might content themselves in the conceiuing.

The next day they sent the present, and those who carried it in, did afterward give our people to vnderstand that in opening the present, there was a note thereof taken before a Notarie, and straight-ways put in againe where it was taken out, before the layd Notarie and other witnesses, the which being done, hee feld it vpon, and sent it vnto the Citie of *Taybin*, vnto the King and his Council, for that they have a rigorous Law in that Kingdome, that doth prohibe all such as haue any office of Government, to receive any present of what quality heuer it be, 50 without licence of the King or of his Council. This is conformable vnto that, which the Gouverneur of *Chin* hee did in the presence of our people.

The next day following, the Vice-roy did send to visite them, and to aske of them a Sword, a Harquebussie and a Flasse: for that hee would cause others to be made by them, the which they did send, and afterwards vnderstood, that they had counterfeited the same, although not in so perfect manner.

Then after a time our people seeing, that their being in that Citie seemed to be long and like to be longer, they did procure to ruse away the time in the best manner they could, and went abroad vnto the Citie, and did by either of them that which they thought best. Whereof they found great abundance, and of so small price, that they bought it almost for nothing. They bought 60 many Bookes that did intreat of diuers matters, which they brought with them to the Islands. The next day they were to see the Gates of the Citie, and all such curious things as were to be seen, so farre as they could learne or vnderstand, which were many. But amongst them all, they saw a sumptuous Temple of their Idols, in whose chiefe Chappell they counted, one hundred

111. Idols in
one Chappell.

and cleuen Idols, besides a great number more that were in other particular Chappells, all were of curied worke, very well proportioned and gilded: but in especiall three of them that were placed in the midst of all the rest, the one had three heads proceeding out of one bovie, the one looking on the other in full face, the second was the forme of a Woman with a Child in her armes, the third of a Man appaerled after the forme and fashion, that the *Christians* doe paynt the Apostles. Of all the rest some had four armes, and some had fixe, and other eight, and other some marvellous deformed monsters. Before them they had burning Lamps, and many sweet perfumes and smells, but in especiall, before the three above specified.

But when that the Vice-roy did vnderstand, that our people did goe viewing the Citie gates and Temples (and perceiue that they that gaue him the notice did suspect it, that it was to some ill intent) hee straight-ways commanded, that they should not goe forth of their lodging, without his licence: and likewise commanded the Captayne that was their guard not to consent thereto, as hee had done, and likewise that none should carrie them any thing for to fill, for hee that did it should be punished with whipping. Yet notwithstanding, they had euerie day very sufficient necessities for their personages in such ample way, that there did always remaine, and not lacke. In this closelicket and keeping in, they suffered many dayes with much fadnesse, and oppressed with melancholicke humours, to see that their purpose wherof they went thither seemed to be long and euerie day was worse and worse. Yet notwithstanding they did passe it ouer in the best wise they could, in committing it with heartie zeale vnto God, for whose honour and glory they did attempt that voyage, and prayed vnto him for to moue their hearts to consent, that the religious Fathers might remaine in that Country, for to learne the language (as they had begun many dayes before) by which means their soules might be saved, after many dayes, that they had remained in that dole estate, as aforesaid, they determined for to goe and talke with the Vice-roy, and to be fully resolved, either to tarry or returne from whence they came, but were not permitted.

In this order they remained in the Citie certayne dayes, and for to conclude, either to stay there, or depart the Kingdome, they were resolute, and determined to write a Letter vnto the Vice-roy. They could finde none that would write this letter for them, although they would 30 haue payed them very well for their paines. Till in the end, by great request and praying, the Captayne *Omoncon* did write it for them, and straight-ways departed vnto the Citie of *Ampin*, whither that was not farre off, to put away the suspicion they might conceiue, that hee did write the letter, if that peradventure the Vice-roy would take it in ill part. Their letter being written, they found great difficultie in sending the same, for that there was none that would carrie it, neither would they consent, that our men should enter into the Palace to deliuer it. But in conclusion, 40 what with requests and gifts, they perswaded their Captayne of their guard to carrie it, who to bring it vnto him, for that they did certifie him, that it was that thing that did import very much. Having read the letter, hee answered, that hee would give the King to vnderstand thereof, preach, at that time hee could make them come answere, for that in such matters, it was fittest Countrey to haue the good-will of the Royall Council. Yet would hee make answer vnto the Letter they brought from the Gouverneur of *Manilla*, and that they might depart, and returne againe at such time as they brought *Limabon* prisoner or dead, the which being done, and then shall the friendship be concluded which they doe pretend, and to remaine and beack at their will. With this answer they remained without all hope to remaine there, and did incontinently prepare themselves 50 to depart from *Manilla*, and bought many bookes to carrie with them, wherein was comprised the royall Mailett of King *Philip*. The which being vnderstood by the Vice-roy, who had sicke the buying of bookes, for that hee would give them freely all such bookes as they would desire to haue: the which he afterwards hee did not accomplish.

In the meane time that they layed in this Citie, amongst all other things that they vnderstood, to drue away the time was one, it was giuen them to vnderstand that in one of the Prisons, there was a *Portugall* prisoner, who was taken in a ship of the *Lapones*, with others of his Nation, who were all dead in the Prison, and none left alive but hee alone. Our people being very desirous for to see him, and to learne of him some secrets of that Country, for that hee had a Iudge and Lieutenant vnto the Vice-roy, who did not onely refuse to grant it them, but 60 did make diligent inquirie who they were, that did giue them to vnderstand thereof, for to punish them.

Vpon a fadaine there came newes vnto the Citie, that the Router *Limabon* was vpon the coast of *Chuncheo*, vnto his old accustomed cruelties, and how that hee had spoiled and robbed a Towne vpon the sea coast. This newes was throughout all the Citie, and appeared to be true, teaching

Three headed
Image.
A woman with
childe.

Vice-royes
iealousie.

People in great
subiection.

A Portugall
Iudge.

Taney another
Pirate, taken to
bee Limabon.
Superstition of
euill.

the effect of the deed : yet false touching the person, for that the Rouer was called *Taney*, an enemy, and contrarie vnto *Limabon* : but a friend vnto *Imtequian*, of whom we haue spoken of. But thereupon the Vice-roy, and all of the Citie, were comfortable in the supposition that they had receiued, which was that our people were come into that Kingdome vpon some euill pretence, and to see the secrets thereof, to some euill end, which was the occasion that from that time forwards, they shewed them not so good countenance as they did before. These newes was not so foone come, but straight-ways the Vice-roy did fend for *Omoncon*, (who was then returned from his visiting) and *Sinsay*, vnto whom he had done courtesie, and given them the title of *Loyall* and *Captaynes*, and hee did rephend them very sharply for that they had brought over people thither, and sayd, that they had told him a lye, in saying that *Limabon* was be sieged, in such sort that hee could not escape, neither had the *Castillo* burnt his Ships, and that all was but a made matter amongst themselves, and how that the Captiues which they brought, and sayd that they had taken from *Limabon*, they had robbed from other places, and sayd that the *Spaniards*, were spies that came to discover the secrets, and strength of the Kingdome, and that they had brought them thither, by force of gifts that they had given them. They answered him with great humilitie, in saying, that in all that which they had sayd they did speake the truth, and that it should appeare at such time, as the newes of the Rouer should bee better knowne, the which if it should appeare to be contrarie, they were there ready to suffer whatsoever punishment that should bee giue them. The Vice-roy being somewhat satisfied with this their iustificatiō, had them to depart, remitting all things vnto time for the true declaration thereof. Then *Omoncon*, and *Sinsay*, came straight-ways to giue the *Spaniards* to vnderstand of all that had passed with the Vice-roy, and what they vnderstood of him, which caused in them so great teares, that for the time which it endured (which was till such time as they vnderstood the truth as aforesayd) they payed very well for their feasts and banquets the which they had made them. All this happened in the time that *Omoncon*, and *Sinsay*, were at variance, and spake many iniurious words the one of the other, discovering their intents and deuises, whereby it plainly appeared, that in all that which they had told vnto the Vice-roy, they lyed, but in especiall *Omoncon*, *Sinsay* did dissemble, for hee sayd and told vnto all people, that by his order and industrie, our people did fire the Ships of *Limabon*, and besieged him, with other speeches in the like sort, yet twentie dayes before his coming thither, all was ended and done as appeared. The occasion of their enmitie and falling out, was for that the Vice-roy had giuen vnto *Omoncon*, a title and charge of more honour, then vnto *Sinsay*, hauing made betwixt them a comfort, that the reward or dignitie should bee equally diuided betwixt them, and that the one should speake of the other the best they could, because the Vice-roy should doe them friendship. This condition and comfort (as appeareth) was euill performed by *Omoncon*, being addicted vnto selfe-love, and seemed vnto him that *Sinsay*, did not deserve so much as hee did, for that he was a baine man, and of the Sea, and hee of the more nobilitie, and had the office of a Captayne.

Omoncon and
Sinsay, at variance,
and.

With this griefe and care remayned the *Spaniards* certaine dayes kept close in their lodgings, and were not visited so often as they were wont, they first came thither, which did augment very much their feare, till such time as they vnderstood, that the Vice-roy either of his owne good-will, or else by some particular order from the King and his Counsell, had called together all the *Gouernours* of that Prouince of *Aucoha*, to inreat of matters touching *Limabon*, as also in particular, why and wherefore the *Spaniards* came thither, and to resolve themselves wholly in all things requisite for the same. So when that they were all come together, which was in a short time, and amongst them the *Gouernour* of *Chinchoo*, who by another name was called *Infuanto*, they had particular meetings together with the Vice-roy, in the which they were all agreed to haue a general meeting, wherunto should bee called the *Castillos*, and to demand of them in publike audience, the cause of their coming and being heard, to giue them their answer according as they had determined : for the which vpon a day appointed they met all together (but not the Vice-roy) in the house of the *Cagencoc*, and commanded to come before the *Castillos*, who did accomplish their request with a great good-will, for that they vnderstood that they were called to treat of their matter, either to tarry or depart. So when they came thither, they were commanded to enter into a mightie Hall, whereas they were all set in verie rich Chayres with great grauitie and maiestie. The *Infuanto* seemed to bee the chiefe amongst them, but whether it was for that hee was the principall next vnto the Vice-roy (or as it was told them) for that it was hee that sent *Omoncon*, in the chafe of the Rouer *Limabon*, they knew not, but so foone as they were entered into the Hall, they were commanded to draw neygh, there, whereas they were all placed, without bidding them to sit downe, neither did they vie any particular circumstances or courtesie. The *Infuanto* tooke vpon him the charge, and demanded of the *Spaniards* (by means of the Interpreters) what was the occasion of their coming into that Countrey. The *Spaniards* answered as they thought : and supposed, that at that time it could not bee, but that *Limabon* was either taken prisoner or slaine. Then did the *Infuanto*

General com-
sultation.

conclude his speech, in saying vnto them that they should returne vnto their owne Countrey to the Islands, and at such time as they did bring *Limabon*, they would conclude all things touching the friendship they requested, and also for the Preaching of the Gospel.

So from that day forwards, they did procure with all haile for to depart, and gaue the Vice-roy to vnderstand thereof, who answered them and sayd, that they should comfort themselves and receiue joy and pleasure, and that hee would dispatch them, so foone as the Visitor of that Prouince was come to *Aucoha*, which would bee within ten dayes, for that hee had written vnto him, that he should not dispatch them vntill his coming, for that hee would see them. From that day forwards, he commanded that sometimes they should let them goe forth abroad to recreate themselves, and that they should see vnto them some particular pleasure or friendship. So one of them was carryed to see the Multering of their men of warre, which they haue in a common custome throughout all the Kingdome, to doe it the first day of the New-moone, and is a lye a thing to see : and they doe it in the field which is joyning vnto the walls of the Citie, in this manner following. There were joyned together little more or lesse then twentie thousand Souldiers, Pike-men and Harquebushes, who were so expert, that at the sound of the Drum or Trumpet, they straight-ways put themselves in battell array, and at another sound in a squalor, and at another time shot doe daunc themselves from the rest, and discharge their Pieces with very gallant and good order, and with a trice put themselves againe into their places or standings : this being done, the Pike-men came fourth and gaue the salute all together, with so good order and comfort, that it seemed vnto the *Spaniards*, that they did exceede all the warlike orders vsed in all the world : and if it were so, that their stomacks and hardnesse were equal vnto their dexteritie, and number of people, it were an easie thing for them to conquer the dominion of all the world. If it so chance, that any Souldier should lacke in his Office, and not repaire to his place appointed, hee is straight-ways punished very cruelly, which is the occasion, that euerie one of them hath a care vnto his charge. This their Muster endured foure houres, and it was certified vnto the *Spaniards*, that the same day and houre it is done in all Cities and Townes, throughout the whole Kingdome, although they are without suspicion of enemies.

Five and twentie dayes after that the *Infuanto* had giuen the resolute answer vnto the *Spaniards*, came the Visitor thither, the whole Citie went forth to receiue him, who entered in with so great maiestie, that if they had not knowne who hee was, they could not haue bene persuaded, but that he had bene the King. The next day following, the *Spaniards* went to visite him, for duties sake, as also for that hee had a desire to see them. They found him in his lodging, where he began to make visitation of the Citie. In their Courts were an infinite number of people, which came thither with Petitions and complaynes, but in the Halls within, there was none but his Seruants and Sergeants. When that any came for to present his Petition, the Porter that was at the entrie made a great noyse, in manner of an *Ouf*, for that it was a good way from the place whereas the Visitor did sit, then cometh fourth straight-ways one of his Pages, and taketh the Petition, and carryeth it vnto him. At this time it was told him how 40 that the *Castillos* were there : hee commanded that they should enter, and talked with them a few words, but with great courtesie, and all was touching the Imprisonment of *Limabon*, without making any mention of their departure or tarrying. So after awhile that hee had beheld them and their apparell, hee tooke his leaue of them, saying, that by reason of the great businesse hee had in that visitation, he could not then see them any courtesie, neither to vnderstand of them what their request and desire was, but gaue them great thanks for their courtesie shewed, in that they would come to visite him.

Three dayes after the Visitor was come thither, the *Infuanto* departed for his owne house, with order that with all speed possible, hee should ordayne Ships wherein the *Castillos* should returne vnto the *Philippines*. Likewise the same day, all those that were there assembled by the order of the Vice-roy, departed vnto their owne houses. And the *Spaniards* were commanded 50 for to stay vntill the full of the Moone, which should bee the twentieth of August, and that day they should take their leaue of them : for on that day amongst them, it is holden for good to begin any thing whatsoever. Wherein they doe vie great superstition, and doe make many banquets, as vpon New-yeeres day.

The day before the departure of the *Spaniards*, there came some in behalfe of the Vice-roy to inuite them, and made them banquet in the order and fashion as at the first : although this (for that it was at their departure) was more sumptuous, wherein was represented a Comedie, which was very excellent and good, whose argument was first declared vnto them. All the which they did represent so naturally, and with so good apparell and personages, that it seemed a thing to 60 passe in Act. There was not in this banquet the Vice-roy, but those Captaynes which were there the first time : and another Captayne, vnto whom was giuen the charge, to bring the *Spaniards* vnto *Manilla*, who was called *Chenatalay*, a principall Captayne of that Prouince. When the banquet was ended, they were carryed with great companie from the Hall, whereas the banquet was made, vnto the house of the *Cogencoc*, who was the Kings Treasurer, & dwelt there hard by.

New-moone
Musters.

Their aduising
their Picces,
hearts, are layd
to be taught.

Souldiers are
punished.

Visitors en-
trance in, first.

Manner of his
Courts.

Superstition.

Parting com-
piment.

Treasur.

The Answer of Don PEDRO DE ACUNNA, Governour of the Philippines,
to the Visittour of Chincheo in China.

THE Governour answered these Letters by the same Messengers that brought them: using terms full of courtesy and authority. Hee rehearsed the rebellion of the Singleyes, from the beginning: Hee justified the defense of the Spaniards, and the punishment that was executed upon the Offenders: Hee said, that no Common-wealth can be governed without chastising the bad, nor without rewarding the good. And therefore that he did not repent him of that execution: because it was done for repressing of them that thought to defy him. That the Visions should bee Judge, what hee would do, if the gleyes Merchants Anihayes, which died among the offenders: But that this was impossible to be satisfied: because the furie of warre doth not give leave to kill some, and to save others, especially being assured of the Souldiers: in the heats of battell. That using mercy to those that remained alive, condemned them to come in the Gallies: which is the punishment, which is ordained among the Castilians for those that have deserved death. Yet if it seeme in China that it ought to be moderated, hee would grant so great an offence, they may hereafter fall: game into the same. A thing that would first of all may be feared, that no other affection moveth mee then that of justice, I will shortly send them to be delivered to the right: Heeres, or unto such persons as of right they belong unto. None other respect moveth those prisoners, licence will be granted in China to the kinship of those which died in the Rebellion, to them will not be moved to such things upon a weak ground: especially none occasion thereof being given them on our part. And in case they should be of another minde, wee Spaniards are a People which know very well how to defend our Right, Religion, and Territories. And let not the Chineses thinke, that we are Lords of all the World, as they would have us thinke. For wee Castilians, which have made the World with Spanes, know perfectly the Countries of China. Wherefore they shall doe well to take knowledge, that the King of Spaine hath continuall warres with as mighty Kings as theirs: and doth suppress them, and putteth them to great troubles. And it is no new case, that when our enemies thinke that they have vanquished us, they finde us marching and destroying the Confinnes of their Land, and not to cease, until wee have call them out of their Thrones, and taken their Scepters from them. I would be much grieved with the change of the commerce: But I believe also that the Chineses would not willingly lose it, since that thereby they obayne so great profit, carrying to their Kingdome our Silver, which neuer faileth in trucke of their merchandise, which are light things, and soone worne out.

The ships of the Englishmen, which arrived on the coast of China, it was determined not to receive: because they be no Spaniards, but rather * their enemies, and Pirates. Wherefore if they come to Manila, they shall be banished. Finally, because wee Spaniards doe always justifie our cause, and doe banish our enemies, that shall be justified which is here proposed. And wee versus other men's possessions, nor invade our friends, that shall be justified which is here proposed. And from hence forward let them know in China, that wee never do any thing for feare, nor for threats of our enemies. Don Pedro concludes, offering continuance of amitie by new bonds of peace with the Kingdome of China: and that he will set at liberty in due time the Prisoners which he held in the Gallies: albeit he thought to use them, as he did, in the voyage of Maluco; which he put in execution with speed. And all this hee precisely performed.

CHAP. IIII.

The reports of a Mahometan Merchant which had beene in Cambalu: and the troublefome travell of BENEDICTVS GOES, a Portugall Jesuite, from Labor to China by land, throughe the Tartars Countreys.

Epist. Roman. 1599.

Xatai and Xatai, being for Xatai and Cambalu.

Legat.

IN Eremas Xaxero a Jesuite, in a Letter from Labor in India, subiect to the Mogoll, dated, August, 1598, relateth that an old man there knowne to have died liued 100000. Peeces of Gold at Mecca, affirmed to the Prince that he had liued in Xatai thirteenth years, in Xambala the chiefe Citie: that the King thereof was mighty, and had in his Empire one thousand and fiftie Cities, some very populous; that he had often seene the King, with whom no man spakes but by a Supplication, nor is answered but by an Eunuch. And asked how he had a chiefe thirler, he said, he being a Merchant iustlyed also the person of the Embassadour of the King of Cogor.

CHAP. 4. Cethay taken to be Christian for Pope-like Holies.

and being detained in the first Citie by the Magistrate, he shewed his Commission, and Posse was presently sent to the King, who returned in a month, riding ninety or in hundred courses a day, with change of Horses; bringing him Letters of Admission, Hee said that they punish shewes severely: that those Xataians are white, long bearded, personable, and comely, therefore to be preferred before the Rumes or Turkes; in Religion Iameses, (Christians, he called of Iesus) some Mahometans or Iewes, and many Mahometans, inasmuch that they hoped to bring the Christian King to that Sect. They had (he said) the Jesuits in another conference) many Temples, and Images painted and grauen, and Crucifixes which they with great deuotion worshipped; many Priests, much reuerence, each hauing his owne Church; to whom they offer their gifts, they liued single and kept Schooles; one supererment at the Kings charge were the Churches built and repaired; they were blacke clothes, and on holidayes wear, with Caps like the Jesuits; but greater; many Monasteries of both Sexes, and some in their owne houses, offering a single life; the Countrey rich, hauing many filer Mines; and that the King had foure hundred Elephants, which they said were brought from Malacca, and that Merchants resorted thither; the Voyage fixe moneths. Xaxerius addeth, that in Caximir he heard of many Christin in Rebat, a Kingdome adioyning to Cetai, with Churches, Priests, and Bishops. These reports (sayth Triguemo) the Saracens made, either of purpose to deceiue, after their wont: or were deceiued by like shew of Holies in Images, Lamps, Altars, Priests vestments, Processions, Singings, and the like, which the Deuill hath imitated among the Chinois like to our (Romish) Rites.

These reports caused the Jesuits in India to thinke of sending one of their Society into those parts. Pimenta the Father Viceroy sent notice thereof to the Pope, and to the King of Spaine, who tooke Order with the Vite-roy to be aduised herein by Pimenta. Benedictus Goes a brother of that Society and Coadjutor to Xaxerius, was thought fit for that designe, hauing the Persian tongue. And lauing come from Echebar (father of the present Mogoll) who had lately taken Brampor, with his Legat, to Goa; he was sent backe to Labor, to accompanie the Merchants; which every fifth yeere, as that Saracen related, with title of Legats of the King of Persia, and other Easterne Kings (not otherwise admitted) went thither. In the yeere therefore 1602, he went to Agra, where Echebar applauded his purpose, and gaue him foure hundred Crownes for his journey. Besides the said Rupias hee had already spent. Hee changed his habite, and dis- 30 quised himselfe like an Armenian Merchant, and so went to Labor, calling himselfe Branda Andia, whither he came on the eight of December. He went to the house of Iohn Galsfor a Venetian, and there provided himselfe of necessaries, wearing his haire and beard long, and Leo Grimmus a Greeke, well skilled in Turkish and Persian, vndertaking to be his companion, with Demetrius another Greeke, and Isaac an Armenian. Furnished with diuers writings and a Catalogue of mouable Feasts till An. 1610. he set forth An. 1603, the sixth of January from his Superiour, and in Lent after from Labor, with the companie of Merchants which got from the Mogols to Cuscar, almost five hundred men, with many Camels and carriages.

In a moneths journey they came to a Citie called Athor, in the Province of Labor; and after fifteen dayes, passed a Riuer a flight foot broad, where they stayed five dayes, being told of theues in great number at hand. Two moneths after they came to another Citie called Passior, where they rested twentie dayes. Thence they going to another small Towne, met with a certaine Anchorite a stranger, by whom they vnderstood that thirte dayes off was a Citie named Capion-mo, into which the Saracens are not permitted entrance, and if they enterare put to death. But Ezechia Merchants are admitted their Citie, yet not their Temples. Hee said, that the Inhabitants of that Region Goss supposed that they were Christians. In the place where they found this stranger, they stayed other twentie dayes. And because the way was infested with Theues they received of the Lord of the place a Conuooy of foure hundred Souldiers. In five and twentie dayes they came from hence to a place called Ghidshi, all which way their Carriages went at the foot of a Hill. The Merchants with Armes on the tops of the Hill made search for Theues, which vie to throw stones from thence on the Passengers, excepte thus prevented. In this place the Merchants pay Tribute. Being assaulted by Theues many were wounded, and they had much ado to saue their liues and goods. Benedict escaped by flight into the Woods. At night they came againe together, and auoyded the Theues. After other twentie dayes journey they came to Cabul, a Citie and Mart frequent, not yet hauing passed the Mogoll Dominions. Here they stayed eight dayes: for some of the Merchants would goe no further, and others durst not, being so few. In this Mart the Sister of the King of Cuscar, by whose Dominion this his Sister was Mother to the King of Carauan, The Kings name was Massimet Carr; this his Sister was Mother to the King of Cusan, and called Agabem (Age is a title given by the Saracens to those which haue bene on Pilgrimage at Mecca, whence hee now returned) being destitute of provision for her journey, shee demanded aide of the Merchants, promising to restore all faithfully with amercement, when they were come to her Kingdome.

Goss thought it an occasion to procure the friendship of another King, his Mogoll Patents now wearing out. Hee lent her therefore on file of some 600 li. six hundred Crownes, refusing any wearing out. Hee lent her therefore on file of some 600 li. six hundred Crownes, refusing any wearing out. Hee lent her therefore on file of some 600 li. six hundred Crownes, refusing any wearing out.

A Course of 400 li. a mile and half, and sometimes two miles.

De Chris. exp. dist. 5. Smal. 15. 1511. 1513. 1514. 1515. 1516. 1517. 1518. 1519. 1520. 1521. 1522. 1523. 1524.

Athel.

Passior.

Capion-mo, Saracens not admitted.

Ghidshi.

Assault of Theues.

Cabul.

A kind of Marble much valued in China
 Curacar.
 From the extreme border of the Mogul.

any contract of interest, which hee boundlessly repayed in pieces of Marble much esteemed in China, the best merchandise for such as goe to Catay. *Lee Girmose* the Priest, wearied with the tediousness of the journey, went no further, and *Demetrius* stayed in this Citie on merchandizing affaires. *Goez* held on with *Isaac* the Armenian, in the company of other Merchants, which gave likelihood of better security. The first Citie they came at was called *Curacar*, which place is great store of Iron. Here *Goez* was not a little troubled, the *Chinggis* Seale in these his borders being neglected, which all this way hitherto had freed him from payment of Customes. Ten dayes after they came to a small Towne, called *Parnam*, the utmost of the *Mogul* confines.

After five dayes stay, they had twentie dayes journey over high Mountains into a Region named *Anglescan*. In fifteene dayes more they came to *Calcia*. The people of this Region hath yellow haire on head and beard like the *Low-Country-men*, and dwell in diuers Villages. Ten dayes after, they came to a place called *Gialadabath*, where the *Bramanes* exact Customes granted them by the King *Burnatze*. After other fifteene dayes they came to *Talban*, where *Ciull* broiles detrayned them a moneth; the *Calicians* rebelling and endangering the wayes. Hence they passed to *Cheman*. Vnder *Abdullahan* King of *Samarhan*, *Burgania*, and *Bacharate*, and of other neighbouring Kingdomes, is a small Towne, the Captaine whereof sent to the Merchants to containe themselves within the walls, the *Calicians* insineling all without. They answered, that they would pay their Customes, and pursue their journey by night. But hee forbade them, saying, that the Rebels had no Hories as yet, which if they could take from the Carawan, they would prove more mischievous: much better it were, if they would ioyne with him to repell them. Scarcely were they come to the walls, when the rumour came of the *Calicians* coming: at which newes the Captaine and his ranne away. The Merchants erected a sudden fortification of their packes, and carried into the same great store of stones to serve their turns if Arrows failed. The *Calicians* perceiving that, sent a message to the Merchants, that they should feare nothing, for they would accompanie and defend them. They durst not trust them, but resolved to flee to the next Wood, the Thieves taking out of the packes what they pleased, and then calling them forth, and permitting them which their emptied packes to enter the emptye walls. *Benedict* lost nothing but a Horie, for which also hee after received Cotton clothes. They lived within the walls in great feare. But at that time a great Captaine, named *Qolchet Ebadiscan*, sent his Brother our of the *Bacharate* Region to the Rebels, which caused them to permit the Merchants to goe freely: in all which journey the Rere was vexed with Pilferers. Four of them set upon *Goez*, to escape whom hee threw amongst them his *Persian* Turbant, whereof they making a foot-ball, hee meant while set spurs to his Horie and out-tooke his companie.

Tengibadafcian.
 Chirchman.
 Serpaul.
 Sarail.
 Snowie way.
 Tangbatat.
 Iatovich.
 Hiarshan.

Eight dayes after with a tedious passage they came to *Badafcian*, called *Tengi*, which signifieth *A troublefome way*: for there is space but for one to passe, and that on the high bankes of a great River. The Inhabitants with a companie of Souldiers set upon the Merchants, and tooke from *Goez* three Hories, which hee after redeemed with gifts. Here they stayed ten dayes, and thence in one day came to *Chirchman*, where they were hie dayes detrayned with raines in the open field, and were besides assailed by Thieves. Ten dayes after they arrived at *Serpaul*, a place quite forsaken. They climbed into a high Hill, called *Sacrituma*, whither the strongest Hories were only able to passe, the rest going about. Two of *Goez* his Hories halted, and had much ado to outtake their fellows. In twentie dayes journey coming to the Province *Sarail*, they there found many neighbouring Villages. After two dayes stay for refreshing, they in two dayes more came to the foot of a Hill, termed *Guealith*, which they ascended, thicke covered with Snow, whereupon many were frozen, and *Goez* was in great danger. For the Snow held them five dayes; after which they came to *Tenginar*, which belongs to the Kingdom of *Casfar*. There *Isaac* the Armenian fell from the bankes of a great River into the water, and was eight houres space half dead. In fifteene dayes more they attayned the Towne *Iatovich*, by such an ill way that *Goez* lost fix Hories with the trauell. In five dayes hee got (halting before the companie) to the chiefe Citie named *Hiarshan*, whence hee provided his companions of necessities, who soone after arrived there in November, 1603.

Hiarshan the Seat Royall of the Kingdom of *Casfar*, hath great resort of Merchants, and is also well stored with variety of merchandise. The Carawan of *Cabal* here ends their Voyage: and from thence to *Catay* is a new one furnished, the Captainship whereof the King fillth at a great price, and conferreth on the Captaine Regall power over the Merchants shorow all that way. It was a yeeres pace before they could all be ready to so long and dangerous a journey, which required many persons. Neither is it performed every yeere, but by them only which know they shall be admitted into *Catay*. There is no better merchandise (as before is said) than a certaine shining Marble, which we are wont to call *Jafer*, for want of a better word, which the King of *Catay* buyeth at a great price; and what hee leaueth they may sell to others at exceeding rates. Of it they make diuers ornaments for Vessels, Garments, Giroules, with leaues and flowers artificially engrauen. The Chinese call it *Twejt*; and of it are two kinds, one precious

precious which is taken out of the River *Cotan*, not farre from the Citie Royall, in manner as the Diuers hill for Pearles, and is brought out like thicke flints; the other manner is digged out of the Hill, and is sawed into broad stones about two Ells wide, after fitted to the Voyage. This Hill is twentie dayes journey from that Citie Royall, and is filled *Cangjungi Casfo*, that is, *The stone Mountaines*. They are thence taken with incredible labour, both for the desertness of the place, and the inexorable hardness of the Marble, which they say is forced with fire made thereon to yeeld: the licenfe also to take it, is deere sold by the King to some one Merchant, who purchaseth the Monopoly; and when they goe thither they carrie a yeeres prouision for the Labourers, which in that space returne not.

10 *Goez* visited the King, whose name is *Mahometin*, and presented him with a Watch, a Glasse and other European Commodities, which made him very welcome. Hee would not at first tell him of going to *Catay*, but only spake of the Kingdom of *Culu* East-ward from thence, and procured his grant thereto, assisted by the Sonne or his Sister the Pilgrime Queene before mentioned. Six moneths passed, and *Demetrius* one of his old Societie which staid at *Cabal*, came thither. At that time by the Kings Licenfe one of the Merchants was filled Emperour as in jest, to whom the other Merchants after the custome gave Presents, which *Demetrius* refusing, was in danger to be imprisoned and beaten (for so large is his power) had not *Benedict* interceded and by a gift compounded the business. Thence also brake into the House and setting a Sword to the Armenians breitt terrified him from crying; but our Brother *Demetrius* hearing, cried out and carried them away. *Benedict* was gone to the King of *Quatun* Mother for payment of his Debt: his Residence was ten dayes Journey thence, for that he spent a moneth there before his returne. In this space the *Saracens* raised a report that he was dead, slaine by their Priests for refusing their holies. Now because he dyed intestate, they fought to seize on his goods, which was very troublesome to *Isaac* and *Demetrius*, both for defence of the goods, and losse of their Friend, which redoubled their joy at his returne with plenty of that Marble, and hee in thankfulness gave much Almes.

On a day as he was eating with other *Saracens*, one came in armed, and letting his Sword to his brest, charged him to iurke. *Mahomet*. He answered, that in his Law there was no such name inturke, and therefore refused: and by the company that mad follow was extruded. The like zeale endangered him on like termes of *Mahomet* profession. On another day he was called by the King of *Casfar* in the presence of his *Casfis*, the Priests, & the *Mullas* or learned men, and asked what Law he professed, whether that of *Moses*, of *David*, or *Mahomet*, and whom they call *Isa*, and turned any way when hee prayed, beleieving that God was every where: about which rose amongst them great controuersie, they vying to turne to the West: yet they concluded that our Law also might seeme good.

Meane-whiles one *Agist* of that Country was named Captaine of the future Carawan, who invited our Brother to his House (having heard well of him) to a Feast, wherein they had Musicke after their manner. At the end, he desired his company to *Casfar*, which hee had Musicke but had learned by experience how to deale with the *Saracens*, and would be intreated, that he might seeme to doe, rather then receive, a Favour. The Captaine vouch the Kings mediators. Letters Patents for all that way. His *Cabal* companie were herewith offended, as loth to lose his company, and much disuaded him; but hee made faw as though hee were loth hereto to reuoke. They said that these people were perfidious, and would deuore him and his: nor was their feare causeless, for many of the Nations had told them, that those three Armenians (so they called all these three Christians) as soone as they were out of the walls would be slaine. This terrified *Demetrius* from going further, who also disuaded *Goez* but in vaine, saying, he would not disappoint the hopes of so many, the Archbishop of *Goez*, and the Vice-roy to lole his expences, but would adventure his life in the Designe.

Hee provided ten Hories for his Carriages, and for his follow, having another at home. The *Bassa* was gone to his house five dayes Journey thence to make all ready, and thence sent to *Goez* to follow.

Ann 1604. about the midst of Nouember, they came to a place called *Ialci*, where they vfe to pay Customes, and their Commissions are examined. Hence they went to *Hendulac* to *Alcorghes*, to *Hagadabath*, to *Egriar*, to *Mesetele*, to *Talbat*, to *Horma*, to *Tocantat*, to *Mian*, then to *Capetadil*, to *Sarc Guebadil*, to *Cembajic*, to *Aconfrice*, to *Cuacor*, to *Asfu*: in this way they spent five and twentie dayes, the way troublesome, both with frowne or Rocks, and with Sand. *Asfu* is a Towne of the Kingdom of *Casfar*, the Go who went and gaue him childish Presents, Sugar and the like, and was gently entreated of to iatise him, he did,

Mahomet can King of Casfar, Culu.

* To vfe (as it seemes) those words: *La ilah ilah, Muhammed rifidullah*, the Characteristick note of *Mahometan* profession.

* To Cascar words.

Carawan Bassa. See before in *Chengis* Moneth the like Courney and the same place.

Goez death.

He visited also his Mother and shewed her his Patent, which was with great reverence admitted: to her he gave a Chrysell glasse, a Calico cloth of *India*, and the like. The Childs Governor also, or Protector, which swayd the publick Affaires, sent for him. In this way one of Goz's Horses fell into a swift River, and escaped to the other side; and came againe of himselfe, the Name of Iesus being invoked.

In this way the Delcor is passed called *Caracabai*, that is, *The black Land of the Caybanos*, in which they pay the *Caybanos* fayed long. In this Towne they stayed fifteen dayes for other Merchants, and then departing went to *Outragach Gaze*, to *Cafimato*, to *Ordel*, to *Sergolach*, to *Pagan*, and after to *Cucia*, a small Towne where they stayed a whole month to rest themselves from beafts, which by the irkesomeffe of the wayes, and weight of the Marble, and want of Barley failed them. At this place of the King *Caluco* sent them to *Guac*, where they stayed 10 dayes, almost spent. Here the Priests demanded of *Guac*, why in their Solemn Fast Banquet he had not sent them a piece of Stone Large or Fine. After they were gone hence in this Country was gouerned by a bafe Sonne of the King *Caluco*, which wastille, & well fortified. This another Religion, began to terrifie him, saying, it was a bold pson of another profession to enter those parts: for he might lawfully take from him his life and goods. He then read his Letters Patents he was pacified, and with a Present was made also a friend. One night disputing about their Law, with the Priests and Learned men, he sent for *Benedict* into the Palace, where he was, saying, of some ill intent being at so vnconforable a time) he went and always protected him, approving his Sayings. The Arguments silenced the Aduersaries. The Vice-roy 20 *Majestras*, saying, that his Progenitors had profited the same way, saying that the *Christians* were the true Religion, and that he should be contented with the same. He then said, that the Disputation he made him Banquet, and caused him to lye that night in the Palace, so that *Jaques* sleeping at his returne, and almost in despair to see him. In this Citie they stayed three monthes. For the *Caruanan Batta* would not depart without a great Company (it being so much more profitable to them to suffer any man to goe before. *Guac* wearied with this tedious faye and chargeable expence, with a Gift obtained leave of the Viceroy, the Caruanan and Captaine being asent it.

He then intended to proceed from *Cádiz*, when the Merchants of the former *Caravan* returned from *Catag*. They failing an Embassage (after their wrong) arrived into the Royal *30* *Seat of Catag*, and having conferred in the same Palace of Strangers with our (testimony) reported strange and certain news of Father *Mashew* and the *Company*, to *Gore*, who informed that *Catag* was become *Cine*. *They Saracens* were the same heretofore preferred of, which lasted three months with ours, and told him that the Fathers had been reported to the King, Watches, Pictures and other *European* Presents, and were much respected in the Palace, of the greatest, and (adding more lies) said that they had often spoken with the King. They reasonable well painted their faces, but knew not their names: by reason that after the *Cine* manner they used red and black paint, and not white. Argument they shewed a Paper written in *Turkish*, which they had taken out of the dust, when the Seruac swept the Chamber, to show in their own Country. This cheered *Gore*, hearing that *Catag* was *Cine*, and that *Peque* the Royal *40* *Citie* was *Camplia*.

The Vice-roy gave him his Letters for security, and demanding whether he would be infri-
be a Christian, he answered yes; for all this way he had come, called by the Name of *Irist*, and
to would hold out to the end. An old *Saracen Priest* hearing this, caft his Cap on the ground, ap-
plauding his refolute Zeale, saying, that theirs are reported to defende and alter their Religion
with *Pecunia*. *Goss* went on with his companion, and a few others, and in twenty dayes
came to *Pucioa* a Towne of the fame Kingdome, where the Governor vied him kindly and
amply provided him out of his owne House. Thence they proceeded to *Turbin*, and staid a
whole month in that fortified City. Thence they passed to *Aramuch*, and after to *Cassal*, a for-
tified place where they refreshed themselves another month, because they well vied in all
the Kingdome of *Cialio*, which ends at this Towne. From *Cassal* in nine dayes they well vied in all
to the Northerne wales of *China*, to a place called *Chaucoan*, where they staid five and twentie
dayes for the Answer of the Vice-roy of that Province.

Savins in China. After this they were admitted entrance within the walledes, and in one day came to *Sincow*, a Citie, where they heard much of *Pequin*, and other names knowne; but that now he was out of all doubt that *Catalay* and *China* differed only in name. All the way from *Cualoy* to the borders of *China*, is infamous with incursions of the *Tartars*: and therefore Merchants passe these places with great feare, searching by day from the Neighbour Hills whether there bee any out-rode of *Tartars*; and if they judge the wayes secure they trauell by night with silence. In the way they found many small fires, which are inferrible flame, hauing aduentured to goe alone: although the *Tartars* holdme kill the Nations who are their enemies, yet they are mercifull, so when they come they take away their flocks of Sheepe, and Herds of Bullocks, Their Carriages, and what they can Pillie, saying, it is good for beasts, not men. They feed only on flesh, nor sparing Horfes, Mules, Camels, and yet are laide to live one hundred yeares.

The

The *Saracen* Nations bordering on these parts of *China*, might easily by the *Chinese* bee subdued, as being not warlike men, if the *Chinese* cared to enlarge their Dominions. In this way one night *Benedict* fell from his Horse, his company going on and not missing him till they came to their Lodging, and then *Isaac* went backe to seeke him and found him by the found of the Name *Iesus*, almost despairing to see his company any more.

These walls were built on the West of *Ching-yang*, as it trends North-wards, about the space of two hundred * miles, where the *Tartarian* out-roads are now lefte dangerous. Against them are builded two fortified Cities with choise Garrisons. They have a peculiar Vice-roy and other Magistrates over them, which are commanded only from *Peking*. In one of these Cities (*Amoy* in the Province of *Seecy*) the Vice-roy redeth with other chief Magistrates. The other City (*Amoy* in the *Szechuen*) hath a special Gouverneur, and is distributed into two parts; in one of which the *Chinese* (whom the *Saracens* here call *Aligany*) in the other; the *Saracens*; huse their Habitation, which come from *Afcar*, and the like Western Kingdomes for Merchandizing Affaires. Some of them, as the *Portugals* at *Amoy*, in the Province of *Canton*, lettle their abodes and have wives and children, according to Native fusticks. But those *Portugals* live according to their owne rites, and every night are flurvy by their owne, whereas these *Saracens* are governed by the *Chin* Law. It is, that he which hath lived thirty years, may not returne to his Country. The Merchant comes viciually from the West to this City, which with sayned Embassies, by ancient leagues of feuen or eight Kingdomes with that City, which with sayned Embassies, by ancient feueinty two in name of Legats should pay Tribute to the King, that shining Marble, piece of Diamonds, blue colour and other things; thence they goe to the Court at publique charge; table; for no man payes deier for this Marble then the King himselfe; who either for any way profitable to take any thing of Strangers; for nothing. And they are so enterprized at the Kings cost, that all things reckoned, they get every day abuse their necesseary charges Duckets, and many times for any ambitious of this Embassage, will purchase it of the *Caranan Basse* (who hath the nomination) for a great price: at that time counterfeiting their Kings Letters, acknowledging vassallage to the King, and the King, the like Embassies the *Chinese* admit from diuers Kingdomes, from *Candah*, *China*, *Siam*, *Lacca*, *Corea*, and Some of the *Tartary* Kingdomes, not without intert with their King, as if all the World paid Tribute vnto him, when as rather the *Chinese* in this manner pay Tributes to them.

[illegible]

6c Journey was vnrreionable in the harvett of Winter, being almost four months Journey
from *Peyma*. Yet did not Rather *Matthew* desire any longer, which if he had done, *Gress*
would have bene better for his coming. Hee and two others of the Societie writ to his
brother, and was faine to fill his *Marsden* in this place then hee had done in the
Duckets and paid his Debts, and fulfilled his duty the price for promotions, whenc hee made 1300.
with his Capraine, and he with entertainments. Meane-while, the Carduall came
to the towne, and was taken into the number of the fœuente two, and being forced to borrow,
and because hee could not paye, hee became no going to *Peyma*. Hee hid one hundred, and
some *Sarcenet*, which hee became no going to *Peyma*. Hee hid one hundred, and
some *Sarcenet*, which hee became no going to *Peyma*.

* This zoo is to be understood of the Westerner or perhaps all but for much is natural of rocks or hills or *Trigantia* a Dutchman might mean Dutch miles. The Map expresses about 100. miles. The reports are diuers as from reports for who could see it all? and what good would 100. miles doe, which horsemen in few days might passe. Diuers Embassages counted.

Reports of 1140 sellers to be weighed.

Novem. 1606.

Cañuan cor-
meth.

Ee 2

Singhan.

Goetz dyeth.

Tartarian Tar-
sars.

Goetz journey.

Chenl.
1665.

and his Servant ranne from him at Singhan, the Mother Citie of the Province of *Seiaisi*, carrying away half their provision. At the end of March, 1667, he yet made shift to get to *Seuen*, and thither the next day, and sent *Isaac* into the Market who brought *Ferdinandus* to him. Having received the Letters, he brake into a *Nunc dimittis*, as becoming to have ended his Pilgrimage. Eleven dayes after *Goetz* dyeth, not without suspicion of Poyson from the *Saracens*. They had perpetual Spies to watch and catch what he left, which they did most barbarously execute, and amongst the rest his Journal was loit which he had written in very small Letters. They sought for it to prevent payment of Debts there entred. They would have buried him like a *Saracen*, but *Isaac* and *Ferdinand* excluded them and buried him, with a recitall of the *Rosarie*, in defect of other Bookes. Thus died *Benedict Goetz*, a man of great parts, which had after his admission done great service to the Societie (howsoever he was not a Priest) much esteemed by the Great *Mogoll*, whom he averted from the Warre of *India*. He disswaded before his death that Ours should not trust the *Saracens*, nor adventure this way, as vnprofitable and dangerous. And although he dyed without Confession in so many yeeres, yet he was cheerefull in the mercie of God, and professed that his confidence did not acule him of matters of any moment.

By a Tartarian custome they divide the goods of the deceased amongst them all, and therefore bound *Isaac* threatening to kill him if he turned not *Mahometan*; but *Ferdinand* put vp a Supplication to the Vice-roy at *Cancer*, who subscribed that the Governour of *Seuen* should examine the business. He first was fawcible, but corrupted by bribes threatened to whip him, and held him in Prison three dayes. But he sold his Garments for want of Money, and continued the Suit five monthes, not being able at first to confesse with *Isaac* for want of Language, *Isaac* only uttered a few Portuguese words, and the Judge had thought they had spoken in the Canton Tongue. At last, *Ferdinand* learned to speake *Portugall*, and was able to confesse with him. The *Saracens* pleaded that *Ferdinand* was a *Chinese* by his countenance, the other a *Saracen*; she answered that his Mother was a *Chinese*, whom he resembled. But nothing mowed the Judge more then that he was an enemy to their Religion, and pulling a piece of Porke out of his sleeve, they both did eat it; whereupon with laughter of the Assembly, the *Saracens* abominated both, spitting at the *Armenian*, and leaving the Suit, saying, that the *Armenian* was deluded by a *China-cozenner*. For in all the way to prevent offence, *Benedict* and *Isaac* had abstained from Porke. And thus all was by the Judges sentence restored to *Ferdinand* which had beene *Benedict's*; but nothing was found, save Marble pieces which had beene hidden in the ground, which was sold, and yeelded to pay their Debts and provision for their Journey to *Peking*, whither both of them came. They brought a faire gilded Croffe-Picture and the Charters of three Kings, *Caspar*, *Joseph* and *Cualas*, which are retained at *Peking* for a memoriall. *Isaac* related all this Soorie to Father *Matthew* upon credit of his memorie, and having stayed a month, was sent the wayed way to *Amoy*; where being well entertained, he sent in laying thence to *India*, was taken by *Hollanders*, and loit both goods and liberie. But the *Portugall* of *Malacca* redeemed him, and he held on his course to *India*, and hearing of his Wives death, went not to the *Mogoll* Country, but staid at *Chenl*, and is now at the writing hereof alive.

CHAP. V.

A General Collection and Historically representation of the Jesuites entrance into Iapon and China, until their admission in the Royall Citie of Nanquin,

§. I.

OF FRANCIS XAVIER, MELCHIOR NYNNES, VALIGNANVS, RVGGERIVS AND PASIVS.



Ignatius and Francis canonized by Greg.
15. March 12.
1625.

Orasmuch as we have failed lately from the *Philippines* to *China*, and backe againe with our Friers, and have given you a Iesuits Land Journey, we thought it worthy our labour also to launch into the deepe of their Navigations, and to honour the Iesuits, (to whom in the following parts of this Historie we are so indebted) with observing their Observations of *Iapon*, and the intercourse thereof with *China*; and from it (as the greatest and most glorious Easterne Iesuiticall Conquest) to shipp our selves in their Barge to *China*. How *Francis Xavier* (now Sainted at *Rome*, together with *Ignatius Loyola*, first Founder of that Order) laboured the Conversions of

Gentilis

CHAP. §. I. Iesuites glorying of Conversions: their Profelites examined. 317

Gentilis and *Pagani* to *Christianitas*, as in other parts of the *Indies*, so heere in *Iapan* I willingly acknowledge; yea, so farre am I from envying either him or his Order, or any other Order (the Religious, their Trophies of Conversions, that I could with the Pope seated in *Aviano*, and all the Iesuits, & Friers, yea, all his Iesuted Clergie fully possessed of the *Bonzean* Colleges & Temples in *Iapon*; whence a double good might issue; to the *Indies*, some light in stead of a total darknesse, a diseased life being better then death; and to *Europe*, to be lightened of their burthen, where professing themselves Lights, they prove Lightnings, and raise so manifold combustions. And most especially could I with this honour to my Country-men the *English* Iesuites, and Priests, Popish Emiliaries of whatsoever Order, that they were there ordered, or (which first of their ambition better) ordering that Easterne World, rather then here disordered and disordering, playing the Lords of *Christ*-rule in the West. The very Name of *Christ* is sweet to me, even in *Iapon*, yea, from a Iesuites mouth, or a Iesuites Convent; and would God they taught them Iesus more, and lesse Iesuitish fancies of exchanged worship of Creatures, howsoever gilded with *Christian* Names, that the *Iaponians* might learne to acknowledge Iesus and *Maria* truly, and not with Names and Images of *they know not what*, to worship *Venus* and her Sonne *Cupid*, in stead of the Blessed Virgin, and that incarnate Blessednesse her blessed Sonne, who is *God ever* and blessed for ever.

One told *Corier* the *Mexican* Conqueror then speaking great words, that there is much difference in conquering Neighbours at home, and naked *Americans*; I adde; that a man may be Christianized, and yet farre short of *Christianisme*, (euen by Iesuites * selfimonies) and that (somewhat more is required to a *Christian* then *Christian* Names, given in Baptisme) and that (somewhat more have done without further instruction. Deuotion is rather to be prized by weight and worth, then by tale and numbers, as happens in their Beades here, and too often in their Conversions: there which they indeed lo much to be magnified and gloried in, would afford us freely in men of capacite to overthrow *strong bonds* and *high imaginations*, as here to worke out our filly women laden with innies, hoping for their Confession-cure; and there, with fillmilt to such Monks as their *Bonza* teach them. Themselues confesse, that it is not much, they can preuale with *Mahometans* any where here in *China*: and Ours have found them to say more so then they had done at this litle.

I should much rejoyce that their Reports were true, and that as an Orator * of their hath solemnized the Canonization of *Louisa*, and *Xavier* the *Indian* Apostle (so hee stile them) this Saint *Francis* had converted three hundred thousand Soules, of innumerable Nations; yea, all Heretikes in neere fixtene hundred yeeres, had not converted to many, nay, *Christ* in eleven yeeres. I am glad to hear it, and that which hee addeth, as he alone adjoyned to whatsoever had not infected do many Languages and peoples, as those, that all Heretikes taught many with *Christian* Truth and Pietie. Doth this manifest how much of the World hath bene *Christian*, and how much after that Hereticall? how many more Nations the *Nestorian* Heretike hath infected then *Xavier* saw, leauening, in manner, all *Asiatum* *Constantinople* where it begets *Orthodox* *Cathay*, or *China*, and the *Indies*; and hath not the *Laetius* *Hierome* (aith, groned and wounded to see it selfe growne *Arrian*) our all the World, which a Saint *Hierome* Christians then any way converted *Ethiopes*? Yet the great Nations of the *Gobies* and *Fandals* were of *Ethiopes* made *Arrians*, the great Nations of the *Lithuanians*, *Muscovites*, *Russes*, &c. have not many hundred yeeres since of *Arrians* beene converted to the *Greek* Church, which they hold not Catholike (that I mention not the *Armenians*, *Georgians*, and others) one of which numbred many times three hundred thousand.

And that one Impietie of *Mahomet* hath more Followers many, then all whatsoever profession of *Christianitie* in all Languages, Nations, Rites whatsoever (I greeue to tell it) and that of *Germanie* and *France* (which he objects) yet their sound, the *Gospel* which they preached yea, the Apostles themselves) and they have shaken the Towers of *Babylon* in *Empe*, where they were brought (where Antichrist hath his Throne, a Conqueror more then *Indus* or *Iran*) and when the Prophecie of *Babylon* veteru rube is fulfilled, the same word shall conquer penation become Habergers, to the *Gospel* hereafter, as the *Leish* Dispersions in the Translation. Meane-while they find it was to be the true God, were fore-runners of the Apostles preaching enter, and make vs to leaue the *Plurifier* glorie of compassing Sea and Land to winne *Profes* to these their Heires and Successors *Indus*, as in many other things. But I will leaue them glorying of their Conversions, greeuing that they are not herein better then their reports. I will follow them to these parts of *China*, and here for *China* take to *Iapon*, and with that Rule of

Ee 3

8

Cassius

Cassius

This happened
in Cape Sea
his Ship. See
15. 4. 3. p. 379.

* See p. 4. 6.
as 15. 5. and the
last Chapter of
my Pilgrimage

2. Cor. 10. 4.

See Sir T. Roe
and M. Terz.
p. 81. 4. 2. and
156.

1. This Soorie
Goes a Stage
with *Mogols* &
Chinese gifts
are best Con-
verted.

* Add. Schol.
Athen. Col. 4. 6.
16. 12. 1. 18. 4. 6.

See before in
Polo. Geni. 6.
the truth here
of.

Apoc. 18.

Abi. 15.

Cassim (Cui bene) observe them, in things not gainfull to their Religion, approve and applaud their inJultrie, yea, accept and thankfully acknowledge their authoritie. In their Conventions to the Faith, I suspend my faith in the qualitie, if I admit their quantitie. For how could one man well instruct so many in so little time, except hee could have given the Holy Ghost, as the Apostles in their conversions did.

Francis Xavier, in the year 1541, fled from *Lisbon*, wintred *Mojambique*, whence he sailed into *India*, after that to *Malacca*, and to *Japan*; & *Confutator* also (sayth the former Author) *quæ Oceano ab Indico mari equid ab extremis Sinais, et sitibus Indis dimittens, circum-*
Portugali by Mota, carryed out of his court to *China* thither by tempest; & known to the *Emper* 1552. the five and fiftieth of his Age, of his *Indian* peregrination. He elucidateth, 10
Sanctum, on the Coast of *China*. This was the *Indian* Standard-bearer told of that Society, among his travels. *Lisbon* the first years of their Confirmation 1540, and now defied or
Sanctum and inusketed. Doctor *Schnekenius*, Chancellor of *Julien* his Orator, *Ingeni & Fra-*
cisco vestris succurrite precibus; &c. A Letter of his written from *Japon*, in *November*, 1549.

[illegible]

The tempest being abated, we came in few days to the Port of Canton in China. And there they purposed to Winter, notwithstanding all our intrigues and solicitations; so that you may know how sudden they would goe to Chincheo, on the same Coast. And when we were almost ready to depart, the Master was certified by *(some which sailed by)* that there was a Fleet of Pirates at Chincheo; whereunto he was forced to give faire for Japen, and cross'd for Canton, they brought us to Gangxouma, the Country of our friend Paul, whose friends told us unkindly, There was some time dayes in learning the Elements of the Japonian tongue with great labour, and began to publish the Decalogue, and other bread of Christianitie, which Paul had accurately converted into his owne Language; and we purposed finally to settle our selves here, till such knowledge of Christ is further and more easily founded, &c. The occasion of this journey, I thought it best to leave in another Letter, that those Portugals being lodged in a House possessed by Devils, compassed the lives of those who fled with Crosse, and that there was great hope of good to be done in these parts: whereupon, notwithstanding their Crosse, and very tempestuous, and much infected with Piracy, we refused to goe thither.

Vicini and *Triguitani*, add that the *Lepontini* Priests alledged in defence of their Liberties, the *vicino* wife would against him, whereupon he returned to *India*, to aduile with the *Vice-roy* and an Ambassage into *China*, without which there was no entrance, and obtained that: *Jamus Perreus* was named Legate, with whom he had before conferred about the business at *Sancian*, and the *Portugals* at that time vied to trade with the *Chinese*, *Amacao* not yet established 60
to *Almaco*, and the *Portugals* were disappointed. *Amac* loath here to be croffed, vied
could hinder his proceedings in promoting Religion. And when *Almaco* would use otherwise
he interceded him and his followers. Soone after *Almaco* was possided with a Lepro-

He, and further continuing the Vice-roy, were taken and cast in Irons, and dyed miserably. *Xuanbin* returning with zeal at this China expedition, fought to get some favour by favour or reward, to conuenge him by stealth into *China*, and to expose him some where on the Continent, although he knew that imprisonment attended such strangers, as came into *China* without Licence. Being admonished to take leave of the Captayne, *What, sayd he, should I goe to leave an Escomunicate person? I shall neuer see him, nor my one, my wife, nor yet, after, but when in the Vale of Iofaphat I shall seee him before the Iudge, Christ*. And praying for him, after with a countenance full of Maltresse, he put off his shooes, and *strooke offe his daile*, according to the Evangelicall precept. Thus he came to *Sancian* a Desart Iland, where the *Portugals* used to make oobes of boughes or straw, (for the time of their Trading with the *Chinies*) with whom he consulted about some way to effect his desires, though with losse of liberty or life. At last he agreed with a *China Merchant*, for as much Pepper (given him of the *Portugall* Merchants in almes) as was wanted to keepe the *China* Duckets, to let him and his Interpreter on shore secretly. He vnderooke it, but either secretly terrified by other *Portugals*, or with his owne danger, his Interpreter forsooke him: and after that, the Merchant also vanished. He stayed yet waiting for *India*, till a Fever took him out of the world, in December, 1552. His corps was after translated to *Indra*.

The *Portugals* of those times, were very desirous of Trade with the *Chinois*, who on the other side were very suspicious of them, both by that which they saw of their Ships and Ordnance, and by that which the *Moorish* at Canton reported of them. *Frank*, (to the *Mahomedans**) call *European*) that they were warlike and victorious, as appeared by the great number of their Colours of Merchandise (subjected to the *Portugals*, the *Chinois* at *Canton* call them *all* *Palamys*: for they want the R, and pronounce not two consonants without a vowel interposed. By the same name they call also ye *Portugals* Ordnance. Yet desire to gain preysailed, that they were so famous to such a trade as ye have heard, so as the *Mart* ended, they must away with their goods to *India*. That course continued sixty yeeres, till the *Chinois* growng leffe fearful, granted them in the greater land a little *Peninsula* to dwell in. In that place was an Idoll, which still they call *Bay*. There they were indeed, called *Amas*, whence the *Peninsula* was called *Amacoa*, that is, *Amas Bay*. The Idoll was not so much esteemed, rather then *Peninsula*, began to be inhabited not only of *Portugals*, but also of the confederate and neighbouring Nations, in regard of the commerce of Commodities of *Europe*, *India*, and the *Moluccas* brought in *Portugals* Ships, and especially Ioue of the Silver to be built, and the *Portugals* made not only contrayers of Merchandise, but of Marriage, with the *Chinois*, and so the *Peninsula* was filled with many houses, and of a barren Rocke grew a noble *Mart*. And as gayn: brought Merchants thither, so care to keepe and to get foules brought thither Priests and Religious men, and the *Portugall* King priviledged the place with the title of a *Citie*, and made it a *Bishopes* See. There the *Idolater* raised a violence, and first craged a Church to our *Ladie*, and after that divers others. For it seemed convenient to their Religion, the world of *China* lying to the North, the *Moluccas* to the South, *Iapon*, and the *Philippines* to the East, to the West *Cochinchina*, *Cambodia*, *Siam*, and others.

[illegible]

Xavier, zeals

Sancian thirty leagues from the *China* shore.

Xavier's death:
See *Vita Xaverii*.
& F. Pinto.
& Eman. Acosta.
Maffei's Ricci-
us, &c.

* Since the Expedition of the Western Christians (the chiefs of which were Franks) to the conquest of Jerusalem.

A Peninsula is compassed with water except on one part.
Beginnings of America.

Selchier Nuns:

metropolitan
itie.

ake but a line
of his rela-
on, because
u have so
ach before.
197. 4140. or

to Pinto al O,
this is the
provinces
comes not the

Some Seats
Knowledge
re, others
e.

mp: 145-146

months there to redeeme Portugall prisoners. The Chinoies kill or captivate the Portugals, which are wracked on that Coast, which yes they cast to sea, since they pay their Customes. I went thence in May to Japan.

Valignanus.

Admiranda regni Sinenfis extant with the Visitor Epistole published by Jo. Hoym. Flami.

Alexander Valignanus, was sent by the Jesuiticall Generall into India as Visitor, and having visited other parts, came to Amacao, in his way to Japan, forced to stay there ten months with the Jesuites. There he more fully informed himselfe of the state of China, and raised the embers of the almost extinguished zeale of that expedition. Hee is thought to bee the Author of that treatise called *Admiranda Regni Sinenfis*, containing a summrie of the wonders of China, worthy heere to have bene inferred, but that wee rather ayme at things sene then heard, as having better certaintie. *Oculatus testis unus prestat auritis decem..* Upon the consideration of their wits, Peace, Police, studies of Learning, hee conceived that if any were skillfull of their Language and Letters, he might doe some good for their Conversion. Hereupon hee resolved to employ some that way, although many others of the companie which had experience of the China affayres, held it labour in vayne. Yet hee went on and because of the paucitie of ours at Amacao, and none so fit for that designe, hee sent into India to the Provinciall, to send thither at least one Priest for that purpose. And hee going to Japan, left order what hee which was sent should doe.

Mich. Ruggerius.

Portugall trade at Canton by day, and extraction at night.

Michael Ruggerius, an Italian of the Kingdome of Naples, was sent, and came to Amacao, in July, Anno 1579, and applied himselfe to learne the language which the Courtiers in China use, and is common thorow all China, (the Provincials having otherwise peculiar languages) also to learne to reade and write their Characters, which are as many as words. That language was verie hard both in it selfe, and for the want of teachers. For those *Christiani Chinoies*, which lived at Amacao, in habit of Europeans, & those which came thither in Merchandize, were almost ignorant of the Court tongue, as of the Portugall: and though they understood it, yet they could not well pronounce it. And for the Characters, they know those which belonged to their Merchandizing and common use. *Labor improbum omnia vincit.* With pictures his teacher was often forced to supply characters. And whereas the Portugals twice a yeere in the Mart season have access to Canton, about January and June, hee went with them thither. For in time they obtained this libertie, that not in a defiant land, as first, nor in the Amacao Haven, but in the Metropolitan Citie two dayes vp the River, they might have trading by day, but lye aboard at night, with so many eyes and watches on them, as it is manifest they are not altogether free of their former feares.

Ruggerius freed by the late Italian.

Ruggerius freed by the late Italian.

Ambassage of Siam.

Zumpin at Chumim.

Met. Riccio.

Fraternitie of Iapoi.

These Martes continue two months each of them, or longer, and have bene the onely meane of admitting the Jesuites into China, by the industrie and pietie of other Portugals. Ruggerius therefore with his merchandize also adventured with them, and found an impediment at first. Another Jesuite which before had gone thither had converted a youth, Dilectus to a Priest, and cloely com- yed him to Amacao. His Master made complaint and procured the Magistrate to fetch him backe by force, to the great trouble of Ours, and seeming discredit as if by all are they had seduced Children from their Parents, which is a thing at Canton, both vniual and Capitall. Ruggerius entreated himselfe with great care and discretion, and appeald the Admirall or *Hai-tao* which hath the command of Strangers, who hereby had an opinion of his vertue, and delighted to see him studious of the China bookes. Hee therefore permitted him to stand at his side when others kneeled, and freed him also from the going aboard at night, and allowed him a place in the Palace, where the Ambassadors of the King of Siam were vially entertained, bringing their present or tribute (such as you have heard in *Goez*) to the King. There hee studied night and day the China bookes, and on Sundays and Holy-dayes, the Portugals came thither to him to Masse and to receiue the Sacraments. This continued whiles they continued, for when the Mart ended hee was commanded to returne with them. The Father procured acquaintance also with the chiefe Captayne of the Soldiers of that Province (the Chinoies call him *Zumpin*) to whom hee gave a watch. By this, meanes many of those which came to Amacao, began to shake off their *Erbike* darkness, and the devout Portugals erected a House for the *Catechumini* (new Converts to bee instructed in *Christian* mysteries before Baptisme) where hee instructed them, and more freely followed his China studies, by helpe of Interpreters. One buisnesse hindered another, and his Martts absence (which tookt vp nere halfe the yeere) this Catechizing, and a tongue is hardly learned by studie without vie; and therefore the Visitor sent for *Matthew Riccio* out of India, (which had come out of Europe with Ruggerius, and now had finished his Duinitie course at Goa) to bee his yoke fellow, one to whom the China expedition is most indebted.

Anno 1582. Valignanus the Visitor, carried certayne Iapomen Princes sent to Rome to yeeld subjection to the Pope, in the name of those Kings which sent them, as you shall heare. Hee staying for the Monke at the Colledge of Amacao, tooke great paines to aduance the China buisnesse. And to that purpose hee instituted the *Fraternitie* or fellowship of *Jesui* in our House, with Lawes fitting to New Converts; forbidding any Portugals to bee therein admitted, but onely Chinoies, and Iapomen, and those which were newly converted of other Nations: always to be

gouerned

gouerned by one of those Fathers which should bee assigned to the China Expedition, called, The Father of the new Converts, taking care not onely of their saluation, but their other affaires and poaerty.

The Vice-roy of Canton Province is one of the chiefe Vice-royes, because his Province is farre from Peguin, and coasting on the Sea; infested therefore with often Piracies, especially Iapomen. Hereupon the Canton Vice-roy exerciseth iurisdiction also in the adioyning Province *Quamfi*, *Quamfi* if occasion require to leue more Soldiers, although *Quamfi* hath also a Vice-roy of her owne. For this cause the Canton Vice-roy resideth not at Canton, but at *Scampan*, a Citie bordering *Sciaman*, on both Provinces. At this time *Chinfi* borne in the Province of *Fuquens*, was Vice-roy, a courteous man, who to get money of the *Amacatois* sent thither his Writ for the Bishop and Capitaine to come to his Court, understanding that they commended all there. They thought it not agreeing to the Portugall honour to goe, nor to their fifty to neglect his summons, and therefore by Valignanus his aduise, Ruggerius was sent in the name of the Bishop, to see if hee could get a perpetuall Station in that Kingdome, and *Penella* the Auditor, in place of the Capitaine. And to obtaine his fauour, that hee should not disturb their merchandizing, a Present was sent him at publicke charge, of such things as the Chinoies most regard, as wared garments of silke *Dumask* (which the Chinoies then knew not how to make) Crystall Glasses, and other things valued at 1000. Duckets. The Vice-roy receiued them in great pompe, more to terrifie then honour them; but at the sight of the Presents (the scope of his purpose) hee became gentle and courteous, and decreed that they might lue in his Port in manner as *bithers* they had done, obeying the Lawes of the China *Magistrate*: which words seemed formall, the Portugals living there after their owne Lawes, and other Nations, yet the Chinoies themselves which are *Christiani* inhabit and religion, being subiect to them. The other Chinoies are subiect to common Officers sent thither from Canton. The Vice-roy would haue nothing, but hee would pay for it, which hee did because bribes and gifts are there fearely punished: but priuily hee sent to them, that money was given them to procure him as many other like.

Ruggerius desired that which hee came for, saying, hee learned the China Tongue and read their Bookes, which hee seemed much to like, and gaue him hopes at his next returne to obteyne it. And hauing giuen them weight of Siluer; with promise, great attendance of Magistrates and Soldiers, much Mucke of Hoybuckes and other Instruments, hee sent them pompously thorow the publicke streets of the Citie to their shipping. So weighty is hope of gaine. In August had come (as they vfe) Portugall ships to Amacao, in them of our Society not a few, and amongst others, Father *Matthew Riccio*, who brought with him an artificiall Watch from the *Mt. Riccio*. Provincially for the aduancing this China buisnesse. About that time the Capitaine of Amacao hauing made readie those things which the Vice-roy prescribed, sent backe the Auditor to *Sciampan*, but Ruggerius vnseasonably (or seasonably rather as the euent manifested) fell sicke; yet hee had a Clocke-watch which did without any striker sound the houres, a thing euen fill of Clocke-watches awaked him, and caused him to make his Secretarie presently write a License for the Father to come to him with that admirable worke, as soone as hee should bee able. When this Charter was read at Amacao, it contained more; for the Fathers were inuited by publicke Authority to erect a publicke and private house in that Citie, which caused great joy. But the Visitor was afraid to send Ruggerius, as not furnished fully for that designe: the beginning of a thing being the greatest part. The other Iesuites perswaded, and Father Francis Pafius bound for Iapoi, a man Governour of the Colledge of the *Catechumini*, and appointed to follow the other two, if occasion were. And if the buisnesse proceeded not, Pafius was to proceed to Iapoi, and the other two to attend better opportunities in their China buisnesse.

Those two Iesuites went to *Sciampan*, and offered their Watch with a triangle Glasse presenting variety of colours, a thing admired of the Chinoies as a precious Iewell: both which were exceeding welcome to the Vice-roy, who assigned them a convenient station in a Suburban Temple, called *Thien-min-zi*, whether hee often sent them diuers viands, and often admitted them in Visitation to his Palace. There they abode foure or five months, often visited in tuall continuance, hauing obtayned licence of the Secretarie also for *Riccio* to come, who was preparing for the Voyage, when all was disturbed on a sudden, the Vice-roy being I know not for what fault, deprived of his place. Hee fearing least in the chiefe Citie the presence of Strangers might further hurt him, dimissed the Iesuites so, as hee permitted them to stay at Canton, commanding the Magistrate there to provide them a house and ground. The Chinoies call that place *Quamfi*, where which the Portugals (by the name of the Province called) call Canton. They well knew that his comming was of no force, yet they went, and the *Haitan*, to whom the Charter was directed was absent, and no regard being had thereof, they were not permitted to attend the banks, and therefore with griefe returned to Amacao. Pafius presently layed according

Quamfi the true name of Canton.

Pejus dicit
long after.

according to the Visitors appointment to Iapon, and after divers yeeres Labour there, was Vnder-
provincial of the China and Iaponian Missions: and when both of those expeditions were by
the Generals order made a Province, he was declared Visitor thereof, and came to Amoy, to
take order for China, where within few months he died.

§. II.

Iaponian Embassy to the Pope; Of Nabunanga and Quabacondono their governments; Corai invaded, Embassage from China, TAICOSAMAS Temple, and OGOSHO SAMAS succession.



Having mentioned that Embassage of Iaponian Kings sent to the Pope by procurement
of the Jesuits, out of their writings I have here added for further illustration, the
acts of the public Consistorio in this forme of words.

Iaponian Em-
bassage to the
Pope.
Ed. d. d. d.
C. d. d.

Pope Gregorie the thirteenth, sitting in the Hall designed for entertainment of
Kings, and their Embassages on the three and twentieth of March, 1585, in the morning, in a
most ample Session of the Cardinals of the Holy Roman Church, and in a great assembly of
Princes and Prelates with greatest industry, and most frequent attendance of all Orders: *Mauri-
cio* and *Michael* (who was also of the Prince of *Omar*) two Legates of Iaponian Kings, were
brought in and one of the two Iaponian companions of the same Embassage, of principl Nobil-
ity, to wit, *Martine*, for *Iulian* the other of them was withholden by sickness. After solemn
adoration of the Pope, and the kisses of his blessed feet, received of him with great demonstra-
tion of benediction and charity, they went aside into a place appointed them with great mo-
destie. Afterwards, the Letters of the Kings which they had brought are publicly read, being
translated out of the Iaponian Tongue into the Italian, and thence into the Latine. First, that
of Francis King of Bungo, who therein professeth the *Divine* service in sending the Jesuits *four
and thirtie yeeres before, into these parts, whose seed had taken some rooting in his breast, which he a-
scribes to the Popes prayers and merits. And had not bene for his age, waxes, and sickness, he
would have visited these holy places, and have kissed his holy feet, and so them on his head, and received
his blessing, his breast crossed by his most holy hand: but so detained, had thought to have sent his sister
some, the Lord Jerome, Some of the King of Fungo, his Embassador, whose Cousin-german *Mauri-
cio* in his absence he now sent: thanks him for the Reliques sent him, &c. Jan. 11. 1582. Incribed,
To the great and most holy Pope to be adored, and holding on Earth the place of the King of Heaven,
Subscribed, Francis King of Bungo, prostrate at your Blessedness most holy feet. Not much unlike
was the tenour of the second Letter, sent from *Protasius* King of Arima, who detained by di-
vers lets, had sent his Cousin-german in his room, to his Holiness, which with sincere and humble
mode hee adressed. Incribed, To the great and holy Lord whom I adore, holding the rooms of God,
The Prince of Omur sent also the said *Michael* his Brothers Some with a Letter of like import,
incribed, With lifted up hands adoring I offer these to the most holy Lord the Pope, Vicar of the
great God. Subscribed in sublimity as the first.*

King of Bungo
Letter.

After this, silence was commanded; and in the name of the said Kings and Legates, *Gasper
Gonzales* a Portuguese Jesuite made an Oration unto the Pope, commending and praising this
Embassage with that of certain Indians to *Augustus*, and the conversion of Britains by the said
Gregorie with this of Iapon, and other Ilands by the Thirteenth, succeeding: and exceeding that,
now fallen from the Pope; applying *Ezays* Prophecies of the Churches encrease to this *Jesuiti-
cal* Haruett, and magnifying the great glories of that Pope, founder of Seminaries, and magni-
fied extra anni Solisq. vias. *Antonio Bucepadulo* answered in the name of the Pope, That Francis
King of Bungo, *Protasius* King of the Arimans, and *Bartholomew his Uncle*, Prince of Omur,
bath sent you their kinemen to him from the remote Iaponian Ilands to the veneration of that power in
presence, which by Gods bounty be boldeth, they have done godly and wisely. For there is one Faith, one
Catholicke Church, one made Gouverneur over the said Church, and Pastor of Christs Flocke, that is,
of all Catholickes throughout the world, in the succession of Peter, the Roman Bishop. That they acknow-
ledge and profess this, together with the mysteries of the orthodoxe Faith, our most holy Lord reingeth,
and queth immortal thanks to the *Divine* bounty, and judges this to be the most true in which proceed-
eth from the fudde of Gods glorie, and the salvation of Soules. Therefore most willingly, together
with these his venerable Brethren, Cardinals of the Roman Church, hee embrace the specification of
their Faith, Obedience, Devotion. He willeth and prayeth that by their example other Kings and Prin-
ces also of these Illes, and of the whole World, selecting the worship and error of Idols, may know the
true God, and whom hee hath sent Iesus Christ; for this is life eternal.

But that Ebor-
an deivition
As he was
more worth
than both Ja-
pon and the
Pope. See Ep.
lib. 6. c. 6.

This the most
acceptable
mysteries
of Popes Faith.

This done, the Consistorio was dismissed. The Legates when they had attended the Pope,
after the custom, into the inner roomes, were first entertained of the Popes brothers and some,
the Cardinal of Saint Sixtus, with a Banquet: after that admitted to the Popes private cham-
ber.

milar conference, they discomfited by Interpreters with him of many things, touching the Jour-
ney and Religion: then they went to Saint Peters Church, and the holy Thresholds of the Apostles
piously saluted, at night were honourably brought to their lodging.

This was prepared and furnished in the *Jesuits* Colledge by the Popes appointment at their
first coming to Rome, the two and twentieth of March, who also sent two troops of Horse to
guard them. They went from their Charet to the Temple, and whiles they praised God, and
worshipped at the greatest Altar, the Students of the German Colledge in a double Quire sang
Te Deum laudamus. The Legates next day had audience as yett here heard, their Vestment was
parti-coloured and embroidered, a short Sword on the left hand, an Arab Dagger on the right,
the other part of their habit *Iaponian*. The pompe of all sorts, and the Ordinance attended them to
the *Vatican*, &c. there the Italian Garrison, and Helmetian Guard with their Peeces and military
Musicke received them. Then were they lead into the Hall, and after all things there finished,
the Legates carried the Popes traine at his departure. And on the five and twentieth day, festi-
vally for the Annuntiation, the Pope going on solemn Procession, these Legates rode in the
last place. What should I say more? (Ayth our Author) it cannot be told, how all magnifie the
mercy of God which brings fame more at this time from the East and West to the Catholike
Church, then the Decall hath seduced in the North.

Excell. d. d. d.
Roma m. f. f.

See the list
day, p. of my
Page.

These Iaponian Lords returned into India, 1586, as *Vallignanus* writeth, and were much
enangered by a tempest. Their returne into Iapon is signified by the Letters of *Archibishop*
of *Ebor*, testifying their arrival the one and twentieth of July, 1590, at *Nangasack*
with the said *Vallignanus*; and by the Letter of *Don Sancio*, Sonne and Successor to *Ber-
tholomew* Prince of Omur to Pope *Xistus* the fifth, with thanks for the wood of the Crosse, and
the Sword sent his Father which should be kept amongst his principl Jewels. *Protasius* also
the King of Arima wrote to the Great and most holy Pope *Xistus* or *Sixtus* in this manner.

On the sixteenth of the sixth Moone, which was the one and twentieth of July, 1690. here arrived
the Father Visitor of the Societe of Iesus, with Cingius Don Michael my kinsman, Don Mancius,
and other companions: which I had sent to Rome to put their heads under your Holiness feet. Whose
coming did us much rejoice, as if a thousand Autumnes had come to me, and ten thousand yeeres
had bene added to my life. Don Michael related with what honour and favour hee was entertained
of your Holiness, of Philip King, and other Catholike Princes, for which I render those thanks which
Pen and Paper cannot expresse. He delivered me Letters also which your Holiness touched, which
favourably reckoning mee amongst the Christian Kings. Hee brought me also part of the holy Wood of
the true Crosse, a Flag, and a Sword, which your Holiness wote to send to Christian Kings and Prin-
ces. Which favour and kindness are such, and so esteemed of me, that I have determined to consecrate
them to eternal memory, and to place them amongst my chief Treasures, and the Ornaments and Me-
muments of my posteritie. And this honour conferred on mee is such, that greater cannot be in this life,
and he redounds unto a future good life. I had determined (according to the order prescribed of your Holiness
in the Letters, and as the favour, and so great benefits bestowed on mee deferred) to have received the
said Treasures with all the celebratie and pompe that might be in my Kingdom: but the Father Visitor
advised mee that respect was to be had of the tyrannie and great hatred wherewith Quabacondono the
Lord of all Iapon, persecuteth the Fathers and Christians these three yeeres together; and this feast to
be deferred till hee returneth from Mexico, whither hee is going in Embassage from the Vice-roy of India
to Quabacondono, &c. The ninth yeere of the Era called Tensio, the tenth of the eighth Moone,
which is the two and twentieth of September, An. 1590.

At your Highness feet,
Arimano, Seurine, Daibu Don Protasius.

This Quabacondono (as *L. Frois* writeth) was now grown the greatest Monarch that euer
Iapon had, having ascended thereunto from a base estate, which was (as hee hath divers times
with his owne mouth confessed) to cut wood, and to carrie it to the Market to sell for his daily
food. *Nobunanga* his Predecessor had grown to great height, such as many ages had not there
with houses alighted up to the Bonus, which employed themelues in the studie of the Lawes
allowing to their maintenance about the third part of the Customes (or Rents) of the *Yaman*
Kingdome. Thus became it a burden to their superfluities. In time thole Temples disper-
sed in fixtene Vallies were lessened to 800, and the *Bonunian* discipline, and studies melted into
pleasures, hardened into Armes, and ranged into robbery, so that they fired *Bonus* with great
laughter, and opposed *Nobunanga*: who having destroyed the Militarie *Bonus* (called *Seccos*)
and taken away their Castles, invaded *Froisnemo*, professing he feared not ether Gods. On the
top of a Hill was the Temple of *Quano*, to whom prayers and pilgrimages were made for
health, wealth, and long life; and yearly solemnities and Playes with huge pompe and cost
were made in his honour (to which the *Gibon* feast at *Mexco* succeeded) with frequency of men,
drummes

See the list
of the Kings
and Rites my
Page 15. c. 5.
Nabunanga.

From time.

See that Bull
p. 102. l. 1.
Gains separa-
tes the ubi
a dyem
Crown, with
out separation
offlate. Apply
this to the
quarrel with
the English and
Dutch in the
Indes. And
hereto you cite
the Jesuites in-
struments of
secular affairs
Edm. Mendes,
whole Books
you have in
the 9. book.
100. 1.

F. Edm. Sando.

Antonie Almeida,
Licentiate for
Cepan.

Strange coule-
tor names.
Jesuites change
their names.

Almeida Let-
ter to Ed. Sando.
Rector at Xian-
cha or Scia-
chin, contra-
dicted.

Militia.

The Liff as
brother above-
said.
Another riur.

Way paid
and populous.

prouded the luckier man by this familiarity with our men, which hee signified when they came to him, with a present to gratulate these honours.
In the Philippines the news of the *Jesuites* success caused the Gouverneur to send the Treasurer *John Baptista Konnamo* to *Amacao*, with Father *Alfonso* to receive a *Spanish Jesuite*, with a Watch and other presents and letters to the *Jesuites*, to procure an Ambassador from the King of *Spain* to *China*. The *Jesuites* had with petitioning brought the business of good forwardness, when they received contrary mandates from *Amacao*, it being likely to proceed the destruction of that City, if the *Spaniards* with their plenty of Silver from *Peru* and *New Spain*, should have trade in *China*; neither did this belong to the *Spaniards*, but to the *Portugals*, according to the Com- petition between the two Kings made by *Alexander* the sixth: and although they are both sub- ject now to one *Crown*, yet their privileges remaine distinct without confusion. Thus both the Magistrate aduited, and their superiour the Rector prohibited them to proceed. Yet the former working was not ceased by Silence, till the *Amacao* Magistrates laboured with diuine reasons to disuert the Ambassage. *Capralis* the Rector was desirous to see their house, and they procured the *Licentiate* leave, so that hee came thither, viewed all, and Baptized both the young- men before mentioned which kept the Altar, and a learned man which read the *China* Bookes *Primicia* of *India*, hearing of this success, sent thither Father *Edward Sando*, and Father *Antonie Almeida*: and obtained of the Vice-roy *Edward Mendes*, an annual stipend for this mission. They came to *Amacao* in July, 1585.

At the same time reasonably happened, that *Lusitanus* was commanded from the Court, to pro- cure of the Strangers at *Amacao*, certaine goodly feathers for the King. He furnished a faire ship and sent *Ruggerius* thither, and brought with him Father *Edward Sando*, who he went to salute *Lusitanus*, and gave him no more meane gift of Commodities to procure abode, whereof nothing pleased him as a triangle Glasse. Hee giues him leave to stay, on condition that they admit no other companion. In *Lusitanus* place had succeeded another of his Office, a great friend of the Fathers, who being to goe to *Peguin* about some affaires of the *Cognia* every third year, was feasted at our house (where the Magistrates were often solemnly entertained) and then offered to carrie one of ours with him in his journey, at least as farre as *Cepan* his owne Coun- try. They willing to erect some new lease, least some disaster might in a moment strip them eaily of one and all, agreed that *Ruggerius* and *Sando* should goe, and received licence for entering the Provinces of *Cepan* and *Huagun*, and places adjoining. This was the Mart time whether *Ruggerius* went, and found *Almeida* come thither with the *Portugals*. Thither also a Brother of *Lusitanus* was gone with much Merchandise of Silke, (the most whereof is made in the *Cepan* Province) which the *Portugals* bought at his price by the Fathers intertreat, who therefore tooke the Fathers, his brothers friends, to his City in *Cepan*, called *Scubian*, (a name some- what neerer the other, but in *China* a little difference proueth great) the native place of both the Gouvernours.

The *Chinois* haue a custome to be called by many names, and no man calls them by their pro- per name; (but themselves in naming or writing themselves, or sometimes their superiours) with- out iniurie: they taking a greater name, which others giue them for more honour. Now the Fa- thers had yet assumed no other name, but their seruants called them by their proper name, a thing amongst the *Chinois* reputed barbarous. They therefore (to become all things to all) wined all to *Christ* then followed that fashion, and euer since at their first entrance assume a new Name. Their Journey is thus written by *Almeida*.

On the eleuenth of the Kalends of December, 1585, we departed from Canton. The third day the ship happened to be on fire, some imputing that unclockesse to us: but without much harme it was quenched. Whiles we layd through the Canton Province, we seldom came in sight and neuer went out of the Ship till we came to *Moympor*. I can therefore relate nothing of that Province, but that there were very many Cities, and Townes very frequent, and steepe high Mountains, betwix which the River flideth to diuers parts of the Province, forest with waters, wares and Shipping. Every where we beheld sumptuous Edifices dedicated to the worship of *Demus*, and of Ships almost infinite multitude, and of water-Fowle innumerable flocke, and herds of Goats feeding by the woods, to the fourth of the Ides of December. Then we arrived at *Moulin* a City, neerer which is the beginning of that River, whose course being swift, we were drawne by ropes and rowed with Oares against it. Into this City we should hardly haue found admision, the passage being by a Bridge with two Iron charynes, opened only and shut at the will of the Gouverneur. But our Conduktor having acquaintance with the *Licentius*, we had present entrance, hardly able to passe for the multitude of Ships, there waiting. We were there well enter- tained, and on Sunday and Monday sayd Masse. On Tuesday we went to a City eight miles distant, there regaining the commoditie of another River. All that way was paved with stones: in which we passe a Mountain, on the top whereof was an arch with an inscription of his name, who had facilitated that way otherwise difficult. The weather was unreasonable, raine and cold, perhaps because the whole way in manner we past Mountainous. I doe not remember that euer I saw way so frequented, nor then when Mer- chants resort to publick Faires: for all the Merchandise from *Nanquin*, and the places adjoining are brought

brought thither. Also the Merchants which inhabit the remotest Cities in that way, on both sides had Part- ners for the conveying of their Wares, very fully for our Conduktor had nothing to doe but to deliver one hundred and fiftie Packes of Wares with other provisions for the way, to his Host, which all hee should find in his Inn in the next Towne. These Partners also provide Horses for the Servants and Seats for the Masters to be carried by two Porters defended from the Raine by Umbrellas, or Shaddows which they carrie in their hands. When hee had passed halfe the way, we changed our Seats and Porters, and had others to the last; so that nothing is lost but some little grannie, the Host being paid for all, and a Seat is at as easie as to beare, as a Horse in our Country with great commoditie and frequen- cy of Times. In the Evening we came to the Towne *Faquen*, and staid there two dayes. Such conceits of *Chinois* coming to ferry, that we were almost over-whelmed, and were glad to get a ship-board on Friday. On Saturday we sailed downe the streame, fifteen dayes continuing our course, in which we be- red three Barges, in one of which we only were carried. On both Barges many and faire Townes walked about present themselves in the view of Passengers, seeming as huge as Canton, which made me me- ditate of the facilitie of conveying the Gospel in these parts, we making all this way with as great tran- quilite of bodie and minde, that we might in the Ship pray or studie, and doe other things as commodi- ously, as at home.

On the sixteenth of the Kalends of January, we came to a most frequent City far greater then Can- ton, where the Tutan or Vice-roy of the Province *Chianli* resideth. It is high walled divided into three parts, a River flowing thorough with a Bridge of Barges, saying two parts of the City. On this Bridge galleys are paid, but our Conduktor being the Lanciau Barge pulled without search. And although we feared to be examined by the Magistrate, yet we were troubled by them, they being so inquisitive in our parts as in Canton Province, about strangers: yea, they enquired after them knowably as we, where then your Workshop at *Xuechin*. About halfe a mile from this Bridge another River is worth with this, which runneth by the other side of the City, and makes the third part of the City. I visited the Fathers a Colledge in this place both for the fertilitye of the soyle and holiness of the Acre. Having provided necessaries for the rest of our Journey in this City, we went abode and in the space of fixe or seven dayes going downe the streame, we beheld on both sides very goodly Woods, and many Piles of wood on the Bankes necessary for those cold Regions; and boding on our course passed by seven Cities, or more, famous for greatesse and Merchandise: and on Christmas Euen came to the greatest City of all *Chianli*, where we staid that night for that Solemnitie. But because there was borne exercised our patience with a grievous North-wind, whereby the River water (otherwise cleare) was so troubled that on Christmas day we could not drinke it. For the Rivers course is North-ward, which therefore by a North-wind is so moved.

The next day sailing by a City which by the sight we judged greater then *Lisbone*, in one dayes pas- sage further, we came to the way which leads to *Nanquin*, where diuers Rivers saying together make a kind of Crosse with great commoditie for Trade and passage. For a Barge well supplied against wind and weather, convenient for two Gentlemen with their Servants and baggage, may be hired for twenty or thirtie dayes, at an easier rate then a man shall pay for Horses from *Comba* to *Li bone*. From Canton to *Moulin* fifteen dayes journey, for a Ship which carried two hundred Packes of Merchandise of diuers kinds, we paid but nine laces, and seven for that three which we hired for twenty dayes more. After that, leaving the Northerne way which goeth to *Nanquin* or *Langquin*, we turned West ward against the streame, yet with benefit of the wind favouring us, we went fifteen and sometimes twenty miles a day: in which place sailing by very large fields we arrived at a City where faire Pro- vince is made, thence carried into *India* and *Europe*. We passed by many Woods also and some Cities. The cold came while we so great, that one day all was covered with Snow. The River decreased, and on the third of the Nones of January, they valsed the Merchandise into ten little Boates, and sailed two dayes, we came to a large City, to which we had entry by a Bridge borne up with fiftie painted Barges.

On the Nones of January we came to *Gouli*, a City at the end of our Navigation by that River. Here in celebrating Masse we were thronged by the multitude. And a Priest of the Idols invited us, which then performed to his Idols Ceremonies at his Hosts. Altars there erected, & Priests invited, & Hymnes offered, where hee and those Bonzi of us kindly. Here we observed that the *Demus* counterfeited the Ceremonies of the Catholike Church. We went thence by the way carried in portable jacks at before fixe or seven miles: and then entered the Province of *Ciquan*, at the Sun-Set entering the City *Ciquan*. On the Ides of January we againe went a ship-board holding our course by another River in which that City first begunneth to be Navigable, the flow streame lingering with five dayes, in which yet we saw eight Cities, about which we found unmeasurable quantitie of Oranges, very high Hills abounding with Trees and under-wood, betwix which that pleasant River sweetly slides receiving from every place new Tributes of waters that it groweth now as large as that of Canton Province. And although *China* haue name of fertilitye, yet there appeared some parts of Iapponian sterilitye. For in five dayes space we could get very little Rice, and a little fish. On the eleventh of the Ka- lends of February, we passed by a large City, as great as Canton, as this which knew the Region affirmed: for we by reason of Snow and Mists could see nothing but some high Townes. At Sunne going downe we came to a Towne, against which a Bow-shot distant on the other side of the River, we

Seats and Por-
ters in the
high-ways.

Faquen.

Green Cities
thick.

Metropolitan
City at the
east.

New River.

Nine Tatis.

• Their milles
seeme to be
invented Spe-
• In the
Cold Regions.

Papists and
Pagans Cere-
monies alike.

Ciquan.
Canton.

New River.

See illiter.

Sciauchin or
Ciquion like
Venice.

were forced to take a new ship, and causing our ship to bee drawn (a lighte hanged out at the Mast) the next morning we came to the Citie Ciquion, the end of our journey. In this Citie, which as Father Rogers (or Ruggerius) is wont to say, is a type and representation of Venice, God hath provided vs of a good House, on one side having the Citie, on the other the River for prospect, with convenient Rooms: vs of a Garden, and a fit place for a Chappell. On both sides of vs dwell Idolatrous Priests, which we avoid their frequent concourse to heare and see vs. To the chiefe of them we shewed our Allegiance to the Immortal God, which they beheld with great reverence, worshipping the Image of our Saviour, and the greatest Magistrate were so affected with our Christian Ceremonies, that they said they would greater range then the Governour of the Citie, who then mourned for his Mother, and invited vs by his Steward to her Funerall Solemnities, whom we answered that our Prayers answere not but to the shippers of the true God. He vj'd the Father with very great respect, giving him the higher place at table, and accompanying him as the passing to the summit of his Palace, seeming much delighted with come so frequent that it is troublesome. The Priests also give us good looks, whatsoever they thinke, The Adjoints both publicke and private, the streets and Lanes of the Citie are larger and fairer then in the Citie of Canton. The Citizens also in granitic of manners, and civilline of Habits, differ not a little from the Inhabitants of Canton and Sciauchin. There is no Citie in Portugal, Lisbon except, that is any way for greatness comparable. The singularities I shall write at another time. Ciquion this fourth of the Ides of February, 1586.

Provincials
Lutes, Foris
Chinam comp-
re to 40000.
Iapones Con-
stituta.

The Provincials of India write to the General that at their returne to Xauchin they found fortie Christians added to the Church, which number in those beginnings in the ample and barbarous Kingdome of China, may be equalled to fortie thousand Christians in the Iapones Provincies: from Goa 14. Kal. Ian. 1587.

§. IIII.

False Brethren and others accusations detected, they are expelled Sciauchin: erect a 30
Seat as Xauccum. Monasterie of Nanhua and other things of note in those parts. They alter their habits; Voyage to Nanquin; the Lake, Rivers, Idols and other Rarities.

Collium first
teaches to
paint.

REIUS calls that Citie where they resided Sciauchin, and saith, it is a principall Citie, though not the Metropolitane of the Province, noble in commerce, in situation (in the midst of a fresh water Lake) in wits and learned men. They baptized there Linsian: Father and two or three Infants, which then dying they thrust into Heaven at vnwares. Status the Pope granted a great Indulgence to the Societie, to further the Iapones and Chinese business: 40
yet mooued by others without weights, and strucke all the quarters to the great admiration of the Chinese. Whence first Pictures, one the works of Gaspard Cellius who first taught the Iapones and Chinese the European Painting to the great good of both Churches. But the Kingdome of Linsian seeing such flocking to the Fathers grew suspicious of danger, and caused them to be recalled, and Linsian also to be estranged from them. Also one Tanisio, a great acquaintance of Linsian, with purpose to get somewhat from the Fathers, questioned Ruggerius who yet hee had not leene Mount P'ian in the Province of Hu-quan, a famous resort of Pilgrims: yet hee had red that hee durst not without the Magistrates leave: I will procure it, said hee, and did so. In blood, not knowing that such haue nothing to doe with the State, and was not admitted, but hidden first to goe to the Vice-roy, to whom he went and had no injury, nor yet wanted humane- nite, but was hidden to prosecute his Pilgrimage and not to stay there. Linsian hearing of this, sought to shift his hands of them, and with much adoe they obtained that two might be permitted to stay in their house.

New Conuert,
a false Nauic.

Another danger happened by one Martin a new Conuert which had made two other Conuers beleue that the Fathers could by a certaine herbe turne Quick-silver into silver, and by that means maintayned themselves. Now the Chinese being exceedingly affected to that Alchymistall vanitie, these gave money to buy a Wife, and other coits to the false brother who vnderooke to learne of Father Ruggerius and to teach the other two that Science. And hauing gotten what he could of them, he also borrowed the Triangle Glasse of the Fathers, with which he sent an Officer which found him out and brought him bound. Hee, to be reuenged of the Fathers, accused one of them of Adultery, and the Husband of the pretended Adulteresse (partner in

in the Conspiracie) put vp a Petition against Ruggerius, who vpon inquisition was found at the time named to haue bene in Quam-fi, two moneths journey thence. The Accuser hoped to get some-what, being poore, to stop his mouth, which they refused vterly, and hee for feare fled together with his Wife. The Father was iudicially cleared, and Martin in his presence received twentie cruel stripes, and condemned to the Gallies, was sent to Linsian who had first committed him to confirme the sentence; who added sixtie stripes more, and being beggered and cast in bonds he was forlaken of all his Friends, and (the Fathers meane-while releuing him) dyed within few dayes of the wounds. He which had gotten the Glasse from Martin, another Conuert, came and restored it to them, lest it might breed him danger being found with him.

Martin whip-
ped to death.

Linsian was preferred to a higher dignitie in the Province of Hu-quan. To him the Citie had erected a Temple, and on the Alter had set his Statue; before the Altar a great Harth for burning incense: Candlesticks were also magnificently placed; and at his departure the whole Citie there visited him, and after their rite, pulled off his old Boots (Bootes are the enigmies of Magistracy) and put on new, putting the old in a Chift, and locking them then vp to bee releued for a monument of his worth. Ruggerius went to Amacao, and Mathew got leave for Father Edward the Superiour to returne to Sciauchin. The new Conuers which had lost their money by Martins death, desired new tumults against the Fathers; the River (which is a mile broad) overflowing, dammed the houses of the Citie, whence grew occasions of new abuses to Ours. The Vistour endeaured to procure Legation from the Pope to China, and Ruggerius was sent to Europe on that business, whichooke little effect by the death of diuers Popes: hee spending 20 the rest of his life at Salerno in the Kingdome of Naples.

Manner of ho-
nouring good
Magistrates.

Ricius was alone a good while, till Almeida came to him. His Clocke, by the Diall to the eyes, and by little-shrinking to the eares, caused no little wonder. But a new calumnie much endange- red them made to the Citie-men. For certaine old men of Canton, which are honoured for that yearly feast out of the publicke treasure, a peculiar Vest, and diuers other immunities, put vp a Petition, admonishing of the danger of the Amacanos, and especially those Spies which had builded houses of diuen stories, and euery day proceed with new arts, giuing money toward the building of Sciauchin Tower to get entrance into that Citie, sayling to and fro without im- pediment, dangerous to the State. This is that which our Bookes fore-tell, Ye haue seven thornes and nettles in a gentle soyle, yet haue brought in Serpents and Dragons into your houses. That of Amacao is like a force on the banks or feet easily cured at leasure, but this of Sciauchin, an ulcer fixing on the breast and heart timely to be remedied, &c. The Vistour reputed a leuere man committed it to the Haisu, and at last it came to the Governour of Sciauchin, who then being at Peking to per- form the customary trienniall visitation to the King, Phan his colleague (our friend, then Lieute- nant) assisted vs with his Counsell, and they gaue their Glasse to the new Linsian, who ended the quarrell with the Vistour, as being a false calumnie.

Priviledged
old men.
Their elegant
Petition is
whole in Riccius,
too long for
this place.

The two Masters provided them of exhibitions and European Presents from Canton, and their Clocke, Mathematicke Instruments, Geographical Maps, Pictures, and Bookes, with Musickall 40 Instruments, had procured them much visitation, and much estimation of Europe, and some fruit thereof in Conuersions. Neither was this Station vnprofitable to Amacao, helping their affairs with the Magistrates, in businesses with the Vice-roy, in cases of shipwracks, in reduction fugitive slaves. It happened at that time the Vice-roy dying, his Successor would not through superstition enter his Palace till hee had pulled it quite downe and built it anew at the Kings charge. Meanewhile spending his time in Canton Province, he was made against vs by Sarcelus of the Portugals, F. Mat. Riccius was employd, and got their good liking, and on leave by any means of the Vice-roy to stay at Sciauchin. Yea, hee forced vpon the Governour the execution of his Mandate to packe them away, offering money for the house, which they refused to take, saying, a house built for Gods seruice might not be sold, and it were ill merchand- 50 dize to take sixtie pieces of Gold for fixe hundred which it had cost them.

Iesuites merit
their exhibi-
tion for leuare
to the State.

When they came at Canton the Admirall was absent, and whiles they waited for him the Vice-roy sent a Barke for them to returne, and then permitted them to chuse any other place of refuge, not, but withheld them first to trye at Nanhua, or at Xauccum, commending them to the Affiliant of the Governour thereof, then present, and gaue Riccius a bundle of bookes of his fashion. They departed from Sciauchin on the Assumption day, 1589. They came to the place called Sanceu, or Three-waters, where the Ruers of Xauccum from the North falls into a great River: there they vfe to change ships, to haue others fitted in other fashion to sayle against the 60 streame. In eight dayes sayling to the North, they came to the place where the Governour frequent stayed for them to bring them to the Temple or Monasterie of Nanhua, part of which the Vice-roy had giuen them if they liked it. This Monasterie they found in a goodly Place, floure- nished with pleasant Hills, enriched with hand-led fruit-bearing trees, watered with a

Iesuites bani-
shed.

Iesuites house
cost 600 pieces
of Gold, which
in ch'na is a
great summe,
Nanhua.

Riuere in the midst : the goodliest Hill, graced with a plentifull Fountaine, was the Seat of the Temple, a great pile, which was the Monasterie wherein a thousand Priests (by the impious piety of the Ancestrie, Lords of that ground) had their abode.

The Original thereof was a man which lived about ^{above} six hundred yeeres since, called *Lafu*, who is reported to have flourished in great reputation of holiness; by reason of his austere course of life; which a chaine giued to his bare feet, wonted to kick Rocks, and to beate it lightly after their manner, as which as serued for the daily food of a thousand Monasteries. With that chaine he lieth purtrified, so that wormes breed therein: of which if any happened to fall to the ground, he placed it there againe, saying, *Hail thou nothing to care why thou shouldst smelt away?* I thinke his carkele preferred and that famous Temple built to his worship, to which a concourse of 10 Pilgrimes out of all the Kingdome, euerie where he and all his being much reuered. These Ministers of the Deuill are diuided into twenty Stations, each hauing his Superiours, and euerall an Abbot. When the Father came thither sent by the Vice-roy, they suppoed he had come to see their Abbot and to reforme their abuses; for they not only had their Concubines and Balthams, but robbed by the high-ways. Now all the Idoll Priests are as subject to the Magistrates as their men; perhaps because their Learned effeme not Idols, nor account theif their Priests. Yet and officiously offered to gage the Fathers faier entertainment: with much pretended piety, then the chiefe priests of all their Monasterie. They were full of great Idols of Brallic and other Metals, and of wood giued. In one Station they were told howe humbled. There were also many 20 Stepples and Bels of Metall cast, one such as they had neuer seen in *Europe* to their remembrance.

The bodie also of their Saint, *Lufu*, was shewed, all shining with that their *China* bituminous Vernish (so vulgarly thought, and preferred with incredible veneration, though many deny it to be his bodie): In the midst of the Temple is an eminent place to which they ascend by nate steps, in which hang about fifty Lamps, but no all burning except on fest dayes. The *Chinese* marvelled at the Fathers doing no worship, a thing usually performed by those *Chinese*, who otherwise repose no confidence in their Idols. They both agreed; the *Chinese* Monks to be rid of their feare, and the Fathers to goe to the Citie.

At their departure, Father *Almeida* went by water, and *F. Matthew* by Land with the Governor's Servant, the Abbot bearing him company. He there told us, that the Magistrate that liked not of the Temple, because the men had an ill report as van: Neighbors, and were worshipped one God, and not Idols. This amazed the Governor, perwaded before, that there was no Idol in the World no other Law nor Characters then theirs, till Father *Matthew* pulled forth his *Prayers-book*. The Abbot also testified that he had worshipped none of the Idols, no not *Lusla* *Idole*. At last, the Governor was perwaded by him, that that Idol-worship was a later Sedition among them: yea, the Abbot affirmed, that they defused no worship, but that former Magistrate had so abused them, that without Idols the vulgar would not keep Religion, and therefore let us see thee to that end, that thou wilt winneth all the Cite Magistra's which vied them with more sacrifice then thou dost. *Matthew* then led us to a little vale to another Temple or Monastrie called *Quamiasia*, on the other *Wetterne* side of the River, and carried their goods thither till they were provided of a Houfe.

The Citee *Xanumcum* is feated betwixt two Nuaigable Rivers which here met: the one which palteth by *Nashimom* on the East, the other running out of the Province of *Papago* on the West. But the Cite was and Houfis are builded in the mid^d of the field, but they are forced to live straitneesse to build all on the other-side the River, joyned with a Bridge on Barkes. It containeth five thousand Houffholds is fertile but vnholnfome, the third or fourth part of the Inhabitants beinge chafed of a Tertian from October to December, which takes away many, and leaves a pale Impression on the rest. Strangers also are no leffe arreited by it, when they come thither on businesse. And the Irefutes had almost lost themselves in this new purchase, where beinge \$0 they were almost lost, till the enter of the Vice-roy to build their Houfe in ground belonging to the Monasterie. Thither the Vice-roy sent thither *Sebastian Fernandez* and *Francis Martines*, which had beene crayed vpon in the Schoole of *Amoyac*, the first Probationers in *China*. They to auoid expence, built this Houfe of one Storie after the *China* manner: and soone liked better of this then their former Residence.

Chintajoo (the sonne of one of the seconde rank of Magistrates called *Seang-joo*, a famous, as being the first named of the three hundred Doctors made every third year, and Author of Learned Works) had spent his Patrimony after his Fathers death with Prodigalitie and experiences of Alchymie; and now was forced to shift, with his Wife and Servants wandering thorow the Kingdome to his Fathers Friends, and becoming a Solicitor for other men to the ⁵⁰ disgrace of his acquaintance. He having obtained of the Vice-roy a Rosome in that Monastery became a Night-burrow to the others, and one day with Lett Pompe (after the *Chuna* custom) and precious Gifts came to the Father, and begged of him for his Mallet. It was not that the Father to refuse (though he feared his wits left him) but that he was

CHAP. 5. §. 4. Chiutaisos *Scholarship*, China *feasting*, *Queenes pardoners*

thus by *couctounefic* and first taught him *Arithmetick*. For thus which the *Chinois* haue is writen by *Linnen Infinitum* where *Beadsare* put by wires, and shifed higher and lower to reckon their numbers: certayne, but libicet to Error, and vnpromisable to high Sciences. He then to himall the *Sphere of Clauus*, and the first Booke of *Euclides Elements*, and taught him to make *Sun-dials* of many sorts, and *Geometrical Rules* to measure *Altitudes*. He being of fabril wit, committed these things to writing in elegant stile, and shewed them to *Magistrates* of his *Acquaintance*, so procuring great opinion and admiration to the *Lefuits*. His wit and exceeding industry brought him to great skill, that hee made *Spheres*, *Astrolobes*, *Quadrants*, *Compasses*, *Dials* and other like, very artificially, and some of them: withall so letting forth his Master had acquaintance with *Pompeius*, who being a great Commander, was by the *Gouernours* of the *Citie* and diuers other *Magistrates*, *Ameida* fell sick and was sent to *Macao*, to see if *Physicke* might recoure him, and there dyed.

ing
Acquis (set forth) a gooely Image hitherto vnseene, on the Altar adorned with Waxe Lights, which brought forth Concurre to freit, that their enuious Neighbours (loved the Houfe and Seruants by night : whereat *Chauis* offended acquainted the Governor, who with desire to see his Decree out their doore prohibiting all wrongs. He called the Street Gossips (as Confitela with vs) and was likeli there to haue scourged them, pretending their ignorance, and putting chaines about their neckes after the fashion, lent them so felle out the wrong doers, and 20 bring them to his Tribunal. They fearing to anger their Parents, durst not name them, till he commanded to whip the one and lend the other to Prison, whereupon they named two, whose punishment with much intreatie of the Father was pardoned. Father *Francis de Peris*, was lent (by the Magistrates License obtained) to succeed in *Alameda* place. The Vice-roy was then preferred by his friends procurement and Bribes to a higher place, but the Princiual *Prisor* had so complained of his wrongs, that by the way hee was acquainted that hee was deprivd of all Office, and fined at forty thousand pieces of Gold to the King. Besides, a filthy Vice brake out of him, and found out he miserably dyed. Thus did God punish his pride, which torrest a Temple to himselfe. *Scauchen*, had deprivd the Iesuits of their Houle. The fame at *Scauchen* 30 was that the Iesuits were expelled for refusing to teach the Vice-roy the Arte of *Scauchen* to chivie.

one *Cosubano* a Merchant of the *Citie Tuche* in *Chiang*, abode in *Nanbun*, and had some fortune in his Family, a very Superstitious and worshipper, in whose service he macerated his whole life in that *China* abstinence from Flesh, Fish, Eggs, and Milk, using only of Pulse, Rice, Herbs, and certain Cakes, industrious for his education in another life, but not satisfied with any of the *China* Sects. He had learned by *Chiaman* the use of the Jellitus, and came to *Xaucuncun* and acquainting *Father Riccio* with his purpose, he was instructed and baptized *Joseph*. He stayed with them a month, and after *Riccio* went to *Nanbun* to him, and preached and baptized ten others. Threats by night assailing their House, the Governor was made acquainted, who would have them indicted by the *Fathers* (which they did very sparingly), whereas the *China* manner is to add excessively and he put them to torture and forced them to confess: one whole Hat or head covering falling off had bewrayed him, he condemned in Capital sentence: the other to be sent to the Gallies, or amongst the Kings Slaves: which sentence was so gentle to Superior Governors, and so to *Sciachin*, and *Father Riccio* must goe thither about it, which happened well for the few Conuers which had for the most part growne wild. From thence he went to *Amacac* to speake with the Visitor, and returned to *Sciachin*, where the Parents of the theues procured him their Advocate which should have beene the Plaintiff. Amongst the *China* Magistrates is one which hath his name of *Pardoning punishments*: Here is sent in the Name of the *Queene Mother*, into each Province one. Their Office is to visit Prisons... to examine them and

to and to mitigate Sentences; for which the Magistrates hold them in great esteem. But if he would have been a Jew, men, though the Father intrusted. The *Provincialis* *Officer* only re-
tuko the judgement of feuen or eight the Sentences, and they depaired that he would re-
comioyning in an impious Sacrifice in a certain *Tempel*. Hereupon they conspired fittie of them
of the Magistrates of the Citee fubfcribing (except one who did it, to offend the Fathers grace
till friend) they better beuought themselves, and intreated *Kieris* to goe into Intercolloquy
wherefore the *Visitator* was priuaged to pronounce them *Dicers* and not *Theures*, and thus he
brand to them the twelve tribes apiece. For the name of *Theures* would have been an ignominious
the *Visitator*, but he would not be killed for euer. Yet would they haue renewed their aculation to
60 *Pequin*, pulled that way towards the East. About that time the *President* of the *Court* of *Rites* at
did not to the *Visitators* visited them with gifts, and sent a whole day with them, promising at
his returne to carry *Father Mathew* to *Pequin* with him to see the *Calendars*.
In November 1594, *Father Francis de Peris* died, and *Father Leo* *Caruamus* succeeded,
Rites beuought him of another course: for howlouer they had broken off the

Bonzi in-
famous.
Popish and
Euhistic priests
like in living
and habite.

Visitors alter
their habite.

Scilicet.

Mount Maun-
or Maun: See
Ex. Additio-
ne.

Naugah.

Cancos Vice-
roy and Gre-
ater President.

Scarcely exer-
cismen.

Boat-bridge.

Scieptahus, that
is 18. Acres, in
many in this
space flow into
it.

Lying vanities.

yet because they shaved their beards like the *Portugall* Priests, and cut their hayre, and lived sin-
gle, had their Temple and let prayers, they could not free themselves from that infamous title
which made them visit for greater Deligence. Hee advised the Visitor, that by this meannes they
were accounted as the Idoll Priests, and that it were fitter to let their hayre and beards grow,
and to wear the habite of the Learned men, each of them having a garment of Silke to visit the
Magistrates, without which they might on equall termes amongst the *Chinese*, confesse with
them: also that it was fit to remove their residence from this unwelcome syre of *Yacumou*, or
to divide it. To all these the Visitor yielded, undertaking to acquaint the General of the Order
and the Pope. For howsoever for vertue and learning (wanting to their *Bonzi*) the Magistrates
had always shewed countenance to Ours, yet the vulgar held them in that vulgar respect; nei-
ther might the Magistrates breake their custome, to give them equall entertainment. Nor did
they now leave themselves for Learned men of *China*, but for *European* Learned, imitating the
habits of that Country.

The next yeere, 1699, the Chief Judge of the Council of Warre, by the *Chinese* called *Scilicet*,
which is farr above the dignity of Vice-roy, (who before had after diuers Dignities betaken
himselfe to a private life) upon occasion of the mutation of *Cancos*, was by the King of *China*
(which sent in defence thereof an Armie of eightie thousand) called backe to the Royall Citie.
Hee had a Sonne of twentie yeeres old, who for griefe that hee had lost the first degree of their
Students, lost his wits. Hee sent a Captayne to the Fathers, thinking they could recouer his
Sonne which hee had with him, and gave them such entertainment, that the Magistrates were
amazed. Hee caused a Charter to bee given to *Ricim* for going to *Nanquin*, chief Citie in *China*,
where hee hoped to doe good on his Sonne. Hee passed Mount *Maun*, which lyeth betwixt the
two Prouinces and the two Rivers, a dayes journey, and the most notable throw-fare in the
whole Kingdome. For at the foot thereof to the South, the River of *Nanchin* becomes naviga-
ble, which runneth into *Cancos* and the South Sea. On the other side of the Hill at the Citie
Nanquin, ariseth another great River, which visiteth the Prouinces of *Chinfi* and *Nanquin*, and
many Citie before hee enters the Sea Eastward. Thus what comes from forraigne Kingdome
to *Cancos*, is this way conveyed to the in-land Kingdome, as also from thence hither: Horfes
and Chayres for carriage on mens shoulders, Beasts for carriage and Porters, being al-
most innumerable every day, yet all in good order. The Mountayne is common to both Prouin-
ces, as they are distinguished by a Gate erected among the stonie precipices. All the way is set
with Trees, planted with flowers, frequent with Hosties, as secure by night as by day, both
by the guards of Soldiers, and frequent of Travellers: neither are their ouer-flowings
by rapines. On the Hill top is a neate Temple, and therein a Garrison, both Prouinces thence
offered to the view. *Nanquin* significth the *Southerne Inne*. Itz went into one of the Pre-
sidents Ships, till hee came to the Citie *Cancos*; by the way often entering into his owne ship
and discoursing with him of *European* affaires, Sciences, and Religion. But for many visitations
for Magistrates hired all dealing with his Sonne in this journey, so that by his Father it
was deferred.

In this Citie *Cancos*, resideth a Vice-roy greater then the Vice-roy of that Prouince, they
call him the Vice-roy of four Prouinces, *Chinfi*, *Fuchien*, *Cancos* and *Yquan*: not that all those
Prouinces are subiect to him, but because hee gouerneth two adioyning Regions, or lette Prouin-
ces out of each of them. The cause of appointing this Vice-roy extraordinary was, the multi-
tude of Theeues in those parts, which bordering on so many Prouinces, could not easily by or-
dinarie course of Iudice bee apprehended; whence two Regions out of each were committed to
one, who by Militarie forces repressed those inuasions. And because the militarie Magistrates
are subiect to that Council of Warre at *Peguin*, the President was heretofore receiued with greater
State: about three thousand men were sent to meet him a league off, with their Captaynes,
Colours and Armes, many with Hand-gonnes mixed, shooting off as hee passed, making a faire show
on both sides the River, which there is not very large. When hee was come into the Citie, the
Vice-roy with other Magistrates visited him with Gifts, Prouisions, Banquets; and some com-
panies were set to guard the Ships: which was also done every where, such is the *China* veneration
of such Magistrates by their inferiours. Heere was a Bridge of Boates, opened but once a
day for Ships passage which haue payd their customes.

After they were past this Citie, another River adides it selfe to this, whence they come into
a place called *Scieptahus*, about thirtie miles long, in which are many Rockes dispersed, on which
the impetuous force of the water causeth many ship-wracks goods lost, and men drowned; and
requieth expert Ship-men; a strange thing to see a River full of shelles and sharpe rockes, in the
midst of the continent. In the entrance of this dangerous passage is an Idoll Temple, wherein
the passengers devoutly commend the safetie of their fortunes to these vanities, which *Scilicet* the
foe heere did in vaine: for although with multitude and industrie of Sayers his Ship auoyded the
Rockes, yet was that broken in which his Wife and Children were carryed, though they escap-
ed drowning, by reason of her high building, every one getting vp into the highest decks,
which lifted vp it selfe above those shallower waters. They cried pitifully, and Father *Mat-*
thias

then hauing then gotten a Boate for himselfe came first and receiued them, going himselfe into
another lesse, which went before to conduct the way. *Scilicet* sent for another Ship presently to
Cancos. Father *Matthew* was taken into another Ship of burthen, which was in a gulf over-
throwne, *John Barada* his boy was drowned, and hee hardly receiued: the Commodities by
dying were gotten againe, though much hurt by the water. They came to a noble and popul-
ous Citie called *Chienan*, where the winde by night was so violent, that it dispersed all the
fleece, which hardly escaped wracke.

Scilicet terrified with this disastrous passage by water, purposed to goe by land to *Peguin*, which
is done at the Kings coll; in certayn places there being Horles, Lighters, Porters, prouisions ready
provided. Now thinking to send backe *Ricim* to *Xanacum*, lest some might accuse him in a time
of warre for bringing Strangers to the Court; hee shewed foole the wonders of his triangle
Glasse, which hee was willing to give the President if hee knew he should hold on with
him in the Iourney. They acquainted their Lord, and hee gave him license to goe to *Nan-*
quin, and to enter those two Prouinces of *Cegnon* or *Cebies*, and *Nanchin* or *Nanquin*. Hee
was carryed thither with two of *Sollans* seruants, still hauing Souldiers from all places to guard
him, they thinking that some of his Sonnes were there carryed. When hee came to that
Mother Citie (for before hee seldome went forth, to prevent all lets) which is in twentie
nine degrees, to the Northernmost part of the Prouince, hee made head of himselfe as one of
Scilicet: household seruants: and not knowing whither to goe to deliuer his Letters, hee first
went into a Temple of note, which beares name of the *Iron Pillar*. For they saie that one
of *Huinun*, had some hundreds of yeeres agoe, brought perfect *Siluer* out of *Quick-siluer*, and had
deliuered this Citie from a yuge Dragon, whom hee ouer-winded out of *Quick-siluer*, and had
tyed to that Iron Pillar, and then flew with his whole house, Mice and all, into *Heaven*.
The building of this Temple is worthy the view, against which are perpetual Faies, in which no-
thing is lacking to be told. The Priests are those which they call *Thaun*, which let their
hayre and beards grow. When hee entered that Temple, much concourse of people came about
him to see a Stranger, a strange sight there, yea, reputed holy, for they had thought that the
fame of that Idoll, had brought him thither from farre Countries. But when hee did no
worship thereto, hee was admonished to doe that which the greatest Magistrates refused not;
then threatened, after they would force him, till one of the Ship sayd, hee worshipped no Idols,
came with the President, whom every man knew. The seruants visited their Masters friends, and
receiued gifts of some, especially of the Vice-royes Physician.

Scarcely had they layed out of the chief Citie, when they meete with a Lake admirable
for the greatnesse and other things: on all the banks as farre as a man can see, are innume-
rable Townes, Castles, great Houses; thence they may passe into *Fuchien*, and thence
to the Sea Eastward. Amongst other Townes there is one Citie called *Nouan*, at the foot of
a Hill called *Liu*, in which Hill are diuers Anchorites, each in his owne Cell, macerating
himselfe with afflicting his bodie. Those Houses are sayd to bee as many, as are dayes in the
yeere: and they tell as a miracle, that the Sunne shining cleere round about, that Hill is al-
ways couered with Clouds and myths: so that that Hill (for none) cannot bee seene out of the
Lake. The course of the River is to *Nanquin*, but in that breadth the streame hath small force,
verour of *Yquan* Prouince, runneth thither and therein loeth his name and waters. For the
places two or three miles broad, dangerous all for tempests like his Father, and they say
into. The *Chinese* sayle it with great feare, and are there often wracked. Great Ships sayle
therein, and lappely our Ships (not the greatest of all) and our Gallies might sayle hitherto
betake themselves to some Port, which they may readily doe also in a storme. To this
Lake the Spring-tydes at Change and Full come, at other times not observable: at *Nan-*
quint him,

Chienan.

Kings Palace.

The Glasse
steemed a
great jewel,
quintessence
Nanchin Ma-
tropolis of
Chinfi.

This steemed
agree with
Pines Maun-
prouince, see page
274.

Admirable
Lakes: see the
new Map.

Mount Liu:
this perhaps
the Calcutta
in *Yquan* etc., or
some like place

River *Yan* is
the same be-
hind the Lake.

§. V.

Nanquin described; Riccius expelled thence, hee settles at Nancian, thence goes to Nanquin againe, and to Pequín; description of it, the way thither, the Kings Palace, and of Succu, and Hamceu.

Nanquin, (which I also call Quinoy) described. It was then greater, at being the Royall residence, which removed and waite together being diminished: it perhaps also that Late decaying and dying up; or more rebuilt as the Towers expelled.

Second Wall twelve Gates. Third Wall. Citie wall two dayes journey on horsebacke.

Garrison 4000. In 1602 great 15000.

Large Suburbs

Miserable Churche.

Nancian.

Fall from fish, fish, eggs, and milk.

Nanquin or Nanchin by the Portugals is called *Leachin*: for they heard of it by the Inhabitants of the Province *Fuchian* or *Fuchian*, which vie *L* for *N*. It is called also *Intenfu*, because the Gouernour of the Region there resideth. This is that Citie, which in the *Chinois* opinion excellently all Cities of the world, both in greatness and goodness: neither may many be compared to it. For it is full of very great Temples, and goodly Bridges, which hall yet be exceeded by those of the same kinde in *Europe*. It excelleth also in temperature of the ayre, fertilitye of the soyle, goodness of wits, gentleness of manners, cleane the also holding equall ranke with those of *Pequin*, in number and dignity, howbeit by the absence of the King, that equalitie is made vn-equall. And so in all the Kingdoms of *China*, and it is compassed with three Walls; the first, that of the Kings Palace enclosed flatly. That is also compassed with a three-fold wall, in manner of a Tower, with ditches filled with water. It hath four or five *Italian* myles in circuit. And I dare boldly say, that no King any where the second wall encompasseth the Palace, and the principall part of the Citie, opened with two Gate, which are fortified with Iron plates, and Ordnance planted out against them within the Citie. This second Wall comprehendeth eightene *Italian* myles compass. The third Wall and yttermost is not euerie where continued, but where need is, Art hath added employment to Natures fortification.

The circuit thereof can hardly be knowne. The Inhabitants say, that two Horse-men in a 30 whole dayes riding, hazing gone out of the same Gate, met together at night: whence the prodigious quantitie may be obserued, especially the forme of the Citie being Circular, and therefore most capabie. Although within the walls are great spaces of Mountaynes, Lakes, Groves, Gardens, yet the greater part is very frequently inhabited. The Garrison Soldiers (which one would not beleue, had not eye-witness confirmed it) which keepe the Citie alone, are fortie thousand. The Pole is eleuated 32. degrees, and so it is seated in manner in the midst of the Kingdom, from North to South. The River runneth by it at the Wall, exceedingly both enriching and beautifying it. Nor doth it onely passe by, but is in many places brought into the Citie by Channels (wherby greater vessels may enter the Citie) being enlarged by Art: and in times past it was called the chiefe Citie of the Kingdom, and may seeme to haue bene anciently most glorious.

Riccius went a land in the Suburbs, which is without the three Walls, and is so large and frequently inhabited, that it may seeme another great Citie. There a Physician of the Vice-roy of *Schiachin* knew him, and hee visited the Vice-royes Sonne, and by his meanes grew acquainted with others. When he went into the Citie, hee vied to be carried in a close Chaire, to preuent nouelty, and for more authoritie, and because the length of the way to friends houles often required it. There hee thinking to fixe a residence, learned of one *Seiungan* a Magistrate of his former acquaintance, to whom hee had before giuen a Globe and an Houre-glass, receiuing promises of much kindness. To him he went full of hope and not empty handed: but hee being both miserably couetous, and ambitiously hunting after new places, was offended with his preference (hee pretending that he came to see him) sent for his Heaule, and threatened him terribly, causing him to shipp away his new Gift: hauing also agreed with the Notarie of his Court to giue euidence against him, as a troublesome and dangerous man formerly expelled from *Schiachin*. Thus against the freame both of his affection and the River, hee was forced (tooth to displease Magistrates) to returne to *Chianf* Province. In the way hee fell sick, hee had a vision (as the *Storie* lieth) in which God appeared to him, and promised to be propitious in both the Citie Royall to him.

In *Nancian* the chiefe Citie of *Chianf* hee abode. This is as great in circuit, but not in Magnitude as *Canton*, and through none of those portentuous great Cities, yet it is famous for the number of Learned men, which thence are aduanced to diuers parts: the people are thierly and contented with little, and many of them observe that first aforesaid. Of the Learned men there is also a *Societie*, in which on feet dayes the more learned doe Lecture or discourse teaching vertues in very modest manner. The Physician aforesaid, famous for his Art and well respected by the

the Vice-roy, was visited by him. Hee now vied his Silken vest and Cap vied by the Learned, somewhat like but higher, then that which Priests in *Spain* wear, (for hee had learned to keepe state and not to delect himselfe too much) and carried two seruants with him in long garments made of Callico, and his gaitstoe Chayre: without which pompe a man cannot be taken for a Learned man, the poorest Students vying them, and otherwise contemned. The Physician entertained him kindly, and after invited him to a Feast, where were many Students, and some of the Royall bloud (of which that Citie hath very great store) which were glad of his acquaintance; and when hee had once mentioned his staying there, the Physician was so eager in desire thereof, that hee feryed that the President *Seilan* had written to him, to procure him residence there, be-

- 10 cause in the former abode hee had not his health. The *Chinois* esteeme such lyes to be wildeome. Hee soone got credit amongst them by Mathematical lectures and instruments, and by his artificiall memorie especially. For the *Chinois* about all others commit whole bookes to memorie with vnwearyed paynes, and in the first yeeres of their studies doe nothing else. Hee repeated the most confused and inpendant Characters in order, yea, backwards as well as forward. Many desired to learne it, and some hee entertained. Physicians being of no great authoritie, hee sought to insinuate into fauour of the Magistrates; but a certayne Student had counselled him to neglect their license, and thereupon enquire being made by the Vice-roy, this his friend and landlord very friend-like, would needs throw him suddenly out of doores, and hee was forced by force to defend himselfe. But the Vice-roy having receiued a Libell from him, testifying who hee was, was greatly reioyced (hauing heard of him) and when hee came to his Court, arose from the Tribunal to meete him, would not suffer him to kneele, and gave him good vjage and magnificent Titles, inuiting him also to reside there. Whole ascribed were a kinde into a greater flame by his Physicians, magnifying his Mathematickes, Memorarie, Bookes, three square Glasse and other nouelties. The Vice-roy would haue him make him a Dyall, and teach his Sonnes, but for that admirable Glasse, hee would by no kinde force accept the gift.

- And whereas time out of minde many of the Royall blood are three, two of them hauing the title of Kings, *Chienan*, and *Longan*, sent their principall Seruants or Courtiers, to inuite *Father Matthew* to the Palace, which is fitting to Royall Maestrie, both for Greatnesse, magnificence of Building, pleasure of Gardens, and other furniture of household and attendance. *Chienan* first inuited and entertained him, attyred with a Royall vesture and Diadem: *Father Matthew* gave him a Dyall with the Signes of the Zodiacke, and a Globe with *Chinese* characters, and other *European* commodities; which hee recompensed with Silkes, weight of Silver, and diuers viands. Nothing gaue him such content as two Bookes of *Japon* paper, smooth and hard bound in *European* manner: one containing Maps and other Mathematical representations, with an explication in their Language; the other was a tractate of Friendship, wherein Dialogue-wise (as *Cicero* in his *Letter*) hee bringeth in the King, questioning what the men of *Europe* thought of Friendship, and set downe the sentences or Philosophers, Doctors, and other Authors; a worke to this day read there with great applause and admiration. Printed in diuers Provinces, *Chienan* continued his friendship and left it as a legacy to his Sonne, who vied when the Father visited him, to pay the Porters, and to giue money to his seruants, a token with them of great welcome. The Societie also of Learned men grew acquainted with him, and the chiefe of them, hearing him complaine of multitudine of visitors, wished him to command his Seruants to say hee was not at home: which officious lye hee affirming to be by our Law vnlawfull, bid him and hee the rest much wonder.

- In the meane while at *Xaneco* they sustayned abuses, and *Sebastian Fernandes* was vied ignominiously by the calumnies of their quarrellsome neighbours, and sentence of a partiall Iudge, which caused two Seruants to bee whipped without end, and *Fernandes* to stand as in a Pillorie, with shure so that a man cannot put his hand to his mouth: and this for sooth for beating the *Bachelors*. 50 This was written as the cause of his punishment. Hee afterwards sought the *Iustices* fauour, ashamed of his fact, inuited them, and set vp an Edict for their lazie. *Fernandes* was sent hence- upon to *Ricnie*, and *Catanen* continued alone without any Father, till the yeere 1597, and fell sick: then going to *Amaco* (Father *Iohn Araccio* was sent in his place) hee returned with *Father Nicholas Longobard* a *Sicilian*. *Father Matthew* was appointed superiour of the *China* missions, without subiection to the Rector of *Amaco*. To him precious matches were sent, and Images with other things, which might further their *China* proceedings, *Father Matthew* minding to triall means to pierce to the Court, assayed *Chienan* in vaine, who feared to raise any suspicion of himselfe. Hearing therefore that *Guan* (which had as you heard) visited the house of *Xaneco*, in his way to *Hannau*, was thence called by the King to *Nanway* at *Nancian* they visited him with a present. In which intention it pleased him as the tunc- some Glasse) and tooke opportunitie to signifie to him, their desire of presenting the King with some *European* rarities. Hee approued thereof and said, they should not onely goe with him to

Many of the Royall blood at Nancian.

Chienan, his sonne.

Riccius his artificiall memorie.

Fortune friend.

Chienan and Longan, King of the Kingdom.

Riccius his China Booke of friendship.

Token of welcome.

Gualis.

Pillorie board.

Araccio and Longobard.

The Countess of the Countess.

Nanquin, but to *Pequin* also; whether within one month of his coming hee was to goe. *Ricinu* with *Catanus* attend him (leaving two of the company at *Nanquin*) with two brethren of the company, *Seb. Fernandez*, and *Emanuel Perreira*, of *China* parentage in *Amacao*: who of their God-fathers take vially both Christian name and Sir-name, wing also their *China* names in dealing with *Chinois*. They fell forth from *Nanquin* on Midsummer day, 1598, and when they were come to *Nanquin* they found all full of feare, by reason of the *Laponian* warre in *Cera*, so that none durst give vs entertainment, grievous Proclamations having lately forbidden to receive men any way suspicious, by occasion of *Laponian* Spies taken. Even the President himselfe, feare to bee author in the trouble some time of bringing Strangers: and *Ricinu* when he visited him, vied his Gellatorie leate. They gave eight pieces of Gold to a cunning Clerke to write their Petition (so deare do Learned men there prize their labour) which when they gave the Chancellour (which sends Petitions from *Nanquin* to the King) hee would not meddle with it, but put it off to the President, that hee should carrie them with him to *Pequin*. He being to bee there to gratulate the King at his Birth day, in name of the fixe Tribunals or Councils, lent his goods by water and the *sejures* with them, but went himselfe by land.

When this President came to *Nanquin*, other Magistrates visited him with presents after the manner, and one the Vice-roy of that Province with a Map of *Ricinu* his invention, concealing the name of the Author in a new impression; which hee shewed to *Ricinu*, who soon knew and challenged his owne. This the President intimated, that the Author was going with him to *Pequin*. Hee presently fends the Captayne of the Soldiers, to desire the President that he might have light of a man whom hee is so much admited; sending withall a Chayre, and Porters with Hories also. For the Vice-roy of *Nanquin* resideth not in *Nanquin*, because in that High Court are higher Magistrates, which would seeme to eclipse his Greatnesse. So *Catanus* went with the Ship, *Ricinu* to the Vice-roy, whom hee saluted with *European* gifts. Hee stayed with him ten dayes, so great desire hee had to conferre with him. And when hee shewed him the Image of *Christ*, he would not take view of it there, but would first ascend to a steepe Chappell which he had on the top of his House, therein after the rites of their Learned, to worshipping *Heaven*; with three doores to it, from the South, East, and West: about it round was a Gallerie distinguished and cancelled. There hee caused an Altar to bee erected, and thereon Wax-lights and Incense to bee fired; and then the Image being set thereon, hee came in his most sumptuous attire and did worship four times, after their accustomed rites: after which hee would not stand before it but besides it, to take view, which hee did a good space. After him, his familie did likewise: and every day they reiterated the same, one also being appointed to keepe perpetual OJours burning before it. Hee brought other Magistrates also to see the same: and when he might not detayne the Father longer, hee sent him away with great weight of Silver, which came fitting to their necessitie. Hee gave aduise also touching their designe, and told them of that frustrate successe which followed. He went with him to the River, and sent one with him till hee had overtaken his companion. The *Chinois* call that River *Lanfu-chien*, *Chuen* signifying the greatest River; other Rivers they call *Chio*.

That River of *Nanquin* which I called (*Tamfu* or *Lanfu*, the *Source of the Sea*, goeth Northward to *Nanquin*, and then returning somewhat Southward, runneth into the Sea with great force; fortie myles from which it passeth by *Nanquin*. And that from hence to *Pequin* there might bee passage by Rivers, the Kings of *China* have desired a large Channell from this river, called the *Yellow River*, such being the colour of that troubled water. This is the other famous River of that Kingdom, in greatnesse and note, which ariseth without the Kingdom to the West, out of the Hill *Canlon*, conjectured "to be the same whence *Ganges* ariseth, or one neere to it. Where it first breaks forth, it maketh a Lake which they call (*of the Castellations*): thence it pierceth into the borders of *China* in *Scienc*, the most Western Province, and goeth out againe out of the Northern walls into the *Tartary* Countries: after which it returneth to the South, and that Province whence it had come, and washeth another Province named *Scienc*, and another named *Honan*: then turneth into the East and entereth the Eastern Ocean, not farre from the *Sonne of the Sea*. This River against their lawes for Strangers, entrench *China* from Barbarous Regions, and as in reuenge of their malice to Strangers, often ouerthroweth great part of the Kingdom, and thence his Channell being full of Sands which it moueth. Certaine Officers or Magistrates designed doe sacrifice thereto, or to the Spirit of it (for they let Spies ouer diuers things) with many rites: and they sayne that it cleares the troubled waters, but once in one thousand yeeres, wherein it is probable of a fild-seeing thing, *When the yellow River shall bee cleared*. They that sayle therein, must therefore keepe the water many dayes till it seeth, the third part prouing myre and land. Before the ingreffe and egress of this River, are Channells which give passage to Ships that carry prouision to *Pequin*. Those Ships are layd to bee ten thousand, fenn only out of five Provinces, (*Chanfu*, *Cochan*, *Nanchen*, *Uyuan*, and *Scienc*). For these Provinces pay their yearly tribute in Rice and Corne, the other ten in Silver. Besides these, there passe innumerable Ships of Magistrates and of private Merchants: but private men are forbidden to goe out of the *Hanfu* into those little Rivers (chole only passe which dwell

* Such conjectures as this and those in *Priory* of this Lake seeme ill grounded. Lake of *Castellations*.

Magistrates sacrifice to the River.

10000 Ships of the Kings or five Provinces

dwell within such Rivers to the North) lest the multitude of Ships should hinder the passage, or bee able to doe harme to *Pequin*. Yet is there such store of Ships notwithstanding, that they are forced to stay sometimes diuers dayes, one hindring another, especially at some seasons when water is scarce, for remedie whereof, they haue lockes and flood-gates, which opened make way from one to another of them, with great labour and tedious longings. The crossesse of wipdes and labours of drawing with ropes, I need not mention. Some ships are ouerwhelmed at the opening of those lockes. They haue wooden Engines on the banks to draw the Ships of Magistrates, at the Kings coft, against the streame all the way. And in fitting this River to Navigation, a million is spent yearly; the feare of the Sea and Pyrates, haue made them take this course 10 rather then that by Sea.

In all this way, many Cities most worthy note appeare, of the Province *Nanquin*, *Scienc*, *Pequin*, and besides the Cities there are so many Townes, Villages, Houses on the banks, that all the way may be sayd to bee inhabited; so that the *Sayles* no where want to furnish themselves with Corne, Rice, Fish, Flesh, Fruits, Herbes, Wine and the like, at a very cheape rate. By the same River, Wood, Timber, Boards, Pillars (for the *Chinois* make reckoning only of those of wood) are carryed for the Kings workes: especially, then when the Kings Palace had beene on fire, which consumed two parts of three thereof. In all the Iourney, ones found great rankes of Timber-trees tyed together, and of other wood, which many thousands of men drew with huge toyle, and scarcely could get forwards, due or fixe myles in a day, 20 and from the Province *Szechuan*, which is furthest from the Court, such Timber-trees were in going vp, two or sometimes three yeeres space: whence every pillar made of them prodigiously aforesaid to three thousand pieces of Gold: and of those Timber-rankes they encountered one seeming longer then the rest, which was esteemed to reach two myles in length. The Brick-makers which the *Chinois* preferre before Stone) for the Kings Palace, were carryed this way fifteen hundred myles, and many Ships had no other vfe, so many as might seeme sufficient, not for a Palace but great Cities. Out of the Southerne Provinces, are yearly sent those things which in the more barren Provinces of *Pequin* are wanting; as Fruits, Fish, Rice, Silkes, Cloathes and other things: and a day is fest there, at which if they bee not there, they incurre grievous penalties. Of the Ships called *Horses*, the Kings Eunuchs haue command. By this River they buye almost onely when the Russes dwell ouer their banks, peradventure by the melting 30 and sometimes two monthes, the winds which they carrie, are often corrupted before they come to *Pequin*, for which cause they coole them with Ice, and in all those wayes much Ice is preferred for that purpose, and distributed to the passengers, and so all things are carryed fresh to the Court.

The Eunuchs of those Ships, sell emptye roomes to the Passengers for their gayne: for the *Chinois* thinke it a glory to send that which goeth to the King in many ships, & not to giue them their full lading, which is also profitable for that sterilitie of *Pequin*, Merchants by these convenient freights making nothing to want there where nothing grows. Ones hired a room in like manner for their ease. By reason of the great heat they all fell sicke, vfe by Gods helpe recovered. When they were to passe out of the River, in the Province of *Scienc*, they must write a hand-made River, which runnes out neere *Pequin*, to the Tower *Tienfu*. Another River from *Pequin* or rather from *Tartaria*, meetes it, and runnes together with it into the Sea, or into that Bay, betwixt *Corai* and *China*, after they haue runne together one day. In this Tower there was a new Vice-roy extraordinary, by reason of that inauision of *Corai* from *Japan*. Hee prouided a huge Fleet for defence of *Corai*, by which means that whole River was full of Ships of warre and militarye tumult. Ones went thorow the thickest of them without let, and at walls of *Pequin*. And although by Art they haue made a huge Channell to the walls, yet left it 50 shall bee filled with multitude of Ships, they suffer none but the Kings burthens to goe that way, the others being carryed by Carts, Beasts, and Porters. They came to *Pequin* on a festiual day, the Euen of the Virgins Natiuities.

The chief Mart Townes in this way were *Ianchou* in *Nanquin* Province, in thirte two degrees thirte minutes. *Houan* in thirte four not all so much; *Szechu* in thirte four degrees thirte minutes. In *Scienc* Province *Zimou* in thirte five degrees fortie minutes. *Lan* in thirte seven degrees fortie minutes. In *Pequin* Province *Tienfu* in thirte nine degrees thirte minutes. *Pequin* in fortie large. They are deceiued which estimate it to sitte. Now from *Canlon* (which is two dayes from *Amacao*) are of *China* furlongs (five of which make a mile, and fifteene a league) by River to *Nanchou*, one thousand one hundred and fuentie. Thence to *Canlon* 60 one thousand hundred and twentie. From that to *Nanquin*, one thousand four hundred and fortie. And thence to *Pequin* three thousand three hundred thirte furl, in all sixteen thousand sixtie furl: which makes of miles, one thousand four hundred and thirteene.

Craftes to draw ships. Tempestuous fests and Pyrates on that coast. Sea, Fines.

Timbers for the Kings building. Two thirds of the Kings house burnt by lightning.

Bricks preferred to Stone.

Twifire ships called *Horses*. Heat and cold.

Hand-made River. Tienfu.

They come to Pequin.

Ianchou. Houan. Szechu. Zimou. Lan.

Length of the way.

Pequign is situated in the Northern border about one hundred miles from the wall against the Tartars. *Pequign* exceeds it in greatness, composition of the Streets, hugeness of Buildings, and Munitions: but *Pequign* exceeds it in multitude of Inhabitants, and of Magistrates.

The walls.

Watch and Ward.
Palace.

Streets.

All goe and ride veiled.

Commodities of Mules and Malleons.

Booke of Pequign.

See Page 388.

China, Cathay, See Pagan.

Cambula the great Viceroy of the North.

Over, Sup. cap.

Alchymie and bale coultie.

Coosening Merchant.

China Language and Accents.

The Kings Palace siteth within the inner Southerne wall, neere the City gates and extends to the Northern walls, seeming to take up the whole Citie: the rest of the City gates and extends to both sides: it is some what narrower than the Palace of *Pequign*, but more goodly and glorious; that seeming by the Kings absence, as a carcasse without soule. Few of the Streets are paved with Bricks or Stone, so that in Winter dirt, and dust in Summer, are very offensive: and because it raineth there seldom, the ground is all crumbled into dust, and if any wind blow, it stirs every Roome. To prevent which they have brought in a custome, that no man of whatsoeuer rank goeth on foot or rideth without a Veile or Bonnet hanging to his brest, of that figure that he may see, and yet the dust not annoy him: which also hath another commoditie that he may goe any whithersoever, free from innumerable tedious salutations, and also be spared attendance and cost. For to ride is not magnificent enough with the *Chinois*, and to be carried in their Seats is costly, with Attendants especially; and in that time of Warre it fitted with ours to passe unknowne, being Strangers.

Mullesters flood at the Palace, and City gates, and in every Street to let Mules, themselves also attending the Hires whether they would in the City: which leading the beasts by the bridle, in that frequentie made way, being all so skillful of the wayes, knowing most of the great mens Houles: all at a reasonable rate. There is a Booke also which truly relateth all the Streets, Lanes, Regions of the City: Porters also with Seats to carrie Men, and Horses are every where found, but dearer than at *Pequign*, or other places.

All things are to be had in abundance, but brought thither and therefore dearer. Wood is scarce, but supplied with Mine-coles (we call them *Sea-coles*) necessary to that Region, cold being what the Climate vially exacteth: their Beds are so made with Brick-works, that by a new kind of Stoves admit the heat of those Coles: a thing viall in all those Northern Regions. These Northern *Chinois* are some what more dull, but better Soldiers than the others. Here they learned that this Kingdom is *Catai*, and the King of *China* the great *Cay*, and *Pequign* *Cambula*.

For the nine Kingdomes (of *Mangi*) are those Southerly Provinces which are vnder the great River *Lan-fu-chu*, and fixe upon it make up the fifteenth, so great that some one of them is as great as all *Italy*. Anno 1608, whilst we wrote, it is forty yeares since two *Turkes* or *Moor*s out of *Arabia* brought to *China* a Lion (a beast I seldom here see) by Land, which had an Office given by the King to them and theirs, to keepe the Lion, and that they should carry no Tales thence. They in conference called this Kingdom great *Catai*, and the City *Cambula* the like we heard of others which had come from *Perfia*. The *Chinois* also have heard of that name, and still call the *Tartars* *Lu*, and the North parts *Pa* and *Pei*: to which Can the *Tartarian* Title added easily makes *Cambula* or *Cambula* with others; for the *Chinois* seldom vise B. and *Marco Polo* comming in with the *Tartars* called it by their name. And at this time without the walls of *China* is found no *Catai*. The *Portugals* called it *China*, borrowing the name as may be supposed from the *Spaniards*, and hence Colmagraphs made them two Kingdomes. But *Gao*, his Journey by Land to *Catay* hath taken away all scruple.

To returne to ours now come to *Pequign*, the President gaue them entertainment, and procured an Eunuch to vndertake the huiusmodi for the Presents, which were a Clocke, two Pictures, two Trigone-glaffes and a Bell: all pleased the Eunuch, but his minde ranne more on making Silver of Quick-silver, which he had heard they could doe, and which would be more gratefull to the King. And when he saw that would not be vndertaken, neither would he vndertake to acquaint the King, in this time of *Carnay* Warres, and ours also were taken for *Lapromers*, or neere vnto them, they not knowing how by true names to distinguish Nations. The President also began to be fearefull and purposed to carry them backe with him to *Pequign*. Yet they staid a month after him (he being at a certaine day by Law to depart) and when they had tryed all wayes in vaine, none daring to acknowledge Strangers, they returned to *Pequign*. They had a Bill of Exchange from *Amaco* to take up money at *Pequign*, but the Merchant had paid the Merchant and *Chinse* too, none such there to be found. They hired a ship at an easie rate for their returne (because they goe empty) but not easie in this respect that the Owners pourtie made the journey tedious for want of helpe. This benefit they made of this Journey to learne the Language better, making a Dictionary, obstruing their Accents with Points devised; (that speech consisting wholly of Monosyllables, the want of skill in those Accents had caused that they neither

did, nor were vnderstood) *Cat-mou* skill in Multitude helping to distinguish those sounds. What course *River* and he instructed, that the Company still obserue in their Writing.

All the Rivers in *China* vize to be frozen in the beginning of Winter, that ships cannot passe by water, and Carts by Land are safer. They agreed that Father *Matthew* should goe by Land with two Seruants, to try if he could settle at *Pequign*, the rest and the burthens to stay till the River were thawed. He purposed also to goe to *Suceu* whether *Chinse* had often invited him, being his Country. Pasing thorow *Seismum*, he visited *Suceu* and *Tamcen* famous Marts, and passing the River *Tamcen*, at *Chinchiang*, the chiefe City of that Province hee entered into a land made River, by which is failed to *Suceu* and to the chiefe Citie of *Cochan Hamcen*. This River being Southerly and neere frozen ouer, is so narrow that multitudes of shippes cloy it so sometimes that they cannot pass forward or backward: He was forced therefore to go by another way, which is a Coach or Wagon of one wheele, so builded that one sitting in the midst, and two on the sides, the Coach-man behind with wooden Leauers or Barres drives it forwards both surely and swiftly, that in short time he came to *Suceu*.

This Noble Mart is one of them wherewith is the Province, *That which is in Heaven the Seat of the Blest, that in Earth is named Suceu*, and *Hamcen*: in splendour, wealth, frequentie remarkable. It is built in a calme fresh-water River, and quite thorow one may goe, as in *Perfia*, by Land or Water, but herein it excelleth *Perfia* that the water is fishy. The Streets and buildings stand vpon piles of Timber, the Wares from *Amaco* and other parts are moit fold here. It hath one gate to the Land, the others are water-ways. The Bridges are innumerable, & Magnificent, Ancient, but of one Arch in those narrow Channels. Butter and White-meates are plentie, Rice, and the best Wine, which thence is carryed to *Pequign* and other parts. It is farly two dayes from the Sea. It is well fortified, the chiefe City of the Region, which hath eight Cities. One of the Princes held this, when the *Tartars* were expelled, against this Royall Race; whereupon it still payeth a great Tribute, to wit, the halfe of all things growing; (so that some two whole Prouinces pay less than this one Region to the King, against whom it had stood out) it is still also waded with a frequent Garrison. *Chinse* was then absent at *Tamcen* a Neighbour City, who received him with great humaneitie. He chode in a Monastery, and resigned his bed to his Master, who tired by trauell felt sicke and was likely there to haue dyed. Recovered by his care, he gaue him a Triangle Glasse, which he put in a Silver case with Gold Chaines at the ends, and adorned it further with a Writing that it was a fragment of that matter wherewith the *Heavens* consist. One was said to offer him five hundred pieces of Gold loone for it, which till Father *Matthew* had presented his to the King hee would not let: after that hee let a higher price and sold it.

At the beginning of the *China* yeare, all are busied in sending Presents to their friends, feasts and salutations. They went to *Cinchion* to the p. blice Solemnitie where *Chinse* was well knowne, and by his speech Father *Matthew* and from thence they went to *Pequign*, in February, 1599. Before we come thither we will looke backe to our *Canton* Iesuits.

¶ VI.

Letters from Father LONGOARD and TAISO. RICIVS
his entertainment at Nanquin and Residence there.
The Chinois vnlearned Learning.

50 Father *Nicolas Longoard* wrote vnto *Claudio Aquaviva* the Iesuiticall Generall, the Letter of F. elij. -- on the 10th of October, 1598, that in the Kingdom of *China* there were then Iesuits distributed into two Residences and one Mission: at *Nanquin*, Father *Iohn Seruaz* and *Iohannes a Rocca*; himselfe and *Francis Marines* a *Chinse* at *Seismum* in *Canton* Province, *Ricci* and *Cassanese*, and *Sebastien Fernandez* a *Chinse* at *Seismum*: that *China* cridition and conditions agreed to well with him, that hee seemed to be in the midst of *Italy*: that much respect had accorded to them in consent of the *Chinois* together, with that Habit of their Learned, which they had taken the *Bons* and their Habit altogether alike. He also much commends *Thais* or *Tais*, (*Chinse* before mentioned) who much eare where commended the Iesuits and their Learning, as much exceeding what eare had bene taught in *China*. And truly, saith he, the *Chinois* Learning exceedeth not the Science of the *Romans* in the time of *Cicero*.

60 They are much excelled in a kind of writing and speaking briefe and pithie Sentences: their Bookes expresse well *Ethicks* and *Politicks*, but are rude in Natrall Philophosie. When I have been the best of *Heaven* *Heaven*; *Paro*, and *Chere*; and *Perig*, as the *Romane* Trism *Chiri* for Learning, besides, *Schyl*, *Cesar*, *etc*.

Rivers frozen, Rie, goeth by Land.

Suceu and Tamcen.

Coach of one wheele.

Suceu defecti bed.
Another Peu nite.

Huge Tribute.

Tamcen.

Glasse glased.

New yeared day.

China Learning.
This comparison with that time of the Romans seemeth pithy per one the best, that is, *Schyl*, *Cesar*, *etc*.

I tely runne thorow two of their Bookes, which they esteeme as their Metaphysikes, or first Philosophie, one of their learned men gratulated my proficience; when as I found therein no them, *Facher Ricci* vieth to add none better then the *Europeans*. A Letter of *Taisi* to *Ricci* my head to the ground, and exhibits honour and reverence to the elder Brother, Master and Father downe on the face of his Seat and Chaire. The Letter followeth.

*After our departing (it being foure yeeres since fight of each other) there hath not bene a day which I have not fixt before mine eyes the excellent vertue of your Worshp. I gave two yeeres since to I did. I knew not whether they have assigned that, to come to your magnificent hands, &c. When I went from your Worshp I said it must goe into the North parts, if it would behold the splendour and magnificence of this Kingdome, that my Country had nothing singular, that Nanquin Court was renowned men in it of excellent vertue, and of a true and solid spirit to receive the Law. This yeere gathering together these things which your Worshp taught me, I made a Booke, and exhibited it in the ship was Scingun, that is, a Saies of these times. Those things which I have added happily may be erroneous, and I assure lest they contradict its founder and higher learning, and therefore have sent my servant to blot out the fals, to illustrate the obscure, writing all in another Booke, and sending it by the same ship to be knowne thorow the World. In those places are of greatest reckoning the *Bookes* of *Hothu*, *Chu*, *Pequa*, *Queuicui*, *Thaichu*, and other like, which have written a Point, Line, Extremity, and *Thaichu*. All these learned make of a Line a Circle: but according to your Worshp teaching, a Point is the beginning of a Circle, and a Circle consists therein. From which principles the *claytons* brought of *Thaichu*, that is, of God, do farre exceed the Commentaries of all our learned men. And they are enough to illustrate a thousand obscurities of antiquity, which hitherto have bene to illustrate and enlarge the most excellent conceits of its mind. Means while I much long, and as it were on tipstoe lookt about every where, if happily I may see your face. From Succo the two and twentieth of the fourth Moone, and the foure and twentieth of the Raigne of Vanlia. Subscribed; *Thaisi* younger Brother againe bends his head to the ground, &c.*

Lombard proceedeth in his Letter, and sheweth the commodiousnesse of one King which ruleth all, of one *Mandarine* Tongue, of the common industrie and cheepnesse of provisions (not as in the pueritie of *Japan*, where the worke-mens maintenance must come from other parts) all fitting to bring in the Gospell. There are, sayth he, almost infinite houses of *Bonza* maintained by the King, besides gifts which they receive of others which yett repose no great conscience in Their composition of bodie, complexion, condition, rites; no use of weapons, not so much as anciently vied, with their hands alway hidden in their long sleeves, except in vilen of their fance, ded in a few boxes or brawles; their seemingly behaviour equall to the *European*; yea, in some things to the Religious there; their studiousnesse of learning the onely foundation of dignitie out mixture of other Regions) their politike and morall Rules and Lawes; all which might be furtherances to the Gospell. Their tenacitie also of their owne outcomess and jealousie of Strangers, might better secure them from Heresies. Hee commends also their workes of Piety, and so Charities, Almes, Hospitals for poore, voluntary chaitements of the bodie to subdue the affections, as fastings (in which they abstaine from Fleish, Fish, Milke, and Egges, but cate other things as oft as which they will) liberties and gifts by Magistrates to Widowes which coytayne themselves from second marriages; triall of a mans life in all his actions commended in their Bookes, especially of those things which other men cannot know; and heretofore the liking of a solitary and contemplative life in the Countrey, and restoring themselves to the first state, as they say, wherein the Heauen created them; for which purpose are congregations of learned men, together in Villages adduced to contemplation, and fleeing publicke Offices (as the ancient Fathers had their conferences in woody and mountainous places) in which also their women are as forward as the men, many of them hung in Nunneries, governed by an Abbess; and all *China* women lye enclosed, as if their owne houses were Cloisters: They hee commends in them, as also that of all vertues they give the first place to Obedience to Parents as in which consists a mans perfection. And that no man may be ignorant of his duty, if they cannot reade (of which there are but few) they have a short Summe (or Catechisme)

for publishing whereof there is a man appointed at publike charge, every full and change, to publish the same in every street of the City, so that on the same day & houre, a little before Sun-rising the same doctrine is propounded in all the Cities of *China*, and thorow all their Rectors. This is fixt Articles or Principles, which are the *Chinese*, and thorow all their Rectors, *Bettors* and Elders: Thirdly, make peace among Neighbours: Fourthly, teach Children and Nephewes: Fifthly, let every man well discharge his office: Sixthly, commune no offence, that is, not to kill, leale, fornication, &c. which in manner comprehend the second Table of the Decalogue. As for the first Table, the *Chinese*, especially the learned are Atheists, little regarding Idols, whereof their Houses and Temples are full; little minding the rewards or punishments of the life to come, or the soules immortality, which yett are easily found in their bookes touching the punishments at least of *Holy Pa* (so they call God) in Hell. Of rewards of blessednesse there is not such evidence, as *Thaisi* affirmed. And although many difficulties happened to ours in the *Bonza* habite, yett is it now farre other wise. As for *Canton* Province, the *Mandarins* which come this way, aske vs why we flay amongst these *Mandins*, that is, Rusticks and Barbarians: We mult feare the *China* splendor and politie. He writes for Labourers, Bookes, Images, and Pictures, for consolation of new Converts: the *Ethiops* worship that of the Virgin, and call her *Sein mun mian* habit, that is, holy Mother, and Queen of Queens: and ends with imploring the patronage and intercession of all the heavenly Quire, especially of the blessed Virgin, the Apostles, the Angels guardians of *China*, to obtaine of the holy Trinitie happy successe to their endeavours, &c. But wee will returne to our beft acquainted in *China*, *Ricci*, whom we left newly arrived at *Nanquin*.

The case was now altered at *Nanquin*, they went on foot without impediment to their lodging, which was in a huge Monastery, called *Cinghenshi*, in which is great resort of guests which there hitherto lodged, being built in the centre of the Citie. The *Lapins* were now bestoven from *Corai* and *Quabacodono* was dead, which had terrified that warlike Nation. He heard that they had heard of his going to *Pekin*, and that the *Corai* were with the frustrating of his desire to buy a house before, and send two of his followers to look out for one. Scarcely had he heard this by the folemnest Rites: And when they were left in the Hall, the Abbot came to offer them the wonted portion, kneeling to all three (to the President hee was bound as supreme governor of Temples) and the President intreated the Father to spend two or three daies in his house, to see the Fire-works, which that full Moone, the first of the yeere would bee to bee that which without wonder cannot be beheld, the *Nanquin* herein exceeding as may be thought the whole world.

When it was reported that the President had visited him, all the Maiestie of Magistrates did the like, yea some whom he had not visited: The President of the Court of Criminal Causes, and the President of the Treasury (which is the second Tribunal) came with rites & gifts, also did buy a house; yea hee which a little after was the *High Colas* at *Pekin*, which all vnged him to know from a visit hee before had had thereof: and procured a house which the President red to him, these being to such admiration and respect had the opinion of European science acquired that the Earth was round, and that the Sunne was greater then the Earth; and that the Centre drew all heaue things to it, that the *Vniuers* was inhabited round, that there were opposite to the Sunne was dazzled or amazed; others that there was a hole in the Sunne, against which the Moone opposed loth her light: that the Sunne was greater then the Earth; and that the Stars also, this was out of measure paradoxical: the like was the soliditie of the Orbes, deprefion of the Pole according to the various Climates; and likewise the inequality of the degrees, without the Tropicks Geographical Maps in *plano*, and Globes, Meridians, Parallels, with other names of *European* learning. A Doctor of their conficted himselfe ashamed; *For* we end, (which hee spoke of the studie of eloquence, which takes up our childhood, where hee said was procreanted of the Elements, *Metal*, *Wood*, *Fire*, *Water*, *Earth*, one of which they it not, placing *vacuum* or emptinesse, where they did not acknowledge for one, because they fee fierie Element was the highest, and that Comets and Exhalations were therewith fired, Father them reprinted. Diuers became his Scholars; one sent from his Master in *Hanlin* Colledge in

A farnish Sabbath. Sixe precepts of China.

Cantonians Magistrates.

Blessed Virgin honoured.

Nanquin. Cinghenshi a great Abbacy.

The President supreme governor of Temples. Full Moone fire-works.

Mathematicks busie in the Gospell.

China learning how vniuersall.

Mar in Colledge in Peking.

China Monasteries.

Vniuersities in our fence with Professors and public Schoole are not in China: but for taking lessons in Vniuersities, a mans private Studies, and the Cities public examinations haue some resemblance. Many things in which the Jesuits and Chinese concur.

Lakes and Seas, intimating that that God which is there worshipped made the rest, which are placed without, left they might be worshipped for Deities. It is prohibited by grievous penalties, to cut the trees of that Grove, or any bough thereof, whence they are great and old. In the circuit of the Temple are many Cells, which are said to have been Baths for the Kings to wash in when they were to sacrifice.

Idolatry habit.

The Father vied the Habit of the *Learned* (as is said) of those especially which profess themselves Preachers of the Law; the Habit modest, and the Cap not unlike ours in Croffe fashion also. He confuted both the Sects of Idolaters, and commended that of the *Learned*, praying *Confucius*, which was rather self, then would dispute any thing touching the next life, and taught good Rules for the Life, Family, and Republique. A great man flourished at *Nangin* then (which had some thousands of Disciples) in opinion of Virtue and Learning, and had set dayes in which to heare and to be heard every month. *Chinaijs* brought the Father, and had set dayes in which to heare and to be heard every month. *Chinaijs* brought the Father, and had set dayes in which to heare and to be heard every month. *Chinaijs* brought the Father, and had set dayes in which to heare and to be heard every month.

Societies of Learned.

that *Learned* men met in their Societies to confute of Morall Vertues, in one of those meetings this man learnedly confuted *Confucius*, which another Magistrate took to heart, and cryed out, it was intolerable that the Sect of Idols brought out of other Countreys should be preferred before *Confucius*, whom the *Learned* *Riccio* also admired, retelling the Idol-follies. He answered, he had spoken with the man, but he was not yet well acquainted with *China* business, and he would instruct him better. Soone after he invited him to a Feast (for the *Chinois* usually in such meetings determine Controversies) and there he met *Sanhoi* a famous Idol-Priest, a *Learned* Philosopher, Orator, Poet, and well skilled in others Sects also. When they were left, this Priest and the Father together, the Priest began shewing his desire to confute of Religion, *Riccio* first asked what he thought of the first beginning of Heaven and Earth, and the Creator he hath no Majesty nor Deity, but I am equal to him, and so are all others. Canst thou (saith *Riccio*) make those things which he hath done? he granted. Make then such a Chafing-dish (one food before him) this said the other, was an unworthy demand. Thou (saith he) art an Astro-nomer, and makest new Sunnes in thy mind when thou reasonest thereof. That, saith *Riccio*, is but an Image or likeness which the minde from things seene conceiveth, as in reflexion of a Glasse whereon the Sunne shineth; yet doth not the Glasse create Sunne. The Host forsook of further quarrell parted them. At Dinner the *Chinois* disputed of a Question of *Immortality*, how it came bad (they want Logique and cannot well distinguish betwixt morall and natural good, and neuer heard of original sinne) they discoursed thereof a whole houre: after which *Riccio* repeating what had bene said, entered into dispute with *Sanhoi*, who laughed at his and their Reasonings and answered all with a Tale of I know not what *Flood*, according to his Sect, but he strained him with Arguments, so that he and this Disputation grew famous. They conceine that God and the Creatures are all of one substance, and that God is as a great Soule of the Universe; which opinion from the Idol-fests hath infected the *Learned*. *Riccio* writ a summary of that point, which gave men good satisfaction, and his Law seemed not so barbarous as they imagined.

Oppression. Mines of Gold and Silver stopped by ancient Kings & forbidden to be opened to prevent robberies.

The Kings Treasure was exhausted by the *Carayan* Warre, whereupon contrary to the Lawes he caused the ancient Mines which were said to be stopped, to be brought, and opened, and imposed new Tributes, that in all Provinces, Merchants should pay two of a hundredth: which had bene tolerable if gathered by Magistrates; but his Eunuchs, sent to every Province, without shame or mercie exacted on the people, and rayled a worse combustion then that of *Caray*. So many Impostors, Counterfeits, Theures were every-where: if a man dwelt in a good Houe, they would digge it up to search for a Myne, to force composition from the owner. Some whole Cities and Provinces compounded with these Caterpillars to free themselves from their vexations; the money so gotten they gave the King as taken out of their selves. This caused Death, in some, Commotion. The Magistrates petitioned the King against these abuses, but sweetness of gaine had not only stopped that eare, but procured grievous penalties to those which withstood his Catch-poll-Eunuchs, which by those punishments grew more insolent. Ours which wintered at *Lincin*, happily escaped these Harpy-clutches, who with their Presents arriving at *Nangin* joyced to see a Residence so prepared there. These Presents intended for the King, bred such an amazement in the beholders that others were ready to offer force to see them. They still minding to present the King, (the weather now more cleare and peaceable) *Cataner* went to *Amoy*, where was much rejoicing for these hopes, but soone quenched with sorrow for loss of their ship which had been laden with *Lepus*, men and goods lost, on which all their Commerce dependeth. They found themselves therefore wile to measure yet three Refinances: the Jesuites Rector scraped all hee could for that purpose, and added a Watch and Image of the blessed Virgin, and Trigone Glasses, Houe-glasses and other Rarities to their Presents.

Didacus or Isaacus Pontius.

After *Diego Pantoja* a Spanish Priest also accompanied *Cataner* to *Nangin*; and thence went

went with *Riccio* to *Peguin*, with *Sebastian* and *Emanuel*. Father *Iohn* was called from *Negon* to reside with *Cataner* at *Nangin*. They went with at *Bunach* then going to *Peguin* with six ships, who shewed them much kinde. In *Zinin* a City of the Province of *Scianium* is a Vice-roy which is High Admirall over all the ships, whether they carry provision or other things, which gave kind entertainment to *Riccio*, telling him at parting, *Sithai* (that was *Riccio* his name) I also desire to goe to Paradise, intimating that all his Heaven was not in earthly state he followed him on his ship and they visited him with vials full of *Royalties* and a Present, and wondered much at the light of those Presents they carried for the King. He sent an Officer also to make him a ready way; O the *Licin* had made way to this Vice-royes friendship, who soone after killed himselfe, hearing that upon some complaint of his Books, the King had commanded him to be imprisoned and his Books to be burned; presenting to the study of his Adversaries to put him to some shameful death.

Amongst those Eunuchs which the King had sent to oppress the people, was one *Mathon*, which dwelt at *Lincin*, whose exactions had rayled the people and Souldiers into mutiny, which burnt his Palace and killed his Servants, himselfe escaping disguised, but the Captive and Slave of Countessesse no less then before. Our Eunuch addressed himselfe to him, but could not let the third time be admitted, because his Gits were not answerable to the others appetite. Hee to make way for himselfe escaped Ours to this Harpy, they not knowing it, saying, that in one of his ships were strangers with precious Gifts for the King, which he shewed closely to his Officers: with these he might get the Kings favour. The Gouverneur which in that and the Neighbour Cities had great command, was his great friend, of whom *Riccio* asked counsel: he told him that now the Eunuchs reigned, and they almost only were the Kings Counsellors, nor could the greatest Magistrates withstand their injuries. Yet the countenance of this Magistrate was a great helpe to him, this being the man whom of all the Gouverneurs he most feared; man so well deterring that his Citizens erected to him a Temple, Image, and Inscription; who now all to both countenanced *Riccio* what he might, and gave him the best advice how to carry himselfe to this Eunuch, and perhaps but for him they had lost all and themselves too. This Capon had erected Palaces and Temples, and had built a huge ship in which the King himselfe might have

30 layed; so many were the Cells, Chambers, Halls, and other commodious Buildings thereof, the Veruith and glittering with Gold. In this ship was hee carried to ours, where *Riccio* met him. He viewed and liked all, and dowpe on him they had lost all and themselves too. This Capon had erected Palaces and Temples, and had built a huge ship in which the King himselfe might have

30 layed; so many were the Cells, Chambers, Halls, and other commodious Buildings thereof, the Veruith and glittering with Gold. In this ship was hee carried to ours, where *Riccio* met him. He viewed and liked all, and dowpe on him they had lost all and themselves too. This Capon had erected Palaces and Temples, and had built a huge ship in which the King himselfe might have

40 layed; so many were the Cells, Chambers, Halls, and other commodious Buildings thereof, the Veruith and glittering with Gold. In this ship was hee carried to ours, where *Riccio* met him. He viewed and liked all, and dowpe on him they had lost all and themselves too. This Capon had erected Palaces and Temples, and had built a huge ship in which the King himselfe might have

50 layed; so many were the Cells, Chambers, Halls, and other commodious Buildings thereof, the Veruith and glittering with Gold. In this ship was hee carried to ours, where *Riccio* met him. He viewed and liked all, and dowpe on him they had lost all and themselves too. This Capon had erected Palaces and Temples, and had built a huge ship in which the King himselfe might have

Hh

C H A P.

CHAP. VI.

* This Booke I have both in Spanish printed 1606. in P'alestina: and in Latin at Mevry 1607.

*A Letter of Father DIEGO DE PANTOJA, * one of the Company of IESVS, to Father LVYS DE GZMAN, Provincial in the Province of Toledo; written in Paquin, which is the Court of the King of China, the ninth of March, the yeere 1602.*

§. IIII.

Difficulties of entering China, their dwelling at Nanquin, going from thence to Paquin, with Presents for the King, troubles in the way by an Eunuch.

Revere Father in Christ, the peace of Christ be with you. I think I do not satisfie the dutie which I owe unto your Worship, for the love which you have always shewed unto mee, and the Obligation wherein I am bound to so many most dearly beloved Fathers and Brethren of this Province, if being as I am in this great Kingdom of China, procuring the good of these Pagans, (whereunto it pleased our Lord to choole mee) I should not give you some briefe Relation of the things that concerne this our new Mission, and of some things also concerning the greatness of this Kingdom, the Customes, Government and Policy thereof.

College of
Jesuits.

Entrance into
China difficult.

Means found
to enter China.

Embassage.
Present.

Being come, as heretofore I wrote to your Worship, to *Macao* a City of the *Portugals*, adjoining to the firme Land of *China* where there is a College of our Company: and there attending till the Perfection, Tumults, and Warres of *Japan*, would permit ten or twelve Fathers of vs to passe thither, which flayed expecting fit opportunity: when we were ready to depart, within few monethes, it pleased our God to change my Love, and Enterprize which I had before myne eyes, and to send mee to enter into *China*, whereunto I entered in the end of the yeare of our Lord 1599. There were in this Mission at this time, only five Fathers divided into three Houses. For though it be twentie yeeres since they first began to enter, yet the entrance of Strangers is so hard and so strictly forbidden, and their state and performance is so difficult, that in all this time there neuer passed above five or fixe Fathers, and those which succeeded since, though by little and little, did discouer the Countrey; But their entrance was by stealth and secretly. Considering that all passages were thus vnp, and that in all *China* there was no man that could or durst presume to give licence to preach the Gospell; we waylways sought to get some access unto the King, either by way of Embassage, or by way of Present, and Gifts, and to seeke to obtaine this in part, or in the whole, to this end and purpose.

The Fathers waylways sought to obtayne some Ambassage of the Pope, or of the Catholike King. But perceiving they could not obseyne this they procured it by way of giving a Present, not so much of precious things, for they had none of this kind, as of strange things neuer seen before in *China*. And hauing procured this for many yeeres space, without hauing any means to obtayne it, the Diuine Providence ordaind one in the yeare of our Lord 1590, which was this: The Fathers being in *Xaucho*, (a Residence of the Province of *Canton*) there passed that way a great *Mandarin*, called by the King, to giue him an Office in the Court, which among vs is like vnto a President of one of the chiefeest Councils, which had known the Fathers long time, and now seeing themselves with him, and signifying vnto him the desire which they had to goe to *Paquin*, to giue a Present to the King, and that if hee would doe them the courtesie to come along with him vnder his shadow and protection, they would alwayes remayne thankfull, and exceedingly bound to serue him. After this and other motives which they presented vnto him, did that follow which wrought most effect, which was a good Present, with hope of other things afterward, whereupon he shewed himselfe very tractable to grant their request, and to take them with him to *Paquin*.

Being glad of this resolution, they prepared themselves for the Voyage, and tooke the things which they desired to giue the King, which heretofore I will mention. It pleased God to bring them to *Paquin*, in the company of so great a *Mandarin*, without the hinderance of any thing. Being come to *Paquin* they began secretly to negotiate their business: because they durst not, neither was the *Mandarin* that brought them willing that they should shew themselves abroad. But though they attempted all possible means, neither with gifts, nor any thing else, there was not any man that would meddle with this business, because it was a matter that concerned Strangers, considering what might hereof happen vnto them. After they had spent certayne

monethes,

monethes, and saw they profited nothing, and fearing some inuouation, they determined to returne to their Residences from whence they came.

Hauing returned three hundred leagues, they came to the great Citie of *Nanquin*, which was the ancient Seat and Court of the Kings of *China*: and now (though the King reide not there) yet is it the most noble, great, throne, and beautiful of all this whole Kingdome, and retaynteth here being the Royall Court, with all the same Offices, which the Citie hath where the King reides. They desired greatly to get an entrance into this Citie, because, as I haue said, it is a faire to procure with more facilitie an entrance or access vnto the King. But it seemed a thing impossible, because it is a Citie strictly guarded, especially for Strangers, for whose guard and Watch it hath ordinarily above one hundred thousand Souldiers. And if they went about to get licence, it seemed impossible to obtayne the same of so many great *Mandarins*, as gouerned there for their trauell and small fruit which they had reaped of their journey to *Paquin*: and by the counsell of some friends which they had there, and with the protection of the *Mandarin* without the contradiction of any *Mandarin*, although all of them knew thereof: howbeit, as a very great man said, which afterward became our great Friend, hee was ready to send to apprehend the Fathers, vntill hee vnderstood that they were peaceable people, which had long time abode in *China*.

After they were purposed to remayne there, there was another difficulty to get leave to dwell and haue an House within the walls. But the Diuine Prouidence gaue them a very sweet and easie meane for all this, as here I will declare. The *Mandarins* liue in this Citie in houses which are not their owne, but belonging to the Offices which they beare: and when one hath ended his Office, hee that succeedeth him, succeedeth him in his Houses, which are all builded at the Kings cost. At this time a great *Mandarin* had builded one of these, wherein by his Office hee many Deuils to enter into it, as they did in deed, which with fearful shaples did terrifie those which dwell in it, especially by night: and this continued so long a time, that all men left it, this business, as the Procurator of all this Mission (who was the party which negotiated of jell they asked him, whether hee would buy an house full of Deuils? The Father answered, hee feared a God whom the Deuils feared and dreaded, hee would not vnderstand, for nothing at all afraid of them, but that they did rather much feare him, because hee was nothing of such a Lord. They went to see the House, which presently liked him: and as they sold it good cheape because of the bad report that it had, in two words they agreed together: and a thing which in no place could be obtained of any other *Mandarin*. Forthwith they went to it, and by the grace of God there was neuer dreame of any euill thing that troubled the same. All And when they saw the great quietnesse, without any fiewe of Spirits, they were greatly astonished, saying, that without doubt this was a great God, and that hee sought to dwell in that to enter thence; and that when he came they were their way.

To this good beginning the progresse from thence forward was answerable: for the graue *Mandarin* vnderstanding, together with the fame that they were Learned men, that they had they, which were neuer seene in *China* (as certayne Clocks with Wheels, and Images in Oyle, and other pretie things) all of them setting feare apart, and other respects, came to visit the Fathers, in great estate, because they were the greatest *Mandarins* of all *China*, but with much humble request, respect and courtesie, with Presents of things to care, and Banquets as they vie with came their great Friends and Patrons: and gaue so good report of them, that all men sought to like them: and for continuance of their amity they came oftentimes to visit them, and oftentimes the rest of the inferior and bauer sort vied them with much reuerence, no man daring to doe, or say vnto them any discourteous thing.

This was the state of things when it pleased God to choole me for this Mission, and when I entered into it we had three Residences, one in the Province of *Canton*, another in the Province in the midst of the Kingdome, and three hundred leagues from *Macao*. I entered secretly, as the rest did (I say, without particular Licence of any *Mandarin*.) But my secretie continue:

100000, Grati-
fication souldiers
in *Nanquin*,
Ricall faith
40000, perhaps
the other
40000 are for
the Countrey
adjoining, for
the Naule
and Sea-guard
or for the night
speaks of the
ordinance at
other peaceable
times, *Panquet*
of thirteenth
some time
while the 15-
pious wars
continued.
Mandarin
houses are
publicke.
House pos-
sible.

Jesuits Patent
for China habi-
tation.

Fame of Je-
suits fami-
larity.

Fame of their
Learning.

Watches ad-
mired.

Their civi-
lity.

The relations

but a while, as hereafter I will declare. I came at the first, without staying in any other Houle, to Nangun, where three Fathers of vs were four months; Father *Matthew Riccio* our Superior, Father *Lazarus Cataneo*, and my selfe, and a Brother a *Chinois*, of one of the two which are received into this Mission, and every thing goeth well. But as in matter of strange the *Chinois* are exceeding scrupulous, more then your Worship can beleefe, so there were many which spoke of our abiding in Nangun, considering that now we had three Houses in China. We beganne with much more earnestnesse to procure another better foundation, and to returne to Nangun more openly, and seeke access to the King. And because in Nangun there be *Mandarins* to whom this belongeth, and some of them were our Friends, we beganne to speake of this point.

Leave for Paquin gained.

But it was not needfull to spend many words; for straight way we met with a *Mandarin*, to whom by right this matter appertained, who frankly and freely offered vs Patents, Dispatches, and whatsoever was needfull to accomplish this businesse.

The River of Nangun over-frozen all the Winter.

The promises of this *Mandarin* were not vaine: for when the time came that the River was unfrozen, (which all the Winter is frozen over) and Barker began to goe for Paquin, he performed his word faithfully, giving vs Patents and Dispatches needfull for the money; and besides, hee sent vs a Barker of the Kings to carry our Present and our owne things. Being glad of these good newes and dispatch, we consulted how we should deal in certaine things which offered themselves in this businesse, and who should goe: There was no question but Father *Matthew Riccio* should be one, but who should be his companion: for whom they chose me, and the 20 Brother.

The particulars of the Kings Present.

We let our things in order, particularly those which were of the Kings Present. Which were two Clockes with wheels, one great one of Iron, in a very great Case made faire with a thousand engraved works; full of gilded Dragons, which are the Armes and Esigines of this King, as the Eagle is the Emperours: another little Clocke very faire, above an handfull bigg, all of golden Metall, of the best Worke which is made in our Country, which our Father General had sent vs for this purpose; which was set in a gilded Case, as the other was: and in both of them in stead of our Letters were given the Letters of China, and an hand that came forth did point at them. Besides these there were three Images in Oyle, two great ones of an Elkibig, and one little one. The greatest was the figures and portraiture of Our Lady of the Popay, of Saint Lucas: The second was of our Lady with the Babe Iesus, and Saint John: the third was a Picture of Christ, which was the least; all of them were of excellent Worke. Besides this, there were two Carriages looking-glases; two Triangle-glases (which though among vs they be of no account, yet are they esteemed here among them) adorned with Chaires of Silver, and set in an excellent Case of Lapon, which was of inwrethed times more value then the Glases, in them that knew what Glases are. A Book of The Theatre of the World, and a *Brevaire* exceeding fairly bound, with an inscription, That that was the Doctrine of the True God, whose Images they did present him withall. A very faire Monocord, because it is an Instrument wherewith the *Chinois* doe wonder much, and other pretie things of lesse importance.

The Kings Armes, Lions, Serpents, the Ruyll figure, and a Lion is the Armes of Canton Province, and perhaps of some others which might be mistaken for the Kings Armes.

All which things being set in order, and imbarqued, we tooke our leave of the Christians of Nangun, (which at our departure came to our Houle with a Banquet with great joy) and of the *Mandarins* our friends, which with great sorrow, and shewes of loue tooke their leave of vs, and sent vs Presents for our Journey, and many Letters of favour to the great *Mandarins* of Paquin.

The Kings Armes, Lions, Serpents, the Ruyll figure, and a Lion is the Armes of Canton Province, and perhaps of some others which might be mistaken for the Kings Armes.

We departed with this good dispatch from Nangun in the year 1600, the twentieth day of May. And knowing not how the King, and the *Mandarins* of Paquin, and those of the Kings Court, would take this our Journey, because we were Strangers, we sought to prepare our selves for that which might fall out: in great hope that we should find ayde either in all or in part to obayne our desire, which we had for the establishment of our Company in this Kingdom, and to procure the opening of an entrance thereunto for the preaching of the holy Gospell.

The Kings Armes, Lions, Serpents, the Ruyll figure, and a Lion is the Armes of Canton Province, and perhaps of some others which might be mistaken for the Kings Armes.

We began to sayle vpon a very great River, whereof hereafter I will speake somewhat; and when we had sayled certaine leagues, we entred into another small River made by hand about two hundred leagues, only to carry in Barges the Tribute which the Princes of the parts of Nangun pay vnto the King, and other things which these Countries yeild (which are the best, and most plentifull of all things which are in China) because it seemeth impossible to carry it by Land with Millions of people, being in Rice, Wheat, Siluer, and a thousand other things very great: And the Vessels which are employed about this businesse are so many, that without doubt it is no Hyperbole to say that from Nangun to Paquin, which is three hundred leagues, all the Summer time it seemeth to be a path way of the Kings Barges. We were all awell *Mandarins* as particular men very well intreated all the way, whither many *Mandarins* came out of the Villages and Cities, desiring to see the Present which we carried, and our selves; bringing vs 60 many Presents for our Journey. Having travelled two hundred and thirty leagues in forty dayes, we came to a very famous place and Mart Towne in China, which is the Province of Xanau, which is next vnto the Territories of Paquin, called Linchin. Where, because of the great Traffike of Vessels and Merchants, which goe and come from the Court, who

The Kings Armes, Lions, Serpents, the Ruyll figure, and a Lion is the Armes of Canton Province, and perhaps of some others which might be mistaken for the Kings Armes.

The Kings Armes, Lions, Serpents, the Ruyll figure, and a Lion is the Armes of Canton Province, and perhaps of some others which might be mistaken for the Kings Armes.

The Kings Armes, Lions, Serpents, the Ruyll figure, and a Lion is the Armes of Canton Province, and perhaps of some others which might be mistaken for the Kings Armes.

The Kings Armes, Lions, Serpents, the Ruyll figure, and a Lion is the Armes of Canton Province, and perhaps of some others which might be mistaken for the Kings Armes.

The Kings Armes, Lions, Serpents, the Ruyll figure, and a Lion is the Armes of Canton Province, and perhaps of some others which might be mistaken for the Kings Armes.

The Kings Armes, Lions, Serpents, the Ruyll figure, and a Lion is the Armes of Canton Province, and perhaps of some others which might be mistaken for the Kings Armes.

The Kings Armes, Lions, Serpents, the Ruyll figure, and a Lion is the Armes of Canton Province, and perhaps of some others which might be mistaken for the Kings Armes.

The Kings Armes, Lions, Serpents, the Ruyll figure, and a Lion is the Armes of Canton Province, and perhaps of some others which might be mistaken for the Kings Armes.

pay to the King a very great tribute, he hath placed one of his chieft Eunuchs, which serueth to gather vp his Customes; which liued there in great estate, and much attendance. Whensoever he goeth abroad he is alwaies carried in a Chaire, vpon eight mens shoulders, which is a very great honour in China, with great flore of Horsemen before and behind, with certaine Basons of Copper, which make a great sound when they be played vpon, to signifye to the people that he cometh that way, that all may goe out of the way; as the custom is with all the great *Mandarins* in the Cities of their iurisdiction. Which Eunuch vnderstanding of vs, and of the great things which we brought for the King, and of many other things which they put in his head that we brought, to wit, precious stones, and others of that kind: hee sent vs word, that hee

10 knew what we had brought for the King, and that he desired much to see it, and that the same day or the next he would come, praying vs that we would make it ready.

He came at the appointed time, and having seene the things which we brought for the King, and making account of them to be precious, and that the King would greatly delight in them, he sought meanes to cause them to be presented to the King by all meanes, as things that he had dealt with vs to bring, to please him, and thereby to obayne some lute for himselfe: and besides this, with desire and hope that wee would give him some precious stones (whereof the *Chinois* are very greedy) he determined wholly to meddle in this businesse. Hee sent vs a Present of things to eat, and a very courteous message, that wee should passe in one of his Barges, that shortly he would lend vs to Paquin, with Souldiers of his house, a Petition made with his owne hand to the king; that we should confult together, and berhume our selues what we desired to obayne of the King, whether it were to be a *Mandarin*, or to have lands or houses, or comode. And we made answer with the like, returning him a Present for his answer with all this morall matter. For though hee came with so great offers, yet we knew that these Eunuchs, for

20 hee happened at this time that the chieft *Mandarin* of this Citie, which was our great friend was come from Nangun, from whence they had fetched him for that Office. Wee determined Country, to relate vnto him this businesse, and to aske his counsell what we were left to doe. Hee received the Father with much courtesie and loue, and kept him two dayes in his house: with this Eunuch, because we could looke for no goodnesse of his basenesse, courteousnesse, and his intent was nothing but courtesie; that hee would aduise vs to take as little as we could a vertue of necessitie, and to thanke him with a very good continuance for that which hee proposed, because we were in his power, and he might and would hinder our passage, if wee did without making any account of vs, without controulment of any man, because he was not subiect

30 to any *Mandarin*.

This seemed vnto vs to be very sound counsell, and a forcible aduicement to follow it. So we followed the same, and applied our selues vnto him in every thing, answering the Eunuch according to his desire, and pulled in a Barker of his. He desired much forthwith to carrie the Kings Petition to his house, saying, that he would trimme them to give them to the King, and this we to the King, neither that it seemed reasonable, that wisen wee did giue them, another should trimme them; especially, that these pieces were not such as had need of more trimming, since the first he made vs great banquets, sport, and cheere: but as in very deed his purpose was no-quickly to discover himselfe: for hee played certaine dayes, looking that we should giue him some precious stones, which some body had told him that we had brought with vs to please him, in which he thought we would haue giuen him, when he saw the dayes were passed, withheld in our entercainment: yet for all this, he came to visit vs with great pompe at our enuoye house, and with a Petition to the King, signifying vnto him how hee had met vs on, the way, and what our intent was, and what things we brought.

We were very honourably entertained in his journey, and in all the Townes and Cities of his Iurisdiction wherby we passed, he commanded them to giue vs without delay refreshing of his Iurisdiction: which is three dayes journey from the Court of the King. We stayed there with co-company that did waite vpon vs, watching day and night about the Barker with their Centurians and Bells, as they are wont to doe with the great *Mandarins*, and especially because

60 we were very honourably entertained in his journey, and in all the Townes and Cities of his Iurisdiction wherby we passed, he commanded them to giue vs without delay refreshing of his Iurisdiction: which is three dayes journey from the Court of the King. We stayed there with co-company that did waite vpon vs, watching day and night about the Barker with their Centurians and Bells, as they are wont to doe with the great *Mandarins*, and especially because

He dismissed them.

He dismissed them.

He dismissed them.

there were things belonging to the King, and the rest of the servants of the Eunuch went to *Pagun*, to deliver the Petition to the King, and to know his pleasure. They delivered the Petition, and we looked for an answer thereof within three or four dayes, as he had told vs, But God had disposed otherwise for the exercise of our patience and hope in him: and that was, that the King made no answer as we looked for: whereupon he was somewhat ashamed of the great brags that he had made to vs without performance of any thing: and hee and wee were all in suspence, when we saw the King returned no answer, which is wont to be a token that hee lieth not: the Petition that is made vnto him.

Fifteen dayes after wee arrived in this place, the Eunuch came thither: to send from thence to the King a third part of the tribute which he had gathered. He came accompanied with great store of Vessels, and that wherein he was, was such, as assuredly your Worship hath not seen the like in all your life. The forme is very much different from ours: for it is like vnto an high Houle, wholly diuided into chambers and halls very high, full of carved workes round about, with hangings of Silke, of many figures, and round about full of galleries to walke vpon, downe without being driuen to enter in. And on the outside it was all covered ouer with a kind of Oyle like Varnish, which runneth out of certaine trees, which they make with tempering of it *Charan*: it is a very faire, shining, and durable thing: and the things that are coloured with it, doe thus like Glasse, if it be of the finest: and besides, though it be not costly, yet it is as faire gures, trees, and flowers: and if it be of the right, it doth not decay, and loseth no whit of his lustre. Herewith was the Barge trimmed without, with diuers figures painted on the hull of the Barge: from the hull upward the windowes and the walls of the Halls and Chambers was full of carved workes, knots, and carved flowers, some gilded, others of diuers colours, agreeable to their natures, which made a very pleasant show: within it was of the same worke with more excellency, and the most part was gilded, and the floore of boards was painted with very fine *Charan* or Oyle. It was as long as a good Gallie, little more or lesse, and somewhat broader, but faire higher, and in such sort, that when wind fayleth they vse very great Oares after the manner of *China*, which serue, and are managed as Fihes vse their tale to swimme. And because they bee of this fashion they vse them with much facilitie in euery Vessell how light soeuer it be. This was the fashion of the Vessell wherein the Eunuch came with much Musick of Trumpets, Drummes, and Fifes, and other Instruments which I omit for breuities sake.

Very great Oares and the excellencie of them, Musick.

Manner of petitioning the King.

Eunuch estranged.

They stayed three months.

When he was come to this place, seeing the King sent no answer to his first petition, hee sent another to put him in remembrance, and to sollicit an answer to the first: wherein hee answered nothing to this point, although he answered to other things. And though it be true, that sometimes the King maketh no answer, through forgetfulness and confusion, because the petitions be infinite which are dayly giuen him from all the Kingdom: yet most ordinarily when hee gieth no answer it is for such an answer, either that hee will not doe, or lieth not of that fact that is made vnto him. And therefore because there came no answer, the Eunuch was much grieved that he had meddled in this matter, one of which he could not withdraw his hand: because he had giuen a Petition to the King, vntill he had sente some answer of his, fearing some damage, or displeasure of the King, that hereof might ensue: and herupon hee beganne to estrange himselfe from vs, and sought not to see vs, nor to haue to doe with vs, and sent his men alwaies to stay in our Barge, vnder colour to serue vs, but in very truth to watch vs day and night.

In this suspence wee continued three monthes in the extreme heate in a Barge, not knowing what would become of vs. At the end thereof newes was brought vs, that the King had sent to the Eunuch, that he should see what things they were (for vntill then he had not written to him but in general) and signifie it vnto him, and if he thought them worthe, he should send him a Petition touching that matter. We were somewhat more ioyfull with this message, which was so indeed. And Father *Matthew Ricio* went to the Eunuchs lodging to receive the Kings answer, with such ceremonies and reuerences as they are wont to receive the messages that come from the King. And to put this commendement in execution, he came to our Barge accompanied with many inferior *Mandarins*, as witnesses, and in the Kings name heeooke all these things into his hands: which he sent vnto his house. There he fell to reason with vs, persuading vs that wee should conceale none of the precious things that wee had brought (whereof his minde did so greatly runne) because the King would be greatly displeased, if he knew that wee had any good things and would not giue them him. Wee told him plainly the truth, putting him in plain words out of that imagination which we knew he had conceived. And after many complements on both parts he returned to his lodging.

He wrote to the King what things they were which we had brought, looking that he would straight haue sent for them. But it fell out as it did at the first, that he returned no answer, and the cause thereof seemed to be, that they were things that he made none account of. Wee were now the second time in like case as wee were at the first, not being able to goe backe nor forward:

ward: for they would not suffer vs to goe to *Pagun*, nor to returne backe. The Eunuch being ready to returne to the Citie of *Linin*, where we first met him, hauing neede of the Barge wherein we were, were commanded vs to be removed vnto an house in the Citie, there to stay vntill some message came from the King, either good or bad. We removed with great pleasure, for the desire that we had to lay Maffie, whereof wee were deprived many monthes. After we were come to the house, we set vpon our Altar whereon we said Maffie euery day, preparing our selues for that which might betide vs.

This was the thirteenth of October.

Couetousnesse iniuriou.

This Eunuch could not bee disdained from that which couetousnesse had perswaded him to, wit, that we had brought some precious thing with vs. And seeing it seemed vnto him that he could not get vs by another way, to giue that which hee desired, and wee had not: hee became shamelesse, and two dayes before his departure, he came with a great company to our house, as though it had bene to visite vs in friendship, we thinking nothing of any such thing: and when he was come in he began to speake vnto vs, and put vs in great feare, asking vs, how wee durst come so farr into the Kingdom without leave of the King: and that other Eunuchs had advertised him from the Court, that wee had many other things, and that wee would not shew them, nor giue them to the King. While he was thus talking and dealing, hee commanded his men to seize vpon all our stuffe, which we had in foure or fife Hamperes, and to lay them all out vpon a banke, which with great celestie about an hundred Officers which came with him performed, and in two words, they vndid and opened all, and with his owne hands he opened as many papers as he found, to seeke that which hee desired: and seeing he could finde nothing that

Images.

hee looked for, heeooke that which hee found, which was an Image of our Ladie, being one of the two small ones which wee had refused, that which hee left was better without comparison, and very excellent, on which allee hee had cast his eye: heeooke allee certaine Glasse, and other small things, of small importance, because there were no better: but that which grieued vs much was, that heeooke from vs a Croffe of very good and great Reliques, and a Calf of Reliques likewise, and the Chalice wherein we said Maffie, which because it was of Silver and gilt

A Croffe and Reliques.

A Chalice.

(which that yere they had sent vs of Almes from *Macao*) did please him; and when we prayed him not to touch it, because it was a thing consecrated to God, which the Kings of our Country durst not presume to touch, heeooke a iell of it; and the more it was told him that hee should not touch it, hee handled it the more with forme, saying, that though wee told him he might not touch it, yet wee saw he held it in his hands without any difficulty or danger.

By the intercession of a *Mandarin* that fauoured vs, he gaue vs the Chalice againe; but wee could neuer get the Reliques againe out of his fingers, as wee desired, for of all things elie hee would depart with none.

As he and those that ayded him so willingly were searching with much curiositie, and euery one catched what he could, because all things lay tumbled on the ground: at last they met with a Calf wherein was a carued Crucifix, which was mine. He began to looke vpon our Lord Iesus Christ being bloody and wounded, being a very faire and pleasant sight to our eyes and heart, but very strange, foule and offensive to his sight. Hee vied certaine gestures not saying any word, vntill he was astonished, and turned his head, and asked what it was? Wee told him, that that was the true God which made Heauen and Earth, whom all the World ought to worship, who dieth for our finnes, and to giue vs life, and afterward rose againe by his owne power, and ascended into Heauen. He would not heare many reasons; for it seemed vnto him that we were deuced in worshipping a God that in his eyes was dead: againe, hee looked wittily vpon it; and the small conclusion that hee made was, that that which hee supposed was true, that we were very lewde fellows, because wee had the shape of a man mislaid, with so great inhumanitie, nayled on a Croffe, and all beprinkled with blood, as that was, and that it was nothing else but some witchcraft to kill the King: And though in this second point hee was deuced; yet in the first hee had great reason, though hee knew not wherefore, since our finnes and euill deeds made Christ to be vied on that sort.

Suspicion.

That which the Eunuch said in our house, he vttered alie abroad: in so much that certaine graue *Mandarins*, which fauoured vs, retired themselves from vs, and sent vs word, that from henceforth wee should leaue that crucified man, and that seeing now wee remained in *China*, we should wholly conforme our selues vnto them, for as long as wee kept it they durst not speake Boy which was a *Christian* before hee brought vs the message, answered before the *Mandarin*, saying, That this was the true God: whereat hee retired not onely wee, but himselfe that was a *Chinese* would rather die then denye him one jot: whereat the *Mandarin* was amazed, seeing him speake resolutely of dying; a thing so much abhorred of the *Chinese*, vnto speake of it: and so he sent vs a moderate message, bidding vs to hide that figure, that no bodie should see it, for the report that went of it. The Eunuch gaue out many threatenings against vs, saying, that whether the King receiued the Present, or not, the least displeasure that hee would doe vs was, to thrust vs out of the Kingdom, as wicked fellows, writing a Petition to the King against vs. Besides this wee remained thrust into an exceeding bad and naughty house in the greatest force

Dying dread.

of

The force of
Winter.

This was still
the beginning
of January,
1601.

of the Winter, alwayes with many Souldiers within and without doores, the gates being thus
Souldiers to goe with him. In which kinde of living (though full with some remission of the
rigour that we were kept in at the first) wee continued about two months and an halfe with-
out any kinde of comfort or rest at any time of the day to by Masse.

At the end of which time, the Eunuch returned to the same place. Wee verily thought that
our coming out of that place should not be such as it was, at the least we thought we should be
thrust into a perpetuall Trunke or Prison, or in some worse place, as the same went, and the
good will which the Eunuch shewed vs.

§. II.

*The King sends for them, is delighted with their Clockes and Pictures; they are
put up, after take a house, are admired for learning;
Christianitie of China.*



THE cause of our trouble was the Kings not dispatching of our businesse, and our con-
science that hee misliked of our coming, to all was ended by his remembering by
him had brought him certaine Images, and certaine small Bells which strike of them-
selves (for so they call Clockes) and wherefore they brought him not those things, and
should fetch them quickly; and he gave the charge of dispatching our businesse to a great *Man-
darin* of *Pagun*, to whom it belonged to deal with Strangers.

These newes were brought to the Eunuch and vs, who for the executing of the Kings com-
mandement (whose Letter they obey without reply) sent vs word that wee must goe to *Pagun*,
because the King sent for vs, and sent vs off-footen all the Pieces which hee had in his possession,
and the most part of those things which he had taken from vs, that wee our selves should put
them in order, that they should receive no hurt by the way, and gave vs many men to carrie all
our stuffe on their shoulders, and Horses for all our companie, and a *Mandarin* to accompany vs.
Wee were lodged all the way in the Palaces of the *Mandarins* very honourably. Having travel-
led foure dayes, we came to the walls of *Pagun*, and they lodged vs in an house without the
walls. And because the King had referred the businesse to the *Mandarin*, which I spoke of, the
Eunuch feared that hee should lose the thanks, which he thought to receive of the King for that
present, if another *Mandarin* should meddle with it. That day he caused all things to be made
readie of the Petition and remembrance, and which therewithall he was to give unto the King,
and early in the morning with other things and much Silver of the revenues which he presented,
being all guarded with many Horse-men and Foot-men, hee carryed to the Kings Palace.
Who having the memoriall delivered unto him, commanded his men to receive all things. They
received the same: and when hee had seene all those strange things, the like whereof, or of so
great excellencie, hee had never seene before; they say that hee rejoyced greatly, considering
and viewing all things a very long while, with great hopes of admiration, especially of the Pictures
and Clockes. Hee commanded them to bring vs to his Palace, and to enquire of vs what kinde
of thing those Clockes were, and what thing was needfull, for to haue them to goe well. Wee
answered to the point. And from the place where we were on horsebacke by poole on two Horses
which we mounted, and with the like speed we came to the Court. At the same of our com-
ing, and for to see vs an infinite multitude of people assembled, (because Strangers are no
ordinarie thing in *China*;) and when we came to the Court, those which had the charge of
vs, were entreated to make roome with flowers. When we were come to a certayne place, a
great Eunuch accompanied with about two hundred small ones, came downe to demand of
vs what the King commanded him, and to see how wee did handle those Clockes: They
saw how we used them; but we answered to the question, that it was needfull to ap-
point somebodie of good capacitie to learne, which in two or three dayes would learne how
to vsethem.

When they had returned the answer, the King appointed foure Eunuches of his principall
Mathematicians, to learne it, and command them to receive vs in the meane while in his house
with in his owne Palace. They received vs with much respect and good reuerent payment. A great
multitude of Eunuches came to see vs, and euery one to enquire w. at came in his minde. Be-
cause the King, which all these dayes was occupied in rejoycing, but those new things, commanded
the Images to be placed in a principall Hall, whether, as the Eunuches told vs, the cheefe *Queen*
went to doe them reuerence: and they told vs of the King, that hee durst not keep them there
him, being afraid, because they seemed unto him to be a lie. Often times he sent Eunuches
unto vs, to enquire diuers things concerning our Country, whether it had any King, what num-
ber of Apparell he wore, and what kinde of Hat? (for in *China* they make great difference of the

the apparell of the King, from the foot to the head, and of other men) and if wee had any Pic-
ture of him that we should shew it. We had a picture wherein was the Pope with his triple
Crown, and the Emperour, and the King with their Ensignes, kneeling before the name of
God, and we gave them it for a show, declaring that those were three kinde of Kings, and that
all of them did worship the true God, which made Hezen and Earth, whose Image we had giuen
him. They carryed it unto him, and because it seemed to be small, he commanded them to
draw another greater, in colours by it.

Afterward hee sent another to demand questions of the things of our Country, particularly
of the Kings Houses. Wee had a Map of the *Escuriall*, newly cut in Copper, and a picture of the
10 Place of Saint *Mark* in *Venice*, both which wee gave them. Though we suspected that they de-
liuered but the second, saying, that they durst not giue the other, because: fraight in haile hee
would command them to paint them great, and there was none that durst take it upon him,
though wee know not whether they deliuered it afterward. Hee willed them further to en-
quire; after what manner wee buried our Kings: because in the matter of Burials and Sepul-
chers, the *Chinois* are great South-sayers, and put a great part of their felicitie in a good manner
and place of their Burials. At that time wee received a Map of the Death of his Majestic, (who
liueth with God in glorie) and of the manner of his Funerall, and so we answered him, as it was
in the Map, to wit, that they made him a Coffin within of Lead (which continueth long) and
without of excellent Wood, and put these coffins in a Sepulcher of stone, and for this purpose,
there was a Church builded of purpose. They enquired many things of vs of this kinde these
few dayes, where unto wee were answered, advancing the things that belonged to the seruice of our
Lord God, as much as we might, and concerned our *Europe*, as farre as the truth would permit
vs, because that we deemed it to be convenient for the seruice of our Lord. They told the King
many things, that it seemed hee greatly desired to see vs: But on the other part, he thought
to be fene of his owne people, but of his Eunuches and Wives that seue him, and sometime very fel-
dome of some one of the greatest *Mandarins*; yet, though he would not suffer himself altogether
to be overcome of this temptation, yet he suffered himself, in part, and hee sent to take our Pic-
tures: which two Painters did, each of them by themselves as well as they could. Yet in truth
I neither knew my selfe nor my companion in that picture, but as it was they carryed it away.
30 It was not after such figure and manner, as your Worthip hath knowen mee, but with a Beard
an handfull long, and a garment of a Learned honourable *Chinois*, though downe to the foot,
and very modest: but from the head to the foot farre differing from our fashion.

After the Eunuches had bene instructed three dayes, the King in haile sent for the Clockes,
which they carryed, and set in order before him; whereat hee tooke such pleasure, that he in-
creased their Dignitie, advancing those foure which had learned this skill, to a greater place of
their Order. The King asked them many questions of vs, what wee did eate, and how much,
and many other tritles. Whereunto the Eunuches answered (as they told vs afterward) as wee
could delire.

40 They gaue vs all the welcomes of humanitie which the King did shew vs, appointing vs all
to be *Mandarins*; (which is the reward and felicitie of the *Chinois*) which wee was alwayes re-
fused, saying, that we came not for that purpose, but only to dilate the Law of God, neither
would we take that office upon vs: But we were so neere to be made *Mandarins*, that they told
vs the King would bestow Dignitie upon vs, that wee were enforced to beseech the Eunuches,
plainly that we sought no kinde of Dignitie, nor could we desire *Mandarins*: who told him
so much; whereby our Lord God deliuered vs out of much trouble, which hee should haue en-
dured in refusing the same, if the King had bestowed it upon vs. We continued in these demands,
50 questions and answers, goings and comings to the Kings Court: for now we had liued a whole
moneth abroad: in which time euery day I at least was there, when wee could not goe both,
because Father *Mathew Ricci* was occupied with other Gifts and visitations. They enqui-
red and asked vs, what we would demand of the King: Wee told them, that we sought no
profit at all; but if the King would giue vs vnder his hand, some certayne place and a House to
dwell in, we would be very glad; because wee had none other intent, but to stay in some cer-
tainne place, and to seeke to dilate the Law of God. For though it be true, that our purpose did
stretch it selfe further (as I haue sayd in the beginning) yet wee found things in so different
disposition from that which we imagined, that it seemed an exceeding great error, to make a
motion to giue an entrance for more companie and Fathers: for it was certayne, that we
should doe no good, nor should finde any, which by any means durst presume to moue it to
60 the King: and assuredly should lose all that we had done, and at last should cast our felues wholly out
of the Kingdom: and therefore it was not convenient that we should bee knowne, that we had
any companions. And many of our friends gaue vs counsell, that wee should not seeme to
seek to dwell here; for in that very point, they thought wee vs in Iustition. Yet neuer-
theless, we went as farr as we could, and as we thought might bee brought to passe, which

Three kinde
of Kings.

The *Escuriall*
Saint *Mark*.

Sepulchers.

Death of King
Philip the 3.

The King ne-
ver suffered
himselfe to be
fene of the
common peo-
ple.

Bad Picture-
drawers.

Eunuches pre-
ferred.

Iesuites offered
to be *Manda-
rins*.

A Moneth.

was, that we might haue the Kings license, that no *Mandarin* might (if hee would) cast vs out

The *Mandarin*, to whom the King at the first had referred our business, seeing the Eunuchs had wholly melted in the time without him, being much offended therewith, did frowne altogether upon vs, and made a warrant out, to take vs whereofe our they found vs, uttering certain words, which we would haue thought to haue beene Strangers, and remaining in the Court, were presented not our felicitie without him, but rather our shame, for we were in the Court of Strangers. They were at the lodging where we lay, and they shut up our Boys; for they neuer would suffer us to discourse to Father *Matthew Riccio*, (which at that time was there.) At that time I was in the Kings Court, whither they fought to fend me too: to speake with the Eunuchs, and that they, if they could, should aduertise the King thereof, that they had apprehended vs. But they that were directed with great care and diligence the going forth of any bodie, and they stayed for me till I came home, which came home thinking no harme at all) and when I was come in, they shut the doore without.

We rode the next day very honourably on Horseback to the audience of the *Mandarin*, and signified unto him, that in that we did not present our felues, was not our fault; he vied vs wth. and honourably; so that they put vs in an hoult with a Guard, where we continued three months, yet to that certayne *Mandarins* came to see vs. This *Mandarin* was the King's remembrance that hee held vs there : But that as our purpose was good to free him with their consent, it was reason to give us some reward, fitting downe that it would doe good to give vs the Emperour of these Mandarins, and to pay vs for that which we had given him Royalty; but that it was fit to send us away speedily into our Country, or to Canton (where untill then we had dwelt :) for it seemed well, that Strangers should dwell and that in the Kings Court, entering into the Palace of the King euerie day, being a thing so vnusual. And in very deed hee had reason : for to suffer vs to enter into the Palace, or to lye and lyve there, they did vs such a fauour, that of long time the King of *Che-na* hath neuer done vs any Stranger. We feared fole trouble by this Petition. But our Lord which had giuen vs this bitter morall, afterwards made it sweet to vs againe, because the King made no account of it. And albeit diuers times afterward, the said *Mandarin* deliuered four Petitions concerning this point, hee made as small account of the laist as of the first. And diuers times the Eunuchs told vs, that the Kings meaning was of all likelihood, that wee should lye here till the King should come himselfe to see vs, to see howe we were, and to knowe the knowledge of the King- domes ; as they delt with a *Turke*, which hath beene heretofore a great favour to the *Turkes*. True it is that hee answered a little, in performing nothing that was in the Petition. But we took it for good satisfaction, that hee did not yeeld to that, that we might not lole the other things, which was the principall.

When three months almost were spent, feiring the busynesse would be prolonged if we attended the Kings answer, and being thur vp we could doe nothing, nor negotiate any thing that we intended, nor deale in Gods matters, as we desired; we sought to get out of this place, and to get a license to take a Houe, and there to faye wayting till the King, wold come fomer order; and we handled the matter to well, by means of certain *Mendicans* which favoured vs, and principally by the grace of our Lord, that we obtained our whole desire: And we tooke an house in the towne, where we chuse all that which they gave vs at the Kings coft in that place, which was sufficient for our sustentation, after we were gotten oute they gave vs the same allowance in like manner.

Many *Mandantes* of this Court, heard great fears of vs and of our things : and vnderstanding that we were come out of that place, b. came to gather in great numbers and concurre with much honour and respect, courtfully: and presents to visit vs, and to enquire diuers things which they desired to know. For the fame that went of vs, that we knew all Countries, and the things and customes of the World, and the materiall and spirituall things of Heauen: was great : and therefore eery one came to enquire that which hee desired. And though our knowledge be but little, in comparison of the knowledge which is in our Country: yet b. compared with the things of this world, we are able to shew them many things, which they had not heard of before. And they call, *The World* vs of Gods things, of Gods things little, and of our things little, it was somewhat, and was sufficient to feed them with some amazed, and alwayes with a desire to restore.

The they law a very faire and great Map of the world which we brought with vs, and we shewed them how bigge the world was, which they thought to bee fo little, that they imagined that there was not so much more in all the fame, as their Kingdome : And they looked one vpon another, and sayde, we are now together as we imagined, seeing here before vs, that our Kingdome is no bigger than a speckle in the face of the earth. And thus they were wised up. The also thought, that there was no other Writing, nor no other Bookes in the world but theirs : And when they saw ours, which at the least they law in outward appearance, to bee much better then their owne, they were afonied, and put out of their error, doing vs always more and more honour, and holding vs for gods, and saying, that we were sent from the gods, to teach the Matherickes whil they knewe nothing. Does it not seruaue persons, which for this

CHAP. 6. §. 2. *Hopes and lots of Converting the Chinese to Christ.*

and we made of purpura, and by this, and other moanes, and principally by discourting with
them of Mortal vertues, (whereof they write, speake, and haue many Bookes) and of Gods mat-
ters, ther came to great auaile, that the greatest *Admirall* of all this Kingdome (which are
the greatest persons neare the King) fought to conuene with vs, and to take our friendship: and
to many times vs prelaute, and othnes came to visite vs, with great numbers of people: others
with much more theate trusted vs, and in foure moneths tspace, we hat gotten
the greatest *Admirall* to be our friend, and ready to helpe vs, in all our affaires: And he
which at this time particularly doth labour and honour vs, is the *Princed of the*
which hath the charge of vs, and at the first appointed vs: so that we remayne Inhabitors of
this Citie, with all libertie that we can desire, to deale with all such as are willing to heare the
things that belong to our holy Law, and their saluation. And by this good successe, our Lord
hath made vs forget all that is past. And though it bee true, that hitherto we haue gotten no
dispatch, nor resolution of the King, yet we were content our sokes in that hee leauesth vs here by,
and that we should be able to seeke this our due, our Iournay, we haue not obayned all that
we desired, yet we hope that this our firme desire shall, shall tread greatly to the seruice of our
Lord, and the good of this Millicion.

They be commonly of good understandings, so that easily they fall into raiſon, and are capable: they have not in the government of this Kingdome, any thing that forbideth them to follow what Law they liſt, nor any Law nor Obligation, which is contrary to our holy Law. They have none which effectually and with authoritie doth exhort them vnto other Lawes, and with-draw them from the truth. For the *Breuer*, (which are dedicated for this purpose to Idols, and in the common conceit of all men, the more base, contemptible, and worſt people in all Cities, who are ſet apart, to exhort them to any thing more than to giue them ſome homilies: and that they do not ſo much as ſpeak a word of Idols, but alſo ſhew their bad manner of liuing, perſwade them (as we have often heard of them) to ſeuerall vices, which is not good to ſerue them, ſince their Miniſters be ſuch. And ſo in this manner, which is not good to ſerue them, though there be many that worſhip them, and haue many of them, and ſee the Miniſters for their Funerals, and other things, yet with very ſmall affection, and deuotion thereunto, we eaſily make them ſay that they are naught, and that it is more fit to worſhip them.

30 Yet, though these things and others which I ^{have} said, doe helpe them with ease to follow the Law of Go^d, the counterpois is great, and commonly it weigheth downe the ballance on that side. For first because the matter of *Strangers* is so odious in *China*; and the dealing with them so suspicious, one loth because they disdayne it, as the *Princes*, who albeit they now conceiue better of vs, yet to learne of *Strangers*, and to recelue a Law which is not of their owne meanes, they hardly perfwade themselves: others for feare, as the base people.

The second difficultie, and perhaps the greatest, is a natural oblation, that all this Nation hath of another life, and of immortalitie, and of salvation or condemnation of the Soule : and not onely another oblation, but also an austeron from all these things, wherein we have likewise found them to differ from all other Nations. And it is a thing to be noted, that since it is a thing
 40 to be natural to Man to reverence some God, either false or true, and to feare or love him, and to be in some manner bound to him after this life : Thole *Chinois*, (which on the other side are of good capacities in humane things, and are not altogether depraved) bee as though they were depraved thereof ; for they are almost all *Atheists*, not knowing any God, nor supposing neither false nor true God, nor nerer thinking what shall follow after this life : And therefore they would
 think as they might be thought hereunto, which are the Learned men, *Atheists*, which have least knowledge hereof : yea, rather one of the chiefest things that they commend, is, not to beleue any thing that concerneth another life, Hell, nor Paradise, which they wholly place in this life. The Philosophers also, who studie for their Child-hood, doe them much hurt, which are of certayne
 50 that they think not that any thing more may be knowne than that which they see in this world : of whom they hold so often an opinion, which they asked vs, whether we had not these Bookes in our Country. They knew, And *Democritus* might we haue, that might compare with them ? And as these Philosophers, who studie for nothing of the other life, but onely of good Government, and Morall vertues, they should
 60 they might attayne to faire, without beleuing that there could be another life. By reason hereof exceedingly, by reason which *Paganisme* draweth with it, which in this Country increaseth difficultie to vnderste the yoke of *Christ*, (though it be so sweet) to contrarie to their appetite, which taken from them the liberie which they haue, in keeping as many Wives as they are able, and in a thousand other things.

These later yeeres in the residences of *Canton*, *Nankin*, and heere in *Paguin*, were made some true *Christians*, which overcame all these difficulties, and goe on forward with great integrity, confidence and fervour. In the Province of *Canton*, in a residence which wee have in *Xamboo*, a principall Citie, have bene Baptized within this two yeeres, about three hundred persons, which

- Etbike

^a Four months.

Hopes of
Christianity.

9) The bascule
of the Benzi.

Induction

Almost Atkiss

Bookes of Phi-
losophers, a-
bout 1000.
yeeres old.
Sacrifices to
Philosophers.

Some Christians
made the re-

Closeness of
Womans.Some relations
of Con-
versions are
better for bre-
trens omitted.Multitude of
people.Desire of Learning
and Moral
virtue.Make this
scale.

according to the Letters which euen now we receiued, doe all continue with great example and zeale. And the *Mandaries* and grauer sort of people, moued by the good example which they giue, doe fauour them much: and especially, our Lord hath shewed many tokens of his fauour, in hauing shewed great pleasures vpon such men, as persecuted them for becoming *Christians*. And about all, God hath shewed his ayde vnto the Women: who, besides the men, are very hard to be wonne to receive our holy Law, which is, the great priuatenesse which they vie, because it is not lawfull to see them, nor for their kindred. But as I say, herein the grace of our Lord God shewed it selfe very mightie, seeing it overcome this difficultie, and so many of them were Baptized, after they had bene very well Catechized by the Fathers. On *Sundays* and *Holy-dayes*, because they cannot come to Masse with the Men, yet at least in this beginning, they meete in places appointed for that purpose, and there they Pray, and reason; and treat of Diuine matters. The men for the exhortations that they make vnto them, haue dayes appointed of *despatche*, and with their owne consent, to conferre and repeat that which they haue told them: which going home they repeat to their Wives and Daughters.

Every day some be Converted in *Nanquin*: graue and learned men doe enter. Heere in *Peking* while wee haue bene here, we haue Baptized some, and some great *Mandaries* come to heare. If our Lord doe helpe them, and shed his blood vpon these *Chinians*, (as hee hath done in *Japan*, and in other places) there will be fel'd one of the most famous and learned foundations of *Christianity*, that is in all the world. For the greatness of this Kingdome, their Lawes and Government conformable to reason, their being so studious as they are, and giuen to Learning, and to know so much as they know of Moral vertues, and their good capacities gentle, docile, and ingenious, and the great peace and quietnesse which they enjoy, without hauing any bodie to trouble them with warre, promise much and giue great hope, that the ventage which they haue ouer other Nations lately discovered, in the gifts of Nature (being assisted by the graue God) will helpe them in Gods matters.

And I assure your Worship, that if the doore were opened to Prankfreely and so Baptize, I say not playe the Fathers and Brethren of our Companie which might be spared, but without any amplex at all, halfe the Religious men of all Europe, were askeful to attend for many Cities, Townes and places: and so in haue numbers of people as there are: albeit when *Christians* are in place began in doyle, there is such abundance of graue people and of much estimation, that many of them might be made *Prieests*, *Preachers*, and *Bishops*, without feeling any want of life, there be many very good *Mandaries* of whose chief delight is to discourse of things concerning Vertue, and oftentimes they meete together as it were in Fraternities to treat thereof, and deliuering the means to gouerne well, and to follow vertue. And without doubt, the more wee see of this, and the more zeale in these *Christians*, so much the more our heart is ready to burne to see them so deliuered, abto haue so few means to obtayne accessarie remedie and helpe.

D. III.

The description of the Kingdome of China: of Catay and Musk; the diuision into Provinces, Cities and Townes described, Rivers, Shipping, Commodities, Diet, and feeding.

Now by the helpe of our Lord I will say somewhat that I remember, touching the Cities, Police, and Government of this Kingdome, but not in such order as were requisite, because I haue no leisure, and therefore I will only write as things come vnto my minde, though things be not lincked well together, because I cannot first write that (as I sayd in the beginning) vntill our Lord grant me a better opportunitye.

This great Kingdome of *China*, is almost four square, as the *Chinians* themselves describe the same: it runneth North and South from the Province of *Canton*, which is the most Southerly part of it, beginning fiftene or eighteen degrees vnder the burnt Zone, vnto fortie two degrees, which is the most Northerly part of it: it containeth from *Canton* by water, about six hundred leagues; but in a right line it is four hundred and fiftie, on the East it confineth with *Corea*, which ioyneth with the same, and with *Japan*, and with the Ocean Sea, by which they come from *Pern*, and *Nusca Espana*, to *Manilla*: On the West with certayne small Kingdomes, which lye betwene *Bengala*, the Lands of *Mogor* and *Parthia*: On the South, with the Isles called *Philippinas*, and the *Malacca*, and others, and more South-westerly, it hath *Siam*, *Pegu*, and other Kingdomes. On the North part, it hath those people which in our Countries we

commonly

commonly call *Tartars*, with whom they haue alwayes had Warre, and once they wanne all the Kingdome from the *Chinians*.

For the Readers better satisfaction I haue here presented him Hondius his Map of China, not so farre it, but the erroneous concepts which all European Geographers haue had of it: A more complete Map of China I shall present after, as by comparison will appaare.

HONDIVS his Map of China.



This Kingdome standeth in an excellent climate and situation; for besides the things which it hath in it selfe, it standeth very nere vnto *India*, and other Kingdomes, from whence cometh with great facilitie that which it desireth and wanteth. And before I passe any further, would be glad to learne, and also it may serue to mend two notable errors, which our newe Cite of *Pagum* in fifty degrees, being in very deed but in forty onely, as we saw, which twice trooke the height thereof with a very good Altrolabe: And the limits and end of this Kingdome, which are three dayes journey or lesse distant from this City of *Pagum*, are at the most but two degrees more: And so those great walls so famous in our Europe are in two and forty degrees, and this is the greatest height of the Kingdome of *China*.

The second error is, that our Maps make a Kingdome about *China*, which they call *Catayo*, *Sala*, which they put for the head thereof, is this Cite of *Pagum* wherein we are. We finde here to be true very plainly by occlusion of certaine newes which lately were spred our which seemed to be so peculiar and proper to this Kingdome of *China*, that they made vs doubt

Two notable errors of our newe Maps. *Pagum* in 40 degrees. The Kingdom of China goeth not past 41 degrees Northward. *China* and *Catayo* are all one. *Catayo* and *Pagum* are all one.

that it was not a feuerall Kingdome. After wee were come to this Citie of *Pagun* we met with two Canlas or Caruans, one of *Moore* of certaine small Kingdomes bordering vpon *China*, another of *Turkes* with their Turbans of the Countreys of *Adage*, and of the great *Israel Sophi*, (for with this very name they call him) and of other parts, which had knowledge by fame of *Spain*, *Italy*, *Venice*, *India*, and *Portugall*.

Very Marchants.

It is so in the Court.

Isaper stones great mer- chandise.

These *Turkes* and *Moore*s are wont to haulther euery five yeeres by Land, in the name of their King, to acknowledge and pay Tribute to the King of *China*: for which purpose they counterfeit certaine Letters, wherewith they easily deceiue the *Chinese*, which thinke and hold that all the Kings of the World doe acknowledge obedience vnto theirs. But the truth is, that they come to vie their traffike and merchandise, and therefore the *Chinese* admit them willingly: howbeit many now doe know, that their paying of Tribute is a fayned thing. In which their traffike they speeD very well. For the King doth maintayne them very plentifully by the Chits of them, wherof this yeere they brought a thousand. The King tooke of them an easie price a great part of the merchandise which they brought, and afterward he gave them rewards. The thing of greateft bulke of merchandise are a kinde of stones, which themselves call Isaper stones; which is white, yet somewhat dusky, so that it endineth to grey (which seemeth to bee that Isaper which so often times in the holy Scriptures is called Precious stone). It cometh in pieces whenever, but whole like pebble stones; which stone for many ornaments the *Chinese* esteeme much; especially the King; and they buy euery pound of it at eight Duckets: and of that which is worse, at fiftie or sixtie Duckets, wherby they gaine greatly. I haue seene these stones of other colours in our Countrey, but not of this which the *Chinese* esteeme.

When these men come to this Citie of *Pagun*, they put them into a great house, which there is for this purpose; (wherein wee were two months) and suffer them not to come forth. Wee asked these men certaine questions: and one was this of *Catagay*, enquiring of them. How they called this Kingdome of *China* in their Countrey? They answered, *Catagay*, and that in all the Countreys of *Mogor*, *Persia*, and other parts, it had none other name, and that they knew none other Kingdome that was called so. Wee asked them how they called this Citie of *Pagun*? They said *Cashan*, which, as I haue said, is that which our men set downe for the head Citie of *Catagay*. Wherby it appeareth, that there can no doubt be made, but that wee are heere resident in the Countrey which must bee *Catagay*, if there were no fault in the Maps; and wee know that there is no such Countrey, nor Cities, but a few contemptible *Mans* and *Gentils*.

Wee understood also of their a Ciuet or Muske, wherof they brought some, which is, as it were the maw (or stomacke) of a Beast somewhat bigger then a Cat, which they kill to cut away this maw. They breed wilde in the field, and in a Countrey very neere to *China*, though not of this Kingdome. I haue read when I departed out of *Spain*, a Booke which is printed of the things of *China*, which writeth of this Ciuet, and of other things, which I haue seene with mine eyes: it reporteth many errors by halfe informations, which hee which wrote it should haue bene better informed in, although in many things hee tell the truth. They brought also great store of very good Rhubarbe, which heere wee bought of them of choice, at ten Maraudis the pound: it is a wilde root like vnto Nauueses, wherof, they say, the *Chinese* are full. These men say, There is a Sea of Land (which our Maps doe place in *Archie*) neere vnto *China*, which diuideth it from *Mogor*, and other Kingdomes: And this should seeme to bee the cause, why these Kings, which heare great fame of this Kingdome, of the greatest neede, and of the weakenesse of the people, doe not seeke to invade the same, being nor very farre off; because it would be very difficult to passe ouer the same landie Sea, with a great Armie.

Division.

Chorographi- call Bookes.

China populous

The *Chinese* diuideth this Kingdome into thirteene Prouinces, and two Courts, which is, so it were, two Prouinces. Euery one of them haue their Metropolitan Citie; and euery Citie her diuision of so many Townes. It is knowne very particularly by *Chinese* Bookes which are written of this argument, how many Cities, Townes, and places there are in all the Kingdome, how many houses euery one hath, and commonly what numbers of people, what euery Countrey feuerally yeeldeth, and how much Tribute it payeth to the King, and many other things: but I doe not set it downe here: because I could not get those Bookes these few dayes past; to take a view thereof: At some other time, God granting mee life, I will doe it more at large. Only I say in general, that all the way which wee trauelled, wee met with so many Cities, Townes, and Villages, that to beleue their greateffe, it was necessarie to see them. For your Worship will hardly beleue, that wee spent two or three houres in sayling fill by the walls of one Citie. After which there still followed many Townes and Villages, one within sight of another. And after this manner all this way continueth, euen to *Pagun*. Yea, the Villages are very great, and full of people, and of much traffike. For though wee gue them this name (which among vs signifieth some small matter) The *Chinese* doe not distinguish

them by great or small, and so their Villages are bigger then others which wee call Townes. All the Cities and Townes are very well enclosed with high walls. And because, as I said, I deferre this waile another time, I will only speake of *Nanguin*, wherof I had some fight.

This Citie standeth in two and thirtie degrees and an halfe, eight or ten leagues from the Sea, vnto which it hath a mouth, and a mightie Riuer. It hath three walls of Bricke very high and faire, with very great and beautifull gates, which they shut vp very timely before night; This Citie, of old time, two hundred yeeres past, was the habitation of the Kings of *China*; and it do continueth in very good condition: The streets are very broad, and all paved with very great square stones, or set with bricke. It hath exceeding long streets of two leagues, and two leagues and an halfe, and in the middle of the Citie are the Kings Palaces, which are very great.

The *Chinese* declare the circuit of this Citie, that two Horsemen going in the morning both out of the same gate, and one going on the one side, and the other on the other, going all the day they meet at night in the gate opposite to that which they went out at. The very truth is, that it is at least eleven or twelve leagues in circuit, and seemeth to haue about two hundred thousand houses of people. It seemed to all of vs that were there, that *Nanguin* and this Citie of *Pagun*, each of them haue as many people or more, then foure of the most famous and populous Cities of all our *Europe*, as *Rome*, *Lisbon*, and others of the greater fort. For whereas these two wherof I speake are in themselves so great Cities, not one nor two streets, but the greater part of the Citie euery day doth swarme with people.

There are about this Citie many others within one or two dayes Iourney, and very famous for greateffe traffike; among which there are two, one named *Haucho*, the other *Suecho*, &c. *Suecho* call these Cities "Paradis", to expresse the goodnesse, abundance, and cheapsell of all things that are in this Kingdome, and come from other places. And *Suecho* is so full of people, merchandise, and traffike, that a Booke which is printed (wherein all things are set downe which the Prouinces and Cities pay to the King) hath, that this only payeth one yeere with another in Silver, Gold, Rice, and Silke, and other things, wherewith it doth greatly abound, twelue millions: so that there be whole Prouinces that amount not to so much by a great deal: which though it seeme an incredible thing, yet they write it for a certaintie; and hee which knoweth what these Cities are, will beleue it.

Yet for all this, these Cities haue no notable things, neither sumptuous Temples nor buildings, which are wont to be those things which doe beautifie a Citie: for the houses are not beautiful outwardly; nor they vie no great Porches, as they doe in our Countrey. And he that hath seene the things of our Countrey, and is skillfull in architecture, shall find it here very little. For the houses are low, and without galleries, lofts, windowes, or light into the street; yet they haue faire yards, and are very neate within, and painted with figures colours, with that *Chauran*, being the abundance, wherof I made mention before. And that which I speake of *Nanguin*, among the Cities which wee saw. For the *Chinese* are so like, and so vniforme in all natural and artificial things, that he that hath seene one of the principall Cities, findeth no new thing to bee multitude of people proportionally there is little difference.

This Kingdome is commonly very fertile of all things that are necessarie for the vse of man: and a great cause of the fertilityte and abundance thereof proceedeth of the great number of exceeding great Riuer which it hath; which besides the profit that the Riuer yeeld by fishing, and besides the profit in watering of the grounds, wherein they stand the *Chinese* in great with great ease by water, which is an enriching to them that vie it, and of great pleasure in a little of *Pagun*, which is, as I said, sixe hundred leagues, wee trauelled not past one day by Land (because wee would not fetch too great a compasse about by water) wee trauelled a great part of this way vnto *Nanguin* by the greatest Riuer that euer I saw in any life: greateffe thereof doe call, *The little Sea*; and that with good reason. For though it were an hundred leagues from the Sea where I entered into it; yet there is a great abundance of fish of those kinds which breed in the Sea; as Porpoises, fishes with sharpe leakes, and others which I haue seene.

I saw in this Riuer peere the banks thereof men fish with certaine Fowles as bigge as small which the *Chinese* teach to fish: They haue a very long necke, which they binde in such sort that the fishes cannot goe downe into their stomacke, but they fill their throat with them, if they be small fishes, and when they come out of the water, they make them call them out; and if the fish be great, hee fighteth with him, and beateh him with pecking, aduailing him

Villages as great as Townes.

Walls.

Nanguin in 30. degrees and halfe.

Three walls.

Streets long.

Palaces.

Circuit.

100000. houses

Haucho and *Suecho*.

Quifay, *Ciui*, *tau*, *cati*.

Routine.

Building not compared with *Europe*.

Uniformitie in *China* Cities.

Fertilitie.

Commodious Riuer.

In 300. leagues but one day by land.

This is more modestly mentioned by *Ricinus*.

a more exact observer of all things, Sept. 6. 1641.

Mighty River, perhaps *Quian* mentioned by *Ricinus*.

Fish, fishing with a binde: R. sent on Com-morant

with his bill, vntill hee driue him vp that the Fisher may see him; which commeth quickly with a small Net like a Whele vpon a staffe, and hee taketh him vnder the water. And after this fort wee law this Fowle take Edibles sometimes of a pound, and a pound and halfe weight; and they say they take bigger. And because this fishing is so gainfull and so certaine, they pay a certaine Tribute to the King for euery one of these Riueres (or Cormorants.)

Muddy Riuer.

Wee met with another Riuer as great as this, which seemed to bee rather of muddie then water, because the water was alwaies mingled with earth, which whence it should come for so many yeeres, I wot not. They cannot drinke the water without they clarify it, which they doe with Alum. Besides these two Riueres all the rest is made by hand for vessels to passe to Paquin.

Alum used in clarifying of water. Shipping.

The Vessels which wee law in all the Cities which we passed, is one of the greatest things that belong to this Kingdome. For in euery City there are two sorts of them; one sort of vessels for burden, and another sort for houses. Some of them are very faire, and as fit to dwell in as houses themselves; and many of them also ferue for houses for poore people, wherein they haue their whole household, and bring vp Hens and Hogs, and gayne their liuing in them. I remember, that the same morning that wee entered into Nangin there went 500. Vessels or more before our Barke, to enter at the same house, with their layes vp most pleasantly to behold; and many of them being laden with diuers things, all for the provision of that great City; and on this manner they continued all day long in going and coming.

Ship-houses.

Multitude of ships.

The Barges of the Mandarins (which are all made at the Kings cost) are the most costly, and are most for the sight, and very great. They would not be soire in our Europe to see them; because it seemeth that there is nothing comparable to these in beauty. Most commonly these haue Trumpets, and Drummes, which they play vpon when they passe by the City, and when they meet with others, that all may giue them place. They are commonly as long as Gallies, and as broad or more, but very high, so that to get vp into one of them is about a fathome high from the water, and therefore they carrie a great burthen.

The excellent beauty of the Mandarins Barges.

Tributes in money and in kinde.

And because I spake before of those which carrie the Kings Tribute, I will here speake more particularly. Many Provinces from whence they cannot carrie Rice and other like things with ease to Paquin, because they are farre off, pay their Tribute in Silver; but those Provinces from whence they may pass by water, pay a great part in Rice. For which occasion all the Cities haue great and strong Vessels made of purpose for this seruice. And when the time of their departure is come, euery Cafa or Companie departeth from their City with a Mandarine that hath the charge of them.

10000. Vessels at Nangin for Tribute of Vt. Gulls, and 1000. for other Tributes: and others many for workes.

Path-way of ships.

Ships or boats.

And they say that those Vessels which goe from this part of Nangin, in all amount to ten thousand, though they goe not all euery yeere: yet they haue alwaies more for yeeres of greater plenty; and because many cannot returne in time, to goe backe againe the next yeere, I know not certainly how many they be; but this only I know, that all this way from Nangin to Paquin, seemed to be a path-way of these Vessels, whereby they wanted water: to helpe them all along, and because they went so deeply laden, oftentimes they were puffed: for they went all along with water (for because it is no naturall Riuer it neuer overflows) it hath flood-gates like Sluices, wherewith it is kept in all the current three or foure or fixe houres: then opening the same, may doe passe with great ease, and they may goe very well vntill they come to such another place.

Silkes and per. fumes.

Besides these Vessels of viduals, they carrie to the King euery yeere many others, which bring him particular things, and dainties, wherof this Countrey of Nangin yieldeth great store, and also for the seruice of the Kings house. Some Cafas or Carauans of these are of pieces of Silke for the Kings house, which may be some dozen of Vessels; others carrie many things to eat: and with one of these Cafas we passed. They were nine great and faire Vessels, which carried pieces of Silke, and other things which they are wont to burne in the Sacrifices which they make vnto the dead, and before their Idols. They say, that these Vessels for particular things are a thousand: and as soone as they come within the Kings house, the Eunuchs take the charge of them. From Nangin vnto the middest of the Kings Palaces, Vessels may passe by this Riuer: to come to the place which they goe vnto, they passe thorow the middest of the Palaces. In all these Riueres, when they want winde, the Mariners draw the Barkes with great facilitie, and fixe or seuen are sufficient easily and merrily to draw one of these Vessels laden.

Vessels for workes.

Wee met likewise vpon this way a very great number of Vessels which came from farre, laden with Bricks for the Kings workes, and greater store this yeere to build a great piece of an house which fire from Heauen had burned: for this purpose they carried great store of timber for beames, and boards, and other lesser timber which are caried from the parts of Nangin vnto Paquin, some an hundred and two hundred paces long, and one log fastened vpon another, so that these rafts grow high and great: they carrie vpon them frames of dwelling, houses ready made, wherewith there goeth an inferior Mandarine, which hath the care of it, and sometimes the Mariners goe with all their household, and breed of Hogs, Hens and Duckes: for sometimes they

they stay about a Summer in going to Paquin. These seuen or eight yeeres this prouision of timber, Bricks, and lime, and other things hath continued.

The fertilitye of this Kingdome is great, of all things that seeme to be needfull for the life of mans life. And if there be any other Nation which lueth commodiously without needing traffick with foraine Kingdomes, they are the Chinois. And though it bee true that some things come vnto them from foraine Countries, yet are they not the necessary things for the life, and which all men life. The most that commeth out of foraine parts, and they desire, is Silver: And that which all men carrie from thence is very much, and very good merchandise: as Silke, Gold, Muske, Porcelaine, pieces of wrought Silke, raw Silke, cloth of Cotton wooll, all kinde of workes in Copper, Iron, and Latten, Quackstons, Sugar, Honey, Waxe, Cinnamon, workes made of wood and gilded, as Bedsteads, Inkhornes, Cabinets, and an infinite number of other things, wherof there is so great abundance, that although they send out many things laden for Japan, India, Manila, and other parts: yet without doubt they might prouide ten times more: and if more would come to buy, they would alwaies haue the more to sell. All things are very cheap, without all comparison cheaper then in our Countrey. A pound of Sugar is worth eight or ten Maraudis, and sometimes fixe; and if they buy any quantitie at once, an hundred pounds weight are worth nine or ten Riials of Plate: And here at the Court (where all things are dearer) a pound is worth twenty, or foure and twenty Maraudis. There is great store of Waxe and that very good, which wee buy here in Paquin for the seruice of our Altar, a pound for a Riiall and a Quartill: and the pounds here are greater then ours; for euery one of them weigh sixteen Duckets of Silver weight. Honey likewise is very good cheape. Of Copper and Latten there is exceeding great abundance: and Latten made and wrought into any worke that a man would haue, with the fashioning, and all is worth a Riiall and a Quartill the pound. Needles an hundred a quart, and if they buy many together, better cheape. And I haue let downe for example the small things to know the particular price, and of other things (though they be not so cheape) after the same proportion. Howbeit those which come from foraine Countries to traffick with them, had need to be very heedfull: for the Chinois loke not opportunities to raise the price of them, when they may.

Silver in great request in China.

The great store of merchandise in China.

Cheapsell.

A caution for strange Merchants.

Viduals store and cheape.

Spare pencke. One halfpenny.

Herbs.

Two and three Hauells in one yeere.

Plaine Countrey. Plaine of 100. leagues.

Spare feeding.

Herb-eaters.

Horse-eaters. Wine-eaters.

The abundance of things for food is likewise great, to wit, of Oxen, Weathers, Sheepe, Goats, and more then of all others of Hogs, because they are the common food for they live of, Deere, Hares, which they catch with Hawkes, wherof here and in other parts there are many. And when they are dearer here, one of them is worth foure or fixe Quartos: they be as great as they be in our Countrey, and they are found at all times. Hens, Geese, Duckes, and sundry sorts of wilde Fowles, and all other flesh is exceeding good cheape. Wee came to a very great City, where Beefe, Mutton, Hennes, all was of one price a pound, which was foure Maraudis. And in Nangin (though the Court be there) a pound of Hens flesh was sold for three halfpence. Fishes after the same manner, or better cheape, because it stands vpon the Riuer. And I saw a Fifth of ten pound weight sold for a Riiall and a Quartill, sixteen, eighteen for one Condurren, which in our Countrey is a penie halfpence farthing. Fruits which are here very good, they goe as vnto hundred for ten Maraudis. They are very much giuen to eat fresh Herbs and Salads, and Puffe. At euery banquet and good feast, there is alwaies Fleth or Fish. There are many Nuts, Chestnuts, Filberds, and Pine-nuts though but few, Figs, though not of our kinde, and yet as good or better, and many. And although they haue all these things, yet of euery Province and Countrey doth not yeeld them all: but that which one wanteth another supplyeth.

Their common food is instead of Bread is Rice sodden only in water, wherof wee all did feed, although at the first wee had much adoe with it. Commonly they haue euery yeere two Harrows: for the fields of Rice doe much desire to be couered with water. From our entrance into Canton vnto this City of Paquin, wee met with few Hills, and especially from Nangin hither very few. Wee passed by a Plaine about an hundred leagues, farther then wee could kenne. I saw likewise much Wheat, wherof they make rolls without leauen, sodden in the reeke or vapour of seething water, and so without crust, good for old folkes that want their teeth. Although that it bee true that the fruitfulness of this Countrey is very great, yet without doubt other things, as Rice would not be sufficient, if the Chinois were as great feeders as our people, and did not feed so sparingly as they doe. They all ate commonly thrice a day; once, betimes in the morning; the second time, at two in the afternoon; the third time, very moderately at night. And besides the rich Mandarins, few others which are of good abilitie, doe commonly eat either Fleth or Fish, but Puffe, Salads, and Herbs which cost almost nothing, and the chiefest food is Rice, or Miller, and hereof they fill their bellies.

They haue many Horses, Mares, and Mules, whole flesh they eat, though I haue not heard report that the greater sort doe feed vpon them. They haue much Wine of diuers sorts; and made

made of Rice: but herein they may not compare with the Wine of our Country: Whatsoever they drinke, be it Wine or Water they drinke it alwaies hot. They are neare in feeding, for they touch none of their meate with their hands, therefore they vie neither Table Napkins, nor Table-clothes. All their meate is served to the Table finely minced. They vie to feed with two small stickes of Iuorie, Ebony Wood, or such like, wherewith they take up all their meate verie handfully. And herein, I confesse, they have a great advantage of vs; because this manner of feeding is very commodious, and such as euery man that hath triall thereof will much delight in it: and therefore our *Fathers* and *Brethren* in *Japon* and *Macao* vie in it. Their alwaies drinking their drinke hot, and eating little fruit (for they are not so greedy of it as our men are) doth keepe them from many infirmities and sicknesses, and therefore they liue healthfully. They haue no Oliues, yet haue they abundance of Oile. The best is of a kind of Herbe, which they call in *Spain*, *Aligria*, which giveth Joy or Mirth. I say not that it is as good as ours, but may I say no fault in it, nor I do not before it, nor much lesse the *China*, which can cate not smell no kind of ours which we had: and they call their stinking Oile odoriferous, so great a force there is in it. As the *Chinese* are diuerse in diuers Prouinces, so are their Fruits: and those which grow in the Prouince of *Canton*, are not in all these colder Prouinces: There are the best sweetest oranges which hitherto we haue knowne, which are eaten with the skinn.

§. IIII.

Their Monyes, Apparell, Persons, Trades, Wealth, Learning, Marriages, Superstitions, Rites, and Opinions.

Timber plenty Here is in this Kingdome great store of Timber; for prooue whereof wee need no more but to see the multitude of Barges laden therewith for good cheape as it is. And therefore I thinke a man may build a ship with all things necessary thereunto, three parts of 10 more better cheape then in our Country. They vie no Gold, though there be much to be bought, but all is Siluer, which they doe not coyn in Money, but cast in Barres, and when they would buy any thing, they cut it and weigh it in cerayne fine Weights like the *Romane* Weights in our Country: and therefore euery body that will buy or sell, carryeth one of those Weights with them. Great store of Siluer cometh out of forreine Countreies. But the chiefe Masse of it is out of the Mines of the Kingdome it selfe; as also the Gold. When they buy or sell, they try the Siluer of how many *Kilantes* it is: and one is worth more, another lesse, according to the goodnesse thereof. It was very necessary for the *Chinese* to weigh and try their Siluer, and not to coyne it into money: for otherwise there would haue bene a thousand defects, wherein the *Chinese* are very cunning. They vie Brasie Money, wherein all they try that which is true or false: for in all sorts there is deceit and mixture. They haue the best Porcelaine that hitherto hath bene found, which is exceeding good cheape, and in such plenty, that besides all the Kingdome of *China* doth furnish it selfe thereof, they send forth many ships lading-as they will.

For their Apparell, though they haue great abundance and cheapnesse, yet in goodnesse they may not compare with our Country. There is much Silke and that very good, but they know not how to dresse it. They make good Damaskes, razed Velours, Traffaces, and other sorts: but the colours, though at the first sight they seeme reasonable, are quickly lost and fade away. The ordinary apparell of the common people is of blacke cloth made of Cotton, or of cerayne shags of Silke, which are very great, farre greater then a floske, which only serue for their purpose, and are very warme. Perions of Honour weare commonly an outward Garment of Silke which they vie in Vilitations, and other like Actions: And there are many which alwayes goe abroad apparellled in Silke, but not in such great number as that Booke fettech downe, whereof I made mention before. All men, euen to the very Souldiers, weare their apparell long downe to the in-ftp of the foot, with very broad sleeves, open before, and fastened to the sides beneath the arme. They be so well contented and pleased with their manner of apparell, that they thinke there is none in the World comparable to theirs. And in very truth they be graue and modest, and especially those of the *Mandarins*, which differeth from all others, fawning the *Bonzi*, which haue their Beards and Heeds. All the men and women let their Hayre grow long, and the men tresse it up, and wind it on a knot on the top of their crowne. They weare cerayne Newes of their heads like Coyffes, made very cunningly of Horse-hayre: and in the Summer time many weare Caps and Hats of the same. There are many sorts of Caps or Hats (for I know not what their seuerall names are) according to the state of euery one. The basest sort which the common people vie ordinarily is round. Their shoes, are of the time (stiffe that their Garments are of,

of, very commonly of Silke made with many faire borders and knots. It is a discourtesie for a man to be seene (especially before any man of Worship) without a Cap on his head. They greatly esteeme for the moit part things of our Country, and they are very deare. And some pieces of Silke which the *Perisid* Merchants bringes, especially Velours of three Piles, are far more deare then their owne. All woollen cloth is much esteemed and very deare, likewise Chambrles, and fine Linen-cloth, which they bring from *India* are very deare. Looking-glaffes, and all things made of Glasse, and many other things, which in our Country are very good cheape, are here deare, and in great esteeme.

The *Chinese* haue commonly little Beards, small Eyes, and Noſes, and all of them haue black Eyes, so that they much marvelled at the colour of mine, which are of Gray or Iron colour (which they neuer saw) and they find many secrets in them, and very commonly they say, that the eyes of mine know where stones and precious things are, with a thousand other Mysteries, so that they thinke they haue Letusin in them. To paint an eul-faoured man, they paint him in short apparell, with a great Beards, Eyes, and Nole. They are commonly all white, yet not so white as those of *Europe*: and therefore to them we seeme very white. The Learned men are very graue, of very good capacitie, and appeare outwardly very modest and graue.

There are Artificers of all Arts that are in our Country, and very many with the selfe-same manner forme of Instruments. Euery man is free to follow what Trade he will, without being bound to follow his Fathers Trades, as duers times I haue heard it spoken when I was in *Europe*: and those which will may study, forsake, or change that couſe of life. They worke very good things they be very skilfull.

The seruice of young men and maydes is safe and good cheape, because there is great store of people, so that a years wages is not about two Duckets, and meate and drinke, without apparell. As there are many poore people that haue many Sonnes and Daughters, it is a very ordinary thing to sell them, and this the cheapest thing in *China*. For a youth of twelue or fifteene yeares without any naturall blemish will cost not past twelve or fifteene Riials of Plate, and in time of Death much lesse, and it is a common thing to buy them for seruice; though they vie well, and marry them at their time.

Although the abundance and riches of this Kingdome be very great, as the people also is; yet there is no body that is very rich, neyther in any state of people may they compare in this point with our Country. You shall not find in *China*, which is able to spend twenty thousand Duckets of Rent, how neere of Kinne he be to the King, and very few, and chiefe cause I doe number that can spend ten thousand Duckets; and the ordinary is no more which they possesse then that which their lands and Offices yeild them, which is not great. But though it be true that those of our Country possesse much more Silkes, considering the cheapnesse of things in their Country, all cometh to one account.

There are very few of the poore people idle, because all of them commonly take trades, and earene their living. Though the multitude of the Nation be so many, and the Kingdome so great, *Surnames*.

40 yet the surnames of all the Kingdome are not about three hundred; and all of one syllable. There are some, though very few, which may be called Knights, which for seruice to the Kings in some necessities haue giuen them Offices in succession: but the common vie is not to haue any Nobilitie by Descent in *China*; neyther can any man say, I am of a better bloud then you. But the honour and Nobilitie dependeth wholly vpon Learning, and to obayne degrees and Offices of *Mandarins*. And therefore an Houſe which now is in Office, and his Father be continueth as long as the Learned men and *Mandarins* doe lue. There is no man, neyther Kinman nor not Kinman of the King which hath euer a Village of his owne that payeth him Tribute: but all men pay it to the King; and hee giueth stipends and wages to the *Mandarins*, so that they receiue nothing of particular men by right, though they extort much continually by oppression.

Commonly the *Chinese* doe marry from fifteene to eighteene and twentie yeares, and all of them doe marry one Wife that is chiefe; and in their lawfull Marriage. On the day of their Marriage, when the Bride doth passe to the Houſe of her Husband, shee carrieth openly before her through the streets all the things which shee bringeth with her, and all her house-hold stuffe: But besides her they may marrie (I say they may keepe and doe keepe as many as they seeable as many Wives as they will, which for the moit part they buy: and afterward when they will sell them away againe. They may not only not marrie with any Kin(women of their Wives, but with none of that turne, though they haue no law of Alliance. The sonnes of the Conqueſſors bines doe likewise inherit, and there is little or no difference in their state and honour, to be the Sonne of the Lawfull Wife, or of the other, neyther make they any question of it.

The thing wherein the *Chinese* are most obſeruant, Ceremonious and Superstitious is in their Burials, Funerals, and Mournings: for herein they shew their obedience and loue to their Parents, whereof their bookes are full. It is a very ordinary thing to haue great respect to their Fa-thers

Seres let. forayaci.

Trades.

Sernans

cheape.

Sale of chil-

dren vile.

None very

rich.

Yet as rich as

ours very rich.

Few idle.

Surnames.

Nobilitie on-

ly in Learning.

No Lord but

the King.

Extortion.

Marriage.

Polygamic.

Inheritance.

Funerals and

mourning.

The

Three years
mourning in
white Linnen.

Keeping the
dead at home.

Other Funer-
all Rites.

Funerall day.

Funerall Fi-
gures.

Coffin.

Buriall place.

Unluckie to
burie in the
Citie.

Transition of
soules:
Moreinglich-
call Supersti-
on.

cher and Mother, and the disobedient are grievously punished. Many graue men and *Mandari-
rins* begge leaue of the King to leaue their Offices which they haue, and to go home to keepe
their Father and Mother company, yielding for a reason that they be old, and that they would
goe to serue them. And it is a Petition in the sight of all men so iust, that they grant it very-
fully. When the Father or the Mother dieth, all the Sonnes and Daughters (from the King to
the meanest Peasant) doe mourne for three yeares. The mourning colour, which among vs
blacke Bayes, among them is white Linnen, whereof they make all their apparell euen to the
Cap. The first monthes they wear a very rough Sack-cloth, girded with a Cord, like the
bare-footed Friars. And though he be neuer so great a *Mandarin*, without any exception (sue
only the *Mandarin* of the Warre) as soon as he heareth newes of the death of any of his Pa-
rents, he is to leaue his Office and Dignitie, and all other Employment whatsoever of Govern-
ment and Examinations of the same, and to goe home for three yeares to beurie
his Father or Mother, and to mourne and bewaile them. The graue men which haue an house
for this purpose, doe not straitway burie their dead, but keepe them two or three yeares in the
house, in a Chamber which they keepe for this Office, and it is not the worst in the house: and
very usually or euery day they go thither to make them a thousand Ceremonies and Reuerences,
and to burne Incense, and other sweet fauours, and to set ouer the place where they lie laid, meate
to eat; and at seuerall times, many of those *Bonns* doe meet, and with great Ceremonies be-
gin their Seruice and Prayers, and their Sonnes, Kinsfolkes and Wives make lamentation. The
Mandarins doe not only leaue their Offices, and change their Weeds, but also all the things which
they did vie. Many sit not in Chaires, but vpon low Stooles: they visit, or lister themselves to
be seene very feldome: they change euen the very Paper wherein they write, wherein they
haue a piece of another colour, in token of mourning: when they name themselves in their
Letters, they vie not the name which they did at other times, but others proper to the partie, as
when he nameth himselfe, hee calleth himselfe *disobedient*, signifying, that by his disobedience
to his Parents he did not preiure them aloue.

They vie no kind of Muckie, and many change their ordinarie Diet into courser food. Vpon
the Funerall day they prouide great company: many Kinsfolkes and Friends meete together, all
clad in white, with many *Bonns* (according to euery mans ability) which sing with dolefull in-
struments. And by their apparell which they wear, and their time in singing, hee that knew
them not, would take them for Clerkes reuersed, singing laque Song; for they much resemble
them. They make many Beeres with men, of Paper or of white Silke, many Banners and other
Ensignes. The place whither the Corps goeth is adorned with many figures: the Corps is put
into a very great Coffin. This Nation holdeth a great part of their felicitie, for them and their
Successors to consist in these things of their Funerals, especially in two, the Coffin or Chist
wherein the Corps is to be layed, and the place of their buriall. The stuffe to make the Coffin
of, wherein themselves are to be buried, and the making of the Coffin, they leaue not to others
to doe after their deaths, neither then may the body looke for much cost: to make one of these
Coffins, neither in this (as a thing of great importance) will they trust, no not their owne Sonns:
but they themselves at leisure seeke some kind of Wood that is least corruptible, and Plankes
which are commonly foure, fixe, or eight fingers thicke: which because they be so thicke, and
the Chists or Coffins very dolely that they can keepe their Corps in their Houses without any
euill smell. Some spend in making their Coffin twenty, eighty, and an hundred Duckets. They
hold it for a felicity to be able to get one of these that is good; on the contrary for a great di-
grace, not to haue a Coffin to burie himselfe in, and they are very few which faile in that one
point.

The Sepulchre and place thereof is the thing for choosing, whereof they vie great Sorcerie or
casting of Lots, and doe it with great heedfulness, and with the helpe of some that are skillful
in this Art. For they hold opinion, that in making a good choice of the place dependeth a great
part of their owne good fortune and of their Posteritie. And oftentimes they are yeare in to
soluing whether it shall looke toward the North, or to any other part. And therefore the gra-
rest and most contentious Sutes which are in *China*, are about places of Burials. These places
of Burials are alwayes without the wals in the fields, or Mountaynes wherein they build Vauls
very well made and strong of Bricke, stone, or other matter, wherein they lay the Coffin, and
then close it vp very furely: And afterward now and then they come thither to performe cer-
tain Ceremonies, &c. to bring things to eat. They hold it very unluckie to burie a dead man in the
Citie: and if they know it, though he were the greatest man that is in *China*, they will not suf-
fer him to be buried in the dead Friends much, especially those which are women. There are many
which beleue the passing of the soules from one bodie into another: and therefore after the
death of their Father and Mother, they will neuer tell any lying baile, yielding for a
why they will not doe so, lest some of them should be their Mother or Father, or some other
other person. And likewise many of them faile, because, that whereas some of them be poore;
they desire afterward to be borne againe in a rich and honourable Family.

Although it be true that the most part of them beleue not in Idols, and it offendeth them

not to speake euill of them, yet commonly all of them at a certaine time of the yeare doe them
some reuerence, because it is the custome, though in no sort they worship them as Gods: and chose
which put most confidence in them, burne Paper, Incense, and sweet Incense vnto them, and kill
beasts before them. Their Bookes of these Idols speake of Hell, and in many places, or in a man-
ner in all the Cities there is set vp a portraiture of Hell made with bodily shap, and many De-
uils, as vglie as wee paint them. It is very well set forth, but badly beleued; for it serueth
only there for a bugbear. And if any beleue that which the Idols say of Hell, that it is a place
of torments, they say, that after so many yeares be past, all men come out againe, and are trans-
formed into some beast. Those which beleue in the Idols, come before them to cast Lots to know
what things shall come to passe: howbeit I haue not heard in all *China*, that there was any an-
swer of a Diuill in a hollow, as is in other parts, in regard of the small beleue that they haue in
them, and the lewdnesse of the *Bonns* that serue them. Their houses wherein they fet them,
whereof as yet I neuer saw any good one, are commonly verie filthy and stinking.

And besides this consulting of Idols, the *Chins* are much giuen to Diuinations to know things
to come, and whether they shall haue good or bad fortune: whether they shall haue that which
they desire or no: and there be an infinite number of these South-seyers, and all of them prate-
rers, mumblers, and coofeners, whereby they deceiue many. And though the *Chins* be of good
vnderstanding, and know that these fellows know nothing, and euery foot doe see them in
lyes: yet for all this, there are verie few that when any occasion is offered, doe not consult with
them. And though they seeme to bee but few, yet some of them are in league with the Deuill,
as oftentimes wee gather by certaine things.

Many of these graue men of *China*, haue commonly two follies, wherein they doe erre more
then in other things. The first is, that they perfwade themselves that they can much *prolong*
their *Liue*: and for this purpose they vie a thousand inuentions, and take many medicines, which
indeed rather doe shorten their dayes. There are many Masters and Bookes of this folle, which
villallie are graue and rich men. They are many that make themselves very old folks, whom
the people follow like Saints to learne the rule of life of them, wherein they put all their felicitie.
Many doe not beleue that they are so old as we say we be, and that we doe dissemble: but that in
deed we be an hundred yeares old, and that we know this rule to lue for euere, and that we doe
not Marrie because wee would lue long. The other folle is, that they perfwade themselves that
they are able, and goe about to make Siluer, whereof likewise there are many Bookes. They vie
for this purpose many Hearbs, and Quick-silver, wherein they spend that little Siluer which
they haue, and remaine beggars, but not perfwaded but that it is feasible, but that it was not
their good lucke, and good fortune: and to obtaine this, many of them fast many yeares.

Q. V.

Their bad Souldierie and Artillerie; Degrees, Priuiledges, Honours and
promotions of Learning. Their Authors and Bookes, and Printing.
The Mandarins commended.

Here are many Souldiers in many Provinces of this Kingdome: and though they haue
had Peace these many yeares, yet they still entertaine them: but because they be lo-
uers of peace and quietnesse, the most contemptible state, except the state of the *Bon-
ns*, is the Souldier. And indeed it is a most base people, which hath no valour nor
worthinesse, much lesse any fortitude in them. Many of them are Porters, which beare on their
shoulders, the Chaires wherein the *Mandarins* and honourable persons are carried. And at the
time of Riots, which are made from time to time, they reparae thither, to obtaine wages,
and thus they haue no worth, nor jot of honour in them. The punishment wherewith their
Captaines punish them, is the same wherewith they punish all other people: they whip them
beastie of their Armour, offensive and defensive is answerable, which is fitter to be laughed at,
than to be reported. They haue no Harquebushes that are worth any thing: and all those which
meth that they beare it and the rest of their Armour for fashions sake. And I marvel not: for
reason of the exceeding great Peace which they haue so long enjoyed, they haue none occa-
sion to become valiant: but they are able men when occasion serueth, and it seemeth they will
cassie become valiant.

The *Mandarins* of Souldiers, is also a thing of small estimation, and they are nothing compa-
rable with those which they call the *Mandarins* of Learning, which are those which take De-
grees. The *Mandarins* or Captaines of Souldiers, obtaine not the same for Heroicall acts or
prowesse, but they make a Discourse or an Oration, vpon some matter concerning warre, and they

Exercise Mi-
litarie
No Ordnance

make choise of certaine of those which had done it best. Likewise they shote two or three Ar-
rows, to see if they bee skillfull in shooting. They have no vñe of great Ordnance. Albeit I saw
in the Gates of some Cities, certaine small short Pieces, as broad at the mouth as at the nether
end, which I know not whether they shot off sometimes or no: I saw about sixe or eight of
them upon the Walls. The defence of their Walls is their height, without any other Artillery.
The greatest force and number of Souldiers, resideth in the confines of the *Tartars*.

Tartarian con-
quest.

It is foure hundred yeeres since a King of the *Tartars* wonne all *China*, (whereof *Paulus Ve-*
rus writeth, which was in that Countrey) and they did also possesse it two hundred yeeres:
at the end whereof, a *Bowee* a very prudent and valiant man rebelled, and caſt the *Tartar* out, and
remayned King, whole life continueth vntill this day. They alwayes keepe great Watch and
ward upon this frontier. Many yongthes of these *Tartars* remayned in *China*, and namely in
these parts of *Papin*, there are many which keepe and maintayne their Law of *Mabomet*, and

Mabometus,
No weapons
in houses.

have *Mosques* or *Turkish* Temples, and are much different in shap and countenances from the
Chinois. Except the Souldiers, there is none that keepe Weapons in their houses: not because
it is forbidden, but because there is no need of them: but rather the Learned and graue people,
count it a dishonour thing to keepe Armour: there is no vñe of them but in the time of warre.
For you shall neuer see them fight with weapons one with another, as we doe. But their fight-
ing is to buffet one another, to pull them by the hayre of the head, and to draw them by the
coller, and in two words to become friends againe. Our men make no great matter of giuing
buffets and such like, for they kill one another.

Not bloudey.

Studious.

The *Chinois* are greatly giuen to Learning and studie; for all their honour and riches depend
thereupon. They haue about fortie thousand sundry Letters: though many of them be
made one of another. They haue no A, B, C, nor any thing like therunto, as among vs. But to
signifie euery thing they haue one Letter, and all diuerſe. Their words are of one syllable, and
more, though their Letters bee fo many. Those which are commonly vñe ofe daye, are eight
or ten thousand. They begin to learne to write and reade commonly, when they bee sixteen yeeres
old: they write with Penſils. They haue many little Bookes which encourage Children to stu-
die, exhorting them to take paines, with the reward that they shall giue to bee *Mandari-
ns*. They know not, nor studie any Science, neither Mathematicks, nor Philosophie, nor any
such thing, but only Rhetorick: for all the substance of their knowledge and fame of Learned
men, consisteth in nothing else, but to know how to make a very elegant Discourse and Oracion
vpon a theme, like as in our *Europe* the Orators vñe anciently. And as the *Chinois* haue good
wits, and by hope of reward are verie applicable herunto, they doe it with great excellen-
cie, and occupie themselves with nothing else, and haue no other knowledge to distrust them
from it.

Penſil-writing.

Rhetoricke ſole
Art.

Here followed
of their De-
grees which is
more exact in
Trigonometrie,
and therefore here
omitted.

Glory of Do-
ctors.

Euery Doctor (after hee hath obtained his degree) setteth vp in his Countrey before the
doores of his House a Title of verie great letters, which saith: *This is the House of a Doctor*
which all men haue in regard. And before the doore, they set vp many high Poles like mast,
which euery *Mandarin* of that Citie where he dwelleth lendeth him, with a Banner hanged
vp, and alwayes they remaine there. They make a verie excellent Arch triumphall, to him that
hath the first degree, at the gate of his House. The *Chinois* esteeme more then we doe, the skill
to be able to write well, and Print euery yeere a great number of Bookes, whereof there is no
examination nor choise, and euery man Printeth what hee list, good or bad, and so they make
bookes of nothing. The best which come forth are of no Science: for as I haue said, they know
none: but they are onely of Morall sentences, to the aduancement of good Customes and Go-
uernment. Their manner of Printing is not like ours: for they joyne not their Letters, but
euery leafe they make a table which hath letters on both sides, it would seeme to bee very hard,
but with the custome which they haue gotten, they doe it with great ease, speed and cheape-
nesse. I will send you some Booke well printed, that you Worship may see it. They alprint
Letters in white, I say white letters, and the ground blacke. And though in the former they
come not neare vs, yet in this they goe far beyond vs. They vsually print their letters in Stone,
and the letters stand not in the Stone upward to touch the Paper directly, but in the paper and
the stone they stand all one way: and this is the order whereby they doe this: They wet the
Paper, and laying it vpon the toppe of the Stone, they gently beate it with some verie gentle
thing, whereby the Paper which lyeth vpon the Stone sinketh into the hollownesse of the Letters,
and reſteth lower then the other, then with a kind of Inke which they haue for this purpose, they
finely lay it ouer, whereby the Letters remaine white, because they bee deeper, and the rest re-
maineth blacke. I send you with this Letter certaine papers thereof, that you Worship may
reioyce in beholding the excellencie wherewith it is done. One of our Bookes of equall volume
with one of theirs, containeth much more: for our letter is lesser then theirs. Though in *China* it
be harder to learne to reade and write, then in our Countrey, yet there be few but know ordinat-
ly Letters to deale betwixt man and man.

They Print
yeerely great
store of bookes
in China.

Este Printing.

Printing white

Moff can write
and reade.

Poetrie.

Likewise they make great account of Poetrie, and also the grauer sort giue themselves much
vnto it. It is verie ordinarie with them to send vs some Poetrie in praise of vs, when we enter
into

into friendship with any. Also they make much account of Paintings, and playing vpon Instru-
ments. And albeit they know but litle in the first, because they haue no Art, nor paint the
things with shadowes, and know not how to paint in Oile: yet in the second they are verie
readie on their Instruments, and play grauely and leaſurely. I heard certaine sorts of Musick, e-
ſpecially in the Palace of the King: to welcome me, the Eunuchs his Musicians played vnto
me awhile, and they pleased me: although in this, litle it seemeth vnto me they may compare
with our Countrey, yet it is certaine, that they thinke they doe farre excell vs. They haue not
about our kinde of Instruments, which the grauer sort vñe and make much account of, which is
like vnto our Harpe, although the fashion and manner of playing vpon it, differeth from ours, and
from all our other Instruments.

Painting and
Musick.

As in *China* there is no sort of people more honourable then the Learned men, and Doctors:
to there is no people of better condition, and of more Honourable and more Noble manner of
proceeding. And albeit before they were Doctors and *Mandarins*, they were verie poore and
base people, and many of their Fathers officers of vile Offices, (as it is verie ordinarie) neuthe-
lesse, after they haue obtayned the Degrees, they put vpon themselves a more honourable spirit.
And therefore albeit in *China*, we endured much trouble at the base peoples hand, yet the *Man-
darins* did alwaies vñe vs honourably and with much respect: especially now, for which cause
no man dare trouble vs. And if there bee any, which in title are like our Lords, Knights, and
Courtiers, they are theſe. There are among them, men of much excellencie and fiercinie in their
Office, which doe ſeake the common good: And without doubt they make vs wonder, that ſeeing
they bee but *Geniſis*, which doe nothing for the zeale of Gods honour, nor for his sake, theſe
of such sinceritie, which they shew of late more then at this time, in hauing to doe with
this wicked, vicious, and couetous King, which they now haue: who though hee be so absolute
a Lord, that with the same libertie, and in a manner with the same facility, hee doth what hee
list with the greatest *Mandarins* of his Kingdome, as well as with the basest people thereof.
Yet for all this, of late yeeres there were many, who with great libertie and courage reprehended
his faults by writing (which is the manner of speaking most publicly with him) that all
men might read it. And though they might feare some grievous punishment (besides the losing of
their Offices, for that was certayn) neuthelesse, there were many men of courage which wrote
vnto him: among whom there was one very renowned: The letter which he wrote to the King,
began thus. *That although hee were assured, that hee were to be hanged, and that the Fire were kindled
to burne him, yet hee would reprehend his vices and lewdnesse, and the evil example that hee gave to all
his Kingdome: And so hee did, and spake verie freely, and put him in great feare. And it seemeth
that for his sinceritie and courage, the King had some regard of him, and though hee puni-
shed him, yet it was verie moderately.*

Noble Spirit
of the *Manda-
rins*.

Sinceritie of
some.

The perfect
Kings disposi-
tion.

Heretics zeale.

There fell out another accident in this kinde within these few yeeres, which because it is no-
table I will here first intowne. This King hath many women besides his lawfull wife, which
among themselves keepe the order of first and second. Hee hath no Sonnes by his lawfull Wife,
but he hath one which is the eldest of the third or fourth, and others vnto the second. The
eldest by the custome or lawes of the Kingdome, is the lawfull inheritor, although hee bee of
the fourth wife: but hee bare more affection to the other and to her Sonne, and desired, by her
persuasion, to aduance him to bee Prince, and would not haue aduanced the lawfull Heire. The
time being passed to performe the same, many *Mandarins* lost their Offices, for reprehending
him of this disorder, and for seeking to make him aduance the eldest. But the principall *Man-
darins* of the Court perceiving that hee proceeded on, and would not doe that which they re-
quested, and which was reason, consulted together, and published a Proclamation, which com-
manded all the *Mandarins* which are in the Court (which are about some thousand) that vnder
pain of losing their Office, they should all meete at such a day, and such an hour, in such a
place of the Kings Palaces. When they were all assembled at the day appointed, with their
Ensignes of *Mandarins*, they put vp a Petition vnto the King, saying, *That since so often they
had aduised him of a thing so leſt, and that hee made no account of them, nor seeking to aduance
the true Prince, that hee should ſeake thoſe that would ſerue him, that all of them would there giue
ouer their Ensignes of Mandarins, and would no longer ſerue. It seemeth the King was afraid of to
great a reſolution of the chieft men of his Kingdome: And so hee commanded an Eunuch
to goe forth vnto them, and answer them, that they should reſume their Offices in Gods name,
and that hee would fulfill their request. Finally, they did aduance to much, that they caused him to
doe that which was reason: and so this yeere 1602. hee aduanced the true Prince, of whom
hereafter I will ſpeake ſomewhat.*

Kings Wives
and Children.

Question of
the Succellor.

Thousand of
Court *Manda-
rins*.

The Prince
Proclaimed.

There fell out another accident in this kinde within these few yeeres, which because it is no-
table I will here first intowne. This King hath many women besides his lawfull wife, which
among themselves keepe the order of first and second. Hee hath no Sonnes by his lawfull Wife,
but he hath one which is the eldest of the third or fourth, and others vnto the second. The
eldest by the custome or lawes of the Kingdome, is the lawfull inheritor, although hee bee of
the fourth wife: but hee bare more affection to the other and to her Sonne, and desired, by her
persuasion, to aduance him to bee Prince, and would not haue aduanced the lawfull Heire. The
time being passed to performe the same, many *Mandarins* lost their Offices, for reprehending
him of this disorder, and for seeking to make him aduance the eldest. But the principall *Man-
darins* of the Court perceiving that hee proceeded on, and would not doe that which they re-
quested, and which was reason, consulted together, and published a Proclamation, which com-
manded all the *Mandarins* which are in the Court (which are about some thousand) that vnder
pain of losing their Office, they should all meete at such a day, and such an hour, in such a
place of the Kings Palaces. When they were all assembled at the day appointed, with their
Ensignes of *Mandarins*, they put vp a Petition vnto the King, saying, *That since so often they
had aduised him of a thing so leſt, and that hee made no account of them, nor seeking to aduance
the true Prince, that hee should ſeake thoſe that would ſerue him, that all of them would there giue
ouer their Ensignes of Mandarins, and would no longer ſerue. It seemeth the King was afraid of to
great a reſolution of the chieft men of his Kingdome: And so hee commanded an Eunuch
to goe forth vnto them, and answer them, that they should reſume their Offices in Gods name,
and that hee would fulfill their request. Finally, they did aduance to much, that they caused him to
doe that which was reason: and so this yeere 1602. hee aduanced the true Prince, of whom
hereafter I will ſpeake ſomewhat.*

ø. VI.

*Of the Government of China : Of the Mandarins ; the China Com-
ments and manifold niceties.*

NOw I have touch'd the state of the *Mandarin*, it offereth it selfe to speake of the manner of Government in particular ; But I confesse unto your Worship, that the multitude of Offices which they have is so great a frame, that I was not able to understand it, to reduce it into one or two words. Only I will say in general, that they have many good things belonging unto Government, but not the execution : finally, it is a Government of Controuelies of their own heads, and make Lawes in the violation after their pleasure, receive no duerie. And heere your Worship may imagine, that the Government in their pleasure, cannot be very iust, fine every one that can tell how to make a good Government in the practise sufficient to be Law-makers : And it is very ordinarie among them to direct all things to their own profit, whereof by necessity, they commit many absurdities and wrongs, and all that they can get : Bribes are viall, and men vie there more then any thing else, and take one of them knowlesse this fault : In another, they all dissemble as being in the same fault, and though may winke at them. And enough they lecke to hide it one from another, yet it is, it is, it is a cret of *Arshepluu*.

The *Mandarins* are many in all Cities, but very extraordinary in the Courts of *Nanquin*, and *Peking*. For in this City of *Peking*, besides the *Mandarins* of Armes, whereof no great account is made, and are mor. in number, upon the rest; & besides those which always repair thither upon the business of all the *Princes*: besides those that properly belong to this City and Court, about two thousand and five hundred are in all, or the most part hear Causes ordinarily twice a day; so that we cannot imagine what those that are in all the Kingdoms and here, are to be. Jurisdiction of euerie one. The most principall which occupy so many *Mandarins*, nor what is the iux. *Princes* of fixe Councels, being the chiefe of all in all the Kingdome and here, are the greatest, to whom belongeth the government of all the *Mandarins* of the Kingdome. There is one, which is the same to his higher Offices that doe deferue it, and as much as the *Mandarins* of the Kingdome, to aduance those which badly performe their Office: which becometh it a place so great and honourable, the *Chinois* call him, The *Mandarin of Heaven*: who professeth all these things to the King, as to promote, to aduance, to disgrace the *Mandarins*, and the King confirmeth them: So that all the *Mandarins* how small lower they bee, that are in all the Kingdoms, are appointed by the King. The second hath the charge of all things belonging vnto Ceremonies, as well busi- of Courtesies, and ceremonies in all royall Acts, as in making the King, the *Princes*, and in carrying of them, &c. And all that which belongeth to the worship of the *Sacred*, and in Council, and by others which the Kings offer to Heaven and Earth. There is another chiefe of the Kings Treasurie: Warre: another of the Kings Treasurie, which taketh the account of the Kings rents: another Councell is of the Workes, as of the Kings houses, promotion for all things neede- of the King, for the *Nobles* of the Cities, &c. There is another of Chastifement, whereunto causes criminal and all the greatest Death doe belong. About these (fixe) there is only one Degree, which is absolutely the greatest, to whom whatsoever the King doth in any thing is confided of, though it be true, that these are so rich and opulent in the conceit of the *Chinois*, yet none of them in any thing may compare with the King, who is the most meaneft Lord of title, of our Country. The King of small countenance, yet they are much respected and obeyed: And the common people, as well as the *Mandarins*, are much respected and obeyed: And the common people are much to whip them with peeces of Canes, or with their fore fingers broad and thicke, where- by sometimes they dye, when it is Lyd on soundly. Whipping is as common as it is in 50 Plaintiffs as to the Defendant, and therewith for nothing they giue a dozen stripes, as well to the sentence, but say: *Giue him twentie stripes*. and then the *Suites*, and they stay to giue none

Vizually when the *Mandarin* of any State, through the streets, men goe before them crying, or making a noise with Instruments, for the people to give place. And in particular Cities, when a great *Mandarin* paileth through the streets, all men hide themselves, and go into houses, and the Handicrafts men cease from their worke, and that in such sort, that I have seen a *Clack* in a street of great traffick; a *Mandarin* appeare, and in a moment every bodie goe away, out on the very Rogges, with exceeding great silence: so greatly they be reuerenced of all men. And many Carriages, crying them before them, and other Instruments. But in the Courts (though the *Mandarin* be crying them) the people runne not away, they doe no more but gye way as they may paffe. In the Courts many *Mandarin* are caught they be great, idle on Horli-backs, and others in Chaires: but besides them, all goe in Chaires caught on mens shouldeis, which according to their Offices are two, or foure, or eight,

CHAP. 6. §. 7. *Visitors, punishments, Apish humanitie, or tedious salutations.*

Every Province hath a Visitor, which publickly visiteth the same every yeere, and taketh information of the *Mandaries*. There are secret and priuie Visitors. Sometime one is sent: But it is no vlliall thing, and as I haue heard, it is long since it was left off. I speake this, because I alwaies heard when I was in *Spain*, that the *Chinois* vied this manner of Visitation.

[illegible]

The *Chinese* is very curious in writing of newes, which vially they set out in Print, and in a very short space disperse them through all the Prouinces. There are alwaies Bookes where in all the *Mandarines* of the Kingdome are written, as well their names as their Countries. 20 And because they be changed euery foot from one place to another, they blot out and put in the names as soone as they know them. with great facilitie.

One thing among the reſt is (wherein they bee very dutifull and prolix) in their manifold courtesies, which are of many forts, according to the estate of him with whom they haue to doe. The vſual faſhion is when they viſite one another, the ſtranger is ſet on the moſt honourable hand (which in fome places is the right hand, and in the *Northerne* Provinces the left) and putting one hand in the ſleeue of the contrarie arm, which is very long and wide, they liſt up their hands faſt together, then bending their (*head and*) body downe to the ground, *ſaying* *Chao yin, whereof is no ſignification but an interjection of* *urbane*, *their bowing veneration* they ſhew to him whom they viſite. And ſo ſitting downe, this the Queſt ſitteth downe in ' the Chaire of the Maſter of the houſe, and the Maſter of the houſe ſitteth in the Chaire of the Queſt haſt, and each of them ſetteth them in their due place, which is the fraileſt ſeat in the houſe, the higheſt place, diſtant from the wall, and the Chaire of the Maſter of the houſe is ſet in the middle of the loweſt place, one againſt another. After this (when they haue ended their ſalutations) they ſtraightway caule a drinke to be brought, which they call *Cha*, which is water boiled with a certaine herbe, which they much eleeſe, for this is a want of ſulphure and courtieſe: and at the leaſt they muſt drinke it twice or thrice. He bringeth forth ſome Fruit or Sweet-meat, and ſome ſort of Wine, like up, the Queſt any time, ſtraight without faile they will bring out ſome thing to eat, but with ſome preparation, unſerviceable to the occaſion and perſon: whereon they ſay *ſee little*, which ſignifies that they are not ſo well ſerued.

40 When they write or be at the ordinary houres of feeding, and then they take somewhat more
away before, which carrieth a Libell or Booke of vilitation, which they call *Poytre*, which is as
much as, *A paper of visitation*. And this name neuer faileth, for alwaies they visit it: wherein
his name wote two *Epistles*: (*as many papers as Visitors*) are written, according as the quality is
of them that visite, and thole that are visited: is the manner moft different whererafter they
write the name: to wit, with more humility, either as our better, or as an equal, or as an infe-
rior, as a fcholar, or as a maister: for as the things are many and particular, fo the fashions and
manners which they vife are diuers. Of thefe things, and of all that hereafter I fhall fay touching
this point, I will lend you the examples in their owne papers of vilitations, which great *Man-
daries*, and ordinary men brought vnto vs, fetting downe vpon euery letter the de-
50 claration thereof. And I doubt not but your Worshipp, our moft deuot Father, and Brethren, and
as many others as fhall fee the fame will reioyce therein. And when this Paper is brought, they
carrie newes into the houle to him that is visited, which prepareth himselfe: to receive his Guest,
which cometh within a while after. When they be not people which they take for the best, they
put not ordinary apparell in their vilitations, but they haue garments: proper to that purpose,
of a farre different fashion. And if by chance one come apparelled, and another be not, he sayeth,
that he durst not falsifie him, nor receive him before he had put on his apparell, lo he getteth him
away in great haste to put on his apparell, and then they beigne to partake their conuivialtie.

When the Guest departeth, hee always goeth before, and at their going out of the doores they vilitations, and offers of courtesie: according to the qualitie of the Guest, and the Ma-
60 ster of the house, so hee bringeth him more or lesse way, or vnto the street: or hee goe farre, hee stayeth till he take his Chaire, or his Horle, and then lifting vp their armes and lueues vnto their heads they take their leave and depart one from the other. When they are departed, the Visitor and hee that is vilited, each of them fend a Boy to giue one another thanks, one for his vilitation, the other for his good entertainment and friendly welcome. If hee that is vilited be

Head place of the house.

Great Letters for great persons.

First acquaintance.

Sending Presents.

Banqueting.

Invitations.

Feasts to taste and behold.

Chinese Complimental and almost all complements, New-year.

at home, they leave the *Paytre* at his house, which is a token that hee came to visite him. Hee that is visited is bound to requite his visitation presently, or the next day, if he bee a man of the fitt time manner: and if hee finde him not at home, it sufficeth to leave the *Paytre* there. If hee be some great *Mandarins* hee which first visited him, returneth the next day in person with him, as if paper, wherein hee giueth him thanks that he came to his house: and if they see one another, hee giueth him thanks by word of mouth. When the man which visiteth is of great Worth, hee sendeth word a good pace before with a *Paytre*: and the Master of the house cometh forth an head and more honourable place (which is the highest part) where always they place the Guest. Likewise in their writing they vse a great difference, according to the estates, Dignitie and Age: and in their Letter, the greater the *Mandarin* is, they vse the greater Letter: those kind to every one according to his qualitie. When they meet in the streets, the ordinary courtesie, is to put their hands into their sleeves, & closing them together to hold them vp, & to vse a comend yet more, and that vs, they kneele downe, and touch the ground with their heads fo often, and with fo great ceremonies, that I dare not speake of them, lest I should neuer make an end.

When they send Presents, they write downe all things which they lend in a paper, as they do doe their speeches, with words of Honour: whereof I send likewise examples to see, of very a part, hee always sendeth backe another paper with certain red lines (as herewith is to be scene) with a Letter which sayth: *I thank you much*: And when he receiueth the Present, hee also giueth some money to the youths that bring it: and herewith he remayneth bound to answer him, with another Present as great at the least: And herein they be very precise, especially persons that are not of the greatest account. A thing which I finde very strange, and which doth put vs to much trouble, to be driuen equally to answer those Presents which the greater *Mandarin* doe send vs, for they alwayes desire some thing of our Country, and here we are very poore.

They lend vs sometimes from *Macao* some Clockes of land, or Houre-glasses, some Knives, some cases of tools for Surgeons, and other things: for they much esteeme all things that come from our parts: and with these things, which in our Countries are little or nothing worth, heere we and of the saluation of our Soules.

Besides their Presents and visitations, they haue Gossippings and Banquets, whereunto vsually they invite one another. When these be very solemne, they set euery Guest two tables for himselfe, one of Fleish and Fish, &c. another of Fruits and sweet Meats. When they be not so solemne, one table for euery man, or two at euery Table: they provide for these Guests great diuersitie of meates well dressed and seasoned, which they bring forth and layre one after another, that they may be hot. When they invite one to a Banquet, they send five or seuen days before a paper, wherein he saith, *I excuse my selfe*: If he excuse not himselfe, he is refused to come. This paper is sent with many words of courtesie, & with much honour. On the day appointed in this morning, hee sendeth another to invite him againe for the selfe same day: and at the appointed hour, hee sendeth another to pray him to come: and then hee goeth: If any of these messiges should saye hee would not goe. When he is gone to the Banquet, they vse many other ceremonies: But the most adoe is, about their places, so that it is long before you can place them, and allot out the rooms how they shall sit, because they euer seeke, or at least make shew that they seeke to giue it that the Feast is made to others. They feed not as men vse to doe in our Country: neither seemeth they drinke very tipsily, but only they take of some small thing for fashion sake: and 50 Thimbles-full of Wine: and heerein and in drinking, they spend five or sixe houres at a Banquet, and goe home an hungred. And thus it happeneth vnto vs: although wee seeke to excuse our selves from them as much as we can, because wee lose much time, vntill it bee some great *Mandarin*, who we feare would take it euill, if we should deny his request. When the Banquet is ended, the next day euery one of the Guests sends his Boy with a paper, wherein hee thanketh his Host for his good cheare.

Heere your Worship may see, wherein the *Chinois* spend the one halfe of their life. For the greatest businesse they haue, and that wasteth most of their time, is in Visitations, Banquets, and sending of Presents. And the time wherein they most of all vse the flame, is their New-year, or when they goe forth, or come home on a Iourney. And to end the whole yeare, I send you some Papers of visitation of all these things (whereof they haue sent many vnto vs) that your Worship may see (though you vnderstand not the outward Letter) the manner and fashion of

this people, how farre different Salutations, manners and fashions, we find you from the plainnesse of our *Europe*, and especially of our Companie. But for the present, wee all thinke it necessary to ease after this fashion, and to vie their customes, to obtayne more free access vnto them, and to winne them to *Christ*.

There is a *Turke* here, a dweller in this Citie, which about foure yeeres agoe, brought one or two Lions to the Father of this King: who, partly because hee knoweth no Learning, nor Science, and partly because hee sought not to apply himselfe to the habits, customes, and manner of *China*, there is none that will deale with him, nor come neere his house: As through the grace which God hath giuen vs, and because they see vs apply our liues to their Apparell, Furniture, and Courtesies, all the greatest *Mandarins* come home to our house to visite vs, and doe vs the fauour, to hold vs publicly for their Friends: which they vse not to doe, to their owne Country-men, of our qualitie and condition: prayed hee our Lord alwayes, Amen.

I will not omit to declare the great pleasure, wherewith these learned *Chinois* heare the great content of the things and ceremonies, of our holy Faith in *Europe*, and that wee haue Bishops, and, as we call them heere, *Mandarins*, and superiours in spiritual things: and about all, they reioyce exceedingly to heare of our Pope, that being so great a personage they preferre a Learned and Holy man by way of Election, and not by Succession, and likewise the obedience and subiection which other Kings doe yield vnto him; and that there haue bene many (as we told them) who being chosen Popes, refuse it in good earnest, and by no means will accept the same: and that we haue all things which concerne the Law of God and good manners, set downe in writing, with all other Bookes concerning him, or his Ministers.

And although that which I haue spoken last of, is of a high Priest, it is a thing very apparent and true, and we deliuered it for such, and they vnderstand it: yet oftentimes they haue giuen vs occasions of laughter. The first was, That when we told them, that hee refused to be great an Office: straight-way they aske, where you say that they refuse it, is it not euident that their excuse will not be accepted? As who should say, if they would accept of it, who is there that would make an excuse? And thus they say, because they doe so themselves: for when great Offices are bestowed vnto them, they refuse to offer up a Petition, making a shoulde excuse to the King not to receive them: and they desire nothing else, neither can any thing happen so grievous vnto them, as to accept their excuse. But vially they be not admitted: though sometimes they bee, to their great griefe of heart, as I say I told haue scene: But to excuse themselves, or to refuse with some danger, is the vse in common, that they will not sayle to doe so: for if they should not doe so, it were more certayne that they should goe without the Office. The second thing that made vs more to laugh, is, that many of them tell vs, that if we would returne into our Country, without doubt they would make vs Popes: The reason (though not openly) which they yeeld, is, that we haue a great advantage aboue other men of our Country, to wit, that wee haue scene, and studied, and vnderstand their Bookes: because that they only, in their opinion, can make a man perfect, and generally scene in all things. Such is the high conceit and reputation which they hold of their Bookes.

§. VII.

Of their Women: Of the Tartars Conquest, Acts and Expulsion. The greatestness of the King, and neighbouring States. Of the Queens Eunuches.

I Will conclude this Letter with two points: the one concerning the Women, whereof I haue little to say: and the last is of the King, and of his Palaces and Seruices. Every man (as I said before) may keepe as many Wives as hee will, and so they doe: which is the cause of many tumults, quarrels, and disorders in their houses: as among their wifes, and among the Somes of Iugers, Mules, and horses in their houses: as among them in our Country no man marryeth but one Wife, they neuer are fatished in praiting it in words, though neuertheless they doe not follow it, nor put it in practise. And the discontentment which the Women haue among themselves, and with their Husbands for this occasion, is like to prouoke a great encouragement vnto them, to make them desirous to reueue our holy Faith, and to periuade their Husbands to embrace the same, seeing that it doth not permit any more but one lawfull Wife only.

Of their other Conseruation, Customes, and other things, wee know nothing, neither is any thing to be learned: for they keepe house all their life time, and goe out of doores exceeding Womankind. I seldom to visite either their Mother or Sisters, or nearest kinsfolke, for they goe not to any else, no not in thought: And therefore as they haue no conseruation, (but alwayes to keepe home) I can speake nothing of their behaviour. Their Apparell seemeth vnto mee honest and comely: (for sometimes I haue scene the Wives of Officers, and of the poore people, for many of them doe goe abroad.) In some parts of the Country we haue met many women vpon the high way, in short garments, like to the men of our Country, without any difference, face on

their heads, and their feet: for all the rest is all one kinde of Apparell; but these are the common people only: One of the greatest ornaments that the Women have, is, to have verie little teete, and they are so little, that they goe verie badly, and alway they seeme to haue as though they would fall. I could not know the cause, nor the *Chinois* themselves know not the originall occasion, why this is counted for a beutie: altho' some say, it began not for a comelike, but only with a purpose to our fall occasion from them of going abroad.

The *Chinois* have beene very careful in their Histories, and therefore they have histories of their Kings of about foure thousand yeeres. And if credit bee to be giuen to that which their Bookes report, touching those times, and is gathered by diuers of their Histories: There are many yeeres from the Flood to our dayes (whereof they also haue some knowledge in their Bookes) then the most followed and allowed Calculation among vs, which trar of that matter doe allow of: for they say, it is sixe thousand yeeres at the least. They say that they haue continued Histories. But I leaue this, because I haue not well conferred the truth and foundations of the *Chinois* Histories. At the least it is certain, that they haue knowledge of their matters, and certain Kings within a little after the Flood, whensoever it was. They had many ancient Kings, which were verie good men, which it may bee were faued in the law of Nature, because the heretical works of Verus, which it may bee were great, and there is no record that they worshipped Idols, but some, that they report of them were great, and there is no Earth. There were some that fought not to leave their lawfull Sonnes to bee their Heires, because they thought them not fit for Government, but chooe the wisest and best man, that they could finde, and left the Kingdom vnto him.

This Kingdom in old time was diuided into many small Kingdoms, vntill by little and little it was vntied. It is some foure hundred yeeres (as I said before) since a *Tartar* King possessed it wholly, and two hundred, since a *Borneo* or Religious man of *China* recovered it. This *Mahometan Tartar* King, left some tokens of himselfe in things that he did. He left in *Namurquin*, certain Mathematical instruments of Copper, the like whereof for goodnesse peradventure are not in all *Europe*, at least not better.

The *Chinese Borneo* which expelled him out of the Kingdom, was a very valiant and wise man, and wrote many Histories of his wisdom, and sententious sayings, and iudgement in hard matters: and the manner and forme of Government, which hee ordeined in this Kingdom, which continueth inuincible, doth greatly declare the same. Hee made new Offices and gave new Names to all of them: An vntill thing when one house beginneth to Raigne, to change all, even the name of the King, as also all Offices, and also of many Cities. I omit the disposition of the Government into fowle heads, and so good distribution, that it seemeth (and so the *Chinois* say) it is like to continue thousands of yeeres, so that no man of the same Kingdom is able, nor hath any power to make any Rebellion of importance. For those which in former time reuolted, were the Vice-royes of the Prouinces, and other great *Mandarins*, in whose power were the Government, the Soldiers, and the treasure. But hee diuided in such sort, that those which had power over the Soldiers, should haue no money at all, neither should the pay of the Soldiers depend vpon them: and those which keepe the Treasure, must haue no superintendencie and dominion over the Soldiers. Others which were mightie and rich, hee impowerfull and diuided their Authoritie and Reuenues among many; and so there is no man that can call himselfe Great. I remember that I had read in a Booke, set out in the *Spanish* tongue, of the great power of certayne Captaines, and because the King did not trust them, hee sent one of his house to will them to come vnto him.

All which relation, with many other things which hee reporteth of the prouidence of the King, how hee diuideth his Authoritie among diuers Princes, is not so in truth, neither in truth, neither is there any apparence thereof, neither haue the Captaines much authoritie, neither are they verie rich: for though they haue many people, yet the government of them is diuided into diuers heads, so that they can hardly assemble to raise any Rebellion, especially because they remaine alwayes in the Kingdom, and neere about the King.

The Revenue of this King, without doubt, is exceeding great, and vntill wee haue gotten it out of their Bookes (wherein every thing is set downe very particularly) I will not presume to publish the same, nor as though I knew not that it is so, since *whilst a man knoweth more of this Kingdom, hee desireth lesse*. Yet because I feare for all this that it will bee hard to make out the same, which knoweth it not of a certainty; making the Accounts not very large, his Reuenues are one yeare with another an hundred Millions in Silver, Gold, Rice, and an infinite number of other things: although the greatest part is Silver. And hee that considereth the greatness of the Kingdom, and that every man payeth Tribute to the King of their Persons, Lands, Trees, and other things (without carrying any Tribute out of the same) that which I speake will not seeme excessive. But as his Reuenue is very great, so his Expences are many. For those which in this Kingdom doe live at the Kings charge are many, to wit, all the *Mandarins* to whom the King giueth Wages, all the Soldiers, all the Kinfolkes of the King, his Eunuchs, and an infinite number of people, whereby his charges are exceeding great, although alwayes there

mayneth a good deale for him to lay vp: and there is no doubt but hee hath it in store in exceeding great quantitie.

Many small Kingdomes round about acknowledge the King of *China*, and pay him Tribute, as *Corea*, and others, whose names I know not, on this Northern part and on the side of *India*, *Leuca* and *Macao*, many others. And sometimes on these Northern parts they trouble him somewhat, in robbing and killing of people. It may be that your Worship, or some bodie else may demand, why the King of *China* being so great, subdueth not these small Kingdomes that lay about him to deliuer himselfe of trouble: I answer, that hee wanteth no ability: but I will say one fure thing, a Paradoxe to the people of our *Europe*, which is, that neither the *Chinois*, nor their King doe sleepe, nor dreame of dilating their Empire more then it is. And this their resolution is such, that although they would gae them all these Kingdomes, they would not take them, & much lesse if they were farther off. For they hold it for one of the greatest miseries (especially the *Mandarins* & graue sort of people) to go out of their Kingdom to any other part.

There is one of the best Examples herof that may be giuen which fell out of late, and that was, that as by the danger which might grow to this Kingdom, if the people of *Japan* should winne the Kingdom of *Corea*, which is joyned to *China* by the myne Land, and they began to doe; the *Chinois* ayded the *Coreans* with many men: and the people of *Japan* by the death of their King called *Quabacodono*, did wholly abandon it. The Kingdom remainy in the power of the *Chinois*, and so continued two or three yeeres. After which they wholly gae it over, without any other greater respect, then that there were none that were willing to goe thither to gouerne it, nor that the King had any need to annex it vnto his Estate. And without doubt, it seemeth that he would doe the like with any other, although they would put it in his hands. And touching those Kingdomes which pay him Tribute, there is no great account made, whether they come or no: and their continuall coming, is more for the profit of those which come, then that the King doth desire it. And therefore the *Philippine* Islands which in former times paid Tribute to the Kings of *China*, were made none account of when they ceased to pay it.

This King hath one lawfull Wife (as other men haue) in choice whereof they haue regard to nothing else but to her good qualities and external beutie, for there is no Nobilitie to be sought for. Besides her hee hath a great number of Concubines chosen after the same manner, whose Sonnes (if the lawfull Wives Children faile) inherit the Kingdom, which commonly falleth out, and such is he which now is King, and he which is to succeed him. When any of these women be once entred into the Kings Palace to bee his Wife, there is no name which may be compared vnto her in being kept cloie; for they may not only not goe abroad, nor bee seen of their Father, Mother, or Brethren. They haue little or none authoritie, but such as they obtaine of the King. Also the seruice of the King, of the Queene, and of his Concubines, is all by Eunuchs, a seruice doublely vnworthy of a King. All these Eunuchs (without any exception) are of the most base people which are in all the Kingdom, whose Fathers (because they cannot keepe them when they were young) doe make of them Eunuchs, in hope that one day they shall get into the Court to serue the King: the manner is farre different from some which are in *Europe*: for these be like those which the *Turkes* vie. Because their Fathers doe this for pueritie, it followeth that they haue no excellencie, for they haue no meanes to learne it, and they are little or nothing Learned.

They elect and chooe these Eunuchs from time to time to supply such as die, and this first yeare that I was here, they chooe about three thousand, for which purpose there assembled a sort of twenty thousand (as they say) out of which number they made their choise. The Electors were a verie great *Mandarin* to whom, as I said before, the Kings private businesse belongeth, and another Eunuch of the eldest and most private. The Examination and Election consisteth in two things, which are a good Countenance and a good Tongue: for purpose whereof, they make them pronounce two words, wherein those that haue not a ready Tongue doe stumble. When they are chosen, and gone to the Court, they diuide them in diuers Offices: yet at their first coming, they are appointed to waite vpon the old Eunuchs as Boyes; which make good trial of their patience, and obedience, and hee that after certaine yeares sheweth himselfe towardsly, they begin to employ in greater matters.

Of these Eunuchs, the King hath his Musicians and Mathematicians, who, to bee briefe, I say, haue no found vnderstanding in these things at all, but only for complement or superficially: yet some of them are bound to watch all night, and to looke whether any Comet doe appeare, or any such like thing in the Skie, to enforce the King thereof: and to performe other like Offices. They are vially versipouetous, and as they are base, if they rise to bee private with the King, some of them be proud and vncourteous. They serue the King as flauies, obeying his will with very fower hee inclineth. The King chastiseth them verie sharpe for every light offence, especially the King that now is, which is a very wicked man. Hee hath caused many to be whipped to death, for some small matter wherein they haue offended him. Yet there are some of them good and discrete, which the King vseth for dispatching of his businesse, and other matters

of weight. Though the ordinarie wages which they haue of the King bee small, yet it serueth them well to liue of, and therefore they goe verie well appaile in many Robes of Silke verie finely wrought of diuers colours, and the manner of their Cap and Appaile differeth from all other peoples. There are of them in number, as they say, aboute sixteen thousand of them in the Kings palaces. Herby your Worshipp may see what Examples and Education the King of China obserueth, which spendeth all his time with these and with women.

Although it be the custome of these Kings, to shew themselves from time to time to certaine of the greatest *Mandarins*: yet they neuer suffer the rest of the people to see them, nor to speake with them; and when he speaketh with any bodie, they enter not into the place where he is; but the King cometh forth to a certaine place. If there be any Nation among whom the Law of Nations hath no place in many things it is this: for as they haue no commerce with other Nations, so they haue not the Law which is common to all men. And therefore they admit no Ambassadors in China, vntill it be by the way of giuing some Present, the King not acknowledging any neither doe they thinke that there is any in the World, which is able to deal with within the few yeares, who came to inreate of certaine agreements, by no means they are admitted to the sight of the King; neither doth he giue them audience: but some *Mandarin* doth accompany them: and the entertainment which they giue them, and honour which they shew to all strangers which come vnto them is verie small. But as for the most part they haue no great conceit of strangers, so their entertainment is like to their conceit. Whosoever he be that cometh into their Countrey, they shut him vp in a verie homely house, not suffering him to go abroad.

The Kings Palaces are verie great; and albeit in the excellencie of Architecture they bee not comparable to those of our *Europe*, yet they much exceed in the hugeness of Building. They haue three wals four square, the circuit of the first may be as bigge as the wall of a good Citie. Betweene the first and the second wall, there is a wall which enuironeth the greatest part of the House, and here are many Houses of the Eunuches of the lowest sort, which exercise Mechanical Arts, or the like, as Porters, &c.

Betweene the second and the third wall there are many pieces of the Kings House, which is not joined altogether, but in diuers parts there be diuers Roomes, built for diuers purposes, one so admyning to another. These parcels of Buildings which are here (which are euerie one as long as the Carriere of an Horse, and verie high) haue no vnder Roome, but a great Building raised vp with foundations of great Bricks, as broad and long as all the Building, wherein there are Gates of Marble founte verie well wrought to passe from one place to another. This house or Foundation is about eight fathomes high little more or lesse. About these are gilded Galleries, Tapesties, Halls, and Chambers, which on the outside shew verie gallant (which is as much as can be seene; for no man can get in to see them). The greatest part of them is of Timber, with many gilded Embossments, and many other pleasant Pictures. The Roofs are verie well made. The Tiles are of a farre better fashion, in mine opinion, then ours, and so euerie thing together that that they seeme to be all one piece: they are all annealed with yellow, which is the Kings Colour. To conclude, I say, that it seemed vnto me in multitude of Houses and greatnesse a litle thing. Also betwene these wals the Riuer runneth which I spake of: and to passe from one to another there are many faire Bridges of Marble made of verie great stones: betweene these wals was one of the two fourth parts of the House, on which the fire from Heauen fell downe within these few yeares, and consumed it: and with the blowes of the stones which fell downe many verie great Houses were broken downe to the ground (as sometimes I beheld my self) and they remayned with many signes of fire on them. They say, that when this fire fell from Heauen, the King commanded his Sonne to kneele downe, and beseech *The Heauen* to be mercifull vnto him, for he himselfe was too wicked, and that the Heauen would not beare him. Within these wals are many Lodgings of the greatest Eunuches, who like Fellowes of Colledges liue many in one House, euerie one hauing his priuate Chamber. Heere betweene these wals are Mounts and Groues and other recreations whither the King repairth to recreate himselfe. And the space of these wals is verie great, for when I went to the Palace to teach the Eunuches which were in that place to trimme the Clocke, I passed before I came to their Lodging eight great Palaces, and on the other side there were many more. The Lodgings of the Eunuches vially are low and bad, for the Kings Seruants, yet verie necessarie.

Next after this followeth the third wall, where the King dwelleth, with his Wives and Children, and those which where his nearest seruants, whereinto no man entrench but they. And therefore albeit I haue heard that it is a verie beautiful thing & verie muchworth the seeing, as in verie deed it sheweth to be: yet I cannot giue any Relation of any thing concerning the same in particular. Only this I say, that when I was in the House of the Eunuches that were the Mathematicians, I went sometimes vp into a Towre, from whence I might see the tops of the Houses, the Groues, and Orchards, and me thought that I neuer in my life saw so great a frame of Building, although I haue seene many in mine owne Countrey. And therefore there are alwaies

a great

The common people neuer see nor speake with the King. Law of Nations contemned. Embassadors.

Royall Palace.

Yellow is the Kings Colour. Riuer and Bridges.

Fire from Heauen.

No place to the wicked.

Mounts and Groues.

Third part.

a great number of Officers of all Offices, some making new Buildings, and others repaying the old. The King neuer goeth abroad, especially this King, and his Ancestors some one time and King a borne no more, vnto a Temple which they haue builded to *The Heauen*, and the Earth, where euerie yeare they offer Sacrifice. And therefore I know not with what pompe hee goeth abroad: But like as in his seruice he hath no men of qualitie, it cannot be such as our Kings vie in their going to Church:

There is a barbarous custome among the Kings, that when the Prince is aduanced to the Kingdom, within a short time after, all the rest of the old Kings Sonnes are to depart out of the House to certain places appointed for them, which vnto the third Generation are seuerall like 10 Kings; but they neuer come more in the presence of their Father, Mother, nor elder Brother: and therefore there is great lamentations of their Mothers at their departure. The Posteritie of these doe alwaies remayne as Kinsmen, and with the name of the Kings Kinsmen. To all these (which are verie many) the King giueth sufficient maintenance, which is no great matter. They neuer beare Office; and deale with other people, and marrie with them, without doing themselves much good or none at all in being the King's Kinsmen, nor purchase any speciall authoritie thereby. Other Kinsfolkes of the King, married with the Sisters, Daughters, or Cousins of the King, or Quene, although they haue sufficient to liue vpon, yet haue they exceeding small authoritie, and haughtinesse. And herein, nor in any thing may they compare with the *Mandarin*.

Here came to visit vs one married with the Sister of this King that is now, in a Chaire with three or foure Boyes to wait on him. Another came oftentimes married with the Sister of the Wife of the Prince that is to inherit, on Horse-backe with one Boy only attending on him and hee entrench into the Examinations that hee may proceed Doctor and become a *Mandarin*: So litle is the benefit that groweth vnto them by the Consanguinity or Affinity of the King which are joyned vnto him thereby.

Here the time faileth me, though neither matter, nor desire to giue contentment to your Worshipp, and the rest of my most deare Fathers and Brethren, neither doth nor shall euer faile me. And therefore if I shall vnderstand, that they take this in good worth, I will giue Relation of that which shall fall out here by the helpe and grace of our Lord, to whom I humbly beseech all of them to commend mee.

30 I send here withall two Maps of this Kingdome of China, which came to my hand after I had written this Letter, and Relation. I sought to translate all that which is contained in the China Letters; which is all the Rent which euerie one of these Provinces payeth to the King of China; and to make a description of all the Houses which euerie Province hath, and how many people, and many things else: But your Worshipp may beleeue that by no means I had leysure; and therefore I send you only the figure, and another yeare (if it please our Lord God) I will send you the same with the declaration thereof.

All the rundles and squares which are therein are Cities, or Fortresses of many Inhabitants, both of them walled about. There is no Towne heretofore downe that it is not walled: the others are many more.

40 The Riueres are well distinguished. The great lines are the limits of the Provinces: the other small lines, and of litle account are the Iurisdictiones of some one principall Citie. We print here another Map of all the World of our manner with Chinese Letters, which because we want time to declare the Letters, I send not till the next yeare, which then we will send if our Lord grant vs life.

I send you many other Papers, that your Worshipp may see the fashion of the Letters of these people of China, and what Characters were committed to memorie. From *Paguin*, being the Court and Royall Citie of the King of China, the ninth of March, 1603.

50

60

CHAP. VII.

A Discourse of the Kingdom of China, taken out of RICHS and TRIGAVTIVS, containing the Country, People, Government, Religion, Rites, Sells, Characters, Studies, Arts, Arts; and a Map of China added, drawn out of one there made with Annotations for the understanding thereof.

§. I.

Of the Name, Site, and Greatness, the Tributaries, Commodities, Arts, Printing, Scales, Inke, Pencil-pennes and Fannes.

Here in the south begins the capital of the Kingdom, being a place. The name of this Kingdom,



His utmost Empire in the East, hath been made known to Europe by divers appellations, as that of *Ptolemy, Sina*; that later of *Marco Polo the Venetian, Cathay*; and that most usual received from the *Portugals*, which call it *China*. I doubt not also that this is the Region of the *Hippophages, or Hog-feeders*, a meat there as common as Beefe here: as also that this is the Region *Sericea, or Silken*; forasmuch as there is no Kingdom of the East where Silke is found in that quantity; and the *Portugals* ship it thence for *Japan*, and all *India*; the *Spaniards* also of the *Philippine Lands*, freight their ships therewith for all the *American World*. Moreover, I find in the *Chronicles* that this Silke-work was there two thousand six hundred thirty six years before the Birth of Christ: whence it passed to the rest of *Asia*, to our *Europe* and to *Africa*. But in this variety nothing seems to France to me, as that all these names be so strange to them, not known or once heard of, although the change of names be not strange to that Country. For as Affairs: He which attayneth the Throne, imposeth a name at his pleasure. So hath it been sometimes called *Tsun* (which signifies *exceedingly large*) another while *Tu*, that is, *Rest*, after that successively *Hia*, or *Great*; *Siam*, *Adorned*; *Chen*, *Prosperity*; *Han*, *The Milky way in Heaven*, &c. And since this Family, called *Cin*, which now holdeth the Sovereignty, hath reigned, it is called *Min*, which intimated *Splendor*, and by usual addition of one syllable *Tsin*, that is, the Kingdom of *Great Splendor*, Brightness or Glory. Yet do few of the several Nations observe these changes of Names, whereby each of them almost, call it by several appellations. Those of *Cin*, *Cathay*, *China*, and the *Siamites* call it *Cin*; the *Laplanders*, *Tatars*, *Hans*; the *Western Sarcenians*, *Cathay*. Also amongst the *Chinois* themselves, besides that arbitrary name so imposed by their Kings, it hath some common to all Ages. Such are *Cunghy*, that is, the Kingdom; and *Chumboa*, which signifies a Garden, a name arising from their Geography, denoting indeed the roundness of the Heaven, but a figure of the Earth, and their Kingdom in the midst thereof, a conceit grown out of conceit now, by better instruction of the *Levites*.

The Characters of this Kingdom, being a place. The name of this Kingdom,

Conceit of the Earth's form.

The Kings Title.

Largeness of the Kingdom of China.

The temperate Climate.

Their King is called *Lord of the World*, and they supposed accordingly that their Kingdom contained the principal part thereof; not deeming the Neighbour Kingdoms worthy to be called *Kingdoms*, which yet before their Commerce with Europeans were all they knew. And not unworthily is the name *Great* prefixed to their Kingdoms appellation, being the greatest Kingdom in the World, which at this day carrieth One Name, or hath done in former times. For Southward it beginneth in the nineteenth degree, at the 11th which they call *Hannan*, that is, the *South-Sea*, and runneth into the North to the two & fortieth, even to those walls which divide the *Chinois* from the *Tatars*. The longitude beginneth from the one hundred and twelfth (reckoning from the *Canaries*) in the Province *Tunan*, and extends Eastward to the Sea in one hundred thirty two. These Dimensions were here observed in divers places of the Kingdom where we have passed, by Astralabes and other Mathematicall Instruments; adding also the observation of Eclipses by their Almanacks, where the Moons Change and Fall are justly described, and especially by authority of Cosmographical Plaines. Yet others which call it *China* do not view, willingly yield. Hence may be observed that this ample Kingdom lies for the most part within the temperate Zone; neither doth it extend so farre Northward as some Maps have described by many degrees. And lest any should think that some great parts or so large a Dominion

10

20

30

40

50

60

70

nion be desired, I will here translate out of a *China* book entitled, *The Description of that Kingdom*, there printed, 1579, that which followeth.

In the Kingdom of China there are two Provinces Payall, Nanquin the Southerne Court, and Pequin the Northerne, and thence others. In these fifteen Provinces (you might call them Kingdome) by another division are numbered five other Regions or less Provinces, called by them *Fu*; the most of which have twelve or fifteen Cities of reasonable quantities, besides Villages, Hamlets, Castles and Townes. In these Provinces are two hundred forty seven greater Cities, called *Chen* (which sometimes distinguished from other Cities rather in name than largeness) of vulgar Cities, which they call *Hien*, 1152. Of men grown to ripe age, which pay tribute or poll money to the King, were then fifty and eight millions, five hundred fifty thousand, 801. In all which the female sexe is not reckoned; and of the Males are omitted, Boys, Youth, Eunuchs, Souldiers, the Royal kindred, Magistrates, Students, and very many others. And of the Souldiers, although there be a separate Army, about ten hundred thousand. For the three Northern Provinces are almost half in pay, in that book are numbered Kingdoms adjoining to that of China and tributary; to the East three, to the West fifty three, to the South fifty six, to the North three. Yet I observe that nothing so many do in these days pay tribute, and those which do, carry more from China, then they bring thither; and therefore the Chinois care not much whether they continue loyal or no.

To the worth of this Kingdom, may be added, the fortification by Nature or Art round about it. To the South and East, the Sea is without it, and so many islands guard it, that hardly can a Fleet of Ships approach the Continents. To the North, steep precipices are joined together, with a continued Tract of 400 leagues, and six, Jude the *Tatars* assaults. To the North-west it is a sandy desert of many days journey, which prohibite passage of an Army, or minate their burials. The South-west hath great Mountaines and little Kingdoms to prevent fear on that side.

From this largeness of Territories proceeds such diversified variety of things growing in that Kingdom, some in the torrid, others in the colder or in the temperate Zones: whatsoever is required to the necessity or delicate of food or raiment being there naturally, nothing being here in Europe but either is there, or a better supply: Wheat, Barley, Panike, and other Corn; Rice Pulse (in some Provinces two or three harvests yearly) fruits and Apples of the best (Nuts of all sorts, in *Canton* Province only; the *Sacuna* or *China* Figs, or Apple called, because they may dry it as they do Figs, & like to a Peach red, without hazelnut or stone in Oranges, Citrons, and there much vied, some for religion, others for puerile eating nothing else. Flowers have distilling sweet-waters being there valued, more respected for sight then sent; the Art of *Beete* leese, and the tree *Aegrea* or *Aegrea*, so much vied in *India*, and chewed all day long for their stomachake and rest. *Sesame* Oile is both odoriferous and plentiful. Wine is not there so good as in Europe (the Grape being neither plentiful nor frequent) made of Rice and other things.

Hogs-flesh is common food: they have Buffalls, Muttons, Goats-flesh; Hennes, Duckes, Geese, innumerable: Horses also, Affes, Mules, and Dogs-flesh are food, and flemble commodities. In some places superstition abtaineth from Beete and Buffalls, Venison, especially red of labour are not so goodly as in Europe, but more in number, and therefore in cheapness. The whence the number and kind of shipping is incredible; inasmuch that a moderate Writer may have asserted, that there are as many which keepe on the water as on the land; an Hyperbolic opinion, that there are as many Ships in this Kingdom, as may be seen to others. I am of waters for their Sea-shipping is fewer and not comparable with ours. But to returne to their Horses for service are innumerable, but so vicious, that they will not endure the noything hard ways they take. They shooe them not with Iron, so that in rocky and

Besides the Seas plenty of Fish and Rivers, they are stored also in Lakes, seeming for their depths and largeness peete Seas. They have more flocks of Fish, ponds also, then in these parts, whence the Market is daily furnished. Their Woods have no Lions, but flocks of Tigers, Beares, Wolves, Foxes. Elephants there are not, but for pompe come kept in the Court in *Pequin*, brought from other places. Flaxe they have not, but are supplied with abundance of Cotton, the seed whereof was brought thither four hundred years since, and hath so liked the soyle, that the whole was, as may seeme thence might have sufficient. Of Silke, workes were so many more. Of Hemp, and of some other Herbs, they make many clothes, especially for Summer

"Some say may be more lee the Map and decti."

Chap. 7. The commodities of China.

For all sorts of fruits.

Store of shipping and water dwellers.

Horses.

Fish.

Wilde-beasts.

Cotton.

Site of cloth.

vie. They milke not their Sheepe; they sheare them, yet make no cloth of the Wool (notwith- standing, woollen-clothes brought thither by Merchants is well sold; but light Summer clothes for blankets and other slight vies. The North parts, though nearer the Sunne then some Re- gions in Europe, are colder, the great rivers and lakes frozen over, of which we can give no reason, but the neighbouring Mountains of *Tartaria*: against which they are furnished with choice Furs.

Metalls.

All sorts of metalls are there found. They make besides Brasse and Copper, another shining like Silver, as cheap as the yellow Brasse. Of molten Iron they make Kettles, Caldrons, Bells, Mortars, Ordnance, and other things. Their Gold is cleaver then with vs. Silver they vie for money, distinguished not by stamp but weight, in all bargaining, wing the balance, which is made the more incommodious for the differing goodnesse of the Silver, and frequent alloy and fraud. In some places are Brasse farthings. Plate and Gold vessels are vied by the greater, but nothing so much as in these parts. The women spend much Gold and Silver in their head-tires. The vulgar vie earthen dishes, called, I know not why, *porcellaine*; the best whereof is made in the *Kiamin* Province of a yellow earth. It endureth without rusting hot meates, yes as woollen dishes here with a wyre, they fowe the rids and make them hold liquor. They make Glasse, but therein are short of the Europeans.

Buildings.

Their houses are of Timber commonly, even the Kings Palaces, the walls which serve for partitions of rooms being sometimes of Bricks, but the roofe sustained by Timbers: which together with their shipping argues their plenty of trees. Oaks are rare, but supplied with a hard and eu-staining wood with them vied for coffins, in which their curiositie will sometimes find a thousand Ducks. There is also store of a kinde of reed, which the *Portugall* call *Ramboo*, of almost Iron hardnesse, the roundnesse scarcely compassed with both hands, and serves for smaller pelfs; the lesser of them for Launces and other vies, for fire they vie Wood, Coles, Reeds, Straw, and a bituminous substance called *Chma* (a kinde of Mine-cole or Sea-cole) which is most and best in the North, digged out of the earth.

Sea-cole.

Of medicinal herbs they have diuers, specially *Rhubarbe*, sold for tenne halfe pence the pound: *China* Wood or holy Wood growing in deserts naturally, and thence taken for no other price but the labour: Muske; Salt both made of Sea-waters, and of others easily in the Continent; Sugar more common there then Honey, though both plentifull: Waxe both of Bees, and so another whiter and burning better made by certaine worms, which therefore are nourished in trees; another also made of a certaine fruit: Their paper is not so durable as ours, nor can endure the presse on both sides.

Their drinke
Chia, Chag, Cha.

I omit their parti-coloured Marbles, their gems, colours for paintings, odoriferous Woods, &c. I cannot passe by some rarities: as their shrub whence they make their drinke (*Cha*). They gather the leaves in the Spring, and dry them in the shadow, and keepe it for daily decoction, vying it at meates, and as often as any guest comes to their house, yea twice or thrice, if hee make any tarrying. They sup it hot, but tisfit to the palate, but wholesome: not of ancient vie, for they have no ancient Character in their books for it. The *Lapander* pay deare for it, ten or twelve Ducks a pound for the berry, and vie it otherwise, putting the poulder of the leafe to hot water, as much as two or three spoonfulls: the *Chinese* put the leaves themselves into the hot water, which they drinke, leaving the leaves behind. They have also a bituminous substance like milke, strained out of the bark of a tree, of pitchy cleaving, whence they make *Sandache*, a varnish for their houses and household, ships, and other things: yielding a smooth touch to the hand and glasse splendour to the eye with long continuance. Thus can they more counterfeite the colours of any wood, and hereby are provided against prouisions of Nappery, this serving for Table linens; they recouering any greasie contagion with a little rinsing of water. They have an Oyle also pressed from an apple not unlike it in vie, but not so plentiful.

Spices.

They have Cinamon and Ginger growing, Pepper and other Spices are brought from other parts. They have store of Gun-powder, not so much for Artillerie (which they can vie but mainly) as for Fire-works in pompous spectacles, thereby representing Trees, Fruits, Battels, and other things with great Art and cost. We saw at *Nankin*, in the first month of the yeere, as much this way spent as would have served a continued fight two yeeres.

Chap. 4.
Of their Arts
in China.
This is not to
be understood
of Temples,
&c. as may ap-
peare by Nan-
quin Temple,
&c.
Painting,
Antiquitie and
manner of it.

For Mechanicall Arts, they are not comparable to our mens Architecture, whether ye regard the beautie or continuance of their buildings, they not so much as concealing or crediting the flatly magnificence or long duration of some in these parts. They either make no foundation, or vee slight, and thinke a mans age to be age enough for a house, and that scarcely without reparations: their houses being all of Timber, and where the walls are Stone, they have Timbers to bore up the roofe, that the wall may easily be repaired or renewed without meddling too with the superstructure.

Printing is ancienter then here: then here; some thinke before the Incarnation, and most certaine about five hundred yeeres old: much differing from ours because of the multitude of their Characters. They graue or cut these Characters in a table of Pearre-tree, Apple-tree or *Zagphora*. In this

this Table they lightly glue on a whole leafe written, and then cunningly shau the drie paper, so that they make very light and transparent; after which they cut the wood, that only the prints they print off leaues at pleasure, one Printer often 1500. in one day: so ready also in cutting, that to mee Ours seeme to spend as much time in *composing* and *correcting*. This course is more accommodated to their great Characters then to ours, whose little letters are not easily cut in woollen Tables. They have this commoditie also, that keeping these Tables by them, they may with little labour adde or take away words or sentences: and need not at once print off any more Copies then present vie or sale requirith. We doe this with Bookes of our Religion or European Sciences, printing them at home by our *China* Learners. They have another way of printing Characters or Pictures printed before in Marble or Ink, laying on a leafe of Paper moist, and on that a woollen Cloth, whereon they beate with a Hammer till the Paper insinuates it selfe into the void spaces and lineaments of the Characters or Picture: after which they lightly colour that leafe with Inke or other colour, those delineations only remaining white, and retaining the Prototype-figure. But this is for groffer Portraiture.

They are much addicted to pictures, but nothing so cunning in painting, founding, graving, as Europeans. They make magnificent Arcues with figures of men and beasts, and adorne their Temples with Idols and Bells, but their Genius otherwise generous and ingenious enough, for want of commerce with other Nations, is herein rudely artificiall. Shadows and Oyle in picturing are to them vnknowne, and their Pictures therefore have no more life of Art then the eye, In Statues, themselves seeme Statues for all rules of Symmetry any further then by the nature, and yet will be doing in huge (indeed) Monsters of this kinde; in Earth, Brasse, and Marble. Their Bells have all woollen Hammers, which yield a woollen sound, not comparable Bells to ours, nor seeming capable of those of Iron. They have variety and plenty of Muscical Instruments, yet want Organs and all that have Keyes. Their Strings are made of raw Silk, and know not that any can be made of Guts. The Symmetric of their Instruments is unfeisible to ours. All their Musike is simple and single-toned, utterly ignorant of concord in discord-concord: but yet much applaud they themselves due in their owne Harmonie, howsoever dissonant to our eares. This pride seemes to grow (as visually it doth) from ignorance, and it is likely they would

preferre ours if they knew it. They have scarcely any Instruments for measuring of (that which measures all things) Time; such as they have, measure by water or fire, but very imperfectly, as is also their Sun-dial, which they know not to fit to differing places. They are much addicted to Comedies, and therein exceed ours; some practising the same in principall Townes, others travelling thorow the Kingdome (or roging, if you will) being the dregs of the Kingdome, buying Boyes whom they deuces, and few new written. They are vied in publicke and in priuate Solemnities; as also in Feasts, whereto being called, they offer to the Inuitee a Booke, in which to take his choise, the spend as much exceeding time in a succession of Interdules one after another. Their pronunciation is only for Letters, but for their Poems also, Pictures, Bookes, and many other things. These but have many, inscribing sometimes the beginning and end of their workes; not imprinting Tablea Boxe full of Seales, which containe their diuers names (for every *Chinese* hath many of the same) and those of Wood, Marble, Iuorie, Brasse, Cryfall, Corall, and better stones. Their fauouring of Antiquitie and Learning.

There is another Art not unlike, of making Inke for all writing, made into little Cakes or Inke-making. Balls of the smoke of Oyle. For their estimation of exact writing makes the making of Inke also to be hollen an Art not illiberal. They vie it on a Marble smooth stone, with a few drops of water rubbing those Balls, and colouring the stone, thence taking it with a Penill of Hares haire, wherewith they write.

Fannes also are in much vie by both Sexes for the causing of winde to coole them in Summer. No man may goe abroad without a Fanne, although the weather be cold, and the winde already alie be importunate: the vie being rather for ornament then necessity. They are made of Reeds, quill, or square forme. The chiefe men vie them of Silke, and a certaine odoriferous Straw, in round, and therein inscribe some pithie sentence or Poeme. These are the most common gifts or prethings the *Chinese* are liker ours, vying Tables, Stools, and Beds (by which our friends. In other do not, but sit on Carpets on the floor) to eate or sleepe.

§. II.

Of their Characters and writing downward: their studies, Ethicks, Astrologie, Physike, Authentike Authors, Degrees how taken both Philosophicall and Militarie.

Cap. s.
Monosyllable
Language, as
also our proper
English is al-
most wholly.

Monosyllable
Characters.

Equivocation.

Five Accents.

Hardness of
China Speech.

Allegorie fine
eloquie.

Many Nations
and Language
have the same
Characters.
Court Lan-
guage.

Their writing.

Moral Philo-
sophie.

Confutius
his becomie
honours.

Mathematicks.

Phonemans.

NOW, for their more liberal Arts, and Literate-degrees, this Kingdome differs from all others: in which their Learned beare principall way. The *China* words are Monosyllables, not one otherwise, howbeit two or three *Words* sometimes are conjoined into one *Diphthong*, to speake after our manner; for they have not *Consonants* nor *Vowels*, but diuers Characters for so many things, and as many of them, as there are Words, so that a Word, Syllable, Letter, are the same; and when we ioyne diuers Syllables to make one Word, it is after our fashion, because they signifie the same thing; with them each Syllable is a full word. And although the number of things and Characters seeme the same, yet do they so compound them together, that they exceed not feventy or eighty thousand; yet do they knoweth ten thousand of them, hath the most necessary: to know all is in manner for any one man impossible. Of these Characters the found is often the same, the figure and signification differing: so that no Language is so equivocal; nor can any Speech be written from the Speakers mouth by the Hearer, nor can a Booke be read to the Hearers vnderstanding, except they haue the Booke before them, by their eyes to distinguish the equivocations which their eyes cannot. Yea, in speaking accurately, the Hearer often vnderstands not without repetition and writing either with Inke, or water on the Table, or forming the Characters in the aire; and this most happens in the most elegant and polite discourses (the stile of Bookes and Inkiome-dialect of their learned, wolly differing from the vulgar Idiome). This equivocation and puzze of sounds is in some sort called by *Accents*, which are five, and not ealie to distinguish; by which of one Syllable (as wee account 12) they make it with differing tones five fold in differing signification; and there is no Word which is not pronounced with one of these Accents. Hence is the Language so difficult as none else in the World for Strangers to learne to speake and vnderstand; which importunate labour of ours hath yet attained. The reason I conceive to be that they alway haue laboured to adorne their writing more then their speech, their eloquence still consistin in writing and not in pronunciation, as *Isocrates* is commended amongst the *Greekes*.

This multitude of Characters, as it is burthensome to the memory, so it hath this commodity, the commerce with diuers Nations of different Languages by community of writing; *Latin*, *Corai*, *Cauchinchina*, the *Lembies*, vnderstanding and reading the Characters, each into his owne Language, which the other vnderstand nothing at all. Each Prouince also hath its owne, and all haue one common Tongue besides, which they call *Quenboa*, or the Court Language (the Magistrates being all forrainers, and none bearing Office in his Countrey Prouince) vied in their Counters, and by the Learned: this only did ours learne, nor is the other vied by the ciuill of our learmed in conference, except priuily by Countrey-men; yea, children and women keepe this Court-speech. I heare that the *Japones* haue an Alphabet also of Letters after our fashion, besides these Characters; but in *China* they haue none so that from their Countrey the extremest age they are learning their Characters, as many as profit Learning: which howbeit it takes up time from better Sciences, it doth it also from idle youthfull vanities. Hence also riseth a kinde of writing with them, in few Characters expressing that which would cost vs long discourses. Their course of writing is from the right hand, the line downward, ours contrary from the left and side-ways.

Of all the noblest Sciences they are best skilled in morall Philosophie (natural), they are rather obscured) and being ignorant of Logike, they deliuer those Ethicke precepts in confused sentences and discourses without order by mere naturall wit. Their greatest Philosopher is called *Confutius*, whom I finde to haue bene born 551. yeeres before the coming of *Christ*, and to haue liued about 70. yeeres, by example as well as precept exciting to vertue, accounted a very holy man. And if wee marke his sayings and doings, wee must confesse few of our Ethicke Philosophers before him, and many behinde. But with the *Chinow*, his word is authoritie, and no speech of his is called in question; the *Learned*, yea the Kings also, euer fine worshipping him, not as a God, but as a Man; and his posteritie are much esteemed, the head of that familie inheriting by grant of Kings a title of great honour, with immunities and revenues answerable.

They haue some knowledge also of Astrologie, and the Mathematicks: In Arithmetike and Geometry anciently more excellent, but in learning and teaching confused. They reckon two hundred Starres more then our Astrologers haue mentioned, numbering certaine smaller which do not alway appeare. Of the heauenly *Apperance* they haue no rules: they are much busied about foretelling Eclipses, and the courses of Planets, but therein very erroneous; and all their skill

skill of Starres in manner that which wee call Iudiciall Astrologie, imagining these things below to depend on the Starres. Somewhat they haue receiued of the Western *Saracens*, but they confirme nothing by Demonstration, only haue left to them *Tables*, by which they reckon the Eclipses and Motions:

The first of this Royall Family forbid any to learne this Iudiciall Astrologie, but those which by Hereditary right are thereto designed, to prevent Innoations. But he which now reigneth mayntaineth diuers Mathematicians, both Eunuchs within the Palace, and Magistrates without, of which there are in *Pekin* two Tribunals, one of *Chinow*, which follow their owne Authors, another of *Saracens* which reforme the same by their Rules, and by conference together. Both haue in a small Hill a Plaine for Contemplation where are the huge Mathematicall Instruments of Brass before mentioned: One of the Colledge nightly watcheth the moon as it is before observed. That of *Nangun* exceeds this of *Pekin*, as being then the Seat Royall. When the *Pekin* Astrologers foretell Eclipses, the Magistrates and Idol Ministers are commanded to assemble in their Officiary Halls to helpe the laboring Planes, which they think they do with beating brazen Bells, and often kneeling, all the time that they thinke the Eclipse lasteth, lest they should then be deuoured (as I haue heard) by I know not what *Serpent*.

Their Physicke Rules differ much from ours: they examine the Pulse alike, They succeed well in their Prescriptions, which vially are Simples, Herbs, Rootes, and the like. They haue for it no publicke Schoole, but each learns it of his owne Master, yet in the two Royall Cities 30 Degrees of this Art are giuen after Examination, but cursorily and without any respect acquired by his Degree, because all may practise which will. Neyther doth any study Mathematicks or Physicke, which is in any hope of the Ethick glory, but such as want of wit or meane hath deere from studies more sublime. Contrariwise, that Ethicke Science is the Ladder of *China* felicity. *Confutius* brought into order the Bookes of foure former Philosophers, and wrote a fifth himselfe, which five Bookes hee called *Deutymes*: in which are containd Morall and Politick Rules, Examples of the Ancients, Rituall sacrifices, diuers Poems alfo and the like. Besides these five Volumes, out of *Confutius* and his Disciples are brought into one Volume, diuers Precepts without order, Similes, Sentences Ethicke, Oeconomick, Politick: this Booke for the foure parts is called the *Four Booke*. These nine are the ancientest *China* Bookes, whence the

30 others most what are taken, and containe most of their Characters. And the ancient Kings enacted that they which professe Learning, should take the foundations of their Learning from those Bookes, not only to learne the proper sense of the Text, but to be able on the sudden to write sily of any sentence, for which cause that *Terrabillion* is learned without Booke. Neyther is there any *Vniuersitie* or publicke Schoole (as some of ours haue affirmed, the Masters or Professors whereof haue undertaken to read and expound those Bookes; but euerly one gets a Master at home at his owne choice and cost (of which there is a huge multitude.) In this Science are three Degrees bestowed on them which offer themselves to be examined and are iudged meete. That Examination is almost wholly in Writing. The first Degree is conferred in euerly City in that place which is called the Schoole, by some learned man designed to that Office by the King, who

40 is by that placed *Tibio* the Degree is termed *Saracai*. A threefold Examination is premised. First, at his coming to any City of his Prouince, all that stand for that degree in that City, and the confining limits thereof resort thither and are examined by those Masters which are let out to the Bachelors till they haue attained further Degree, may be attained by the Kings stipend. In this Examination euerly one is admitted, perhaps foure or 5000. assembled to that purpose. The second is by the foure Gouernours of the City (for none are admitted to Government but the *Learned*) which present out of all that number 100. of the better Writers to the *Tibio* and he in a third Examination chuseth 30. or 30. of the best, which he entituleth *Bachelors*: their Ensignes are a long *Gowne*, a *Cap*, and *Boots*, which none else may weare, &c. in all places they are much respected as in a ranke above the vulgar Citizens, and enjoy also diuers Priuileges, being in manner (subject

50 only to the Masters aforesaid and the *Tibio*, other Magistrates scarcely meddling with them. This *Tibio* not only hath authority over these new created Bachelors, but euer those which were made before to re-examine them: and these according to their writing hee diuideth into foure rancks, the first hee rewardeth with some publicke Office in the City, the second with some inferior honour, the last hee degradeth and maketh againe Plebeians, the fourth hee causeth to be publicly whipped, the last hee degradeth and maketh againe Plebeians. The second Degree is called *King*, and may be compared with our *Licentiate*, and is conferred both in three yeeres, and that in the Metropolitan City about the eight Moone with greater Majesty. And the degree is not conferred to all, but to a certayne number of the worthiest, according to the dignity of each Prouince: *Pekin* and *Nangun* haue each 120. *Cheyuan*, *Quamf*, and *Pekuan* 20. others fewer. Licentiate or Bachelors, but not all, are admitted to this Examination, the *Tibio* sending out of each City or Schoole 30. or at most 40. of the best, which number yet ariseth in some Prouince to 400. of those Examinates or Probationers for this second degree. A little before the eighth Moone (which often falls in September, the *Pekin* Magistrates present to the King 100. of the most esteemed Philosophers in the Kingdome, who thence picketh or nameth thirty, for each Prouince two, to

Colledge.

Eclipses.

Physicians

Confutius his
five Bookes.
Terrabillion.

No Vniuersity.

Degrees.

Tibio the Pro-
pice.
Saracai a Ba-
chelor de-
gree, or a
first of Art
with vs.

Ornaments.
Their Priu-
iledges.

The second
degree, *Kin-
g*, is Licen-
tiate or Ba-
chelor in Di-
uinitie, if
we compare them
with ours.
Examin. 124

Palace of examination.

Days of Examination.

Thirteen given.

Seven writings.

Care to avoid corruption.

Creation and Privileges.

Third degree and of Doctors called *Cia-fu*.

Cia-fu.

First and second place glorious.

take charge of the Examination of these Candidates. One of these two must be of the *Hanlin College*, the Collegians whereof are most famous thorough the Kingdom. The King doth not guard all that nick of time when they must presently pack to their Province, diligently in the same Province also be chosen the best Philosophers to assist these two Examiners. In *Pequin* the *Palace* is a huge Palace built for this purpose, compassed with high walls, with many flutes for the Examiners separate from noise; and four thousand Cels or Studies besides in the midst of the Palace, wherein is a floode and table for one man, that none may see or confer with any other.

When the Examiners sent by the King, and those of the Province are come thither, they are presently shut up in their lodgings before they can speak with other men, or with each other, during all the Examination time. Night and day, means whiles the Magistrates and Soldiers guard the Palace from Colloquies. Three dayes (the same thorough the Kingdom) the ninth, twelfth and fifteenth of the eighth Moone, from morning to night are appointed for their writing, the doores being shut. A light refectory provided the day before is given to the Writers at publick cost. When the Bachelors come to the Palace, they are thoroughly searched whether they have any Booke or Writing with them, and are admitted only with the *Penisils* which they vie in writing, their Plate, Paper and Inke; these also and their Garments searched to prevent all fraud, which found caught the twofold punishment both of losse and fence. When they are admitted, the doores shut and sealed, the two Royall Examiners out of the *Tetrastichum* propound three Sentences for so many Theames to every of them; and four out of the five Bookes of *Da-draes* for so many other Theames. These seven Writings must be made for elegance of words and weight of Sentences according to the Precepts of *China* Rhetorick; neither must any Writing containe above good Characters. Two dayes being passed for the Examination of these; the next day out of the Chronicles, or other three Cases of Politie are propounded, wherein each which three Theames or Writing expresse their minde, or Libel-wile admonish the King what were fittest to be done. The third day three Law Cases, such as happen in the Magistrates, Offices are propounded, for each thereof to expresse his Sentence. These in great silence, each in his appointed Cell, having written their Theames, subscribed with their own, their Fathers, Grand-fathers and great Grand-fathers names, and sealed so that none but men appointed may read them, offer them to certayne Officers, which before the Examiners see them; cause them to be transcribed by certayne thereto appointed: which Copies to be distinguished from the Originals are written in Red Inke, without the Authors name (the Originals laid up safely) than none might by the hand or name know the Author. In this Examination the Assistants first reject the worst & present vnto the two Examiners twice so many as are to be chosen Licentiate; as if one hundred and fifty are to be chosen, three hundred are tendered to passe their last scrutiny: who first lay by the best, so many as are to be elected (and thence take the first, second, and third, and let them accurately in order, and then conferre them with the Originals, thence taking the names which they cause to be written in great Cubital Letters, in a huge Table, which they expresse about the end of the eighth Moone in great concourse of Magistrate, and applaude of the new Elected Friends and Kindred. The Privileges and Ornaments of this Degree are more then of the former, and if they intend to proceed no further, they are hereby capable of very good Magistrate. After the Act, the Kings Examiners publish a Booke of their proceedings, the names of the Graduates and their principal Writings, especially his which is as the *Elder Brother* (they call him *Quaymen*) and whole Theames were best liked. The Bachelors of other Provinces may not here be admitted, some only except of the Kings Schoole in *Pequin* and *Nanguen*.

The third Degree is like our Doctorship, called *Cia-fu*, which is conferred every third year also, but only at *Pequin*, and always is the next year after that Commencement of Licentiate. Only three hundred chosen out of the whole Kingdom obayne it, although the Licentiate of every Province are admitted to the Examination.

This Act is in the second Moone on the same dayes that the former and in like forme, saving that the diligence is greater, as for a greater degree, and the *Colas*, the chief Magistrates of the Kingdom are Examiners. The Doctors being pronounced in the same Palace, where the Licentiate vie to be; all of them in the Kings Palace, before the chief Magistrates of the Court (yea anciently the King was wont to be present) makes a Theame, according to the judgement whereof, the order of the Magistracies which they are to beare, is declared, being distributed in three Ranks.

Hee that in Examination of Doctors had the first place, hath in this second Examination the third place without question: but hee which hath the first or second enoyeth a great dignitie during his life, besides the greatest Offices in the Common-wealth: and might (compar'd with ours) be as a Duke or Marquess, if it were Hereditary. These Doctors presently have their peculiar *Uest*, *Cap*, *Bonnet*, and other Ensignes of Magistrates, and are preferred to the best Offices, such as the Licentiate may not attayne, and are as the prime men of the Kingdom.

Thick

Those Licentiate which are rejected from the Doctorship, if they meane to proceed no further, are preferred to Magistracie, but if they list still to stand for that degree they betake them to studies home to their Bookes areh, till the third-year-examination returns, so that some stand ten times, continuing so long private to become more publicke. A Booke is also published of them, of their success. Another is yearly set forth containing the Names, Country, Parents, Offices of all the Doctors, and where they governe, whereby a man may know how any the Licentiate and Doctors of the same year respect one the other as Brethren yet after, and also the Friends also of their Colleagues, and honour their Examiners as Fathers.

They vie to grant at the same times and places the same Titles (in the Moone following) to Military Professors, but with lesse pompe, because Souldierie is of no such reckoning with them, and few stand for them. This Military tryall is three-fold, in the first they shoot nine Arrows on Horke-backe running; in the second they shoot as many at the same make standing: and hee which hath hit the Marke with foure on Horke-backe and two Arrows on foot, is admitted to the third tryall wherein they have some Theame of Military matters propounded, and the Judges examining this Triple tryall out of the whole number pronounce about fifty Licentiate in every Province. And when the Doctorall Act is at *Pequin*, one hundred of the choice of these after a Triple Examination are made Military Doctors. These Doctors are more easily admitted to Military Prefectures (but hardly without Bribes) then the Licentiate. Both the Philosophicall and Military, open their doores, set up in great Letters this their new attained dignity. All the Examiners, whether of Mathematicall, or Military, or Philosophicall degrees, are of those Philosophers, without assistance of any Captaine, Mathematician, or Physician, as if thereby they were inabled to all things.

Military degrees.

Threhold tryall.

§. III.

Of the Tartarian Conquest; Of *Hwang* the Establisher of the present Government. The Revenues Magistrates in the Courts Royall, Provincies, Cities, Orders, Exaltations, Visitation, Depriations.

The Government of *China* is Monarchicall. In times past, there have bene *Lords* of Title, as are Dukes, Marquesses, and Earles in *Europe*, but taken away eighteen hundred years since. It was neuer subdued by any Forerunners before the *Tartarian* Conquest. The Jesuites thinke that that Conquerour was *Tamurlane*; for the *Chinese* call him *Timor*, and that that he had before subdued *Perfia* and *Tartaria*. Hee (whosoever hee was) conquered all the *Chinese* and left them to his Posterity till the year 1368. At that time the *Tartarians* growing weaker, divers Captayns arose in divers parts of the Kingdom which broke off that yoke. Amongst them all the most famous was of the Family *Ciu*, whom afterwards the *Chinese* called *Hwang*, a famous Captaine, or rather a *Floud of Armes*. Hee of a Soldier grew to such greatness, that hee first expelled the *Tartars*, and then repelled the *Rebels* thorough all the Kingdom, and possessed that Sovereignie which still continueth in his Line. For the Crowne there goeth by Inheritance; only two or three of the Ancient Kings Rebellion sometimes rayled a new Family, divers yet losing their lines rather than acknowledging that Faction, this being Proverbiall in their Philosophie, *An herselfe woman hath but one Husband, and a faithful Servant but one Lord*.

There are no ancient Lawes, but the first Founder of any Royall family makes new Lawes, no ancienter then *Hwang*, who either made new, or confirmed the old. Out of ignorance of our *Liberaries* of *Heaven*, or (which is all one in their Theologie) of God. His viall title yet is *Hwang*, that is, *supreme Monarch*: whereas they stile other Kings *Guam*, an inferiour title. To prevent rebellions and Factions. *Hwang* ordained at none of the Royall blood should intermeddle with Government. Those Captayns which had ayded him in expulsion of the *Tartars*, hee gave military Commands with revenues and titles, no descended to their Heires. The Royall race hee gave the titles of *Guam*, as petty Kings, with large revenues to be yearly payed out of the tax inferior Honours and revenues, no much less as further from the original, and after certain generations to have no more then might well maintayne them without labour. The like honoured with a Title of Iron like a Charger, in which are engraven those their exploits for de-

L. 2.

Insurance of the Kingdom; which being shewne to the King, is priuiledged with pardon of any penaltie, though mortall, three times, except for Treason which forfeiteth presently all Priuiledges. Every time it obtaynes any pardon, it is engrauen in the Plate. The Sonnes in Law, and Fathers in Law of the King, and some which haue extraordinarily merited of the State, may like Honours and Reuenues with the same diminution of time, as before.

He also ordained that all Magistrate and Government should belong to those Licentiate and Doctors, whome soeuer the fauour of the King or other Magistrates are necessary, but their owne merits, except where corruption frustrates Law. All Magistrates are called *Quinfa*, and for honours like they are titled *Lau* or *Lau fa*, that is, *Lord*, or *Father*. The *Portugals* call them *Mandaries*. These haue some representation of *Aristocratie*, in that Government: for though they doe nothing but first petitioning the King, hee also determines nothing without their sollicitation. And if a private man petitions (which is seldome), because Officers are appointed to examine Petitions before the King sees them) the King, if hee will grant it, sends it to the Tribunal proper for that business, to advise him what is fit to be done. I haue found certain, that the King cannot give Money or Magistracie to any, except hee bee sole vncapable by some Magistrate: I meane this of publicke Reuenues; which doubleth doe exceed one hundred and fiftie Millions yearly, & are not brought into the Palace Treasury, nor may the King spend them at his pleasure: but all whether Money or Rice and other things in kinde, are layd vp in the publicke Treasuries and Store-houses, in all the Kingdome. Thence the expenses of the King his Wives, Children, Eunuchs, Family, and of all his Kindred are in Royall foar disbursed, but according to the ancient Lawes, neither more nor less. Thence the Expends of Magistrates Palace, Cities, Walls, Towers, Fortresses and all prouision of War are thence sustayned, which cause new Tributes sometimes to be imposed, which this huge Reuenue notwithstanding.

Of Magistrates are two sorts, one of the Court which rule there, and thence rule the Kingdom, and other Prouinciall, which gouerne particular Cities or Prouinces. Of both sorts are five or six Bookes to be fold euery where, printed twice each month at *Peguin*, as by their course of printing (you haue seene) is easie contayning nothing else but the name, Countrey, and degree of the Magistrate; and therefore printed to often because of the exalting, shifting, setting lower, death of Parents (which suspends three yeares to mourning in priuate) their owne deaths or depriuations.

Of the Court Tribunals are reckoned fixe; the first, *Li pu* (as much as *Tribunal* or *Court*, and *Li*, as *Magistrate*) to which it belongeth to name the chiefe Magistrates of the Kingdom, bringing vp from the lower to the higher according to the Lawes prescribed, or if they deserue it, abasing or quite depriuing them. For those Licentiate and Doctors continually ascend, except their owne faults deject them, wherein a depriuation makes for euer vncapable. The second is called *Ho pu*, that is, the Exchequer Court, or that of the Treasury; which exacts and disburses the Kings Reuenues. The third is the *Li pu*, or Court of Rites, which ordaines the publicke Sacrifices, Temples, Priests, Kings, Marriages, Schooles, Examinations, Festiual Dayes, common Gratulations to the King, Titles giuen to the well-deseruing, Physicians, Colleges of Mathematicians, enterprising and leading Embassages, with their Rites, Presents, Letters; the King holding it abasing to his Majesty to write to any. The fourth, is the *Pompu*, or Military Court, which rewards the meriting, and takes from the sluggish Souldier; ordereth their Mustres and giues Military degrees. The fifth is *Campu*, which hath care of the publicke Buildings, Palaces for the King or his Kindred, and the Magistrates; Shippes for publicke burdens or Armadas, Bridges, Walls of Cities and all like prouisions. The sixth Court is *Hampu*, which inquireth into Criminall Causes and sentenceth them; also all the publicke Prisons are subiect hereto.

All the affaires of the Kingdom depend on these Courts, which therefore haue Magistrates and Notaries in euery City and Prouince, to admonish them faithfully of all things, the multitude and order facilitating this so weighty a Designe. For first, in euery Court is a Lord Chiefe Iustice or President called *Ciam Cui*, who hath two Assistants, one sitting at his right hand, the other at his left, called *Ciam*: their dignity in the Royall Cities is accounted principall. After these two, Courtiers, Apparitors, and other Seruants. Besides these Tribunals there is another the greatest in the Court and Kingdom; they call them *Colai*, which are three or foure, sometimes fixe which haue no peculiar businesses, but take care of the whole Re-publique, and are the Kings Priuy. Council in all Affaires. These are daily admitted into the Kings Palace, and there abide whole dayes, and answers as they see cause to the Petitions which are put vp to the King (who was wont to define matters with these *Colai* in publicke) and shewing their answer to the King, hee alters or approoueth the same, and sets his hand thereto for the execution.

Besides these Orders of Magistrates and others not mentioned (as like to our owne) there are about sixty choice Philosophers, men approved for their wisdom and courage before experienced.

Magistrates.

Quinfa and *Lau* or *Lau fa*.
The Mandarin name.

Kings Reuenues 150. Millions.

How dispensed

Bookes of Officers.

1. *Li pu*, or Court of Magistrates.

2. *Ho pu*,
3. *Li pu*.

4. *Pompu*.

5. *Campu*.

6. *Hampu*.

The President or Chiem Cui, Chiam.

Colai, or Council of State.

Choli and *Zauli* Magistrates extraordinary.

ced. These two Ranks are vsed by the King in Court or Prouince, business of greater weight, with great and Royall power, which causeth to them great respect and veneration. These by libell admonish the King if any thing be doe contrary to the Lawes in any part of the Kingdom, not sparing any of the Magistrates, nor the Kings House, nor the King himselfe; to the wonder of other Nations. And although the King sometimes bee touched to the quick, and toucheth them to the quick againe, yet cease they not still to rip the sore till it be cured. Other Magistrates may doe it, yea any priuate man, but these mens Libels or Petitions are of most worth, as proceeding from their peculiar Office. The Copies of them and of the Kings answers are printed by many, so that the Court and State Affaires flye thorow the Kingdom, and are by some written in Bookes, and those of most moment transcribed into the Annals of the Kingdom. Of late when the King would for loue of a second Sonne haue excluded the eldest, so many by Libels reprehended the King, that he in anger depoued or abaled one hundred of the Magistrates. They were called not but one day went together into the Kings Palace, and offered vp their Magistracies if hee perished to breake the Law. Lately also when the chiefe of the *Colai* would not obseue the Law, in two months space about one hundred Libels were put vp, notwithstanding they knew him a great Favourite; and hee dyed within a while after, as was thought, of grief.

There are also besides Magistrates, not a few Colleges instituted for diuers purposes, but the most eminent is that called *Han Lin Tuen*, into which none are chosen but choice Doctors after due Examinations. They which lue in that Royall College, meddle not with Government, yet are of higher dignitie then the Gouernours. Their Office is to order the Kings Writing, make Annals of the Kingdom, to write Lawes and Statutes. Of these are chosen the Masters of the Kings and Princes. They wholly addith themselves to their studies, and in the College haue their degrees of honours, which they attayne by writing. Thence they are preferred to great dignities but not out of the Court. Neither is any chosen to be a *Colai*, but out of this College. They giue much also by Writings for their Friends, Epitaphs, Inscriptions and the like, which all lue to use of them, their name giuing credit and reputation of Elegance. These are the chiefe for Examinations of Licentiate and Doctors, who hold them for Masters and send them Presents.

All these *Peguin* Magistrates are found also at *Nangsin*, but obscured by the Kings absence. *Hun pu* had fixed his Seat at *Nangsin*, but after his death *Ten* is one of his Nephewes, who in the Northern Prouinces defended with an Armie thole Borders against the *Tartars*, perceiving *Hun-pu* Sonne too weake, thought to depriue him of the Kingdom, which hee effected by helpe of the Northern Prouinces, and with force, fraud and largesse obtayned his Votres Throned. And because hee was strongest in the North parts, and most feare was from the *Tartars* there, hee there fixed his Residence, where the *Tartar* Kings had wonted to abide and called that Citie *Peguin*, that is, the Northern Court; as *Nangsin* significth the Southern, leaving to this the former Offices and Immunities.

The Government of the other thirteene Prouinces depends on two Magistrates, the one *Pan-ciu*, the other *Yag-ou-afu*: the former judging Civil Causes, the latter Criminall; both residing with great Power in the Mother Citie of the Prouince. In both Courts are diuers Collegues, and also chiefe Magistrates called *Tau*, which gouerning other Cities often reside in them. The Prouinces are all distributed into diuers *Regiun*, which they call *Ciu*, each of which hath a greater or more eminent Townes, and thole which are more vulgar, which are not litle then our The Gouernours of Cities and Regions haue their foure Assistants and Collegues as Auditors, and Iudges to helpe them. As for the opinion of some that thinke thole only to be Cities, which are called *Fu*, and *Cen*, and *Hien* to be Townes; it is an error for the City wherein the Gouernour of the *Regiun* resides, is also called *Hien*, and hath its peculiar Gouernour called *Cibien*, which is the first Appeal to him as Superior from the *Cibien* or *Cien*. The second Appellate is to the *Pan-ciu* and *Yag-ou-afu* and their Collegues in the Metropolitane Cities, which likewise haue their *Cibien* and *Cifu*, as well as the Subordinate; all in incredible Symmetry.

And because the whole Prouinciall Government hath reference to *Peguin*, therefore in euery Prouince besides these, are other two superiour to them sent from the Royall Citie, the one fixing his Residence in the Prouince, called *Tien*, which may be compared to our *Viceroy*, hauing command over other Magistrates, and in Martiall affaires; the other is yearly sent from the Court, and is called *Cia-yuen*, as a Commissioner or Visitor, which reviews all the Causes of the Prouince, the Cities also and Castles, inquireth of the Magistrates, and punisheth some of the meaner foar, acquainting the King touching the rest, howe euerie one demeaneth himselfe; and hee only executeth Capital punishments. Besides these, are many others in Cities, Townes and Villages: and beside them, many which haue command of Souldiers, especially in the Con-

See *Pan-ciu*.

Colleges.
Han Lin Tuen.

Cause of the removing the Seat Royall from *Nangsin* to *Peguin*.

Prouinciall Gouernours.
Tau, *fu*, *Yag-ou-afu*.

Division of Prouinces.
Regions or Shires.
Cen and *Hien*.

True similitude.
Cen, *Cibien* and *Cien*.
Appeals.

Tien,
Cia yuen or Chiam.

third at the hour. Their furniture is not Hangings (whereof they have no use) but Pictures, Flowers, Vessels; to each Guest his Table, and sometimes two to one, the one before the other. These Tables are some Cubits long and broad, but more in length, and covered with a cloth or Altars. The Seats shine with their Varnish, adorned also with Pictures and Gold. The first entertainment is with *Cia* in the Hall: and thence they go to the Feasting-room. Before they sit down, the Initiator salutes the principal Guest with a low courtesy, and holding a cup of Wine: then goeth to the door or porch, and first making a low courtesy, turning his face to the South, pours out that cup on the ground, offering it to the *Lord of Heaven*, and bowing downe againe, returneth, and filling another cup goeth to that principall Guest, and bowing salutes him in the place in which the rites of salutation are used: and then they go together to the Table where the chiefe Guest must sit. The middle of it is the chiefe place; there with both his hands he sets a dish with great veneration, and taking the two *sticks* (which usually are of Ebony, or Lucie tipped with Gold or Silver, where they touch the *meate*) lays them by, and taking a feat, brusheth it with his sleeves lightly, and sets it in the middle; after which both goe backe and bow themselves in the middle of the Roome. Thus hee doth to every one, placing the second on the left hand, the third on the right. Lastly, hee which shall have the chiefe roome receiveth of his servant the Initiators Dish and Cup, and bids Wine to be filled, and together with the other Guests and the Initiator, boweth downe and placeth the Dish on his Table (which is placed in the lower part of the Hall, with his backe to the South, and face to the chiefe Table) with the *sticks* and *feat*, as he had done before to him; and then all goe againe to their place, with great ceremony, to sit them better with both hands, he to whom the rite is done, standing by the side of the door with his hands in his sleeves, and modestly bowing with thanks. They wait neither before nor after. After all this, they performe the last rite of inclination to the Initiator together, and then each to other, and then sit downe. When they drinke, the Initiator with both hands takes the Cup in the Dish, and lightly lifting it up, and then letting it downe invites them to drinke, all turning to him at the same time, and beginning to drinke, or by sip, fower or five times letting it to his mouth, not as we use with one continued draught. After the first Cup the Dishes are brought in, of which the Initiator beginning, all with their *sticks* apply a bit or two to their mouths, diligently observing, not to lay downe their *sticks* before the principall Guest hath layd downe his: and then the servants fill his, and after every 30 mans Cup, with hot Wine: and the same rite is againe and againe repeated, but more *sipping* Feasts in variety, a little of each, Fleth also and Fish mixed, taking off nothing, but setting one Dish on another like Castles and Towers. Bread, and Rice (which there supplies our Bread) comes next for discourse. They have games also, in which the looser is fined to drinke, with others disport. None is compelled to drinke above his strength. Their drinke is rite, boyled like our Beere. Their leisure Banquets last all night, the remainders given to the Guests servants. Neere the end of the Feast they change Cups. In eating they are more moderate.

The King is observed with more Rites than any other in the World. None speaks to him but his Eunuchs, and those which live in his Palace, Sonnes and daughters. None of the Magistrates without the Palace (the Eunuchs also have their degrees) speaks to the King but by Petition, and those with so many formes of veneration that none can make them, which is not well exercised, though he be learned. Every new yeere which begins with that New Moone which next precedeth or followeth the Nones of February, out of every Province a Legate is sent to visite the King, which is done more solemnly every third yeere. Also in every City on every Change day, all the Magistrates assemble to one place in their Citie, where the Kings Throne and Dragon-ensignes are carved and gilded, often bowing and kneeling before it with peculiar composition of the body to veneration, and with ten thousand yeeres of life to the King. The like is done on his Birth-day yearly, the *Pagan* Magistrates and Princial Legates, and Officers by the King goe to give thanks to the Throne (for the King is not there) with rites prescribed with habit peculiar to that purpose, with an Iurie Table covering their mouths as if as they spoke before the King: the King was wont to come forth to a window, with such a Table in his hand, and another on his head, over his Crowne hanged, about with threads of gemmes, his face hidden in preference from the beholders.

The Kings colour is yellow (forbidden to others) of which his garment is wrought with many golden Dragons, which are carved or painted in all the Palace, and Vestell, and furniture; in the roofe also; whence some have thought the Tiles to be of Gold or Brass, being of a yellow Earth, each nayled to the Timber: with Nayles gilded on the heads, that all may appeare yellow. It were treason for another to arrogate that colour or Armes, except he bee of the Roy-
all lineage.

The Palace gates are foure, to the foure corners of the World. They which passe by, defend from their Horses or Seats, and goe on foot till they be past the greatest fountein alight, and that at *Nannin* also, where the King hath of long time resided. The gates to the South both inner and

The Guests
courteise to
the Host.Sipping off,
and drinking
one draught.

King observed.

Petitions.
New yeere.
New Moone.

Birth-day.

Kings colour
yellow, Sun-
dies.
Dragons.The Palace
and gates.

and our ward are three, the King only going in and out at the middle (which otherwise is shut) others at the other gates on the right and left hand. Their computation of time is only by the Kings Raigne. Sometimes the King bestoweth a Title on the Parents of the principall Magistrates by a certaine writing, made by the Kings Philosophers in the Kings name, esteemed wonderfully, acquired with any cost, and kept in the familie as a thing sacred. The like opinion is of other Titles given to Widowes, exprest in two or three Characters, given to Widowes which to their old age have refused second marriages; or to old Men which have lived an hundred yeeres, and in like cases. They set these Titles over their doors. Magistrates also doe like to their friends. To good Magistrates Arches are erected at publick cost, of Marble: by Citizens also to some of their Citizens which have attained any notable dignitie. The most precious Artifices throw all the Kingdoms are yearly sent to the King to *Pagan* with great costs. The Magistrates of the Kings Citie goe abroad with little pompe, on horsebacke, and few of the principall in Seats, and those carried but by foure Porters: all in reverence of the King. Foure times in the yeere, once a quarter, all the Court Magistrates assemble at the Sepulchres of the ancient Kings and Queenes, and make there their offerings: giving the principall honour to *Huon*. They prepare to this solemnitie certaine dayes fasting at home and leaving of fairs.

Next to the King they honour their Magistrates, both in formes of words and visitations, to which none aspire but Magistrates; and they which have beene deprived lose not all honour in this kind, but sometimes come forth in their habits and are respected by their Citie Magistrates. If one be preferred to another dignity, which hath well executed his Office, they honour him with publick gifts, and reserve his Boots in a publick Chit, with Verles in his praise. To some they erect Arches, and Altars with Images, and some are deputed to keepe lightes there burning, and odours, at publick Rent charge perpetually, with huge Censers of Bell-metal, as they doe to their Idols. Yet doe they distinguish betweene their Divine worship, of their Gods asking many things, whereas their Rites are onely memorials, though many of the vulgar confound them together. Cities are full of such Temples, by friends often erected to unworthy men, to which at certain times they goe and performe kneeling and bowing, Rites, and offer Meats. Their Bookes are full of precepts for observing Parents with due honour, and in outward hew no Nation performs so much. They will not sit out against them but on the side, speake to them with great reverence, they sustaine their poorer Parents with their labour in best manner they are able, and in nothing are more curious than their funerals.

The mourning colour is white, and all their habite from the Shoes to the Cap of a strange and miserable fashion. The cause of three yeeres mourning for Parents, is because so long they carried them in armes with so much labour of education: for others as they please, a yeere, or three moneths, as they are in neederlike: For the King they mourn three yeeres thorow all the Kingdoms, and for the *Lord of Heaven*. Their funeral Rites are written in a Booke which they consult on that occasion, all the parts of the habite there pictured. When a man of rank is dead, the Sonne or next Kinnefman sends Libels to the friends within three or fower dayes: all the Roome is white, with an Altar in the midst, on which they place the Coffin and Image of the dead. Thither all the friends come in mourning one after another, & offer Olores and two Wax-candles on the Altar; whiles they burne, making fower bendings and kneeling, having first ended against the Image. The Sonnes stand at the side, and the women behinde, covered with a Curtaine, mourning the while: the Priests also burne Papers and Silkes, with certaine rites to minister Clothes to the deceased. They abstayne from wanted Beds (sleeping on Straw-beds on the ground neere the Corps) from fleth and other daintier food, Wine, Bathes, companie with their Wiues, Bankets, not going out for certaine moneths, remitting by degrees as the three yeeres expire. On the funeral day the friends are by another Libell invited, to which they goe in Procession forme, in mourning; many Statues of Men, Women, Elephants, Tigris, Lions, of Paper all going before, diversified in colour and gilding, which are all burnt before the usurers in the way; huge Bell-censers also carried on mens shoulders; after which follows the Herse under a huge carved Canopie adorned with Silkes, carried with forty or fifty men. Next the children on foot with flutes, and then the women enclosed within a white glistatory Curtaine, that they may not be seene: followed by women of the kindred in mourning Seats. The Graues are all in the Suburbs. If the Sonnes be absent, the Funerall pompe is deferred till their coming. They bring (if it may bee) the deceased in another Countrey to lie by his friends. The Graues are adorned with Epitaphs in Marble magnificently. Thither on certain dayes yearly the kindred resort to cense and offer, and make a funerall banquet.

Their Marriages and Spousals are with many rites, done in their youth; the Contracts compounded by the Parents without their content; they observe qualitie in yeeres and degree in the lawfull Wife. In their Concubines, luit, beauty, price beare away. The poorer also buy their Wiues, and when they list sell them. The King and his kindred respect only beauty, Magistrates appointed to make the choise. One is his lawfull Wife; the King and his Herse having

Kings gate,
Time
TitleWidowes.
Old men

Arche.

Pagan.

Funerals of
Kings:Honour of
MagistratesAs in the dani-
dia and letters of
Saviors worship
and that of
God.Honour of pa-
rents.Seen in Partis
of Funerals
and moun-
tains.Mourning by
book.

Buriall.

Marriages.

Geologers. Learned men busie their wits in this abstruse Science, and are consulted when any publike Buildings are rayled. And as Astrologers by the Starres, so these *Geologers* by inspection of Rivers, Fields, Mountains and scite of Regions, foretell Destinies; dreaming by setting a Doore or Window this or that way, conveying the rayne to the right or left hand, by a higher or lower route, honour and wealth shall accrue to the Houle. Of these Impostors the Streets, Cities, Courts, Shops, Markets are full, which tell that which themselves want, good Fortune to all Foole-fortunate buyers: yea, Women and blinde folkes proffesse it, and some find such Chapmen of the Learned, Noble, King and all, that they grow to great riches by others little wits. All diffusers publike or private are attributed to *Fate*, and ill scite of some Citty, Houle or Palace. The *maist of Harle*, the first meeting in the Morning, Shadows caused by the Sunne in the house, are to their Fortune-guides.

Cruell vices and unnatural chinai. For other vices, some will make themselves Seruants to rich men, to haue one of the hand-maydes become his Wife, fo multiplying issue to bondage. Others buy a Wife, but finding their family become too numerous sell their Sonnes and Daughters as Beasts, for two or three pieces of Gold (although no death prouoke him) to euerslasting separation and bondage, some to the *Portugals*. Hence is the Kingdom full of Slaues, not captiued in warre, but of their owne free-borne. Yet is seruice there more tollerable then else-where; for every man may redeem himselfe at the price payd for him, when hee is able; and there are many poore which with hard labour sustaine themselves. A worse euill in some Prouinces is theirs, which finding themselves poore, smother their new-borne Babes, specially Females, by an impious pietie and pitifull pietie, pretending that sale to Slaueury, by taking away that life which euen now they had giuen. They pretend herento also their *Metempsychosis*, dreaming that the Soule of that Infant shall the sooner passe into some more fortunate body: and are not therefore alhamed to doe this in others presence, yea not the meane of the communitie. Many more inhumanely kill themselves, either weare of a miserable life, or willing after death to be reuenged of some enemy, while to the Enemy of mankind many thousand yearly Sacrifices themselves, by Halter, Drowning and Pyroflam. Another immanitie in the Northerne Prouinces is vied vpon Male Infants, whom for hope of Palace preferments their Parents make Eunuchs; of which in the Kings house are ten thousand, a dull and blockish kinde of vnkind vnmanly men. Their Whippings also take away more liues, then the executions of sentences to Death; their Reides flit two ells long, a finger thicke and four broad, at the first blow breaking the skinde and flesh on the hinder part of the thighes: so prevent which many bribe the Magistrates, of whose domineering falsesse of power they liue in perpetual feare, where calumnies and lyes are so rife: which *China* perfidiously made the Kings come so guarded abroad and vnknowne, and now not to come forth at all.

Child-killing. The Kings kindred are now growne to fixtie thousand, and daily increasing become a burthen to the publike, and daily increasing in idleness, impotence, numbers, the King being very jealous of them, and setting Guards, besides their perpetual exile from *Peking* and *Nanking*. No marvell if Strangers be no better treated in *China*, where the Natives and Bloud are suspected: out of whose Bookes they come to learne, and repute them little better then Beasts: and the Characters whereby they expresse them are taken from Beasts. How Legats are held as prisoners in publike houses is else-where deliuered. Commanders of Companies: neither is there any more base then the Souldiery, most Slaues or condemned persons, for their owne or their Ancestors euils: and when they are free from exercises of warre, they become Muleteers, Porters, and of other base Offices. The Captaynes only haue some authority. Their armes are worthless for offence or defence, and onely make a shew, the Captaynes being also subject to the Magistrates whippings. Their Alchimisicall vanitie, and study of long Life, with precepts and huge bookes of both, I omit. The founders forth of these Sciences haue gone body and soule to Heauen. The making of Silver hath made many spend their silver, wits and credit, charged so by professing Artifics: and the great Magistrates (few in *Peking* free) are taken vp with the other Study; some shortning their life to make it longer. They write of one of their Kings which had procured such a potion of immortallitie, whom a friend of his was not able to dissuade from that conceit, enraged by his sudden fratching & drinking his prepared potion: which hee seeking by death to reuenge, the answer answered, how can I be killed, if this draught cause immortallitie? and if I may, then haue I freed thee of this error.

Whip-killing. Slauiish feare.

Kings kindred. Chinai suspitions. Strangers commended.

Souldiers base.

Servitude of Alchime and long life.

Chap. 10. *China* Gods. What pietie is that *Literates* and *Calumni* may not itselfe be lured with on the Pope, as these idolaters wilous God and Christ worshipping that, which by Nature is not God? Touching the *China* Sects, I read in their Bookes, that the *Chinois* from the beginning worshipped one God, which they call the *King of Heauen*, or by another Name *Heauen* and *Earth*. Beneath this Deitie, they worshipped diuinities *Spirits* of Mountaynes, Rivers, and of the foure parts of the world. In all actions they held Reason to be obeyed, which light of Reason they confessed they had from Heauen. Of that Supreme Deitie and his admittings *Spirits*, they neuer had such monstrous conceits as the *Romans*, *Greekes*, *Aegyptians*, whence the *Leuities* hope that many of them in the law of Nature were faued. Their Sects are reckoned three: The first of the *Learned*, the second of *Sequia*, the third *Lauch*. One of these is professed by all which

which vie their Characters. That of the *Learned*, is most proper to *China* and most ancient and all their Learned learne it in the course of their studies. *Confutius* is the Prince thereof. This Sect hath no Idols, worships one God, beleuing all things to be confuted by his prouidence. They worship in interior sort the *Spirits*. The best of them teach nothing of the Creation: reward is and punishments, they confine in this life to a mans selfe or his posteritie. Of the immortallitie of the Soule they seeme to make no doubt; for they speake of the decreat liuing in Heauen: but of Hell they make no mention. The later *Learned* deny both, with the soules immortallitie: yet some say, that the foules of good men are corroborated with vertue and made able to hold out, others dying with the body.

10 The principall opinion seemeth borrowed of the Idol Sect, five hundred yeeres ago; which holds that this whole Vniuers consists of one matter, and that the Creatures are as so many members of this huge body, so that every one may attayne to the thought of God bring one with him; which we confute out of their owne ancient Authors. Though the *Literate* acknowledge one Supreme Deitie, yet they erect no Temple to him, nor any other place proper to his Worship, nor any Priests, persons or rites peculiar, nor haue precepts thereof, nor any which prescribe, or punisheth defect of Holies; nor any which prauertly or publicly recite or recite ought to him. Yea they affirme, that the Office of Sacrificing to the King of Heauen and his Kings, and be thereby a Traytor. For this purpose, the King hath two fately Temples in both

20 Royal Cities, one dedicated to the *Heauen*, the other to the *Earth*: in which sometimes hee viid his Oxen and Sheepe, with many Rites. To the *Spirits* of Mountaynes, Rivers, and of the facrine ma-Regions of the world, only the chiefe Magistrates Sacrifice, nor are the people admitted thereto. The precepts of this Law are contained in the *Terrabition* and five Bookes of *Deutistur*; Sect is more of note then their yearly *Obis*, or parations to their deceased Parents, comm-Neither yet doe they suppose that they eate of the meate which is set them, or need it, but they

30 The *Literate* haue a costly Temple to *Confutius* in every Citty, by Law appointed, in that place where the *Schools* is, and adjoining to the Magistrates Palace, which is let out to the Bachelors or Graduates of the first degree. In a principall place of that Temple his Image is erected, or else his Name in golden Cubittall letters, written in a curious Table. Hither the *Ma-Dours* and *Wax* lights, to acknowledge their Master. On his Birth-day and on other let attayned their Degrees and Offices, but pray not to him nor looke for ought from him; but as *late* *Spirits* of each Citty, and to the Magistrate of each Tribunal, where they solemnly

40 bide themselves by solemn Oathes, to observe Law and Iustice, when they first enter into their Office. In these they offer Dishes and Odours, but in differing Worship: for in these they ac-of this *Literate* Sect, is the peace and good of the Common-wealth, and of Families, and of each persons; their precepts agreeing with Nature and Christianity. Five Relations or Societies are observed by them, comprehending all duties of humanitie of Father and Child, of Husband and Wife, of Master and Seruant, of elder and younger Brethren, of Fellowes and Equals. They con-deme Single life, permit Polygamie and in their Bookes largely explicate that precept of *Chari-mie* instituted for the government of the Common-wealth: and because it certifies a *Yaxa* to

50 prohibeth any thing touching the Life to come, many adjoyne the other two Sects to this. The second Sect is called *Siquia* or *Omifite*, and by the *Lapmans*, *Seicia* and *Amidada*. Both haue the same Characters, and the same *Totem* of Law. It came to the *Chinois* from the West, brought from the Kingdom of *Thangfou* or *Sento*, now called *Indofan*, betwixt India and sent Legats thither, which brought Bookes and Interpreters from thence, the Authors of them pierced thither, and were Native of *Siam*. The Authors of this Sect, haue taken some things out of Soules, and other things. Somewhat it elements to acknowledge Worlds and transmigration of

60 Godes, becoming one it acknowledge thir iust rewards to the good in the *Trinitie* fabled of three It extols Single life, so as it may seeme to reject Marriage. They leave house and friends and trauell into diuers places Begging. The Rites of this prophane Sect, haue great affinity with and from our *Gregorian*; they haue Images also in their Churches; their Priestly Garments are also

which suppoed the foules of the world

Perfum had no Temples

Two Temples Royal King high Priest: Magistrates inist-out

Obis.

Confutius Temples and Rites.

Temple of celestial Spirit, Tribunal Temple, Chief of Magistrates.

Five combining ties.

Second Sect began A.D. 65.

Demeritians Syllabo aus.

Like nest of birds, and Christ's own, in nation of people, getier

gentler like ours, which with an Ecclesiastical term we call, *Penance*. In their Service they often recite the name *Tolme*, which themselves confesse to be ignorant of. But they denie exercise in their Heaven and Hell, ascribing a new birth after I know not what revolutions of time, in some other of their concerted Worlds, then and there to be penitently purged; with other fooleries. They prohibit to eat of living creatures, but few impose on themselves this abstinence, and they make ease ablation from this and other finnes, if they give to the Priests, who profit to deliver from Hell by their Prayers or Recitations, whom they will.

Many and
costly Tem-
ples, Steeples
Bells, Images
Their Priests
many and mi-
serable.

The Priests of this Sect are called *Ofiamos*, they flay their head and beard, against the faith of the Country: some tradition, as is said, have leade a very aufer life in Mountains and Caves: the greatest part which amount to two or three millions, live in Monasteries, suffrayed with their antiently-given Revenues, and Almes, and also by their ownne industry. The Priests are accounted and iudged, the most vile and vicious in the whole Kingdome, frumg of the basest people, bold in their childhood to the elder *Ofiamos*, and of Slaues made Disciples, succeed their Masters in Office and Benefice, a course which they have found for their propagation. For, few are found which flourish by degrees, and growe up to the rank of Masters, like those of the other Sects, but all are illiterate, and illiterate makes them liker their Masters, few of the learning, and few of the manners; some are rascall, some are thieves, some are murderers, some are adulterers, some are ruffians or civil ruffians; and daily growing worse. And although they have no wives, they are much addicted to women, and cannot but by serious penalties be kept from them.

[illegible]

The third Sect, so called, *Lausan*, derived from a Philosopher which lived at the same time with *Confucius*, and who they fable to have been carried 80. yeeres in his parents womb before he was born, and therefor called, *Lausan*, that is, the *Old Philosopher*. He left no Bookes of his Own; but his Disciples, to honour his Memory, and to keep his sayings, wrote downe many of his sayings, and so termed to have intended any new Sect, but certain Sectaries, called *Tsufo*, made use of the head of their Sect after his death, and wrote divers elegant Bookes gathered out of the Sects. They also liue single in their Monasteries, and use disciples, bafe and wicked as the former. They wear their haire as the Lay-men, differing herein, that where they wear their haire tied on a knot, these have a Cap on the crowne of Wood. Some also are married, and saye our Lord his Holies in their owne houses. They say, that with other Idols they worship also the *Lord of Heaven*, whom they imagine Corporeall, and to have suffered many things. They tell, that the King of Heaven which now reigneth, is called *Ciam*, and he which before ruled was named *Len*. This *Len* came one day to the Earth riding on a white Dragon, and *Ciam* a Wizard entreated him with a Feast, where whilst *Len* was eating, *Ciam* gat vp on the white Dragon, and was carried to Heaven, and excluded *Len* from that fourgaury; any he only obtained of this new King, that he might rule oter a certaine Mountain in his Kingdome, where they faye he fill liueth, thus confuting, (as the Greekes of Ioue) themselves to worship an Vlturper and Flatterer. Besides this Deity of *Heauen*, they acknowledge three others, one of which they say, *Lausan* is, haue some drame also, as the forme of the Trinitie.

The *Yi* also spoke of places of rewards and punishments, but differing from the former: for they promise a Paradise for Lule and body together, and haue Images of Iome in their Temples which haue gone thither. To obayne this, they prescribe ceraine exercises of fitting in diuers postures, for Prayers, Medicines by which the life is lengthned, if not made immortal. Their Priests exorcise Devils, and drue them out of houses, by painting horrible pictures in yellow Paper on the walls, and making horrible cryes as if they themselves were beset with Devils, and also to sing to the accompaniment of drums, and other instruments. Devils, Demons, impudent impostors, the *Yi* says or Magicians. They ascribe the Kings sacrifices in those Temples to *Homen* and *Yi*, (thereby acquiring much authority) being Masters of the Mutek temple:

and are called to Funerals, to which they goe in precious vestments with diuers muscall Instru-
ments, making a pompous-procession shew thorow the streets. The like pompes they vie at
the streets ends on certaine times, hired by the dwellers.

They have a Prelate called *Cami*, which dignity he transmits to his posterity 1000. yeeres fine by hereditary succession, and from thence have taken beginning from a Magician which lived in a Caste of *Quamir* Province, where his posterity still continueth. Their Prelate lieth crate and hallow the Rooms suspected to be haunted by ill spirits. He is carried in an open Chaire, and with other pompe accompanied to the chief Magistrates, and is saluted by the King they know not their own Chaires and Rites. Hee hath no power over the people, but the hee diversified themselves into 300. in seeming, daily of which are also Alchims. These three Sects *Hunari* ordaineth that these three Lawes should be kept for the good of the Kingdome, only the *Lumari* to rule; whence it comes that they feele not to rune after good of the Kingdome, only the view of them all for their purposes, often repairing the old and building new Temples. The Kings wives are more prone to the Idol Sect, and maintaine whole Monasteries without the Palace, and buy their Prayers with Almsh. The Idols are not only in Temples in this Kingdome, but in private houses in peculiar places, in freets, ships, Palaces, they are the first things you see, and yet put they little confidence in them. Their wisest men feele to mixe all three Sects together, and to whiles they embrace all, are of none, and prove *Atheists*.

p. VI

Of Strangers, and forraigne Religions in China.

Ow inhoſpitable the *Chinese* are to ſtrangers, we have in part heard, neither permitting ſtrangers to ſell to the Native, nor ingrefſe to Aliens except in three reſpects. The firſt, ſuch tribute, as (as wee have heard) the *Portugall* pay to the *Chinese* for the ſale of their ſhips, and their gain by merchandize. The third, ſuch as in admiration of the *Chinese* vertues and learning: but theſe muſt here fixe their habitation, nor may be ſuffered to returne. Such is the *Jeſuite* ſchool, ſuffering their myſteries to others. And this made the *Jeſuites*, after a long ſtay, that they have any intelligence or commerce with ſtranger. & therefore the *Jeſuites*, which have obtained two great priviledges, the Eunuſke place for their residence, and the employment goe into the Province of *Canton*, though with Mathematicall pretence, not obayne leave to traſſe into the ſeverall Kingdomes and latitudes of places, becauſe they were lud to the ſale of Kalender-buſines, of *Macao*. Yeſ, ſuch was the ſtrictneſſe of the *Emperours* command, that the *Emperours* of *China*; & ſince the libellous Counſellor of State, was deprived, for ſending a Mounſayn to thoſe bordering Provinces they ſet narrow limits. Custom-houſes, Bridges, and in the very Riuers, dome, there are no ſuch Officers, nor ſearches. Neither are any ſtranger paſt out of the Kingdome, after once entering, without the Kings licence. The ſecond ſtranger paſt out of the Kingdome, is in the *Peringalls*, which had the Towne of *Macao* aligned them, their ingrefſe and egrefſe traffike. The third, ſayly twice a yeere to the chiefe Citty of the Province, is not called *Quentun*, but *Macao*.

This is also re-
futed by *Monsf.*
de Mansart.

Many Mahj-
ners in China

Christians;

Touching *Christians* in *China*, there is not so great certainty. Certain *Mogores* told *Ricinus* of some in the *Kensien* Province, in the North parts of *China*, at a place called *Xuchow*, which were white, bearded, wild Bells, worshipped *Isa*, that is, *Iesus*, and *Maria*, and honoured the Crucifix; these Priests married, which cured diseases without medicine. A *Jew* at *Pegum* gave more full intelligence, that at *Cusumfu*, and at *Lincon*, in the Province of *Schantung*, and in the Province of *Sichang*, there lived certain Strangers, whose Ancestours had come out of forraigne parts, which worshipped the Croffe which the *Chinois* expresse by the Character of *Ten* and made the signe thereof with the finger on their meate and drinke. They also made the same signe with Inke on the foreheads of their children, to preserve them from misfortunes. A *Jesuite* also saw, in the hands of an Antiquarie, a Bell, with a Church and Croffe thereon graven, circumscribed with *Greeke* letters. The *Jew* also reported that those Croffe-worshippers had the same doctrine in their prayers which the *Jewes* held: this the *Jesuites* interpreted of the Plaster common to them both. Hee affirmed that there were many of them in the Northerne Provinces, which so flourished in Letters and Armes, that they grew suspitious to the *Chinois*, which hee thought was caused by the *Saracens* some sixty yeeres before. The Magistrates were so incensed hereby, that they for feare were dispersed, some turning *Jewes*; some *Saracens*; others *Idolaters*: and their Temples were also converted into Idolatrous Temples, one of which hee mentioned in his Country. Ever since they hide their profession, and when the *Jesuites* sent one of their Converts to make enquire, he could learne of none: which they thought proceeded from their feare, taking him for a Spie sent from the Magistrates.

All these Sects the *Chinois* call, *Hoi*, the *Jewes* distinguished by their refusing to eate the new or leg; the *Saracens* Swines flesh; the *Christians*, by refusing to feed on round-hoofed beasts, Asses, Horses, Mules which all both *Chinois*, *Saracens*, and *Jewes* doe there feed on. The *Saracens* called the *Christians* also *Sai*, as before; and *Tenzai*, which is a name given in *Persia* to the *Armenian Christians* (as an *Armenian* affirmed to *Ricinus*) whence hee conjectured, that these *Christians* came out of *Armenia*. And by the report of *Hudson the Armenian*, which sayeth, their King came to the Great *Can of Cathay* (which were here before observed, at least the best parts thereof, to be the North parts of *China*) to persuade him and his to become *Christians*; which in great part also hee affected, besides other *Christians* there reported to be, by *Paulus*; and those of *Saracen*, subject to the Great *Can*, mentioned by *Verdemonium*, which seeme to be near these in *China*. The *Malabar Christians* have *Chalde* memorials of *China*, commented by Saint *Thomas*; and their Metropolitan hath his style of all *India* and *China*.

A certaine *Jew* at *Pegum* hearing of the *Jesuites* there, came to them to see and confesse with them, imagining them to be *Jewes*. This *Jew* was borne at *Chasumfu*, the Mother-citie of the Province *Honan*, his name was *Ngai*, his countenance not resembling the *Chinois*; hee neglecting *Indisisme*, had addicted himselfe to the *China* studies, and now came to *Pegum* to the examination, in hope of proceeding Doctor. There did hee enter the *Jesuites* Houle, professing that he was of their Law and Religion. *Ricci* leads him into the Chappell, where on the Altar stood the Image of the Virgin, *Iesus*, and *Iohn Baptist*, kneeling; which he taking to be the Images of *Rebecca* and her Twins, did worship vnto them, contrary (he said) to their custome. The Images of the Euangelists he supposed to be so many of *Iacobi* sonnes. But vpon further questioning, the *Jesuite* perceived that he was a professor of the Law of *Moses*: he confessed himselfe an *Israélite*, and knew not the name of *Jew*; so that it seemed, the dispersion of the ten Tribes had pierced thus farre. Seeing the *Hebrew Bible*, hee knew the Letters, but could not read them. He told them that in *Chasumfu* were ten or twelue Families of *Israélites*, and a hute Synagogue, which had lately cost them ten thousand Crownes; therein the *Pentateuch* in Rolls, which had bin with great veneration preserved five or six hundred yeeres. In *Hanchow* the chiefe Citie of *Chequian*, hee affirmed, were many more Families with their Synagogue; many also in other places but without Synagogues, and by degrees wearing out: his pronunciation of *Hebrew* names differed from ours, as *Herusalem*, *Mosca*; for *Messia*, *Ierusalem*. His Brother, hee said, was skilfull in the *Hebrew*; which he in affection to the *China* preferment had neglected; and therefore was hardly censured by the Ruler of the Synagogue.

To this Citie did *Ricci* send one of his to enquire, who found those reports true, which also copied the beginnings and endings of their Bookes, which they compared, and found to agree with their owne *Pentateuch*, saying that they wanted prickes or points. He wrote also to the *China* Characters to the Ruler of their Synagogue, that hee had the rest of the Bookes of the Old Testament, and other Bookes of the New, which containd the acts of the *Messias*, being already come. The Ruler doubted, saying, that he would not come till ten thousand yeeres were expired. Hee also promised, that because hee had heard much good of him, if hee would come thither, and abstaine from Swines flesh, they would make him Ruler of their Synagogue. After this, three *Jewes* came from thence to *Pegum*, and were almost persuaded to become *Christians*. These complained, that through ignorance of the *Hebrew*, their Religion decayed, and that they were likely all of them in a short time to become *Saracens* or *Ethnikes*. The old *Asiatic* Synagogue, was now dead, his sonne a young man succeeded in place, but ignorant of their Law

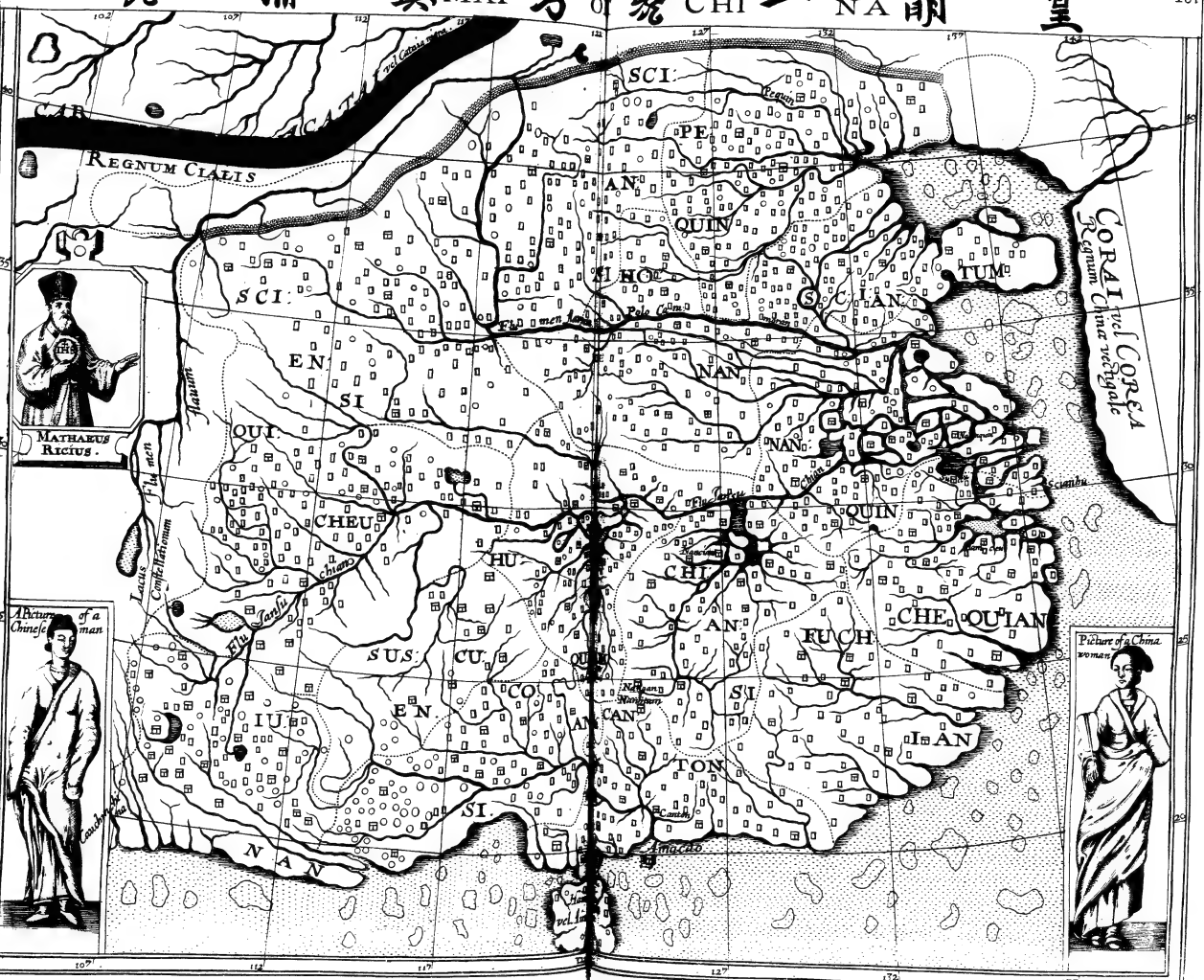
See sup. in
Pinto. 863.

See sup. pag. 117

Siam.

Chasumfu.
Jew at Pegum
his report.Israélites dis-
persion.Jewes at Han-
chow.Pentateuch.
Want of prickesDecay of Is-
raélites.

皇明一統方輿全圖 THE MAP OF CHI NA



Law. And that their Jewish Religion was indeed languishing, appeared by this, that they both worshipped the Popish Images, and complained that in their Synagogue and private houses they had none. They were offended that they were forbidden the eating of any creature, which themselves had not killed, which had they observed in this Journey had cost them their lives. Their wives and neighbours esteemed Circumcision of their Infants on the eighth day a cruell thing, which they could be willing to alter, with acceptance of the Christian Law, nor would much stand about Swines flesh.

As for the Christian Religion thither carried by the Jesuits, you have heard the whole substance of their owne large Histories; I meane not of Miracles, and other like stufe and stuffings, but the meanes of conveying the Gospel to the Chinese, which are Merchandize, money, & gifts, Mathematicks, Memorative-art, Morality, which to Chinese Countourists and Curiosity with their conforming to Confucius Ethicks, and China Literature. Habite, Names and officious Rites, were good Orators, and made way with much adoe to that little which is done; a mutual exchange in many things, of *Ramie* for Chinese Beades, Shaving, Vests, Songs, Muratimus, Tapers, Censers, Images, Legends, Monks, Nunnes, Processions, Pilgrimages, Monasteries, Altars, Ives and three Saints, and other things innumerable pertayning rather to *bodily exorcise* which 1. Tim. 4.8. *than in spirit and truth*; and by *foolishnesse of preaching* sancts them that beleue, nor by *wisdomes of words*, in elegant writings, and those more of Arts then Christianity. The great Doctor of 1. Cor. 1. 21. 22. Gentiles tooke another counse, not with excellence of words, sayth he, or wisdomes; yea, but effected to know nothing among the learned Corinthians but Iesus Christ and him crucified: neither stood his word in the ensuing speech of mans wisdomes, but in *plaine evidence of the Spirit*; not the wisdomes of the World, but the wisdomes of God in a mystery, &c. Which I speake not as denying the service of Arts to Divinity, but of Divinity in manner to Arts, where the profession is not as of a Tent-maker to live that he may preach, but as of an European Philosopher, where *Hagar* dominereeth, and *Sara* at some times whispereth a little, and except in Images and Shewes launceth or any Preachers may occasion the opening of their eyes, which were wont to beage of two eyes, and lay Europeans had but one, when as they have but this one naturall eye, and in spiri- 1. Cor. 1. 13. 23. tual things are blinde: and would God the Chinese might as generally acknowledge themselves thankfull to Jesuiticall labours in professing the Gospell, as I doe here my selfe for this Historicall light of China. Matthe. 2. 1.

§. VII.

The Map of China, taken out of a China Map, printed with China Characters; illustrated with Notes, for the understanding thereof.

THE originall Map, whence this present was taken and contrasted, was by Captaine *Serie* (whose industrie and acts have both here and elsewhere enriched this worke) gotten at *Batavia* of a Chinese, in taking a distresse for debts owing to the English Merchants; who seeing him carefull to convey away a Boxe, was the more carefull to come from China, had brought with him. The greatnesse of the danger at home (if knowne) made him earnestly begge for that which was on the other side as earnestly desired and kept. *Master Hakluyt* procured it of the Captaine, professing his intent to give it to Prince *Henry* of glorious memory, who being suddenly advanced to a higher view in Heaven, and *Master Hakluyt* following, this Map came to my hand, who sought to expresse my love to the publike in communicating what I could thereof. For it being in China Characters (which I thinke none in England, if any in Europe, vnlearned) I could not wholly give it, when I give it; no man being able to receive, what he can no way conceiue.

And as in greatest things our little understandings easier apprehend negations then affirmations, and can better tell what they are not, then what they are; so this Map easily tells at first, even without Commentaries, the comments and conceits of our Geographers, *Orrinus*, *Mercator*, *Hondius*, and whatsoever other our Authors of Maps, and Globes, who all have herein fayled, giving nothing lesse then China in their China; whether we regard the generall figure and shape thereof, or the particular Rivers, Hills, Prouinces, Wall, Latitude, and it were beleue the Jesuites) Longitude also. They present it in forme somewhat like a Harpe, whereas it is almost square; they make Hills, Rivers, Lakes, Ilands, (as if also for one, which is part of the Continent) Cities, Prouinces, every thing out of due place. Whose industry I commend; but industry guided by rancie, and without light, is but the blind leading the blind, or like a feeble vanamazed Horse, the more spurred, the more ready to carrie his Rider into precipices, or out of the way at least. Our Geographers have indeed payd the Chinese in their owne Coin: 1. Cor. 1. 13. 23.

Prouincers and
their names.

* Three or 4
to the South-
west.

Degrees.

Quian.

* It is called by
the name of
the irregular
river of Cha-
man.

P. Phil. 14. 1. 1. 1.

S. 2.

Their little Eyes and Noſes, long Hayre bound vp in knots, womens ſcece wrapped vp, long wide-ſleeued Garments, Fannes, &c. I haue (taking diuers parts out of diuers) preſented to thee. A taſte of the *China* Characters thou haſt in the Title. That of *Quian* I haue added from the Iſcuits, in thanks for his great pains, and to ſhew the habit of the head, &c.

The names of the Prouinces I haue hunted out of the Iſcuits Journeys and other Relations. In the moſt I am ſure I am right, in the other * you haue my conſent; for neyther know their Characters, nor haue any giuen vs a particular Geography or Chorography, but only the names of the Prouinces. I haue added names alſo to ſome Cities and Rivers of principall note. As for the truth of the Map I finde well to agree with the Iſcuits Journeys; but it hath not *European* Art, it being neyther graduated, nor Hills, nor Woods, or other differing places preſented to the view; only hauing Characters, Lines, Lakes, and Rivers. I am aduanced to adde Degrees to helpe ſuch Readers as cannot doe it better themſelues, following the Iſcuits preſcripts in general, although I cannot but manuell at that longitude, ſo farre differing from the general opinion, and could almoſt doubt, that herein theſe *Portugals* are minding the diſſon agreed on betwixt the *Spaniards* and them, which hath anciently cauſed ſuch contentions, and wherein you haue read ſome Offices of the Iſcuits in theſe *China* Diſcourſes. But I will not contend, where they eludes ſpeake faintly.

Now for *Quian* which *Polo* hath mentioned, as the greateſt Riuer in the world (it is here called *Ianſu*, or *Hienſu*, or *Tanſu*, that is, the *Source of the Sea*, and *Ianſuchian*) and another called *Camoran* (Cara ſignifieth blacke, * and the great Northern Riuer is alwaye thicke and troubled) and their Marriage by Art, is here viewed; and more then two hundred Cities (one of *Polo* Wonders) communicating their Merchandizes by ſea *Quian*, or *Chian*, as they now terme it *Ianſuchian*, *chian* ſignifying the *chiefe Riuer*. For the name *Quian* to be giuen by the *Tartars* to *China*, *Gore* his Journey hath made it out of doubt; alſo that *Pequin* is *Cambalis*, that is, the *Citie of the King*. I doe conceiue that *Polo* *Mangi* was the nine Southern Prouinces of *China*; the Northern before conquered was knowne by the name of *Cathay*; a name by the *Tartars* giuen to diuers Countreys, as *Cara Catay* and *Catay Calay* and Great *Catay*. This Great *Catay* is *China*.

Polo and other Authors ſpeake of *Cathay* and *Mangi* as two; perhaps the *Tartars* ſo accounting the one, to wit, the North parts being formerly ſubiect to them, and called by their preſent name, the other called *Mangi* in contempt, as the *Romans* called the ſubiect *Britannia* of this Iſland by their former name, and the others *Picts* and *Barbarians*; and as our Anceſtors called thoſe *Britons* which withſtood them *Walſor Welch* in a kind of diſgrace. Nay ſill the Northern *Chinnois* call the Southern *Mangis*, that is, *rude or barbarous*, as the Iſcuits haue taught vs. But neither *Cathay*, nor *Mangi*, was then the name which they aſſumed, but was giuen them by the *Tartars*, as *China* is a name vnknowne to them now. If any will find no other *Cambalis*, nor *Cathay* but *Pequin* and *Chike*, I will not contend, though my Reaſons elude where giuen out of *Polo*, and *Choggi* *Monnet*, and others, with the former Relations of *Polo* and *Alibacen*, make me ſcrupulous, and ſill tobeleeue ſome greater Prince or Can with his *Cambalis* or Court in the more Northern parts of *Aſia*, then the Iſcuits could leaue off; which the *China* iealousie, admitting no entercouſe of Strangers, and the many quarrelling *Tartar* Princes in the way haue concealed from vs hitherto.

The great blacke ſpace on the North-weſt hath in the Originall certayne Characters in it which expreſſe it: whether it intendeth Mountayns which their Art could no better expreſſe, and the Rulers thence running may import, or that ſandy Deſert on the North-weſt, I cannot ſo well determine. The Iſcuits ſay, that *ab occaſu qui Aquiloni vicinior eſt, contermina viſitur arena. ſiccuti ager, qui multorum dierum penuria aduenarum exercitui ab Sinarum Regna non detinet, aut ſpſit*. I rather thinke that it is *Cara Catay* or *Blacke Catay*, before often mentioned, both Mountaynous, and Deſert, and perhaps coloured blackiſh, as the name intimates, by black lands, or as health grounds with vs: it was the firſt *Tartarian* Conqueſt, and beginning of the greateſt *Progreſſus* which this World hath yielded; the Country before of *Preſbyter Ioannes* *Aſiaticus*.

The wall is in this forme in the original, not in the Picture made vp of Mountaynes, wherein I thinke they had not art to imitate Nature; the Art in the whole Map much reſembling our old Maps, of wooden prints, fue that I ſee no one Mountaine preſented in ſwelling faſhion to the Eye. The Lands are very many with their Characters, but poorly delineated, their names hee omitted for their vncertainty: ſo little (and yet how much more then any other) doe wee giue you of *China*, till Time giue vs more. The Degrees are not ſo perfectly accommodated to the Map, by reaſon that we muſt at once follow the *Chinien* Map which had no Degrees (nor could their Art without Degrees giue eury place his juſt longitude or latitude) and the Iſcuits Rules: yet we haue come ſomewhat neere, as may be ſeene. Other things appear in the Hiſtory.

C H A P. VIII.

A continuation of the Iſcuits Acts and obſervations in China ſitt Rites: his death and ſome yeares after. Of Hancou or Quinquay.

An Extract of MONTAIGNE'S travels.

His hauing with *Pantagius* eyes taken ſome view of the Kings Palace, and with *Ricinus* of their whole Government, I hold it fit, not to leaue this *China* Apollie (ſo *Ricinus* is called) till we haue ſeene ſome fruit of his labours, and after his death. He tells vs that three dayes after he had bene thru vp in the Palace of Strangers as yee haue read, they were brought forth into the Kings Palace to performe the wonted Rites to the Kings Throne. This is done in a large and glorious Court or Porch, where 30000. men might be conſtantly at the end whereof is a high Chamber, vnder which by five great doores is a paſſage to the Kings Lodgings; in that Chamber is the Kings Throne, where anciently he ſate to heare and diſpatch buſineſſes and ſuites, and to receive the Rites of Magiſtrates, rendering thanks for their Preſentments. But in the preſent ſolitaries of the King, thoſe Rites are done to the Empty Throne, many there gratulating the King eury day. In this Court, enuironed with ſtately Workes, 30000. ſouldiers watch eury night, beſides others watching in Towers without, a ſtrong ſquad from another. In each of the five Gates is an Elephant, which with theſe Guides goe forth when it is day; and thoſe are admitted which come to congratulate the King. Theſe come in a peculiar Habing, ſet with an Iuory Table in their hand to couer * their mouth, and exhibit their kneeling and bowing to the Throne, as they are taught by Officers of Rites or Maſters of Ceremonies: one crying out to that purpoſe at the performance of each geſture. The Gouernour of Strangers hauing thru them vp, firſt petitioned the King ſharply againſt *Mathan* the Eunuch and them, but ſeing no anſwer, he petitioned more gently but would haue them ſent from *Pequin*, which the King liked not, yet without Petition from the Magiſtrates would not detayne them. The Eunuchs alſo laboured their ſtay for feare the Clockes would miſcarry beyond their ſkill. The Kings Mother hearing of a ſeife-ſtriking bell ſent for it, and the King ſent it, but to prevent her al-ſo, cauſed the Wheelles to be looſed, ſo that not ſeeing the viſe, the ſent it againe.

When the Rituall Magiſtrates could get no anſwer to their Petitions, for not touching their ſtay at *Pequin*, the *Proſſes* ſent to *Ricinus* that he would make a *Pequin* to giue him leave to ſtay there in pretence of Sickneſſe and Phyſicke, which hee did, and alſo other preſently answered, giuing him libertie to hyre a Houſe; continuing alſo his former allowance, with foure ſeruants to bring it eury fifth day, (Fleſh, Salt, Rice, Wine, Heaps, Wood,) and another ſeruant in continual attendance: ſo that now they recovered libertie and credit. The Eunuchs alſo told them of the Kings approbation of their ſtay; and they had out of the Treſurie eight Crowns a moneth, which their goeth much further then here: and the Captaynes of Strangers by open Sentence gaue them full libertie. One of the *Calais* and then the onely became their great friend, with his Sonne, after ſome *European* Preſents, which hee bountifully rewarded: likewise the ſupreme Pretident of the Court of Magiſtrates, and other of the Grands, beſides the Eunuchs of the Palace, and ſome of the Queenes and Royall family. Amongſt others was *Femuchep*, a great man, who for withſtanding the Eunuchs capotic in *Pequin* Prouince, was deſtried, whipped, and three yeares impriſoned; but by others honoured with Temples, Odours, Images, and Bookes in praife of him, as a Saint, and the King wearied by multitude of Petitions for him, granted him againe his libertie. Alſo *Luſſow* a great Magiſtrate and Mathematician as they accounted, became *Ricinus* his Scholler, and was baptiſed *Leo*, borne at *Hancou*, the chiefe Citie of *Sechin*, ſo with other afterward.

Yet had *Ricinus* a great enemy of a great Learned man of *Hancou* Colledge, who in aſſe of the Idol-ſci had put away his Wife, and * profeſſed himſelfe one of their Votaries or Shauellers, drew many Diſciples after him, and writ many Bookes againſt the *Literati* *Saſi*; and writ alſo againſt *Ricinus* his bookes. One of the Kings *Almonſers* ſcuffed him to the King by Petition, and the King reſcribng ſeuereſly, hee ſue himſelfe: yea, the King ordaind, that if the Magiſtrates would become Apollata ſhaudings, they ſhould leaue their Robes and get them to the Deſerts; many accordingly chuſing rather to leaue their Offices, then their Idols. One *Thacou* was ſo famous, that the chiefe Queene daily worſhipped his habit, (nauing no other mean of entecourſe) and ſo proud was he ſent to *Ricinus* to come and viſite him, with the rites of kneeling. But on occaſion of ſearch for a Libell againſt the King, hee was found guilty of writing all of the King, for not proſſing Idols, and of ill viage to the Kings Mocher, for which hee was Whipped ſo, that before they could adde burne, hee dyed. One which by torments confeſſed himſelfe author of the Libell, had 1600. gibbets plucked from his fleſh and then beheaded, a Death moſt (for the diſtinction of the body) abominable to the *Chinnois*.

Xaucum residence.
Hoaguan a three-eyed Monster.

Portugals curious to China.

Fasts and processions.

Insuperableness.

Severities.

Hell under takes a Portugall this Hell Passport. Infernal destruction.

Christians' Dap. nica.

Infernal v. p. rore.

The Jesuite threatned to death.

Trainers.

Sciambai in Nauquis Province described.

In the Xaucum Residence some stirre happened, whilst they brought to the Jesuits house their Idoll Hoaguan, made with three Eyes, one in his forehead (for though the Chinese have no Idols representing any formes but humane, yet they admit Monsters) as their God of Eye-light, for whom they intended to build him a Temple, and carryed him from house to house a begging to that purpose; the Jesuits refusing to give them. Rumours also of Mahumans detaying the Portuguese, set forth in Pictures those things which the Chinese hated in the Portugals, as their short Garments (seeming to them ridiculous) praying on Beads by men in Temples, with Swords going to them, kneeling on one knee; & their quarrels one with another and combats. Women who spoke for them and visited them. It happened also that by occasion of a great Drought, Processions and Fasts were commanded, and the Shambles shut vp, the Governour and people in distant places appointed thereto, begging rayne with their bowings; and when this prayed in, they brought an Idoll out of the Suburbs, called *Loa*, which was carryed about, adorned, offered too, with no better success. Hereupon they consulted a Witch, which said the Cause Idoll) which caused some conspiracy, quenched with the *Tauis* favour and the rayne following. At *Nanquin* one borne at *Sciambai*, and hith pronounced Licentiat in the examination 1597, was Doctour, amongst three hundred and eight, of which number four and twenty were chosen of *Hanlin* Colledge, after the *China* course of best Writing, of which hee was the fourth: this Choice of four and twenty is but for probationers, for at the most after long tryalls a principal.

I thought to add to this by the same that *Ligeus* a learned friend of the Jesuits, had beene put from his great place into I know not what petty Office, for too light demeanour and too frequent Chit-chat-play, which continued three yeeres. The *Hollanders* much impounered the Portugals by taking the *Lapan Ship* of *Amacao*, the fewell of the Jesuits benefice. At *Nanquin* they Cohuerted three of the blood royall, Baptized by the names of *Aldebar*, *Gastar*, *Balthazar*, and their Mother a woman much addicted to Idols, and observing the *China* Fast, as they so them a Charter, called the D-rectorie of Hell, which the Shaueling Impostors had sold her, written to the Infernal King, to give her good entertainment, and remit her punishment. The Jesuits exchanged their Images for her Idols, and their Ecclesiastical Fast for that *Pagan*.

At *Nanquin*, *China* also was baptised by the name of *Ignatius*, striking the ground four times first with his forehead, and reciting the profession of his Faith, which hee deliered in writing to the Fathers; the contents of which and of *Paulus*, are exprest in our Author. The *Hollanders* sought entrance into *China*, to bee admitted Trade in *Enguin* Province, but were denied notwithstanding both promises and threats. Fears of them made the Portugals at *Amacao* begin to flee to a Tower and to fortifie. But a quarrell falling betwix a Regular, and a Secular Priest, one their Country, pertrivard that *Cataneo* then there intended to get the Kingdome, wherof hee had lucke expedite; at *Canton* was twice fo Whipped that hee dyed fower after the stripes, as hee was entering the Prison. At *Nanquin* three thousand were found, Anno 1606, to have conspired the Death of the Magistrates, and to invade the ancient Treasures. Those which were taken were put in thofe Pillorie boards, which force them to stand till their Legges rot, some of them holding out a Fortnight, as was thought by bribing the Executioners (the suspicion heretof was by some cast on the Jesuits. Two Guides or Fraternities were erected of *China* Couverts.

Ziu Paulus the learned Count, being to leave his place for three yeeres, to mourn for his Father at *Sciambai* his native Towne, he obtained *Cataneo* to bee sent thither with him, where hee staid two yeeres. This is one of the meanest sorts of Cities which they call *Hon*, one hundred fortie and foure Italian myles from *Nanquin*, and in that Province, in twenty nine Degrees, ouer against *Cwai* and the *Lapman* lands, within a little of the Easterne Sea. The name *Sciambai*, signifieth on the Sea; and it is fortified with Garrisons and a Fleet against the *Lapmanians*, being a passage with a good winde of foure and twenty houres sayle. The walls are two myles compalle, the Suburbs contayne many Houses as the City; so that there are numbered fortie thousand Houholds (by this you may measure the frequency of great Cities) the Territorie is an even Playne, and so cultivated that they seeme a Citie of Gardons, full also of Villages, 60 Hamlets, Towers, containing twenty thousand Families in this Townes jurisdiction, there being in that Circuit 300000. men. This Iurisdiction alone, payeth to the King the yerely value of 150000. Golden Crowns, in the weight of Silver, and as much in Rice, in all 300000. (whence the incredible revenues of this Crown appears also credible) the Ground being fertile of Cotton

Cotton, whereof there are reckoned 300000. Weavers, *Peguin* and other parts being heere served with Cloathes. There are many good wits and Students, a good Ayre, and they live long, wits.

Wee are now come to the Death of Father *Riccio* (the Author of our Jesuitical Discourses of *China* hitherto; occasioned by multitude of businesse that yeere, five thousand Magistrates coming to visite the King, and five thousand others standing for their Docthorship, of which about three hundred only are chosen. Wearyed with his Ecclesiastical Fasts also and labour of building a Church, hee fell sicke and dyed, May 11. 1610. having much propagated the Gospell by his writings, and furthered it by his Mathematickes. For all *Sciambai* have beene there more encreased by Writing then Preaching. Hee dyed leauing much sorrow to his friends and care also in that *China* scrupulosity, how and where to interre him. It was the counsell of their friends, to put vp a Petition to the King, wherupon they resolved, and *Pantogia* by Doctor *Loes* helpe, thus Petitioned in behalfe of Riccis his Corps. 1 James Pantogia, *Subiell* of the Kingdomes of the great West, Offer a Supplication in behalfe of another Forrainger now deceased. I humbly beseech your great Clemencie for a place of Buriall, that your Royall beneficence may extend to all, even Strangers of remotest Regions. 1 James Pantogia am a Stranger of a most remote Kingdome, but mooued with the vertue and fame of your most Noble Kingdome, haue in three yeeres sayle, with much trouble, passed his

ther above five thousand leagues. In the eight and twentieth yeere of Vanlie, (for so, as wee, they account their yeeres by the Kings raigne) in the twelfth *Moone*, I, with Matthew Riccis, came into your Court; where wee presented some gifts, and haue since beene subsganed at the Kings charge. The nine and twentieth yeere of Vanlie, in the first *Moone*, we Petitioned your Matelty for a place of residence, and haue many yeeres enjoyed the Royall house. In the eight and thirtieth yeere of Vanlie, the eighteenth day of the third *Moone*, Riccis dyed. I, a Client of the Kingdome of the great West, remayne in it subject of you. The returne into our Country is long. And I now, after so many yeeres, I say, I suppose that you may be numbered to the people which followeth your Royal Charist, that your Clemencie, like that of Yao, may not contayne it selfe in the Kingdome of *China* alone. So proceeds hee to set forth the good parts of Riccis, and with a long supplication to begge a place of Buriall, some Field, or part of a Temple; and hee, with his follower, should observe their wanted Prayers to the Lord of Heaven, for thousands of yeeres to him and his Mother. This Libell was written with peculiar forme, Characters, Seales; many Rites herein necessarily observed. Before any bee offered to the King, it must bee viewed of some Magistrate; and they got this to bee allowed by one which is Master of Requests, which lent it presently to the King. They must also haue many Copies thereof, to shew to those Magistrates, to whom it appertaines; which they did: one of them affirming, That Riccis deserved a Temple also, with his Image to bee there set up. This message hee sent them by another: for when they fauour a cause, they shew great strangeness. The King commonly answers the third day (except hee mislike, for then hee suppresseth) and sends it to the Magistrate that had presented it, who shewes which of the sixe is the peculiar Court, which iudgeth of these things: This being sent to the Ritual Tribunal. Their answer is sent to the King within a Moneth (which there is a short space) and repeating the

40 Petition verbatim, and the Kings command to the peculiar Office, answers what the Law sayth in that case, and concludes the Petition to bee agreeing to Iustice, and earnestly pleades and sues for confirmation. The King sends this answers to the *Catiao*, which subscribed his approbation; which being sent againe to the King, hee subscribed with his own hand *Xi*, that is *Fine*, or *bee done*, which the third day after was delivered them.

The Jesuits hauing fo speedie and prosperous success, be thought of gratifying their friends, which had furthered this designe with Dyals, especially to the *Catiao*, which vied *Pantogia* very kindly and writ to the Governour of *Peguin* to looke out a place fitting. Three or foure were offered to their choyce, one of which much pleased them.

It was about a quarter of a myle from one of the Citie gates, built by an Eunuch, who now was condemned for some crime; and left his Palace which hee hadere builded, with the expence of about foureteen thousand Duckars (which in *China* is a great summe, in that cheapness of all things, farre beyond European computation) should fall into the hands of spy-ers (the goods of Eunuchs in this Kingdome, usually becoming his which first can catch them) hee consecrated his Palace, and made it a Temple, maintaining therein one Priest. Such Palaces many of the Magistrates haue neere to the Cities, as retiring places and Trifullnes for their Mules. The portraiture of this whole Houle, with the Garden, and other appurtenances, *Trigantius* hath set forth in Picture; being after the *China* building, with the doore Southwards, and so running a great length into the North, with foure great Halls one beyond another; in the middle parts, and on each side, Chambers and other Rooms; beyond all the Garden, the pillars of Timber bearing up the roote; the walls and pavement of Bricke. The outmost of these Halls was converted into a Temple or Idoll-Chappell, in which was a great Altar of Stone and Bricke cunningly fretted, painted red (a colour forbidden to priuate Houses) and vp on the middle thereof sat a huge Monster of Earth, gilded from top to toe, of massive quantitie. The Chinese call it *Ti cam*, the God (as they fable) of the Earth & Treasures, as *Pluto* in the Poets.

50 It was condemned for some crime; and left his Palace which hee hadere builded, with the expence of about foureteen thousand Duckars (which in *China* is a great summe, in that cheapness of all things, farre beyond European computation) should fall into the hands of spy-ers (the goods of Eunuchs in this Kingdome, usually becoming his which first can catch them) hee consecrated his Palace, and made it a Temple, maintaining therein one Priest. Such Palaces many of the Magistrates haue neere to the Cities, as retiring places and Trifullnes for their Mules. The portraiture of this whole Houle, with the Garden, and other appurtenances, *Trigantius* hath set forth in Picture; being after the *China* building, with the doore Southwards, and so running a great length into the North, with foure great Halls one beyond another; in the middle parts, and on each side, Chambers and other Rooms; beyond all the Garden, the pillars of Timber bearing up the roote; the walls and pavement of Bricke. The outmost of these Halls was converted into a Temple or Idoll-Chappell, in which was a great Altar of Stone and Bricke cunningly fretted, painted red (a colour forbidden to priuate Houses) and vp on the middle thereof sat a huge Monster of Earth, gilded from top to toe, of massive quantitie. The Chinese call it *Ti cam*, the God (as they fable) of the Earth & Treasures, as *Pluto* in the Poets.

60 The outmost of these Halls was converted into a Temple or Idoll-Chappell, in which was a great Altar of Stone and Bricke cunningly fretted, painted red (a colour forbidden to priuate Houses) and vp on the middle thereof sat a huge Monster of Earth, gilded from top to toe, of massive quantitie. The Chinese call it *Ti cam*, the God (as they fable) of the Earth & Treasures, as *Pluto* in the Poets.

He was a King of old, accounted a Saint.

Place assigned to the Jesuits.

Spylers spoiled.

Chappell of *Ti cam* the Chinese.

were so necessary. *Mandemb* mentions *Warres* at *Quinsay* in his time; *Nicolo di Conti* (which was here about the yeere 1440.) sayth, *Quinsay* was in his time new built, of thirtie milles compass.

But that *Quinsay* of *Conti* and *Abacen*, is perhaps *Thienfo*, being (as they lay it) neerer *Cambala*. I confesse, much may be layd for *Nangin* to finde *Quinsay* there, and I have given such note * vpon it, to incite industrious search, because it was the Ancient royall Chamber: Neither could I finde any other Royall Citie but *Peguin*, in *Ricim* or other Writers, till *Triguanus* later Epistles intimated, that the *Chequian* Prouince hath bene sometimes Imperiall; which I conceive to be that time of *Farfur* mentioned by *Pole*, and *Hansen* his *Quinsay*.

Anno 1618. *Triguanus* writes of Persecution in *China*, raised by an Idolotrous Magistrate in *Nangin*, and effected by bribes, which hath caused the *Iesuites* to bee sent thence: but because our intelligence is little, wee will leaue them here (as much as lyeth in our power) and write some of the other Northerne people; having first given you a briefe view of a *Frenchmans* trauell, *Monfieur de Marsart*, who having trauelled thorow the *Indies*, saluted *Canton* in *China*, and *Canchinchina*; whose knowledge therefore could not bee so fild, as the *Iesuites*, nor yet is so contemptible that it should vtterly bee forgotten. Wee will therefore present his Service as a *French Page*, and one attending the *Iesuites* Grauitie, and thus as it were bearing their trayne.

Macao.

From *Malaca* I went to *Macao*, (neere a moneths trauell) which is a Citie situate on the Sea coast, at the foote of a great Mountayne, where in times past the *Portugals* had a great Fort, and to this day, there bee yet many that dwell there. This is the entrance into *China*, but the place is of no great importance; they are *Gentiles*, and there the Inhabitants begin to bee faire complexioned.

Canchinchina.

Thence I trauelled two moneths to the *Cochinchines*, finding nothing by the way worthy of note; nor so much as necessary, so that wee were fayne to carrie our Victuals with us, the greatest part of the way. They are Subjects to the King of *China*, but sometimes they rebell and make Warre against him; and there is great number of *Christians* among them. Their Kings treasure consisteth in a certayne kinde of Wood, called *Calamba*: for which the *Portugals* pay one hundred Crownes a pound, to make *Pater-nosters* with. It is of a mixt colour, with blacke and yellow veynes; the better sort of it is moyst, so that being cut it expelleth a kinde of fat oylie liquor. It groweth out of a certayne Tree, which they fell and let it lye a while a putrifying: then they bruite it, and within the same, they finde this kinde of Wood, like many hard knots. They are a very white people, because there it begins to bee cold, low of Stature, flat Nosed, and little Eyed, with a very few hayres on their Chins, and Mustachoes: none at all on their Cheekes, the hayre of the Head they weare long like Women, tyed vp with a blacke silke hayre-lace, and weare a flat Cap vpon them. They weare Cloath-breeches made very leuell, and a short Robe about them, like a Maister of the chamber of Accounts.

Huge Serpents.

There are found a kinde of Serpents that will swallow vp a whole Stagge; two Friers assured me that traueiling in that Countrey, together with fixtene other men, through a Fennemarth, about the dawning of the day, they met to their seeming, a great Tree lying along the ground, the boughes being lopped off, vpon which they all began to sit downe and rest themselves: but no sooner were they fast, but that which they tooke for a Tree, fiercely rowled it selfe from vnder them, and leit them all to picke straws on the ground, for indeed this was one of those Serpents.

Wild Beasts.

this of Lions is doubtful.

Their custome is (as they say) to put themselves in ambush among the boughes of a Tree, and when they espie their prey to draw neere, bee it Man or Beast, they fall vpon him with open mouth and deuoure it. There are also store of *Lions*, *Leopards*, and *Tigers*: and there the Fruits begin to resemble those of these parts: but the Fruit, which about all others aboundeth there, is the *CMarabou*.

Canton in China.

This is not the principall Citie, except of this Prouince, and fortrauelling further, he speaks true of ourdinarie courtes, but other accidents and the Art Libral of the Fathers have found admittance, as in the former Relations is seen. This testimonie touching *Iesuites* is worth the noting: For some of our which vpon great offers could not find; meane to enter *China*, haue held that in he haue bene there.

Canton in China.

This is not the principall Citie, except of this Prouince, and fortrauelling further, he speaks true of ourdinarie courtes, but other accidents and the Art Libral of the Fathers have found admittance, as in the former Relations is seen. This testimonie touching *Iesuites* is worth the noting: For some of our which vpon great offers could not find; meane to enter *China*, haue held that in he haue bene there.

Canton in China.

This is not the principall Citie, except of this Prouince, and fortrauelling further, he speaks true of ourdinarie courtes, but other accidents and the Art Libral of the Fathers have found admittance, as in the former Relations is seen. This testimonie touching *Iesuites* is worth the noting: For some of our which vpon great offers could not find; meane to enter *China*, haue held that in he haue bene there.

Canton in China.

This is not the principall Citie, except of this Prouince, and fortrauelling further, he speaks true of ourdinarie courtes, but other accidents and the Art Libral of the Fathers have found admittance, as in the former Relations is seen. This testimonie touching *Iesuites* is worth the noting: For some of our which vpon great offers could not find; meane to enter *China*, haue held that in he haue bene there.

Canton in China.

This is not the principall Citie, except of this Prouince, and fortrauelling further, he speaks true of ourdinarie courtes, but other accidents and the Art Libral of the Fathers have found admittance, as in the former Relations is seen. This testimonie touching *Iesuites* is worth the noting: For some of our which vpon great offers could not find; meane to enter *China*, haue held that in he haue bene there.

Canton in China.

This is not the principall Citie, except of this Prouince, and fortrauelling further, he speaks true of ourdinarie courtes, but other accidents and the Art Libral of the Fathers have found admittance, as in the former Relations is seen. This testimonie touching *Iesuites* is worth the noting: For some of our which vpon great offers could not find; meane to enter *China*, haue held that in he haue bene there.

Canton in China.

This is not the principall Citie, except of this Prouince, and fortrauelling further, he speaks true of ourdinarie courtes, but other accidents and the Art Libral of the Fathers have found admittance, as in the former Relations is seen. This testimonie touching *Iesuites* is worth the noting: For some of our which vpon great offers could not find; meane to enter *China*, haue held that in he haue bene there.

much as they are not able to goe: the reason they alleadge for it, is, that Women were made to no other end, then to keepe at home.

The *Christians* are not permitted to lye within the Citie, but as soone as Night approaches they must retire themselves to their Ships, being lawfull for them to Traffique whereouer they please by Day-light. And for their traffique, what rarities founer there bee throughout all *China*, are to bee had in this Citie, which are diligently brought thither, to wit, great store of cloath of Gold and Silke, Cabinets, wrought Vellets, Venus shells, Masie gold, and many other things. They will exchange or barter Gold for twice as much weight in Siluer; for they haue no coyned money, for when they would buy any thing, they carrie with them a piece of Gold, and will cut off as much as they intend to bestow on what they take. They make carouch them.

The Citie is gouerned by foure Rulers, and each one hath his Gouvernement, or Circuit apart, secluded from each other: those of one quarter dare not goe and labour in another, and those which cause themselves to bee carried, from one part to another, must change their Beersers every night, vnlesse there bee any complaint made of some misdemeanour, committed within the Circuit: for then they shut them suddenly, or if they bee shut, they open them not, till the offender be found. The King bestowes these commands on those who are best Learned. This is a most faire Citie, and well built, very neare as bigge as *Pera*, but there the Houses are arched, and nothing neare so high. There is so much Suggar in that Countrey, that it is by them very little by, yet is Silke in faire more great abundance, but withall more course then ours, by reason of their store, being so great as they are constrained to make it abroad in the Fields, on the thornours.) They obserue what quantitie of Wormes each Tree will bee able to feede, then ther the cods, when they are ready to bee spunne, which is done as they gather Apricocks: for indeed a farre off they appeare to bee so, and is a very fine sight to behold: they vie a strange kinde of Fishing with Cormorants. They tie their neckes a little about their thomackes, leik they should deuour the Fish they take: then comming to their Master, hee pulleth it a- liue, out of their throates: Likewise for water Fowle, they make vie of great Bot- dles with two holes, which they lase floating vp and downe the water a good while, to acquaint the Fowles therewith: then some fellows will waide vp to the necke in the water, thrusting their heads into those Bot- tles, and hauing a bagge vnderneath, come as neere the Fowle as they will, taking them with their hands, without the rest being afraid of it.

See *Pole*, *Peregrinus*, or this Fishing.

See *Pole*, *Peregrinus*, or this Fishing.

See *Pole*, *Peregrinus*, or this Fishing.

See *Pole*, *Peregrinus*, or this Fishing.

See *Pole*, *Peregrinus*, or this Fishing.

See *Pole*, *Peregrinus*, or this Fishing.

See *Pole*, *Peregrinus*, or this Fishing.

See *Pole*, *Peregrinus*, or this Fishing.

See *Pole*, *Peregrinus*, or this Fishing.

See *Pole*, *Peregrinus*, or this Fishing.

See *Pole*, *Peregrinus*, or this Fishing.

See *Pole*, *Peregrinus*, or this Fishing.

See *Pole*, *Peregrinus*, or this Fishing.

See *Pole*, *Peregrinus*, or this Fishing.



VOYAGES AND DISCOVERIES OF THE NORTH

PARTS OF THE WORLD BY LAND AND SEA, IN ASIA, EUROPE, THE POLAR REGIONS, AND IN THE NORTH-WEST OF AMERICA.

THE THIRD BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

A Treatise of Russia and the adjoining Regions, written by Doctor GILES FLETCHER, Lord Ambassadors from the late Queen Elizabeth, to THODOR, then Emperour of Russia.
A.D. 1588.



The Countrey of Russia was sometimes called *Sarmatia*. It hath the Name (as Comedoe supposes), for that it was parted into divers small, and yet absolute Governments, not pretending to be subject to the one, or the other. For *Russia* is but a name, which signifies, as much as *Paris*, or *Dionide*. The *Russ* were divided among them into *Archiebishops*, *Bishops*, and *Knights*, who, that the South parts of the Countrey, like *Scythia*, *Chersonesus*, and after *Lithuania*, each calling by it their own name. Of this partition it was called *Russia*, about the year from Christ 860. As for the conjecture which I finde in some Cosmographers, that the *Russ* Nation borrowed the name of the people called *Raxellans*, and were the very same Nation with them, it is farre fetched, and especially for the seat and dwelling of that people, which was betwixt the two Rivers of *Tanais*, and *Danubius*, as *Sirabe* reporteth, quite another way from the Countrey of *Russia*.

When I bare the name of *Sarmatia*, it was divided into two chiefe parts: the *White*, and the *Black*. The *White Sarmatia*, was all that part that lyeth towards the North, and on the side of the *Leifland*; as the Princes now called *Dnypa*, *Vagha*, *Vith*, *Vologda*, *Cargopol*, *Nemograd*, &c. Country that lyeth Southward, towards the *Enxan* or *Black Sea*: as the Duke of *Volodimer*, of *Moscow*, *Razan*, &c. Some have thought that the name of *Sarmatia* was first taken from one *Sarmes*, whom *Moset* and *Iaphet* call *Alfemeter*, Sonne to *Iokan*, and nephew to *Eber*, of *Gen. 10*. the posteritie of *Sem*. But this seemeth to be nothing but a conjecture taken out of the like of *Gen. 10*.

The borders

of Russia.

The Shires of

Russia.

The Provinces or Counties got by Conquest.

The breadth and length of the Country.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

The chief Rivers of Russia.

of the name *Astermathe*. For the dwelling of all *Lakians* posteritie is described by *Moses*, to have bene betwixt *Mejbaor Masius*, (an Hill *between Ammon*) and *Syphace*, neere to the River *Emphates*. Which maketh it very unlikely, that *Astermathe* should plant any Colonies so farre off, into the North and North-west Countries. It is bounded Northward by the *Lappes*, to the North *Qeen*. On the South-side by the *Tatars*, called *Chrim*. Eastward they have the *Neargians* on *Tatar*, that possesse all the Country on the East side of *Volga*, towards the *Caspian Sea*. On the West and South-west border, lie *Lithuania*, *Lumnia* and *Polonia*.

The whole Country being now reduced under the Government of one, contrary to the chiefe Provinces of Shires. *Volodimer* (which beareth the first place in the Emperours title, because their House came of the Dukes of that Country.) *Asterk*, *Nisnigrod*, *Phirke*, *Smolensk*, *Nogograd velica*, (or *Nogograd* of the low Country) *Reituss*, *Tamulane*, *Belozance*, *Reger*, *Dynia*, *Congopolis*, *Moskora*, *Pogba*, *Yugha*, *Gulaisa*. These are the natural Shires pertaining to *Russia*, but farre greater and larger then the Shires of *England*, though not so well peopled. The other Countries or Provinces, which the *Russ* Emperours have gotten perswaded of late to their other Dominion, are these which follow, *Tverra*, *Toughbora*, *Permia*, *Velich*, *Rudgheria*, *Chernig*, *Ondaria*, *Obdaria*, *Condora*, with a great part of *Siberia* : where the people though they be not natural *Russes*, yet obey the Emperour of *Russia* and are ruled by the Lawes of his Country, paying customes and taxes as his owne people doe. Besides these hee hath vnder him the Kingdome of *Cacasa* and *Astracan*, gotten by Conquest not long since. As for all his possessions in *Lithuania* (to the number of thirtie great Townes and more,) with *Nearg* and *Dorpin* *Lumnia*, they are quite gone, being surprised of late yeeres by the Kings of *Poland* and *Sweden*. These Shires and Provinces are reduced all into four *hanselkions*, which they call *Chetvrid*: (that is *Tetrarchies*, or *Fourth parts*. Whereof wee are to speake in the Title or Chapter, concerning the Provinces, and their manner of Government.

The whole Country is of great length and breadth. From the North to the South (if you measure from *Caletsk* *Shire*, which beareth somewhat Eastward) it reacheth in length about four thousand two hundred and sixtie verst, or myles. Notwithstanding the Emperour of *Russia* hath more territorie Northward, far beyond *Caletsk* unto the River of *Tomsk*, the runneth a thousand verst, well nigh beyond *Pekinga*, neere to *Wardensburg*, but not intire so clearly limited, by reason of the Kings of *Sweden* and *Denmarke*, that haue diuers Townes there as well as the *Russ*, plotted together the one with the other : every one of them claiming the whole North part as his owne right. The breadth (if you take from that part of his Territorie that lyeth farthest Westward on the *Nearg* side, to the parts of *Siberia* Eastward, where the Emperour hath his Garrisons) is four thousand and four hundred verst, or thereabouts. A Verst (by their reckoning) is the thousand pace, yet lesse by one quarter then an *English* myle. If the whole dominion of the *Russ* Emperour were all habitable, and peopled in all places, as it is in some, hee would either hardly hold it all within one Regiment, or be too mighty for all his neighbour Princes.

The soyle of the Country for the most part is of a bright sandy soyle, yet very much diversified in place from place. For they haue of such things as growe out of the earth. The Country Northward, towards the parts of *Saint Nicholas* & *Caletsk* (which are the Townes where it is first begun, the full of desert Woods by reason of the Climate, and extremity of the cold in Winter time. So that we cannot along the River *Volga*, between the Cities of *Cacasa* and *Astracan* : where (notwithstanding the Soyle is very fruitful) it is almost all being covered upon the River *Volga* by the Ice of the winter, the Emperour hath some few Castles with Garrisons in them. This happeneth by means of the *Chrim* *Tartars*, that with their *hanselkions* come to dwell there, (being a wilde and wastefull) nor suffer the *Russ* *Volga* is farre off with the strength of his Country) to people those parts. From *Volodimer* (which lyeth almost the third part of the way betwixt the Port of *Saint Nicholas*) downe towards *Caletsk*, and so towards the South part that bordereth vpon the *Chrim*, (which contrarieth the like state of the thousand seven hundred verst, or thereabouts) is a very fruitful and pleasant Country, yielding Pasture, and Corne, with Woods and water in very great plenty. The hke betwixt *Reger* (that lyeth South-east from *Moske*) to *Nogograd* and *Pogba*, that reach farthest towards the North-west. So betwixt *Moske*, and *Smolensk* (that lyeth South-west towards *Lithuania*) is a very fruitful and pleasant foyle. The whole Country differeth very much from itselfe; by reason of the yeeres : so that a man would maruaile to see the great alteration and difference betwixt the Winter and the Summer in *Russia*. The whole Country in the Winter lyeth vnder Snow, which falleth continually, and is sometime of a yard or two thicke, but greater towards the North. The Rivers and other waters are all frozen vp, a yard or more thicke, how swift or how slow they be : and this continueth commonly five Moneths, viz. from the beginning of November; till towards the end of March, what time the Snow becometh to melt. So that it would be a frost in a man to looke abroad at that time, and see the winter face of that Country. The sharpness of the ayre you may judge of by this : for that water dropped downe or cast

cast vp into the ayre, congealeth into Ice before it come to the ground. In the extremitie of Winter, if you hold a Pewter dish or pot in your hand, or any other metall (except in some chamber where their warme Stoves bee) your fingers will freeze fast vnto it, and draw of the skinn at the parting. When you stalle out of a warme roome into a cold, you shall sensibly feelle not only that ittrall abroad, but in the very Markets, and streets of their Townes, are mortallye brought into the Townes sitting dead and stiff in their Sleds. Diuers lofe their Noses, the tips of their Eares, and the balls of their Cheekes, their Toes, Feet, &c. Many times when drisen by hunger, and enter the Villages, tearing and rauening all they can finde : so that the winter is faine to see for the safeguard of their liues. And yet in the Summer time you shall see (the winter is now and face of a Country, the Woods (for the most part) which are all of Firre and vpon the (hidden) such varieties of Flowers, such noyse of Birds, (specially of Nightingales, that seeme to be more loud and of a more variable note then in other Countries) that a man shall not lightly trauell in a more pleasant Country.

And this fresh and speedy growth of the Spring there, seemeth to proceed from the benefit of the Snow : which all the Winter time being spread ouer the whole Country as a white robe, warme, and dissoluth (it is mo water) doth so thoroughly drench and soake the ground, that it is as the Heavens and Planets floure in great plenty and varietie, in a very short time. As the Wine, July, and August being much warmer then the summer ayre in *England*.

The Country throughout, is very well warded with Springs, Rivers, and Ozeras or Lakes. Wherein the providence of God is to be noted, for that much of the Country being so farre inuaded with these Rivers, and that in very great number, that emptying themselves one into another, runne all into the Sea. Their Lakes are many and large, some of sixtie, eighty, a hundred, two hundred myles long, with breadth proportionate.

The chiefe Rivers are these, a *Volga*, that hath his head or spring at the roote of an Alder-tree, about two hundred verst above *Cheryslau*, and groweth so bigge by the increase of other Rivers by that time it cometh thither, that it is broad an *English* myle and more, and so runneth into the *Caspian Sea*, about two thousand and eight hundred verst or myles of length.

The next is *Berisbora* (now called *Nepet*) that dismeth the Country from *Lithuania*, and falleth into the *Encon* Sea.

The third *Tamul* or *Dona*, (the ancient bounder betwixt *Europe* and *Asia*) that taketh his head out of *Reger* *Ozera*, and so running through the Country of the *Chrim* *Tartars*, falleth into the great Sea lake, or meare, (called *Maria*) by the Citie of *Caletsk*. By this River (as the *Russ* tell the world by water, drawing your Boate (as their manner is) and so into all those parts of dippe of land, a few verds ouerthwart. Which was procured not once a little *Shimur* or narrow tent to *Congopolis*, who passed the River of *Permia*, and so into another called *Ocke*, whence he drew his Boate out into *Tamul*, and thence passed the whole way by water.

The fourth is called *Dynia*, many hundred myles long, that falleth Northward into the Bay of *Saint Nicholas*, and hath great Alabaster rockes on the banks towards the Sea side.

The fifth *Duna*, that emptyeth into the *Baltick Sea* by the Towne *Riga*.

The sixth *Duna*, that emptyeth into the Bay at *Salomsk* ninety verst from the Port of *S. Nicholas* the *Finland Sea* by the Towne *Tamul*. So that from the Port of *S. Nicholas* into the *Finland Sea*, and so into the Sound, you may passe all by water, as hath bene tryed by the *Russ*.

The seventh *Sachava*, that floweth into *Dynia*, and so into the North-sea.

The eighth *Ocke*, that floweth into the Bay of the *Baltick Sea*, and frameth into *Volga*.

The ninth *Moske*, that runneth thorow the Citie *Moske*, and giueth it the name.

There is *Nichola* also a very large and long River that riseth out of *Permia*, and falleth into *baguel* and in length far more, besides diuers other. The Pole at *Moske*, is fiftie five degrees ten minutes. At the Port of *Saint Nicholas* towards the North sixty three degrees and fifty minutes.

For kinds of Fruits, they haue Apples, Peares, Plammes, Cherries, Red and Blacke, (but the Black wild) Dece like Muske Milian, but more sweet & pleasant, Cucumbers and Gourds (which they call *Arbuse*) Raspes, Strawberries, and Hontiberries, with many other Berries in the Country.

M. Cole Mini-

ster to Sirie-

rime *Europe*

told me of a

lickish fol-

low, which is

from his Ma-

jesty's Table in

the next room,

I asked in and

paid the skin of

his tongue for

that I would

write a few

lines to sweet

himselfe.

The case also

of snow.

The chiefe Ri-

uers of Russia

The chiefe Ri-

uers of Russia

The chiefe Ri-

uers of Russia

The chiefe Ri-

uers of Russia

The chiefe Ri-

uers of Russia

The chiefe Ri-

uers of Russia

The chiefe Ri-

uers of Russia

The chiefe Ri-

uers of Russia

The chiefe Ri-

uers of Russia

The chiefe Ri-

uers of Russia

The chiefe Ri-

uers of Russia

The chiefe Ri-

uers of Russia

The chiefe Ri-

uers of Russia

The chiefe Ri-

uers of Russia

The chiefe Ri-

uers of Russia

The chiefe Ri-

uers of Russia

They have a kind of Squirrel that hath growing on the pinion of the shoulder bone, a long tuft of haire, much like unto feathers, with a far broader tayle then have any other Squirrels, which they moue and shake as they leape from tree to tree, much like unto a wing. They skile a large space, and seeme to flye withall, and therefore they call them *Letach Vochlo*, that is, the flying Squirrels. Their Hares and Squirrels in Summer are of the same colour with ours, in Winter the Hare changed her coate into milke white, the Squirrel into gray, whereof cometh the *Calabar*.

Deare Horses

Sheepe. I haue
seene some of
them in Rag-
land breed
twice a yeere;
the Ram hath
fourte hornes,
&c.

Fresh-water
fish.

Chap. 4.
The Chief Ci-
ties of Russia.

Mosko.

Brerfa, a su-
spect author,
or rather that
which now
bears his
name.

Mosko freed.

Nowograd.

They have fallow Deere, the Roe Bucke, and Goats very great store. Their Horses are but small, but very swift and hard, they traueil them vnthod both Winter and Summer, without all haue diuers of the principal kinds: First, great store of Hawkes; the Eagle, the Gersalcon, the Slighfaulcon, the Golt-hawke, the Tuffell, the Sparhawke, &c. But the principall Hawke that breedeth in the Country, is counted the Gersalcon.

Of other Fowles their principall kinds are the Swanne tame and wilde, (whereof they haue great store) the Stork, the Crane, the Tedder, of the colour of a Feasant, but farre bigger and luerth in the Fittre woods. Of Feasant and Partridge they haue very great plenty. An Owle there is of a very great bignesse, more vgly to behold then the Owles of this Country, with a broad face, and eares much like unto a man.

For fresh water Fish, besides the common sorts (as Carpe, Pike, Perch, Tench, Roach, &c.) they haue diuers kinds very good and delicate: as the Bellouge, or Bellougonia of four or five elnes long, the Ostrina or Sturgeon, the Seueriga, and Sterledy somewhat in fashon and taste like to the Sturgeon, but not so thicke or long. These four kinds of fish breed in the *Velba*, and are caught in great plenty, and serued thence into the whole Realme for a great food. Of the Roes of these four kinds they make very great store of Icaro or Caueary, as was said before. They haue besides these that breed in the *Velba*, a fish called the *Ribabala*, or white Salmon, which they account more delicate then they doe the red Salmon, whereof also they haue exceeding great plenty in the Rivers Northward, as in *Dynna* the River of *Colo*, &c. In the *Ozara* or Lake nere a Towne called *Perillane*, not farre from the *Mosko*, they haue a small fish which they call the fresh Herring, of the fashon, and somewhat of the taste of a Sea-herring. Their chiefe Townes for fish are, *Tarvianne*, *Bealomena*, *Nowograd*, *Astracan*, and *Cascan*: which all 30 yeeld a large Custome to the Emperour euer yeere for their trades of fishing, which they practise in Summer, but send it frozen in the Winter time into all parts of the Realme.

The chiefe Cities of Russia are, *Mosko*, *Nowograd*, *Roskone*, *Volodomer*, *Plesko*, *Smolensko*, *Larvianne*, *Perillane*, *Nisnowgrad*, *Volozda*, *Ustuck*, *Golmigror*, *Cascan*, *Astracan*, *Chergolus*, *Columna*.

The Cite of *Mosko* is supposed to bee of great antiquitie, though the first Founder bee vnknowne to the *Russe*. It seemeth to haue taken the name from the Ruer that runneth on the one side of the Towne. *Brerfa* the Chaldean in his fifth Booke telleth that *Nimrod* (whom o Colonies that name, as that *Mosko* planted both in *Asia* and *Europe*. Which may make some probability that the Cite, or rather the River whereon it is built, took the denomination from this *Mosko*: the rather, because of the climate or situation which is in the very farthest part and lift of *Europe*, bordering vpon *Asia*. The Cite was first enlarged by one *Enan* or *Iohn*, sonne to *Daniel*, that first enlarged his title of Duke into King: though that honour continued not to his posteritie: the rather because he was iussured into it by the Popes Legate, who at that time was *Innocentius* the fourth, about the yeere 1246, which was very much mistilied by the *Russe* people, being then a part of the Eastern or *Greece* Church. Since that time the name of this Cite hath growne more famous, and better knowne to the World: in somuch that not only the Province, but the whole Country of *Russia* is termed by some by the name of *Moskonia*, the Metropole Cite. The forme of this Cite is in a manner round, with three strong walls, circling the one within the other, and freets lying betwene, whereof the inmost wall, and the buildings clofed within it (lying fast as the heart within the bodie, fenced and watted with the River *Moskua*, that runneth close by it) is all accounted the Emperours Castle. The number of houses (as I haue heard) through the whole Cite (being reckoned by the Emperour a little before it was fired by the *Chrim*) was 41300. in all. Since the *Tatar* besieged and fired the Towne (which was in the yeere 1371.) there lieth waste of it a great breddth of ground, which before was well set and planted with buildings, specially that part on the South side of *Moskua*, built not long before by *Belissim* the Emperour for his Garrison of Souldiers, to whom he gave priuiledge to drinke Mele, and Beere at the drie or prohibited times, when other *Russe* 60 may drinke nothing but water, and for that cause called this new Cite by the name of *Nalbi*, that is, *Skinke* or *perre* in. So that now the Cite of *Mosko* is not much bigger then the Cite of *London*. The next in greatness, and in a manner as large, is the Cite *Nowograd*: where was committed (as the *Russe* sayeth) the memorable warre so much spoken of in Stories of the *Scythians*

thian seruants, that rooke Armes against their masters: which they report in this sort: *sc.* That the *Buierens* or Gentlemen of *Nowgrade* and the Territorie about (which onely are Souldiers after the discipline of those Countries) had warre with the *Tatars*. Which being well performed and ended by them, they returned homewards. Where they vnderbood by the way, *Pleasant* that their *Chology* or Bondslaves whom they left at home, had in their absence possided their flosie. Townes, Lands, Houses, Wiues, and all. At which newes being somewhat amazed, and yet

disdayning the villanie of their seruants, they made the more speed home: and so not farre from *Nowgrade* met them in wauike manner marching against them. Whereupon aduising what was left to be done, they agreed all to set vpon them with no other shew of weapon but with their Horse whips (which as their manner is, euery man rideth withall) to put them in remembrance of their ferule condition, thereby to terrifie them, and abate their courage. And so marching on, and lashing altogether with their whips in their hands they gaue the onlet, which seemed so terrible in the faces of their villaines, and stroke such a lenie into them of the smart of the whip which they had felt before, that they fled altogether like Sheepe before the Drivers. In memory of this victory the *Nowgradians* euer since haue stamped their Coine (which they call a *dingee* *Nowgradsky*, current thorow all *Russia*) with the figure of a Horse-man shaking a whip aloft in his hand. These two Cities exceed the rest in greatness. For strength their chiefe Townes are, *Vobiko*, *Smolensko*, *Cascan*, and *Astracan*, as lying vpon the borders. But for situation *Larvianne* farre exceedeth the rest. For besides the commodities that the soyle yeldeth of Pasture and Corne, it lieth vpon the famous River *Volga*, and looketh ouer it from a high banke very faire and stately to behold: whereof the Towne taketh the name. For *Larvianne* in that Tongue significth as much as a faire or famous Bayne. In this Towne (as may be guessed by the name) dwelt the *Russe* King *Pladimir*, surnamed *Larvianne*, that married the daughter of *Harald* King of England, by mediation of *Sueno* the Dane, as is noted in the *Danish* Stories about the yeere 1067.

The other Townes haue nothing that is greatly memorable, save many ruines within their walls. Which sheweth the decrease of the *Russe* People, vnder this government. The streets of their Cities and Townes in stead of paues, are planked with Firre trees, plained and layd vnclenoe the one to the other. Their houses are of wood without any lime or stone, built: very close and warme with Firre trees plained and piled one vpon another. They are fastned together with dents or notches at euery corner, and so clasped fast together. Betwixt the trees or timber they thrust in moss (whereof they gather plenty in their Woods, to keepe out the aire. Every house hath a pair of staires that lead vp into the chamber out of the yard or street after the *Scythian* manner. This building seemeth farre better for their Country, then that of stone and bricke: as being colder and more dampish then their wooden houses, specially of Firre, that is a dry and warme wood. Whereof the prouidence of God hath giuen them such store, as that you may build a faire house for twentie or thirtie Rubbels, or better more, where wood is most scant. The greatest inconueniences of their wooden building is the aptnesse for firing, which happeneth very oft, and in very fearful sort, by reason of the diminitie and fatnesse of the Firre, that being once fired, burneth like a Torch, and is hardly quenched till all bee burnt vp.

The far-name of the Imperiall house of *Russia*, is called *Rodan*: It rooke the originall (as is supposed) from the Kings of *Hungarie*. Which may seeme the more probable, for that the *Hungarian* Kings many yeeres agoe haue borne that name: as appeareth by *Benjamin* and other Stories written of that Country. For about the yeere 1059, mention is made of one *Beala* that succeeded his brother *Andreu*, who reduced the *Hungarians* to the *Christian* Faith from what was called *Beala* the hind, after whom succeeded diuers of the same name.

That their Ancestry came not of the *Russe* Nation, *Iuan* *vasilovich* father to this Emperour, would many times boast, dislayning (as should seeme) to haue his progenie deriued from the *Russe* blood. As namely to an *Engellish* his Gold-mint, that had recused Bullion of him to make certaine Plate: whom the Emperour commaunded to looke well to his weight. For my *Russe* (said he) are theues all. Whereat the Workman looking vpon the Emperour, began to smile. The Emperour being of quicke conceit, charged him to tell him what he smiled at. If your *Majesty* will pardon mee (quoth the Gold-mint) I will tell you. Your *Hignesse* said, that the *Russes* were all theues, and forgat in the meane while that your selfe was a *Russe*. I thought in (quoth the Emperour) but thou art deceived. For I am no *Russe*, my Ancestors were *Germanes* (till to they account of the *Hungarians*: to bee part of the *Germane* Nation, though indeed they come of the *Hungars*. That inuaded those Countries, and rested in those parts of *Pannonia*, now called *Hungarie*.

meane to recover themselves, and perhaps either by *Hungarian* assistance, by their Princes, or taking a Prince from *Hungary*: then assisted with *Germanes*, they began to recouer of that *Tartarian* disease, whereof still some Synonymes remaine.

Like lips, like
lucifer.

Tarvianne.

The manner
of Russe build-
ing.

Chap. 5.
Of the house
or Booke of
the Russe Em-
perour.

The Loufe *Beala*
is not naturall
Russe. See *sup.*
16, where the
Tatars de-
stroyed these
Cromreyes
then called
Vulgaria maior,
many led into
Hungarie: and
as *Barbas*
describ, bo in
Hungarie and
that *Bulgaria*
had better

The advancement of the house of Beala.

* Viti. A. D. 1788.

Since the Emperor bath been in duties Families, with manifold contributions.

The Emperor voluntarily killed his son.

We have since had two which have assured to be this De-merits, and have obeyed the State; thereof and their lines diffused as Countess.

Chap. 6. Of the manner of crowning or inauguration of the Russe Emperours.

How they aspired to the Dukedom of Volodemer (which was their first degree, and ingrating into *Russia*) and whether it were by Conquest, or by Marriage, or by what other means, I could not learn any certainty among them. That from these beginnings of a small Dukedom (that bare notwithstanding an absolute government with it, as at that time did also the other Shires or Provinces of *Russia*) this house of *Beala* spread it self forth, and aspired by degrees to chief of that House that advanced the Stocke, and enlarged their Dominions, were the three last that reigned before this Emperour, to wit, *Ivan Bassim*, and *Ivan* father to the other that reigneth at this time. Whereof the first that tooke unto him the name and title of Emperour, was *Bassim* father to *Ivan*, and grandfather to this man. For before that time they were contented to be called great Dukes of *Mosko*. What hath beene done by either of these three, and how much they have added to their first estate by Conquest or otherwise, may be seen in the Chapter of their Colonies, or Purchases perforce. For the continuance of the race, this House of *Beala* at this present * is in like case as are many of the greatest Houses of *Christendome*, the whole Stocke and Race concluded in one, two, or some few of the Blood. For beside the Emperour that now is, who hath no child (neither is like ever to have, for ought that may be commended by the constitution of his body, and the barrenness of his wife after so many years hope of the succession, and the posterity of that House. As for the other brother that was left the head in his furie with his walking staffe, or (as some say) of a thrust with the prong of his blow, may appear by his mourning and passion after his sonnes death, which never leue him till it brought him to the grave. Wherein may be marked the justice of God, that punished his delight in shedding of blood with this murder of his sonne by his owne hand, and so ended his dayes and tyrannie together, with the murdering of himselfe by extreme griefe, for this his unhappie and unnatural fact.

The Emperours younger brother of fixe or seven yeeres old (as was said before) is kept in a remote place from the *Mosko*, under the tuition of his mother and her kindred, of the house of the *Nagais*: yet not safe (as I have heard) from attempts of making away by practice of some that aspire to the succession, if this Emperour die without any issue. The Nurse that suckled him of certain meate (as I have heard) died presently. That he is naturally founte to *Ivan Vasilovitch*, the *Russe* People warrant it, by the fathers quality that beginneth to appear already in his tender yeeres. Hee is delighted (they say) to see Sheepe and other cattrell killed, and to looke on their throats while they are bleeding (which commonly children are afraid to behold) and to beate Greese and Henneus with a staffe till hee see them lie dead. Besides these of the male kind, there is a Widow, that lieth right in the succession, Sister to the old Emperour, and Aunt to this man, sometime Wife to *Magnus* Duke of *Helf*, Brother to the King of *Denmarke*, by whom she had one daughter. This woman since the death of her Husband hath beene allured againe into *Russia*, by some that lose the succession better then her selfe, which appeareth by the sequel. For her selfe with her daughter, so soone as they were returned into *Russia*, were thrust into a Nunnerie, where her daughter died this last yeere while I was in the Countrey, of no natural disease as was supposed. The mother remaineth still in the Nunnerie, where (as I have heard) she bewayleth her selfe, and curseth the time when she returned into *Russia*, excited with the hope of marriage, and other faire promises in the Emperours name. Thus it standeth with the Imperiall Stocke of *Russia*, of the House of *Beala*, which is like to determine in those that now are, and to make a conjunction of the *Russe* estate. If it be into a government of more better temper, and milder constitution, it will be happy for the poore people that are now oppressed with intolerable servitude.

The solemnities used at the Russe Emperours Coronation, are on this manner. In the great Church of *Preobrazhe* (or our Ladie) within the Emperours Caille is erected a Stage, whereon standeth a Scene that beareth upon it the Imperiall Cap and Robe of very rich stuffe. When the day of the Inauguration is come, there resort thither, first the Patriarch with the Metropolitans, Arch-bishops, Bishops, Abbots, and Priests, all richly clad in their Pontificalibus. Then enter the Deacons with the Quire of Singers. Who so soone as the Emperour setteth foot into the Church, beginne to sing: *Many yeeres may live noble Theodores Iuvenitich*, &c. Whereunto the Patriarch and Metropolitane with the rest of the Clergie, answer with a certaine Hymne, in forme of a Prayer, singing it all together with a great noise. The Hymne being ended, the Patriarch with the Emperour mount up the Stage, where standeth a Seat ready for the Emperour. Whereupon the Patriarch willet him to sit downe, and then placing himselfe by him upon another Seat provided for that purpose, boweth downe his head towards the ground, and sayeth this Prayer: *Oh Lord God King of Kings, Lord of Lords, which by thy Prophet Samuel didst choose thy servant David, and anoint him for King over thy People Israel, heare now our Prayers, and looke from*

from thy Sanctuary upon this thy Servant Theodore, whom thou hast chosen and exalted for King over these thy holy Nations, anoint him with the oyle of gladness, protect him by thy power, but upon his head a Crowne of Gold and precious Stones, give him length of dayes, place him in the Seat of Justice, strengthen his arms, make him subject unto him all the barbarous Nations. Let thy feare be in his whole heart, turne him from all error, and shew him the salvation of thy holy and universall Church, that hee may judge thy people with Iustice, and protect the children of the poore, and finally attayne everlasting life. This Prayer he speaketh with a lowe voyce, and then pronounceth a lowd: *All prayse and power is Gods the Father, the Sonne, and the Holy Ghost*. The Prayer being ended, he commandeth certayne Abbots to reach the Imperiall Robe and Cap: which is done very decently, and with great Solemnitie, the Patriarch withall pronouncing alowd: *Peace be unto all*. And so he beginneth another Prayer to this effect: *Now your selves together with us, and pray to him that reigneth over all. Preserve him (oh Lord) under thy holy protection, keep him that hee may doe good and holy things, let Justice shine forth in his dayes, that we may live quietly without strife and malice*. This is pronounced somewhat lowdly by the Patriarch, whereto hee addeth againe alowd: *Thou art the King of the whole world, and the Saviour of our soules: to thee the Father, Sonne, and Holy Ghost, be all prayse for ever and ever. Amen*. Then putting on the Robe and the Cap, he blesteth the Emperour with the signe of the Crosse, saying withall, in the Name of the Father, the Sonne, and the Holy Ghost.

The like is done by the Metropolitans, Archbishops, and Bishops: who all in their order come to the Chaire, and one after another blesteth the Emperour with their two fore-fingers. Then is said by the Patriarch another Prayer, that beginneth: *Omni holy Virgin Mother of God, &c.* After which a Deacon pronounceth with an high lowd voyce: *Many yeeres to Noble Theodore, great, honourable, beloved of God, great Duke of Volodemer of Mosko, Emperour, and Monarch of all Russia, &c.* Whereto the other Priests and Deacons that stand somewhat farre off by the Altar or Table, answer singing, *Many yeeres, many yeeres, to the Noble Theodore*. The same Note is taken up by the Priests and Deacons, that stande at the right and left side of the Church, and then altogether, they chaunt and thunder out singing: *Many yeeres to the Noble Theodore, great, honourable, beloved of God, great Duke of Volodemer, Mosko, Emperour of all Russia, &c.* These Solemnities being ended, first cometh the Patriarch with the Metropolitans, Archbishops, and Bishops, then the Nobilitie, and the whole Company in their order, to doe homage to the Emperour, bending downe their heads, and knocking them at his feet to the very ground.

The Stile wherewith hee is inueited at his Coronation, runneth after this manner. Theodore Iuvenitich, by the grace of God, great Lord and Emperour of all Russia, great Duke of Volodemer, Mosko, and Nouggrad, King of Cazan, King of Altiraan, King of Plesko, and great Duke of Smolensko, of Tverria, Ionghoria, Permia, Vadska, Bulghoria, and others, Lord and Autokraty, Beasloater, Lictant, Oudoria, Odobria, and Condenia, Commander of all Siberia, and of the North parts, and Lord of many other Countreies, &c.

This stile containeth in it all the Emperours Provinces, and setteth forth his greatness. And therefore they have a great delight and pride in it, and forgett not only their owne people but also Strangers that have any matter to deliver to the Emperour by Speech or writing) to repeat the whole forme from the beginning to the end. Which breedeth much caill, and sometimes quarrell betwixt them and the *Tartars*, and *Poland* Ambassadors: who refuse to call him *Czar*, that is Emperour, and to repeat the other parts of his long Stile. My selfe, when I had audience of the Emperour, thought good to salute him onely with thus much, viz. *Emperour of all Russia, great Duke of Volodemer, Mosko, and Nouggrad, King of Cazan, King of Altiraan*. The rest I omitted or purposed, because I knew they gloried, to have their Stile appear to be of a larger Volume then the *Queenes of England*. But this was taken in so full part, that the Chanceller (who then attended the Emperour, with the rest of the Nobilitie) the Emperours Stile was very long and could not so well be remembered by Strangers, that I had repeated so much of it, as though I knew that I gave honour to the rest, &c. But all would not serve till I commanded my Interpreter to say it all out.

The manner of their Government is much after the *Turkish* fashion: which they seeme to imitate as neere as the Countrey, and reach of their capacities in Politike Affaires will give them leave to doe.

The State and forme of their Government seemeth to apply all to the behoofe of the Prince, and that after a most open manner: as may appear by the *Sophismata* or secrets of their Government afterwards let downe, as well for the keeping of the Nobilitie and Commons in an vnder proportion, and farre vntuen balance in their severall degrees, as also in their Impeditions and Exactions, without any regard of Nobilitie or People: farther then it giueth the Nobilitie a kind of libertie, to exact upon the Commons and baser sort of People in all parts

Chap. 7. The State or forme of their Government. The Russe Government tyrannicall.

Guilt-kind
guilt-kind
renate.
Absolute So-
vereignty.

of the Realme wherefoever they come, specially in the place where their Lands lye, or where they are appointed by the Emperour to gouverne vnder him: Allo to the Commons how small they will: which commonly they doe after our *Gauill kynd*, and dispose of their goods by gift or Testament without any controllment.

Concerning the principal points and matters of State, wherein the Souerainty consisteth (as the making and unmaking of publicke Lawes, the making of Magistrates, power to make Wars, and Civil and Criminal) they doe so wholly and absolutely pertaine to the Emperour, and his Councell of all these. For as touching any Law or publicke Order of the Realme, it is ever determined before any publicke Assembly or Parliament be summoned. Where besides his Councell, he hath none other to consult with him of such matters as are concluded before hand, but only a few Bishops, Abbots, and Friars: to make advantage of the peoples Superstitions, even against Clergie men, whatsoever it be. For which purpose the Emperours are content to make much of the corrupt state of the Church, as now it is among them, and to nourish the same by extrajudicial and false Religion best to agree with a Tyrannical State, and to be a special means to uphold and maintaine the same.

Magistracies.

Secondly, as touching the publicke Offices and Magistracies of the Realme, there is none hereditarie, neither any so great nor so little in that Country, but the bestowing of it is done immediately by the Emperour himselfe. In so much that the very *Dukes*, or Clerkes in every head is (the better to entend his Devotions) refresheth all such matters pertaining to the State, wholly to the ordering of his Wives Brother, the Lord *Boris Federovich Godunov*.

He succeeded him
Jurisdiction.

Thirdly, the like is to be said of the Jurisdiction concerning matters Iudiciall, specially such as concerne life and death. Wherein there is none that hath any authority or publicke Jurisdiction that goeth by Discent, or is held by Charter, but all at the appointment and pleasure of the Emperour, and the same practised by the Iudges with such awe and restraint, as that they dare not determine vpon any speciall matter, but must referre the same wholly, vpon to the Emperours Councell. To shew his Souerainty over the liues of his Subiects, the late Emperour *Iuan Vasiliuich* in his walkes or progresses, if he had misliked the face or person of any man which was presently done, and the head cast before him.

Iuan Vasiliuich
crucil.

Appeals and
Pardons.

Fourthly, for the Soueraine Appaels, and giuing of Pardons in Criminall Matters to such as are convicted, it is wholly at the pleasure and grace of the Emperour. Wherein also the Emperour Affaires of the Realme, (the rather to supply the defect of her Husband) doth behaue her life after an absolute manner, giuing out pardon (specially on her birth day and other folemne times) to such as have bene of late of the ancient Nobility, that haue held diuers Provinces by right of Inheritance, with an absolute Authority and Jurisdiction over them, to order and determine all matters within their owne Precinct without all Appaels; or controllment of the Emperour. But this was all annulled and wrung cleane from them by *Iuan Vasiliuich* Father to this Emperour.

Ancient Nob-
ility.

Chap. 8.
The manner
of holding
the Parlia-
ments.
The States
of Parliament.

The order
of the sumous
or assembling.

Friday refresh.

Their highest Court of publicke consultation for matter of State, is called the *Zabore*, that is, the *Publicke Assembly*. The states and degrees of persons, that are present at their Parliaments, are these in order. 1. The Emperour himselfe. 2. Some of his Nobility about the number 30 number. As for Burghers or other to represent the Commonalty, they haue no place there: the not to make Lawes, nor to know any thing of publicke matters before they are concluded. The Court of Parliament (called *Zabore*) is held in this manner. The Emperour causeth to be summoned such of his Nobility as himselfe thinketh meet, being (as was said) all of his Councell: together with the Patriarch, who calleth his Clergie, to wit, the two Metropolitans, the two Archbishops, with such Bishops, Abbots, and Friars as are of best account and reputation among them. When they are all assembled at the Emperours Court, the day is intimated when the Session shall beginne. Which commonly is vpon some Friday, for the Religion

When the day is come, the Clergie-men assemble before at the time and place appointed, which is called the *Stollie*. And when the Emperour cometh attended by his Nobility, they assemble, and meete him in an our-rome, following their Patriarch, who directeth the Emperour

with his two fore-fingers, laying them on his fore-head, and the sides of his face, and then kisseth him on the right side of his face. So they passe on into their Parliament House, where they sit in this order. The Emperour is enthronized on the one side of the Chamber. In the next place not farre from him at a small square Table (that giueth room to twelve persons or thereabouts) sitteth the Patriarch with the Metropolitans and Bishops, and Certayne of the principal Nobility of the Emperours Councell, together with two *Dukes* or Secretaries (called *Dumny dyaks*) that enact that which passeth. The rest place themselves on benches round about the Roome, every man in his ranke after his degree. There is there propounded by one of the Secretaries (who representeth the *Speaker*) the cause of their Assembly, and the principal matters that they are to consider. For to propound Bils what euer man thinketh good for the publicke benefit (as the manner is in England) the *Russe* Parliament alloweth no such censure, nor liberty to subjects.

The points being opened, the Patriarch with his Clergie-men haue the Prerogative to be first asked their vote, or opinion, which they thinke of the points propounded by the Secretarie. Whereas they answer in order, according to their degrees, but all in one forme without any Discourse as hauing learned their Lesson before, that serueth their turnes at all Parliaments alike, whatsoever is propounded. Commonly it is to this effect. *That the Emperour and his Councell are of great wisdom and experience, touching the Policies and publick Affairs of the Realme, and furre better able to iudge what is profitable for the Common-wealth, than we, which attend upon the service of God only, and matters of Religion. And therefore it is our prayer, that they will direct us in their aduise, they will ayde them with their Prayers, as their duties and vocations doe require, &c.* To this or like effect haue made their Answers every man in his court, vpon stand to him. Abbot or Friar more bold than the rest (yet appointed before-hand as a matter of forme) and desireth the Emperour it would please his Majestie to command to be delivered unto them what his Majesties owne iudgement, and determinate pleasure is, as touching those matters propounded by his *Senate*.

Their discourse
at Parliament.

Whereunto is replied by the said Secretarie in the Emperours name. *That his Highnesse with shew of his Noble Councell, vpon good and sound aduise haue found the matters proposed to be very good and necessary for the Common-wealth of the Realme. Notwithstanding, forasmuch as they are Religious men, and know what is right, his Majestie requirith their godly Opinions, yea, and their Consentes too, for the approving or correcting of the said Propositions. And therefore desireth them again to speak their minds freely. And if they shall like to giue their consents, that then the matters may passe to a full conclusion.*

Hereunto when the Clergie-men haue giuen their consents (which they vie to doe without any great passing) they take their leaues with blessing of the Emperour: who bringeth the Patriarch on his way so farre as the next Roome, and so returneth to his Seat, as will be made ready by his recurrence homeward. The Acts that thus are passed by the *Zabore* or Parliament, the *Dukes* or Secretaries draw into a forme of Proclamation, which they lend abroad into every Province, and head Towne of the Realme: to be published there by the *Dukes and Dyaks*, or Secretaries of those places. The Session of Parliament being fully ended, the Emperour inviteth the Clergemen to a folemne Dinner. And so they depart euerly man to his home.

The degrees of persons or Estates of *Russia* (besides the Soueraine State or Emperour himselfe) are these in this order. 1. The Nobility which is of four sortes, Whereof the chiefe are Birth, Authority, and Reuene are called the *Vladney Knaues*, that is, *The exempt or privileged Dukes*. These held sometime a feuerall Jurisdiction, and absolute Authority within their Right precincts, much like unto the States or Nobles of Germany. But afterwards (referring their Privileges mightie, and to enlarge it selfe by out-matching their Neighbours. Onely they were bound to seruise the Emperour in his Warres with a certaine number of Horse. But the late Emperour *Iuan Vasiliuich* Father to this Prince, being a man of high spirit, and his III in his kind meaning to reduce his Government into a more strict forme, began by degrees to clip off their greatneesse, and to bring it downe to a lesser proportion: till in the end he made it not only his Vassals, but his *K. Lophy*, that is, his very Villaines or Bond-slaves. For so they termed and wrote themselves in any publicke Instrument or priuate Petition which they make to the Emperour. So that the meanes and practice whereby he wrought this to effect against them, and othered the hee could note out of the report of his doings) were these, and such like. First, hee vied to set on the inferno. 2. to greater or eq. all themselves to those that were accounted to be of the Nobler Houles. Where he made his advantage of their malice and contentions, the one against the other, by receiving deuised matters, and accusations of secret practice and Conspiracies to be intended against his Person and State. And so hauing singled out the greatest of them, and cut them off with the good liking of the rest, hee fell at last to open practice, by forcing of the other to yeeld their Rights vnto him.

Chap. 9.
Of the Nobility,
and by what means
it is kept in an
order agreeable
to that State.
The *Vladney*
Knaue chiefe
of the Nobility.

Pesky Chief, or the Jurisdiction of the office of Ambassadors, and at this time is under the chief Secretary and officer of the Ambassadors, called *Andreas Schalcalone*. The standing fee or stipend that he receiveth yearly of the Emperor for this service, is one hundred Rubbels or Marks. The second is called the *Rasfady* Chief, because it is proper to the *Rasfady* or high Constable. At this time it pertaineth by virtue of Office to *Basilie Schalcalone*, Brother to the Chancelour, but it is executed by one *Eugen Abramone*. His pension is an hundred Rubbels yearly.

The third is the Chief of *Pomestny*, as pertaining to that Office. This keepeth a Register of all Lands given by the Emperor for service to his Noblemen, Gentlemen and others, with out takers in all Assurances for them. The officer at this time is called *Eneas or Wallingus*. His 10 stipend is five hundred Rubbels a yeare.

The fourth is called *Cassimsky Dvoretz*, as being appropriate to the Office that hath the jurisdiction of the Kingdoms of *Cassan* and *African*, with the other Townes lying upon the *Palas*, now ordered by one *Druschine Penetence*, a man of very speciall account among them, for his wisdom and promptness in matters of policie. His pension is one hundred and fiftie Rubbels a yeare.

From these *Chiefs* or *Terrarches* is exempted the Emperours inheritance or *Veshin* (as they call it) for that is preserved from ancient time to the House of *Renda*, which is the frame of the Imperiall blood. This standeth of fixe and thirtie Townes with their bounds or Territories. Besides diuers peculiar Jurisdictions, which are likewise deducted out of those *Chiefs*, as the 20 Shire of *Pagha* (belonging to the Lord *Boriss Federemich Godone*) and such like.

These are the chief Governours or Officers of the Provinces, not resident at their chargeabroad, but attending the Emperor whither soever he goeth, and carrying their Offices about with them; which for the most part they hold at *Askye*, as the Emperours chief fesse.

The parts and practice of these four Offices, is to receive all Complaints and Actions whatsoever, that are brought out of their severall *Chiefs* and Quarters, and to informe them to the Emperours Councell. Likewise to send direction againe to those that are vnder them, in their fayed Provinces, for all matters given in charge by the Emperor and his Councell, to be done or put in execution within their Precincts.

For the ordering of every particular Province of these four *Chiefs*, there is appointed one 30 of these Dukes, which were reckoned before in the lowest degree of their Nobilitie, which are resident in the head Townes of the fayed Provinces. Whereof every one hath joyned with him in Commission a *Dyak* or Secretary to assist him or rather to direct him. For in the executing of their Commission, the *Dyak* doth all;

The Commission of the Dukes or Presidents of Shires.

The parts of their Commission are these in effect. First, to heare and determine in all civil matters within their Precinct. To which purpose they have vnder them certayne Officers, as *Gubny Staret* or Coronets, who besides the tryall of selfe Murders; are to attach Fellows: and the *Soudis* or vnder Justices, who themselves also may heare and determine in all matters of the same nature, among the Country people of their owne Wards or Bayliwicks: but so that in case either parties dissent, they may appeal to the Duke and *Dyak* that reside 40 within the head Towne. From whom all they may remouue the matter to the higher Court at *Mosky*, of the Emperours Councell, where lye all appeals. They have vnder them also *Serky Staret*, that is Aldermen, or Bayliffs of the Hundreds.

Secondly in all criminal matters, as Theft, Murder, Treason, &c. they have authoritie to apprehend, to examine and to imprison the offenders, and haue receiued perfect evidence and information of the cause; they are to send it ready drawn and orderly digested vpon the *Mosky*, to the Officer of the *Chief*, whereunto that Province is annexed: by whom it is referred and propounded to the Emperours Councell. But to determine in any matter criminal, or to doe execution vpon the parties offending, is more then their Commission will allow 50 them to doe.

Thirdly, if there be any publicke seruice to be done within that Province, (as the publishing of any law, or common order, by way of Proclamation, collecting of taxes and impositions for the Emperours, mustering of Souldiers, and sending them forth at the day, and to the place assigned by the Emperor or his Councell) all these and such like pertaine to their charge.

Dukes and Dyaks are many of them rich oppressors, and Spungers preferred againe.

These Dukes and *Dyaks* are appointed to their place by the Emperor himselfe, and are changed ordinarily at every yeere end, except vpon some speciall liking or fure, the time be prorogued for a yeere or two more. They are men of then flues of no credit, nor fauour with the people where they gouerne, being neither borne, nor brought vp among them, nor yet having inheritance of their owne there, or else where. Onely of the Emperor they have for that fure an hundred Markes a yeere, he that hath moyle, some fiftie, some but thirtie. Which make 60 them more suspected and odious to the people, because being so bare, and committing fure and hungry vpon them lightly every yeere, they racke and spoyle them without due regard of Justice or Conscience. Which is easily tolerated by the chiefe Officers of the *Chief*, to the end they may spoyle them againe, and haue a better booke when they call them to account: which

which commonly they doe at the end of their seruice, making an advantage of their iniustice and oppression ouer the poore people. There are few of them but they come to the *Tudky* or Whip when their time is ended, which themselves for the most part doe make account of. And therefore they furnish themselves with all the spoyle they can for the time of their Government, that they may haue for both turnes, as well for the Emperor and Lord of the *Chief*, as to referre some good part for themselves.

They that are appointed to gouerne abroad, are men of this qualitie: faine that in the four border Townes that are of greatest importance, are set men of more speciall valour and trust, two every Towne. Whereof one is euer of the Emperours priue Councell. These four border

10 Townes are, *Soumensky, Volsky, Nuzgord*, and *Cassan*, whereof three lie towards the *Poleman* and *Sueden*, one bordereth farr off vpon the *Chirn Tartar*. These haue larger commission then the other Dukes of the Provinces that I spake of before, and may doe execution in criminal matters. Which is thought behoofull for the Common-wealth: for incident occasions that may happen vpon the borders that are farr off, and may not stay for direction, about every occurrent and particular matter from the Emperor and his Councell. They are charged every yeere (except as before) and haue for their stipend 700. Rubbels a yeere he that hath moyle: some haue but 400. Many of these places that are of greatest importance, and almost the whole Country is managed at this time, by the *Godones* and their Clients.

The Citty of *Mosko* (that is the Emperours Seat) is gouerned altogether by the Emperours 20 Councell. All matters there both ciuill and criminal, are heard and determined in the seuerall Courts, held by some of the said Councell, that reside there all the yeere long.

Onely for their ordinary matters (as Buildings, Reparations, keeping of their Streets decent and cleane, Collections, laying of Taxes, Impositions and such like) are appointed, two Gentlemen, and two *Dyaks* or Secretaries, who hold a Court together for the ordering of such matters. This is called the *Zemsky* house. If any Townsmen suspect his seruice of theft or like matter, hither he may bring him to haue him examined vpon the *Tudky*, or other court. Besides these two Gentlemen, and Secretaries that order the whole Citty, there are *Starosts* or Aldermen for every seuerall Companie. The Alderman hath his *Serky* or Constable, and the Constable hath certayne *Deetysky* or Decurions vnder him, which haue the custody of 30 ten households a piece, whereby every disorder is sooner spied, and the common seruice hath the quicker dispatch. The whole number of Citizens poore and rich are reduced into Companies. The chiefe Officers (as the *Dyaks* and Gentlemen) are appointed by the Emperor himselfe, the *Starost* by the Gentlemen and *Dyaks*, the *Serky* by the *Starost* or Alderman, and the *Deetysky* by the Constables.

The government of Mosko.

This manner of government of their Provinces and Townes, if it were as well set for the giuing of iustice indifferently to all sorts, as it is to prevent innovations, by keeping of the Nobility within order, and the Commons in subiection, it might seeme in that kind to be no bad nor vnpolitike way, for the containing of so large a Common-wealth, of that breadth and length as is the Kingdom of *Russia*. But the oppression and slavery is so open, and so great, that 40 a man would marvell, how the Nobilitie and People should suffer themselves to be brought vnder it, while they had any means to auoide and repulse it: or being so strengthened as it is at this present, how the Emperours themselves can be content to professe the same, with so open iniustice and oppression of their Subiects, being themselves of a Christian profession: By this it appeareth how hard a matter it were to alter the state of the *Russi* Government, as now it standeth.

An hard matter to alter the State of Russia.

The Emperours of *Russia* giue the name of Councellour to diuers of their chiefe Nobilitie, rather for honours sake, then for any vse they make of them about their matters of State. These are called *Boiarsky*, without any addition, and may be called, *Commissaires at large*. For they are seldome or neuer called to any publicke consultation. They which are of his speciall and priue Councell indeed (whom he vseth daily and ordinarily for all publicke matters pertaining to the State) haue the addition of *Dumny*, and are named *Dumny boiars*, or Lords of the Councell, their Office or Sitting *Boiarsky* house.

chap. 11. Of the Emperours Councell.

Their names at this present are these in their order. First, *Knez Feoder Ivanovich Meshchislky*. 2. *Knez Ioan Michailovich Glusky*. 3. *Knez Vasilie Ioanovich Sukky Scopin*. (These three are accounted to be of greater birth then wisdom, taken in (as may seeme) for that end, rather to furnish the place with their honours and presence, then with their aduise or counsell.) 4. *Knez Vasilie Ioanovich Sukky*, thought to be more vile then the other of his name. 5. *Knez Feoder Michailovich*. 6. *Knez Michail Romanovich Trumbetzkoy*. 7. *Knez Trumbetzkoy*. 8. *Knez Feoder Demetritsch Skifskian*. 9. *Knez Demetritsch Ioanovich Rafskian*. 10. *Knez Feoder Ioanovich Rafskian*. 11. *Boien Ioanovich Saburane*. 12. *Knez Ioan Vasilich*. 13. *Knez Feoder Demetritsch Skifskian*. 14. *Knez Feoder Michailovich Troykovane*. 15. *Ioan Ertierky*. 16. *Demetritsch Ioanovich Godone*. 17. *Boriss Federemich Godone*, brother to the Emperour. 18. *Stephan Vasilovich Godone*. 19. *Gregorie Vasilovich Godone*. 20. *Ioan Vasilovich*

The number and names of the Councellours of State.

Four Secretaries.

Vasilovich Gudomov. 21. *Feodor Sheremiatov.* 22. *Andriev Petrovich Chiglenina.* 23. *Ignat Petrovich Tuglov.* 24. *Roman Michailovich Pena.* 25. *Demench Ivanovich Chervinsk.* 26. *Roman Vasilovich Afierov.* 27. *Andriev Shalcalov.* 28. *Vasil Shalcalov.* 29. *Elena zov Vellvign.* 30. *Drezben Penelcov.* 31. *Zapon Abramov.*

The four laite of the life are called *Dumny delnicy* or *Lord-Secretaries*. The care of all the Emperours private Counsell, though but few of them are called to any consultation, for that all matters are aduited and determined vpon by *Boris Federovich Gudomov* brother to the Emperre, with some fine or fine more whom it pleaseth him to call. If they come, they are rather to heare, then to giue counsell, and doe to demene themselves. The matters occurrent which are of State done within the Realme, are informed them at the fittings by the Lords of the four 10 to Counsell of their Provinces. Who bring in all such Letters as they receive from the Dukcs; *Dyacki Chetfird*, with other aduertisements, and informe the Counsell of them.

The like is done by the chiefe Officer of every feuerall Office of Record: who may come in to the Counsell-chamber, and informe them, as occasion incident to his Office doth require. Besides matters of State, they consider of many private Causes, informed by the way of supplication in very great numbers. Whereof some they entrayne and determine, as the Cause or course of Law. Their ordinary dayes for their sitting are, Mondayes, Wednesdayes, and Fridayes. Their time of meeting is commonly seuen of the clocke in the morning. If there be any extraordinary occasion, that requireth consultation on some other day, they have warning by the Clerke of the Counsell, called *Dorofey Bubnov*, who receiveth order from the *Reford*, or High-Countable of the Realme, to call them together at the time appointed.

For the receiving of Customes, and other Rents belonging to the Crowne, there are appointed three Vnder-officers, which deliuer out the same into the head Treasury. The first, is the Office of *Dvortfina* or *Steward of the household*. The second, is the Office of the *Chetfird*, which I comprehend vnder one, though it be diuided into foure feuerall parts, as was said before. The third is called, *Bulsha Prechod*, or the great Income.

As touching the first, which is the Office of the *Steward*, it receiveth all the Rents of the Emperours Inheritance, or *Crowne-land*, which they call, *Votkin*. The *Votkin* or *Crown-land* consisteth in fix and thirtie Townes with the Territories or Hundreds belonging vnto them. Whereof the chiefe that yield the greatest Rents are these: *Alexandrovsk, Corotk, Oster, Sitimov, Dmitriks, Mofalok, Chava, Samatka, Stravarsk, Bransov, &c.* The Inhabitants or Tenants of these and the other Townes, pay some Rent money, some other Rent duties (called victuall, as Oxen, Sherpe, Swannes, Geefe, Hares, Hennes, wilde Fowle, Fish, Hay, Wood, Honeie, &c. Some are bound to lowe for the Emperours provision certaine acres of ground, and to their owne proper vie: hauing for it an allowance of certaine acres of ground for 40

This provision for the household, specially of Graine sowed in by the Tenants, is a great deal more then is spent in his house, or in other allowance sowed out in livery, for the Emperours honour, called *Schalamagney*: for which vie there is bestowed very much, both in Graine and victuall. This surplus of provision is sold by the Steward to the best hand, and runneth into the Emperours Treasury.

In the time of *Iuan Vasilovich*, father to this Emperour (who kept a more Princely and bountifull house, then the Emperour now doth) this surplus of Graine, and other incomes into the Stewards Office, yielded to his Treasury not past 60000. Rubbels yearly, but rifeh now by good husbanding of the Steward *Gregory Vasilovich Gudomov*, to 270000. Rubbels a yeere. And 50 account it all their owne that runneth into the Emperours Treasury. Much of this surplusage that rifeh out of the Rents provision, is employed to the payment of the wages of his household officers, which are very many attending at home, and purveying abroad.

The second Office of Receipt, is called the *Chetfird*, (being diuided into foure feuerall parts, as before was said) hath foure head Officers: which besides the ordering and government of the Shires contayned within their feuerall *Chetfirds*, haue this also as a part of their Office, to receive the *Tagla* and *Podar* belonging to the Emperour; that rifeh out of the four *Chetfirds* or that groweth within the Land, gathered by sowing *Wheate* or measure of Graine, *Wheate* contayneth fixtie *Chetfirds*. Every *Chetfird* is three *Bubels* *Wheate*, or little lesse. The *Podar* is an ordinary Rent of money impoied vpon every Souke; or Hundred within the whole Realme.

This *Tagla* and *Podar* bring in yearly to the Offices of the *Chetfirds* a great summe of money:

as may appeare by the particulars heere set downe. The Towne and Province of *Volske* pay yearly for *Tagla* and *Podar* about 18000. Rubbels. *Novogrod* 30000. Rubbels. *Tartibek* and *Oster* 8000. Rubbels. *Kazan* 10000. Rubbels. *Moscow* 12000. Rubbels. *Chernigov* and *Dnypr* 8000. Rubbels. *Volodga* 12000. Rubbels. *Kasim* 18000. Rubbels. *Ytling* 30000. Rubbels. *Koslov* 50000. Rubbels. The Citty of *Moske* 40000. Rubbels. *Siberiysky* 20000. Rubbels. *Chetfird* 12000. Rubbels. The totall amounteth to 400000. Rubbels, or Markes a yeere, which is brought in yearly the first of September, that is reckoned by them the first day of the yeere.

The third (that is called the *Bulsha Prechod*, or great Income) receiveth all the Customes that are gathered out of all the principall Townes and Cities within the whole Realme. Besides the fees and other duties which rife out of diuers smaller Offices, which are all brought into this Office of *Bulsha Prechod*. The Townes of most trade, that doe yield greatest Customes, are these heere set downe. *Moske, Smolensk, Volske, Novogrod Velica, Stravarsk, Tartibek, Oster, Tartifane, Chetfird, Nesna Novogrod, Kasan, Volodga*. This Customes out of the great Townes is therefore more certaine, and safte to bee reckoned, because it is let and rated precisely what they shall pay for the Customes of the yeere. Which needs must bee paid into the said Office, though they receive not so much. If it fall out to be more, it runneth all into the Emperours advantage.

The Customes at *Moske* for every yeere, is 12000. Rubbels. The Customes of *Smolensk* 8000. *Volske* 12000. Rubbels. *Novogrod Velica* 6000. Rubbels. *Stravarsk* by Sale and other commodities 18000. Rubbels. *Tartibek* 800. Rubbels. *Oster* 700. Rubbels. *Tartifane* 1200. Rubbels. *Chetfird* 1800. Rubbels. *Nesna Novogrod* 7000. Rubbels. *Kazan* 11000. Rubbels. *Volodga* 2000. Rubbels. The Customes of the rest that are Townes of trade, is sometimes more, sometimes lesse, as their traffike and dealings with commodities to and fro, falleth out for the yeere.

This may bee said for certaine, that the three Tables of Receipts belonging to this Office of *Bulsha Prechod*, when they receive least, account for thus much, viz. The first table, 160000. Rubbels. The second table, 90000. Rubbels. The third 70000. Rubbels. So that there cometh into the Office of *Bulsha Prechod*, at the least reckoning (as appeareth by their Bookes of Customes) out of chief and other Townes, and maketh the summe of 340000. Rubbels a yeere. Besides this Customes out of the Townes of trade, there is received by this Office of *Bulsha Prechod*, the yearly Rent of the common Bath-houses, and Cabackes or drinking houses, which paynt to the Emperour. Which (though it be uncertaine for the iust summe, yet because it is certaine, and an ordinary matter, that the *Ruffe* will bathe himselfe as well within as without) yieldeth a large Rent to the Emperours Treasury.

There is besides, a certaine Muld or Penaltie that groweth to the Emperour out of every Iudgement or Sentence, that passeth in any of his Courts or Record in all Civil matters. This Penaltie or Muld is twentie *Duogee* or Pence vpon every Rubbel or Marke, and to ten in the hundred. Which is paid by the partie that is comitt by Law. He hath besides for every name contayned in the Writs that passe out of these Courts, five *Altene*. An *Altene* is five pence 40 Reeling, or thereabouts. This is made good out of the Office, whence the Writ is taken forth. Thence it goeth to the Office that kepeth the lesser Seale, where it payeth as much more to the Emperours vie. This rifeh commonly to three thousand Rubbels a yeere, or thereabouts. Farther also out of the Office of *Raffina*, where all felonies are tryed, is received for the Emperour the halfe part of Felons goods, the other halfe goeth the one part to the Informer, the other to the Officers.

All this is brought into the Office of *Bulsha Prechod*, or Great Income. Besides the surplus or remainder that is faued out of the Land-rents allotted to diuers other Offices: as namely, to the Office called *Reford*, which hath Land and Rents assigned vnto it to pay the yearly salaries of the Soulliers, or Horsemen, that are kept still in pay. Which in time of peace, when they rest at home not employed in any seruice, is commonly cut off and payd them by halves, sometimes not the halfe: so that the remainder out of the *Reford* Office that is layd into the Emperours treasury, cometh for the most part every yeere to 250000. Rubbels.

In like sort (though not so much) is brought in the surplus out of the *Stratelsky* Offices which hath proper Land for the payment of the *Stratelsky* men or Gunners, as well those at *Moske*, chat Castles. Likewise out of the Office of *Prechod*, *Shifing* *Nemboy*, which hath let allowance of Land to maintain the forraigne mercenary Soulliers, as *Poles, Swedens, Dutches, Scots, &c.* So out of the Office of *Pastor*, (which hath Land and Rents allowed for the provision of munition, great Ordnance, Powder, Shot, Saltpetre, Brimstone, Lead, and such like) there is left somewhat at the yeeres end, that runneth into the Treasury. All these bring into the Office of *Bulsha Prechod* that which remaineth in their hand at the yeeres end. Whence it is deliuered into the Emperours Treasury. So that the whole summe that groweth to this Office of *Bulsha Prechod*, or the great Income (as appeareth by the Bookes of this said Office) amounteth to 800000. Rubbels a yeere, or thereabouts.

Yeere begins with the first of September: the Office of *Bulsha Prechod* or great Income.

The Emperours Treasury.

The whole receipt of the *Bulsha Prechod* or great Income.

Rent out of the Iudiciall Offices, Muld or Seale.

The Office of Chetfird.

Tagla and Podar.

Tagla.

as if their hunting and murdering of Hares had bene the cause of it. Which the Nobility (as the manner is) *Praised* presently againe vpon the *Manfick*, or common people of the Country.

Chap. 13.
Of the state of
the Common-
alty, or vul-
gar sort of the
people in the
Country of
Russia.
The rule and
miserable
estate of the
Russia people.

Mistie of
those times,
manners and
men.

The condition of the Commons and vulgar sort of people, may partly bee understood by that which already hath bene sayd concerning the manner of their Government, and the state of the Nobility, with the ordering of their Prouinces, and chiefe Townes of the Land. And reckoned in no degree at all, nor haue any suffrage nor place in their *Zabore*, or high Court of Parliament, where their Lawes and publicke Orders are concluded vpon. Againie into what seruile condition their libertie is brought, not onely to the Prince, but to the Nobles, and Gentlemen of the Country (who themselves also are but seruile, specially of late yeeres) it may further appeare by their owne acknowledgments in their supplications, and other writings to any of the Nobles or chiefe Officers of the Emperours. Wherein they name and subscribe themselves *Kolopey*, that is, their Villaines, or Bond-slaves: as they of the Nobility doe vnto the Emperour. This may truly bee sayd of them, that there is no seruant nor bond-slave more awed by his Master, nor kept downe in a more seruile subiection, then the poore people are, and that vniuersally, not onely by the Emperour, but by his Nobilitie chiefe Officers and Souldiers. So that when a poore *Manfick* meeteth with any of them vpon the high way, hee must turne himselfe about, as not daring to looke him on the face, and fall downe with knocking of his head to the very ground, as he doth vnto his Idoll.

Secondly, concerning the Lands, goods, and other possessions of the Commons, they answer the Name and lye *Common* indeed, without any fence against the rapine and spoyle, not onely of the highest, but of his Nobilitie, Officers, and Souldiers. Besides the Taxes, Customs, Scauzes, and other publicke exactions done vpon them by the Emperour, they are so racked and pulled by the Nobles, Officers, and Messengers, sent abroad by the Emperour in his publicke affaires, specially in the *Tammes* (as they call them) and chorow faire Townes, that you shall haue many all into other places, by reason of the extreme violence, and exactions done vpon them. So that reckoning, little more then an hundred miles *English*, there are in fight fiftie *Doromies* or Villages at the least, some halfe a mile, some a mile long (that stand vacante) and desolate without any inhabitant. The like is in all other places of the Realme, as is sayd by those that haue better trauelled the Country then my selfe had time, or occasion to doe.

The great oppression ouer the poore Commons, made them to haue no courage in following their Trades: for the more they haue, the more danger they are in, not onely of their goods, but of their liues also. And if they haue any thing, they conceale it all they can, sometimes conveying it into Monasteries, sometimes hiding it vnder the ground, and in Woods, as men are wont to doe where they are in feare of forraigne iniurion. In such manner, many times you shall see them afraid to bee knowne to any *Boiaren* or Gentleman, of such commodities as they haue to sell. I haue seene them sometimes when they haue layd open their Commodities as they haue to sell (as their principall Furies and such like) to looke still behind them, and towards euery doore as men in some feare, that looked to bee set vpon, and surprisid by some Enemy. Whereof asking the cause, I found it to bee this, that they haue doubted least some Noblemans or *Snobiatniky* of the Emperour had bene in company, and to layd a trayne for them to pray vpon their Commodities perforce.

This made the people (though otherwise hardened to beare any toyle) to giue themselves much to Idleness and Drinking: as passing for no more, then from hand to mouth. And hence it cometh that the Commodities of *Russia* (as was sayd before) as Waxe, Tallow, Hides, Flax, Hemp, &c. grow and goe abroad in farre lesse plenty then they were wont to doe: because the people being oppressed and spoiled of their genterie, are discouraged from their labours. Yet this is one thing is much to be noted, that in all this oppression there were three brethren Merchants, of late that traded together with one Stocke in common, that were wound to bee worth 300000. Rubbels in money, besides Lande, Cattels, and other Commodities. Which may partly be imputed to their dwellings farre off from the eye of the Court, *viz.* in *Wichoda*, one thousand miles from *Moske* and more. The same are sayd by those that knew them, to haue lye on worke all the yeere long ten thousand men in making of skis, carriages by Cart, and Boat, hewing of Wood and such like: besides fye thousand Bond-slaves at the least, to inhabit and till their Land. They had also their Physicians, Surgeons, Apothecaries, and all manner of Artificers of *Donteb* and others, belonging vnto them. They are sayd to haue payed to the Emperour for Custome to the summe of three and twentie thousand Rubbels a yeere, (for which cause they were so suffered to enioy their Trade) besides the maintayning of certayne Garrisons on the borders of *Siberia*, which were neare vnto them. Wherein the Emperour was content to vie their purse, till such time as they had got ground in *Siberia*, and made it habitable, by burning and cutting downe Woods, from *Wichoda* to *Perru*, about one thousand versh, and then tooke it all away from them

Rich Russian
Merchants.

them perforce. But this is the end being enioyed and disloynd, as a matter not standing with their policie, to haue any so great, specially a *Manfick*, the Emperour began first to pull from them by pieces, sometimes twentie thousand Rubbels at a time, sometimes more: till in the end their Sonnes that now are, are well reled of their Stocke, and haue but small part of their Fathers substance: the rest being drawne all into the Emperours treasurie. Their names were *Iacome*, *Gregorie*, and *Simon*, the Sonnes of *Ongk*.

For the qualitie of their people otherwise, though these furnish so bee in them some aptnesse to receive any Art (as appeareth by the natural wits in the new, and very children) yet they excell in no kinde of common Art, much lesse in any learning, *kinde of knowledge*: which they are kept from of purpose, as they are also from all military profession: that they may bee fitter for the seruile condition, wherein now they are, and haue neither reason, nor valour to attempt inuasion. For this purpose also they are kept from reasoning, that they may learne nothing, nor see the fallshoods of other Countries abroad. You shall seldom see a *Russe* a traueller, except hee bee with some Embassadour, or that hee make an escape out of his Country. Which hardly he can doe, by reason of the borders that are watched so narrowly, and the punishment for any such attempt, which is death, if hee bee taken, and all his goods confiscate. Onely they learne to write, and to read, and that very few of them. Neither do they suffer any stranger willingly to come into their Realme: of any ciuill Country, for the same cause, farther then needfull of vttering their commodities, and taking in of foraine doth enforce them to doe.

And therefore this yeere 1580. they consulted about the removing of all Merchants strangers to the border Townes, to abide and haue their residence there, and to bee more wary in admitting other strangers leaues, into the inland parts of the Realme. For the same purpose also they are kept within the beginning of their degree by the Lawes of their Country: to loathe the name of a *Manfick*, Artificer, or Husbandman, is euer a *Manfick*, Artificer, &c. and hath no means to aspire any higher: except buying, learned to write and read, hee attayne to the preferment of a *Prick*, or *Dyack*. Their Language is all one with the *Slauonians*, which is thought to haue bene deriued from the *Russe* Tongue, rather then the *Russe* from the *Slauonians*. For the People called *Sclauis*, are knowne to haue had their beginning out of *Scythia*, and to haue termed themselves of their Conqueror *Sclauus* (that is) famous or glorious, of the word *Sclauis*, which in the *Russe* and *Slauonian* Tongue signifieth as much as *Glorie*, or *Fame*. Though afterwards being subdued and trod vpon by diuers Nations, the *Italians*, their Neighbour, haue turned the word to a contrary signification, and termed euery Seruant or Peasant by the name of *Sclauis*, as did the *Spaniards* by the *Greeks* and *Synagis*, for the same reason. The *Russe* Character or Letter is, no other then the *Greeke*, somewhat

Concerning their Trades, Diet, apparel, and such like, it is to be noted in a seuerall Chapter of their priuate behauiour. This order that bindeth euery man to keepe his rank, and several degree, wherein his fore-fathers liued before him, is more meet to keepe the Subiection in a seruile subiection, and to apt for this and like Commonwealthe, then to aduance any verry, or to breed any rare or excellent qualitie in Nobilitie or Commons: as hauing no further reward nor prestate, but rather procuring more danger to themselves, the more they excell in any noble or principall qualitie.

Their Courts of Ciuill Iustice for matters of Contract, and other of like sort, are of three kinds, the one being subiect vnto the other by way of appeal. The lowest Court (that seemeth to be appointed for some ease to the Subiects) is the Office of the *Gumny Starost*, that signifieth an Alderman, and of the *Sotikoy Starost*, or Bayliffe of the Soake or Hundred, whereof I spake before in the ordering of the Prouinces. These may end matters among their neighbours within their Soake, or seuerall Hundred, where they are appointed vnder the Dukes and *Dyacks* of the Prouinces, to whom the parties may remoue their matter, if they cannot be agreed by the said *Gumny*, or *Sotikoy Starost*.

The second kepe in the head Townes of euery Prouince or Shire, by the said Dukes and *Dyacks*, that are Deputies to the foure Lords of the *Chefirds* (as before was said). From these Courts they may appeal, and remoue their Suits to the chiefe Court, that is kept at the *Moske*, where there are resident the Officers of the foure *Chefirds*. These are the chiefe Iudices of Iudice, may be either commenced originally before them, or prosecuted out of the inferior Courts of the Shires by way of appeal.

Their commencing, and proceeding in Ciuill actions is on this manner. First, the Plaintiff putteth vp his Supplication, wherein hee declareth the effect of his Cause, or wrong, done vnto him. Whereupon is granted vnto him a *Wepis*, or Warrant, which hee delivereth to the *Ryssk*, or Sergeant, to doe the arrest vpon the partie whom hee meaneth to implead. Who vpon the

The seclusion
of the Empe-
rour concei-
ning his states

of *Scythia* and
the language.

Chap. 14.
Of the pub-
licke Iustice,
and manner
of proceeding
in Ciuill,
and Criminal
matters.

Courts of Ci-
uill Iustice
three.
The Dukes
where
Court of
Meno.

Their manner
of proceeding
in Ciuill mat-
ters.

Horfemen in
common pay
80000.

Footmen in
common pay
120000.

Strangers
mercenaries
in pay 4000.

The chiefe
Captaines or
Leaders.
1. The *Voivode*
or Generall.

2. Lieutenant
generall.

3. Marshalls
of the field, foure.

4. Marshalls
Deputies 8.

5. Coronels
Vnder-capi-
tains.

6. Masters of
the Artillerie.

Some what dangerous for some State, to haue fo great forces vnder the command of Noblemen, to assemble euery yeere to one certaine place. But the matter is to be considered, as that no danger can grow to the Emperour, or his State by this meanes. First, Because these Noblemen are many, to wit, 110. in all, and changed by the Emperour so oft as hee thinketh good. Secondly, Because they haue their liuinges of the Emperour, being otherwise but of very small Reueneue, and receive this yearly pay of 40000. Rubbels, when it is presently to be paid forth againe to the Soldiers that are vnder them. Thirdly, Because for the most part they are about the Emperours person, being of his Counsell, either speciall, or at large. Fourthly, They are rather as Pay-masters, then Captaines to their Companies, themselves not going forth ordinarily to the warres, save when some of them are appointed by speciall order from the Emperour himselfe. So the whole number of Horfemen that are euer in a readinesse, and in continuall pay, are 80000. a few more or lesse.

If he haue need of a greater number (which seldom falleth out) then hee entertaingeth of those *Sinaborsky*, that are out of pay, so many as he needeth: and if yet he want of his number, hee giueth charge to his Noblemen, that hold Lands of him, to bring into the field euery man a proportionable number of his seruants (called *Kolopshy*, such as till his Lands) with their furniture, according to the iust number that hee intendeth to make. Which, the seruice being done, presently lay in their weapons, and returne to their familie occupations againe.

Of Footmen that are in continuall pay, he hath to the number of 120000. all Gunners, called *Strasly*. Whereof 5000. are to attend about the Citie of *Moske*, or any other place where the Emperour shall abide, and 2000. (which are called *Stremanny*, *Strasly*, or Gunners at the *Stirp*) about his owne person at the very Court or house where himselfe lodgeth. The rest are placed in his garrison Townes, till there be occasion to haue them in the field, and receive for their salarie or stipend euery man (seen Rubbels a yeere, besides twelue measures, a peece of Rye, and Oats. Of mercenary Soldiers, that are strangers (when they call *Nimfoly*) they haue at this time 4300. of *Polonians*: of *Cherchaffes* (that are vnder the *Polonians*) about 4000. whereof 3500. are abroad in his Garrisons: of *Dutches* and *Scots*, about 150: of *Greekes*, *Turkes*, *Danes*, and *Sweedes*, all in one band, 100. or thereabouts. But these they vse only vpon the *Tartar* side, and against the *Siberians*: as they doe the *Tartar* Soldiers (whom they hire sometimes, but only for the present) on the other side against the *Polonians* and *Sweedes*: thinking it best so to pay to vie their seruice vpon the contrary border.

The chiefe Captaines or Leaders of their forces, according to their names and degrees, are these which follow. First, the *Voivode*, *Bulshin*, that is, the *Great Captaine*, or *Leutenant generall* vnder the Emperour. This commonly is one of the foure houses of the chiefe Nobilitie of the Land: but so chosen otherwise, as that he is of small valour or practice in Martiall matters, being thought to serue that turne so much the better, if he bring no other parts with him save the countenance of his Nobilitie, to be liked of by the Soldiers for that, and nothing else. For in this point they are very warie, that these two, to wit, Nobilitie and Power, meet not both in one, specially if they see withe some withall, or aptnesse for policie.

Their great *Voivode* or Generall at this present in their warres, is commonly one of these foure, *Knez*, *Feder*, *Iuanovich*, *Melchior*, *Knez*, *Ivan*, *Michailovich*, *Glimsky*, *Cherchabeky*, and *Trigubetky*, all of great Nobilitie, but of very simple qualitie otherwise: though in *Glimsky* (as they say) there is somewhat more then in the rest. To make vp this defect in the *Voivode* or Generall, there is some other ioyued with him as Lieutenant generall, or farre lesse Nobilitie, but of more valour and experience in the warres then he, who ordereth all things that the countenanceth. At this time their principall man, and most vsed in their warres, is one *Knez*, *Demetrie*, *Iuanovich*, *Ferezhin*, an ancient and expert Captaine, and one that hath done great seruice (as they say) against the *Tartar*, and *Polonians*. Next vnder the *Voivode* and his Lieutenant generall, are foure other, that haue the marshalling of the whole Armie diuided among them, and may be called the Marshalls of the field.

Euery man hath his quarter, or fourth part vnder him: whereof the first is called, the *Prane*, *Polisky*, or Right wing. The second is, the *Leany*, *Polisky*, or Left wing. The third is, *Rufny*, *Polisky*, or The broken band, because out of this there are chosen to fend abroad vpon any sudden exploit, or to make a rescue or supply, as occasion doth require. The fourth, *Swordsmen*, *Polisky*, or The warding band. Euery one of these foure Marshalls haue two other vnder them (eight in all) that twice euery weeke at the least must mulier and traine their severall wings or bands, and hold and giue iustice for all faults and disorders committed in the Campe.

And these eight are commonly chosen out of the humbled and ten (which I spake of before) that receive and deliuer the pay to the Soldiers. Vnder these eight are diuers other Captaines, as the *Gul*, *Leany*, Captaines of thousands, fow hundreds, and hundreds. The *Poyde*, *Sakty*, or 60 Captaines of fifties; and the *Dvorkies*, or Captaines of tentes.

Besides the *Voivode*, or Generall of the Armie, (spoken of before) they haue two other that beare the name of *Voivode*: whereof one is the Master of the great Ordnance (called *Nerada*, *Voinoda*) who hath diuers vnder-officers, necessary for that seruice. The other is called, the *Voinoda*

Voivoda *Gulany*, or the *Walking Captaine*, that hath allowed him 1000. good Horfemen of principall choice, to range and lye abroad, and hath the charge of the running Cattle, which we are to speake of in the Chapter following. All these Captaynes, and men of charge must once euery day resort to the *Bulshin* *Voivoda*, or Generall of the Armie, to know his pleasure, and to informe him if there be any requisite matter pertaining to their Office.

When Wars are towards (which they faile not of lightly euery yeere with the *Tartar*, and many times with the *Polonian* and *Sweede*) (the foure Lords of the *Cherchids* send forth their Summons in the Emperours name, to all the Dukes and *Dynasty* of the Princes, to be proclaimed in the head Townes of euery Shire: that all the *Sinaborsky*, or Sonnes of Gentlemen make their repaire to such a border where the Seruice is to be done, at such a place, and by such a day, and there present themselves to such and such Captaynes. When they come to the place assigned them in the Summons or Proclamation, their names are taken by certayne Officers that haue Commiffion for that purpose from the *Refrade*, or *High Comptable*, as Clerkes of the Bands.

If any make default and faile at the day, he is mulcted, and punished very severely. As for the Generall and other chiefe Captaynes, they are sent thither from the Emperours owne hand, with such Commiffion and charge as he thinketh behoofull for the present feruice. When the Soldiers are assembled, they are reduced into their Bands, and Companies, vnder their severall Captaynes of tens, fifties, hundreds, thousands, &c. and these Bands into foure *Polisky* or *Legions* (but of farre greater numbers then the *Roman* Legions were) vnder their foure great Leaders, which also haue the authoritie of Marshalls of the field (as was said before).

Concerning their Armour they are but slightly appointed. The common Horf-man hath nothing else but his Bow in his Case vnder his right arme, and his Quiger and Sword hanging on their Horse side. The vnder Captaynes will haue commonly some peece of Armour besides, as a shirt of Male, or such like. The Generall with the other chiefe Captaynes and men of Nobilitie, will haue their Horfe very richly furnished, their Saddles of Cloth of Gold, their Brilles faire belied and tasselled with Gold, and Silke fringed, bedusted with Pearle and Precious stones, themselves in very faire Armour, which they call *Bullany*, made of faire shining Steele, yet couered commonly with Cloth of Gold, and edged round about with Armine Furre, his Spence in his hand, with another Helmet, and his *Shelle*, *para*, or Horf-mans Scepter carried before him. Their Swords, Bowes, and Arrows are of the *Turkish* fashion. They practise like the *Tartar* to shoot forwards and backwards, as they flye and reuere.

The *Strasly* or Footman hath nothing but his Peerce in his hand, his striking Hatchet at his backe, and his Sword by his side. The stocke of his Peerce is not made Calceuer like wit, but with a plane and strait stocke (some what like a Fowling-peece) the Barrell is rudely and vnrartificially made, very heauie, yet shooteth but a very small Bullet. As for the prouision of victuals to the Emperour alloweth none, either for Captaine, or Soldier, neither prouideth any for them except peraduenture some Corne for their Money. Euery man is to bring sufficient for himselfe to serue his turne for foure moneths, and if need require to giue order for more to be brought vnto him to the Campe from his Tenant that tilleth his Land, or some other place. One foure hand. Though the chiefe Captaynes and others of account carry Tents with them after the fashion of ours with some better prouision of victuals then the rest. They bring with them some flocke of Meele, which they temper with water, and so make it into a Ball, or (small lumpes some other flesh or fish dried, after the *Dutch* manner. If the *Ruffe* Soldier were as hardie to well trayned for the Warres, as he is indifferent for his Lodging and Dyet, hee would faare exy the Warlike seruice. Which cometh partly of his seruile condition, that will not suffer any great courage or valour to grow in him. Partly for lacke of due honour and reward, which hee hath no great hope of whatsoever seruice or execution hee doe.

The *Ruffe* trusteth rather to his number, then to the valour of his Soldiers, or good ordering of his Forces. Their marching or leading is without all order, save that the fore *Polisky* or Legions, (whereinto their Armie is diuided) keepe themselves severall vnder their Ensignes, and do thrust all on together in a hurrie, as they are directed by their Generall. Their Ensigne is the Image of Saint George. The *Bulshin* *Dvorkany* or chiefe Horf-men, haue euery man a small Drumme of Brasse at his Saddle-bow, which hee striketh when hee heareth the charge, or onler.

The walking
Captaine.

Chap. 16.
Of their mustering, and lo-
ying of to-
ces, manner of
Armour, and
prouision of
victuals for the
warre.
Their order
for mustering.

The Horf-
mans Furni-
ture.

Shooting for-
ward and
backward.
The forma
Furniture.
Prouision of
victuals.

Prouisions.

Humilis eties.

Chap. 17.
Of their mar-
ching, shar-
ging, and o-
ther
Martill Dis-
cipline.
George-calfine.
The great
Drummers.

The horsemen
manner of
charging.

They have Drummes besides of a huge bignesse, which they carrie with them vpon a bound layd on foure Horses, that are sparred together with Chaines, every Drumme hauing eight strikers, or Drummers, besides Trumpets and Shawmes, which they found after a wild manner, much different from ours. When they giue any charge or make any inuasion, they make a great hallow or shoute altogether, as loud as they can, which with the sound of their Trumpets, Shawmes, and Drummes, maketh a confused and horrible noyle. So they set on first discharging their Arrows, then dealing with their Swords, which they vie in a brauery to shake, and brau- dith ouer their heads, before they come to strokes.

The footmen
charge.

Their Footmen (because otherwise they want order in leading) are commonly placed in some ambush or place of aantage, where they may most annoy the enemy, with least hurt to themselves. If it be a set battell, or if any great inuasion be made vpon the Russe borders by the Tartars, they are set with in the running or moving Castle (called *Bera*, or *Galy gerod*) which is carried about with them by the *Polianian* polany (or the walking General) whom I spake of before. This walking or moving Castle is so framed, that it may be set vp in length (as occasion doth require) the space of one, two, three, foure, fise, sixe, or seuen miles: for so long it will reach. It is nothing else but a double wall of wood to defend them on both sides behind and before, with a space of three yards or thereabouts betwixt the two sides: so that they may stand within it, and haue room enough to charge and discharge their pieces, and to vie their other weapons. It is closed at both ends, and made with loops-holes on either side, to lay out the nole of their Piece, or to pull forth any other weapon. It is carryed with the Arme wherefoeuer it goeth, being taken into pieces, and so layed on Carts sparred together, and drawne by Horses that are not seene, by reason that they are covered with their carriage as with a shiffe or pent-house. When it is brought to the place where it is to be vied (which is deuised and chosen out before by the walking *Unian*) it is planted so much as the present vie requireth, sometimes a mile long, sometimes two, sometimes three, or more: which is done without the helpe of any Carpenter, or Instrument: because the Timber is so framed to clape together one piece within another: as is easily vnderstood by those that know the manner of the Russe building.

Store of Munition.

In this Castle standeth their shot well fenced for aduantage, specially against the Tartar, that bringeth no Ordnance, nor other weapon into the field with him, save his Sword and Bow and Arrows. They haue also within it diuers field Peeces, which they vie as occasion doth require. Of Peeces for the field they carrie no great store, when they warre against the Tartar: but when they deale with the *Polianian* (of whose forces they make more account) they get together furnished with all kind of Munition, and other necessarie provisions. It is thought that no Prince of Christendome hath better store of Munition, then the Russe Emperour. And it may partly appear by the Artillerie Houle at *Mosko*, where are of all sorts of great Ordnance, all Braffe Peeces, very faire, to an exceeding great number.

The Russe Souilder is thought to be better at his defence within some Castle, or Towne, then he is abroad at a free pitched field, which is euer noted in the practice of his Wars, and namely, at the siege of *Chelie*, about eight yeeres since: where he repulseth the *Polianian* King *Stepan Bature*, with his whole Arme of 16000. men, and forced him in the end to giue ouer his siege, with the losse of many of his best Captaynes and Souilders. But in a free field the Russe is noted to haue ouer the worke of the *Polianian*, and *Sueden*.

If any behau himselfe more valiantly then the rest, or doe any speciall piece of seruice, the Emperour sendeth him a piece of Gold, stamped with the Image of Saint George on Horseback. Which they hang on their breastes, and let in their Caps. And this is accounted the greatest honour they can receive, for any seruice they doe.

Reward for
valour.

Chap. 18.
Of their Colo-
nies, an main-
taining of
their conquests
or purchases
by force.

The Russe Emperours of late yeeres haue very much enlarged their Dominions and Territories. Their first Conquest after the Dukedome of *Mosko*, (for before that time they were but Dukes of *Velodomer*, as before was said) was the Citie, and Dukedome of *Nougorod* in the West, and North-west side: which was no small enlargement of their Dominion, and strengthening to them for the winning of the rest. This was done by *Iuan* great Grand-father to *Thodore* now Emperour, about the yeere 1480. The same began likewise to encroach vpon the Countreys of *Lithuania*, and *Linnia*, but the Conquest only intended, and attempted by him vpon some part of those Countreies, was pursued and performed by his Sonne *Basilus*, who first won the Citie and Dukedome of *Plesko*, afterwards the Citie and Dukedome of *Smolensko*, and many other faire Townes, with a large Territory belonging vnto them, about the yeere 1514. These Victories against the *Lettins* or *Lithuanians* in the time of *Alexander* their Duke, hee achieved rather by aduantage of cruell Diffentions and Treasons among themselves, then by any great policy, or force of his owne. But all this was lost againe by his Sonne *Iuan Vasilovich*, about eight 60 or nine yeeres past, vpon compulsion with the *Polianian* King *Stepan Bature*: whereunto he was forced by the aduantages which the *Pole* had then of him, by reason of the whye hee had giuen him before, and the disquiett of his owne State at home. Only the Russe Emperour, at this time hath left him on that side his Countrey, the Cities of *Smolensko*, *Vitolsko*, *Chiering*, and *Seala gerod* in *Lithuania*. In *Linnia*, not a Towne, nor one foot of ground. Which

When *Basilus* first conquered those Countreies, he suffered the Natives to keepe their Possessions, and to inhabit all their Townes, only paying him a Tribute, vnder the Government of his Russe Captaynes. But by their Conspiracies and Attempts not long after, hee was taught to deale more furly with them. And so coming vpon them the second time, hee killed and carryed away with him, three parts of foure, which hee gaue or sold to the Tartars that serued him in those Wars, and the third of them placed there his Russe, so many as might ouer-match the rest, with certayne Garisons of strength besides, wherein notwithstanding this ouer-fight was committed, for that (taking away with him the Vp-land, or Countrey people that should haue killed the ground, and might easily haue bene kept in order without any danger, by other good policies) he was driuen afterwards many yeeres together to visitall the Countrey (especially the great Towne) out of his owne Countrey of *Russia*, the soyle lying there in the meane- while waste, and vntilled.

The like fell out at the Port of *Narue* in *Liesland*, where his Sonne *Iuan Vasilovich* deuised to build a Towne, and a Castle on the other side the River (called *Iuangorod*) to keepe the Towne and Countrey in subiection. The Castle hee caused to bee so built, and fortified, that it was thought to be inuincible. And when it was finished, for reward to the Architect (that was a *Polianian*) he put out both his eyes, to make him vnable to build the like againe. But hauing left the Natives all within their owne Countrey, without abating their number or strength, the Towne and Castle not long after was betrayed, and surrendered againe to the King of *Sueden*. On the South-east side they haue got the Kingdomes of *Cazan* and *Astracan*. These were wonne from the Tartar, by the late Emperour *Iuan Vasilovich*, Father to the Emperour that now is: the one about thirty fise, the other about thirty three yeeres agoe. Northward out of the Countrey of *Siberia*, he hath layed vnto his Realme a great breadth and length of ground, from *Wichita* to the River of *Obba*, about 1000. miles space: so that he is hold to write himselfe now, The great Commander of *Siberia*.

The Countreys I k now of *Permia*, and *Pechora*, are a diuers People and Language from the Russe, ouercome not long since, and that rather by threatening, and shaking of the Sword, then by any actual force: as being a weake and naked people, without meanes to resist.

Narue.

The Duellist
was.

Chap. 19.

Their Neighbours with whom they haue greatest dealings and intercourse, both in Peace and Warre, are first the Tartar: Secondly, the *Polianian* whom the Russe calleth *Laches*, noting the first Author or Founder of the Nation, who was called *Laches* or *Lecher*, whereunto is added *Pa*, which signifieth People, and so is made *Polachus*; that is, the People or *Polieristie* of *Laches*: which the *Laches* after their manner of writing call *Polians*. The third are the *Suedens*. The *Polianians* and *Suedens* are better knowne to these parts of *Europe*, then are the Tartars that are farther off from vs (as being of *Asia*) and diuided into many Tribes, different both in name, and government one from another. The greatest and mightiest of them is the *Cherim* Tartar, (whom some call the Great Cham) that lyeth South, and South-east-ward from *Russia*, and doeth most annoy the Countrey by often Inuasions, commonly one euery yeere, sometimes 40 entering very farre within the In-land parts.

In the yeere 1571. he came as farre as the Citie of *Mosko*, with an Arme of 40000. men, without any battell, or resistance at all, for that the Russe Emperour (then *Iuan Vasilovich*) lea- ding forth his Arme to encounter with him, marched a wrong way: but as it was thought of shief Captaynes, of a meaning to betray him to the Tartar.

The Citie hee tooke not, but fired the Suburbs, which by reason of the buildings (which is all went on with such rage, as that it consumed the greater part of the Citie almost within the space of foure houres, being of thirty miles or more of compass. Then might they haue seene 50 a lamentable Spectacle: besides the huge and mightie flame of the Citie all on light fire, the people burning in their houses and streets, but most of all of such as laboured to passe out of the Gates farthest from the Enemy, where meeting together in a mighty throng, and so pressing euene man to preuent another, wedged themselves so fast within the Gate, and streets neere vnto it, as that three Ranks walked one vpon the others head, the vppermost treading downe those that were lower: so that there perished at that time (as was said) by the fire and the presse, the number of 80000. people, or more.

The *Cherim* thus hauing fired the Citie, and fed his eyes with the sight of it all of a light flame, returned with his Arme, and sent to the Russe Emperour a Knife (as was layd) to sticke himselfe in the field, obeying this losse, and his desperate case, as not daring either to meete his Enemy in the field, nor to truit his Friends or Subjects at home. The principall cause of this continuall quarrell betwixt the Russe and the *Cherim*, is for the right of certayne border places claimed by the Tartar, but possessed by the Russe. The Tartar alledgeth, that besides *Astracan* and *Cazan*, (that are the ancient possession of the East Tartar) the whole Countrey from his bounds North and Westward, so farre as the Citie of *Mosko*, and *Mosko* it selfe, pertaineth to his right: Which

Of the Tartar
and other but
deuents to the
countrey of
Russia, which
whom they
haue made to
doe in was and
prace.

The *Polianians*
called *Laches*
by the Russe.

The Citie
of *Mosko*.

The bring of
the *Cherim* Tartar
in the yeere
1571.

Homage done by the Russe to the *Chim Tartar*. See the first books of *Rashid* and of the *Tartars* Conquest.

Which seemeth to have bene true by the report of the *Russe*; chemelues, that tell of a certayne homage that was done by the *Russe* Emperour every yeere, to the great *Chim* or *Chen*, the *Russe* Emperour standing on foote and feeding the *Chim* Horle, (himselfe sitting on his bucke) with Oates out of his owne Cap, in stead of a Boll or Manger, and that within the Cattle of *Moike*. And this homage (they say) was done till the time of *Basilus* Grandfather to this man. Who surmounting the *Chim* Emperour by a stratagem, done by one of his Nobilitie (called *Demetrich Belchey*) was content with this Ransome, viz. with the changing of this homage into a Tribute of Fures: which afterwards also was denied to be payed by this Emperours Father.

Hereupon they continue the quarrell, the *Russe* defending his Country, and that which hee hath wonne, the *Chim Tartar* invading him once or twice every yeere, sometime about Whitefontide, but oftner in Haruest. What time if the Great *Chim* or *Chim* come in his owne person, hee bringeth with him a great Armie of 100000. or 200000. men. Otherwise they make short and sudden roades into the Country with lesser numbers, running about the luff of the border as wilde Geefe doe, invading and retiring where they see advantage.

The manner of the *Tartars* fight, and Armour.

Their common practice (being very populous) is to make divers Armies, and so drawing the *Russe* to one, or two places of the frontiers, to invade at some other place, that is left without defence. Their manner of Fight, or ordering of their forces, is much after the *Russe* manner, (spoken of before) save that they are all Horle-men, and carry nothing else but a Bow, a sheaf of Arrowes, & a falcon Sword after the *Turkish* fashon. They are very expert Horle-men, and use to shoote as readily backward as forward. Some will have a horl-mans staffe like to a bore Spears, besides their other weapons. The common Soldier, hath no other Armour then his ordinary Apparell, viz. a blacke Sheepes skinne with the wooll-side outward in the day time, and inward in the night time, with a Cap of the same. But their *Morisy* or Noblemen imitate the *Turke*, both in Apparell and Armour. When they are to passe over a River with their Armie, they tye three or foure Horles together, and taking long poles or pieces of wood, binde them fast to the tayles of their Horle: so fitting on the Poles they drive their Horle over. At handie strokes (when they come to joyne battell) they are accounted farre better men then the *Russe* people, fierce by nature, but more hardie and bloodie, by continuall practice of Warre: as men knowing no Arts of Peace, nor any civill practice.

The subtiltie of the *Tartars*.

Yet their subtiltie is more then may seeme to agree with their barbarous condition. By reason they are practised to invade continually, and to rob their neighbours that border about them, they are very pregnant, and ready witted to devise Stratagems vpon the sudden, for their better advantage. As in their warre against *Beale* the fourth King of *Hungarie*, whom they invaded with five hundred thousand men, and obtained against him a great victory. Where amongst other, having laine his Chancelor, called *Nicholas Schmitz*, they found about him the Kings private Seale. Whereupon they desired presently to counterfeite Letters in the Kings name, to the Cities and Townes next about the place, where the Field was fought: with charge that in no case they should conuay themselves, and their goods out of their dwellings, where they might abide safely without all feare of danger, and not leave the Country desolate to the possession of so vile and barbarous an Enemie, as was the *Tartar* Nation, tearing themselves in all reproachfull manner. For notwithstanding he had lost his carriages, with some few flagittes that had marched disorderly, yet he doubted not but to recouer that loss, with the access of a notable victory, if the savage *Tartar* durst abide him in the field. To this purpose having written their Letter in the *Polish* Character, by certayne young men whom they tooke in the field, and signed them with the Kings Seale, they dispatched them forth to all the Quarters of *Hungarie*, that lay neere about the place. Whereupon the *Ungarians*, that were now flying away with their goods, Wiues, and Children, vpon the rumour of the Kings overthrow, taking comfort of their counterfeite Letters, stayed at home. And so were made a prey, being surprised on the sudden by this huge number of these *Tartars*, that had compassed them about before they were aware.

When they besiege a Towne or Fort, they offer much Parley, and send many flattering messages to perswade a surrender: promising all things that the Inhabitants will require: but being once possessed of the place, they vie all manner of hostilitie and cruelty. Thus they doe vpon a rule they haue, viz. That lustice is to be practised but towards their owne. They encounter not lightly, but they haue some ambush, whereunto (hauing once shewed themselves, and made some short conflict) they retire, as repulsed by feare, and so draw the Enemie into it if they can. But the *Russe* being well acquainted with their practice, is more warie of them, when they their number may seeme greater.

When they make any onset, their manner is to make a great shoute, crying all out together, *Ola Billa, Ola Billa, God helpe vs, God helpe vs*. They contemne death so much, as that they choole rather to dye, then to yeeld to their Enemie, and are fene when they are flaine to bite the very weapon, when they are paitt kicking, or helping of themselves. Wherein appeareth how different the *Tartar* is in his desperate courage from the *Russe* and *Turke*. For the *Russe* Soldier

Souldier if hee begin once to retire putteth all his fastie in his speedie flight. And if once he be taken by his enimie, hee neither defendeth himselfe, nor interseeth for his life, as reckoning straight to dye. The *Turke* commonly when he is past hope of escaping, falleth to intreatie, and casteth away his weapon, offereth both his hands, and holdeth them vp, as it were to be tyed: hoping to saue his life, by offering himselfe Bond-slave.

The chiefe bootie the *Tartars* seeke for in all their warres, is to get store of Captiues, specially young Boyes and Girles, whom they sell to the *Turkes*, or other their neighbours. To this purpose they take with them great Baskets made like Bakers pannes, to carrie them tenderly, and if any of them happen to tye, or to be sicke on the way, they dath him against the ground, or some Tree, and so leave him dead: The Souldiers are not troubled with keeping the Captiues and other bootie, for hindering the execution of their warres, but they haue certayne bands that intend nothing else, appointed of purpose to receive and keepe the Captiues and the other prey.

The *Russe* borders (being vied to their invasions, lightly every yeere in the Summer) keepe few other Cattell on the border parts, save Swine onely, which the *Tartar* will not touch, nor drive away with him: for that he is of the *Turkish* Religion, & will eate no Swines-flesh. Of Christ our Saviour they confesse as much as doth the *Turke* in his Alcoran, viz. That he came of the Angell *Gabriel*, and the Virgin *Mary*, that hee was a great Prophet, and shall bee the Judge of the world at the last day. In other matters likewise, they are much ordered after the manner and direction of the *Turke*: hauing felt the *Turkish* forces when hee wonne from them *Acem* and *Cassa*, with some other Townes about the *Euxine*, or *Blacke Sea*, that were before tributaries to the *Chim Tartar*. So that now the Emperour of the *Chims* for the most part is chosen some one of the Nobilitie whom the *Turke* doth commend: whereby it is brought now to that passe, that the *Chim Tartar* giueth to the *Turke* the tenth part of the spoyle, which hee getteth in his warres against the *Christians*.

Herein they differ from the *Turkish* Religion, for that they haue certayne Idoll puppets made of Silke or like stuffe, of the fashion of a man, which they fasten to the doore of their walking houles, to bee as *lawfull*, or keepers of their house. And these Idols are made not by all, but by certayne Religious women, which they haue among them for that and like vices. They haue besides, the Image of their King or great *Chim* of an huge bignesse, which they erect at euery flage, when the Armie marcheth: and this euery one must bend or bow vnto as he passeth by it, bee he *Tartar*, or Stranger. They are much giuen to Witchcraft and ominous conjurations, vpon euery accident which they heare or see.

In making of Marriages, they haue no regard of alliance or consanguinitie. Only with his Mother, Sister, and Daughter, a man may not marrie, and though he take the woman into his house and accompanie with her, yet he accounteth her not for his Wife, till hee haue a Child by her. Then hee beginneth to take a dowrie of her friends of Horle, Sheepe, Kine, &c. If there be barren, after a certayne time hee turneth her home againe.

Vnder the Emperour they haue certayne Dukes, whom they call *Morisy* or *Dynastyors*. The *Tartar* Nobilitie.

that rule over a certayne number of 10000. 20000. or 40000. a piece, which they call *Horde*. When the Emperour hath any vie of them to true in his warres, they are bound to come, and to least, the one to ride on, the other to kill, when it cometh to his turne to haue his Horle eate. For their chiefe victuall is Horle-flesh, which they eate without Bread, or any other thing with the *Tartar* some other part of him at his saddle bow.

This last yeere when I was at the *Moike*, came in one *Kirach Morisy*, nephew to the Emperour of the *Chims* that now is (whose Father was Emperour before) accompanied with three hundred *Tartars*, and his two Wiues, whereof one was his Brothers widow. Where being entreated in very good sort after the *Russe* manner, hee had sent vnto his lodging for his well-fayled in a Sled. They preferre it before other flesh, because the meate is stronger (as they say) then Beefe, Mutton, and such like. And yet (which is marvell) though they iure all as Horle-changed for other Commodities, thirte or fortie thousand *Tartar* Horle, which they call *Coner*. Milke (which they carry with them in great bottles) then for the vie of the flesh, though somewhat Bloud, and for the most part card them both together. They vie sometimes as they use to sell by the way, to let their Horle blood in a veyne, and to drinke it warme, as it cometh from his body.

Townes they plant none, nor other standing buildings, but haue walking Houles which the *Tartars* call *Vely*, built vpon wheeles like a Shepherds Cottage. Thence they draw with them whithersoever they goe, driving their Cattell with them. And when they come to their Stage or standing

Moueeable Citie and Courts

standing place, they plant their Cart-houes very orderly in a ranke : and so make the forme of streets, and of a large Towne. And this is the manner of the Emperour himselfe, who hath no other estate of his Empire but an *Agora*, or Towne of wood, that moueth with him whithersoever hee goeth. As for the fixed and standing building used in other Countries, they say they are vniuoluable and vnuisable.

They begin to moue their Houes and Cattell in the Spring time, from the South part of their Country towards the North parts. And so driving on till they have graied all the way to the furthest part Northward, they returne backe againe towards their South Country (where they continue all the Winter) by ten or twelue miles a stage : in the mean while the grass being sprung up againe, to serue for their Cattell as they returne. From the border of the *Schakou* towards the *Caspian* Sea, to the *Russe* frontiers, they haue a goodly Country, specially on the South and South-east parts, but ill for lacke of tillage.

Of money they haue no use at all, and therefore preferre Brasle and Steele before other metals, specially Ballast, which they vse for Swords, Knives, and other necessities. As for Gold and Siluer they neglect it of very purpose, (as they doe all tillage of their ground) to be more free for their wandering kinde of life, and to keepe their Country lesse subject to inuasions. Which giveth them great advantage against all their neighbours, euer inuading, and neuer being inuaded.

For Perion and Complexion, they haue broad and flat visages, of a tanned colour yellow and blacke, fierce and cruell looks, like a hynd upon the upper Lip, and a pit on the Chin, light and nimble Boies, with short Legges, as they were made naturally for Horse-men : whereto they praefte themselves from their Child-hood, seldom going a foot about any business. Their Speech is very fuiden and loud, speaking as it were out of a deepe hollow throat. When they Sing you would thinke a Cow lowed, or some great Bandogge howled. Their greatest exercise is Shooting, wherein they trayne vp their Children from their very infancie, not suffering them to eate, till they haue hit neere the marke within a certain cantedling.

There are diuers other *Tartars* that border vpon *Russia*, as the *Nagies*, the *Cheremifins*, the *Morduites*, the *Chirchasses*, and the *Schakos*, which all differ in Name more then in Regiment, or other condition, from the *Chirum Tartar*, except the *Chirchasses*, that border South-west towards *Lithuania*, and are farre more cruell then the rest of the *Tartars*, of a comely person, and of a stately behauiour, as applying themselves to the fashion of the *Talomen*. Some of them haue subjected themselves to the Kings of *Poland*, and professe *Christianitie*. The *Nagies* lyeth Eastward, and is reckoned for the best man of warre among all the *Tartars*, but very launge and cruel about all the rest. The *Cheremifin Tartar*, that lyeth betwixt the *Russe* and the *Nagies*, are of two sorts, the *Luganoy* (that is of the valley) and the *Nagernoy*, or of the hilly Country. These haue much troubled the Emperours of *Russia*. And therefore they are content now to buy Peace of them, vnder pretence of giuing a yeerely pension of *Russe* Commodities, to their *Moscou* or *Dynomorfous*, that are chiefe of their Tribes. For which also they are bound to serue them in their warres, vnder certaine conditions. They are layd to be iust and true in their dealings : and for that cause they haue the *Russe* people, whom they account to be double, and false in all their dealing. And therefore the common sort are very unwilling to keepe agreement with them, but that they are kept in by their *Moscou*, or Dukes for their pensions sake.

The most rude and barbarous is counted the *Morduite Tartar*, that hath many selfe fashions, and strange kindes of behauiour, differing from the rest. For his Religion, though hee acknowledge one God, yet his manner is to worship for God, that liuing thing, that hee first meeteth in the morning, and to sweare by it all that whole day, whether it bee Horse, Dog, Cat, or whatsoever else it be. When his friend dyeth, hee kills his best Horse, and hauing flayed off the skinne, hee carryeth it on high vpon a long pole, before the Corps to the place of Buriall. This hee doth (as the *Russe* sayth) that his friend may haue a good horse to carrie him to Heauen : but it is likelier to declare his loue towards his dead friend, in that hee will haue to lye with him the best thing that hee hath.

Next to the Kingdome of *Altiraen*, that is the furthest part South-eastward of the *Russe* Dominion, lyeth the *Schakou*, and the Country of *Media* : whether the *Russe* Merchants trade for raw Silkes, Syndon, Saphyon, Skimmes, and other commodities. The chiefe Townes of *Media* where the *Russe* tradeth, are *Dorben* (built by *Alexander* the great, as the Inhabitants say) and *Zamachie*, where the staple is kept for raw Silkes. Their manner is, in the Spring time to reuue the Silke-wormes (that lye dead all the Winter) by laying them in the warme Sunne, and to hasten their quickning, that they may sooner goe to worke) to put them into bagges, and to hang them vnder their Childrens armes. As for the Worme called *Chrimifin* (as we call it *Chrimifin*) that maketh coloured Silke, it is bred not in *Media*, but in *Assiria*. This tradeth to *Dorben* and *Samachie* for raw Silkes, and other commodities of that Country, as also in *Perfia*, *Bongbaria*, downe the Riuer *Pelgha*, and through the *Caspian* Sea, is permitted as well to the *Englishe*, as to the *Russe* Merchants, by the Emperours last Grant at my being there. Which hee accounted for a very speciall fauour, and might prove indeed very beneficiall to our *Englishe* Merchants, if the Trade were well and orderly vied.

The

The whole Nation of the *Tartars*, are utterly void of all Learning, and without written Law. Yet certayne rules they haue which they hold by tradition, common to all the Houes for the practice of their life. Which are of this sort. First, To obey their Emperour and other *Moguls*, what power they command about the publicke Service. Secondly, Except for the publicke behoofe, every man to be free and out of Contumelious. Thirdly, No private man to possess any Lands, but the whole Country to bee as a Common. Fourthly, To neglect all diuinitie, and seruents of Moloch, and to content them selves with that which cometh next to hand, for more benefit, and readiness, in the executing of their Affaires. Fifthly, To possess pay-hisse *Almes*, and to patch their Cloathes, whether there be any need or not : that when there is need, it bee no shame to waite a while for a Coat. Sixthly, To take or to shale from any Stranger what hee will, as being Enemies to all good, and to force, as will shew themselves to them. Seventhly, To punish their own Heard and Nation, to be true to word and deed. Eighthly, To suffer no Stranger to come within the Realme, if any doe, the same shall be dead : him that first catcheth him, except such *Marchants* and other, as haue the *Tatar* Rule, or Passes about them.

Tartars generally Rules.

The *Perimians* and *Samois* that lye from *Russia*, North and North-east, are thought likewise to haue taken their beginning from the *Tartar* kinde. And it may partly be guessed by the saluon of their Conscience, as hauing all broad and flat faces, as the *Tartars* haue, except the *Chirchasses*. The *Perimians* are accounted for a very ancient people. They are now subject to the *Russe*. They lye by Hunting and trading with their Furres, as doth also the *Samois*, that dwell in mountaine towards the North Sea. The *Samois* hath his name (as the *Russe* sayth) of *Eating himselfe* : as in times past, they liued as the *Cannibals*, eating one another. Which they make more probable, because at this time they eat all kinde of raw beest, whatsoever it be, euen the very Carion that lyeth in the ditch. But as the *Samois* themselves will, they were called *Samois*, that is, of themselves, as though they were *Indians*, or people bred vpon that very soyle, that neuer changed their place from one place to another, as most Nations haue done. They are subject at this time to the Emperour of *Russia*.

chap. 20. Of the Perimians, Samois, and Lappes. The Perimians. The Samois.

I talked with certaine of them, and finde that they acknowledge one God : but represent him by such things as they haue most vfe and good by. And therefore they worship the Sunne, the Ollen, the Loth, and such like. As for the Stories of *Sleu Baba*, or the *Golden Hag*, (which I haue read in some Maps, and descriptions of these Countries, to be an Idol after the forme of an old Woman) that being demanded by the Priest, giueth them certaine Oracles, concerning the successe and euent of things, I found it to bee but a very fable. Only in the Prouince of *Odusia* vpon the Sea side, neere to the mouth of the great Riuer *Obis*, there is a Rocke, which naturally shewing somewhat helped by imagination may seeme to beare the shape of a ragged Woman with a Child in her armes, (as the Rocke by the North Cape sheweth the shape of a Rier) where the *Odusian Samois* vfe much to resort, by reason of the commoditie of the place for Fishing : and there sometime (as the good manner is) conceiue, and praefce their Sorceries, and ominous conjurings about the good, or bad speed of their Iourneys, Fishings, Huntings, and such like.

The Samois Religion, Sleu Baba, or the Golden Hag.

They are clad in Scale-skimmes, with the hayrie side outwards downe as low as the knees, with their Breasts and Netherlocks of the same, both men and women. They are all Blacke, haue naturally bearded. And therefore the Men are hardly discerned from the Women by their looks : save that the Women weare a Locke of hayre downe along both their eares. They lye in a manner a wilde and a fange life, routing still from one place of the Country to another, without any propriety of House or Land more to one then to another. Their leader or director in every Companie, is their *Papa* or Priest.

The Samois habite and behauiour.

On the North side of *Russia* next to *Carchia*, lyeth the Country of *Lappia*, which reacheth in length from the furthest point Northward, (towards the North Cape) to the furthest part South-east (which the *Russe* calleth *Suuetoye* or Holy nose, the *Englishe* men Cape-grace) about three hundred and fortie vfe verst or miles. From *Suuetoye* to *Carchia*, by the way of *Perfia* (which meureth the breadth of that Country) is inuente miles or thereabouts. The whole Country in a manner is either Lakes or Mountaines, which towards the Sea side are called *Tundras*, because they are all of hard and craggy Rocke, but the inland parts are well furnished with Woods, that grow on the hills sides, the lakes lying betwene. Their dyet is very bare and simple. Bread they haue none, but feed onely vpon Fish and Fowle. They are subject to the Emperour of *Russia*, and the two Kings of *Sweden* and *Dennemarke* : which all exact Tribute and Customs of them (as was layd before) but the Emperour of *Russia* beareth the greatest hand out of them, and exact of them farre more then the rest. The opinion is that they were first learned *Lappes*, of their briefe and short speech. The *Russe* diuident the whole Nation of the *Lappes* into two sorts. The one they call *Norramousky Lappes*, that is, the *Norwegian Lappes* : because they be of the *Danish* Religion. For the *Danes* and *Norwegians*, they account for one people. The other that haue no Religion at all, but lye as brute and Heathenish people, without God in the world, they call *Dokky Lappes*, or the wilde *Lappes*.

The Lappes.

No Bread.

Wilde Lappes.

The whole Nation is utterly vnlearned, hauing not so much as the vse of any Alphabet, or Letter

Witches.

Letter among them. For practice of Witch-craft and Sorcerie, they passe all Nations in the world. Though for the enchanting of ships that lye along their Coast (as I have heard it reported) and their guining of winds good to their friends, and contrary to other, whom they meant to hurt by tying of certayne knots upon a Rope (somewhat like to the Tale of *Edith* his wind-bag) is a very Fable, devised (as may seeme) by themselves, to terrifie Saylers for coming neere their Coast. Their Weapons are the Long-bow, and Hand-gunne, wherein they excell, as well for quicknesse to charge and discharge, as for needfull use as the *Marke*, by reason of their continuall practice (where to they are forced) of shooting at wild-fowle. Their manner is in Summer time to come downe in great companies to the Sea-side, to *Wardbush*, *Cole*, *Ryger*, and the Bay of *Pedagab*, and there to fish for Cod, Salmon, and But-fish, which they kill to the *Ruffes*, *Danish*, and *Norwegians*, and now of late to the *English* men that trade thither with the *Clothe*, which they exchange with the *Lappes* and *Carchians* for their Fish, Oyle, and Furs, whereof they have some store. They hold their Mart at *Cole*, on *Saint Peters day*, what time the Captaine of *Wardbush* (that is Reliant there for the King of *Denmark*) must be present, or at least send his Deputie to set prices upon their Stock-fish, Trane-oyle, Furs, and O-fowle, which is also the *Ruffe* Emperours Customer, or Tribute taker, to receive his price; their manner is to draw their Caribasses, or Boats on shore, and there to leave them with the *Olen* Deere: which they use to turne a grazing all the Summertime, in an Island called *Kilden* (of a very good Soyle compared with other parts of that Country) and towards the Winter time, when the Snow beginneth to fall, they fetch them home againe, for the use of their sled.

Sleds drawne with Deere.

Chap. 21. Of their Ecclesiastical Rite, with their Church Offices.

Concerning the Government of their Church, it is framed altogether after the manner of the *Greeke*: as being a part of that Church, and neuer acknowledging the Jurisdiction of the *Latine* Church, usurped by the Pope. That I may keepe a better measure in describing their Ceremonies, then they in the wing them (wherein they are infinite) I will note briefly: First, what Ecclesiastical Degrees, or Offices they have with the Jurisdiction, and practice of them. Secondly, what Doctrine they hold in matter of Religion. Thirdly, what Liturgie, or forme of Service they use in their Churches, with the manner of their administering the Sacraments. Fourthly, what other strange Ceremonies, and Superstitious Devotions are used among them.

The Church Officers.

Their Offices, or Degrees of Church-men, are as many in number, and the same in a manner both in name and degree, that were in the Westerne Churches. First, they have their *Patriarch*, then their *Metropolites*, their *Archbishops*, their *Dioceses*, or *Bishops*, their *Presbyters*, or *Archpriests*, their *Deacons*, *Friars*, *Monks*, *Nunnes*, and *Eremites*.

The Patriarch.

Their *Patriarch*, or chief Director in matter of Religion vntill this last yeere, was of the *Citie* of *Constantinople* (whom they called the *Patriarch* of *Sio*) because being driven by the *Turke* out of there place in Patriarchall Sea. So that the Emperours, and Clergie of *Ruffia*, were wont yearly to lend Gifts thither, and to acknowledge a Spirituall kind of homage, and subjection due to him, and to that Church. Which custom they have held (as it seemeth) ever since they professed the Christian Religion. Which how long it hath bin I could not well learne, for that they have no Story or Monument of Antiquitie (that I could heare of) to shew what hath been done in times past within their Country, concerning either Church, or Common-wealth matters. First I heare a report among them, that about three hundred yeeres since, there was a Marriage betwixt the Emperour of *Constantinople*, and the Kings Daughter of that Country: who at the first denied to joyne his Daughter in Marriage with the *Greeke* Emperour, because he was of the Christian Religion. Which agreeeth well with that I find in the Story of *Laonicus Chab*, concerning *Turkish* Affairs in his fourth Booke: where he speaketh of such a Marriage betwixt *Iohn* the *Greeke* Emperour, and the Kings Daughter of *Sarmatia*, and this argueth out of their owne report, that at that time they had not receiued the Christian Religion: as also that they were converted to the Faith, and withall persecuted at the very same time, receiving the Doctrine of the Gospell, corrupted with Superstitions even at the first when they tooke it from the *Greeke* Church, which it selfe then was degenerate, and corrupted with many Superstitions, and foule Errours, both in Doctrine and Discipline: as may appear by the Story of *Nicophorus Gregoras*, in his eighth and ninth Booke. But as touching the time of their Confinement in the *Polonian* Story, the second Booke the third Chapter: where is said that about the 11th yeere 900. *Radmirus* Duke of *Ruffia*, married one *Anne* Sister to *Basilius*, and *Constantinus* Brothers, and Emperours of *Constantinople*. Whereupon the *Ruffe* received the Faith and Profession of Christ. Which though it be somewhat more ancient then the time noted before out of the *Ruffe* Report, yet it fulleneth out all to one reckoning, touching this point, viz. in what truth and

fin-

sincerity of Doctrine the *Ruffe* received the first flame of Religion: for as much as the *Greeke* Church at that time also was many wayes infected with error and superstition.

At calling being there, the yeere 1588. came vnto the *Marke* the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, or *Sio* (named *Hieronymus* being banished as some sayd) by the *Turke*, as some others reported by the *Greeke* Clergie deputed. The Emperour being giuen altogether to superstitious deuotions, gaue him great entertainment: Before his coming to *Mosko*, hee had bene in *Italy* with the Emperour concerning these points, First, about a League to passe betwixt him and the King of *Spain*, as the meetest Prince to joyne with him in opposition against the *Turke*. To which purpose also Ambassadors had passed betwixt the *Ruffe* and the *Persian*. Likewise from the *Georgians* to the Emperour of *Ruffia*, to joyne league together, for the invading of the *Turke* on all sides of his Dominion: taking the aduantage of the simple qualitie of the *Turke* that now is. This treatie was helped forward by the Emperours Ambassadors of *Almayne*, sent at the same time to sollicite an inuasion vpon the parts of *Polonia*, that lye towards *Russland*, and to borrow money of the *Ruffe* Emperour, to pursue the warre for his Brother *Maximilian*, against the *Swordens* Ionne, now King of *Poland*. But this consultation concerning a league betwixt the *Ruffe* and the *Spaniard*, (which was in some forwardnesse at my coming to *Mosko*, and already one appointed for Ambassage into *Spain*) was marred by meanes of the ouerthrow giuen to the *Spanish* King by her Majestie, the Queene of *England*, this last yeere. Which made the *Ruffe* Emperour and his Council, to giue a colder countenance to the *English* Ambassadors at that time: for that they were disappointed of so good a policie, as was this conjunction supposed to bee betwixt them and the *Spanish*.

His second purpose (where to the first served as an introduction) was in reuenge of the *Turke* and the *Greeke* Clergie, that had thrust him from his seate, to treat with them about the reducing of the *Ruffe* Church under the Pope of *Rome*. Wherein it may seeme that coming lately from *Rome*, hee was set on by the Pope, who hath attempted the same many times before, though all inuaine: and namely the time of the late Emperour *Iuan Vasiliewich*, by one *Anthony* his Legate. But thought this belike a farre better meane to obtayne his purpose by treatie and mediation of their owne Patriarch. But this not succeeding, the Patriarch fell to a third point of treatie, concerning the resignation of his Patriarchship, and translation of the Sea from *Constantinople* or *Sio*, to the *Citie* of *Mosko*. Which was so well liked, and enterprised by the Emperour (as a matter of high Religion and policie) that no other treatie (specially of forraigne Ambassadors) could bee heard or regarded, till that matter was concluded.

The reason wherewith the Patriarch perswaded the translating of his Sea to the *Citie* of *Mosko*, were these in effect. First, for that the Seap the Patriarch was vnder the *Turke*, that is enemie to the Faith. And therefore to bee removed into some other Countrey of *Christian* profession. Secondly, because the *Ruffe* Church was the only naturall daughter of the *Greeke* at this time, and holdeth the same Doctrine and Ceremonies with it: the rest being all subject to the *Turke*, and fallen away from the right profession. Wherein the subtil *Greeke* to make the better market of his broken wares, aduanced the honour that would grow to the Emperour, and his Country: to haue the Patriarchs Seat translated into the chief *Citie*, and seate of his Empire, As for the right of translating the Sea, and appointing his Successour, hee made no doubt of it, but that it pertayned wholly to himselfe.

So the Emperour and his Council, with the principall of his Clergie, being assembled at the *Mosko*, it was determined that the Metropolite of *Mosko*, should become Patriarch of the whole *Greeke* Church, and haue the same full Authoritie and Jurisdiction that pertayned before to the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, or *Sio*. And that it might bee done with more order and solemnities, the due and twentieth of Ianuarie, 1588, the *Greeke* Patriarch accompanied with the *Ruffe* Clergie, went to the great Church of *Preshbiter*, or our Ladie, within the Emperours Castle (hauing his two fingers) where hee made an Oration, and deliuered his resignation in an Instrument of writing, and so layd downe his Patriarchall staffe. Which was presently received by the Metropolite of *Mosko*, and diuers other ceremonies used about the Inauguration of this new Patriarch.

The day was holden very solemnely by the people of the *Citie*, who were commanded to forebear their workes, and to attend this solemnitie. The great Patriarch that day was honoured &c. carried with great pompe thorow the streets of *Mosko*, and at his departing receiued many gifts more, both from the Emperour, Nobilitie, and Clergie. Thus the Patriarchship of *Constantinople*, or *Sio*, (which hath continued since the Council of *Nice*) is now translated to *Mosko*, or had, wherein the subtil *Greeke* hath made good aduantage of their Superstition, and is now gone away with a rich bootie into *Poland*, whether their Patriarchship be current or not.

The matter is not vnlke to make some schisme betwixt the *Greeke* and *Ruffe* Church, if the

The translation of the Patriarchall Sea from Constantinople or Sio, to Mosko.

The Patriarchship of Constantinople transferred to Mosko.

*As they doe
and euer since
haue done:

Ruffe hold his Patriarchship that hee hath so well payed for, and the *Greekes* Elect another withall, as * likely they will, whether this man were banished by the *Turke*, or deprived by order of his owne Clergie. Which might happen to giue aduantage to the Pope, and to bring ouer the *Ruffe* Church to the Sea of *Rome*, (to which end peraduantage hee deuised this Stratagem, and call in this matter of Schisme among them) but that the Emperours of *Ruffia* know well enough, by the example of other *Christian* Princes, what inconuenience would grow to their State and Countrey, by subiecting themselves to the *Romish* Sea. To which end the late Emperour *Iuan Vasilouch*, was very inquisitive of the Popes authoritie ouer the Princes of *Christendome*, and sent one of very purpose to *Rome*, to behold the order and behauiour of his Court.

With this Patriarch *Harmenue*, was driven out at the same time by the great *Turke*, one *Demetrio* Archbishop of *Esarja*: who is now in *England*, and pretendeth the same cause of their banishment by the *Turke*, (to wit) their not admitting of the Popes new Kalender, for the alteration of the yeere. Which how vnlawfully it is, may appeare by these Circumstances. First, because there is no such affection, nor friendly respect betwixt the Pope and the *Turke*, as that hee should banish a Subject for not obeying the Popes ordinance, specially in a matter of some sequel for the alteration of Times within his owne Countreys. Secondly, for that hee maketh no such scruple in deducting of times, and keeping of a iust and precise account from the Incarnation of Christ: whom hee doth not acknowledge otherwise then I noted before. Thirdly, for that the said Patriarch is now at *Naples* in *Italy*, where it may be guessed hee would not haue gone without the Popes reach, and to no more to his nose, if hee had beene banished for opposing himselfe against the Popes Decree.

This office of Patriarchship now translated to *Moiske*, beareth a superiour Authoritie ouer all the Churches, not only of *Ruffia*, and other the Emperours Dominions, but thorow out all the Churches of *Christendome*, that were before vnder the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, or *Sio*: or at least the *Ruffe* Patriarch imagineth himselfe to haue the same authoritie. Hee hath vnder him as his proper Diocesse the Prouince of *Moiske*, besides other peculiaris. His Court or Office is kept at the *Moiske*.

Before the creation of this new Patriarch, they had but one Metropolis, that was called the Metropolis of *Moiske*. Now for more state to their Church, and new Patriarch, they haue two Metropolitans, the one of *Novogorod*, the other of *Rofkone*. Their office is to receiue of the Patriarch such Ecclesiasticall orders, as hee thinketh good, and to deliuer the charge of them ouer to the Archbishops: besides the ordering of their owne Diocesse.

Their Archbishops are foure: of *Smolenske*, *Cacum*, *Polske*, and *Vologda*. The parts of their office is all one with the Metropolitans: save that they haue an vnder Jurisdiction, as Suffraganes to the Metropolitans, & Superiors to the Bishops. The next are the *Pladske* or Bishops, that are but fixe in all: of *Crutskie*, of *Rezen*, of *Officer* and *Torstock*, of *Colomanske*, of *Volodmerske*, of *Susdalla*. These haue every one a very large Diocesse: as diuiding the rest of the whole Countrey among them.

The matters pertaining to the Ecclesiasticall jurisdiction of the Metropolitans, Archbishops, and Bishops, are the same in a manner that are vied by the Clergie in other parts of *Christendome*. For besides their authoritie ouer the Clergie, and ordering such matters as are meete Ecclesiasticall, their jurisdiction extendeth to all Testamentarie causes, matters of Marriage, and Diuorcements, some Pleas of injuries, &c. To which purpose also they haue their Officials, or Commissaries (which they call *Bosaren Vladitskye*) that are Lay-men of the degree of Dukes, or Gentlemen, that keep their Courts and execute their Jurisdiction. Which besides their other oppressions ouer the common people, raise ouer the Priests: as the Dukes and *Dyacke* doe ouer the poore people, within their Precincts. As for the Archbishop or Bishop himselfe, hee beareth no sway in deciding those causes, that are brought into his Court. But if hee would moderate any matter, he must doe it by intreatie with his Gentleman Officials. The reason is, because these *Bosarskye*, or Gentleman officials, are not appointed by the Bishops, but by the Emperour himselfe, or his Council, and are to giue account of their doings to none but to them. If the Bishop can intreat at his aduision to haue the choice of his owne Official, it is accounted for a speciall great fauour. But to speake it as it is, the Clergie of *Ruffia*, sitwell concerning their Lands and Reuenues, as their Authoritie and Jurisdiction, are altogether ordered and ouer-ruled by the Emperour and his Council, and haue so much, and no more of both as their pleasure doth permit them. They haue also there Assistants or feuerall Counsels (as they call them) of certayne Priests that are of that Diocesse, residing within their Cathedral Cities, to the number of foure and twentie a peece. These aduise with them, about the speciall and necessarie matters belonging to their charge.

The Church
reuenues

Concerning their Rents and Reuenues to maintaine their dignities, it is somewhat large. The Patriarchs yeerly rents out of his Lands (besides other fees) is about 3000 Rubbels or Marks. The Metropolitans and Archbishops, about 2500. The Bishops, some 1000. some 800. some 500. &c. They haue had some of them (as I haue heard say) ten or twelue thousand Rubbels a yeere: as had the Metropolis of *Novogorod*.

Their

Their Habit or Apparell (when they shew themselves in their Pontificalibus after their fownest manner) is a Mitre on their heads after the Popish fashion, set with Pearle and Precious Stone, a Coape on their backs, commonly of Cloath of Gold, embroydered with Pearle, and a Croisers Staffe in their hands, layed ouer all with Plate of Silver double gilt, with a Croile or Shepherds Crooke at the vpper end of it. Their ordinary habit otherwise when they ride or goe abroad, is a Hood on their heads of blacke colour, that hangeth downe their backs, and standeth out like a Bon-grace before. Their vpper Garment (which they call *Rus*) is a Gowne or Mantell of blacke Damaske, with many Lits or Gards of white Sattin layed vpon it, euery Gard about two fingers broad, and their Croisers staffe carried before them. Themselves follow after, blessing the people with their two fore-fingers, with a marulous grace.

The Election, and appointing of the Bishops and the rest, pertaineth wholly to the Emperour himselfe. They are chosen euer out of the Monasteries: so that there is no Bishop, Archbishop, nor Metropolitane, but hath bene a Monke, or Friar before. And by that reason they are, and must all bee vnmarried men, for their Vow of Chastitie when they were first shorne. When the Emperour hath appointed whom he thinketh good, hee is inuested in the Cathedral Church of his Diocesse, with many Ceremonies, much after the manner of the Popish Inauguration. They haue also their Deacons, and their Arch-Deacons.

As for preaching the Word of God, or any teaching, or exhorting such as are vnder them, they neither vye it, nor haue any skill of it: the whole Clergie being vtterly vnlerned both for other knowledge, and in the Word of God. Only their manner is twice euery yeere, viz. the first of September (which is the first day of their yeere) and on Saint *Iohn Baptists* day, to make an ordinarie speech to the people, euery Metropolitane, Arch-bishop, and Bishop, in his Cathedral Church, to this or like effect: That if any bee in malice towards his Neighbour, Prince, hee shall leaue off his malice: if any haue thought of Treason or Rebellion against his Prince, hee beware of such practice: if hee haue not kept his Fasts, and Vowes, nor done his other Duties to the holy Church, hee shall amend that Fault, &c. And this is a matter of forme with them, vttered in as many words, and no more, in a manner, then I haue here set downe. Yet the matter is done with that Grace and Solemnitie, in a Pulpit of purpose set vp for this one Act, as if hee were to discourse at large of the whole substance of Diuinitie. At the *Moiske* the Emperour himselfe is euer present at this Solemne Exhortation.

As themselves are void of all manner of Learning, so are they way to keepe out all meanes that might bring any in: as fearing to haue their ignorance and vngodlinesse discovered. To that purpose they haue perwaded the Emperours, that it would breed Inuolutione discovered. To that purpose they haue newly of Learning come within the Realme. Wherein they say but truth, for that a man of spirit and vnderstanding, helped by Learning and liberal Education, can hardly inure a tyrannicall Government. Some yeeres past in the other Emperours time, there came a Presse and Letters out of *Polonia*, to the Citie of *Moiske*, where a Printing Houe was set vp, with great liking and allowance of the Emperour him selfe. But not long after, the house was set on fire in the night time, and the Presse and Letters quite burnt vp, as was thought by the procurement of the Clergie-men.

Their Priests (whom they call *Papay*) are made by the Bishops, without any great tryall for worthinesse of gifts, before they admit them, or Ceremonies in their admission: save that their heads are shorne (not thauen, for that they like not) about an hand breadth or more in the crowne, and that place anointed with Oyle by the Bishop: who in his admission putteth vpon the Priest, first his Surpells, and then setteth a white Croile on his breast of Silke, or some other fine in the Church, and to administer the Sacraments.

They are men vtterly vnlearned, which is no marvell, for as much as their Makers, the Bishops themselves (as before was said) are cleere of that qualitie, and make no farther vye at all of any kind of Learning, no more of the Scriptures themselves, save to reade and to sing them. Their ordinary charge and function is to say the Lyturgie, to administer the Sacraments after their manner, to keepe and decke their Idols, and to doe the other Ceremonies viall in their Churches. Their number is great because their Townes are parted into many small Parishes, without any discretion for diuiding them into competent numbers of Households, and people for a iust Congregation: as the manner in all places where shee meanes is neglected, for increasing of knowledge, and instruction towards God. Which cannot well be had, where by meanes of an vnequall partition of the people, and Parishes, these followeth a want and vnqualitie of

For their Priests, it is lawfull to marry for the first time. But if the first Wife dye, a second hee cannot take, but he must lose his Priest-hood, and his living withall. The reason they make out of that place of Saint *Paul* to *Timothy* 1.3.2, is, not well vnderstood, thinking that to bee spoken of diuers Wiues successively, that the Apostle speaketh of at one and the same time. If hee

The Election
of Bishops.

The learning
and exercise
of the *Ruffe*
Clergie.

The *Papae*
Priests can
marry but
once.

will needs marrie againe after his first wife is dead, he is no longer called *Papa*, but *Rosape*, or *Priest quendam*. This maketh the Priests to make much of their Wiues, who are accounted as the Matrones, and of best reputation among the women of the Parish.

For the tipend of the Priest, their manner is not to pay him any tenths of Corne, or coghe elfe: but he must stand at the deuotion of the people of his Parish, and make vp the Incomes towards his maintenance, so well as hee can, by Offerings, Shrifts, Mariages, Burials, Dirges, and Prayers for the dead and the liuing (which they call *Molena*.) For besides their publike him by the Priest, vpon any occasion of businesse whatsoeuer, whether he ride, goe, stile, plough, or whatsoever elfe he doth. Which is not framed according to the occasion of his businesse, but at random, being some of their ordinary and vsuall Church-prayers. And this is thought to bee more holy, and effectuall, if it is repeated by the Priests mouth, rather then by his owne. They haue a custome, besides to solemnize the Saints day, that is, Patrone to their Church once every year. What time all their Neighbours of their Countrey and Parishes about, come in to haue Prayers said to that Saint for themselves, and their friends: and so make an Offering to the Priest for his paines. This Offering may yield them some ten pounds a yeere, more or lesse, as the Patrone or Saint of that Church is of credit and estimation among them. The manner is on this day (which they keepe Anniversarie for the Priest, to hire diuers of his Neighbour Priests to helpe him: as hauing more Dirges to dreffe for the Saint, then he can well turne his hand vnto. They vsie besides to visite their Parishioners houses, with Holy Water, and Perfume, commonly once a quarter: and so hauing sprinkled, and benedict the Goodman and his Wife, with the rest of their household, and household-stuffe, they receive some Deuotion or lesse, as the men is of abilitie. This and the rest layd altogether, may make vp for the Priest towards his maintenance, about thirty or forty Rubbels a yeere: whereof he payeth the tenth part to the Bishop of the Diocesse.

The Priests maintenance.

Their Priests attyre.

The *Papa* or Priest is knowne by his long Tufts of Haire, hanging downe by his Eares, his Gowne with a broad Cape, and a walking staffe in his hand. For the rest of his Habit, hee is apparelled like the common sort. When he sayeth the Lyturgie or Service, within the Church, hee hath on him his Surplesse, and sometimes his Cope, if the day bee more Solemne. They haue besides their *Papas* or Priests, their *Chorapapases* (as they call them) that is, *Black Priests*: so that may keepe their Benefices, though they be admitted Friers withall within some Monastrie. They seeme to be the very same that were called Regular Priests in the Popish Church. Vnder the Priest, is a Deacon in euery Church, that doth nothing but the Office of a Parish Clerke. As for their *Protopapases*, or Arch-priests, and their Arch-deacons (that are next in election to be their *Protopapases*) they serue only in the Cathedrall Churches.

Friers.

Of Friers they haue an infinite rubble farre greater then in any other Countrey, where Popery is professed. Euery City, and good part of the Countrey, swarmeth full of them. For they haue wrought (as the Popish Friers did by their Superstition and Hypocricie) that if any part of the Realme be better and sweeter then other, there standeth a Friery or a Monastery dedicated to some Saint.

The number of them is so much the greater, not only for that it is augmented by the Superstition of the Countrey, but because the Friers life is the safest from the Oppressions, and Exactions, that fall vpon the Common. Which causeth many to put on the Friers Weed, as the best Armour to beare off such blowes. Besides such as are voluntary, there are diuers that are forced to shirke themselves Friers, vpon some displeasure. These are for the most part of the chiefe Nobility. Diuers take the Monasteries as a place of Sanctuary, and there become Friers, to auoyde some punishment, that they had defered by the Lawes of the Realme. For if hee get a Monastery ouer his head, and there put on a Coole before hee bee attached, it is a protection to him for euery against any Law, for what crime foule: except it be for Treason. But this *Prossu* goeth withall, that no man commeth there, (except such as are commanded by the Emperour to be received) but hee giueth them Lands, or bringeth his stocke with him, and putteth it into the common Treasury. Some bring twoo Rubbels, and some more. None is admitted vnder three or foure hundred.

The manner of their Admission is after this sort. Firft, the Abbot strippeth him of all his Secular or ordinary Apparell. Then he putteth vpon him next to his skinne, a white flannell shirt, with a long Cincture ouer it downe to the ground, girded vnto him with a broad Leather Belt. His upper-most Garment is a Weed of *Garray*, or *Say*, for colour and fashion, much like to the vpper Weed of a Chimney-sweeper. Then is his croune borne a hand breadth, or more close to the very skinne, and these, or like words pronounced by the Abbot, whiles hee clippeth his haire: *As these haire are clipped, and taken from thy head; so now we take thee, and separate thee cleane from the world, and worldly things, &c.* This done, hee anointeth his croune with Oyle, and putteth on his Coole: and so taketh him in among the Fraternitie. They vpon perpetual Chastitie, and Abstinence from flesh.

Besides, their Lands (that are very great) they are the greatest Merchants in the whole

Countrey.

Countrey, and deale for all manner of Commodities. Some of their Monasteries dispend in Lands, one thousand, or two thousand Rubbels a yeere. There is one Abbey called *Trois*, that hath in Lands and Fees, the summe of 100000. Rubbels, or Markes a yeere. It is built in manner of a Castle, walled round about, with great Ordinance planted on the wall, and containeth within it a large breadth of ground, and great varietie of building. There are of Friers within it, (besides their Officers, and other Seruants) about seuen hundred. The Emperour that now is, hath many Vowes to Saint *Sergius*, that is Patrone there: to intreat him to make her fruitfull, as hauing no children by the Emperour her Husband. Lightly euery yeere hee goeth on Pilgrimage to him from the *Marky*, on foot, about eighty English miles; with five or sixe thousand women attending vpon her, all in blue Liueries, and foure thousand Souldiers for her Guard. But Saint *Sergius* hath not yet heard her Prayers, though (they say) hee hath a speciall gift and facultie that way.

What Learning there is among their Friers, may be knowne by their Bishops, that are the chiefe men out of all their Monasteries. I talked with one of them at the Citie of *Poloda*, where (to try his skill) I offered him a *Russe* Testament, and turned him to the first Chapter of Saint *Mattheus* Gospell. Where hee began to reade in very good order. I asked him first what part of Scripture it was, that he had read: he answered, that he could not well tell. How many Euangelists there were in the New Testament? He said he knew not. How many Apostles there were? He thought there were twelue. How many should be saved? Whereunto he answered me with a piece of *Russe* Doggrine, that he knew not whether he should be saved, or no: but if God would *Tophalauate* him, or gratifie him so much, as to faue him, so it was, he would be glad of it: if not, what remedy. I asked him, why hee thought himselfe a Friar? Hee answered, because he would eate his Bread with peace. This is the Learning of the Friers of *Russia*, which though it be not to be measured by one, yet partly it may be guesied by the ignorance of this man, what is in the rest.

The Friers Learning.

They haue also many Nunneries, whereof some may admit none but Noblemens Widowes, and Daughters, when the Emperour meanth to keepe them vnmarried, from continuing the blood or stocke, which if he would haue extinguished, To speake of the life of their Friers, and Nunnes, it needs not, to those that know the hypocricie, and vnlearnednesse of that Cloyster-brood. The *Russe* himselfe (though otherwise addicted to such Superstition) speaketh so fully of it, that it must needs giue silence of any modelt man.

Nunneries.

Besides these, they haue certayne *Eremites*, (whom they call *Holy men*) that are like to those *Gymnosophists*, for their life and behauiour: though farre vnlike for their Knowledge, and Learning. They vsie to goe barke naked, save a clout about their middle, with their haire hanging their neckes, or midst, euen in the very extremitie of Winter. These they take as Prophets, and ment, though it be of the very highest himselfe. So that if hee reprooue any openly, in what sort fouer, they answer nothing: but that it is *Po graem*, that is, for their inuies. And if lift, hee thinketh himselfe much beloued of God, and much beholding to the holy Man, for taking in that sort.

Eremites.

Strange hardnesse.

Of this kind there are not many, because it is a very hard and cold Profession, to goe naked in *Russia*, specially in Winter. Among other at this time, they haue one at *Marky*, that walketh naked about the streets, and inuigilith commonly against the State, and Gouvernement, especially againt the *Godones*, that are thought at this time to be great Oppressors of that Commonwealth. Another there was, that dyed not many yeeres agoe (whom they called *Basilus*) that would take vpon him to reprove the old Emperour, for all his crueltie, and oppressions, done towards his people. His body they haue translated of late into a sumptuous Church, where the Emperour Houle in *Marky*, and haue canonized him for a Saint. Many Miracles hee doth there (for the people, but by the chiefe Nobilitie, and the Emperour, and Emperesse themselves, which vsie that Church with great Deuotion. But this last yeere, at my being at *Marky*, this Saint had ill lucke in working his Miracles. For a lame man that had his limmes restored (as it was pretended by him) was charged by a woman that was familiar with him (being then fallen out) that hee had intended this matter, and could leape merrily when hee came home at night, and layeth vpon the Friers, that hired him to haue this counterfeite Miracle practised vpon him, his Church by fire in a Thunder. Which caused his Bels (that were tingling before all day and

Basilus the Eremite.

Lame Miracles.

night long as in triumph of the Miracles wrought by *Basilus* their Saint) to ring somewhat great account at *Plesky*, (called *Nicholas of Plesky*) that did much good, when this Emperours Father came to sacke the Towne, vpon suspicion of their reuolting and Rebellion against him. The Em-

Nicholas the Eremite.

perour, after he had saluted the Eremit, at his lodging, sent him a reward. And the Holy man to requite the Emperour, sent him a piece of raw Flesh, being then their Lent time. Which the Emperour seeing, bid one to tell him, that he marvelled that the Holy man would offer him flesh to cate in the Lent, when it was forbidden by order of holy Church. And doch *Eusebe* (which is as much to say, as Iacke) thinke (quoth *Nicola*) that it is unlawfull to cate a piece of beasts flesh in Lent and not to cate up of some mans flesh, as he hath done already. So threatening the Emperour with a prophesie of some hard adventure to come upon him, except he left murdering of his people, and departed the Towne: he feared a great many mens liues at that time.

This maketh the people to like very well of them, because they are as Pasquils, to note their great mens faults, that no man else dare speake of. Yet it falleth out sometime, that for this rude libertie, which they take vpon them, after a counterfeited manner, by imitation of Prophets, they are made away in secret: as was one of two of them, in the last Emperours time, for being out-bold in speaking against his government.

Chap. 22.
Of their Lysturgie, or forme of Church-seruice, and their manner of administering the Sacraments.
Their morning Seruice.

Their morning Seruice they call, *Zaundra*, that is, *Mattins*. It is done in this order. The Priest entreteth into the Church with his Deacon following him. And when he is come to the middle of the Church, he beginneth to say with a loude voyce: *Blasfany Vladis* (that is) *Blesse vs heavenly Pastor: meaning of Christ*. Then he addeth, *In the name of the Father, and of the Sonne, and of the holy Ghost, one very God in Trinitie: and Allday penance*, or, *Lord haue mercy vpon vs*. *Lord haue mercy vpon vs*: repeated three times. This done, he marcheth on towards the Chancel, or *Sanctum Sanctorum*, (as they vie to call it) and he entreteth into the *Scharfjy Dweer*, or the *Heavenly Dore*: which no man may enter into, but the Priest onely. Where landing at the Altar, or Table (set neere to the vpper wall of the Chancel) he sayeth the Lords Prayer, and then againe *Allday penance*, or, *Lord haue mercy vpon vs*, *Lord haue mercy vpon vs*, &c. pronounced twelue times. Then he prayeth the *Trinitie*, the *Father, the Sonne, and holy Ghost, for euer and euer*. Whereunto the Deacons, and People say, *Amen*. Next after, the Priest addeth the Psalmes for that day, and beginneth with, *O come let vs worship, and fall downe before the Lord*, &c. and therewithall himselfe, with the Deacons, and People, all turne themselves towards their Idols, or Images, that hang on the wall, and crossing themselves, *hau* downe three times, *knocking* their heads to the very ground. After this, he readeth the *Ten Commandments*, and *Athanasius Creed*, out of the *Seruce Booke*.

Legend.

This being done, the Deacon that standeth without the *Heavenly Dore*, or Chancel, readeth a piece of a Legend, out of a written Booke, (for they haue it not in Print) of some Saints life, miracles, &c. This is diuided into many parts, for euery day in the yee, and is read by them with a plaine singing note, not vnlike to the Popish tune, when they sing their Gospells. After all this (which reacheth to an houre and an halfe, or two houres of length) he addeth certaine set Collects, or Prayers vpon that which he hath read out of the Legend before: and so endeth his Seruice. All this while stand burning before their Idols, a great many of Waxe candles, (whereof some are of the bignesse of a mans wast) vowed, or enioyned by penance, vpon the people of the Parish.

Candles.

Compline.

About nine of the clocke in the morning, they haue another Seruice, called *Obseina*, (or Compline) much after the order of the Popish Seruice, that bare that name. If it be some high or Festiual day, they furnish their Seruice beside, with *Blessed bee the Lord God of Israel*, &c. and *We praise thee, O God*, &c. sung with a more solemn and curious note.

Their evening Seruice.

Their evening Seruice, is called *Vecherna*, where the Priest beginneth with *Blasfany Vladis*, as he did in the morning, and with the Psalmes appointed for the *Vecherna*. Which being read, he singeth, *My soule doeth magnifie the Lord*, &c. And then the Priest, Deacons, and People, all with one voyce, sing, *Allday penance*, or, *Lord haue mercy vpon vs*, thury times together. Whereunto the Boyes that are in the Church, answer all with one voyce, telling it vp so fast as their lips can goe: *Verij, Verij, Verij, Verij, or, Praise, Praise, Praise*, &c. thrille times together, with a very strange noise. Then is read by the Priest, and vpon the H-Idays sung, the first Psalm: *Blessed is the man*, &c. And in the end of it, is added, *Allday*, repeated ten times. The next in order is some part of the Gospell read by the Priest, which hee endeth with *Allday* repeated three times. And so having laid a Collect in remembrance of the Saint of that day, hee endeth his evening Seruice. All this while the Priest standeth aboue at the Altar, or high Table, within the Chancel, or *Sanctum Sanctorum*, whence hee neuer moueth all the Seruice time. The Deacon, or Deacons (which are many in their Cathedral Churches) stand without the Chancel by the *Scharfjy Dweer*, or *Heavenly Dore*: for within they may not be seene all the Seruice time, though otherwise their Office is so sweete and keepe it, and to set vp the Waxe candles before their Idols. The people stand together the whole Seruice time in the body of the Church, and some in the Church Porch, for Piety, or Seat they haue none within their Churches.

The manner of the Ruffe Baptisme.

The Sacrament of Baptisme they administer after this manner. The child is brought vnto the Church (and this is done within eight dayes after it is borne) if it be the child of some

Noble.

Noblemans, it is brought with great pompe in a rich Sled or Wagon, with Chaires and Cushions of cloth of Gold, and such like sumptuous shew of their best furniture. When they are come to the Church, the Priest standeth ready to receiue the child within the Church Porch, with his Tub of water by him. And then beginneth to declare vnto them, that they haue brought a little Infidell to be made a Christian, &c. This ended, he reacheth the Witelnes (that are two or three) in a certaine set forme out of his Booke, what their dutie is in bringing vp the child after he is baptised, &c. That he must be taught to know God, and Christ the Saviour. And because God is of great maiesty, and wee must not presume to come vnto him without Mediators (as the manner is when we make any suit to an Emperour, or great Prince) therefore they must teach him what Saints are the best, and chiefe Mediators, &c. This done, he commandeth the Doull in the name of God after a conuring manner, to come out of the water: and so after certaine Prayers he plungeth the child thrise vnto head and eares. For this they hold to be a point necessary, that no part of the child be vnplunged in the water.

The words that beare with them the forme of Baptisme vttered by the Priest, when he dipeth in the child, are the very same that are prescribed in the Gospell, and vied by vs, *In the name of the Father, and of the Sonne, and of the holy Ghost*. For that they should alter the forme of the words, and say, *by the holy Ghost*, (as I haue heard that they did) following certaine Hereticks of the Greeke Church, I found to be vntrue, as well by report of them that haue been often at their Baptismes, as by their Booke of *Lysturgie* it selfe, wherein the order of Baptisme is precisely set downe.

When the child is baptised, the Priest layeth Oyle and Salt tempered together vpon the forehead, and both sides of his face, and then vpon his mouth, drawing it along with his finger on the childes lips (as did the Popish Priests) saying withall certaine Prayers to this effect: that God will make him a good Christian, &c. all this is done in the Church Porch. Then is the child (as being now made a Christian, and meet to be receiued within the Church Dore) carried into the Church, the Priest going before, and there he is presented to the chiefe Idoll of the Church, being layd on a Cushion before the feet of the Image, by it (as by the Mediator) to be commended vnto God. If the child be tickle, or weak (specially in the Winter) they vie to make the water luke warme. After Baptisme the manner is to cut off the haire from the childes head, and hauing wrapped it within a piece of Waxe to lay it vp as a Relique or Monument in a secret place of the Church.

Oyle and Salt.

Presented.

Cutting off haire.

This is the manner of their Baptisme, which they account to be the best and perfectest forme. As they doe all other parts of their Religion, receiued (as they say) by tradition from the best Church, meaning the Greeke. And therefore they will take great paines to make a Prosefite, or Conuert, either of an Infidell, or of a forerine Christian, by rebaptising him after the *Ruffe* manner. When they take any *Tartar* prisoner, commonly they will offer him life, with condition to be baptised. And yet they perswade very few of them to redeem their life so: because of the naturall hatred the *Tartar* beareth to the *Ruffe*, and the opinion he hath of his falsehood, and iniustice. The yee after *Mosky* was fired by the *Crim Tartar*, there was taken a *Disuoymer*, one of the chiefe in that exploit with three hundred *Tartars* more: who had all their liues offered them if they would be baptised after the *Ruffe* manner. Which they refused all to do, with many reproches against those that perswaded them. And being carried to the Rides *Mosky* (that runneth through the Citie) they were all baptised after a violent manner: being thrust downe with a knock on the head into the water, through an hole made in the Ice for that purpose. Of *Lieslanders* that are captiues, there are many that take on them this second Ruffe Baptisme to get more libertie, and somewhat beides towards their liuing, which the Emperour ordinarily vields to giue them.

Prosefite-paints.

Tartars chiefe to die rather then conuert Christians.

Rebaptising.

Of *Engelomen* since they frequented the Countrey there was neuer any found, that so much forgot God, his Faith, and Countrey, as that he would be content to be baptised *Ruffe*, for any respect of feare, preferment, or other meanes whatsoever: saue onely *Richard Ruffe*, that following before an vnposibly trade, by keeping a *Laback* (against the order of the Countrey) and being put off from that trade, and spoiled by the Emperours Officers of that which he had, entred himselfe this last yee into the *Ruffe* Profession: and so was rebaptised, liuing now as much an Idolater, as before he was a Rioter, and vncharitable person.

Such as thus receiue the *Ruffe* Baptisme, are first carried into some Monastrie to bee instructed there in the doctrine and ceremonies of the Church. Where they vie these ceremonies: First, they put him into a new and fresh sute of apparell, made after the *Ruffe* fashion, and set a Coronet, or (in Summer) a Garland vpon his head. Then they anoint his head with Oyle, and put a Waxe candle light into his hand: and so pray ouer him four times a day, the space of seuen dayes. All this while he is to abstaine from flesh, and white meats. The seuen dayes being ended, he is purified and washed in a Bath-stoue, and so the eighth day hee is brought into the Church, where he is taught by the Friars how to behaue himselfe in presence of their Idols, by ducking downe, knocking of the head, crossing himselfe, and such like gestures, which are the greatest part of the *Ruffe* Religion.

The

The administering of the Lords Supper. Confession.

Communion in both kinds.

The Sacrament of the Lords Supper they receive but once a yeere, in their great Lent time, a little before Easter. Three at the most are admitted at one time, and neuer above. The manner of their communicating, is thus. First, they confesse themselves of all their finnes to the Priest (whom they call) their ghostly Father. Then they come to the Church, and are called vp to the Communion Table, that standeth like an Altar, a little removed from the vtter end of the Church, after the Dutch manner. Here first they are asked of the Priest, *whether they be cleane or no*, that is, whether they haue neuer a sinne behind that they left vnconfessed. If they answer, *No*, they are taken to the Table. Where the Priest beginneth with certayne vsuall Prayers, the Communicants standing in the meane while with their armes folded one within another, like Penitentes or Mourners. When these prayers are ended, the Priest taketh a Spoon and filleth it full of claret Wine. Then he putteth into it a small peece of Bread, and tempereth them both together: and so deliuereth them in the spoon to the Communicants, that stand in order, speaking the vsuall words of the Sacrament. *Eate this, &c. Drink this, &c.* both at one time without any pause.

After that hee deliuereth them againe Bread by it selfe, and then Wine carded together with a little warme water, to repretend Bloud more rightly (as they thinke) and the water withall, that flowed out of the side of Christ. Whiles this is in doing the Communicants vnfold their armes. And then folding them againe, follow the Priest three round about the Communion table, and so returne to their places againe. Where hauing sayd certayne other prayers, hee deliuereth the Communicants, with charge to bee merrie, and to cheere vp themselves for the future dayes next following. Which being ended, hee enioyneth them to fast for it as long time after. Which they vie to obtrue with very great deuotion, eating nothing else but Bread and Sale, except a little Cabbage, and some other Herbe or Root, with water or quasse Mead for their drinke.

This is their manner of administering the Sacraments. Wherein what they differ from the institution of Christ, and what Ceremonies they haue added of their owne, or rather borrowed of the *Greekes*, may easily bee noted.

chap. 23.
Of the Doctrine of the Ruffe Church, & what errors it holdeth.
1. Their disallowing of certayne parts of the Cimoniall Scriptures.

Their chiefeft errors in matter of Faith I finde to bee these. First, concerning the Word of God it selfe they will not read publiquely certayne Bookes of the Canoniall Scripture, as 30 the bookes of *Moses*: specially the four last, *Exodus, Leviticus, Numeri, and Deuteronomius*, which they say are all made disauthenticke, and put out of vie by the coming of Christ: as not able to discerne the difference betwixt the *Morall* and the *Ceremoniall Law*. The bookes of the *Prophets* they allow of, but reade them not publicly in their Churches, for the same reason: because they were but directers vnto Christ, and proper (as they say) to the Nation of the *Iewes*. Only the Bookes of *Psalmes* they haue in great estimation, and sing and say them daily in their Churches. Of the New Testament they allow and reade all, except the *Revelation*: which therefore they reade not (though they allow it) because they vnderstand it not, neither haue the like opinion, to know the fulfilling of the Prophecies contayned within it, concerning especially the Apostolicke of the *Antichristian* Church, as haue the Westerne Churches. Notwithstanding, 40 they haue had their *Antichristis* of the *Greeke* Church, and may finde their owne falling off, and the punishments for it by the *Turkish* inuasion in the Prophecies of that Booke.

2. Traditions equallo to the holy Scriptures.

Secondly, (which is the fountaine of the rest of all their corruptions both in Doctrine and Ceremonies) they hold with the *Papists*, that their Church *Traditions* are of equall authoritie with the written Word of God. Wherein they preferre themselves before other Churches: affirming that they haue the true and right Traditions, deliuered by the Apostles to the *Greeke* Church, and so vnto them.

3. The Church to haue foueraigne authoritie in interpreting the Scriptures.

Thirdly, that the Church (meaning the *Greeke*, and specially the Patriarch and his Synod, as the head of the rest) hauing a foueraigne Authoritie to interpret the Scriptures, and that all are bound to hold that Interpretation, as sound and authentick.

4. The holy Ghost to proceed from the Father only.

Fourthly, concerning the Diuine nature and the three Persons, in the one substance of God, that the holy Ghost proceedeth from the Father only, and not from the Sonne.

5. Christ as sole Mediator of intercession.

Fifthly, about the office of Christ, they hold many foule errors, and the same almost as doth the *Papish* Church: namely, that hee is the sole Mediator of redemption, but not of intercession. Their chiefe reason (if they be talked withall) for defence of this error, is that vnapt and foolish comparison, betwixt God, and a Monarch or Prince of this world, that must be iudged by Mediators about him: wherein they giue speciall preferment to some aboute, as to the blessed *Virgin* whom they call *Prochete*, or vndeified, and Saint *Nicolas*, whom they call *Serua*

6. Christ as sole Mediator of intercession.

pennick, or the *Speedy helper*, and say, that hee hath three hundred Angels of the chiefeft appointed by God to attend vpon him. This hath brought them to an horrible excefse of Idolatrie, after the grossest and prophaneft manner, giuing vnto their Images all religious worship of Prayer, Thanksgiuing, Offerings and Adoration, with prostrating and knocking their heads to the ground before them, as to God himselfe. Which because they doe to the Picture, not to the portraiture of the Saine, they say they worship not an Idoll, but the Saint in his Image, and so fond

Images.

Images.

tend not God: forgetting the Commaundement of God, that forbideth to make the Image or likenesse of any thing, for any Religious worship, or vie whatsoeuer. Their Church walls are vnder full of them, richly hanged and set forth with Pearle and Stone, vpon the smooth Table. Though some also they haue embossed, that flicke from the board almost an inch outwards. They call them *Chadenodites*, or their Miracle workers: and when they provide them to set vp in their Churches, in no case they may say, that they haue bought the Image, but *Exchanged money for it*.

Sixtly, for the meanes of Iustificacion, they agree with the *Papists*, that it is not by Faith one-ly apprehending Christ, but by their Workes also. And that *Opan operation*, or the worke for the worke sake, must needs please God. And therefore they are all in their numbers of Prayers, Fasts, Vowes, and Offerings to Saints, Almes dees, Crossings and such like, and carrie their numbering Beads about with them continually, as well the Emperour and his Nobilitie, as the common people, not only in the Church, but in all other publicke places, specially at any set or solemne meeting, as in their Fasts, law Courts, common Consultations, entertainment of Ambassadors, and such like.

Seuenthly, they say with the *Papists*, that no man can be assured of his saluation, till the sentence be passed at the day of Iudgement.

Eightly, they vie auricular Confession, and thinke they are purged by the very action from many finnes, as they confesse by name, and in particular to the Priest.

Ninthly, they hold three Sacraments, of *Baptisme*, the *Lords Supper*, and the last Anointing or *Unction*. Yet concerning their Sacrament of extreme *Unction*, they hold it not for necessitie to saluation as they doe Baptisme, but thinke it a great curse and punishment of God, if any dye without it.

Tenthly, they thinke there is a necessitie of Baptisme, and that all are condemned that dye without it.

Eleuenthly, they rebaptise as many *Christians* (not being of the *Greeke* Church) as they conuert to their *Ruffe* profession: because they are diuided from the true Church, which is the *Greeke*, as they say.

Twelfthly, they make a difference of Meates and Drinckes, accounting the vie of one to be more holy then of another. And therefore in their set Fasts they forbear to eate flesh, and white meates (as wee call them) after the manner of the *Popish* superstition: which they obserue so strictly, and with such blinde deuotion, as that they will rather dye, then eate one bit of Flesh, Egges or such like, for the health of their bodies in their extreme sicknesse.

Thirteenthly, they hold Marriage to bee vnlawfull for all the Clergie men, except the Priests only, and for them also after the first Wife, as was sayd before. Neither doe they well allow of it in Lay-men after the second marriage. Which is a pretence now vied against the Emperours only Brother, a child of sixe yeeres old: who theretore is not Prayed for in their Churches, (as is not legitimate. This charge was giuen to the Priests by the Emperour himselfe, by procurement of the *Gadanes*: who make him beleue, that it is a good policie to turne away the liking of the people from the next successeur.

Many other false opinions they haue in matter of Religion. But these are the chiefe, which they hold, partly by meanes of their traditions (which they haue received from the *Greeke* Church) but specially by ignorance of the holy Scriptures. Which notwithstanding they haue in reade them with that godly care which they ought to doe: neither haue they (if they would) Bookes sufficient of the old and new Testament for the common people, but of their Lyturgie only, or Booke of common seruice, whereof there are great numbers. Which notwithstanding it is not to be doubted, but that hauing the Word of God in some sort (though without the ordinarie meanes to attaine to a true sense and vnderstanding of it) God hath all his number among them. As may partly appere by that which a *Ruffe* at *Moske* sayd in secret to one of my Seruants, speaking against their Images and other superstitious: That God had giuen vnto England light to day, and might giue it to morrow (if hee pleased) to them.

As for any Inquisition or proceeding against men for matter of Religion, I could heare of none: save a few yeeres since against one man and his wife, who were kept in a close Prison from the space of eight and twentie yeeres, till they were ouer-grown into a deformed fashion, for their hayre, nayles, colour of countenance, and such like, and in the end were burned at *Moske*, in a small Houle set on fire. The cause was kept secret, but like it was for some part of truth in matter of Religion: though the people were made to beleue by the Priests and Friars, that they held some great and damnable Herefie.

The manner of making and solemnizing their Marriages, is different from the manner of other Countries. The man (though hee neuer saw the woman before) is not permitted to haue any sight of her all the time of his wooing: which hee doth not by himselfe, but by his Mother

Inquisition.

chap. 24.
Of the manner of solemnizing their Marriages.

Mother or some other ancient woman of his kinne or acquaintance. When the liking is taken (as well by the Parents as by the parties themselves, for without the knowledge and consent of the Parents, the contract is not lawful) the Fathers on both sides, or such as are to them in stead of Fathers, with their other chiefe friends, have a meeting and conference about the dowrie, which is commonly very large after the abilitye of the parents: so that you shall have a *Marke* man (as they call them) give a thousand Rubbels, or more with his Daughter.

The manner
of indowment
for Wives.

As for the man it is never required of him, nor standeth with their custome to make any joynt-
recompence of the dowrie. But in case hee have a Child by his Wife, shee enjoyeth a third
deale after his decaise. If he have two Children by her or more, she is to have a courtse more, at
the discretion of the husband. If the husband depart without issue by his wife, shee is returned
at home to her friends without any thing at all, save only her dowrie: if the husband leave
much behind him in goods. When the agreement is made concerning the dowrie, they sign
Bonds one to the other, as well for the payment of the dowrie, as the performing of the Mar-
riage by a certayne day. If the woman were never married before, her Father and friends are
bound besides to assure her a Maiden. Which breedeth many troubles and quarrels at Law, if the
man take any conceit concerning the behaviour and honestie of his wife.

Thus the contract being made, the parties begin to send tokens one to the other, the Wo-
man first, then afterwards the Man, but yet see not one another till the Marriage be solemn-
ized. On the Eve before the marriage day, the Bride is carried in a *Collimage*, or Coach, or in a
Sled (if it bee winter) to the Bridegrooms house, with her marriage Apparell and Bed-head
with her, which they are to lie in. For this is ever provided by the Bride, and is commonly
very faire, with much cloth bestowed upon it. Here she is accompanied all that night by her Mo-
ther and other women: but not welcomed, nor once seene by the Bridegroom himselfe.

Ceremonies
in Marriages.

When the time is come to have the marriage solemnized, the Bride hath put upon her a kind
of Hood, made of fine Knit-woke or Lawne, that couereth her head, and all her body downe to
the middle. And she is accompanied with her friends, and the Bridegroom with his, they goe to
Church all on Horsebacke, though the Church be neare hand, and themselves but of very meane
degree. The words of contract and other ceremonies in solemnizing the Marriage, are much af-
ter the order, and with the same words that are used with vs: with a Ring also given to the
Bride. Which being put on, and the words of contract pronounced: the Brides hand is placed
into the hand of the Bridegroom, which handeth all this while on the one side of the Altar or
Table, and the Bride on the other. So the marriage knot being knit by the Priest, the Bride
cometh to the Bridegroom (standing at the end of the altar or table) and falleth downe at his
feet, knocking her Head upon his Shoe, in token of her subjection and obedience. And the
Bridegroom againe, casteth the lappe of his Gowne or vpper garment ouer the Bride, in token
of his ducie to protect and cherish her.

Loafe.

Then the Bridegroom and Bride, standing both together at the Tables end, cometh first
the Father and the other friends of the Bride, and bow themselves downe low to the Bride-
groom: and so likewise his friends bow themselves to the Bride, in token of affinitie and love
euer after betwixt the two kindreds. And withall, the Father of the Bridegroom offereth to the
Priest a loafe of Bread, who delivereth it straight againe to the Father and other friends of
the Bride, with attestation before God and their Idols, that hee deliver the dowrie wholly and
truly at the day appointed, and hold love euer after, one kindred with another. Whereupon
they breake the Loafe into pieces, and eat of it, to testifie their true and sincere meanings,
for performing of that charge, and thenceforth to become as graines of one Loafe, or men of
one Table.

Mead.

These ceremonies being ended, the Bridegroom taketh the Bride by the hand, and so they goe
on together with their friends after them towards the Church porch. Where meet them certaine
Ketch first a Clarke, or little cup full in his hand, and drinkeeth to the Bride: who opening her
Hood or Vale below, and putting the Cup to her mouth underneath it (for being seene of the
Bridegroom) pledgeeth him againe. Thus returning all together from the Church, the Bride-
groom goeth not home to his owne, but to his Fathers house, and shee likewise to hers, where
either entertayne their friends apart. At the entering into the House, they vie to sling Come out
of the windowes vpon the Bridegroom and Bride, in token of plentie and fruchtfullnes to be-
with them euer after.

Corne.

Silence:

When the Evening is come, the Bride is brought to the Bridegrooms Fathers house, and
there lodgeth that night, with her Vayle or couer still over her head. All that night she may not
speake one word (for that charge her receiveth by tradition from her Mother, and other Ma-
trons her friends) that the Bridegroom must neither heare, nor see her, till the day after the
marriage. Neither three dayes after, may the be heard to speake, save certaine few words at the
Table in a set forme, with great manners and reverence to the Bridegroom: If shee behaue her-
selfe otherwise, it is a great prejudice to her credit and life euer after: and will highly be dis-
liked of the Bridegroom himselfe.

After:

After the third day, they depart to their owne, and make a Feast to both their friends to-
gether. The marriage day, and the whole time of their festival, the Bridegroom hath the
honour to be called *Maskey Knez*, or young Duke, and the Bride *Moloday Knezay*, or young
Duchesse.

In living with their wives, they shew themselves to be but of a barbarous condition: yfing
them as seruants, rather then wives. Except the Noble-women, which are, or seeme to bee of
more estimation with their husbands, then the rest of meane sort. They have this soule
abuse, contrary to good order, and the Word of God it selfe, that vpon dislike of his wife, or
other cause whatsoever, the man may goe into a Monastrie and shue himselfe a Friar, by pre-
tence of deuotion: and so leaue his wife to shift for her selfe so well as shee can.

The other Ceremonies of their Church, are many in number: especially, the abuse about
the signe of the Crosse, which they set vp in their high wayes, in the tops of their Churches,
and in euery doore of their houses, signing themselves continually with it on their foreheades &
breasts with great deuotion, as they will seeme by their outward gesture. Which were lesse of-
fence, if they gae not withall that religious reuerence and worship vnto it, which is due to
God only, and vsed the dumbe shew, and signing of it instead of thanksgiving, and of all
other duties which they owe vnto God. When they rise in the morning, they goe commonly
in the sight of some steeple that hath a Crosse on the top; and so bowing themselves towards
the Crosse, signe themselves withall on their foreheades and breasts. And this is their thankgiving
to God for their nights rest, without any word speaking, except perarduenure they say,
Aldy Pomeley, or Lord haue mercie vpon vs. When they sit downe to meat, and rise againe from
it, the thanksgiving to God, is the crossing of their foreheades and breasts. Except it be some few
times side perarduenure a word or two of some ordinary prayer, impertinent to that purpose.
When they are to give an oath for the deciding of any controuersie at Law, they doe it by
swearing by the Crosse, and kissing the feet of it, making it as God, whose name only is to be
ing on the wall) they signe themselves with the Crosse, and bow themselves to it. When they
begin any worke, bee it little or much, they arme themselves first with the signe of the Crosse.
And this commonly is all their prayer to God, for good speed of their business. And thus they
serue God with crosses, after a crosse and vaine manner: notwithstanding what the Crosse of
Turkes in comparison of themselves (and so they will say) because they bow not themselves
when they meet with the Crosse, nor signe themselves with it, as the *Russe* manner is.

They haue Holy-water in like use and estimation, as the Popish Church hath. But herein
they exceed them, in that they doe not onely hollow their Holy-water tickes, and tubs full of
water, but all the Rivers of the Countrey once euery yeere. At *Moskoe* it is done with great
pompe and solemnitie: the Emperour himselfe being present at it with all his Nobilitie, mar-
ching through the streets towards the River of *Moskoe*, in manner of Procession, in this order
as followeth. First goe two Deacons, with banners in their hands, the one of *Precheite* (or our
Lady) the other of *Saint Michael* fighting with his Dragon. Then follow after the rest
of the Deacons, and the Priests of *Moskoe*, two and two in a ranke, with Coats on their backs,
the Priests come their Bishops in their Pontificalibus: then the Friars, Monkes, and Abbots:
nise his vniuersallitie ouer that Church. Last cometh the Emperour with all his Nobilitie,
made in the Ice, where the Market is kept of a road and a halfe broad, with a stage great is
it to keepe off the presse. Then beginneth the Patriarch to say certaine prayers, and conuinceth
the Deuill to come out of the water: and so casting in Salt, and censuring it with Frankincense,
maketh the whole River to become Holy-water. The morning before, all the people of *Moskoe*
vie to make crosses of chaulke ouer euery doore and window of their houses: least the Deuill
being conuincd out of the water, should flye into their houses.

When the Ceremonies are ended you shall see the black Guard of the Emperours house, & then
the rest of the Towne, with their pails and buckets to rake off the hollowed water for drinke,
and other uses. You shall also see the women dip in their children ouer head and eares, and ma-
ny men and women leape into it, some naked, some with their clothes on, when some man
haue done, they bring their horse to the River to drinke of the sanctified water, and so make
them as holy as a horse. Their set day for the solemnitie of hallowing their Rivers, is that
we call *Twelfth-day*. The like is done by other Bishops in all parts of the Realme.

Their manner is also to giue it to their sick in their greatest extremitie: thinking that it will
either recouer them, or sanctifie them to God. Whereby they kill many, through their vnrea-
sonable superstition, as did the Lord *Berrie* his onely sonne, as my being at the *Moskoe*: whom
he

Chap. 1.
Of the other
Ceremonies
of the Russe
Church.
The figure of
the Crosse, how
it crosseth out
other places.

Holy-water.
Hallowing of
Rivers.

Drinking of
Holy-water.

Cremellind.
vill of super-
stition.

he killed (as was said by the Physicians) by pouring into him cold Holy-water, and presenting him naked into the Church, to their Saint *Basilis*, in the cold of Winter in an extreme of sickness.

They have an Image of Christ, which they call *Nerechi*, (which signifies as much as *Made without hands*) for so their Priests, and superstition withall perfwadeth them it was, This in the Processions they carry about with them on high upon a pole, enclosed within a Pize, made like a Lanthorne, and doe reverence to it as to a great myserie.

Brewing with
Holy-water.

At every brewing their manner is likewise to bring a dish of their wort to the Priest within the Church: which being hallowed by him, is poured into the brewing, and so giueth it such a vertue, as when they drinke of it they are seldom sober. The like they doe with the first fruits of their Corne in Haruest.

Palm-sunday.

They have another Ceremony on Palm-sunday, of ancient tradition: what time the Patriarch rideth through the *Moske*, the Emperour himselfe holding his horse bridle, and the people crying *Hosanna*, and spreading their vpper garments vnder his horse feet. The Emperour hath of the Patriarch his good service of that day two hundred Rubbels of standing pension. Another pageant they have much like to this, the weeke before the Nativite of Christ: when every Bishop in his Cathedral Church, fetcheth forth a shew of the three children in the muration of the lookers on, and many terrible flashes of fire are made with rofen, and gun-powder, by the *Chaldeans* (as they call them) that run about the Towne all the twelve dayes, disguised in their players coats, and make much good sport for the honor of the Bishops pageant. At the *Moske*, the Emperour himselfe, and the Emperesse neuer faile to be at it, though it be the same matter played every year, without any new invention at all.

Fasts.

Besides their fasts on Wednesdaies, and Fridayes, throughout the whole yeare, (the one because they say Christ was sold on the Wednesday, the other because he suffered on the Friday) they have foure great Fasts or Lentes every yeare. The first, (which they call their great Lent) is the same time with ours. The second, about Mid-summer. The third, in Haruest time. The fourth, about Hallontide: which they keepe not of pollicie, but of mere superstition. In their great Lent, for the first weeke, they eat nothing but bread and salt, and drinke nothing but water, neither meddle with any matter of their vocation, but intend their fasting and fasting only. They have also three *Vigils*, or *Wakes* in their great Lent, which they call *Sotomus* and the last Friday their great *Vigil*, as they call it. What time the whole Parish must be present in the Church, and watch from nine a clocke in the Evening, till sixe in the morning, all the while standing, saue when they fall downe and knocke their heads to their Idols, which must bee an hundred and seauente times iust through the whole night.

Vigils.

Burials.

About their burials also, they have many superstitious and prophane Ceremonies: as putting within the finger of the corps, a letter to Saint *Nicolas*: whom they make their chiefe mediator, and as it were the porter of heauen gates, as the Papists doe their *Peter*.

In Winter time, when all is covered with snow, and the ground so hard frozen, as that no spade nor pick-axe can enter their manner is not to bury their dead, but to keepe the bodies (so many as all the Winter time) in an house, in the suburbs, or out-parts of the Towne, which they call *Bofidam*, that is, *Gods house*: where the dead bodies are pyled vp together, like billets on a woodstacke, ashard with the frost as a verie fenne, till the Spring-tide come, and resolue the frost: what time euery man taketh his dead friend, and committeth him to the ground.

Months minds

They have besides their yeeres and monthes mindes for their friends departed. What time they have prayers said out the graue by the Priest: who hath a pery ordinary for his paines. When any die, they have ordinary women mourners, that come to lament for the dead partie: and stand howling ouer the body after a prophane and heathenish manner (sometimes in the house, sometimes bringing the body into the back-side, asking him what he wanted, and so what he meant to die. They bury their dead, as the pary vied to goe, with coar, hof, boots, hat, and the rest of his apparel.

Many other vaine and superstitious Ceremonies they haue, which were long and tedious to report. By these it may appeare how farr they are fallen from the true Knowledge, and practice of Christian Religion, having exchanged the Word of God for their vaine Traditions, and brought all to external and ridiculous Ceremonies, without any regard of Spirit and Truth, which God requirith in his true worship.

Chap. 26.
Of the Empe-
rours dome-
sticke, or pri-
uate behauiour.

The Emperours priuate behauiour, so much as may be, or is meet to be knowne, is after this manner. Hee sitteth commonly about foure a clocke in the morning. After his appar-
telling and walking, in commeth his ghostly Father, or Priest of his chamber, which is named in their tongue, *Oeste Dubuna*, with his Crosse in his hand, wherewith he blesteth him, laying it first on his forehead, then vpon his cheekes, or sides of his face: and then offereth him the end of it to kisse. This done, the Clerke of the Crosse (called *Cherby Deyack Presery*) bringeth
into

into his Chamber, a painted Image, representing the Saint for that day: for every day with them hath his *seuerall Saint*, as it were the Patrone for that day. This hee placeth among the rest of his Image Gods, wherewithall his Chamber is decked, as thicke almost as the wall can beare, with Lampes and Waxe-candles burning before them. They are very costly and gorgeously decked with Pearle and Precious Stone. This Image being placed before him, the Emperour beginneth to crosse himselfe after the *Russe* manner, first, on the fore-head, then on both sides of his breast, with *Aposty Pomeley*, *Pomeley meua belysoly*, *Iacroy meua grefick Syndofus*: which is as much to say, as, *Helpe me, O Lord my God, Lord comfort me, defend and keepe me a Sinner from doing euill, &c.* This hee directeth towards the Image, or Saint for that day, whom hee nameth in his Prayer, together with our Lady (whom they call *Pracheite*) Saint *Nicolas*, or some other, to whom he beareth most deuotion, bowing himselfe prostrate vnto them, with knocking his head to the very ground. Thus he continueth the space of a quarter of an hour or thereabouts.

His priuate
Prayer.

Then commeth againe the Ghostly Father or Chamber Priest, with a Silver Bowle full of *Holy-water*, which they call in *Russe*, *Sueta Voda*, and a sprinkle of Basil (as they call it) in his hand: and so all to besprinkle the Image Gods, and then the Emperour. This *Holy-water* is brought fresh every day from the Monasteries, farre and neere sent to the Emperour from the Abbot or Prior, in the name of the Saint, that is Patrone of that Monastery, as a speciall token of good will from him.

These deuotions being ended, hee sendeth into the Emperesse, to aske whether the hath rested in health, &c. And after a little pawles goeth himselfe to salute her in a middle Roome betweene both their chambers. The Emperesse lyeth a-part from him, and keepeth not one chamber, nor Table with the Emperour ordinarily, saue vpon the Eue of their Lent, or common Fasts: what time he is his ordinary Ghest at Bed and Boord. After their meeting in the morning, they goe together to their priuate Church or Chappell, where is said or sung a morning Service (called *Zaurana*) of an houre long or thereabouts. From the Church hee returneth home, and sitteth him downe in a great chamber, to be seene and saluted by his Nobilitie, such as are in fauour about the Court. If he haue to say to any of them, or they to him, then is the time. And this is ordinary, except his health, or some other occasion alter the custome.

The Emperour
giueth pre-
sence every
morning.

About nine in the morning, he goeth to another Church within his Castle: where is sung by Priests, and Choristers, the high Service (called *Obedna*, or *Complin*) which commonly lasteth two houres: the Emperour in the meane-time talking commonly with some of his Councill, Nobilitie, or Captaynes, which haue to say to him, or he to them. And the Councill likewise conferre together among themselves, as if they were in their Councill-house. This ended, he returneth home, and recreateth himselfe vntill it be Dinner time.

He is serued at his Table on this manner. First, every Dish (as it is deliuered at the Dresser) is tasted by the Cooke, in the presence of the high Steward, or his Deputie. And so is receiued by the Gentlemen-waiters (called *Shifher*) and by them carryed vp to the Emperours Table, the high Steward or his Deputie going before. There it is receiued by the Sewer (called *Estrafny*) who giueth a Dish of euery Dish to the Emperour, and so placeth it before the Emperour. The number of his Table for his ordinary Service, is about seuentie: dressed somewhat grossly, with much Garlike, and Salt, much after the *Dutch* manner. When hee exceedeth vpon some occasion of the day, or entertainment of some Ambassadour, hee hath many more Dishes. The Service is sent vp by two Dishes at a time, or three at the most, that he may eate it warme, first the baked, chief of his Nobility that are about his Court, and his Ghostly Father, or Chapleine. On the one side of the chamber standeth a Cubboord, or Table of Plate, very fine and rich, with a great Cistene of Copper by it, full of Ice and Snow, wherein stand the Pots that serue for that meale, a say, when he calleth for it. The manner is to make many Dishes out of the Service after it is And this is counted a great fauour and honour.

The Emperour
Service at his
Table.

After dinner hee layeth him down to rest, where commonly hee taketh three houres sleep, except he employ one of the houres to bathing, or boxing. And this custome for sleeping after Dinner, is an ordinary matter with him, as withall the *Russe*. After his sleep, he goeth to Euen-song (called *Vechurna*) and thence returning, for the most part recreateth himselfe with the Emperesse till Supper time, with letters and Dwarres, men and women, that tumble before him, and sing many Songs after the *Russe* manner. This is his common recreation betwix meales that hee moit de-
lights in. One other speciall recreation, is the fight with wild Beares, which are caught in Pits or Nets, and are kept in barred Cages for that purpose, against the Emperour be disposed to fee round about, where hee is to quite himselfe so well as hee can: for there is no way to flye out. When the Beare is turned loose, hee cometh vpon him with open mouth: if at the first push hee misse his arme, so that the Beare come within him, hee is in great danger. But the wilde Beare
being

Beare bying.

being very scarce, hath this quality, that giueth aduantage to the Hunter. His manner is, when he layleth a man, to rise vp right on his two hinder-legs, and so to come roaring with open-mouth vpon him. And if the Hunter then can puffe right into the very brest of him betwixt his fore-legs (as commonly he will not misse) resting the other end of their Boar-speare at the side of his foot, and so keeping the Pike still towards the face of the Beare, hee speedeth him commonly at one blow. But many times these Hunters come short, and are either slaine, or miserably torne with the Teeth and Talents of the fierce Beast. If the partie quite himselfe well in this fight with the Beare, he is carried to drinke at the Emperours Sellar doore: where he drinke himselfe drunke for the honour of *Hefpodare*. And this is his Reward for aduenturing his life, for the Emperours pleasure. To maintaine this pastime, the Emperour hath certayne Huntsmen that are appointed for that purpose to take the wild Beare. This is his recreation commonly on the holy dayes. Sometimes hee spendeth his time in looking vpon his Gold-smithes and Jewellers, Taylors, Embroiderers, Painters, and such like, and so goeth to his Supper. When it draweth towards Bed-time, his Priest faith certayne Prayers: and then the Emperour blesteth and crosseth himselfe, as in the morning for a quarter of an hour or thereabouts, and so goeth to his Bed.

Emperour
Theodore do-
scribed.

Pilgrimage.

The Emperour that now is (called *Theodore Iouannick*) is for his person of a meane stature, somewhat low and groffe, of a fallow complexion, and inclining to the Dropie, Hawke-nosed, vaulted in his face, by reason of some weakness of his limmes, heavy and vnciuile, yet commonly smiling almost to a laughter. For qualitie otherwise, simple and slow witted, but very gentle, and of an easie nature, quiet, mercifull, of no martiall disposition, nor greatly apt for matter of Policy, very Superstitious, and infinite that way. Besides his priuate Deuotions at home, hee goeth euery weeke commonly on Pilgrimage, to some Monastier or other that is needfull hand. He is of thirtie foure yeeres old, or thereabouts, and hath reigned almost the space of six yeeres.

chap. 27.
Of the Empe-
rours priuate, or
household Of-
ficers.

Master of the
Horse.

The Lord
Steward.

The Lord
Treasurer.

Comptroller.

Chamberlaine

T. Rets.

Harbengers.

Gentlemen of

the Chamber.

The Guard.

Groomes.

The chiefe Officers of the Emperours household, are these which follow. The first is the Office of the *Boiaren Consilium*, or Master of the Horse. Which containeth no more then is exprest by the name, that is, to be Ouer-seer of the Horse, and not *Magister Equorum*, or Master of the Horsemen. For hee appointeth other for that Service, as occasion doth require (as before was said). He that beareth that Office at this time, is *Boris Federovich Godunov*, Brother to the Emperrix. Of Horse for Service in his Warres (besides other for his ordinary vses) he hath to the number of 10000, which are kept about *Mosko*.

The next is the Lord Steward of his household at this time, one *Gregorie Vassilich Godunov*. The third, is his Treasurer, that keepeth all his Monyes, Jewels, Plate, &c. now called *Sigan Vassilich Godunov*. The fourth, his Comptroller, now *Andreas Petrowich Clesin*. The fifth, his Chamberlaine. He that attendeth that Office at this time, is called *Ebona Bislabova Palsinich*. The sixth, his Tasters, now *Theodore Alexandrovich*, and *Iuan Vassilich Godunov*. The seventh, his Harbengers, which are three Noblemen, no diuers other Gentlemen that do the Office vnder them. These are his ordinary Officers, and Offices of the chiefeest account.

Of Gentlemen, beside that wait about his Chamber, and Person (called *Sluffy Strassy*) there are no hundred, all Noblemens Sonnes. His ordinary Guard is two thousand *Hag-bunters*, ready with their Peeces charged, and their Match lighted, with other necessary Furniture, continually day and night: which come not within the houle, but wait without in the Court or Yard where the Emperour is abiding. In night time there lodgeth next to his Bed-chamber, the chiefe Chamberlaine, with one or two more of the best trust about him. A second chamber off, hee lodgeth six other of like account, for their trust and faithfulness. In the third chamber off, hee lodgeth young Gentlemen, of these two hundred, called *Sluffy Strassy*, that take their turne by gates euery night. There are Groomes beside that watch in their courtie, and lye at euery side and doore of the Court, called *Espynick*.

The *Hag-bunters* or Gunners, whereof there are two thousand (as was said before) watch about the Emperours Lodging, or Bed-chamber, by course two hundred and fiftie euery night, and two hundred and fiftie more in the Court-yard, and about the Treasure-houle. His Court or houle at the *Mosko*, is made Cattle-wife, walled about with great store of faire Ordnance planted vpon the wall, and containeth a great breadth of ground within it, with many dwelling houles. Which are appointed for such as are knowne to be sure, and trustie to the Emperour.

chap. 28.
Of the priuate
behaviour, or
qualitie of the
Russie people.

The priuate behaviour and qualitie of the *Russie* people, may partly be vnderstood by that which hath bene said, concerning the publike State and visage of the Countrey. As touching the naturall habit of their bodies, they are for the most part of a large size, and of few fleshy bodies: accounting it a grace to be somewhat greiv and barlie, and therefore they nourish and spread their Beards, to haue them long and brood. But for the most part they are very vnrweldy, and vnrature withall. Which may be thought to come partly of the Climate, and the numbnesse which they get by the cold in Winter, and partly of their Dyet that standeth

most of Roots, Onions, Garlike, Cabbage, and such like things that breed grosse humours, which they vie to eat alone, and with their other meates.

Their Dyet is rather much, then cutous. At their Meales they beginne commonly with a Their Dyes *Chark*, or small cup of *Agua-vita* (which they call *Russe Wine*) and then drinke not till towards the end of their Meales, taking it in largely, and all together with kissing one another at every dish. And therefore after Dinner there is no talking with them, but euery man goeth to his bench to take his after-noones sleepe, which is as ordinary with them as their nights rest. Sleeping. When they exceed, and lye in viciety of Dishes, the first are their baked meates (for roast meates they vie little) and then their Broaths or Portage. To drinke drunke, is an ordinary matter 10 with them euery day in the weeke. Their common Drinke is *Mead*, the poorer sort vie water, and a thin Drinke called *Quass*, which is nothing else (as we say) but water turned out of his wit, with a little Bran mealed with it.

This Dyet would breed in them many Difiaies, but that they vie Bath-floues, or Hot-hou- Bath floues ses in stead of all Physicke, commonly twice or thrice euery weeke. All the Winter time, and almost the whole Summer, they heate their *Peaches*, which are made like the *German* Bath-floues, and their *Potails* like Ovens, that so warme the Houle, that a stranger at the first shall hardly like of it. These two extremities, specially in the Winter of heate within their Houles, and of extreme cold without, together with their Dyet, maketh them of a darke and fallow complexion, their skinned being tamed and parched both with cold and with heat: specially 20 the women, that for the greater part are of fawre worse complexions then the men. Whereof the cause I take to be their keeping within the Hot-houles, and buying themselves about the heating, and vying of their Bath-floues and *Peaches*.

The *Russe* because that he is vied to both these extremities of heate and of cold, can beare them both a great deale more patiently then strangers can doe. You shall see them sometimes (Extremities) (seison their bodies) come out of their Bath-floues all on a froth, and fuming as hote almost as a ouer their bodies, and that in the coldest of the River stark naked, or to powre cold water all huc of their skinned, v to paint their faces with white and redde colours, so visibly that euery 30 Women saw: his hands: who make their Wiues and Daughters an ordinary allowance to buy their colours to paint their faces withall, and delight themselves much to see them of foule women to become such faire Images. This parcheth the skinned, and helpeth to deforme them when their painting is of.

They apparell themselves after the *Greece* manner. The Noblemans attyre is on this fashion. First, a *Taffia*, or little night cap on his head, that couereth little more then his crowne, commonly very rich, wrought of Silke and Gold Thread, and set with Pearle and Precious Stone. His head he keepeth hauen close to the very skin, except he be in some displeasure with the Emperour. Then he suffereth his haire to grow and hang downe vpon his shoulders, couering his face as 40 he pleaseth, and deformedly as he can. Ouer the *Taffia* he weareth a wide Cap of blacke Furze (which they account for the best Furze) with a *Tiara*, or long Bonnet put within it, standing vp like a *Perjan* or *Bayliman* Hat. About his necke (which is fenne all bare) is a Collar set with Pearle and Precious Stone, about three or foure-fingers broad. Next ouer his thier (which is curiously wrought, because hee strippeth himselfe into it in the Sommer-time, which hee is curiously 50 houle) is a *Shopen*, or light Garment of Silke made downe to the knees, buttoned before, and then a *Casane* or close Coat buttoned, and girt to him with a *Perjan* Girdle, whereas he hangs his Knives and Spoones. This commonly is of Cloth of Gold, and hangeth downe as low as his some Gold Lace, called a *Ferris*. Another ouer that of Chamber, or like Silke called an *afkoben*, sleeued and hanging low, and the Cape commonly brooched, and set all with Pearle. When 60 he goeth abroad, hee catcheth ouer all these (which are but sleight, though they seeme to be many) for the necke. And this is commonly of fine Cloth, or Camels haire. His Buskins (which hee *Perjan* Leather called *Saphian*, Embroidered vnder them in stead of Boot-hose) are made of a Cloth of Gold. When he goeth abroad, hee mounteth on Horse-backe, though it be but of the next doore: which is the manner also of the *Boiarsky*, or Gentlemen.

The *Boiarsky*, or Gentlemans attyre is of the same fashion, but differeth in Stoffe: and yet he will haue his *Casane* or Vnder-coat sometimes of Cloth of Gold, the rest of Cloth or Silke. 70 The Noble woman (called *Chyna Boiarskaya*) weareth on her head, first a Coll of some fawre Silke (which is commonly called Red) and ouer it a Furrier, called *Obny*, of white colour. Ouer that her Cap (made after the Coiffe-fashion of Cloth of Gold) called *Shapka Sampla*, edged with some rich Furze, and set with Pearle and Stone. Though they haue of late begun to disclaime, Embroidering with Pearle about their Caps, because they haue, and some Merchants Wiues haue taken vp the fashion. In their eares they weare Earrings (which they call 80 *Soger*)

The Gentle-
mans apparell.
The Noble-
mens at-
tire.

Silver by a Dutchman (Michael Mercator, Nephew to Gerardus) many yeeres before Scouter or Maure intended that Voyage. As for Nova Zemla by Stephen Burrough, and others, long before discovered, they all have given new names, which I omit not: only I fear a vñ foli, and have ingressed into both our and theirs. But so much of this. Next to this more general Discoverie shall follow the Dutch Northernne Voyages, and the English North-easterne: after which wee will take a more comprehensive leave of that Continent, and from thence visit the Northerly and North-westerly Discoveries; at once hunting for a New World and a New passage to This.

CHAP. II.

A briefe Discoverie of the Northernne Discoveries of Seas, Coasts, and Countries, delivered in order as they were hopefully begunne, and have ever since happily beene continued by the singular industrie and charge of the Wor-shippfull Society of Muscovia Merchants of London, with the ten severall Voyages of Captaine THOMAS EDGE the Author.

§. I.

Greenland first discovered by Sir Hvom Willoughbie: the Voyage of FROBISHER, PET and JACKMAN, DAVIS, the Dutch; First Morse and Whale-killing, with further Discoveries.



THE Northern parts of the World have ever been held to be *Officina Gentium & celus Vagum Nativitatis*; Nature's Shop and Store-house of Men, better furnished then any other part of the Earth, and from whence those notable Inundations came first of the *Cymbrians* and *Tenues*, in the time of the antique *Romans*; and secondly of the *Goths* and *Vandals* vnder *Atrila*, to the confusion of things both Divine and Humane in all the Southerne parts of Europe, as farre as Barbarisme could prevaile against Civilitie and Religion. For remedie whereof the Townes along the *Baltick* Sea entered into a confederacy vnder the names of the *Hans Townes*, and undertooke the keeping of those Northernne people, and the securing of these Southerne Kingdomes from any like overflowsings, upon such Priviledges and Immunities as were granted and agreed vnto them by all the Southerne Princes, and according to such Lawes as were made and provided for the maintenance and strength of the said *Hans Townes*, amongst which the supreme and fundamentall Lawe was that none of these Nations shold secured should have trade or commerce in any parts beyond the *Baltick* Seas, to the end the barbarous people might not be enabled thereby to practise or moue against the *Hans Townes*: which was the cause together also with the extremite of cold, that those Northernne Seas were neuer looked vnto vntill the year 1553. At which time the trade of this Kingdom waxing cold and in decay, and the Merchants incited with the fame of the great maf of riches which the *Portugals* and *Spaniards* brought home yearly from both the *Indies*, entered into a resolution, notwithstanding the prohibition of the *Hans Law* to discover the Northernne Seas, which so long had been frozen and that vñ; and to see whether they could not afford a passage to *Cathay* and the East *Indies*, and accordingly provided three ships, and sent them forth vnder the command of Sir Hugh Willoughbie, Knight, who embarked himself in a ship called, the *Bona Esperanza*, Admirall of that Voyage, with Richard Chancellor Captaine of the *Edward Bonaventure*, together with a third ship, called the *Bona Confidentia*. These three ships falling downe from *Ratcliffe*, the tenth of May in the foresaid yeere went on their Voyage, and proceeding as farre as the Cape of *Norway*, they were seuered by a tempest. Chancellor after he had stayed at Ward-houle seven dayes, expecting the Admirall and the other ships, according to a former appointment vpon any such casualty, and hearing nothing of them, went on, and discovered the Bay of Saint *Nicolas*, and fasted a trade there, which hath continued to these times.

Sir Hugh Willoughbie was driven to the height of 72.° where hee fell vpon an Island, now knowne by the name of *Willoughbie Land*, lieth from *Seam* (vpon the Continent of *Norway* East and by North an hundred and fixtie leagues or thereabouts, from thence hee went North and North-west, and within eight dayes after hee fell vpon a Land which lay West South-west, and East North-east, betwene 74. and 75. degrees of latitude, and plying Westward along by

CHAP. 2. §. I. Greenland discovered by Sir H. Willoughbie, Borough, &c. 463

the Land, he was driven by the wind to put to Sea againe, vntill the wind came about. Then they made towards the Land againe, and bare with it, but finding that place vnfit for landing, they haled out againe, running along the Land sixteen leagues North-west, where they found a faire Bay, went on Land and found the place inhabited. From thence they put to Sea againe, runne along the coast for fortie leagues together, till at length they came to an ancior within two leagues of the shore, where they landed, and found two or three good Harbours.

Afterwards they entered into the Haven which ranne vp into the Maine about two leagues, where they remained for the space of a weeke vpon the maine Land. They found Beares, great Deere, Foxes, and other beastes. They ten by Sir H. Willoughbie which Will I now haue, and kept as a Relique of this worthy discoverer and first finder of King James his New Land, as appears by a Will of Galt, Will his kinsman, subscribed by Sir Hugh Willoughbie which Will I now haue, and kept as a Relique of this worthy discoverer and first finder of King James his New Land.

The *Muscovia* Merchants hauing thus sealed a trade in *Russia*, and being incorporated by the name of, The Merchants of *England*, for the discoverie of new trades, pursued their first resolutions for finding a way to *Cathay* by the North-east, and in the yeere 1556. sent out Stephen Burrough, for discoverie of the Riuer *Obb*, who proceeding forwards in that Voyage discovered the Riuer *Pechora*, the Streights of *Vaigatz* and *Noua Zembla*; went on shore vpon the Island of *Vaigatz*, and vpon the North Continent of *Russia*; met with the *Samoeds*, observed their manner of life, their Religion, their Sacrifices to their rude and ill shaped Idols; and the yeere being spent, returned into *Russia*.

The Companie hauing sought for the North-east passage, and finding such difficulties as are mentioned in their particular Journals, refused to make triall, if the North-west part could not afford a passage to the *Indies*, which was the first and maine scope of their Northernne Discoveries. And in the yeere 1576. they sent forth Sir Martin Frobisher with two Barks, who coming into the height of 62. or thereabouts, found a great Inlet, now knowne by the name of *Frobishers Streights*, into which hee put himselfe, and stayed sixtie leagues with a mayne Land on each side, and so for that yeere returned.

The next yeere following he made a second Voyage to that place, purposely to lade himselfe with a kind of Oare, which the yeere before he had found there, and gaue hope by the colour to yeeld Gold, and being laden with some quantitie, returned.

The yeere following, being 1578. hauing made triall here of that Oare, and finding it not to fall out according to his expectation, hee was furnished out to proceed in the further discoverie of those Streights, and entering into the same, made way so farre as hee thought fit, and then returned backe, hauing first taken possession thereof in the name of Queene Elizabeth of famous memorie, who called the place *Meta incognita*: he brought home some of the Natives, and left some of his men there.

In the yeere 1580. the Companie sent out a second Voyage for the discoverie of the Riuer *Obb*, and thence to goe on to *Cathay*; furnishing forth two ships vnder the command of Arthur Pet, and Charles Jackman, who following their instructions, arrived at *Vaigatz*, passed those Streights with a particular obseruation of those Islands and places therein, plying along the East part of *Noua Zembla*, and the North of *Russia*, and the *Samoeds* Countrey, so farre as the Ice would giue them leaue, and finding no possibilitie of passage by reason of the Ice, returned backe a beaten trade. And the Companie sent out yearly thither ten or twelue ships, which returned freighted with the commodities of that Countrey.

In the yeere 1583. by the leaue and admittance of the *Muscovia* Companie, Sir Humphrey Gilbert went out for the discoverie of the North part of *Terra Florida*, came into the great Riuer called, Saint *Lawrence* in *Canada*, tooke possession of the Countrey, felct the gouernment of the fishing there which is so well knowne in these times.

In the yeere 1585. Master Iohn Davis was furnished out at *Dartmouth* with two Barks, for the discoverie of the North-west, came into the height of 66. plying along the coast, observed the possibilitie of a passage, and in the end of the yeere returned.

In the yeere following, being 1586. hee went on againe in the further discoverie thereof, found a great Inlet betwene 55. and 56. of latitude, which gaue him great hope of a passage, traded with the people there, and so returned.

In the yeere 1587. hee made a third Voyage to those places, followed his course to the North and North-west, to the Latitude of 57. degrees, hauing the Continent (which hee called *America*) on the West side and *Groneland*, which hee named *Desolation* on the East, and going on the height of 86. degrees, the passage enlarged so that hee could not see the Westerne shore. Thus he continued in the Latitude of 73. degrees in a Sea free from Ice, of an vnmeasurable depth, but by the occasion of the departure of two Ships which were in company with him, which

See Emersionis de Dutch, Nor. mss.

Hans Townes.

Cathay, See I. a. sup. 1. of this whole Voyage. 211.

* An error in the last table, the Land bands in 77.

* See Hackl. V. tom. 1. p. 274.

1576. Sir M. Frobisher Hackl. tom. 2. p. 294 & 399.

1578.

1580. Pet and Jackman, Hackl. tom. 2. p. 445.

1583.

R. H. Gilbert Hackl. tom. 2. p. 445.

1585.

Master Davis Hackl. tom. 2. p. 498 & 500.

1586.

1587.

Freem. Daul.

which he left Filhing at a place, he returned home. This passage continueth the Name and memorie of the first Discoverer, and is called *Freem. Daul.* And thus the Discoverie of the North-west Seas proceeded on from time to time, by the endeavour and charge of the *Muscovia* Company, untill they had particularly discovered the Land, Coasts, Islands, Straights, Havens, Bays, Rivers and other places therein, and measured every part thereof, by their often tracing to and fro: Together also with the observation of the Commodities and Advantages, arising from every part of the same, continuing even unto these times to haunt and frequent the parts which they formerly found out: As by their yearly Reportaries and Journals may appear, and that either without emulation or competition of any other Nation, that ever came into those parts or entered any Discoverie there vnto late yeeres, as appears by this that followeth.

When *Richard Chancellor* had sailed a trade with *Iohn Vasilovich* then Emperor of *Russia*, and his Ambassadors had beene here in *England*, to accomplish matters requisite for maintenance of the Amities and Entercoours he made and agreed upon betweene these two Crownes; *King Philip*, *Queene Marie*, Dukes also at that time of *Burgundie*, and *Soueraignes of the Netherlands*, made a grant of Priuiledge vnto the *Muscovia* Merchants for the sole Trade of those Seas, prohibiting all others to haunt and frequent the same, without speciall Licence and consent of the sayd Company: which grant of Priuiledge was accordingly enjoyed without disturbance or interloping of the *Hollanders*, who out of obedience either to the Prohibition made by their *Soueraigne*, or for that they durst not adventure into these Seas, did not any way attempt to becom or appear there, either for Discoverie or trade of Merchandize, for the space of five and twenty yeeres, after the Port of *Saint Nicholas* was first discovered and found out by the *Engl.* For the Company haueing as is aboue mentioned, made their first Discoverie in the yeere 1551. there was neuer heard of any *Netherlander* that frequented those Seas, untill the yeere 1578. At which time they first began to come to *Cola*, and within a yeere or two after, one *Iohn de Waale* a *Netherlander*, came to the Bay of *Saint Nicholas*, being drawne thither by the perauersion of some *Engl.* for their better meane of Interloping, which was the first man of the Nation that euer was thence there. And this as is formerly noted was five and twenty yeeres after it was first discovered by the *Muscovia* Merchants.

Afterwards the *Hollanders* crept in more and more, and in the yeere 1594. they made out foure Ships for Discoverie of the North-east passage to *China*, the Master Pylor whereof was *William Barrenet*, these came vpon the Coast of *Noua Zembla* to the Latitude of 77 degrees, drew backe againe towards the Straights of *Vaigatz*, and then returned giuing Names vnto some places and Promontories vpon that Land.

In the yeere 1595. They sent out a second Voyage, tracing the way through the Straights of *Vaigatz* in the same steps, as *Peter and Jackman* had formerly passed, and so returned.

In the yeere 1596. They set out a third Voyage with two Ships, the one of which flapped her course from the Cape of *Norway*, to an Island in the Latitude of 74 degrees, which we call *Cherie Island*, and they call *Bear Island*, and from thence to *Greenland*, where *Sir Hugh Willoughby* had bene two and fortie yeeres before, for so long time there is betwene the first Discoverie thereof and the yeere 1596. And from thence to the North-east part of *Noua Zembla*, in the Latitude of 76 degrees, where they Wintred and lost their Ship, and came home with much difficultie.

In the yeere 1603. *Stephen Bennet* was employed by the Company, in a Ship called the *Grace*, to chiefe parts Northwards of the Cape, and was at *Cherie Island* and killed foure Sea-birds, and brought home *Lea*! Oare from thence.

In the yeere 1608. the said fellowship set forth a Ship called the *Hope-well*, whereof *William Hudson* was Master, to discover to the Pole, where it appeareth by his Journall, that hee came to the height of 81 degrees, where he gaue Names to certayne places, vpon the Continent of *Greenland* formerly discovered, which continue to this day, namely, *Whale Bay*, and *Hackin Head*, and being hindered with Ice, returned home without any further vye made of the Countrey, and in ranging homewards, hee discovered an Island lying in 71 degrees, which hee named *Hudsons Tutchet*.

Here it is to be understood, that the Company hauing by often resort and employment to those parts, observed the great number of Sea-horles at *Cherie Island*, and likewise the multitude of Whales, that shewed themselves vpon the coast of *Greenland*; They first applied themselves to the killing of the Morces, which they continued from yeere to yeere with a Ship or two yearly; in which Ships the Company appointed *Thomas Widen* Commander, and in the yeere 1609. the Company employed one *Thomas Edge* their Apprentice, for their Northern Voyage, and joynd him in Commision with the foresayd *Widen*. Now the often vying of *Cherie Island*, did make the Sea-horfe grow scarce and decay, which made the Company looke out for further Discoveries.

In the yeere 1610. the Company set out two Ships, viz. the *Lioness* for *Cherie Island*, *Thomas Edge* Commander; and the *Amistie*, for a Northern Discoverie, the Master of which Ship was *Iohn Poole*: who in the month of May fell with a Land, and called it *Greenland*, this is the Land

Land that was discovered by *Sir Hugh Willoughby* long before, which Ship *Amistie* continued vpon the coast of *Greenland*, discovering the Harbours and killing of Morces, untill the month of August, and so returned for *England*, hauing gotten about some twelue Tunnes of goods, and an *Vnicorne's* borne.

In the yeere 1611. the Company set forth two Ships for *Greenland*, the *Marie Margaret* Admirall, burthen one hundred and sixtie tunnes, *Thomas Edge* Commander; and the *Elizabeth*, burthen sixtie tunnes, *Iohn Poole* Matter, well manned and furnished with all necessarie Provisions, they departed from *Blackwall* the twentieth of Aprill, and arrived at the Foreland in *Greenland* in the Latitude of 79. degrees, the twentieth of May following, the Admirall had in her

10 six Biskayners expert men for the killing of the Whale: this was the first yeere the Company set out for the killing of Whales in *Greenland*, and about the twelfth of Iune the Biskayners killed a small Whale, which yielded twelue Tunnes of Oyle, being the first Oyle that euer was made in *Greenland*. The Companies two Shalops looking about the Harbour for Whales, about the five and twentieth of Iune rowing into *Sir Thomas Smiths Bay*, on the East side of the Sound faw on the thore great flore of Sea-horles: after they had found the Morces they presently rowed vnto the Ship, being in crosse Road seuen leagues off, and acquainted the Captayne what they had found. The Captayne vnderstanding of it, gaue order to the Master, *Stephen Bennet*, that he should take into his Ship fiftie tunnes of empty Caske, and let layle with the Ship to goe into *Foules Sound*. The Captayne went gently away in one Shalop with sixe men vnto the Sea-

30 dore, andooke with him Lances, and coming to them they let on them and killed foue dead Morces, and kept one thousand Morces lying on shore, because it is not profitable to kill them all at one time. The next day the Ship being gone vnto the place & well moored where the Morles were killed, all the men belonging to the Ship went on shore, to worke and make Oyle of the Morces; and when they had wrought two or three dayes, it fortuned that a small quantitie of Ice came out of *Foules Sound*, and put the Ship from her Moring. The Master and ten men being a board of the Ship, let fall their Sheat anchor which brought the Ship vp to ride; the Ice coming vpon her againe, brought her Anchor home and ranne the Ship aloofe, where free by the Masters weake Iudgement was cast away, and all their Bread spoyled not fit to eate. The Ship being cast away without hope of recouerie, the Commander *Thomas Edge* gaue order, that

30 all the Morle lying on shore should be let goe into the Sea, and so gaue ouer making of Oyle, and presently haled vp aloofe all his Shallops and Boates, being foue, setting the Carpenter to trim them, the Saylor to make Sayles and Walfcloathes for the Boates, fit to serue them at Sea. Hauing fitted their Boates as well as they could with the small provision they had, being in number foure small Shallops and the Ships Boate, they diuided their men into them equally with what proportions of victuals they could well carrie, and after they had sayd Prayers all together on Land; being fiftie men they departed from the place where they lost their Ship, on the fiftenth of Iuly with the winde Southerly, and rowed thither or fortie leagues to the Southward, and then they lost compaignie of one Shallop and their Ships Boate of *Horne Sound*, which two

40 Boates met with a *Hull Ship*, and acquainted him with the losse of the *Lioness* Ship, and that thee had lost on land goods worth fiftie hundred pounds: So our men caried the *Hull Ship* into *Foules Sound*, to take in the Companies goods and to kill some Sea-horles for her selfe at that place. The Captayne and two other Shallops put from the Coast of *Greenland* in the height of 77. degrees, and set their course for *Cherie Island*, which lyeth in 74. Degrees (—) sometimes Sayling and sometimes Rowing, and made *Cherie Island* the nine and twentieth of Iuly, hauing bene in their Shallops at Sea fourteene dayes, and coming into the Land with a great storme at North-west, with much difficultie they landed on the South side of the Land.

Being on shore, the Captayne sent three of his Saylor ouer land vnto the North roade, being three miies distant from that place, to see if the *Elizabeth* was there, and they saw a Ship riding in the North roade, and being over-joyed they returned backe vnto the Captayne to acquaint him, without saying to speake with any of the Ships compaignie, and by good hap the Master of the *Elizabeth* clyped men on the Shore, being at that time weighing Anchor to set sayle for *England*, vpon which hee stayed and sent the Boate aloofe to see what men they were, and when the men of the *Elizabeth* came aloofe, they found them to be men of the *Mary Margaret*, and so went aboard vnto the Master to acquaint him; whereupon the Master caused Anchor to be weighed and went to the South side of the Land, and thereooke in the Captayne, and hee being aboard vnderstanding what a poore Voyage the *Elizabeth* had made, gaue order to the Master to goe for *Greenland*, there to take in such Goods as the sayd Edge had left in *Foules Sound*. They departed from *Cherie Island* the thirke of August, and arrived at *Foules Sound* the Fourteenth *Days*: where they found two Boates which they had lost compaignie of before, and all their men being come thither with a *Hull Ship* which they met with, and brought to that place; which Ship had spent all the yeere in *Horne Sound*, and got little goods. The *Elizabeth* being moored, the Captayne gaue order vnto the Master to deliver out of his Ship, all the goods hee had got at *Cherie Island*, which was Sea-horfe hydes and Blubber, being of little worth; And to take in the Oyle and Whale-fines, which were gotten by the *Marie Margaret* compaignie.

* See *Beffius* North-west Discoverie, *Vnicorne*, a Sea-horfe borne.

1611.

First Whale killing, Biskayners vnto the

500. Morces killed.

Shipwracke by Ice.

Hull Ship.

Cherie Island.

for Greenland, alleging unto them, that the Companies ships were in each severall Harbour busied about their Voyage, and that none would stirre from his Harbours to molest them, and that there being three ships of force, might returne to a Harbour in that Countrey, called *Hornesund*, diuers Shallops, hauing many *Biskainers*, and killed store of Whales, setting the *English* at laden those ships that were in Harbour with him, and presently sent for *William Hely*, his Vice-admirall, giuing him order (who was not then full laden, but in good forwardnesse) to take the ship *Hely* presently put in execution. But before his coming thither, the *Zelanders* had notice by an *English* Surgeon, that if they did not depart, the *English* Vice-admirall would come presently and force them from thence. Whereupon the *Zelanders* laded all the goods they had in two ships, and sent them away before the coming of the *English* Vice-admirall, leaving one behind, with certaine Caske of Blubber, and two Whales and an halfe vncut vp, in a braudo to trye if the *English* would meddle with them or not, which said ship and goods there left, were surprized by the said *English* Vice-admirall; the goods detain'd to the Companies vse; and the ship restored there to the *Zelanders*; which ship hauing in her ten cast Peeces, and fixtie men, and hauing intelligence of one of the Companies ships, at that time laden in the Countrey take that ship of the Companies and her lading, and carrie her to *Zeland*. For preuention whereof, the said Vice-admirall tooke fix Peeces of Ordnance, and some Powder from the ship of *Zeland*, which were in *England* restored to the owners.

In which said yeere 1618, the *Zelanders* lending out for restitution of the goods taken from them. A new Company commixt of *English*, *Scottish* and *Zelanders*, through the meanes of Sir *Iohn Comyngham* Knight, procured a grant for setting forth of shipping to those parts, which might vnto hereafter ouerthrowne and spoiled the trade of the first discoverers thereof; and to that discouery, the chiefe men were hired by the new Company that had been seruants to the first that the *East India* Adventurers should ioyne stocke with the *Moscouia* Adventurers, and be one thereupon dissolved, to the *Moscouia* Companies great trouble and cost, in taking of all the present part payed, and came to little good, and in ioyning vnfortunatly with the *East India* Company, in which yeere, and the next yeere after, their Voyages proued very ill, and they were losers, and much vexed and crossed in their proceedings, to the great disheartning and detriment of the *Moscouia* Company: yet that yeere 1618, they set forth thirtie ships and two Pinnasses, vnder the command of the said Captain *Thomas Edge*, who arriuing vpon the coast of *King James his Newland*, in the beginning of Iune separated themselves to severall Harbours for accomplishing of their Voyages, the most part being ships of no force. Presently after in all Harbours where the *English* were, arrived great store of ships of *Zeland*, in warlike manner, being ships of great force, who continued in the same Harbours amongst the *English*, setting two boats to the *English* one with *Biskainers*, with a full purpose to drue the *English* from their Harbours, and to reuenge the iniurie (as they termed it) done them the yeere before: and to that purpose towards the latter end of Iuly, ten Saile of the said *Zelanders*, being at a Harbour called the *Fordland*, where the said *William Hely*, Vice-admirall of the *English* Fleet that yeere, was in the ship *Plaisance*, Master *Robert Salomon*, with one *English* ship and a Pinnasse there of no force, let vpon the said *English* Vice-admirall, threatening, if hee would not yield presently, to dispoyle him of ship and goods, nor permitting to take his men aboard. And with aboard the ship, which they detain'd for foure and twentie houres, the *Zelanders* not daring to enter, making many braudoes and attempts, thinking to make the *English* to yield; and hand Fortune of *Comptre*, burthen foure hundred tunnes, with eighteen cast Peeces, besides brasse hundred tunnes, with eighteen cast Peeces, Captain *Cornelius Cooke*; the *Salmaster* of *Finland*, two hundred tunnes, fourteen cast Peeces, Captain *Adrian Peterse*; the *Cat of Duple* *Lander*; and *William Iohnson* of *Millwoude*, in a ship with fourteen cast Peeces: all which, after much conference passed betwixt the said *Zelanders* and *William Hely*: which said *Zelanders* alleging that there was good lawe in *Flinders* for what they did. And on Sunday the nineteenth of Iuly, 1618, did forcibly let vpon the said *English* Vice-admirall, five together playing their great Ordnance, small Shot, and Murderers, seeking what in them lay to kill and spoile all the

Sir Iohn Comyngham.

East India Adventurers Joyne;

Dutch assault the English.

English that were aboard: who resisted their force, and in spite of all their oppossers set layle, slaying them with their Ordnance, and maintaining fight against them till their Sayles were shot downe, some of their chiefe men slaine, others hurt, and their ship forced either to anchor, or run ashore. The *Zelanders* vied the *English* very vnkindly, rifling their ship of all their goods, and taking away all their munition and artillery, not leauing any goods ashore, but burning vp the Caske, not permitting the *English* to take in fish water, but that their Boat thorow in going ashore, and minding, as they protested and swore vnto the said *William Hely*, that they would take and ranke all the *English* ships in the Countrey, and carrie the *English* Captaine to *Zeland*: hauing as they said, that yeere in those parts 23. sayle of well appointed ships, onely to ouerthrow all the *English*, all which were to meet in *Scotland* outward bound. After the surprizing of the said *English* Vice-admirall, all the rest of the *English* ships being dispersed farre asunder, could not ioyne together, being in all places hindered by the *Flemmings*: and by that means the *English* Voyage vnto there ouerthrowne, to the extraordinary great losse and charge of the Company, the most part of their ships returning home without any goods.

The next yeere 1619, the said *Moscouia* and *East India* Companies let out nine ships, and two Pinnasses, vnder the command of the said Captain *Edge*, in which yeere, diuers *Hollanders* being in the Northernmost Harbour in the Countrey, employing great quantitie of Boats in chasing the Whale there, off into the Sea, put them by their vniual course, so that the Companies ships, being five of the nine, in the two Northernmost Harbours, were disappointed of their Voyage in those Harbours; and thinking to better it in the other Harbours; the foresaid *William Hely* sending a Shallop with ten men in her, with Letters to the said Captain *Edge*, of their ill successe to the Northwards, the said Shallop was cast away, and all the men lost: and the said Captain being laden, sent a Pinnasse to the said *William Hely* in August, aduertising him of his departure, thinking all the ships to the Northward had been laden, wishing them to haste home. By means of which Shallops casting away, the Voyage was greatly hindered to the Companies exceeding great losse; in that the *Hollanders* did as then bring over great quantitie of Whale-oyle, and sold it at vnder rates, so that the Company was forced to keepe their ships in their hands twelue moneths, and sell it afterwards at a very small price, and lost one ship in her returne homewards neere *Yarmouth*: which did so much dishearten the Company, that they dissolued againe, and thought verily to haue aduertured no more thither (their successe those two yeeres past, in which the *East India* Company ioynd with them was so bad, that any that would buy their prouision might enioy the benefit of the Trade there.) At which time, the worthie and famous Merchants Adventurers; namely, *Ralph Freeman*, *Benjamin Deirope*, *George Sword*, with Captain *Thomas Edge*, all brethren of the *Moscouia* Company, pitying great comfort, and breeding of Traffike, in which yearly so many poore Land-men receiued great comfort, and tooke that Trade into their hands. In which yeere 1620, they set out seven sayle of ships, vnder the command of *William Gossland*, and the said *William Hely*; in which said yeere, by reason of great store of *Flemmings* and *Danes* in the foresaid Northernmost Harbours, their ships had ill successe to the Northwards, and were forced to passe from Harbour to Harbour to seeke to make a Voyage, but could not, and so returned home half laden, with seven hundred tunnes of Oyle.

The next yeere 1621, the foresaid Adventurers hired, and set forth eight ships, seven for the Whale Voyage, and one to the South-eastwards vpon Discouerie, vnder the command aforesaid, which yeere in one of their chiefe Harbours their Voyage was ouerthrowne, by reason of the foresaid *Flemmings* and *Danes*, being to the Northward, as aforesaid, putting the Whale by her course, and in all places in the Countrey generally disheartened, and out of hope to haue made any Voyage that yeere, whereby to haue earned their bread. Yet it pleased God afterwards in some Harbours, Whales hitting in, a Voyage was performed, and 1100. tunnes of Oyle brought home, to the great encouragement of the said Adventurers: otherwise that Trade had beene vnto ouerthrowne.

The yeere following 1622, the said Adventurers at their owne charge let forth nine ships, vnder the command aforesaid, and therein employed diuers Land-men; many of which afterwards proued good Sea-men, and are fit for any Sea seruice. Eight of which ships were appointed to make their Voyage vpon the Whale, and one to goe on discouerie to the South-eastwards. But ill successe happened to one of their greatest ships of burthen, whereof *Iohn Maffin* was Master, hauing in her two hundred tunnes of burthen, whereof *Iohn Maffin* was Master, was vnfortunatly cast away against a piece of Ice, vpon the coast of *King James Newland*, foure leagues from the shore, in which ship perished nine and twentie men, and the remainder being three and twenty, were by the prouidence of the Almighty miraculously saved in a Shallop, coasting thirtie leagues afterwards to meet with some other ships to find some succour, hauing neither bread nor drinke, nor any means whereby to get any food: and so remayned three dayes in extreme cold weather, being in a small Boat ready to be swallowed vp of eury waie, but that God prouided better for them. Many of which people their hands and feet rotted off, being frozen, and they

1619.

1620.

1621.

1622.

Ships wreake.

died in the Country. The rest of the ships returned home laden, bringing in them 1300. tons of Oyle, yet the forlaid chiefe Harbour could not performe their full lading there, by reason of the *Flammings* and *Danes* being to the Northwards, as aforelaid, which doth yeteely hinder the Companies ships from making a Voyage.

ð. III.

The Description of the severall sorts of Whales, with the manner of killing them: Wherein is added the Description of Greenland.

10

* The Ordinarie growne Whale. Finnes.

Small eyes. Some kinds have greater. Some mentions one taken on Temt shoare, the eye of which was a Car-load, a man might stand in the hole upright: The like wee may seeke of the throat, &c. Nature being herein luxuriant, and diversified.

You may see this Story of the Whale killing presented lively in the Map, which Captaine Edge hath liberally added to this Relation.



He Whale is a Fifth or Sea-beast of a huge bignesse, about sixtie fue * foot long, and thirtie fue foot thicke, his head is a third part of all his bodys quantie, his spacious mouth containyng a very great tongue, and all his Finnes, which wee call Whale Finnes.

These finnes are fastned or roored in his vpper chapp, and spread over his tongue on both sides his mouth, being in number about two hundred and fiftie on one side, and as many on the other side. The longest finnes are placed in the middle of his mouth, and the rest doth shoure by their proportionable degrees, backward and forwards, from ten or eleven foot long to foure inches in length, his eyes are not much bigger then an Oxes eyes, his body is in fashion almost twenty foot broad, and of a tough fould substance, which wee vie for blockes to chop the *Blubber* on (which yeelds Oyle) and of like nature are his two swimming finnes (and they grow forward on him.)

This creature cometh oftentimes above water, spouting eight or nine times before he goeth downe againe, whereby he may be defierd two or three leagues off. Then our Whale-Killers presently rowe forth from the place where they stand to watch for him, making what haste they can to meet him: but commonly before they come neere him, he will be gone downe againe, and continue a good while before he riseth: so that sometimes they rowe past him. Yet are they very circumspect, ever looking round where they may espie him risen, or discern his way under water, which they call his *Wake*. When he is vpe and the Shallops neere him, they rowe towards him very resolutely, as if they would force the Shallop vpon him, if hee went downe under water: but the Harponnyre, who standeth vpon the head of the Boat, darts his Harping-iron at the Whale with both his hands, so soone as he cometh within his reach, with the Whale being stricken, presently defendeth to the bottom, and therefore doe they reare out a rope of two hundred fathome, which is fastned to the Harping-iron, and lieth coiled in the Boat: And they let him haue as much of the rope as reacheth to the bottom, and when they perceiue him rising they hale in the rope to get neere him, and when the Whale cometh vpon above water, then do the men lance him with their lances, either out of one Shallop or the other; for most commonly there be two Shallops about the killing of one Whale. In lancing him they strike neere to the finnes he swimmeth withall, and as lowe under water neere his bellie as conveniently they can: but when he is lanced, he friskes and strikes with his taylor so forcibly, that many times when hee hieeth a Shallop hee splitteth her in pieces; so that the men are relued and taken in by another Shallop: and sometimes hee striketh so fully vpon them, that some of the men are either mayned, or killed with his stroke. Therefore they who vnderstand this businesse which is the principall thing in the Voyage, must not only be bold and resolute, but also discreet and wary; otherwise their rash forwardnesse may prevent them of their expected conquest; considering they haue no shield to withstand the offended beast their enemy, but only by a heedfull warnesse to auoide the receiving of his dangerous stroke. Swimming is also requisite for a Whale-killer to be expert in, for it may be a meanes to save his life, when yo he hath lost his Boat, and another is not neere presently to helpe him.

The Whale hauing receiued his deadly wound, then he spouteth blood (whereas formerly he cast forth water) and his strength beginneth to faile him; but before he dieth, hee will sometimes draw the Shallop three or foure miles from the place where he was first stricken: and as he is a dying, he turneth his bellie vpwards, which lieth vppermost being dead. Then they fasten a rope to his taylor, and with the Shallops, one made fast to another, they rowe him towards the ship with his taylor foremost. Then doe they lay him crosse the sterne of the ship, where he is cut vpon in this manner; two or three men in a Boat or Shallop come close to the side of the Whale, and hold the Boat fast there with a Boat-hook; and another standing either in the Boat, or most commonly vpon the Whale, cutteth the fat (which wee call *Blubber*) in square pieces with a cutting knife, three or foure foot long. Then to race it from the flesh, there is a Crane or Capstern placed purposely vpon the poope of the ship, from whence there descendeth a rope with a hook in it; this hook is made to take hold on a piece of *Blubber*: and as the men wind the Capstern, so the cutter with his long knife looeth the fat from the flesh, even as if the hard of a

Swine

Swine were to be cut off from the leane. When a piece is in order out off, then let they lower the Crane, and let downe the *Blubber* to float vpon the water, and make a hole in some part of it, putting a rope thorow it; and so they proceed to cut off more, fathning ten or twentie pieces together to be towed a shoare at one time, being made fast to the sterne of a Boat or Shallop. These pieces being thus brought vnto the shoare side, they are drawne by one and one vpon the shoare with an high Crane, or carried vp by two men on a Barrow vnto a Stage, there to be cut into small pieces about a foot long, but thin: then it is carried vnto the choppers by two boyes, with two little hand-hookes, taking in each hand a piece, and so they put it into half-tubs which stand behind the choppers, out of which the choppers take it vp; who stand at the side of a boat which is raifed of an equall height for the furnace. And the boat being fitted with all things necessarie for the choppers, they place the chopping blockes, which they make of the Whales taylor, and the *Blubber* is layd ready for them, as they vie it, in small pieces vpon the boord whereon they stand. Then the choppers take it vp with hand-hookes, and lay it on their blockes, and chop it in thin pieces (the thinner hee cut it, the better it is) and when it is chopped, they put it off the blocke downe into the Shallop, with a short Paddle made like a *Coppe*: take: and thus doe fixe or eight men stand chopping on the one side of the boat, and on the other side of the boat about two or three yards distant are the Furnaces and Coppes placed and heated. Then betwene the chopping boat and the Coppes, is layd a broad thicke planke, on which standeth a hoghead, which containeth as much as is put into the Copper, at one time for one boyling, and the tub being emptied, is made to slide vnto the chopping boat againe, being there filled with a copper ladle againe, and put into another Copper. When it is boyled enough, the small pieces of *Blubber*, which wee call *Fritters*, will loose browne as if they were fried. Then are they taken out with copper ladders, and some of the Oyle also with them, and put into a Barrow made close to dryne the Oyle, which standeth oute another Shallop, that is set on the back-side of the Furnace to receive the Oyle in, and as soone as the *Fritters* are taken cleane out of the Copper, then presently is the tub of small *Blubber* emptied into the Copper againe to be also boyled.

The Boat into which the hot Oyle is put out of the Coppes, is ever kept halfe full of water, which doth not only coole the Oyle before it runne into the Caske, but also is a cleaneer of it from dross, which defendeth to the bottom of the Boat. Out of the Oyle-boat doth the Oyle runne thirte or fortie yards in Troughs or Gutters, and so into Burs or Hogheads, which being filled, is rolled off to coole, and another Caske layd to fill, and when there is any quantitie of Oyle made, it is carried aboard the ship in raffa. In this manner is the Oyle saved and prepared.

Now concerning the Whale Finnes, the Whales head being cut off from the body (as hee Whale Finnes stoeth at the sterne of the ship where hee is cut vp) is towed by a Boat as neere the shoare as will comen: but it is aground in twelve or thirteene foot water, then by crabs which are ased on land it is drawne on land, at severall times when the water is at high tide, to neere the shoare, the men at a lowe water with their Boats on, cut off the *Blubber* and Finnes, which by the crabs are drawne on shoare, and the Finnes are with Axes, one severed from another, and being made cleane, are packed vp by fiftie in a bundle, and so shipped.

There are eight or ten kinds of Whales, and differing the one from the other in goodnesse, quantitie and qualitie.

The first sort of Whale is called the *Grand-hoy*, taking his name from *Grand-hoy* in Newfoundland, as hauing there beene first killed: he is blacke of colour, with a smooth skine, and white underneath the chaps. This Whale is the best for Oyle and Finnes of all the rest (and doth yeeld most the elder it growes). This sort of Whale doth yeeld about an hundred hogheads of Oyle, and some five hundred Finnes.

The second sort of Whale is called *Sards*, of the same colour as the former, but somewhat lesser, and the Finnes likewise lesser, and yeelds in Oyle according to his bignesse, sometimes few white things like vnto Barnacles. This Whale hath naturally growing vpon his backe,

The third sort of Whale is called *Trumpa*, being as long as the first, but thicker forwards, of a colour more gray then the former, hauing but one spout in his head, and the rest haue all two; he hath in his mouth teeth about a span long, and as thicke as a mans writ, but no finnes; his head is bigger then the two former, and in proportion farre bigger then his bodie. In the head of this Whale is the Permeitche, which lieth there in a hole like a Well. This is the Whale that is supposed to yeeld the Ambergreese: There taken about fortie hogheads of Oyle besides the Permeitche.

The fourth sort of Whale is called *Otta Sotta*, and is of the same colour of the *Trumpa*, hauing finnes in his mouth all white, but not about halfe a yard long, being thicker then the *Trumpa*, but not so long: he yeelds the best Oyle, but not about thirte hogheads.

The fift sort of Whale is called *Gibarta*, of colour blacke like the two first, hauing that it hath standing vpon the top of his backe, a finne halfe a yard long. This Whale is as bigge

Sf 2

as the first; his fins little or nothing worth, being not above halfe a yard long: and hee yeeldeth about twelue hogheads of Oyle, all which his backe yeelds; as for his bellie it yeelds nothing at all.

6. *Sedena*. The fixt sort is called *Sedena*, being of a whitly colour, and bigger then any of the former, the finnes not above one foot long, and he yeelds little or no Oyle.

7. *Sedena Negro*. The seventh is called *Sedena Negro*, of colour blacke, with a bume on his backe; this Whale yeelds neither Oyle, finnes, nor teeth, and yet he is of a great bignesse.

8. *Serwis*. The eight sort is called *Serwis*, of colour as white as snow, of the bignesse of a Wherrie, he yeelds not above one hoghead or two of Oyle, nor any finnes, and is good meate to be eaten.

The description of Greenland.

Antiphrastical
appellation.
I have found
this description
of Greenland,
with other
notes, written
by Ro. Fotherby,
Deere.

Greenland is a place in Nature nothing like vnto the Name: for certainly there is no place in the World, yet knowne and discovered that is lesse Greene then it. It is covered with snow, both the Mountaines and the lower Lands, till about the beginning of Iune, being very Mountainous, and beareth neither grasse nor tree, save onely such as grow vpon the Moores and heathie grounds, in the North parts of England, which we call *Heath*, or *Ling*. This growth when the snow melteth, and when the ground beginneth to be vncouered. And on this doe the Deere feed in the Summer time, and become very fat therewithall in a moneths space, but how they lye in the Winter time it is not easily to be imagined. For seeing at the end of May wee find the ground all covered with snow, it is very like, that in the time of Winter there is no part bare, where any thing can grow; especially during the time that the Sunne is altogether depressed vnder the horizon, which in the latitude of 77. degrees, continueth from the eighteenth of October till the fourth of Februarie. This Countrey by all probabilities hath neuer been inhabited by any people; notwithstanding, I thinke men might lye there, carrying thither good store of provision of victuals, and other things necessary against the cold, which perhaps will be vehement in the Winter time, by the former reasons; namely, because the Sunne remayneth so long vnder the Horizon.

Nevertheless, there will not be any continuance of darknesse, because the Sunne in his greatest declination will be but 10. degrees vnder the Horizon, at this time of his being in the South of the Meridian in the former latitude of 77. degrees, which is once in foure and twentie hours; and therefore the time of their Noone will bee much lighter then our Night here in England, when the dayes are at the longest; for then is the Sunne 15. degrees vnder the Horizon at midnight, and yet the greatest darknesse is but like twi-light. And although it bee a generall saying, and a common received opinion, that the further North the greater cold, yet experience teacheth, that it is not alwaies true. For at *Mosco*, and thereabouts in the Winter time, there is extreme frosts and cold weather, in somuch that oftentimes men are brought home dead, being starved with cold; and many haue their noses and eares caused to fall off, through the extremity of the piercing aire: yet at *Edinburgh*, which is more Northerly by one degree and an halfe, and in all places neere vnto it the aire is temperate, and the cold tolerable, the snow neuer lying any long time on the ground after it is fallen. Notwithstanding, wee haue snow remaying all the yeere long in diuers places of England, but the reason of this is, because the aire is euer warmest neere vnto the Sea shoare, (as *Edinburgh* standeth) and contrariwise the cold is most vehement in places which are farthest remote from the Sea, as *Mosco* is situated.

All the Creatures that appeare vnto vs vpon the Land, are Deere, Beares, and Foxes, and sundrie sorts of wilde Fowle, as Cuthbert Duckes, Willocks, Stints, Sea-pigeons, Sea-parrets, Gulls, Noddies, &c. The Author addes a discourse of sending condemned men to inhabit there, with diuers protestes for their seruice there, for the further discovery how best to bee effected, for such things as are most necessary for this employment of Whale killing, &c. but because experience hath given best instructions already, and directions; most otherwise be presented, I haue forborne to detain the Reader in these (otherwise iudicious) speculations.

The Southermost part of Greenland stands in 76. degrees 30. minutes, which wee call *Point Lookout*, and we haue discovered all the West side of the Land as farre vnto the Northwards as 80. degrees odd minutes: in which compass wee haue already experience of fixe or eight good Harbours for the killing of the Whale; and on the East side we haue discovered as farre as 78. degrees, finding diuers Ilands, great and small, yeelding good Harbours, and store of Whales, and Sea-horses; and for a further discovery on the East side, I am periwaded it had bene farre greater, if the Dutch had not so disturbed vs in our proceedings, as also the *Hull-men*, who euer practised to follow our steps, after the discovery within one yeere or two: as by our Masters Journall more at large may appeare. The best actions haue their hindrances and crosses, and so hath this had; for, the Dutch haue bene a bane to this Trade and Discovery: The *Hull-men* haue done some bad seruice in this Action, for they were the first that carried the Dutch to the *Taschet*, as by *Winanders* Oath and Journall appeares, they were also a cause of that bad Voyage,

Yet in this
euen neere the
Sea, and farre
neerer the
Sun, betwix
30. and 40. the
Winters are
extreme.
R. Foth.

When the whale comes above water I shall
row towards him and being within reach of him
the harpomer darts his harpiviron at him out of both
his hands and being fast they lance him to death



The whale is cut up as her lyes floating crosse the
 steame of a shipp the blubber is cut from the flesh by
 peeces 3 or 4 foote long and being skinned is rowed on
 shorn towards the coopers



They place 2. or 3. coppers on a roe and 5 chopping boat on the one file and the cutting boats on the other side to receive the oyle of 5 coppers, the chopt blubber being boiled is taken out of the coppers and put in milder haffets or barrowes & thrown in the oyle is drained and runs into 5 cooler it is full of water out of w it is conviened to be made into butter.



The manner of killing y^e Seamountes



The Scamore is in quantity as bigg⁴⁷
as an oxe



When the whale is killed he is in this manner towed to the ships by two or three shal-
lops made fast one to another.



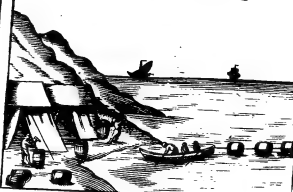
The peeces of blubber are towed to the shore
side by a shallop and drawne on shore by a
cane or carried by three men on a barrow
to 3 two cutters who cuts them in the
a trencher and every thine cleane by two
boys are carried to head books by two



Thus they make cleane and scrapey whale
fins



A tent and Coopers at worke



to vs in 1618. in that they animated the *Flemmings* to come backe to *Greenland* againe, as appeared in this Journall, in the yeere 1617. they have done some other ill seruices against vs as well as the *Dutch*, but in regard they are our Countrey-men, I will omit and with their amendment, and pray to God to find a good and further Discouery to bee made in these Northerne parts. *Amen.*

Rader, I present thee here three admirable Voyages of Discouery made by the Dutch, no whit enuying their due praise, but honouring their worthy *Acts and Arts*. They haue formerly bene published in Dutch, and translated by W. Philip. I haue here abridged them, as my use is with others, to aune profit. The Dutch themselves write that after the English *Russian Trade*, one Oluet Buncell moved with hope of gaine, went from Enckhuysen to Pechora, where he left all by shipwracke, having discovered *Cottinlarca* in *Nova Zemla*. These Navigations of the English, and thus of Buncell, and the hopes of *China* and *Cathay*, caused the States Generall to send forth two shippes under the command of Hugo Linschoten, to the Streights of *Wey-gates*, and two others under William Barents, by the perswasion of P. Plancius to goe right Northwards from *Nova Zemla*. Linschoten went fiftie miles beyond the Streights, the Northerly winds, and late season forcing him backe. Barents Journall here followeth, of that and his two later Voyages, the two later written by one employed therein.

*Prælogomena, ad Hadroni De-
recti, editi. Am-
sterdam per
Hug. Groti-
um.*

20

CHAP. III.

The first Navigation of WILLIAM BARENTS, alias BERNARDS into the North Seas; Written by G. RAT DE VEE.

IT is a most certayne and assured Assertion, that nothing doth more benefit and further the Common-wealth (specially their Countreys) then the art and knowledge of Navigation, in regard that such Countreys and Nations as are strong and mightie at Sea, haue the meane ready way to draw, fetch, and bring vnto them for their mayntenance, all the principall commodities and fruits of the Earth.

In these Navigations we must not be dismayed if some mislike, or if we cannot perfect a Discouery in the first, second, or third Voyage. *Alexander Maginus* (after he had wonne all *Grecia*, and from thence entred into little and great *Asia*; and comming to the farthest parts of *India*, there found some difficultie to passe) said, 'If wee had not gone forward, and perished in our intent, which other men esteemed and held to be impossible, we had still remayned and stayed in the entry of *Cicilia*, where as now we haue over-runne and past through all those large and spacious Countreys: for nothing is found and effected all at one time, neyther is any thing that is put in practice, presently brought to an end. To the which end, *Cicero* wisely saith; God hath giuen vs some things, and not all things, that our Successors also might haue some-what to doe. Therefore we must not leaue off, nor stay our pretence in the middle of our proceedings, as long as there is any commodity to be hoped, and in time to bee obtayned: for that the greatest and richest Treasures are hardest to be found. I thought good to set downe, in regard that I haue vndertaken to describe the three Voyages made into the North Seas, in three yeeres, one after the other; behind *Norway*, and along and about *Muscovia*, towards the Kingdome of *Cathais*, and *China*: whereof, the two last, I my selfe holpe to effect; and yet brought them not to the desired end that we well hoped.

First, to shew our diligent, and most toylefome labour and paines taken, to find out the right course, which we could not bring to passe, as wee well hoped, wished, and desired, and possible might haue found it, by crossing the Seas, if we had taken the right course; if the Ice & the shortness of time, and bad crosses had not hindered vs. We haue assuredly found, that the onely and most hinderance to our Voyage, was the Ice that we found about *Nova Zemla*, vnder 73. 74. 75. and 76. degrees; and not so much vpon the Sea betwene both the Lands: whereby it appeareth, that not the sterrenesse of the North-pole, but the Ice that cometh in and out from the *Tartarian Sea*, about *Nova Zemla*, caused vs to feele the greatest cold. Therefore in regard that the sterrenesse of the Pole was not the cause of the great cold that wee felt, if wee had had the meanes to haue held our appointed and intended course into the North-east, we had peradventure found some entrance: which course wee could not hold from *Nova Zemla*, because that we entred amongst great flocks of Ice; and how it was about *Nova Zemla*, we could not tell, before we had sought it; and when we had sought it, we could not then alter our course, although alio it is vnertaine, what we should haue done, if we had continued in our North-east course, because it is not yet found out. But it is true, that in the Countrey lying vnder 80. degrees, (which we esteeme to be *Greenland*) there is both Leanes and Graffe to be seene: Wherein, such Beasts

A thing not continued, cannot be effected. All things are effected in convenient time.

The first finding is hard, but the second attempt is easier.

as feed of Leaves and Grass (as Harts, Hinds, and such like beasts live, whereas to the contrary in *Nova Zembla*, there groweth neither Leaves nor Grass, and there are no beasts therein but such as eat flesh, as Beares and Foxes, &c. Although *Nova Zembla* lyeth 45. and 6. degrees more Southerly from the Pole, then the other Land aforesaid. It is also manifest, that Tropicks, vnder 23. degrees and an halfe, yet it is as hot, as it is right under the Line. What wonder then should it be, that about the North-Pole also, and as many degrees on both sides, it should not be colder then right vnder the Pole? It was not the Sea, nor the needreke vnto the Pole, but the Ice about the Land, that let and hindered vs (as I said before) for that as soon as we made from the Land, and put more into the Sea, although it was much further Northward, as we made we felt more warmth, and in that opinion our Pilot *William Barrent* dyed, who notwithstanding the heafel and intolerable cold that he endured, yet he was not discouraged, but offered to lay wagers with divers of vs, that by Gods helpe, hee would bring that pretended Voyage to an end, if he held his course North-east from the North Cape. But I will leave that, and shew you of the three Voyages aforesaid, begonne and set forth by the permission and furtherance of the Generall States of the united Provinces, and of Prince *Maurice*, as Admirall of the Sea, and the rich Towne of *Amsterdam*.

First, you must understand, that in *Anno* 1594. there was four ships set forth out of the v. nited Provinces, whereof two were of *Amsterdam*, one of *Zelande*, and one of *Enckhuyzen*, that were appointed to sayle into the North Sea, to discover the Kingdomes of *Cathay*, and *China*; so Northward from *Norway*, *Malaysia*, and about *Tartaria*, wherof *William Barrent*, a notable skillfull and wife Pilot, was Commander over the ships of *Amsterdam*, and with them vpon Whit-funday, departed from *Amsterdam*, and went to the *Towch*.

Vpon the fifth of Iune they sayled out of the *Towch*, and having a good wind and faire weather, vpon the three and twentieth of Iune, they arrived at *Kilduin* in *Malaysia*, and saie for that it is a place well knowne and a common Voyage, I will make no further description thereof. The nine and twentieth of Iune, at foure of the clocke in the after-noonne, they let sayle out of *Kilduin*.

The fourth of Iuly they saw *Nova Zembla*, lying South-east and by East fix or seven miles from them, where they had blacke druze ground at one hundred and fixe fathome. *William Barrent* tooke the height of the Sunne with his Croffe-staffe, when it was at the lowest, that is betweene North North-east, and East and by North, and found it to be elevated above the Horizon six degrees and $\frac{1}{2}$ part, his declination being 12. degrees and 55. minutes, from whence subtracting the aforesaid height, there resteth sixtenth degrees and 35. minutes, which being subtracted from 90. degrees, there resteth 73. degrees and 25. minutes. Then they woond Eastward and sayled fixe miles, East and by South, and East South-east, and past by a long point of Land that lay out into the Sea, which they named *Langens*, and hard by that point East-ward, there was a great Bay, where they went a Land with their Boar, but found no people. From *Langens* to Cape *Bape*, East North-east it is foure miles. From Cape *Bape* to the West point of *Lombijay* North-east and by North-east fixe miles, and betweene them both there are 40 Creeks. *Lombijay* is a great wide Bay, on the West-side thereof having a faire Haven, six, fathome, or eight fathome deepe, blacke land, where they went on shoare with their Boats, and vpon the shoare placed a Beacon, made of an old Mast which they found there; calling the Bay *Lombijay*, because of a certayne kind of Beares so called, which they found there in great abundance. The East point of *Lombijay* is a long narrow point, and by it there lyeth an Iland, and from that long point to Sea-ward in, there is a great Creeke. This *Lombijay* lyeth vnder 74. degrees and $\frac{1}{2}$ part. From *Lombijay* to the point of the *Admirals* Iland, they sayled fixe or seven miles, North-east and by North. The *Admirals* Iland is not very faire on the East-side, but a farr off very flat, so that you must thinne it long before you come at it, it is also very vneuen, for at one casting of the Lead they had ten fathome deepe, and presently at another casting of the Lead they had but 50 fathome, and presently after that againe ten, eleven, and twelue fathome, the streame running hard against the Flats.

From the East-end of the *Admirals* Iland, to Cape *Negro*, that is the *Blacke* point, they sayled about fixe or six miles, East North-east, and a mile without the *Blacke* point it is twenty fathome deepe, the ground flimy, as vpon *Pamphus*, right East-ward of the *Blacke* point, there are two sharpe pointed Hills in the Creeke, that are eabe to be knowne. The six of Iuly, the Sunne being North, they came right before the *Blacke* point with faire weather, this *Blacke* point lyeth vnder 75. degrees and 20. minutes. From the *Blacke* point to *Williams* Iland, they sayled seven or eight miles, East North-east, and betweene them both about halfe a mile, there lay a small Iland.

The seventh of Iuly they sayled from *Williams* Iland, and then *William Barrent* tooke the 60 height of the Sunne, with his Croffe-staffe, and found it to be elevated above the Horizon in the South-west and by South 53. degrees and 6. minutes, his declination being 22. degrees and 49. minutes, which being added to 23. degrees and 6. minutes, make 75. degrees and 55. minutes. This is the right height of the Pole of the said Iland. In this Iland they found great store of

Drift.

Drifwood, and many Sea-horses being a kind of fish that keepeth in the Sea, having very great teeth, which at this day are vied in stead of Iuory or Elephants Teeth, there also is a good Road for ships, at twelue and thirtene fathome deepe against all winds, except it bee West South-west, and West-winds, and there they found a piece of a *Russia* ship, and that day they had the wind East North-east, mistie weather.

The ninth of Iuly they entred into *Beeren-fort*, vpon the Road vnder *Williams* Iland, and there they found a white Beare, which they perceiving, presently entred into their Boat, and shot her vnto the bolie with a Musket, but the Beare shewed most wonderfull strength, which almost is not to be found in any beast, for no man ever heard the like to be done by any Lion or cruell beast whatelsoeuer: for notwithstanding that she was shot into the bodie, yet she leape vp, and

10 swamme in the water, the men that were in the Boat rowing after her, cast a Rope about her necke, and by that means drew her at the sterne of the Boat, for that not having seene the like Beare before, they thought to haue carryed her alive in the ship, and to haue shewed her for a strange wonder in *Holland*; but she vied such force, that they were glad that they were rid of her, and contented themselves with her skinn only, for shee made such a noyse, and stroue in such sort, that it was admirable, wherewith they let her rest and gaue her more scope, with the Rope that they held her by, and so drew her in that fort after them, by that means to wearie her: meane-time, *William Barrent* made neerer to her, but the Beare swamme to the Boat, and with her fore-feet got hold of the sterne thereof, which *William Barrent* perceiving, did, the will there rest her selfe, but she had another meaning, for the vied such force, that at last she had gotten halfe her body into the Boat, wherewith the men were so aushed, that they ranne into the further end of the Boat, and thought verily to haue beene spoiled by her, but by a strange means they were deliuered from her, for that the Rope that was about her necke, caught hold vpon the hookes of the Ruther, whereby the Beare could get no further, but so was held backe, and hanging in that manner, one of the men boldly stept forth from the end of the Scute, and thrust her into the bodie with a half-pike; and therewith she fell downe into the water, and so they rowed forward with her to the shippe, drawing her after them, till shee was in a manner dead, wherewith they killed her our-right, and having flayed her, brought the skin to *Amsterdam*.

The twentieth of Iuly, they sayled out of *Beeren-fort* from *Williams* Iland, and the same day in the morning got to the Iland of *Croffer*, and there went on Land with their Pinnasse, and found the Iland to be barren, and full of Cliftes and Rocks, in it there was a small Haven, whereinto they rowed with their Boats. This Iland is about halfe a mile long, and reacheth East and West; on the West end it hath a bays, about a third part of a mile long, and at the East end also another bays, vpon this Iland there lieth two great Cories, the Iland lyeth about two long miles from the firme Land, and vnder the East-end thereof there is a good Road, at fixe and twentie fathome lot ground; and some what closer to the Iland on the Strand, at nine fathome sandie ground.

From the Iland of *Croffer* to the point of Cape *Nassau*, they sayled East, and East and by North about eight miles: it is a long flat point which you must be careful to shunne, for thereabouts at seven fathome there were flats or shoales, very farr from the Land; it lyeth almost vnder 76. degrees and a halfe. From the West end of *Williams* Iland, to the Iland with the *Croffer* is three miles, the course North. From *Nassau* point they sayled East and by South, and East South-east fixe miles, and then they thought that they saw Land North-east, and by East, and sayled towards it fixe miles North-east to decrie it, thinking it to be another Land, that lay Northward from *Nova Zembla*, but it began to blow so hard out of the West, that they were forced to take in all their Sayles, and the Sea went so hollow, that they were constrained to drive fixtene houres together, without sayle, eight or nine miles East North-east.

The eleventh of Iuly their Boar was by a great waue of the Sea sunke to the ground, and by that means they lost it, and after that they draue without sayles fixe miles, East and by South; at last the Sunne being almost South-east, the wind came about to the North-west, and then the weather began somewhat to cleere vp, but yet it was very mistie. Then they hoied vp their sayles againe and sayled foure miles till night, that the Sunne was North and by East, and there they had fixtie fathome deepe, muddy ground, and then they saw certayne flakes of Ice, at which time vpon the twelfth of Iuly they woond West, and held North-west, and layled about a mile with mistie weather, and a North-west wind, and sayled up and downe West South-west three or foure miles, to see if they could find their Boar againe: after that they woond against the wind, and sayled foure miles South-east, till the Sunne was South-west, and then they were close by the Land of *Nova Zembla*, that lay East and by North, and West and by South; from thence they woond ouer againe till noone, and sayled three miles, North and by West, and then till the Sunne was North-west, they held North-west and by North three miles, then they woond East-ward and sayled foure or five miles North-east and by East.

The thirteenth of Iuly at night, they found great store of Ice, as much as they could decrie out of the top, that lay as if it had beene a plane field of Ice, then they woond Westward ouer from the Ice.

The

A comparison of the heat vnder the line, with the cold vnder the North Pole.

The refuse issue and opinions of *William Barrent*.

Iune 5.

The particulars being knowne to many of our Mariners, I omit.

Langens.

Lombijay.

Admirals Iland

Cape Negro. Black point.

Williams Iland.

Sea-horses, or Mories.

Beeren-fort white Beare, scribble.

The seventeenth of July, *William Barents* took the height of the Sunne with his *Astronomical*, and then they were vnder 77. degrees and a ½. of the Pole, and sayled Southward six miles, and perceived the firme Land, lying South from them. Then they sayled till the nineteenth of July in the morning, West South-west six or seven miles, with a North-west winde, and mittie wear, and after that South-west and South-west, and by West seven miles, the Sunne being 77. degrees 5. minutes left. Then they sayled two miles South-west, and were close by the land of *Nona Zembla*, about Cape *Najm*.

The five and twentieth of July, they were so inclosed about with flakes of Ice, that out of the top they could not discern any thing beyond it, and sought to get through the Ice, but they could not pass beyond it. At night, they took the height of the Sunne, when it was at the lowest betwene North and North-east, and North-east and North, it being elevated above the Horizon 6. degrees, and ½. his Declination being by North, it being elevated above the Horizon ½. from 19. degrees 50. minutes, and there retheth 13. degrees 5. minutes, which subtracted from 90. there retheth 77. degrees 5. minutes.

The fixe and twentieth of July in the morning, they sayled six miles South South-east, till the Sunne was South-west, and then South-east six miles, and were within a mile of the land of *Nona Zembla*, and came againe to Cape *Truff*.

The eight and twentieth of July, the height of the Sun being taken at noone with the *Astronomical*, it was found to be elevated above the Horizon 77. degrees and 6. minutes, her Declination being 19. degrees and 18. minutes, which in all is 70. degrees and 24. minutes, they being then about four miles from the land of *Nona Zembla*, that lay all covered over with Snow, the weather being cleare, and the winde East.

The nine and twentieth of July, the height of the Sun being taken with the Croffe-staffe, *A. Brolabum* & Quadrant, they found it to be elevated above the Horizon 33. degrees, her declination being 19. degrees, which subtracted from 32. there retheth 13. degrees of the Equator, which being subtracted from 90. there retheth 77. degrees, and then the nearest North point of *Nona Zembla*, called the *Ice point*, lay right East from them. There they found certaine Stones that glittered like gold, which for that cause they named Gold-stones, and there also they had a faire Bay with sandie ground.

Vpon the same day they woond Southward againe, and sayled South-east two miles betwene the Land and the Ice, and after that from the *Ice point* East, and to the Southward twelve miles to the Islands of *Orange*; and there they laboured forward betwene the Land and the Ice, with faire still weather, and vpon the one and thirtieth of July got to the Islands of *Orange*. And there went to one of those Islands, where they found about two hundred Walrusen, or Sea-bores, lying vpon the shoare to baste themselves in the Sunne. This Sea-bores is a wonderful strong Monster of the Sea, much bigger then an Ox, which keeps continually in the Seas, having a skin like a Sea-calf or Seale, with very thort hayre, mouthed like a Lion, and many times they lye vpon the Ice; they are hardly killed vntill you strike them just vpon the forehead, it hath four Feet, but no Eares, and commonly it hath one or two young ones at a time. And when the Fisher-men chance to finde them vpon a flake of Ice with their young ones, they catch the young ones before her into the water, and then takes them in her Armes and so plunger up and downe with them, and when she will reuenge her selfe vpon the Beates, or make resistance against them, then she casts her young ones from her againe, and with all her force goeth towards the Boate (whereby our men were once in no small danger, for that the Sea-horfe had almost stricken her teeth into the sterne of the Boate) thinking to ouer-throw it, but by means of the great cry that the men made, the was afraid, and swome away againe, and took her young ones againe in her Armes. They have two teeth sticking out of their moutnes, on each side one, each being about halfe an Ell long, and are esteemed to bee as good as any Iurie or Elephants white, hard, and as euén as Iurie.

The Sea-horfs that lay basting themselves vpon the Land, our men supposing that they could not defend themselves being out of the water, went on shoare to assault them, and fought with them, to get their Teeth that are so rich, but they brake all their Hatchers, Cuttle-axes, and Pikes in peeces, and could not kill one of them, but stricke some of their Teeth out of their moutnes, which they tooke with them: and when they could get nothing against them by fighting, they agreed to goe aboard the Ship, to fetch some of their great Ordnance, to shoot at them therewith; but it began to blow so hard, that it rent the Ice into great peeces, so that they were forced not to do it, and therewith they found a great white Beare that slept, which they shot into the bodie, but she ranne away, and entred into the water; the men following her with their Boate, and killed her out-right, and then drew her vpon the Ice, and so sticking a halfe-pike vpright, bound her fast vnto it, thinking to fetch her when they came backe againe, to shoot at the Sea-horfs with their Ordnance, but for that it began more and more to blow, and the Ice therewith brake in peeces, they did nothing at all.

After that, *William Barents* finding that hee could hardly get through, to accomplish, and end his

his pretended Voyage, his men also beginning to bee wearie, and would fytle no further, they all together agreed to returne backe againe, to meet with the other Ships that had taken their course together the *Weg-gates*, or the Straights of *Maffius*, to know what Discoveries they had made there. The backe againe.

The first of August they turned their course to sayle backe againe from the Islands of *Orange*. There *William Barents* took the height of the Sunne, it being vnder 71. degrees and ½. and there they found a great Creeke, which *William Barents* judged to bee the place where *Oliver Brumel* had bene before, called *Coffins-jarck*. From the *Blacke* Island they sayled South, and South and East to another small point three miles, on which point there stood a Croffe, and therefore they called it the *Croffe-point*, where also was a flat Bay and low water, five, six, or seven fadome deepe.

10 The first of August, from *Croffe-point* they sayled along by the land South South-east six miles, and then came to another small point, which behind it had a great Creeke, that reached Eastward: This point they called the fifth point, or Saint *Lawrence* point. From the fifth point they sayled to the *Sonne* point three miles, South South-east, and there lay a long blacke Rocke close by the land, whereon there stood a Croffe; then they entred into the Ice againe, and put inward to the Sea because of the Ice. Their intent was to sayle along the coast of *Nona Zembla* to the *Weg-gates*, but by reason that the Ice met them, they woond Westward, and from the ninth of August in the Evening, till the tenth of August in the Morning, sayled West and by North eleven miles, and after that four miles West North-west, and North-west and by West, the winde being North, in the Morning they woond Eastward againe, and sayled vntill Evening ten miles East, and 20 East and by South; after that East, and East and by North four miles, and there they found land, and were against a great Creeke, where with their Boate they went on land, and there saw a faire Hauen six fadome deepe, sandie ground. This Creeke on the North side hath three blacke points, and about the three points lyeth the road, but you must keepe somewhat from the third point, for it is little, and betwene the second and third point there is another faire Bay, for North-west, North, and North-east winde, blacke sandie ground. This Bay they called Saint *Bay. Lawrence* Bay, and there they took the height of the Sunne, which was 70. degrees and ½.

From Saint *Lawrence* Bay, South South-east two miles to *Sonne* point, there lay along blacke Rocke close by the land, whereon there stood a Croffe, there they went on Land with their Boate, and perceived that some men had bene there, and that they were fed to faze themselves, 30 for there they found fixe Sackes with Rye-meale buried in the ground, and a heape of flonks by the Croffe, and a Bulle for a great Piece, and therabouts also there stood another Croffe, with three Houses made of wood, after the North Country manner: and in the houses they found many barrels of Pike-staves, whereby they conjectured, that there they vied to take Salmons, and by them stood five or six Coffins, by Graues, with dead mens bones, the Coffins standing vpon the ground all filled vp with stones; there also lay a broken *Ruffus* ship, the Keele thereof being fortie four foot long, but they could see no man on the Land: it is a faire Hauen for all winde, which they called the *Mede-hauen*, because of the *Mede* that they found there. From the blacke Rocke or Cliffe with the Croffe, two miles South South-east, there lay a low land a little into the Sea; from whence they sayled nine or ten miles South South-east, there the height of the Sunne was 70. degrees and 50. minutes, when it was South South-west. From that land they sayled along by the Land four miles South-east and by South, there they came to two Islands, whereof the vntermost lay a mile from the Land: those Islands they called Saint *Clara*.

Then they entred into the Ice againe, and woond inward to the Sea in the wind, and sayled from the land vntill Evening, West South-west four miles, the wind being North-west; that Evening it was very mistie, and then they had eight fadome deepe.

Then againe they sayled South-west and by West, and West South-west three miles, there they had twentie fadome deepe, and so sayled till the thirteenth of August in the morning, South-west and by West four miles, two houres before they had ground at fiftie fixe fadome, and in the morning at fortie fixe fadome, soft muddie ground. Then they woond from the land and sayled North, and North and by East four miles, from thence they woond to land againe, and sayled till the fourteenth of August, five or six miles South-west, sayling close by the land, which (as they ghesse) was the Island of *Cologen*.

August the fifteenth, the Sun being South-west, *William Barents* took the height thereof, and found it to be elevated above the Horizon 35. degrees, his Declination being 14. degrees and ½. so that as there wanted 55. degrees of 90. which 55. and 14. degrees ½. being both added together, made 69. Degrees 15. Minutes, which was the height of the Pole in that place, the wind being North-west, then they sayled two miles more Eastward, and came to the Islands called *Maffius* and *Delgoy*, and there in the morning they met with the other Ships of their companie, being of *Zeland* and *Enck-husen*, that came out of *Weg-gates* the same day, there they shewed each other where they had bene, and how farre each of them had sayled and discovered.

The Ship of *Enck-husen* had past the Straights of *Weg-gates*, and said, that at the end of *Weg-gates* hee had found a large Sea, and that they had sayled fiftie or sixtie miles further Eastward, and were of opinion that they had bene about the River *Obi*, that cometh out of *Tartaria*, and that the Land of *Tartaria* reacheth North-eastward againe from thence, whereby they thought

There returne

Oliver Brumel,

Blacke Island,

Croffe-point.

Saint Lawrence

Sonne point

Cologen.

Maffius and

Delgoy.

They meet

with their

companie.

Statesland.

that they were not farre from Cape *Tahis*, which is the point of *Tartaria*, that reacheth towards the Kingdome of *Cathai*, North-east and then Southward, and so thinking that they had discovered enough for that time, and that it was too late in the yeere to sayle any further, as also that their Commission was to discover the Situation, and to come home againe before Winter, they turned againe towards the *Wey-gates*, and came to an Iland about fve miles great, lying South Stones that were of Christall Mountayne, being a kind of Diamond.

When they were met together, as I sayd before, they made signes of joy, discharging some of their Ordnance, and were merrie, the other Ships thinking that *William Barents* had sayled round about *Nova Zembla*, and had come backe againe through the *Wey-gates*; and after they had so shewed each other what they had done, and made signes of joy for their meeting, they set their course to turne backe againe for *Holland*, and vpon the sixteenth of August they went vnder the Islands of *Marlin* and *Delioy*, and put into the road, because the wind was North-west, and lay till the eighteenth of August. Then they set sayle, and came to the *Taxel* the sixteenth of September.

CHAP. III.

A briefe Declaration of BARENTS his second Navigation, made in Anno 1595, behinde Norway, Muscovia, and Tartaria, written by GERRAT DE VEE.



He foure Ships aforesaid, being returned home about Harvest-time, in Anno 1594, they were in good hope that the Voyage aforesaid would be done, by passing along the Straights of *Wey-gates*, and specially by the report made by the two Ships of *Zeland*, and *Euck-boynen*, wherein *Iohn Elphinsten* was Commis- sioner, who declared the manner of their travell in such sort, that the Generall States, and Prince *Maurice* resolved, in the beginning of the next yeere to pre- pare certayne Ships, not onely (as they went before) to discover the passage, but to send certayne Wares and Merchandizes thither, wherein the Merchants might lide what Wares they would, Freight nor Customs. *Peter Planinius* a learned Cosmographer, being a great furtherer and setter forward of this Voyage, and was their chiefe Instruſtor therein, setting downe the situation of the Coasts of *Tartaria*, *Cathai*, & *China*; but how they lye it is not yet sufficiently discovered, for that the courses and rules by him fet downe, were not fully effected, by means of some in- conveniences that fell out, which by reason of the shortness of time could not be holpen.

In Anno 1595, the Generall States of the united Provinces, and Prince *Maurice*, caused fouen Ships to be prepared to sayle through the *Wey-gates*, or the Straights of *Nassau*, to the King- dom of *Cathai* and *China*: two out of *Amsterdam*, two out of *Zeland*, two out of *Euck-boynen*, and one out of *Rottterdam*: five of them laden with diuers kinds of Wares, Merchandizes, and Money and Factors, to sell the said Wares; the fiftenth being a Pinnasse, that had Com- mission, when the other Ships were past about the Cape of *Tahis* (which is the furthest point of the Ice, to turne backe againe, and to bring newes Southward, without any let or hindrance of that was our chiefe Pilot, and *James Henfkerke* chiefe Factor, thought good to write downe the same in order, as it is hereafter declared, as I did the first Voyage, according to the course and freething of the Land as it lyeth.

First, after we had beene mustered at *Amsterdam*, and every man taken an Oath, that was then purposely ministred vnto vs; vpon the eighteenth of June wee sayled to the *Taxel*, from thence to put to Sea, with other Ships that were appointed to meet vs at a certayne day; and so to begin our Voyage in the name of God. The second of Iuly wee set sayle out of the *Taxel*. The fifth of August, the North Cape lay about two miles East from vs, and when the Sunne was North-west, the *Mother* and her *Daughters* lay Southward from vs four miles.

The fiftenth, wee saw great flocks of Ice, all along the Coast of *Nova Zembla*, and casting out the Lead, had 75 fathom loft ground. After that we held diuers courses because of the Ice, and tenth of August, when the Sunne was East, and then we cast out the Lead againe, and found 30 three Glafes after that we had ground at twentie fathomes, red fand, with small shells: 63 then wee saw two Ilands, which they of *Euck-boynen* gave the names of Prince *Maurice* and his Brother, which lay from vs South-east three miles, being low Land, and then wee sayled eight miles, till the Sun was South. Then we sayled East, and oftentimes casting out the lead, we found

twentie,

twentie, nineteene, eigheteene, and fountene fathome deep, good ground mixed with black shells, and saw the *Wey-gates* (the Sunne being West) which lay East North-east from vs about five miles, and after that we sayled about eight miles.

Then we sayled vnder 70. degrees, vntill we came to the *Wey-gates*, most part through broken Ice, and when we got to *Wey-gates*, we cast out our Lead, and for a long time found thirteene and fountene fathomes, loft ground, mixed with black shells, not long after that we cast out the Lead and found ten fathomes deepe, the wind being North, and we forced to hold fiftly aloofe, in regard of the great quantitie of Ice, till about mid-night, then were forced to wind Northward, because of certaine Rocks that lay on the Southside of *Wey-gates*, right before vs, about a mile and a halfe, hauing ten fathome deepe: then we changed our course, and sayled West North-west for the space of foure Glafes, after that we woond about againe East, and East and by South, and so entered into the *Wey-gates*, and as wee went in, wee cast out the Lead, and found seven fathomes deepe, little more or lesse, till the nineteenth of August, and then the Sunne being South-east, we entered into the *Wey-gates*, in the Road, the wind being North. The right Channell betwene the *Image* point and the *Samoyeds* Land was full of Ice, so that it was not well to bee past thow, and so we went into the Road (which we called the *Traen* Bay, because we found flore of *Traen*-oyle there, this is a good Bay for the course of the Ice, and good almost for all winds, and we may sayle to farre into it as we will, at foure, five, and three fathome, good Anchor-ground, on the East side it is deepe water.

Image point, Samoyeds land, Traen Bay.

The twentieth of August, the height of the Sunne being taken with the Crofse-staffe, wee found that it was eleuated about the Horizon 69. degrees 21. minutes, when it was South-west and by South, being at the highest, or before it beganne to descend. The one and twentieth of August, we went on Land within the *Wey-gates* with foure and fiftie men, to see the situation of the Countrey, and being two miles within the Land we found many *Uel-werck*, *Traen*, and such like Wares, and diuers flocks of men, and Deere, whereby wee perceived that some men dwelt thereabouts, or else vied to come thither. And to assure vs the more thereof, wee might perceive it by the great number of Images, which we found there vpon the Image or *Beelbooke*, (so called by vs) in great abundance, whereof ten dayes after wee were better informed by the *Samoyers* and the *Russians*, when wee spake with them. And when we entered further into the Land, we vied all the means we could, to see if we could find any houses or men, by whom we might be informed of the situation of the Sea thereabouts, whereof afterward we had better intelligence by the *Samoyers*; that told vs, that there are certayne men dwelling on the *Wey-gates*, and vpon *Nova Zembla*, but we could neither find much, houses, nor any other things, so that to haue better information, wee went with some of our men further South-east into the Land; towards the Sea-side, and as we went, we found a path-way made with mens feet in the Mofse or Marsh-ground, about halfe knee deepe, for that going so deepe we felt hard ground vnder our feet, which at the deepest was no higher then our shoes, and as we went forward to the Sea-coast, we were exceeding glad, thinking that we had fene a passage open, where we might get through, because we saw so little Ice there: and in the Evening entering into our ship againe, we shewed them that newes. Meane-time, our Master had sent out a Boat to see if the *Tartarian* Sea was open, but it could not get into the Sea because of the Ice, yet they rowed to the *Croffe*-point, and there let the Boat lye, and went over the Land to the West point, and there of the *Wey-gates*. The Ice in the *Tartarian* Sea, lay full vpon the *Russians* Coasts, and in the mouth of the *Wey-gates*.

They goe on Land.

Images.

The three and twentieth of August we found a *Lodgie*, or Boat of *Piscare*, which was fiewed together with Bait or Ropes, that had bene Northward to seeke for some Sea-horses Teeth, *Traen*, and Geefe, which they fetch with their Boat, to lade in certaine ships that were to come out of *Russia* through the *Wey-gates*. Which ships they said (when they spake with vs) were to sayle into the *Tartarian* Sea, by the River of *Oby*, to a place called *Ugolitsa* in *Tartaria*, there to stay all Winter, as they vied to doe every yeere: and told vs that it would yet bee nine or ten Weekes ere it began to freeze in that place, and that when it once beganne to freeze, it would freeze so hard, that as then men might go ouer the Sea into *Tartaria* (along vpon the Ice) which they called *Chermers*.

The foure and twentieth of August in the morning betwene, we went on board of the *Lodgie*, to haue further information and instruction of the Sea, on the Eastside of the *Wey-gates*, and they gave vs good instruction, such as you haue heard.

The hue and twentieth of August we went againe to the *Lodgie*, and in friendly manner spake with them, for our parts offering them friendships; and then they gave vs eight fat Geefe, that lay in the bottom of their Boat: we desired that one or two of them would goe with vs aboard our ship, and they willingly went with vs to the number of seuen; and being in our ship, they wondered much at the greatnesse and furni- ure of our ships; and after they had fene and looked into it every place, we set Fish, Butter and Cheefe before them to eat, but they refused it, saying, that that day was a Fasting day with them, but at last when they saw some of our Pickled Herrings, they ate them both heads, tayles, skinnies, and guts, and hauing eaten thereof,

we

James Henfkerke famous for the Gibraltar exploit.

we gaue them a small Firkin of Herrings, for the which they gaue vs great thanks, knowing not what friendship they should doe vs to require our courteis, and wee brought them with our Pinnasse into the *Tran Bay*. About Noone we hoysed vp our Anchors with a West North-west winde the couris or stretching of *VV-gates*, is East to *Cross* point, and then North-east to the *Twist* point, and somewhat more Easterly: From thence the Land of *VV-gates*, reacheth North North-east, and North and by East, and then North, and somewhat Westerly, wee sayled North-east and Eastward two miles, by the *Twist* point, but then we were compelled to faile backe againe, because of the great store of Ice, and tooke our couris to our Road afore said: and sayling backe againe we found a good place by the *Crosse* point, to anchor in that night. The six and twentieth of August in the morning we hoysed Anchor, and put out our fork-saile, and so failed to our old Road, and there to stay for a more convenient time.

They speake
with Samoyeds.

The eight and twentieth, nine and twentieth, and thirtieth of August till the one and thirtieth, the wind for the most part was South-west, and *VVilliam Barents* our Capaine failed to the South-side of *VV-gates*, and there went on Land, where we found certaine Wildmen (called *Samoyeds*) and yet not altogether wilde, for they being twentie in number, staid and spake with our men, being but nine together, about a mile within the Land, our men not thinking to find any men there (for that we had at other times bene on Land in the *VV-gates*, and saw none) at last, it being mislike weather, they perceived men, fure and fure in a company, and wee were hard by them which they perceiuing, sent one towards vs, who comming aloft to our men, to speake an Arrow out of his Quiver, offering to shoot at him; wherewith our Interpreter, being with-
out Armes, was afraid, and cryed vnto him, saying (in *Russian* speech) *Shoot not, we are friends* which the other hearing, cast his Bow and Arrowes to the ground, therewith giuing him to understand that he was well content to spake with our man: which done, our man called to him once againe, and said: *My friends*: wherunto he made answer and said: then they are wel-
come: and saluting one the other bended both their heads downe towards the ground, after the *Russian* manner: this done, our Interpreter questioned with him, about the situation and stretch-
ing of the Sea East-ward through the Straights of *VV-gates*; wherof he gaue vs good infor-
mation, saying: that when they should haue past a point of land about fure daies failing from thence, shewing North-eastward; that after that, there is a great Sea (shewing towards the South-east-
ward,) saying, that he knew it very well, for that one had bene there that was sent thither by their King with certaine Soldiers, wherof he had bene Capaine.

Sea open.

Samoyeds ap-
parell.Haire, person,
stature.

Their King.

Their Sleds.

Departure.

The manner of their Apparell is, like as we see to paint Wildmen, but they are not wilde for they are of reasonable judgement: they are apparelled in Harts skines from the head to the feet, vnto the rest, as afore said, vnto it be on their heads, whether they be men or women, like vnto the rest, as afore said, vnto it be on their heads, whether they be men or women, coloured Cloth lined with Furre: the rest wear Caps of Harts or Bucks skines, the rough side outwards, which stand close to their heads, and are very fit. They wear long Haire, which they pleate and fold, and let it hang downe vpon their backs. They are (for the most part all) short and low of stature, with broad flat faces, small eyes, short legs, their knees standing outwards and are very quick to goe and leape. They trust not Strangers; for although that we showed them all the courteis and friendship that we could, yet they trusted vs not much: which we perceived hereby, that as vpon the first of September wee went againe on Land to them, and that one of our men desired to see one of their Bowes: they refused it, making a signe that they would not doe it. Hee that they called their King, had Centinels standing abroad, to see what was done in the Countrey, and what was bought and sold: At last, one of our men went neerer to one of the Centinels, to speake with him, and offered him great friendship, according to their accustomed manner, withall giuing him a Biskit; which he with great thanks tooke, and presently ate it; and while hee ate it, hee still looked diligently about him on all sides what was done.

Their Sleds stood alwayes readie with one or two Harts in them, that ranne so swiftly with one or two men in them, that our Horses are not able to follow them. One of our men thora Muskett towards the Sea, wherewith they were in great feare, that they ranne and leapt like mad men: yet at last, they satisfied themselves, when they perceived that it was not maliciously done to hurt them: and we told them by our Interpreter, that they vied our Pieces in stead of Bowes; wherat they wondered, because of the great blow and noyse that it gaue and made and to shew them what wee could doe therewith, one of our men tooke a flat stone about halfe a handfull broad, and let it vpon a Hill a good way off from him: which they perceiuing, and thinking that we meant some what thereby, fiftie or sixtie of them gathered round about vs; and yet some-what farre off, wherewith hee that had the Piece shot it off, and with the Bullet smote the stone in sunder: wherat they wondered much more then before.

After that, wee tooke our leaues one of the other, with great friendship on both sides; and when we were in our Pinnasse, wee all put off our Hats, and bowed our heads vnto them, sounding our Trumpet: They (in their manner) saluting vs also, and then went to their Sleds againe.

And

And after they were gone from vs, and were somewhat within the Land, one of them came riding to the shoare, to fetch a rough-hewed Image, that our men had taken off the shoare, and carryed into their Boate: and when hee was in our Boate, and perceived the Image, he made vs a signe that hee had not done well to take away that Image: Which we beholding, gaue it to him againe: Which when hee had receiued, he placed it vpon a Hill right by the Sea side, and tooke it not with him, but sent a Sled to fetch it from thence: and as farre as we could perceive, they esteemed that Image to be their God; for that right our against that place in the *VV-gates*, which wee called *Beelt-hooke*, we found certayne hundreds of such carved Images, all rough about the Heads, being somewhat round, and in the middle, hauing a little hill in head of a Nose; and about the Nose two eyes, in place of Eyes; and vnder the Nose a can, in place of a Mouth. Before the Images, wee found great store of Althes, and bones of Harts: whereto it is to be supposed, that there they offered vnto them.

Hundreds of
Images
all thus
like
get.

The second of September, a little before Supper time, we put forth an Anchor to get out, for that the wind as then blew South South-west; it being good weather to get out, and ill weather to lye still: for we lay vnder a low Banke. The Admirall and Vice-admirall seeing Focke-sayle, the Sunne was East and by South, and to let sayle. When we put out our there wee cast Anchor to stay for the Vice-admiralls Pinnasse: which with much labour and paines, in time got out of the Ice, by often casting out of their Anchor: and in the Evening riling, we got within a mile Eastward of the *Twist* point, and sayled Northward six miles, till the Sunne was South. Then wee were forced to wind about, because of the great quantitie of Ice, and the Myll that then fell, at which time the wind blew to vncertainty, that we could hold no course, but were forced continually to winde and come about, by reason of the Ice, and wee supposed that we had sayled Southward vp towards the *Samoyeds* Countrey, and then held our course South-west, till the watchers were North-west from vs; then we came to the point of the *States* Island lying Eastward about a Musket shot from the Land, hauing 13 fathom deepe.

The fourth of September, we hoysed Anchor because of the Ice, and sayled between the firme Land and the *States* Island, where we lay close by the *States* Island at four and fure fathom deepe, and made our Ship fast with a Cable cast on the shoare, and there wee were safe from the course of the Ice, and diuers times went on land to get Hares, wherof there were many in that Island. The sixth of September, some of our men went on shoare vpon the firme land to seeke while they were seeking the Stones, two of our men lying together in one place, a great leane white Beare came suddenly stealing out, and caught one of them fast by the necke: who not knowing what it was that tooke him by the necke, cryed out and layd: *Who is that that pulls me so by the necke?* wherewith the other, that lay not farre from him; lifted vp his head to see Beare, and therewith presently rose vp and ranne away.

States Island.

A Beare kills
two men.

The Beare at the first falling vpon the man, by his hand in his finger, and sucked out his blood, wherewith the rest of the men that were on the Land, being about twentie in number, ranne presently thither, either to save the man, or else to drive the Beare from the dead body: and ha-
but perceiving them to come towards her, fiercely and cruelly ranne at them, and got another of
We perceiving out of our Ship and Pinnasse, that our men ranne to the Sea-side to save them-
selves, withall speed entred into our Boates, and rowed as fast wee could to the shoare to relieue
our men. Where being on Land, we beheld the cruell spectacle of our two dead men; that had
bene so cruelly killed and torne in pieces by the Beare, we seeing that, had got backe againe with vs, and with Pieces, Curtalaxes, and Halfe-pikes, to let vpon the Beare,
but they would not all agree thereunto: some of them saying, our men are already dead, and we
might save our fellowes liues, then wee would make haste, but now we need not make such
cruell, fierce, and rancorous Beare. Wherupon three of our men went forward, the Beare still dis-
uoying her prey, not once fearing the number of our men, and yet they were thirtie at the least:
the three that went forward in that sort, were *Carstien Jacobson*, Master of *William Barents* Ship,
William Gysen, Pilot of the Pinnasse, and *Hans van Nijfen*, Master of *William Barents* Ship;
that the sayd Master and Pilot had shot three times and mist, the Purser stepping forward
60 further forward, and seeing the Beare to be within the length of a shot, presently leuelled his
Piece, and discharging it at the Beare, shot her into the head betweene both the eyes, and yet the
Beare somwhat to stagger, wherewith the Purser and a *Scout* man drew out their Curtalaxes:

Her Bountie.

They kill the
Beare.

and strooke at her so hard, that their Curleaxes burst, and yet she would not leave the man, at last
William Gysen went to them, and with all his might strooke the Beare vpon the snout with his
Peece, at which time the Beare fell to the ground, making a great awoyle, and *William Gysen* lea-
ping vpon her cut her throat. The tenth of September, wee buried the dead bodies of our men
in the *States* Iland, and having slayed the Beare, carryed her Skin to *Amsterdam*.

The ninth of September, we set sayle from the *States* Iland, but the Ice came in so thicke and
with such force, that we could not get through, so that at Euening we came backe againe to
the *States* Iland, the winde being Westerly. There the Admirall and the Pinnalle of *Reterdam*,
fell on ground by certayne Rockes, but got off againe without any hurt.

Twist-point.

The tenth of September, we layed againe from the *States* Iland towards the *Wey-gates*, and
sent two Boates into the Sea, to cerifie vs what force of Ice was abroad : and that Euening we
came all together into *Wey-gates*, and Anchored by the *Twist-point*. The eleuenth of September
in the Morning, we layed againe into the *Tartarian Sea*, but we fell into great force of Ice, so that
we layed backe againe to the *Wey-gates*, and Anchored by the *Crosse-point*, and about midnigh-
t we saw a *Russian Lodgie*, that layed from the *Beale-point* towards the *Sammiers* Land. The thir-
teenth of September, the Sunne being South, there began a great storme to blow out of the South
South-west, the weather being miltie, melancholy, and frowie, and the storme increasing more
and more, we drave through.

The fourteenth of September, the weather began to be somewhat clearer, the winde being
North-west, and the storme blowing stiffe out of the *Tartarian* Sea, but at Euening it was fair
weather, and then the wind blew North-east, the same day our men went on the other side of
Wey-gates, on the firme land, to take the depth of the Channell, and eptred into the Bough be-
hind the Ilands, where there stood a little House made of wood, and a great fall of water into
the land. The same Morning we hoysed vpon our Anchor, thinking once againe to try what we
could doe to further our Voyage, but our Admirall being of another minde, lay still till the
teenth of September. The same day in the Morning, the winde drave in from the East-end of the
Wey-gates, whereby we were forced presently to hoys Anchor, and the same day layed out
from the West-end of the *Wey-gates*, with all our Fleet, and made homewards againe, and that
day pass by the Ilands called *Matfloce* and *Delgoy*, and that night we layed twelve miles North-
west and by West, till Saturday in the morning, and then the winde fell North-east, and it be-
gan to Snow. We saw the point of *Candymys*, lying South-east from vs, and then we had seen
and cwentie fathome deepe, red sand with blacke shels.

Matfloce and
Delgoy.

The nine and twentieth of September, in the Euening entered into *Ward-houfe*, and there we
stayed till the tenth of October. And that day we set sayle out of *Ward-houfe*, and vpon the eigh-
teenth of Nouember, we arrived in the *Mares*.

CHAP. V.

The third Voyage Northward to the Kingdomes of Cathaia,
and China, in Anno 1596. Written by
GERAT DE VERR.

§. I.

What happened to them at Sea, before they came to build their House.



After that the seven Ships (as I said before) were returned backe againe from their
North Voyage, with lesse benefite then was expected, the Generall *States* of 50
the United Provinces consulted together, to send certayne Ships thither a-
gain, a third time, to see if they might bring the said Voyage to a good end, if it
were possible to be done : but after much Consultation had, they could not a-
gree thereon ; yet they were content to cause a Proclamation to be made, that if
any, either Townes, or Merchants, were disposed to venture to make further search that way,
at their owne charges, if the Voyage were accomplished, and that thereby it might be made ap-
parent, that the said passage was to be layed, they were content to give them a good reward, in
the Countries beselle, naming a certayne summe of money. Whereupon in the beginning of
this yere, there was two Ships rigged and set forth by the Towne of *Amsterdam*, to sayle that
the Voyage were therein being taken vp vpon two Conditions : *viz.* What they should haue if 60
the Voyage were not accomplished, and what they should haue if they got through, and brought
the Voyage to an end, promising them a good reward if they could effect it, thereby to encourage
the men, taking vp as many married men as they could, that they might not be dissuaded by
means of their Wives and Children to leave off the Voyage. Vpon these Conditions, thole

two

CHAP. V. §. I. Three Sunnes and foure Raine-bowes. Ice, Danger escaped.

two Ships were ready to set sayle in the beginning of May. In the one, *Iacob Hemmikerke Hen-
drickson*, was Master and Factor for the Wares and Merchandises ; and *William Barents* chiefe
Pilot. In the other, *Iohn Cornelison Ryp*, was both Master and Factor for the goods that the
Merchants had laden in her.

The fifth of May, all the men in both the Ships were Mustered, and vpon the tenth of May,
they sayled from *Amsterdam*, and the thirteenth of May got to the *Vlie*. The thirtieth of May
we had a good winde, and sayled North-east, and wee tooke the height of the Sunne with our
Crosse-staffe, and found that it was eleuated aboue the Horizon 47. degrees and 42. minutes, his
Declination was 21. degrees and 42. minutes, so that the height of the Pole was 69. degrees
10 and 34. minutes.

The first of Iune we had no night, and the second of Iune we had the winde contrarie, but vpon
the fourth of Iune we had a good winde, out of the West North-west, and sayled North-east.
And when the Sunne was about South South-east, wee saw a strange sight in the Element : for
on each side of the Sunne there was another Sunne, and two Raine-bowes, that past cleane thro-
row the three Sunnes, and then two Raine-bowes more, the one compassing round about the
Sunnes, and the other crosse throw the great rundle ; the great rundle standing with the vter-
most point, eleuated aboue the Horizon 28. degrees : at noone the Sunne being at the highest, the
height thereof was measured, and wee found by the *Astrabulum*, that it was eleuated aboue the
Horizon 48. degrees and 42. minutes, his Declination was 22. degrees and 17. minutes, the which
being added to 48. degrees 42. minutes, it was found that wee were vnder 71. degrees of the
height of the Pole.

Iohn Cornelison ship held aloofe from vs, and would not keepe with vs, and would hold no course
but North North-east, for they alledged, that if wee went any more Easterly, that then we
should enter into the *Wey-gates*, but wee being not able to perswade them, altered our course one
point of the Compass, to meet them, and sayled North-east and by North, and should otherwise
haue sayled North-east, and somewhat more East.

The fifth, wee saw the first Ice, which we wondered at, at the first, thinking that it had bene
white Swannes, for one of our men walking in the Fore-decke, on a sudden began to cry out with
a loud voyce, and said ; that hee saw white Swannes : which wee that were vnder Hatches hea-
30 ring, presently came vp, and perceived that it was Ice, that came distuing from the great hea-
ces, showing like Swannes, it being then about Euening, at midnigh we sayled through it, and the
Sunne was about a degree eleuated aboue the Horizon in the North.

The sixth, about foure of the clocke in the after-noon, wee entered againe into the Ice, which
was so throng that we could not passe through it, and sayled South-west and by West, till eight
Glasses were runne out, after that we kept on our course North, North-east, and sayled along
by the Ice.

The seventh, we tooke the height of the Sunne, and found that it was eleuated aboue the Ho-
rizon 38. degrees and 38. minutes, his Declination being 22. degrees 38. minutes ; which being
taken from 38. degrees 38. minutes, wee found the Pole to be 74. degrees ; there we found lo-
40 great force of Ice, that it was admirable : and we sayled along through it, as if we had pass be-
tweene two Lands. The water being as Greene as Grasse, and we supposed that we were be-
tweene *Greenland*, and the longer we sayled, the more and thicker Ice we found. The eight
of Iune, we came to so great a heape of Ice, that we could not sayle through it.

Greene water.

The ninth of Iune, we found the Iland that lay vnder 74. degrees and 30. minutes, and as we
ghost, it was about five miles long. The tenth, we put out our Boate, and therewith eight of our
men went on Land, and as we went by *Iohn Cornelison* ship, eight of his men also came into our
Boat, whereof one was the Pilot. Then *William Barents* asked him, whether we were not too
tweene them, for *William Barents* sayd, he would proue it to be so, as in truth it was. The ele-
50 uenth we were in great danger of our liues : for that going vp a great Hill of Snow, when wee
should come downe againe, we thought we should all haue broken our neckes, it was so slippery,
but we late vpon the Snow and slid downe, which was very dangerous for vs, to break both
our armes and legges, for that at the foot of the Hill there was many Rockes, which we were
likely to haue fallen vpon, yet by Gods helpe we got safely downe againe. Meane time *William
Barents* late in the Boate, and saw vs slide downe, and was in greater feare then we, to behold vs
in that danger. In the said Iland, we found the varying of our Compass, which was 13. degrees,
so that it differed a whole point at the least : after that wee rowed aboard *Iohn Cornelison* ship,
and there we ate our Egges.

Danger efca-
ped.Variation of
the Compass.

The twelfth in the morning, we saw a white Beare, which we rowed after with our Boate,
thinking to cast a Rope about her necke ; but when we were nere her, she was so great, that we
durst not doe it, but rowed backe againe to our Ship to fetch more men and our Armes, and
made to her againe with Muskets, Harquebusses, Halberds, and Hatchets. *Iohn Cornelison* men
coming also with their Boate to helpe vs : and so being well furnished of men and weapons,

Great white
Beare.

Fight with
her.Beares skin
12. foot long.

Dead Whale.

80. Degrees
and 11 minutes.Another fight
with a white
Beare.Beares skin
13. foot long.Red Geese
Egges.Red Geese
bowed their
young Geese,
vnder 80. De-
grees in Green-
land.
Fable of Bar-
nacles.

Note.

we rowed with both our Boates vnto the Beare, and fought with her while four Glafes were runne out, for our Weapons could doe her little hurt: and amongst the rest of the blowes that we gaue her, one of our men strooke her into the backe with an Axe, which flucke fast in her backe, and yett she swamme away with it; but we rowed after her, and at last we cut her head in funder with an Axe, wherewith the dyed: and then we brought her into *Iohn Cornelius* ship, where we flayed her, and found her Skinne to bee twelve foot long: which done, we ate some of her flesh; but we brooke it not well.

The thirteenth we left the land, and layed North, and somewhat Easterly, the winde being West, and South-west, and made good way: so that when the Sunne was North, wee ghest that we had layed fixteene miles Northward from that land.

The fourteenth, when the Sunne was North, wee cast our Lead one hundred and thirteene fathome deepe, but found no ground, and so layed forward till the fifteenth of Iune, when the Sunne was South-east, with mistie and drifling weather, and layed North, and North and by East: about Euening it cleared vp, and then we saw a great thing driving in the Sea, which we thought had beene a Ship: but passing along by it, we perceived it to bee a dead Whale, that we flunked monstrously; and on it there was a great number of Sea-mewes: At that time, wee had layed twentie miles.

The sixteenth, with the like speed wee layed North and by East, with mistie weather; and as we layed, we heard the Ice before we saw it: but after, when it cleared vp, we saw it, and then woodd off from it, when as wee ghest we had layed thirtie miles. The seventeenth and eighteenth, we saw great store of Ice, and layed along by it, vntill we came to the point, which we could not reach, for that the wind was South-east, which was right against vs, & the point of Ice lay Southward from vs: yett we laured a great while to get beyond it, but we could not doe it. The nineteenth, we saw Land againe, then weooke the height of the Sun, and found that it was elevated about the Horizon 33. degrees and 37. minutes: her Declination being 33. degrees and 26. minutes: which taken from the sayd 33. degrees and 37. minutes, wee found that we were vnder 80. degrees and 11. minutes: which was the height of the Pole there. This Land was very great, and wee layed Westward along by it, till we were vnder 79. degrees and a halfe, when we found a good road, and could not get neare to the Land, because the winde blew North-east, which was right off from the Land: the Bay reacheth right North and South into the Sea.

The twentieth one, we cast our Anchor, at eightene fathome before the Land; and then we and *Iohn Cornelius* men, rowed on the West-side of the Land, and there fetched Ballast: and when we got on board againe with our Ballast, we saw a white Beare that swamme towards our ship; whereupon we left off our worke, and entering into the Boate with *Iohn Cornelius* men, rowed after her, and crossing her in the way, droue her from the Land, wherewith she swamme further into the Sea, and we followed her; and for that our Boate could not make good way after her, we manned our Scute also, the better to follow her: but she swam a mile into the Sea; yett we followed her with the most part of all our men of both Ships in three Boates, and strookes oftentimes at her, cutting and hewing her, so that all our Armes were most broken in pieces. During our fight with her, she strooke her Claws so hard in our Boate, that the figures thereof 40 were faine in it: but as has was, it was in the fore-head of our Boate: for if it had beene in the middle thereof, the had (peradventure) ouer-throwne it, they haue such force in their Claws: At last, after we had fought long with her, and made her wearie with our three Boates that kept about her, her Skinne being thirteene foot long. After that, we brought her into our ship, and layed her in the Land, where there was a good Haue, and good Anchor ground, on the East-side being fandie, there wee cutt out our Lead, and found fixteene fathome deepe, and after that, ten, and twelue fathome, and rowing further, we found that on the East-side there was two lands, that reached Eastward into the Sea: on the West-side also there was a great Creeke or Riuer, which shewed also like an Island. Then we rowed to the land that lay in the middle, and there 50 we found many Red Geese-egges, which we saw sitting vpon their Nests, and droue them from them, and they flying away, cryed red, red: and as they fate we killed one Goose dead with a stone, which we dreift and ate, and at least fixtie Egges, that weeooke with vs about the ship, and vpon the two and twentieth of Iune, we went aboard our ship againe.

Those Geese were of a perfit Red colour, such as came into *Holland* about *Wieringen*, and euer yeere are there taken in abundance, but till this time it was neuer knowne where they hatch their Egges, so that some men haue taken vpon them to write, that they sit vpon Trees in *Scotland*, that hang out the Water, and such Egges as fall from them downe into the Water become young Geese, and swim there out of the water; but those that fall vpon the Land burst in funder, and are lost: but this is now found to be contrary, and it is not to be wondered at, that no man could see where they breed their Egges, for that no man that euer wee knew, had euer bene vnder 80. Degrees: nor that Land vnder 80. degrees, was neuer let downe in any Card, much less the red Geese that breed therein.

It is heere also to be noted, that although that in this land which we esteeme to be *Greenland*,

land, lying vnder 80. Degrees, and more, there groweth Leaues and Grasse, and that there are such Beasts therein as cate grasse, as Harts, Buckes, and such like beasts as luee threene, yett in *Nova Zembla* vnder 76. Degrees, there groweth neither Leaues nor Grasse, nor any Beasts that cate grasse or leaues luee therein, but such Beasts as cate Fleish, as Beares and Foxes: and yett this Land lyeth full 4. Degrees from the North Pole, further then *Greenland* aforesayd doth.

The three and twentieth, wee hoisted Anchor againe, and layed North-westward into the Sea; but could get no further, by reason of the Ice; and so we came to the same place againe where we had layne, and cast Anchor at eightene fathome: and at Euening being at Anchor, the Sunne being North-east, and somewhat more Eastward, weeooke the height thereof, and found it to be elevated about the Horizon 13. degrees and 10. minutes, his Declination being 23. degrees and 8. minutes: which subtracted from the height aforesayd, resteth 10. degrees and 18. minutes, which being subtracted from 90. degrees, then the height of the Pole there was 79. degrees and 42. minutes.

After that, we hoisted Anchor againe, and layed along by the West side of the Land, and then our men went on Land, to see how much the Needle of the Compass varied: Meane time there came a great white Beare swimming towards the Ship, and would haue climbed vp into it, if we had not made a noyse; and with that wee shot at her with a Piece, but the left the ship, and swam to the Land, where our men were: which we perceiving, layed with our ship towards the Land, and gaue a great shout; wherewith our men thought that we had fallen on a fraid, swamme off againe from the Land, and left our men, which made vs glad: for our men had no Weapons about them. Touching the varying of the Compass, for which cause our men went on Land, to trie the certaintie thereof: it was found to differ 16. Degrees.

The five and twentieth of Iune, we hoisted Anchor againe, and layed along by the Land, and went South, and South South-west, with a North North-east winde, vnder 79. degrees. There we found a great Creeke or Riuer, wherinto we layed ten miles at the least, holding our course Southward; but we perceived that there we could not get through: there we cast out our Lead, and for the most part found 10. fathome deepe, but we were constrained to lauer out againe, for the winde was Northerly, and almost full North, and we perceived that it reached to the firme land, which we supposed to be *Low-land*, for that we could not see it any thing farre, and therefore we layed to foreere vnto it, till wee might see it, and then we were forced to lauer, and vpon the seuen and twentieth of Iune we got out againe.

The eight and twentieth, we got beyond the point that lay on the West side, where there was so great a number of Birds, that they flew against our Sayles, and wee layed ten miles Southward, and after that West, to shun the Ice. The nine and twentieth, wee layed South-east and somewhat more Easterly, along by the Land, till we were vnder 76. degrees and 50. minutes, for we were forced to put off from the Land, because of the Ice. The thirtieth of Iune, wee layed South, and somewhat East, and then weooke the height of the Sunne, and found that it was elevated about the Horizon 38. degrees and 10. minutes, his Declination was 23. degrees and 20. minutes, which being taken from the former height, it was found that we were vnder 75. degrees.

The first of Iuly, wee saw the *Beare-land* againe, and then *Iohn Cornelius* and his Officers came aboard our ship, to speake with vs about altering our course, but wee being of a contrary opinion, it was agreed that we should follow on our course, and hee his: which was, that he (according to his desire) should laye vnto 80. Degrees againe: for he was of opinion, that there he should finde a passage through, on the East side of the Land that lay vnder 80. Degrees. And vpon that agreement we left each other, they laying Northward, and wee Southward, because of company: the Ice, the winde being East South-east.

The second, we layed Eastward, and were vnder 74. degrees, hauing the wind North North-west, and then we woodd out our another Bough, with an East North-east winde, and layed 50 Northward. In the Euening the Sunne being about North-west and by North, we woodd about againe (because of the Ice) with an East winde, and layed South South-east, and about East South-east, and then we woodd about againe (because of the Ice) and the Sunne being South-west, we woodd about againe, and layed North-east. The third, we were vnder 74. degrees, hauing a South-east and by East winde, and layed North-east and by North: after that we woodd about againe with a South winde, and layed East South-east, till the Sunne was North-west, then the winde began to be somewhat larger.

The eight, we had a good North-west winde, and layed East and by North, with an indifferent cold gale of wind, and got vnder 72. degrees and 1. minutes. The ninth of Iuly, we went East and by North, the winde being West. The tenth of Iuly, the Sunne being South South-west, we cast out our Lead, and had ground at one hundred and fixtie fathome, the winde being North-east and by North, and we layed East and by South, vnder 72. degrees. The eleuenth, we found 70. fathome deepe, and saw no Ice, then wee ghest that we were right South and North from *Dundinas*, that is the East-point of the *White-Isle*, that lay Southward from vs, and had fandie ground, and the banke stretched Northward into the Sea, so that we were out of doubt that we

B. are assaile
them.Variation of
the Compass
16. degrees.

Store of Birds.

Iuly,
Cherie-land.They part
of company.

were upon the banks of the White Sea, for we had found no sandie g., and all the Coast along but only that banks. Then the wind being East and by South, we sailed South, and Southward by East, vnder 72. degrees, and after that, we had a South South-east Wind, and sayled North-

The thirteenth of July, we sayled East with a North North-east wind: then we took the height of the Sunne, and found it to be elevated above the Horizon 54. degrees and 38. minutes, his declination was 21. degrees and 54. minutes, which taken from the height aforesaid, the height of the Pole was found to be 73. degrees, and then againe we found Ice, but not very much, and we were of opinion, that we were by *Willoughbies Land*. The fourteenth, we sayled North-east, the wind being North North-west, and in that fort sayled about a dinner time, along through the Ice, and in the middle thereof we cast out our Lead, and had ninety fathome deepe, in the next quarter wee cast out our Lead againe, and had an hundred fathome deepe, and we sayled so farre into the Ice, that wee could goe no further: for wee could see no place where it opened, but were forced (with great labour and paine) to lauer out of it againe, the wind blowing West, and we were then vnder 74. degrees and 10. minutes:

The fifteenth, we draue through the middle of the Ice with a calme, and casting out our Lead, had an hundred fathome deepe, at which time the wind being East, we sayled West. The sixteenth, we got out of the Ice, and saw a great Bear lying vpon it, that leaped into the water when they saw vs: Wee made towards her with our ship, which three perceiving got vp vpon the Ice againe, wherewith wee flied once at her. Then we sayled East South-east, and saw no Ice, gheing that we were not farre from *Nova Zembla*, because we saw the Bears there vpon the Ice, at which time we cast out our Lead, and found an hundred fathome deepe.

The seventeenth, we took the height of the Sunne, and it was elevated above the Horizon 37. degrees and 51. minutes, his declination was 21. degrees and 15. minutes, which taken from the height aforesaid, the height of the Pole was 74. degrees and 40. minutes: and when the Sunne was in the South, we saw the Land of *Nova Zembla*, which was about *Zemby*: I was the first that espied it. Then we altered our course, and sayled North-east and by North, and hoied vp all our sayles, except the Fore-sayle and the Lefen. The eighteenth, we saw the Land againe, being vnder 79. degrees, and sayled North-east and by North, with a North-west wind, and we gate about the point of the *Admirals Island*, and sayled East North-east, 30 with a West Wind, the Land reaching North-east and by North. The nineteenth, we came to the *Crosse Island*, and could get no further, by reason of the Ice, for there the Ice lay still close vpon the Land, at which time the wind was West, and blew right vpon the Land, and it lay vnder 76. degrees and 20. minutes. There stood two Crosse vpon the Land, wherof it had the Name.

The twentieth, we anchored vnder the Island, for we could get no further for the Ice. There we put out our Boat, and with eight men rowed on Land, and went to one of the Crosse, where we rested vs a while to goe to the next Crosse, but being in the way we saw two Beares by the other Crosse, at which time we had no weapons at all about vs. The Beares rose vp vpon their hinder feet to see vs (for they smell further then they see) and for that they smelt vs: therefore they rose vp right, and came towards vs, wherewith we were not a little abashed, in such sort that we had little lust to laugh, and in all haste went to our Boat againe, still looking behind vs, to see if they followed vs, thinking to get into the Boat, and so put off from the Land: but the Master stayed vs, saying, hee that first begins to runne away, I will thrust this Hake-staff (which he then held in his hand) into his ribs; for it is better for vs (said he) to stay all together, and see if we can make them afraid with whooping and howling; and so we went softly towards the Boat, and got away, glad that we had escaped their claws, and that we had the leisure to tell our fellows thereof.

The one and twentieth wee took the height of the Sunne, and found that it was elevated above the Horizon 35. degrees and 15. minutes, his declination was 21. degrees, which being taken from the height aforesaid, there rested 14. degrees, which subtracted from 90. degrees, then the height of the Pole was found to be 76. degrees and 15. minutes: then we found the variation of the Compasse to be 26. degrees. The same day two of our men went againe to the Crosse, and found no Beares to trouble vs, and wee followed them with our Armes, fearing leane we might meet any by chance, and when we came to the second Crosse, we found the foot-steps of two Beares, and saw how long they had followed vs, which was one hundred foot-steps at the least, that way that we had beene the day before. The two and twentieth being Monday, we set vp another Crosse, and made our Marke thereon: and lay there before the Crosse Island, till the fourth of August, meane time we walke and whited our Linnen on the shoare.

The thirtieth, the Sunne being North, there came a Bear to neere to our ship, that we might hit her with a stone, and we shot her into the foot with a Piece, wherewith they ranne halting away. The one and thirtieth of July, the Sunne being East North-east, feuen of our men killed a Bear, and sayed her, and cast her bodie into the Sea. The same day at noon (by our Instrument) we found the variation of the Needle of the Compasse to be 17. degrees.

The

The first of August we saw a white Bear, but he ran away from vs. The fourth, we got out of the Ice, to the other side of the Land, and anchored there: where, with great labour and much paine, we fetched a Boat full of stones from the Land. The fifth, we set sayle againe towards Ice point, with an East Wind, and sayled South South-east, and then North North-east, and saw no Ice by the Land, by the which we lauered. The sixth, we gate about the point of *Naffaw Point Naffaw*, and sayled forwards East, and East and by South, along by the Land.

The seventh, we had a West South-west Wind, and sayled along by the Land, South-east, and South-east and by East, and saw but a little Ice, and then past by the *Truff-point*, which we had much longed for: at Eueneng we had an East Wind, with mistie Weather, so that we were forced to make our ship fast to a piece of Ice, that was at least thirte fathome deepe vnder the water, and more then sixteen fathome above the water: which in all was two and fifty fathome thick, for it lay fast vpon ground, the which was thirte fixe fathome deepe. The eight in the morning we had an East Wind, with mistie Weather.

The ninth, lying still fast to the great piece of Ice, it snowed hard, and it was mistie weather, and when the Sunne was South, we went vpon the Hatches (for wealwayes held watch) where as the Master walked along the ship, he heard a beaft sniffe with his nose, and looking over-board, he saw a great Bear hard by the ship, where hee cryed out, a *Bear*, a *Bear*; and with that all our men came vp from vnder Hatches, and saw a great Bear hard by our Boat, seeking to get into it, but we giuing a great shout, hee was afraid, and swamme away, but presently came backe againe, and went behind a great piece of Ice, wherunto we had made our ship fast, and climbed vpon it, and boldly came towards our ship to enter into it: but we had torne our Scute Sytle in the ship, and lay with foure Peeces before at the Boat-spirit, and shot her in the bodie: and with that, shee ranne away; but it snowed so fast that wee could not see whether shee went: but wee guessed that shee lay behind a high Houell; wherof there were many vpon the piece of Ice.

The tenth, being Saturday, the Ice began mightily to breake, and then wee first perceived that the great piece of Ice wherunto we had made our ship fast, lay on the ground; for the rest of the Ice draue along by it; wherewith wee were in great feare that wee should be compassed about with the Ice, and therefore wee vied all the diligence and meanes that wee could get from thence, for we were in great doubt: and being vnder sayle, we sayled vpon the Ice, because it was all broken vnder vs, and got to another piece of Ice, wherunto we made our ship fast againe with our Sheate Anchor, which we made fast vpon it; and there we lay till Eueneng: and when we had supped, in the first quarter, the said piece of Ice began on a sudden to burst and rend in pieces, so fearefully that it was admirable; for with one great cracke it burst into foure hundred pieces: at the least: we lying fast to it, weighed our Cable, and got off from it, vnder the water it was ten fathome deepe, and lay vpon the ground, and two fathome above the Water; and it made a fearefull noyse both vnder and above the Water when it burst, and spread it selfe abroad on all sides. And being with great feare, gotten from that piece of Ice, wee came to another piece, that was six fathome deepe vnder the Water: to which wee made a Rope fast on both sides. Then wee saw another great piece of Ice, not farre from vs, lying fast in the Sea, that was as sharpe about, as it had bene a Tower; wherunto wee rowed: and casting out our Lead, we found that it lay twenty fathome deepe, fast on the ground vnder the Water, and twelve fathome above the Water.

The eleuenth being Sunday, we rowed to another piece of Ice, and cast out our Lead, and found that it lay eighteen fathome deepe fast to the ground vnder the Water, and ten fathome above the water. The twelfth, we sayled neere vnder the Land, the better to shunne the Ice, for the great flakes that draue in the Sea, were many fathome deepe vnder the Water, and we were better defended from them being at foure and five fathome Water, and there ranne a great current of water from the Hill. There we made our ship fast againe to a piece of Ice, and called that point, *The small Ice point*.

The thirteenth in the morning, there came a Bear from the East point of the Land, close to our ship, and one of our men with a Peece shot at her, and brake one of her legs, but she crept vp the Hill with her three feet, and we following her, killed her, and hauing flayed her, brought the skinn aboard the ship. From thence wee set sayle, with a little gale of Winde, and were forced to luere, but after, that it began to blow more out of the South, and South South-east.

The fifteenth, we came to the Island of *Orange*, where we were enclosed with the Ice, hard by a great piece of Ice where we were in great danger to lose our ship, but with great labour and much paine, we got to the Land, the Wind being South-east, wherewith we were contrayned to turne our ship, and while we were buied thereabouts, and made such noyse, a Bear that lay there and slept, awaked, and came towards vs to the ship, so that wee were forced to leane out the bodie, wherewith the ranne away to the other side of the Land, and swamme into the water, and got vp vpon a piece of Ice, where the lay still, but we coming after her to the piece of Ice where the lay, when the saw vs, she leapt into the water, and swamme to the Land: but we got betweene her and the Land, and strooke her on the head with a Hatchet, but as often as wee strooke

Willoughbies
Land concei-
ted from com-
Mape.

Nova Zembla.

Admirals Island.

Crosse Island in
76. degrees 20.
minutes.

Two Beares.
Their cens.

Variation 26.
degrees, per-
haps 16.

Ice 32. fathome
deepe.
Snow.

Beares assault.

Ice thunder.

Bear killed

Orange Island

stroke at her with the Hatchet, she duckt vnder the water, whereby wee had much to doe be-
 board with vs, and after that, turned our shippe to a great piece of Ice, and made it fast

The sixteenth, ten of our men entring into one Boat, rowed to the firme Land of *Noua Zembla*,
 and drew the Boat vp vpon the Ice, which done, we went vp a high Hill, to see the situation of
 the Land, and found that it reached South-east, and South South-west, and then againe South,
 east, and East South-east, we were much comforted againe, thinking that we had wonne our Voy-
 age and knew not how we should get some enough aboard, to certifie *William Barents* thereof.

The eighteenth, we made preparation to set sayle, but it was all in vaine: for we had almost
 lost our Slight Anchor, and two new Ropes, and with much lost labour got to the place againe
 from whence wee came: for the streame ranne with a mightie current, and the Ice draue very
 strongly vpon the Cables, along by the ship, so that we were in feare that wee should lose all the
 Cable that was without the ship, which was two hundred fathome at the least, but God prou-
 ded well for vs, so that in the end, we got to the place againe from whence we put out.

The nineteenth it was indifferent good weather, the Wind blowing South-west, the Ice still
 driving, and wee set sayle with an indifferent gale of Wind, and past by the point of *Defire*,
 South-east into the Sea-ward, four miles, but then againe wee entred into more Ice, whereby
 wee were constrained to turne backe againe, and sayled North-west vntill we came to the Land
 miles: from the head point to *Flushingers* head, it reacheth South-west, which are three miles
 one from the other: from the *Flushingers* head, it reacheth into the Sea, East South-east, and
 South-west three miles: and from the Iland point, to the point of the Ice *Hauen*, the Land re-
 cheth West South-west four miles: from the Ice *Hauen* point to the fall of Water, or the streame
 Bay, and the low Land, it reacheth West and by South, and East and by North seven miles: from
 thence the Land reacheth East and West.

The one and twentieth, we sayled a great way into the Ice *Hauen*; and that night anchored
 therein: next day the streame going excreame hard Eastward, wee haled out againe from thence,
 and sayled againe to the Iland point, but for that it was misty Weather, comming to a piece of
 Ice, wee made the ship fast thereto, because the Wind beganne to blow hard South-west and
 South South-west. There we went vp vpon the Ice, and wondered much therat, it was such
 manner of Ice: For on the top it was full of Earth, and there wee found about fortie Egges, and
 it was not like other Ice, for it was of a perfect Azure colour like to the Skies, whereby there
 grew great contention in words amongst our men, some saying that it was Ice, others that it was
 frozen Land: for it lay vneasonable high about the Water, it was at least eighteen fathom vnder
 the water close to the ground, and ten fathome above the water: there wee stayed all that
 storme, the Wind being South-westward and by West. The three and twentieth, wee sayled
 againe from the Ice, South-eastward into the Sea, but entred presently into it againe, and
 wound about to the Ice *Hauen*. The next day it blew hard North North-west, and the Ice
 came mightily driving in, whereby we were in a manner compassed about therewith, and with-
 all the Wind beganne more and more to rife, and the Ice still draue harder and harder, so that the
 pinne of the Rother and the Rother were thorow in pieces, and our Boat was thorow in pieces
 betweene the ship and the Ice, we expecting nothing else, but that the ship also would be preit
 and crusht in pieces with the Ice.

The five and twentieth, the Weather beganne to be better, and wee tooke great paines, and be-
 flowed much labour to get the Ice, wherewith wee were inclosed, to goe from vs, but what
 meanes slower wee vied it was all in vaine, but when the Sunne was South-west, the Ice began
 to drie out againe with the streame, and we thought to saile Southward about *Noua Zembla*,
 the Streights of *Mergates*, seeing we could there find no passage. Wee hauing past *Noua Zem-
 bla*, wee were of opinion that our labour was all in vaine, and that we could not get through, and
 agreed to goe that way home againe, but comming to the *Streame Bay*, wee were forced to goe
 backe againe, because of the Ice which lay so fast thereabouts, and the same might also it froze,
 that wee could hardly get through there, with the little wind that we had, the Wind then be-
 ing North.

The six and twentieth, there blew a reasonable gale of Wind, at which time wee determined
 to sayle backe to the point of *Defire*, and home againe, seeing that wee could not get through
 the *Mergates*, although we vied all the meanes and industry wee could to get forward, but when
 we had past by the Ice *Hauen*, the Ice began to drie with such force, that wee were inclosed
 round about therewith, and yet we fought all the meanes wee could to get out, but it was all
 in vaine: and at that time we had like to haue lost three men that were vpon the Ice to make way
 for the ship, if the Ice had held the course it went, but as we draue backe againe, and thus the
 Ice:

Ice also whereon our men stood, in like sort draue, they being nimble, as the ship draue by them,
 one of them caught hold of the beak head, another vpon the throuds, and the third vpon the great
 brake that hung out behind, and so by great aduenture by the hold that they tooke, they got safe
 into the ship againe, for which they thanked God with all their hearts: for it was much likelier
 that they should rather haue bene carried away with the Ice, but God, by the nimbleness of
 their hands, deliuered them out of that danger which was pittifull thing to behold, although it
 fell out for the best, for if they had not bene nimble, they had surely dyed for it. The
 same day in the euening, wee got to the West-side of the Ice *Hauen*, where wee were forced in
 great cold, poutertie, milerie, and griefe, to stay all that Winter, the winde then being East

10 North-east.

The feuen and twentieth, the Ice draue round about the ship, and yet it was good weather,
 at which time we went on Land, and being there it began to blow South-east, with a reasona-
 ble gale, and then the Ice came with great force before the bough, and draue the ship vpon
 foot high before, and behind it seemed as if the keele lay on the ground, so that it seemed that
 the ship would be ouerthrowne in the place, whereupon they that were in the ship, put out the
 Boat, therewith to saue their liues, and withall put out a flagge to make a signe to vs, to come
 aboard: which wee perceiuing, and beholding the ship to be lifted vp in that sort, made all the
 haile we could to get aboard, thinking that the ship was burst in pieces, but comming vnto it,
 we found it to be in better case then we thought it had bene.

Ship lifted vp,
 and before with
 Ice.

20 The eight and twentieth, we got some of the Ice from it, and the ship beganne to sit vpright
 againe, but before it was fully vpright, as *William Barents* and the other Pilot went forward to
 the bough to see how the ship lay, and how much it was risen; and while they were busie vpon
 their knees and elbows to measure how much it was, the ship burst out of the Ice with such a
 noise, and so great a cracke, that they thought verily that they were all cast away, knowing not
 how to saue themselves.

Another dan-
 ger.

The nine and twentieth, the ship lying vpright againe, wee vied all the meanes wee could,
 with Iron hooks and other instruments, to breake the flakes of Ice that lay one heaped vpon
 the other, but all in vaine: so that we determined to commit our selues to the mercy of God,
 and to attend aile from him, for that the Ice draue now away in any such sort that it could helpe

30 vs. The thirtieth, the Ice began to drie together one vpon the other with greater force then
 before, and bare against the ship with a boystrous South-west wind, and a great snow, so that
 all the whole ship was borne vp and enclosed, whereby all that was about it and in it, be-
 gan to cracke, so that it seemed to burst in an hundred pieces, which was most fearefull both to
 see and heare, and made all the haire of our heads to rise vpright with feare: and after that,
 the ship (by the Ice on both sides that ioyned and got vnder the same) was driven so vpright,
 in such sort, as if it had bene lifted vp with a Wrench or Vice.

The one and thirtieth of August, by force of the Ice, the ship was driven vp foure or five foot
 high at the beake head, and the hinder part thereof lay in a clift of Ice, whereby wee thought
 that the Rother would bee freed from the force of the flakes of Ice, but notwithstanding, it
 40 brake in pieces flasse and all: and if that the hinder part of the ship had bene in the Ice that
 draue, as well as the fore part was, then all the ship would haue bene driven wholly vpon the
 Ice, or possibly haue runne on ground, and for that cause wee were in great feare, and let our
 Scutes and our Boat out vpon the Ice, if need were, to saue our selues, but within foure houres
 after, the Ice draue away of it selfe, wherewith wee were exceeding glad, as if wee had saued
 our liues, for that the ship was then on flote againe, and vpon that we made a new Rother and a
 Staffe, and hung the Rother out vpon the hookees, that if we chanced to bee borne vpon the Ice
 againe, as we had bene, it might be freed from it.

Rother broken

The first of September being Sunday, while we were at prayer, the Ice began to gather to-
 gether againe, so that the ship was lifted vp two foot at the least, but the Ice brake not. The same
 50 euening the Ice continued in that sort still driving and gathering together, so that we made pre-
 paration to draw our Scute and the Boat ouer the Ice vpon the Land, the wind then blowing
 South-east. The second, it snowed hard with a North-east wind, and the ship began to rise vp
 higher vpon the Ice, at which time the Ice burst and cracke with great force, so that wee were
 of opinion to carrie our Scute on Land in that foule weather, with thirtee barrels of Bread,
 and two hogheads of Wine, to sustaine our selues if need were.

September.

The third, it blew hard but snowed not so much, the wind being North North-east, at which
 time wee began to be loofe from the Ice, whereunto wee lay fast, so that the Sheck broke from
 the Steuen, but the planks wherewith the ship was lined, held the Sheck fast, and made it hang
 on, but the Boutloofe and a new Cable (if we had failed vpon the Ice) brake by forcible
 60 preffing of the Ice, but held fast againe in the Ice, and yet the ship was staunch; which was
 wonder, in regard that the Ice draue so hard, and in great heapes, as big as the Salt-hills that are
 in *Spainne*, and within a Harquebuse shot of the ship, betweene the which wee lay in great feare
 and anguish.

The fourth, the weather began to cleare vp, and we saw the Sunne, but it was very cold, the
 wind

wind being North-east we being forced to lie still. The fift. it was faire Sun-shine weather, and very calme, and at evening when we had supped, the Ice compassed about vs againe, and were hard enclofed therewith, the ship beginning to lie vpon the one side, and leaked sore, but by Gods grace it became staunch againe, wherewith we were wholly in feare to lose the ship, it was in so great danger: at which time wee tooke counsell together, and carried our old Locke about our Scute that we had drawne vpon the Land, and at that time we carried some Bread, and Wine on Land also, with some Timber, therewith to mend our Boat, that it might serue vs in time of need.

The sixt, it was indifferent faire Sea-weather, and Sun-shine, the wind being West, wherby we were somewhat comforted, hoping that the Ice would drie away, and that wee might get thence againe. The seuenth, it was indifferent weather againe, but we perceived no opening of the water, but to the contrary, it lay hard enclofed with Ice, and no water at all about of them came backe againe, the other three went forward about two miles into the Land, and there found a Riuer of sweet water, where also they found great store of Wood: that had bene there downe footed, and there they found the footsteeles of Harts and Hinds, as they thought, for they

The eight, it blew hard East North-east, which was a right contrary wind to doe vs any good, touching the carrying away of the Ice, so that we were still faster in the Ice, which put vs in no small discomfort. The ninth, it blew North-east, with a little snow, wherby our ship foure foot deepe in the Ice, and our Sheek in the after Steuen, brake in pieces, and they lay three or close to the Ice before, but yet it was not much hurt. In the night time, two Beares came to our ship side, but we sounded our Trumpet, and shot at them, but hit them not, because it was darke, and they ranne away. The tenth, the weather was somewhat better, because the wind blew not so hard, and yet all one wind.

The eleuenth, it was calme weather, and eight of vs went on Land, every man armed, to see if that were true as our other three companions had said, that there lay Wood about the Riuer, out, and thereby were compelled to alter our course, and at last saw that we could not get out of the Ice, but rather became faster, and could not loose our ship, as at other times we had done, so also that it began to be Winter, we tooke counsell together what we were best to doe, according to the time, that we might winter there, and attend such adventure as God would send vs: and after we had debated vpon the matter (to keepe and defend our felles both from the cold, and wilde beasts) we determined to build a house vpon the Land, to keepe vs therein as well as we could, and so to commit our felles vnto the tuition of God, and to that end we went further in: we had not much stiffe to make it withall, in regard that there grew no trees, nor any other thing in that Country convenient to build it withall: but we leauing no occasion vnfoliout, as our men went abroad to view the Country, and to see what good fortune might happen vnto vs, at last we found an vnexpected comfort in our need, which was, that we found certaine furs roots and all (as our three companions had said before) which had bene driuen vpon the Land, wherewith (as if God had purposely sent them vnto vs) we were much comforted, being in good hope that God would thus vs some further fauour: for that Wood serued vs not onely to build our house, but also to burne, and serue vs all the Winter long, otherwise without all doubt, we had died there miserably with extreme cold.

The twelfth, it was calme weather, and then our men went into the other side of the Land, to see if they could find any Wood over vnto vs, but there was none. The thirteenth, it was calme but very misty weather, so that we could doe nothing, because it was dangerous for vs to goe into the Land, in regard that we could not see the wilde Beares, and yet they could smell vs, for they smell better then they see. The fourteenth, it was faire Sun-shine weather, but very cold, and then we went into the Land, and layed the Wood in heapes one vpon the other, that it might not be covered over with the Snow, and from thence meant to carrie it to the place where we intended to build our house.

The fifteenth in the morning, as one of our men held watch, we saw three Beares, wherof the one lay still behind a piece of Ice, the other two came close to the ship: which we perceiving, made our Peeces ready to shoot at them, at which time there stood a Tub full of Beefe vpon the Ice, which lay in the water to be seasoned, for that close by the ship there was no water: the Beares went into it, and put in his head to take out a piece of the Beefe, but the first shot into the head, wherewith the fell downe dead, and neuer stirred: the other Beare stood still, and looked vpon her fellow, and when shee had stood a good while, shee smelt her fellow,

and perceiving that she was dead, shee ran away, but wee tooke Halberds and other Armes with vs, and followed her, and at last she came againe towards vs, and we prepared our felles to withstand her, wherewith the role vp vpon her hinder feet, thinking to rampe at vs, but while shee reared her selfe vp, one of our men shot her into the bellie, and with that she fell vpon her forefeet againe, and roaring as loud as she could, ran away. Then we tooke the dead Beare, and ripped her bellie open; and taking out her guts, we fet her vpon her forefeet, that she might freeze as shee stood, intending to carrie her with vs into Hudson, if wee might get our ship loose, and when we had fet the Beare vpon her foure feet, we began to make a Sled, thereon to draw the Wood to the place where we went to build our house, at that time it froze two fingers thicke in the faine water, and it was exceeding cold, the wind blowing North-east.

The sixteenth, the Sunne shone, but towards the evening it was misty, the wind being Easterly, at which time we went to fetch Wood with our Sleds, and then wee drew foure beames about a mile vpon the Ice and the Snow, that night againe it froze about two fingers thicke. The seuenteenth, thirteenth of vs went where the Wood lay with our Sleds, and so drew fire and fure in a Sled, and the other three helped to lift the Wood behind, to make vs draw the better, and with more ease, and in that manner we drew Wood twice a day, and laid it on a heape by the place where we meant to build our house.

The three and twentieth, wee fetched more Wood to build our house, which wee did twice a day, but it grew to be misty and still weather againe, the wind blowing East, and East North-east, that day our Carpenter being of *Purmeset* died, as wee came aboard about evening. The foure and twentieth, we buried him vnder the fedges, in the cleft of a hill, hard by the water, for we could not dig vp the earth, by reason of the great frost and cold, and that day wee went twice with our Sleds to fetch Wood.

The fife and twentieth, it was darke wether, the wind blowing West, & West South-west, and South-west, and the Ice began somewhat to open, and drie away; but it continued not long, for that haue driuen about the length of the thoe of a great Peece, it lay three fathoms deepe vpon the ground: and where we lay the Ice drue not, for we lay in the middle of the Ice; but if we had layne in the mayne Sea, we would haue hoysed layle, although it was then late in the yeere. The same day we rayted vp the principles of our house, and began to worke hard thereon, but if the ship had bene loose, we would haue left our building, and haue made our after Steuen of our ship, that we might haue bene ready to layle away if it had bene possible.

The six and twentieth, wee had a West wind and an open Sea, but our ship lay fast, wherewith we were not a little grieved, but it was Gods will, which we most patiently bare, and wee began to make vp our house, part of our men fetched Wood to burne, the rest played the Carpenters: and were busie about the house, as then we were sixteen men in all, for our Carpenter was dead, and of our sixteen men there was still one or other sicke. The seuen and twentieth, it blew hard North-east, and it froze so hard, that as we put a nayle into our moutnes (as when men worke Carpenters worke they vse to doe) there would Ice hang thereon when we tooke it out againe, and make the blood follow: the same day there came an old Beare and a young one towards vs, as we were going to our house, being all together (for we durst not goe alone) which we thought to shoot at, but the ran away, at which time the Ice came forcibly driuing in, and it was faire Sun-shine weather, but so extreme cold, that we could hardly worke, but extremely forced vs thereunto.

The eight and twentieth, it was faire weather, and the Sunne shone, the Wind being West and very calme, the Sea as then being open, but our ship lay fast in the Ice and stirred not; the same day there came a Beare to the ship, but when the eysed vs, the ranne away, and we made as much haste as we could to build our House. The nine and twentieth in the morning, the Wind was West, and after-noon it blew Northerly, and then wee saw three Beares between vs and the House, an old one and two young; but we notwithstanding drew our goods from the ship to the House, and so got before the Beares, and yet they followed vs: neuertheless, we would not thin the way for them, but hollowed out as loud as we could, thinking that they would haue gone away, but they would not once goe out of their foot-path, but got before vs, wherewith we and they that were at the house, made a great noise, which made the Beares run away, and we were not a little glad thereof. The thirtieth the Wind was East, and East South-east, and all that night and the next day it snowed so fast, that our men could fetch no Wood, it lay so close and high vpon the other: then wee made a great fire without the House, therewith to thaw the ground, that so we might lay it about the House, that it might be the closer; but it was all lost labour, for the Earth was so hard, and frozen so deepe into the ground, that wee could not thaw it, and it would haue cost vs too much Wood, and therefore wee were forced to leaue off that labour.

It freezes in the faine water two fingers thicke in a night.

House builded.

Hard and violent frost.

Ground not to be thawed.

p. II.

*Their cold, comfortlesse, darke and dreadfull Winter : the Sunnes absence,
Moones light, Sunnes unexpected returne with miraculouse
speed. Of Beares, Foxes, and many ma-
ny Wonders.*

The first of October, the Wind blew stiffe North-east, and after-noon it blew North, with a great storme and drift of Snow, whereby we could hardly goe in the Wind, and a man could hardly draw his breath, the Snow drave so hard on our faces, at which time we could not see two ships length from vs. The second before noone, the Sunne shone, and after noone it was cloudy againe, and it snowed, but the weather was still, the Wind being North, and then South, and vvee let vp our Houle, and vpon it was placed a May-pole made of frozen Snow.

May-pole of
Snow.

The third before noone, it was calme Sun-shine vveather, but so cold, that it was hard to bee indured, and after-noon it blew hard out of the West, vvith so great extreme cold, that if it had continued, we should have beene forced to leave our vvorks. The fourth, the Wind was West, and after-noon North, with great store of Snow, vvhereby vve could not vvork: at that time vvee brought our Anchor vpon the Ice to lye the vvinter, vvhen vvee lay but an Arrow shot from so the Water, the Ice was so much driven away.

The fifth, it blew hard North-west, and the Sea was very open and vvithout Ice, as farre as vve could discern, but vvee lay still frozen as we did before, and our ship lay two or three foot deepe in the Ice, and vvee could not perceiue otherwise, but that vvee lay fast vpon the ground, and then it was three fathome and a halfe deepe. The same day vvee brake vp the lower deck of the fore-part of our ship, and vvith those Deales vve covered our Houles, and made it slope-ouer head, that the Water might runne off, at vvhich time it was very cold. The sixth, it blew hard West South-west, but towards Evening, West North-west, with a great Snow, that we could hardly thrust our heads out of the doore, by reason of the great cold. The seventh, it was indifferent good vveather, but yet very cold, and wee calkt our Houle, and brake the 30 ground about it at the foot thereof: that day the Wind went round about the Compass.

Extreme Snow

The eight, all the night before it blew so hard, and the same day also, and showed so fast, that we should have smothered, if we had gone out into the Ayre; and to speake truth, it had not bene possible for any man to haue gone one ships length, though his life had layen thereon: for it was not possible for vs to goe out of the Houle or ship. The ninth, the Wind still continued North, and blew, and snowed hard, all that day the Wind as then blowing from the Land, so that all that day we were forced to stay in the ship, the weather was so foule.

Hence it may
seeme, that the
cruelty of the
Tides and Sea
is from the
North.

The tenth, the weather was somewhat fairer, and the Wind calmer, and blew South-west, and West, and South-west, and that time the Water flowed two foote higher then ordinary, which we ghest to proceede from the first North-wind, which as then had blowne. The same day the weather began to be somewhat better, so that we began to goe out of our ship againe: as and one of our men went out, he chanced to meet a Beare, and was almost at him before hee knew it, but presently he ranne backe againe towards the ship, and the Beare after him; but the Beare comming to the place where before we had killed another Beare, and let her vp right, and there let her freeze (which was covered our with Ice, and yet one of her pawes reached about it) she stood still, whereby our man got before her, and climbed vp into the ship, in great feare, crying, *A Beare, a Beare*; which we hearing, came aboue Hatches to looke on her, and to shoot at her, but we could not see her, by means of the exceeding great smoke, that had so fore tormented vs (while we lay vnder Hatches) in the foule weather which we would not haue indured for any money, but by reason of the cold and snowe weather, we were contrayned to doe it, if we would save our liues, for aloft in the ship we must vndoubtedly haue died: the Beare stayed not long there, but ranne away, the Wind then being North-east. The same day about Evening, it was faire weather, and we went out of our ship to the Houle, and carried the greatest part of our Bread thither.

The eleuenth, it was calme weather, the Wind being South, and somewhat warme, and then we carried our Wine and other Vittuals on Land: and as we were hoisting the Wine our-board, there came a Beare towards our ship, that had layen behind a piece of Ice, and it seemed that we had waked her with the noyle we made: for wee had seene her lye there, but we thought her to be a piece of Ice; but as the same neere vs, we shot at her, and the ranne away, so we proceeded in our worke. The twelfth, it blew North, and somewhat Weitley, and then halfe of 60 our men kept in the Houle, and that was the first time that we lay in it, but wee indured great cold, because our Cabins were not made; and besides that wee had not Clothes enough, and we could keepe no fire because our Chimney was not made, whereby it smoked exceedingly. The thirteenth, the Wind was North and North-west, and it began againe to blow hard, and then

CHAP. 5. 2. Beere melted, Sea covered with Ice. A Beare assaults the Ship. 493

then three of vs went aboard the ship, and laded a Sled with Beere, but when wee had laden it, thinking to goe to our Houle with it, suddenly there rose such a Wind, and so great a storme and cold, that wee were forced to goe into the ship againe, because wee were not able to stay without, and wee could not get the Beere into the ship againe, but were forced to let it stand without vpon the Sled; being in the ship, wee indured extreme cold, because wee had but a few clothes in it.

The fourteenth, as we came out of the ship, wee found the Barrell of Beere standing vpon the Sled, but it was fast frozen at the heads, yet by reason of the great cold, the Beere that purged out, froze as hard vpon the side of the Barrell as if it had bene glued thereon, and in 10 that sort wee drew it to our Houle, and set the Barrell at an end, and dranke it first vp, but wee were forced to melt the Beere, for there was scant any vnfrozen Beere in the Barrell, but wee that thicke Yeast that was vnfrozen lay the strength of the Beere, so that it was too strong to drinke alone, and that which was frozen tasted like water, and being melted wee mixt one with the other, and so dranke it, but it had neither strength nor taste.

Beere melted.

The fifteenth, the Wind blew North and East, and East South-east, that day we made place to set vp our doore, and shouled the Snow away. The eighteenth, the Wind blew hard East South-east, and then we fetched our Bread out of the Scute which wee had drawne vp vpon the Land, and the Wine also which as then was not much frozen, and yet it had layne sixe Weekes therein, and not withstanding that it had oftentimes frozen very hard. The same day wee saw 20 another Beare, and then the Sea was so covered ouer with Ice, that wee could see no open water.

Sea covered
with Ice.

The nineteenth, the Wind blew North-east, and then there was but two men and a Boy in the ship, at which time there came a Beare that sought forcibly to get into the ship, although we were in extreme feare, each of them seeking to save themselves, the two men leapt into the Ballast, and the Boy climbed into the foot Mast top, to save their liues, meane time, some of 30 our men shot at her with a Musket, and then shee ranne away. The twentieth, it was calme Sunne-shine weather, and then againe wee saw the Sea open, at which time wee went on board to fetch the rest of our Beere out of the ship, where wee found some of the Barrels in pieces, and the Iron hoops that were vpon the Iosam Barrels were also for-
zen in pieces.

Beare assaults
the ship.

Barrels and
Iron hoops
broken with
Ice.

The two and twentieth, the Winde blew coldly, and very stiffe North-east, with so great a Snow, that wee could not get out of our doores. The three and twentieth, it was calme weather, and the Winde blew North-east, then we went aboard our ship, to see if the rest of our men would come home to the Houle; but wee feared that it would blow hard againe, and therefore durst not stirre with the sick man, but let him lye still that day, for hee was very weak.

The foure and twentieth, the rest of our men being eight persons, came to the Houle, and drew the sick man vpon a Sled, and then with great labour and paine, wee drew our Houle. 40 Boate home to our Houle, and turned the botome thereof vppwards, that when time should vs (if God saved our liues in the Winter time) wee might vie it: and after that, perceiving that the ship lay fast, and that there was nothing left to be expected then the opening of the water, wee put our Anchor into the ship againe, because it should not be covered ouer and lost in the Snow, that in the Spring time wee might vie it: for wee alwayes trusted in God that hee would deliuer vs from thence towards Summer time, either one way or other. The Sunne, when we might see it beitt and highett, began to be very low, and wee vied all the speed we could to other necessaries, at which time the Wind was North.

The five and twentieth, wee fetched all things that were necessary for the furnishing of our Houle, our Master looked about him and saw three Beares behind the ship that were comming towards vs, whereupon hee cryed out aloud to feare them away, and wee presently leaped berds vpon the Sled, whereof the Master tooke one, and I the other, and made resistance against them as well as we could; but the rest of our men ranne to save themselves in the ship, and as that the Beares would haue ranne vnto him, to deuoure him, but God defended him: for the Meane time, wee and the man that fell into the Clift of Ice, tooke our advantage, and 60 got into the ship on the other side, which the Beares perceiving, they came fiercely to wards vs, that had no other Armes to defend vs withall, but only the two Halberds, which wee doubting would not bee sufficient, wee still gave them worke to doe by throwing Billets and other things at them, and euery time we threw, they ranne after them as a Dogge vvith to doe at a Stone that is cast at him. Meane time, wee sent a man
v u
dowae

Fight vvith
Beares.

downe vnder Hatches to strike Fire, and another to fetch Pikes, but wee could get no Fire, and so wee had no meanes to shote: at the last, as the Beares came fiercely vpon vs, wee strooke one of them with a Halberd vpon the Snow, wherewith shee gaue backe, when shee felt her selfe hurt, and went away, which the other two that were not so great as these, perceiuing, ranne away: and wee thanked God that wee were so well deliuered from them, and so drew our Sled quietly to our Houfe, and there shewed our men what had happened vnto vs.

The first and twentieth, the Wind was North, and North North-west, with indifferent faire weather: then wee saw open Water hard by the Land, but wee perceived the Ice to drine in the Sea, still towards the ship. The seuen and twentieth, the Wind blew North-east, and it snowed so fast, that wee could not worke without the doore. That day our men killed a White Foxe, which they dead: and after they had roasted it, ate thereof, which tasted like Conies flesh: the same day we set vp our Dyal, and made the Clocke strike, and wee hung vp a Lampe to burne in the night time, wherein we vfed the fat of the Beare which wee melt, and burnt in the Lampe.

The nine and twentieth, the Wind still blew North-east, and then wee fetched Segges from the Sea-side, and layd them vpon the Sayle that was spread vpon our Houfe, that it might bee so much the closer and warmer: for the Deales were not driuen close together, and the foule weather would not permit vs to doe it. The thirtieth, the Winde yet continued North-east, and the Sunne was full aboue the Earth, a little about the Horizon. The one and thirtieth, the Winde still blew North-east, with great store of Snow, whereby wee durst not looke out of doores.

The first of November, the Wind still continued North-east, and then wee saw the Moone rise in the East when it beganne to bee darke, and the Sunne was no higher aboue the Horizon then we could well see it, and yet that day we saw it not, because of the close weather, and the great Snow that fell, and it was extreme cold, so that we could not goe out of the Houfe.

The second, the Wind blew West, and somewhat South, but in the Euening it blew North, with calme weather, and that day we saw the Sunne rise South-east, and it went downe South South-west, but it was not full aboue the Earth, but passed in the Horizon along by the Earth: and the same day one of our men killed a Fox with a Hatchet, which was slayed, roasted and eaten. Before the Sunne began to decline, wee saw no Foxes, and then the Beares vied to goe from vs.

The third, the Wind blew North-west with calme weather, and the Sunne rose South and by East, and somewhat more Southerly, and went downe South and by West, and somewhat more Southerly: and then we could see nothing but the vpper part of the Sunne aboue the Horizon, and yet the Land where wee were: was as high as the Mast of our ship, then wee took the height of the Sunne, it being in the eleventh degree, and fortie eight minutes of Scorpio, his Declination being fiftene degrees and twentie four minutes, on the South-side of the Equinoctiall Line.

The fourth, it was calme weather, but then wee saw the Sunne no more, for it was no longer aboue the Horizon, then our Chirurgion made a Bath (to bathe vs in) of a Wine-pipe, wherein wee entered one after the other, and it did vs much good: and was a great meanes of our health. The same day weeooke a White Foxe, that oftentimes came abroad, not as they vied at other times: for that when the Beares left vs at the setting of the Sunne, and came not againe before it rose, the Foxe to the contrarie came abroad when they were gone.

The fifth, the Winde was North, and somewhat West, and then wee saw open water vpon the Sea, but our shipp lay still fast in the Ice, and when the Sunne had left vs, wee saw the Moone continually both day and night, and neuer went downe when it was in the highest degree. The sixt, the Winde was North-west, still weather, and then our men fetched a Sled full of Fire-wood, but by reason that the Sunne was not seene, it was very darke weather.

The seuenth, it was darke weather, and very still, the Winde West, at which time wee could hardly discern the Day from the Night, specially because at that time our Clocke stoll, and by that meanes wee knew not when it was day, although it was day, and our men rose not out of their Cabins all that day: but only to make water, and therefore they knew not whether the light they saw, was the light of the day or of the Moone: whereupon, they were of seuerall opinions, some saying, it was the light of the day, the others of the night: but as weeooke good regard thereunto, wee found it to bee the light of the day about twelue of the clocke at noone.

The eight, it was still weather, the Winde blowing South, and South-west. The same day our men fetched another Sled of Fire-wood, and then also weeooke a White Foxe, and saw open water in the Sea. The same day wee shared our Bread amongst vs, each man having foure pound and tenne ounces, for his allowance in eight dayes, so that then

wee were eight dayes eating a Barrell of Bread, whereas before wee ate it vp in foure or six dayes: we had no need to share our flesh and fish, for we had more store thereof: but our drinke failed vs, and therefore wee were forced to share that also: but our best Beere was for the most part without any strength, so that it had no sauer at all: and besides all this, there was a great deale of it spilt. The ninth, the Wind blew North-east, and somewhat more Northly, and then we had not much day light, but it was altogether darke. The tenth, it was calme weather, the Wind North-west, and then our men went into the ship to see how it lay, and wee saw that there was a great deale of water in it, so that the ballast was couered ouer with water, but that it was frozen, and so might not bee pumpt out. The eleventh, it was indifferent weather, the Wind North-west. The same day we made a round thing of Cable yarne, and like to a Net, to catch Foxes withall, that wee might get them into the Houfe, and it was made like a Trap, which fell vpon the Foxes as they came vnder it, and that day we caught one.

The twelfth, the Wind blew East, with a little light: that day wee began to share our Wine, every man had two Glasses a day, but commonly our Drinke was water, which we melted out of Snow, which we gathered without the Houfe. The thirteenth, it was foule weather, with great Snow, the Wind East. The fourteenth, it was faire cleere weather, with a cleere Skie full of Starres, and an East-wind. The fifteenth, it was darke weather, the Wind North-east, with a vading light. The sixteenth, it was weather with a temperate Ayre, and an East-wind. The seuenteenth, it was darke weather, and a close Ayre, the Wind East. The eighteenth, it was foule weather, the wind South-east: then the Master cut vp a packe of couerie Clothes, and diuided it amongst our men that needed it, therewith to defend vs better from the cold. The nineteenth, it was foule weather, with an East-wind, and then the Chilt with Linnen was opened, and diuided amongst the men for shift, for they had need of them, for then our onely care was to find all the meanes we could to defend our bodie from the cold. The twentieth, it was faire still weather, the Wind Easterly, then wee waitd our sherts, but it was so cold, that when wee had waitd and wrung them, they presently froze to fliffe, that although wee layd them by a great fire, the side that lay next the fire thawed, but the other side was hard frozen, so that wee put them into the feething water againe to thaw them, it was so exceeding cold. The one and twentieth, it was indifferent weather with a North-east wind, then we agreed that every man should take his turne to cleane Wood, thereby to ease our Cooke, that had more then worke enough to doe twice a day to dreffe meate, and to melt Snow for our Drinke, but our Master and the Pilot were exempted from that Worke.

The two and twentieth, the Wind was South-east, it was faire weather, then wee had but seuentene Cheeles, whereof one we ate amongst vs, and the rest were diuided to every man one for his portion, which they might eat when he list. The three and twentieth, it was indifferent good weather, the Wind South-east, and as we perceived that the Fox vied to come oftner, Planckes, whereon wee laid stones, and round about them placed pieces of thurs fast in the ground, that they might not digge vnder them, and so got some of the Foxes. The foure and twentieth, it was foule weather, and the Wind North-east, and then we prepared our sleds to goe into the Bath, for some of vs were not very well at ease, and so foure of vs went into it, and took foure Foxes. The five and twentieth, it was faire cleere weather, the Wind West, and that day weooke two Foxes with Springs that we had purposely set vp.

The six and twentieth, it was foule weather, and a great storme with a South-west Wind, and great store of Snow, whereby wee were forced to close vp in the Houfe, that wee could not goe out, but were forced to ease our selues within the Houfe. The seuen and twentieth, it was faire cleere weather, the Wind South-west, and then we made more Spinges to get Foxes, for it stood vs vpon to doe it, because they fered vs for meate, as if God had lent them purposely for vs, ther, and the Winde blew hard ouer the North, and it snowed hard, whereby wee were thus vp againe in our Houfe, the Snow lay so closed before the doores.

The nine and twentieth, it was faire cleere weather, and a good Ayre: the Wind Northly, and we found meanes to open our doore by shoueling away the Snow, whereby wee got one of Snow, which wee made cleane, and fed them vp againe to take Foxes: and that day weeooke vpon our heads, whereas to keepe them warme from the extreme cold. The thirtieth, it was faire cleere weather, the Wind West, and six of vs went to the ship, all well provided of in the ship.

The first of December, it was foule weather with a South-west Wind, and great store of Snow, whereby wee were once againe flopt vp in the Houfe, and by that meanes there was so

Beere strength lesse with flouts

Ship ballast covered with water.

Fox-trap.

Wine shared. Drinke wast.

III washing.

Bathing and purging.

Store of Snow.

Fox-skin-caps.

December.

V u 2

gr 12

Lye still in Cabins.

Some heard
re-burn them.Cold and
Smoke.Ice cracking
noise.Ice in the
Houle.

Clock frozen.

Doore digged
open.Cold stronger
then fire and
Sacks.

Sea-coale fire.

Swounding &
dizzing by the
Coale-vapour
and closeness.

Benefit of cold

Shoes on feet
frozen within.
They wear no
shoes.Clothes on
their backs
frozen.

great a smooke in the Houle, that we could hardly make fire, and so were forced to lye all day in our Cabins, but the Cooke was forced to make fire to dreffe our meate. The second, it was still foule weather, whereby we were forced to keepe still in the Houle, and yet we could hardly live by the fire, because of the smooke, and therefore stayed still in our Cabins, and then we heated stoncs, which we put in our Cabins to warme our feet, for that both the cold and the smooke were insupportable.

The third, we had the like weather, at which time as we lay in our Cabins, we might heare the Ice cracke in the Sea, and yet it was at the least halfe a mile from vs, which made a huge noise, and we were of opinion, that as then the great Hills of Ice which we had seen in the Sea, in Summer time, brake one from the other, and for that during those two or three dayes, because of the extreame smooke, we made not so much fire as we commonly used to doe, it froze so close within the Houle, that the Walls and the Roofe thereof were frozen two fingers thick with Ice, and also in our Cabins where we lay all those three dayes, while we could not goe out: by reason of the foule weather, we set vp the Glasse of twelve houres, and when it was runne out, wee set it vp againe, still watching it lest wee should misse our time. For the cold was so great, that our Clocke was frozen, and might not goe, although we hung more weight on it then before.

The fourth, it was faire cleere weather, the Wind North-east, and then we began euery man by turne to digge open our doores that were closed vp with Snow, for we saw that it would be often to doe, and therefore we agreed to worke by turnes, no man excepted but the Master and the Pilot. The fifth, it was faire weather with an East-wind, and then we made our Springes cleane againe to take Foxes. The sixt, it was foule weather againe, with an Easterly Wind, and extreame cold, almost not to be endured, whereupon we looked pitifully one vpon the other, being in great feare, that if the extreame cold of the cold grew to bee more and more, we should all dye there with cold, for that what fire soeuer we made, it would not warme vs, yes, and our Sacks which is so hot, was frozen very hard, so that when we were euery man to loose his part, we were forced to melt it in the fire, which we shared euery second day about halfe pint for a man, wherewith we were forced to sustaine our selues, and at other times we drinke water, which agreed not well with the cold, and we needed not to coole it with Snow or fire, but we were forced to melt it out of the Snow.

The fueneth, it was still foule weather, and we had a great storme with a North-east Wind, which brought an extreame cold with it, at which time we knew not what to doe, and while we face consulting together, what were best for vs to doe, one of our companions gaue vs counsel to burne some of the Sea-coales that we had brought out of the ship, which would cast a great heate and continue long, and so at Euening we made a great fire thereof, which cast a great heat: at which time we were very careful to keepe it in: for that the heate being so great a comfort vnto vs, we tooke care how to make it continue long: whereupon we agreed to stop vp all the doores and the Chimney, thereby to keepe in the heate, and so went into our Cabins to sleepe, well comforted with the heate, and to lay a great while talking together; but at last we were taken with a great swounding and dazeling in our heads, yet some more then other some, which we first perceived by a sicke man, and therefore the lesse able to beare it, and found our selues to be very ill at ease, so that some of vs that were strongest, start out of their Cabins, and first opened the Chimney, and then the doores, but he that opened the doore fell downe in a swoond vpon the Snow, which I hearing, as lying in my Cabin next to the doore, start vp, and calling Vinegar in his face, recovered him againe, and so he rose vp: and when the doores were open, we all recovered our healths againe, by reason of the cold Ayre, and so the cold which before had bene so great an Enemy vnto vs, was then the only reliefe that wee had, otherwise without doubt, we had dyed in a sudden swoond, after that the Master, when we were come to our selues againe, gaue euery one of vs a little Wine to comfort our hearts.

The eight, it was foule weather, the wind Northerly, very sharpe and cold, but we durst lay no more coles on, as we did the day before, for that our misfortune had taught vs, that to burne one danger we should not runne into another. The ninth, it was faire cleere weather, the skie full of Starres, then we fet our doore wide open, which before was fast closed vp with Snow, and made our Springes ready to take Foxes. The tenth, it was still faire Star-light weather, the wind North-east: then we tooke two Foxes, which were good meate for vs, for as then our victuals began to bee scant, and the cold ill increased, whereunto their Skins ferued vs for a good defence. The eleuenth, it was faire weather, and a cleere ayre but very cold, which hee that felt not would not beleeue, for our Shoes froze as hard as hornes vpon our feete, and within they were white frozen, so that we could not wear our shoes, but were forced to make great Pattentes, the vpper part being Sheepe-skins, which we put on our three or foure paires of Socks, and so went in them to keepe our feet warme.

The twelfth, it was faire cleere weather with a North-west winde, but extreame cold, so that our Houle walls and Cabins were frozen a finger thicke; yea, and the Clothes vpon our backs were white ouer with Frost, and although some of vs were of opinion, that we should lye

lay more coles vpon the fire to warme vs, and that we should let the chimney stand open, yet we durst not doe it, fearing the like danger we had escaped. The thirteenth, it was faire cleere weather, with an East winde: then we tooke another Foxe, and tooke great paines about preparing and dreffing of our Springes, with no small trouble, for that it was layed too long without the doores, there arose blisters vpon our Faces and bare Eares. The fourteenth, it was faire weather, the wind North-east, and the skie full of starres, then we tooke the height of the right shoulder of the *Ken*, when it was South South-west, and somewhat more Westerly (and then it was at the highest in our Compass) and it was eleuated about the Horizon 20 degrees and 28 minutes, his Declination being 6 degrees and 18 minutes, on the North-side of the line, which Declination being taken out of the height aforelaid, there refted 14 degrees, which being taken out of 90 degrees, then the height of the Pole was 76 degrees.

The fifteenth, it was still faire weather, the wind East: that day we tooke two Foxes, and saw the Moone rise East South-east, when it was fixe and twentie dayes old, in the figure of *Scorpio*. The sixteenth, it was faire cleere weather, the wind East: at that time wee had no more Wood in the houle, but had burnt it all: by round about our houle there lay some couered ouer with Snow, which with great paine and labour we were forced to digge out, and so shouell away the Snow, and so brought it into the houle, which wee did by turnes, two and two together, wherein we were forced to vfe great speed, for wee could not long endure without the Houle, because of the extreame cold, although we wore the Foxes skins about our heads, and double apparell vpon our backs.

The sixteenth, the wind still held North-east, with faire weather and so great Frosts, that wee were of opinion, that if there stood a Barrell full of water without the doore, it would in one night freeze from the top to the bottom. The eighteenth, the wind still held North-east, with faire weather: then seuen of vs went out vnto the Ship to see how it lay, and being vnder the decke, thinking to finde a Foxe there, we sought all the holes but we found none; but when we entered into the Cabin and had stricken fire to see in what safe the ship was, and whether the water rose higher in it, there wee found a Foxe, which we took and carried it home, and ate it, and then we found that in eigheteene dayes absence (for it was so long since we had bene there) the water was risen about a finger high, but yet it was all Ice, for it froze as fast as it came in, and the vessels which wee had brought with vs full of fresh water out of Holland, were frozen to the ground.

The nineteenth, it was faire weather, the wind being South: then we put each other in good comfort, that the Sunne was then almost halfe ouer, and ready to come to vs againe, which we sore longed for, it being a weary time for vs to bee without the Sunne, and to want the greatest comfort that God sendeth vnto man here vpon the earth, and that which rejoiceth euery liuing thing. The twentieth, before noone it was faire cleere weather, and then we had taken x Foxe, but towards Euening, there rose such a storme in the South-west, with so great a snow, that all the houle was inclosed therewith. The one and twentieth, it was faire cleere weather, with a North-east winde, then we made our doore cleane againe, and made a way to goe out, and went as daintie as Venison vnto vs. The two and twentieth, it was foule weather, with great digge of snow, the wind South-west, which stopp vp our doore againe, and wee were forced to digge it open againe, which was almost euery day to doe. The three and twentieth, it was foule the Sunne would come againe to vs, for as we ghesst, that day hee was in *Tropicus Capricorni*, it turneth Northward againe. The foure and twentieth, being Christmas Euen, it was faire weather, then we opened our doore againe, and saw much open water in the Sea: for we had heard the Ice cracke and drue: although it was not day, yet we could see it faire. Towards Euening it blew hard out of the North-east, with great store of Snow, so that all the passage day, it was foule weather, with a North-west winde, and yet though it was foule weather, we while we late disputing why it should bee an ill signe, some of our men made answer, that it was, an ill signe because we could not take them, to put them into the Port or roast them, for that had bene a very good signe for vs.

The fixe and twentieth, it was foule weather, the wind North-west, and it was so cold that we could not warme vs, although we were yfed all the meanes we could with great fires, good store of clothes, and with hot stones and billets, layd vpon our feete and vpon our bodies, as we lay, be-
60 in our Cabins; but notwithstanding all this, in the morning our Cabins were frozen, which made vs behold one the other with sad countenance, but yet wee comforted our selues againe as to vs againe, and we found it to bee true: for that the *Dayes* beginning to lengthen, the Cold began to strengthen, but hope put vs in good comfort and eased our paine. The seuen and twentieth, it

Cold blisters:

Extreme and
terrible freezing.Sunnes coming
forth.Houle inclosed
with snow.Sun in *Tropicus
Capricorni*,
Decem. Stile
new.Cold Christ-
masse.Ill signe in-
an ill signe.Cold inuasi-
on.

Burne before,
freeze behind.Snow higher
then the house

Snow-Steps.

Fire conceived,
heat increased
before felt.An. Dom. 1597.
January.

Vane.

Three Kings
of Calicut.King of the
Zambia.

was still foule weather, with a North-west wind, so that as then we had not bene out in three dayes together, nor durst not thrust our heads out of doores, and within the house it was so extreme cold, that as we late before a great Fire, and seemed to burne on the fore-side, we from behind at our backes, and were all white as the Countrey-men vñe to bee, when they come in at the gates of the Towne in *Holland* with their sleds, and have gone all night.

The eight and twentieth, it was still foule weather with a West wind, but about evening it began to cleere vp, at which time one of our men made a hole open at one of our doores, and went out to see what newes abroad, but found it so hard weather that hee stayed not long, and told vs that it had snowed so much, that the Snow lay higher then our house, and that if he had stayed longer, his eares would undoubtedly have bene frozen off. The nine and twentieth, it was calm weather, and a pleasant ayre, the wind being Southward: that day, hee, whose turne vpon steps, as if it had bene out of a Cellar, at least seuen or eight steps high, each steps foote from the other, and then we made cleane our Springes for the Foxes, whereof for certaine dayes we had not taken any: and as we made them cleane, one of our men found a dead Foxe in one of them, that was frozen as hard as a stone, which he brought into the house, and thawed it before the fire, and after playing it, some of our men ate it. The thirtieth, it was foule weather againe, with a storme out of the West, and great store of Snow, so that all the labour and paine that had taken the day before to make steps to goe out of our house, and to cleane our Springes, was all in vaine, for it was all covered over with Snow againe, higher then it was before. The one and thirtieth, it was still foule weather, with a storme out of the North-west, whereby we were so fast shut vp in the house, as if we had bene prisoners, and it was so extreme cold, that the feete heate, so that we had worke enough to doe to patch our hofe: and which is more, if we had not sooner smelt, then felt them, we should have burnt them ere we had knowne it.

After that with great cold, danger, and distresse, we had brought this yere vnto an end, we entered into the yere of our Lord God 1597, the beginning whereof, was in the same manner as the end of *Anno* 1596. had bene, for the weather continued as cold, foule, and Snowie, as it was before, so that vpon the first of January we were inclosed in the House, the wind then being West: at the same time we agreed to share our Wine eury man 30 small measure full, and that but once in two dayes: and as we were in great care and feare that it would bee long before we should get out from thence, and we haueing but small hope therein) some of vs parted to drinke wine as long as we could, that if we should stay long there, we might drinke it at our need. The second, it blew hard with a West wind, and a great storme with both Snow and Frost, so that in foure or five dayes, we durst not put our heads out of the doores, and as then by reason of the great cold, we had almost burnt all our Wood; notwithstanding, we durst not goe out to fetch more wood, because it froze so hard, and there was no being without the doore, but seeking about we found some peeces of wood that lay out the doore, which we close, and withall close the blockes whereon we vñe to beate our Stock-sill, and so holpe our selves so well as we could. The third, it was allone weather, and we had little wood to burne. The fourth, it was still foule stormie weather, with much Snow and great cold, the winde South-west, and we were forced to heape in the house: and to know where the wind blew, we thrust a halfe-pike out at the Chimney with a little cloth or feather vpon it, but as soone as we thrust it out, it was presently frozen as hard as a peece of wood, and could not goe about nor stirre with the wind.

The fifth, it was somewhat still and calme weather: then we digged our doore open againe, that we might goe out, and carrie out all the filth that had bene made, during the time of our being shut in the house; and made eury thing handsome, and fetched in Wood which we cleafed, and it was all our dayes worke to further our felices as much as we could, fearing least we should be shut vp againe: and as there were three doores in our portall, and for that our house lay covered in Snow, we tooke the middle doore thereof aways, and digged a great hole in the snow, that lay without the house, like a side of a vault, wherein we might goe to cafe our felices, and call other filth into it: and when we had taken paines all day, we remembered our felices that it was Twelfth Euen, and then we prayed our Master that we might be merrie that night, and sayd, that we were content to spend some of the Wine that night which we had spared, and which was our share yere second day, and whereof for certayne dayes we had not drunke, and so that night we made merrie, and drunke to the three Kings, and therewith we had two pound of Meale, whereof we made pan-cakes with Oyle, and eury man a white Biskett, which we sate in Wine: and so supping that we were in our owne Countrey, and amongst our friends, it comforted vs as well as if we had made a great banquet in our owne house: and we al- 60 so made tickets, and our Gunner was King of *Nova Zembla*, which is at least two hundred miles long, and lyeth betwene two Seas.

The six, it was faire weather, the wind North-east, then we went out and cleafed our Traps to take Foxes, which were our Venison, and we digged a hole in the Snow, where our fire-wood

wood lay, and left it cloe above like a vault: and from thence fetched our Wood as we needed it. The seuenth, it was foule weather againe, with a North-west wind, and some Snow, and very cold, which put vs in great feare to be shut vp in the house againe. The eight, it was faire weather againe, the wind North: then we made our Springes ready to get more Venison: which we longed for, and then wee might see and make day-light, which then began Day-light to encrease, that the Sunne as then began to come towards vs againe, which put vs in no little comfort.

The ninth, it was foule weather, with a North-west wind, but not so hard weather as it had bene before, so that we might goe out of the doore to make cleane our Springes. The tenth, it was faire weather with a North wind: then seuen of vs went to our ship well armed, which we found in the same flate wee left it in, and in it wee saw many footstepps of Beares, both great and small, whereby it seemed that there had bene more then one or two Beares therein; and as we went vnder hatches, we strooke fire, and lighted a Candle, and found that the water was risen a foot higher in the ship. The eleuenth, it was faire weather, the wind North-east, and the cold began to be somewhat lesse, so that as then we were bold to goe out of the doores, and went about a quarter of a mile to a Hill, from thence we fetched certaine stones, which we layd in the fire, therewith to warme vs in our Cabins.

The twelfth, it was cleare weather, the wind North-west: that evening it was very cleare, and the skie full of Starres, then wee tooke the height of *Oculus Tauri*, which is a bright and well knowne Starre, and then ween of the Horizon 29. degrees and 54. minutes, her declination being 15. degrees 54. minutes on the North side of the Line. This declination being subtracted from the height aforesaid, then there rested 14. degrees, which subtracted from 90. degrees, then the height of the Pole was 76. degrees, and so by measuring the height of that Starre, and some others, wee guessed that the Sunne was in the like height, and that we were there vnder 76. degrees, and rather higher then lower.

The thirteenth, it was faire still weather, the wind Westerly, and then we perceived that day-light began more and more to encrease, and we went out and cast Bullets at the bale of the Flag-staffe, which before we could not see when it turned about. The fourteenth, it was faire weather and a cleare light, the wind Westerly, and that day we tooke a Foxe. The fifteenth, it was faire cleare weather, with a West wind, and kice of vs went aboard the ship, where we found the Bolck-vanger (which the last time that we were in the ship, wee stucke in a hole in the fore decke, to take Foxes) pulled out of the hole; and lay in the middle of the ship, and all tome in pieces by the Beares, as we perceived by their footstepps.

The sixteenth, it was faire weather, the wind Northerly, and then we went now and then out of the house to stretch out our ioynts and our limbs with going and running, that we might not become lame, and about noone time we saw a certain *redness* in the skie, as a shew or messenger of the Sunne that began to come towards vs. The seenteenth, it was cleare weather with a North wind, and then still more and more wee perceived that the Sunne began to come neerer vnto vs, for the day was somewhat warmer, so that when we had a good fire, there fell great peeces of Ice downe from the walls of our house, and the Ice melted in our Cabins, and the water dropped downe, which was not so before, how great foucer our fire was; but that night it was cold againe.

The eighteenth, it was faire cleare weather, with a South-east wind, then our Wood began to confume, and so we agreed to burne some of our Sea-coles, and not to stop vp the Chimney, and then we should not need to feare any hurt, which we did, and found no distresse thereby, but we thought it better for vs to keepe the Coles, and to burne our Wood more sparingly, for that the Coles would serue vs better when we should staye home in our open Scute.

The one and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a West wind: at that time taking of Foxes began to fayle vs, which was a signe that the Beares would come againe, as not long after we found it to be true, for as long as the Beares stay away, the Foxes came abroad, and not much before the Beares come abroad, the Foxes were but little frene.

The two and twentieth, it was faire weather with a West wind: then we went out againe to cast the Bullet, and perceived that day-light began to appeare, whereby some of vs said, that the Sunne would soone appeare vnto vs, but *William Barrent* to the contrary said, that it was yet two weekes too soone. The three and twentieth, it was faire calme weather, with a South-west wind: then foure of vs went to the ship, and comforted each other, giuing God thanks that the hardest time of the Winter was past, being in good hope that we should live to talke of those things at home in our owne Countrey: and when we were in the ship, we found that the water rose higher and higher in it, and so each of vs taking a Biskett or two with vs, we went home againe.

The foure and twentieth, it was faire cleare weather, with a West wind: then I, and *Jacob Hemkerke*, and another with vs went to the Sea-side, on the South side of *Nova Zembla*, where contrary to our expectation, I first saw the edge of the Sunne, therewith wee went speedily home againe, to tell *William Barrent*, and the rest of our companions that ioyfull newes: but *William*

*Oculus Tauri.**Aurora bluthet*
to lie long
in bed.

Cold released

Sunne appe-
reth againe,
Jan. 24.

William Barents being a wife and well experienced Pilot, would not beleue it, esteeming it to be about fourteen dayes to foone for the Sunne to shine in that part of the World; but we earnestly affirmed the contrary, and said, that we had seene the Sunne.

The fixe and twentieth, and fixe and twentieth, it was misty, and close weather, so that we could not see any thing: then they that layed the contrary way, with vs, thought that they had won: but vpon the feuen and twentieth day it was cleare weather, and then we saw the Sunne in his full roundesse about the Horizon, whereby it manifestly appeared that we had seene it vpon the foure and twentieth day of Ianuary. And as we were of diuers opinions touching the same, and that wee said, it was cleare contrary to the opinions of all old and new Writers; yea, and contrary to the nature and roundesse both of Heauen and Earth: some of vs I thinke, that seeing in long time there had bene no day, that it might be that we had overlooked our felues, whereof we were better assured: but concerning the thing in it selfe, seeing God is wonderful in all his workes, we will referre that to his almighty power, and leaue it vnto others to without discouraging vpon it, therefore we will make some declaration thereof, whereby we may assure our felues that we kepe good reckoning.

You must vnderstand, that when we first saw the Sun, it was in the first degr. and 25. min. of *Aquarius*, and it should haue staied according to our first ghesing, till it had entred into the 16. degr. and 27. min. of *Aquarius*, before he should haue the weel there vnto vs, in the height of 76. degr. Which we striving and contending about it amongst our felues, could not be satisfied, but wou. 20 dered thereat, and some amongst vs were of opinion, that we had mistaken our felues, which neither of vs we could not be persuaded vnto, for that every day without faile, we noted what Houe-glasse of twelve houres long, whereupon we argued with our felues, in diuers while, to see how we should finde out that difference, and leaue the truth of the time, which to trie, we agreed to looke into the *Ephemerides* made by *Iesphus Schala*, Printed in *Venice*, for the yeres of our Lord 1589, till A. 1600, and we found therein, that vpon the foure and twentieth day of Ianuary, (when the Sun first appeared vnto vs) that at *Venice* the Clocke being one in the night time, the *Moon* and *Iupiter* were in conjunction, whereupon we fought to know when the same conjunction should be ouer or about the house where we then were, and at last we found that the foure and twentieth day of Ianuary was the same day whereon the conjunction when the Sunne was in the East: for we saw manifestly that the two Planets aforesaid approached, both in the signe of *Taurus*, and that was at fixe of the clocke in the morning, at which time the *Moon* and *Iupiter* were found by our Compasse, to be in conjunction ouer our house, there we had it right South, and the South part of the Compasse was South South-west, and the Sunne and the *Moon* were eight pointes different, and this was about fixe of the clocke in the morning: this place differed from *Venice* five houres in longitude, whereby we may ghesse how far we were from *Venice*, which was five houres, each houre being 15. degrees, which is in all 75. degrees, that we were more Easterly then *Venice*, by all which it is manifestly to be seene, that we had not stayled in our account, and that also we had found our right longitude, by the two Planets aforesaid, for the Towne of *Venice* lieth vnder 37. degrees and 25. minutes in longitude, and her declination is 46. degrees and 5. minutes, whereby it followeth that our place of *Nova Zembla*, lieth vnder 122. degrees and 25. minutes in longitude, and the height of the Pole 76. degrees, and so you haue the right longitude and latitude, but from the vttermoost point of *Nova Zembla* to the point of *Cape de Tabin*, the vttermoost point of *Tartaria*, where it windeth Southward, the longitude differeth 60. degrees; but you must vnderstand, that the degrees are not so great as they are vnder the Equinoctiall Line, for right vnder the Line a degree is fifteene miles, but when you leaue the Line, either Northward or Southward, then the degrees in longitude doe lessen, so that the nearer that a man is to the North or South Pole, so much the degrees are lesse: so that vnder the 75. degrees Northward, where we had but 60. degrees to faile to the faid *Cape de Tabin*, which is, 220. miles, so the faid *Cape* lieth in 172. degrees in longitude as it is thought: and being about it, it seemeth that we should be in the Streight of *Anian*, where we may faile boldly into the South, as the Land reacheth. Now what further instructions are to be had to know, where we lost the Sunne vnder the faid 76. degrees vpon the fourth of Nouember, and saw it againe vpon the foure and twentieth of Ianuary: I leaue that to be described, by such as make profession thereof, it sufficeth vs to haue 60 shewed, that it failed vs not to appeare at the ordinary time.

The fixe and twentieth of Ianuary, it was darke cloudy weather, the wind Westerly, so that the seeing of the Sunne the day before, was againe doubted of, and then many wagers were layd, and we still looked out to see if the Sunne appeared, the same day we saw a Beare, (which

as long as the Sunne appeared not vnto vs we saw not) coming out of the South-west towards our house, but when we shouted at her she came no neerer, but went away againe. The fixe & twentieth, it was faire cleare weather, but in the Horizon there hung a white or darke cloude, wherewith we could not see the Sunne, whereupon the rest of our companions, thought that we had mistaken our felues vpon the foure and twentieth day, and that the Sunne appeared not vnto vs, and mocked vs, but we were resolute in our former affirmation, that we had seene the Sunne, but not in the full roundesse: That Evening the Sicke man that was amongst vs, was very vneake, and felt himselfe to be extreame sicke, for he had layne long time, and we comforted him as well as we might, and gaue him the best admonition that we could, but he dyed not 10 long after midnight.

The twentie leuen it was faire cleare weather, with a South-west wind, then in the morning we digged a hole in the snow hard by the house, but it was still to extreame cold, that we could not stay long at worke, and so we digged by turnes, every man a little while, and then went to the fire, and another went and supplied his place, till at last we digged seven foot depth where we went to burie the dead man, after that when we had read certaine Chapters, and sung some Psalmes, we all went out and buried the man, which done we went in and brake our fasts, and while we were at meate, and discoursed amongst our felues, touching the great quantitie of snow that continually fell in that place, wee said that if it fell out, that our house should be closed vp againe with snow, we would finde the meanes to climbe out at the chimney, whereupon our 20 Master went to trie if hee could climbe vp through the chimney, and so get out, and while hee was climbing one of our men went forth of the doore, to see if the Master were out or not, who standing vpon the snow, saw the Sunne, and called vs all out, wherewith we all went forth, and saw the Sun in his full roundesse, a little about the Horizon, and then it was without all doubt, that we had seene the Sunne vpon the foure and twentieth of Ianuary, which made vs all glad, and we gaue God heartie thanks, for his grace shewed vnto vs, that that glorious light appeared vnto vs againe.

The eight and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a West wind, then we went out many times to exercise our felues, by going, running, casting of the ball, (for then we might see a good way from vs) and to refresh our ioynts, for wee had long time sitten dull, whereby many of vs 30 were very loole. The nine and twentieth, it was foule weather, with great store of snow, the wind North-west, whereby the house was closed vp againe with snow. The thirtieth, it was darke weather, with an East wind; and we made a hole through the doore, but we shouled not the snow very farre from the portall, for that as soone as we saw what weather it was, wee had no desire to goe abroad. The one and thirtieth, it was faire cleare weather, with an East wind, then we made the doore cleane, and shouled away the snow, and threw it vpon the house, and went out, and wee saw the Sunne shine cleare, which comforted vs, meane time we saw a Beare, Beare, that came towards our house, but we went softly in, and watched for her till she came neerer, and as soone as she was hard by we shot at her, but she ran away againe.

The first of February, being Candlemasse Eue, it was boisterous weather, with a great storme, 40 and good store of snow, whereby the house was closed vp againe with snow, and we were constrained to stay within doore, the wind then being north-west. The second it was foule weather, and as then the Sunne had not rid vs of all the foule weather, whereby we were somewhat discomforted, for that being in good hope of better weather we had not made so great prouision of wood as we did before. The third, it was faire weather, with an East wind, but very mytie, whereby we could not see the Sunne, which made vs somewhat melancholy, to see so great a mytt, and rather more then we had had in the Winter time, and then we digged our doore open againe, and fetched the wood that lay without about the doore into the house, which we were forced with great paine and labour to dig out of the snow. The fourth, it was foule weather, with great store of snow, the wind being South-west, and then we were closed vp againe with snow, but then we tooke not so much paine as we did before, to dig open the doore, but when we had 50 occasion to goe out we climbed out at the chimney, and eated our felues, and went in againe the same way.

The fifth, it was still foule weather, the wind being East, with great store of snow, whereby 60 wee were shut vp againe into the house, and had no other way to get out but by the chimney, and thole that could not climbe out, were faine to helpe themselves within as well as they could. The sixth, it was still foule stormy weather, with store of snow, and we still went out at the chimney, (and troubled not our felues with the doore, for some of vs made it an ealie matter to climbe out at the chimney. The seventh, it was still foule weather, with much snow, and a South-west wind, and we thereby forced to keep the house, which grieved us more then when the Sun shined not, for that hauing seene it, and felt the heate thereof, yet wee were forced not to enjoy it. The eighth, it began to be fairer weather, the wind being South-west, then we saw the Sun rise South, South-east, and went downe South South-west, by the Compasse that we had made of Lead, and placed according to the Meridian of that place, but by our common Compasse it differed two points. The ninth, it was faire cleare weather, the wind South-west, but as then we could not

Sun fully seen.

How the Sun which they had lost the 4. or 5. of Nouember did appeare to them againe vpon the 14. of Iane 17, which was very strange, and contrary to all learned mens opinions.

Difference of Longitude betwixt *Venice* and their winning place.

Note for deg. of longitude.

Beare came with the Sun.

The Summer.

February.

They got out the chimney.

Heat of the Sunne.

fee the Sunne, because it was close weather in the South, where the Sunne should goe downe. The tenth, it was faire cleere weather, so that we could not tell where the wind blew, and then we began to feele some heat of the Sun, but in the Evening it began to blow somewhat cold out of the west.

Beare skinn.

100. Pound of fat taken out of a Beare, Usefull for Lamps.

The eleuenth, it was faire weather, the wind South, that day about noone, there came a Beare towards our house, and wee watched her with our Muskets, but shee came not so neere as we could reach her, the same night wee heard some Foxes stirring, which since the Beares began to come abroad againe we had not much feene. The twelfth, it was cleere weather and very calme, the winde South-west, then we made our Traps cleane againe, meane-time there came a great Beare towards our house, which made vs all goe in, and wee leuelled at her with our Muskets, and as shee came right before our doore, we shot her into the brest, cleane through the heart, the bullet passing through her body, and went out againe at her taylor, and was as flatte as a Counter, the Beare feeling the blow, leapt backwards, and ranne twentie or thirtie foot from the house, and there lay downe, wherewith wee leapt all out of the house, and ranne to her, and found her still alive, and when the saw vs, shee reard vp her head, as if she would gladly haue done vs some mischief, but we trusted her not, for that we had tryed their strength sufficiently before, and therefore wee shot her twice into the body againe, and therewith shee dyed. Then we ript vp her belly, and taking out her guttes, drew her home to the Houle where we layed her, and tooke at least one hundred pound of fat out of her belly, which wee milt and burned in our Lampe. This Grease did vs great good service, for by that meanes we still kept a Lampe burning all night, which before wee could not doe, for want of Grease, and every man had meanes to burne a Lampe in his Cabin, for such necessities as hee had to doe. The Beares skinn vv as nine foot long, and seuen foot broad.

The thirteenth, it was faire cleere vweather with a hard West winde, at whith time we had more light in our house by burning of Lamps, whereby we had meanes to passe the time away, by reading and other exercises, which before (when we could not distinguish Day from Night, by reason of the darknesse, and had not Lamps continually burning) vv ee could not doe. The fourteenth, it was faire cleere vweather, with a hard West wind before noone, but after noone, it was still weather, then due of vs went to the Ship to see how it lay, and found the water to increase in it, but not much. The fifteenth, it was foule weather, with a great storme out of the South-west, with great force of Snow, whereby the Houle was closed vp againe, that Night the Foxes came to deuoure the dead body of the Beare, vv hereby we were in great feare, that all the Beares thereabouts would come thither, and therefore wee agreed, as fcone as we could to get out of the house to burie the dead Beare deepe vnder the Snow.

The sixteenth of February, it was foule weather, with great store of Snow and a South-west vwind, that day was Shroue-tuesday, then wee made our felues somewhat merrie in our great grieve and trouble, and every one of vs dranke a draught of Wine.

The nineteenth, it vv as faire cleere vweather, vvith a South-west wind, then we tooke the height of the Sunne, vv which in long time before vv ee could not doe, because the Horizon vv as not cleere; as also for that it mounted not to high, nor gaue not so much shadow, as vv ee were to haue in our *Astrolabium*, and therefore vv e had an Instrument that was halfe round, at the one end hauing 90. degrees marked thereon, vv whereon we hung a thread vvith a Plumet of Lead, at the vvater Compasse haue, and therewith vv e tooke the height of the Sunne, when it was at the highest, and found that it vv as 3. degrees eleuated above the Horizon, his Declination 11. degrees and 16. minutes, which being added to the height aforesayd, made 14. degrees and 16. minutes, vv which subtracted from 90. degrees, rest 75. degrees and 44. minutes for the height of the Pole, but the aforesayd 3. degrees of height, being taken at the lowest side of the Sunne, the 16. minutes might well be added to the height of the Pole, and so it was iust 76. degrees, as we had measured it before. The twentieth, it was foule weather, with great force of Snow, the vvind South-west, vv hereby vv ee vv ere thut vp againe in the houe.

The two and twentieth, it vv as cleere faire vweather, vvith a South-west vvind, then vv e made ready a Sled to fetch more Wood, for need compelled vs therunto; for as they say, hunger Armes, but coming to the place where we should haue the Wood, we could not come by it, by where vvith great labour and trouble we got some: but as vv e returned backe againe therewith, it was so fore labour vnto vs, that we vv ere almost out of comfort, for that by reason of the long cold and trouble that we had indured, vv ee vv ere become so vv eake and feeble, that vv e had little strength, and we began to bee in doubt, that we should not recouer our strenghts againe, and should not be able to fetch any more Wood, and so we should haue dyed with cold, but the present necessitie and the hope wee had of better vv eather, increased our forces, and made vs doe more then our strenghts afforded, and when we came neere to our house, we saw much open vvater in the Sea, vvich in long time we had not seene, vvich also put vs in good comfort, that things would bee better.

The

The five and twentieth, it was foule weather againe, and much Snow, with a North vvind, vv hereby we were closed vp vvith Snow againe, and could not get out of our Houe.

The eight and twentieth of February, it was still weather, vvith a South-west vvind, then ten of vs went and fetched another Sled full of Wood, vvith no lesse paine and labour then wee did before, for one of our companions could not helpe vs, because that the first joynt of one of his great Toes was frozen off, and so hee could doe nothing.

The first of March, it was faire still weather, the vvind West but very cold, and we were forced to spare our Wood, because it was so great labour for vs to fetch it, so that when it was day, we exercised our felues as much as we might, vvith running, going, and leaping, and to them that lay in their Cabins, we gaue boe stones, to vv arme them, and towards night we made a good fire, vvich we were forced to endure. The second, it was cold cleere weather, vvith a West vvind, the same day we tooke the height of the Sunne, and found that it was eleuated above the Horizon 6. degrees and 48. minutes, and his Declination vv as 7. degrees and 12. minutes, vvich subtracted from 90. degrees, resteth 76. degrees for the height of the Pole. The third, it was faire weather vvith a West vvind, at vvich time our Sicke men were somewhat better, and faire vv eather vvith their Cabins, to doe some thing to passe the time away, but after they found that they were too ready to thire before their times. The fourth, it was faire weather, vvith a West vvind, the same day there came a Beare to our Houe, vv whom we vvatcht vvith our Pieces, as wee did before, and shot at her, and hit her, but shee ranne away, at that time five of vs went to our Ship, vv where we found that the Beares had made worke, and had opened our Cookes cupboard, that was covered ouer vvith snow, vv thinking to finde something in it, and had drawne it out of the Ship vv here we found it.

The ffteenth, it was still foule weather and as great a vvind, so that we were thut vp in our Houe, and that they would goe out, must climbe vp through the Chimney, vvich was a common thing vvith vs, and still we saw more open vvater in the Sea, and about the Land, vv hereby we were in doubt that the Ship in that foule vv eather, and driving of the Ice, vvould bee looke (for as then the Ice draue) vv while we were thut vp in our Houe, and vv ee should haue no meanes to helpe it. The eight, it was still foule vv eather, vvith a South-west storme, and great force of Snow, vv hereby vv e could see no Ice in the North-east, nor round about in the Sea, vv hereby vv e were of opinion, that North-east from vs there vv as a great Sea. The ninth, it vv as foule vv eather, but not so foule as the day before, and lesse snow, and then vv e could see further from vs, and perceiue that the vvater vv as open in the North-east, but not from vs towards *Tartaria*, for there vv e could still see Ice in the *Tartarian Sea*, otherwise called the Ice Sea, so that vv e vv ere of opinion, that there it was not vv ery vv ide, for vvhen it was cleere vv eather, vv e thought many times that we vv saw the Land and shewed it to our companions, South and South-east from our houe, vv like a hilly Land, as land commonly sheweth it selfe, vvhen we see it.

The eleuenth, it was cold, but faire Sun-shine vv eather, the vvind North-east, then we tooke the height of the Sunne vvith our *Astrolabium*, and found it to bee eleuated above the Horizon 10. degrees and 19. minutes, his Declination vv as 3. degrees and 41. minutes, vvich being added to the height aforesayd, made 14. degrees, vvich subtracted from 90. degrees, resteth 76. degrees for the height of the Pole. Then twelve of vs went to the place vv here vv e used to goe, to fetch a Sled of Wood, but still vv e had more paine and labour therewith, because we were vv eaker, and when we came home vvith it, and were vv ery vv eate, we vvayed the Master to giue each of vs a draught of Wine, vvich hee did, vv wherevv we were somewhat releued and comforted, and after that we were the vvillingest to labour, vvich vv as vvnsupportable for vs, if meeere extremitie had not compelled vs therunto, vvaying oftentimes one vvto the other, that if the Wood vv ere to be bought for Money, we vvould giue all our Earnings or Wages for it.

The twelfth, it was foule vv eather, the vvind North-east, then the Ice came mightily driving in, vvich the South-west vvind had bene driven out, and it was then as cold, as it had bin before in the coldest time of Winter.

The fifteenth, it vv as faire vv eather, the vvind North, that day we opened our doore to goe out, bu: the cold rather increased then diminished, and vv as bitterer then before it had bene.

The sixteenth, it vv as faire cleere vv eather, but extreme cold vvith a North vvind, vvich put vs to great extremitie, for that vv e had almost taken our leaues of the cold, and then it began to come againe. This continued till the one and twentieth.

The one and twentieth, it vv as faire vv eather, but still vv ery cold, the vvind North, the same day the Sunne entered into *Aries* in the Equinoctiall Line, and at noone vv e tooke the height of the Sunne, and found it to bee eleuated 14. degrees above the Horizon, but for that the Sunne vv as in the middle Line, and of the like distance from both the Tropicks, there vv as no declination, neither on the South nor North side, and so the 14. degrees aforesayd being subtracted from 90. degrees, resteth 76. degrees for the height of the Pole. The same day, we made thooes of Felt or Rugge, vvich we drew vvpon our feete, for vv e could not goe in our thooes, by reason of the great cold, for the thooes on our feet vv ere as hard as hornes, and then vv e fetched a sled-full

March,

Note.

Sail in *Aries*.

Schooes of Felt and Rugge.

Sled full of Wood home to our house, with sore and extreame labour, and with extremity of cold which we endured, as if March meant to bid vs farewell, for our hope and comfort was, that the cold could not still continue in that force, but that at length the strength thereof would bee broken.

The three and twentieth, it was very foule weather, with infernall bitter cold, the wind North-east, so that we were forced to make more fire, as we had bene at other times, for then it was as cold as euer it had bene, and it froze very hard in the floore and vpon the walls of our house. The foure and twentieth, it was alke cold, with great store of snow, and a North wind, before by reason of our bad vning of them, we disliked of. The fixe and twentieth, it was faire, clear weather, and very calme, then we digd our felues out of the house again, and went out, so then we fetcht another Sled of Wood, for the great cold had made vs burne vp all that we had, away very fast. The same day, fixe of vs went aboard the ship to see how it lay, and found it still in one fort; but we perceived that the Beares had kept an cull fauoured house therein.

The second of April, it was faire weather, the wind North-east and very calme, then we took the height of the Sunne, and found it to be eleuated about the Horizon 18. degrees and height aforesaid, there rested 14. degrees, which taken from 90. degrees, the height of the Pole was 76. degrees.

The fixe, it was still foule weather, with a stiffe North-west wind, that night there came a ther, and the cocke fiffy, our Pece could not give fire, wherewith the Beare came boldly to ward the house, and came downe the staires close to the doore, seeking to breake into the house, but our Master held the doore fast to, and being in great haste and feare, could not barre it with the piece of Wood that we used thereunto; but the Beare seeing that the doore was shut, then vpon the top of the house, and made such a roaring, that it was fearful to heare, and at last downe, and tore the layle that was made fast about it in many pieces, with a great and fearful noise, but for that it was night, we made no resistance against her, because wee could not see her, at last she went away and left vs.

The fourth, it was faire cleare weather, with a West wind, then we saw greater hills of Ice round about the ship, then euer we had leene before, which was a fearful thing to behold, and much to be wondered at, that the ship was not smitten in pieces. The fiftenth, it was faire, calme weather with a North wind, then seuen of vs went aboard the ship, to see in what case it was, and found it to be all in one fort, and as wee came backe againe, there came a great Beare and we went to the place from whence she came to see her Den, where we found a great hole made in the Ice, about a mans length in depth, the entrie therof being very narrow, and with 40 in wide, there thrust in our Pikes to finde if there was any thing within it, but perceiving that we went along by the Sea-side, and there we saw, that in the end of March, and the beginning of April, the Ice was in such wonderful manner risen and piled vpon one vpon the other, that it was wonderfull, in such manner as if there had bene whole Townes made of Ice, with Towers and Bulwarkes round about them.

The sixteenth, it was foule weather, the wind North-west, whereby the Ice began somewhat to breake. The seuententh, it was faire cleare weather, with a South-west wind, and then seuen of vs went to the ship, and there we saw open water in the Sea, and then we went over the Ice-hills as well as we could, to the water, for in fixe or seuen moneths we had not gone so neere vnto it, and when we got to the water, there we saw a little bird swimming therein, but as soone as it espied vs, it diued vnder the water, which we tooke for a signe, that there was more open water in the Sea then there had bene before, and that the time approached that the water would open.

The eighteenth of April, it was faire weather, the wind South-west, then wee tooke the height of the Sunne, and it was eleuated about the Horizon 25. degrees and 10. minutes, his declination 11. degrees and 12. minutes, which being taken from the height aforesaid, there rested 13. degrees and 58. minutes, which subtracted from 90. degrees, the height of the Pole was found to be 75. degrees 58. minutes; then eluen of vs went with a Sled to fetch more Wood, and brought it to the house, in the night there came another Beare vpon our house, which 40 we hearing, went all out with our Armes, but the Beare ran away.

The eight and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a North wind, then we tooke the height of the Sunne againe, and found it to be eleuated 28. degrees and 8. minutes, his declination 14. degrees and 8. minutes, which subtracted from 90. degrees, there rested 76. degrees for the height

height of the Pole. The nine and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a South-west wind, then we played at Colie, both to the ship, and from thence againe homewards, to exercise our felues. The thirtieth, it was faire weather, the wind South-west, then in the night we could see the Sunne in the North (when it was in the highest) iust about the Horizon, so that from that time wee saw the Sunne both night and day.

p. III.

- 10 Their preparation to goe from thence: they depart in a Boat and Scute both open, and come to Cola, 1143. miles. Their many dangers by Beares, Ice, Famine, Scorbute, in the way.

The first of May, it was faire weather with a West wind, then wee sod our last flesh, which for a long time we had spared, and it was still very good, and the last morrell tasted as well as the first, and we found no fault therein, but only that it would last no longer. The second, it was foule weather, with a storme out of the South-west, whereby the Sea was almost cleare of Ice, and then wee beganne to speake about getting from thence, for we had kept house long enough there. The third, it was still foule weather, with a South-west wind, whereby the Ice began wholly to driue away, but it lay fast about the ship, and when our best meate, as flesh, and other things beganne to faile vs, which was our greatest sustenance, and that it behoued vs to be somewhat strong, to sustaine the labour that we were to vndergoe, when we went from thence, the Master shared the rest of the Bacon amongst vs, which was a small Barrell with salt Bacon in pickle, whereof euerie one of vs had two ounces a day, which continued for the space of three weekes, and then it was eaten vp.

- The fourth, it was indifferent faire weather, the wind South-west, that day fue of vs went to the ship, and found it lying still as fast in the Ice as it did before, for about the middle of March it was but seenty fue paces from the open water, and then it was fue hundred paces from the water, and enclosed round about with high hills of Ice, which put vs in no small feare, how wee should bring our Scute and our Boat through or ouer that way into the water, when we went to leaue that place. That night there came a Beare to our house, but as soone as shee heard vs make a noyse, she ranne away againe, one of our men that climbed vp in the Chimney, saw when shee ranne away, so that it seemed that as then they were afraid of vs, and durst not bee so bold to set vpon vs, as they were at the first. The fift, it was faire weather, with some snow, the wind East, that Evening, and at night wee saw the Sunne when it was at the lowest, a good way about the Earth. The fixe, it was faire cleare weather, with a great South-west wind, whereby we saw the Sea open both in the East and in the West, which made our men exceeding glad, longing for so to be gone from thence. The seuenth, it was foule weather, and snow hard, with a North wind, whereby we were closed vp againe in our house.

- 40 The tenth, it was faire weather with a North-west wind, that night the Sunne by our common Compass being North North-east, and at the lowest, we tooke the height thereof, and it was eleuated 3. degrees and 45. minutes, his declination was 17. degrees and 45. minutes, from whence taking the height aforesaid, there rested 14. degrees, which subtracted from 90. degrees, there rested 76. degrees for the height of the Pole.

The fourteenth, wee fetcht our last Sled with fire-wood, and still ware our shooes made of Rugee on our feet.

- The fue and twentieth, it was faire weather, with an East wind, then at noone time wee tooke the height of the Sunne, that was eleuated about the Horizon 34. degrees and 46. minutes, his declination 20. degrees and 46. minutes, which taken from the height aforesaid, there rested 14. degrees, which taken from 90. degrees, rested 76. degrees for the height of the Pole. The fixe and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a great North-east wind, whereby the Ice came in againe. The seuen and twentieth, it was foule weather, with a great North-east wind, which draue the Ice mightily in againe, whereupon the Master, at the motion of the companie, willed vs to make preparation to be gone.

- The nine and twentieth in the morning, it was reasonable faire weather, with a West wind, then ten of vs went vnto the Scute to brug it to the house to dresse it, and make it ready to sayle, but wee found it deepe hidden vnder the snow, and were fayne with great payne and labour to digge it out, but when wee had gotten it out of the snow, and thought to draw it to the house, we could not doe it; because wee were too weak, wherewith wee became wholly out of heart, doubting that wee should not bee able to goe forward with our labour, but the Master encouraging vs, bade vs strive to doe more then we were able; laying, that both our liues and our well-fare consisted therein: and that if wee could not get the Scute from thence, and make it ready, then hee said wee must dwell there as Burgers of *Noma Zembla*, and make our Graues in that place: but there wanted no good-will in vs but only strength,

Burgers of *Noma Zembla*.

which made vs for that time to leave off worke and let the Scute lie still, which was no small grieue vnto vs, and trouble to thinke what were best for vs to doe; but after noone being thus comfortlesse come home, wee tooke hearts againe, and determined to turne the Boat that lay by the house with her keele upwards, and to amend it, that it might bee the fitter to carrie vs ouer the Sea, for wee made full account that we had a long troubleome Voyage in hand, wherein we might haue many crosses, and wherein we should not bee sufficiently provided for all things necessarie, although wee tooke neuer so much care, and while wee were busie about our worke, there came a great Beare vnto vs, wherewith wee went into our house, and stood to watch her in our three doores, with Haquebusses, and one flood in the Chimney with a Muskety, this Beare came loddier vnto vs then euer any had done before, for shee came to the neather step that went to one of our doores, and the man that stood in the doore saw her not, because he looked towards the other doore, but they that stood within saw her, and in great feare called to him, wherewith he turned about, and although he was in a maze, he shot after, and the Bullet past cleane through her body, wherupon he ran away. Yet it was a fearful thing to see, for the Beare was almost vpon him before he saw her, so that if the Peece had fayled to giue fire (as oftentimes they doe) it had cost him his life, and it may bee, that the Beare would haue gotten into the house: the Beare being gone somewhat from the house lay downe, wherewith wee went all armed and killed her our right, and when wee had ripe gotten her bellie: we found a peece of a Bucke therein, with haire, skinned and all, which had not long before shee had torne and deuoured.

The one and thirtieth of May, it was faire weather, but somewhat colder then before, the wind being South-west, whereby the Ice draue away, and we wrought hard about our Boat, but when wee were in the chieft part of worke, there came another Beare, as if they had smelt that wee would be gone, and that therefore they desired to taste a peece of some of vs, for that was the third day, one after the other, that they let so fiercely vpon vs, so that wee were forced to leaue our worke, and goe into the house, and three followed vs, but we stood with our Peece to watch her, and shot three Peece at her, two from our doores, and one out of the Chimney, which all three hit her: but her death did vs more hurt then her life, for after we ripe her, we dreft her Linner and eate it, which in the taste liked vs well, but it made vs all sicke, specially three that were exceeding sicke, and wee verily thought that wee should haue lost them, for all so their skins came off, from the foot to the head, but yet they recovered againe.

The third of Iune, in the morning it was faire cleare weather the wind West, and then wee were somewhat better, and tooke great paines with the Boat, that at last we got it ready, after we had wrought fixe dayes vpon it: about euening it began to blow hard, and therewith the water was very open, which put vs in good comfort that our deliuerance would soone follow, and that we should once get out of that desolate and fearful place.

The fourth, it was faire cleare weather, and indifferent warme, and about the South-east Sunne, eleven of vs went to our Scute where it then lay, and drew it to the ship, at which time the labour seemed lighter vnto vs then it did before, when weeooke it in hand and were forced to leaue it off againe. The reason thereof was, the opinion that wee had that the snow as then lay harder vpon the ground, and so was become fronger; and it may be that our courages were better, to see that the time gaue vs open water, and that our hope was that wee should get from thence; and so three of our men stayed by the Scute to build her to our minds: and for that it was a Herring Scute, which are made narrow behind, therefore they stayed it off behind, and made it a broad steame: it better to brooke the Seas, they built it also somewhat higher, and dreit it vp as well as they could, the rest of our men were busie in the house to make all other things ready for our Voyage, and that day drew two Sleds with victuals and other goods vnto the ship, that lay about halfe way betweene the house and the open water, that after they might haue so much the shorter way, to carrie the goods vnto the water side, when wee should goe away: at which time all the labour and paines that wee tooke seemed so light and easie vnto vs, because of the hope that wee had to get out of that wilde Desart, like some, fearefull, and cold Countrey.

The fift, it was foule weather, with great floc of haile and snow, the wind West, which made an open water, but as then we could doe nothing without the house, but within we made all things ready, as Sayles, Oares, Masts, Sprit, Rother, Swerd, and all other necessarie things. The sixt, in the morning it was faire weather, the wind North-east, then wee went with our Carpenters to the ship, to build vp our Scute, and carried two sleds full of goods into the ship, both victuals and Merchandise, with other things, which wee meant to take with vs; after that there rose very foule weather in the South-west, with snow, haile, and raime, which wee in long time had not had, whereby the Carpenters were forced to leaue their worke, and goe home to the house with vs, whereby also we could not be drie, because wee had taken of the Deales, therewith to amend our Boat and our Scute, there lay but a fayle ouer it, which would not hold out the water, and the way that lay full of snow began to be soft, so that wee left off our shoes made of Rogge and Felt, and put on our Leather shoes.

The eight, it was faire weather, and wee drew the wares to the ship, which wee had packed and made ready, and the Carpenters made ready the Scute, so that the same euening it was almost done, the same day all our men went to draw our Boat to the ship, and made ropes to draw withall, such as wee vie to draw with in Scutes, which wee cast ouer our shoulders, and held fast with all our hands, and so drew both with our hands and our shoulders, which gaue vs more force, and specially the desire and great pleasure wee tooke to worke at that time, made vs stronger.

The tenth, wee carried foure Sleds of goods into the ship, the wind then being variable, and at euening it was Northerly, and wee were busie in the house to make all things ready, the Wine that was left we put into litle vessels, that so wee might diuide it into both our vessels, and that as wee were enclosed by the Ice, (which wee well knew would happen vnto vs) wee might easilier cast the goods vpon the Ice, both out and into the Scutes, as time and place served vs. The eleuenth, it was foule weather, and it blew hard North North-west, so that all that day we could doe nothing, and we were in great feare lest the storme would carrie the Ice and the ship both away together, (which might well haue come to passe) then wee should haue bene in greater miserie then our wee were, for that our goods both victuals and others, were then all in the ship, but God provided so well for vs, that it fell not out so unfortunately. The twelfth, it was indifferent faire weather, then we went with Hatchets, Halberds, Shouels, and other instruments, to make the way plaine, where we should draw the Scute and the Boat to the water side, along the way that lay full of knobs and hills of Ice, where wee wrought fore with our Hatchets and other instruments, and while we were in the chieft of our worke, there came a great leane Beare out of the Sea vpon the Ice towards vs, which we iudged to come out of *Tartaria*: for we had sene of them twenty or thirty miles within the Sea, and for that wee had no Muskets, but only one, which our Surgeon carried, I ranne in great haste towards the ship to fetch one or two, which the Beare perceiving ranne after mee, and was very likely to haue ouer taken me, but our companie seeing that, left their worke and ranne after her, which made the Beare turne towards them, and left me, but when he ran towards them, he was shot into the body by the Surgeon, and ranne away; but because the Ice was so vneuen and hilly, he could not goe farre, but being by vs overtaken, we killed her our right, and smote her teeth out of her head, while he was yet liuing.

The thirteenth, it was faire weather, then the Master and the Carpenters went to the ship, and there made the Scute and the Boat ready, so that there rested nothing as then, but only to bring it downe to the water side, the Master and those that were with him, seeing that it was open water, and a good West wind, came backe to the house againe, and there hee spake vnto *William Barents* (that had bene long sicke) and shewed him, that he thought it good, (seeing it was a fit time) to goe from thence, and so willed the companie to drage the Boat and the Scute downe to the water side, and in the name of God to beginne our Voyage, so fayle from *Noua Zembla*: then *William Barents* wrote a Letter, which he put in a Muskets charge, and hanged it vp in the Chimney, shewing how he came out of *Holland*, to fayle to the Kingdome of *China*, and what had happened vnto vs being there on Land, with all our crosses, that if any man chanced to come thither, they might know what had happened vnto vs, and how we had bene forced in our extremitie to make that house, and had dwelt ten moneths therein, and for that wee were put to Sea in two small open Boats, and to undertake a dangerous and aduenturous Voyage in hand, the Master wrote two Letters, which most of vs subscribed vnto, signifying how wee had stayed there vpon the Land in great trouble and miserie, in hope that our ship would be freed from the Ice, and that we should fayle away with it againe, and how it fell out to the contrary, and that the ship lay fast in the Ice, so that in the end the time passing away, and our victuals beginning to faile vs, we were forced for the sauing of our owne liues, to leaue the ship, and to fayle away in our open Boats, and so to commit our selues into the hands of God, Which done, he put into each of our Scutes a Letter, that if wee chanced to lose one another, or that by storme or any other misaduenture wee happened to be cast away, that then by the Scute that escaped, men might know how we left each other, and by hauing finished all things as we determined, we drew the Boat to the water side, and left a man in it, and went and fetcht the Scute, and after that cleuen Sleds with goods, as Victuals, with some Wine that yet remayned, and the Merchants goods, which we preferred as well as we could, viz. fixe packes with fine wollen Cloth, a Chest of Linnen, two packes with Velvet, two small Chests with Money, two Drifats with mens Clothes and other things, thirteene Barrells of Bread, a Barrell of Cheese, with other packes belonging to the Saylers, so that when they lay all together vpon a heape, a man would haue iudged that they would not haue gone into the Scutes, which being all put into them, we went to the house, and first drew *William Barents* vpon a Sled to the place where our Scutes lay, and after that wee fetched *Claes Adrian* (both of them hauing bene long sicke, and so we entred into the Scutes, and diuided our sleds into each of them alike, and put into either of them a sicke man, then the Master cauled both the Scutes to lie close one by the other,

The Letter is omitted. It was subscribed by Jacob Henrichsen, Peter Petersen, Mr. Steen Petersen, Laurence Williams, Peter Remmelin, John Barents, Gerrard Peter, Leonard Hendrickson, Jacob Johnson, John Steenberg, George Island, Open Scutes.

and there we subscribed to the Letters which he had written, and so committing our selves to the will and mercy of God, with a West North-west wind, and an indifferent open water, we set layle and put to Sea.

The fourteenth of June in the morning, the Sunne Easterly, wee put off from the Land of Nova Zembla, and the fast Ice thereunto adjoining, with our Boat and our Scute, having a West our first beginning was not very good, for we entred fast into the Ice againe, which there lay very hard and fast, which put vs into no small feare and trouble, and being there, foure of vs went on Land, to know the situation thereof, and there we tooke many Birds, which wee kild with stones upon the cliffs.

The sixteenth, we set layle againe, and got to the Island of Orange, with a South wind, which is eight miles distant from the Point of Desire, there we went on Land with two small Barrels, and a Kettle, to melt snow, and to put the water into the Barrels, as also to seeke for Birds and Egges, to make meate for our sick men. We put to the Sea againe with a South-east wind and open Scutes, and layled West, and West and by South, to the Ice-point, and wee made our Scutes fast to a great piece of Ice, and there came somewhat, but the weather was still fouler and fouler, so that we were once againe enclosed with Ice, and forced to stay there.

The seventeenth in the morning, when we had broken our fasts, the Ice came to fast upon vs that it made our haire stand upright upon our heads, it was so fearefull to behold: by which means we could not make fast our Scutes, so that we thought verily that it was a fore-throwing of our last end, for wee drave away so hard with the Ice, and wee were so fore prest betwene a flake of Ice, that we thought verily the Scutes would burst in a hundred pieces, at last, being in this discomfort, and extreme necessity, the Master said, if we could take hold with a rope upon the fast Ice, we might therewith draw the Scute up, and so get it out of the great drift of Ice, but as this counsell was good, yet it was so full of danger, that it was the hazard of his life that should take upon him to do it, and without doing it, was it most certain, that it would cost vs all our liues: this counsell as I said was good, but no man (like to the tale of the Mice) durst hang the Bell about the Cats necke, fearing to be drowned, yet necessity required to have it done, and the most danger made vs choose the least, so that being in that perplexitie, I being

Dangerous attempts to draw the Boat over the Ice.

from one piece of driving Ice to another, by Gods helpe got to the fast Ice, where I made a rope fast to a high howell, and they that were in the Scute, drew it thereby unto the said fast Ice, and then one man alone could draw more then all of them could haue done before, and when we had gotten thither, in all haste wee tooke our sick men out, and layed them upon the Ice, laying clothes and other things vnder them, and then tooke all our goods out of the Scutes, and so drew them upon the Ice, whereby for that time we were deliuered from that great danger, making account that we had escaped out of death's clawes, as it was most true.

The eighteenth, we repaired and amended our Scutes againe, being much bruised and crushed with the racking of the Ice, and were forced to drie all the myles fast againe and to piece many things about them, God sending vs Wood, wherewith we made our Firch, and did all other things that belonged therunto, that done, some of vs went upon the Land to seeke for Egges, which the sick men longed for, but we could finde none, but we found foure Birds, not without great danger of our liues, betwene the Ice and the firme Land, wherein wee often fell, and were in no small danger.

The nineteenth, it was indifferent weather, the wind North-west, and West South-west, but we were still shut vp in the Ice, and saw no opening, which made vs thinke that there would be our last abode, and that we should neuer get from thence.

The twentieth, *Claes Adrian* and *William Barents* died, the death of *William Barents* put vs in no small discomfort, as being the chiefe Guide, and onely Pilot on whom wee reposed our selves, next vnder God.

The two and twentieth in the morning, it blew a good gale out of the South-east, and then the Sea was reasonable open, but we were forced to draw our Scutes out of the Ice to get vnto it, which was great paine and labour vnto vs; for, first we were forced to draw our Scutes over a piece of Ice of fifty paces long and there put them into the water, and then againe to draw them vp upon other Ice, and after drew them at the least an hundred paces more over the Ice, before we could bring them to a good place where we might easily get out, and being gotten vnto the open water we committed our selves to God, and set layle the Sun being about East North-east, with an indifferent gale of wind out of the South, and South South-east, and layled West, West and by South, till the Sunne was South, and then we were round about enclosed with Ice againe, and could not get out, but were forced to lie still, but not long after the Ice opened againe like to a fluce, and we past through it and set layle againe, and so layled along by the Land, but were presently enclosed with Ice, but being in hope of opening againe, meane time wee cate somewhat, for the Ice went not away as it did before: after that wee vied all the means we could

could to breake it, but all in vayne, and yet a good while after, the Ice opened againe, and we got out, and layled along by the Land, West and by South, with a South wind.

The three and twentieth, wee layled still forward West and by South, till the Sunne was South-east, and got to the *Truff-point*, which is distant from the *Ice-point* five and twentie miles, and then could go no further, because the Ice lay so hard and so close together, and yet it was faire weather: the same day we tooke the height of the Sunne with the *Affidulation*, and also with our Astronomical Ring, and found his height to be 37 degrees, and his Declination 23 degrees and 30 minutes, which taken from the height aforesaid, there rested 13 degrees and 30 minutes, which subtracted out of 90 degrees, the height of the Pole was 76 degrees and 30 minutes, and it was faire Sun-shine weather, and yet it was not so fit to melt the Snow, that we might haue water to drinke, so that wee sat all our Tinnie platens and other things full of Snow to melt, and so melt it, and put snow in our mouthe, to melt it downe into our throates, but all was not enough, so that we were compelled to endure great thirst.

From the Low-land, to the Streame Bay, the course East and West, four miles. From the Streame Bay, to the Ice-hauen point, the course East and by North, four miles. From the Ice-hauen point, to the Islands point, the course East North-east, five miles. From the Islands point, to the Flushing point, the course North-east and by East, three miles. From the Flushing point, to the Head point, the course North-east, four miles. From the Head point, to the point of Desire, the course South-west, North, five miles. From the point of Desire, to the Island of Orange, North-west, eight miles. From the Island of Orange, to the Ice point, the course West, and West and by South, five miles. From the Ice point, to the point of Truit, the course West and by South, five and twentie miles. From the point of Truit, to Nallawes point, the course West, and West and by North, ten miles. From the Nallawes point, to the East end of the Croffe land, the course West and by North, eight miles. From the East end of the Croffe land, to Williams land, the course West and by South, three miles. From Williams land, to the Blacke point, the course West South-west, five miles. From the Blacke point, to the East end of the Admirable land, the course West South-west, seven miles. From the East end of the Admirable land, to Cape Plaitto, the course West South-west, five miles. From the Cape Plaitto, to Cape Plaitto, the course South-west and by West, ten miles. From Cape Plaitto, to Lombibay, the course West South-west, eight miles. From Lombibay, to the States point, the course West South-west, ten miles. From the States point, to Langehelles, the course South-west and by South, four miles. From Langehelles, to Cape de Cant, the course South-west and by South, six miles. From Cape de Cant, to the point with the Blacke cliffs, the course South and by West, four miles. From the point with the Blacke cliffs, to the Blacke land, the course South South-east, three miles. From the Blacke land, to Conflint-fake, the course East and West, two miles. From Conflint-fake, to the Croffe point, the course South South-east, five miles. From the Croffe point, to Saint Laurence Bay, the course South South-east, six miles. From Saint Laurence Bay, to Mel-hauen, the course South-east, five miles. From Mel-hauen, to the two Islands, the course South South-east, five miles. From the two Islands, where we cross over to the Russia Coast, to the Island of Matroe and Delgoy, the course West, thirte miles. From Matroe and Delgoy, to the Island of Matroe and Delgoy, the course West, and came to the same place againe, two and twentie miles. From that Croffe Colgoy, the course West North-west, eight miles. From Colgoy, to the East point of Camdena, the course West North-west, twenty miles. From the East point of Camdena, to the West side of the White Sea, the course West North-west, forty miles. From the West point of the White Sea, to the seven Islands, the course West, twenty miles. From the seven Islands, to the VVest end of Kilduin, the course North-west, twenty miles. From the VVest end of Kilduin, to the place where John Cornelis came vnto vs, the course North-west and by VVest, seven miles. From thence to Cola, the course VVest South-east, eight miles.

So that wee layled in the two open Scutes, sometimes in the Ice, then over the Ice, and through the Sea, three hundred and eighty-one miles Flemish, which is one thousand one hundred forty and three miles English.

The four and twentieth of June, the Sunne being Easterly, we rowed heere and there in the Ice, to see where we might best goe out, but wee saw no opening, but when the Sunne was South, we got into the Sea, for the which we thanked God most heartily, that hee had sent vs an vnexpected opening, and then we layled with an East wind, and went lustily forward, so that we made our account to get about the point of Nallawes close by the Land, and we would easily get the point of Nallawes, and made our account to be about three miles from it.

The fixe and twentieth, it still blew hard out of the South, and broke the Ice whereunto we were fast in pieces, and we thereby drave into the Sea, and could get no more to the fast Ice, whereby we were in a thousand dangers to bee all cast away, and driving in that sort in the Sea, we rowed as much as we could, but we could not get neere unto the Land, therefore we hoisted vp our Tocke, and so made vp with our layle, but our Tock-mast brake twice in peeces, and then it was worke for vs then before, and notwithstanding that there blew a great gale of Wind, yet we were forced to hoist vp our great Sayle, but the winde blew so hard into it, that it wee

The stretching of the Land from the house where we wintered, along by the North-side of Nova Zembla, to the Straights of Wey-got, where we past over to the Coast of Russia, and on the entrie of the white Sea to Cola, according to the Card herein lying.

W. Barents died.

W. Barents againe with Ice.

and againe.

had not presently taken it in againe, we had funke in the Sea, or else our Boate would have been filled with water, for the water began to leape over-board, and wee were a good way in the Sea, at which time the waves went so hollow, that it was most fearfulful, and we thereby saw nothing but death before our eyes, and every twinkling of an eye looked when wee should sink; But God that had delivered vs out of so many dangers of Death, holpe vs once againe, and contrary to our expectations, sent vs a North-west wind, and so with great danger we got to the fast Ice againe, when we were deliuered out of that danger, and knew not where our other Scute was, we layled one mile along by the fast Ice, but found it not, whereby we were wholly out of heart, and in great fear that they were drowned, at which time it was myfille weather, and so layling along, and hearing no news of our other Scute, we throt off a Musket, which they hearing thot off another, but yet we could not see each other, meane time appoching neerer to each other, and the weather waxing somewhat clearer, as wee and they thot once againe, we saw the Imooke of their Piece, and at last we met together againe, and saw them lye fast, betweene to vnlade the goods out of their Scute, and drew it ouer the Ice, and with much paine and trouble brought it into the open water againe, and while they were fast in the Ice, we found some Wood upon the Land by the Sea side, and when we lay by each other, we fed some Bread and Water together, and eat it vp warme, which did vs much good.

The eight and twentieth day of the month of June, the Sunne was in the Eaſt, we layd all our goods vpon the Ice, and then drew the *Scutes* vpon the Ice alſo, becauſe we were fo hardly preſſed on all ſides, that we were wholly indolced with the Ice, and ſhould not be able to get our ſelves thereoſ againe, and being vpon watch, and when the Sunne was North, there came a great ſtorm, appointing one of our men to keepe watch here, and another there, and ſo towards our *Scutes*, where-with hee that kept the Watch cryed, *three Boares, three Boares*, at which ſome of our men leapt out to take our *Muskets* that were laden with bayle-fire, to throwe at the Boares, and had no time to diſcharge them, and therefore ſhot at them therewith, and altho the Boares were ſhot of, yet they could not hurt them much, yet they ranne away, and in the meane time they gaue ſhouts, and ſings to lade our *Muskets* with bullets, and by that means we ſhot one of the three dead, which the other two perceiving ranne away, but within two houres after they came againe, but when they were ſo ſlowly ſeene and heard vs make a noyſe, they ranne away, at which time the winde was Weſt and Weſt by North, which made the Ice drie with great force into the Eaſt.

The nine and twentieth of July, whilst I rode the same, we arose with great force into the East, and came to the place where the dead Bear lay, where one of them took the dead Bear in his mouth, and went a great way with him on the frozen Ice, and then began to eat it, which we perceived that a Muskox at her, whilst the hearing the noise there ranne away, and let the dead Bear ly; then four of us went thither, and saw that in so short time he had eaten the half of her, we took the dead Bear and layd it upon a high heap of Ice, that we might see it out of our Scute, that if the Bear came againe we might shoot at her, at which time we tried the great strength of the Beare, that carryed the dead Beare as lightly in her mouth, as if it had been nothing, whereas wee foure had enough to doe to carry away the halfe dead Beare betwene vs.

The first tye of Iuly, it was indifferent faire weather, with a West North-west wind, and in the Morning the Sunne being East, there came a Beare from the drining Ice towards vs, and swam ouer the water to the fast Ice wherewen we lay, but when the heard vs, he came no neerer but ran away, and when the Sunne was South-east, the Ice came so fast in towards vs, that all the Ice wherewen we lay with our Scutes and our goods, brake and ran away peece upon another, whereby we were in no small feare, for at that time ofl of our goods fell into the water, but we with great diligence drew our Scutes further upon the Ice towards the Land, where the water was to be better defended from the drining of the Ice, and as we went to leech the goods, we fell into the greatest trouble that euer we had before, for that we endured a great danger in the fauing thereof, that as we layd hold vpon one peece thereof, the rest sunke downe with the Ice, and many times the Ice brake vnder our owne feet, vvhether we were wholly discomfited, and in a manner cleane out of all hope, expecting no issue thereof, in such sort that our trouble at that time firmed out all our former cares and impeachments, and vvhnen we thought to draw vp all by the drining Ice, the Ice brake vnder vs, and we were carryed away with the Scute, and with that the Scute brake in many places, especially that which we had mended, as the Malt, the malt plank, and almost all the Scute, so that we were in great danger, as was also our money lay, which we with great danger, wherein one of our men that vsas sicke, and a Chieft of the Ice that was vnder our feet drave from vs, and did pouer the Ice, vvhether we were in danger to buift both our armes and our legges, at vvhich time thinking that we had beene cleane quit of our Scute, we beheld each other in pittifull manner, knowing not what we should doe, our liues depending thereon, but God made so good provision for vs, that the peece of Ice drave from

CHAP. 5. S. 3. Beare eight foot thicke. Crosse Iland. Search for stones.

each other, wherewith we rannege great haiffe vpon the Scute, and drew it to vs againe in such case as it was, and laid it vpon the faine Ice by the Boate, where it was in more securitie, which we vs into an exceeding great and dangerous labour, from the time that the Sunne was South-east, vntill it was West South-west, and in all that time we refred not, which made vs extreme wearie, and wholly out of comfort, for that it troubled vs before, and it much more fearful vnto vs, than at that time when *William Barreny* dyed, for there we were almost drowned, and that day we lost (which was funke in the Sea) two Barrels of Bread, a Chaine with Iron-Cloath, a Drye Ray with the Saylor's Clothes, our Astronomical Ring, a packe of Scarlet Cloth, a Rundell of Oyle, and chee Cheetes, and a Rundell of Wine, which bought with the Ice (so that there was not any thing there squel).

The fourth, it was so faire cleere weather, that from the time we were first in *Nova Zembla*, we had not the like. The fifth, it was faire weather, the Wind West, South-west, the same day dyed *John Bracon* of *Marston*.

12. The tenth, it was faire weather with some Raine, the Winde West, South-west, and at Evening VVest, and by North, then we went to the open water, and there killed thirteene Birds, which we tooke vpon a piece of driuing Ice, and laid them vpon the fast Ice.

The ninth, in the morning, the Ice began to druse, whereby we got open water on the Land side, and then also the fast Ice whereon we lay, beganne to druse whereupon the Master and the men went to fetch the Packe and the Chitt, that stood vpon the Ice, to put them into the Scurt, and then drew the Scurts to the water, at least three hundred and fortye paces; which was hard for vs to do, in regard that the labour was great, and we very weakke, and when the Sunne was South-east we lay feele with an East-wind, but when the Sunne was West, we were forced to make towards the fast Ice againe, because therabouts it was not yett gone, the Winde being South, and came right from the Land, whereby we were in good hope that it would druse away, and that we should proceed in our Voyage. The tenth, from the time that the Sunne was East North-east, till it was East, we made great paines and labour to get through the Ice, and at last we got through, and rowed forth, untill we happened to fall betwene two great flakes of Ice that closed one with the other, so that we could not get through, but were forced to draw the Scurts vpon them, and to vnload the goods, and then to draw them ouer to the open water on the other side, and then we muſt go fetch the goods also to the same place, being at least one hundred paces long, and when we were in open water againe, we rowed forward as well as we could, but we had not rowed long, before we fell betwene two great flakes of Ice, that came drawing one against the other, but by Gods helpe and our speedy rowing, we got from betwene them, before they closed vpon, and being through we had a hard West Winde, right in our Teeth, so that of force we were contrayned to make towards the fast Ice that lay by the floare.

The eleventh, in the morning as we faste full upon the Ice, the Sunne being North-east, there came a great Beare out of the water running towards vs, but we watcht him till he was as far as the Muckets, and when the came within thirte paces of vs, we shot all the three Muskets, and he was killed her out-right, fo that the stirred no a foot, and we might fee the fat runne out at the holes
40 of her skinn, that was thoe in with the Muskets, & swimme upon the water like Oyle, and so driving dead vpon the water, we went vpon a flake of Ice to her, and putting a Rope about her necke, drew her vpon vpon the Ice, and mit out her Teeth, at which time we wearied her bodie, and found it to be eight foot thicke, then we had a Welt Wind with clofe weather, but when the Sunne was South being close to cleere vp, then three of our men went to the land that lay before vs, and being there, they saw the Ice land lying Well-wand from them, and went thither to see if that Summer there had bene any Rosier there, and went thither vpon the fall Ice, that lay between the two lands, and being in the land, they could not perceive that any man had bene in it since wee were there, there they got founteine Eggs, but when they had them, they knew not wherein to carrie them, at last one of them put off his Breaches, and then they fell below, they carried them betweene two of them, and the third bare the Muskets, and so
50 came to vs againe, after they had bene twelve houres out, which put vs no small feare to thinke what vs became of them, they told vs that they had many times gone vp to the knees in wa- had gone, which made vs wonder how they could indure it, seeing we were all so weak, with the Eggs that they brought, we were all well comforted, and fared like Lords, fo that we founde some reliefe in our great miserie, and then we shared our last Wine amongst vs, whereof eury one had three Glasse.

The twelfth, in the morning, when the Sunne was East, the Wind began to blow East, and East North-east, with mylie weather, and at Evening fixe of our men went into the Land, to seeke certayne fumes, and found fume, but none of the beefts ore, and coming backe againe, ⁶ they then brought home Wood. The thirteenth, it was a faire day, then our men went to the firme Land to seeke for more fumes, and found fume, at which time the VVind was South-east. The fourteenth, it was faire weaether, with a good South VVind, and then the leg began to drue from the Land, whereby we were in good hope to haue an open water, but the Wind

Wind turning Westerly againe, it lay still, when the Sunne was South-west, three of our men went to the next land that lay before vs, and there shot a *Barkness*, which they brought to the Scutes, and gave it amongst vs, for all our goods were common.

The sixteenth, there came a Bear from the firme Land, that came very neere unto vs, by reason that it was as white as Snow, wherby at first we could not discern it to be a Bear, because it shewed so like the snow, but by their stirring at last we perceived her, and as she came neere unto vs, we shot at her and hit her, but she ranne away: that morning the Wind was VVest, and after that againe, East North-east with close weather. The fourteenth, about the South South-east Sunne, five of our men went againe to the next land, to see if there appeared any open water, for our long staying there was no small griefe unto vs, perceiving now how wee should get from thence, who being halfe way thither, they found a Bear lying behind a piece of Ice, which the day before had bene shot by vs, but shee hearing vs went away, but once our men following her with a Boat-hooke, thrust her into the skine, wherewith the Beare rose vpon her hinder feet, and as the man thrust at her againe, she strooke the Iron of the Boat-hooke in pieces, wherewith the man fell downe vpon his buttocks, which our other two men seeing, two of them shot the Beare into the bodie, and with that she ranne away, but the other man went after her with his broken staffe, and strooke the Beare vpon the backe, wherewith the Beare turned about against the man three times one after the other, and then the other two came to her and thrust her into the bodie againe, wherewith shee sat downe vpon her buttocks, and could scant runne any further, and then they shot once againe, wherewith shee fell downe, and they smote her Teeth out of her head: all that day the Winde was North-east, and East North-east.

The eighteenth, about the East Sun, three of our men went vpon the highest part of the land to see if there was any open water in the Sea, at which time they saw much open water, but it was so far from the land, that they were almost out of comfort, because it lay so far from the land, and the fast Ice, being of opinion that we should not be able to draw the Scutes and the goods so farre thither, because our strengthes still beganne to decrease: and the fore labour and paine that we were forced to endure more, and more increased, and comming to our Scutes, they brought vs that newes, but we being compelled thereto by necessity abandoned all wearinesse and faintheartednesse, and determined with our felues to bring the Boats and the goods to the water side, and to row vnto that Ice, where we must passe ouer so get to the open water, and when we got to it, wee vnladed our Scutes, and drew them first ouer the Ice to the open water, and after that the goods; it being at the least one thousand paces, then we let layle, still the Sunne was West and by South; and presently fell amongst the Ice againe, where we were forced to draw vp the Scutes againe vpon the Ice, and being vpon it, wee could kee the *Crosse* Island; which wee ghost to be about a mile from vs, the Wind then being East, and East North-east.

The nineteenth, lying in that manner vpon the Ice, about the East Sunne, seven of our men went to the *Crosse* Island, and being there they saw great store of open water in the West, wherewith they much reioiced, and made as great haste as they could to get to the Scutes againe, but before they came away they got 100 Eggs, and brought them away with them, and comming to the Scutes, they shewed vs that they had seene as much open water in the Sea as they could discern, being in good hope, that that would be the last time that they should draw the Scutes ouer the Ice, and that it should be no more measured by vs, and in that fort put vs in good comfort, wherupon we made speed to dreffe our Eggs, and shared them amongst vs, and presently the Sunne being South South-west we fell to worke, to make all things ready to bring the Scutes to the water, which were to be drawne at least two hundred paces ouer the Ice, which wee did with a good courage, because we were in good hope that it would be the last time, and getting to the water, we put to Sea with Gods helpe, with an East, and East North-east Wind, and a good gale, so that with the West Sunne, we past by the *Crosse* Island, which is distant from Cape 50 to 20 leagues: ten miles, and presently after that the Ice left vs, and wee got cleere out of it, yet wee saw some in the Sea, but it troubled vs not, and so wee held our course West and by South, with a good gale of Wind out of the East, and East North-east, so that wee ghost that betweene euerie twelve dayes we layed eighteene miles.

The twentieth, having still a good gale about the South-east Sunne, we past along by the *Blacke* Point, which is twelue miles distant from the *Crosse* Island, and layed West South-west, and about the Evening with the West Sunne, we saw the *Admirals* Island, and about the North Sunne past along by it, which is distant from the *Blacke* Point eight miles, and passing along by it, we saw about two hundred Sea-horses, lying vpon a flake of Ice, and wee layed dole by them, and drawe them from thence, which had almost cost vs deere, for they being mightie strong fishes, and of great force, swamme towards vs, as if they would be reuenged on vs for the despite that we had done them (round about our Scutes) with a great noyse, as if they would haue deuoured vs, but we escaped from them, by reason that we had a good gale of Wind, yet it was not wisely done of vs to wake sleeping Wolves. The one and twentieth, we past by Cape

Plancio, about the East North-east Sunne, which lyeth West South-west eight miles from the *Cape Plancio* *Admirals* Island, and with the good gale that we had about the South-west Sunne, we layed by *Langens*, nine miles from Cape *Plancio*: there the Land reacheth in ff South-west, and we had *Langens*, a good North-east wind.

The two and twentieth, we hauing so good a gale of wind when wee came to *Cape Cant*, *Cape Cant*, there we went on land to seeke for some Birds and Eggs, but we found none, so we layed forwards, but after that about the South Sunne we saw a Clift that was full of Birds, thither wee layed, and casting stones at them, we killed two and twentie Birds, and got fiftene Eggs, which one of our men fetcht from the Clift, and if we would haue stayed there any longer, wee might haue taken a hundred or two hundred Birds at least, but because the Matter was somewhat further into Sea-ward then we, and stayed for vs, and for that wee would not looke that faire fore-wind, we layed forwards along by the Land, and about the South-west Sunne, wee came to another point, where wee got a hundred twentie and fvee Birds, which wee took with our hands out of their Nests, and some wee killed with stones, and made them fall downe into the water, for it is a thing certayne that those Birds neuer vied to see men, and that no man had euer fought or vied to take them, for else they would haue flowne away, and that they feared no hodie, but the Foxes and other wild beasts, that could not climbe vp the high Clifts, and that therefore they had made their Nests thereon, where they were out of feare of any beasts comming vnto them, for we were in no small danger of breaking of our legges and armes, especially as we came downe againe, because the Clift was so high and so steep, those Birds had euerie one but one Egge in their Nests, and that lay vpon the bare Clift without any draw or other thing vnder them, which is to be wondered at, to thinke how they could breed their young ones in so great cold, but it is to be thought and beleued, that they therefore laye but vpon one Egge, that is the heat which they give in breeding so many, was faire weather, but the winde still North-east.

The four and twentieth, it was faire weather, but the winde still North-east, whereby we were forced to lye still, and about noone we took the height of the Sunne with our *Astrabium*, and found it to be eleuated above the Horizon 37. degrees and 20. minutes, his declination 20. degrees and 10. minutes which subtracted from the height aforesaid refted 17. degrees and 10. minutes, which taken from 90. degrees, the height of the Pole was 73. degrees and 10. minutes, and for that we lay still there, some of our men went offentimes on Land to seeke stones, and found some that were as good as euer any that we found.

The fvee and twentieth, wee had layed from *Cape de Cant*, along by *Cominjarke*, to the *Crosse* Point, twentie miles, our course South South-east, the Wind North-west.

The eight and twentieth, it was faire weather with a North-east wind, then we layed along by the Land, and with the South-west Sunne, got before *Saint Laurence Bay*, or *Sance Point*, and layed South South-east six miles, and being there, wee found two *Russian* Lodges, or ships beyond the Point, wherewith we were not a little comforted, to thinke that we were come to the place where we found men, but were in some doubt of them, because they were so many, for at that time we saw at least thirtie men, and knew not what they were, there with much paine and labour we got to Land, which they perceiving, left off their worke, and came towards vs, but without any Armes, and we also went on shore as many as were well, for diuers of vs were very ill at ease, and weak by reason of a great tosse in their bodies, and when wee met together, we saluted each other in friendly wise, they after theirs, and wee after our manner, and when we were met, both they and wee lookt each other stedfastly in the face, for that some of them knew vs, and wee them, to bee the same men which the yeere before, when wee past through the *Wey-gates* had bene in our ship: at which time wee perceived that they were a-bast and wondered at vs, to remember that at that time wee were so well furnished with a great ship, that was exceedingly prouided of all things necessary, and then to see vs so leane and bare, with so small Scutes in that Countrey: and amongst them there were two, that in friendly manner clapt the Matter and me vpon the shoulder, as knowing vs since that Voyage: for there was none of all our men that was as then in that Voyage, but wee two only, and asked vs for our *Crabbe*, meaning our ship, and we shewed them by signes as well as we could (for we had no Interpreter) that we had lost our ship in the Ice, wherewith they said, *Crabbe propal* (which wee vnderstood to bee, *Hane you lost your ship?*) and we made answer, *Crabbe pro pal*, which was as much as to say, That we had lost our ship, and many more words we could not vfe, because wee vnderstood not each other, then they made shew to be forrie for our losse, and to be grieved that wee the yeere before had bene there with so many ships, and then to see vs in so limple manner, and made vs signes that then they had drunke Wine in our ship, and asked vs what drinke wee had now, wherewith one of our men went into the Scute and drew some water, and let them taste thereof, but they thart their heads, and said, *No dabbre* (that is, It is not good) then our Matter went neerer vnto them, and shewed them his mouth, to giue them to vnderstand that we were troubled with a loofensse in our bellies, and to know if they could giue vs any counsell to help it, but they thought wee made them shew that wee had great hunger wherewith one of them went vnto their Lodging, and fetcht a round Rie Loafe, weighing about eight pounds, with

some fowled Fowles which we accepted thankfully, and gave them in exchange halfe a dozen of Mulberry, then our Master led two of the chiefe of them with him in his Scute, and gave them some of the Wine that we had, being almost a Gallon, for it was to reere out, and while we stayed there, we were very familiar with them, and went to the place where they lay, and into our bodies, and were with water by their fire, that we might eat some warme thing downe time, that we departed from *Iohn Cornelison*, we had not seene any man, but onely monstrous and cruell wild Beares.

The nine and twentieth, it was reasonable faire weather, and that morning the *Russians* beganne to make preparation to bee gone, and to sayle: at which time they digged craynye To Barrels with Tayne Oyle out of the sieges which they had buried there, and put it into their ships.

No Rain. The thirtieth, lying at Anchor, the Wind still blew North-west, with great force of Raine, and a fore storme, so that although we had covered our Scutes with our Sayles, yet we could not see, and yet we were forced to stay there all that day.

The one and thirtieth, in the morning, about the North-east Sunne, we rowed from that Island to another Island, whereon there stood two Croffes, we thought that some men had layne about that Trade of Merchandize, as the other *Russians* that we saw before had done, but wee the *Wey-gates* there to our great good we went on Land, for in that Island we found great store of Lepre Issues, which seemed vs exceeding well, and it seemed that God had purposely scoured in our bodies, and were thereby become so weak, that we could hardly row, but by means of those Issues we were healed thereof: for that as soone as we had eaten them, we were presently eased and healed, whereas we could not choose but wonder, and therefore wee gave God great thanks for that, and for many other his mercies shewed vnto vs, by his great and vnto whole handfull together, because in *Holland* we had heard much spoken of their force, and as then found it to be much more then we expected.

Aug. The first of August, the Wind blew hard North-west, and the Ice that for a while had driven towards the entry of the *Wey-gates*, played and drave no more, but the Sea went very hollow, whereby we were forced to remove our Scutes on the other side of the Island, to defend them from the waues of the Sea, and lying there wee went on Land againe to fetch more Lepre leaves, whereby we had bene so well holpen, and till more and more recovered our healths, in so short time, that we could not choose but wonder thereat, so that as then some of vs could eat Bisket againe, which not long before they could not doe. The second, it was darke mistie weather, the Winde still blowing stiff North-west, at which time our vituals beganne to decrease, for as then we had nothing but a little Bread and Water, and some of vs a little Cheefe.

The third, about the North Sunne, the weather being somewhat better, we agreed amongst our selves to leave *Nona Zembla* and to croffe over to *Russia*, for so committing our selves to God, we set sayle with a North-west Wind, and sayled South-west till the Sunne was East, got cleere thereof, and entered into the large Sea, where we saw Ice, and then what with sayling vnto the *Russian Coast*; but about the North-west Sunne we entered into Ice againe, and then it was very cold.

The fourth, about the South-east Sunne, being gotten out of the Ice, we sayled forward with a North-west Wind, and held our course Southerly, and when the Sunne was South, at noone time we saw the Coast of *Russia* lying before vs, whereas we were exceeding glad, and going neerer vnto it, we strooke our sayles and rowed on Land, and found it to be very low Land, like west, but perceiving that there were could not much further our selves, having as then sayled forward along by the Coast of *Russia*, with an indifferent gale of Winde, and when the Sunne was North, we saw another *Russian Lake* or ship, which we layed vnto to speake with them, and being hard by them, they came all about Hatches, and wee cryed vnto them *Candianer Candianer* (whereby we asked if we were about *Candianer*) but they cryed againe and said, *Pitkora Pitkora*, (so shew vs that wee were there about) and for that they cryed along by the Coast, where it was very dry, supposing that we held our course West and by North, that so we might get beyond the Point of *Candianer*, we were wholly deceived by our COMPASSE, that stood vpon a Chift bound with Iron bands which made vs vary at least two Points, whereby we were much more Southerly then we thought our course had bene, and also farre more Easterly, for wee thought

thought verily that we had not bene farre from *Candianer*, and wee were three dayes sayling from it as after we perceived, and for that we found our selves to bee so much out of our way, we stayed there all night till day appeared.

The twelfth of August, it was faire weather, at which time the Sunne being East, wee saw a *Russian Lodge* come towards vs, with all his sayles vp, wherewith we were not a little comforted, which we perceived from the Strand, where we lay with our Scutes, we desired the Master that we might goe vnto him, to speake with him, and to get some vituals of them, and to that end we made as much haste as we could, to launch out our Scutes and sayled toward them, and when we got to them, the Master went into the Lodge, to ask them how farre we had to *Candianer*, which we could not well learne of them, because wee understood them not, they held vp their five fingers vnto vs, but we knew not what they meant thereby, but after we perceived, that thereby they would shew vs, that there stood five Croffes vnto it, and they brought their COMPASSE out and shewed vs that it lay North-west from vs, which our COMPASSE also shewed vs, which reckoning also we had made: but when we saw we could have no better intelligence from them, the Master went further into their Ship, and pointed to a barrell of Fish that he saw therein, making signes to know, whether they would sell it vnto vs, shewing them a peece of eight Rials, which they vnderstanding gaue vs one hundred and two Fiftes, with some Cakes which they had made of Meale, when they lodde their Fish, and about the South Sunne we left them.

The sixteenth of August in the Morning, lying forward North-west, we perceived that we were in a Creeke, and so made towards the *Russian Lodge*, which we had seen on our lastre-board, which at last with great labour and much paine we got vnto, and coming to them about the South-east Sunne, with a hard winde, we asked them how farre we were from *Sembla de Cool* or *Kilduati*, but they shooke their heads, and shewed vs that wee were on the East-side of *Zembla de Candianer*.

The seuenteenth lying at Anchor, in the Morning at break of day, we saw a *Russian Lodge* that came sayling out of the *white Sea*, to vvhom we rowed, that we might have some instruction from him, and when we boarded him, without asking or speaking vnto him, he gaue vs a loafe of Bread, and by signes shewed vs as well as he could, that hee had seene our Companions, and that there vvas seuen men in the Boate, but wee not knowing well what they sayd, neither yet beleueing them, they made other signes vnto vs, and held vp their seuen fingers, and pointed to our Scute, thereby shewing that there was so many men in the Boate, and that they had sold them Bread, Fleish, Fish and other vituals: and while wee stayed in their Lodge, wee saw a small COMPASSE therein, which we knew that they had bought of our chiefe Boaton, which they likewise acknowledged. About mid-night wee found a fall of fresh Water, and then we went on Land to fetch some, and there also wee got some Lepre-leaves, and as wee thought to row forward, we were forced to sayle, because the flood was past, and till we looked earnestly out for the point of *Candianer*, and the five Croffes, whereof we had bene instructed by the *Russians*, but we could not see it.

The Eighteenth, in the Morning the Sunne being East, we puld vp our Stone, (which we vfed in feed of an Anchor) and rowed along by the Land, till the Sunne was South, and then we saw a point of Land reaching into the Sea, and on it certain signes of Croffes, which as we went neerer vnto we saw perfectly, and when the Sunne was West, we perceived that the Land reached West and South-west, so that thereby we knew it certainly to bee the point of *Candianer*, lying at the mouth of the *white Sea* which we were to croffe, and had long desired to see it. This Point is easily to bee knowne, having five Croffes standing vpon it, which are perfectly to be discerned, and having a good North-east vwind (which was not for vs to slacke) we let forward in the Name of God, and when the Sunne was North-west we past the Point, and all that night and the next day sayled with a good Wind, and all that time rowed but while three Glasses were runne out, and the next Night after ensuing, having still a good vwind, in the Morning about East North-east Sunne, we saw Land on the West-side of the *white Sea*, which we found by the ruffling of the Sea vpon the Land before we saw it, and perceiving it to bee full of Clifts, and not low sandie ground with some Hills, as it is on the East-side of the *white Sea*, we assured our selves that we were on the West-side of the *white Sea*, vpon the Coast of *Lapland*, for which we thanked God, that he had helped vs to sayle over the *white Sea* in thirte hours, it being fortie Dutch miles at the least, our course being West with a North-west winde.

The twentieth, we epied certayne Croffes, with Warders vpon them, whereby we understood that it was a good way, and so put into it, and being entered a little way within it, we saw a great *Russian Lodge* lying at Anchor, whereto we rowed as fast as we could, and there also we saw certayne Houses wherein men dwelt, and when we got to the Lodge, we made our selves fast vnto it and cast our rent over the Scute, for as then it began to rayne, then we went on land into the Houses that stood vpon the shore, vvhether they shewed vs great friendship, leading vs into their Stoues and there-dryed our wet Cloathes, and then fetching some Fish, made vs sit downe and ate somewhat vwith them. In those little houses we found thirteene *Russians*, *Russian Houses*, who

Scoury-grasse, or Lepre leaves cure their scowering and Scorbittall infirmities.

Aug.

Figurat COMPASSE de- cerned by ill Neighbour- hood.

Lapländers miserable life.

who every morning went out to Fish in the Sea, whereto two of them had charge over the rest, they lived very poorly, and ordinarily ate nothing but Fish and Bread: at Evening when we in their Houses, which the Master thanked them for, would not do, but I stayed with them all that night: besides those thirteen Men, there were two *Lapländers* more, and three Women of a Fish, and some fishes heads which the *Russians* threw away, and they with great thankfulness took them up, so that in respect of their poverty, we thought our selves to be well furnished: and yet we had little enough, but as it seemed their ordinary living was in that manner, and we were forced to lay there, that the wind blew North-west, it was against vs.

The one and twentieth, we met our other Companion *Wylherwith* we rejoiced, and showed each other our proceedings, and how we had layed too and fro in great necessity and hunger, and yet they had been in greater necessity and danger then we, and gave God thanks that hee had preferred vs alive, and brought vs together againe, and then we ate something together and dranke of the cleere Water, fish as runneth along by *Collon* through the *Rhene*, and then we agreed that they should come vnto vs, that we might layle together.

The two and twentieth, the rest of our men with the Boate came vnto vs, about the East South-east Sunne, whereto we much rejoiced, and then we played the *Russians* Cooke to bake a facke of Meale for vs, and to make it Bread, paying him for it, which hee did, and in the meane time, when the *Fisher-men* came with their Fish out of the Sea, our Master bought foure Cods vnto vs, and perceiving that we had not much Bread, hee fetched a Loafe and gave it vs, and alget them to grant the same, because it was their Fast-day, and for that we had paynted Butter as somewhat greasie, they were so superstitious touching their Fastings and Religion, neither would they lend vs any of their Cups to drinke in, least they should likewise be greased, at that time the wind was North-west.

Sluterie a fast breaker.

The four and twentieth, the wind blew East, and then the Sunne being East, we got to the seven Ilands, where we found many *Fisher-men*, of whom we enquired after *Cool* and *Kilduin*, and they made signes that they lay West from vs, which we likewise sheft to bee so) and whil they thewed vs great friendship, and cast a Codeline into our Scute, but for that we had a good ring at their great courtiesie, and so with a good gale of wind we arrived before the seven Ilands, whereto the Sunne was South-west, and past betweene them and the Land, and there found certayne *Fisher-men* that rowed to vs, and asked vs where our Crable (meaning our Ship) was, whereto we made answer, with as much *Russian* language as wee had learned: sayd *Cool* *Crable* *pro* *Pat*, (that is, our Ship is lost) which they vnderstanding, sayd vnto vs, *Cool* *Drabon* *Crable*, whereby we vnderstood, that at *Cool* there was certayne *Netherland* Ships, but we made no great account thereof, because our intent was to layle to *Ware-houfe*, fearing least the *Russians* 40 or great Prince of the Countrey would lay vs there.

Kilduin.

The five and twentieth, flying along by the Land with a South-east wind, about the South Sunne, we had a sight of *Kilduin*, at which time we held our course West North-west, and laying in that manner betweene *Kilduin* and the firme Land, about the South South-west Sunne, we got to the West end of *Kilduin*, and being there looked if we could see any Houses or people therein, and at last we saw certayne *Russian* Lodgies that lay vpon the Strand, and there finding a convenient place for vs to Anchor with our Scutes, while we went to know if any people were to bee found, our Master put in with the Land, and there found five or six small Houses, whereto the *Lapländers* dwelt, of whom we asked if that were *Kilduin*, whereto they made answer, and thewed vs that it was *Kilduin*, and sayd, that at *Cool* there lay three *Brabant* *Crables* or Ships, whereto two were that day to set layle: we found a small House vpon the shoare, whereto there was three Men and a great Dogge, which received vs very friendly, asking vs of lost our Ship, and how we got thither, whereto we made answer, and thewed them that there was if they would goe with one of our men by Land to *Cool*, to looke for a Ship, wherewith we might get into *Holland*, and sayd we would reward them well for their paines, but they excused the Hill, where we should finde certayne *Lapländers* whom they thought would bring vs out, as they did: for the Master and one of our men going with them over the Hill, found certayne *Lapländers* there, whereto they got one of our men going with them over the Hill, found certayne for his paines, and so the *Lapländer* going with him, tooke a Piece on his necke, and our man a Boat-hooke, and about Evening they set forward, the wind as then being East, and East North-east.

The

The sixe and twentieth, it was faire weather, the wind South-east, at which time we drew vp both our Scutes vpon the Land, and spokall the goods out of them, to make them the lighter: which done, we went to the *Russians* and vvarmed vs, and there dressed fish meates as wee had, and then againe we began to make two meales a day, whereto we perceived that we should every time more people, and we dranke of their drinke which they call *Quasse*, which was made of broken peeces of Bread, and it tasted well: for in long time we had drinke nothing else but Water. Some of our men went further into the Land, and there found blow Berries and hramble Berries, which they plucked and ate, and they did vs much good, for we found that they heled vs of our loolensie, the wind still blew South-east.

The eight and twentieth, it was indifferent good weather, and then we drew the Scutes vpon the Land againe, that we might take the rest of the goods out of them, because the wind still blew hard North, and North North-west, and hauing drawne the Scutes vp, we spread our sayles vpon them, to shelter vs vnder them, for it was still mytie and raynye weather, much desiring to heare some newes of our man, that was gone to *Cool* with the *Lapländer*.

The nine and twentieth, we spied the *Lapländer* coming alone without our man, whereto we wondered, and were somewhat in doubt, but when hee came vnto vs, he shewed vs a Letter that was written vnto our Master, which he opened before vs, the Contents thereof being, that hee had written the Letter wondred much at our arrivall in that place, and that long since hee verily thought that we had bene all call away, being exceeding glad of our happie fortune, and how that he would prettily come vnto vs with victuals, and all other necessaries to succour vs withall, we being in no small admiration who in might bee, that thewed vs so great fauour and friendship, could not imagine what he was, for it appeared by the Letter that he knew vs well: and although the Letter was subscribed, by me *Iohn Cornelison* *Kip*, yet we could not bee perswaded that it was the same *Iohn Cornelison*, who the yere before had bene for our in the other ship with vs, & 1. ft vs about the *Beare* Iland: for those good newes we payd the *Lapländer* his byer; and besides that, gave him Hofs, Breeches, and other furniture, so that hee was apparelled like a *Hollander*: for as then we thought our selves to bee wholly out of danger, and soeing of good comfort, we layd vs downe to rest. Heere I cannot chuse but shew you how fast the *Lapländer* went: for when he went to *Cool*, as our Companion told vs, they were two Dayes and two Nights on the way, and yet went space, and when he came backe againe he was but a Day and a Night coming to vs, which was wonderfull, it being but halfe the time, so that we sayd, and verily thought that hee was halfe a Coniurer, and he brought vs a Partridge, which hee had killed by the way as he went.

The thirtieth, we saw a *Russian* Ioll come rowing with *Iohn Cornelison*, and our Companion that we had sent to *Cool*, who being landed, wee received and welcomed each other, with great joy and exceeding gladnesse, as if either of vs on both sides had senee each other rife from death to life againe: for we esteemed him, and hee vs to bee dead long since: hee brought vs a Barrell of *Roschely* Beere, Wine, *Aqua vite*, Bread, Fleth, Bacon, Salmon, Sugar, and other things, which comforted and relieved vs much, and wee joyced together for our unexpected meeting: at that time giuing God great thanks, for his Mercie shewed vnto vs.

The first of September, in the Morning with the East Sun, we got to the West-side of the River of *Cool*, and entered into it, where we rowed till the Flood was past, and then we cast the Stones that srued vs for Anchors vpon the ground, at a point of Land till the Flood came in againe: and when the Sunne was South, we set layle againe with the Flood, and so layled and rowed till mid-night, and then we cast Anchor againe till morning. The second, in the Morning, we rowed vp the River, and as we past along wee saw some Trees on the River side, which comforted vs, and made vs glad as if we had then come into a new world, for in all the time that wee had bene out, we had not sene any Trees, and when we were by the *Salt Kettles*, which is about three miles from *Cool*, we stayed there a while, and made merrie, and then went forward againe, and with the West North-west Sunne, got to *Iohn Cornelison* Ship, whereto we entered and drinke: there we began to make merrie againe, with the Saylers that were therein, and that had bene in the Voyage with *Iohn Cornelison* the yere before, and had each other welcome: and then we rowed forward, and late in the Evening got to *Cool*, where some of vs went on Land, and some stayed in the Scutes to looke to the goods: to whom we sent Milke and other things to comfort and refresh them, and we were all exceeding glad that God of his mercie had deliuered vs out of so many dangers and troubles, and had brought vs thither in safetie.

The third, we vnladed all our goods, and there refreshed our selves after our toylefome and wearie Iourney, and the great hunger we had endured, thereby to recouer our healths and strengths againe.

The eleuenth, by leaue and consent of the *Bayart*, Gouverneur of the great Prince of *Moscouia*, we brought our Scute and our Boate into the Merchants Houfe, and there let them Rand for a remembrance of our long, farre (and neuer before sayled way) and that wee had sayled in those open Scutes, almost foure hundred *Dutch* miles, through, and along by the Sea Coasts to the Towne of *Cool*.

Th is Scute and Boate layd vp for a Memoriam: but much more worthily then the old world.

Trees aree sight.

Cool.

The

The fourteenth of September, *Iohn Cornelison* and our *Maister* being come aboard, the next day about the East Sunne, we layle out of the River *Coula*, and with Gods grace put to Sea, to sayle homewards, and being out of the River, we sayled along by the Land North-west and by North, the winde being South.

Vpon the nine and twentieth of October, we arrived in the *Mafse*, with an East North-east wind, and the next morning got to *Macland Sluce*, and there going on Land, from thence towed to *Delfs*, and then to the *Hage*, and from thence to *Harlem*. And vpon the first of November about Noone, got to *Amsterdam*, in the same Clothes that we wore in *Nova Zembla*, with our Caps furd with white Foxes skinned. The newes thereof being spred abroad in the Towne, it was alie carried to the Princes Court in the *Hage*, at which time the Lord Chancellour of *Denmarke*, Ambassadour for the sayd King, was there at Dinner with Prince *Maurice*: for the which cause we were presently fetched thither by the Scout, and two of the Burgers of the Towne, and there in the presence of those Ambassadors, and the Burger-masters, we made rehearfall of our Journey both forwards and backwards.

I thought good to adde hither for Barents or Barentsons sake, certaine Notes which I have found (the one Translated, the other Written by him) amongst Master Hakluyses Paper.

This was Written by *William Barentson* in a loose Paper, which was lent mee by the Reuerend *Peter Plantius* in *Amsterdam*, March the fuen and twentieth, 1609.

Intelligence from *Samoieds*, 1595.
Borke going from *Pechora* to *Giehldi*: wintering there.
Giehldi went from the *Tar* 1595.

*T*he fuen and twentieth of August, Stilo nouo 1595, wee spake with the Samoieds, and asked them how the Land and Sea did ly to the East of Way-gates. They sayd after fower dayes iourney going North-east, we should come to a great Sea, going South-east. This Sea is the East of Way-gates, they sayd as called *Marmora*, that is to say, A calme Sea. And day of Ward-houte hane told us the same. I asked them, if at any time of the year it was frozen over? They sayd it is, And sometimes they passed it with sleds. And the first of September 1595. Stilo nouo, the Ruffes of the *Labe* or *Borke* affirmed the same: saying that the Sea is sometimes so frozen, that the *Labe* or *Borke* goe sometimes to *Giehldi* from *Pechora*, are forced there to winter: which *Giehldi* was wonne from the Tatars, three yeeres past.

1595.
No Ebbe nor Flood.
September 9.

For the Ebbe and Flood there I can finde none; but with the Winde so runneth the streame. The third of September, Stilo nouo, the winde was South-west, and then I found the water higher, then with the winde at North or North-east. Mine opinion is grounded on Experience, That if there bee a passage, it is small; or else the Sea could not rise with a Southerly winde. And for the better people to know if there were a Flood and Ebbe, the ninth of September, Stilo nouo, I went on Shore on the South end of the States Land, where the *Cross Handet*, and layd a Stone on the brinke of the Water, to prove whether there were a Tide, and went round about the Island to foote at a Hare, and returning, I found the Stone as I left it, and the Water neither higher nor lower: which proueth as afore, that there is no Flood nor Ebbe.

CHAP. VI.

A Treatise of IVER BOTT a Gronlander, translated out of the North Language into High Dutch, in the yeere 1560. And after out of High Dutch into Low Dutch, by WILLIAM BARENTSON of Amsterdum, who was chiefe Pilot aforesaid. The same Copie in High Dutch, is in the hands of IODOCVS HONDIVS, which I haue seene. And this was translated out of Low Dutch, by Master WILLIAM STREE, Merchant, in the yeere 1608. for the use of me HENRIE HYDSON. WILLIAM BARENTSONS Booke is in the hands of Master PETER PLANTIVS, who lens the same vnto mee.

Nyrminis, it is reported by men of Wisdome and Vnderstanding borne in *Gronland*, That from *Stad in Norway* to the East part of *Island*, called *Horn-nesse*, is fuen dayes sayling right West.

Item, men shall know, that betweene *Island* and *Gronland*, lyeth a Riffe called *Gomborfske*. There were they wont to haue there passage for *Gronland*. But as they report there is Ice vpon the same Riffe, come out of the long North Bottom, so that we cannot vie the same old Passage as they thinke.

Item, from *Long-nesse* on the East tide of *Island* to the abouted *Horn-nesse*, is two dayes sayle to the *Brinsfome* Mount.

Gomborfske.
The long North Bottom.

Item, if you goe from *Bergen in Norway*, the course is right West, till you bee South of *Rakness* in *Island*: and dilate from it thirtene miles, or leagues. And with this course you shall come vnder that high Land that lyeth in the East part of *Gronland*, and is called *Swafster*. A day before you come there, you shall haue sight of a high Mount, called *Hunt-farge*: and betweene *Wharfage* and *Gronland*, lyeth a Head-land called *Hermoldus Hooke*: and thereby lyeth an Hauen, where the *Norway* Merchants Ships were wont to come: and it is called *Sound Hauen*.

Item, if a man will sayle from *Island* to *Gronland*, hee shall set his course to *Snofresse*, which is by West *Rakness* thirtene miles or leagues right West, one day and nights sayling, and after South-west to thunn the Ice, that lyeth on *Gomborfske*: and after that one day and night North-west. So shall hee with this course fall right with the abouted *Swafster*, which is high Land, vnder which lyeth the aforesayd Head-land, called *Hermoldus Hooke*, and the *Sound Hauen*.

Item, the Easter Dorpe of *Gronland* lyeth East from *Hermoldus hooke*, but neere it, and is called *Skagen Ford*, and is a great Village.

Item, from *Skagen Ford* East, lyeth a Hauen called *Beare Ford*: it is not dwelt in. The mouth thereof lyeth a Riffe, so that great Ships cannot harbour in it.

Item, there is great abundance of Whales: and there is a great Fyishing for the killing of them there: but not without the Bishops consent, which keepeth the same for the benefit of the Cathedral Church. In the Hauen is a great *Swalsh*: and when the Tide doth runne out, all the Whales doe runne into the sayd *Swalsh*.

Item, East of *Beare Ford*, lyeth another Hauen called *Alabang Sound*: and it is at the mouth narrow, but farther in, very wide: The length whereof is such, that the end thereof is not yet knowne. There runneth no Streame, & lyeth full of little Iles. *Egwie* and *Oxen* are there common: and it is playne Land on both sides, growne out with greene Graffe.

Item, East from the *Lie* Mountayne, lyeth an Hauen called *Feddokstober*; so named, because in *Saint Olaf*s time there was a Ship cast away, as the speech hath beene in *Gronland*: In which Ship was drowned one of *Saint Olaf*s men, with others: and those that were saved did burie those that were drowned, and on their Graves did set great Iron Crosses, which we see at this day.

Item, somewhat more East toward the *Lie* Mountayne, lyeth a high Land, called *Corse Hanger*, vpon which they Hunt white Beares, but not without the Bishops leave, for it belongeth to the Cathedral Church. And from thence more East-ward, men see nothing but Ice, and Snow, both by land and water.

Now wee shall retume againe to *Hermoldus Hooke*, where we first began to come to the first Towne that lyeth on the East side of *Hermoldus Hooke*, called *Skagen Ford*: and so we will write the Names of all that lyeth on the West side of the Ford or Sound.

Item, West from *Hermoldus Hooke*, lyeth a Dorpe called *Kodaford*, and it is well built: and as you sayle into the Sound, you shall see on the right hand a great Sea and a Marsh: and into this Sea runneth a great streame: and by the Marsh and Sea standeth a great Church, on which the Holy Crosse is drawne of colour wise: it belongeth to *Eusebius de Heksfong*, and the Land to *Peters Wyke*.

Item, by *Peters Wyke*, lyeth a great Dorpe called *Wardale*, by which lyeth a water or Sea of ewelme miles or leagues out: in which is much Fish: And to *Peters Wyke* Church belongeth *Wardale Bay* or Towne, and the Villages.

Item, neere this Bay or Towne, lyeth a Cloyster or Abbey, in which are Canons Regular, it is Dedicated to *Saint Olaf*s, and same *Augustines* priors: And to belongeth all the Land to the Sea side, and toward the other side of the Cloyster.

Item, next *Godeford*, lyeth a Ford called *Rompeis Ford*: And neere lyeth a Cloyster of Nuns to *Saint Brendes* Order.

Item, this Cloyster to the bottom of the Sea, and to *Wegon Harker*s as Deddied up *Saint Olaf*s the King. In this Ford lyeth many small Iles. And so this Cloyster belongeth to the Ford and the Church. In this Sound are many warme Waters. In the Winter they are cured of many distempers: but in the Summer more moderate, and many Basting in them are cured of many distempers.

Item, betweene *Rompeis* and the next Sound, lyeth a great Garden called *Hoff*, belonging to the King. There is also a costly Church dedicated to *Saint Niclaus*, This Church had the King before this. Neere it lyeth a Sea of Fresh water, called *Wegon*, in which is great abundance of Fish, without number. And when there talseth much Rayne, that the Waters doe rise therein, and after fall againe, there remayneth vpon the Land much Fish drie.

Item, when you sayle out of *Eusebius Ford*, there lyeth an Inlet, called *South-waters Wyke*: and somewhat higher in the same Sound, and on the same side, lyeth the little Cape called *Blanning*: and beyond that lyeth another Inwike called *Gramme*, and above that lyeth a Garden called *Daleth*, which belongeth to the Cathedral Church. And on the right hand, as you sayle out of the same Sound, lyeth a great Wood, which pertaineth to the Church, where they steele all

Swafster.
Wardale.
Hermoldus Hooke.
Sound Hauen in *Gronland*.

Skagen Ford.
Beare Ford.

A great fishing for Whales.
A great *Swalsh*.

Alabang Sound.
Store of Oxen.

The *Lie* Mountayne.
The Hauen of *Feddokstober*.
Noe.

Corse Hanger.
A hunting of white Beares.
More Easterly all Delart.

The Towne from *Hermoldus Hooke* West-ward.

The Towne of *Godeford*.
A great Church with a white Crosse on it.

Peters Wyke.
Wardale.
A place in the *Nord* tongue signifieth a Towne.

A Monasterie, *Rompeis Ford*.
A Nunnerie.

Wegon Kerke.
Hot waters in *Gronland*.

A place called *Hoff*, belonging to the King.

Saint Niclaus Church.
Eusebius Ford.

South-waters Wyke.
Blanning.
Gramme.
Daleth Garden.
A great Wood of Oxen, Hares, and Horses.

their Cartell, as Oxen, Kine, and Horses: And to the Church pertaineth the Sound of *Emefjord*. The high Land lying by *Emefjord* is called *The Remus bayte*: So called, because that on thole Hills doe runne many *Ree Deere*, or *Reyne Deere*, which they vnto Hunt, but not without the Bishops leave. And on this high Land is the best Stone in all *Gronland*. They make thereof Pots, because fire cannot hurt it. And they make of the same stone *Farttes* or *Citternes*, that will hold ten or twelve Tunnes of water.

Excellent
Stone, but fire
cannot hurt.

Eight great
Orchards be-
longing to the
Cathedral
Church.
Swallow Ford.

Erick's Haight.

Skogel Kyrke.

Fosse Sound.

Borde Ford.
Larmort Ford.
Ice Dorpe.

The Skerlenger.
Many Horses,
Oxen, and
Kine.

Ice Bay the
Ambos.

A great Wild-
ernesse called
Hemel Hasfel,
to the North
of the West
land.

Mines of Sil-
uer, white
Beares, white
Hawkes, all
sorts of Fish.
Gronland is so
cold as it is
land or Norway.
Fruits.

Punnus and Po-
barfe.

Item, West from this lyeth another high Land, called *The long high Land*: and by another cal-
led *wharcon* are eight great Orchards, all belonging to the Cathedral Church.

Item, next to this Sound lyeth another Sound called *Swallow Ford*, wherein standeth a Church
called *Swallowe*. This Church belongeth to all this Sound, and to *Remus Ford*, lying next it. In
this Sound is a great Garden belonging to the King, called *Saint Hemelstade*.

Item, next to that lyeth *Erick's Ford*, and entering therein lyeth an high Land called *Erick's
Haight*; which pertaineth the one halfe to *Deners Kerke*, and is the first Parish Church on
Gronland, and lyeth on the left hand as you sayle into *Erick's Ford*: and *Deners Kerke* belong-
eth all to *Mydan Ford*, which lyeth North-west from *Erick's Ford*.

Item, farther out then *Erick's Ford*, standeth a Church called *Skogel Kyrke*, which belongeth to
all *Medford*: And farther in the Sound standeth a Church called *Leadon Kyrke*. To this Church
belongeth all thereabout to the Sea; and also on the other side as farre as *Boufils*. There lyeth
also a great Orchard called *Grete Lead*, in which the *Gufman* (that is a chiefe or Bayliffe ouer the 20
Bourers) doth dwell.

And farther out then *Erick's Ford*, lyeth a Ford or Sound called *Fosse*, which belongeth to the
Cathedral Church: and the sayd *Fosse* Sound lyeth as men sayle out towards *Erick's Ford*; and
to the North of it lyeth two Villages, the one called *Euen-bay*, and the other *Farther-bay*, because
they lyeth so.

Item, from thence farther North lyeth *Borde Ford*, and after that *Larmort Ford* from that
West, and from *Larmort Ford* to the West is *Ice Dorpe*. All these are places built, and in them
dwell people.

Item, from the Easter builded Land to the Water Dorpe, is twelue miles or leagues: and the
rest is all waste land. In the Dorpe in the West standeth a Church, which in times past belonged
to the Cathedral Church, and the Bishop did dwell there. But now the *Skerlenger* haue all the
West Lands and Dorpes. And there are now many Horses, Oxen, and Kine, but no people nei-
ther Christian nor *Flamben*; but they were all carryed away by the Enemy, the *Skerlenger*.

All this before Written was done by one *Iur Bay* borne in *Gronland*, a principall man in the
Bishops Court: who dwelt there many yeeres, and law and knew all these places. He was cho-
sen by the whole Land for Capsteyne, to goe with Ships to the West land, to drive away their
Enemies the *Skerlenger*. But hee coming there, found no people neither Christian nor Hea-
then, but found there many Sheepe running being wilde, of which Sheepe they tooke with
them as many as they could carrie, and with them returned to these Houses. This before named
Iur Bay was himselfe with them.

To the North of the West land lyeth a great Wildernesse with Chis or Rockes, called *Hemel
Hasfel*. Farther can no man sayle, because there lyeth many *Swailem* or White-pooler: and
also for the Water and the Sea.

Item, in *Gronland* are many Silver Hills, and many white Beares with red patches on their
heads; and also white Hawkes, and all sorts of Fish, as in other Countreies.

Item, there is Marble stone of all colours, also Zeuill Stone or the Land stone, which the Fire
cannot hurt, whereof they make many vessels, as Pots, and other great vessels.

Item, in *Gronland* runneth great streames, and there is much Snow and Ice: But it is not so
cold, as it is in *Island* or *Norway*.

Item, there grow on the high Hills, Nuts and Acornes, which are as greates Apples, and good so
to eat. There groweth also the best Wheat, that can grow in the whole Land.

This Sea Card was found in the Iles of *Perre* or *farre*, lying betweene *Shan-lan* and *Island*, in an
old reckoning Booke, written about one hundred yeres agoe: out of which this was all taken.

Item, *Thunus* and *Potbarfe*, haue inhabited *Island* certayne yeeres, and sometimes haue gone to
Sea, and hitherto haue traile in *Gronland*. Also *Punnus* did gae the *Islanders* their Lawes, and
caused them to be written. Which Lawes doe continue to this day in *Island*, and are called by
name *Punnus Lawes*.

The Course from Island to Gronland.

If men bee South from the Hauen of *Bredford* in *Island*, they shall sayle West, till they see
Whitfarkes upon *Gronland*; and then sayle somewhat South-west till *Whitfarkes* be North off
you, and so you need not feare Ice, but may boldly sayle to *Whitfarkes*, and from thence to
Erick's Hauen.

If men be North the Hauen of *Bredford* in *Island*, then sayle South-west, till *Whitfarkes* be
North: then sayle to it, and so come to *Erick's Hauen*.

If you feare Ice, that cometh out of *Troelickethon*, you shall goe more Southerly, but not too
farre South for feare of *Freesland*, for there runneth an hard streame. And it is fifteene miles or
leagues from *Freesland*.

Troelickethon.

Item, *Freesland* lyeth South, and *Island* East from *Gronland*.

Item, From the Ice that hangeth on the Hills in *Gronland*, cometh a great Fogge, F. off
and Cold. And such a Fogge cometh out of the Ice of *Troelickethon*: and it is a great Wil-
dernesse.

Troelickethon, a
great Wilder-
nesse.

There are Sables, Marternes, Hermelins, or Ermins, White Beares, and White Hawkes,
Seales, White and Gray, Gold and Silver Hills, also Fish dried and salted, and thousands
of Salmones: also store of Loth Hides and other Hides. There are Hares, Foxes, Woules, Ot-
ters, and Veltiraen.

The Commo-
dities of *Gron-
land*.

Now if it please God they come to *Gronland*, then shall they set but two men on shoare;
who shall take with them diuers kindes of Marchandize: and let them deale with good
order, and let them bee such as can make good Report, what they there doe see or finde;
and let them obserue whether men may there Land or no, what the loue of the Inhabitants.

Good counsell
for travelling
to *Gronland*.

And I counsaile and charge those that shall Trade for *Gronland*, that they let no
folke on Land, but they keepe men enough to man the Shipps. And looke well to the
course you hold to *Gronland*, that if those that bee set on shoare bee taken, they may come
home againe with Gods helpe. For if shipping returne, they may come home or bee relea-
ued in a yeere and a day. And in your liuing there so demean your selues to them, that in time
you may winne the Countrey and the people.

Remember my Scholler and Clearke, which shall bee there appointed as Commander, that
you send those on Land, that will shew themselves diligent Writers, and that they carrie
themselves so, that they may learne thereby the State of the Countrey. They shall take with
them two Boats and eight Oares, and take Tynder-boxes for fire if there be no Habitation. Also
set vp Croffes of Wood or Stone, if need bee.

Tynder-boxes
for fire.

This Note following was found in an old Booke of *Accompts*,
in the Yeere 1596.

In *Nymis*, From *Grad* in *Norway*, standing neere the Latitude of sixtie three Degrees; you
shall hold your course due West: and that course will bring you vpon *Swaenestie* in *Gron-
land*. And in this course is the least streame and least perill of *Swailem* or *Indrastra*. There is
lesse perill this way, then is on the North-side you shall keepe 3. of the Sea on *Freesland* side,
and one third on *Island* side. And if it bee cleere weather, and you haue kept your course right
West, you shall see the Mount of *Suenels loket* in the South-west part of *Island*. And if you haue the
a storme in the North, you must hume it as you can, till *Whitfarkes* be North of you. Then
shall you sayle right with it, and seeke the Land: and you shall finde a good Hauen, called
Erick's Ford.

Course for
Gronland.

Item, If you bee betweene *Gronland* and *Island*, you may see *Suenels loket* on *Island*, and
Whitfarkes on *Gronland*, if it be cleere weather. Therefore men of experience doe affirme, that it
is but thirtie leagues betweene both.

A storme in
the North.

Also if you haue a storme betweene *Gronland* and *Island*, you must haue care you bee not
laid on *Freesland* with the streame and Winde; for the streame or Current doth run from vpon
Freesland, out of the North.

Also if you haue a storme out of the South, you shall not sayle out of your course, but a storme
keepe it as neere as you can possibly, till *Whitfarkes* in *Gronland* beare North off you: then the South
sayle toward it, and you shall come into *Erick's Ford*, as it is afore-said in the first Article.

Raine Deere,
Dogs coulin
swiftnesse to
Harts.

Raine Deere, and others also were drawne by Dogges, which are equall to Harts for swiftnesse. Finally, many other things in their whole Iourney they met with, not before sene, and there- report the fame at their returne. And last length taking with them some voluntarie Samoiseds, and leaving there duers of their owne people to learne their Language, they returned backe into the Emperours whole successe of their Voyages.

Samoiseds thoo-
ring:
* Suuier.

They manueled at the Samoiseds which were brought vnto them, commanding them to make some shew of their cunning in shooting; which they did so perfectly, that almost it seemed to any man incredible. For taking a peece of Coyne lesse then our * Pennie, and saluting it to the stocke of a Tree, and then going as farre from the same, as they could very hardly discern it, they did euerie time that they did shoot so assuredly hit the same, that they did not once misse it. Where at many of the beholders did about measure wonder.

And on the other side, the Samoiseds as greatly wondred both at the Moscovites manner of li- uing and fashions, as also at the flatnesse of the Citie: neither did they without a certayne li- terour beheld the Emperour himselfe, so richly attired and mounted either on Horse-backe, or in his Coach drawne by many Horses together, and enuironed with so many Nobles most gallantly whom about foure hundred waited on the Emperour at his going abroad. So oft also as they heard the ringing of the Bells, which are very many among the Moscovites, and saw so many themselves to bee in some Mansion of the Gods; wishing withall, that they were a while a- pie, that they had the fortune to see so glorious an Emperour, whom they altogether accom- panyed: where by it plainly appeared, that the same were more pleasant to their talte, then they did growe fieshly, or fish dried in the winde, wherewith they feed themselves at home. Finally, inhabiting farre and wide to doe the same. They humbly also prayed the Emperour to vouch- safe them the fauour, to send them certaine Gouvernours to rule ouer them, and to whom they might pay the aforesaid Tribute. Concerning their Idolatrie, there was no speech made there- by but they were left to their owne customes. Notwithstanding, I thinke that the Christian Faith would easly be spread among them, if they had sufficient and godly Teachers. Neither doubt I but the Moscovites would have taken order therein, if they had not beene hindered by these most troublesome Warres.

These things so done as is declared, the Onekees were raised to great Honours, and endowed with great Priviledges, as also with Supreme Authority ouer many places, adjoining vnto their Land, enjoying Possessions lying one hundred miles asunder vpon the Riuer of *Dvina* & *Votobda*, and *Sachana* so that they are very mighty and rich, and increase daily in greater Honours.

It was further ordained by the Moscovites, that there should be places chosen by the Riuer 40 Oby, and in the fields adjoining vnto it, fortified by the naturall situation for the building of certaine Castles, and furnishing them with Garrisons, and that there should be sent thither a iectiō. These things so ordained, did likewise take effect. And first of all, there were builded certaine Castles enclosed with certaine strong beames, cut out of the Woods thereby, and fast- ned one in another in double rewes, filled betwene with earth, and fortified with Garrisons: And so great a multitude of men is duely sent thither, that in some places there are Citie as these parts are sent all that are banished, Murderers, and other Nations mingled together. For, into such as deserve death: some of which are for a time kept in prison, others enforced to continue 50 there for certaine yeeres, euerie one according to the rate of his offence: whereby there are very populous assemblies of people growne together, who with the Castles already builded, doe also for that they enjoy great priuiledges, neither pay any thing for the Lands which they possess.

The whole Country is called *Siberia*, the Citie builded therein *Siber*. And in deed at the first, the Offenders among the Moscovites, did not so tremble at the name of *Siberia*, then * doe sent away into *Siberia*. But now they are threatened with New-gate: for they were forth-with to contempt. But Noblemen and great Personages, if at any time they incur the Princes dis- pleasure, doe as yet very much loath the name of *Siberia*. For many times both them- selves, with their Wives and Families are sent away into those parts: where none Office is committed vnto them, till the Emperours anger bee alwayed, and they called home into 60 *Moscovia*.

I will now shew the way by which they trauell out of *Moscovia* into those parts, and thence

in the best manner that I could get notice thereof. Which whatsoever it shall seeme to bee, I have not attayed vnto it, without great paines and ready furtherance of some friends, which I found in the Court, while I continued in *Russia*: who though they were ready to pleasure me, and that I had bene very instant with them about it, yet with much adoe were brought to com- municate this particular Iournall vnto me. For if at any time after, when the Land should bee at quiet, it should any way come to light, doubtles it would cost them all their liues. For such is the disposition of the *Russes*, that they will not indure to haue the secrets of their State to bee made knowne.

§. II.

A briefe Description of the wayes and Riuer, leading out of Moscouia towards the East and North-east into Siberia, Samoisidia, and Tingocfia, as they are daily frequented by the *Russes*: with further Discoveries towards Tartaria and China.

From the Citie *Ofol* vpon the Riuer *Wischida*, where the *Oneeks* dwell, they goe a- gainst the streame, vntill they come to *Lainia*, a little Towne builded by the *Russes*, and it is distant from *Ofol* almost seuenteen dayes Iourney. Whither before they come, they passe many Riuer and Woods. The Riuer *Wischida* springeth out of the Mountaines of *Iugoria*, which to the South ioyne vpon *Tartaria*, and from thence runne North- wards to the Ocean Sea. Out of the same Mountaines issueth the Riuer *Petora*, which falleth into the Ocean Sea on this side the Streight of *Voygats*. From *Lainia*, after three weekes Iour- ney, they come to *Neem*; a Riuer so named of the gentle gliding of her streames through the Woods. For *Neem* in English signifieth *Still* or *Dumme*. On this Riuer they proceed about five dayes space with their Boats; and then, for that the *Neem* taketh his course another way, for shortning their Iourney, they must of force cause their fluffe to be carried by Land, the space of a league: And so they come to the *Wifera*, a Riuer issuing out of certaine Rockes adjoining to the Mountaines of *Iugoria*. These Rockes the Moscovites call *Camena*. From hence they are carried downe the Riuer *Wifera*, for the full space of nine dayes, vntill they come to *Sail Camfof*, a small Towne builded by the Moscovites, for refreshing of Travellers for a short space, which hence forward are to proceed on their Iourney by Land. As for the *Wifera*, it keeping on his course somewhat farther, at length falleth into the *Cam*, which passing by *Viatoma*, a Towne of *Moscovia*, falleth into the great Riuer *Rha*, commonly called *Volga*, which entrench- ed with many branches into the *Caspian* Sea, as I haue receiued from eye witnesses.

The Towne of *Sail Camfof* is reasonably inhabited, hauing many Villages round about it. The Inhabitants, for the most part are *Russes* or *Tartars*. Here is great store of Cattell, and chiefly of Horses. Travellers haue here somewhat refreshed themselves, doe lade their carriages on Horses, and trauell for the most part through Mountaines full of Firres, Pines, and other trees of strange sorts. Betweene these Mountaines they passe ouer the Riuer *Soiba*, and from thence ouer *Cofna*, both running towards the North-east.

Now these Mountaines are diuided into three parts: whereof the two first are passed ouer each of them in two dayes, and the third in foure dayes. The first part is called *Camfof* *Ca- men*: The second *Cingifoy* *Ca-men*: The third *Pobanfof* *Ca-men*. And doubtles all these moun- tainous Countries are much different from the other Countries out of which they enter them. For the Woods vpon them are finer and thicker growne with trees, bearing euerie where diuers sorts of Plants. These three Defarts are frequented by none in a manner but *Tartars*, and *Samoisids*, who onely hunt after those costly Fures, which are to pay their tribute to the Emperour of *Moscovia*. The Mountaines of *Pobanfof* *Ca-men* are higher then the rest, and for the most part covered with SNOW and Cloudes, and therefore difficult for Travellers to passe ouer: but by little and little they haue a gentle descent. From thence they come to *Vergataria*, in which Towne they must abide vntill the Spring, by reason of the Riuer *Tocr*, which arising not farre from thence, is all the rest of the yeere very shallow.

But the Spring approaching, when the SNOW melts from the hoary Hills, and the Land wa- ters arise, it is passed ouer with Skiffes and small Boats. *Vergataria* is the first Towne of the Country of *Siberia*, and was begun to be builded with some other Townes within these one and twenty yeeres. It is reasonably full of buildings, and the lands about it are tilled as in *Moscovia*. Here there is resident for the Emperour of *Moscovia* a Gouvernour, which yearly at the beginning of the Spring, by way of the Riuer doth distribute great store of Come, and Vitals among the Castles with Garrisons throughout all *Siberia*: furnishing all in like man- ner the Moscovites, which remayne beyond the Riuer *Oby*. For in those places the ground is not yet tilled; and the Samoisids, as before is said, for the most part feed on the flesh of wilde beasts.

This Iournall
to the North-
east was hard-
ly obtained by
some I ends
in Court.
The great dan-
ger for im-
porting this Iour-
nall.

Lainia 17 dayes
Iourney distant
from *Ofol*, as
signifieth the
Iugoria.
Iugoria,
Riuer Petora,
New Riuer 3
weekes Iour-
ney from *Lainia*.
From *Neem* to
Wifera 5 dayes
Iourney.
From *Wifera* to
Sail Camfof
9 dayes.
Volga by the
Tartars called
Kail.
Sail Camfof.

The Riuer
Soiba.
The Riuer
Ocfina.
Mountaines in
three parts,
Camfof *Ca-*
men, *Cingifoy* *Ca-*
men, *Pobanfof* *Ca-*
men.
Vergataria.
Tocr Riuer.

Vergataria the
first Towne of
Siberia.
1590.
Russian Count:
neur.

Five dayes
journey to
Iaphan.

Tahab 3 migh-
ty River 200.
leagues from
Tara.
From Iaphan
to Tahab 11.
dayes journey
by land.
Many traell
fare beyond
Oby toward the
East & South.
Tahab is the
chiefe Towne
of Siberia.

Tahab is the
River Tria.
Tahab River.
Tahab River.

Pobomy a
Towne.

Tria River.
Obygorod
rauch.

Zergolia town
built in an
Island of the
River Oby.

Naxosfey
Caste 200.
leagues above
Zergolia.

They traell
400 leagues
into the Is-
land beyond
Naxosfey.
The Kingdom
of Borsu Gudenus.

Downe the River *Tara*, in five dayes they come to *Iaphania*, a Towne builded and inhabited within three yeeres. Thence againe they passe downe the *Tara*, and huing proceeded ur, to cut out it in certaine places, for shortning of the way. In these places there now dwell here and there, *Tartars* and *Samoieds*, liuing for the most part vpon Carrell and Eding.

At length leaving *Tara*, they come to the mighty River *Tahab*, distant from *Vergaria* about two hundred leagues. And from thence they proceed farther to *Tinna*, a populous Towne, and the Winter time, in the face of twelve dayes. And here is vied much buying and selling of place, for such as determine to stay in the Countrey not about sixe monthes. But many doe search the further part, and traell farre beyond the *Oby* toward the East and South.

From *Tinna* they come to *Tobolska*, the chiefe of all the Townes of *Siberia*: wherein is the seat of the chiefe Gouverneur of *Siberia*, and of the *Moscouites* that are in the same. To this as beyond *Oby* the tributes, which being brought together, and guarded with Souldiers, are after the chief Market of commodities brought out of *Moscouia*; the *Tartars* out of the who, the farther that the report of these Countreies reacheth, doe in so much the greater numbers places there are Churches and Chapells erected, wherein the *Greekish* Religion is exercised with diuers Superstitions. But howsoeuer, no man is forced against his will to their Religion: but certaine gentle means are vied by the *Russes*, by which these people are perswaded and

The Cite *Tobolska* is situated on the River *Tria*, which with a most forcible streame, and as it were another *Danubius*, rising from the South, taketh his course toward the *Oby*, through the Cite taketh her name. Into this falleth the River *Tafa*, which seemeth to spring from the North-east, and from certaine Mountaines there vpon the Coast. On the side of this River the *Moscouites* haue of late builded a Towne, called *Pobomy*, inhabited with dwellers dwelling out very pleasant Woods, wherein diuers sorts of wilde beastes doe breed, as Panthers, Conces, toward the North-east. *Tria* with almost like distance from *Tobolska*, falleth into the *Oby*. And at the mouth of it was builded a Towne, called *Obygorod*, but afterward razed downe by notwithstanding I guesse to haue been either the extremity of the cold, or that the Towne stood for which cause about fiftie leagues above that razed Towne, they builded another vpon an Island because winds blow faintly, or for the highesse of the house: so that, they vile small layles, either small euery where very broad; notwithstanding, they drew their Boats in it with ropes, altogether after the same sort that they traell vpon the Rivers of *Moscouia*.

Two hundred leagues above *Zergolia*, they came to *Naxosfey*, a Caste builded threese yeeres agoe, at which time the Gouverneur sent certaine men thither out of *Siberia*, to seduce those Countreies profitable for mankind, and fit to build Townes in. Wherefore at that time they builded this Caste, and furnished it with a certaine Garrison, in a very pleasant, whollome, warme, and being situated toward the South-east, by little and little grew to be a Cite. The Inhabitants whereof were enioyned to proceed by degrees into further and more temperate Countreies, and withall: whereby at length they might more largely extend the Dominion, and spread abroad four hundred leagues, they found goodly Countreies, but not inhabited. And whereas ten yeeres past, hauing sayled two hundred leagues vpon the River *Oby*, they lighted vpon a Countrey very fruitful and pleasant, which was very temperate, and free from all difcommodities, and the Winters very short, and in a manner none at all. They took occasion thereupon to returne into who hauing receiued such good tidings, forthwith commanded the Gouverneur of *Siberia*, that with all speed hee should cause a Cite to be builded there. The Gouverneur obeyed, and there was a Caste builded vpon his commandement, with certaine houses adioyned; so that now is

is a large Cite; The name thereof is *Toma*, because they vnderstood, that a great multitude of *Tartars* in times past were leached there, of whom this Cite tooke that name for the pleasantness of the situation thereof. And it is reported that these *Tartars* had at that time a King, whose name was *Alun*: Whereby it came to passe, that the Cite which was first builded, hold out many affaules of sunly people that dwell in thole Champion Countreies. And now this Cite is so mighty, that in procelle of time, some reasonable great Kingdome is likely to grow out of it.

Furthermore, betwene this Caste of *Naxosfey*, and the Cite *Toma*, and *Siberia*, the *Moscouites* daily doe discouer many people dwelling in the Inland parts, (some of whom call themselves *Ofachbes*, and now are growne into one bodie with the *Tartars*, *Samoieds*, and *Russes*, liuing friendly together; they haue many Kings among them, almost like vnto the *Indians*.) I speake of the petty Kings, not of the greater Kings of *India*. And to bee briefe, the *Moscouites* haue proceeded so farre into that mayne Land, that we haue just cause to marvell thereat. Moreover, there are many Castles and Townes betwene the Rivers of *Oby* and *Tria*, builded almost at the same time when *Tobolska* was, and are now proper Townes: whose Inhabitants are *Moscouites*, *Tartars*, and *Samoieds* of their kind, which we call *The same Samoieds*, in respect of thole which are altogether wild.

And the first of the Townes is *Tara*: from which place it is neere ten dayes journey between *Obiad* and *Tria*. Then *lorgetum*, builded about fiftene yeeres past. *Bejebus*, and *Mangosofsoi*. *lorgetum*, both of them named *lorgetum* toward the South. The Inhabitants that dwell on the west side of the River *Oby*, seeke daily to discouer more and more. On this side of *Oby* are seated the Cites *Tobolska*, *Siberia*, *Bejebus*, and certaine others, builded vpon certaine Rivers: and more are builded day. Beyond *Oby* are *Naxosfey*, *Toma*, and diuers other Cites, the Inhabitants whereof infected of Horres fy, or exceeding swift Dogs, which they take with diuers kinds of fishes, and especially with *Thornbackes*; because they thinke they be made the stronger with that kinde of food, *lorgetum*, wherof I spake before, is builded in an Hand of the River *Oby*.

Also about *Naxosfey* as men traile toward the East, they meete with the River *Tela*: on the bankes wherof they haue builded a Caste, named *Comgof-fcoi*. The Russian Souldiers of which Caste, together with the Inhabitants of *Naxosfey*, about fteen yeeres past, were commanded by the Gouverneur of *Siberia* to traell East, and diligently to search what unknowne Nations dwelt in thole parts. Therefore traelling through certaine vast Deserts, for the space of tenne weekes or thereabouts, passing in the way through many faire Countreies, many Woods, and Rivers, at length they espied certaine Cottages set vp in the fields, and certaine Herds or Companies of people. But because they had *Samoieds* and *Tartars* for their guides, which were acquainted with thole places, they were not afraid. The people came vnto them reuerently, and with humble behaviour, and signified by the *Samoieds* and *Tartars*, that they were called *Tingofes*, and that their dwelling was vpon the bankes of the great River *Iensifei*, which they said did spring from the South South-east, but that they knew not the head thereof. These people were desirous to see the Russians, and to see how they swelled vnder their throats, and in their speech they thrilled like Turkies-cocks. Their language seemed not much to differ from the *Samoieds*, which also vnderstood many of their words.

Iensifei being a River farre bigger then *Oby*, hath high mountains on the East, among which are some that cast out fire and brimstone. The Countrey is plaine to the West, and exceeding fertile, stored with plants, flowers, and trees of diuers kinds. Also many strange fowles grow therein, and there is great abundance of rare Fowles. *Iensifei* in the spring outfloweth the fields about fiftene leagues, in like manner as they report vnto vs, as *Nilus* doth *Egipt*. Wherewith the *Tingofes* being well acquainted, doe keepe beyond the River, and in the mountains, vntill it decreaseth, and then returne, and bring downe their herds of Cattell into the plaines.

The *Tingofes* being a very gentle people, by the perswasion of the *Samoieds*, without delay submitted themselves to the same Gouvernours which they obeyed, whom they reuerenced as kind of Gods. But what God they worship, or with what rites, it is vncertaine, neither as yet can be knowne, the *Moscouites* being negligent searchers into such things.

Neither heretofore will I marvell, that the Streight of *Wangats* be stopped vp to the North-east, with such huge Mountaines of Ice, since the Rivers *Oby* and *Iensifei*, and very many more, whose names are not yett knowne, poure out to huge quantitie thereof, that in a manner it is incredible. For it cometh to passe in the beginning of the spring, that in places neere vnto the Sea, the Ice through the excessive thicke and multitude thereof, doth carrie downe whole woods before it. And without doubt this is the cause, that about the shoares of the Streight of *Wangats*, so great abundance of floating wood is euery where scene. And whereas at that Streight neere vnto *Nova Zembla*, it is extreme cold, it is no marvell, if in regard of the narrowness of the Streight, so huge heapes of Ice are gathered and frozen together, that in the end they grow to fixtie, or at least to fiftie fathoms thicknesse, as this present yeere (1612) they measured the same, which at the coit of *Isaac Lamer* went thither in a small Bark, in whole

The Cite
Toma.

Tartar King.

Obachbes
1 People.

Tara a Towne.

lorgetum.

Bejebus.

Mangosofsoi.

gorod.

Naxosfey.

Toma beyond.

Reyne Deere

and exceeding

swift Dogs

vied infected

of Horres,

and fed with

Fishes.

Tela River to

the East be-
yond

Oby.

Comgof-fcoi

Castle.

Ten weekes

trauell East-

ward from

Oby: wherein

the *Tingofes*

were first dis-

couered.

Tingofes a peo-

ple dwelling

in Companies

vnto the great

River *Iensifei*.

The *Tingofes*

deformed

with swellings

vnder their

throats: a dif-

ficulte attending

drinkers of

brn-water.

Mountaines

on the East

side of *Iensifei*

casting out fire

and blim flames.

The ouerflow-

ing of *Iensifei*

in the spring

as it may seem

from melted

snow.

Reason why

Iensifei is stop-

ped with Ice.

Ice 600 to 1000

salmons thicke

in the Streight

of *Wangats*.

§. III.

A Note of the Travels of the Russies over Land, and by Water from Mezen, where the Bay of Saint Nicholas is Pechora, to Obi, to Yenisse, and to the River Geta, even unto the Frontiers of Cataia; brought into England by Master JOHN MERRICK, the English Agent for Moscow.

CHAP. VII.

The River Mezen to Pechora, is a thousand Versts; and the same is trauelled with Ryeve. Hence, from Pechora to Adonias-Rock, or the troubled River, and at the parts of *Yenissey*, it is trauelled in Boats called: Coaches in four Weekes. At this place there is a certain Quai, where the fore said Boats or Vessels are downed by men. Out of *Adonias-Rock*, or the troubled River, passing this Quai-hall, they enter into *Belma-Rock*, or the Green River. From *Belma-Rock*, or the Green River to Obi, is three Weekes rowing, running downe with the Current; but with a faire wind it is no more but three dayes and three nightes Iourney. From Obi to Tasi-Castle, is a Weekes rowing. From Tasi-Castle to the River *Tenisy* upon long Wooden Pattens through the Snow, is three Weekes traualle. But through the deepe Channell in the aforesaid Vessels, called Coaches, is four Weekes traualle. Bringing them to a place, called *Torran-hamlet*, *Zembla*, that is, The Wintering place of one called *Torran-hamlet*. Having trauelled to this *Torran-hamlet*, *Zembla*, they come out on the backe side to a place called, The River of *Tenisy*, being a Route of Rocky shales, laid hand of *Tenisy*. Beyond them live a people called The *Belma*; and beyond the *Belma* inhabit the people of *Selache*. These people report concerning *Tenisy* the Great, and *Tenisy* the Lesser. They say beyond this fore said *Tenisy* inhabit the people *Ambo*, and the *Obidi*, which is a kind of *Tenisy*. Also beyond the *Tenisy* is a River called *Geta*, which was traueled, since yeares, after which one of the *Russ* of *Yenissey* named *Woff*, returned into *Siberia*; and he reported, that he was traueled from *Tenisy* to *Geta* a Summer. Likewise, this said *Woff* reported, that a *Samiad* told him, that in *Tenisy* the greater were Vessels of a great burthen, some that drawne with the Rope, by a very great number of people: but hee could not tell what people they were, neither whether they did intend to trauele with the said Vessels.

CHAP. VIII.

A Voyage made to Pechora 1611. Written by WILLIAM GOVERNOR of Hull, appointed chiefe Pilot, for Discourie to Obi, &c.

The twentieth of April we weighed Anchor at *Belma* in the River of *Tenisy*, then called the *Amoy*, whereof *James Roden* was Master, and laying along the Coast of *Yenissey*, *Scotland*, *Norway*, and *Finmark*, on the eleventh of the next month of May, we found our selves in the latitude of 71 degrees 40 minutes.

The twelfth, we ranne forth eight leagues North North-east, the wind being at South South-east, and found our selves in the latitude of 73 degrees 40 minutes, and at 50 miles we had thoughts of: *Choris Land*; for we were entoyed by our Commission to touch there, although it were three degrees to the North out of our way.

The thirteenth, being Whitsunday it cleared vp, and then we did see *Choris Land* five leagues East South-east from vs.

The fourteenth, being faire weather, we stood to the Northwards, thinking to have gone on shore, but we could not for Ice and labouring to Land on the South side of the land, we met with *James Poole* about Evening in the *Elizabeth*, who came as then to the land, and was fet forth by the Right Worshipsfull Company of our *Russian* Merchants, to discouer further Northward, from eighty degrees toward the North Pole. Then we stood to the Eastward, where we found great store of Ice.

The fifteenth, we went on the South-side of the land, in hope of the arrivall of the *Marie Charyev*, which being a ship of nine four Tunnes, was fet forth very chargeably by the aforesaid *Russian* Company, and had in her five *Barkes*, being excellent Whale-killers of Saint John de Luz, for the killing of the Whale on the Coast of *Greenland*, in a Road called *Croffe Road*, standing

standing exceeding farre to the North, even in the latitude of 79. degrees and better. The same day at night, seeing that there we could do no good, we determined to proceed on our Voyage for the River of *Pechora*: and Letters being given one to the other for Testimoniall of our meeting in that place, we left *James Poole*, and directed our course to the Eastward.

The two and twentieth of May, we came to a small land, called *Big Hole* by *Tapani* Harbour. The three and twentieth, we arrived at the Ile of *Kidim* in *Lappia*.

The four and twentieth, *Iofas Logan*, which was appointed Factor for *Pechora*, and my selfe with two more, went to *Olenia*, and stayed there all the hie and twentieth, being Saturday, where we found a ship of *Tarmouth*, whereof *James Wright* of Hull was Master, of whom we learned the proceeding of the *Hollanders*.

The fiftenth of June, in the morning we had fight of the Coast of *Lappia*, a little short of *Cape Comfort*, and met with a ship of *Amsterdam*, by which we sent Letters to Master *John Merrick* our English Agent, then Resident in *Celsingre*; and we had two Hogheads of Beere of them.

The eight, we plyed to *Cape Comfort*, the wind at South-east.

The ninth being Sunday, in the morning we put off from the Coast of *Lappia*, to crosse over the *White Sea*, to the Cape of *Calina* corruptly, and commonly called *Candinas*. At noone we passed through some Ice, the weather being thicke and foggie.

The eleuenty, we plyed to the Cape of *Calina*, passing through much Ice, the wind at North North-east. And therefore we thought it better to goe to the Southward againe; and in the Evening we came to an Anchor in ten fathomes. This night we had a fore storme; the wind at North-east.

The twelfth, in the morning we weighed, and in weighing brake our Anchor: and then we stood to the Southward, and came to an Anchor; and at night we went on shore for Wood, and Water, where was good store of Drift Wood: And within a league of Rocks on the West-side of *Calina* there lay ten Lodis or *Ruffe* small fishes, some foure or fifteene Tunnes the bigness of a Towne called *Pinega*, all which were bound for *Nova Zembla*, to kill the Morfe: with the men of which *Pinega* we had some conference, and did see their Provisions: which were Lancets of their fashion, and Harping Irons, their Victuals were Sale-fish, Butter, Bacon, Meale, their Drinke Quaffe.

The sixteenth, in the morning we weighed and stood our course for the Ile of *Caligine*, the wind being at South South-west, and did find the Ice that was close to the shore to be open: but at night finding that we could not fyre our course for the Ice, we thought it better to stay, and so came to an Anchor.

The seuenteenth, we weighed in the morning, and stood along the shore, which did lye South-east by East, and North-west by West. And in the after-noon, we went on shore with our shallop, and came to a River, which we called *Haktuyts River*, where we did see certainly *Samiads*, with their Deere: but when they perceived vs, they fled into the Land, carrying with them such things as in haste they could get together: but left most of their necessities, as Bowes, Arrows, long Spears, wanting Iron heads burnt at the end, Harping Irons, Wimbles, and Morfe-skinnes, lying hid, some in one place, some in another: which we caused our men to encounter, and would not suffer them to take any thing away: only I tooke the Pizzell of a Morfe which they had lately killed; and *Iofas Logan* left a Knife, that they might not shame vs hereafter. The same Evening we anchored and layed all night.

The eighteenth, we weighed, and at noone we came to an Harbour, which, as we thought, was the very fame where Master *Stephen Barrow* was in his Discourie of *Udiga*, and *Nova Zembla*, 1556, where there is twelve, or thirteene foot of high water upon the Barre, and within six or seven fathomes. Also in this place were three Lodis of *Funge*, which when they saw vs come in, rowed out, and at night returned, and some of their men came aboard of vs, and told vs that they could not paffe for Ice; and said, that they were bound for *Sharkis Gooka*, or *Shor Bay* to fish for certayne fishes; which they call *Omitie*, which are somewhat like a *Shad*, and for Morfes.

The twentieth, *Iofas Logan* and my selfe went ouer to the Mayne, which was distant two leagues, and came to a great River in 67. degrees and 40. minutes, where there had been people: and there we saw foure or five great white fishes swimming, which are foure or five yards long, and called by the *Ruffes* *Beluga*, whereof they make Oyle, whereof afterward we found at *Pechora*, great store to be voyled.

The one and twentieth, we went on our men for Wood, for there was good store of Flote-wood as we had found all the Coast along, but none growing.

The two and twentieth, in the morning we came ouer the Barre, the wind at South South-east, directing our course for the Ile of *Caligine*; and at noone we passed through much Ice, which lay so thicke that we could not fyre, but rooke in our sayles, and made fast our ship to a piece of Ice.

The three and twentieth, in the morning we set sayle, and plyed to the Wind-ward, the wind at South-east, with raine: and at night we moved to a Cape of Ice.

The foure and twentieth, in the morning we let sayle, and pylled to wind-ward, the wind at South-west to get cleere of the Ice; and at noone we obserued and found our feloes to bee in 67. degrees 12. minutes, and in the after-noon we had light of the Land againe, being foure leagues to the Southward of the aforeaid Harbour; and finding the Tyde to set very fore upon the shoare to the Westward, we stood to the Eastward, bearing through the Ice, and at twelue at night we were to a piece of Ice.

that we could not perform further: then we made fall to a piece of Ice: the wind at North North-east, thicke fogge, and blowing hard: the six and twentieth, we set our fore-top-sails, the wind at North North-east, blowing hard: the thicke fogge: we stood sometimes one way, sometimes another, as we could find the Ice open and thicke, where we had light of the shoare, being four leagues off, and the Ice lying in circles, that we could make no means to get farther from lay lill, the Ice lying very close, with great force, we went on the six and twentieth, were

The eight and twentieth, in the morning it was cleere, and the Land did beare North by West fouen leagues off, and then we set sayle, passing to the Eastward till noone: then we made fast to a peece of Ice, it being very foggie: the wind at West North-west. And the same day at eight in the after-noon we were loosed from the Ice, it being cleere, the wind at North-west. And at mid-night we got cleere of the Ice, keeping our course East North-east.

The nine and twentieth, at eight in the morning, we had light of Cape Smetino, the winds at North North-west, with thicke foggie weather : At noone, finding the Ice to lye close to the shoare, we cast about to the Westward. And at eight in the Evening, we came to an Anchor in tenne fathomes ; and then I went on shoare, where there were two *Russian Crofies*: the Land was smooth, and full of Iren Ponds, being a kind of white Chalkie Cliftes. At our comming aboard, we weighed and stood nearer to the shoare becaufe of the Ice.

The thirtieth, in the morning the Ice came so extremely vpon vs, that we could not weigh; for our men being call from the Capstan, our Cable brake, and so we lost an Anchor. Then seeing we could not passe to the Eastward, we stood to the Westward of Cape Smetina, into the afore-said deep Bay in seven fathoms, where we anchored.

[illegible]

The fourth, we layd along the shoare with faire weather, hauing the winde variable. The fifth, we playd to the Eastward, the wind at North-east by East faire weather. The sixth, we playd along the shoare, the wind at North by East. And in the afternoon we paffed through much Ice. The seventh, we playd through the Ice to the Eastward, the winde at East North-east, thicke and foggie. The eight, with cleere weather, the winde at North North-east, we playd to the Eastward; and at noon observed the Sunne hauing 69. degrees 40. minutes: At Evening we had sight of the Land to the Eastward of the Riuer of *Pechora*; and thinking to get into the shoare we could not for the shoale water.

The ninth, in the morning we flood backe to find the Barre or entrance of the River of *Pechora*. And in the after-noon, seeing the Sand over the Ice, which was not broken off from the floare, I went thither with my hallop, and going on floare, we espied three Crofies, and certayne *Ruffes* walking vpon the Sand; who told vs, that that was the place that we desired: and so one of them came aboard our ship to bring vs ouer the Barre. But coming to floath water, we durst not trust his skill, but stood backe againe, and came to an Anchor. *Uladshah* was

The tenth, in the morning I went to found the Barre; where we had eleven and tenne, and in one place but nine foot water. And comming aboard wee fet fayle to come in. And in going ouer the Barre we were on ground; but, God be thanked, wee got well ouer, and came to an Anchor in six fathomes.

The eleventh, the Icebrake off from the shoare, and came so faſt vpon vs, that we could not ſhift from it, but were put on ground vpon a Sandſeyt hee thanked without any harme. The ſame day leauing our ſhipplying to, *Jofeph Logan* our Factor, my ſelfe, *William Purſſeſſe*, being rowed in our Skiffe by three of our Mariners, took our way toward the Towne ouer a ſhalld Sea, which the *Ruffes* call, *The Dry Sea*; which may very wel be called, For on the ſharbord or Weſt ſide being 60 yd is a low dry Sand, and on the Lorbord or Eaſt ſide is ſhalld water, that is three, four, or five fathoms deepe. And ſeuenteen leagues within to the South-weſt is an Iſland called *Tahiti*; that is, three, four,

weft, nere vpon twentie leagues, all in shoald water; and then you fhall come to the fight of a high Land called *The Bolnan*; which in the *Ruffe* Tongue fignifieth, a *Blocke*: which you muft leave on the Larboard, or Eaft fide. And be fure to keepe the channell, which doth trend South-weft, and South-weft by Weft. By report of the Inhabitants the River hath two and feventie mouthes.

the twelfth, we passed over the *Drie Sea*, (which the *Ruffes* call in their Language, *Suck Sea*;) the twentieth, the mouth of the *Riuer Pescara*: where we found many small flands, some a mile or some two miles in length, and so floathal water, that we could not get to the shoore with our Shallop, but lay in her all night at an anchor, being vncertaine which way to take: and feeling ourselfe much distressed, we were forced to take the way that we thought best, and so came to goe to land, at the very mouth of the *Riuer*, where we stayed all the night, hauing much wind and fogge. The fourteenth, being Sunday, we let faile from the land, the Sea going much higher: and at noone we came by Gods direction, into one of the chiefe entrances of the *Riuer* (the which we called *Sancti Martini*) where we were met by the *Indians*, who made the *Spaniards* their first acquaintance: that they could, and gave vs directions how to goe to the *Towne*.

The fifteenth, we came to a Sari or Ferme houle of one of the principall men of the Towne who bid vs kindly welcome : and as the place and season afforded, hee made vs good cheere He lay there at this time, to take Duckes, Swannes, Geefe, and other Fowles : for then was the time of the yeere. Their feathers they sell, and their bodies they falc for winter prouision

The sixteenth, we came to the Towne of *Puffocera*, which standeth vpon a Lake. There was no Gentleman or Gouernour in the Towne at our arriual: for he had destroyed the Caffe, and

fled away the last Winter. For certain days we could have no answer, where they might
 stay or go, all the chiefs men being abroad for their Winters provision. But the chief Cusumom
Maphe, lending men to know their minds, the three and twentieth day of the same month
 of July, we were embraced of them, and desired to stay, and they appointed us an house to dwell
 in. Furthermore, they told vs that the Riuer *Pachora* was more convenient for vs, then the
 Riuer of *Dajna*: and that a great part of the goods, which come to *Colimero* upon *Dajna*,
 doe passe in one place or other by the Riuer *Pachora*, which, they lay, runneth through *Siberia*:
 and how much farther they themselves know not. The five and twentieth, in the morning, ha-
 ving one of their boats filled with feathers, we departed from the Towne, taking our leaues of
Jaia Logan, who stayed behind.

with Meale, lending her way to the Towne by the *Raffles* that brought her downe.
vnder the towne, we got out our goods, which were appointed to be left at *Pechora*
and then we charged the *Arcticke* to goe to the *Loose* of *Thence* and twentieth, we
weighed anchor, and fell lower downe, the wind North-west, the ice roode
full, and in the after-noon two Lodias that were fishing for *Omulus*, went out to sea
at North-west by West. The one and thirtieth, the wind being at West North-west, there
came in foure and twentie fables of Lodias or Coches, all bound for *Angemuse*; but the yee-
ring being far spent they gaue out their *Voyage*, and went to the Towne of *Pellicore*, to winter
Out of one of the which Lodias we hired a man belonging to the Towne, to play with *Wiblow*
and two to winter with *Raffin*; by our goods, told the Lodia came, which we had hired. Which
two were to winter at *Meale*, the third in the Country. The aforesaid foure and twentie Lo-
dias were of *Cumers*, *Pisora*, *Meale*, and *BeLoo* country.

This first of August, the wind at Meen, we weighed, and, God be thanked, came fairly out
 of the *bay of Peckora*. From thence we directed our course for *Nova Zembla*: and at noon
 were to Ice, we having flied many points of our Compass, at mid-night we took in
 our Laylines, and were to Ice, a piece of Ice; the weather being very thick and foggy. The Ice
 coming being very close, and finding we were to puffe to the Northward for Ice, we determined to
 return; and because the yeere was so late, we were to puffe to the Northward for Ice, we determined to
 give us there any good lucke, for the bearing of the Ice, charges of the Ice, if it pleased God to
 at eight in the Evening we got cleere of the Ice, keeping our course by the way of Ice, which
 did lie East by North, and East North-east. The third, at noone we had sight of *Calidney* Land
 took the latitude, being on the North side of the Land which was 69° . degrees 30. minutes
 and at night I went on shore to see the Land, which was high clay ground; and I came where
 there was ane of Slight-falcons: but they did sicll away fauone, and I took two, and

The *Belany*, or
East head land
of the River
Pechora.
The channel
strength
South - 4

An Island near the mouth of the River. They find one of the chief entrances of the River. They come to a Ferme house of a principal man of the Town.

The Towne is
called *Pufte*.

*Pechora runs
neth through
Siberia, and fast
then*

Two Coches
or Lodias,
bound for
Mouguzza.
He buyeth two
Falcons.
The stocke of
goods left in
Puslozera.

24. Lodias
bound for *Mun-
gunza*, which
is to the East-
ward of *Ob*.

They safely
pass the Bird
of Prey.

Calgoiens Island
69. degrees, 20
minutes.

North-west, we observed, and found ourselves in 70. degrees and 40. minutes. The first, the wind being at South South-west, we steered North-North-west four leagues, and were in 72. degrees 34. minutes. The fourth, the wind was variable, the weather fair: we steered North-west by West, eight and thirty leagues, and at last had the latitude of 74. degrees 30. minutes. And at eight in the Evening we founded, and had eight fathoms green Oze. The eight, the fathoms Oze: and at three in the afternoon, the wind coming North, we cast about forty Wellward.

The ninth, fair weather, we layed thirteen leagues West, the wind at North. At noone we founded, and had an hundred and twentieth fathomes, greene slime. The tenth, the wind was variable, with fogge and raine : we steered West North-west five and twentie leagues : at noone we observed, and had the latitude of 74 degrees 57. minutes. The eleventh, was thick fogge weather : we layed four and twentie leagues West : and at noone the evening was very dark, and we saw many fathomes, oft Zea. The thirteenth, at eight we had sight of *Ches. Cone*, and moored our ship, it before we did fee it : and the faune Evening we got into the which was but little. Here we layed twelve days, taking what it pleased God to send.

The fixe and twentieth of August, we left the Iland, because the time of the yeere was farre spent, and returned for *England*, where (blessed be God) we safely arrived in *Saint Catherine*, Poole, in the River of *Thames*, on Saturday being *Saint Matthews* day, and the one and twentieth of September, 1611.

There were in the Hauzen of the River *Pechora*, at our being there, about thirty Lodias, or small *Ruffe* thips, having ten, twelve, fourteen, and sixteen men in each of them: which purposed to have gone, some to *Nova Zembla*, some to *Tajff gorodok*, and some to other places in *Mongumfej*, to the East of the River *Ob*. Their Lodias for the most part, were of *Vishug, Calmogro, Pomeg, Mexen, and Pechora*.

Allo, we that went up to the Towne, found about fiftie Caycuks, or Boats of foure, five, six, and seven tunnes a peece, fishing in the River of *Peskoba* for Salmon, and other kinds of fish; most of which Cayuks come from the great Towne of *Ojising*, and the Townes therunto adjoining, by the River *Ing*, through the Land into the River *Peskoba*, and at the *Bolmes*, at the Ri- 30

CHAPTER IX

A Letter of RICHARD FINCH to the Right Worshipfull Sir THOMAS SMITH, Governour; and to the rest of the Worshipfull Companie of English Merchants, trading into Russia: touching the former Voyage, and other observations.

Right Worshipfull, my dutie remembred vnto you, with prayer to God for the preferuation of your healths and prosperous success in all your worchie affaires. My laite Letters vnto you were from *Tymon* in *Lapland*, by *Thomas Hars-castle of Hull*, dated the foure and twentieth of Maye, last. The other, the nine and twentieth of May from *Kydin* nere *Camen*, by *Thomas Hars-castle*. The said fore-said Letters were directed to our Gouverneur, the right Worshipfull Sir *Thomas Smith*, Knight. I will now please you further to vnderstand, That the ninth day of Iuly, we came to the towne of *Kluer* of *Pechora*, which the *Russes* call *Pechorokij Zauoiti* with our 50 found no mayne Land, gave a small Sounde into the Ice, and hard to finde : for we fame, we went *William Gordon* in our Shallop makinge a waye through the Ice. And labouering to and fro along the landed, espied two Crociss standing on the land : and presently our men, whose boats as they were coming toward them. These men belonged to three Boats of *Pinega*, which Boats had been in our companie not long before, at a place called by them, *Premoya*, by vs, *Oufcyra*, but by other called goe no further. These men were on board of our ship, and told vs, that we should to the Towne we must goe in Land, in the place, that their Vellels, called *Couches*, rid in ; and findinge of the Towne. After our gettingt our waye, giuing vs directions to layle by, for the better we came to an anchor, we rode in great danger by the abundance of Ice, and that we both of the ebbe and flood, which drove the same Ice forcibly against vs. For, the cleutenth of Iuly, lying in three fathomes water, a peece of an Island of Ice, let with such a power against our ship, that it drove vs out of our riding into eight foot and an halfe, and nine foot water.

They arrive in the Port of Peshava the ninth of July.

Two Cr
standing
the land.
Pine.

Ship endangered by ice.

CHAP. 9. *Emperours Priviledges. Pewter dishes great commodities.*

The eleventh of Iuly, Master *Jofeph Logan*, *William Gordon*, and *William Partridge*, with our Shallop went vp to the Towne of *Pechora*, taking direction of the *Ruffes* for the finding of the way. Neighbourhood, two dayes after their departure from our ship, they had mifaken their way, if by chance they had not met with a small *Ruff* Boat, in which were *Ruffes* that directed them. Being about thirty *Vetils* from the Towne, they came to the boufe of one *Vafli Dadoobane*, who that the preſent is one of the chieft Cuſtomers; by which Cuſtomers the Towne of *Pechora* is now gouerned, ſince there was no Gentleman from the *Mofco*. This man gaue them good enterainment, and ſent vp with them a man of his owne, fearing that the people would be amazed at our mens ſudden and vnexpected coming. Yet as ſoone as they ſpied our people, they were all exceedingly afraid. Diuers of them with their women fled into the Woods, untill that one of the chieft Cuſtomers had ſent for them other Cuſtomers, who at that time were all out of Towne. But being met together, Maſter *Logan* ſhewed them the Priviledges, of fullneſſ of their Emperours granted to their Worſhips. After the perusing of which, with the good report giuen of Maſter *Merkie*, your Agent, and our Nation by one of *Colmers*, with whom Maſter *Logan* was acquainted; the Towne-men were well ſatiſfied: and appointed our people an Houſe. And many of them ſent *Breid*, *Pies*, *Ducks*, *Fith*, and ſuch like unto them, entreyning them very well, according to the faſhion of the Countrey, with continual admiration how they found the Towne.

Touching the Inhabitants, there is no doubt, but that they will be glad of our trading thither. Neuerthelesse, by that which I haue heard and perceiued, it is very likely, that the same will be disaffaill to the Merchants of the Countrey, and others that trauell thither in the Winter time, out of many parts of *Russia*: and also, to them that trade in the Summer time, by Sea to *Mongesey*, and through the Riuer of *Pecora* in Cayucks to *Perru*, *Onf-salme*, and *Pechora*.

The tenth and twentieth of July, our Shallop with a small *Ruffe* Boat, returned to our ship from *Pecora* Towne, departing from the fame the Thursday before, being the fife and twentieth of July, in our forraid Shallop, and *Ruffe* Boat, were fent downe by *Tofia Lagen*, five and fortye bags of white Partridge feathers, and an hundred and feventie white *Foxe* skines, thefe Feathers and *Foxe* skines, are bought of a *Collegio* man, to be payd for the fame in *Ruffa* by *Mafter Mericte*; and, as I vnderftand, not fo cheape as others doe buye thure of the *Fowlers* 30 themfelves. But if two men were left, one at *Pecora*, another at *Oufk-ximne*, and *Pern*, with ready money and a little commodities, much good might be done in the Winter time: by buying of *Sables*, *Beuers*, *Beuers* wombs, *Squerrils*, *Foxe* skines white and dunne, *Loth* hides, and *Deere* skines; and for the transportation of your goods to *Pecora*, or bringing of your goods from *Pecora*; the fame may be done from *Arch-angel* vpon the *Dynna* to *Mexco*, and from *Mexco* to *Pecora*, *Oufk-ximne*, and *Pern*, both by Winter our Land, and in Summer through the fresh water Riuers, or alongst the floare with speed, and with a little charge: as by the manner of their ordinary trauell appeareth, as it hath beene of a truech deliuered mee, from the

40 The first of August, came into *Parkok Zaunaw*, or the Haven of *Pecobra*, six and twenty
 41 Lodas or Indians, with their little Boats, from *Oufing, Colingee, Pingee, and Mescan* all of
 42 them being bound for *Mangrove*; but having been crooked with contrary winds, and
 43 yeere being spent, they gaue ouer their intended Voyage: purposing with the next faire wind
 44 to layle to the Towne of *Pecobra*, there to lay vp their Lodas and commodities till the next
 45 Spring, and themselves with their small Boats or Wherries to goe home, passing from thence
 46 vp the Riuer of *Pecoa*, which they told me they could easily doe in a monthes time. As forone
 47 as this Fleet of *Lodas* was come to an anchor, many of them came aboard of our ship, wondering
 48 to see what we were. They demanded of me, how we came thither, and what the intent of our
 49 coming was: a which I answered, that we were sent by the King of *Virginia* to buy of them
 50 furred to be Merchants, who asked to buy of us, *Remains*, *Cap-clothes*, *Aqua uita*, &c.
 51 especially, they asked for *Little Powder* D thereof, which I vnderstand to be *Gunpowder*,
 52 them to the *Samoiedo*, at a great rate. I answered them, that the goods which we had brought,
 53 were partly already at *Pecobra*, and the rest was to be transported thither, as foon as the *Veifell*
 54 came: that was hired to carrie the same vp: so that, if any of them were minded to buy of our
 55 commodities, they might haue it of one of our Countrey-men there. After which, two or
 56 three of them demanded of me, whether I would buy any *Sables*, or *Squerrils*: which was but
 57 a brag. At this time they began to beeing on board together, some of them were in private talk,
 58 which was my chance to overheare, and I sawe by the lookes of some of them, that they
 59 refort to these places, it will be an occasion in short time to make them be in Bread. The
 60 like speeches I heard a little before, of two men of *Pinaga*; and of an old man remaining in
 61 the ship, that came downe to our ship with the *Featheres*.

Touching the goods left with *William Purgleone*, *Marmaduke Wilson*, and the *Ruffe*, in regard the same lay in no good place, we were desirous to have hired one of their *Ruffe Boats*, to have carried the same to the Towneate: a reasonable rate; the rather because it was on their way, and their Boats were not overladen: which they with two Boats might have done with ease.

they would not, vnlesse we would giue them thirtie or fve and twentie Rubbels at the least, and that with Condition, that they might distribute into each Boate somewhat thereof. There refused to talke with them any further thereof: especially when they were minded to distribute the goods into all the fixe and twentie Lodias or Boates: which had bene a trick to haue lost all.

August 1. The first of August, leauing Master *Iosias Logan*, *William Purcelone*, and *Marmaduke Wilson*, at *Pechora*, were layd out by the Barre of *Pechorische Zauorot*, directing our course for *Nova Zembla*, till that we had runne so farre, and were so inclosed in huge Ice, that in a Day and a Night we could go neither backward nor forward: And finding no means to proceed on our intended Voyage for *Nova Zembla*, we cleared our selues out of that place. Truth it is, that this hath bene an hard Summer to all the *Russes*, both to them which were bound for *Mongozey*, and those that went to kill *Morles*, and fishing of a certayne Fish called *Omeli*. From the forsayd place we set our course for *Cherie* Island, intending to meete with the Ile of *Colgoiens*, and *William Gorden* and I with our Shallop went on shore. The seuenth of August, *Omeli* Fishing: they land on the Ile of *Colgoiens*. With *Colgoiens* we met, but we misfed the other. The fteenth of August, *Geese*. *William Gorden* and I with our Shallop went on shore. The fteenth of August, *Two Hawkes* taken, Nets in the time of the yeere, before they beeuor fledge. In this Island seemeth to be store of *Hawkes*. Heere *William Gorden* and our Cooper, caught two *Hawkes*, whereof one was spoyled in the taking, the other remayneth alue.

Cherie Island. The thirteenth of August, we arrived at *Cherie* Island, standing in 74. degrees and odd minutes, and Anchored in the South Cove, finding the same very cleare of Ice. And presently after our Ship was at an Anchor, *Iames Vadin* the Master, *William Gorden*, and I, went on shore on the Cose to looke for *Morles*. Here we found a certayne Note, which was left there by *Thomas Edge*: the effect of which was: That hee had there with three Shallops from *Greenland*, and that hee had found the Ship called the *Elizabeth*, and that hee was gone in here: and that hee did purpose to returne againe to *Cherie* Island with as much speed as could be made. Subscribed: *Thomas Edge*.

At our coming to the Island, we had three or foure dayes together very fine weather: in which time came in reasonable store of *Morles*, both at the South Cove and at the North-side: and we were in good hope we should haue made a fauing Voyage. Neutrhelesse, though there were store of Beasts, yet by no means would they goe on those beaches and places, that formerly they haue been killed on. But fortie or fiftie of them together, went into little holes within the Rocks, which were so little, sleepe and lippier, that as soone as wee did approach towards them, they would tumble all into the Sea. The like whereof by the Masters and *William Gorden* report, was neuer done. For lying as they did, and being so they as they were, it was not possible to doe any good upon them. Moreover, to get them off these forehead Rocks to make them come on shore vpon their accustomed places, the Master and our men on both sides of the Island went to drue them away, yet they would not. But by often druing of them out of their holes, we killed as many as wee could. In the end the weather growng stormie and cold, there were few or none of them left. Wherefore Ieing all hope of good to be done of them to be past, we departed from thence the fixe and tweneth of August, 1611. for *England*. We did not perceive any Ship of *Hull* to haue bene there this Summer.

August 16. Having touched the chieft points of our Voyage, I thinke it meete to set downe somewhat of the State, Commodities, and Trade of *Pechora*, *Onst Zilma*, and *Perm*.

Pechora. The Towne of *Pechora* is small, hauing three Churches in it: and the most part of the people are poore. In the Spring and a great part of the Summer, they liue by catching of Partridges, Geese, Ducks, and Swannes, of which they euery Summer take a great number. The flesh of these Fowles they sale, and liue of them the most part of the Winter. But the feathers of the said Fowle they gather together, and sell to the men of *Colmogro*, *Onsting*, and others, that come to the Fowlers. Which must be done with great care as the times are now. One *Maslof* a mans sonne of *Pechora*, whose Father is a man of great dealings, told mee, that they sold vnder Partridge feathers to men of *Colmogro* for ready money, at fve Altines the Poud, and Ducks feathers (among which was Downe) they sold now for seuen or eight Altines the Poud. Likewise he told me that in former times the *Russes* that vied to trade thither, before the people of the Country knew what Commodities were worth, had commonly a Poud of Partridge feathers for two pence of their money, and a peece of cake Sope worth at *Colmogro* ten pence of their money. So that the chieft Commoditie and best cheape is Feathers, being bought at *Pechora* with to vs at *Archangel* on the Riuer of *Dvyna*.

Moreover one hundred English miles on this side of the Towne of *Pechora*, is a place called by them the *Balmeno*, where they take great store of Salmons. But it is alwayes the first of August before

before they begin to cast out their Nets. And oftentimes toward the later part of the Summer, they haue such store, that they are sold ordinarily for foure-pence a Fish, and sometimes for a pence a Fish of their money. Yea, in a plentifull yeere, I haue bene told, one may buy whole draughts of Salmons for a very small Summe of money. The Salmons here are fat: three Fishes weighing commonly a Poud and no more. The best sort of the people of *Pechora*, vfe to preferre a great quantitie of their Salmon with a little salt. For they sale eighty, or one hundred Fishes with a Poud of salt: and many times in plentifull yeeres, much Fish is cait away for want of salt; which they are loath to bestow when salt is deare.

This Salmon is carryed by the *Pechora* men to *Mezen* in Sleds, drawne with Reyne Deere. But if they be minded to carrie the said Fish from *Mezen* to *Colmogro*, then they carrie the same from thence with Sleds drawne with Horses.

Also many men of *Colmogro*, *Pinega*, and *Mezen*, buy Salmons at *Pechora*, and carrie it in the Winter time to *Mezen*, to which place they pay from *Pechora* for the hire of a Sled and a Reyne Deere, ordinarily ten Altines, being twelve dayes journey: and from *Mezen* to *Colmogro*, being fixe dayes journey, they pay foure-pence a Poud at the moit. The Deere that trauell from *Pechora* to *Mezen*, will not draw aboute seuen Poud weight. This way is trauelled euery Winter twice. The first is fixe or eight weekes before Christmalle. And the second time is two or three weekes before Shrouetide: which bee the times that they very diligently obserue to sell the Salmon in. Most part of the men of *Pechora*, haue euery one his owne Deere to traull with, and

some particular men of the better sort haue twentie or thirtie Deere, which they let out to hyer in the Winter time; and in the Summer time they put them forth to the *Samoieds* to keepe. Also when the Winter way is let and beaten, many Merchants and others come out of *Russia* to buy Sables, Beuers, Beuers wombes, Squirrels, blacke, white and dunne Foxes, of which in the Winter time is store, brought thither by the *Samoieds* round about those parts: of which Trading is, I haue bene told, not elfe. The chieft *Russe* Merchants or Furriers that vfe these commodities carryed by them, are red, and yellow Cloathes; but chiefly *Russe* money, with which they buy Commodities there of the *Russes*, as well as that which they buy of the *Samoieds* in barter.

The Commodities carryed from *Volochda*, *Onsting*, *Colmogro*, *Pinega*, and *Mezen*, to *Pechora* and *Mongozey*, are Meale, Bacon, Butter, Ote-meale, Tloockme, and Salt, with some small quantitie of Yeats and tanned Leather, with some Cloath, and other of our Commodities. These Commodities at *Mongozey* are sold at great rates. But at *Pechora*, Commodities are sold sometimes deare and sometimes cheape, in respect of profit. For if the Fleer, being at least thirtie Boates that set out euery Summer for *Mongozey*, laden with these Prouisions and Commodities aforesaid, bee crossed with contrarie winde; and that by the latensse of the yeere they cannot reach to *Mongozey*, but are constrained to leaue the same and come for *Pechora*, (as this yeere 1611. they were:) Then commonly Meale, Bacon, and such like Commodities with which they are not deare. For by report a little quantitie of Meale doth serue all those parts. For the greater part of them liue of fresh Fish god and dried in stead of Bread, of which Fish they haue plenty. Likewise, there vieth not to goe from *Colmogro* with these Prouisions, about two Boates in a Summer directly to the Towne of *Pechora*: especially since the Towne was burnt, and that there was no Governour in the same.

Also by the *Mongozey* men it did appeare, that there was no likelihood for them to vttre that quantitie of Commodities at *Pechora*, at any rate. For if there had, there would not haue refused to lay vp their goods in Ware-houses till the next Spring, and then proceed for *Mongozey*.

Further from the Towne of *Pechora*, is a place called by the *Russes*, *Onst Zilma*. This is, by *Onst Zilma*, the description giuen vnto me in disantion *Pechora*, as *Onsting* is from *Colmogro*: and is likewise to be trauelled by water against the streame: And in Winter time it is to be trauelled in Sleds drawne with Reyne Deere. In this place of *Onst Zilma*, is great store of Squirrels, Beuers, and Beuers wombes, Foxe skines white and dunne, and other Fures, but chiefly Squirrels, of which is great store by all mens report, that I haue talked withall. So that hauing a man in the reasonable rate. Moreover, there are to be bought Loh-hydes, and Deere-skines, which in the Winter time are brought to this Towne of *Onst Zilma* from *Perm*, which is not farre from thence. But to buy Loh-hydes and Deere-skines, the best course is to goe from *Onst Zilma* to *Perm*, and to buy them there, where one should be sure to haue Choise, and at a faire better rate. Also thole that vfe to come out of *Russia* in the Winter time to *Perm*, to buy these forsayd Hydes; toward the later part of Winter carrie all these Hydes by Sleds, some two or three dayes Journey from *Perm* to the side of a certayne Riuer, vnder vnto which is a small Towne or Village; where as soone as the Ice is gone, they haue small Dorsheniks and Floates, on which they laie their Hydes, and being out of this Riuer, they enter into *Dvyna*, and transport them to *Colmogro* and *Archangel*.

Likewise being at *Pechora*, *Onst Zilma*, or any of those parts, there is in the Winter time to be

Travelling
Deere.

Fish in stead
of Bread.

Perm.

Elephants
teeth, whence
and which
way.

bee had among the *Samoyeds*, Elephants teeth, which they sell in pieces according as they get it, and not by weight. And I have been told, they kill the same at a very small rate. It is called in *Russe*, *Mamasta Kasst*. Thus much may suffice at this time to be spoken of *Pechora*, *Ouzi*, and *Perru*.

1. Now I will set downe as I have beene informed by diuers *Russes*, the Names of the chieft places which they vse to sayle vnto from *Sloboda*, an Haven fo called in the Province of *Mezen*, to the *Pechorskoie Zauorot*, or the Haven of *Pechora*, and the Distances to each place: with a Direction how to sayle from *Pechorskoie Zauorot* vp to the Towne of *Pechora*, *skoie-shore*. And from thence to the River of *Ob*: and thence to *Mongozey*.
 2. I will also set downe the *Russes* sayling from the forelayd *Pechorskoie Zauorot*, to the *Tauekskoie-shore*. And from thence to the River of *Ob*: and thence to *Mongozey*.
 3. I will likewise set downe a true Direction, to goe by water in their Boates called *Caynks*, through the River of *Perru*, and other Rivers, till they come from *Mezen* to *Ouzi Zima*, and *Pechora*.
 4. Likewise I meane to write of the *Samoyeds*, travelling from *Vaygats* to the parts of *Mongozey*, in the Winter time, and from thence backe againe to the forelayd Towne of *Mezen*, called *Sloboda*.
 5. Lastly, I will intrate of such Commodities as may be to bee had at *Mezen*, with the speedie passage from thence to *Calmogro* by Sea, or by Land in the Sommer time. And it is as followeth.
- The things aboue mentioned, that I have not feene my selfe, I have not slightly set downe from the mouthes of one or two, but from the mouthes of many ancient men, well experienced in the Trauels and Trades of all these parts, which Master *James Vadan* the Master of our Ship can likewise witness. Therefore if the same may bee any way beneficiall vnto the Company, and that thereby I have discharged my dutie vnto your Worships, I shall bee heartily glad thereof. Thus fearing I have bene over tedious by my rude Letter, I rest, with my heartie prayer vnto Almighty God, for the happie preferuations of your felices, and all yours. Written on Ship-board, the last of August, 1611.

Your Worships humble Servant to command,
RICHARD FINCH.

The Names of the principall places, which the Russes sayle by from Mezen to the Pechorskoie Zauorot, or the Haven of Pechora. 1611.

From *Mezen* to *Candous*, with a faire wind and stiffe gale, is thirtie houres sayle: They sayling commonly almost 40. leagues in foure and twentie houres, according to which it is 50. leagues. From *Candous* to the Ile of *Colgoie*, is as before thirtie houres sayling, and after 40. leagues in foure and twentie houres, is 50. leagues. From *Candous* to *Primory* or *Offenra*, is twentie houres sayling, or 35. leagues. From the Ile of *Colgoie* to *Colcol-coua*, is fiftene houres sayling, and reckoned as aboue appeareth, is 25. leagues. Along the shore of this place are heapes of Sand, in the forme of Bells. Therefore the *Russes* call this place *Colcol-coua*, being derived from *Colcol*, which in *Englisch* signifieth a Bell. From *Colcol-coua* to the *Peschensetsa*, is three houres sayle, or 5. leagues. This place is only a small Brooke which they vse for a Sea-marke, more then for any benefit it is to be reaped at the same. From *Peschensetsa* to the *Pechorskoie Zauorot*, is fixe houres sayle, or 10. leagues. So that from *Colgoie* land to this forelayd *Pechorskoie Zauorot*, is not about 40. leagues at the most.

A direction to sayle from the Pechorskoie Zauorot, where wee rode with our Ship in August 1611. to the Towne of Pechora, as followeth.

From this *Pechorskoie Zauorot*, they sayle into the *Souboie Mera*, or *Drie Sea*, and not before stirring away from hence South-west and by South, and in a faire gale of Winde, in foure houres they come to an land called *Dolgoie*. This land is reported to be three or foure *Russe* Versts long, hauing on it in some time of the yeere many Geelce, which the men of *Pechora* take before they bee able to flee. From this *Dolgoie*, they stirre away South South-west; and sayling this course with a faire gale of wind, in eight or nine houres they come in sight of the maine Land, being an indifferent high Land. This Land is called the *Bolmanou*; and thus is 20 leagues at the most. This *Bolmanou* they haue on their Larboard side. Neere this place are diuers that inhabit in *Russe* Hou'es: where in the Summer time they lye a Fowling, and fishing of a certayne Fish called *Omesh*, which are like our Maccarels. If need bee, here a man may haue a guide or good

good instructions to conduct him to *Pechora* Towne. Hard by this *Bolmanou*, is the *Oufnia* or barre of the entering of *Pechora* River. For as soon as you are over this barre, you come into the Rivers mouth, which leadeth to *Pechora* Towne. If it bee thicke foggie weather, then one of them continually soundeth the depth of the Channell, keeping as neere as they can in the deepest water: and in so doing, they shewdome mistake their way, so that they stirre away West from the *Bolmanou* to the Rivers mouth, keeping the Land on their Starboard side. And by all mens report, from the *Bolmanou* to *Pechora* Towne, is with a faire wind and stiffe gale, not about twentie houres sayle: which according to their sayling, is about three and thirtie leagues. And it is not about fiftie leagues from the *Pechorskoie Zauorot*, where our Ship lay, to *Pechora* Towne.

The names of the places that the Russes sayle by, from Pechorskoie Zauorot, to Mongozey: with the manner of their Trench, and Distance betweene each place, or time of Sayling, Halting, and Rowing into the same.

From *Pechorskoie Zauorot* to *Murphysou Offrame*, or land, is with a faire wind and stiffe gale, at the most thirtie houres sayle, which being reckoned as before, after fortie leagues in foure and twentie houres, is fiftie leagues: to which they stirre away East from *Murphysou Offrame* to the *Taugerskoie-shore*, is nine houres sayle or fiftene leagues. When they are come to this land, they stirre away from thence East to the said *Taugerskoie-shore*. Also in cleere weather from *Murphysou Offrame*, they can see the maine Land, with the *Murphysou Offrame*: where the two lands bee called the *Zelenaya* or *Greene* Islands: to which lands many of the *Russes* resort, to take a kinde of Fishes, called *Omesh*, which are like Maccarels: of which here are store. This maine Land they haue on their right hand or Starboard side, lying South from *Murphysou Offrame*, that is, the long Island. So that there are two *Dolgoie*: the one within the *Pechorskoie Zauorot*, springing into the *Souboie Mera*, or *Drie Sea*: The other is this, which is betwixt the *Murphysou Offrame*, and the *Taugerskoie-shore*: lying as before wastly, South from the sayd *Murphysou Offrame*. From which land in a cleere day they can see the Land of *Vaygats*, which lyeth on the Larboard side, being very high Land. So that turning out-right, in the middle betweene the *Murphysou Offrame* Land on their Starboard, and the Land of *Vaygats* on their Larboard side, they sayle directly into the *Taugerskoie-shore*. Likewise there is not much of this *Taugerskoie-shore*. For they say, that being at one end, they can see the Sea at the other end thereof. Also about the Land of *Kargans* are neither Flats nor Shoals. From the *Taugerskoie-shore* to the *Carlskoie Goshka*, is twentie houres sayle, or twentie leagues. In this Bay or *Goshka*, is the *Messing Offrame*, or *Messing* land. Further it is to be remembered, that neere as they enter this *Carlskoie Goshka* or B-y, they sayle vnto a River, leaving this Bay on their Starboard: which River bringeth them into the *Mouingya Rea*, which signifieth the thicke or troubled River. From *Carlskoie Goshka* to this *Mouingya Rea*, is 20 leagues. Likewise, being a little past the *Taugerskoie-shore*, there may be described an high Land, which they call *Souboie Land*, that is, the *Hammer* perch. And being over the *Mouingya Rea*, which they come into two Lakes, which two Lakes from one end to the other they commonly rowe over in one Day or two Tides: the same not being about ten or twelue leagues. Having gotten to the end of those two Lakes, they come to a place called the *Nauolok*, which signifieth an Ouer-hall. And it is almost two hundred fathoms, or foure hundred paces in length: And hauing emptyd their Vessels, called *Caynks*, lying poles vnder them, with the Companies or men of foure or fise Boates, hauing twelue or thirtie men in a Boate, they hall their Vessels out, launching them into a third Lake, which they call the *Zeleny Offra*, that is, the *Greene* Lake. These Ouer-halls constrain them to comfort themselves into Companies: otherwayes they could not get this way to *Mongozey*. At the end of this *Zeleny Offra*, or *Greene* Lake, they come into the *Zelenaya Rea*, or *Greene* River, into which they runne with the streame, being often compelled to emperie their great Boates with their Lodis, or Wherries, laying their Goods vpon the shore: which being done they row their great Lodis ouer the shoals empty: and hauing got ouer the shoals, they bring their gods on board againe. And thus they doe in diuers places of this *Zelenaya Rea*, or *Greene* River: by reason whereof they are commonly ten dayes from the Ouer-hall, before they can get through this forelayd River, which is all with the streame; but the Distance hereof cannot yet be perfectly learned. Being come to the end of this *Zelenaya Rea*, they enter into the River of *Ob*; and hauing rowed a little way vp the same, they come to a place which they likewise call *Zauorot*: which signifieth a turning, winding, or entering into a place. From this *Zauorot*, they turne into the *Tauze Rea*, stirring away South to *Tauze* River; but it is foure and twentie houres sayle, or fortie leagues from the River of *Ob*, before they come into any part of the *Tauze* Rea.

Murphysou Offrame.

Taugerskoie-shore.

The Murphysou Offrame.

The two Islands called Zelenaya, or the Greene Islands.

Dolgoie Offrame, or the Long Island.

Carlskoie Goshka.

Messing Offrame, or Messing land.

A River.

Mouingya Rea, or the Thicke or troubled River.

Two Lakes.

The Nauolok, or Ouer-hall.

Zeleny Offra, or The Greene Lake.

Zelenaya Rea, or The Greene River (saith into Ob).

The River Ob.

The Zauorot in the River of Ob.

The Tauze Rea.

Tacs.
Taurge Gorodoc,
ex Castie.

Mongol.

The *Samoeds* on the *Mayne*, one against
 another, and the *Samoeds* in the *Winnipeg*
 to *Manitoba*. We may learn
 of the *Samoeds*, the *Creoles*
 of *Manitoba* and *Alaska*
 particularly.
 The *Samoeds* are the
 of great
 for *Furres*.

A. the direction of the Rufles is issuing from Mezen, with Coyooks or small Boats, through the River Pezsa, and from thence to a place called by them Peastany Naulock, on The Sandy Ouer-hall, passing from thence through other Rivers, till they come to Ouf-felma; and so the Towne of Pechora: And is as Followeth

Having embarked themselves at *Moson*, in these small Cayooks or Boats, covered with the bark of trees, they lay to a River called *Pegua-River*. From thence they lay to, or draw their Boats to a place called, the *Peskang Nantick*, or *Sandy Ouer-hall*. From *Moson* to this *Ouer-hall* is ten days haling along the shore with the rope. This said *Ouer-hall* is five *Thous* Versts ower. And after they have vnladen their goods out of their Cayooks, they draw the said Vessels ower at times with *Hories*, that come from *Moson* of purple; lying there the most part of the Summer, to that intent; and they pay six pence *Ruff* for drawing out an empty *Ouer-hall*: and with the frame in four days they drive in three days to the Towne of *Pufkuzera* against the Framee they come to a place called *Pufkuzera*: and from *Pufkuzera* to Towne of *Pecora*. Also, many of these Boats very often in their returne home with their fore-hall Cayooks, carrie *Furres* to *Ufing*, and diuers other places into the Countrey of *Ruffia*. All which they doe in a Summers time.

Mexm.
 Perzara.
 Peaskany Naz.
 unloc.

Oust-sclera.
Pastorera.
The Beluaxon.
Pachera.

CHAP. X.

*The Voyage of Master JOSIAS LOGAN to Pechora, and his wintering
there, with Master WILLIAM PEARSGLOVE, and
MARMADUKE WILSON.
Anno 1611.*

The first of *July*, *William Gardin*, *Richard Faeth*, and *William Farglane*, went on shore at *Sassamee*, where two Crofles stand. The second, we weighed anchor againe, and flood into the *Bay* because of the Ice: and that night we went on shore againe. The third, we weighed anchor, and stood it about *Sassamee*. The fift, we stood to the *Eastwards* five leagues more, and about twelue of the clocke at night, we were thwart of the lland of *Towar*. The tenth, at eight of the clocke at night, we weighed, and went out a *Barre* at two fathoms, and there, where we were anchored, as we were coming in the fathoms, having lands round about, being land-locked. The eleuenth, my selfe, *William Gardin*, and *William Farglane*, with five of our men more, departed from the ship with our Shallop, to goe vp to the Towne of *Tulawar*.

20 The fourteenth, wee arrived at the fishing house of one *Euan Ye'floss* *John ferbush*, where the people were afraid of vs, and were ready to runne away: but we spake to them, and gaue them some Biscuit and *Aqua uia*, and they fed vs some fish, and shewed vs our way to another Fifthery: but they ran away from vs, so we departed on our way. The fifteenth day, at foure of the clocke in the afternoone, wee met with a *Ruffe*, that was borne at *U'ring*, who gaue vs Milk, and such things as he had, and wee gaue him some Biscuit, and some *Aqua uia*, and hee directed vs vnto another Fifthery, about foue miles from that place where wee arrived, about sixe of the clocke the night but. Then comming allbare, we found not any, faue one man, who after some conference had with vs, and giuing him some Bread, and some of our *Aqua uia*, hee told vs, that the Master of the house, with three of his sonnes were hunting of Duckes, and that their wiues were afraid, and were runne into the Woods to hide themselves, leauing a young child behind them for halfe. So he brought vs into the house, where by that time that we had stayed an houre (because there were so many *Musketes*, which are like vnto a Midge, and sting most horribly, so that we were not able to stay without) the Master of the house, and his sonnes came thither, who at the first, were afraid, thinking we came to rob them. And they were about to shoot our men in the Boats: but one of our men holding vp a Biscuit cake, they then came to the house, and spake vnto them; but our men not vnderstanding them, made them signes to the house, where my Kife, *William Gardin*, and *William Parfigne* were: so when they came into the house, being yett afraid, they came in one after another. Now, when we had saluted them after the *Ruffe* manner, they asked vs of whence we were, and for what cause we came thither: 40 whereunto I made answer, that wee were *English-men*, who because of the troubles in *Russia*, came thither to seeke a Trade, hauing heard diuers times of the fame of those parts. Then hee replied, that in times past those places had beene good for trading: but now, by reason of a bad Gouverneur, in those troublefome times, vpon a p'leane hee had fired the Towne, and burned aboue an hundred houses: and so by that means they were fallen into poverty, and trading decayed, by reason of his great exactions. Yet hee said, that they have great store of Salmon, and that the last yeere they got aboue 13000. Salmon, and in the Winter is their cheifest Traff. For then the *Samoseds* come thither from diuers places, and bring Sables, and Beavers, white Foxes, Roefmacker, Feathers, and some *Squezzels*. So hauing liped with him, we gaue him a gallon of our *Aqua uia*, and some fortie cakes of our white Biscuits, and three or foue pound of Raifins: for we heard, that he was one of the principallst men in the Towne. Then desiring 50 his fauour, hee holpe vs to a man to goe with vs vp to the Towne, because of the fiercenesse of the people, which they conceit through the Warres of the *Poles*: and so wee departed from thence that night to the Towne.

The sixteenth, in the afternoon we arrived at the Towne of *Papayana*, where we found not many people, considering the number of houses there, which are betwixt fourecore and an hundred, being of wood, buile after the *Ruffian* manner, and they are subiect vnto the *Ruffe*, obsequing all their Rites as do the *Ruffes*. The people were all abroad (some, in getting of Morfes Oyle, and Belouages Oyle, and some fithing of a fish called *Ometta*, which is a very sweet fish, and some hunting Ducks) (saiing the Customers, and three or foure more, who were likewise afraid of vs, although we had one of their owne people with vs, and were ready to flee away. 60. At this time the Indians desired our men to goe first on shoare with vs, as was before mentioned, not permitting the rest of our men to follow, but calling them out, they stayed, till peeping from behind the corners of their houses, vntill at the last there came one *Ruffe*, one of *Colomero*, that had wintered with them, who knew me, and had scene me some yeres

The former part of the Voyage is omitted, to avoid tedious repetition.

Рубрика

July.

Cola in Lappia.

yeeres before at Cola in Lappia, at his Vnclcs house. And so he encouraged them, speaking greatly in our commendation, shewing them, that I was a Merchant, and came to trade with them, and not with any intenc of harme: for he knew mee very well, and told them, that I was at Cola foure or five yeeres together, and lay at his Vnclcs house. So he came to me, and tooke me by the hand, asking me how I did, and told me his name, and how hee had seene mee with his Vncl at Cola. Then I called to mind, that I had seene him there, and so we grew acquainted: and he went with vs to the Customs-house, where staying an houre, at length the Customsman came: and after many questions had concerning our coming thither, I craued licence, that foure of vs might winter with them: which they denied, alleging that they durst not without the Emperour of Russia his licence. Whereupon I answered, that the Emperours Maiestie, when hee was reigning, was very gracious vnto our Nation, aboue all other strangers; and shewed what great priuiledges hee had bestowed on our people: and how by the English-mens meane as the first; what a trade is now at *Arkania*, and what profit came, not only into his Maiesties Treasurie, but also into all parts of his Dominions, which in time might be brought hither: and withall shewed the Emperours priuiledge. Wherefore then they began to put away feare, and withall shewed five or six dayes, vntill hee had sent for the chieft men of the Towne-men, who were abroad, and then they would giue vs an answer. Then I desired, that we might haue an house to be in, to there was one *Callem* that made answer, that he would: whereupon we went with him, made much of them, and feasted them with our *Aqua vite*, Biscuit, and Figs, that we might the better obtayne their loue.

Arkania.

The foure and twentieth, the Customsman came to giue vs our answer, and told vs, that they had concluded that we might stay if wee would: but they must write vp to the *Mauke* of our sents to fixe of them of the chieft, which they tooke very thankfully, and promised what shouuld be their course. So this night I made ready my Letters to send for *England*.

Molmoggy.

The fourth of August, five and twentie Lodys arrived at the Towne laden with Meale, and others which were bound for *Molmoggy*: but by reason of contrary winds, they were forced into *Pechora*, and came vp to the Towne of *Pufuxer*, and vnladed to make sale.

Pale baptizied Russe.

The fixe and twentieth, we removed from the house where we were at the first, vnto a *Poles* house, who is christened *Russe*, where we are to remaine all the Winter.

Frost in August.

The nine and twentieth, the frost was so strong, that the *Ozera* was frozen ouer, and the Ice driving in the River to and againe, brake all the nets, so that they got no Salmon, nor so much as for their owne victuals. The second of September, the frost brake vp againe, and it was open weather. The eight of September, there was a Soyma, which the Town-men bought, that went downe the River to haue gone for *Iugoria*, and had a faire wind: but they neglecting two dayes saying, that would haue carried them forth of the River to the Sea, the wind came contrary, so that they were wind-bound, and could not get any further: and on the nineteenth, gaue ouer their Voyage, and came vp to the Towne.

The thirteenth of October, the frost was so extreme, that the *Ozera* stood in one night, and men did walke on it the next day, and so continued all the Winter after.

The twelfth of November, there went two men of *Pemega* to *Ust-silma*, to buy Squirrels, and Beavers, and other commodities. The thirteenth, the Sunne arose at South and by East by the Compasse, and set at South-west and by West.

Slobodka Mart.

The foure and twentieth, there went duers men, with at the least, three or foure score Sleds drawne with Deere, to a place called *Slobodka*, where they hold a Mart, from the beginning of December to the middle thereof: and they carried fresh-water fish thither, with whom *William Pufuxer* went into *Russia*. The fixe and twentieth, the Sunne arose at South and by West by the Compasse, and set at South-west and by West.

Iugoria.

The first of December, the Sunne arose at South and by West Westerly by the Compasse, and set South-west and by West Southerly. The fourth, the Town-men of *Pechora* went ouer land into *Iugoria*, to trade with the Inhabitants there, and the *Samoyeds*.

Sunne returning.

The eleuenth, *Marmadake Wajon* said that he saw the Sunne, but it was but the way of the Sunnes beames. The thirteenth, I saw the Sunnes beames my selfe, but I could not see the Sun it selfe, although I watched it very strictly. The fourteenth, it was howie, and stormie weather, and continued so vntill the foure and twentieth day, which was cleafe weather.

The fixe and twentieth, being Christmas day, I saw the Sunne, and it rose at South and by West, and set at South-west and by South, it having the northeastern part of it all the way iust with the Horizon. The fixe and twentieth, it was stormy and snowie weather, and so continued vntill the end of the month.

The second of Ianuarie, the Sunne arose at South somewhat Westerly, and set South-west a little Southerly, it mounting a pretie heigh above the Horizon.

The fift, *William Pufuxer* returned from *Colmogor*. The eleuenth, the Sunne arose at South by East by the Compasse, and set at South-west and by West.

The

The twelfth, there came a command from the Patriarch, that there should be a general Fast both for young and old, not exempting the sucking babes; which began the thirteenth, continuing three dayes space, they neither eating nor drinking, so much as water, neither admitted they their sucking Babes, save those that fainted, to whom they gaue a few Figs and a little water.

The nineteenth, the Inhabitants of *Pufuxer* that went into *Iugoria*, returned from thence, having had but an hard Voyage, by reason of the Warres which the *Samoyeds* had amongst themselves: so that they durst not goe into *Molmoggy*, where they catch the most part of the Sables which come into *Russia*.

The three and twentieth, came the *Carratchey*, which is the chiefe of the *Samoyeds*, but they had no commodities to speake of, by reason of the Warres: so that they neither durst trade with the *Samoyeds* of *Molmoggy*, neither hunt for the Sables themselves, which at other times they were wont to doe. The thirtieth, I had the chiefe *Carratchey*, his sonne, his sonnes sonne, and his brothers sonne at Dinner, and had some conference with him, who told me, that they had seene ships in the *Voyages*, two yeeres one after another: but they durst not be seene of them, but fled from them: for the *Russes* told them, that they would kill them, or carrie them away prisoners. Yet they seemed to be glad of our coming, when they saw our behaviour, and the entertainment that they had of vs: Neuerthelesse, they are very timorous, and vnratable courteous, as by more acquaintance I perceived by them.

The second of February, the most part of the *Samoyeds* went to *Slobodka* with their commodities, because in the Summer they had bene together by the cares with the *Samoyeds* of *Colmogor*, and had layne one or two of them: wherefore they went to agree with them, and to pay ranfome for some of their men that were taken afterwards.

The fifteenth, the Sunne arose at South-east, a little Southerly, and set at West and by South Westerly. The sixteenth, the Sunne arose at South-east, and set at West due by the Compasse as I could fer it, the variation being two points Westerly: for, at a South South-west, the Sunne cometh to the Meridian.

The twentieth, I had conference with a *Russe*, concerning their trade of *Molmoggy*, who had bene there twice, and he was the first that our attempted it, and none hath bene farther then he to the Eastwards. And he told me, that their course from *Molmoggy* *Zanorai*, at the mouth of *Pechora* to the Eastward, to the two Ilands called *Zylenia*, is two dayes and three nights sailing, fayling with a faire wind. From thence to *Svea-silma*, is three dayes and three nights sailing with a faire wind, which is within the Streight of *Vogaya*. And from thence by an Iland, or rather a Rocks, called *Svea-silma*, leauing it on the Starboard side for feare of Rocks, still keeping your course North-east, vntill you come to a long Point on the Starboard side, with a land lying off into the Sea three miles, some fixe or fixe dayes saying. Which when you haue gotten aboue, you must hold your course somewhat more ending to the South, fixe or six dayes more: and then you shall come to the River of *Ob*; against the mouth whereof lieth an Iland: but you must keepe the Sea-board of it, by reason it is shoald betwixt it and the Mayne. The Land all along the shoare is a fine lowe Land, and the going into the River, is on the East side of the Iland. The River is reported to be a Summer dayes saying over in breadth, and is full of Ilands: whereby they report it to be shoald. Yet, in my opinion, so great a River cannot be without a mayne channell; which as yet they haue not sought for: and therefore they iudge it inuainable. Also they report it to be very plentifull of Fish of diuers sorts: but the people here, and the *Russes* are vnwilling that wee should goe thither. Moreover, hee told mee, that from the River *Ob* to the Eastwards, the Land stretcheth East, some fixe or eight dayes saying more. To the Eastward of the River *Ob* lieth another great River as large as *Ob*, and is very deepe water, and runneth from the South, how farre as yet it is unknowen. Although that hee affirmed, that he himselfe had sayled at the least three weekes vp the River: and all along as they went, they met with sundry sorts of People, differing in Language one from another, which they call *Samoyeds*. Yea, and the People there did cerrie them, that vp more towards the South, there are *Tartars* inhabiting, who ride vpon Horses. And hee affirmed, that they found pieces of Ploughs that had bene driuen downe the River by the floods, caused by the Snow melting from the Mountaines. This River is very high Land, and deepe water on both sides. Into this River, on the East side falleth another River, called *Tingulsky*, and the Inhabitants thereof are so called: whereby I coniecture, that it is not farre from the Citie *Tangur* in *Calog*. These *Tingulsky* report, that there is another huge River, that trendeth to the Southwards, which the necke of a Land parteth from the River of *Tingulsky*: wherein there are great ships, not vnlike vnto the *Russes* ships, that layle in it, hauing many Mails and Gunnes, which when they are shot off, make all the earth shake with the noyle: which should seeme to be the *Chinians*, that trade thither in the Summer, and returne backe againe ere the Winter doth come. The like also affirmeth another, being a *Russe*, who hath bene in the River of *Tingulsky*, where the people make this report.

The first of March, the *Russes* tooke their Journey from hence, from *Pufuxer* into *Russia*, with such commodities as they bought.

General Fast for three dayes very strict.

Russe friend.

February.

Samoyeds.

Colmogor.

Variation.

The report of

a Russe, a great

Traueller of

the way from

Pechora to Ob.

Molmoggy Zanorai.

Zylenia two

Ilands.

Svea-silma.

Svea-silma.

A long Point.

From Molmoggy

Zanorai to Ob

is six dayes

saying.

Ob is full of I-

lands, broad

and shoald.

The people of

Pechora, and

the Russe are

vnwilling, that

we should goe

to Ob.

The River

Tingulsky.

Samoyeds.

Horses.

Ploughs.

The River of

the Tingulsky.

Tangur menti-

oned by Polo, a

large Kingdome

Northward

from Calog, or

China.

The River

Pyda.

Gunnes.

Ma. ch.

Cala in Lapia.

yeeres before at *Cala* in *Lapia*, at his *Vnclies* house. And so he encouraged them, speaking greatly in our commendation, shewing them, that I was a Merchant, and came to trade with them, and not with any intenc of harme: for he knew mee very well, and told them, that I was at *Cala* foure or five yeeres together, and lay at his *Vnclies* house. So he came to me, and tooke me by the hand, asking me how I did, and told me his name, and how hee had seene mee with his *Vnclie* at *Cala*. Then I called to mind, that I had seene him there, and so we grew acquainted: and he went with vs to the Customs-house, where staying an hour, at length the Customer came: and after many questions had concerning our coming thither, I craved licence, that foure of vs might winter with them: which they denied, alleging that they durst not without the Emperour of *Russia* his licence. Whereupon I answered, that the Emperours Maiestie, when he was reigning, was very gracious vnto our Nation, about all other strangers: and shewed what great priuiledges hee had bestowed on our people: and how by the *English*-mens meanes at the first, what a trade is now at *Arkania*, and what profit came, not onely into his Maiesties Treasure, but also into all parts of his Dominions, which in time might be brought hither: and withall shewed the Emperours priuiledges. Wherefore then they began to put away feare, and willed vs to stay foure or sixe dayes, vntill he had sent for the chiefe men of the *Townes*-men, who were abroad, and then they would giue vs an answer. Then I desired, that we might haue an house to be in, and not to stay without doores. So he gaue liberie to any that would, to entertaine vs, where-to there was one *Calum*, that made answer, that he would: whereupon we went with him, and were in an *Ambar* of his, vntill wee receiued answer from them. In the meane time wee made much of them, and feasted them with our *Aqua vite*, Biscuit, and Figs, that we might the better obtayne their loue.

The foure and twentieth, the Customers came to giue vs our answer, and told vs, that they had concluded that we might stay if wee would: but they must write vp to the *Muske* of our being here. So we thanked them, and gaue them such entertainment as we could, and sent presents to sixe of them of the chiefe, which they tooke very thankfully, and promised what fauour they could. So this night I made ready my Letter to send for *England*.

Malgemfy.

The fourth of August, the *westerne* *Lodyas* arrived at the *Towne* laden with Meale, and others which were bound for *Malgemfy*: but by reason of contrary winde, they were forced into *Pechora*, and came vp to the *Towne* of *Puskar*, and vnloaded to make sale.

Pale baptizied Russe.

The fixe and twentieth, we removed from the house where we were at the first, vnto a *Pales* house, who is christened *Russe*, where we are to remaine all the Winter.

Frost in August.

The nine and twentieth, the frost was so strong, that the *Ozers* were frozen ouer, and the Ice driving in the *Riuer* to and againe, brake all the nets, so that they got no *Salmon*, nor so much as for their owne victuals. The second of September, the frost brake vp againe, and it was open weather. The eight of September, there was a *Soyma*, which the *Town*-men bought, that went downe the *Riuer* to haue gone for *Ingoria*, and had a fair wind: but they neglecting two dayes sayling, that would haue carried them forth of the *Riuer* to the Sea, the wind came contrary, so that they were wind-bound, and could not get any further: and on the nineteenth, gaue ouer their *Voyage*, and came vp to the *Towne*.

The thirteenth of October, the frost was so extreme, that the *Ozers* froze in one night, that men did walke on the next day, and so continued all the Winter.

The twelfth of November, there went two men of *Penza* to *Ujssima*, to buy *Squerris*, and Beavers, and other commodities. The thirteenth, the Sunne arose at South and by East by the Compasse, and set at South-west and by West.

Slobodka Mart.

The foure and twentieth, there went *diuers* men, with at the least, three or fourecore Sleds drawne with Deere, to a place called *Slobodka*, where they hold a Mart, from the beginning of December to the middle thereof: and they carried fresh-water fish thither, with whom *William Purgleme* went into *Russia*. The fixe and twentieth, the Sunne arose at South and by West by the Compasse, and set at South-west and by West.

Ingoria.

The first of December, the Sunne arose at South and by West Westerly by the Compasse, and set South-west and by West Southerly. The fourth, the *Town*-men of *Pechora* went ouer land into *Ingoria*, to trade with the Inhabitants there, and the *Samoeds*.

The eleuenth, *Marmaduke Wilson* said that he saw the Sunne, but it was but the way of the Sunnes beames. The thirteenth, I saw the Sunnes beames my selfe, but I could not see the Sun it selfe, although I watched it very tridly. The fourteenth, it was snowie, and stormie weather, and continued so vntill the foure and twentieth day, which was close weather also.

Sunne returneth.

The five and twentieth, being Christmas day, I saw the Sunne, and it rose at South and by West, and set at South-west and by South, it hauing the northernmost part of it all the way with the Horizon. The fixe and twentieth, it was stormy and snowie weather, and so continued vntill the end of the month.

The second of Ianuarie, the Sunne arose at South somewhat Westerly, and set South-west a little Southerly, it mounting a pretie height above the Horizon.

The fift, *William Purgleme* returned from *Chisnoya*. The eleuenth, the Sunne arose at South by East by the Compasse, and set at South-west and by West.

The twelfth, there came a command from the Patriarch, that there should bee a generall Fast, both for young and old, not exempting the sucking babes; which began the thirteenth, continuing three dayes space, they neither eating nor drinking, so much as water: neither admitted they their sucking Babes, but they did fast, to whom they gaue a few Figs, and a little water.

The nineteenth, the Inhabitants of *Puskar*, that went into *Ingoria*, returned from amongst hauing had but an hard Voyage, by reason of the Warres which the *Samoeds* had amongst themselves: so that they durst not goe into *Malgemfy*, where they catch the most part of the Sables which come into *Russia*.

The three and twentieth, came the *Carratches*, which is the chiefe of the *Samoeds*, but they had no commodities to speake of, by reason of the Warres: so that they neither durst trade with the *Samoeds* of *Malgemfy*, neither hunt for the Sables themselves, which at other times they were wont to doe. The thirtieth, I had the chiefe *Carratches*, his sonne, his sonnes sonne, and his brothers sonne at Dinner, and had some conference with him, who told mee, that they had seene ships in the *Voyage*, two yeeres one after another: but they durst not bee ferre of them, but fled from them: for the *Russes* told them, that they would kill them, or carrie them away prisoners. Yet they seemed to be glad of our coming, when they saw our behaviour, and the entertainment that they had of vs: Neuerthelesse, they were very timorous, and vnsustainable courteous, as by more acquaintance I perceived by them.

The second of February, the most part of the *Samoeds* went to *Slobodka* with their commodities, because in the Summer they had beene together by the eares with the *Samoeds* of *Chisnoya*, and had slayne one or two of them: wherefore they went to agree with them, and to pay rancome for some of their men that were taken afterwards.

The fifteenth, the Sunne arose at South-east, a little Southerly, and set at West and by South Westerly. The sixteenth, the Sunne arose at South-east, and set at West due by the Compasse as I could see it, the variation being two points Westerly: for, at a South South-west, the Sunne cometh to the Meridian.

The twentieth, I had conference with a *Russe*, concerning their trade of *Malgemfy*, who had beene there twice, and he was the first that euer attempted it, and none hath beene farther then he to the Eastwards. And he told me, that their course from *Medensky Zauoi*, at the mouth

of *Pechora* to the Eastward, to the two Islands called *Zylen*, is two dayes and three nights distance, sayling with a faire wind. From thence to *Zren-vinnie*, three dayes and three nights sayling with a faire wind, which is within the Streight of *Vogatz*: And from thence by an Land, or rather a Rocks, called *Scalia Landia*, leaving it on the Starboard side for feare of Rocks, still keeping your course North-east, vntill you come to a long Point on the Starboard side, with a Land lying off into the Sea three miles, some foue or sixe dayes sayling. Which when you haue gotten about, you must hold your course somewhat more ending to the South, five or sixe dayes more: and then you shall come to the *Riuer* of *Ob*; against the mouth whereof lieth an Island: but you must keepe the Sea-board of it, by reason it is shoald betwixt it and the Mayne. The Land all along the shore is a fine low Land, and the going into the *Riuer*, is on the East side of the Island. The *Riuer* is reported to be a Summer dayes sayling ouer in breadth, and is full of Islands: whereby they report it to be shoald. Yet, in my opinion, so great a *Riuer* cannot be without a mayne channell; which as yet they haue not sought for: and therefore they iudge it inuigable. Also they report it to bee very plentifull of Fish of diuers sorts: but the people here, and the *Russes* are vnwilling that wee should goe thither. Moreover, hee told mee, that from the *Riuer* *Ob* to the Eastwards, the Land stretcheth East, some fixe or eight dayes sayling more. To the Eastward of the *Riuer* *Ob* lieth another great *Riuer* as large as *Ob*, and is very deepe water, and runneth from the South, how farre as yet it is unknowne. Although that hee affirmed, that he himselfe had sayled at the least three weekes vp the *Riuer*: and all along as they went, they met with sundry sorts of People, differing in Language one from another,

so which they call *Samoeds*. Yea, and the People these did carrie them, that vp more towards the South, there are *Tartars* inhabiting, who ride vpon Horses. And hee affirmed, that they found pieces of Ploughes that had beene driuen downe the *Riuer* by the floods, caused by the Snow melting from the Mountaines. This *Riuer* is very high Land, and deepe water on both sides. Into this *Riuer*, on the East side falleth another *Riuer*, called *Tungusky*, and the Inhabitants thereof are so called: whereby I conceiue, that it is not farre from the Citie *Tanque* in *Cathay*. These *Tungusses* report, that there is another huge *Riuer*, that tendeth to the Southwards, which the necke of a Land parteth from the *Riuer* of *Tungusky*: wherein there are great ships, not vnlike vnto the *Russes* ships, that layle in it, hauing many Malls and Gunnes, which when they are shot off, make all the earth shake with the noyse: which should seeme to be the *Chinians*, that trade thither in the Summer, and returne backe againe ere the Winter doth come. The like also affirmeth another, being a *Russe*, who hath beene in the *Riuer* of *Tungusky*, where the people make this report.

The first of March, the *Russes* tooke their Journey from hence, from *Puskar* into *Russia*, with such commodities as they bought.

Generall Fast for three dayes very strict.

Russe found.

February.

Samoeds quarrell.

Variation.

The report of a *Russe*, a great Traveller of the way from *Pechora* to *Ob*, Malgemy Zauoi, Zylen a two lands, Zren-vinnie, Scalia Landia, A long Point, From Malgemy Zauoi to Ob is sixe dayes sayle, An Island, Ob is full of Islands, broad and shoald.

The people of *Pechora*, and the *Russes* are vnwilling that wee should goe to *Ob*. The *Riuer* *Tungusky*, *Hortie*, *Samoeds*, *Poughes*, The *Riuer* of the *Tungusky*, Tempt mentioned by *Pala*, a large Kingdom Northward from *Cathay*, or *China*, The *Riuer* *Ob*, *Gannex*, *Ma*, &c.

on ground againe, wee were in great danger againe of losing all. So wee were forced to get all things on these againe, and then got her off the eleventh day, and went into the Cracke againe: and stopping our leakes as well as we could, we got our goods aboard againe.

The fourteenth, the winde coming to the East South-east, we got forth to Sea with much adoe, and so on after, the winde came to the East North-east, a faire gale; and wee stood it along the Land South-east and by South, and North-west, and by North, all that after-noon till mid-night; at what time we were thwart of *Calenau*. The fifteenth, about three of the clocke in the morning, the winde came to the North-east, and blew very hard, so we steered away South South-west, and at night we fell with a shoald, which they said, is thwart of the *McLean* mouth; but I take it, it was *Knocke John*.

The sixteenth, in the morning about nine of the clocke, having carried but an hullocke of our sayle all night, we fell with *Daniels Bay*, on the Coast of *Lappia*, the wind being at South, and blowing hard, so that we went into Harbour at the West of the Island, there standing five Crookes on it, it being a *Rocke*. And there are foure Warlocks on the Mayne, and another on a *Rocke* to the Westwards: yet it is but for Loyses, and that a bad one also, being full of *Rockes* round about, where we did run till the six and twentieth. Then we departed forth of *Daniels Bay* about noone, and at night we came to *Salsowet*, where we did all night. The seven and twentieth, in the morning we fell with *Churus Nof*. The eight and twentieth, we arrived at *Arkenia*, where we landed our Oyle. The nine and twentieth, we arrived at *Colmogro*.

Extracts taken out of two Letters of *Iofias Logan* from *Pechora*, to Master *Haklay* Prebend of *Westminster*.

Here I use to come hither in the Winter about two thousand *Samoieds* with their Commodities, which may be such as we do stand not on yet. For by chance one came to us with a piece of an Elephant's Tusk, which he said he bought of a *Samoied*. And there are men called *Tingulies*, whose Country is betwixt the Rivers of *Obi*, and *Tura*, and forther upon the great River *Yenisse*: which is a good River, and a deep, and falleth into the Sea *Naromax*: And it should seeme: it is not farre from China. Therefore you may conceive what hope there is of this Enterprize, if it please God it may be followed as it ought to be. Thus beseeching Almighty God to bless you and us. I commend you to the protection of him, who is the giver of all goodes. Int. 24. 1611.

These are two or three thousand *Samoieds* hither to trade with their *Sables*, *Beavers*, *Blacke Foxes*, *Squirrels*, *Wolves*, *Ermine*, &c. And here is caught in September, good store of *Salmon*, Trained of a certayne great fish, called a *Sealing*, and *Morser*, and *Seale*; Oyle on the Summer time, and *White Foxes* and *Feathers*. I had some conference with a *Rutle*, who told me that the *Samoieds* told him, that there be *Munchins*, which in their Language is *strangers*, lived in the Sand in *Coffins*, with their armes & shies in their hands: which they estimate to be about sixtie yeeres agoe, and that they found Writing Tables in one of their pockets, and other small Trifles which they stole away. The *Vargata* is sometimes open and sometimes shut: and upon them groweth Christ all of the *Mounts*. The *Rutles* and *Petrucks* trade yearly with them of the River *Obi*, and beyond. They goe by Sea to the great Bay beyond *Pechora*, called *Yowgorsky* Sea: into which there fall foure Rivers: The *Eastward* which they call *Cata*, and the *Blacke River* beyond which they passe unto another, called *Moctawia* River: then they come to a Volce, or necke of Land, which continueth but three Perst; upon which they draw their Boats and goods, and so come to another River, called *Elena* River, or *Greene River*, which bringeth them into the Sea: Into which the *Esper* fall, the River *Tas* falleth, making but one mouth with the River *Obi*, being shoald, and they report is so be as Broad toward the mouth, as a man can discern our, having many miles therein.

Morover, there is another great River, called *Yenisse* beyond *Tas*: which they say, is rather bigger and deeper than *Obi*; and it runneth up into the Land no man knoweth how farre: Although they have discovered some fourteen dayes rowing up therein: neither can they learne of the Inhabitants thereof how farre it stretcheth; whom they call *Tingulies*: who are a proper people of themselves, and the *Samoieds* report that they have travelled so farre, that they came within sight of a *White Citie* or *Towne*: which should seeme to be builded of stone, for they durst not goe to make trial: and they heard great ringing of Bells. Also they say, that they have beards, but they were not like the *Deere*: for they had a great Mane, a long Talle, no Hornes, and their footing was round, not cloven, as their *Deere* eyes and they set a side upon their backs, and not to draw in Sleds nor their Deere feet to do so. These I assure you selfe are *Elves*. And further they report, that there came people unto them all made of Iron, that their bodies were hard, and legs: for that neither *Armes*, *Swords*, nor *Speares*, could enter; which, as I imagine, were people from *Armenia*. For they said, that ten hundred of them they thought were able to conquer all their *Rutles*. By this you may gather, that they are not farre from *Cata* and *China*. Thus have I shewed unto you the greatest secret, and the most rare to the world that I know. Requesting you

you, if you think it meet, that the Right Honourable the Earle of Salisbury might have a Copie thereof, Thus wishing you health and prosperitie in this World, and felicitie in the World to come, I cease.

CHAP. XI.

A briefe Relation of a Voyage to *Pechora*, and wintering there, began in the yeere 1611. Written by WILLIAM PERSLOVE.

After *Iofias Logan*, and *William Gordon*, having received directions from the Right Worshipfull Company of *Englishe Merchants*, Trading *Russia*. The eleventh of April, 1611. departed from *Blacke-wall* in the River of *Thames*, in a good ship, called the *Amisie*; whereof *James Vandem* of *Rodriguez* was Master.

The sixteenth of July, we arrived at *Pestynara*, being much wondered at by the Inhabitants, a *Permea* received vs into his House, and let vs have a Warehouse for our goods. We all continued there untill the five and twentieth of July. Then we returned in our Shallop againe to our ship, having a small *Russe* Boate in our company, to carrie some of the *Feathers* and *Downe*, which we brought there, our owne Boat not being able to carrie all, being gathered with our *Provision*, and some *Feathers* and *White Foxes*. We came aboard our ship the seven and twentieth of July, where we delivered thole *White Foxes*, *Feathers*, and *Downe*, and an exceeding rich *blacke Foxe* skine, having laden the *Russe* Boate with part of our goods. The rest of our goods they laid upon the Sand to be sent vp after, having met and *Marmaduke Wilson*, and an hired *Russe* with them, where we attended to beare of *Boats* from the Towne. But Master *Logan* not hearing of any such a *funne* and *anvalke*, could not get any to come downe to vs; because they feared to goe oute the *dry* or should stain their little Boates being laden.

The one and thirtieth, our ship departed over the *Barre*, purposing to make thie Voyage in *Nova Zembla*, or some Islands not farre distant from thence. At their departure there were five and twentie Coaches or *Soymas*, in that Road of *Pechora*, with at least two hundred men in them bound for *Molensky*; but hindered by contrary Windes and Ice, our shippes being over the *Barre*, they all came on shore to vs; some threatening, others flattering vs, but after had bestowed two Bottles of *Beere* among some of the best of them, they all went vp to *Pestynara*; where most of them that had any goods to sell stayed all Winter, and sold their Commodities in barter with the Inhabitants, and when they could happen secretly upon any *Samoieds*, which were trading with them also: which is contrary to the Priviledges granted by the Emperour to the *Pestynars*. Their Wintering there was no little hindrance to vs for the sale of our goods.

We arrived at the Towne the twenth of August. In mine absence Master *Logan* had hired part of an House of one, called *Tifon Vriach*, a *Polo* man, who was turned *Russe*.

The three and twentieth of November, I departed from *Pestynara* to goe to *Russia*, at three of the clocke in the afternoon, in the Company of certayne *Kutts*, *Permeaks*, and *Samoieds*, which *Samoieds* were our Guides over the Mountaynes: and one dayes journey over the Rocks, which they call *Camani*, which are not *Rockie* Hills, as in *Norway*, but high Lands, yet in most places smooth, and most marsh grounds full of little Hills, which being covered with Snow and frozen, did not much annoy vs. Our *Angelthey* or *Caravan* were about two hundred and ten Sleds, drawn the most part with two *Deere* in a Sled. They had also about two hundred *pare* *Deere*, to eale the wearied. We kept company untill the fourth of December together, having

passed two third parts of our way to *Siboeia*, being the first Towne in the Country of *Mesta*, that we saw. And then in company of foure Sleds, having each two choice Bucken, with a *Samoied* in the fitt for our Guide, we left the *Angelthey*, and rid post for *Siboeia*, where we arrived the ninth of December, at three of the clocke in the night. In this Towne I found one *Thomas Logan* an *Englishe* man, who had served *Master Richard Cocks* of *London*, who saluting mee in *Englishe*, marvelled much to meet me there: and carried me from the rest of my company to his Lodging, and gave me there very rich entertainment. The next morning I departed thence in his Sled, having our night hired an Horse to the next Towne, which was *Verits* off: And so travelling day and night, changing Horses at every convenient place, I came to *Colmogro* the twelfth of December: and delivered my Letters from Master *Iofias Logan* our Factor in *Pestynara*, to Master *Fabian Smith*, then Agent for the *Englishe* Company. Having telled my selfe foure dayes there, and received certayne Money to helpe to put off some of our goods at *Pechora*, I departed from *Colmogro* the fourteenth of December, and came to *Siboeia* the nineteenth day: the height of the Pole being there some sixtie five degrees. I stayed there till the two and twentieth of the said month, by which time the *Permeaks* and the Inhabitants of *Pestynara*,

They were first received into a *Princede* House.

August.

November: His Voyage over Land to *Siboeia* and *Colmogro*. Mountaynes & *Camani*, of Rocks.

He arrived at *Siboeia*, the 9th of December in 16. dayes. *Thomas Logan*.

He arrived at *Colmogro*, the 12th of December.

were

were ready to returne to *Pechora* with their goods, being Rie, Malt, Hops, Salt, *Aqua-vita*, and some course Cloth. Moreover, duers *Ruffes* haue their Sonnes or Kinemen Leigers there, in Winter doe send Cloth and Money our Land.

Haueing made my prouision for my journey, and taken my leaue of Master *Thomas Ligon*, wee set forward that night, and did not aboute five and twentie Versts, to a place where wee found the Argetheij which let out from *Slobetca* the two and twentieth day in the morning by break of day. We had better passage in our returne, then we had in our journey from *Pechora*, by reason of much Snow fallen in the time of our being in *Russia*, and frozen fo hard, that it bare both Deere and Sleds in all places. Wee kept together with the Argetheij, being then two hundred and fiftie Sleds, till we had passed more then two thirds of our way ouer the Mountaynes: and then long before day haueing called Buckes of the beff, wee departed the fourth of Ianuarie, haueing eight Sleds in company, and did not till that day and night following, being Moone-light, save sometimes for the space of an hour that wee stayed where, the *Samoeds* our Guide knew, there was good store of Moss, (which is white) to refresh our Deere. The fifth of Ianuarie, we came to *Puffoscar*, haueing in forre houes travelled three hundred and fiftie Versts with our choice Buckes. Our Argetheij or Caruana arrived there after vs the twelfth of Ianuarie.

The *Samoeds* being the onely Guides in Winter, either from *Puffoscar* to *Slobetca*, or to any other places Eastward, as *Ougria*, *Siberia*, or *Malgosky*, know, by their continual trauell, the way, though it be neuer so thick weather, as also where most fowle of white Melt is growing: and according as they find themselves nere vnto some fowle place, be it something before night, or within night four or five houes before they can come thither: there for that Night they pitch their Tents, being for the most part made of Deere and Elkes skines: we had in our company foure great Tents set vp, and some twentie vnder each Tent. This worke of pitching the Tents belongeth vnto the Women. In the meane time the men vnyoake the Deere, and turne them loose to digge through the Snow, bee it neuer so deepe, for their food and sustenance. Then the *Samoeds* (of euery Tent one) out of the next Wood, prouide as much Fuel as shall serue to turne forth their abode there. First, they let on Ketles full of Snow water, which being melted, Snow water melted for their Drinke. Our lodgings were vpon the Snow within our Tents, round about the Fire, haueing vnder vs for the Beds the skines of Deere, covered with our day apparel. For all the time of our journey, the Merchants, whether Stranger, *Ruffe*, or *Perma*, according to the number of them, make prouision of *Vitals* to feed the whole familie in euery Tent, euery man his day about, together with the *Samoeds*, their Wives and Children: who carrie all their Household euery where with them; and out of their Sonnes and Daughters, they appoint a watch ouer their Deere, for feare of the Wolfe and other Beasts, which notwithstanding their watch sometimes kill in a night one or two of their Deere, as it fell out two nights in our journey to *Slobetca*. This *Slobetca* is a pretie Towne, haueing in December and Ianuarie, great resort of people repaying thither, as well *Ruffes* as out of many places, with money to buy Fures, as others with prouision of Meale and Malt: and other Commodities, to furnish the *Puffoscaris*, as also to buy Fish, to wit, Salmon, Oyle of *Bealuges*, Deere skines, 40

The tenth of Ianuarie, the Inhabitants of *Puffoscar*, returned from Trading with the *Samoeds* of *Ougria*, on which Journey they set forward the five and twentieth of Nouember: and within three dayes after, came betwixt eight or nine hundred *Samoeds* with a small quantity of their Commodities, in respect of former yeeres, by reason of Warre betwene the *Samoeds* of *Ougria*, and *Malgosky*, who were wont to Trade one with another, and not to warrre one against another. So Sables, and other Commodities being scant, the Inhabitants sold them very deare: yet notwithstanding, the *Ruffes* bought vp all, furnishing one to haue them before another. So that after that little money, which we had was belovved, wee could not doe any thing in barter. Moreover, the *Ruffes* did not onely informe against vs, to the Inhabitants to furre them vp against vs, but also vied the like meanes to the Inhabitants to diswade them from trading with vs, either in their owne Countries, or else where: alledging that wee would betray them, and not onely carrie them away to make them Slaves, and robbe them, but also would murder and destroy all the rest, wherefoeuer wee should come. The Inhabitants also of *Puffoscar*, being incited by the *Ruffes*, doubting wee would enter further into their Trade Eastward, began also to hinder, and forbid the *Samoeds* to come to vs. Yet by meanes of our Host being a *Polace* borne, we spake with diuers of the principall of the *Samoeds*, hee being our Interpreter, and wee our selues understood certayne *Samoeds* (speaking broken *Ruffe*, and by these meanes we found out more at large the despitableness of the *Ruffes*, and the enuie of some of the Inhabitants against vs) as also their feare, last wee or any other Stranger, should enter into further Discouerie of their trafficking toward the East, but especially about the Riuer *Ob*. Some sayd we were sent as spies to betray their Land to the *Polace* of the *Samoeds*, with whom they then had warre. So good counsell to put vs vnder the Water: others aduised to let vs vpon the Sand, where wee should haue bene without all doubt drowned in short space, others thought best to fend vs vp

to the Nobilitie, and to seaze on all our goods to the vfe of the State. But diuers of the best in the Towne, with whom wee kept all friendship that possible wee could, withstood thoe bloudie practices. The Lord therefore bee blessed.

The fifth of March, the Inhabitants of *Puffoscar* went againe to *Slobetca*, carrying the *Ruffes* March with their Commodities thither.

They returned home the eleuenth of April, 1611. The one and twentieth of April, water April, 1612: was first fene vpon the maine Riuer *Pechora* about the Ice, descending from about *Oust-silma*. The twentieth of May, the Ice brake vp. The five and twentieth of May, certayne of the Inhabitants of *Puffoscar*, went by water vnto *Oust-silma*.

The fixe and twentieth, *Iofas Logan* with our Host the *Polmian*, hired a Boate and went toward *Oust-silma*, carrying with him certayne Cloath and Copper Ketles, in hope to sell them well there, being intreated in the Summer before by one of their Townsmen to come thither, or to send one to Winter there: alledging that they got great store of Losh-hydes, Squirrels, Sables, and Beuers. Which some yeeres inded, as we were credibly informed fallth out according to his report. But at his arrival there, diuers of the Townsmen came against him, and would not suffer him nor any of his Boate to Land for the space of ten houes: but in the end, they let him goe on shore, after, as wee suppose, the Inhabitants of *Puffoscar* had bought most of their Commodities. So that hee staying there two dayes, could get but nine Losh-hydes, and halfe a timber of coure Sables, in barter for some Cloath and Copper. The principall cause of his going thither, was, to meete with some of the *Perma* out of *Permia*, who some yeeres come downe with Rie, and Rie-meale, and thought to haue giuen notice to thole *Perma* of our being at *Puffoscar*, and to haue willed them to haue perswaded their Country-men to bring thither the next Spring following all their Commodities, being Waxe, Honey, Losh-hydes, and Fures, which they might doe for halfe the charge that they are at in bringing them to *Archangel*, on the Riuer *Dvina*.

Oust-silma is a pretie Towne of some sixtie Houles: and is three or foure dayes sayling with a faire wind against the streame from *Puffoscar*, but backe againe they may layle it in two dayes.

The third of Iune, came the first *Ruffes* in their Cayooks by Riuer out of *Russia* to *Puffoscar*. These Cayooks, be full Boates of Furre, haueing two men in each Boate.

The twentieth of Iune, nine *Ruffes* Coaches or Soyamas, pulled by *Puffoscar* from *Oust-silma* for *Malgosky*. The one and twentieth, sixte *Ruffes* Soyamas more departed from *Puffoscar*: all the rest haueing giuen ouer their Voyage, which came thither the Summer before, 1611. The two and twentieth, one Soyama belonging to the Towne of *Puffoscar*, departed for *Malgosky*.

The three and twentieth, foure and twentieth, the Inhabitants of *Puffoscar*, went to Fish for *Bealuges* vnder the *Bolman*, being the highest Land nere vnto the *Dvina* Sea, and two dayes sayling from the Towne.

The five and twentieth, I departed after them, and arrived there the seuen and twentieth, hoping to haue prouided good store of *Bealuges* Oyle. But it fell out contrary: though there were about fiftie Boates, haueing in euery Boate three men, and in many foure, by reason it pleased God to send such windie and stormie weather, that the Boates could not goe to Sea in many dayes together, during their wouted time of Fishing for thole Beals.

Being left the twentieth of Iuly. Then euery man leaueth that Fishing, and repaire to their owne Fisheries, to hunt Ducks, Grete, and Swannes, which most yeeres they get in abundance, and make good profit of their Feathers and Downe, as also of their Fleth, which they sell vp in Caske for Winter prouision, fering them all along the Summer for Fleth dayes. These *Bealuges* they catch with harping Irons, eyed fast to a long rope of nintie or an hundred fathoms, with a Basse of the length of two yards or somewhat longer, being put loose into the Iron, wherewith when the least cometh within the reach of him that struketh, he smiteth him with the Iron, leauing it in the Beale: then the Beale being layed out cleere to vnto the, the man holding his Staffe still in his hand: but the Beale being wounded fasteneth to the bottom, where haueing beate himselfe nere to death, they call in their rope by little and little, the Beale ascending thereby. And if they finde him not nere death, they strike him againe: and being dead they cut off his skinn with the fat on it in many parts, some the breadth of two hands, some more or lesse. Then coming on shore, they take the Fat from the skinn, and cut it in small peeces to dissolve it to Oyle, casting away the Fleth which is red, to the Fowles of the Sea: excepte some poore *Samoeds* come that way, who take it, though it haue layen putrifying two or three dayes, and dryeth it, and maketh

Meat as they doe their Beale: but their rope is longer, and a barrell made of one end to buoy it.

Samoeds poore chere with it with his Familie. This Beale is as bigge as two good Sturgeons. Moreover, I was informed by an ancient Traueller, that the Fleth and Fat of that Beale, being cut as Beeffe

meat, with the Fat of some of these Beales, they will fill three Barrells, of fure leffer two barrells, and some yeeld but one barrell of Blubber, which they call *Shilgie*. In that Summer when I was there, by reason of Northerly winde blowing hard, they killed by all their Boates not about fortie Beals: with some Boate they killed two, with other three, with some foure, but with most not one.

Berefova.

Deere in Winter time, as soon as the Snow is fallen and frozen. From thence to *Berefova* (sixteen dayes; which is a Towne of Trade, it is from *Pustozera* to *Vade* in *Ougoria*, being on the West Houles thereof build vnder the ground.

The River of *Pechora*, runneth through great *Permia*; and the head thereof is five Weekes traill from *Pustozera*.

Perebo-tovnia.

From Great *Permia*, is nine dayes traill by Horse and Sled to *Perebo-tovnia*. *Perebo* signifieth in the *Russe* Tongue, The higher; as *Percho-tovnia*, is *Tovnia* The higher. From thence by River is ten dayes journey to *Tumen*. From *Tumen* to *Tobolsk*, six dayes downe the River *Irish*, *Tobolsk* is the chiefest Citie in *Siberia*. From *Tobolsk* to *Surgout*, or *Sergail*, is six Weekes journey vpon the River *Ob*. From *Surgout* to the Citie *Tem*, (called among the *Tartars*, is three Weekes vpon the River *Ob*. The *Russes* know no farther of the River *Ob* nor how farre it stretcheth to the Southward: But they suppose that it runneth much farther to the South, by reason thereof, the people of *Bashghar*, the *Tessiks* or *Perjan* Merchants, and many ferts of *Tartars*. *Abram Michailovich* was chiefe Customer at *Surgout*, 1611. And hee told me, that hee received for the Emperours Customs for goods, bought and sold that yeere, the summe of sixteen thousand Robles, or Marcs.

Moreover, he told me, that the people of *Cathay* doe trade to *Surgout*, and people from diuers other Kingdomes, as from *Altun Tear*, or King *Alceen*, who among other things bring Plates of Silver and sell them. Another *Russe* named *Philas*, who had trauelled farther among the *Tinggils*, then any other *Russe*, and spake their Language, told me he had bought at *Tinggil*, a Plate of Silver weighing in *Russe* Money fortie two *Altens*, four *Dingoes*, for twentie blue Glasse Beades.

Berefova vpon the *Ob*, before you come neere *Tobolsk*, is a Towne of Trade for Furs, but especially for Loh-hides; which are bought for tenne *Altens* a peece. was told by a *Perma*, that there was a *Russe* which bought four thousand Elkes, or Loh-hides, there for a fourth part of a Roble or Marke a peece.

To the Eastward of *Pechora* are store of Hawkes, which I hold to bee as good as the *Turkie* Hawkes, namely, light Falcons, Goshawkes, and Ier-falcons, whereof some are as white as Snow, others speckled White and Red, Likewise, there are all kinds of the richest Sables brought from *Mulmogor*, and blacke Foxes. There is also Chriffall of the Mountaine, if we might haue libertie to trauell those Countreys, we might haue these Commodities cheaper there then at *Pechora*. And within the *Ob* we might vent our Commodities at a better rate.

Commodities for Pechora, Siberia, Permia, Ougoria, and among the Tinggils.

Russe Money.

I tell, at *Pechora* teadie Money, being *Russe* Money, is the best and principallest both to put off 40 other goods to profit, as also to get credit among the Merchants strangers at our first coming thither, till Trade be settled and knowne through *Permia*, and *Siberia*. Salt, Rie, Meale, white course Cloth, some fine Cloth, Copper, and Brasse Kettles of the middle size, from two pound to thirty, or thirtie fine. But Brasse not above fifteen pound with eares of Brasse, all the Kettles and eares of one piece. Also Files to sharpe Arrows and other things, small Horse-bells, course Canasse for vpper Gownes. Four peny, five peny, and ten peny Nayles: small Anchors of foure and twentie pound a peece. Frankincense for their Churches and Houles.

Commodities for the Tinggils.

A course Ham-borough Cloth.

Pewter, Pewter Sawcers, Little Platters, Flat Porringers, some grauen, some vngrauen. Nests of Cups, some grauen, others vngrauen. Salt-sellers. Plates, or sheets of Latten being white. *Hamborough* Lichenes, Blue, Red, and Tawny. But I think our course Northernne dozen, and course Kerles Northernne dozen, would vent as well and better then they being thicker walked. And the *Samoeds* delight altogether in thicke Cloth. Grey dozens of an easie piece would vent well among the *Perma*, which were much grey or mingled and Yellow, would bee no bad Commodity.

Aqua vita of two sorts, the best and indifferent for the *Samoeds*. Glasse Beades, Skie coloured. Needles round and three square. Brasse Balons, *Russe* Linnen Cloth, or *Pelish* Linnen Cloth. Hops, Mault, *Russe* Sops. All sorts of Strong Wines, as Sacke and *Camarie* Wine. Bacon is a good Commodity in *Siberia*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Later Observations of WILLIAM GOVARDON, in his Wintering at Pustozera, in the yeares 1614. and 1615. with a Description of the Samoyeds life.



The twentieth of November, I departed from *Pustozera*, to goe to *Tongerin*, at four in the after-noon, and did ride most of the Night, before wee came to the Choomo, going East South-east. The one and twentieth, *Mishilo* returned to the Towne, and we remoued and went our Journey, faire and little wind. The two and twentieth, little wind North, wee kept on our course East South-east, hauing gone from the Towne 50 miles, at night *Mishilo* came to vs. The three and twentieth, little wind, we went on our Journey, and at Noone passed ouer a little River, called Coy, falling North into *Pechora*, 14 leagues below the Towne, and at Night came all the *Russes* from the Towne, hauing gone 24 miles East South-east.

The foure and twentieth, wee remoued on our Journey being very cold, and went not above ten miles East South-east, at Night wee broke one of our Sleds, which went laden with Viuals.

The five and twentieth, wee went forward very slowly, at Noone I received a Letter from *Matier Copman* by *Toma Criticoue*, this after-noon another had his Sled broken, we went 10. or 12. miles. The sixe and twentieth, we continued on our Journey, and at Euen we passed ouer the River, called *Shapkina*, falling South into *Pechora*; halfe way betwixt *Pustozera* and *Onfi-xilma*, a Sled broken and mended out of hand, going East South-east 15 miles. The seuen and twentieth being Sunday, the wind at South-west, did blow very hard and Snow all the day, the snow driving that we could hardly see which way to goe, yet wee kept on East South-east 8 miles.

The eight and twentieth, in the Morning, wee passed ouer *Nougortoka* River, which falleth West South-west into *Shapkina* River, sixe dayes Journey above *Onfi-xilma*, the wind South-west, and Snow all day, wee kept on till East South-east 15 miles. The nine and twentieth, the wind South, with Snow all day, being not cold, we went on East South-east 20 miles. The thirtieth, the wind East South-east, very cold in the after-noon, we passed ouer *Habaga* River, which falleth into *Pechora*, sixe dayes Journey above *Onfi-xilma*, going 20 miles.

The first of December, the wind East blowing very hard, the Snow did drife so hard, that we could not goe forward, but stood still all day and did not remoue. The second, calme and noe cold, we went on East South-east 10 miles. The third, in the Morning it was very warme, at Noone the wind North, it was extreme cold, the Snow driving very thicke, in the after-noon we passed ouer the River *Haryena*, which falleth into *Colony* South-east, hauing gone East South-east 15 miles.

The fourth day warme, we went East, at Euen we came to a River called *Colony*, which falleth South into the River *Onfi*, where wee stayed all Night, hauing gone 20 miles. The fift, in the Morning we went on vpon the River six or seven miles East and by North, and came where it parted in two, the one keeping North-east, the other being called *Sandamur*; from the South-east we went betwixt them both East and by South 12 miles, and tooke vpon our lodging vpon a Playne where no Wood is to bee seene.

The fixt, being Saint *Nicholas* day, with which the *Russes* is held a principall day, in the morning they cauled their Images to bee brought into the Choomo, lighting Wax-candles before them, making their Prayers to them, according to their order; after which I gave them a bottle of *Aqua vita*, wherewith the Guides were drunke, that they could not guide their Deeres, but let me to direct the way by Compasse, which I did all the day, although I had but little skill, we went South-east and by East 20 miles.

The seuenth, being very faire weather, our Guides lay all the day with *Pobemall*, and could not goe forward. The eight, faire and calme, we went forward South-east and by East 10 miles, and tooke vpon our lodging by a small River which falleth into *Sandamur* River. The ninth, very cold, that we had much aloe to keepe our selues from freezing, going on foot all the day ouer a playne where no Wood groweth, going South-east 15 miles, and lay by a Woodside all night. The tenth, the Frost was so extreme, that wee lay still and could not proceed. The eleuenth, being Sunday, the Frost continued extreme, we remouing, there were few in the Companie that had not some part of their faces frozen, and my selfe, although I was something better prouided then any of them, yet I had something to doe to keepe my selfe from freezing, going on foot most part South-east and by East 15 miles. The twelfth, the Frost was so extreme, that there was no looking forth, but lay full all day. The thirteenth, not altogether so cold, we proceeded on our Journey 20 miles South-east & by East, and at night we passed ouer the River *Hafida*, which falleth South-east into the River *Azua*. The fourteenth, the wind South, with Snow and not so cold, we went thorow Woods 20 miles, East South-east. The fiftenth, the wind South, with

B b b Snow

November;
1614.
His Journey
within 300
leagues of Ob,
and neere to
Berefova.
The River Coy,
falling into Pe-
chora.

The River
Shapkina, fal-
ling into Pe-
chora.

The River
Nougortoka, fal-
ling into Sha-
pkina.
Habcaga River,
falling into Pe-
chora.

December.
The River Ha-
ryena, falling
into Colony.

Saint Nicholas
Day.

A small River
falling into
Sandamur.

Terrible Frost.

The River Ha-
fida, falling into
Azua.

they kill in this manner to fenne the dead man, they make a Stake sharpe, which they thrust into the Beasts fundament, with many howlings and cryings, till they be dead. The Master with the Slave they burie, the Deere they eate as well raw, as boyled or roast, although they vie all three. It is by the necke on some Tree, laying, it must die to Heauen.

If any Controuerfie bee, which cannot bee decided or the truth knowne, then one of the two betwixt whom the Controuerfie is, must bee sworn, which is in this manner; they will make an Image of a Man of Snow, bringing a Wolves nose, deliuering a Sword to him that must swear, he rehearsing by name all his Friends, desiring that they might all bee cut in peeces in that manner, as hee doth cut that Image of Snow. Then he himselfe, doth cut the Image of Snow in all to peeces with the Sword; then after, the Wolves nose being layd before him, he desires that the Wolfe may destroy all his tame Deere, and that hee may neuer more take or kill any wilde Deere after that, if hee speake not the Truth, fo cutting the Wolves nose in peeces, theris no more to bee sayd of that Controuerfie.

The Samois is stout and bold of Spirit, not very tall but broad Breasted, broad Faces, with hollow Eyes. Their ordinary instruments for Warre, are Bowes and Arrows, very dangerous, they haue long Spares, (the heads bee made in *Mungaway*, by another sort of Samois) and short Swords, not much unlike some that I haue seene brought from East India.

When they would know any thing to come, they lend for their Priest or Witch to conuerse with the Deuill, sitting in one side of the Tent, haue before his face a peece of an old shirt of Mayle, hung with Bells and peeces of Braide, in his right hand a great Tabor made with a Wolves skin, beating vpon the same with a Hares foot, making a very dolefull sound, with singing and calling for the Deuill, to answer his demand, which being ended, they strangle a Deere for a sacrifice, making merrie with the Fiefl.

The Women be very hard of Nature; for at their Child-bearing, the Husband must play the Midwife, and being deliuered, the Child is washed with cold water or Snow, and the next day the Woman able to conduct her Argifh.

The Ruffes haue a yeerly Trade with the Merchants of *Begbar* at a place called *Tumes* in *Tartary*, whither they of *Begbar* come with Camels every yeere.

From *Tumes* in *Tobol* in *Siberia*, they come in foureteen dayes.

From *Tobol*, they come to *Berefova* in nine dayes, all downe the River *Ok*.

From *Berefova*, partly by the River *Ok*, then ouer a necke of Land of halfe a mile ouer, into the River *Oufa*, and downe the River *Oufa* into the River *Pechora*, and so to *Passekara* in three weekes. At *Passekara*, the *Englis* haue Wintered three yeeres.

CHAP. XIII.

Diuers Voyages to Cherie Land, in the yeeres 1604. 1605. 1606. 1608.
1609. Written by IONAS POOLE.



As yet sayle from *London* the fiftenth of April 1604. in a Ship called the *God Speed*, of fixtie Tunnes, with thirteene Men and a Boy; our Merchant was one Master *Thomas Widen*, our Master was one *Steuens* *Bannis* of *Saint Catharines*. We arrived at *Cherie Land* in *Lapland*, the first of May, where we tarried till the last of the same Month, at which time we fer sayle from *Cala*, and went to an *Marbour* called *Pechingee*, which lyeth betwene *Cala* and *Ward-houfe*. In which Harbour of *Pechingee*, we continued vntill the thirtieth of Iune. At which time we fer sayle from thence, and through contrarie winde and foule weather, were put into *Ward-houfe*, where we tooke in fresh water, and stayed vntill the sixth of Iuly.

The same day, the wind came Southerly, and we steered away North-west and by North about 56. leagues, we obserued the Sunne at twelue of the clocke at Noone, and found our selves to be in 73. degrees 5. minutes of Northerly Latitude. The seventh of Iuly, it was all day calme, and wee founded, but had no ground in two hundred and fiftie fathoms. The eight day, we had little winde, which was at South-east, and foggy weather; and at eight of the clocke at Night, we saw great flocks of Sea-fowles, which we call *Willowkes*: some of these Fowles had each of them a small Fish in their bills, and flew toward the North-west and by North. The other without Fish, some of them flew cleane to the former, and some fate in the Sea very neere our Ship.

About twelue of the clocke at night we founded, and had ground at one hundred and twentie fathoms. We steered away North-west and by North, till foure of the clocke the eight day in the morning, then it fell calme: and as the ship lay still, our Master spied a Morfe, which came to our ship and swamme round about it. While we were all gazing at this Monster, I spied

Their yeere but halfe a yeere.

Judgementer Oath.

Their persons.

Divination.

Womens hardnesse.

* This was Master *Thomas Widen*, second Voyage thither. His fifth Voyage thither. In 1609, I haue added it the end of this Chapter, after *Yeere* *Baince*: since this being before I saw this.

A Morfe.

The Island eagles off, bearing North North-west half a point Westly, which shewed very high Land, and much Snow vpon it. The wind came to the North-east. The ninth day, we came to an *Ancher* on the South South-east side, in fiftie and twentie fathomes streame ground. We voyaged out our Boate, and Master *Widen* went toward the Land: but thinking to haue landed he could not, because there was a great Sea, and great flocks of Ice all along the shore side. Within one houre the Boate came aboard, and they find, there were so many Fowles, that they covered the Rocks, and flew in such great flocks, that they threwed like a Cloud. While this they were talking of, by the Boate, a very goodly Morfe, putting his head about the water, looking assiduously at the Boate, and made such an horrible noise, and roaring, that they in the Boate thought he would haue sunk it.

The same day, at eight of the clocke at night, we weighed and stood away South-west and by South about foure miles, where we dropped the South-west point of the Land, and found the Land to trend North North-west, and all along the shore some strutting Ice. We layd along the shore, finding fiftie fathomes, and sometimes thirtie fathomes, streame ground with white shels. We held this count: we saw few all the Northernmost part of the Land: and being within three miles of it, and about thirteene miles from the Point, we came round about it. And some two miles from the Land, we anchored in fixtente fathomes, streame ground. We had not ridden one houre to land, but a great piece of Ice came directly with the ryde vpon vs, and before we could weigh, it strooke the ship with such force, that it hid on the one side.

As soon as it was past, we went on shore, where we found abundance of Sea Fowles, as *Willowkes*, *Gulls*, *Moldies*, *Sea-mewes*, a small Fowle like a *Willowke*, and diuers others, as wilde Geese, *Sea-pidgeons*, *Oghies*, and such like: whereof Master *Thomas Widen* killed fo many with his Peece, that we almost laded our Boate with them. The same night we shot three heaps of fishing-lines, but when we haled them, we found neither fish nor layre: for the Seales had eaten them all off.

The ninth day, Master *Widen* and our Master went on shore, to see what they could find. They went in the fore-noon about eight of the clocke, and came againe about foure in the after-noon very weary, seeing nothing but small Foxes, and some like *Dogges* in every place: they their smell and their taylor. In the meane time, the Master *Mate* and my selfe observed the Sunne, and found that part of the Land laye in 74. degrees and 45. minutes.

The tenth day we weighed, haue the wind southerly, and found the Land to trend away East South-east. The length of this side is about ten miles, good ground. We had not sailed six miles, but we saw a lande Bay against which we came to an *Ancher* in nine fathomes. We had not fished our Sayles, but we saw many Morfes swimming by our ship, and heard withall a huge noise of roaring, as if there had beene an hundred Lions. Immediately we manned our Boate, wherein was Master *Widen* and fife men more: we landed and saw abundance of Morfes on the shore, close by the Sea-side; and drawing nigher vnto them, we perceived that they were all of the same company, which wee had seen before. It seemed very strange to us to see such a multitude of Monsters of the Sea, lyke *Hogges* vpon heauen: In the end we shot at them, not knowing whether they could runne swiftly or lieze vpon vs or no. To be briefe, we had but three Peeces, Master *Widen* a Fowling Peece, my selfe a Musket, and another a Musket. Their Peeces were spoyled instantly. For Master *Widen*, was cloyed, the other man wherewith had shot one by himselfe, thought to knocke him on the head with the stock, but falling in Peece. I shot still, and some when they were wounded in the flesh, would but looke vp and lyze downe againe. Some were killed with the first shot and some would goe into the Sea with fire or fire shot: they are of such an incredible strength. When all our Powder and shot was spent, we would blow their eyes out with a little Peale shot, and then come on the blande side of them, and we killed but fiftene. We took off their heads, and when we had done, we went straggling vp and downe to see what we could find. I found the first Tooth that was caten vpon the land, and going a little farther along, I found as many Teeth more: as Land chere men more could carry, which filled an *Hog* head, all which would deliuer to Master *Widen*.

The next day following, being the eleuenth day, we went on shore againe, and killed about sixe more: And afterward we went up into the Land, and saw nothing but *Fowles* and *Foxes*. I perceived in deed a great print of a Beares foot, and after that many other footings, but yet saw no Beare or other wild beaft.

The twelfth, we weighed from thence, and stood to the Eastward: we had not gone past foure miles, but we found the Land to fall away South-east and by South. The length of this side is about twelue miles. All this side we went close by the shore with our Boate, and the ship layd along about three miles off. We went oftentimes on shore, but could see nothing on all that side but Fowles, and abundance of Drift Wood, the most part whereof was *Arctice*, which haue bene beaten vp and downe the Sea. This day being Sunday, about eight of the clocke at night, we anchored within two miles of the place where we arrived at the first. The same night we went on shore, and in a Bay vnder an huge Cliffe of a Rocke, vpon the Beach, we found

Cherie Land described.

Store of fowles.

Morfe's roaring.

Abundance of Sea-fowles found on shore.

Small Fowles, Sea-pidgeons, &c.

Noon.

Small Foxes, &c.

They killed a Musket.

The third day.

Abundance of Drift Wood.

A thousand Morice heads, we went aboard.

The thirteenth, we went on shore againe, and with our Pieces fell a killing of the beasts. One of our company named *Richard Long*, called it a killing of the beasts. *Richard Long* was the name of the man, he had a hand-bill Master led by Salutes of his owne, headed it so skillfully, that he hath the view of it againe. We went about a mile to the Eastward, so far what we could finde: And landing at a Bay where *Master Brune* had beene the yeere before, and found a piece of Lead Vre, we looked for the same, but found none. The same day returning aboard, we set sayle for *Perche in England*, where we arrived the five and twentieth of July: and stayed there foure dayes: at which time we set sayle for *Cole*, and arrived there the eight of August, where we continued till the sixteenth day, at which time we departed thence for *England*, and arrived in the *Thames* the fifteenth of October, of the yeere aforesaid 1604.

When we came to *London*, because *Sir Francis Chere* Knight and Merchant was at the charge of this Discoverie, this land was called *Cherie land*.

The third Voyage to Cherie land, performed by Master WELDEN Merchant, and STEPHEN BENNETT Master, in the yeere 1605.

IN the yeere aforesaid, we set sayle from *London*, the first of May, with one ship of sixtie Tunnes, and two and twentieth men and boyes. The three and twentieth of the said moneth, we went taken by a ship of *Dunkirk*. They took from vs two Hogheads of strong Beere, our Musketts, a Fowling Peece of Master *Welden*, which cost three pounds sterling. After the Captaine had misused vs at his pleasure, though we were in peace with his Countrey, he let vs goe.

The eight and twentieth of June, we put off from *Assumption Point*, which is a place not farre from the North Cape, and about 70. degrees in latitude, but by contrarie winds we were put backe againe. Yet the second of July, we came to *Cherie land*, and anchored on the South-east side: and having a Shallop in pieces to set vp, we carried it on shore, and went to worke upon it; and the third day after we had it all floate. The sixth day we entered into a Cove, having all our fourte on shore with shot and jacking, and due abundance of Morice. The yeere before we due all with shot, not thinking that a jacking could pierce their skinner: which we found now contrarie, if they be well handled, for otherwise, a man may thrust with all his force and not enter: or if he doe enter, he shall spoyle his Lance upon their bones: for they will strike with their fore-foot, and bend a Lance round, and break it, if it be not all the better placed. They will also strike with their Teeth at him: that is next them: but because their Teeth grow downward, their strokes are of small force and danger. After we had opened the beards which we had flaine, we took out the blubber, and carried it a mile into the Bay, where we set up the shallop. The reason why we carried it thither, was, because we thought that the fire of our Furnace would keene them away: for we did buye all their fat to bring it into Oyle. Thus we followed our business till the foure and twentieth of July, at which time we had very foule weather with fogs. Now the ship riding in the same Cove, where we killed our Morices, had taken in eleven Tunnes of Oyle, and the tenth of all the beasts aforesaid. Then we made preparation to be gone home: and I was sent with our shallop, and eight men with me to fetch our Tent, and our keying Coppens, our mens Clothes and some Treach. At my returne, when I was almost aboard, coming through a place betweene the land and a Rocke, which of necessity we must needs passe, the tyde being against vs, and a stiff gale of winde blowing out of the Sea, made the Sea very high upon the Rockes, whereby we had like to have bene funke for our Boate was almost full of water; and if we had not speedily rowed backe againe, we had dyed each man of vs. To make short, we got into a Cove, where the Rockes did keepe the beards from vs, & we lighted our Boate. In this Cove I found a Myne of Lead Vre, and digged up about thirtie poundes weight of it, which I brought into *England*. And calling to mind that we were in sight of our ship, when we shipped the water which I spake of before, I mistruied that they thought, as they did indeed, that we were all drowned. Therefore I demanded who would goe with me, to the top of a Cliffe which stood out against the ship? And one *Iohn Tenney* said, that he would goe: he had not gone halfe way, but he would goe no farther because it was so cold, and the Hill stood fopping verye steepe toward the Sea, and all the side of it was loose Earth, which we must needs passe. Then I went forward all alone, and found all our men on shore, savinge one dead man, and a sickle man. But the Cliffe being so high and steep, that they vnder it could scarce understand what I said, nor I what they said, but with much ado: They demanded, as I toke it, fall our men were well: I told them yes, as loud as I could: And then I threw downe a piece of the lead Vre which I had found, which *Master Welden* took up: And when I was going away I heard

I heard them shout, and looking behind me, I saw them all point toward the Skiffe that lay at anchor hard by the shore; whereby I perceived that the rope was broken, which made it fast to the shore, and the Skiffe was gone off to the length of her ript: so that they could not go aboard except one of them did swim to the Skiffe, which was exceeding dangerous, both because it was extreame cold, and also for feare of being killed by the Morices, that were in the Sea all about the Boate. Whereupon with all speed possible I ranne to helpe our men in that distresse; and coming to the Shallop, some were willing, and some unwilling: But I said that out I would; and taking nothing about wth me but a fewe teeth, we got out: and in the place where we had like to have bene funke before, we had a good followe: but our Boate being light, and the tyde with vs, we got through: whereas *Mr. Welden*, and *Master Bennett* our Master, with all the company were not a little ioyfull, and gave God humble thanks, that had of his great mercy defended vs from a great many of dangers that day. For that day we saw abundance of verye driving toward the land, but the winde and tyde shifting, put it another way. Likewise two boyes had like to have bene flaine with the fall of a rocke, which fell close by them, they being but newly stepped out of the place where the rocke fell.

In the time that we were in this distresse, I called the Mountaine by the name of *Mount Miseric*, which is so called at this day. Likewise there is a very high Mountaine on the East South-east point of this land: which, because Master *Welden* and I got two Foxes nere it, I called it *Mount maderpud*, alluding to the name in the merrie booke of *Ramond the Fox*.

The fixe and twentieth of Iuly, we got out of the Cove with the Ship, having such a fogge, that although we rode so nere the land, that we could heare the howle that were on shore, yet we could not see the land. This fogge continued untill the eight and twentieth of Iuly: on which day having clearer weather, we got our water and other provision aboard; and set sayle for *England*, and passing by the coast of *Denmarke* and *Norway*, we arrived at *London* the foure and twentieth of August 1605.

The fourth Voyage to Chery land, 1606.

WE set sayle from *London* in a Ship and a Pinasse; the Ship being of burden sixtie Tunnes, and the same that I was in the Summer before; Master *Thomas Welden* was Merchant, and *Master Bennett* Master, having in all two and twentieth men and boyes. The Pinasse was of twenty Tunnes, and had eight men in her, and I *James Paul* was Master of her: we were set out by Master *Roskill*, one of the *Admirals* Company.

The eight and twentieth, we had sight of land on the coast of *Norway*, in the latitude of sixtie degrees and a halfe; nine leagues off.

The sixteenth of Iune, we fell with the *Assumption*, it bearing South and by West eight leagues off: and we lay beating betweene the North Cape and it, till the eighteenth of Iune: At what time we put off, and altered away North North-west about fiftie five leagues, and found much Ice: we thought to have gotten through it, but could not: and when we had spent twelue houres in it, and having the wind Northwesterly, we put backe againe. The two and twentieth, we fell with the North Cape againe, at twelue of the clock at noon. The foure and twentieth, we put off againe, and being five and foure leagues from the Cape, we met with Ice, and upon a piece of Ice we saw a Beare. The Ship being on head of vs, bare close to the Ice; and *Master Welden* shot the said Beare dead at the first shot. This Beare was from the neereff land aboute sixteen and twentie leagues, and lived of Seales or other fish that he could prey upon.

The first of Iuly, we saw *Cherie land* at a North soule: the land bearing North and by white small shelly ground with small blacke stones.

The third of Iuly we anchored on the West side of the land in twentie fathoms, having very much Ice. I observed the Sunne at the lower, and found the latitude of that place to be 74. degrees, 55. minutes. It followeth there South-west and by South; and the Road cometh from the South-west.

The fifth and sixth dayes, we were troubled with much Ice; but it being broken, we brought the ends of our Cables to our maine Mast; and having a good tyde, we did there, as we were to do, cleere off the Ice. We rode thus in Ice fixe dayes, to wit, untill the thirteenth day; at what time the Ice began to goe away, and the Morice came on shore. For their nature is such, that they will not come on land as long as any Ice is about the land.

The fourteenth, we went on land; Master *Welden* and Master *Bennet*, with the Ships company, and I with the company of the Pinasse. And being altogether on shore, and seeing of the Beares appointed mee to take eleven men with mee, and to goe beyond the beasts where they lay; that they and we might meet at the middell of them, and so to take them, that none of them should get into the Sea.

Extreame cold the 31. of Iuly.

Abundance of driving Ice.

Mount Miseric.

A monstrous fogge.

August 24. A Ship and Pinasse set forth.

The Assumption. Much Ice 55. leagues from the North Cape.

Ice within 47. leagues of the North Cape. A Beare on Ice 27. leagues from any land.

Part of Cherie land in 74. degrees, and 55. minutes. The Road cometh from the South-west. The thirteenth of Iuly. The nature of the Morice.

A great white
Beare.

As I fterched a compasse about, before we were aware, rose a great white Beare within a Pikes length of vs: whereupon we made a stand, and my selfe having both a Musket and a Lance, thought to have shot him: but remembering my selfe, that the report of my Peece might make all the Morfes goe into the Sea, and so, heard our Voyage, I went to him with my Lance. All this while he laye foming at the mouth, and would not stirre, but gaped and roared as though he would have eaten vs all: but presently wee pricked him in the snout: and then with an este pace we proceeded on with our businesse: and before fix houres were ended, we had slayne aboute twenty or eight hundred Beasts. And after that Master Welden slue the Beare. For ten dayes space we played our businesse very hard, and brought in almost span end.

Scarcely eight
hundred beafts
slayne in fixe
houres.
A great Frost
the 24. of July.

The foure and twentieth of July, wee had the wind at North-east: and it froze so hard, 10
that the Ice did hang on our Clothes.

The fixe and twentieth, we had taken two and twentieth runs of the Oyle of the Morfes, and three hogheads of their Tallow.

The seven and twentieth, Master Welden slue another Beare.

The eight and twentieth, we took in Water and Wood.

The nine and twentieth, we set saile for England.

The fiftenth of August, 1606. we arrived in the Thames.

The sixth Voyage made to Cherie Island, the South part whereof standeth in 74. degrees and 40. minutes of Northerly latitude, in the yeere 1608.

The sixteenth of April, in the yeere 1608. we set saile from Blacks wall, and came to Granesf. end in a ship called the Paul.

The one and twentieth of May, we were within 4. leagues of the North Cape, standing in 71. degrees and 3. of North latitude. The foure and twentieth, we came to Ward-buys. The five and twentieth, we weighed, and came to Tipany in Lapland the fixe and twentieth: where we stayed about our businesse till the thirteenth of Iune.

The thirteenth of Iune aforesaid, we weighed anchor, and directed our course for Cherie I-land. The eighteenth, at foure of the clocke in the morning we saw Cherie Island, it bearing North North-west 10. leagues off: and at foure of the clocke at night we were anchored on the North-west side of it: and Master Welden went on Land on the North side, and slue a Beare.

The nineteenth, we rid still, and Master Welden went to the North side againe, and slue another Beare. The same day we sent two men to the South side of the land, to see if there were any Morfes on shore. They came againe the next day, and said, that there were great flocks.

The twentieth and one and twentieth dayes it was calme, and the weather cleere, and wee had it as hot as I have commonly felt in England at that time of the yeere. For the Pich did runne downe the ships sides: and that side of the Maits that was to the Sunne ward, was so hot, 40
that the Tarre did frye out of it, as though it had boyled.

The two and twentieth, at a North-east Sun, we weighed and went to the South side of the Iland, and came into a Cove, where the Morfes were, and slue about 900. or 1000. of them in lesse then seven houres: and there were played our businesse till the second of July: at what time we had taken into our ship 22. tunnes and three hogheads of Oyle.

The third of Iuly, being Sunday, our Richard Stenues of Harenwick came to the said Cherie Iland, in a ship called the Dragon, being set out by Master Duppe, a Brewer dwelling in Saint Catharines neere the Tower of London: which set out a ship with Master Thomas Welden the yeere before 1607.

The ninth day, we made our Voyage, and came out of the Cove, having taken in 22. tunnes of 50 Oyle, and one hoghead, one barrel, and one terce of Morfes teeth: besides 400. other things.

The twelfth, we tooke into our ship two young Morfes, male and female, alise: the female I did before we came into our ship: the male I slue about ten weekes. When we had watered, we set saile for England about foure of the clocke in the morning.

The fourteenth day, we saw the Iland bearing North North-west, 15. leagues off vs, and found, 40
and had 85. fathoms, greene Oze, like Doves dung.

The twentieth of August, we arrived at London: and having dispatched some private businesse, we brought our living young Morfe to the Court, where the King and many honourable personages beield it with admiration for the strangenesse of the same, the like whereof had never before beene scene alive in England. Not long after it fell sicke and died. As the beaist in shape is very strange, so is it of strange disposition, and apt to be taught, as by good experience we often proved.

The

The seventh Voyage to Cherie Island, made in the yeere 1609.

Wee were furnished with two ships, determining to goe to Tipany in Lapland, to buy fish of the Lapper and Kuffes, and afterward to goe to Cherie Island: the one was called the Lionsse, in which I went for Master, the other, the Paul, which was there the last yeere, 1608.

The one and twentieth day of March, we weighed anchor at Granesfend: and the fixe and twentieth, we came to Harenwick: where it was concluded, that the Lionsse should goe directly to Cherie Island. The fiftenth of April, we weighed at Harenwick: and the last of the same month we fell betweene Lefsee and Zenam vpon the Coast of Finmark.

The second of May, we came to the North Cape; and the same day wee stood for Cherie I-land: but meeting with contrary winds and foule weather, we bare backe againe for the Cape, and fell with the Land the fourth day. The fift day in the morning, we put the second time to the North Cape; and the eight day wee anchored at Cherie Island. It did freeze very hard, but we found no Ice about the Iland, save that which clate to the Rockes. We went into the Cove with our Shallops, and found eight Morfes on the Ice hard by the shores side: And we also found all the beafts that were killed the last yeere not washed away with the Sea, covered over with Snow and Ice. Wee thought to have gotten abundance of Fowle as wee had done in the yeeres before: but they would not sit; the reason was, because they were but new come to the Iland, and not seled as then: yet some Fowle we got, and came aboard. And because the wind was Northerly, that we could not conveniently goe to the North side with the ships, we determined to send some men over Land, to see if there were any Morfes on shore vpon that side. The ninth day, I prepared to goe over Land to the North side, about a North-east Sunne, with three men in my companie. I my selfe had a Musket, and about a quarter of a pound of Powder, and fixe Bullets, in a Halfe-pike in mine hand, and an Hatchet at my backe. One of the men had a Birding Peece; the other two had each of them a Launchin. Wee went over the Snow and Ice space outward; but came to the shoreward, by reason we could not see any where. And when we were within a mile of the other side, one of my companie said, he saw a Beare: whereupon we looked up, and saw three great ones. Whereupon I made a stand, and gaue each of my companie some Agave vite, and a little Bread, and told them, that we must not in any case be carefull, because the nature of them is such, that whole our seemeth carefull, or offereth to runne away, they will seize vpon him. In this time I made my Musket readie: and the Beares seeing vs to come toward them, stood vpon their feet, and two of them went toward the Sea: The third stood still champing and foming, as though hee would have eaten vs. When I was within shot of him, he beganne to follow his fellows, still looking behind him with his former gesture: In the meane while I got ground of him, the three men following mee with their weapons. In the end the angry deuill turned backe, and came directly toward mee: I let him come within two long Pikes lengths, and gaue him such a welcome, that hee fell downe flone dead.

40 The companie that were with me were glad as well as I: yet I had bene at the killing of Beares before. After this Beare was slayne, we told seuenteen more, whereof three were young ones. This done, we went on to the Sea, where we found the Shallop which we left the yeere before. We were no sooner set to eate a little food, but there came a Beare with two young ones as big as Lambes of a month old: they skipped about their dams necke, and played with one another very wantonly. The dame came so neere that I shot at her, and being loth to hurt the young ones, being playing about her fore-parts, I shot her through the top of the shoulder; then she went away. Immediately we saw another Beare coming toward vs, which before he came to vs, stood vpon his hinder feet twice or thrice, vying the same countenance that the first did, which I slue. I let him come very neere, and thinking to give him his passpor, the flint of my Musket was broken, which made him come very neere vs. Then the fellow that had the birding piece shot him into the foot: whereupon he ran away faster then we could follow him. Wee seeing too many Beares, and having no store of Powder nor Shot, bent our iourney toward our ship againe. Wee had not come a quarter of a mile, but wee saw a huge Beare fast a slepe on the Snow. I went softly toward him, and gaue him such a flip, that hee neuer rose out of the place where he lay. His skin when he was slayed was thirteene foot long. A neere neighbour of his hearing the report of my Peece came toward me: and him I slue also. Now, having but one shot left, I thought it not best to bestow it there, although I saw another lie vpon the Snow hard by. While we fate downe to rest vs in the mid-way, there came toward vs another Beare with one young one: they came almost within shot, and went backe againe: presently hee turned againe, and came within shot of me, and stood on his hinder legs directly upright, and so did the young one. I made account they would have come neerer: but they to the contrary ran away. Wee came being very wearie aboard our ship about a North-west Sunne. Then we weighed, and stood to the Northward, having the wind at South: and by three of the clocke the next morning, wee came to the North-east Point with the ships. There wee manned our Shallops.

Lapland.
May 20.

They arrive at
Cherie Island
the 8. of May.

Fowle.

Three Beares.
Quality of
Beares.
Feare a Train
con.

A Beare slaine.

17. Beares in
sight.

Young Beare:
whelps.

A Beare slayne,
the skin where-
of was 12. foot.
A third Beare
slayne.

The tenth day.

Six Beares
flyers,
All the Beares
layed.

Shallop, and Master Thomas Welles and I went on shoare, where hee flew five Beares, and I one, and I wounded two more very low. And before a North Sunne, our men had fleyed them all; both them that I flew the day before, and them that wee flew this last time: for they were all together.

The eleventh day, we went on Land, and walked some old fleyed Morfes skinnies, which had lyeen there two yeeres: but they will hardly prove good. The twelfth day, we rid at the West side, and got some Fowle with shor, and there we rid till the thirteenth.

The thirteenth, wee flew very much Ice to the Southwards and Westwards, with came dring to fast toward the shoare where we rid, that wee were forced to weigh, and flood to the North side of the land. The Ice followed vs full: then wee stood to the East side of the land: and there were round both the land and our felues encompassed round with Ice. But the wide being Westerly, and a good stiffle gale, it blew the Ice about a mile and an halfe from the Eastern side: by which means wee got betwixt the Ice and the land, and stood to the Southward, but saw not any thing in all the Sea save Ice, fauing close by the Land a little open Sea tress while one way, and another while another way, and could not see open Sea till the fifteenth of the same month; at a North-west Sunne wee flew the open Sea: only a ledge of Ice which began to part inlander, was betwixt vs and it. Toward that place we stood, and intending by Gods helpe to get through, we made prouision to defend the ship from the Ice, by hanging Cables ends, and Plankes, and Captain barres about the bowes of our ship. But for all 20 our tenders, our ship had a great knoeke vpon a piece of Ice. About a North Sunne, we got out into the open Sea; with humble thanks to God for our deliuerance.

The sixteenth day, the land did beare North-east and by North, eight leagues from vs: and it did freeze all that day, the wind being at North, which was almost calme. The seventeenth, at noone the land did beare North-east and by North, about nine leagues off; the wind Southerly, snowy weather. The same day we flew a fawle, bearing East North-east off vs about 35 leagues. The eighteenth, the land did beare North about 15 leagues off, the wind being at East and by North, Snow and frosty weather. The nineteenth, at twelue of the clocke at noone the land bare North and by East: and we finding the Ice somewhat scattered, and the wind Southerly, put roome toward the land, and vpon one piece of Ice we flew five Seales: one I killed, and one 30 Iooke aloue, and brought it aboard our ship. But wee could not come neere the land by five leagues. The wind came to the West with thick weather and Snow. The twentieth, at twelue at noone the land beare North North-west, about twelue leagues off. We landed, and had 100. fathoms, greenish Oze, faire weather, but cold.

The one and twentieth, we flew the ship that wee had seene the fourteenth day: wee spoke with them about 15. at noone. The Master told vs he was of Hull. Wee demanded whether he was bound? He told vs, to Cherie land, and that there he would make his Voyage. The land at this time did beare North and by East about nine leagues off; and it was faire, but cold frostie weather. The 22, 23, 24, and 25. dayes, we did beate vp and downe in the Ice. The 26. 27. and 28. dayes, likewise wee layed vp and downe in the Ice; hauing the wind Northerly, and the land bearing betweene the North and the North North-east, cold weather. The nine and twentieth, the land beare North nine leagues off, the wind at North-east, inowly weather and Frost.

The thirtieth day, we flew 26. Seales, and efpied three white Beares: wee went aboard for Shor and Powder, and coming to the Ice againe, we found a lhee Beare and two young ones: Master Thomas Welles shot and killed her: after shee was layne, wee got the young ones, and brought them home into England, where they are aloue in Paris Garden. The one and thirtieth, we beate vp and downe in the Ice, but could not come neere the Land for Ice: the winde was Northerly.

The first of Iune, we got within five or fixe miles of the land: but finding very much Ice close by the Land, we stood off againe, the wind being at North-east, cold weather. The second day, we got within three leagues of the land: but finding exceeding much Ice round about vs, we stood off againe, the wind at North-east, cold frostie weather. From the second day to the fife, wee layed first one way, and then another, as the wind and Ice would giue vs leaue. The wind being at North and by East, and the land being betweene the North-west and by North, within five leagues and leffe.

The sixth day, we spoke with the Hull man, who told vs, that he was put twentie leagues to the North-west of the land, being fast in the Ice. We had the wind Northerly, and frosty weather: the Land bearing North North-west. The seuen and eight, we beate vp and downe in the Ice: the land did beare North-west eight leagues off. The winde was Northerly, with cold and frostie weather.

The ninth, the Land beare North-west off vs about six leagues off. That day we had the first fogge since the time of our arriual, which was the eight of May. Neither lost wee the sight of the land about eightene houres in all this time. This day, about a North-east Sunne it began

gan to thaw, and in fixe houres the snow was melted, which lay vpon the Ice about fixe inches thick: which put vs in good hope that the Ice was almost past.

The tenth, we got within fixe miles of the shoare: where I made an attempt to haue got to the land with the Shallop: but coming within three miles of the shoare, I could get no farther, the Ice was so thicke, and such foggy weather. I made another attempt the same day, and got within one mile of the Land: but the Ice was so thicke that I could get no farther. The same day wee flew good store of Morfes on the Ice and in the Sea.

The eleventh and twelfth, we played vp and downe fayre by the Land, to see if wee could get on Land with our Shallop: but the Ice was so close about the Land, that wee could not by any means. This day the wind was at South-east, thicke foggy weather. The thirteenth, we had thicke fogge and calme weather: and when it began to cleere, we had fight of the Souther part of the land, bearing East South-east, about fixe miles off; but it fell thicke suddenly againe. There wee anchored in fortie fathoms, white shelly ground: and rid till ten of the clocke at night: at what time I prepared to goe on shoare, as fast as I could with a Shallop and fixe men. About eleuen of the clocke we put from the Ship, and with great labour got through the Ice to the land, by a North-east Sunne.

The fourteenth day, I landed on the Wester side of the land, and determined to goe from thence to the North side, where wee flew the Beares. The ninth of May I left three men to the Shallop, and tooke three men with me. In my journey I found fish had way, that I had no stomacke to goe through; for where there was no snow, the ground was so soft, and without graffe, that we went vp to the ankles in dirt and the snow lay, which was in some holes, three or foure fathoms thicke, it was so soft, that we slipt each step vp to the twift: so that wee were about three houres in going scarce two miles. Whereupon, considering it would bee long before I should get ten miles and backe againe, I returned to our Shallop, and found that the men which I left had killed some fowle, which wee lod, and when we had eaten them, I prepared to goe in the Shallop to the North side. I went close by the shoare; for the Sea was full of Ice. As wee went along by the Cliffes, we got good store of Fowle; which made vs glad and ioyfull, because there was no hope to get aboard the Ship that day, nor the next. About a North-west Sun we got to the place aboue, and found nine Beares, three of them I flew, the other tooke the 30 Sea. Those three that wee laine we fhead, and tooke their flesh and salted it in their skinnies; which I placed in the Shallop for feare of a dearth. I had a terce full of salt there, which wee left in that place the eleventh of May.

The fifteenth day, when wee had ended our businesse, and eaten some of our Beares flesh, and set vp an Ensigne in token of our possession of the land, we prepared to be gone: and about an East North-east Sunne the wind came Westerly; which made me thinke, as it proued, that the Ship would be on the South-east side of the land; and when wee were coming, and almost at the North-east point, we flew nine men; presently I knew them to bee the men of Hull. Along I came to the East side, where we tooke in drift wood, and a broad fowle to make a fire vpon our Boat. While wee were there, wee espied our ship vnder her Fore-topfayle, and her Milen.

We made all the haste wee could, and came to the Coue, where wee made our voyage the Summer last past. There likewise we set vp a Pike, with a white cloth vpon it, and a letter signifying our possession for the right worshipfull Company trading to *Moscow*. When I had done, I elipt thither, and told him we had taken possession there, the eight of May last. He answered, That if the beards came on shoare, hee would kill them if hee could; and that there were as good men which and so departed and got some Fowle. About a South-west Sunne wee stood toward our Ship, hauing the wind at West South-west, and the Ship bearing from vs South-east about foure leagues. I had not sailed ten miles, but the Ice was so close and firme, that I could not get aboard, nor backe againe; for it closed with such force, that it made the Shallops sides cracke, as though they would haue met together. Wee laboured very fore to saue our Boat, because it did concerne our liues, and got her into a place where shee lay betweene two pieces of Ice. After this fore we draue with the Ice till we had lost fight of our Ship, which was about a North Sun; and still wee draue, being not able otherwise to moue till we were about eight leagues from the land.

The sixteenth day, at an East South-east Sun, the Ice began to open. Then, although my Company were in deapaire, and said it was impoible to get out, to worke wee went, and by cutting neerer to the Land wee got, we found the more open Sea; and by a North Sunne wee got on shoare. After we had giuen God thanks for our deliuerance out of such extreme danger, wee ate some Fowle and Beares flesh, which wee lod vnder a Cliffes. There wee found nine young Foxes, and killed the old one. There also we flew vpon the cold Sand, which was not past three inches thicke, and vnderneath Ice; and it kept here till a South-east Sunne the fourteenth day.

The fifteenth, we went from this place to the Coue, where we found the Hull mans Boat. I made a tilt of the Shallops fawle, and lod some Beares flesh and Fowle; and stayed about the Coue

The first shaw.

Fogges

The Beares
flame on the
North side.Three Beares
flame, powder,
and, andPossession taken
of Cherie
land for the
Moscow
Company.Drift wood on
the East side.

The Coue.

They fired on
Beares flesh.
Nine Foxes
found.

Three Myne of Lead & one on Gull-Land. Coue all that day. And vpon an Iland, commonly called Gull-Iland, I found three Myne of Lead Vre: but hauing no fit tooles to breake the Rocks, and also becauſe I was in the view of the Hulls maine Tent, I was forced to let it reſt, till the Ships could get into the Coue.

Good Sea-coales found on the Iland. The eighteenth day, we went to the North ſide of the Iland, and in our way we found good Sea-coales to burne: ſome we toke with vs to try them, and found them good. And on the North ſide I ſlew two Beares. Then we ſhared the bread that was left; and we had but two cakes to a man: for ſome of my Company while I was aſleep, or killing of the Beares, had broken open the cheſt wherein the bread was, and had conueyed ſome away. Our beere was ſpent before this time, and we were faine to drinke ſnow water.

Another Beare ſlaine. The nineteenth, we went to the Coue, the wind being Weſterly, to ſee if we could eſpy our Ship; but we could not, neither could they come neere the Iland for Ice; for all the Sea, as farre of a mile off the ſhoare, it was deere round about once in a tyde.

Another Beare ſlaine. The twentieth day, I went to the North ſide againe, and ſlew a Beare. Thus we ſpent the time, ſometimes on one ſide, ſometimes on the other, neuer ſtaying about one day in one place till the Ship came in; vvhich was the ſeuen and twentieth of Iune, on vvhich day I ſlew another Beare. I ſlew ſeuſen in all, vvhofe fleſh we ate full ſauely, forgetting the oylly rankneſſe of it; for hunger is a ſauourie ſauce.

Their Ship got in the ſecond time. The ſeuen and twentieth, our ſhip came to an anchor on the North ſide, where we then were; alſoone as vve ſaw her, we needed no bidding to go aboard. When we were come to the ſhip ſide, they bad vs velcome; but vvhether vs thought to haue releued our ſelves, vve found it farre otherwiſe; becauſe the Ship had a knoeke vnder a piece of Ice in the Sterne, vvhich brake in the ſpyled, ſauing about one hundred weight: vvhich was but a ſmall quantitie for three and forty men. This day a Ship called the *Matthew* came to an anchor by vs. Then Maſter *Widen* and I went on ſhoare, vvhether we found one *Iohn Skinner*, Maſters mate of the *Matthew*, vvhich eleuen men by him. We let our Tent, and told him there was no voyage for him to make: but our neceſſitie was ſuch, that they were faine to take four hundred of bread of them, vpon ſome condition, vvhich I will not ſpeake of here. The ſame day vve thought to haue taken a Coper aboard, vvhich I digged out of the ſnow; but by negligence it was let fall into the Sea, yett afterward taken vp againe and carried aboard. The ſame day, another Ship called the *Mary Margerie* came into the ſaid Coue on the South ſide.

The *Matthew*. The eighteenth, I went to the Coue vvhith the Shallop and fixe men, vvhether I found the *Mary Margerie*; there paſſed no great kindeſſe betweene them and me. I ſlew three Bluffs there, two vvere loth, the others head I brought aboard. The next day I came aboard our Ship, and vve rid on that ſide, looking ſtill vvhether any beaſts would come on ſhoare, till the ſecond of Iuly. Then vve vveighed, and ſtood to the Eaſt ſide of the Iland; becauſe the wind was at Weſt North-weſt, and great flore of Ice came from thoſe parts. We had not rid one hour to an end, but vve ſaw a Skiffe coming towards vs. In this Skiffe was one *Iofia Legan*, and *Thomas Edg*, Factors in the *Paul* for the vvorſhipfull Company. They told vs that the *Paul* was in the Coue, and the ſhip of *Holl*. They went aboard againe, and vvhether the tyde was ſpent, vve weighed and thought to haue anchored neere the Coue; but the wind was ſo far Eaſterly, that vve could not ſo vve went to the Weſter ſide, and ride there till the fourth day, vvhether vve got Fowle; for in all the time of our being about the Iland, and in the Ice, they were our cheieſt food.

The *Mary Margerie*. The fourth, vve weighed and went to the North ſide, vvhether vve were troubled vvvith much Ice: The wind was at Weſt and by North, vvhich brought the Ice vvhole vpon vs; ſo that we were forced to vveigh againe.

A Beare ſlaine. The ſixth, vve came into the Coue; vvhether Maſter *Widen* ſlew a Beare. The eight day, he ſlew another Beare: and the ſame day I went to the North ſide, vvhith the Shallop and vvhithals for the men vvhich kept on that ſide. I ſtayed there till the fourteenth of Iuly: on vvhich day vve had the vvhind Northerly, vvvith ſnow and froſt, and the Iland enſhroued round with Ice.

Another Beare ſlaine. This time the Ships Company on the South ſide did digge ſome Minerall Lead. And vve caught about twentie Foxes, vvhich vve did eat as ſauely as if they had bene Veniſon.

Snow and Froſt. Some Minerall Lead digged. About twentie Foxes eaten. The fifteenth day, by a North-weſt Sunne vve came aboard the Ship, vvhich lay in the Coue, vvvith our Shallop and all our prouiſion that was on the North ſide. And the *Lunſſe* prepared to go to Saint *Nicolas* in *Ruſſia*, as it was appointed before in *London*.

The ſixteenth, the wind being North-eaſt brought ſuch flore of Ice to the Iland, that it was compaſſed round cloſe to the ſhoare; and filled the Coue ſo full, that by no means poſſible the Ships could get out, but ride ſtill till the ſix ſeuer dayes.

The ſeuenteenth, the Ice began to open at the mouth of the Coue, and ſome were willing to goe out with their Ships; but couetouſneſſe had like to haue brought vs all to great miſery: for each man ſtriving to ride longeſt in the Coue, ſuppoſing that there the Morſes would come firſt on ſhoare, they found it cleane contrary; for the wind came Southerly, and blew all the Ice from this ſide of the Iland, ſaue that which was in the Coue: which preſſed ſo fore vpon our Ships.

Ships, that our Anchors could not hold vs. For the *Matthew* was put from three Anchors, and droue with that ſmall tyde, that runneth there within her length of a ſunken Rocks; but a great piece of Ice on ground vpon the Rocks did keepe her from it. And when the ſtoud came againe, the was driven within halfe her length of the Rocks; ſo that they were glad to get moſt of their vvituals out of her vpon the Rocks, looking each minute when the ſhould ſplit in ſunder. And though the reit of the ſhips did not drue as the ſid, yet they had many a fore ſtroke with the Ice. For the Southerly wind cauſed a hollow Sea to come in; ſo that our ſhips ſtrooke with ſuch force againſt the Ice, that we could hardly ſtand on our feete in them. Then each man layed to his hand to ſaue his ſhip, by putting Plankes and old Cables ends and bundles of 10 Hoops betweene their ſhips and the Ice. But they were beaten all to pieces preferently. Then we put pieces of ſilme Plankes betweene the bowes of the *Paul*, in which ſhip I was: Immediate-ly they alſo were beaten into ſmall pieces, although they were about four inches thick. With the ſtroke that brake the Plankes, the Carpenter ſaid, the ſhips ſide did cracke, and two timbers were broken. Then preſently we alſo got out of the ſhip moſt of our vvituals, and carried it to the ſhoare. There might you ſee a ſorrowfull ſpectacle. For all the ſhips, being ſue in number, were ſo faſt in the Ice, that all the men that were in them all, which were one hundred eighty-two, could not imagine how to ſaue one. Among the reſt, we made account that the *Matthew* would ſinke ere long: becauſe the Ice had broken nine timbers on one ſide, and eleven on the other; ſo that the Greene Sea did come into the ſhip: and her mayne beam was broken at that infant likewiſe. In this ſort we continued till the twentieth day following: when we looked ſtil to bee put on the Cliftes with the force of the Ice, that preſſed vpon our ſhips ſo fore, that our Anchors could not poſſibly hold.

Vpon the twentieth day, it pleaſed God to bring the wind Weſterly, then the Ice began to open, and to drue out of the Coue by little and little, to our great comfort. But that Ice that did not get cleane out, came bucke againe, and ranne round in a Circle; ſo that wee had a continual labor to defend the ſhips from it. Wherevpon we made meanes to get our long 1 Wards, as we termed them. We were faine to let ſlip one Cable, and the *Lunſſe* one. The *Matthew* had but one Cable and Anchor; but they borrowed one of vs. By a North-weſt Sunne, all the ſhips got out of the Ice to the Coues mouth, where we ſtayed for the ebbe. When the ebbe was come, the *Lunſſe* departed on her Voyage to Saint *Nicolas* in *Ruſſia*. And preſently the *Matthew*, and the *Mary Margerie* let ſaile and got out. Then wee in the *Paul* let ſaile, and before our Anchor was vp, it got hold vpon one of *Matthews* Cables, that ſhe loſt, when ſhe droue out, and brought vs vp to a Bitter, ſo that we were very neere the Rocks; but we got off againe, and ride there till a North-weſt Sunne the next day.

The one and twentieth day, we weighed and ſtood to the Eaſt ſide of the Iland, where we found the *Mary Margerie*, which had loſt her Boat. Streight way we ſailed to the North ſide, where we anchored and rid till a North Sunne.

The two and twentieth day, it cleered vp of a fogge, which had continued ſince the time of our coming out of the Coue. And we thought it beſt to fetch the vvituals aboard, 40 which we carried on ſhoare when the tyde was like to be ſplit with Ice.

Then *Iofia Legan* and I tooke ſeuſen men more with vs, and came to the Coue on the South ſide: where we found abundance of Morſes lying on the Ice, that was in the Coue. I ſlue one of them, and tooke off his head: we could not get to the ſhoare where our vvituals lay, but we made a fire vnder a Cliffe in the ſame Coue.

The three and twentieth day, we got to our vvituals, and *Iofia* went with it to our ſhippe: but I tarried at the Coue, hoping that the beaſts would come on Land when the Ice was gone; as they did afterward. There I tarried till the ſue and twentieth of Iuly; at what time *Iofia Legan* came to mee with the Shallop, and a Skiffe laden with Caſke and other prouiſions; and told mee, that they had ſlaine ſue or fixe hundred Morſes on the North ſide.

Hee tarried with mee till the ſeuen and twentieth of Iuly: now ſeeing no beaſtes 50 did come on Land, becauſe the Ice did hang about the Coue, he went to the North ſide againe: but the ſame day after he was gone, they began to come on Land.

The next day following, being the eight and twentieth, we ſlue about eighty, and tooke their Blubber and Teeth. Then they began to come on ſhoare againe the thirtieth day, at what time Maſter *Banner* was come into the Coue to creeke his Anchors. Then his men came on ſhoare, and we ſlue about one hundred and fifty beaſt more. But there ſtole a ſtorme at South-eaſt, that brought in ſuch a ſurge, that it waſhed about fixtie beaſts into the Sea; ſo that moſt of them were loſt.

The next day being the laſt of Iuly, Maſter *Widen* and Maſter *Iofia* came to the Coue with about twelve men, being all very wearie. For they had let the Shallop in a Coue on the North-weſt ſide of the Iland, and came out Land. Then to worke we went on all hands, and placed our Coppers. And by the ſixt day of Auguſt we had ended our buſineſſe; and the ſhip came from the North ſide into the Coue.

is ſaid to bee brought to a Bitter. The Bitter end is that end of the Cable within board at the Bitter.

August.

The six of August, I took the Skiffs and seven men to fetch the Shallop to the Coue, that Master Welden had left in a Coue, on the North-west side of the Iland, the last of July. When I came to the place, considering I was neere the North side, where we commonly make our Voyage, and also defied by Master Welden, if I could goe, to doe so. I went thither, and found about th. m with all, but two, I took one, and a luffie fellow that was our Cooper had the other: we did not killed pait ten but his Lancebrake. Then I flue all the rest in lesse then two houres, and weeooke their Teeth; and the next day by a West Sunne wee came aboard the *Pand*

Note.

The eight day, wee got the Southermost Point of the Iland: where wee rid all that day. In Their Skiffe from their long Boats thence, and we manned our Boat to fetch her againe: but then rose such a fogge, that wee had like to have lost both our Boats and men; but they got the ship againe with much adoe.

The ninth day, it was calme; but wee had such a fogge, that wee could not see two Cables length from the ship. And about eight of the Clocke at night, wee lost our Skiffe altogether.

The tenth day, we had a little Wind at North-west and by West. Then seeing no amendment of the weather, wee left the ship of *Hull* behind vs in the Iland, and about fixe of the Clocke feyle for *England*, and arrived safely at *London* the last of August, 1609. Blessed bee God.

20

A Voyage performed to the Northwards, Anno 1603. in a ship of the burthen of fiftie tonnes, called the Grace, and set forth at the cost and charges of the War-shippfull FRANCIS CHERIE. Written by WILLIAM GORDEN; being the first Voyage to Cherie Ilands, which came to my hands since the former (or rather later Voyages) were in the Presse.

30

The ship being readie the tenth of April, whereof was Master Stephen Bennet, and for Factor and Quer-ter *William Gordon*, our Directions from the said Merchant, were first to proceed to *Cola*, and there to make sale of such goods as we had, and to take in such other as the Countrey of *Lappia* did afford, and then to proceed vpon some well knowne before, after our Affaires ended, we were readie to proceed forward. But our men meanes of *Isaac Logan*, who was to lyve there as Factor for Master *Cherie*, the Master and my selfe, partly with promises, partly with gifts. And thus setting forward the six of August, 40 from the Riuer of *Cola*, being determined to have sayled into 80. degrees of latitude, if nothing did hinder vs; if we did not light vpon some land our determination was hindered by means of meeting with an Iland, and likewise the yeere being farr spent; keeping our course from the West end of *Kildon*, to the Ilands of *Ward-houff*, which we passed the tenth of August with the little wind; then directing our course North North-west, the wind at South-west easte wind, so that the eleventh day we did reckon our felues to have sayled into five degrees Westly. The twelfth day, it was most part calme and foggy. The thirteenth day, it was cleere, and the wind at South, and we had sayled twentie two leagues North North-west. The fourteenth day, the wind at East, we kept our course and sayled ten leagues, and the fime day being thicke and foggy, we had thought wee had lene Land about foure of the clocke in the after-noon, bearing 50 vs West North-west, and North-west by West, but sayling towards it three houres, keeping fill his forme, and not altering till the wind increasing, caused it to fade away (for it was led then fiftene dayes twentie leagues, North-west and by North, fill hauing close weather, we did fee two great high Hills, which did seeme to vs above the Clouds, and did seeme very neere, but we found it otherwise for sayling towards it, we found it further then we did expect, chored in thirte fathomes. In which time we could not sayle lesse then eighteen leagues North and by West. That night our Master knowing, better what did belong vnto those Affaires, 60 would not suffer the Boat to goe along till the morning: which was the seuen eenth day of August, and before our going aland, the Master caused a bank of Lines to bee flit for, to toy for fish, and then he and my selfe with foure of our Company went againe. First, vpon a little Iland meete adjoyning, where we had much adoe to get to our Boat againe, by reason of the theepes

An Iland.

C

of the Rockes: then we went on shore vpon the Mayne, where at our coming on Land, wee did see two Foxes, one White, the other Blacke. Thus spending most part of the day, wee returned aboard our ship without any profit: only one of our men took vpon a piece of Lead, and I found a piece of a Mories Tooth, by which we perceived that the Sea Mories did vfe thither, but the time for that yeere was past, for we did see none. After our coming aboard, having halld the Line, we found nothing but one but fish thereon, wherefore presently weighing Anchor, we sayled West to see if we could haue any true obseruation, the next day which wee had, and found our felues to bee in 74. degrees 30. minutes, The same day directing our course for *London*, where we arrived the tenth of September, by Gods helpe, in health and safetie.

10

CHAP. XIII.

Diners Voyages and Northerne Discoveries of that worthy irreuerable Discoverer Master HENRY HUDSON. His Discoverie toward the North Pole, set forth at the charge of certaine Worshippfull Merchants of London, in May 1607. Written partly by JOHN PLATSE one of the Company, and partly by H. HUDSON.

20

Apprill the nineteenth, at Saint *Esthens* in Berliens Gate street, did communicate with the rest of the Parishioners these perious Seamen, purposing to goe to sea foure dayes after, for to discouere a Passage by the North Pole to *Japan* and *China*. First, *Henry Hudson* Master. Secondly, *William Colmes* his Mate. Thirdly, *James Young*. Fourthly, *John Colman*. Fifthly, *John Cooke*. Sixthly, *James Benbery*. Seuenthly, *James Skratton*. Eightly, *John Playce*. Ninthly, *Thomas Baxter*. Tenthly, *Richard Day*. Eleuenthly, *James Knight*. Twelfthly, *John Hudson* a Boy.

The first of May 1607, we weyed Anchor at *Gravesend*; and on Tuesday the fixe and twentieth day in the morning, we made the Iles of *Shetland*, and at noone we were in 60. degrees 11. minutes, and fixe leagues to the Eastward of them: the Compass had no variation. We had fixe foute fathomes at our founding, blacke, ozie, sandie, with some yellow shels. Our ship made more way then we did suppose. On Saturday the thirteenth of May, by our obseruation we were in 61. degrees 11. minutes. This day I found the Needle to incline 79. degrees vnder the Horizon. For foure dayes space we made very little way by contrary winds.

On Thursday the fourth of June, we were by our obseruation still in 61. degrees and 14. minutes, eight and twentie or thirte leagues from the Northern part of *Shetland*: the Land bearing by our Account East and by North off 94. I found variation in fixe degrees Westly.

The fouteenth of June, we were in 63. degrees 25. minutes. The eight of all the fore-noon, we had a fresh gale Southerly; we steered away North and by West, and by obseruation we were in 64. degrees 27. minutes.

The eleuenth, wee saw fixe or seuen Whales neere our shippe: wee were in fixe foute degrees thirte minutes. About fure of the clocke, the winde came vp at North-east and by East; we steered away North North-west with a fresh gale all the night at East. Thetwelfth, wee had runne by this day noone thirte leagues. In the after-noon wee steered away North by West fixe leagues, all the night proceeded a great fogge with much wind.

The thirteenth, betweene one and two in the morning, we saw some Land on head of vs, and some Ice: and it being a thicke fogge, we steered away Northwesterly, and hauing much wind wee flood away South and by East fixe or eight leagues. Our sayle and throuds did freeze. At eight in the morning it cleered vp, the wind being at North-east and by East, with much wind wee were hardly able to maintayne a sayle. This was a very high Land, most part couered with Snow. The neather part was vncouered. At the top it looked reddish, and vnderneath a blackish and West: And the Northern part which we saw, trended North-east and by North, and North-Whalecote by the bore. We called the Head-land which we saw, *Towmpe Cape*; and neere it All the after-noon, and all the Evening it rained. At eight in the Evening we calft about, and 60 steered all night North and by West, and sometimes North North-west.

The fourteenth, being neere the Land we had Snow. At foure in the morning, the wind veering Northwesterly, we calft about and flood South-east and by South. This day we had much wind and raine, we thorred sayle being neere the Land. The fiftenth, in the morning it blowed so much wind at North-east, that wee were not able to maintayne any sayle, wee then frooke a

Ccc 2

hull,

May.
The Iles of
Shetland.
No variation,
61. degrees 11.
minutes.
The inclination
of the
Needle.
June.

61. degrees 37.
minutes.
57. degrees 301
minutes.

Youngs Cape.
The Head of
Gods Merce.
Snow.

hull, and let our ship drive, waiting for a fiercer wind; this night was very much raine. The fixteenth, was much wind at North-east. The fourteenth, we let sayle at noone, we steered away East and by South, and East South-east. The eighteenth, in the afternoon a fine gale South-east, which toward the Evening increased, and we steered North-east three Watches, twelve leagues. The nineteenth we steered away North North-east sixteen leagues. At noone we account our felues in fourteen degrees neereff hand: purposing to see whether the Land which we made the thirteenth day, were an land or part of *Greenland*. But then the fogge increased very thicke with much wind at South, which made vs alter our course, and to thorten our sayle, and we steered away North-east. Being then as we supposed, in the Meridian of the same land, 10 having no observation since the eleventh day, and lying a hull from the fifteenth to the twentieth day, we perceived a current setting to the South-west. This day we saw three Whales neere our ship, and having steered away North-east almost one watch, five leagues, the Sea was growne cury way: we supposed we were thwart of the North-east part of that Land which we made the thirteenth day, and the current setting to wind-ward. The reason that mooved vs to thinke so; was, that after we had sayled five or six leagues in this Sea, the wind neither increasing nor dulling, we had a pleasant and smooth Sea. All this night was fogge with a good gale of wind, we steered away North-east untill the next day at noone, and sayled in that course twenty leagues.

The twentieth, all the morning was a thicke fogge with the winde at South: we steered 20 North-east till noone. Then we changed our course, and steered away North North-east, hoping for an open Sea in our course to fall with the bodie of *Newland*. This day at two in the afternoon it cleared vp, and we saw the Sunne, which we had not seen since the second of this leagues we saw Land on our Larboard, about four leagues off vs, trending as we could ghesse North-east and South-west. We steered away East North-east, the wind at South a good gale, like a Ducke: we saw also many pieces of Ice driving at the Sea. We looked for one and went 30 ches, five or six leagues. Then it grew thicke fogge. And we cast about, and steered North-east and East North-east two watches, six leagues, finding we were embayed. The wind came at East South-east a little gale: we tacked about and lay South. All this night was a thicke fog with little wind, East we lay with the flame.

The two and twentieth, in the morning it cleared vp, being calme about two or three of the 40 clocke: after we had a prettie gale, and we steered away East and by North three leagues. Our observation was in 72. degrees 38. minutes, and changing our course, we steered North-east, the wind at South-east a prettie gale. This morning when it cleared vp, we saw the Land, trending neere hand East North-east, and West South-west, esteeming our felues from it twelve leagues. It was a mayne high Land, nothing at all covered with snow: and the North part of that mayne high Land was very high Mountaynes, but we could see no snow on them. We accounted by our observation the part of the mayne Land, lay neereff hand in 73. degrees. The many fogs and calmes with contrary winds, and much Ice neere the shoare, held vs from farther Discovery of it. It may be objected against vs as a fault, for halting to Westwardly a course. The chiefest cause that mooved vs therunto, was our desire to see that part of *Greenland*, which we ought that we knew) was to any *Christian* unknowne: and we thought it might as well have beene open Sea as Land, and by that means our passage should have beene the larger to the Pole: and the hope of, having a Westery wind, which would be to vs a landerly wind if we found Land. And considering we found Land contrarie to that which our Cards make mention of; we accounted our labour for much the more worth. And for ought that we could see, it is like to be a good 50 Land, and worth the seeing.

On the one and twentieth day, in the morning while we steered our course North North-east, we thought we had embayed our felues, finding Land on our Larboard, and Ice upon it, and many great pieces of Drift Ice: we steered away North-east, with diligent looking out every cleere for Land, having a desire to know whether it would leave vs to the East, both to know the breadth of the Sea, and also to shap a more Northerly course. And considering we knew no name given to this Land, we thought good to name it, *Held with hope*, lying in 73. degrees of latitude.

The Sunne was on the Meridian on the South part of the Compass, neereff hand. Here is to be noted that when we made *The Mount of Gods Mercy*, and *Youngs Cape*, the Land was covered with snow for the most part, and extreme cold, when we approached neereff: But this Land was very temperate to our feeling. And this likewise is to be noted, that being two days without observation; notwithstanding, our lying a hull by reason of much contrary wind, yet our observation and dead reckoning were within eight leagues together, our shippe being 60

The Land of
Held with hope
in 73. degrees

before vs eight leagues. This night untill next morning procured little Winde.

The three and twentieth, in the morning we had an hard gale on head of vs, with much raine that fell in very great drops, much like our Thunder showers in *England*: we tacked about and stood East North-erly with a short sayle, to our feeling it was not so cold as before we had it. It was calme from noone to three of the clocke with fogge. After the winde came vp at East and East South-east, we steered away North-east with the fogge and raine. About seven or eight of the clocke, the winde increased with extreme fogge, we steered away with short sayle East North-east, and sometimes East and by North. About twelve at mid-night, the wind came vp at South-west, we steered away North, being reasonable cleere weather.

The four and twentieth, in the morning about two of the clocke, the Master mate thought he saw Land on the Larboard, trending North North-west West-erly, and the longer we ranne North, the more it fell away to the West, and he thought it to be a mayne high Land. This day the wind being West-erly, we steered away North, and by observation we were in 73. degrees 38. minutes. At noone we changed our course, and steered away North and by East, and at our last observation, and also at this, we found the Meridian all Leeward on the South and by West, West-erly part of the Compass, when we had sayled two Watches eight leagues.

The five and twentieth, the wind scanted and came vp at North North-west, we lay North-east two Watches 8. leagues. After the wind became variable between the North-east and the North, we steered away East and by North, and sometimes East, we had thicke fogge. About noone three Grampasses played about our shippe. This After-noon the wind vered to the East and South-east, we haled away North and by East. This night was cleere weather, but small fogge (we vlew the word *Night* for distinction of time, but long before this the Sunne was always above the Horizon, but as yet we could neuer see him upon the Meridian North.) This Night being by our account in the Latitude of 75. degrees, we saw small flocks of Birds, with blacke Backes and white Bellies, and long Great Tayles. We supposed that Land was not farre off, but we could not differre any, with all the diligence which we could vie, being so close weather, that many times we could not see five or seven leagues off.

The six and twentieth, in the morning was cleere weather, we had our wind and held our course as afore. This day our observation was 76. degrees 38. minutes, and we had Birds of the same sort as afore, and divers other of that colour, having red Heads; that we saw when we first made the Mount of *Gods Mercy* in *Greenland*, but not so many. After we steered away North and by East: two Watches 10. leagues, with purpose to fall with the Souther part of *Newland*, accounting our felues 10. or 12. leagues from the Land. Then we stood away North-east one V Watch five leagues.

The seven and twentieth, about one or two of the clocke in the morning we made *Newland*, being cleere weather on the Sea; but the Land was covered with fogge, the Ice lying very thicke all along the shoare for 15. or 16. leagues which we saw. Having faire wind we coasted it in a very pleasing smooth sea, and had no ground at an hundred fathoms, four leagues from the shoare. This day at noone, we accounted we were in 78. degrees, and we stood along the shoare. 40 day was so fine, we were hardly able to see the Land many times, but by our account we were neere *Vogel Hook*. About eight of the clocke this Evening, we purposed to shap our course from thence North-west. Here is to be noted, that although we ranne along neere the shoare, we found no great cold, which made vs thinke, that if we had beene on the place is temperate. Holding this North-west course, about ten of the clocke at night, we saw a great force of Ice on head off vs, bearing West off vs; which we could not goe cleere off with the forsayd course. Then we tacked about, and stood away betweene the South and the South-east, as much desirous to leave this Land as we were to see it.

The eight and twentieth, was a hard gale of wind all the fore-noon betweene the South and the South-west. We shapd our course, we did it to be farther from the Ice and Land. It pleased God that about twelve of the clocke this night it cleared vp, and we found that we were betweene the Land and the Ice: *Vogel Hook* then bearing neereff hand East off vs. Then we tacked about, and stood in for the shoare, having Sea-room betweene the Ice and the Land. The nine and twentieth, at four in the morning the wind came at North-east, a prettie gale, we thought best to thorten our way, so we tacked about and stood North North-west, the wind a little increasing. About twelve at noone, we saw Ice a head off vs, we cast about again, and stood away East South-east with very much wind, so that we shornted our sayles for the space of two Watches. Then about eight this Evening, we struck a Hull, and it proved the hardest storme that we had in this Voyage. The thirtieth, in the morning was stormie; about noone it ceased, at seven in the Evening it proved almost calme.

The first of July, all the fore-noon the wind was at South-east, we stood North-east for the shoare, hoping to finde an open Sea betweene the shoare and the Ice. About noone we were embayed with Ice, lying betweene the Land and vs. By our observation we were in 78. degrees 42. minutes, whereby we accounted we were thwart of *The great Indraght*. And to free our felues of the Ice, we steered betweene the South-east and South, and to the Westward, as

A mayne high
Land.

75. Degrees
Land north
off.

76. degrees 38.
minutes.

Greenland Ice
Newland discovered.

78. Degrees.

Vogel Hook.

Temperate
syce.

July.

78. degrees 42.
minutes.

Abundance of Seales.

grees and 7. and 8. degrees by this way there is no passage: but I think this Land may be profitable to those that will adventure it. In this Bay before spoken of, and about this coast, we saw more abundance of Seales than we had seen any time before [swimming] in the water. At noon, this day having a stiff gale of wind at North, we were thwart of Collins Cape, standing thence I let our courie West South-west, with purpose to keepe in the open Sea free from Ice, and layled in that courie 16. leagues. At ten this night we steered away South-west, with the wind at North a hard gale, untill eight the next morning 18. leagues.

The fourteenth, in the morning a good gale at North: at eight, we altered our courie, and steered away South till eight in the Evening, and ran 13. leagues. This day proved reasonable, to be clear and warme. The eighteenth, in the morning the wind increased at South and by East, with thicke fogge. All this after-noon and night proved close weather, little fogge, and reasonable warme.

The nineteenth, at eight in the morning the wind at South, with thicke fogge, we steered South-east 4. leagues till noon: then the wind vered more large; we steered South-east and by East 4. leagues till four: then we vered therte, and steered East and by South Eastly, and 15. leagues, till eight the next morning. This day after the morning, proved reasonable cleere and warme.

The twentieth, in the morning little wind: at eight this morning we saw Land ahead of vs under our Lee, and to weatherward of vs distant from vs 12. leagues, being part of Newland. It is very high mountainous Land; the highest that we had seen untill now. As we layled here it, we saw a Sound ahead of vs, lying East and West. The Land on the Northern side in our sight being 10. leagues from vs. And the Land on the Southern side being 8. or 10. leagues from vs. At this time trenched South South-east, and North North-west, from eight to noon, we were calme. This day by observation we were in 77. degrees 26. minutes. On the Northern side of the mouth of this Inlet lie three Islands, not farre the one from the other, being very high like heapes of Corne. The farthest of the three to the North-west, hath four very high Mounts Southern end. Here one of our companie killed a red billed Bird. All this day after the morning, and all night proved calme, ending rather to beate then cold. This night we had some warme rayne.

The one and twentieth, all the fore-noon calme; at four in the after-noon we had a small gale of wind at South South-east, with fog; we steered away East to stand in with the Land, and layled 3. leagues untill mid-night: then the wind came at North-east, we cast about, and steered South 10. leagues till eight the next morning. The two and twentieth, at eight in the morning much wind at East, and variable, with short layle we steered 3. leagues South and by East: then came downe very much wind; wee strooke a hull. All this after-noon and night, proved very much wind with raine.

The three and twentieth, all the fore-noon was very much wind at South, with raine and fogge. At four this after-noon we saw Land, bearing North-east of vs 6. leagues from vs. Then we had the wind at South South-west; we steered away South-east, and South-east and by East 4. leagues, the Sea being very much growne. We accounted we had hulled North-west and by North 22. leagues; and North 3. leagues. Then fearing with much wind to be set on a lee shoare, we tackt about, and made our way good West and by North, halfe a point Northerly, all this night with much wind.

The four and twentieth, in the morning much wind as afore, and the Sea growne. This morning wee strooke our mayne Top-mast to cale our ship, and layled from the last Evening eight to this noon 15. leagues West and by North halfe a point Northerly. From twelue to eight, 6. leagues as afore, with the wind at South and by West: at eight we tackt about with the winde at South South-west, and lay South-east and by East, with much wind, and the Sea growne.

The five and twentieth, was a cleere morning we set our mayne Top-mast, we saw Land bearing North of vs, and vnder our Lee, we layled South-east and by East. Then the wind cleared; we cast about, and lay South-west and by West 1. leagues; till noon. Then it began to our-cast, west and by West, and layled in that courie 3. leagues till eight in the after-noon. Then the wind cleared againe, and we layled 3. leagues South. Now, seeing how contrarie the winde proved, to do the good which we desired this way, I thought to proue our fortunes by the West once againe: and this Evening at eight, we being the latitude of 78. with the better, and from Land 15. leagues, which leagues part whereof beare from the North-east to the East off vs, we steered away West, with the wind at South-east, and cleere weather.

The sixe and twentieth, all this day proved rayne with thicke fog, and an hard gale of wind at East and by North, and East North-east. From the last Evening at eight to this noon, we

ranne 25. leagues: from noon till mid-night 19. leagues, the wind at East and by South; from mid-night till two the next morning, 2. leagues West.

The seven and twentieth, extreme thicke fog, and little wind at East and by South. Then it proved calme, and the Sea very loftie. We heard a great rudd or noise with the Ice and Sea, which was the first Ice we heard or saw since we were at Collins Cape: the Sea heaving vs Westward toward the Ice. We heard out our Boat, and rowed to rowe out the ship farther from the danger; which would have bene to small purpose, by means the Sea went to high: but in this extremite it pleased God to give vs a small gale at North-west and by West, we steered away South-east 4. leagues till noon. Here we had finished our Discouerie, if the wind had continued that brought vs hither, or if it had continued calmer: but it pleased God to make this North-west, and by West wind the means of our deliuerance: which wind we had found common in this Voyage. God give vs thankfull hearts for great deliuerance. Here we found the want of a good ship-board, as once we had done before at Whales Bay: we wanted also halfe a dozen long Oares to rowe in our ship. At noone, the day cleared vp, and we saw by the skie Ice bearing off vs: from West South-west to the North and North North-east. Then we had a good gale at West, we steered away South-east 7. leagues From foure to six South 4. leagues, and found by the Ioy skie and our usefull returne by the North of Greenland to Davis his Straights, and for England. Here finding we had the benefit of a Westerly wind, which

all this Voyage we had found want, we altered our courie, and steered to the Eastward, and ran South-east foure leagues. From eight this Evening till noon the next day, East South-east 30. leagues. All this day and night proved very cold, by means, as I suppose, of the winds coming off so much Ice.

The eight and twentieth, very cold, the wind at West, not very foggie. At noone this day we steered away South-east and by East, and by observation we were 76. degrees 36. minutes. From noon to eight 10. leagues. Then the wind cleared at South-east and by South, we steered away East and by North 18. leagues, till the next day noon.

The nine and twentieth, all the fore-noon a thicke fog and wet, the wind at South-east and by East, next hand, and raw cold. From noon to four, we layled three leagues East and by North, halfe a point Northerly. Then the wind vered more large, we steered East and by South 2. leagues till twelve at night. At this time to windward we heard the rudd of Land; which I knew to be so, by the colour of the Sea. It was extreme thicke fog, so that we could hardly see a Cables length from our ship. We had ground 25. fathoms, small blacke pebble stones. Wee founded againe, and had ground at 30. fathomes small stones like Beanes, at the next cast no ground at 60. fathomes. I cast about againe, and steered South-west 6. leagues, West and by North two leagues till the next day noon. All this day and night extreme thicke fog.

The thirtieth, all the fore-noon very thicke fog. At noon almost calme: after we had little wind, and steered North North-west till two: then it cleared vp, so that we could see from vs 2. leagues with the wind at North-west. Then we steered East South-east: after it cleared. At South in the Evening, we saw an Island bearing off vs North-west from vs 5. leagues, and we saw land bearing off vs from vs 7. leagues. We had land likewise bearing off vs from East South-east, to South-east and by East as wee judged, 10. leagues. Then hailing the winde at West North-west, we steered South and by East. It presently proved calme till ten this Evening: then we had a little gale at South-west and by West, we steered away South South-east till twelve this night, and accounted ourselves in 76. from Land 10. leagues: which was the like-liest Land that we had seen on all the parts of Newland, being playne riggle Land of a meane height, and not ragged as all the rest was that we had seen this Voyage, nor covered with snow. At twelve this night we saw two Mories in the Sea near vs, swimming to Land. From twelve at night to four, calme.

The one and thirtieth, at four this morning we had the wind at South-east, we steered South South-west. Then it proved calme, and so continued all the fore-noon. The after-noon we had the wind at East South-east, we steered South 8. leagues. Then being like to proue much wind, contrarie to our purpose, and finding our fog more thicke and troublesome then before, divers things necessarie wanting, and our time well nigh spent to doe further good this yeere, I commanded to beare vp for our returne for England, and steered away South South-west. And this night proved a hard gale of wind at South-east and by East. Wee were thwart of Cheries Island the next morning at four of the clocke, being to windward off vs 5. leagues: knowing we were neere, we looked out our carefully for the fame, and it proving cleere, we saw it, being a very ragged Land on the Western side, rising like Hey-cocks.

The first of August, a very hard gale of wind at East South-east, we shored sayle, and steered away South South-west: This night was very foggie, with a hard gale of wind at East and by South, we steered by our account 37. leagues: and from eight this Evening, till the next morning four, 10. leagues as afore. All this night was very foggie, wee and raw cold.

The second, in the morning calme with a thicke fog, cold and flabbie weather. About noone

Danger of a ped.

Whales Bay.

Cheries Island.

we had a little gale West and by North, we steered away as afore. The third, in the morning calme and cleere weather, with a little gale East and by South, we sayled South South-west; then we had the wind at South-east, wee fayled as afore. All this day and night proved cleere weather, a little fogge at noone, which continued not long. At twelue this night the wind vered to the East and by North, we held our course South South-west, as afore.

The fifteenth of August, we put into the Isles of *Feroe*, standing in 51. degrees; and the fifteenth of September, arrived in *Tukierie Hope* in the *Thames*.

CHAP. XV.

A second Voyage or Employment of Master HENRY HUDSON, for finding a passage to the East Indies by the North-east: written by himselfe.

* I have Robert Jurell's Journal also, for brevity omitted.

Their names employed in this action are as followeth: *Henry Hudson*, Master and Pilot; *Robert Jurell*, the Master his Mate; *Ludlow Arnall*, *John Cooke*, Boat-dry, *Jamez Stratton*, *Michael Peire*, *Thomas Hiles*, *Richard Tomlinson*, *Robert Keyner*, *John Hudson*, and *Hamfrey Gibly*. The courses observed in this 30 directly one on the other.

April.

June 1608. the two and twentieth of April, being Friday, we set sayle at Saint *Katharines*, and fell downe to *Blacke wall*.

May.

The twentieth of May, at noone by observation we were in 64. degrees 52. minutes, and at this time and place the Needle declined vnder the Horizon by the Inclinatorie 81. degrees, and wee had a smooth Sea, by means whereof my observation was good.

The one and twentieth, at night thick fog, wee sayled North North-east, with the wind at East. The two and twentieth, in the fore-noone the winde at South-east, wee steered North North-east, as afore: in the after-noon little wind and thick fog; we accounted vs in 67. degrees, the Sea smooth, the Needle declined 82. degrees, this night was calme and cleere. The three and twentieth, in the morning the wind was Easterly, we stood North North-East, and North and by East. All the fore-noon was foggy: in the after-noon it cleared, and the wind at East North-east, and East and by North, we lay as nere as wee could with a full sayle; we accounted *Lowfoote* from vs East North-east, 16. leagues, distant from vs; at foure a clocke this after-noon, wee stood all night, as afore.

Lowfoote.

The five and twentieth, the wind at East North-east, we stood away North as we could lie: all this day was cleere weather, and searhing cold, which could begeth the one and twentieth day, and then my Carpenter was taken sicke, and to dooth yet continue; and three or foure more of our companie were enclining to sicknesse, I suppose by means of the cold. All the night it was calme. The fixe and twentieth, cold but cleere weather, the wind betweene East and East North-east, we stood North-easterly till twelue a clocke at night: then we had the wind at North-east & North North-east, we stood South-east and East till noone the next day. The seven and twentieth, cold and drie weather; at noone we had the wind North and North North-west; wee stood away North-east, and East North-east, as we could, and accounted our selues in 69. degrees 40. minutes, and the Needle enclined, hauing a smooth Sea, nereest 84. degrees. All night we had wind and weather as afore.

The eight and twentieth, drie cold cleere weather: the wind betweene North North-west and North, we made our way good East North-east; we saw the Sunne on the North Meridian about the Horizon 5. degrees 15. minutes. All this night we had much wind, as afore. The nine and twentieth, a hard gale at North North-west; by account we ranne from mid-night to noone 21. leagues, East North-east. Wee had the Sunne on the Meridian 5. degrees, the latitude 73. degrees 13. minutes, whereby wee found our ship to haue out-runne vs. At mid-night the wind came to South-east: we call about, and stood East North-east. This day partly cleere weather with some snow. The thirtieth, cold cleere weather, the wind betweene North-east, and East and by North: we went East South-east, and obseruing, were in 73. degrees 50. minutes. The one and thirtieth, cold and cleere weather: from the last day till this day noone, we stood South-east and by South, in the latitude of 73. degrees 45. minutes.

San 5. degrees 35. minutes at mid-night.

June.

North Cape.

Variation west 11. degrees.

The first of June, a hard gale at East North-East, with snow: we made our way good South South-east, a hard gale of wind at North-east: towards night, calme with fogge, our course was South-east all day. The third, in the morning we had a light of the North Cape; and at a West and by North Sunne, the Cape bore off vs South-west, halfe a point Southerly, being from vs 8. leagues: and obseruing the variation, I found it to the Westward 11. degrees: and

and hauing a smooth Sea, the Needle enclined vnder the Horizon 84. degrees and a halfe, the nereest I could finde. We had the wind at South-west, and wee stood away North-east and by East. It was cleere weather, and we saw many Fisher-men at Sea.

The fourth, warme cleere sun-shine, we stood away North-east and by East. Now by Gods helpe our Carpenter recovered, and made a Mast for our ship-board, and the companie made a Sayle, we had the Sunne in the light on the North Meridian: his height was 5. degrees 40. minutes. Inclination 23. degrees 21. minutes: Poles height 72. degrees 21. minutes. The fifth, in the morning calme weather: wee founded, and had 140. fathoms, fand Oze: here wee saw a swelling Sea setting North-east and by East, and South-west and by West, with streame Leeches: and we saw drift wood. After we had wind; and we sayled and made our way North North-east: towards night we founded, and found ground at 150. fathoms, fand Oze. This day cleere weather, and not cold. The fixe, wee had cleere weather, the wind being at East North-East, from the last day till this day noone; we shaped our way on diuers courses North and by West, in the latitude of 73. degrees 24. minutes. We found that our ship had out-runne vs, founding in 160. fathoms: in the after-noon little wind.

The seventh, in the morning the wind at South, after at South South-east: from the last day till this day noone, wee accounted our way from diuers courses North-east, 15. leagues. This day was close but cleere weather, and we had a good gale of wind at this time. And three dayes before this, our Cooke and one more of our companie were very sicke. In the morning, we had ground at 150. fathoms; and at night we had no ground at 180. fathoms, which increased hope. This night we had some snow, which continued foure houres: then the wind came at North-east and by East with storme; and with short sayle we stood North and by West: here the Needle enclined 86. degrees. I accounted that we were in 74. degrees and a halfe at nereest land, this night we saw the Sunne on the North Meridian, his height was 7. degrees 40. minutes, which maketh the Poles height 74. degrees 23. minutes. The eight, from twelue a clocke last night till noone, we accounted our way on diuers courses, North and by East: then our latitude was 74. degrees 38. minutes, and we had no ground at 200. fathoms. In the after-noon the wind came at South South-east, and South-east and by East. This day and night wee had cleere weather, and we were here come into a blacke blue Sea.

74. degrees 30. minutes.

The ninth, cleere weather, the wind came at South-east and by East: from the last day till this day noone, we had a good way North-east, in latitude of 75. degrees 29. minutes: then we entred into Ice, being the first we saw in this Voyage: our hope was to goe through it, we bearing roome for another, till toune in the after-noon: at which time we were loe farre in, and the Ice soe thicke and firme ahead, being in it foure or five leagues, that wee had endangered vs somewhat too farre; wee returned as wee went in, and with a few rubbes of our linn against the Ice; by eight a clocke this Evening wee got free of it. Wee made our way till next day at noone, South-west and by South, 18. leagues: in the midst of this way we had no ground at 180. fathoms. The tenth, in the morning haley weather; but at noone it cleared vp, and then we cast about, and stood away North and by East, the wind being at East South-east, two and made a South way, fixe leagues. The eleuenth, in the morning a hard storme at East, and East and by South: we strooke ashull.

Dark blue Sea.

The twelfth, in the morning fog, and all day after cleere weather, the wind at South South-west, we steered East and by North: at noone being in the latitude 75. degrees 30. minutes. From noone till foure a clocke, fixe leagues East and by North; then we saw Ice ahead of vs, and vnder shore greenish Oze. Here we saw diuers pieces of drift wood by vs driving, and streame Leeches lying South South-west, and North North-east. Wee many times saw the like since we saw the North Cape. The thirteenth, cleere weather, the wind at East, we made a South way 6. leagues, two watches: then we cast about, and made a North way one watch 3. leagues 4: At twelue at foure in, in the fore-noon fog, and our throates were frozen: the after-noon was cleere Sun-shine, and so was all the night.

The fifteenth, all day and night cleere sun-shine; the wind at East, the latitude at noone 75. degrees 7. minutes. We held Westward by our account 13. leagues. In the after-noon the Sea was stirred; and the wind being at East we set sayle, and stood South and by East, and South South-east as we could. This morning, one of our companie looking over board saw a Mermaid, and calling vp some of the companie to see her, one more came vp, and by that time hee saw her come close to the ships side, looking earnestly on the men: a little after, a Sea came and overtook her: her body as big as one of vs; her skin very white; and long haire hanging downe behind, of colour blacke: in her going downe they saw her tayle, which was like the tayle of a Porpoise, and speckled like a Macrell. Their names that saw her, were *Thomas Hiles* and *Robert Keyner*.

Mermaide seen, and described.

The

The sixteenth, cleere weather, the wind being at East. From the last day till this day noone, we made our way South and by East 9 leagues; and from noon to eight a clocke in the Evening, 6 leagues: then we cast about and flood to the Northwards.

The seventeenth, cleere weather, the wind at South-east and by East; from the last day till this day noone, our way was North-east and by East, at noone being in the latitude of 74. degrees 40. minutes. At after-noon we founded, and had ground at 86 fathome Greene Oze, and our way to mid-night North-east and by East we had the Sunne at lowest, on the North and by East, Easterly part of the Compasse: latitude 74. degrees 54. minutes. Sounding we had 92. fathoms water, Oze as before.

The eighteenth, faire weather, the wind at South-east and by East, from mid-night till this day noone, we layed North-east and by East, in the Latitude of 75. degrees 54. minutes, and had ground at ninetie fathome Oze, as afore. Here we had Ice in our sight to the Northward off vs. In the after-noon, having little wind at North-east, we cast about and lay East South-east, and at fixe a clocke, had ground at ninetie fathoms and a halfe Oze, as afore. From noone to twelue a clocke at night, our way was South-east, and South-east and by East, and had the Sunne on the Meridian, North and by East halfe a point Eastward. The Sunnes height was eight degrees 40. minutes. Sounding ninetie fathome. All this day, we had Ice on our Larbord trending; and at this time, from the North-west off vs to the East South-east, I haue some reason to thinke there is a Tide or Current setting to the Northwards; the course we held and the way we made betweene this noone and mid-night Observations, doe make mee suspect it the more.

The nineteenth, faire and warme weather, the sea smooth. Here the Needle inclined vnder the Horizon 89. degrees and a halfe, being in the Latitude at noone of 75. degrees 54. minutes; and ding we had ground in an hundred fathom. From twelue a clocke last night till this day noone, we accounted our way from East and by North to South-east, ten leagues, having Ice all wayes in our sight trending on our Larbord, we had the winde betweene North, and North-west. We saw the Sunne at the lowest on the North and by East, halfe a point Easterly, his height was 8. degrees 10. minutes, which maketh the Poles height 74. degrees 56. minutes. Sounding we had ground in one hundred and twentie fixe fathome. From noone to this time, we accounted our way East and by South, and East South-east, twelue leagues.

The twentieth, faire warme weather, this morning at foure of the clocke, we had depth one hundred and twentie fixe fathome. Here we heard Beares roare on the Ice; and we saw upon the Ice and neare vnto it, an incredible number of Seales. We had founding one hundred and fifteen fathome, and after ground at ninetie fathome and a halfe Oze. We had the Sun on the Meridian North and by East, halfe a point Easterly; his height was 7. degrees 50. minutes. From twelue a clocke last night, to twelue a clocke this night, our way was made good to the account South-east and by South, twelue leagues, and South-east, three leagues and a halfe, the Ice always being on our Larbord. Till this day, betweene North and North-west.

The one and twentieth, at foure a clocke in the morning we founded, and had one hundred and twentie fathome Greene Oze, and the Ice bore off vs East, the winde variable; in diuers courses we made our way good South-east; our Latitude at noone being 74. degrees 9. minutes, we were haled to the Northward beyond expectation. All this day faire, cleere, and warme weather, and Ice on our Larbord at North and by East Sunne; being then at lowest, his height was 7. degrees 40. minutes, which maketh the Poles height 74. degrees 33. minutes. From the last day at noone, till twelue a clocke this night, by account of our ships way, we were haled to the Northward. Here we had ground at one hundred and thirteene fathome, Greene landie Oze.

The two and twentieth, faire cleere weather, the winde at West North-west. At eight a clocke in the Morning, we had ground at one hundred and fifteen fathome, Greene Oze. At mid-night to noone, our course was North-east and by East, being in the Latitude of 74. degrees 35. minutes, and we found that our ships way, and our observation were not but there was carefull heed taken of both. Here we had Ice a head off vs, trending to the South-east and all day before Ice on our Larbord. Here we stood South-east five leagues, then the Ice trended South and by West five leagues; we layed by it, and doubled it by eight a clocke in the Evening, and then it bore East off vs. Here having a smooth sea, the Needle inclined 85. degrees, from eight a clocke to twelue, North and by East Easterly. Then we had the Sunne on the Meridian, North and by East 4. a point Easterly. The Sunnes height was 7. degrees 45. minutes, which made the Latitude 74. 1/2. degrees 43. minutes.

The three and twentieth, in the morning thicke fogge, the wind at North North-west. From mid-night till foure a clocke this morning, we layed North-west five leagues, and then we were among the Ice; we cast about, and stood two fathoms South-west, two leagues, and had no ground at one hundred and eightie fathome. Then we cast about againe, and stood East till eight a clocke

two leagues, and then it cleered vp, and we had Ice a head off vs. And from North, we stood to South-east, and our throndes were frozen. Then till noone we went East and by South, four leagues, and were neere Ice on our Larbord, in the Latitude of 74. degrees 30. minutes. In the after-noon the wind being at North, we stood two houres and a halfe, five leagues and a halfe; three houres South South-east, five leagues; one houre South-east and by South, one league and a halfe; an houre East halfe a league, which brought eight in the Evening, always Ice on our Larbord. This after-noon, we had some snow. From eight a clocke to mid-night, South South-west four leagues, with Ice as afore. We saw the Sunne at the lowest, North North-east, his height was 7. degrees 5. minutes, the Poles height 74. degrees 18. minutes.

The foure and twentieth, cleere, but cold and some snow, the wind betweene North North-east, and North-east, from mid-night to foure a clocke, we stood Southward two leagues, and South-east and by East two leagues. And from foure a clocke till noone, South-east Southerly nine leagues, founding we had ground in one hundred and fortie fathome. From noone to three a clocke, we stood South-east and by South three leagues; from three to foure, South-west and by South one league; and had Ice from the North-east to the South-east off vs. From foure a clocke to eight, we stood South-west two leagues and a halfe, Southward halfe a league, with Ice neere vs vnder our Lead.

The five and twentieth, cold and cleere, the wind at East South-east; from eight a clocke last night till foure this morning, our way was South and by East, four leagues and a halfe; founding we had ground in eightie fathome, then we had little wind till noone, at East North-east, and the Sunne on the Meridian, on the South-west and by South point of the Compasse, ere it began to fall, we were in the Latitude of 72. degrees 52. minutes, and had Ice on our Larbord, and our hope of passage was gone this way, by means of our nearnesse to *Noua Zembla*, and the abundance of Ice. We had from Noone to eight a clocke in the Evening, the wind betweene North North-east, and North-east, we stood South-east three leagues and a halfe, and had Ice on our Larbord, and shoalding fixtie eight fathome.

The fixe and twentieth, faire Sun-shining weather, and little wind at East North-east. From twelue a clocke at night till foure this morning, we stood Southward two leagues, founding we had fixtie fixe fathome Oze, as afore. From foure a clocke to noone, South-east and by South three leagues, and had the Sunne on the Meridian, on the South-east; and by South point of the Compasse, in the Latitude of 72. degrees 25. minutes, and had sight of *Noua Zembla* foure or five leagues from vs, and the place called by the *Hollanders*, *Swart Cliffe*, bearing off South-east. In the after-noon, we had a fine gale at East North-east, and by eight of the clocke, we had brought it to beare off vs East Southerly, and layed by the shoare a league from it.

The seven and twentieth, all the fore-noon it was almost calme; wee being two mile from the shoare, I sent my Mate *Robert Isac*, and *John Cooke* my Boat-swaine on shoare, with foure others, to see what the Land would yield that might be profitable, and to fill two or three Casks with water. They found and brought aboard some Whales Finnes, two Deeres Hornes, and the Dung of Deere, and they told me that they saw Graffe on the shoare of the last yeere, there are many frames of Snow water nigh, and it was boggie ground in some places, they saw the footings of many great Beares, of Deere, and Foxes. They went from vs at three a clocke in the morning, and came aboard at a South-east Sunne; and at their coming, we saw two or three companies of Morfes in the sea neere vs swimming, being almost calme. I presently sent my Mate, *Ladlow* the Carpenter, and fixe others a shoare to place wood and figures of Fires that had beene made there. They saw the footing of very great Deere and Beares, and much Fowle, and a Foxe; they brought aboard Whale finnes, some Mofse, Flow, and greene things that did there grow. They brought also two peeces of a Croffe, which they found there. The Sunne was on the Meridian on the North North-east, halfe a point Easterly, before it began to fall. The Sunnes height was 4. degrees 45. minutes, Inclination 23. degrees 33. minutes, which makes the Latitude 72. degrees 12. minutes. There is disagreement betweene this and the last observation; but by means of the cleerenesse of the Sunne, the smoothnesse of the Sea, and the nearnesse to Land, we could not be deceiued, and care was taken in it.

The eight and twentieth, at foure a clocke in the Morning our Boat came aboard, and brought two dozen of Fowle, and some Egges, whereof a few were good, and a Whales finne; and we saw the Sea full of Morfes, yet no signes of their being on shoare. And in this calme, from eight a clocke last Evening, till foure this Morning, we were drawne backe to the Northward, as far as wee were the last Evening at foure a clocke, by a Stream or a Tide; and we chole the new Ship-boate began to doe vs seruice, and was an encouragement to my Company, which want I found the last yeere.

The nine and twentieth, in the morning calme, being halfe a league from the shoare, the Sea being smooth, the Needle did decline 84. degrees, we had many Morfes in the Sea neere vs, and desiring to find where they came on shoare, we put out with Sayle and Oares, towing in our Boat, and rowing in our Barke to get about a point of Land, from whence the Land did fall more Easterly, and the Morfes did goe that way. VVee had the Sunne on the Meridian on the South and by VVest point, halfe a point to the VVester part of the Compass, in the latitude of 71. degrees 15. minutes. At two a clocke this after-noon we came to anchor in the mouth of a River, where lieth an Island in the mouth thereof, foure leagues: wee anchored from the Island in two and thirtie fathomes, blacke sandy ground. There droue much Ice out of it with a streame that fet out of the River or Sound, and there were many Morfes sleeping on the Ice, and by it we were put from our Road twice this night; and being calme all this day, it pleased God at our need to give vs a fine gale, which fired vs out of danger. This day was calme, cleere and hot weather: all the night we rode still.

The thirtieth, calme, hot, and faire weather, we weighed in the morning, and towed and rowed, and at noone we came to anchor neere the Ile aforesaid in the mouth of the River, and saw very much Ice driving in the Sea, two leagues without vs lying South-east and North-west; and driving to the North-west to fast, that wee could not by twelve a clocke at night, let it out of the rop. At the Island where wee rode, lieth a little Rocks, whereon were fortie or fiftie Morfes lying asleepe, being all that it could hold, it being so full and little. I sent my companie ashore to them, leaving none aboard but my Boy with mee; and by means of their needecesse to the water, they all got away, save one which they killed, and brought his head aboard; and ere they came aboard they went on the Island, which is reasonable high and steepe, but flat on the top. They killed and brought with them a great Fowle, whereof there were many, and likewise some Egges, and in an houre they came aboard. This Ile is two flight-shot our in length, and one in breadth. At mid-night our Anchor came home, and we wayd aground by means of the strength of the streame, but by the helpe of God, we hoveed her off without hurt. In short time we moud our ship, and rode still all night; and in the night wee had little wind at East, and East South-east. VVee had at noone this day an obsevation, and were in the latitude of 71. degrees 15. minutes.

The first of July, we saw more Ice to Seaward of vs; from the South-east to the North-west, 30 driving to the North-west. At noone it was calme, and we had the Sunne on the Meridian, on the South and by VVest point, halfe a point to the VVesterly part of the Compass, in the latitude of 71. degrees 14. minutes. This morning I sent my Mate *Enner*, and foure of our companie to rowe about the Bay, to see what Rivers were in the frame, and to find where the Morfes did come on land; and to see a Sound or great River in the bottome of the Bay, which did alwaies send out a great streame to the Northwards, against the tide that came from thence: and I found the time in coming in, from the North to this place before this VVhen by the means of the great plenty of Ice, the hope of passage betweene *Newland* and *Nova Zembla* was taken away; my purpose was by the *Vygats* to pass by the mouth of the River *Ok*, and to double that way the North Cape of *Tartaria*, or to give reason wherefore it will not be: but being here, and hoping by the plenty of Morfes we saw here, to defray the charge of our Voyage; and also that this Sound might for some seasons be a better passage to the East of *Nova Zembla*, then the *Vygats*, if it held according to my hope conceaved by the likeesse it gave: for where as we had a flood came from the Northwards; yet this Sound or River did runne so strong, that Ice with the streame of this River was carried away, or any thing else against the flood: so that both in flood and ebbe, the streame doth hold a strong course; and it floweth from the North three houres, and ebbeth nine.

The second, the wind being at East South-east, it was reasonable cold, and so was Friday; and the Morfes did not play in our fight as in warme weather. This morning at three of the clocke, my Mate and companie came aboard, and brought a great Deeres horne, a white locke of Deeres hure; foure dozen of Fowle, their Boat halfe laden with drift wood; and some flowers and greene things, that they found growing on the shoars. They saw a herd of white Deere, of ten in a companie on the land; much drift wood lying on the shoare, many good Bayes, and one River faire to see on the North shoare, for the Morfes to land on; but they saw no Morfes there, but signes that they had beene in the Bayes. And the great River or Sound, they certifiend me, was of breadth two or three leagues, and had no ground at twentie fathomes, and that the water was of the colour of the Sea, and very salt; and that the streame leteth strongly out of it. At sixe a clocke this morning, came much Ice from the Southward driving upon vs, very fearefull to look on: but by the mercy of God and his mightie helpe, wee being moored with two Anchors ahead with vering out of one Cable, and heaving home the others, and sending off with Beames and Sparrs, escaped the danger: which labour continued till sixe a clocke in the Evening, and then it was past vs, and we rode still and took our self this night.

The third, the wind at North a hard gale: At three a clocke this morning we weighed our anchor, and set sayle, purposing to runne into the River or Sound before spoken of.

The fourth, in the morning it cleered vp with the wind at North-west, we weighed and set sayle, and flood to the Eastwards, and past over a Reeve, and found on it fue and a halfe, fixe, fixe and a halfe, and seven fathomes water: then we saw that the Sound was full, & a very large River from the North-east and thre from Ice, and a strong streame coming out of it: and wee had founding then, foure and thre fathomes water. Wee all conceiued hope of this Northerly River or Sound, and sayling in it, we found three and twentie fathomes for three leagues, and after twentie fathomes for fue or sixe leagues, all touth Orie ground. Then the winde veered more Northerly, and the streame came downe so strong, that wee could doe no good on it: we came to anchor, and went to supper, and then presently I sent my Mate *Jew*, with five more of our companie in our Boat, with Sayle and Oares to get vp the River, being provided with Viduall and Weapons for defence, willing them to found as they went; and if it did continue still deepe, to goe untill it did trende to the Eastward, or to the Southwards, and wee rode still.

The fift, in the morning we had the wind at West: we began to weigh anchor, purposing to set sayle and to runne vp the Sound after our companie: then the wind veered Northerly vpon vs, and we faced our labour. At noone our companie came aboard vs having had a hard rought; for they had bene vp the River fixe or seven leagues, and founded it from twentie to three and twentie, and after brought it to eight, fixe, and one fathome; and then to foure foot in the belt: they then went ashore, and found good store of wilde Goose quills, a piece of an old Oare, and some Flowers, and greene things which they found growing: they saw many Deere, and so did we in our after-dayes sayling. They bringe come aboard, we presently set sayle with the wind at North North-west, and we stood out againe to the South-westwards, with sorrow that our labour was in vaine: for, had this Sound held as it did make shew of, for breadth, depth, lifeside of harbour, and good anchor ground, it might have yielded an excellent passage to a more Easterly Sea. Generally, all the Land of *Nova Zembla*, that yet we have seene, is to a mans eye a pleasant Land: much mayne high Land with no Snow on it, looking in some places greene, and Deere feeding thereon: and the Hills are partly covered with Snow, and partly bare. It is no marvell that there is so much Ice in the Sea toward the Pole, for many Sounds and Rivers being in the Lands of *Nova Zembla*, and *Newland* to ingender it; besides the coasts of *Pechora*, *Russia*, and *Greenland*, with *Lappia*, as by proofes I finde by my trauell in these parts: by means of which Ice I suppose there will be no nailable passage this way. This Evening we had the wind at West and by South: we were therefore came to anchor under *Deere* point, and it was a storme at Sea, we rode in twentie fathomes, Orie ground: I sent my Mate, *Leidlen*, with foure more ashore to see whether any Morfes were on the shoare, and to kill some Fowle, (for we had seene no Morfes since Saturday, the second day of this month, that wee saw them driving out of the Ice.) They found good landing for them, but no signe that they had bene there: but they found that fire had bene made there, yet not lately. At ten of the clocke in the Evening, they came aboard, and brought with them neere an hundred Fowles called Wellocks; this night it was wet fogge, and very thicke and cold, the winde at West South-west.

The sixt, in the morning wee had the wind storme and thifing: betweene the West and South-west, against vs for doing any good: we rode still and had much Ice driving by vs to the Eastward of vs. At nine of the clocke, this Evening we had the wind at North North-west: we presently weighed, and set sayle, and flood to the Westward, being out of hope to find passage by the North-east: And my purpose was now to see whether *Willoughbies* Land were, as were all driven from hence. This place vpon *Nova Zembla*, is another than that which the *Hollander* call *Cyding Sarch*, discovered by *Oliver Brumwell*; and *William Barentsens* observation doth witness the same. It lay in plot by the *Hollander* out of his true place too farre North: variation. It is as broad and like to yeeld passage as the *Vygats*, and my hope was, that by the strong streame it would have cleered it selfe; but it did not. It is full of Ice that you will hardly thinke it. All this day, for the most part, it was fogge and cold.

The seventh, cleere but cold weather: in the morning the wind was at the North; from the last Evening to this morning, we set saile and kept our course Westward by South, fiftene leagues, from morning to eight a clocke in the Evening it was calme: then we had the wind againe at wind being West and by South, we went North and by West, three leagues, and wee had the Sunne at the highest South South-west, in the latitude of 71. degrees 2. minutes. The eight, faire weather; at noone we had the wind at East North-east, we stood North three leagues till foure a clocke: then the wind being at west and by North, we stemmed North and by West one league and a halfe, till fix a clocke in the Evening; then the wind was at North-east a hard gale, and wee stood till next day at noone West and by North, by account three and twentie leagues: we had the Sunne on the Meridian, South and by West, halfe a point neerer West, in the

The River
searched.

Nova Zembla
pleasant to the
eye.

Cause of much
Ice in those
Seaes, which
make no nailable
passage.

Willoughbies
Land, becometh
a Cattle
pasture: it
seemeth to be
no other then
Newland or
Greenland (as
is before obser-
ved cap. 13.) as
Cyding Sarch of
the others *Nova*
Zembla,
is not.

the latitude of 70. degrees 41. minutes. The ninth, cleere weather: from this to the next day at noone, we layed South-west and by West, twelve leagues, and North-west and three leagues: and in these courses had three soundings, 41. 42. 46. 48. and 45. fathoms: we had the Sunne South and by VVest, halfe a point to the VVest part of the Compass. The Sea was lottie: our latitude was 70. degrees 30. minutes.

The tenth, cleere but close weather: from this till next day noone, we had little wind at West North-west: by account we made our way five leagues North-easterly. Wee had the Sun at the highest on the South and by West point, and a terce Westward, in the latitude of 70. degrees 55. minutes, and I thinke we had a ruffling tide vnder vs; and in this time had sounding between fortie fues and fortie fathomes, white sand. The eleventh, cleere weather: from this to the next day at noone, little wind at North North-east, and sometimes calme; we layed from this West and by West by account five leagues; and had the Sunne on the Meridian on the South and by West point ½. West in the latitude of 70. degrees 26. minutes, and found a ruffling vnder vs. This fore-noone we were come into a greene Sea, of the colour of the mayne Ocean, which we first lost the eight of Iune: since which time wee haue had a Sea of a blacke blue colour, which (both by the last and this yeeres experience) is a Sea pestered with Ice.

The twelfth, faire weather: from noone to mid-night wee had the wind shifting between the North and West; our course was between VVest North-west, and South South-west. Then we had the wind at South, we layed till the next day at noone, West and by North, thirteene leagues: we accounted our way from the last day till this day noone Westward, eightie leagues. This after-noone we saw more Porpoises then in all our Voyages before. The thirteenth, close weather: in the after-noone hauing much wind at South, with short fayle we South, but most times calme till noone the next day: we stood away as afore, four leagues, which made in all twelue leagues: we had the Sunne ere it began to fall, South and by West, in the latitude of 70. degrees 32. minutes.

The fourteenth, wee stood West North-west till mid-night, seuentee leagues: then the wind scanted and came at West, we stood North North-west, one league and a halfe; then the wind being more Southerly, wee layed West North-west, five leagues. From the last till this day at noone, our way was out of diuers courses North-west and by West, four and twentie leagues. We had the Sunne beginning to fall at South and by West, in the latitude of 70. degrees 54. minutes.

The fifteenth, faire; but towards night like to be stormie with thunder, the wind between South and South South-east; from this, till the sixteenth day at noone, our course was West and by North, teuen and twentie leagues, and the Sunne then began to fall at South, three quarters of a point Westward, in the latitude of 70. degrees 42. minutes. The sixteenth, faire; our way was from this till next day at noone North-west, twelue leagues; out of diuers courses: and we had the wind shifting, sometimes at East, at West South-west, and West and by North; the latitude by a bad obseruation, 71. degrees 44. minutes. The seuenteenth, in the fore-noone faire; the wind being at West and by North. At foure a clocke this morning we saw Land beare off vs, West and South South-west, which was about *Ward-house*: this after-noone wee had a storme at West and by North, we layed it to rise till eight a clocke in the Euening, and then set fayle with the wind between West North-west and North-west: our course till the next day at noone, was South-west and by South, twelue leagues: the Cape *Hopwell* bore off vs South South-west, and we were foure or fve leagues from land.

The eighteenth, gully, with raine all the fore-noone; then we had the wind shifting till next day at noone from South South-east to East, and South-east: our course in generally was North-west, foure and twentie leagues: then did North *Kene* beare off vs West halfe a point Southward, being from vs foure leagues; and the North Cape in sight bearing West and by North, &c.

The feuen and twentieth, cold with raine and storme; this night we began to burne Candle in the Betacle, which we had not done since the nineteenth of May: by reason we had alwaies day from thence till now. The thirtieth, we had the Sunne vpon the Meridian due South, in the latitude of 68. degrees 46. minutes; whereby we found vs to be afore our ship, ten or twelue leagues, and *Lefort* bore East of vs, but not in sight.

The feuenth of August, I vied all diligence to arrive at *London*, and therefore now I gae my companie a certificate vnder my hand, of my free and willing returne, without perswasion or force of any one or more of them: for at my being at *Nova Zembla*, the sixt of Iuly, voide of hope of a North-east passage, (except by the *Voyage*, for which I was not fitted to rise or prove) I therefore resolu'd to viall means I could to fayle to the North-west; considering the time and meanes wee had, if the wind should friend vs, as in the first part of our Voyage it had done, and to make triall of that place called *Loomley Inlet*, and the furious our-fall by Cap- tayne *Davis*, hoping to runne into it an hundred leagues, and to retorne as God should enable mee. But now hauing spent more then halfe the time I had, and gone but the shortest part of the way, by meanes of contrary winds; I thought it my duty to lue *Vittall*, *Wages*, and

Tackle

Tackle, by my speedy returne, and not by foolish rashnesse, the time being wasted, to lay more charge vpon the action then necessitie should compell, I tarried at *Gransford* the six and twentieth of August.

CHAP. XVI.

The third Voyage of Master HENRIE HUDSON toward Noua Zembla, and as his returne, his passing from *Farr Islands*, to New-fownd Land, and along to fortie foure degrees and ten minnies, and thence to Cape Cod, and so to thirtee three degrees; and along the Coast to the Westward, to fortie two degrees and an halfe, and up the River merco to fortie three degrees. Written by ROBERT IVET of Lime-house.

ON Saturday the five and twentieth of March, 1609. after the old Account, we set fayle from *Amsterdam*; and by the feuen and twentieth day, we were downe at the *Taxel*: and by twelue of the clocke wee were off the Land, it being East of vs two leagues off. And because it is a journey vially knowne, I omit to put downe what passed, till we came to the height of *The North Cape of Finmarke*, which we did perceive by the first of May (*this noone*) being Tuesday. On which day we obserued the height of the Pole, and found it to bee 71. degrees and 46. minutes; and found our Compass to vary six degrees to the West: and at twelue of the clocke, the North Cape did beare South-west and by South, teene leagues off, and wee steered away East and by South, and East.

After much trouble with fogges, sometimes, and more dangerous of Ice. The nineteenth, being Tuesday, was close stormie weather, with much wind and snow, and very cold: the wind variable between the North North-west, and North-east. We made our way West and by North till noone. Then we obserued the Sunne hauing a flake, and found our height to bee 70. degrees 30. minutes. And the ship had our runne vs twentie leagues, by reason of the fet of the streame of *The White Sea*: and we had sight of *Ward-house*. Then at two of the clocke wee cack to the Eastward: for we could not get about the North Cape, the wind was so scant; and at eight of the clocke at night, on the one and twentieth, the North Cape did beare South-east and by South feuen leagues off. And at mid-night *Assumption* Point did beare South and by East, five leagues off vs.

The two and twentieth, gully weather with hails and snow, the Sunne breaking out sometimes; we continued our course along the Land West South-west. And at tenne of the clocke at night we were thwart off *Zemmo*. The bodie of it did beare East off vs five leagues: and the course from the North Cape to *Zemmo*, is for the most part West and by South, and West South-west, fiftie foure leagues.

The three and twentieth, faire Sun-shining weather; the wind at East and by South, and East South-east, wee steered along the Land South-west, and South-west and by West, eight leagues a Watch, for so we found the Land to lye from *Zemmo* to *Lefort*. And the distance is fiftie leagues from the bodie of *Zemmo*, to the Westmost Land of *Lefort*. And from the one to the other, the course is South-west and by West. For the Needle of our Compass was fer true to the North. At twelue of the clocke at night, the bodie of *Lefort* did beare South-east, five leagues off.

The foure and twentieth, faire cleere Sun-shining weather: the wind variable vpon all points of the Compass, but most vpon the South-east, and sometimes calme. We continued our course West South-west as before, And at eight of the clocke at night, the Souther part of *Lefort* did beare South-east ten leagues off vs.

The five and twentieth, much wind at North-east, with some snow and hails. The first watch the wind came to the East a fine gale, and so came to the North-east, the second watch at foure of the clocke, and freshen in: And at eight of the clocke it grew to a storme, and so continued. At noone we obserued, and made the ship to be in 67. degrees 58. minutes. We continued our course South-west, twelue leagues a watch. At nine of the clocke, *Lefort* did beare East of vs 15. leagues off. And we found the Compass to haue no variation. The wind increased to a storme.

The six and twentieth, weather was a great storme at the North North-east, and North-east. We maintayne no more fayles, it blew so vehemently, and the Sea went so high, and brake with all, that it would haue dangered a small ship to lye vnder the Sea. So we skudded feuentie leagues in foure and twentie hours. The storme began to cease at foure of the clocke.

The feuen and twentieth, indifferent faire weather, but a good stiffle gale of wind at North, D d d 3

A great current
running to
the North-east.

Ferre lies bet
14 leagues to
Ferre West.

Stroma.

June.

In the Bittac
le is a clo
place in which
the Compass
stands.
Ferre Islands.
These first
light of day
for another
North, they
had some small
Sundrills.
Change of wa
ter.
A strange cur
rent out of the
South-west.

Not well.

Bonets are
those which
are used and
eried to the
fryles to en
large them;
with reference
whence the
mayne court
miffion cour
se, course is
understood of
thoſe fryles
without their
Bonets.

and North North-east, wee held on our course as before. At noone wee observed and found our height to be 64. degrees 10. minutes. And wee perceived, that the Current had hindered vs in fortie eight houres to the number of 16. leagues to our best judgement. We let our mayne-fayle, sprit-fayle, and our mayne-top-fayle, and held on our course all night, having faire weather.

The eight and twentieth, faire weather and little wind at North-east, we held on our course South-west. At noone wee observed the height, and were in 62. degrees and 30. minutes. The after-noone was little wind at North North-west. The second watch it fell calme. At foure of the clocke wee had sight of the Iles called *Ferre*, and found them to lye out of their place in the Sea Chart fourteen leagues to farre Westely. For in running South-west from *Lofnes*, we had a good care to our sterage and observations; and counted our felues thirte leagues off by our course and observation; and had light of them sixteen or eighteen leagues off.

The nine and twentieth, faire weather sometimes calme, and sometimes a gale with the wind varying at South-west, and fo to the North-east. We got to the Islands, but could not get in. So we stood along the Islands. The ebbe being come, we durst not put in.

The thirtieth faire weather; the wind at South-east and East South-east. In the morning we turned into a Road in *Stroma*, one of the Islands of *Ferre*, between *Stroma* and *Muggerus*, and got in by nine of the clocke: for it flowed fo there that day. And as soon as we came in, we went to Romage, and lent our Boat for water, and filled all our emptic Caskes with fresh water. We made an end of our Romaging this night by ten of the clocke.

The one and thirtieth, faire Sun-shining weather, the wind at East South-east. In the fore-noone our Master with most of his Company went on shoare to walke, and at one of the clocke they returned aboard. Then we let fayle.

The first of June, *Bite new*, faire Sun-shining weather, the wind at East South-east. We continued on our course South-west and by West. At noone wee observed the Summe, and found our height to be 60. degrees 58. minutes; and fo continued on our course all night with faire weather. This night we lighted Candiles in the Bittacle againe.

The second myitie weather, the wind at North-east. At noone we steered away West South-west, to find *Buffe* Land, discovered in the yeere 1598, by one of the ships of Sir *Martin Fro-bisher*, to see if it lay in her true latitude in the Chart or no: we continued our course as before all night, with a faire gale of wind: this night we had sight of the first flars, and our water was 30 changed colour to a white Greene: The Compass had no variation.

The third, faire Sun-shining weather, the wind at North-east. We steered on our course South-west and by West, with a stiff gale of wind. At noone we observed and found our height to be 58. degrees 48. minutes. And if was before the ship 16. leagues; by reason of the Current that held vs fo strong out of the South-west. For it is eight leagues in foure and twentieth houres. We accounted our felues neere *Buffe* Land: by mid-night we looked out for it, but could not see it.

The fourth, in the morning was much wind with fogge and raine. Wee steered away South-west by west all the fore-noone, the wind fo increasing, that wee were enforced to take in our top-fayle: the wind continuing fo all the after-noone. Wee steered away South-west all the fore-part of the night; and at ten of the clocke at night it was little wind; and that was at South, 40 and fo came vp to the South South-east.

The fifth, stormie weather, and much wind at South, and South by East, so that at foure of the clocke in the morning, weooke in our fore-fayle, and lay a try with our mayne corle, and tryed away West North-west foure leagues. But at noone it was leſſe wind, and the Summe shewed forth; and we observed, and found our height to be 56. degrees 31. minutes. In the after-noone the wind vened to and fro between the South-west and the South-east, with raine and fogge, and fo continued all night. We found that we had gone to the VVestward of our course. The sixth, thicke halfe weather with gusts of wind, and showens of raine. The wind varied betwene East South-East and South-west, we steered on many courses a West South-west way. The afternoone watch the wind was at East South-east, a stiff gale with myrk and raine. Wee steered away South-west, by West eight leagues. At noone the Summe shone forth, and we found the height to be 56. degrees 8. minutes. The seventh, faire Sun-shining weather, all the fore-noone, and calme vntill twelue of the clocke. In the after-noone the wind came to the North-west, a stiff gale. We steered South-west by West, and made a South-west way. At noone, we found the height to be 55. degrees one minute, and it continued all night a hard gale. The eighth, stormy weather, the wind variable, between West and North-west, much wind at eight of the clocke wee took off our Bonets. At noone the Summe shewed forth, and we observed, and our height was 54. degrees 30. minutes. The ninth, faire Sun-shining weather, and little South South-east, and we steered away West South-west. At noone we found our height to be 53. degrees and 45. minutes, and we made our way South by West ten leagues. In the after-noone the wind increased and continued all night at East North-east and East.

The twelfth, faire weather, the wind variable between East North-east and South-east, wee steered on our course as before. At foure of the clocke in the afternoon the wind came vp at South-east.

east. And we held our course as before. At noone wee observed and found our height to be 52. degrees 31. minutes.

The eleuenth, in the morning was thicke and foggie, the winde varying between South South-west, and North-west. At foure of the clocke in the morning, we tackt about to the Southward: At eleven of the clocke the winde came to the North-west, and fo to the West North-west. This day we had change of water, of a whitish Greene, like to the Ice water to the North-west. At noone it cleared vp, and became very faire weather: we put out our mayne top-fayle: then we observed the Summe, and found our height to be 51. degree 24. minutes. We had sayed many courses and found our this going to the Southward of our account ten leagues, by reason of a current from the North-west. The Compass varied on point to the East.

The twelfth, faire Sun-shining weather, but much wind at the West: we stood to the Southward all day, the wind shifting between the South-west and the West: we stood by North. We made our way South halfe a point West, eight and twentieth leagues. Our height at noone was 50. degrees 9. minutes. At eight of the clocke at night we took off our Bonets, the wind increasing.

The thirteenth, faire Sun-shining weather: the wind variable between the West, and North North-west. We made our way South South-west four and twentieth leagues. At noone we observed, and found our height to be 48. degrees 45. minutes. But not to be trusted, the Sea went fo high. In the after-noone the winde was calmer, and wee brought to our Bonets, and stood to the Southward all night: with a stiff gale.

The fourteenth, faire and cleere Sun-shining weather: the winde variable between the North-west and South-west by West. At mid-night I observed the North starre at a North-west by West Chance, a good observation 49. degrees 30. minutes. And at noone we observed the Summe, and our height was 48. degrees 6. minutes. And I made account we ranne between the two observations foure leagues. At one of the clocke in the after-noone, we cast about to the Westward, and stood fo all night: the winde increased to a storme, and was very much winde with Raine.

The fifteenth, we had a great storme, and peare over-board our fore-mast, bearing our fore corle low. The sixteenth, we were forced to tie with our mayne fayle, by reason of the varent constant weather. So wee tried foure watches South-east and by South eight leagues and an halfe, and two watches six leagues. The seventeenth, restorable faire weather: the wind variable between West South-west, and West North-west. And a stiff gale of wind, and fo great a swelling Sea out of the West South-west, that wee could doe nothing. So one watch and an halfe we droore North four leagues and an halfe, and foure watches and an halfe South and by East halfe a point East twelve leagues. The eighteenth, reasonable weather but cloſt and cloudie, and an hard gale of wind, and a great Sea. The winde being at the North-west, wee lay to the Southward, and made our drift South and by West, five leagues. The after-noone pronounced little wind, and the night part calme. The nineteenth, in the fore-noone faire weather and calme.

In the morning we let the piece of our fore-mast, and fer our fore corle.

The one and twentieth, faire Sun-shining weather, but much wind and a great Sea. We split our fore-fayle at ten of the clocke; then we laid it a trie with our mayne fayle, and continued fo all day. In the night itselfe to be little wind. This day our height was 45. degrees 48. minutes.

The two and twentieth, very faire Sun-shining weather, and calme all the after-noone. At noone we made a very good observation, and found our height 44. degrees 58. minutes. At eight of the clocke at night wee had a small gale of winde at South-east. And wee steered away West for *Newfound* Land. The true Compass varied one point East.

The three and twentieth, thicke weather with much wind and some raine. At eight of the clocke in the morning, the wind came to the West South-west, and West by West, that we were forced to take our top-fayle, and steered away North North-west vntill foure of the clocke in the after-noone. Then we tackt to the Southward the winde at West North-west. At eight of the clocke at night wee took in our top-fayles, and laid it a trie with our mayne fayle, the winde at West.

The foure and twentieth, a stiff gale of wind, varying between the West and North North-west, we tried till fixe of the clocke; at which time we fer our fore-fayle, and steered away West and by South by our Compass eight leagues in foure watches: and wee tried away South in one watch and an halfe.

The five and twentieth, faire Sun-shining weather, the wind at North North-west and North, we steered away West by South by our Compass till twelue of the clocke: at which time we had sight of a fayle, and gave her chase but could not speake with her. She stood to the Eastward; and we stood after her till fixe of the clocke in the after-noone. Then we tackt to the Westward againe, and stood on our course: it was faire all night, and little wind sometimes.

The six and twentieth, all the fore-part of the day very faire weather and hot; but at foure of the clocke in the after-noone it grew to be much winde and raine: the winde was at South South-east. At noone we observed and found our height to be 44. degrees 33. minutes. At eight of the clocke at night, the wind came to South-west, and West South-west. Wee steered

A current from
the North.
Variation one
point East.

Latitude 48.
degrees 6. mi
nutes.

* To spend the
Mast, is under
stood of break
ing of the main
mast only.

* That is, hard
no more fayle
but the mayne
fayle, &c.
Variation.

North-

North-west, one Watch, and at twelve in the night, to the West, and West and by South, very much wind. So we could lye but North North-west.

The seven and twentieth, very much wind and a large storme, the wind West. In the morning at foure of the clocke, weooke in our fore-corse, and layd it a trie with our mayne-corse low lye; and so continued all the day and night, two watches to the Northward. At eight of the clocke at night, we tackt to the Southward.

The eight and twentieth, faire fun-shining weather, the wind at West and by South; we lay a trie to the Southward till eight of the clocke in the morning. Then we let our fore-corse, and stood to the Southward a stiffe gale of wind, but faire weather and a great Sea, out of the Westward, and so continued all night.

The nine and twentieth, faire fun-shining weather, the wind at West and by South; we stood to the Southward vntill fixe of the clocke at night, and made our way South and by East, foure leagues. Then the wind came to the South-west, and wee cast about to the VVestward, and made our way VVest North-west all night. At noone, I found the height 43. degrees 6. minutes. The variation one point VVest.

The thirtieth, faire fun-shining weather, the wind at South-west and by VVest, we steered North-west and by VVest. And made our way 10, by reason of the variation of the Compasse. At noone, I found the height to bee 43. degrees 18. minutes; we continued our course all night, and made our way North-west and by VVest, half a point VVest, five and twentie leagues.

The first of July, cleare, mystie and thicke weather, but a faire gale of wind at South-west, and South-west by South. We steered away North-west and by West, Westly, and made our way 10, by reason of the variation of the Compasse. At eight of the clocke at night, we founded for the Banke of *New-found Land*, but could get no ground.

The second, thicke mystie weather, but little wind, and that at West and West and by South. At eight of the clocke in the morning, we cast about to the Southward, and when our ship was on flayes, we founded for the Banke, and had ground in thirtie fathoms, white sand and shells, and presently it cleared: and we had fight of a layle, but spake not with her. In the night we had much Rayne, Thunder and Lightning, and wind shifting.

The third, faire Sun-shining weather, with a faire gale of wind at East North-east, and we steered away West South-west by our Compasse, which varied 17. degrees Westward. This morning we were among a great Fleet of French-men, which lay Fishing on the Banke; but we spake with none of them. At noone we found our height to bee 43. degrees 41. minutes. And we founded at ten of the clocke, and had thirtie fathoms gray sand. At two of the clocke we founded, and had five and thirtie fathoms gray sand. At eight of the clocke at night, we founded againe, and had eight and thirtie fathoms gray sand, as before.

The fourth, at the fore-part of the day cleare, with a faire gale of wind, but variable betweene the East North-east, and South and by East, we held on our course as before. The after-noon was mystie, the wind shifting betweene the South and the West, till foure of the clocke. Then weooke in our top-layle and sprit-layle, and founded and had no ground in fiewente fathoms. The wind shifted still vntill eight of the clocke, then it came to the North North-east, and North-east, and by North, and we steered away West North-west, by our varied Compasse, which made a West way halfe point North. The Compasse varied 15. degrees from the North to the West.

The fife, faire fun-shining weather, the wind at North-east and by North, we steered away West North-west, which was West halfe a point North. At noone we found our height to bee 44. degrees 10. minutes, and founded, and had no ground in one hundred fathoms. The after-noon proved calme sometimes, and sometimes little wind, vntill nine of the clocke in the night. Then the wind came to the East, and we held on our course. At mid-night I obserued and found the height to bee 44. degrees 10. minutes, by the North Starre and the *Scorpion* heart. The Compasse varied 13. degrees.

The sixth, the fore-part of the day faire weather, and a stiffe gale of wind, betweene South South-east, and South-west, we steered West and by North, and West North-west. The after-part of the day from two of the clocke, was all foggie and thicke weather; the wind a hard gale, varying betweene South-west and by South, and West and by North, we made our way North-west halfe a point Northerly, nineteene leagues, vpon many points foure Watches. At night at eight of the clocke, we founded and had no ground at one hundred fathoms.

The seuenth, faire fun-shining weather, the wind varying betweene West and by North, and West and by South. At foure of the clocke in the morning, we cast about to the Southward, and stood for 11 one in the after-noon. At noone we found our height to bee 44. degrees 26. minutes. At 11 one of the clocke, we tackt to the Northward. At eight at night, we tackt to the South-west, and founded, and had nine and thirtie fathoms, white sand.

The eight, in the fore-noon faire weather, but the morning foggie till seuen of the clocke. At foure of the clocke in the morning we founded, and had five & thirtie fathoms, fine white sand, and we had runne five leagues South and by West. Then we stood along one Glasse, and went

CHAP. 16. Store of Cods taken. Schooles of Herrings. Saluages come aboard, &c. 585

one league as before. Then we stood one Glasse and founded, and had fixtie fathoms. Then we tackt and stood backe to the Banke, and had five and twentie fathoms; and tryed for Fish, and it fell calme, and we caught one hundred and eighteen great Coddes, from eight a clocke till one, and after Dinner weooke twelve, and saw many great Schooles of Herrings. Then we had a gale of wind at South, and it shifted to the West North-west, and we stood three Glasse and founded and had fixtie fathoms, and stood two Glasse, and had two and fortie fathoms, red stones and shells. So we founded euery Glasse and had fowerall foundings 35. 33. 30. 31. 32. 33. and 34. fathoms.

The ninth, faire calme weather, we lay becalmed all day and caught some Fish, but not much. At three of the clocke in the after-noon, we had a gale at South-east, and South South-east, and we steered away Westly, our Compasse was West and by South halfe a point South. At foure of the clocke, we founded and had but fiftene, seuenteen, and nineteene fathoms on a fishing Banke; and we founded euery Glasse. Then we could get no ground in five and twentie fathoms, and had fight of a layle on head off vs. At noone our height was 44. degrees 37. minutes. We stood to the Westward all night, and spake with a French-man, which lay Fishing on the Banke of *Sables*, in thirtie fathoms, and we saw two or three more.

The tenth, very mystie and thicke weather, the wind at South-west, a faire gale. We stood to the South-west, and made our way South-east and by East. At twelue of the clocke we founded, and had eight and fortie fathoms; againe at two we founded, and had fiftie fathoms. And at six of the clocke we founded: and had eight and fortie fathoms on the end of the Banke. Again, at eight of the clocke at night we founded, and had no ground in eightie fathoms, and were oner the Banke. So we stood along till mid-night. The Compasse varied 17. degrees to the Westward.

The eleuenth, very thicke and mystie weather. At twelue of the clocke at night, we cast about to the Westward, and stood for all day, and made our way West North-west. We founded at twelue of the clocke, but had no ground; so we stood to the Westward all the fore-part of the night, and founded but could get no ground in fiftie or sixtie fathoms till mid-night. Then I founded and had ground at fiftene fathoms, white sand.

The twelfth, was very foggie, we stood our course all the morning till eleuen of the clocke; at which time we had fight of the Land, which is low white sandie ground, right on head off vs; and had ten fathoms. Then we tackt to the Southward, and stood off foure Glasse: then we tackt to the Land againe, thinking to haue rode vnder it, and as we came nere it, the fog was so thicke that we could not see; so we stood off againe. From mid-night to two of the clocke, we came founding in twelue, thirteene, and foureteene fathoms off the shoare. At foure of the clocke, we had 30 fathoms. At eight of the clocke at night 30 fathoms. At twelue of the clocke 65 fathoms, and but little wind, for it deeped apace, but the nearer the shoare the fairer flooding.

The thirteenth, faire fun-shining weather, from eight of the clocke in the fore-noon all day after, but in the morning it was foggie. Then at eight of the clocke we cast about for the shoare, but could not see it; the wind being at South by our true Compasse, we steered VVest and by North. At noone we obserued, and found our height to bee 43. degrees 25. minutes; so we steered away VVest and by North all the after-noon. At foure of the clocke in the after-noon, we founded and had five and thirtie fathoms. And at six of the clocke, we had fight of the Land, and saw two layles on head off vs. The land by the waters side is low Land, and white sandie Banke rising full of little Hills. Our foundings were 35. 33. 30. 28. 32. 37. 33. & 34. fathoms.

The foureteenth, full of mysts flying and vading, the wind betweene South and South-west, we steered away West North-west, and North-west and by West. Our foundings were 29. 25. 24. 25. 22. 25. 27. 30. 28. 30. 35. 43. 50. 70. 90. 70. 64. 86. 100. fathoms, and no ground.

The fiftenth, very mystie, the wind varying betweene South and South-west, and West and by North, and VVest North-west. In the morning we founded, and had one hundred fathoms, till foure of the clocke in the after-noon. Then we founded againe, and had one hundred fathoms. Then in two Glasse running, which was not aboute two English miles, we founded and had fixtie fathoms, and it shoalded a great pace vntill we came to twentie fathoms. Then we made account we were nere the Islands that lie off the shoare. So we came to an Anchor, the for Fish, and I caught fiftene Cods, some the greatest that I haue seene, and so we rode all night.

The sixteenth, in the morning it cleared vp, and we had fight of five Islands lying North, and North and by VVest from vs, two leagues. Then we made ready to let layle, but the myst came so thicke, that we durst not enter among them.

The seuenteenth, was all mystie, so that we could not get into the Harbour. At ten of the clocke two Boates came off to vs, with fixe of the *Saluager* of the Countrey, seeming gl.d of our coming. VV. gaue them trifles, and they gave us drinke and vs; and told vs, that there were Gold, Silver, and Copper mynes hard by vs; and that the French-men doe Trade with them; which is very likely, for one of them spake some words of French. So we rode till all day and all night, the weather continuing mystie.

Many great Cods taken. Many great Schooles of Herrings. To found is to rise the depth by Line and Lead, or Pole, &c.

Variation 17. degrees.

Land, being low, white and sandie.

43. degrees 25. minutes. Sight of Land againe, and of two Ships.

Six Saluages come aboard them.

The eighteenth, faire weather, we went into a very good Harbour, and rode hard by the shoare in foure fathoms water. The River runneth vp a great way, but there is but two fathoms hardly vs. VV^e went on shoare and cut vs a fore Maft, then at noone we came aboard againe, and found the height of the place to be in 44. degrees 1. minute; and the Sunne to fall at the South-west by us. VV^e mended our sayles, and fell to make our fore-Maft. The Harbour lyeth South and North, a mile in where we rode.

The nineteenth, we had faire fun-shining weather, we rode still. In the after-noon we went with our Boate to looke for fresh water, and found none; and found a shoald with many Lobbers on it, and caught one and thurty. The people coming aboard, shewed vs great friendshipp, but we could not trust them. The twentieth, faire funne-shining weather, the winde at South-west. In the morning, our Scute went out to catch fresh Fish halfe an houre before day, and returned in two houres, bringing feuen and twentie great Coddes, with two hookes and lines. In the after-noon we went for more Lobbers, and caught fortie, and returned aboard. Then we epied two French Shallops full of the Countrey people come into the Harbour, but they offered vs no wrong, seeing we flood vpon our guard. They brought many Beaver skinner, and other fine Fures, which they would have changed for redde Gownes. For the French trade with them for red Callockes, Knives, Hatchets, Copper, Kettles, Treuts, Beades, and other trifier.

The one and twentieth, all myltie, the wind Easterly, we rode still and did nothing, but about our Maft. The two and twentieth, faire Sun-shining weather, the winde all Northerly, we rode still all the day. In the after-noon our Scute went to catch more Lobbers, and brought with them nine and fiftie. The night was cleere weather.

The three and twentieth, faire fun-shining weather and very hot. At eleuen of the clocke, our fore Maft was finished, and we brought it aboard, and set it into the step, and in the after-noon we rigged it. This night we had some little mylt and rayne.

The foure and twentieth, very hot weather, the winde at South out of the sea. The fore-part of the day we brought to our sayles. In the morning, our Scute went to take Fish, and in two houres they brought with them twentie great Coddes, and a great Holibut, the night was faire also. We kept good watch for feare of being betrayed by the people, and perceived where they layd their Shallops.

The five and twentieth, very faire weather and hot. In the morning we manned our Scute with foure Muskets, and fixe men, andooke one of their Shallops and brought it aboard. Then we manned our Boat & Scute with twelue men and Muskets, and two stone Pieces or Murderers, and drave the *Sauages* from their Houles, andooke the spoyle of them, as they would have done of vs. Then we set sayle, and came downe to the Harbours mouth, and rode there all night, because the winde blew right in, and the night grew myltie with much rayne till mid-night. Then it fell calme, and the wind came of the Land at West North-west, and it began to cleere. The Compasse varied 10. degrees North-west.

The fixe and twentieth, faire and cleere funne-shining weather. At five of the clocke in the morning, the winde being off the shoare at North North-west, we set sayle and came to sea, and by noone we counted our ship had gone foureteen leagues South-west. In the after-noon, the winde shifted variably betwene West South-west, and North-west. At noone, I found the height to be 43. degrees 56. minutes. This Evening being very faire weather, we observed the variation of our Compasse at the Sunnes going downe, and found it to be 10. degrees from the North to the VVestward.

The seuen and twentieth, faire fun-shining weather, the winde shifting betwene the South-west and West and by North, a stiff gale, we flood to the Southward all day, and made our way South and by West, feuen and twentie leagues. At noone, our height was 42. degrees 50. minutes. At foure of the clocke in the after-noon, we cast about to the Northward. At eight of the clocke, weooke in our top-sayles and our fore-bonnet, and went with a thort sayle all night.

The eight and twentieth, very thicke and myltie, and a stiff gale of wind, varying betwene South South-west, and South-west and by VVest; we made our way North-west and by VVest, feuen and twentie leagues, we founded many times and could get no ground. At five of the clocke, we cast about to the Southward, the wind at South-west and by VVest. At which time we founded, and had ground at feuentie fathoms. At eight, we had sixtie fathoms. At ten, fixte, At twelue of the clocke at mid-night, fiftie sixte fathoms, gray land. The Compasse varied 6. degrees the North point to the VVest.

The nine and twentieth, faire weather, we flood to the Southward, and made our way South and by VVest a point South, eighteen leagues. At noone, we found our height to be 42. degrees 56. minutes, we founded off, and had chiefe 60, 64, 65, 67, 69, 70, and 75. fathoms. At 60 night, wee tried the variation of our Compasse by the setting of the Sunne, and found that it went downe 27. degrees to the North-ward of the VVest, and should have gone downe but 21. degrees. The Compasse varied 5. 1. degrees.

The thirtieth, very hot, all the fore-part of the day calme; the wind at South South-east, wee steered

steered away VVest South-west and founded many times, and could find no ground at one hundred and feuentie fathoms. VV^e found a great current and many ouer-falls. Our current had deuiated vs. For at noone we found our height to be 41. degrees 34. minutes. And the current had headed vs to the Southward four or five leagues. At eight of the clocke at night, I founded and had ground in fiftie two fathoms. In the end of the mid-night watch; wee had fiftie three fathoms. This loft observation is not to be trusted.

The one and thirtieth, very thicke and myltie all day, vnill tenne of the clocke. At night the wind came to the South, and South-west and South. We made our way West North-west nineteen leagues. Wee founded many times, and had difference of foundings, sometimes little fones, and sometimes grosse gray land, fiftie six, fiftie foure, fortie eight, fortie feuen, fortie foure, fortie six, fiftie fathoms; and at eight of the clocke at night it fell calme, and we had fiftie fathoms. And at ten of the clocke we heard a great Rur, like the Rur of the shoare. Then I founded and found the former Depths; and mistrusting a current, seeing it so full that the ship made no way, I let the lead lie on the ground, and found a tide set to the South-west, and South-west by West, so full, that I could hardly vee the Line so fast, and presently came an hurling current, or tyde with ouer-falls, which cast our ship round; and the Lead was so fast in the ground, that I feared the Lines breaking, and we had no more but that. At mid-night I founded againe, and we had feuentie fathoms; and the strong frame had left vs.

The first of August, all the fore-part of the day was myltie, and at noone it cleered vp. We found that our height was 41. degrees 45. minutes, and we had gone nineteen leagues. The after-noon was reasonable cleere. We found a rustling tide or current, with many ouer-falls to continue still, and our water to change colour, and our tea to bee very deepe, for wee found no ground in one hundred fathoms. The night was cleere, and the winde came to the North, and North North-east, we steered West.

The second, very faire weather and we had a gale of wind, but in the after-noon little wind. At noone I founded and had one hundred and ten fathoms; and our height was 41. degrees 56. minutes. And we had runne foure and twentie leagues and an halfe. At the Sun-setting we observed the variation of the Compasse, and found that it was come to his true place. At eight of the clocke the gale increased, so wee ranne five leagues that was watch, and had a very fine and cleere night.

The third, very hot weather. In the morning, we had sight of the Land, and steered in with it, thinking to goe to the North-ward of it. So we sent our shallop with five men, to found in by the shoare; and they found it deepe five fathomes within a Bow-shot of the shoare; and they went on Land, and found goodly Grapes, and Rostrees, and brought them aboard with them, at five of the clocke in the Evening. We had feuen and twentie fathomes within two miles of the shoare; and we found a shallop come from the South-east, and an ebbe from the North-west, with a very strong frame, and a great hurling and noyces. At eight of the clocke at night, the wind began to blow a fresh gale, and continued all night but variable. Our founding that wee had to the Land, was one hundred, eightie, feuentie foure, fiftie two, fortie six, twentie nine, twentie feuen, twentie foure, nineteene, feuentene, sometimes Oze, and sometimes gray land.

The fourth, was very hot; wee flood to the North-west two watches; and one South in for the Land, and came to our Anchor at the Norther end of the Headland, and heard the voyce of men call. Then we sent our Boat on shoare, thinking they had bene some *Christians* left on the Land; but wee found them to be *Sauages*, which seemed very glad of our coming. So wee brought one aboard with vs, and gave him meate, and he did eate and drinke with vs. Our Master gaue him three or foure glasse Beurons, and sent him on Land with our shallop againe. And our Boats coming from the shoare he leaped and danced; and held vp his hands, and painted vs to rise on the other side; we had made signes that we came to him there. The bodie of this Headland lyeth in 41. degrees 45. minutes. We set sayle againe after dinner, thinking to flue got to the Westward of this Headland, but could not; so wee bore vp to the Southward of it, and made a South-east way; and the Souther point did beare West at eight of the clocke at night. Our foundings about the Easter and Norther part of this Headland, a league from the shoare are thise: The North-east point 17. degrees 18. minutes, and 10 deeper. The North-east of this Headland, thome. At the South-east fathomes: and three leagues off North North-west, one hundred fathome have Greene Tobacco, and pipes, the boles whereof are made of Earth, and the pipes of the red Copper. The Land is very low.

The fift, all myltie. At eight of the clocke in the morning, wee cast about to the Westward, and flood in till foure of the clocke in the after-noon; at which time it cleered, and wee had sight of the Head-land againe five leagues from vs. The Souther point of it did beare West off vs; and we founded many times, and had no ground. And at foure of the clocke we cast about, and at our flaying wee had feuentie fathomes. Wee steered away South and South by East all night,

The trade of the French with the *Sauages*.

They spoyle the Houles of the *Sauages*.

Variation 10. degrees toward the North-west

Variation 6. degrees to the West.

Variation 5. & a half degree.

A great current and many ouer-falls.

A great Rur.

A current to the South-west and South-west by West, with ouer-falls.

They goe on Land neere Capocad.

Sauages.

night, and could get no ground at feventie and eightie fathomes. For wee feared a great Riffe, that lyeth off the Land, and steered away South and by East.

The sixth, faire weather, but many times myflie. Wee steered away South South-east, till eight of the clocke in the morning; Then it cleered a little, and wee came about to the Westward. Then we founded and had thirtie fathomes, grosse land, and were come to the Riffe. Then we kept our Lead, and had quick shoaling from thirtie, twentie nine, twentie euen, twentie foure, twentie two, twentie and an halfe, twentie, nineteen, nineteen, nineteen, we steered South and South-east till we came to twentie fixe fathomes. Then we steered South-west for so the tyde doth set. By and by it being calme we tryed by our Lead; for you shall see the Westward you shall have foure and six fathomes, and see Rocks vnder you; and you shall see the Land in the top. Vpon this Riffe we had an obfervation, and found that it lyeth in 40. degrees 10. minutes. And this is that Headland which Captaine Bartholomew Gofnold difcouered in the yeere 1605. and called Cape Cod because of the store of Cod-fish that hee found thereabout. So we steered South-west three leagues, and had twentie, and twentie foure fathomes. Then we steered West two Glasses half a league, and came to fifteene fathomes. Then we steered vpon; and the streame did hurle fo, that it laid vs in the breach of a shoal, that wee were forced to Anchor. So at feuen of the clocke at night, wee were at an Anchor in tenne fathomes: And I giue God most heartie thanks, the least water we had was feuen fathomes and an halfe. We rode still all night, and at a fill water I founded fo farre round about our ship as we could see a light; and had no lesse then eight, nine, ten, and eleuen fathomes: The mytt continued being very thicke.

The feuenth, faire weather and hot, but myflie. Wee rode still hoping it would cleere, but on the flood it fell calme and thicke. So we rode still all day and all night. The flood commeth from the South-west, and riseth not about one fathome and an halfe in nepe streames. Toward night it cleered, and I went with our shallop and founded, and found no lesse water then eight fathomes to the South-east off vs; but we law to the North-west off vs great Breaches.

The eight, faire and cleere weather. In the morning, by fixe of the clocke at flake water we 30 weighed: the wind at North-east, and set our fore-ayle and mayne top-ayle, and got a mile ouer the Flats. Then the tyde of ebbe came, so we anchored againe till the flood came. Then we set sayle againe, and by the great mercie of God, we got cleere off them by one of the clocke this after-noon. And wee had sight of the Land from the West North-west, to the North North-west. So we steered away South South-east all night; and had ground vntill the middle of the third watch. Then we had fortie fixe fathomes, white land, and little floss. So all our soundings are twentie, twentie, twentie two, twentie fenen, thirtie two, fortie three, fortie three, fortie fixe. Then no ground in feuentie fathomes.

The ninth, very faire and hot weather, the wind a very stiffe gale. In the morning, at foure of the clocke, our shallop came running vs against our sterne, and spke in all her flemme; so we 40 were faine to cut her away. Then weooke in our mayne sayle, and lay atrie vnder our fore-ayle vntill twelue of the clocke at mid-day. Then the wind cleered to a faire gale, so wee flood away South-west. Then we lay cloie by, on many courses a South by West way fifteene leagues; and three watches South-east by East, ten leagues. At eight of the clocke at night, weeooke in our top-ayles, and went with a low sayle: because we were in an vnknowne sea. At noone we obserued and found our height to be 38. degrees 39. minutes.

The tenth, in the morning faine raine and cloudie weather: the wind at South-west, wee made our way South-east by East, ten leagues. At noone, wee obserued and found our height to be 38. degrees 39. minutes. Then wee tackt about to the Westward, the wind being at South and by East, little wind. At foure of the clocke it fell calme, and we had two Dolphins about 50 our ship, and many small fishes. At eight of the clocke at night, wee had a small hinging gale. All night we had a great Sea out of the South-west, and another great Sea out of the North-east.

The clearest, all the fore-part of the day faire weather, and very hot. VVee flood to the VVest South-west till noone. Then the wind thorted, and we could lyo but South-west and by South. At noone, we found our height to be 39. degrees 11. minutes: And that the current 60 of the clocke in the after-noonne thirtie two minutes contrary to our expectation. At foure of the clocke in the after-noonne there came a mytt, which endured two houres. But wee had it faire and cleere all night after. The Compasse varied the North point to the VVest one whole point.

The twelfth, faire weather, the wind variable betweene the South-west and by South, and the North little wind. In the morning we killed an extraordinary fish, and flood to the Westward all day and all night. At noone we found our height to be 38. degrees 13. minutes. And the obfervation the day before was not good. This noone, we found the Compasse to vary from the North to the West ten degrees.

The thirteenth, faire weather and hot: the wind at North-east. Wee steered away West and by

by our Compasse two and twentie leagues. At noone we found our height to be 37. degrees 45. minutes, and that our way from noone to noone was West South-west, half a point Southerly. The Compasse was 7. degrees and a halfe variation; from the North point to the West.

The fourteenth, faire weather, but cloudie, and a stiffe gale of wind, variable betweene North-east and South-west, wee steered away West by South; a point South all day vntill nine of the clocke at night; then it began to Thunder and Lighten, whereupon weooke in all our sayles, and layd it a hull, and hulled away North till mid-night, a league and a halfe.

The fifteenth, very faire and hot weather, the wind at North by East. At foure of the 10 clocke in the morning, wee set sayle, and flood on our course to the Westward. At noone we found our height to be 37. degrees 35. minutes. Thenceforward wee pressed hittle wind. At eight of the clocke at night, the wind came to the North, and wee steered West by North, and West North-west, and made our way West: The Compasse varied 7. degrees from the North to the West.

The sixteenth, faire shining weather, and very hot: the wind variable betweene the North and the West, wee steered away West by North. At noone we found our height to be 37. degrees 6. minutes. This morning we founded and had ground in ninetie fathomes, and in fixe Glasses running it shoaled to fiftie fathomes, and so to eight and twentie fathomes, at foure of the clocke in the after-noon. Then wee came to an Anchor, and rode till eight of the clocke at 20 night, the wind being at South and Moone-light, we rode to go to the Northward to finde deeper water. So we weighed and flood to the Northward, and found the water to shoal and deepe, from eight and twentie to twentie fathomes.

The feuenteenth, faire and cleere Sun-shining weather, the wind at South by West, wee steered to the Northward till foure of the clocke in the morning, then wee came to eightie fathomes. So we Anchored vntill the Sunne arose to look abroad for Land, for wee iudgeth there could not but be Land neere vs, but we could see none. Then we weighed and flood to the Westward till noone. And at eleuen of the clocke wee had sight of a low Land, with a white sandie shore. By twelue of the clocke we were come into fixe fathomes, and Anchored; and the Land 30 North. Our height was 37. degrees 16. minutes. Then the wind blew fo stiffe a gale, and such a Sea went, that we could not wight; so we rode there all night an hard rode.

The eighteenth, in the morning faire weather, and hittle winde at North North-east and North-east. At foure of the clocke in the morning, we weighed and flood into the shoare to see the deeping or shoaling of it, and finding it too deepe, we flood in to get a rode; for wee law as it were three lands. So wee turned to windward to get into a Bay, as it shewed to vs to the Westward of an Island. For the three lands did beare North off vs. But toward noone the wind blew Northerly, with gusts of wind and rayne. So wee stood off into the Sea againe all night; and running off we found a Channell, wherein we had no lesse then eight, nine, ten, eleuen, and twelue fathomes water. For in comming ouer the Barre, wee had fue, and foure fathomes and a 40 halfe, and it lyeth fixe leagues from the shoare, and it is the Barre of Virginia. At the North end of it, it is ten leagues broad, and South and North, but deepe water from ninetie fathomes to five, and foure and a halfe. The Land lyeth South and North. This is the entrance into the Kings River in Virginia, where our English-men are. The North side of it lyeth in 37. degrees 16. minutes, you shall know when you come to shoal water or founding; for the water will looke Greene or thicke, you shall have ninetie and eightie fathomes, and shoaling a pice till fathomes and a halfe.

The nineteenth, faire weather, but an hard gale of winde at the North-east, wee flood off till noone, and made our way South-east by East, two and twentie leagues. At noone wee caft 50 about to the Westward, and flood till fixe of the clocke in the after-noon, and went fixe leagues and a halfe North-west by North. Then wee caft about againe to the Eastward, and flood that way till foure the next morning.

The twentieth, faire and cleere weather, the wind variable betweene East North-east, and North-east. At foure of the clocke in the morning, wee caft about to the Westward, and flood till noone; at which time I founded; and had two and thirtie fathomes. Then we tackt to the Eastward againe; we found our height to be 37. degrees 22. minutes. Wee flood to the Eastward all night, and had very much wind. At eight of the clocke at night weooke off our Bon- 37. degrees 22. minutes. ners, and flood with small sayle.

The one and twentieth, was a fore forme of winde and rayne all day and all night, wherefore 60 wee flood to the Eastward with a small sayle: till one of the clocke in the after-noon. Then a great Sea brake into our fore-corfe and spke it; so we were forced to take it from the yard and mend it; we lay a trie with our mayne-corfe all night. This night our Cat ranne crying from one side of the ship to the other, looking ouer-board, which made vs to wonder; but we saw nothing.

This danger-
ous Riffe is in
41. degrees 10
minutes, and
lyeth off East
from Cape
Cod into the
Sea.

The Flats.

A current set-
ting to the
North.
Variation one
point.

Variation 10.
degrees.

37. Degrees
15. minutes

37. Degrees
6. minutes.

Along Land
with a white
sandie shore;
37. degrees 16
minutes.

Barre of Vir-
ginia
Kings River.

37. degrees 22
minutes.

The two and twentieth, stormy weather, with gulls of raine and wind. In the morning at eight of the clocke we set our fore-ast, and stood to the Eastward vnder our fore-ast, raine-fayle and mofen, and from noone to noone, we made our way East South-east, fourteen leagues. The night reasonable drie but cloudy, the winde variable all day and night. Our Compasse varied 4. degrees Westward.

Variation 4. degrees Westward.

The three and twentieth, very faire weather, but some Thunder in the morning, the winde variable betwene East by North. At noone we tackt about to the Northward, the winde at East by North. The after-noon very faire, the wind variable, and continued to all night. Our way we made East South-east, till noone the next day.

The foure and twentieth, faire and hot weather, with the wind variable betwene the North and the East. The afternoon variable winde. But at foure of the clocke, the wind time to the East and South-east: so we steered away North by West, and in three Watches we went thirteene leagues. At noone our height was 35. degrees 41. minutes, being farre off at Sea from the Land.

The five and twentieth, faire weather and very hot. All the morning was very calme vntill eleven of the clocke; the wind came to South-east, and South South-east; so we steered away North-west by North, two Watches and a halfe, and one Watch North-west by West, and went eightene leagues. At noone I found our height to bee 36. degrees 20. minutes, being without sight of Land.

The fixe and twentieth, faire and hot weather, the winde variable vpon all the points of the Compasse. From two of the clocke in the morning vntill noone, we made our way North by East, seven leagues. In the after-noon the wind came to the North-east, and vering to the East South-east, we steered away North-west fiftene leagues, from noone till ten of the clocke at night. At eight of the clocke at night we found, and had eightene fathomes, and were come to the Banke of Virginia, and could not see the Land. We kept sounding, and steered away North, and came to eight fathomes, and Anchored there; for the wind was at East South-east, so that we could not get off. For the Coast lyeth along South South-west, and North North-east. At noone our height was 37. degrees 15. minutes. And we found that we were returned to the same place, from whence we were put off at our first lying Land.

The seven and twentieth, faire weather and very hot, the winde at East South-east. In the morning as soone as the Sunne was vp, we looked out and had sight of the Land. Then we weighed, and stood in North-west two Glasse, and found the Land to bee the place, from whence we were put off first. So we kept our looke, and steered along the Land, and had the Banke lyeth along the shore; and we had in two leagues off the shore, five, fixe, seven, eight, nine, and ten fathomes. The Coast lyeth South South-west, and is a white Sandie shore, and thetewell full of Bayes and Points. The streame seteth West South-west, and East North-east. At fixe of the clocke at night, we were thwart of an Harbour or River, but we saw a Barre lyeth before it; and all within the Land to the Northward, the water ranne with many Islands in it. At fixe of the clocke we were Anchored, and sent our Boate to found to the shore-ward, and found to litle then foure and a halfe, five, fixe, and seven fathomes.

The eight and twentieth, faire and hot weather, the winde at South South-west. In the morning at fixe of the clocke we weighed, and steered away North twelve leagues till noone, and came to the Point of the Land; and being hard by the Land in five fathomes, on a sudden we came into three fathomes; then we heare vp and had but ten fathomes, and ioyned to the Point. Then as soone as we were ouer, we had five, fixe, seven, eight, nine, ten, twelve, and thirteene fathomes. Then we found the Land to tread away North-west, with a great Bay and Rivers. But the Bay we found shoal; and in the offing we had ten fathomes, and had sight of Breaches and drie Sand. Then we were forced to stand backe againe: so we stood backe South-east by South, three leagues. And at seven of the clocke we were Anchored in eight fathomes water; and found a Tide set to the North-west, and North North-west, and it riseth one fathome, and stoweth South South-east. And hee that will thoroughly Discover this great Bay, must haue a small Pinasse, that must draw but foure or five foote water, to found before him. At five in the morning we weighed, and steered away to the Eastward on many courtes, for the Northern Land is full of shoals. We were among them, and once we brooke, and we went away; and steered away to the South-east. So we had two, three, foure, five, fixe, and seven fathomes, and so deeper and deeper.

The nine and twentieth, faire weather, with some Thunder and howers, the winde shifting betwene the South South-west, and the North North-west. In the morning we weighed at the break of day, and stood toward the Northern Land, which we found to bee all lands to our sight, and great shoales from there, and two shoals three leagues off. For we coming by them, we had but seven, fixe, five, foure, three, and two fathomes and a halfe, and strooke ground with our Rudder, we steered off South-west, one Glasse, and had five fathomes. Then we steered South-east three Glasse, then we found seven fathomes, and steered North-east by East, foure leagues, and came to twelve and thirteene fathomes. At one of the clocke, I went to the point

The Banke of Virginia. The Coast lyeth South-west, and North North-west. Latitude 37. minutes. This agreeth with Robert Wyndell.

The Point of the Land.

A great Bay and Rivers.

A small Shoal nee needfull.

The Northern Land is full of shoals.

Many Islands.

They thike.

maist head, and set the Land, and the bodie of the Islands did beare North-west by North. And at foure of the clocke, we had gone foure leagues East South-east, and North-east by East, and found but seven fathomes, and it was calme, so we Anchored. Then I went againe to the top-mast head, to see how farre I could see Land about vs, and could see no more but the Land. And the Souther point of them did beare North-west by West, eight leagues off. So we rode till mid-night. Then the winde came to the North North-west, so we weighed and set fayle.

The thirtieth, in the morning betwene twelve and one, we weighed, and stood to the Eastward, the winde at North North-west, we steered away and made our way East South-east. From our weighing till noone, eleven leagues. Our foundings were eight, nine, ten, eleven, twelve, and thirteene fathomes till day. Then we came to eightene, nineteene, twentie, and to fixe and twentie fathomes by noone. Then I observed the Sunne, and found the height to bee 39. degrees 5. minutes, and saw no Land. In the after-noon, the winde came to North North-west by West; so we lay close by with our fore-fayle and our mayne-fayle, and it was little winde vntill twelve of the clocke at mid-night, then we had a gale a litle while. Then I found, and all the night our foundings were thirtee, and fixe and thirtee fathomes, and we went little.

The one and thirtieth, faire weather and little wind. At fixe of the clocke in the morning we cast about to the North-east, the wind being at the North-east, little wind. At noone I felt calme, and I found the height to bee 38. degrees 39. minutes. And the freemes had decreed vs, and our founding was eight and thirtee fathomes. In the afternoon I founded againe, and had but thirtee fathomes, so we found that we were heared too and fro with the freemes of the Tide, both by our obseruations and our depths. From noone till foure of the clocke in the after-noon, it was calme. At fixe of the clocke we had a litle gale Southerly, and it continued all night, sometimes calme, and sometimes a gale; we went eight leagues from noone to noone, North by East.

The first of September, faire weather, the wind variable betwene East and South, we steered away North North-west. At noone we found our height to bee 39. degrees 3. minutes. We had foundings thirtee, twentie seven, twentie foure, and twentie two fathomes, as we went to the Northward. At fixe of the clocke we had one and twentie fathomes, and all the third watch till twelve of the clocke at mid-night, we had foundings one and twentie, two and twentie, eightene, two and twentie, one and twentie, eightene, and two and twentie fathomes, and went fixe leagues neere hand North North-west.

The second, in the morning close weather, the winde at South in the morning; at twelve vntill two of the clocke we steered North North-west, and had founding one and twentie fathomes, and in running one Glasse we had but sixteen fathomes, then fountene, and so shoalder and shoalder vntill it came to twelve fathomes. We saw a great Fire, but could not see the Land, then we came to ten fathomes, whereupon we brought our tacks aboard, and stood to the Eastward East South-east, foure Glasse. Then the Sunne arose, and we steered away North againe, and saw the Land from the West by North, to the North-west by North, all like broken lands, and our foundings were eleven and ten fathomes. Then we looke in for the shore, and fire by the shore, we had seven fathomes. The course along the Land we found to be North-east by North. From the Land which we had first sight of, vntill we came to a great Lake which was in length ten leagues, being drowned Land, which made it to rise like lands, keth on them as it is cast out of the mouth of it. And from that Lake or Bay, the Land lyeth North by East, and we had a great streame out of the Bay 3. and from thence our founding was ten fathomes, two leagues from the Land. At five of the clocke we Anchored, being little winde, and rode in eight fathomes water, the night was faire. This night I found the Land to hall the Compasse 8. degrees. For to the Northward off vs we saw high Hills. For the day before we found not above 2. degrees of Variation. This is a very good Land to fall with, and a pleasant Land to see.

The third, the morning mystic vntill ten of the clocke, then it cleared, and the wind came to the South South-east, so we weighed and stood to the Northward. The Land is very pleasant and high, and hold to fall withall. At three of the clocke in the after-noon, we came to three great Rivers. So we stood along to the Northernmost, thinking to haue gone into it, but we found it to haue a very shoal barre before it, for we had but ten foote water. Then we cast about to the Southward, and found two fathomes, three fathomes, and three and a quarter, till we came to the Southern side of them, then we had five and fixe fathomes, and Anchored. So we went in our Boate to found, and they found no less water then foure, fixe, fixe, and seven fathomes, and returned in an houre and a halfe. So we weighed and went in, and rode in fixe fathomes, Ozie ground, and saw many Salmon, and Mullets, and Rayes very great. The height is 40. degrees 30. minutes.

The fourth, in the morning as soone as the day was light, we saw that it was good riding

Ecc 2 farther

Latitude 39. degrees 5. minutes.

Latitude 38. degrees 39. minutes. Decentfull freemes.

September. Latitude 39. degrees 3. minutes.

The Land like broken lands, three great Rivers. The course along the Land from the mouth of one River, to the mouth of the Northern Bay or Lake. Variation 8. degrees neere the Hills. 2. degrees variation off at Sea.

High and a bold shoale, three great Rivers. The Northernmost barred. An excellent River. Latitude 40. degrees 30. minutes.

A very good Harbour.

The people of the Country come aboard, they are very ciuill. Yellow Copper. Tall Oaks.

The great Bay is so deep and so many.

Dryd Currants. Moulds of Feathers, Fur, Hempe. Red Copper.

Another Riuer four leagues to the Northward. A narrow Riuer to the Westward.

Colman flaine, and two more hurt.

Colmans Point.

Treacherous Saueges.

Good Harbour.

farther vp. So we went our Boate to found, and found that it was a very good Harbour; and foure and five fathoms, two Cables length from the shoare. Then we weighed and went in with our ship. Then our Boate went on Land with our Net to Fish, and caught ten great Mullies, of a foot and a halfe long a peece, and a Ray as great as foure men could hale into the ship. So we trimmed our Boate and rode still all day. At night the wind blew hard at the North-west, and our Anchor came home, and we droue on shoare, but tooke no hurt, thanked be God, for the ground is soft sand and Oze. This day the people of the Country came aboard vs, bringing very glad of our comming, and brought green Tobacco, and gae vs of it for Knives and Beades. They goe in Deere skins loofe, well dressed. They have yellow Copper. They desire Cloathes, Bread. The Country is full of great and tall Oaks.

The fifth, in the morning as soone as the day was light, the wind ceased and the Flood came. So we heaued off our ship againe into five fathoms water, and sent our Boate to found the Bay, and we found that there was three fathoms hard by the Souther shoare. Our men went on Land there, and saw great flore of Men, Women and Children, who gae them Tobacco at their comming on Land. For one of them came aboard and brought some dried, and gae me some, which were sweet and good. This day many of the people came aboard, from in Mantles of Feathers, and some in Skinkes of diuers sorts of good Furres. Some women also came to vs with about their neckes. They had red Copper Tobacco pipes, and other things of Copper they did weare 20 not truit them.

The sixth, in the morning was faire weather, and our Master sent *Iohn Colman*, with foure other men in our Boate out to the North-side, to found the other Riuer, being foure leagues from vs. They found by the way shoald water two fathoms; but at the North of the Riuer eighteen, and twentie fathoms, and a very good riding for Ships; and a narrow Riuer to the Westward betweene two llands. The Lands they told vs were as pleasant with Grasse and Flowers, and goodly Trees, as euer they had seene, and very sweet smells came from them. So they went in two leagues and saw an open Sea, and returned; and as they came backe, they were let vpon by two Canoes, the one hauing twelve, the other fourteen men. The night came on, and it began to rayne, so that their Match went out; and they had one man flaine in the fight, which was an *English* man, named *Iohn Colman*, with an Arrow shot into his throat, and two more hurt. It grew so darke that they could not find the ship that night, but labored too and fro on their Oars. They had so great a fire, that their grappell would not hold them.

The seventh, was faire, and by ten of the clocke they returned aboard the ship, and brought our dead man with them, whom we carried on Land and buried, and named the point after his name, *Colmans Point*. Then we hoysed in our Boate, and raised her side with waite boards for defence of our men. So we rode still all night, hauing good regard to our Watch.

The eight, was very faire weather, we rode still very quietly. The people came aboard vs, and brought Tobacco and *Indian* Wheat, to exchange for Knives and Beades, and offered vs no violence. So we fitting vp our Boate did make them, to see if they would make any shew of the Death of our man; which they did not.

The ninth, faire weather. In the morning, two great Canoes came aboard full of men; the one with their Bowes and Arrows, and the other in shew of buying of Knives to betray vs; but we perceived their intent. We tooke two of them to haue kept them, and put red Coates on them, and would not suffer the other to come nere vs. So they went on Land, and two other came aboard in a Canoe: we tooke the one and let the other goe; but hee which wee had taken, got vp and leapt ouer-board. Then we weighed and went off into the channell of the Riuer, and Anchored there all night.

The tenth, faire weather, we rode still till twelue of the clocke. Then we weighed and went over, and found it shoald all the middle of the Riuer, for we could finde but two fathoms and a halfe, and three fathomes for the space of a league; then we came to three fathomes, and foure fathomes, and so to seuen fathomes, and Anchored, and rode all night in soft Oze ground. The banks are Sand.

The eleventh, was faire and very hot weather. At one of the clocke in the after-noon, wee weighed and went into the Riuer, the wind at South South-west, little winde. Our soundings were seuen, fixe, fixe, fixe, fixe, nine, ten, twelve, thirteene, and fouenteen fathomes. Then it shoaled againe, and came to five fathomes. Then we Anchored, and saw that it was a very good Harbour for all winde, and rode all night. The people of the Country came aboard of vs, making shew of loue, and gae vs Tobacco and *Indian* Wheat, and departed for that night; but we durst not truit them.

The twelfth, very faire and hot. In the after-noon at two of the clocke we weighed, the winde being variable, betweene the North and the North-west. So we turned into the Riuer two leagues and Anchored. This morning at our first rode in the Riuer, there came eight and twentie

twentie Canoes full of men, women and children to betray vs: but we saw their intent, and suffered none of them to come aboard of vs. At twelue of the clocke they departed. They brought with them Oysters and Beanes, whereof wee bought some. They haue great Tobacco pipes of yellow Copper, and Pots of Earthe to dress their meate in. It bloweth South-east by South within.

The thirteenth, faire weather, the wind Northerly. At seuen of the clocke in the morning, as the flood came we weighed, and turned foure miles into the Riuer. The tide being done wee anchored. Then there came foure Canoes aboard: but we suffered none of them to come into our ship. They brought great flore of very good Oysters aboard, which we bought for trifles.

In the night I let the variation of the Compasse, and found it to be 13. degrees. In the after-noon we weighed, and turned in with the flood, two leagues and a halfe further, and anchored all night, and had five fathoms soft Oze ground, and had a high point of Land, which shewed out to vs, bearing North by East five leagues off vs.

The fourteenth, in the morning being very faire weather, the wind South-east, we layd vp the Riuer twelve leagues, and had five fathoms, and five fathoms and a quarter lesse; and came to a Streight betweene two Points, and had eight, nine, and ten fathoms; and it trended North-east by North, one league: and wee had twelue, thirteene and fouenteen fathomes. The Riuer is a mile broad: there is very high Land on both sides. Then we went vp North-west, a league and an halfe deepe water. Then North-east by North five miles; then North-west by North two leagues, and anchored. The Land grew very high and Mountainous. The Riuer is full of fish.

The fifteenth, in the morning was misty vntill the Sunne arose: then it cleared. So wee weighed with the wind at South, and ran vp into the Riuer twentie leagues, passing by high Mountaines. Wee had a very good depth, as fixe, seuen, eight, nine, ten, twelue, and thirteene fathoms, and great flore of Salmones in the Riuer. This morning our two Saueges got out of a Port and swam away. After we were vnder sayle, they called to vs in fcorne. At night we came to other Mountaines, which lie from the Riuer's side. There we found very louing people, and very old men: where wee were well vied. Our Boat went to fish, and caught great flore of very good fish.

The sixteenth, faire and very hot weather. In the morning our Boat went againe to fishing, but could catch but few, by reason their Canoes had beene there all night. This morning the people came aboard, and brought vs eares of *Indian* Corne, and Pompions, and Tobacco: which wee bought for trifles. Wee rode still all day, and filled fill water; at night wee weighed and went two leagues higher, and had shoald water: so wee anchored till day.

The seuenteenth, faire Sun-shining weather, and very hot. In the morning as soone as the Sun was vp, we fet sayle, and ran vp fixe leagues higher, and found shoalds in the middle of the channell, and small llands, but seuen fathoms water on both sides. Toward night we borrowed to neere the shoare, that we grounded: so we layed out our small anchor, and heaued off againe. Then we borrowed on the banke in the channell, and came aground againe; while the flood ran we heaued off againe, and anchored all night.

The eighteenth, in the morning was faire weather, and we rode still. In the after-noon our Masters Mate went on land with an old Sauege, a Gouernour of the Country; who carried him to his house, and made him good cheere. The nineteenth, was faire and hot weather: at the flood being neere eluen of the clocke, wee weighed, and ran higher vp two leagues above the Shoals, and had no lesse water then five fathoms: wee anchored, and rode in eight fathomes. The people of the Country came flocking aboard, and brought vs Grapes, and Pompions, which wee bought for trifles. And many brought vs Beuers skinkes, and Otters skinkes, which wee bought for Beades, Knives, and Hatchets. So we rode there all night.

The twentieth, in the morning was faire weather. Our Masters Mate with foure men more went vp with our Boat to found the Riuer, and found two leagues above vs: but two fathomes water, and the channell very narrow; and about that place seuen or eight fathomes. Toward night they returned: and we rode still all night. The one and twentieth, was faire weather, and the wind all Southerly: we determined yet once more to goe farther vp into the Riuer, to trie what depth and breadth it did beare; but much people relied aboard, so wee went not this day. Our Carpenter went on land, and made a Fore-yard. And our Master and his Mate determined to trie some of the chiefe men of the Country, whether they had any rescheur in them. So they tooke them downe into the Cabin, and gae them so much Wine and *And* *via*, that they were all merrie: and one of them had his wife with him, which late to modestly, as any of our Country women would doe in a strange place. In the end one of them was drunke, which had beene aboard of our ship all the time that we had beene there; and that was strange to them; for they could not tell how to take it. The Canoes and folke went all on shoare: but some of them came againe, and brought stropes of Beades: some had fixe, seuen, eight, nine, ten; and gae him. So he slept all night quietly.

The two and twentieth, was faire weather: in the morning our Masters Mate and foure more

28. Canoes full of men. Oysters and Beanes. Copper Pipes.

Variation 13. degrees.

The Riuer a mile broad. Very high and mountainous Land.

Very louing people.

Maiz, Pompions and Tobacco.

Shoalds and small llands.

Grapes and Pompions: Beuers and Otters skinkes.

Oration.

End of the Ri-
uers Nui-
blence.
They reume
downe the
Riuer.Score of Chest-
nuts.Oaks, Wal-
nut trees, Chest-
nut trees, Beech
trees, &c.

of the companie went vp with our Boat to found the Riuer higher vp. The people of the Coun-
trie came not aboard till noone: but when they came, and saw the Sauages well, they were
glad. So at three of the clocke in the after-noon they came aboard, and brought Tobacco, and
more Beades, and gave them to our Master, and made an Oration, and shewed him all the Coun-
trie brought a great Platter full of Venison, dressed by themselves; and they caused him to eat with
them: then they made him reverence, and departed all the old man that lay aboard. This
night at ten of the clocke, our Boat returned in a shower of raine from founding of the Riuer;
and found it to bee at an end for shipping to goe in. For they had bene vp eight or nine leagues,
and found but feuen foor water, and vncoufent foundings.

The three and twentieth, faire weather. At twelue of the clocke wee weighed, and went
downe two leagues to a shoall that had two channels, one on the one side, and another on the
other, and had little wind, whereby the tide layd vs upon it. So, there wee fate on ground the
space of an houre till the flood came. Then we had a little gale of wind at the West. So wee
got our ship into deepe water, and rode all night very well.

The foure and twentieth was faire weather: the winde at the North-west, wee weighed,
and went downe the Riuer feuen or eight leagues; and at halfe ebbe wee came on ground on a
Land, and gathered good store of Chest-nuts. At ten of the clocke wee came off into deepe
water, and anchored.

The fve and twentieth was faire weather, and the wind at South a stiffe gale. We rode fill,
and went on Land to walke on the West side of the Riuer, and found good ground for Corne,
trees, Ewe trees, and trees of sweet wood in great abundance, and great store of Slate for houses,
and other good fones.

The fixe and twentieth was faire weather, and the wind at South a stiffe gale, wee rode fill,
in the morning our Carpenter went on Land with our Masters Mate, and foure more of our
first founding people, and in one of them was the old man that had lyeen aboard of vs at the
other place. He brought another old man with him, which brought more fropes of Beades, and
gave them to our Master, and shewed him all the Countrey there about, as though it were at his
command. So he made the two old men dine with him, and the old mans wife: for they brought
two old women, and two young maidens of the age of fixteene or feuteene yeres with them,
who behaued themselves very modestly. Our Master gave one of the old men a Knife, and they
gaue him and vs Tobacco. And at one of the clocke they departed downe the Riuer, making
signes that wee should come downe to them; for wee were within two leagues of the place
where they dwelt.

The feuen and twentieth, in the morning, was faire weather, but much wind at the North,
we weighed and fet our fore top-sayle, and our ship would not flat, but ran on the Ozie bank
at halfe ebbe. Wee layed out anchor to heare her off, but could not. So wee fate from halfe
ebbe to halfe flood: then wee fet our fore-sayle and mayne top-sayle, and got downe fixe
leagues. The old man came aboard, and would haue had vs anchor, and goe on Land to eat with
him: but the wind being faire, we would yeeld him his request; so he left vs, being very
forrowfull for our departure. At fve of the clocke in the after-noon, the wind came to the
South South-west. So wee made a boord or two, and anchored in foureene fathomes water.
Then our Boat went on shoare to fish against the ship. Our Masters Mate and Boat-swaine,
and three more of the companie went on land to fish, but could not finde a good place. They
tooke foure or fve and twentie Mulletts, Breames, Bales, and Barbils; and returned in an houre.
Wee rode fill all night.

The eight and twentieth, being faire weather, as foon as the day was light, wee weighed at
halfe ebbe, and turned downe two leagues belowe water; for, the freamed dole runne the last
quarter ebbe: then we anchored till high water. At three of the clocke in the after-noon we
weighed, and turned downe three leagues, vntill it was darke: then wee anchored.

The nine and twentieth was drie drole weather: the wind at South, and South and by West,
we weighed early in the morning, and turned downe three leagues by a lowe water, and anchored
at the lower end of the long Reach; for it is fixe leagues long. Then there came certaine
Indians in a Canoe to vs, but would not come aboard. After dinner there came the Canoe with
other men, whereof three came aboard vs. They brought Indian Wheat, which wee bought
for trifles. At three of the clocke in the after-noon wee weighed, as foon as the ebbe came,
and turned downe to the edge of the Mountaines, or the Northernmost of the Mountaine, and
anchored: because the high Land hath many Points, and a narrow channell, and hath many
eddie winds. So we rode quietly all night in feuen fathomes water.

The thirtieth was faire weather, and the wind at South-east a stiffe gale: betweene the Moun-
taines. Wee rode fill the after-noon. The people of the Countrey came aboard vs, and brought
Lime

some small skinnes with them, which wee bought for Knives and Trifles. This a very pleasant
place to build a Towne on. The Road is very nere, and very good for all winds, faue an East
North-east wind. The Mountaynes looke as if some Metall or Minerall were in them. For the
Trees that grow on them were all blasted, and some of them barren with few or no Trees on
them. The people brought a stone aboard like to Emery (a Stone vied by Glafers to cut Glasse)
it would cut Iron or Steele: Yet being bruised small, and water put to it, it made a colour like
blacke Lead glittering; It is all good for Painters Colours. At three of the clocke they depar-
ted, and wee rode fill all night.

The first of October, faire weather, the wind variable betweene the West and the North. In
the morning we weighed at feuen of the clocke with the ebbe, and got downe below the Moun-
taines, which was feuen leagues. Then it fell calme and the flood was come, and wee anchored
at twelue of the clocke. The people of the Mountaynes came aboard vs, wondering at our ship
and weapons. Wee bought some small skinnes of them for Trifles. This after-noon, one Canoe
kept hanging vnder our sterne with one man in it, which wee could not keepe from thence, who
got vp by our Radder to the Cabin window, and stole out my Pillow, and two Shirts, and two
Bandeletes. Our Masters Mate shot at him, and strooke him on the brest, and killed him.
We manned our Boat, and got our things againe. Then one of them that swamme got hold of our
Boat, thinking to ouerthrow it. But our Cooke tooke a Sword, and cut off one of his hands, and
he was drowned. By this time the ebbe was come, and we weighed and got downe two leagues,
by that time it was darke. So we anchored in foure fathomes water, and rode well.

The second, faire weather, at break of day wee weighed, the wind being at North-west,
and got downe feuen leagues; then the flood was come, ftrong, so we anchored. Then came one
of the Sauages that swamme away from vs at our going vp the Riuer with many other, thinking
to betray vs. But wee perceived their intent, and suffered none of them to enter our ship:
whereupon two Canoes full of men, with their Bowes and Arrows shot at vs after our sterne:
in recompence whereof wee discharged fixe Muskets, and killed two or three of them. Then a-
bout an hundred of them came to a point of Land to shoot at vs. There I shot a Falcon at them,
and killed two of them: whereupon the rest fled into the Woods. They manned off another

30 Canoe with nine or ten men, which came to meet vs. So I shot at it also a Falcon, and shot it
through, and killed one of them. Then our men with their Muskets, killed three or foure more
of them. So they went their way, within a while after, wee got downe two leagues beyond
that place, and anchored in a Bay, cleere from all danger of them on the other side of the Riuer,
where wee saw a very good piece of ground: and hard by it there was a Cliffe, that looked of the
colour of a white Greene, as though it were either Copper, or Silver Myne: and I thinke it to be
one of them, by the Trees that grow vpon it. For they be all burned, and the other places are
greenes as grasse, it is on that side of the Riuer that is called *Manna-hata*. There we saw no peo-
ple to trouble vs: and rode quietly all night, but had much wind and raine.

The third, was very stormie; the wind at East North-east. In the morning, in a gulf of wind
and raine our Anchor came home, and we droue on ground, but it was Ozie. Then as wee were
about to haue out an Anchor, the wind came to the North North-west, and droue vs off againe.
Then we shot an Anchor, and let it fall in foure fathomes water, and weighed the other. Wee
had much wind and raine, with thickes weather, so we rode fill all night.

The fourth, was faire weather, and the wind at North North-west, wee weighed and came
out of the Riuer, into which we had runne to farre. Within a while after, wee came out also of
The great mouth of the great Riuer, that runneth vp to the North-west, borrowing vpon the
Northern side of the same, thinking to haue deepe water: for wee had founded a great way with
our Boat at our first going in, and found feuen, fixe, and fve fathomes. So we came out that way,
but we were deceiued, for we had but eight foor and an halfe water, and so to three, fixe, three, and
30 two fathomes and an halfe. And then three, foure, fixe, fixe, feuen, eight, nine, and ten fathomes.
And by twelue of the clocke we were cleere of all the Inlet. Then weooke in our Boat, and fet
our mayne-sayle and sprit-sayle, and our top-sayles, and steered away East South-east, and
let, did heare at noone West and by South foure leagues from vs.

The fifth, was faire weather, and the wind variable betweene the North and the East. Wee
held on our course South-east by East. At noone I obserued and found our height to be 39
degrees 30. minutes. Our Compasse varied fixe degrees to the West.

We continued our course toward England, without seeing any Land by the way, all the rest
of this month of October: And on the feuenth day of Nouember, *filio nemo*, being Satur-
day: by the Grace of God we safely arrived in the Range of *Dartmouth* in *Dorsetshire*, in the
yere 1609.

Small skinn.
A pleasant
place to build
on a Towne on.
Likelihood of
Minerals.

October

Treacherie of
the Sauages.
A skirmish and
slughter of
the Sauages.A Myne of
Copper or
Silver.
The Countrey
of *Manna-hata*.The great mouth
of the great Ri-
uer.They leave
the Coast of
Virginia.

CHAP. XVII.

An Abstract of the Journal of Master HENRY HUDSON, for the Discoverie of the North-west Passage, begunne the sixteenth of April, 1610. ended with his end, being treacherously expelled by some of the Companie.

April 17.



He sixteenth of April, 1610. we brake ground, and went downe from Saint Katherines Loe, and fell downe to Blackwell, and so played downe with the ships to Lee, which was the two and twentieth day.

The two and twentieth, I caused Master Colborne to bee put into a Pinke, bound for London, with my Letter to the Adventurers, importing the reason wherefore I so put him out of the ship, and so played forth.

May. The Isles of Orkney.

The second of May, the wind Southerly, at Eeven we were shewt of Flamborough Head. The first, we were at the Isles of Orkney, and here I set the North end of the Needle, and the North of the Flie all one.

Nore. Fare lands 61 degrees 24 minutes, Westmoy.

The sixt, we were in the latitude of 59. degrees 22. minutes, and there perceived that the North end of Scotland, Orney, and Shetland are not to Northerly, as is commonly set downe. The eight day, we saw Farre Islands, in the latitude of 61. degrees 24. minutes. The eleventh day, we fell with the Easter part of Island, and then playing along the Souther part of the Land, we came to Westmoy, being the fiftenth day, and still played about the mayne land, untill the last of May with contrary winds, and we got some Fowles of divers sorts.

June.

The first day of June, we put to Sea out of an Harbour, in the Westmost part of Island, and so played to the Westward in the latitude of 66. degrees 24. minutes, and the second day found our felues in 65. degrees 57. minutes, with little wind Easterly.

The third day, we found our felues in 65. degrees 30. minutes, with winde at North-east, a little before this we layed nere some Ice.

Groneland.

The fourth day, we saw Groneland over the Ice perfectly, and this night the Sunne went downe due North, and rose North North-east. So playing the first day, we were in 65. degrees, 30 still encombed with much Ice, which hung upon the Coast of Groneland.

Frobisher Straights.

The ninth day, we were off Frobishers Straights with the winde Northerly, and played vnto the South-westwards untill the fiftenth day.

Defolation.

The sixtenth day, we were in sight of the land, in latitude 59. degrees 27. minutes, which was called by Captayne John Davis, Defolation, and found the error of the former laying downe of that Land: and then running to the North-westward untill the twentieth day, we found the ship in 60. degrees 42. minutes, and saw much Ice, and many Riplings or Quers-falls, and a strong streame letting from East South-east, to West North-west.

A current West North-west.

The one and twentie, two and twentie, and three and twentie dayes, with the winde variable, we played to the North-westward in sight of much Ice, into the height of 61. degrees 40 30. minutes.

East entrance into the Straights.

The four and twentie, and five and twentie dayes, laying to the West-ward about midnight, we saw Land North, which was suddenly lost againe. So we ranne still to the Westward in 61. degrees 17. minutes.

July.

The sixt of July, we played vp vpon the Souther side, troubled with much Ice in seeking the shore untill the fift day of July, and we observed that day in 59. degrees 16. minutes. Then we played off the shore againe, untill the eight day, and then found the height of the Pole in 60. degrees no minutes. Here we saw the Land from the North-west by West, halfe Northerly vnto the South-west by West, covered with snow, a Champaigne Land, and called it, Desyre prometh.

Desyre prometh.

We still played vp to the Westward, as the Land and Ice would suffer untill the eleventh day; when fearing a storme, we anchored by three Rockie Islands in vncertaine depth, between two and nine fathomes; and found it an Harbour vnsufficient by reason of lunken Rockes, so the place which was next morning two fathomes above water. We called them the Isles of Gods Mercies. The Land boweth here better then foure fathomes. The Flood cometh from the North, flowing eight the change day. The latitude in this place is 61. degrees 9. minutes. Then playing to the South-westward the sixteenth day, we were in the latitude of 58. degrees 50. minutes, but found our felues imbedded with Land, and had much Ice: and we played to the North-westward untill the nineteenth day, and then we found by observation the height of the Pole in 61. degrees 24. minutes, and saw the Land, which I named, Hold with Hope. Hence I played to the North-westward still, untill the one and twentieth day, with the wind variable. Here I found the Sea more growne, then any we had since we left England.

Hold with Hope. A mightie growne Sea.

The three and twentieth day, by observation the height of the Pole was 61. degrees 33. minutes.

notes. The five and twentieth day, we saw the Land; and named it *Magna Britannia*. The sixe and twentieth day, we observed and found the latitude in 61. degrees 44. minutes. The eight and twentieth day, we were in the height of 69. degrees 10. minutes, and played Southerly of the West. The one and thirtieth day, plying to the Westward, at noone we found our felues in 61. degrees 24. minutes.

Magna Britannia.

The first of August, we had sight of the Northerne shore, from the North by East to the West by South vs: the North part twelve leagues, and the Wester part twentie leagues from vs: and we had no ground there at one hundred and eightie fathomes. And I thinke I saw Land on the Sunne side, but could not make it perfectly, bearing East North-east. Here I found the latitude 61. degrees 50. minutes.

August.

The second day, we had sight of a faire Head-land, on the Norther shore six leagues off, which I called *Salsburies* Fore-land: we ranne from them West South-west, fourteen leagues, in the mid-way of which we were suddenly come into a great and whirling Sea, whether caused by meeting of two streames, or an Ouer-fall, I know not. Thence laying West and by South fifteen leagues farther, we were in the mouth of a Streight and founded, and had no ground at one hundred fathomes: the Streight being there not above two leagues broad, in the passage in this Wester part: which from the Easter part of *Frisland*, is distant two hundred and fiftie leagues thereabouts.

Salsburies fore-land: A great and whirling Sea: A Streight which led vs into the deepe Bay of Gods great Mercies.

The third day, we put through the narrow passage, after our men had bene on Land, which we had well observed there, that the Flood did come from the North, flowing by the shore five fathomes. The head of this entrance on the South side, I named *Cape Workenholme*: and the head on the North-westen shore, I called *Cape Digs*. After we had sailed with an Easterly winde, West and by South ten leagues, the Land fell away to the Southward, and the other Isles and Land left vs to the Westward. Then I observed and found the ship at noone in 61. degrees 20. minutes, and a Sea to the Westward.

Cape Workenholme. *Cape Dig.*

A larger Discourse of the same Voyage, and the success thereof, written by ABRAHAM PRACKET.

30

Our Voyage for the North-west Passage: the sixteenth of April, 1610.

Thwart of Skoppy, our Master sent Master Colborne backe to the Owners with his Letter. The next day we weighed from hence, and stood for Harwich, and came thither the eight and twentieth of April. From Harwich we set saile the first of May, along the Coast to the North, till we came to the Isles of Orkney, from thence to the Isles of Faro, and from thence to Island: on which we fell in a fogge, hearing the Rut of the Sea alhoare, but farre from the Land whereupon our Master came to an Anchor. Here we were embayed in the South-east part of the Land. We weighed and stood along the Coast, on the West side towards the North: but one day being calme, we fell a fishing, and caught good store of fish, as Cod and Ling, and Butte, with some other sorts that we knew not. The next day, we had a good gale of wind at South-west, and rayled the Isles of Westmoy, where the King of Denmarke hath a Fortrefse, by which we passed to rayle the Snow Hill foot, a Mountayne so called on the North-west part of the Land. But in our course we saw that famous Hill, Mount Hecla, which cast much fire, a signe of foule weather to come in short time. We leave Island a sterne of vs, and met a Mayne of Ice, which did hang on the North part of Island, and stretched downe to the West, which when our Master lay, he stood backe for Island to find an Harbour, which we did on the North-west part, called Desford, where we killed good store of Fowle. From hence we put to Sea againe, but (neither wind nor weather serving) our Master stood backe for this Harbour againe, but could not reach it, but fell with another to the South of that, called by us *Englyfmen* Loufie Bay: where on the shore we found an hot Bath, and here all our Englyfmen bathed themselves: the water was so hot that it would kill a Fowle.

Orkney, Faro, Isles. The South-east part of Island.

From hence the first of Iune, we put to Sea for Groneland, but to the West we saw Land as we thought, for which we beate the best part of a day, but it proved but a foggy banke. So we gave it ouer, and made for Groneland, which we rayled the fourth of Iune. Vpon the Coast there of hung good store of Ice, so that our Master could not atayne to the Land by any means. The Land in this place is very Mountaynous, and full of round Hills, like to Sugar-loaves, covered with snow. We turned the Land on the South side, as neere as the Ice would suffer vs. Our course for the most part was betweene the West and North-west, till we rayled the Defolation, which is a great Island in the West part of Groneland. On this Coast we saw store of W hailes, and at one time three of them came close by vs, so we as we could hardly thinne them: then two passing very neere, and the third going vnder our ship, we received no harme by them, prayled bee God.

Westmoy Island. Mount Hecla. Catherbourn fire. A Mayne of Ice.*Or Desford.**Loufie Bay.* An hot Bath. The first of Iune.

From hence the first of Iune, we put to Sea for Groneland, but to the West we saw Land as we thought, for which we beate the best part of a day, but it proved but a foggy banke. So we gave it ouer, and made for Groneland, which we rayled the fourth of Iune. Vpon the Coast there of hung good store of Ice, so that our Master could not atayne to the Land by any means. The Land in this place is very Mountaynous, and full of round Hills, like to Sugar-loaves, covered with snow. We turned the Land on the South side, as neere as the Ice would suffer vs. Our course for the most part was betweene the West and North-west, till we rayled the Defolation, which is a great Island in the West part of Groneland. On this Coast we saw store of W hailes, and at one time three of them came close by vs, so we as we could hardly thinne them: then two passing very neere, and the third going vnder our ship, we received no harme by them, prayled bee God.

From the Defolation our Master made his way North-west, the wind being against him, who

Island of Defolation. Store of Whales.

else would have gone more to the North: but in this course we saw the first great land or Mountayne of Ice, whereof after we saw shore. About the latter end of June, we rayed Land to the North of vs, which our Master took to be that Island which Master Davis setteth downe in his Chart. On the West side of his Streight, our Master would have gone to the North of it, but the wind would not suffer him: so we fell to the South of it, into a great Rippling or overfall of current, the which setteth to the West. Into the current we went, and made our way to the North of the West, till we met with Ice which hung on this Island. Wherefore our Master calling about, cleared himselfe of this Ice, and stood to the South, and then to the West, through flocks of floating Ice, and vpon the Ice flocks of Seales. We gained a cleere Sea, and continued our course till we met with Ice, with great Islands, and then with flocks of the smaller sort. Betweene them we made our course North-west, till we met with Ice againe. But, in this going betweene the Ice, we saw one of the great Islands of Ice ouerturne, which was good warning to vs, not to come nigher, nor within their reach. Into the Ice we put ahead, as vs, that in the end we were driven to put her into the chiefe of the Ice, and there to let her lie. Some of our men this day fell sicke, I will not say it was for feare, although I saw small signe of other griefe.

Island of Ice ouerturneth.

Danger by Ice.

Hudson entered some leagues further then any had bene.

Dissentens.

Desire promises.

Exercise of pleasure and profit on the Ice. Difference of Tydes and Bayes. Ice above 100 fathoms.

A dangerous Rocks.

Isle of Gods Mercie.

Partridges.

The storme ceasing, we stood out of the Ice, where we saw any cleere Sea to goe to: which was sometime more, and sometime lesse. Our course was as the Ice did lie, sometime to the North, then to the North-west, and then to the West, and to the South-west: but still inclin- 20 ted with Ice. Which when our Master saw, he made his course to the South, thinking to cleere himselfe of the Ice that way: but the more he strove, the worse he was, and the more inclosed, till we could goe no further. Here our Master was in despair, and (as he told me after) he thought he should neuer have got out of this Ice, but there haue perished. Therefore hee brought forth his Card, and shewed all the company, that hee was entred aboue an hundred leagues further then euer any English was: and left it to their choice, whether they would proceed any further; yea, or nay. Whereupon, some were of one minde, and some of another, some wishing themselves at home, and some not caring where, so they were out of the Ice: but there were some who then spake words, which were remembered a great while after.

There was one who told the Master, that if he had an hundred pounds, hee would giue foure- 30 score and ten to be at home: but the Carpenter made answer, that if hee had an hundred, hee would not giue ten vpon any such condition, but would think it to be as good money as euer hee had any, and to bring it as well home, by the leaue of God. After many words to no purpose, to worke we must on all hands, to get our selues out, and to cleere our ship. After much labour and time spent, we gained roome to turne our ship in, and so by little and little, to get cleere in the Sea a league or two off, our course being North and North-west.

In the end, we rayed Land to the South-west, high Land and covered with Snow. Our Master named this Land, *Desire promises*. Lying here, we heard the noyse of a great over-fall of a tyde, that came out of the Land: for now we might fee well, that wee had bene embayed before, and time had made vs know, being so well acquainted with the Ice, that when night, or foggie, or foule weather took vs, we would seeke out the broadest Island of Ice, and there come to anchor and runne, and spore, and fill water that stood on the Ice in Ponds, both sweete and good. But after we had brought this Land to beare South of vs, we had the tyde and the current to open the Ice, as being carried first one way, and then another: but in Bayes they lye as in a pond without moouing. In this Bay where we were thus troubled with Ice, we saw many of those Mountaynes of Ice aground, in fixe or seuenfoure fathome water. In this our course we saw a Beare vpon a piece of Ice by it selfe, to the which our men gaue chase with their Boat: but before they came nigh her, the tyde had carried the Ice and the Beare on it, and ioyned it with the other Ice: so they lost their labour, and came aboard againe.

We continued our course to the North-west, and rayed Land to the North of our course, toward which we made, and coming nigh it, there hung on the Eastermost point, many Islands of floating Ice, and a Beare on one of them, which was one to another came towards vs, till the was ready to come aboard. But when the saw vs looke at her, she cast her head betwene her hinder legges, and then diued vnder the Ice: and so from one piece to another, till the was out of our reach. We stood along by the Land on the Southside ahead of vs, we met with Ice that hung on a point of Land that lay to the South, more then this that we came vpy by: which when our Master saw, he stood in for the shoare. At the West end of this Island (for so it is) we found an Harbour, and came in (as a full Sea) ouer a Rocks, which meried two fathome and an halfe on it, and was so much bare at a low water. But by the great mercie of God, we came to an Anchor cleere of it: and close by it, our Master named them, the *Isle of Gods Mercie*. This is an Har- 60 bour for need, but there must be care had how they come in. Here our Master sent me, and others with me, to discover to the North and North-west, and in going from one place to another, we sprung a Courey of Partridges which were young: at the which *Thomas Woodhouse* shot, but killed only the old one. This Island is a most barren place, hauing nothing on it but plai- 65

plaihes of water: and riuen Rockes, as if it were subiect to Earthquakes. To the North there is a great Bay, or Sea (for I knew not what it will prove) where I saw a great Island of Ice aground, betweene the two Lands, which with the Spring-tide was feet afoot, and carried into this Bay or Sea to the North-westward, but came not backe againe, nor within sight. Here wee took in some Drift wood that we found ashore.

Drift-wood.

From hence we stood to the South-west, to double the Land to the West of vs, through much floating Ice: In the end wee found a cleere Sea, and continued therein, till we rayed Land to the North-west. Then our Master made his course more to the South then before: but it was not long ere we met with Ice which lay ahead of vs. Our Master would haue doubled this Ice to the North, but could not; and in the end put into it downe to the South-west through much Ice, and then to the South, where we were embayed againe. Our Master strove to get the shoare, but could not, for the great force of Ice that was on the coast. From out of this Bay, we stood to the North, and were loose out of the Ice: then downe to the South-west, and so to the West, where we were enclosed (to our sight) with Land and Ice. For wee had Land from the South to the North-west on one side, and from the East to the West on the other: but the Land that was to the North of vs, and lay by East and West, was but an Island. On we went till we could goe no further for Ice: so we made our ship fast to the Ice which the tide brought vpon vs, but when the ebbe came, the Ice did open, and made way: so as in fouen or eight houres we were cleere from the Ice, till we came to weather: but onely some of the great Islands, that were carried along with vs to the North-west.

Hauing a cleere Sea, our Master stood to the West along by the South shoare, and rayed three Capes or Head-Lands, lying one aboue another. The middlemost is an Island, and maketh a Bay or Harbour, which (I take) will proue a good one. Our Master named them *Prince Henries Cape*, or *For-Land*. When we had layd this we rayed another, which was the extreme point of the Land, looking towards the North: vpon it are two Hills, but one (about the rest) like an Hay-cocke: which our Master named, *King James his Cape*. To the North of this, lie certaine Islands, which our Master named, *Queene Annes Cape*, or *For-Land*. Wee followed the North shoare still. Beyond the Kings Cape there is a Sound or Bay, that hath some Islands in it: and this is not to be forgotten, if need be. Beyond this, lieth some broken Land, close to the Mayne, but what it is I know not: because we passed by it in the night.

Three Capes. Prince Henries Cape.

King James his Cape. Queene Annes Cape.

We stood to the North to double this Land, and after to the West againe, till we fell with Land that stretched from the Mayne, like a shewer from the South to the North, and from the North to the West, and then downe to the South againe. Being thort of this Land, a storme took vs, the wind at West, we stood to the North, and raised Land: which when our Master saw, he stood to the South againe; for he was loath at any time that wee should see the North shoare. The storme continuing, and coming to the South shoare againe, our Master found him- 30 selfe close to the West, a great way, which made him mofe, considering his Leeward way. To the South-west of this Land, on the Mayne, there is an high Hill, which our Master named *Mount Charles*. To the North and beyond this, lieth an Island, that to the East hath a faire head, 40 and beyond it to the West other broken Land, which maketh a Bay within, and a good Road may be found there for ships. Our Master named the first, *Cape Salisbury*.

Note.

Mount Charles.

Cape Salisbury.

When we had left this to the North-east, we fell into a Rippling or Over-fall of a Current, which (at the first we took to be a Shoald: but the Lead being cast, we had no ground. On we passed still in sight of the South shoare, till we raised Land lying from the Mayne some two leagues. Our Master took this to be a part of the Mayne of the North Land; but it is an Island, the North side stretching out to the West more then the South. This Island hath a faire Head to the East, and very high Land, which our Master named *Deeper Cape*: and the Land on the South side, now falling away to the South, makes another Cape or Head-land, which our Master named, *Worshams Cape*. When we were nigh the North or Island Cape, our Master sent the Boat ashore, with my selfe (who had the charge) and the Carpenter, and others other, to discover to the West and North-west, and to the South-west: but we had further to it then we thought; for the Land is very high, and we were over-taken with a storme of Raine, Thunder and Lightning. But to it we came on the North-east side, and vpon we got from one Rocke to another, till we came to the highest of that part. Here we found some plaine ground, and saw some Deere, as first, foure or five, and after, a dozen or sixteene in an Herd, but could not come 50 nigh them with a Musket shot.

Deeper Cappe. Worshams Cape.

Thus, going from one place to another, wee saw to the West of vs an high Hill above all the rest, it being nigh vs: but it proued further off then we made account; for, when we came to it, the Land was so steep on the East and North-east parts, that we could not get vnto it. To the South-west we saw that we might, and towards that part we were along by the side of a great Pond of water, which lieth vnder the East side of this Hill: and there runneth out of it a streame of water, as much as would driue an over-fall Mill; which falleth downe from an high Cliffe into the Sea on the South side. In this place great store of Fowle breed, and there is the best Grasse that I had seen since we came from England. Here wee found Sorell, and that 65 which

Store of fowle and Grasse. Sorell and Scoury grass.

which wee call Scurty-graffe, in great abundance. Passing along wee saw some round Hills of stone, like to Grasse cockes, which at the first Iooke to be the worke of some Christian. Wee passed by them, till we came to the South side of the Hill; we went vnder them, and there found more; and being nigh them, I turned off the vppermost stone, and found them hollow within, and full of Fowles hanged by their neckes. Then *Greene*, and I, went to fetch the Boat to the South side, while *Robert Billet* and hee got downe a Valley to the Sea side, where wee took them in.

Our Master (in this time) came in betwene the two Lands, and throt off some Peeces to call vs aboard; for it was a fogge. Wee came aboard, and told him what we had seen, and persuaded him to stay a day or two in this place, telling him what refreshing might there bee had; but by no means would he stay, who was not pleased with the motion. So we left the Fowles, and loft our way downe to the South-west, before they went in fight of the Land, which now. Now, we had loft the fight of it, because it falleth away to the East, after some five and twenty leagues. Now we came to the shallow water, wherewith wee were not acquainted since we came from *Iland*; now we came into broken ground and Rocks, through which we passed downe to the South. In this our course we had a storme, and the water did shoald space. Our Master came to an anchor in fifteene fathomes water.

Wee weighed and stood to the South-east, because the Land in this place did liewe. When we came to the point of the West Land (for we now had Land on both sides of vs) we came to an anchor. Our Master sent the Boat ashore, to see what that Land was, and whether there were any way through. They tooke returned, and shewed that beyond the point of Land to the South, there was a large Sea. This Land on the West side, was a very narrow Point. We weighed from hence, and stood in for this Sea betwene the two Lands, which (in this place) is not two leagues broad downe to the South, for a great way in sight of the East shore. In the end we loft light thereof, and saw it not till we came to the bottom of the Bay, into fixe or seuen fathomes water. Hence we stood vp to the North by the West shore, till wee came to an *Iland* in 53. where we took in water and ballast.

From hence wee passed towards the North: but some two or three dayes after (reasoning concerning our coming into this Bay, and going out) our Master took occasion to renew old matters, and to displace *Robert Iust* from being his Mate, and the Boat-swaine from his place, for words spoken in the first great Bay of Ice. Then hee made *Robert Billet* his Mate, and *William Wilson* our Boat-swaine. Vp to the North wee stood, till we raised Land, and then downe to the South, and vp to the North, then downe againe to the South: and on Michaelmasse day came in, and went out of certain Lands which our Master sets downe by the name of *Michaelmasse Bay*, because we came in and went out on that day. From hence wee stood to the North, and came into shoald water; and the weather being thicke and foule, wee came to an anchor in seuen or eight fathome water, and there lay eight dayes: in all which time wee could not get one houre to weigh our anchor. But the eight day, the wind beginning to cease, our Master would have the anchor vp, against the mind of all who knew what belonged therunto. We, to it we went, and when we had brought it to a peeke, a Seaooke her, and cast vs all off from the Capstone, and hurt diuers of vs. Here wee loft our Anchor, and if the Carpenter had not bene, we had loft our Cable too: but he (feeling such a matter) was ready with his Axe, and lo cut it.

From hence wee stood to the South, and to the South-west, through a cleere Sea of diuers founding, and came to Sea of two colours, one blacke, and the other white, fixtee or seuentee fathome water, betwene which we went foure or five leagues. But the night coming, we tooke in our Top-sayles, and stood afore the wind with our Main-sayle and Fore-sayle, and came into five or six fathomes, and saw no Land for it was darke. Then we stood to the East, and had deepe water againe, then to the South and South-west, and so came to our Westermost Bay of all, and came to an anchor neere to the North shore. Our way to the North to the Land that was next vs, when they came neere it, our Boat could not lye to the shore: it was so shallow: yet ashore they got. Here our men saw the footing of a man and a Ducke in the snowy Rocks, and Wood good fore, whereof they tooke some and returned aboard. Being at anchor in this place, we saw a ledge of Rocks to the South of vs, some league of length: It lay North and South, couered at a full sea; for a strong tide setteth in here. At mid-night wee weighed, and stood to goe out as we came in; and had not gone long, but the Carpen came and told the Master, that if he kept that course hee would be vpon the Rocks: the Master conceiued that he was paft them, when presently wee ranne on them, and there stucke fast twelue houres: but (by the mercy of God) we got off vnhurt, though not vnscarred.

Wee stood vp to the East, and rayled three Hills, lying North and South: we went to the furthermost, and left it to the North of vs, and so into a Bay, where we came to an anchor. Here our Master sent out our Boat, with my selfe and the Carpenter to seeke a place to winter in: and it was time; for the nights were long and cold, and the earth couered with Snow. H-

using spent three monthes in a Lahyrinth without end, being now the last of October, we went downe to the East, to the bottom of the Bay: but returned without speeding of that we went for. The next day we went to the South, and the South-west, and found a place, whereunto we brought our ship, and haled her aground: and this was the first of November. By the tenth thereof we were frozen in: but now we were in, it behoued vs to haue care of what we had; for, that we were sure of; but what we had not, was vncertaine.

Wee were victualled for sixe monthes in good proportion, and of that which was good: if our Master would haue had more, he might haue had it at home and in other places. Here wee were now, and therefore it behoued vs to spend, that wee might haue (when time came) to bring vs to the Capes where the Fowle bred, for that was all the hope wee had to bring vs home. Wherefore our Master took order, first for the spending of that wee had, and then to increase it, by propounding a reward to them that killed either Beast, Fish, or Fowle, as in his Iourall you haue scene. About the middle of this month of November, dyed *John Williams* our Gunner: *John Williams* Gad pardia the Masters vcharitable dealing with this man. Now for that I am come to speake of, of him, out of whose ashes (as it were) that vnhappy deed grew which brought a scandall vpon all that are returned home, and vpon the action it left, the multitude (like the dog) running after the stone, but not at the cafter: therefore, not to wrong the living nor slander the dead, I will (by the leave of God) deliver the truth as neere as I can.

You shall vnderstand, that our Master kept (in his house at London) a young man, named *Henry Greene*, borne in Kent, of Worthfull Parents, but by his lewd life and conuersion hee had lost the good will of all his friends, and had spent all that hee had. This man, our Master would haue to Sea with him, because hee could write well: our Master gave him meate, and drinke, and lodging, and by means of one Master *Venfon*, with much adoe got foure poundes of his mother to buy him clothes, wherewith Master *Venfon* would not trust him: but saw it laid out himselfe. This *Henry Greene* was not set downe in the owners booke, nor any wages made for him. Hee came first aboard at *Gravesend*, and at *Hernich* should haue gone into the field, with one *Wilkinson*. At *Iland* the Surgeon and hee fell out in *Dutch*, and hee beat him a shoure in *English*, which set all the company in a rage: so that wee had much adoe to get the Surgeon aboard. I told the Master of it, but hee bade mee let it alone, for (said hee) the Surgeon had a tongue that would wrong the best friend hee had. But *Robert Iust* (the Masters Mate) would needs burne his finger in the embers, and told the Carpenter a long tale (when hee was drunke) that our Master had brought in *Greene* to cracke his credit: that should displease him: which words came to the Masters eares, who when hee vnderstood it, would haue gone backe to *Iland*, when he was fortie leagues from thence, to haue sent home his Mate *Robert Iust* in a Fisher-man. But, being otherwise perswaded, all was well. So *Henry Greene* stood vpright, and very inward with the Master, and was a seruicable man euery way for manhood: but for Religion he would say, he was cleane paper whereon he might write what hee would. Now, when our Gunner was dead, and (as the order is in such cases) if the company stand in need of any thing that belonged to the man deceased, then is it brought to the Mayne Mast, and there sold to them that will giue most for the same: This Gunner had a gray cloth gowne, which *Greene* prayed the Master to friend him so much as to let him haue it, paying for it as another would giue: the Master saith hee should, and thereupon hee answered lome, that sought to haue it, that *Greene* should haue it, and none else, and so it refted.

Now out of season and time, the Master calleth the Carpenter to goe in hand with an house on shore, which at the beginning our Master would not heare, when it might haue bene done. The Carpenter told him, that the Snow and Frost were such, as hee neither could, nor would goe in hand with such worke. Which when our Master heard, hee ferreted him out of his Cabin to strike him, calling him by many foule names, and threatening to hang him. The Carpenter told him that hee knew what belonged to his place better then himselfe, and that hee was no Houle Carpenter. So this passed, and the house was (after) made with much labour, but to no end. The next day after the Master and the Carpenter fell out, the Carpenter tooke his Peece and *Henry Greene* with him, for it was an order that none should goe out alone, but one with a Peece, and another with a Pike. This did moue the Master so much the more against *Henry Greene*, that *Robert Billet* his Mate must haue the gowne, and had it deliuered vnto him; which when *Henry Greene* saw, hee challenged the Masters promise: but the Master did so raise on *Greene*, with so many words of disgrace, telling him, that all his friends would not trust him with twenty billings, and therefore why should he? As for wages hee had none, nor none should haue, if hee did not please him well. Yet the Master had a promise from him to make his wages as good, as any mans in the ship; and to haue him one of the Princes guard when we came home. But you shall see how the deuill our of this so wrought with *Greene*, that hee did the Master what mischiefe hee could in seeking to discredit him, and to thrust him and many other honest men out of the Ship in the end, To speake of all our trouble in this time of Winter (which was so cold, as it lamed the most of our Company, and my selfe doe yet feele it) would be too tedious.

But I must not forget to shew, how mercifully God dealt with vs in this time; for the

Score of Par-
tridges. space of three months wee had such store of Fowle of one kinde (which were Partridges as
white as milke) that wee killed about an hundred dozen, besides others of kinly sorts: for
all was fish that came to the net. The Spring coming, this Fowle left vs. yet they were
Swaine, Geese, Duck, and Teale, but hard to come by. Our Master hoped they would
be bred in those broken grounds, but they do not: but came from the South, and flew to the
North, further then we were this Voyage yet if they be taken short with the wind at North, or the
North-west, or North-east, then they fall and stay till the winter ferue them, and then flye to
went into the Woods, Hilles, and Valleys, for all things that had any tiew of substance
in them, how vile soeuer: the moile of the ground, then the which I take the powder of
Toade) was not spared. But amongst the diuers sorts of buds, it pleased God that *Tha-*
mas Woodhouse brought home a budde of a Tree, full of a Turpentine substance. Of this our
Miserable diet
Surgeon made a decoction to drinke, and applied the budde hot to them that were troubled
with ach in any part of their bodies: and for my part, I confesse, I receiued great and present ease
of my paine.

About this time, when the Ice began to breake out of the Bayes, there came a Sauge to our
Ship, as it were to see and to be seen, being the first that we had seen in all this time: whom
our Master intreated well, and made much of him, promising vnto himselfe great matters by
his means, and therefore would haue all the Knives and Hatchets (which any man had) to
his priuate vie, but receiued none but from *Iohn King* the Carpenter, and my selfe. To
this Sauge our Master gaue a Knife, a Looking-glasse, and Buttons, who receiued them
thankfully, and made signs that after hee had slept hee would come againe, which
hee did. When hee came, hee brought with him a sled, which hee drew after him, and
vpon it two Deere skinnies, and two Beauer skinnies. Hee had a scrip vnder his arme, out
of which hee drew those things which the Master had giuen him. Hee took the Knife and
laid it vpon one of the Beauer skinnies, and his Glasse and Buttons vpon the other, and so gaue
them to the Master, who receiued them; and the Sauge tooke those things which the Master
had giuen him, and put them vp into his scrip againe. Then the Master shewed him an Hatchet,
for which hee would haue giuen the Master one of his Deere skinnies, but our Master
would haue them both, and so hee had, although not willingly. After many signes of people to the
North, and to the South, and that after so many sleepes hee would come againe, he went his way,
but neuer came more.

Now the Ice being out of the Sounds, so that our Boat might go from one place vnto another,
a company of men were appointed by the Master to go a fishing with our net; their names were
as followeth: *William Wilfon*, *Henry Greene*, *Michael Perce*, *Iohn Thomas*, *Andrew Moter*, *Bennet*
Mathewes, and *Arnold Lello*. These men, the first day they went, caught fise hundred fish, as big
as good Herrings, and some Troutes: which put vs all in some hope to haue our wants supplied,
and our Commons amended: but that were the moile that euer they got in one day, for many 40
days they got not a quarter so many. In this time of their fishing, *Henry Greene* and *William Wil-*
fon, with some others, plotted to take the net and the shallop, which the Carpenter had now set
vp, and so to shift for themselves. But the shallop being ready, our Master would goe in it him-
selfe, to the South and South-west, to see if hee could meete with the people; for, to that end
was it set vp, and (that way) we might see the Woods set on fire by them. So the Ma-
ster tooke the Saye and the Shallop, and so much victuall as would serue for eight or nine
dayes, and to the South hee went. They that remained aboard, were to take in water, wood,
and ballast, and to haue all things in a readinesse against hee came backe. But hee set no time
of his returne; for he was perswaded, if he could meet with the people, hee should haue flesh
of them, and that good store: but hee returned worse then hee went forth. For, hee could
by no means meete with the people, although they were neerer them, yet they would set the 50
woods on fire in his sight.

Being returned, hee fitted all things for his returne, and first, deliuered all the bread out of the
bread roome (which came to a pound a piece for euery mans share) and deliuered also a Bill of
Returne, willing them to haue that to shew, if it pleased God, that they came home: and he wept
when hee gaue it vnto them. But to helpe vs in this poore estate with some reliefe, the Beate
and Saye went to worke on Friday morning, and stayed till Sunday noone: at which time they
came aboard, and brought four or five small Fish, a poore reliefe for many hungry bellies. Then
they wayed, and stood out of our wintering place, and came to an Anchor without, in the mouth
of the Bay: from whence we wayed and came to an anchor without in the Sea, where our bread
being gone, that store of cheefe we had was to stop a gap, whereof there were few, whereas the
company floured, because they made account of mine. But those that were left, were qually di-
vided by the Master, although he had counsell to the contrary: for there were some who haue it,
would make haile to bee ill thereof, because they could not gouerne it. I knew when *Henry*
Greene

Greene gaue halfe his bread, which hee had for fourteen dayes, to one to keepe, and prayed him
not to let him haue any vntill the next Monday: but before Wednesday at night, hee neuer left
till hee had it againe, haueing eaten vp his first weekes bread before. So *Wilfon* the Boat-
swaine hath eaten (in one day) his fortnights bread, and hath bene two or three dayes sicke for
his labour. The cause that moued the Master to deliuer all the Cheefe, was because they were not
of one goodnesse, and therefore they should see that they had no wrong done them: but euery
man should haue alike the best and the worst together, which was three pounds and a halfe for
four dayes.

The wind seruing, we weighed and stood to the North-west, and on Monday at night (the
eighteenth day of Iune) we fell into the Ice, and the next day the wind being at West, we lay
there till Sunday in sight of Land. Now being here, the Master told *Nicholas Symmes*, that there
would be a breaking vp of chefts, and a search for bread, and willed him (if hee had any) to bring
it to him, which hee did, and deliuered to the Master thirty cakes in a bagge. This deed of the
Master (if it bee true) hath made mee maruell, what should bee the reason that hee did not stop
the breach in the beginning, but let it grow to that height, as that it ouerthrow himselfe and ma-
ny other honest men: but there are many deuises in the hearts of man, yet the counsell of the Lord
shall stand.

Being thus in the Ice on Saturday, the one and twentieth of Iune at night, *Wilfon* the Boat-
swaine, and *Henry Greene* came to mee lying (in my Cabin) lame, and told mee that they the
and the rest of their Associates, would shift the Company, and turne the Master, and all the sicke
men into the shallop, & let them shift for themselves. For, there was not fourteen dayes victuall left
for all the Company at that poore allowance they were at, and that there they lay, the Master
not caring to goe one way or other: and that they had not eaten any thing these three dayes, and
therefore were resolute, either to mend or end, and what they had begun they would goe
through with it, or dye. When I heard this, I told them I maruelled to heare so much from them,
considering that they were married men, and had wives and children, and that for their fakes they
should not commit so foule a thing in the sight of God and man, as that would bee; for why
should they banish themselves from their native Countrey? *Henry Greene* bad me hold my peace,
for he knew the worst, which was, to be hanged when hee came home, and therefore of the two
he would rather be hanged at home then starued abroad: and for the good will they bare me, they
would haue mee stay in the Ship. I gaue them thanks, and told them that I came into her, not
to forsake her, yet not to hurt my selfe and others by any such deed. *Henry Greene* told me then,
that I must take my fortune in the Shallop. If there bee no remedie (said I) the will of God
bee done.

Away went *Henry Greene* in a rage, swearing to cut his throat that went about to disturbe
them, and left *Wilfon* by me, with whom I had some talke, but to no good: for he was so perswa-
ded, that there was no remedie now, but to goe on while it was hot, least their partie should faile
them, and the mischiefe they had intended to others, should light on themselves. *Henry Greene*
came againe, and demanded of him what I said, *Wilfon* answered, He is in his old long, still pati-
ent. Then I spake to *Henry Greene* to stay three dayes, in which time I would so deale with the
Master, that all should be well. So I deale with him to forebare but two dayes, any twelue houres
there is no way then (say they) but out of hand. Then I told them, that if they would stay till
Monday, I would ioyne with them to share all the victualls in the ship, and would iustifie it when
I came home; but this would not serue their turnes. Wherefore I told them, it was some worke
matter they had in hand then they made shew of, and that it was bloud and reuenge hee sought,
or else hee would not at such a time of night vnder take such a deed. *Henry Greene* (with that) ra-
keth my Bible which lay before me, and swears that hee would doe no man harme, and what hee
did was for the good of the voyage, and for nothing else; and that all the rest should do the like.
The like did *Wilfon* swear.

50 *Henry Greene* went his way, and presently came *Iuet*, who because hee was an ancient man,
I hoped to haue found some reason in him; but hee was worse then *Henry Greene*, for hee swore
plainly that hee would iustifie this deed when hee came home. After him came *Iohn Thomas*, and
Michel Perce, as birds of one feather: but because they are not lying, I will let them goe, as when
I did. Then came *Moter* and *Bennet*, of whom I demanded, if they were well aduised what
they had taken in hand. They answered, they were, and therefore came to take their oath.

Now, because I am much condemned for this oath, as one of them that plotted with them,
and that by an oath I should bind them together to performe what they had begun, I thought
good here to set downe to the view of all, how well their oath and dedes agreed: and thus it
was, *Thou shalt preserve truth to God, your Prince and Countrey: you shall doe nothing, but to the glory of*
God, and the good of the action in hand, and harme to no man. This was the oath, without ad-
ding or diminishing. I looked for more of these companions (although these were too many) but
there came no more. It was dark, and they in a readinesse to put this deed of darkness in exe-
cution. I called to *Henry Greene* and *Wilfon*, and prayed them not to goe in hand with it in the
dark, but to stay till the morning. Now, euery man (I hope) would goe to his rest, but wic-
kedesse

Wilfon *Greene*,
their wicked-
ness.

Robert *Thos.* *S.*
trials *of* *these*
noes.

Oath abused.

God to find somewhat to releue vs that way, as soone as to the South. I told them that this Land was the Mayne of *Worshome* Cape, and that the shallow rockie ground, was the fime that the Master went down by, when he went into the great Bay. *Robert* last and all said, it was not possible, vnlesse the Master had brought the ship ouer Land, and willed them to looke into the Masters Card, and their counte how well they did agree. We stood to the East, and left the mayne Land to the North, by many small lands into a narrow gut between two Lands, and there came to an Anchor. The Boat went ashore on the North side, where wee found the great *Horne*, but nothing else. The next day wee went to the South side, but found nothing there, save Cockle graffe of which we gathered. This graffe was a great releue vnto vs, for without it, we should hardly haue got to the Capes for want of victuall. The wind furring we stood out, but before we could get cleane out, the wind came to the West, so that we were contrary-
ned to anchor on the Nor. h. side.

The next day, wee weighed and doubled the point of the North Land, which is high Land, and so continueth to the Capes, lying North and South, some fure and twentie or thirte leagues. To the North we stood to see flore of those Fowles that breed in the Capes, and to kill some with our shot, and to fetch them with our Boat. We raised the Capes with joy, and bare for them, and came to the Islands that lie in the mouth of the streight: but bearing in between the Rockie Iles, we ranne on a Rocke that lay vnder water, and there fluke fast eight or nine wound. It was ebbing water when we thus came on, so the flood set vs afloat, God guiding both wind and Sea, that it was calme, and faire weather: the ebbe came from the East, and the flood from the West. When wee were afloat, wee stood more neere to the East floare, and there anchored.

The next day being the seuen and twentieth of July, we sent the Boat to fetch some Fowle, and the ship should way and stand as neere as they could: for the wind was against vs. They had a great way to row, and by that meanes they could not reach to the place where the Fowle bred: but found good flore of *Gulls*, yet hard to come by, on the Rocks and Clifts, but with their Peeces they killed some thirte, and towards night returned. Now we had brought our ship more neere to the mouth of the Streights, and there came to an anchor in eighteen or twentie fathome water, vpon a Riffe or shelfe of ground: which after they had weighed their Anchor, and stood more neere to the place where the Fowle bred, they could not find it againe, nor place like it: but were faine to turne to and fro in the mouth of the Streight, and to be in danger of Rockes, because they could not find ground to let fall an Anchor in, the water was so deepe.

The eight and twentieth day, the Boat went to *Digger* his Cape for Fowle, and made directly for the place where the Fowle bred, and being neere, they saw seuen Boates come about the Easterne point towards them. When the Sauges saw our Boate, they drew themselves together, and drew their lesser Boats into their bigger: and when they had done, they came rowing to our Boat, and made signes to the West, but they made readie for all assays. The Sauges came to them, and by signes gave familiar one with another, so as our men tooke one of theirs into our Boate, and they tooke one of ours into their Boate. Then they carried our man to a Coue where their Tents stood toward the West of the place, where the Fowle bred: so they carried him into their Tents, where he remained till our men returned with theirs. Our Boat went to the place where the Fowle bred, and were desirous to know how the Sauges killed their Fowle: he shewed them the manner how, which was thus. They take a long Pole with a snare at the end, which they put about the Fowles necke, and so plucke them downe. When our men knew that they had a better way of their owne, they shewed him the vie of our Peeces, which at one shot would kill seuen or eight. To be forth, our Boat returned to their Coue for our man, and to deliuer theirs. When they came they made great joy, with dancing and leaping, and droning of their breasts: they offered diuers things to our men, but they only tooke some Moris Teeth, which they gave them for a Knife, and two glasse buttons: and so receiving our man they came aboard, much rejoicing at this chance, as if they had met with the most simple and kind people of the World.

And *Henry Greene* (more then the rest) was so confident, that (by no meanes) we should take care to stand vpon our Guard: God blinding him so, that where hee made reckoning to receive great matters from these people, he received more then he looked for, and that suddenly by being made a good example for all men: that make no conscience of doing euill, and that we take heed of the Sausage people, how simple fouler they seeme to be.

The next day, the nine and twentieth of July, they made haste to be ashore, and because the ship rid too far off, they weighed and stood as neere to the place where the Fowle bred, as they could: and because I was lame, I was to go in the Boat, to carrie such things, as I had in the Cabbin of euery thing somewhat: and so with more haste then good speed (and not without swearing) away we went, *Henry Greene*, *William Wilson*, *John Thomas*, *Michael Perfe*, *Andrew Mote*, and my selfe. When we came neere the floare, the people were on the Hills, dancing and leaping: to the Coue we came, where they had drawne vp their Boates: we brought our Boate to the East side of the Coue, close to the Rockes. Ashore they went, and made fast the

Boat to a great stone on the floare, the people came, and euery one had somewhat in his hand to barter: but *Henry Greene* swore they should haue nothing, till he had Venison, for that they had so promised him by signes.

Now when we came, they made signes to their Dogges (whereof there were many like Mongrels, as bigge as Hounds) and pointed to their Mountaine, and to the Sunne, clapping their hands. Then *Henry Greene*, *John Thomas*, and *William Wilson*, stood hard by the Boate head, *Michael Perfe*, and *Andrew Mote* were got vp vpon the Rocke, a gathering of Sorrell: not one of them had any weapon about him, not so much as a stick, save *Henry Greene* only, who had a piece of a Pike in his hand: nor saw I any thing that they had wherewith to hurt vs. *Henry Sauges* were *Greene* and *William Wilson* had Looking-glasses, and Lewes Trumps, and Bells, which they were chencio shewing the people. The Sauges standing round about them, one of them came into the Boats head to me to shew me a Boale: I made signes to him to get him ashore, but he made as though he had not vnderstood me, whereupon I stood vp, and pointed him ashore. In the meane time, another stole behind me to the sterne of the Boat, and when I saw him, that was in the head of the Boat, I late downe againe: but suddenly I saw the leggs and foote of a man by me. Wherefore I cast vp my head, and saw the Sausage with his Knife in his hand, who strooke at my breast ouer my head: I cast vp my right arme to save my breast, he wounded my arme, and strooke me into the bodie vnder my right Pappe. He strooke a second blow which I met with my left hand, and then he strooke me into the right thigh, and had like to haue cut off my little finger of the left hand. Now, I had got hold of the string of the Knife, and had wound it about my left hand, he struing with both his hands, to make an end of that he had begunne, I found him but weake in the gripe (God enabling me) and getting hold of the fleewe of his left arme, so bare him from me. His left side lay bare to me, which when I saw, I put his fleewe off his left arme into my left hand, holding the string of the Knife fast in the same hand: and hauing got my right hand at libertie, I sought for somewhat wherewith to strike him (not remembering my Dagger at my side) but looking downe I saw it, and therewith strooke him into the bodie, and the throate.

Whiles I was thus assaulted in the Boat, our men were set vpon on the floare. *John Thomas* and *William Wilson* had their bowels cut, and *Michael Perfe* and *Henry Greene* being mortally wounded, came tumbling into the Boat together. When *Andrew Mote* saw this medley, hee came running downe the Rockes, and leaped into the Sea, and so I swamme to the Boat, hanging on the sterne thereof, till *Michael Perfe* tooke him in, who manfully made good the head of the Boat against the Sauges, that pressed fore vpon vs. Now *Michael Perfe* had got an Hatchet, wherewith I saw him strike one of them, that he lay sprawling in the Sea. *Henry Greene* crieth *Craigie*, and layeth about him with his Truncheon: I cryed to them to cleere the Boat, and *Andrew Mote* cryed to bee taken in: the Sauges beooke them to their Bowes and Arrows, which they sent amongst vs, wherewith *Henry Greene* was slaine out-right, and *Michael Perfe* received many wounds, and so did the rest. *Michael Perfe* cleereth the Boate, and puts it from the floare, and helpeth *Andrew Mote* in: but in turning of the Boat, I received a cruell wound in my backe with an Arrow: *Michael Perfe* and *Andrew Mote* cowed the Boate away, which when the Sauges saw, they ranne to their Boats, and I feared they would haue launched them, to haue followed vs, but they did not, and our ship was in the middle of the channell, and could not see vs.

Now, when they had rowed a good way from the floare, *Michael Perfe* fainted, and could row no more: then was *Andrew Mote* druen to stand in the Boat head, and wait to the ship, which (at the first) saw vs not, and when they did, they could not tel what to make of vs, but in the end they stood for vs, and so tooke vs vp. *Henry Greene* was throwne out of the Boat into the Sea, and the rest were had aboard, the Sauges being yet alive, yet without sence. But they died all three two dayes after, and then died. Thus you haue heard the Tragical end of *Henry Greene* and his mates, whom they called Captaine, these foure being the onely lute men in all the ship.

The poore number that was left, were to ply our ship too and fro, in the mouth of the streight, for there was no place to anchor in neere hand: besides, they were to goe in the Boats to kill Fowle, to bring vs home, which they did, although with danger to vs all. For if the wind blew, there was an high Sea, and the eddies of the Tydes would carrie the ship so neere the Rockes, as it feared our Master, for so I will now call him. After they had killed some two hundred Fowle, with great labour on the South Cape, wee stood to the East: but when we were fixe or seuen leagues from the Capes, the wind came vp at East. Then wee stood backe to the Capes againe, and killed an hundred Fowle more. After this, the wind came to the West, so wee were druen to goe away, and then our Master stood (for the most) along by the North floare, till he fell in to broken ground about the *Queenes Fore-land*, and there anchored. From thence we went to *Gods Mercus*, and from thence to those Islands, which lye in the mouth of our Streight, not seeing the Land, till we were ready to runne our Boasprits against the Rockes in a fogge. But it cleered a little, and then we might see our selues inclosed with Rockie lands, and could find no

Misery suffereth itself.

ground to anchor in. There our Master lay atrie all night, and the next day the fogge continuing, they fought for ground to anchor in, and found none in an hundred and odd fathomes of water. The next day we weighed and stood to the East, but before we came here, we had put our selves to hard allowance, as halfe a fowle a day with the portage: for yet we had some meale left, and nothing else. Then they beganne to make triall of all whatsoever: we had slayed our Fowle, for they wil not pull: and *Roberts Iuet* was the first, that made vte of the skins by burning of the Feathers: so they became a great dish of meate, and as for the garbidge, it was not throwne away.

After we were cleere of these Islands, which lie out with two points, one to the South-east, and the other to the North, making a Bay to the fight as if there were no way through, we continued our course East South-east, and South by East, to raise the *Desolations*; from thence we shap our course for *Ireland*. Thus we continued duers dayes: but the wind comming against vs, they should find great reliefe in *Newfoundland*, if our Country-men were there, and if they were gone before we came, yet should we find great store of bread and fish left ashore by them: but how true, I gise God thanks, we did not trie. Yet we stood to the South-west, and to the West, almost to fiftie leuen degrees: when (by the will of God) the wind came vp at South-west. Then the Master asked me, if he should take the benefit of this wind, and shap his course for *Ireland*. I said it was best to goe, where we knew. Come grew, and not to secke it, where it was cast away, and not to be found. Towards *Ireland* now we stood, with prosperous winds for many dayes together: then was all our Meale spent, and our Fowle refte and dry: but (being no remedy) we were content with the Salt broth for Dinner, and the halfe Fowle for Supper. Now went our Candles to wracke, and *Bennet* our Cooke made a messe of meate of the bones of the Fowle, frying them with Candle-grease, till they were criske, and with Vineger put to them, made a good dish of meate. Our Vineger was shured, and to every man a pound of Candles deliuered for a weeke, as a great daintie. Now *Roberts Iuet* (by his reckoning) faith, we were within fiftie or seuentie leagues of *Ireland*, when we had two hundred thither. And sure our course was so much the longer, through our euill steredge: for, our men became so weak, that they could not stand at the Helme, but were faine to sit.

Then *Roberts Iuet* dyed, for mere want, and all our men were in despair, and said we were 30 past *Ireland*, and our last Fowle were in the steep-buck. So our men cared not which end went forward, in so much as our Master was driuen to looke to their labour, as well as his owne: for some of them would sit and see the fore-fayle, or mayne-fayle tie vp to the toys, the theetes being either flowne or broken, and would not helpe it themselves, nor call to others for helpe, which much grieved the Master. Now in this extremitie it pleased God to giue vs sight of Land, not farre from the place, our Master said he would fall withal, which was the Bay of *Galloway*, and we stood to the West of the *Derfey*, and so stood along by the coast, to the South-west. In the end, there was a joyfull cry, a fayle, towards which they stood, then they saw more, but to the nereest we stood, and called to him: his Barke was of *Fowly*, and was anchor a Fishing: he came to vs, and brought vs into *Bere Haugen*. Here we stayed a few dayes, and dele with the *Irish*, to supply our wants, but found no reliefe for this place there was neither Bread, Drinke, nor money to be had amongst them. Wherefore they aduised vs to deale with our Country-men, who were there a fishing, which we did: but found them cold in kinnesse, that they would doe nothing without pretent money, whereof we had none in the Ship. In the end, we procured one *Iohn Waymouth*, Master of the Barke that brought vs into this Harbour, to furnish vs with money, which hee did, and received our best Cable and Anchor in pawning for the same. With this money, our Master with the helpe of *Iohn Waymouth*, bought Bread, Berre, and Beefe.

Now, as we were beholding to *Waymouth* for his money, so were we to one Captain *Taylor*, for making of our contracts with *Waymouth*, by whose meanes hee took a Bill for our Cable and Anchor, and for the mens Wages, who would not goe with vs, unless *Waymouth* would pay his word for the same: for they made thow, that they were not willing to goe with vs for any wages. Whereupon Captain *Taylor* swore hee would presse them, and then, if they would not goe, hee would hang them.

In conclusion, we agreed for three pound ten shillings a man, to bring our Ship to *Plimouth*, or *Dartmouth*, and to giue the Pilot fye pound: but if the winde did not serue, but they were driuen to put into *Brifton*, they were to haue foure pound ten shillings a man, and the Pilot fye pound. Omitting therefore further circumstances, from *Bere Haugen* we came to *Plimouth*, and so to an anchor, before the Castele: and from *Plimouth*, with faire winde and weather went a thoure, and from thence came to this side *Erith*, and there stopp'd: where our Master *Roberts Iuet* came aboard, and so had mee vp to *Lendon* with him, and so we came to Sir *Thomas Smith* together.

Forasmuch as this report of *Pricket* may happily bee suspected by some, as not so friendly to *Hullfon*, who returned with that *Companie* which had so cruelly exposed *Hudson* and his, and therefore may seeme

They arrive at Plimouth.

to lay because imputation, and rip up occasions: further then they will beleeme; I haue also added the report of *Thomas Widhoufe*, one of the exposed *Companie*, who ascribeth those occasions: of discord to Iuet. I take not on mee to sentence, no not to examine; I haue presented the Evidence with as I had it: let the Bench censure, hearing with both eares; that which with both eyes they may see in these, and these notes; to which, I haue first prefixed his Letter to *Master Samuel Macham*.

After *Macham*, I heartily commend mee unto you, &c. I can write unto you no newes, though I haue seene much, but such as every English Fisherman banning these Costs can report better to you my selfe.

We kept our whis Sunday in the North-east end of Island; and I thinke I neuer fared better in England, then we fared there. They of the Country are very poore, and live miserably: yet we found there in store of fresh Fish and daintie Fowle. I my selfe in an after-noon killed so much Fowle, as feasted all our *Companie*, being three and twentie persons: at one time, onely with *Partridges*; besides *Chickens*, *Pheasants*, *Mallards*, *Teales*, and *Geese*. I haue seene two hot Bathes in Island, and haue bene in one of them. We are resolu'd to trie the uttermost, and by onely expecting a faire winde, and to refresh our selves to auoid the ice, which now is come off the West Coast, of which we haue seene whole Islands, but God bee thanked, haue not bene in danger of any. Thus I desire all your prayer: for vs. From Island this thirtieth of *April*, 1610.

The cause of their stay at Island.

A note found in the Deske of *Thomas Wydowne*, Student in the Mathematickes, hee being one of them who was put into the Shallop.

The tenth day of September, 1610. after dinner, our Master called all the *Companie* together, to heare and beare witness of the abuse of some of the *Companie* (it having bene the request of *Roberts Iuet*) that the Master should redresse some abuses and slanders: as hee called them, against this Iuet: which thing after the Master had examined and heard with equitie what hee could say for himselfe, there were produced so many and great abuses, and malicious matters against the Master, and *Iuet*, that there was danger to haue suffered them longer: and it was first time to pause, and cut off further occasions of the like miseries.

It was proposed to his face, first with *Bennet Mathewe* our Trumpet upon our first sight of Island, and hee confess, that hee supposed that in the action would be man-slaughter, and proue bloudie to some.

Secondly, at our coming from Island, in hearing of the *Companie*, hee did threaten to turne the head of the Ship home from the action, which at that time was by our Master wisely pacified, hoping of amendment.

Thirdly, it was depofed by *Philip Staffe* our Carpenter, and *Ladie Arnold*, to his face upon the body of *Bible*, that hee perfwaded them to keepe *Manikets* charged, and Swords ready in their Cabbins, for they should bee charged with shot, ere the *Ice* were over.

Fourthly, we being suffered in the *Ice*, hee had used words tending to minnie, discouragement, and slander of the action, which costly took off in such that we were in danger: and had not the Master in time presented, it might easily haue overborne the Voyage: and our lastely being endangered in a deep Bay, which the Master had before to see, for some reasons to himselfe knowne, his word tended altogether to put the *Companie* into a fray of extremitie, by wintering in cold: lesing at our Masters hope to see *Bancam* by *Candlemasse*.

For these and diuers other base slanders against the Master, hee was depofed: and *Robert Bylot*, who had shewed himselfe honestly respecting the good of the action, was placed in his stead the *Adversers* Mate.

Also *Francis Clement* the Boatman, at this time was put from his Office, and *William Wilson*, a man thought more fit, preferred to his place. This man had basely carryed himselfe to our Master and to the action.

Also *Adrian Mooter* was appointed Boatmans mate: and a promise by the Master, that from this day Iuats wages should remaine to *Bylot*, and the Boatmans overplus of wages should be equally divided betwene *Wilson* and one *Iohn King*, to the owners good liking, one of the *Quarrell* *Adversers*, who had very well carryed themselves to the furtherance of the businesse.

Also the Master promised, if the Offenders yet behaued themselves beneuolently honestly, hee would be amercies for their good, and that hee would forget all injuries, with other admonition.

These things thus premised counselling *Hudsons* expoling, and Gods iust iudgements on the Expolers, as *Pricket* hath related (whom they referred as it thought, in hope by Sir *Dudley Digges* his Master to procure their pardon at their returne) I thought good to adde that whereas I haue former receiued from good Intelligence, that the Ship comming aground at *Digges* Island, in 53. degrees 44. minutes, a great flood came from the West and set them on Roate: an argument of an open passage from the South Sea to that, and consequently to these Seas. The Weapons and

Arts

thing. And afterward they brought a great quantity thereof vnto vs, who remained in the Pinasse, to defend it from the beating of the Sea, of the which wee also with great greedinesse, received without measure.

And running according to our iudgement, as wee had runne in this Pinasse for eigheteen dayes, from the day that wee departed from the ship, vntill this sixth of Ianuarie, sailing alwayes betwene the North-east and East, and not with lesse winde then after sixe miles an houre, wee had runne about two thousand five hundred miles and more, without euer seeing any Land.

They goe on Land.
Iland of Sainte
et South, be-
ing off the
coast of New
way. See Or-
ism his Map of
Standa; the
place is Saint
and Kallene in
74 degrees, but
too Northerly
then they see
the North Cape,
from which
this Rocks
(saith Strabo)
bare with
ward 70 miles
other Rocks
not farre di-
stant, some in-
habited some
not. This is it
Kallene three
miles in com-
pass, and cal-
led in their
Language for
the extreme
remotenesse,
The end of
the world.
Fourc dyed
and others dyd.

Great weak-
nesse.

Miserable cold

Abundance of
Lice.

They finde a
Fish.

On the sixth of Ianuarie, at the time of the solemne day of the Epiphany, nineteene of vs went on land in this desolate and drie place, called the Iland of the *Saints*, in the Coast of *Norway*, subiect to the Crowne of *Denmarke*, leaving two other to looke to the weak Pinasse, that it might not bee broken with the beating of the Sea. And being landed there by means of an Oare, we endeauoured to kindle fire, and with a cynder box and Steele to strike fire, we received our felues into the closest place from the winde, and at the sight of the fire, nature thereby re- ceived a little strength.

Finde this Iland not inhabited, and seeking to goe in the Pinasse to another Iland five miles off, there looked, that part of vs landing, as it were all in the water, and some of vs up to the middle in shallow water, were faine to draw her on land, and despairing to bee euer able to goe in her againe, were determined to sit her in such sort, that there might serue our turne to come vs, after the best manner that wee could. Wee broke her into two parts: and of the greater we made a shelter, or Cottage for thirteene of vs, and of the lesser a shedde, capable of five men, vnder the which we entred couering them with part of our sayles, and with the rest, and the cordage of the sayd Pinasse, we made continual fire to preserve our liues.

Now being utterly destitute of all succour of meate and drinke, wee went wandering vp-on the Sea shoare, where Nature gaue vs food to maintayne life, with ceruine Perewinkles, or Shel-fish and Barnacles. And of these, not as many nor when wee would, but in very small quantitie. And removing the Snow in some places, we found a certayne Herbe, which together with the Snow wee cast into the Caldron, and when wee thought it was boyled, wee ate it. Nor could wee satisfie our felues therewith, and thus wee lived for thirteene dayes together, with small charitie amongst vs, by reason of the great scarcitie of all thinges and extreme famine, leading rather a brutish life, then the life of men.

Continuing in this rude and homely kinde of life, it happened, that through the inrol- lable wants foue of our companions of the greater retiring place, failed euen where the afflicted Master was, with those remedies and slender comforts for their soules and bodies: so that you may thinke their bodies remaying nere vnto vs, who being very weak had lost all our strength, wee were not able to remoue them two yardes out of sight: and yet I will say more, that wee had no sooner taken the frozen or swame water in our mouths, but presently Nature of it selfe cast it vp againe, wee not being able to abstaine from it, nor almost to stand on our feete.

The cold season of the yeere had brought vs to such necessitie, that (to warme vs) wee stood close thonged, in such sort, that wee seemed (as it were) to be sewed together. Wherefore I entred vnder the sayles, which covered both our Cottages round about downe to the ground, the smoke not being able to issue forth, which proceeded (as I thinke) from the Pitch which was within certaine peeces of the Pinasse, which wee burned, so that our eyes were inuolue that wee could not see: neuerthelesse wee endured all, that wee might bee warme. And our gar- ments which wee neuer put off, were full of vermine, and the Lice swarmed in such number, that taking them from our backs, wee cast them by whole handfulls into the fire, and they had entred into the flesh in such manner through the skine, euen to the bones, that finally they brought a young man of our company (that was a Norwicke) euen vnto death, so that hee was neuer able to defend himselfe from so loathsome a little vermine. A thing of most manifest exam- ple, to abate and abate our pride, and haughtinesse of minde.

Now concord saying among vs, eueri one vnd his owne proper aduise, whereupon part of our companie wandering through the Struge and va-inhabited place, came to the knowledge of a solitarie and ancient retiring place made by the Shepherds heretofore, for the time of their abode, and it was seated on the highest part of the Coast of the sayd Iland towards the West, distant from ours about a mile and a halfe. Vnto the which, fixe of the companie of the number of thole eight, which were found in that first and greater retiring place, determined to remoue themselves to that new-found solitarie habitation, for their lesse inconuenience leauing the other two, their other companions alone, in an abandoned and forsaken place, as well because they were not able to swim, as also for that wee were altogether vnable to con- duct them.

It came to passe, that thole three through the gracious goodnesse and gift of God, found an exceeding great Fish, to the which I know not what name to giue, whether Whale, or Fox

pile

pile of the Sea, which wee are to thinke was sent from the Diuine and excellent bountie to feed vs. And considering that wee saw it call vp by the Sea vpon the shoare, dead, fresh, good and great, and at the time of our great necessitie, wee rendered thanks vnto our most gracious Lord God, who at that time would sustayne our loe weak and diseased bodies with that foode, appeall: peraduenture through the prayers of some vigilant and deuout soule.

With this Fish, wee fedde our felues for nine dayes sufficiently. And as it happened, thole va- ry nine dayes were so temp:stuous with windes, rayne and snow, that by no means the small storme would haue suffered vs to goe one pace out of our Cottages.

The miraculous Fish being spent, the furious tempest was somewhat asswaged, wherefore 10 not hauing wherewith to maintayne life, like Volutes that oppressed with famine, goe to seek for other places of abode, wee arose out of the Cottage, and went wandering through the desert Rocks to finde any succour to sustayne our life with Perewinkles of the Sea and Barna- cles: with the which, wee were of necessitie to bee contented, although they were very little thinges, and so wee maintayned our felues vntill the last of Ianuarie, 1431. 1431: In Feb: raine account.

red part of our grievous cares and sorowes.

20 In the end the houre came, wherein our benigne Creator and most gracious Lord, purposed to conduct his little focke to much afflicted, into the Haven of their saluatie: and it was in this manner. Two young Heifers of a Fisher-man nere vnto this Iland within five miles, being strayed the former yeere from the place where hee vsed to dwell, and neuer understanding any newes of them within the yeere, nor hauing any hope to finde them againe, on the very first day of February, 1431. at night, one of the Sonnes of the said Fisher-man of *Rustene* (for so the said Iland was called) being of the age of sixteen yeres, dreamed that certainly the two Heifers were escaped, and gone vp to the Iland of *Saints* distant from them, where wee were lodged, at the point of the West part, vpon the which no man durst euer goe at the low water. 30 Whereupon the Sonne who had such a vision or dreame, prayed the Father, and an elder Brother of his, that they would accompany him to goe to seeke them.

And so, all three in a Fisher-boate tooke their way towards the sayd Iland, and came to the point where wee were, and the sayd young men landing, there, leit their Father to looke to the Boate, and hauing ascended a little vpon the Cliffe, they saw a smoke arise in the ayre, from their retiring place which they had formerly vsed. Whereupon through feare and as- tonishment they marvelled, and that not a little, how, whence, and by what meanes it might come to passe. Wherefore, they stood a long time much amazed. And desiring to know the cause, they began to talke one with another. And how could they conceiue whence it should bee, but rather iudged it to be the voyce; yet wee could not conceiue whence it should bee, but rather iudged it to be the crying of Crows, then the voyces of men. And wee were the rather induced there- 40 to, because some few dayes before, wee had seene (vpon the miserable Carrakes of our eight companions cast to the winde) multitudes of Crows, that rent the ayre with their croaking, feeding themselves vpon them: whereupon wee thought it could be no other.

But continuing from good to better, the voyces of the children of God sent to sue vs, wee cleerly perceived that they were the voyces of Men, and not the crying of Bowles. And at that instant *Christophore Eustracius* arose out of the Cottage, and seeing the two young striplings, crying with a loude voyce came towards vs, saying, Reioyce, behold two come to seeke vs. Whereupon, inflamed with an earnest desire, wee raysed our felues on our feete, go- ing rather with the heart then with the feete, and drawing nere vnto them, we were comforted through the sudden and extreme strangenesse of the matter, they were afraid, and their countenances began to wax pale. But contrariwise wee cheered our felues, and being comforted with an assured hope, they with actions and gestures of humilitie, that wee came not to offend them in any wise. 50 Diuers thoughts came in our minde, whether wee should detain one of them or both, or whether one or two of vs should goe with them. The first determination was against vs, because wee knew not with whom, nor with how many wee had to doe, for that wee vnderstood not them, nor they vs.

But being aduised by the holy Ghost, wee went downe to their Boate, in the best and most amiable manner that wee could, where the Father was, who expected them: and when he saw vs, hee also remayned astonished and amazed. In this meane space, wee looked whether there were any thing in their Boate to succour our necessities, to maintayne life: but wee found nothing there. So, they moued through pittie, seeing vs afflicted, by signes and actions which wee made vnto them, were contented to carrie with them *Oberrado de Lince*, a Sewer, and *Cole di Otrante*, a Marriner, who had some knowledge, and were able to speake the *French* and the 60 *high Dutch*, leauing vs in great hope of present saluatie and helpe.

A Germane
Priest.

Their Boate coming to *Roffene* with our two companions, all the people flocked together, and seeing the countenance and habite of our companions, astonish'd at so great and strange a matter, they demanded among themselves, whence, & how such like fellows as these appeared, or from what place they landed: and that they might be the better advertis'd, they attempted to speake unto them in diuers Languages, but in the end an *Almaine* Priest of the Order, of the were certified what we were, from whence, and how we had arriv'd there. By which meanes, they the morning following, which was the second day of February dedicated to the glorious Mother of Christ, the said Priest published to all the people of *Roffene*, exhorting them, that through our misfortune, they would be remembred to pitee and to helpe vs, according to their abilitie.

In this same space, through the Catholike remembrance of the *Almaine* Priest, on the third day of February, 1431. at the very infant of the day of Saint *Biagio*, the courteous and pitifull Inhabitants of *Roffene* came unto vs with great plenty of all sustenance, which they vye for their profect our weak bodies. And so we were guided and receiv'd into *Roffene* vpon the sayd day, where we had great reffortations, which were rather hurtfull for vs, through the exceeding stomachs not being able to indure it, it made our hearts to grieue, so that we were thought we should have dyed.

There were remaining in the first and greater of our two retiring places, two of the company which were impotent and weak, who knew nothing of this our miraculous succour. Wherefore giving their Catholike Country people notice of them, and likewise of the other eight ing Palmes and Hymnes, as well to burye those eight that were dead, as to conduct to the House of life: the two that were remaining behind, and arriving at the Island of *Saints*, they performed a worke of mercy to the eight that were dead, to the which number, one of the two remaining was added, whom they found dead. Now imagine, how the other could continue being deprived of companie and all humane sustenance, and yet hee was brought to *Roffene* with some little shew of life, where, at the end of two dayes hee departed this transitorie life.

Eleuen of vs being come to *Roffene*, wee landed and went into the house of our Guide, Host, and Lord, as hee and the rest desired, whereinto our most prudent Master, Master *Piero* *Quirino* entering, vying his wisdom and discretion, performed an action of exceeding great humilitie, as soone as hee saw the companion of our Conductor and Sergeant Major, declaring by semblance that hee would acknowledge her to be the Mistresse of the house, hee cast himselfe downe at her feet: but shee refused and lifted him vp from the ground, embracing him and bringing him to the fire, and with her owne hand gave him somewhat to eate.

Roffene describ'd.

In this Island there are twelve little Houses, with about one hundred and twentie persons, for the most part Fishermen, and they are by nature indued with vnderstanding to know how to make Boates, Buckets, Tunnes, Baskets, Nets of all sorts, and every other thing necessarie for their life and trade. And they are very courteous one toward another and feruicible, desirous to please rather for love, then for hope of any gift or good turne to be done them againe. Fishes called Stock-fish, in all their payments and bartering, are vied in stead of coyned money, and they are all as it were of one bignesse and measure, of the which every yere they drie an infinite number in the winde: and in the time of May fraight themselves with them, carrying them through the Realmes of *Denmarke*, that is to say, *Sweden*, *Denmarke*, and *Norway*, being all Subiect to the King of *Dacia*: where they barter and exchange the said Fish, for Leather, Cloathes, Iron, Pulse and other things, whereof they haue scarcitie.

Stock-fish in
stead of money.

Few other things for maintenance of life are found there, except Fish, yet at certain times, they haue some small quantitie of Beefe, and Milke of Kine, of the which, with Rice, and know not what other mixture, they make Bread of a naughty tasle. Their Drinke is lowre Milke, displeasing unto them, who have not bene accustomed thereunto. They vye also Ale, that is to say, Wine drawne out of Rice. Wee eate of the Place or Halibut fish, which are exceeding great, so that you would not beleue it. Wee saw some of them somewhat longer then fixe feetes of the common *Fenetian* measure, about two footes broad vpon the Chine, and more then three quarters of a foote in thicknesse: a wonderful thing to be spoken. They cloeth the men with redde Hides, and likewise blacke, able to defend them from the water, and they vye cloathes very coarse, of azure, redde, and ash-colour, brought from *Denmarke*, of small price and estimation.

Sinceritie.

Theise Countrey people vye much to frequent the Church, because they are very deuout, and yeeld great reuerence to the worship and seruice of God. Aurice, is as it were altogether extinguish'd, for, they vnderstand not in any sort, nor know not what thing of anothers may become theirs, but by barter: and therefore they vye not to locke Doore, House, nor Windows,

dowes, nor any Chest for feare to be robbed, but only by reason of the wilde Beasts.

The Inhabitants of this place both young and old, are of so great simplicitie of heart, and obedient to the Commandement of God, that they neither vnderstand know, nor imagine in any wife, what Fornication, or Adulterie may bee: but vye Marriage according to Gods Commandement. And to giue you a true proofe hereof I *Christophers* say, that we were in the house of our forefild Host, and slept in one and the same Cottage, where hee also and his Wife slept, and successively in one Bed neere adjoyning, were their Daughters and Sonnes of tiseage together, neere to the which Bedd we also slept, almost close adjoyning to them: so that when they were to sleepe, or when they aroose, or when they thumped themselves naked, and wee in like manner, we indifferently saw one another, and yet with that puritie, as if wee had bene little children: But I will tell you more, that for two dayes together, our said Host, with his elder Sonnes afoote to goe a fishing, came at the time of the most delighfull house of sleape, leaving his Wife and Daughters in the Bed, with that securitie and puritie, as if hee had properly left them in the armes and embracements of the Mother, not returning to his home in less time then the space of eight houres.

The Inhabitants of this Island, especially the elder sort, are found so vnited in their wills to the will of God, that in every casualtye of naturall death, which befalleth Father, Mother, Husband, Wife, Children, or whatsoever other Kinsman, or Friend, when the houre of their passage vnto another life appeareth, presently without any grieue of heart and complaining, they assemble themselves together vnto the Cathedrall Church, to thanke and praise the Heauenly Creator, who hath permitted such an one to liue so many yeeres, and at that present, as his creature vouchsafed to call him, or her into his gracious fauour, and neere vnto him: and at the appointed houre they cule these that are to waite them thus, to waite them thus, as they were borne. Whereupon rejoycing and contenting themselves with his infallible will and pleasure, they giue him praise and glorie, not shewing any passion either in words or gestures, as if properly they had but slept. Surely we may say, that from the third of February 1431, vntill the fourth of May 1432, which amounteth to an hundred dayes and one, we were within the circuit of *Paradise*, to the repect and shame of the Countreies of *Italia*.

There at the beginning of May we saw great varietie and alteration. First, their women vye to goe vnto the Bathes, which are very neere and commodious, as well for puritie, as for the custome they obserue, which they hold agreeable vnto Nature: they vye to some forth of their houses stark naked, as they came out of their Mothers wombe, going without any regard to their way, carrying only in their right hand an heape of grasse, in manner of a broome, as they say, to rub the sweat from their backe, and the left hand they hold vpon their hip, spreading it as it were for a shadow to couer their hinder parts, that they should not much appeare: where hauing twice thus, we passed away by them, as easily as their owne people, the Countrey was so cold, and the continuall frizing of them, that it caus'd vs to make no account thereof. On the contrary part, these very women were seene on the Sunday to enter into the Church in long and comely Garments. And that they might not by any means be seene in the face, they wear on their head a thing like a complete Motion with a Gorget, which hath an hole to see through at the end, like the hole of a Pipe, through the which they behold within that, no further off from their eyes then the hole is long, so that they seeme to haue it in their mouths to pipe: and worse then that, they can neither see nor speake, vntill they turne themselves a yard or more, from the hearer. I thought good to note these two extreame varieties, as worthy to be vnderstood.

From the twentieth of November, vntill the twentieth of February, the night continueth and lasteth there about one and twentie houres or more, the Moon neuer wholly hiding her body, or her rays at least. And from the twentieth of May vntill the twentieth of August, either the whole Sunne is always seene, or it sheweth himselfe.

In this Countrey there is infinite plenty of white Birds, in their Language called *Mues*, but we called them Cockes of the Sea, which by nature cometh, and willingly abide where men inhabit, whether they find them in Barkes or on the Land. And they are so domesticall and tame, as House-dowes are with vs.

In this Island, and in the Countreies of *Suecia*, we saw very white skins of Beares as white as Arnelins, much longer then twelue *Venetian* feete. Wee abode in *Roffene* three months and eleven dayes, expecting a fit time to passe with our Host into *Sweden*, with his viall freight of Stock-fish, which is in the time of May, when their Countrey people depart, carrying with them infinite plenty thereof through the Realmes of the aforesaid King of *Dacia*.

On the fourteenth day of May 1432, came the houre so much desired, to turne our faces to wards our amiable and beloued Countrey, as our minde and desire alwayes was, and leave the charitable place of *Roffene*, which was the last succour and refreshing to our miseries. So wee tooke our leave of our Domesticall friends of the House, and of our Mistresse and Hostesse, to whom in token of our loue we left, not that whereunto we were in debt bound, but what wee had remaying: and that was certayne small trifling things of little value in our opinion, as

Danes,
Wicage Sig-
a Pirate

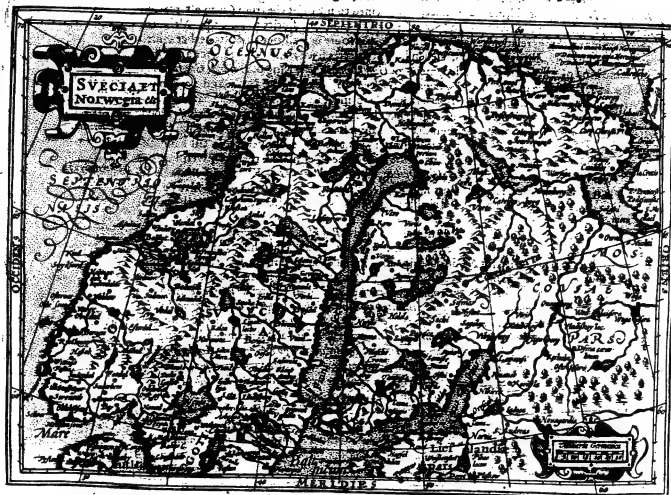
Scams in the
Circumstances,
containing the
Country of
Norway, Swe-
den, &c.
Men sacrificed
to Thor.

* Mal. Wel.

to Malinebury. Ego Edgarm totius Albionis Basileus, nec non Maximus in Scandinavia Regum archiepiscopus, &c.

This Success being let, dark and stormy times followed by reason of Danish incursions. These Danes (as Mr. Camden saith) began to be knowne in the world about the yeere of Christ 570. for their piracies called *Wicage*; of them *Dada de S. Quintino* hath this testimony, *Dani & Scania* (that is, Scandia) velut exarum, quae in castris & gladiis regibus, diversitate multitudine, &c. The Danes, like a swarme of Bees out of their hive, and a flood out of the South, in diversified manner and barbarous custome leaped forth from Scania (or Scandia) after that with persons left they had multiplied their innumerable generations. These being grown, concluded with their parents and progenitors about their possessions, and overflowing their native Ranges, a multitude of them (according to their ancient custome) were compelled by lot to seek foraine places, where by force they might plant themselves. In the commencing this expedition or expedition, they anciently sacrificed to Thor, not with heales, but the blood of men, offering that the most precious Holocaust. Their Priest used to dance with yokes of Oxen, the heads of each oxen lay let being chosen slender by his stroke, also heave anyone on the backe full being flung, and with the blood that of the hands of others being anointed, they profusely for feasts. *Danica*, according to ancient times *Dada*, mentioneth a place called *Lodona*, where every ninth yeere in January, they all assembled and sacrificed ninetie nine Men, and at many Houses, with Dogs and Cocks, in stead of Hanes, to pacifie their Gods. Herby wee see that by Danes, in our English Stories, are intended not onely those which now we properly call but *Norwegians* also, *Gutes*, *Fandals*,

HONDIVS his Map of NORVEGIA and SVETIA.



Lambert's per-
ambulation of
Kye.

Mal. Wicage.

Frislanders, and the Inhabitants generally of those North-easterne parts, three Ships of whom, in the yeere 787 landed in the West parts, knew the Raine of *Borrichrick* King of the West Saxons, and were by the Countie people forced backe to their Ships. *Ann*, 795. a few Ships of them made the like stay in *Scotland*, and loane after some of them entered *Tynesmouth* Harboure in the North part of *England*, and returned with the *foyles* of the Churches of *Haverens* and *Tynesmouth*. This was in the yeere 800. Thirte three yeeres after, in the reigne of *Egbert*, they were beaten at *Dimmuth*, but spoiled *Shorpe*, with murders and robberies, entering *Thames* with thirte five sayle.

sayle. The next yeere they prevailed in battell against King *Egbert*, and after that joyned with the *Wessex* to invade and destroy this Kingdome, but were both chased by the victorious power of the King; and *Ann*, 836. another host of them was beaten. Another Fleet of thirte foure Ships landed at *South-Hampton*, *Ann*, 838. and flew Duke *Ethelbald*; after which they proceeded with continual incursions (two *Hydras* heads still succeeding, when any *English* Heroes had cut off one) that it breeds terror to read or thinke of the *foyles*, rapes, fires, murders, barbarisme, heathenisme, detolation and destruction, which they brought every where with them. And although *Affra*, *Edmund*, and *Adulfus* somewhat healed the Land of that pestilence; yet in *Ethelbald* time such a mortall relapse happened, that first he charged the people with an insupportable tribute of *Danegelt*, arising to 48000. pounds yearly (even after the account of those times) and having herewith nothing but perdition on their part, and beggerly on his, by the advice of one *Hinna* the Generall of his Armie, he wrote Letters to all places, that on Saint *Brides* day (which is the morrow after Saint *Martin* night, the *Danes* not having digested that drunken solemnity should be all massacred, which accordingly was effected on man, woman, and child, not sparing those which fled to the Altars. A few in *London* escaped, and caused *Sweyne* with a Danish Army and vnspokeable cruelty to repay that butcherie. *Ethelbald* fled with his wife and children into *Normandie* (the feed of a new Conquest) for that *Canutus* or *Cnut* and his two

sonnes, *Harald* and *Hardcanute*, held after him some thirte yeeres pace. And such was the Danish tyranny, that every Dane was ruled Lord *Dane*, and had at his commandment the wives, daughters, and the whole household where he became. But after the death of *Hardcanute*, that title was turned into the reprochfull terme of *Lordane*, and the day of his death (as the *Roman* *Engels*) was celebrated with open pastime and feasting in the streets, called *Hocktide* or *Hocktide*, as if *England* (then absolutely freed) made a mocke or scorn of her enemies. *Canutus* by treason of *Edwige* *Strens* obtained the Kingdome, first as partner with *Edmund* *Ironside*; and after his death the whole by other perfidie, slaying *Edwige* brother of King *Edmund*, and lending *Edmund* two sonnes, *Edward* and *Edmond*, to the King of *Sweden* to be there made away. But hee hating such cruelty, sent them to *Salomon* King of *Hungary* to bring vp, where *Edmund* dyed, and *Edward* married *Agatha* daughter of *Henry* the Emperour, by whom hee had *Edgar* *Athling*, and *Margaret* married to *Malcolm* King of *Scots* (the mother of *Matilda* wife to *Henry* the first) and *Christine* a Nun.

Canutus divided the Kingdome into foure parts, of which he reserved *West* *Saxonia* to himselfe, *East* *England* hee committed to *Earle* *Turkill*, *Mercia* to Duke *Ethricke*, and *Northumberland* to *Earle* *Erke*. Soone after, hee caused Duke *Ethricke* (which treacherously had advanced him to the Crowne) to be slaine, (a full reward of treason) and then banished *Earle* *Turkill* and *Earle* *Erike* picking quarrell with them (weary of any talking horse) the former of which was presently after his landing in *Denmark* slain. And now did *Canutus* take to win the favour of the *English* by building and endowing Monasteries, making good Lawes, and marrying *Emma* the relict of King *Ethelred*. Thus having *Denmark* by inheritance, and *England* by conquest & treachery, his ambition next aimed at *Sweden*, where first he had the world; but after compelled *Vif* and *Eislef* the Kings of that Countie to composition with him, *Earle* *Gowin*, the Generall of the *English*, pro- voking and animating the *English* to recover their prietime glory, and by solid vertue to overcome them, who had overcome their new Lord, whole force had subdued the *English*. Thus *Canutus* prevailed by *Gowin*es policie and *English* valour, they by night without the Kings know- ledge, or alliance of the Danish Armie, assaulting and overthrowing the *Swedes*; hee, the next day, misting the *English*, and fearing they had turned to the Enemy, till giving the onset with his *Danes* upon the forsaken Campe of the Enemy, he found there nothing but carcasses and spoyle.

Ann 1037. having intelligence that the *Norwegians* contemned their King *Olave* for his simplicity, he sent great summes of Gold and Silver to the *Grandes* of *Norway*, to corrupt them, and caused them to reject *Olave*, and to choose him for their King. For perverted with gifts they sent him word to come to them, whom he should find ready to entertaine him. *Ann*, 1038. he went with a fleet of fifty sayle to *Norway*, and expelled *Olave*, subjecting that Kingdome to himselfe. *Olave* which had bene the King, Doctor, Preacher and Apostle of the *Norwegians*, (as *Forligus* stileth him) the sonne of *Harald* King of *Norway*, was slaine, *Ann* 1030. and cruelly butchered by his treacherous *Norwegians* with an Axe or Hatchet, for disannulling their Pagan superstitions, and hee since in these superstitiously worshipped for a Saint, whom these trayterously they permitted not to reigne or breathe. The same yeere perished at Sea, (or as some say) was slaine in one of the *Oreades*, *Earle* *Hacn*, whom *Canutus* fearing had banished in co- lour of sending him Embassadour.

His greatnesse (having to wife his sisters daughter) made him grow suspicious: And according to the devotion of that time. *Ann* 1031. *Canutus* or *Cnut* went to *Rome* on Pilgrimage, and there made magnificent Offerings, and obtained diuers Immunities of the Emperour, and after his returne hee invaded the *Scots*, and overcame King *Malcolme* with two other Kings.

Danegelt con-
tained all Ed-
ward the Con-
fessor.
A. 1013.

* This Sweyne,
or Sæne had
killed his fa-
ther.

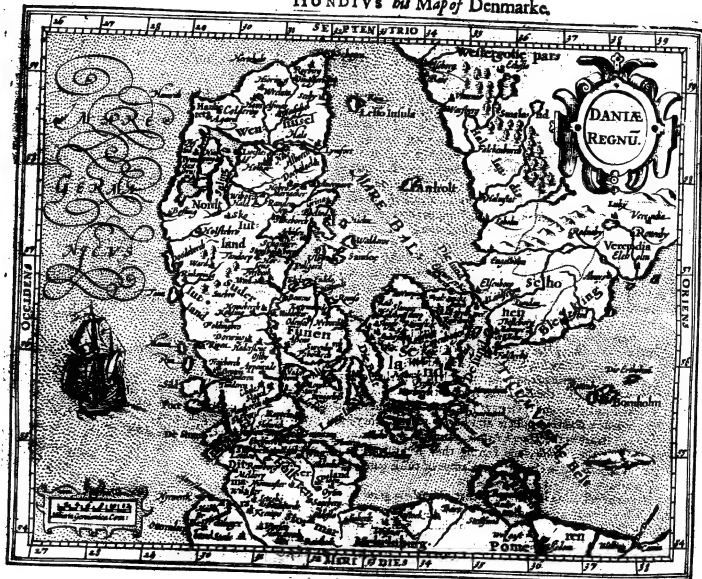
* A. 1034.
Hocktide being
some kept with
publicke feasting
in the streets, the
women also in
dancing, of
compelling them
to loose
ransome for the
Tuesdays fore-
night, after
hocktide.

English Con-
quest in Swe-
den. A. 1034.

Swiss Olave.

Kings. He going from Rome to Denmark, sent a Letter to his English subjects thus beginning:
Cnutus Rex totius Anglie, & Danemarce, & Norwegiarum, & partis Sueonum, Aethelstanus
Metropolitano & Alfrico Eboracenſi Archiepiscopo, p̄m̄dūq; Episcopis & Primatibus & toti An-
gloꝝ genit, tam nobilibus quam plebei, salutem. Nosq; vobis me nomen misse Roman, & totu
pro redemptione peccaminum meorum & pro salute Regnorum, quibus mee subiacent regimini popula-
ribus huc vsq; per fecere non potui. Nunc autem ipſi Deo mee Omnipotentis vultu humiliter gratias ag-
o, qui mihi concessit in vianea Sanctis & Apostolis fuisse Petrum & Paulum, & omne Sanctissimu
quod meta urbem Romanam aut extra adificere potui experire, & secundum desiderium meum personam
per me venerari & adorare. Ob id ergo maxime hoc paravi, quia & sapientius didici sententiam
posuisti magnam potestatem a Domino accepisse legendi aq; solvendi, claugeturq; esse Regni Celsitu,
& ideo speciale eius patrocinium apud Dominum diligenter experire valdi vtile duxi, &c.

HONDIVS his Map of Denmarke.



Cnutus before his death set his Sonne *Suenus* in possession of *Norway*, and *Hardecnutus* his Sonne over the *Danish*. *Harald* and *Hardecnutus* divided *England* betwixt them after his death. *Ann* 1013, and *Harald* dying, *Ann* 1040, that quarrell was ended; and looneafter, by the death of the *Danish* Empire in *England*, the small Isle of *King Edward* interceding that, and another Conquest of the *Norwegians*, defended also of like *Northerne*, namely of *Norwegian* Original, *Cnutus* his Daughter *Cunilda* was married to *Henry* the Emperor, and being accused of Adultery against a Giant Champion appeared in her defence a child. *English* Dwarf which feared her, who slue the Giant and presented his head to the Ladie, who thereupon divorced her

her selfe, and became a Nunne. *Suenus* King of *Norway* after five yeres deceased, and *Cnutus* his ill-gotten *English* and *Norwegian* wings were quickly not only pulled but cut off.

The *English* had occasion of further insuasion to and from *Norway*. For *Suenus* decedding the *Norwegians* chose *Harald* the Sonne of *Saint Olave* for their King; when *Hardecnutus* understood (as the *Danish* Storye is set forth by *Ermold Lundenburg* tellisth) he invaded *Norway* with his *English* and *Danish* forces, where in and *Harald* was dead, *Suenus* the Sonne of *Harald* his Sister, succeeded, and *Magnus* King of *Norway* fought with *Suenus* to obtayne his Sonne's unanited Kingdoms of *Denmarke*, and overcame him, *Suenus* fled into *Sweden*, and there shode till the death of *Magnus*, after which he recovered his *Danish* Seoten. *Hardecnutus* weeneth that *Suenus* sent to King *Edward* the Confessor, intreating his aide with a Nause against *Magnus* Earle *Godwin* counselled to lend fiftie ships, but *Earle Leofric* and the people refused; and *Magnus* with a great Nause fought with *Suenus* and expelled him his Kingdom, which hee after recovered.

Harald Haranger the Sonne of *Sinard* King of *Norway* and Brother by the Mothers side to *Saint Olave* obtained *Norway* after his Nephew *Magnus*, and sent an Embassage to King *Edward*, whereby Peace and Amicitie was concluded betwixt both the Kings. He (after King *Edward*'s death) invaded *England* with a great Nause of three hundred ships, and King *Edward* the Earle *Edmund* and *Harald* were there; but hee dayes after *Harald* then dined (as the *Danish* Storye is set forth by *Ermold Lundenburg* tellisth) hee his Brother *Trist* and *Harald* at *Swinsford* Bridge, permitting his Sonne *Olave* to returne vpon conditions to *Norway*. But while hee consented the spoyle to his owne proper use, hee gave such disgust to the *English*, that a few dayes after in the battayle with *William* Earle of *Normandie*, they were left zealous of his cause, where a new *Norwegian* period beganne: From 987, to 1045.

I shall not need to describe who followed (the *Norwegian* Acts in *Islande*, *Poland* and other places I have handled else-where) little occurring of *Harald*, but *Mattheus*, of which I have by my Letters from King *Henry* the Third, the first years of his Reigne to *Harald* or *Harald*, then King of *Norway*, for mutual Iustice betwixt both their subjects. It is remarkable that the *Northerne* humour of spoyle, slaughter and blood continued while they were Pagans, and expired in manner with their Paganisme both in *Norwegian* and *Danish*: as if God would first by them punish the vices of those times, and withall conquer the Conquerors, with the Religion of the conquered, and by so strange a way bring the *Northerne* World (by this way of destroying to salvation. Since that time, the State of *Norway*, *Islande* and other parts hath decayed in numbers of shipping, courage of men, and other manner of *Rashly* greatness. Somewhat yet for History and in Historians sake, I will add of *Mattheus Paris* an *Englishman* his Voyage to *Norway*.

In the yere 1247, *Mattheus Paris* recordeth, that on the day of *Saint Olave*, a famous Saint in the Regions and Islands of *Norway*, *Harald* was crowned King, and solemnly anointed at *Bergaby* the Bishop of *Sabine* then Legate (from the Pope) in those parts. For the honour whereof the said King gave the Pope a yoke. Markes setting, besides innumerable Gifts which the Legate himselfe had; and six hundred Markes by him extorted (such our *Austrey* from the Church of that Kingdoms. The King also receiving the Croffe for the Holy Land Expedition, obtained of the Pope the third part of the Ecclesiastical Revenues of that Kingdoms towards his charges. Which *Lewis* the French King knowing, writ in friendly termes to *Harald* over his Nause, and sent him company in the said Expedition, offering him full power (in regard of his Zeal) over his Nause, and over the French Army. This Letter was carried by our Author *Mattheus Paris*, to whom King *Harald* answered that hee gave great thanks to that devout King; but knew in part the nature of the French & as such the Poet, *Chaucer*, presages impetuous conquests, and I say, *Omnesq; superbia, impetuous conquests erit*, My people is impetuous, indifereet, and impatient of wrongs, which might occasion irreparable damage; and therefore it is fitter for each to goe by himselfe. But I have written to the King for quiet passage therow his Country, and provisions as need required. The Kings Answer was shewed and *Lecten* Patents were also delivered to him by this our Author in this forme.

Lundenius Dei gratia Francorum Rex, vobisq; amicis & fidelibus suis, Ballivis, Ministribus, & Propositis, ad quas presentes littera pervenerunt, salutem. Cum clarissimus noster Imperator, Hacon Rex Norwegie in subditum Turra sancta transiret proponat, sicut vobis per sua littera intima, vobis mandamus, quatenus si eundem Regem vel ipsius Nominis per mare cumque terra nostra transiret, vel in Terram nostram, vel in fenda nostra alibi applicare, ipsam & sua bonaq; & bonorū ipsius respectu, permittitis eundem in terra nostra viuentia morari, & sibi per suam legationem de sibi necessariis providere. Alioquin eundem Germanum in Italia, A. D. 1248.

When the King of *Norway* had read this (for hee is a discrete, and modest, and well learned man) hee rejoiced much, and was grateful to the bearer, respecting him with Royall and bountifull gifts. Thus writeth *Mattheus Paris* of himselfe, and his employment. The cause of his going into *Norway* hee further relateth, that King *Cnut* (or *Cnutus*) having founded a fa-

Historia Pontif.

Second English Expedition into Norway.

m. Tristram.

From 987, to 1045.

vid. sup. L. 2. c. 6. 5. 1.

Note.

Ma. Paris. 987.

The Pope and his Legates were friendly to all Kingdoms. Saint Iohn tells of it.

His Letter.

Ma. Paris. 1247. age to Norway. John. 1247.

1202

Monks ignorant of their own orders. Popes hands and Lime-fingered Appeals.

monastery of Saint Benet, of Holm in Norway (of which title and order hee had founded another in England) it happened that the said Abbe, with the appurtenances was almost ruined by an impious Abbot, who forsaking his Order, and stealing away privily the Seal of the Chapter, subtilly sold, or by forged writings fraudulently engaged almost all the possessions thereof: wherein hee had the Sacre, the keepers of the Seal, his co-partners, both in this fugitive spoliage and treachery. Hereupon the Archbishop of Nidaros, in whose Diocese the said Abbe was situated, seized the same and the appurtenances into his hands, alledging that the Monks had only the habite, but were altogether ignorant of Monastic order, and Saint Benet's rule, some of them also theeves and fugitives. The Monks appealed to the Pope (which caused the Archbishop to suspend his proceedings) and the Prior recovering somewhat, and gathering together a summe of money, went to the Roman Court, where the Abbot had been a little before, and intangled by writings the said house in five hundred markes; which caused the Prior to returne frustrated and full of griefe. But in his way, hearing that the said Abbot was dead, in the Abby of Saint Alban in Selu (in Norway) he and the Couent made choice of an Abbot, and this Prior, with another Monke, and three hundred markes in mony, together with the Kings letter, being sent to Matthew Paris to take paines for their freedom, it was procured happily that the temporalities of the said house were freed from the Cawfines (the Popes Vassals) then residing at London, within one yeeres space. But their Spiritualities were much maimed, they by bribes purchasing delays, lest the Archbishop should take possession of the Island which wholly belonged to the Abby, and at last, exelling the Monks.

Now the Cardinal Bishop of Sabine then coming Legate into Norway, the Monks sought to him for succour, and hee consulted them to go and petition the Pope to provide them of an Instructor and Reformer, and he would write in their behalfe.

The Abbot therefore and Prior went with Letters from the King and Legate to the Pope, who gave them leave to chuse any man of whatsoever Region or Monasterie to be their Instructor. They answered the next day, that all the World had not Monks of that Order living in more compoiled order then England, nor England any comparable by report, to Saint Alban: of which House they desired Matthew to be their Reformer, of whose wildome and faithfulness they had had experience: a man also almost familiar and friendly to their King, and able by his meane to order the rebellious and vnruely. Hereupon the Pope gave them this Briefe to the Abbot of Saint Alban,

Innocentius, &c. Dilecto Filio Abbati Sancti Albani in Anglia Ordinis S. Benedicti, &c. Cum fecimus ex parte dilecti filii Abbatis Monasterij de Holm, Ordinis S. Benedicti Nidarosensis Diocesis, fuit propositum coram nobis, idem Monasterium propter Prælosum suorum negligentiam, sit in his que ad idem Monasterium pertinenti deformitatem: nec innovator nulli partibus aliqui qui statuta & observantia eiusdem Ordinis bene sciant: Nos ad supplicationem eandem Abbatis, discretione tuam rogamus, attentius & breviter per Apostolicam tibi scriptam mandantes, quatenus dilectum filium Fratrem Mattheum Monachum tuum qui dictum probare visa & religiosis experte, ad idem Monasterium ut dictum Abbatem & Monachos suos in regularibus disciplinis & statuta que ad eundem ordinem pertinent, informet & instruat, transmittere prædiximus & Apostolicam fidem ad nostra reverentia non possimus. Datum Lugduni, &c. Hereto the Abbot obeying, and Matthew to his Abbot, the business luckily succeeded, and Monks both in that of Holm, and other Norwegian Monasteries was reformed.

1 Of this see Holm.

King Harald children.

2 See p. 100. Prior of Limer.

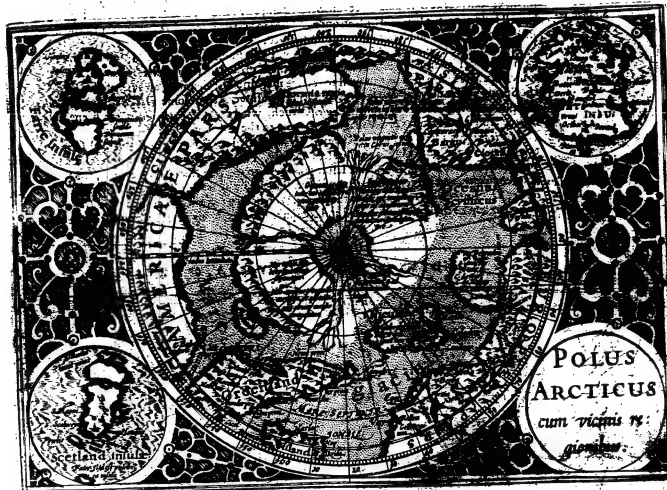
3 Holm.

4 T. of Walsley.

I might here shew the great stirres which in the first Ages after the Conquest the Normans have caused in Ireland, Wales, Man, Anglesy, the Hebrides, and Orkney: as also of Harald (whom the Conquerour slue) his two sonnes and daughter fleeing to Sueno King of Denmark, who gave the daughter in Marriage to Torslaus, or Waldemar King of Russia: and of Nicholas de Lynna, a Frenchman Friar and Mathematician of Oxford, before mentioned, of whom Jacobus Cuyper in his booke of the Islands of Norway, anno 1364. thus in the yeere 1360, the said Friar had come into those Islands, and proceeding further by Art Magike, had described those Arctike parts (as the Map presents) with four Whirl-poles or In-daughter, Yes (as Master Dye addeth) at the Northerne Island, the Record whereof at his returne he gave to the King of England, the Booke being called *Inventio fortunata* or *fortuna*, containing a description from fictitious degrees to the Pole. I might also add of Thomas of Walsingham, the Travels of Henricus Battle of Darbie, (afterwards Henric the Fourth, King of England) into Prussia and Letonia, or Lithuania, where by his helpe especially was taken Vilna the chiefe Citie (Sagalle the King of Letonia, having fled thither for refuge) his Colours being first advanced on the walls, four thousand slain, of which the King of Poland Brother, and three thousand captured. Also I might adde the Voyage of Thomas of Alenbyke Duke of Gloucester, sonne to King Edward the Third, along the Coasts of Denmark, Norway, and Scotland. Other Letters likewise of King Edward the Second to Haakon or Hacon, King of Norway in behalfe of English Merchants there trafficked: with Entercourtes betwixt the English and the Dutch Knights in Lifford. But having only briefe mentions of these, and thence of the most of them recorded by Master Barkley

industrie before, I doe here but Index-wise referre the Reader thither. I rather chiooe to give new things and rare: and such may seeme these Notes which Anno 1605. I writ from the mouth of Master George Barkley.

HONDIVE, his Map of the Arctike Pole, or Northerne World.



CHAP. XX.

A briefe Memoriall of the great Travells by Sea and Land, of Master GEORGE BARKLEY Merchant of London, in Europe, Asia, Africa, and America, and their Islands.



Being a childe, he was transported into the East Countries, and the first place of his landing was Schagen, from thence unto Elfenore, a Towne as bigge as Brent. Schagen, wood, where the Danish Custome is taken, and where he hath sene at one time the Dane making stay of all shipping fourteen dayes, for attestation to a foreigne Nobleman, seven hundred Gayle. From thence to Copenhagen, thence to Bornholme, thence to Danske, a Towne subiect to the Pole, being in continuall buildings, if by any meanes they may fortifie themselves against the Hilles over-looking the Towne, a Rill running betwixt, whence they have their fresh water: they spare no time Sunday nor other. There lyeth here in the Sea by casting vp of sands a long Island called *Prilsering*, where along, as on *Somaiden*, is gathered by the Danish Officers there, and here by the *Lewes*, that farme it of the Pole, Amber, cast vp by the Sea in great abundance, pieces as bigge as a pecke, more or lesse. The Bores that find it and gather, have so many firkins of some other

Hhh

meane

A Frog in a piece of Amber.

STRANGE re-
gion of Swa-
lowes.
The Vist.

High-wall.

Amberberg.

Dutch Knight
of the Order
m. See Fam.
Lib. 3.

meane commoditie: and if they keepe and sell it, they dye for it. Hee hath scene one piece of Amber taken vp, in the middelt whereof was to be scene through the transparent Amber a Frog in similitude and full proportion: (Master Vissak, his brother, a friend of mine, told me of a piece of Amber in the keels of a ship, where by occasion of a flouer, one cutting nine inches within the Timber & very way, he found a great many Tule in the hollow thereof at Wroclaw betwixt this Frybering and the Land we great water Frybering, where at Saint Georges day they begin to fish, of which there is exceeding plenty, and for three halfe pence one may buy a cist as much as they shall draw the next time. One here in his Net drew vp a company or heape of Swallowes as bigge as a bulbell fastned by e-legs and bills in one which being carried to their Hooes, quickned and flew, and coming againe suddenly in the cold Aire dyed:

From Danzig he went to Marienberg, a Towne also standing on the Vistula, whereby it runneth in another channell, and betwixt both thes makes an Island wherein stands Nordich, which Island is compassed with a wall to fortifie it against the coming downe of the Vistula in the Spring at the thaw of the snowes, &c. This wall seemeth in some places as high as Paules Steeple, and other-where as high as Paules Church, where yet it hath sometime bene ouerflowne: full it is of Hooes and Villages belonging to the Lords of Danzig.

Marienberg is a free Towne for Religion (Danzig then professing only Lutheran) Iau. certayne Friars and Nunnes liuing in Cloysters closely. There a Lutheran when he preacheth must make an end at his houre, and then a Jesuit preacheth to the Rom. Catholics as long, the forner both company, and Preacher being auoyded of himselfe, or by force. It was built by the Kreitzheme (Do-pa-mul-mul) Knights of the Crolle, who hauing lost their footing in the Holy Land, by consent of the Empire assailed and conquered Prussia, being in this Conquest sixtie foure

HONDIVS his Map of BORVSSIA, or PRVSSIA.



yeeres, who after carried themselves so tyrannously, that the people yielded themclues to the Pole, and destroyed the Kreitzheme, saue those that made a head about the North parts, with whom after some doubtfull fights, was made a league, that this Order should cease: Their Captayne should be married, and should haue seueritie two Townes in Prussia, to him and his Heires Males, and in defect of such Heires to returne to the Pole. His Townes are not adjoynd together, but the Pole Townes betwixt. Kuningburg is the Dukes Court.

Thence he went to Elbing, a faire Towne, where our Trade is now for Flaxe, which was before at Danzig, thence remoued for their infolencies. Here our men only pay Custome: others are free, and this they did voluntarily, and haue in this respect very much authority amongst the Lords there: the Towne still flourisheth with buildings, &c.

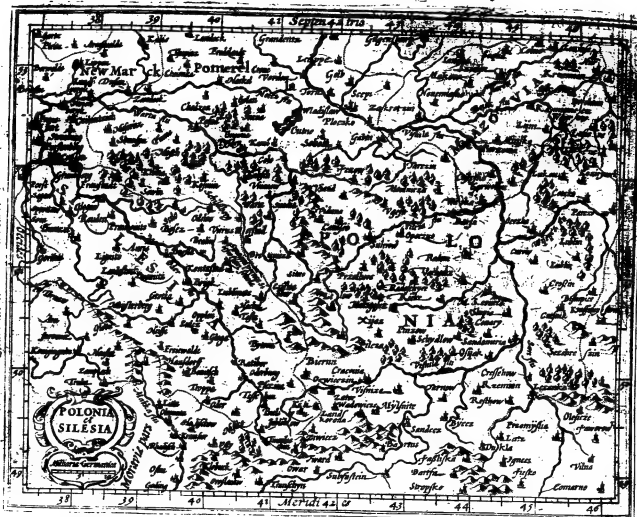
Thence he went to Braunsberg, (the Poles Towne) where is a Colledge of Iesuites: From this Braunsberg place to Kuningburg, and thence to Luba in Carland, thence to Samouit, and thence to Raca, or Riga, in Liefland also. (This Raca is vnder the Pole) thence to Dorpat, and thence to Rensel. At Dorpat he went to schoole three yeeres: it is vnder the Pole. Livonia is exceedingly distracted betwixt

HONDIVS his Map of LIVONIA or LIEFLAND.



the Sweden, Ruffe, and Pole. King Stephen recovered part from the Ruffe, who before had partly killed, and partly carried captiue the Handicrafts men, in such delicate manner, that the Townes are ruinate, the stone walls of Houses and Churches (standing with trees of great bignesse growing through their vncouered roofoes the Woods (whereof they haue excellent stately) being browed with bones of dead carkafies; and himselfe did once in one of those Woods eat Honey out of a Mans skull wherein a swarme of Bees were, and bred as it hanged on a Tree: Hee con-

HONDIVS his Map of POLONIA.



Turkes are holden to be slain by them. No Townes very strong, but *Communiens* built within a Rocke, the light let in archoles. The *Turke* went over it but could not win it.

The *Polanders* had a great murmur of beasts attributed to the *Jewes*: two *Jewes* coming to a woman offered her money for some of her milke, she answered, her child but then sucked, they left their glasse there, promising to fetch it anon and to satisfy her: her husband meane while coming home and seeing so strange a thing as a glasse, asked from whence it came, and why being answered two *Jewes* had left it there for milke for a medicine, bid her feed Cowes milke and fill the glasse: which the *Jewes* receiving, and having entertained a Boy, caused him to climb vp one of the Ladders which there stand together with their three square gallows made of stone, with wooden rafters cross'd, and to pour it into the mouth of one of the dead men (which there always hang after execution) his mouth, who presently cryed like a beast, as the boy revealed, and they thereupon cryed they were confind: a murmur followed which should have been a plague. Many *Jewes* executed for it: which yet the *Jewes* said to be a pretence for their money. The *Jewes* that farmed the Customs at *Samardien* in *Curland*, killed a *Polandish* Merchant without punishment, beating out his brains for delaying to open his packe. Hee returned out of *Poland* into *Prussia* to *Torne*, the fifth place obtained by the *Kreitzberns*, where they built a Castle about an Oake, which standeth there still, but is dead. Thence along the *Vistla* (where the *Poles* have their *Maks*, &c. with wares three miles together tyed downe the streame) to *Danzick*; thence into *Pomerland* farre more barren then *Prussia*, to *Cassibus*, *Cesim*, *Colberg*. Thence to *Statin*, every way exceeding pleasant and good. Thence to *Kupick* in *Meckelberg*. Thence to *Lubek*, a fairer Citie then *Danzick*, to *Ollsio*, to *Hamburg*, to *Mackelberg*. Thence to *Adenvelt*, to *Bamberg*, and thence through *Bokemia* into *Silesia*, to *Breslaw*, where hee went to schoole three yeeres: whence into *Polonia* againe, and thence to *Prass*. Thence home into England.

Hee went againe into *Norway*, to *Nilne*, *Balsow*, &c. It is a barren soyle, as being nothing but Rockes and Valleys: the Rockes are covered with grasse, and the ground betweene they digge and sow with Corne, which yet is not able to satisfy the Country. The difference betweene the Gentlemen

Gentlemen and Bore, is in his command, being otherwise, as raggedly appparelled as hee, with twentie patches on his breech, and barefoot in winter.

In Sweden hee was, at *Stockholm* the chiefe Citie. These now under Duke *Charles*, hold warrs with their King, yet all things passing under his name, but for hating the *Poles*, that though of another Nation, neither the long attire, neither their Curb, or hooked Sword can pass: safely among the *Bores* for suspicion of being *Poles*: and the rather because they were made beleefe that the *Pole* was ayded against them by the *Tatars* that were man-eaters. They are strong in shipping and had given the *Danes* the overthrow at the battle at *Bornholm*, had he not bene assisted by the *Lubeckers* with money, &c. One alfo of whole Ships with a hot fired and blew up the Admiral of the Sweden. The *Lubeckers* therefore pay no custome to the *Danes*, and for their costs hold *Bornholm* till they be satisfied out of the Reuenee was thereof.

In Sweden (as in *England* and other those Countries) the Lord holde th the other his Tenants as Villaines and Slaues, and at his pleasure ships their Hories and Daughters to *Druff*, and there sell them; a busshell and halfe a Colmes of Salt for a woman, which yet is of perfun and complexion very comely, and very able to doe worke. He came againe to *Loefland*, and thence to *Finland*, where hee was with an *English* Capitaine in a Castle: and thence into *Lithuania*, and so into *Russia*, &c.

Boudes those his Kallense travels, he hath bin in our neerer neighbor places, as in *Belgie*, *France*, *Spain*, *Portugal*, &c. and passed to the West Indies by the Lands of Cape *Verde*: in three of which *S. S. Ant*, on *France*, *Lucie*, the Inhabitants cannot prosper nor live long, save in those Islands which yet are winke to other foraniers. He hath also bene in *Guinea*, in *Barbary*, in the Straits, at *Carthage*, where the old ruines remaine, and the fones of Marble, &c. worth the bringing home, in *Italy*, *Slawonia*, *Moraca*, at *Venice* often, at *Ferrara*, *Padua*, *Mal. Angelo*, thence to *Formosa*, to *Loretto* (where hee visited the Ladie of *Loretto*) it is one street, walled about, the Temple faire, and in the Temple of our Ladies house, inscriptions innumerable of diuers languages, affirming it to have fled the *Turkes* conquests from *Iury* into *Sclawonia*, and from thence also hither. Here forthwith it was placid in a piece of ground belonging to two Brethren, which because of this new quest and request could not agree on the proprietie: and to auoyde further sute, in the night it was found remoued to a vacant place by the high-way, and there this Temple built whither resort Pilgrimes in troopes, as to a Mart from diuers Nations. The street on one side all Innes, on the other makers of Images, Beades, and such other holy habbes heere sanctified by touch of *Madonne*.

The Temple is banded about with Monuments of their exploits, vpon vowes concludid in distress of Waies, Diseases, &c. heere hang the old Swords, &c. There are two Veftries of incredible wealth, and Priests of diuers Nations for their proper Pilgrimes. The House low and meane build with white Bricks, such as in *Barbary* they burne in the Sun. There are two rooms, in one whereof the Chimney where thees dressed hot meate, and her dishes, &c. In the other her selfe, or statue with a Child, aloft of blacke colour: to whom one whole office it is, on a stasse like a Musket-rest doth lift vp Beades, &c. by her touch to bee hallowed. The French Queene sent her a Present to hang about her necke, which present would pull her in peeces by the weight. It is round, two foot in diameter made like a Sunne, in the center a Carbuncle, the rest set with Diamonds, the rayes pointed with orient Pearles, the Bricks (miraculously) cannot be remoued, to which end they report of a Bishops superstitious Steele: who was not able to passe without restitution.

Trauelling in diuers places of *Italy*, *Rome*, &c. hee returned by the *Alpes*, from *Finney* to *Mestre*, thence to *Trense*, so to *Serauade*, a Towne of fine smiches, which with *Water*-works grinde and humme their Mettals: thence vp the *Alpes* by a passage so narrow cut out of the Rocke, that sometime the Horse hoofs hang ouer, it being a sterpe mile high, a Riuet running vnder. Thus to *Basil*, thence backe to *Torin*.

After all these travels in those parts of Europe better knowne, and those others in the more unknowne, 50 and in Africa and America, hee much assisting the Virginia businesse and especially that of *Bermuda*, went thither to order publicke affaires. And after all this (as you haue heard) went in place of Cape Merchant to the East Indies, and being Capitaine of the *English* House at *Bantam*, there and thence travelled to his long home. Thus I thought good to adde to the former relations, which I receiued many yeeres since from his owne mouth, being my loving and familiar friend, and for a generall Traveller by Sea and Land, in hotte and cold Countries of the old and new world, not easily matchable. Had hee lived, I would haue better perfected these short Notes; but Death is esse hath not taken from mee his loue, shall not from the world his memory; I rather chusing to gize the world these vnperfected Notes, as hee, then either to burne them with him, or by reuising and illustrating to make them mine. The best illustration 60 seemes that of *Mappes*, some of which out of *Hondius* I haue added.

CHAP. XXI.

Collecions out of MARTIN BRONIOVIUS de Biezefedea sent Ambassador from STEPHEN King of Poland, to the Crim Tartar: Containing a Description of Tartaria, or Cherfonesus Taurica, and the Regions subject to the Perceop or Crim Tartars, with their Customs private and publicke in Peace and Warre.

The fields Sauranensis and Ocracensis, bewixt the Rivers Bogu and Nipper.

Long miles in thoe parts: and to understand in the rest of this storie, Sharpe winter.

Braslaw is a Towne in Podolia with a Castle, numbred about five hundred Inhabitants, good Gunners, and well exercised in Tartarian skirmishes. They are good Guides in the Playnes to auoyde the *Tartars* and *Kozacks*. From thence they thorow Woods not very thicke, after some miles journey to the small River *Salmia*, where the *Braslawians* keepe good guard always aginst the Excursions of the *Tartars* and *Walachians*. Downe the River *Bogu* or *Hipanis*, you may goe almost to *Ocracow*. In the way are the Ruers *Tryphen*, *Byssel*, *Olfsk*, *Sauran* (whence they are called the Fields of *Sauran*) a stone Bridge and Bathes sometimes belonging to *Violdus*, Great Duke of *Lithuania*, ruines and graues, *Smaand* Riveret, the strong rockie Ile *Probita*, a good refuge for us against the *Tartars* (the *Braslawians* in May and Iune, vie there and in the other many Ilands of *Bogu* to fish, armed with their Pieces) *Cerielia* River the greater and the lesse, and that of *Capocley*, and *Hancoricum* (the *Tartars* call it *Cham*) and the Lake *Berezania*. This Field is fittie miles, or as they call it seven dayes journey to a speedie traveller, from *Braslaw* to *Ocracow*. There are wilde Beasts, Bifontes, Elkes, Harts, Rammes with one horne, Goates, Swine, Beares: which ten yeeres since were sayd to bee killed with the sharpnesse of the Winter, and huge heapes of their bones are found in the fields. They had also innumerable herds of Horses, *Turkys* and *Tartarians*: Kine and Sheepe which feede there, by the borders of *Russia*, *Volskia*, *Kum*, *Podolia*, and *Moldania*, not long since destroyed. The hills called *Mogili*, are testimonies of Burials and Warres. The Field is fertile, rich of pasture and pleasure,

HONDIVS biu Map of TAVRICA CHERSONESVS.



Pading

Passing ouer *Prut* or *Huras*, a Riuer of *Moldania*, you come to *Stepanecia* or *Iassi*, chiefe Towne of *Valachia*: or righter to *Prutum Technia*, a Towne and of the *Turkes*, not long since fortified on the *Nipper*; and there are found some *Moldavian* passages in the *Nipper*, right into the champaines. It diffueth it selfe into the Lake *Padou* or *Obidous* (so called, as some fabulously conceit of *Omidus*) and loone after dissembokes into the *Euxine* Sea, ouer against *Bialograd* (named by the antients *Moncastrum*) not long since taken by the *Turkes*, from the *Valachians* or *Moldavian* Prince, & holden by them. In the very mouth of *Tyras* or *Nipper*, bearing name of *Neopolimus* as may seeme by *Strabo*, who there-awayes placeth *Nemina* on the right hand; and *Ophiola* on the left hand of the Riuer.

After followeth *Borishonum* with deepe and large ditches neere the Sea, walshed by the Lake, where sometimes was a good Port. *Adriopoli* hath three Ditches, many salt Lakes nigh the Sea, where many *Cotaky* resort, and often kill each other in mutuell warres and quarrels, which makes it terrible to Travellers. Then follow *Dominia Dolina*, and the Lake *Berezania*, and the Bay *Carenum*. *Strabo* placeth five hundred furlongs in the Sea, from the mouth of *Tyras* the Hand *Leuca* sacred to *Achilles*.

Ocracania called antiently *Obbia*, *Obiki*, and *Oliopolis*, is seated on *Borishones* or the *Caracenia* Bay; sometimes builded by the *Meletians*: the Tower is of Stone, the Towne but meane, it is subject to the *Turkes*. *Borishones* or *Nipper*, a deepe, wide and swift river, runneth from the North into the Bay, and neere to *Ocracania* into the *Euxine*. Four miles higher *Bogu* empties itselfe into *Borishones*. There the *Turkes* exact Customs. The *Isthmus* betwixt *Borishones* and the Sea, is a dayes journey, ouer sandie plaines, with Hills, Lakes, Salt-pits; with Decrees, Beares, Goates, wilde Swine well stored. It is extended to *Perceopia* about thirtie miles in length, consisting of Meadows, flowers, and *Tartarians* Cottes (which they call *shly*) made of small pieces of wood, daubed with mud or myre and dung of beatts, and in April begin their progresse, with their wives, children, flaves, and houltes with earthen pots, covered with cloathes, hardly commodious for foure or five men, carried on two-wheeled cars, with one or two Camels or Oxen, together with their household. They carry with them Camels, Horses, Flockes, and Herds innumerable, leauing others in commodious pastures. They goe towards *Perceopia*, and sometimes into *Taurica*, or

30 ouer against *Perceopia*, to *Ofon* or *Asaph*, as the *Turkes* call it, a Towne by the *Don* (a *Tanis*, a great and swift Riuer) sometimes fortified by the *Greekes*, and since by the *Gemois*; where the *Turkes* now haue a Garrison, and a Commander. They alway trauell into the *Isthmus*, or the large Plaines which are betwixt *Borishones*, and the Lake *Motuir*, and the *Pontike* Sea, where they find best pastures. In October the raines, colds, and perpetual windes force them to returne to their Cottages. For they are afraid of our *Nixamian* *Cotacks*, which passe downe the streame in Boats, and the Gunners, which then make incursions on them. *Nipper* is frozen ouer in Winter. *Ptoleme* calls that *Isthmus*, *Zenos* *Cherfonesus*, and *Strabo* writes that the *Raxami* and *Raxolani* (whom we call *Russians*) captured thoe Fields twixt *Tanis* and *Borishones* (describing their life like that of these later *Tartars*).

40 *Perceopia* (antiently called *Eupatoria*, *Pompeipolis*, Holy Grove, *Achilles* Race, *Gracida*, *Heraclia*) is seated in the confines of *Taurica*, or the *Syrian* *Cherfonesus*, the Towne obscure and small, the Tower of stone, not well fortified; in which the *Tartar* *Chans* haue their perpetuall *Palatium* or *Reg*, which keepeeth the Marches and passages of *Borishones* and *Don*, with all the borders, and is Generall Lieutenant ouer all the *Tartars* in the Playnes adioyning. *Strabo* writes that there was a deepe Ditch made, whence the Towne had, and fill in the *Tartarian* and *Turkys* language hath the name. When *Sachinbegier* reigned there (hee ouerthrowe the *Nagay* *Tartars* at *Perceopia* with a memorable victory) there were euentene stone Forts raised in that Ditch, some of them of the Skuls of the Hayne, and the ditch repayed. Here the *Tartars* keepe continuall Guard, permitting no Stranger thence to passe without the *Chans* Letters. And there

50 in occasions of Warres is their principall assembling. *Callow* is seven miles distant on the right hand, on the shore, where the *Chans* hath a perpetuall garrison. *Ingermenum* is hence twelue miles or more: it hath a stone Port, a Temple, and Vauis vnder the Castle and ouer against it, with wonderfull Art cut in the stone, being situate in a great and high Mountaine; and therefore the *Turkes* giue it the name of the *Pantia*. It hath hence a wealthy Towne. Ouert against it the Promontorie trendeth some turloghs broad, and three or foure miles long. There appeare euident signes in the Rorie Mountaines, thas the antient *Greekes* thence cut huge stones and carried them by Ships to build *Chersona* a Cicle in thoe times famous, as the *Greeke* *Christians* still report. The *Heraclians* of *Pontus* sent thither a Colony. The Fort of *Ingermenum* was also built by the *Greekes*, as appeareth by *Greeke* Intercriptions and Scutcheons therein: and thorow all the *Isthmus* to the walls were iustitious buildinges, and innumerable Wells digged. There were also two great High-ways or Causes of *Rome*. There were many good Vineyards and Gardens, now called *Bethel*, and possessed by *Greeke* *Christians*, or *Italians*, and *Lemes*, and a few *Turkes*. Of the ruines the *Turkes* and *Tartars* make great Stalls and Enclosures for their beatts. This *Cheromysus*, *Corfasum*, or *Cherfonesus* the *Turkes* called *Siri*

60 and *Gerwis*.

Perceopia

Callow

Ingermenum

Cherisa

Gerwis

times a *Turke*, that I should not enter into that Temple. The Custome of the Citie is not meane: it hath very fruitfull Vineyards and Orchards, which doe extend about two miles, now manured by *Caphas*, *Turkes*, *Jews*, and *Christians*: For the best Wine of all *Taurica* grows there; all that tract abounds with pleasant Riuer, which runne downe from the highest and middle Mountaynes and Woods, which are there very frequent.

Having now passed over those vpper Citie, and at the last *Sudace*, also as farre as *Thoudofa*, which the *Italian Genes* call *Capha*, the banks of *Taurica* is in Longitude a thousand furlongs, craggy, mountaynous, and tempestuous with North windes. Before the Citie the Promontorie, that is there seene, doth hang out into the Sea on the South-side toward *Paphlagonia*, and the *Rammes* forehead. And there is another Promontorie *Carambis* of the *Paphlagonians* opposite to it, whereby the *Euxine Sea* is diuided into the double Sea, and *Empus* straightens them both. *Strabo* sayth, that *Carambis* is distant from the Citie of the *Chersonesus*, two thousand furlongs, but from the *Rammes* forehead, a furlong lesser quantitie. Behind that hilly Countrey, as *Strabo* calls it, hee affirms the Citie *Thoudofa* to be founded, and that it hath large Fields notable for fertility, and a Hauens able to receiue a hundred Ships, and that that Limit was assigned to the territories of the *Bosphorians* and *Taurians*.

Capha or *Thoudofa*, is the excellentest and best defended Citie of all *Taurica*. It was built by the *Italian Genes*, and is placed by the Sea. It hath a Hauens alway frequented. It is persequious, that in the times of the *Genes*, it was a wealthy and populous Citie. But after it was taken 30 from the *Genes* by the *Turkes* about a hundred yeeres since, the *Italian Christians* were brought into such a straight, that there are but a very few and obscure remains of them left. The Citie hath in a manner lost her priuilege splendour. The Romish Churches of *Christians* are demolished, the Houses cast downe, the Walls and Towers, wherein are seene many tokens of honour of the *Genes* and *Latin* inscriptions, are fallen. Onely two *Catholicke* Temples and two *Atrianian* monuments, in which it is granted them of the *Turkes*, after their owne custome to maintain their proper Priests, and to be present at their publicke deuotions. It is replenished with *Turkes*, *Armenians*, *Jews*, but very few *Italian* and *Grecke* Christian inhabitants: Now also it is famous over all that part of *Taurica* for Navigation and the Hauens. It hath almozt innumerable Vineyards, Orchards and Gardens. Men sayle often to *Capha*, from all the bordering and remote 10 lands of *Greece*, but oftner from the Citie *Constantinople*, for with a prosperous winde they come thither by Ship, in the space of two dayes or little more.

Perigeron or *Colchis*.

Idolaters.

Deepe Wells.

Salt Lake.

The *Perigeron* Province, or *Colchis* is enlarged, as farre as the *Caspian* or *Hircan* Sea, and is much subiect to Mountaynes and very large Woods, which are now seene in these Confinies. It is a very free people, and hath many braue Commanders, to whom all the Nations and Families obey. Moreover they professe themselves *Christians*, and it is manifest in the time of the *Genes* very many of them were *Christians*, but now wanting Priests and Churches, they onely retayne the opinion of Religion. Most and the greatest part of them are Idolaters, amongst themselves rapacious and cruell, but to Strangers hospitall and free-bearded. The Parents, although they bee of the more Noble or of the Rullickes, sell their owne Children, their Sonnes 40 for Slaves, their Daughters for Wines to the *Turkes* and *Tartars*, also to many *Christians*, and those which they are wont to sell secretly among themselves, they sell closely beyond the Sea to barbarous strangers after a more then barbarous manner.

Betweene *Percepia*, *Cremnum*, and *Cassiana*, are Townes on the North. *Taurica* or the *Peninsula* is exceeding plaine, not very hilly, and altogether champaigne. It hath a very fertile foyle, in great part stonie, but great part of good water. Yet there are found in diuers places very many extraordinarie deepe Fountaynes or Wells of a wonderful profunditie and difficultie, in times past digged and made by the elder *Greekes*, or those great and antique Nations, who inhabited the *Peninsula* before the *Greekes*.

From *Percepia* the space of a mile, there is a great Lake congealed naturally of admirable Salt, 50 from whence the purest and best Salt is continually gathered, as if it were frozen; it hath many other Salt lakes. In certayne commodious and in very many places, in Mountaynes and Groves are found in great number, ancient huge *Grecian* mines of Cables, Citie, Temples and Monasties, which while they have many great benefice of inhabitants, by reason of their antiquitie, haue lost their names. All *Taurica* or that *Peninsula*, from the West and North is plaine, and champaigne, and hath few Townes, many Villages; extends in length the summe of fiftie miles. But from the South and East, it is mountaynous and wooddie, and hath euery where marvellous high, large, Rony Mountaynes. In which, betweene *Cremnum* and *Capha*, it is reported that veynes of Gold and Silver, and the best Iron, were whilom found by the Inhabitants. It hath a very fruitfull ground, Floods, delightfull Riuer, Fishes, Meadows, Pastures, abundance 60 of wilde Beasts, Harra, Goates, Beares, Vineyards, Orchards, Territories, Champaignes, Townes, Villages, Hamlets, many and large Granges. *Taurica* or the *Peninsula*, is spread in Latitude after a sort into a circle; in some places, the distance of one or two dayes journey, but in most places about the quantitie of one.

The

The Cables and Sea-cities, and the rest of all the *Peninsula*, which are described in their order, with many Villages and Hamlets of *Grecke Christians*, except the Holis and Sea-townes, and many lffe suspected walled Townes in *Percepia* and *Cassiana*, and a few Villages of *Grecke Christians*, are subiect to the *Turkish* Emperour, and all obey his beehits, and are kept with a sure Garrison. The *Peninsula*, which lyes in the middle from the East and South against *Percepia*, hath a milde winter and temperate ayre. For in the end of December is the beginning of winter, but in the mid of Februarie the sharpness of winter, which is more snowe then cold, or subiect to Ice, neither yet doth that endure about three dayes together, neither continues it any longer then to the beginning of March. Therefore about the beginning of the Spring, and alway in a hot Autumne the ayre is very contagious.

10 In *Brassiliana*, the *Sarmaten*, *Oczacuenis*, and *Bialograden*, Plaines are situate betweene *Hispania* or *Bogus*, *Tyra* or *Nesher*. From the North toward *Nepes* or *Borishthens* and *Bogus*, are somewhat plaine and champaign grounds, but from the West towards the Riuer *Nesher* and *Pruth* or *Hierusa*, more wooddie and hilly. *Poldia*, *Camennia*, and *Madalana* betweene the *Byzantine* *Nepes* and *Pruth*, euery where border on the middle *Tschina* and *Bialograd*, which is by the Lake *Udun* or *Ohidun*, and the *Euxine Sea*, on the West confine on the Plaines, and on the *Euxine Sea*, on the South *Bialograd*, *Kiba*, and the Riuer *Danubius*. *Oczacuenis* hath on the North *Borishthens*, (into which *Bogus* there discharge it selfe) and sparious Plaines, on the South the *Euxine Sea*, and the ouerflowing Salt meere *Berezanica*, from the West the adioyning Riuer *Nesher*.

20 Further, that Continent which is betweene *Oczacuenis* and *Borishthens* in the falshon of an Ile, hath into the West *Borishthens*, as though it were betweene *Borishthens*, the Fen *Meuta*, and the *Euxine Sea*; on the North the Riuer *Tanais* or *Danubius*, on the South the *Euxine Sea*, and that *Isthmus* or Continent, but beyond *Oczacuenis* and *Borishthens*, as far as *Percepia*, that Continent is verie narrow in many places: but beyond *Percepia* to the Caffian Offense, a ranke foyle, and all champaign and plaine: For in that neck of Land almost all the *Percepian* and *Offense* *Tartars* feed their Horses and Cattle, and live there all Summer and Autumne. That Continent or *Isthmus* from *Oczacuenis*, as far as *Offense*, for there it is limited, is stretched out in Longitude, as is manifest out of the *Tartars* Diaries, more then a hundred miles, but in Latitude not after an equall manner. For it is larger, as well beyond *Percepia*, as toward *Oczacuenis*, or *Borishthens*.

The *Taurians* or *Chersoneson Tartars*, who are now called *Percepian* or *Crim*, doe certainly seeme by the ancient Writers of the *Schythians* to haue been the *Isanogenes*, and to haue had their originall and appellation from *Rho*, or the Riuer *Folga*. Moreover between the famous, deepe, and great Riuer of the North *Tanais*, or *Dan* and *Borishthens*, it manifestly appeare that they passed by little and little into the Plaines, and a hundred and fixtie yeeres since, or very little more to haue come into *Taurica* or the *Peninsula*.

The stocke of the *Chans*, or of their *Tartar* Princes was anciently called *Cyngis* race, from *Cyngis*, whom was *Loebtanus* a certaine *Chan*, of whom all the *Chans* take their originall. Hee was the 10 first Emperour of *Taurica* or *Chersonesus* in *Taurica*, or the *Peninsula*. They haue procured the *Sirien*, *Bachinen*, *Ungarian*, and other *Kinaz* or Dukes, from whom are the *Cataci*, who are the *Chan* Countellours and chiefe Officers, who also marry the *Chan*s daughters and sisters. The *Plani*, which are anciently deniged of the *Chan* blood, and (if the lawfull posteritie faile) succeed in the Regall Throne. It is very true that the *Murder* are the noblest of each, now also their posteritie remaine & other warlike *Tartars*, of whom it is certaine he had diuers Hords, of some ten thousand a piece in his company passed into *Taurica*, or the *Peninsula* with him.

The *Chans* predecessors sincerely and constantly much esteemed the *Grecian* Chieftaines, who inhabited at *Mancopia*, and *Ingermura*, and the *Italian Genes*, who dwelt at *Lambold* and *Capha*, as also the other people they found in the *Peninsula*, with whom they had friendship, peace, and league, vntill they were overcome by the *Turkes*, and consumed in warre: they had also many yeeres common money which I haue seene there.

30 But *Selim*, Emperour of the *Turkes*, compelled and subjugated *Mechmet* *Geremius* *Chan* to his *Selim* Empire. Those Nations being weakened, almost all the Cables and Cities of the *Martime Peninsula*, being taken and possessed: *Sachmet*, the Prince of the *Tauagien Tartars* put him to flight, with a singular and memorable laughing haue destroyed his *Armes* of a hundred thousand. Since which time the *Chans* acknowledge, as chiefe, the Empire of the *Turkes*. The *Viceroys*, or Princes of the *Tartars* of *Taurica*, or the *Peninsula* are constituted by them, they receive thence a Banner, and giue their sonnes and brothers *Soldans* for perpetual pledges to the *Turkes*.

60 Notwithstanding, after the ancient custome of their Nation, they make a *Galg* or successor to the Empire (as the *French* doe their *Dolphines*) the brother or eldest sonne and more sufficient, who hath the greatest sway in peace and warre, but the *Chans* themselves perpetually depure and elect them, but with the approbation of the *Tartar* Nobles. And if also any diffention or war be raised between the *Soldans* or the *Chan* about the Empire, the *Turkish* Emperour neglects not to dispatch

Election of the
Chan.

Sackiegereim.

Atalici.

Hamiani.

Wives and
children.

Arabic letters.

Mahometan
Religion.Government
and Lawes.
The Gall and
Rigs.No Attornies
nor Lawyers;
they plead
their owne
causes.

dispatch the *Soldans* pledge, with an Armie and Standard into *Taurica* or the *Peninsula*: and it is sufficient for him to be Prince, the *Chan* and *Sultan* being appeased or forced to go away by warre, for which cause he hath alwaies many *Lancers* in *Taurica*, or the *Peninsula*.

The election of the *Chan*, after the ancient custome of the Nation, did whilesome consist in the free suffrages of the *Dukes*, *Murzas*, and noblest *Tartars*. Furthermore, for their frequent discord and bidious warres which were occasioned by the *Nogai Tartars* bordering on *Taurica*, or the *Peninsula* about the Empire, *Sackiegereim* and *Doolzigereim*, being *Chan* over the *Tartars*, having by subtilty destroyed the more noble and potent *Tartars*, and cast them into fetters, began absolutely to domineere over the *Tartars*; and by force to draw the election to their posterity, the Emperour of the *Turkes* syding them.

But if the *Chan* will not constitute his brother *Galga*, but his owne sonne, as it often fortunes, by reason of those discords and reciproall butcheries among themselves, hee circumvents craftily and subtilly all the *Soldans* brothers, and courtly makes them away. Yet most of them flye to the *Turke*, of whom they are bountifullly entertained and comforted, and receive a perpetuall stipend of him.

The *Soldans* younger sonnes of the *Chans* are educated and tutored by the *Tartars*, or more noble *Murzas*, lest that when they are as mans estate, by reason of their pluralitie, diffusions, or warres might arise : for each *Chan* acknowledge a supreme Dominion, and when they are growne up, those that are fit are set over certain *Tartar* troupes, and allure many voluntary *Tartars* unto them, notwithstanding they make leaders of the *Nogai Tartars*, and remunerate with monyes and hostis most of their parents, whom they shew some speciall and substantiall. Very often also through feare of treacheries or seditions among themselves, being ayded by their Gardians favour, they flye unto the *Christian* or bordering Princes of their people.

The *Chan* hath *Atalike* Counsellors, whom they so terme from the care of their women, parents, or their wives, by whom those *Sultans* also are continually from their youth educated and provided for: hee hath *Hamiani*, who are the Agents for extorck Princes affaires with him, and also perpetuall Court Officers. But especially hee conuocates to him the *Dukes*, *Ceraci*, *Plani*, and the nobler *Murzi*, and alwayes vlieth to consult with them in weightie affaires. Hee hath principall and meet men Minims of his Court, whose seruice hee vlieth in his Ambassages, and in his diuers other necessary buisineses and employments, who also are exalted to Counsellours and Court Officers. He alwayes maintaines those, who are chosen out of the more renowned and illustrious *Tartarian* youth, who are conseruat in his Court by monethly interchangeably, and when they are made fit, are honoured with those dignities. Yet hee is chiefly and most delighted with the *Cerecians*, *Nogaians* and *Petegereim*, who are very industrious, valiant, bold, and warlike. On the principall hee bestowes honourable gifts and annuall pensions, and of these his Court is alwayes replenished. In the Princes Court, the better reposed and nobler *Tartars*, are very richly and ciuilly decked, not to pride or superfluous luxurie, but for necessitie and decencie. For they are so inriched by the lazie cowardice, and especially by the irreligious impiety of the neighbouring *Christians*, through making often inroads, and getting rich booties; that the greater nobles of them in priuate wealth and domestick splendor, are little inferior to the *Turkes*. They may haue as many women by the *Mahometical* Law as they will, and for the most part, they buy wives of the *Petegereim*, which although they sustaine and maintaine, not proudly, but very comely and ciuilly according to the country guise, but those by whom they haue issue very honourably and gorgeously. They deliuer their sonns in their infancie to be instructed in the *Arabic* Letters, but they keepe not their daughters at home, but commit them to the needfull blood to be provided for. They place their sonnes growne to mans age in the *Chan*, or *Sultans* seruice, their marriageable daughters in wedlock to the more honourable and nobler *Tartars* or *Turkes*.

Those *Tartars* are *Mahometans*, and haue Priests and *Moscher*, they vlie the *Chaldick* or *Arabic* Letters, which they haue receiued somewhat corrupted from the *Turke*, although before they came into *Taurica* or the *Peninsula*, they seeme to haue bene a sauage and brutish Nation, and of very sauage conditions, which now also is very pernicious by the rusticks: for they wanted then altogether those Lawes, Rites, Letters, and Manners. But the *Tartars* being taught by the *Turke* humanitie, and that false worship, the more nobler now generally professe hospitalitie.

Law or Iustice, is administrated in the Towns or Cities of the *Chan* & other *Sultans* among the *Tartars* after the *Mahometane* Law. There are alwayes presbiterrall *Cadi* or Iudges in the Villages. *Begi* or Iudices, who heare and decide particular iniurias: but causes of life, blood, theft, which we call Criminall, or of Land, which we call Ciuill or Officiall, the *Chan* himselfe decides with his Counsellours. In refusing of which they call no Lawyer, nor vlie tricks of law, calumnies, excommunications nor proccurations. The *Tartars* or Strangers, of meane condition, lay open their felons very freely their wrongs before the Iudges and *Chan*, of whom they are alwayes heard and speedily discharged, for at any time any may haue access to him. When hee comes in publicke, men of the basest degree are not excluded, but being sence of the *Chan* are examined, to wit,

if they haue any fault, that they relate it. For they doe not only performe great obedience to the Lawes : they adore and venerate their Princes in Gods stead. All spiritual Iudges (after *Mahomet* Law) are accounted among them for Saints, men of all equitie & integrity, fidelitie and opinion. The Princes and Magistrates excuse and dispatch whatsoeuer is bidden or commanded suddenly and faithfully, with alacrity, surprise, gentleness, and great feare. They are far from controuersies, or imitations of *Turkes*, unnecessary and personall brawlings, enuy, hatred, filthy excesses, luxury, and ambition in their viduals and array. I abode their nine months, neither heard I Criminall or Ciuill A&t to haue happened among them, or any composition by reason of enmitie.

In the Princes Court they weare not, nor at home Swords, neither Bowes nor any other weapon; except Wayfarers and Trauellers, to whom they are very courteous and friendly. They are alwayes secure from Spoyleys; but except they keepe perpetuall watch, they are less safe from High-way-theues, and Night-robbers, who steale nothing from them but their Hories.

Although they haue a rich foyle, yet very few Gentlemen, or Plebeians prouide for the house hold estate, for many neither till nor sow their ground: they abound with Hories, Camels, Oxen, Kine, Sheepe and Flockes of all Cattle, and thereof liue. Yet the Gentlemen haue bread, flesh, meate, distilled wine and *Methheglin*; but the rusticks want bread, but vlie stampes Milles, and macerated with milke and water, which they vulgarly call *Casse*, for meate (or for drinke they vlie Mares milke, and cheese. They feed on Camels, Hories, and Oxen vnprofitable for burthen, and kill them when they are about to dye, sometimes eate lesse flesh. The Gentle-

men dwell not in the Plaines, but in the Villages of *Taurica* or the *Peninsula*. They which are neere Woods liue in them, although many doe not possesse proper Villages; yet they haue peculiar Lands and Manors. They vlie the *Fingarian*, *Kassian*, *Meschemian*, *Valachian*, or *Moldavian* slaues, which they keepe, and whereof they haue great plentie, as beasts to euery worke. Their houses are of Timber, much after the *Turkish* fashion; but the *Greek* *Christians*, who are in a few Townes, labour and till their grounds as beasts. The *Tartars* serue the *Chan* or *Tartarian* Nobles, being hired at no price, but only that they may haue meate and apparel: but the rest, and the greatest part of them are alwayes idle. In the Cities or Townes are very few Merchants: but

some few practise Mechanick crafts, and some Merchants or Artificers are found there, either *Christian* Slaues or *Turkes*, *Armenians*, *Tatars*, *Cerecians*, *Petegereim*, (which are *Christians*) *Physicians*, or *Cyngars*, men of obscure and lowest degree. Those *Tartars*, which liue in the Plaines beyond *Parasopia*, or in the *Peninsula* haue no woods, euery where digge Wells. They vlie in flead of Wood Beasts dung, which their Bond-mengather in the Fields, and dry in the Sunne, and houses of the same forme, whereof mention is made in the former description. Those *Tartars*, which are Slaues and Subiects of the *Chan*, *Sultans*, and other Noble-men, are drudges, and alwayes keepe and pasture their Lords innumerable Herds of Cattle; and although they goe from place to place, into the Plaines and Pastures, in several Streets, Hamlets, Townes, or Villages, by separated troupes (or herds) whereof they beare the Names, and of their Masters, so that men

may easily find there, those *Tartars* Slaues which they keepe to buy.

The *Chan* hath alwayes by the leagues and agreements, an annuall Donatone of the King of *Polonia*, the great Duke of *Lithuania*, the *Palatine* of *Moldavia*, and *Cerecians*, and *Nogaians* *Tartars*. The Legats, Orators, Messengers, Truchmen of those Princes come to him yearly, whome sometimes he entertaines benignely and bountifullly, but sometimes receiues, misuses, and detaynes a great while after a more brutish manner. When therefore they come into *Parasopia*, one of the *Chan* men meets them in the Summer, in the Meadow or Plain, where they rest vnder a Tent: in the Winter they are opportunely and commodiously conuayed into the Village of *Alma*, or *Bacchasanum* more lately bordering on the Towne of the Kings Palace. But after they are lodged there, they are saluted by the Counsellours or Seruants of the Court, in the

Chan name, which procure them refreshing or viduals, two oxen, or one, some sheepe, bread, wine, and barley, not liberally, but in a kind of hospitalitie, and moderately sufficient for once. But when they are called to the *Chan*, hee heares them, the *Soldans*, *Tuimans*, *Vians*, *Murzas*, chiefe Counsellours, and many other Minims of his Court and principall *Tartars* being present, they are conducted only by one man to the *Chan* gate, but are brought in by two Counsellours.

When as therefore they are entred in, they reuerence the *Chan*, after the ancient custome of the Nation, and hauing saluted him on bended knees declare their misdeeds, and are admitted to eate with him. They are honoured with cups and goblets gilded and embossed with gems, filled with Mead or Methheglin reached from the *Chan* hand, after the order of that people, in signe of clemencie and beneuolence, which they drinke on bended knees. And when they are dispatched, the *Chan* invites them againe to Feast. The Feast being ended, they goe backe to the Palace doores, and are rewarded with Silke Vests wadded with Gold as low as the ankles, prepared after the guise of the Nation, with one Horse or two, not seldome with Captiues of their owne people. And so attired with those Vests they returne againe to the *Chan*, and render thanks to him for his hospitalitie and liberality, and hauing saluted him, depart from the Ban-

Great peace-
silence to the
flame of
alwaye lawing
Gospellers.

No daily vte
of weapons.

* Aquatic.
Meat and
drinke.

Slaues

Merchants

Tartar slaues.

Tribute.
Embassadors.

Alma.
Bacchasanum.

Audience.

Manner of redemption.

Artificially etc.

Their Horses.

Their Armes.

Store of Horses.

Flight-fayned.

times promised by the Prisoners: but the Agent who well knows the craft and deceitfulness of the *Tartars*, finds fault with the captives foolishness, and tell the *Tartars* that they are neither noble nor rich, and that they knew not, nor will ever be able to pay the price, and as though they were neither moved with Pity nor Religion reject them. Yet the Agent is diligent that they be inscribed in the Catalogue, and if they have a purpose to ransom any with their own money, they hold it expedient to labour *Jews* or *Tartars*, and other Merchants being corrupted with easier rate, Nothing therefore is more frequent to the captives, then to promise and offer to the *Tartars* this price, for which they are sold to the *Turks*, *Jews*, and stranger Merchants, and others beyond the Sea, or a little more, or twice so much, if they be able to pay for the most part, they cannot learn of the Rusticks or others what they are, as the *Tartars* are for the little. Neither doe they sell them to strangers, but rather to the Agent of their Nation: but if they are not redeemed by the Agent, they command them to write to their Parents or Kinsfolke. Also many captives are delighted with the exchange of *Tartar* captives, in providing for and freeing of whom, the *Tartars* exhibit and show farre greater piete, friendliness and care, then our *Christians*. For disrepecting all they first demand their *Tartar* captives in exchange of ours, which often promising the same and not able to performe it, vie to bring upon themselves a farre greater discommoditie. For they ask of them almost an unsuitable summe, wherewith they prize their *Tartars*, which when they are not able to pay, they sell them to barbarous Nations over the Sea for perpetual slaves, for a great price as they can, and very often at an exorbitant rate, or if the *Tartars* are wealthy, they condemn them to perpetual slavery.

The *Chan* hath all his *Tartar* Armie gathered of Horsemen, except some hundred Gunners *Janissaries*, Footmen, which are either *Turkish* Auxiliaries, or some of his owne which he main-
taines. He is accustomed to carrie with him some smaller Ordnance to warre. From *Turkey* or the *Peninsula* the *Paragians*, and *Crimis*, *Osmanis*, *Nogarians*, *Cerecians*, are Tributaries and Souldiers for aide, the Duke of the *Circassians*, *Petigarians* are Stipendiaries and Mercenaries, and are wont to goe voluntaries to the *Chan* warres. The *Ozluaniens* and *Bulgarians*, also they who by the continual counsaits which they have with the *Turkish* Emperour, sometimes also the *Dobruas* *Tartars* and Inhabitants of *Danubius*, by the command of the Emperour of the *Turks* follow him to warre. All that Host collected out of these *Tartars*, is wont to make the number of a hundred and twentie thousand, sometimes also thurte thousand more, but not seldom to exceed that Summe. I have bin truly informed by many credible *Christians*, which often follow the *Chans* warres, and by some captived Gentlemen of our Nation, who have many times seen his Armie.

All have according to their *vse* *Tartarian* Horses, neat, excellent, stomackfull, swift, and indifferent good and commodious to vndergoe great labours. The *Chan*, most of the *Seldis*, and *Tartar* Nobles *vse* in warre *Turkish*, *Caramanian*, *Arabian*, and other *Asian*, *Tartarian*, and the best Indian Horses. The swiftest Horses are accounted among them at a great and almost infinite price. They always feed them Summer and Winter in the Plainses of *Tartary* or the *Peninsula*, but very often as farre as the Rivers *Boristhenes* and *Tanais*: the Gentlemen nourish at home very few Horses, only for their virgint occasion, not for any arrogance or luxurie. They seldom put their lades and vnprofitable Horses for riding in the Waggon, for they doe all their business with Camels and Oxen.

The *Tartars* *vse* their ancient weapons, a two-edged Sword, or *Tartarian* Cymiter somewhat long, and a *Turkish* Dart, or a *Persian*, shorter and broader of the best Iron, and well wrought; a peculiar *Tartarian* Bow, along Arrow, and swift; a Quiver, sometimes a short Spear after the old guise of their people. They goe with Breast-plates and Helmes, and in *Persian* or *Moslemian* Armes, wherewith they abound being enriched by the spoyle of *Christians*. They have ancient Saddles and Bridles after the custome of the Nation, very sitting, not for pride or superfluitie: the Nobles have them prepared very elegantly, strongly and commodiously for their *vse*. But most in the *Tartar* Armie are altogether vnarmed and cowards, and they carrie with them to warre by reason of their great Host, almost an infinite number of Horses. For a *Tartar* even of the basest condition will scarcely be content with one or two Horses, but three, four, and more, which he may have always ready with him at his hand. Therefore the Armie of the *Tartars* is made so numerous, great and terrible, which when it is seenne asse off, is deemed by our men almost an infinite and innumerable Host.

Now when the *Tartarian* Armie is come into their enemies Country, the *Tartars* ranke not themselves in bands or troupes, but all set forward and proceed leisurely. They dispose many Watchmen in all parts throughout their companies, which they make greater or lesser for their supply, but after that the foremost of them have decayed their enemy, they counterite a flight, that they may more easily allure them into those troupes, which they have laid in ambushments, and

and so over-charge him. But when they crie a great Armie of enemies, they make a retraite quickly and speedily to their Armie, Rankes, and Banners.

There is great celeritie in constituting and governing their troupes, seeing that they are not ruled only by the aduertizements of the Generals and Prefects of their Regiments, but also by the blow of Whips, as is the long continued practice of the Nation: and they are subject to a pike, a becke, that they are very easily brought into their Regiments, whensoever it is necessary.

The *Chan* is always fortified in warre, with a band of some thousands of noble and courageous *Tartars* in number, some hundreds of *Janissaries*, Footmen, and some small Ordnance. In the *Chan* Regiment a very great white Mare's tayle, and a piece of Greene and Red Sülke of the *Turkish* Emperour is carryed before on a great Pike for the Standard. There appeare in the troupes of the other *Tartars*, many Antients and Emblems of various colours.

The more famous Souldiers, and they which are notable in reputation, dexteritie and warlike Prowes, and have achieved in warre some Noble Success and Enterprize, are greatly honoured by the *Chan*, *Seldis*, *Krimians*, and *Moslems*. And that respect is had to them, that the *Chan* doth not only reward them with very many great benefits and such liberality, as he can shew them, but also is so mindful of their deserts and merit, that he assigns them and their successors in the Assembly, and at the fashion is, at his Table a perpetual place of honour among his more noble *Mamluks*. That dignity among the *Tartars* is the greatest and Hereditary, for they going to warre able and experienced men which possesse that place, are dignified by the *Chan*, and with the glorie of leading the Troupes. The *Chan* also frees some *Tartar* captives with the permutation of captives, and in ransoming others he largely powres out his owne Treasure, and willingly comforts them as he is able.

CHAP. XXII.

DITHMAR BLESENS his Voyages, and Historie of Iles and Greenland.

IN the year 1565. two *Hamburg* Merchants ships determined to voyle to *Island*, the Mariners, by an ancient custome, desirous to have a Minister of Gods Word with them, commend this care to the Ministers of the Church of *Hamburg*, and intreat them to provide them a Minister. One Doctor *Pedrus de Erzen* was then Superintendent of the Church of *Hamburg*. While therefore I layd at *Hamburg*, expecting my Library from *Rosbach*, I entred into some familiaritie with *Paulus*, and the rest of the Ministers. This Office was bestowed upon me, which I undertooke the more willingly, because I had a longing desire to know strange things, and diuers Countries, yielding to their persuation. Taking ship therefore the tenth of April, we sayled upon the Coast of *England* and *Scotland*, and passing beyond the *Islands Orades*, in number fifteen, whereof the most part were vnmanured for the barrenesse; *Ferme* and *Hotland* are inhabited: Here we saw a very high Rocke, which in the top representeth the head of a cooled Monke, where also there is a safe Harbour against all winds, and this Monke delugeth many from present danger. The fourteenth of June we decayed *Island*, which seemes asse off, like winter clouds. The next day we attained the Land and Haven of *Hafsfjord* toward the South.

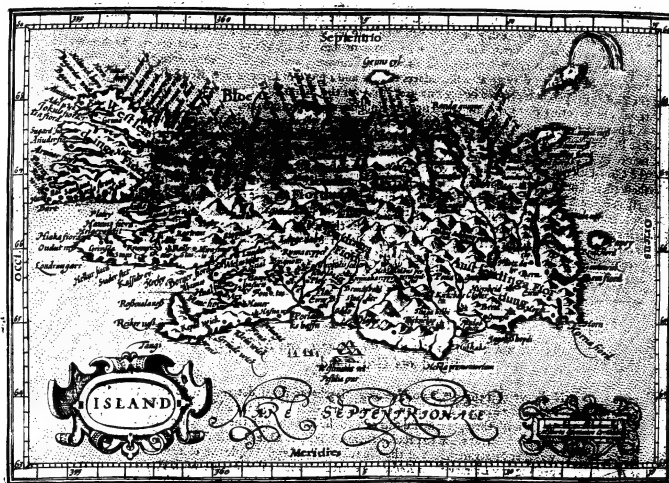
Island is a rough, hilly and snowie Land, which is supposed to bee twice bigger then *Sicilia*: it is thought to be a hundred leagues in length, which also *Olavus Magnus* testifies in his cleven Bookes. It hath the name of the perpetual Ice, and coldnesse of the Ayre, which is there most sharpe: for eight whole months it is troubled with Ice: It burneth notwithstanding with heat and inward fire in many places. The extremitie of cold increaseth this heat in the bowels of the earth, which cold continueth the greater part of the year (a few Summer months excepted) and so bindeth the pores in the vpper part of the Earth, that it can have no free vent. And this *Island* hath so great a Latitude from the Equator, that the Arctic Circle diuides it in the middle, that is to say, fixtie five degrees and a halfe. The *Islands* called *Ethudis*, are adjacent to the North part of this *Island*. But whether that be of these, which *Ptolemeus*, and ancient Writers call *Thule*, or rather *Island*, that great *Island*, I dare neither affirme, nor altogether deny, because there is no land found where *Ptolemeus* set *Thule*. Now, the later Writers make another manner of longitude about *Scotland*, and the bordering *Islands*, then *Ptolemeus* ever thought.

I will draw the Descents of this Nation from their first original, following the trace of the *Island* Chronicles. In the yeere of Christ 900. in the time of *Adalbrand* Bishop of *Braem*, carycaine of the Nobilitie of East *Frisia*, and of the Countrey of *Brume*, desirous to discover strange Countries toward the North, set sayle from *Weser*, and passing beyond the *Orades*, found this *Island* almost in the vtmost skirts of *Europe*, yet habitable, but full of Snow: which they called *Island*, for the coldnesse and roughnesse thereof. And when they had sayled further towards the North about two hundred leagues, they found another *Island*, which (by contraries) they

Their Discipline.
The principall Enemies.
Mamluks.

In the published this
Island 1565.

HONDIVS his Map of ISLAND.



Grondland. Many ordinary
in whole Seas.

they named *Grondland*. Endeavouring to sayle further towards the North, through the frozen or congealed Sea, being long hindered by the Ice, at length with great labour getting out, they fell into whirle-poolles of the Sea, and thicke darknesse.

In these whirle-poolles and darknesse, this Fleet (one only Ship excepted) perished. They that were preferred, after many long labours and perils, sayling through the *Tartarian Sea*, came into a very hote Countreay, and entering into a large Bay, they went on shore upon the next Land. And when the Inhabitants had hid themselves in secret places, by reason of the great heate and forching of the Summe, they saw Gold, and other precious things lye heere and there, without a guard. And when they had carryed away as much as they would, and laded the Ship, they saw some pursue them with Dogs of strange bignesse. One, who was hindered and laden with a prey that hee could not escape, was torne in peeces of the Dogges. The rest, after long sayling, shunning these Whirle-poolles, arrived in *Muscovia*, thence by the *Balticke Sea* returning vnto *Breme*, they brought backe these tidings to *Alexander* the Bishop, with part of the prey.

Much about this time, the *Norwegians*, by example of the *Helmetians* in *Julius Caesars* time, are supposed to have come out of *Norway*, who then long time possessed that part of *France*, which now also is call *Normandie*. And when they had performed great attempts by Sea and Land against the *Britains*, they did not only scour the Sea by hostile incursions, but also expelled the *Saxons*, who at that time came into *Italy*, and fought to seat themselves in *Calabria* and *Apulia*. After they brought Colonies Northward into *Holland*, *Ferry*, and *Island*: which way, they learned of the *Bretons*, by means of the Nobilitie of *Frisland* forefard. And even the very pronunciation of their speech doth testify, that they came out of *Norway*: for the pronunciation of the *Islanders* doth agree with the antient Inhabitants of *Norway*. For vpon the Sea coast of *Norway*, especially where the famous *Hauen* and Citie of *Bergen* is, by reason of the relict and familiarity with the *Germanes* and *Danes*, the Language is changed.

of

Of the Islanders Religion.

IN the yeere of Christ 1398. *Waldemar*, the second of that name gouerned the *Danish* Kingdome, whereunto *Norway* was added, whose pollicentie held it, vntill *Eriks* Duke of *Pomerania*, and *Christopher* *Bauer*. Vnto this *Waldemar*, all the *Archieian* Colonies obeyed, so that now, vnder that *Waldemar*, the *Islanders* were first instructed in the Christian Religion, when before they had worshipped strange Gods. And when almost all Christian people, in that lamentable darknesse and title of a Church, as it were by Witchcraft deceived, were detrayed in most deepe bonds of superstition; it could not bee but they, who were furthest removed from the societie of Learned men, and dwelling vnder an vnciuill and barbarous Climate, should fall into most foule Idolatrie, when sometimes (as hereafter shall bee declared) they had Deuils to serue them, as familiar as domestical seruants. But after *Luther* began to bee knowne, *Christians* the King of *Denmarke* procured purer Doctrines to himselfe, and purged the Churches in the Kingdome of *Denmarke*, *Norway*, and all the Lands subiect vnto him; sending Ministers into *Island*, to sow the seede of the Gospell there. Hee sent a Printer also out of *Denmarke*, to let forth the Bible, the common places of *Philip Melancthon*, the Workes of *Vrbanns Regius* and others, in the vulgar Tongue, to the Pastors who were ignorant of the *Latine*, as at that time almost all of them were. And also sent for fit and apt young men out of *Island*, whom hee maintayned in the *Haffian* Vniuersitie at his owne coole, and gaue them charge ouer Churches and Schooles.

The Christian
care of King
Christian.

King *Waldemar*, as soone as they should professe Christian Religion in *Island*, ordained them two Bishops, one in *Scalbolden* in the East part, and another in *Helen* in the West, whose Successors: at this day retayne nothing but a shadow, and a bare Title, for they haue no other reumes but Butter and Fish. But when that reformation (whereof I spake) was made by King *Christian* in the Churches of *Island*, one of the Bishops in *Scalbolden*, conspiring with the people, reiects the Doctrines of the Gospell, and making a rebellion they kill the Kings Lieutenant. The yeere following, which was 1535. the King sent a Noble man of the Order of Knighthood, one *Paul Hufelt* (whom I saw an old man in *Denmarke*) furnished with a Fleet, Souldiers, and Munition into the Island. The seditious being slaine, hee reneweth the reformation of the Doctrines of the Gospell, and returneth into *Denmarke*, leaving a certayne Noble man to take charge of the Church and Island.

Two Bishops
in Island.

The greatest man in *Island* at that time was one *Tadde Bonde*. Hee, after the Kings Arme was depared, conspiring with the principall men (whom by his Authoritie hee drew to take his part) revolted from his Allegiance, and perswaded the rest of the Islanders to follow. They meete together in a place called *Wale*, and conspiring to rebel, and cast off the Kings subiection, they impart their counsels together, and *Tadde* had his pfections not in one place, and many re- tayners, and for these causes hee thought they could not easily bee suppressed. The Bishop, who dwelt in the East, had a speciall care to acquaint the Kings Lieutenant with all that was done (for the Lieutenant was absent in the West part of that Land) and the Bishop hated *Tadde* a long time. For in that first Rebellion, hee had falli accused him to the Lieutenant as guiltie, and author of the Rebellion. This accusation only brought great and extreme calamitie vpon him.

Tadde Bonde
Wale.

The Lieutenant being certified what was done, hee perswaded by his instruments, some of the Complices of the faction, to continue in their Allegiance, propounding rewards and punishments. Then many of them when they saw the greatnesse of the danger, leauing him, came humbly to the Lieutenant, and begged pardon, and obayne it. *Tadde* therefore is adiuaged an Enemy, both of the King and of his Countreay, they promise therefore by an Oath and giuing of their Faith, that they will pursue him.

Then hee, through feare of the danger, with a few of his Domestickes which hee had gathered together, kept himselfe at the foote of *Hokeheuld*, but being circumcited they were all slaine, and hee taken. They that tooke him, brought him to the Bishop, to commit him to Prison, but hee refused to receiue him. Therefore they draw him to another certayne man, of those who had the chiefe place in Iustice, neither would hee receiue him, fearing the hatred of the people. There was at that time there a certayne *Islander*, *Lenas* by name, a man of courage. I know (sayth hee) to whom I will commit him, that will diligently keepe him, and forthwith hee slew him and buried him. And to the Sedition was appeased. And from that time vntill this day, the Word of God is taught amongst Barbarous men, after the manner of the Countesse of *Angulna*.

60

The Life and Manners of the Islanders.

IN the whole Land, there are three sorts of men, who are held in any reckoning and account: Three sorts of the common people, by reason of the Garcie of Ships wherewith they fish, make them- selves slues to the richer. Of those three sorts, the first is of them whom they call *Lothmaders*, that

Twelve Justices each yeere

that is to say, *Men of Justice* for *Loeb* in their language, signifieth *Law*. These men administer Justice, and there are many of them, but twelue of them only haue the yeerely charge of Justice. All men obey their Iudgement and Decrees. Another sort is of them, who are called *Bonden*: They are in the place of Nobles, and as euery one of them is richest in Shipping, and Cattle, so hee hath much Fishers, and followers. This only power they know. The third sort is of Bishops and Ministers of the word of God, of the which many are found euery where throughout the whole land.

Strength.

There are many of the *Islanders* very proud and high minded, especially by reason of the strength of body which they haue. I saw an *Islander*, who easily put an *Hamburg* Tunne full of Ale to his mouth, drinking off it as if hee had had but one small measure.

Habit.

Both Sexes in *Island* haue the same habite, so that by the garments you shall not easily discern whether it bee Man or Woman. They want Flaxe, except it bee brought vnto them by our Country-men. The Women kinde there are very beautiful, but ornaments are wanting.

Superstition and Witchcraft.

The whole Nation of the *Islanders* is much giuen to Superstitions, and they haue Spirit's familiarly seruing them. For they onely are fortunate in Fishing, who are raised vp by night of the Deuill to goe a fishing.

Night Riots.

And although the Ministers of the Gospell vie all diligence in dissuading them from this impietie; yet this wickednesse hath taken roote, and thicketh so deeply in their mindes, and they are so bewitched of Satan, that they can admit no sound Doctrine and Dehortation. Yea, by the Deuils means, if you offer them money, they promise a prosperous wind and performe it, as I know, as hereafter shall bee spoken. The like *Olaus Magnus* saith of the *Finnlanders* in his third Booke. They hold Ships aloof by enchantment almost immovable, and that in a prosperous wind. And truly it is a wonder that Satan so sporteth with them. For hee hath shewed them a remedie in staying of their Ships, to wit, the Excrements of a Maide being a Virgin: if they annoynt the Prow, and certaine planks of the Ship, hee hath taught them that the Spirit is put to flight, and driuen away with this stinke.

Sweet Sacrifice for the Deuill, leuise terrible his lips.

In the rest of the carriage of their life, they thus behaue themselves. The Parents teach their male Children (euen from their child-hood) letters and the Law of that land, so that very few men are found throughout the whole land, but they know Letters, and many Women vie our letters, and haue also other characters, with the which they expresse some whole words of so theirs, which words can hardly bee written with our letters. They giue themselves to hardnesse, and fishing from their Infancie; for all their life consists in Fishing. They exercise not Husbandrie, because they haue no Fields, and the greatest part of their food consisteth in Fish, ysaueerie Butter, Milke and Cheese. In stead of Bread they haue Fish bruiled with a Stone. Their Drinke is Water or Whay. So they liue many yeeres, without medicine or Physician. Many of them liue till they be one hundred and fifty yeeres old. And I saw an old man who sayd hee had been liued two hundred yeeres. Nay, *Olaus Magnus* in his twentieth Booke sayth, that the *Islanders* liue three hundred yeeres.

Learning.

Fishing & fish. Drinke.

An old man or a loud lie.

Bread.

The greater part of *Islanders* hath neuer scene Bread, much lesse tasted it. If our men at any time sell them Meale or Corne, they mingle it with Milke, and lay it vp for a long time, as de-licates for Nobles. They call this sauce or mixture, *Drabbek*.

Commodities.

The *Germaines* that trade in *Island* haue a place in the Hauen of *Haffensford* fenced by Nature, where vnder Tents they set their Merchandise to sale, as Shoes, Garments, Glasses, Knives, and such kinde of Merchandise of no price. The *Islanders* haue Oyle molten out of the bowels of Fishes, knowne to our Tanners and Shoemakers: they haue Fish, Brimstone, white Foxe skinnies, Butter and other things. They barter all these for our Commodities, nor is the bargaine ratified, before they bee well stuffed with our Meat, Wine or Beere, together with their Wines and Children whom they bring with them, how many leuise they haue.

Whoores.

Comming into the Hauen, they haue their Daughters with them, which are marriageable: they after they haue required of our companie, whether they haue Wines at home, or not, they promise a nights Lodging for Bread, Bisket, or any other trifling things. Sometimes the Parents yield their Daughters freely, euen for a whole month, or as long as they stay. If shee prooue yield Child by that lying with her, the parents loue their Daughter better then before, and the Child being borne, they bring it vp some yeeres, while either the Father returne, or they giue it to their Sonne in law that shall bee, for a Dowrie with their Daughter, who doth not despise it, because it is borne of the *Germaine* blood. If any Virgin haue familiaritie with a *Germaine*, shee is honoured among them, and therefore shee is sought of many Suiters. And the time was before this, that Whoordes, which was without the degrees of Consanguinitie and Affinitie, had no Infamie. And although Preachers crie out against it, and the offenders are severely punished, yet they hardly abillaine.

Drinking and singing.

They lay not vp Wine and Beere which they buy of our Country-men, but quaffe it vp house by house by course with another, and that freely or for nothing. While they drinke, they sing the heroical ads of their ancestors, not with any certaine composed order or melody, but as it cometh in euery mans head. Neither is it lawfull for any one to rise from the Table to make

make water, but for this purpose the daughter of the house, or another maid or woman attendeth alwayes at the Table, watchfull if any becken; to him that bekeneth shee giues the chamber-pot vnder the Table with her owne hands; the rest in the meane while grunt like Swine, least any noise bee heard. The water being poured out, hee walther the Blason, and offereth his seruice to him that is willing, and hee is accounted vnciuill who abhorreth this fashion. They entertaine them that come vnto them with a kille, and they behold and looke each on other, if peradventure they may see Lice creeping on their garments, which greatly trouble them for want of linnen: if they see any, each taketh them from the other, and as often as he taketh away one, so often doth hee thanke him, with his head discovered, and this they doe one to the other, as long as they see one.

Losing women, Louisicout.

By night the Master of the house, with all his family, his wife and children lye in one room, covered with a cloth made of Wool which they make. And the like clothes they lay vnder them, without flax or hay put vnder. All of them make water in one chamber-pot, with the which in the morning they wash their face, mouth, teeth, and hands; they alledge many reasons thereof, to wit, that this makes a faire face, maintaineth the strength, confirmeth the sinewes in the hands, and preserveth the teeth from putrefaction. If Cattle perish in the waters or snow (which often cometh to passe) they say, they are killed of God, and are accounted among the delicates. And it happened in the yeere 1564, in a place called *Ackermis*, that in the month of Ianuary some Kine strayed in the darke, and the fogge was so great, and the depth of snow, that they could not be found. In the month of April they were first found vntained, and without any euill smell, and being distributed among the neighbours, some part was brought to the Gouverneur, with whom I lued at that time, which was not lawfull for him to despise, yet hee commanded it to bee giuen to the poore.

Lodging.

In the Winter time, before and after the *Solstium*, when the Sunne declineth, and being in *Sagittarius*, *Capricornus*, and *Aquarius*, it departeth from there, neither doth it ascend above the Horizon, while it touch *Piscis*, therefore they haue no light but of the Moone and Starres. In like manner about the Summer *Solstium*, when the Sunne ascendeth to *Gemini*, *Cancer*, and *Leo*, it neuer goeth downe vnder the Horizon, therefore at that time they haue no Night. In the Winter time, they keep their Beds many dayes, and exercise themselves in the game of Chesse, the invention whereof is due to *Xerxes* the Philosopher: the meane while the seruants bring them their meate dressed to their beds. They keepe Lampes of the oyle of Fish continually burning, others burne Tallow candles.

Long night.

Chesse.

In the month of Februarie, as soone as the Sunne ascends above the Horizon, by little and little the dayes grow longer, then they begin to Fish, whereof there is so great plentie, that it is scarce credible, for the Fishes which for three whole months swamme in the darke, as soone as they see a Fish of Tinne (tailen to sea) run, they runne to it in shoales, that they are not only drawne vp by the jawes, but whereof the Iron toucheth them. Having taken them, they plucke out the bones, and lay vp their bowels, and make Fat or Oyle of them. They heape vp their Fish in the open ayre, and the puritie of the ayre is such there, that they are hardened onely with the winde and Sunne, without Salt, better surely then if they were coned with salt. And if they kill any Beasts, they preuene the flesh without stinke or putrefaction, without salt, hardened onely with the winde.

Dried Fish.

Of the wonderfull standing Pooles, Lakes and Fountaynes in Island.

IN diuers places almost throughout the whole *Island* are Bathes and scalding Fountaynes, which I flow out in great abundance. This water as soone as it begins to coole, hath a Sulphurie substance in the top thereof. In these scalding waters, wherein I could scarce dippe my finger, red Dye-doppers are scarce asafe off; if you come neerer, they vanish, if you depart, they appeare againe, (soall day long (of any place) they play boe-peere with men. Whether they bee Dye-doppers indeed, I leaue it to others to decide.

Hot Bathes.

Dye-doppers.

At the West of this land, there is a huge smooke Lake, and very cold, which turneth all things that are cast into it into stones, and that in few dayes, and (which is worthy of great admiration) if you put a stick upright into the bottom, the lower part which is fluke into the earth, hath the resemblance and hardnesse of Iron after two dayes, that which was in the water hath the hardnesse and shew of a stone, the upper part which remained above the water, keepeth his wonted forme: And I twice proued the truth of this thing, but when I put the lower part (which represented Iron) to the fire that it might melt, it burned like a Coal.

Smoke-making waters.

There are two Fountaynes of most different qualitie, in a place upon the Sea coast, which is called *Turleky* Hauen, the one cold, the other hot; these Fountaynes by pipes are drawne into one place, and tempered for bathing, they make a most wholesome Bath. Not farre from these Fountaynes, there is a certaine other Fountayne, which bubbles forth liquor like Wax, which notably cureth the French disease, which is very common there.

French disease.

Not farre from the Hauen *Haffensford*, there is a cleft in a Rocke like to a Fountayne of water.

measurable depth. If you looke into it, you cannot see the water, but if you cast in a stone, half an hour after you shall heare it falling, as if it fell into brazen Vessels, and forthwith the water ariseth, and it is filled to the top of the Wells brimme, and forthwith the water withstanding no man dare touch, nor taste, neither doth it flow out, but so long after, as the stone which is cast in, sinketh to the bottome. There is another Lake in the middle of the Island, from which causteth forth a pestiferous fume, inasmuch as it killeth Birds flying ouer it with the poison.

Of the wonderfull Mountaynes in Island.

There are three Mountaynes in Island very admirable, the one is called the Mountayne of the *Crosse*, the other *Snowflake*. These two pierce the cloudes with their heigh, whole heads, or tops no man euer saw, nor are they euer seene without Ice and Snow; in those Lightnings and horrible Thunders are daily heard, when neuertheless, in the neighbouring Valleys the Aire is faire and cleere, as in Summer time. The third Mountayne lyeth on the North of the Island, and not very high, but it hath burned very many yeeres; with what fire or matter, it is unknowne; but seeing Brimstone is digged out of the Earth throughout the whole Land, it seemeth, that the Sulphuric matter is sometime inflamed. This Mountayne is not farre from the Sea, and the Sea on one side beates vpon it: it is called *Hecla*, sometimes it catcheth forth flame, sometimes fierie water, then blacke ashes and Pumis stones, in so great abundance, that it darke- neth the Sunne. No man also can dwell nere it by sixe mile, neither are there any pastures about it. Sometimes bold men, and such as regard not their liues, call stones into the hollow plaine blows, it catcheth backe the stones flung into it with an horrible noise and found: the common people thinke the soules of the damned to be tormented here: it is certayne that diuers and horrible spirits are obserued in this Mountayne and about it; for if a Battaille should be in any place, the *flanders*, especially they that layle and fish in the Sea nere to *Hecla*, know the day the Battaille fought, although they know not where it be done: for they see (as they reioice) the spirits going forth, and returning, and bringing foules with them. And such a storie is re- pteed all *flanders*.

A Fisherman sayling by *Hecla*, met with another ship, both had a prosperous wind, and when (after the manner of Saylers) he was demanded who hee was and of what place, hee answered that hee had the Bishop of *Breme* in his ship, whom hee would conuay to *Hecla*: and it was for truth. If any perish by *Hecla*, or otherwise dye, sometimes leauing their Friends and Acquaintance, they appeare very heauie, being demanded whither they goe, and from whence, they answer they are brought to *Hecla*, vnder a cruell Master the *Demill*, and so vanish. And they are so bewitched of Satan, that they thinke them the soules of the departed.

But because no man that is well in his wits, will thinke that Hell is in this Mountayne, yet it may be demanded, whence the Hill hath this matter, whereby it should bring forth so many yeres flames, so many ashes, and such abundance of Pumis stones? For wee see the most solid come to puffe that these flames shall once be extinguished: for the cause sayling, they deny that any effects can follow. But heere (what I thinke) I will freely speake, yet sauing other mens iudgements. It is manifest by watery Metcours, that there is a continual generation of water, by the vapours gathered together in the caviities of the Earth; which issue forth by Fontayns; but the efficient and materiall causes abiding perpetually, the effects also continually remayne: so also in the bowels of the Earth, there are certayne places, which by their owne nature draw vnto them a hote and dry exhalation, and that it reliques it into flames, ashes, and Pumis stones, which may easily be done in this Mountayne, by reason of the Sulphur matter, which is found in Island throughout the whole Land. And as Fontaynes send forth more abundance of water in the Winter time, then in the Summer, nay, some of them are dry, because matter failes; so it with this Mountayne: for sometimes matter failing, it hath neither flames, nor smoke, and all is quiet, whereby it appeareth that the matter and efficient cause faile. However it bee, I know this, that no man may come to the foot of the Mountayne without danger and feare, as hereafter shall be declared.

Strange Story.

The fower yeere I was in Island, the nine and twentieth of Nouember, about midnight in the Sea, nere *Hecla*, there appeared a flame, which gave light to the whole Island, so that all of vs astonied, wondred, and carefully expected the issue thereof: the elder sort and such as were skillfull in this matter, said, that this light came from *Hecla*: an hour after, the whole Land trembled, as it should have bene moued out of the place: after the Earthquake followed a horrible cracke, that if all warlike Ordnance had bene discharged, it had bene nothing to this terror. It cannot be thought, much lesse exprest by word, how horrible it was. Wee thought that the whole frame of the World would fall, and that the last Day was at hand: but it was

knowne afterwards that the Sea went backe two leagues in that place, and remayned dry.

About the beginning of Iuly at a certayn time of the yeere great store of Ice suddenly foeth to the Island about *Hecla*, and there goes a rumour through the whole Land, nay it is beleued, that the damned foules are tormented in this Ice by coule, in the Flame, in the Mountayne, and after in the Ice. This Ice for three whole moneths swimmeth only about *Hecla*. If you take a part of this Ice out of the Sea, and wrap it in a linnen cloth, and lay it vp in a Chett, it remayneth so long vnsmelted, as it swimmeth in the Sea; but if the Ice in the Sea vanish, which suddenly in one night happeneth, this appeareth not, nor leaueh any signe of moisture in the linnen cloth, which is not a hard thing for Satan to doe, to take away the Ice without moisture, to increase their incredulitie. *Olau Magnus maketh mention of this Ice in his cleuished Booke*. But because I determined to search out all things diligently, I layed not without great fauour vnto this Ice, and I obserued, that this Ice was violently cast against the Rockes by force of the winds, and so made a mournfull loud shree off, as if miserable howlings were heard there. Hereupon the *flanders* thinke the foules of the damned are tormented in this Ice.

Of the Riches of the *flanders*.

I haue said that Island was a rough and snowie Countrey, and besides, it is full of Rockes and stones; and so truly, that there is not a field in the whole Land: they haue not so much as Gardens, wherein they may haue Pot-herbes or Pulse: they know no kinde of Corne nor Apples, Peares, nor Cherries, nor any fruit of Trees. And which is almost incredible, they neither vie Bread nor Salt, yet they are well liking, and strong. There is no Cicie in the whole Land: they felidme haue two or three dwellings together. They haue their Cottages on the Sea side for fishing, and vnder ground by reason of the fierie windes.

There is no lone of money among them, for wares are changed for wares. Brimstone groweth on the South part, and almost throughout the whole Island, which is digged out in great abundance: they tell this stuffe purged for a small price. Mines of Gold or Silver, nor of any other metall they haue none. They vie Iron, but such as is brought vnto them. You shall scarce finde a man, who hath not Iron Nails in a Bagge, wherewith Hors-fhoes are fastened.

All their houses are vnder ground, for they haue no matter for building. There is not a tree in the whole Island, except the Birch-tree, and that in one place, which also exceedeth not the stature of a man in length, and that by reason of the vehemencie of the winds, that it cannot grow higher. This Birch-tree after the Summer Solstismon begins first to bud, the leaues haue a most sweet smell, and of so fragrant a sauour, that the *Germanes* put them in their Tents, and vpon their meats for a singular delight. Yet sometimes great abundance of Firre-trees from *Tartaria*, or elie-where carried by force of the waues and the Ice, arriued in Island. The chiefe vse of them is in building Cabbins vnder the ground: you shall scarcely finde a house out of the earth, by reason of the fierie winds, which sometimes ouerthrow Houses and their Riders. They haue great plenty of Butter, for the tarmes of the graffe for the Island graffe is so fat, that an Oxen after a certaine time are to be driuen from the Pastures, lest they burst. And it is so pleasing a feast, that our men lay it vp in their Chests with singular care for their garments.

The most part (for scarcity of Vessels) lay their Butter aside in the corners of their Houses (as we doe Lime or other matter) and that without Salt. They haue domestical cattle, as kine; but many of them are without homes. All their Horses are amblers & very fit for carrying of burdens. They haue very great sheepe, they keepe not a Hogge nor a Hen, for want of graine, if fodder or hay faile them in the winter, they feed their cattle with fish. They haue rough Dogs bred without tayle and eares for their pleasure, which they sell deere and greatly esteeme, when notwithstanding they offer their children to any that will take them, and that freely. Besides, this Island hath white Foxes, and huge Beares of the same colour. They haue no Birds but water-fowle, whereof there are diuers kinds and forts found, unknowne vnto vs. Crows sometimes are changed white; and excellent Falcones, and some among white which being taken and gorged, with the great coole of the *Spaniards* and *Portugals*, are also carried away in great number, which thing was done, while I was in Island, to my great profit. Island also hath white Partridges. There are also eury where through the whole Land most pleasant Riuer, which yield the Inhabitants fish in great plenty, Salmon Trowes, and Sturgeons. There is one only brige in all the Island, made of the bones of a Whale. They that goe from one part of the Island to another by the Continent, haue no way which they may follow, for the soltariness thereof: but as Saylers in the Sea, so they by the helpe of the Load-stone performe their journeyes. The depth of the Sea nere Island is very exceeding. In these gulfs there are Whales of wonderful bignes, and many Sea-monsters which cannot be killed or taken of men, the Ice only through the force of the winds dasheth them against the Rockes, and killeth them. I saw such a Monster cast vpon the shore dead, whose length was thirty ellis, his height more then a very long Warlike Pike.

A Whale being dead or killed, the Inhabitants make Buildings and Dwellinges of the Huge Whale-bones thereof with great dexterie and skill, they make also staves, benches, tables, and other

E k k

Hecla a burning Hill.

Concept of Purgatorie.

Collisions of men, or Illustrations of Death. Arguing Issue on flanders. I. offices act: as fabulous.

Another note.

No fruits.

Barren.

Barrenland.

Birch-trees.

Great winds.

Fat graffe.

Their kine, horses, and sheepe.

Dogs of more price then children.

Beares and Foxes.

White Crows.

Riuer.

Whale-bone-bridge.

Trauel by compass.

Whales.

Huge Whale.

etc.

Not. vtenfils, smoothing them so that they seeme like lacy. They that sleepe in these houses, and
 said alwayes to dreame of shipwack. And although it bee a huge and fearful creature, and huge
 great strength, yet notwithstanding oftentimes he is not only withstood, but overcome of his
 Orca. capitall enemy (not so great) which is called *Orca*; this fish hath the shape of a ship turned up
 side-downe, and vpon his backe very sharpe and long finnes, wherewith hee woundeth the soft
 of the belly of the Whale, and killeth him, and the Whale to searsh this fish, that in flunning
 him, he often dasheth himselfe against the shore.
 The *Island* Sea hath a Monster also, whose name is vnkowne. They iudge it a kinde of
 A Sea-mon- Whale at the first sight, when hee shewes his head out of the Sea, hee so learesh men that they
 ster. fall downe almost dead. His square head hath flaming eyes, on both sides fenced with long
 horns, his body is blacke, and beset with blacke quills; if he be seene by night, his eyes are
 fire, which lighten his whole head, which he putteth out of the Sea, nothing can either be pun-
 nished or imagined more fearful. *Olaus Magnus* maketh mention of this Monster in his *Historie*
Booke, and saith, that it is a *veline cubus long*. Such a Monster at that tyme tore in pieces with his
 teeth a Fisher-boate, wherein there were three Fisher-men, so that they were drowned, one of
 them, who held in his hand a little cord, wherewith hee vsed to draw the hooke, and the fishes,
 laid hold of the boord which stered in the Sea; so he was faued getting out of the bottom vpon
 the plankes and swam forth, and declared thus to the Kings Governour in my presence, adding
 moreover that he was faued from heaven, that he might get maintenance for his children, who
 otherwise were ready to perishe with hunger, when the other two though married, yet were
 without children.

Another Monster also is often there seene and taken, of ten or twelue elles long, it is called
 Helgaf. It is all fat; it is taken after a wonderfull manner: they haue a very long pike where-
 unto they fasten an Iron with a forked point, that it cannot goe backe, vnto the faste a cord of
 a maruolous length is fastned; they sticke this speare in the Monster, which swimming vnto
 it for prey, perceiving a man in the little boates; as soone as the Monster teels himselfe stro-
 ken and wounded, forthwith he hides himselfe in the Deepe, and there (his blood being pow-
 ered out) dyeth afterward the Fishers draw him to the land by the long cords fastned to the speare.

Dog-fish. Besides, it hath diuers Sea Monsters: a Dogge fish, which putting his head out of the Sea bar-
 keth, and receiueh his wifely sport in the Sea againe into his belly, while they come to more
 growth. It hath Horles and Kine, and what not: and it is a maruell, how skilfull Nature sports,
 in expresse the shape of all earthly Creatures and Fowles in the Sea. Neither should any man
 Not. perswade me that these things are true, although ten *Aristoteles* should affirme them vnto me, va-
 lesse I had seene most of them with mine eyes. Let no man therefore presently cry out, that
 what he knowes not is fabulous.

The men of *Lubeck*, *Hamburg*, and *Breme*, were often wont to goe to this Island, and leaue
 their seruants in the winter lodgings; but now it is prouided by the Kings authoritie, that no
Germaine, either by reason of trading or learning of the language, leaue his seruants there in the
 winter; but vpon what occasion this came to passe, the matter standeth thus. In the yeere of
 Christ 1561. there was a Citizen of *Hamburg*, one *Conradus Blom*, left by an other in *Island* in
 the winter lodgings with the Bishop in *Scalbolden*, for trading and learning of the tongue: the
 40. Bishop's fishers find a whole *Vnicorne* borne in the Ice, brought out of *Groneland* (as it is thought)
 wher they yet at this day *Vnicornes* are said to be, & thinking it to be a Whales tooth, nor did the Bi-
 shop beleue otherwise, they bring it to their Master, who gaue it to *Conradus* begging it, he being
 somewhat craftie, told it after at *Adenbury* for some thousands of Florins. When this thing came
 to the King of *Denmarke* eares, he forbade that no *Germaine* should winter in *Island* in any caufe.

Of the iudgement of the Islanders.

There is a most pleasant place almost in the midst of the Island, you would say it were a Para-
 dis in the Spring time, where sometimes there was a high Mountaine, which burned with
 inward fire, as *Hecla* doth at this day; this matter after it was consumed, made a *Plaine*, but
 50. the Rocks which were erected about the Mountaine, stand yet, therefore this place is so fenced
 by Nature, that they enter it, must goe one by one. This place is famous for two great falls of
 water, where two Riuer from the highest Rocks cast themselves steepe downe one against
 the other, with an astonishing and horrible dashing of the waters against the Rocks. These Ri-
 uers meete together in the middle of the field, and by a great whirlepoole are swallowed vp into
 the ground.

Here yearly the nine and twentieth of Iune, the Inhabitants who haue any controuersie,
 meete together: for in no other place or time Iustice is admitted: after they are entred, stand-
 ings are placed by the Governours guard, who admit all that desire to come in, no man hath li-
 berty to goe out, without the consent and authoritie of the Governour. When they are come
 60. thither, the Governour offereth his Charter to bee publicly read, whereby hee procureth credit
 to his Office, and hauing spoken before somewhat of the Kings goodwill, and his owne towards
 the Islanders, he exhorteth them to communicate Iustice vnto all, without respect of persons, he
 after

after departe h, and keeps himselfe in his Tent, hauing heard a godly Sermon, the twelue men,
 whom they call *Loemadars*, as it were men of Iustice, sit downe on the ground, each of them
 hath a Booke in his hand, containing the Law of that Island, written in the vulgar tongue. Ac-
 cufation and answer being made, they goe apart into seuerall places, eury one reads our his
 Booke diligently, going afterwards againe to his place, without Scribe, without replication or
 doubting, and iuglings of such bragging Lawyers, they confesse of the sentence and pronounce
 it: Many thing bee worthy of deliberation, it is brought to the Governour for consultation and
 for his honours sake, when notwithstanding they leaue no power of deciding it to him.

There are many aculations of Theft and Adulteries, they make no question of their Bonds, of
 their Fees, their Hereditarie fields, or any summe of money: there are no controuersies there.
 10. These twelue men, ouer which one is chiefe, are greatly honoured amongst the Islanders. These doe
 determine, and diligently inquire of all publique Controuersies. If there bee any wicked Act com-
 mitted that yeere, if Murder be committed any where, if Theft, if Adulterie, if Cattle be stol-
 len away (which vltioeth off to be done) then the men let downe the punishment. They that
 are condemned to dye, are beheaded: the rest, who are any way to bee punished, they burne with
 a marker, this punishment with them is most grievous: for they are marked in the forehead:
 they that are so marked are accounted in the number of wicked men: others are beaten with
 rodde: and I saw when the Father and the Sonne for theft (for they were Cattle dealers) were
 held Captiues, that the Father was compelled to beate his Sonne with rodde, and hee after-
 20. wards beheaded.

Of Groneland.

Island by Nature is somewhat long, it hath *Norway* on the East, the *Oreades* and *Scotland* on
 the South, *Groneland* on the West, and the *Hyperborean* or *Compedes* Sea vpon the North.
 Although I purposed to passe our *Groneland* with silence, yet seeing I touched vpon the Land,
 and saw some few things, I thought it was to be added. There was in a certaine Monasterie in
Island called *Helgafad*, a certayne blinde Monk left (for the Abbot of the Monasterie had con-
 uerted the Reuerend to a Kings vic) who liued miserably there: hee was borne in *Groneland*, of
 30. a darke complexion and broad face. The Governour commanded him to be brought vnto him,
 that hee might knowe some certainte of the state of *Groneland*. Hee layd, there was a Monaste-
 rie of *Saint Thomas* in *Groneland*, into which his Parents thrust him when he was but young,
 and after that, hee was taken out by the Bishop of *Groneland*, when hee was thirtie yeres of
 age, to saile with him into *Norway*, to the Archbishop to *Nidrosia* (or *Dronen*) to whom the *Is-
 land* Bishops are subiect: in his returne hee was left in a Monasterie by the Bishop, whose Coun-
 trey *Groneland* was: this was done (as hee layd) 1546. Hee said, that *Island* was called *Is-
 land*, Antiphrastically. For that it is liddome or neuer waxeth greene, and that there is so great
 cold there throughout the whole yeere, except Iune, Iuly and August, that being clothed and
 couered with Furs, they could scarce bee warme; and that they had at home certayne round
 40. peeces of wood, which being continually moued with the fute, kept their feet warme. Hee
 layd, it aboundeth as *Island* doth with Fishes, and that they had Beares and white Foxes, nay
Pigmies, and *Finicornes*, and that day did not appeare, till the Sonne had runne through *Pigies*.

This Monk told vs marvellous strange things: that there was in the Monasterie of *Saint Thomas*
 (where hee liued) a Fontaine, which sent forth burning and flaming water, that this wa-
 ter was conueyed through pipes of Rone, to the seuerall Cells of the Monks, and that it made them
 warme, as Stroues doe with vs; and that all kinde of meates might bee boyled in this
 Fontaine and fierie water, nor otherwise, then if it had beene fire indeede. Hee added moreo-
 ver, that the walls of the Monasterie were made of Pumice stones, out of a certayne Mountayns
 (not farre from the Monasterie) like to *Hecla*: for if yee powre these burning Waters vpon the
 50. Pumice stones, there will follow a flmie matter, which in stead of Lime they vie for Morter.

After the Governours conference with the Monk, I came priuily vnto him, to demand
 certayne particular things touching the *Pigmies* and other things; hee had little skill in the
 Latine tongue, hee vnderstood mee speaking *Latine*, but answered by an Interpreter. Hee layd, the
Pigmies represent the most perfect shape of Man, that they are hairy to the vttermost joynts of
 the fingers, and that the Males haue beards downe to the knees. But although they haue the
 shape of men, yet they haue little sense or vnderstanding, nor distinct speech, but make fire of
 a kinde of hissing after the manner of Geefe; that his Abbot kept two of them in his Mona-
 sterie, male and female, but they liued not long, and that they were vnrational Creatures,
 and liue in perpetuall darknesse. That some say, they haue warre with the Cranes, that
 60. hee knew not.

He affirmed, that the faine manner of food was in *Groneland*, as in *Island*, to wit, of fish but not of
 cattle, because they haue no cattle, & that the country is not populous. Forthwith from *Island* be-
 gins the *Hyperborean* Sea, which beats vpon *Groneland* and the Countrey of the *Pigmies*, which at
 this day is called *Nova Zembla*, & there the frozen Sea hath a Bay which is called the *White Sea*.

Pigmies, our
 men beare not
 scarce flesh.

Of this the
 English Dic-
 tionarye is
 the next
 Booke. We
 haue been
 right.

or *Mare Album*, and there are there certayne passages whereby they sayle into the *Schytian* Ocean, if they can for Ice. And the Gouvernour had the King of *Denmarke* Ship, furnished with all necessaries: but when hee heard (by the Monke) of these passages, and shott cut into the Kingdom of *China*, hee affected this commendation, that hee might open these passages and thers, but in vaine.

The Authors
Voyage to
Discouerie.

The 18th day therefore of March, in the yeere 1564, hee commanded that Ship to sayle to those places, and mee also together with them, being willing of mine owne accord: and enioyned me to marke diligently the situation of the places, and whatsoever wee met with worthy of sight or report. Wee were in the Ship threecore and foure men, as well *Dane* as *Islander*, and the twentieth day of April we arrived at a certayne Promontorie of *Groneland*, and when wee found no Hauens, to the which wee might sayle commit our selues, and letting downe the lead, wee had founded the depth of the Sea, it was such as wee could not anchor there, and the abundance of Ice was so great, that it was neither safe nor possible to sayle neerer to the Rocks, foure and twentie therefore of vs armed, with great labour and danger went on thoare in our Skiffes among whom I also was) to trie whether wee could finde a harbour, and what kinde of men *Groneland* had. In the meane time, the great Ship floated in the Sea and, what kinde of men halfe of our companie abode in the thoare to keepe the Skiffe, another part (and I with them) ranne abroad to discouerie: they that were left on thoare to keepe the Skiffe, (and I with them) further, found a little man dead with a long beard, with a little Boare, and a crooked Hooke of 20 the tone of a Bill, and a leather cord: foure fish Bladders were bound vnto the Boate (as is supposed) that it should not bee drowned, whereof three were funke and fallen flat: This Boate (because it was very vnlke ones) the Gouvernour sent to the King of *Denmarke*.

In Sir Thomas
Smiths Hall in
London is a
kind of Boate
somewhat like
to Barke-Lowed
Sealeskins.

Olaus Magnus in his first Booke writeth, that there is a Rocky in the middle of Island and *Groneland*, called *Hutlooke*, which wee sayd by, and that there they haue Ships of leather, which bee ressieth bee saw, but it was not such an one: but Petrus Bembus in his Iouenils Booke, in the Venetian Historie, describeth a Ship, which was like vnto this, where bee writeth thus: While a French Ship kept her barke of Trees voyaged together, wherein there were foure men of a middle stature, Iouenils darke coloured, of a large and broad face, marked with strange scarres and violet colour; these had their garments of Elfish skynes, full of spots, they bore a painted Crowne of redde women in, as it were with seven eares; they did eate raw Fleish, and dranke Blood, as wee doe Wine; their speech could not bee vnderstood, fixe of them dyed, one young man was brought alone to the Aulterous, where the King was.

It is not unlikely to bee true, that this Ship with these seven men, were driven out of *Groneland*, into the Britaine Ocean: seeing the description of Bembus his Ship agreeth with that found in *Groneland*.

A Boare.

Wee wandred in the meane season, in a Land vnkowne vnto vs, which was covered with Snow and Ice, wee found neither footing of men, nor any habitation, nor fit Port, but the Sea which neither feared vs, nor could bee driuen away with our cries, but came full vpon vs, as to his certaine prey, and when hee came neere vnto vs, being twice shot through with a Gunne, hee flood bolt vpright with his fore-see-as a man Handeth, till hee was shot through the third time, and so fell downe dead: his Skinne was sent to the King of *Denmarke*. We agreed amongst our selues before we went on thoare, if we found a fit Harbour, or else had need of their helpe, that wee should plucke vp our standerd, which wee carried out with vs for that purpose, and that they, if they would call vs backe, should signifie the same with their Ordnance. A tempest arising in the meane while, the Master of the Ship giues vs a signe to returne, by the discharging of a peece of Ordnance, and calls vs backe vnto the Ship: all of vs therefore returned with great labour after three dayes vnto the Ship with the Beares skinne: wee sayled therefore to the other side of the land toward the North, to the Countrey of the *Pigmes*, or *Nova Zembla*, that by the mouth of the *White Sea*, wee might come into the *Schytian* or *Tartarian* Sea, from whence (they say) there is a passage to the Kingdom of *China*, and *Cathay*; but being hindered by the Ice, wee could not passe the mouth of that Sea: therefore without doing any thing, wee returned into *Island* the sixteenth of Iune.

The Authors
Journey to
Mount Hecla.

I sayd before, that the *Islanders* the nine and twentieth of Iune yeerely came together allmost in the middle of the land to Iudgement, and after our returne, the Gouvernour went thither, and I with him. Some of the next inhabitants of *Hecla* then came to Iudgement, whom the Gouvernour inuited twice or thrice to dinner and supper. These men while they were at supper, reported wonderfull things of the Mountayne *Hecla*, and other things; I was forthwith inflamed with a desire to see and heare all. Wherefore the Gouvernour commanded mee to these men, that they should bring mee thither, and commanded all things should bee done mee, which they knew there worthy to bee seene. This Gouvernour was a *Dane*, a Noble man, and excellentely well learned to this man surely I am much bound for his great liberality towards mee, in

that he caused me to be conuighed at his charge to diuers places of the land, where any notable thing was to be seene. I accompanied with two *Islanders*, and a certaine *Dane*, who carried provision, and a Tent on Horse-backe, spent foure whole dayes, while wee go through rough places, Hilly and desolate vnto this Mountayne. For some Miles about *Hecla*, all was full of blacke ashes and Pumis stones. The *Islanders* aduised me that I should goe no neerer, leading away the Horse, which they had lent mee;

I, because I purposed to see, and search out all things diligently; accompanied with the *Dane*, came neerer, as though I went to climbe the Hill, and although at the first sight wee were afraid, yet I would not leave off my purpose, and by reason of my young yeeres, not vnderstanding the danger, I went through the ashes and Pumis stones alone to *Hecla*, leaving the *Dane*, there was there at that time a wonderfull calme, so that I saw neither fire nor smoke. But behold, suddenly in the howells of the Earth, a great noyse was heard, after this followed flames of a greene colour, which had almost killed me with their Sulphure and filthy stinke, so that I scarce escaped to my forsaken horses and companions. Vpon that sudden alonement I fell into a sickness, and vehement cogitation, seeing these horrible flames were alwayes present before mine eyes: inso much that my *Island* companions were compelled to carry mee away from their house, with whom I lay sicke two whole monethes: while in the meane time the *Dane* returned to the Gouvernour, and to the *Hamburghers*, and acquainted them with my state. I liued miserably amongst the *Barbarians*, sicke and vnkownes; they had Bisket which I sleept in Milke, and so for that time, I endured hunger, while (being stronger) I might returne to the Gouvernour.

The *Hamburghers*, by reason of the time of the yeere, least they should loose the opportunitie of sayling, despairing now of my returne, set sayle (for they depart before the foure and twentieth of August, lest being hindered after by the Ice, they cannot get out) yet with speciall care commended me to the Gouvernour (if at any time I did returne) leaving Bisket, Wine, and Beere. The Gouvernour hath a dwelling fit enough for the manner and fashion of this Countrey, on the South of this land, not farre from the Hauens of *Hesperid*, the place is called *Esked*. I was brought thither of the *Islanders*, to the Gouvernour, who, for our common studies, entertained me willingly and honorably. But although wee were plentifully furnished with all necessities, yet being very wearie of that life in such darknesse, I expected the ships out of *Germany* the next yeere with great desire.

There grew then warre betwene *Eriens* of *Swedia*, and *Fredericke* the Second King of *Denmarke*; which was continued with great craue for ten yeeres after. The *Lubekers* were Consorts and Confederates of Warre vnto the *Dane*. So most part of the Cities on the Sea-coast, vpon the *Balticke* Sea, hindered or intangled with this Warre, intermitted their sayling into *Island* this yeere, therefore waiting in vaine, I must stay. The yeere following, when I had wayted till the end of Iune, all hope of returning into *Germany* that yeere was taken away, and which was worse, the yeerely ship came not from *Denmarke*: and bread and Wine failed vs almost foure monethes.

There lay *Portugals* at anchor at that time in *Island* in a small ship, who came thither to fowle, they caried away excellent Falcons, and white ones among them, in great number. I thought good rather to crosse ouer into *Portugall* with them, then to wayte another yeere, either for *Dane* or *Germanes*. And when they gaue the Gouvernour his Custome, he dealt with them in my behalfe concerning the charge, that I might passe with them, and he liberally paid the charges, and I honorably sent mee away with a worthy Present. Not far from the Kings house, there was a certayn Minister, Imae by name, he familiarly saluted me before I departed: for the time I was in *Island*, I had some familiaritie with him, to whom also I left my Bookes when I departed; he for friendships sake, knit three knots in a handkerchiefe, and promised mee a prosperous wind, saying, if by chance the winds at any time grow contrary at Sea, open these knots, and then remember mee. When therefore about the twentieth of September we had sayled, and now *Spain* was in our view, there was so great a calme, that we felt not a breath of wind, and that for three whole dayes. In this calme my friends promise came into my minde, and I desired to proue it. I loosed the first knot, by and by, after one hour, there arose a very prosperous winde, but blowing very gently, I wntye the second and the third, forthwith a Tempest beganne more and more to grow, so truly that after two dayes we ridde in the Riuer *Tagus*, which beareth vpon *Lisbon*.

His Navigator
ons on the
Coast of *Afri-
ca*, &c. be-
mentions in
his Preface,
which I haue
for brevities
omitted.

CHAP. XXIII.

Extracts of ARNORIM IONAS * an Islander, his
Chrymogea or Historie of Island: published,
Anno Dom. 1609.

§. I.

Of Island, the Situation, Discoverie, Plantation
and Language.



Island is an land of the North, compassed about with the huge Ocean: whose
Geographical latitude towards the North, to wit, at *Hola*, the Episcopall
Seat of North Island, is 65. degrees, and 44. minutes: and the longitude 23. de-
grees and 30. minutes, or thereabout: for I will not precisely affirm the same,
by reason of that fupple arising from the Parallaxis of the Moon in the obser-
vation of the Eclipses to be doubted: which only way of finding out the longitude, that most
famous man, *Guadracus Thurlacius*, now Bishop of North Island, hath hitherto shewed: who
hath imparted vnto vs this longitude and latitude of his Sea: and was the first, that I know,
among our Countrymen, who hath deliuered any certaintie in Writing, concerning this matter.

And surely, that which at this day, and so from the first entrance of Inhabitants, beareth the
name of *Island*, (while as yet it remayned barren and desolate) had diuers names allotted or gi-
uen vnto it from diuers Discoverers: whereof three are mentioned.

For first of all it was called *Sealandia*. For a certaine Pirate called *Naddocus*, going towards
the *Ferensian* Islands (commonly called *Ferens*, for the multitude of Egges) was brought vnto
the shoares of East Island, through a Tempest, not farre from the Mountayne *Reiderfialk*, (so cal-
led afterward) to the Bay *Reiderfiald*: who ascending the Mountayne, and beholding the bor-
dering Country farre and neere, found it all Desert. And departing from the Coast about
Autumne, he perceived the higher tops of the Mountaynes to be covered with exceeding much
Snow; and therefore, as the present case required, he called the land *Sealandia*, that is to say,
The Snowie Country.

Another following him, one *Gardarus* the sonne of *Susarnus* a *Susarn* borne, perswaded
through the report which *Naddocus* had brought concerning *Sealandia*, went to seeke it: he
found it, who arrived also neere the Easterne shoare, and from thence being carried about the
land, he abode in the Bay of North Island called *Skialand*, and wintered therein the yeere of
Christ 864. and called the name of the Haven, *Hafswick*, from the wintering places, or houses
built there. But the Spring beginning, *Gardarus* being about to depart into *Norway*, the ship
Boat was driven away by a tempest, into an Haven neere vnto the former, and in the same Boat
there was a certayne Mariner called *Narvæ*: from whom also this Haven had the name of *Narvæ-
wick*. Moreover, *Gardarus* returning to his friends, called that new Country *Gardarsheim*,
as it were, the land of *Gardarus*, neglecting the name of *Sealandia*.

Moreover, the desire also of visiting a Country newly discovered, possessed many. For the
third also, one *Floes*, and he a most famous Pirate purposing to visit *Gardarsheim*, for feyle out
of an Haven of *Norway*, which lyeth neere the watch-tower or rather *Pharus* *Holmæria*, situate
in the limits of the Provinces of *Hordalandia*, and *Rogalandia*: and passing by *Histlandia*, (mis-
named by some *Skutlandia*) called a certayne Haven by the name of *Floesogogur*, and there the
deepest part of the Sea (where *Gairbilda* the daughter of *Floes* by chance was drowned) was
called *Gairbildaerua*, from her: no otherwise then that Sea was called *Hellefjuntur*, wherein by
misfortune *Phryxus* lost his sister *Meloe*. There was yet no vfe of the Mariners Compass: where-
fore *Floes* leaving *Histlandia*, tolke certayne Raues vnto him: and when hee thought hee had
sayled a great way, he sent forth one Raue, which flying aloft, went backe againe to *Histlandia*,
which the saw behind. Whereupon *Floes* perceiving that he was yet neerer to *Histland* then o-
ther Countreys, and therefore courageously going forward, he sent forth another Raue: which
because he could see no Land, neither before nor behind, light into the ship again. But lastly, the
third Raue was sent forth by *Floes* and hauing for the most part performed his Voyage, through
the sharpnesse of her quick sight attaining the Land, which the Mariners desired, the speedily
new either: whole direction *Floes* following, beheld first the Easterne side of the land, as his
Predecessors did: and from thence directing his course to the South, found a very wide and open
Bay twelue *Islandish* miles broad, betwene the two Promontories or high Lands, afterwards
called *Renkær*, and *Snæfjellær*. And hearing by a certayne Mariner (whom hee had with him) a
Sea borne, named *Faxe*, that the Bay they now met with, was the huge mouth of a Riuer or
Flood;

* This learned
Islander pub-
lished A. 1593.
one Booke of
Island, which
M. Hæ. trans-
lated and fir-
est in the first
Tome of his
Voyages. This
work is larger
in three Booke
out of which
I have taken
some things
which I held
conducent to
our purpose. In
the former
work he con-
futech the er-
rors of diuers
Authors which
write fully
many things of
his Countrey.
Hæ. 64. de-
scribes 44. mi-
nutes.
Diuers names
of Island.
Sealand.
Naddus first
Discoverer.
Ferrelands.

Gardar (second
Discoverer).

AD. 864.

Gardarsheim.

Floes third
Discoverer.

Rauen Guides.

Flood; *Floes* to reprove the folly of *Faxe*, supposing so huge a Bay of the Sea to be the mouth of a
Riuer, called the name of the Bay inclosed betwene the foresaid Promontories, *Faxeas*, which
signifieth the mouth of *Faxe*. This Bay, by reason of the multitude of Hauens, was afterwards cal-
led *Hafnafjordur*: which name *Hafnafjordur* at this day is more specially vied of a most safe Ha-
uen of the same Bay.

After this, *Floes* laying along the West side of the land, entered somewhat within the Bay
Bredafjordur, remaining in a certaine Haven of the Province *Bardufjordur*, called *Watersfordur* (for
I vfe the names given them afterwards) and there preparing wintering places, he lured very
commodiously and well with fitt kindes, wherewith that Bay doth abound. But ha-
ving the Spring time to be filled with Ice of the Sea, which we call *Gronelandish* Ice. The name
from which Ice, *Floes* desired the third name for the land, and called it *Island*. Moreover also *Island* of Ice.
Floes turning to the South side, passed another Winter in *Island*: and returning into *Norway*
(from the Raues, which hee vied in stead of the Mariners Compass) he allotted it the surname
of *Rafnsholek*.

And *Floes* surely obtained these names consequently from the finders, or discoverers thereof.
For as touching the fourth, *Thule*, imposed upon this Land by some, I cannot bee perswaded to
believe it, it is true; chiefly by this argument: That *Thule*, or *Thule* among the ancient Writers,
was often in the mouth and writings not only of *Pliny* in his (second) booke of *Natural Histories*
75. Chapter and fourth booke, and sixteenth Chapter. (and *Pliny* flourished about the eigh-
tieth yeere of Christ) and of him who was more ancient then *Pliny*, *Pythias Maffienfis*: bu. also
of *Pub. Virgilius*, who lived not above fourteen yeeres after Christ: but *Island*, till the yeere of
Christ 874. remained altogether desert, as hereafter I shall speake. *Thule* therefore, which *Vir-
gil* said should feare *Angustia* (*Geogr. 2. lib. 1. vltima Thule*: where euen euery child knoweth
that *Thule* is Synecdochically spoken, for the Inhabitants of *Thule*) not only inhabited in the
times of *Angustius* and *Virgil*, but also knowne to the *Romanes*, is not *Island*, which many ages af-
ter began first to be inhabited. Besides, *Plinio* himselfe kemet in the later place recited to reckon
Thule with the Islands of *Britaine*: for, saith hee, *Vltima quæ memoratur est Thule*: to the
wit, of the *British* Islands, for hee speaketh of them. It is likewise also that *Virgil* meant the time,
who said *Thule* was the last, in the place before recited: and likewise, *Pentius toto diuiso* after
Britannos: that is to say, the last. Let me yet vrg the same argument further, from the age of
Claudius Alexandrinus, and *Pub. Popinius Statius*, farre more ancient then he. For *Claudius*
about the yeere of Christ 390. writteth thus concerning the successe of the *Gætic* Warre achieved
by *Theodosius*.

Fœneque ingratum succintha parauit olei,
Secum cuncta trahens, à Gædis vsque Britanniam
Terras Oceanum: et nostro prœsul æu remotum
Insula Belli, transiret murmuris Thulem.

Then blackwing'd Feme Fæere girt, frights all the World with Warre.
From Cades to Britaine, from Our World shakes *Thule* fæere.

But did Report and Fame cause *Island* not inhabited and desert to tremble? And *Statius* more
ancient by three hundred yeeres then *Claudius*, in his third Booke *Sylus*, writteth thus:

Quonquam est gelidæ irem mansurus Arctus,
Vespere Hesperia vnda caligantia Thules.

Though I should dwell in Arctis frosts,
Or mystic shules of *Thules* Well coasts.

You heare, not only a slight report of *Thule* came but that the shallow places,
quicke sand, or shelles found in approaching to the land were sufficiently knowne vnto him,
so the often relation of Navigators, which lort in the circle of *Island*, there are none that I know,
which experience speaketh: but in comming to the Islands of *Britaine* they are very ordinarie
and common, as they say.

The Longitude thereof from the East vnto the West, hath not hitherto beene expressed by a-
ny certaine or assured measure that I know, nor yet the Latitude from North to South: but
saue that in an ancient Codicall or Writing I found that the Longitude was twentie dayes jour-
ney: and the Latitude (where it is broadest) foure dayes, but the iourneys, as elsewhere, so also
with vs are not alike, (yet here I vnderstand *Pygmalæades* twentie, in the Authors own
hand-writing it is *Dagreider*) nor is it expressed whether of Horie-men or Foot-men. But the find
enough: and more yet
in *Ordnis* his
both *Thylæus*
and *Thæus*,
who prouch out of *Pamperius*, *Pelleus*, and *Proceus*, that *Island* is not *Thule* but (in the same sound) *Thylæus*, a Region in
Norway, or all *Sealandia*, of which this is a part, still retaining the name.

The name
of *Island* of Ice.
Thule is not
Thule.

* The Author
proceedeth in
this dispute-
on, further
then our Rea-
der perhaps
would permit
vs. The leas-
and curi-
ous may there
find enough:
to wit, from
the
both *Thylæus*
and *Thæus*,
who prouch out of *Pamperius*, *Pelleus*, and *Proceus*, that *Island* is not *Thule* but (in the same sound) *Thylæus*, a Region in
Norway, or all *Sealandia*, of which this is a part, still retaining the name.

the South-west) but the North bound is *Langanes*, and the South *Rekranes*. The Island also from the four quarters of the World, is divided into North, South, East and West, and the Promontory *Langanes* divideth North *Island* from East *Island*; from West *Island*, the Bay *Kutafjord*; from South *Island*, the vast and huge deserts of rough, and inaccessible places extend the whole length of the Island. But South *Island*, opposite to the North, through these rough and inaccessible places lying between the River *Islofvis*, running through the deserts of *Salsimands*, divideth from East *Island*; from West *Island* also, a famous River, named *Albis*, emptying itself into the Bay *Borgafjord*: So that, if it pleased me to represent the Island in humane shape, East *Island* should have the proportion of the head. The two more famous Promontories *Langanes* and *Rekranes*, for bounds; the one Northerly, (as hath been said) should serve in stead of armes; the other South *Island*, the shoulders with the sides; the two opposite Bays *Borgafjord*, and *Kutafjord*, the one on the South, & the other on the North, should divide the forepart about the short ribs, from both the thighs or hips. But West *Island* should resemble the rest of the parts of a mans body, from the forepart about the short ribs: which the Bay *Bredifjord* comming in from the West, should connect and straighten into the right and left foot.

The Circuit.

The circuit also of the Island, is no more certainly knowne; yet an ancient rumour and opinion (as in another place where it is noted) reckoneth one hundred and fortie four *Norwegian* miles (as I thinke) that is to say, two hundred eightie eight *German* miles, *Chytræus* accounting the Bayes; whereof North *Island* is esteemed to have eleven, East *Island*, twentie one, South *Island* sixe, and West *Island* leuentye.

* Herald Here-
fuge finding
many p. tie
Princes made
an absolute
Monarchy of
Norway, where-
upon some
thought to rise
themselves by
new discon-
cians hence
erol, the plan-
tion of Island

Haraldus Pulcrissimus * swaying the Scepter in *Norway*, much neglected the chiefe Nobilitie of *Norway*: which the *Norwegian* Historie setteth downe at large, yet particular Historie of noble Families expelled by *Pulcrissimus*, more largely prosecute the same, as hereafter we purpose to write, For *Pulcrissimus* not contented with Kingly authoritie, or chiefe sovereignty, that is to say, with the right of Lawes, Magistracie, and appeale of Warre and Peace, challenged all vnto himselfe, by the right of a proprietarie. Inasmuch, as very many chiefe rather to leave their Country and rich inheritances, then to exchange their Generosities for flauerie and tri-
ancessours. Hence, for the most part arose mutuall injuries against the King, or the Kings par-
takers; as murdering of the Kings friends, allies, or faction; then the exercises both at Sea and Land were rapines and robberies. From these noble Families therefore, refusing the violence of
Harald, this our Island, with the neighbouring Islands began first to be inhabited, and that almost
by these steps and voyages.

A.D. 874.
Ingulfus.

In the yeere of our Redemption 874. a certaine Inhabitant of *Norway*, one *Ingulfus*, going out of his Country, following the steps of *Naddow*, *Gardarus*, and *Floce* mentioned before, was made Standard-bearer of the Inhabitants which were to bee conueyed into Island, and that vpon this occasion. *Ingulfus* was famous for his parentage and riches, whose father, called *Orne*, which signifieth an Eagle, was Duke of *Erdafylle* in *Norway*; the sister of *Ingulfus* was *Helga*, a Virgin indued with all womanly ornaments, and his cousin germaine *Leisfus*; who for a notable sword, which through his singular warlike prowess he got in *Ireland*, was named *Helisfus*. For *Hir* is a Sword. Moreover, at that time among the Nobilitie of *Norway*, there were three naturall brothers, *Halmfenn*, *Helmfenn*, and *Hersfenn*; the sonnes of *Atius*, or *Atlantes*, a certaine Baron of *Norway*: whose borne certaine priuie grudges to the forefild *Ingulfus* and *Helisfus*; which presently after brake forth into cruell and bloodie slaughters. For when by chance they chanced together, after the manner of that age, they inuoyed every one to make some forme Vow. *Hersfenn* therefore first vowed, that he would take *Helga*, *Ingulfus* sister to wife, or marrie none. Then presently *Ingulfus* vowed, that hee would admitt none into his Fathers Inheritance with him, but only *Helisfus*; meaning thereby that his sister *Helga*, by his consent should marry none but *Helisfus* (contrary to the vow of *Hersfenn* for the marrying of her only.) After that *Helmfenn* vowed, that if he were chosen Arbitrator betweene the aduersie parties, he would by no means be compelled, to suffer an vnjust sentence. And so the rest after them. Not long after succeeded the Vow of *Ingulfus*, for *Helisfus* tooke his Cousin Germaine *Helga* to wife. For at that time the Marriages of Cousin Germanes were lawfull. From hence arose the extreme hatred, and enmitie of *Hersfenn*, against the forefild *Helisfus*, and *Ingulfus*: who therefore jynning with his Brother *Halmfenn*, with sixe ships filled with Souldiers, set vpon *Helisfus* vnawares, having but three ships only, preparing his Voyage into certaine Countries. Whose violence *Helisfus* a long time, and stoutly sustaining, voyaged to a certaine friend comming in the meane while, hauing laine *Hersfenn* got the vpper hand. But *Helmfenn* providing for himselfe by flight, and not a little exasperated and grieved through the violent death of his Brother, after some few monthes, came with an armed power to *Ingulfus* and *Helisfus* two surprize them suddenly at home. Whereof they being certained by spies, receive him with an armed force, and kill him. *Halmfenn* the third brother, wiser then the rest, who

Rash voyes
and bloodie
quarrells en-
suing.

conforted not with the vnjust routes of his Brethren, remayned yet alive; to whose arbitrement *Ingulfus* with *Helisfus* commit the whole matter to be determined, holding him mindfull of his Vow, concerning equitie not to be violated. *Halmfenn* therefore pronounceth his brother *Hersfenn* to be iustly blame: But not *Helmfenn* who compelled through bitter griefe, he desired to reuenge the death of his brother, by any laughter whatsoever. For killing therefore of him, he commended them both to be banished out of the Promontory of *Erdafylle*. They readily obey his award, to whom they willingly committed the censur, & with a purpose to leave their Country, they sell their Lands and Possessions for money and Merchandizes, and conceale in their minds a worthy attempt of planting a strange people in a strange Country: and that not to gratifie *Halmfenn* (with whom through this agreement they returned into fauour; with whom they might otherwise easily have contended in strength) but also for feare of *Pulcrissimus* himselfe, raging against his Country, and innocent Countreymen. For the obtaining (as hath bene said) not only of the Promontory, but *Pulcrissimus*, of all their Possessions: nor was that to be doubted, concerning the violence and oppression of *Harald*: for in the Historie of *Hagnumus Adalsteinus*, his succeeding Sonne it is expressly read, that he was contented with Kingly authoritie, and restored to curie one their owne, which his Father vnjustly challenged vnto himselfe.

It was the yeere of Christ 870, wherein *Ingulfus* with *Helisfus* first visit Island, but they in-
habited it not presently, but fourte yeeres after, in the yeere 874, as hath bene said; bringing ma-
ny Families thither.

Island first in-
habited, a 874

Moreover *Ingulfus* comming within view of the Island, casteth the postes of the houses which he had in *Norway* into the water, after the manner of *Ethelwyses* accounting it for an Oracle, that that place was fatally chosen for his Habitation, which the postes cast out vpon the ground should note or ignite. That custome many of the *Norwegians* retained by turning vp the ground. But *Ingulfus* arrived not where he cast in the postes, but at the Promontorie of the South shore (elsewhere erroneously, the West shore) called by his name *Ingulfus*. Yet notwithstanding wanting the postes of the houses three whole yeeres, at length he came thither in the place, which is named *Erdafylle*, and there he erected his Habitation. But *Helisfus* more estranged from *Ethelric* superstition, feared himselfe in the Promontorie *Helisfus*, so called likewise from his name. There he built great houses: one of one hundred twentie six, and another of one hundred thirtie five feet long: who, the first yeere being ended, began to till the ground and sow feed. In which worke, when he had exercised ten seruants or slaves, which he brought with him out of Island, they sayned that *Helisfus* his labouring beast was slaine by a wilde Beare (for it was afterwards manifestly knowne, that Island hath no Beares), but such as came thither by chance) which when *Helisfus* (with a purpose of reuenge) sought in the next neighbouring Wood, he was deceitfully slaine by these slaves lying in ambush: together with some other companions which he tooke with him: the seruants awell rauihing the Wives as spoiling the goods of the flaine; and flying into the Islands not very farre distant from the shore: which after of the same slaves, were called *Wistmofus*, because they were of *Ireland*. The *Norwegians* call the *Irish*, *Engilsh*, and *Sauis* *Wistmofus*, that is, men of the West: seeing those Countries are distant from *Norway* to the West. *Ingulfus* pursuing these Murders, let vpon them suddenly, and de-
stroyed them every man in the same Islands, being much grieved in minde for the vntimely and cruell death of his deere friend and allies.

Superstition:

First houses,
Island had an-
ciently isle-
houses then
now; (hauing
Timber from
Norway, &c.) &
likewise: This
lage was then
in view.
Helisfus slaine
by *Wistmofus* and
Westmofus.

But *Ingulfus* found and possessed Island altogether barren and desolate: on every side beset with very thicke Woods, and scarcely fertile of any but Birches, so that hee was faine every-
where to open the Woods with the Axe, for journeyes and habitation. Yet in the meane space, we might gather by certayne signes, I know not what Mariners had sometimes touched vpon certayne shores of the Country, but not inhabited them. For *Ingulfus* found little sacring Belsand wooden Crofles, and other things made by the workmanship and arte of the *Irish* and *Britons*: but no tokens of culture, or habitation. Whereupon it is likely, that *Irish*, or *Scotish* Fishermen (as also the *Engilsh* at this day) accustomed to fish neere *Helisfus*, as sometimes it cometh to passe, went a-shore, and so by chance left sacring Bells and Crofles, the Ventsils of Christian Religion. For at that time the *Irish* were instructed in Christianity as they are. And those who colour were the ancient Islanders, they called *Pappa*, or *Pappa*: from whence, I seemeth probable to me, the land of East Island called *Pappa*, derived the name; because they were of-
ten wont to touch there: or their Monuments (such as I sayd) were chiefly found there.

Woods.

Bells and
Crofles.

This side of Island, so much as layle from *Engilsh*, *Ireland*, and *Scotland*, is most exposed to-
wards the North-west. Moreover, what aid from whence these *Pappa*, or *Pappa* came, I cannot sufficiently speake: vnlesse peradventure from the lands of *Scotland*, whereof one is named *Pappa*, and another *Wistmofus*, as we may see in the Mapes: vnto which consi-
deration let every one give what credit he pleaseth. Furthermore, very many of the *Norwegians*, afterwards boldly following the steps of *Ingulfus* going into Island, with their wives and children, and great multi-
tudes of their Kindred and friends, restored themselves to libertie, whose names and large Families are recited in the Chronicles; as by the second Booke is vnderstood. Besides it is there recounted what coasts, what shores, what middle-land places every one possessed: and at what

time

time (and also how the first Inhabitants gave name to Straights, Bayes, Havens, narrow Straights of Land, Fierres, Cliftes, Rocks, Mountaines, Hills, Vallies, rough and inaccessible Places, Fountaines, Clouds, Ruers, Villages, Farms or Habitations: whereof at this day many are yet retained and in vie. Which *Topography*, supposing it would be tedious, especially to a foraine Reader, I have here omitted; applying my selfe rather to the description of the parts of *Iland* now possessed.

Concerning the language of the *Islanders*, the matter it selfe speaketh, that it is the *Northern*; I say, that old and naturall speech, derived from the ancient *Goths*, which only the we will first speake somewhat: and afterwards in the Chapter following there shall be a short discourse of the original thereof.

And surely that language seemeth to have double letters: to wite, the Old, and New. The New, which commonly we vie at this day, are common almost to all *Europe* together with crosses written in ancient letters, are yet seene among our Country-men, which letters also make nothing at all changed. Moreover it seemed good to mee, thus to present the name and shape of the ancient Characters, such surely as was offered unto mee, placing the New or Common our against them, expressing the validitie thereof, adding also the agreement and discrepancy of ours, with those of *Vishpils*, the Bishop of the *Goths*: whom *Iohannes Theodorus*, and *Iohannes Israhel*, brethren and Citizens of *Francfort*, report to have invented these letters by and whole relation hee agreeth with vs in all things, save where the disagreement shall be noted here. Moreover also, I thought it not amisse to let downe in writing the letters of certaine other Nations, to some of our Country letters, out of the same *Francfort* copie, which the Types or Figure subscribed will demonstrate.

A	Ar	Α	
b	Biarkan	B	
z	Knesol	Ζ	
d	Stungimtyr	Δ or I and Upsilon thus p.	
e	Stunginn ls	Ε	
f	Fe	Φ	
g	Stunginn kaun	Γ	
h	Hagal	Χ	
i	Is	Ι	
k	Kaun	Κ	
l	Langur	Λ or Ω: Upsilon thus Δ: it is also Ω, the Mojonis L.	
m	Madur	Μ	
n	Nand	Ν Upsilon thus Λ	
o	Os	Ο	
p	Plastur	Ρ Upsilon thus Β	
r	Reid	Ρ	
s	Sol	Θ Upsilon thus Η	
t	Tyr	Τ Upsilon thus Α	
u	Ur	Υ Upsilon thus Ω	
y	Yr	Υ Upsilon thus Χ Psh. Zeta. of the Arabians.	
p	Pafs	Π Upsilon thus P. g. So is painted for a	

Here we see twentie one Characters, but the ancient numbered onely sixteen. And the third *Υ*, they would not acknowledge for theirs: because so, of the *Greeks*, that is to *Ω* *or* *Δ*, (as they would have it) they might write it in their language with distinct letters. But the fourth *Α* from the eighteenth, they distinguish with some points, or an overthwart line, almost thus *Δ*: otherwise it is altogether the same in shape and name, *Tyr*, but *d*, *Stungimtyr*, that is to say, pointed *Tyr*, as *p*, *kaun*, and pointed *kaun* *p*. *g*. So is painted for a but

but *Plastur* resembleth *B*, with both the bellies open above and beneath. Besides these, the rest are numbered sixteen, as I said. For they reckoned the Diphthongs to the Syllables.

Moreover, it retained the last new Consonant of the old Alphabet, changed in name, but not in shape: which is *p*. This being set after a vowel in the same syllable, hath the sound of *d*, as *Blap* for *Blad*, which is a leaf: which kind of writing was more viall with the ancient, but at this day is almost growne out of use: but being set before a vowel, it hath a peculiar force and pronunciation, not altogether *Tb*, but sounding somewhat more grossly, as it were *Tch*, putting forth the tongue almost between the fore-teeth: as *pa*, that is to say, then in times past it had the name of *Paff*: at this day it is called *Pora*, or *Thora*; if you put *p* for *b*: and therefore it cannot be written or pronounced at all, but by it selfe.

They also of later time write the Consonant *f* after this manner *g*. The Moderne Writers also doe sometimes ascribe *L*, *N*, *R*: the ancient never use *flaw* in old time *Laur*, that is, living. *Thora* in times past (as also sometimes at this day) *Kaun*; that is to say, a Kite, *flaw*, is old time *Ratur*, that is to say a Ram. In like manner sometimes *fo*, and *Uaf*, or *Lam* *ni* Consonants: as *flut*, that is, a Wheele; *flaw*, that is, a Whale: which also I thinke the ancient did concerning *fo*, and *flut*.

In Vowels and Diphthongs, as also abbreviations proper to this language, the variety is farre greater, which I purpose not to touch. Moreover also, the due handling of the letters, as of the *Etymologie* and *Syntaxis* of this tongue, would be the copious matter of a peculiar work, especially if any would adde the Poetrie, purposing to write the Grammar of the *Islandish* tongue, which would be no more difficult, then that wee have seene done, concerning the *Germane* and *French* tongue, besides others.

About the yeere of the Lord 1216, one of our Country-men wrote in his Country language, concerning the letters of the proper, or mother tongue: where hee affirmeth these ancient Characters to be peculiar to this language, and handleth them both, as well new as old after a legitimate and due manner of tractation, by his definitions and divisions of the letters into Vowels and Consonants, and of the five *Latine* Vowels, maketh eightene of his language, distinguished in sound and pronunciation: He divideth the Consonants naturally into halfe Vowels, and Mutes, and those into Liquids and Firmes, these into open and shut; performing the part of a pretie Logician. And in delivering the force and pronunciation of the letters, hee artificially assumeth for every definition all the Instruments of framing the voyce, as well the lungs and throat, as the auxiliary parts of the mouth and tongue. The letter *p*, also, he calleth *the*, peradventure in imitation of the *Greek* *Theta* (which almost, as we said, although not altogether it expresseth) or *Tau* of the *Hebrewes*, which *Hebrew* letter, if *th*, or *t* of the *Latines* rightly expresse, as is reported by some, *Thau* shall come nothing nearer to our *p* then *Theta*. The same Country-man of ours, from absolute letters, proceedeth to let downe in writing, the figures of the word and sentence in the Mother tongue, and illustrate them with examples of his language, retaining the *Greek* titles of the Figures, or names of *Epicurists*, *Anadiplosis*, &c.

And from this Writer of our Country, we received the Types of the old Alphabet: for there are Historical fragments yet extant, concerning *Norru* the Name-giver of *Norway*, and founder of the Kingdom, and thole *Taperob*, or little Kings, whom hee vanquished before hee obtained the Monarchie.

§. II.

A discourse of the first Inhabitants of the Northern World, supposed to be Giants expelled from Canaan. Of the Islanders *Houfes*, *Fewell*, *Viduaal*.

Moreover concerning some of the ancestors of *Norru*: among whom his father *Porra* (whom they call *Thorra*) King of *Gotland*, *Finland*, and *Kuenland*: an excellent Prince of his age, from whom the moeth of the old *Norwegians*, and now *Islanders* hath the name of *Thorra*, which in the *Indian* Calendar beginneth the 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. or 16. of January: for it hath a movable beginning after the manner of their Calendar. And seeing King *Thorra* this month accustomed to sacrifice unto his gods, the *Kuonnes* instituted yearly sacrifices in the same month to him, being dead, as to a certaine god, in token of an happy year, which they began with the winter after the manner of the old *Lacedaemonians*, & called the same month *Porra*. Of *Thorra* no otherwise then the *Lacedaemonians* gave divine honour to *Lycorgus* being dead, building a Temple in memory of him, where hee was honoured for a god; to whom his familiar friends instituted set Feasting-dayes, and solemn assemblies which remained a long time, and the daies wherein the assemblies were celebrated, they called *Lycorgida*: concerning which matter looke *Cragius* in his third booke of the Common-wealth of the *Lacedaemonians*.

geth diuers Writers of the Historie of the Phœnicians. The words of Procopius are these, in his fourth Booke of the Warres of the Persians, not in one place only, cited by D. Gyllenus: out of the which, among other things, I gather mine opinion. The Hebrewes (saith Procopius) after they returned out of Egypt, and remayned still in the borders of Palestina, Moyses (who led them in their journey) desired: whom Iouis the Ioune of Nun succeeded, who also brought the people into Palestina, and showing strength and courage far beyond the nature of man, aboynded the Country, where all the Country upon the Sea-coast, from Sidon came to the border of Egypt, was called Phœnicia: great multitudes of people dwelt: as the Gergasies, Iebusites, and others named in the Hebrew Volume, who when they saw the Armies of the strangers to be insupportable, leaving their Country, founde went into convenient place for great multitudes, they entered into Africa, where inhabiting very many Cities, they left, and built the Towne Tingen in Numidia, most strongly fortified in the situation thereof: where the Pillars of white stone are erected neere the great Phœnicie, wherein in the Phœnician Language this is signified. This Procopius writeth, to which purpose the Historians of the Hebrews are cited by G. as reported to have bene come into Germany, Sclauonia, and the next adjoining Countries, &c. Into Sea, 20 der Nations, &c. Also: And surely in that Age, that the whole world was empty and desolate, I am sure that the Olam of the East came by little and little into the Countries thereof, it appeareth by the testimony of the Land of Palestina, by the Hebrews, went into Ilyricum and Pannonia (to wit, by the migrations and removes, which out of the place before alleged by Procopius, were vnderstand) as Rabbi David Kimchi witnesseth at the end of *Abder*.

The ancient Islander seeme to haue bene ordaind for great frugalitie, wherein first their habitations or buildings are briefly to be touched, next their food and manner of apparel: and for first as touching their habitations, the Islanders haue followed the first and most ancient

manner of dwelling. To wit, not by Cities and Townes; but as *Tactius* (speake of the Greeke, Shore, or Bay of the Sea pleased them: as a Field, as a Mountayne, as a Wood, as an Hill, or Valley) Age of the World, but also of the latter Age: as the people of *Athens* and *Laonia*, in the beginning dwelt by Villages (as they write) not together, or by Cities: and as in the time of *Tactius*, (whereupon any man may rather iudge the like concerning the North-west Work) so, not after, menaces, which lasted but a while, nor yet deformed in their. Nor surely was it male only of Turke, sometimes of rough Stones, adding Turke in stead of Mortar: which is now more notable buildings. And so you might see the Rooft with the walls before matured old age were covered with greene grass every yeere, for you must vnderstand, that the Rooft and walls were couered with greene Turf. Windows were made in the Rooft, of holes in the walls, and certaine Rooftes not very high, such as is reported the building of houses with the Easterne ling the waies of the Sea; through the miraculous testimony of Gods Providence, confounde their huge houses: which yet were a great helpe also; with those which the Inhabitants, as off as they would, fetched out of bordering *Norway*, and perdue more all out of *Greenland*: for the 50 Islanders layd yearly to both a long time. Every one therefore had the houses of their Villages almost joyning together on their ground: besides the stalls of their Herds, fenced some distance from the houses themselves. Also certaine piles of fuel, not altogether joyning together, to auoid the danger of fire: perdue more all out of *Greenland*, which being solitary, might better receiue the Ayre and drying winds.

Some maintained their fires with home-growing Wood: others with clammye Turke (as I thinke *H. Iunius* spely calleth it) whereof there are two kinde with vs: the one soft and spongy, growing vnder the superficies of the Earth: which we call *Sower*. Another more thick, and therefore more waighy; which perdue more was very well call *dispos* Turke: by the opinion of the same *Iunius*: because it is taken out of the deepe Quarries or Mines, digg a great depth out of the Earth. And both kinde of Turke (but this much more) must be first baked with the Sunne and winde, before it be fit to burne. This latter kinde we, as also some of the *Germanies* call it *Turf*: the insister whereof in the *Orchards* a certaine *Orchard* Duke is said to becom *Eimerus* the Sonne of *Rangoultus* a *Norwegian* Duke of *Mor*, in the time

time of *Palericus* King of *Norway*, who was therefore calld *Torffarius*. He had a brother calld *Rolfus*, whom *Cranicus* nameth *Rello*, who possessed part of *Trante*, afterwards calld *Norwardia* of the *Norwegians* or *Norwegians*. The Inhabitants chiefly wanted fowle to expell the dullness of cold, besides other vices sufficiently knowne: especially in the Winter time, when Hot-houses and Chimneyes are in vfe, heaped together of Rocks and stone, through which the flame might easily breake forth; which as soone as through the force of the fire they were thoroughly heat, and when the Hot-house began now to leaue smoking, the cold parts of the Chimney were besprikled with hote glowing stones: by which means heate viciu effectually to disperic it selfe throughout the whole house, which also is very well so preferred by the wall, and to Rooft covered with Turke.

Yet left the Islanders might seeme through meere poeuerie or want of knowledge, to haue vfed rude buildings and poore houses, I can call to remembrance certaine houses of an hundred and twentie fixe foor long, and some of one hundred thirtie fixe, as I haue before declared concerning the buildings of *Inguisur*: and some of one hundred and twentie fixe in length, and fixtie feet broad: whereof we shall hereafter speake; some also, wholly hollowed rafters, and boarded feeling of the walls carued by art, report the ancient Historians, of worthy and memorable Acts. They therefore inclosed their habitations built after this manner, with certaine spaces of fruitful fields ordaind for tillage, which spaces through toyle some labour, they afterwards compassed about with a banke calld vpr, to keepe out the Herds of cattle. Moreover, sufficient huge pastures were assignd to every house, or plot of ground, diuided by euery limits, or inclosures from others, whereof we shall speake in the eight Chapter. And euery Earne or Habitation for the most part, and in like manner euery plot of ground receiued the name from the first Founders: sometimes also from some other: so Mountaynes and Riuer as hath bene ascribed thereto before; so that by this means the places themselves, even by their names only declared to all posteritie their first Inhabitants, and *sempus*.

I proceede from buildings to their vitualls, and tillage of the field and ground, which partly succeeded well to the first Inhabitants, to procure Corne and fruit from thence: but I know not whether euery where alike. Yet in the moine space, that *Herodotus* mentioned before, exercised his fluxes in tillage of the ground, and one *Gomerus* of *Ledarda*, sowing his Seed, was wounded by the excoie on the ball of the cheeke: and likewise *Hesiodus* *Enstern* *sele* built by employed in sowing the Seed, was flaine. Hence from the fields there are proper names of certaine places. Hence came that Law concerning the gathering together, and carrying of Corne after Haruest (where they speake of the seruices which the Lawyers call *pradali*). All which are manifest tokens of the tillage of the ground, amongst the first Islanders: which also, even vnto this day, I heare, is practised by some Inhabitants of South Island, but with lesse increase: the ground and temper of the Ayre degenerating from the first goodnes thereof after so many Ages: perdue more all the care of the Husbandmen being lesse diligent, may bee the cause of this Corne coming from foreigne parts began more to be vsd. And because that tillage of the ground seemed in the beginning either not vied of, or lesse fruitful for Corne, and all manner of graine; a peculiar manner of tillage of the ground presently began: whereby they compassed with dunge those fields or spaces, which I said they inclosed within their owne circuit, especially with kowes dunge, at the mowing of the beyl hay, to the intent they may the better feed the Herds: and especially the Kine, that they might yeild the more plenty of Milke. Which tillage of the ground is yet retained: and they only exercise the same for the most part, amongst by mid-land Inhabitants: seeing fash as dwell upon the Sea-coast live most by fishing, whither also those more remote or mid-land people yearly feed their seruants to fish. Both Plains, that is to say, the ground and the Sea, was to bee ploughed after a sort by the Islanders, for the comforts of life. To whom besides instead of vitualls, Sheep, Oxen, Swine and Kiddles, sufficiently abounded: and also fishes of diuers kinde, besides

Sea-fish out of the Floods, Lakes and Riuer, they met with euery where so that they might take them as it were out of a certaine weale, especially in that Age: also Milke and White-meate, with goodly plenty of Butter from the Heards of cattle. Besides Fowle in great number, some time, as Hennes and Domestical Geefe, or Fowle of another kind sent in the open Ayre, wandering also solitary in Mountaynes places: which the possessor marked in the fere, that euery one might easily demand his owne. They had others also not tame, which theyooke by certaine gins: as Greefe and Duckes of the Meadow, Partridges, and Swannes: and very many Sea-fowle, whose names and properties I doe not know. But Fowle of euery kind tame or wilde, they either preferred their Eggs or themselves, or both, for the vief of meate. Besides the natural Drink or pressed Whay of Milke (whereof the great plenty is so much the better, as the Milke is more excellent: so that half an ounce of water mixed with an ounce of Whay, doth not wholly diminish the taste thereof; but that it relineth more of the Whay than of the water) they also boyled Barley Flowre, sometimes adding thereto the Honey Combe, or Water mingled with Honey: sometimes also a Liquore made of certaine Berries growing here, Moreover, the ancient Islanders, brought

Chap. 9.
Of their Cu-
stomes and
manner of life.
Separate dwell-
ings.

Houses.

Fewell.

Turke of two
kinds, both vied
in England, the
one in female,
the other in
heath grounds.
Einer is the
insister of
Turke-fowle
in the *Orchards*.

Greater houses
in Island, in
old times.

Vitallus and
Husbandry.
Tillage and
entry in island.

Beasts:
Fowle.
Fishes.

Drinke:
Whay.

Meat.
Alk.

brought in drinke made of Corne, from forreigne parts, as also all manner of graine, and other things: for they were furnished with ships of their owne, wherewith they yearly visited at their pleasure, *Denmarke, Norway, Swecia, Scotland, Saxonie, England, and Ireland.*
Our ancient Islanders wanted not honest Banqueruets.

Our ancient *Islands* wanted no *Island* Banquetings and meetings : and that surely wished our mikrafe *Islands*, whether we respect the number of the guests, or the time of the Banquet, exalting the *Islands* and *Islands*, brethren, and Citizens of *Islands* of the *Islands*, of twelve hundred persons, praising the Father *Islands*, made a Banquet for fourteen days to Inhabitant of *Islands*, furnished *Islands* Pa, with his two brethren, were at the charge of hundred men, seen for fourteen days space : not feeding the chief men *Islands* without reward.

I find money was not vsuall with the *Islanders*, I mean, those of ancient time: but silver was weighed by the ballance: and bartering of Merchandizes was very commonly vsed. Moreover, Rings of Gold, and Bracelets, were both often sent for tokens of remembrance from Superiours to priuate men, or from one friend to another.

ϕ. III.

Of their Politie, and Religion in old times.

Chap. 6.
Of their Com-
mon-wealth &
Religion.

THe *Landgrave* about to establish an *Aristocracie*, or State of Nobilitie considering they dwelt scattered in the Countrey, and not together) first diuided their Cite into Fourths or *Terrades*, named from the four principall quarters of the World, and distinguishing the same by letting of bounds (such also as was fifth Chapter) diuided into North, East, South, and West quarters. And againe, they diuided the Fourths into Thirds, except the North quarter. For this, as it was larger then the rest, was parted into Fourths. But these Thirds they subdivided againe into their parts: some Tenth and others somewhat otherwise. For the which not finding a faine name, I have receyved the proper name of the Countrey, that which with them is *Heppes*: we may contentedly call *Kepps*: unto the which also we may imagine no vnapt *Etymology*: from the word *Repp*, for that was the first *apellacion* or *insignia* of them that executed any publicke Office. For the order of the Magistrates, and judgement, and the equal balancing of mindes, to be preferred in the rest of the Magistrates, worthily ought to begin there, vnlesse any would rather think they had learned more of us, than that it is *say*, Coards, with the which the diuision was made, after the most ancient manner of the *Heppes* themselves. Every *Kepp* regularly contayned twentie inhabitants at the least (for otherwise it is contayned more) limited by a certayne increase of the wealth of their Family, vnder which they might not be reckoned to the poorer *Repps*: to the richer they might.

Sears of In- justice and Re- ligion.

Idols,

Per and T-bows

day.
From Monday

and *Dr.*

Odeurs the

same that *Wol-*
den is...

Now in our
Saxen storie.

Odinus, Odin, or

Odes by his
Sanctification

Sorcery (which made him a

Devil) made

God,

...of
Federation.

Abstract:

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO PRESS

Moreover in every *Tide*, as all in the *Fourth* of the *North Tetrads*, (which Iurifications 40
in times past they called *Ping*, at this day also *Sylva heral*) they appointe three more famous
places conteracted to the Seat of Iustice and Iudgements; besides also dedicated to the *Divine Sa-*
crifices, which they call *Hoff*; we call them Holy Places, and *Templer*. Every *Chappell* is
in the manner of the *Temple* was sumptuously built: whereof we reade of two, of one hun-
dred and twentie foot long, and the Iurisdiction of *Walsall* of *North Iland*: the other in
Rutland of *South Iland*: and this is the Iurisdiction of *Walsall* of *North Iland*: the other in
had a kind of *Chappell* adjoining. This place was most famous, *Morocco*, every such holy place
made with hands, upon a low ftoole or a cetyrtayne *Aflor*; about which were flood the Idols and Gods
be sacrificed unto them, were orderly placed. But the chiefe a middlemost of which were to
be sacrificed, which they called *Per*, from whom the *Northerne Kingdomes* yet call *Thory day* *Per* 50
day. The rest of the Gods were collateral unto them; whose cetyrtayne number, and names I haue not
heard. Yet in the ancient fables were called *Per* by cetyrtayne number, and names I haue not
Thorn, are specially noted by name. *Frery*, which is called *Per* be made hereafter: three besides
Al, I thinke to be that famous *Odinus*, not accounted the chief of them, whose *Ethnick* Gods of
whom I made mention before Synecdochically called *Al*; becaufe in the fables of the
people of *Al*, who came hither into the *North*: for in the singular number, as the chiefe of
for his noble kingdom, was reckoned *Al*, as *Alfer*. This *Odinus*, as aforefaid, he ascended
the *Divinitie* after his death, was reckoned among the number of the Gods: from whom
at this day, *Wodensday*, is called *Odin Dagur*. The day of the day of *Odinus*: whertupon perhaue- 60
nure, I shall not vnuly call *Odin Mercure*, as *The Iulian* *Odinus*: whertupon perhaue-
nure in the place of *Mars*: and such as were faime in the warres, they were faime
to *Odin*. And the companions, or Sonnes of *Odin* were *Frery* and *Nordur*: who
through

through the same artes which their Father or Prince *Odinus* practited, obtayned an opinion of Divinitie. I have before advertised you, that chieflie in the North Country, Kings, after their death, are honoured for Gods. But the worshipping of them hath not yet come vnto the *Spaniards* wherefore we will speake nothing of them in this place.

Before that feat of the Gods placed in the foresaid Temples, stood an Altar erected, covered above with Iron, that it might not be hurt with fire, which must be continually there. A Caladron also or brazen vessell was set upon the Altar, to receive the blood of the sacrifices, with an

[illegible]

Also in *Welt Island*, in the Province of *Thornfving*: in the middle of the Marker place there was a round circle, into the which, men appointed to be sacrificed to the Gods, were gathered: The who being violently smitten against an exceeding great stone fet there, were cruelly slain. The indigent whereof, that stone is reported to have caused many ages after, by the bloody con-

[illegible]

But that cruelty, and those sacrifices of *Saturnus* seeme not to have continued long with the *Islanders*; and surely, they were vied no where else, save in the two places assigned. Nor yet of all the Inhabitants of that Province, where it was exercised. For it is reported of *Hordulfus*, the companion of *Luigi* before mentioned, that he altogether abhorred the worshipping of Idols. And *Isidoro* also Giramond *Bisio*, descended from the Barons of *Norwegian* inhabitant of the Pro-

50 And *Helio* also turn named *Asia*, ~~defected~~ *defected* from a little : for he received an *Irisb* man, a banished *Christian*, into his neighbourhood ; one named *Ormusif*, with his families (which came with him :) and did not only receive him, but also permitted him to build a Church consecrated to Saint *Columbe*, in the Village of *Efeneberg*. A young man also of the same Province, called *Bae*, deflected that most august Temple of humane sacrifices with fire, and burned all the Gods, ~~which were~~ *which were* *which were* it was required by the Proprietors.

Moreover, *Turkesh* furnished *Shame* (it may be because he honoured the Moore, called *Moore*, and famous among the Nebelites of *Iland*, a little before the agonie of death, caused him-
60 self to be forth ours against the *Summe*, and openly admiring the workmanship of Heaven, and the whole World, commended his Soule departing when he was ready to die, so that God
and created the *Summe*, and the reit of the *Starrs*. He liued about the yeeres of *Shame* and
the world the *Summe*, and the reit of the *Starrs*. He liued about the yeeres of *Shame* and
of fame, or the like may be reported of very many others, while *Eden* was continued. As of
Hades a certain inhabitants of South *Iland*: who, because he followed not the worship of
Idols, A.D. 1111.

Noble-men in this place, and the fate of the Common-wealth governed by their oversight, an Aristocracy. The same are called by our Country-men *Gedar*, and *Hoffigodar*; from the Church or Temple (which is *Hoff*) as it were Out-fetters of the Church, and their Office or Dignity is called *Gedar* to wit, their name being next derived from their *Eibnik* gods, which they call *Gods*: that even by the name it self, they (who almost represented the Name and Office of the Gods) might be put in minde of the Vertues, Wisdom, and Justice, &c. requisite in such a Government.

And that they might shew themselves such, I suppose the same place was appointed to judgments of the fate of Justice, which was ordained for Sacred Mysteries; to wit, at the forial Temple. And also therefore, because the place of holy Mysteries, was religiously thought fitter for Morcouer, the Provinciall Gouvernours had their two-fold assemblies, as the *Reppagogies* had yearly assemblies, containing many dayes: and extraordinary, any necessity requiring (these for- assembled by some signe of holding a meetings we have already said of *Reppagogies*: which signify, what it was in times past, is not well knowne; vntill it were that, which afterwards, and yet remaineth in vly; the forme of a *Norwegian* axe of Wood, carried about after the same manner of the Iudiciall Citizens: as we said a little before, of the wooden crosse. This too.

Moreover, every one paid some yearly tribute or revenue to the Temple: whereof the Guardian or Overseer of the Church was the Collector: for speaking of holy mysteries pertaining to the Church, I call every Noble man so. To him also came the penaltie of the Temple, and Court at his owne charge. Lastly, the necessity, and specially care to amend and make good what fouler damage done vnto the Province, or to foresee and prevent it being imminent, vnto the help of the Provincials, lay wholly vpon him: so that, for the destroying of Theues and publique Robbers, how at this day we see it every where come to passe, where they make a great conscience to crime, much more to put him to death. These are the Gouvernours of Provinces: The *Nomophylaces* or Iustices follow. The *Nomophylace* was the other kinde of the superiour Magistrate, (some- what later then these: of which sort, in the whole ancient Cite of *Island* (for we yet desire to be called *Logmam* and *Logfogmam*, for the Common-wealth began not suddenly, but by little peradventure not every where the same, before they had them compact, and gathered into one trust and wife men, whom I call *Nomophylaces*; and whose Office I shall very well describe in of the *Nomophylaces* (*Part B. Cragus L. 1. cap. 6. de Repub. Lacedæm.*) was, as we perceive by the matter it self, to have charge of the custody and preservation of *Laws*; for the benefit of the people; and that they should not suffer them to be abolished, changed, or taken away by any. Moreover, they maintained that the force of the *Laws* might not grow out of use, or the memory thereof be forgotten: but they compelled the Magistrates to the often observation of them, and execution of their duties. And further, we may think these very men were the interpreters of *Laws*, if peradventure any thing doubtfully sit downe, or hardly understood, should come on dispute. This (*Cragus* writeth: the same ther with the rest of the Nobility, of changing, or renewing *Laws*, and also enlarging them, as *Nomophylaces* or chiefe Iustices, the content of the people being added. Therefore the *Nas* hath bene said before, Interpreters, and preservers of the Law, armed with publique authority for this purpose, in whole power alio the custody of the Booke of the *Laws* retained.

But I dare proceede no further with our Author in his *Law Suites and Courts*, lest I be therein detained with tedious and tedious details. I am a Traveller, and therefore I have (not so much for further, but for the knowledge of the Antiquities) added this force: I will not tire the Reader whole Booke of their ancient *Grands*, and another of their *Kings*, both here omitted. The *Kings* of Norway began to have dominion in *Island*, A. 1261: since immemorially referred: which Kingdoms descending upon Margarete, by her was linked with that of Denmark, and so both continued about 200. 60 years.

ENG.



ENGLISH NORTHERNE NAVIGATIONS, AND DISCOVERIES; RELATIONS OF GREENELAND,

GROENLAND, THE NORTH-VEST PASSAGE, AND OTHER ARCTIKE REGIONS, WITH LATER RUSSIAN OCCURRENTS.

THE FOURTH BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

A Voyage set forth by the Right Worshipfull Sir THOMAS SMITH, and the rest of the Mulcouie Company, to Cherry Island: and for a further discoverie to be made towards the North-Pole, for the likelihood of a Trade or a passage that way, in the Ship called the *Amittie*, of burishen seuentie tuns; in the which IONAS POOLE was Master, hauing foureteene men and one boy: A.D. 1610.



THE first of March 1609. I wayed at Black-wall and went to *Gransford*. The third day I went downe to the *Noore-head*. The ninth, we wayed and put out to Sea (blessed bee God:) and by the fifthend day I was in the Bay of *Roffe*, on the Coast of *Norway*, in Latitude 65. degrees: at what time the wind came Northerly, and blew extreme fierce, with great floc of Snow and Frost. The sixteenth day, we had the like weather and winds, so that we could not maintaine a * mayne-course, and we lost some of our Beere. The seuenteenth day, we had Snow, and all the Beak-head was so laden with Ice, that it seemed a firme lump, and the wind at North, which blew so fierce that we could not maintaine a fore-course, and draue vs backe to the altitude 63. degrees, 56. minutes. The forme continued to exceeding violent, that I was faine to spoone before it fortie eight hours, and the same wind and weather continued till the twentieth one day, and in that time we were driuen as farre to the Southwards as *Shetland*. And being faine by the Land, and seeing no likelihood of faire weather, I got a Fisher-man to conduct mee to good Harbour, called *Hamerfand*, not so much to eschew the stormy weather, as to stop some leakes, and so amend our tackling. I tarried in *Shetland* till the twelfth of April 1610. at which time the wind was Southerly. The former wind came to the North at midnight, with great store of Snow, which froze as fast as it fell: which wind continued till the fourteenth at Noone. At two of the clocke it came to the East north-east, and I had flood to the Northwards, after many stormes, much cold Snow, and extreme Frost. I had sight of the North-cape the second day of May. Then I stood towards *Cherry Island*, the wind being at West North-west. The third day at noone, the Cape bare South South-east; seauenteene leagues off, we had much Snow with Frost. The fourth day, it was thicke weather with.

A.D. 1609.
Second, Compt.
Aug.

* The Main-
style without
a Bonnet.

* The Per-
style without a
Bonnet.

Hamerfand in
Shetland.

North Cape
is 7. degrees
30. minutes.
May the uen-
cond.

store of Whales in those Seas, we are at an extraordinary charge this year, of fitting out a ship and men for that purpose, which ship is called the Marie Margaret of London, whereby our husbandry and swift turnes or thereabouts: on the meaning, is that you doe keepe company with the said ship, and not to leave her, till God lend you the place, where she may keepe her Voyage: which by your report should be at a place named by you the last year 1610. Whale Bay.

And God sending you to the said place, we would have you to stay there the killing of a Whale, or two or three, for your better experience hereafter to expedite that business, through extremities of the Ice you should be put from your Discoveries. And in the mean time while you are staying about killing of the Whale, you may catch some of your people's bee searching the Coast with their Shallops for Whale finnes, Morfes teeth, Ambergreese, or any other commodities, that may be found upon that Coast. And having thus stayed a convenient time with the said great ship for the purpose above specified, we would have you then to proceed on your Discoveries for the satisfying our expectations: formerly mentioned, which is to discover further: to the North Pole as farre as possibly you can, and how the Land already discovered doth trend, and whether there be any inhabitants in the said Land, and whether there be an open Sea to the Northward beyond the said Land. And in this your coasting the land, we doubt not but you will endeavour with your Shallops to gather up all the Whale finnes you can finde, and to kill the Morfes which you can come by on land, and to reserve the teeth and bladders to the most advantage that may be, the better to bear out the great charge which you know we are in these Discoveries. And to that end we have laden in you eleven Tunnets of empty casks.

And having spent so much time in this your Discoverie, and in gathering up of such commodities as to that Coast will afford, and as the season of the year will permit you, then we would have you returne for England, and in your way homeward to touch at the place where you left the Marie Margaret, to see if she be not gone; and finding her there, and that the time of the year will permit, we would have you melt your blubber into Oile before your coming from thence, to avoid the great trouble and inconvenience you know we will find the last year 1610. by bringing the same blubber in blubber. But if the said ship should chance to be full filled, and to be full gone before your coming thither, yet we would have you stay there, or at Cherie Island some small time to melt your blubber: to which end we have appointed Thomas Edge our servant in that ship to leave a Copper and such necessities as shall serve you turnes for the performing of that business, behind him; and have delivered him likewise advertisements at that place of their proceedings in the voyage, and of their intent; what course they purpose to take, together with their opinions, what course they would have you take.

In these matters of Discoveries and victuals Voyages, the variety of occurrences and Sea dangers is such, as we cannot distinctly prescribe a course certain to be held: yet we hold it fitting to set downe our opinions of the needfull: which are, that as your first departure out of England you keepe compass together, and agree upon your places of meeting: if by tempest of weather you chance to be separated; still flying your course directly for Cherie Island, where you would have your ship. And if at your coming thither, you find the same charge of Ice, and that there be divers ice houses, then we would have you to work upon them, at time and opportunity will permit, always having respect to your intended voyage. And having dispatched your business in that place, we would have you depart in company together for The Whale Bay, as aforesaid, and to follow our instructions formerly set downe to be done in that place.

And having performed what may be done in the parts beyond Cherie Island, and so returning backe againe for England, we hold it fit you make your Rendezvous againe at the said Cherie Island, and there to stay the one for the other, and to be killing of the Beasts there till the last of August, if needs bee. And if it happen that one ship doe arrive there before the other, and no Morfes come on board, then we would have them spend the time in searching for the Lead Ore, or any other Mineral matter that may be like to be of worth upon the said Land. And thus having stayed at Cherie Island till the last of August the one for the other, and not meeting together, the ship foraying having made her voyage, we would have her to returne directly for England, and to leave a Note in writing of the day of her departure. This is our opinion. Notwithstanding, if upon better grounds you shall among your selves finde a convenient time to be held for the good of the Voyage, and the benefits of vs the Adventurers, we leave it to your selves to agree upon, at time and opportunity shall serve.

And for the amending of an Objection heretofore used, That the want of sufficient victuals hath bene the cause of the overthrow of the Voyages by beeder returns home, then otherwise they would; we have thought fit to set downe the quantitie of victuals delivered aboard your ship in this our Commission, to the intent to cleare our selves and our assigns of that imputation, and to lay the blame on your selves, if by default the same be well humbled. The particulars are these. Barley, 225 1/2 quarters, 131. Dishes 305. Beere 14. Tunnets. Fish, 200. of Haberdash, and halfe an hundred Linen. Cheese 300. weight. Butter three Firkins. Oyle three Gallons. Pease ten Bushels. Oats-meale five Bushels. Candles, five dozen. Aquaviva, thirrie Gallons. Kingar one rundlet of twentie Gallons. This proportion of victuals will last you seven or eight months with good husbandry, together with the 600 lbs of Fish, Fowle, and Beasts that are to be had in abundance upon these Coasts. So that we hope you shall have no cause to the contrary, but cheerfully to goe forward in your business, whereby not only the small Barke you goe in, but the great ship may come home fully laden with one commodity or other, which we doubt not but by your diligence and good endeavour you may attayne unto.

But

Further discovery to the North.

Thomas Edge, See pag. 134.

Cherie Island.

But if you shall chauce by extremities of Ice, or otherwise to be put backe from your discoverie, or from observing commodities upon the coast of Greenland, whereby to lade both ships; then we would have you stay at Cherie Island, or other lands thereabout, so long time as possibly you can, and as the season of the year will permit you, to finish the rest of your voyage. And if there bee sufficient lading betweene you both to lade the bigger ship, we would have her to be dispatched from thence with all speed, and you to stay there as long as you may conveniently for the good of the Voyage: which the more beneficiall it is possible, the more it will be for your order, and we will not be unthankfull at your returne.

It would have you at every place of meeting with the Marie Margaret, to deliver to Thomas Edge our servant a particular Note of what goods you have taken into your ship. And at your last lading place we would have you make a generall inventory of the whole Carriage of goods laden in your ship, and naming likewise the same, to send it up, and direct the same to our Agent resident in London. And if you doe chauce to meete with the Marie Margaret at or after your last Port of lading, we would have you deliver a Copy of the said inventory to our servant Thomas Edge for our better satisfaction, whose casualties sooner might happen by the way, and as any hand to have such an inventory ever readie send, and for materials take you up in some farre place of coast.

We hold it fit, that you Ionas Poole should be as great Pilot in this voyage to the Northward, and therefore we would have you to accompany the great ship, and in bring her to the places of fishing for the Whale, or to any other place, which you out of your experience shall thinke fit to bring her for the good of the Voyage, and benefit of the Adventurers. And our will is, That Steven Bennet Master of the said great ship together with therof of the company in that ship, doe follow the said Ionas Poole's directions, as they will answer the contrary upon their perils at their coming home.

And for that heretofore the Company have bene abused by lewd and bad people, who have imbezzled part of that which by our great charges and adventures hath bene assigned: Our minds and will is, That you Ionas Poole doe make search in your own ship, that none of your Whale finnes, Morfes teeth, Oyle, or any other commodities gathered at your charge, be imbezzled or carried away by any of the Mariners, who will looke to have the vittuals of their wages paid them, and to be full with meate and drinke likewise. And God finding you into England, we would have you suffer some of your people to goe on shore unforsaken: neither would we have you to leave the ship till your coming into the River of Thames, that we give you order to the contrary. And if you chauce to be wadded bound upon the coast, you may send up one of your people with your Letter, but not to come your selfe on shore till our further order, as aforesaid.

The like order we would have Steven Bennet to use in his ship, by virtue of this our Commission, which we have ordered to Thomas Edge our servant to be performed accordingly.

And in as much as we have agreed here with a Tunnets for all the Morfes bladders which we will kill and bring into, and have sent men of purpose for the flying, salting, and ordaining of the same, wherof we have appointed some to goe in your ship: We would have you reserve the said bladders, and store your ship therewith in head of bladders. And if you observe a greater quantitie then you can bring away with you, having always regard to commodities of more value, which are Oyle, Teeth, and Whales finnes, that none of them be left behind: We would have you leave the said surplusage of bladders in some convenient place, till the next year, that we send more force of shipping.

A Commission for Thomas Edge our servant, appointed to goe as our Factor in the Ship called the Marie Margares, of the burthen of one hundred and fiftie Tunnets, for the killing of the Whale and Morfes upon the coast of Greenland, or any other place in the North Ocean: Given the 31. of March, 1611.

Y On are not ignorant of our employing you heretofore in two severall Voyages to Cherie Island, The first wherof, by reason of the Voyagers going shaker, together with certaine men of Hull, gathering the said place, proved to us a third round lost of our principal. As also in the second Voyage, because you could not come to sit forcing upon the said Island by reason of the abundance of Ice lying round about the same fiftie leagues compass: till the twentie eight of July, by which occasion our whole charge of fitting out that years adventure had bene lost, if by the refuge to lade our ship backe againe from Saint Michael the Arch-bishop in Russia had not holpen vs: yet notwithstanding that help, we lost by that voyage above five hundred pounds. We entering into due consideration of the premises, doe not impute the cause of these our losses unto you; but to the accidents then happening contrary to our expectation: yet these losses growing upon vs in the times of your employment, we can doe no less then put you to mind, to the intent to encourage and stirre up your minds to doe your utmost endeavour to further the business in this your third employment, that we may recover our selves of the losses formerly sustained. And for that end we have made choice of you againe to goe as our Factor in the Ship Marie Margaret, of one hundred and fiftie Tunnets, the Master being Steven Bennet, for the killing of the Whale: And to that end, as you well know, have bin at charge of procuring of sixe me of Saint Iohn de Luz, accoutred

Adventurers and losses in first Discoverie etc.

North-east Sunne the fifth day : at which time we weighed, and stood to the Westward, but immediately we altered our course, and stood toward the land againe among the Ice; and about a West North-west Sunne wee sent our Skiffe and Shallop to fetch the Shallop aforesaid. The winde was at North and by West, frostie weather with snowe.

The eight, wee flood toward *Cherle* land againe, and were faire by at a South funne: at
which time the winde came to the South-east, and wee saw the *Hollander* standing with vs.
Then we altered our courſe, and layed Weſt North-weſt, determining, if hee followed vs.,
to flay for him. At ten of the clock at night hee came to vs: and the Admirall ſent his hallop-
boord of him to command him to be gone out of our companie: and at a North funne hee flood
away from vs, and layed North and by Eaſt, and we lay by the lee.

The twentieth at a South Sunne we saw our Comfort, and spake with them, and they told vs, that they had almost split their ship with a piece of Ice, which brake nine of their Timbers, so that they had five foot water in hold.

The one and two and twentie dayes, wee plyed to windward, the winde being at North faire weather. And at *Blacke Point* wee saw great store of Ice drining to the South. At eight of the clocke at night *Blacke Point* did beare from mee East and by North nine leagues. And the three dayes past we saw great store of Whales within ten or twelve leagues off the Land. The three and twentierh wee were off Cape Cod.

The three and twentieth we were faire off Cape Cold; where Master Edge and Master Ar-
thington went with the *Barks* in their Shallops for *Crosse-rode*, in hope to kill some Whales.
And we saw store of Whales in the Sea.

The five and twentieth we got into *Foulø Sound*, all the Sounds being full of Ice; and the Shallops came aboard and brought some Venison, which was very lean. And at five of the clock the *Boats* went with the Shallops to *Fairø Byeland*, to see if they could kill a Whale: and at a North-west Sunne Master Edger went with the Shallops to *Fairø Byeland*.

The fix and twentieth, the two ships abouted came into *Foul Sound*: one of them was the *Hollander* before mentioned; the other was a ship of *London*, called *The Diana*, whereof one *Thomas Buxton* dwelling at *Wapping wall*, was Master.

The feun and twentieth, *Alon Salazar*, came aboard of our ship, and told us, that his Merchant had broke his necke downe a Cliffe. The same day the *Hollander* and the *Diana* stood to the Southward. The winde was at North North-west, and North-west, which kept the Ice in the Sounds. The twentieth eight, we caught the last *Bear*, and

Sounds. The twenty eight, we went the long Bow and our Skallops to *Brakelund*, where in the top of ten Tunners, there to be fer up. The wind was at West with snowe and frost. The fine day the *Baky* came aboard, but could kill neiuer a *Winfeld*. The wind came to the South South-west, with froit and snowe.

The nine and twentieth, the wind was at South with much snowe. The fine day one of our men dyed, named *John Wether*. Young *Isaac* killed about three weeks. The thirtieth, on *Michael Perken* dyed about the *Winfeld*. The th of May, the wind was at South; and we stood toward the *Ferland* in 79. degrees. The fine day midnight, the *Ghyverne* of the *White* dyed.

The first of June, we stood into *Foul Bay*, where we saw abundance of ice drive out with the wind at East. The second day, the wind was at North and by *Ball*, told forth fresh weather. All which day we lay under fall in the mouth of the Sound. The third day, we fell in with *Thomas Marmaduke of Ball*, in a ship called *The Newell*. We went for him to come aboard, but he answered, that he was not well, and lent his mate *Christopher Nims*. The same day we stood to the mouth of the Sound, but it was covered with ice, and *Abraham* stood to the Northward; and as we were afterward informed, discovered a fire on *S. Idland*.

18
 19
 20
 21
 22
 23
 24
 25
 26
 27
 28
 29
 30
 31
 32
 33
 34
 35
 36
 37
 38
 39
 40
 41
 42
 43
 44
 45
 46
 47
 48
 49
 50
 51
 52
 53
 54
 55
 56
 57
 58
 59
 60
 61
 62
 63
 64
 65
 66
 67
 68
 69
 70
 71
 72
 73
 74
 75
 76
 77
 78
 79
 80
 81
 82
 83
 84
 85
 86
 87
 88
 89
 90
 91
 92
 93
 94
 95
 96
 97
 98
 99
 100
 101
 102
 103
 104
 105
 106
 107
 108
 109
 110
 111
 112
 113
 114
 115
 116
 117
 118
 119
 120
 121
 122
 123
 124
 125
 126
 127
 128
 129
 130
 131
 132
 133
 134
 135
 136
 137
 138
 139
 140
 141
 142
 143
 144
 145
 146
 147
 148
 149
 150
 151
 152
 153
 154
 155
 156
 157
 158
 159
 160
 161
 162
 163
 164
 165
 166
 167
 168
 169
 170
 171
 172
 173
 174
 175
 176
 177
 178
 179
 180
 181
 182
 183
 184
 185
 186
 187
 188
 189
 190
 191
 192
 193
 194
 195
 196
 197
 198
 199
 200
 201
 202
 203
 204
 205
 206
 207
 208
 209
 210
 211
 212
 213
 214
 215
 216
 217
 218
 219
 220
 221
 222
 223
 224
 225
 226
 227
 228
 229
 230
 231
 232
 233
 234
 235
 236
 237
 238
 239
 240
 241
 242
 243
 244
 245
 246
 247
 248
 249
 250
 251
 252
 253
 254
 255
 256
 257
 258
 259
 260
 261
 262
 263
 264
 265
 266
 267
 268
 269
 270
 271
 272
 273
 274
 275
 276
 277
 278
 279
 280
 281
 282
 283
 284
 285
 286
 287
 288
 289
 290
 291
 292
 293
 294
 295
 296
 297
 298
 299
 300
 301
 302
 303
 304
 305
 306
 307
 308
 309
 310
 311
 312
 313
 314
 315
 316
 317
 318
 319
 320
 321
 322
 323
 324
 325
 326
 327
 328
 329
 330
 331
 332
 333
 334
 335
 336
 337
 338
 339
 340
 341
 342
 343
 344
 345
 346
 347
 348
 349
 350
 351
 352
 353
 354
 355
 356
 357
 358
 359
 360
 361
 362
 363
 364
 365
 366
 367
 368
 369
 370
 371
 372
 373
 374
 375
 376
 377
 378
 379
 380
 381
 382
 383
 384
 385
 386
 387
 388
 389
 390
 391
 392
 393
 394
 395
 396
 397
 398
 399
 400
 401
 402
 403
 404
 405
 406
 407
 408
 409
 410
 411
 412
 413
 414
 415
 416
 417
 418
 419
 420
 421
 422
 423
 424
 425
 426
 427
 428
 429
 430
 431
 432
 433
 434
 435
 436
 437
 438
 439
 440
 441
 442
 443
 444
 445
 446
 447
 448
 449
 450
 451
 452
 453
 454
 455
 456
 457
 458
 459
 460
 461
 462
 463
 464
 465
 466
 467
 468
 469
 470
 471
 472
 473
 474
 475
 476
 477
 478
 479
 480
 481
 482
 483
 484
 485
 486
 487
 488
 489
 490
 491
 492
 493
 494
 495
 496
 497
 498
 499
 500
 501
 502
 503
 504
 505
 506
 507
 508
 509
 510
 511
 512
 513
 514
 515
 516
 517
 518
 519
 520
 521
 522
 523
 524
 525
 526
 527
 528
 529
 530
 531
 532
 533
 534
 535
 536
 537
 538
 539

CHAP. 4. Nicolas Woodcock. *Morses and Whales, Basks and Hollanders.* 715

The two and twentieth day of the fall, the wind be from North-west, with snowe and froo. The first and twentieth, we got the Whale on flote, hauing dripped her leake. We were no floo-fer off, but it blew most fiercely, so that the Whales long Boate and our flallopp brake from the Whales sterne, and were split in pieces on the Ice, that lay in the flatter Edge. The same daye about the North end of the Bay, we sawe a small Boat, and told our Master Edge was come from the South to the Mainlande, and had spoken with one *Nicola Woodcock* an *Englysh* man, which was myn mate to this Countrey of *Greenland* in the yere 1610. The said *V. Woodcock* was now Pilot of a ship of Saint *Sabastian* in *Discey*, and in *see Secund*. Moreover, they spake with the men of the Boate of the *Diana*, and saye the *Hollenders* Boate, *but* spake not with the *Englysh* men. The two and thirtieth daye of the fall, the wind be from North-west, and blew with great force, so that the Boate brake which was *Englysh* men had. The two and thirtieth daye of the fall, the wind be from North-west, and blew with great force, so that the Boate brake which was *Englysh* men had. The two and thirtieth daye of the fall, the wind be from North-west, and blew with great force, so that the Boate brake which was *Englysh* men had.

The leuarn and twentien we-rid fill, and the Carpenter went to worke to mend the knee of our beske-head. And I went soe what Mories were on Land, where I found nene one hundred and fiftie. The eight and twentieth, the fallow that had all *Englefishmen* in her hawe one *Bake*, came aboard for prouision, and told me, that they and *Englefishmen Chapel*, had flaine a great *Wale* close by our ship, which towed them off into the Sound, and our long Boate followed them. At the lame time we saw fix *Wales* close by the ships side as we rode in harbour: and we saw great flore in the Sound, and within one houre there were fo many about our ships and in the Sound, that we could not count them. About a North-west funne our long Boate brought

in the Sound, that we could not come there." About a Northern whaler, the *Wahle*, the men that (trooke the *Wahle* aboard said, and towed the *Wahle* on a fluyll on land; for the *Wahle* had funke her with hisse. And when the time out Carpenter went to worke on the broken fluyll and I went to the place where the *Morley* lay, where I found about three hundred on land. When I went aboard the *Wahle* to get some harping frons: for they had all, but I could get but one, because the rest of the *Bucky* had laid them up, enying that one *Bucky*, that went with all *Englysh* men, had done so much, because by their good will they would not have vs to have any insight into this bufinesse. Moreover, hee that had the chiefest command in this voyage, did greatly condemne the going of so many *Englysh* men with that one *Bucky*, either for feare they

should kill none, and lo! all their prouison for the fair vie, or for feare that our men should kill the Whale a-swim, and as soon as they y^et was there none of the other Boates but had loit more then they had loit. And as for killing, there was not one Whale killed with one Boate alone, fave ours, with all *Englishe* fave the *Burke* aforesaid; which lue three without the helpe of any other Boate. This day the *Burke* lue another Whale at the *Forland*, to fave whether the other thallopes would come, we went to the *Forland*, where abundance of Whales were kill. The same time the *Burke* killed another Whale. Then I ronsaged my thip, and found on board, All this day it was fine.

The fourths
Whale killed

The eight
Whale killed

and take up cake on land. All this day it was calme. ¹⁰ And the *Barky* had flaine two great Whales. All this day like the first calme; and the *Whales* abundance of huge Whales in the harbour about our ships. One of the whales abouted, *Isherman* with the five *Englyb* men lue without any of the other help. For they flood on the land flouting, and saying, that it was vopofulle for them to kill him, and would not once lanch their Boates to helpe them; yet he was one of the greatest that were killed this yeere. All this day the whales lay to thicke about the ship, that some ran beak-head to Cables, some againt the Ship, and one againt the Rudder. One lay vnder our beak-head and flepte there a long while. At wether end of the *Argenger* had a whale flange by the ruse, and when his tooth was in the ruse, he durst not moelt the said whale for feare he should haue overthrowne the stage and drowned all the Cables. In the end he went away, and carried the thips head round, his taile beinge fowle of the Rudder.

The first day of July, at a North-Northeast Sunne, the hallops came to kill whales in the harbour where we rid, and strooke three, which all brake away. The fame day, *Iehannes* stroke a whale, that mit in the fide of his hallop and split it. Now we perceived the whales to begin to goe out of the Bayes. The second day, the *Barkie* took three great whales faye out of court, in the morning, and the *Sonne* two more; so that the hallops were full of them, and made fast too ship. And the *Barkie* vvent with their hallops to Faire Voezland.

The twentieth day, we had abundance of Ice about our ships, which waine the wind and the surge drave out another Sound. The eight, yve vid ridl, and vvere trooked by the ice, and some of them that blue as theyd been by veyn, &c. The rell is omitted as haueing pryague of note, but ordinarie accidents.

The ninth and tenth Whales killed.
The eleventh and twelfth Whales killed.
The thirteenth and fourteenth Whales killed.

**Woodcock Pilot
of a lifeing ship.**

**The fourth
and fifth
Whales killed.**

The first whale
killed.

Three hundred
Moscow

Biscainiers com-
mune.

The seventh
Whale killed;

**The eight
Whale killed.**

The ninth and tenth Whales

The eleventh
twelfth and
thirteenth
Whales killed

CHAP. V.

A Journal of the Voyage made to Greenland with five English ships and a Pinasse, in the yeere 1613. Written by Master WILLIAM BAFFIN.

Ascension day.

BY the providence of Almighty God we departed from *Queenborough* the thirteenth day of May with five good Ships, viz. The *Tigre*, Admirall; the *Mathew*, Vice-admirall; the *Sea-horse*, called the *Gemmel*, the Rear-admirall; the *Desire*; the *Amulet*; and the *Richard* and *Barnard*, with the *Isle* and *Francis* shortly to follow.

The one and twentieth day, faire weather, the winde Southward, wee still making to the Northwards. This morning wee had sight of Land on the Coast of *Norway*, it lying East and by North off about twelve or fourteen leagues. This day at noone, we were in the latitude of 61. degrees and 30. minutes, the variation of the Compasse at *Somerset* is eight degrees East, it being about ten or twelve leagues off: wee having made a North way halfe East, about thirte leagues.

The three and twentieth at noone, in the latitude of 69. degrees and 45. minutes, in which place, the Needle of Declination doth dippe vnder the Horizon 63. degrees and 30. minutes by that Instrument which declineth 54. at *London*.

Greenland stayned in eight degrees.

The thirtieth day, about three of the clocke, wee espied the land of *Greenland*, being about eight or nine leagues off. The Southward part of it bare South-east and by East off it, which shortly wee perceived to bee the Land lying in 76. degrees and 55. minutes, which is called *Horne-land*. This Land lyeth by our common Compasse North-west. Within two houres after wee had sight of Land, it began to snowe, and was very cold. This evening the Compasse was varied thirteene degrees West.

The one and thirtieth day, variable weather with snowe, and very cold, and the winde also variable: and in the afternoon the winde was at the North-east. In the morning, we espied a ship, and about noone we spoke with her, and their Master and Pilot came aboard of vs. And we knew them to bee that ship of *Saint Iohn de Lee*, which had leaue of the Companie to fish. And they told vs, that there were eight *Spaniards* on the Coast. Also, wee espied another ship, which we supposed to be a *French* man, and had one *Alan Salas* was their Pilot.

A ship of Saint Iohn de Lee, Eight Spaniards on the coast.

The second of June, in the morning, about five of the clocke, our Generall sent our shallop a small Pinke, that all this night we lay along the shore, to bid their Master and Pilot come aboard vs, which presently they did. The Masters name was *Clas Martin de Horne*, and his ship was for *Dunkirk*, and he told vs that he was comforted with another ship that was his Admirall, the Captaine name was *Fop of Dunkirk*, and that he was on the Coast. We kept the Master and Pilot aboard of vs, and sent some of our men aboard of her, and brought her vnder our lee: and then, we sent their Master aboard againe, charging them to follow vs. This afternoon we took the shallop with five or six men, whereof two were *English* men, and one *Scott*, at the *Faire foreland*.

The Generall was Captaine Benjamin Ingle after his time in fight with a Carlike.

The fourth day also faire weather. This morning was the first Whale killed. Wee had no sight since the one and twentieth of May. The fifth day, faire weather, but very cold, the winde North. Wee layed along the land being about eighteen or twenty leagues in length: lying for the most part by the common Compasse North and by West halfe Westward. About nine of the clocke in the afternoon, we saw our other three ships, viz. the *Gemmel*, the *Desire*, and the *Richard* and *Barnard*, which lay there to and fro, because they could not goe into their Harbour by reason of the Ice: and also, because there were foure other ships in a Bay or Cove, called *Popey Bay*, or *Nickses Cove*: and also other ships on the other side in *Greene Harbour*. Wee layed along the drift Ice vntill about one or two of the clocke in the morning, at which time, we came to an anchor in the entrance of the Sound, because the Ice came druing out so fast.

Dutch ship. No sight the 23. of May.

The sixth day, faire weather, the winde variable, till the afternoon: at which time it came to the Northwards. About three in the afternoon we weighed anchor, and about ten of the clocke we came to the foure ships lying in *Popey Bay*, two of them being *Hollanders*, and one a *Rocheler*, and the other a ship of *Bordeaux*. The Masters of the *Hollanders* came aboard of our ship, to speake with the Generall, both of them being of *Amsterdam*, and brought a Commission granted by the *Grave Maieur*, for to fish in this Countrey. But, when they saw our Kings Maesties Commission granted to the worshipfull Companie, they told our Generall, that they would depart this Coast: having our Generalls Ticket to shew to their Adventurers, that they were there, and had made their Port, and how he would not suffer them to fish. We anchored close by the *French* ship wherein was *Alone Salas*, being ready to fight, if they refused to come aboard vs. So when we sent our shallop, the Master came presently and their Surgeon, who could speake *English*. At the first, they denied that *Salas* was aboard of them: but, being hardly vrged,

Dutches from grees.

they

they confessed that hee and one *Thomas Fisher* an *English* man were aboard, who were both presently sent for. This *Salas* was their Pilot, and *Fisher* was their Gunner.

The seventh day faire weather, we rood still at an anchor. This day I observed the latitude of the place, and found it in 78. degrees 24. minutes. The variation of the Compasse is in this place 15. degrees 21. minutes West. About a North Sunne a small ship of *Biscay* came into the harbour where we roode.

Lat. 78. deg. 24. minutes. Ship of Biscay. Snowe.

The eighth day, for the most part snow: the winde Southward. This day the Master of the *French* ship, being a ship of nine score, or two hundred, called the *Jagues de Bardeux*, agreed with our Generall that hee might fish on the coast: our Generall was to have halfe the Whales he could kill. Also, this day, the Master of the ship of *Rochel*, and the Master of the small ship of *Biscay*, were agreed to depart from the coast.

The ninth day, faire weather. This morning the *Gemmel* our Rear-Admirall, and the *Desire* weighed anchor to goe for *Greene harbour*, where two ships lay, one of *Dunkirk*, and the other of *Saint Sebastian* in *Biscay*. The Captaine of the *Dunkirk*, called *Fop*, had been with our Generall, and told him that he would depart from this Coast. Our Generall gave him leaue to take the Pilot of the small Pinke, and the other *Dutch* men he had taken of his, keeping only the *English* men and the *Sent*. Also, the two ships of *Holland*, with the ship of *Biscay*, and that of *Rochel* weighed anchor, and departed from this Harbour. About six of the clocke in the afternoon, came the Master of the ship of *Saint Sebastian* aboard of vs, being brought by one of 20 the Masters Masters of the *Desire* (they having taken two of his Shallops) to know on Generalls pleasure, whether he should haue them againe, or no. Our Generall gave them him againe, vpon condition, that he would depart the Coast. About a North North-west Sunne, we weighed anchor to goe for *Horne-Sound*, where we heard, that there were duers ships: the wind Northward a small gale.

Greene harbour.

The tenth day, faire weather, the winde at North, being very close weather. About a North Sunne we came to an anchor in the entrance of *Low Sound*, where we saw two ships ride at anchor. Our Generall sent our shallop to see what ships they were, who found them to bee the two ships of *Holland*. Also our long Boate went on shore to set vp the Kings Maesties Armes vpon a low point of land, lying a great way off, called *Low-nesse*. We set vp a Crosse of wood, 30 and nayled the Armes vpon it.

Low sound.

The thirteenth day, in the morning, it snowed very fast, being very thick weather, the winde variable, we standing off from the land. About seven of the clocke it began to cleere vp, at which time we espied three ships; and making toward them, at length we perceived them to be the three ships which came from the Bay where we roode: the winde also was at East and by South, and blew a very stiffle gale. Then we stood in for the shore, and spent most of this day in turning vp *Horne-Sound*. And about a North North-west Sunne, at ten a clocke we espied six ships lying at anchor on the South side of the Sound, in a small Bay. The one of them was Captaine *Fop* the *Dunkirk*, who came in before vs, and was appointed by our Generall to come into this harbour, and there to stay for vs, and to goe to the *Foreland*, to haue his other ship which we kept there. Foure of them were *Biscaynes* of *Saint Sebastian*; and one of them was in the harbour where we roode and found the *French* ship: The sixth was a ship of *Amsterdam*, wherein *Thomas Bonner* was Master and Pilot, and about twenty *English* men more. All the *Biscaynes* came aboard of vs as soone as we were at an anchor: but *Thomas Bonner* refused to come, being sent for by our Generall. Our Generall commanded our Gunner to shoot at him, he hearkened fellicly discharging the second Ordnance. Then presently he began to fire faile, and cut his cable, thinking to get from vs: but were hauling him through three or foure times, they began to weace vs, so we sent our shallop and he came aboard. There were five or six more of the *English* men fetched aboard, and some of our men sent to bring her to an anchor, where they might talle safe: for, there was almost run ashore. This was about a North firme, or eleuen a clocke. The *Biscaynes* were charged presently to depart, so loome as they had filled fresh water, which, they said, they wanted; and to bring what Whale finnes they had found, or had taken, or other things.

His Maesties Armes and a Crosse set vp at Low-nesse. Snowe.

Thomas Bonner, English man, Master and Pilot.

The fourteenth day, faire weather, the winde at East North-east. This morning one of the *Biscaynes* brought a few Whale finnes aboard of vs, and the skin of a Bear, which they had killed. Then was our Boate-swaine sent aboard of them to search their ships, and to bid them depart. Our Generall kept the *Holland* ship, wherein was *Thomas Bonner*, to the vie of the Companie. This day I observed the latitude of this place by a Quadrant of foure foot Semidiameter, and found it to stand in 75. degrees 55. minutes: the Declination of the Needle vnder the Horizon, is 67. degrees 30. minutes, pointing to the Northwards: but pointing to the Southwards, it is 80. degrees. The variation of the Compasse is 12. degrees 24. minutes west from the true Meridian: but from our common saying Compasse it is 17. degrees, because the Compasse is touched five degrees and a halfe to the Eastward, and the variation is to the Westward.

This day in the afternoon, the foure ships of *Biscay* departed from this Harbour, which was called

76. deg. 45. minutes declination 67. deg. 30. min. Variation 12. deg. 24. min.

N n n 2

called *Horne-Sound*: and about a North fume, I, with the Master *Thomas Skeris* went ashore with other, to set up another Crosse with the Kings Majesties Armes, cast in Lead, nayled vpon it. Then I observed the Sunne vpon his North Meridian, by my forefild Quadrant, and found it equaled about the Horizon 10. degrees and thirtie minutes: but because his height at the South Meridian, and his height at the North did not agree, in finding of the Latitude, I did abate five minutes from each, as the mean betwixt both: for his altitude at the South Meridian was 26. degrees 40. minutes, the declination 22. degrees and 29. minutes.

The fifteenth day, faire weather, the winde in the morning South, but almost calme. This day about noone we weighed anchor with the ship of *Amsterdam*, and diuers of her men were fetched aboard vs, with their Shipper, and some of our men were sent aboard her with one of our Masters Maties, called *Master Spencer*. All this day it was so calme, that we were faine to towne our ship. Our Carpenter did trim vp two of the *Biscane* Shallops which they did leave behind them, and they did leave duers Hoopes and Caske staued ashore.

The eighteenth day, faire weather, the winde variable, we steering away Northward. This afternoon we met with another ship of *Biscay*, being a ship of two or three hundred Tunnes. Our Generall, as he did to the rest, caused her Master and Pilot to come aboard vs, to whom he shewed his Commission, charging them to depart this Country. They, seeing no remedie, were content, so fone as they had filled fresh water. We met with them off the Southward part of the land. Our Generall being in neere *Greene Harbour*, where the *Gemmel* and the *Delfre* rose, we went into the Sound to see them, with this great ship of *Biscay*, and the ship of *Amsterdam*. We found that the entrance of *Greene Harbour* was quite stopped with Ice; and ran our ship into it, thinking to get through, but we could not. Then we got her out againe, and came to the Bay where we were roade on the other side of the Sound in *Poopy Bay*, or *Niches Cove*.

The nineteenth day, faire weather, the winde Northward. This day about twelue of the clock we came to an anchor in the forefild Bay. This afternoon there came another ship of *Saint Sebastian* into the Bay where we were roade: and about fene of the clock, the Captaine came aboard of vs, who told vs that he had lost fix of his men and a shallop vpon the coast of *Greenland*, vpon an land in the latitude of 72. degrees or thereabouts. This was the Master which had bene here the last yere, and made a great voyage, Master *Woodcocke* being their Pilot. His making fo great a voyage, was the cause that so many ships were here this yere.

The twentieth in the morning, we had newes that the *John and Francis* was come about two dayes agoe, and that they had killed one and twentie Whales at the *Forland*, and had also killed two at *Greene harbour*. This day it was very close weather with some snowe; the winde North-west. This afternoon the Captaines of the two *Biscay* ships were commanded to depart this Coast.

The one and twentieth, we perceived another ship standing toward vs. We lessened our sailes and layed for her to see what she was. At length, we perceived her to be another *Biscane*. About a North fume we came to an anchor in *Greene harbour*, by the *Gemmel*, and the *Delfre*, and the ship of *Bardene*: and the *Biscane* followed vs. So fone as they were come to an anchor, their Captaine came aboard of vs, to whom our Generall shewed his Commission as he had done to the rest, charging him to depart those Coasts, and told him, that he would take away some of their shallops. They expressly intreated him not to take them away, and they would depart: the Captaine offering his bond to our Generall, that if he layed either in *Greenland*, *Greenland*, or *Cherie* land, he would willingly forfeit all he was worth. There was another Whale killed in *Greene harbour*, in the killing whereof there was a man slain, and a Boate overwhelmed, by too much haste of following him, after the harping Iron was in him.

The three and twentieth day, faire weather, the winde Northward. This day, and the last night I observed the latitude of the place where we roade, and found by both, to be in the latitude of 78. degrees 7. minutes: the skie at both obseruations being very cleere, where I finde that there is no sensible error betwene a South obseruation and a North, the skie being cleare. But if the skie be hazy, there will be some difference, as of eight or ten minutes, being obserued on shore by some large Quadrant or other Instrument for the purpose, a little South-west. Moore by the common Compass, matches a full Sea in this place.

The ninth of Iuly, faire weather, the winde at North. This day we stood to the Southward along the land: but, toward night it fell calme, and then the winde came to the West. The tenth day, faire weather, but thicke and close, the winde South South-west. All this day we stood for *Bel-Sound*. Our Generall went on shore this afternoon, and killed four Deere, and brought a young Moose alse with him aboard.

The eleauenth day faire weather, but calme. This afternoon we perceived five shippes in a Bay in *Bel-found*. The winde was so calme, that we were faine to towne in our shippes, and about a North North-west fume, we came to an anchor by them, with our three ships, viz. the *Tigre* Admirall, the *Markus Vice-Admirall*, and the *Richards* and *Barnard*, joining made all things ready for fight. These five shippes which rid here, the one was a great shippe of *Biscay* of seven hundred

hundred Tunnes, and the two *Hollanders*, which we found the first of June in *Poopy Bay*, and one small Pinke of *Amsterdam*, and another small shippe of *Rockeb*. This great shippe of *Biscay*, which we expected would have fought with vs, sent their Captaine aboard of vs before we came to an anchor, and submitted themselves vnto the Generall. The two ships of *Amsterdam*, whose Masters names were these viz. *Gemmel Calas*, *William Vermeegen*, Admirall, and *John Jacob* Vice-Admirall, these two would gladly have stood out with vs, if the *Biscane* would have assited them.

The twelfth day faire weather. This day the ship of *John Jacobs* was vnaiden of such goods as shee had in her; as Oyle, Blubber, and Moories skines. The thirteenth day I was sent in a shallop to *Greene Harbour*.

The fourteenth day, thicke close weather, the winde Northward; but toward noone it began to cleare vp, and then it blew more winde. About a West fume, we came to a small land, or rather a Rock, where Moories vnto come: where we found feneen which we killed, and knocked out their teeth, and let them lye. In this place are many of these rocks, where are great multitudes of foule, and they are called *Linsey* Islands. The Land all along is full of Rocks, that it is impossible for any shippe to come neare the Main, but in the Sands which are very deepe, and good to spring in. All this evening and night we were rowed betwene this land and *Ice-land*.

The fifteenth day, about nine or tenne a clocke, we came to the shippes in *Greene Harbour*, where we found, that they had killed eighteen Whales in all. Four of these ships were *Frenchmen*, which had killed eight Whales for the Companie according to the agreement which the Generall had made with them: which was, that they should kill eight for five, and after, what they could kill, should be for themselves. Our *English* men had killed three in this place, and the *Baker* in the *Delfre* also three. The *Delfre* had taken in hundred tunnes of Oyle when we came there, and she was to be laden so fone as she could.

The sixteenth day also faire weather, the winde Northward. This day, toward a West Sunne, the Master of the *French* shippe came from *Sandbergs Bay*, who went thither to speake with our Generall: because Master *Meyson* and Master *Copper* had flayed his Shallops from going to Sea, in regard they would not oblige the order which the Generall had appointed them: which were, that those Whales which our *Englishmen* did chase, they should not follow, nor our men should not follow the Whales they chased. For the order of the *Biscane* is, that who so doth strike the first Harping Iron into him, it is his Whale if his Iron hold. This evening, I say, he returned from *Sandbergs Bay*, having lost his labour: for the Generall and Master *Edge* were in *Bel-found*. We vnderstood by him, that they had killed some eight and thirtie Whales in all; and that there was one hundred and fixtie tunnes of Oyle ready made.

The five and twentieth day in the morning, the *Delfre* weighed Anchor to go to the Generall, and the Master of the *French* ship also this morning went from thence to speake with the Generall, because of a Whale which was in strife betwene his *Biscane* and ours: where, for pilfering and for some peremptorie speeches, two of the *Rockebys* were ducked at our Vanslaming place, and found it to be 77. degrees 40. minutes. Also, the variation of the Compass is 13. degrees 11. minutes West. This variation was obserued the third of August in the morning: the height of the funne about the Horizon was 17. degrees 24. minutes, and the declination was 24. degrees 41. minutes. North in the latitude of 77. degrees 40. minutes, and his Magnetical azimuth was 63. from South to East. The ninth day we had light of Master *Benners* Ship, wherein was Master *Marmaduke*, who had bene to the Northward as farre as *Faire-bay*: and now, as he said, he was bound to the fourthward to discover beyond *Pont Low*, one, having his direction on Master *Edge*, as he said. Our Generall told him, that hee had hindered the Voyage more by his absence, then his discovery would profit; and that it were best that he went backe with him to the *For-land*, and that he would give no licence to goe now for *Discouerie*, because the yere was farre spent: but had him, according to his Commission, so to proceede. The twelfth day I obserued, and found the latitude of this place by an exact obseruation to be in 79. degrees 14. minutes. They in the *Poopy Bay* had seene a ship of *England* off *Black-point*, and had spoken with her, who told them that they were come from *Kildens*.

The fourteenth day faire weather, the Winde at North North-east. This day about tenne a clocke in the forenoone, we waied anchor to goe home ward, being five ships in company, viz. the *Tigre* Admirall, the *Gemmel Vice-Admirall*, the *John and Francis*, the *Amenda*, the ship of *Bardene* which the Generall agreed with to fish in *Greene Harbour*, and the *Biscay* ship which fished in *Sir Thomas Smiths Bay*.

The fifteenth day very faire weather, all the forenoone almost calme; in the afternoon, an easie gale at North-east. This day about twelue a clocke at noone, we were againe *Faire For-land*, which is in the latitude of 79. degrees 8. minutes. This night was very cleere and faire weather, and also calme, by which meanes I had very good opportunitie to finde the funne's refraction. For beholding it about a North North-east fume, by the common Compass, at which time the funne was at the lowest, it was but one fifth part of his body above the Horizon, having about

Abundance of Ice.

An Island in 72 degrees on the Coast of Greenland.

Three and twentie whales killed.

A man slain.

Latitude 78. deg. 7. min. Noe.

A South South west Moon maketh a full Sea here.

Many rocks full of foule. Lijet Islands.

Eighteen Whales killed.

Three Whales killed by the English.

Eight & thirty Whales killed.

August 12.

Latitude 77. degrees 40. minutes. Variation, 13. degrees 11. minutes.

Latitude 79. degrees 14. minutes. This was Master Benners ship of London.

Latitude 79. degrees 8. minutes. This was the common Compass, at which time the funne was at the lowest.

Note.

fourth fifth parts below, so near as I could gell. His declination for that instant was 10. degrees 25. minutes North, being at noon in the 2. degree 7. minutes of *Virgo*, his daily motion was 58. minutes: whole halfe being nineteen to be added to the former, because it was at twelve hours after noon. I lay his place at that instant was 2. degrees 26. minutes of *Virgo*, whole declination was as before 10. degrees 35. minutes: the Latitude of the place was 78. degrees 47. minutes, whose complement was 11. degrees 13. minutes, the declination being sub- tracted 6. 4. from the complement of the Poles elevation, leaveth 38. minutes, four five parts of which 12. minutes: which being subtracted from 38. leaveth 26. minutes for the Refraction. But, I suppose the Refraction is more or lesse, according as the ayre is thicker or cleare, which I leave for better chollers to discusse; but this I thought good to note, for the better helpe of such. I as doe profess this studie.

The sixteenth day also very faire weather, and for the most part calme: the wind that was, was a North-west. This morning, we espied a ship out in the offe, our against *Sild-cape*, which we stood with, and the allo stood with vs. And when we came to her, we found her to be the *Defire* ships of *Albion*. Our General sent for the Master and Merchant aboard of vs, who certified him that they came from *Kildene*, and that they had made but a bad Voyage of 15. who and they were come to lee, if we could fraight them home. The Merchant was of *London*, whose name was Master *Culder*, the Masters name was *Fletcher*, who also brought six men which *Thomas Bomer* had left at *Chore* Island. These six men had killed but one Morfe all this yeere at the Island: who also told vs, that *William Gauden* was gone to the Northwards. At noone, the three and twentieth day, I observed the variation of the Compass, and found it to be one degree 5. minutes East.

The three and twentieth day faire weather, with a single at North and by East. We resting away South and by West halfe South: being at noone, by supposition, in the latitude of 69. degrees no minutes. Having sailed since yesterday noone, some thirte leagues South, true.

The four and twentieth day, very faire weather and cleare, the wind all the fore-noone Northwards, but about noone it came to the South-east. This morning, I observed the middle starre in the Great Bear's eye, and found it to be in the latitude of 68. degrees 24. minutes about two a clock: at which time that starre was on the Meridian under the Pole. Also I observed the starre in the Beares Rump about one a clock, and found the like latitude. All this day we had sight of *Ref Islands*, being about ten or eleven leagues off vs. Also at noone I observed the latitude by the Sun, and found vs to be in the latitude of 68. degrees no minutes, which did agree with the former Observations by the starres. Also the variation of this place is 4. degrees 8. minutes East from the true Meridian: we having runne since yesterday noone some two and twentie leagues South and by West. Almost all the afternoon it was almost calme.

The five and twentieth day also very faire weather: the wind this morning came to the East South-east a fine easterly gale. We steered away South and by West halfe West ten leagues, being at noone in the latitude of 67. degrees 5. minutes. The variation of this place is 5. degrees 3. minutes East, neere to the set of our Compass. This Evening the wind came to the South South-west, which continued about two Watches.

The nine and twentieth day faire weather, with a good gale of wind at North North-east. From two this last night to fixe, we stood away South West and by South; and at fixe we steered away South South-west, being at noone by observation, in 62. degrees 10. minutes. The land about *Scotsfisse* lyeth in this sort: from fixtie three toward fixtie two, it is nine pere leagues South South-west halfe Westward: from thence tenne leagues South and by West, which is two or three leagues, which is the Westward land in *Norveg*, lying in the latitude of 62. degrees 44. minutes. But whether these Islands, or a Point of land, which lyeth about three or foure leagues more to the North, be called *Scotsfisse*, I know not. The fixt of September we entered the *Thames*.

CHAP. VI.

A Voyage of Discovery to Greenland, &c. Anno 1614. Written by RO. FOTHERBY.



He ship *Thomasse* went downe from *Black-wall* to *Woolwich* the sixteenth of April, and from thence to *Gramp*, the three and twentieth, where shee remayned vntill the eight and twentieth of the same; and weighing from thence shee anchored againe in *Tilberie Hope*, with ten ships more of good burthen, and two Pinnikes all of the *Greenland* Fleet, set forth also at the charge of the said Company, under the command of Master *Benjamin Isaph*, Chiefe Captaine and General of the said Fleet.

We

We set sayle out of *Tilberie Hope* the fourth of May, and came to an anchor the same day in *Lee Road*, where we stayed till the next morning, then we set sayle againe and went forth to Sea before night.

We proceeded in company of the Fleet, and met with fraging Ice the five and twentieth of May in the latitude of 71. degrees 10. minutes, through which we passed without danger, holding on our course all that day, till time of mid-night; then we found the Ice so close packt together, that we were forced to tacke about, and stand to the Westward: till we found some opening; we plyed though it was without any great danger, till the eight and twentieth day: but then being in sight of Land, we perceived almost very much Ice all the fore-noone, which lay in great abundance on both sides of vs: but a desire (as it seemed) to get through it, drew vs on to the more intricate with it, for about noone we could neither find a passage to goe forward, nor way to erye backe againe, but being nine ships and two Pinnikes (for the *Profperus* and the *Defire* left Company through foule weather, the one and twentieth of May), otherwise we had beene thirtene sayle) we began very suddenly to bee inclosed and that vpon wee Ice. Now

every one wrought the best meanes he could for the safete of his ship: Our Master in the *Thomasse* caused a *hauler* and a *Crappell* to be carried forth, and laid vpon a great hand of Ice, and we did cast an Anchor, and by the meanes we were saved from forcible rubbing against other peeces; afterward we had forth an anchor for our furer locke, and made fenders of an old Cal; which was hung over the ships sides to keepe the Ice from piercing of her planks. Wee ritt from the eight and twentieth of May till the second of June, still floating as the wind drove vs with our anchor, holding hard, which now we accounted as the shore, and made vse thereof accordingly, for vpon our Carpenter sealed and trimmed our lesser hallop.

On the third of June we had a great homing Sea; the wind being at North-west, where, by we nudged we were not farre from an open Sea to windward of vs: there we resolved to make tryall what we might doe, to free ourselues out of the Ice. In the afternoon about three a clock we got board our Anchor, letting fall our fore-top-sayle, and parting forth our M 2. and so dore a Reme for a while, till the floating land gave way: then we filled our top-sayle, and attempted dore place where we could goe, but had repulse and fell asteepe againe; notwithstanding at the length we proceeded, and with much labour we reached an open Sea at North, and by we were saved.

West Sothe, parting very gladly from this ill neighboring land; which at our parting of them, gave vs or rather received from vs some knocke, but whilst we remayned amongst them they seemed much more perillous then they proved hurtfull, so wee prayed God for his fauour, wishing that the rest of the ships which we left in the Ice, were as cleere out of it as was the *Thomasse*.

Having attained the open Sea to the Westwards, we proceeded to the Northwards, keeping the Ice still on our starboard side, and in company with the *Mary Ann Sarah*; that got also free of the Ice the same day: that we coast downe of vs, we kept company together till the next day, when being as high as *Prince Charles* Island, we both stood in for the shore, the *Mary Ann Sarah* going by *Bel Sound*, her assigned Harbour, but we proceeded to the *For Land*, where when we came the fixt of June, we met with two hallops that belonged to the *Defire*, wherein was *Cuthbert Appleford*, and *William Schomer* Mariners; by whom we vnder stood, that the *Profperus* and the *Defire* had more definitely prospered; then all the rest of the Fleet, they escaped the danger that all the rest fell into; and came to the *For Land* the third of June, finding the Harbour open.

Here was yet no work begunne, for they had not seene one Whale since their coming into the Harbour; so that for vs there was no cause of stay to bee helpfull vnto them, and therefore we proceeded to the Northward, hoping to find the shore still as free from Ice, as it was at this place; but it fel out contrary to our expectations, for being come as farre as *Madden Sound*, in the latitude of 79. degrees 34. minutes, we met with some fraging Ice, and from the mayne top we saw much Ice lye betwixt vs and *Hackluys Head-land*, which seemed to bee close to the shore: therefore we sent some men in hallops to *Madden Sound*, to see if it were open, that we might harbour our ship there, and search for a leake which we found her subject vnto in foule weather.

The Sound was open, and we anchored in a good Harbour, but the Ice was not gone cleere from the shore, therefore we could not hale our ship aground, but we carried her and let vp our *Biscane* hallop which we carried with vs out of *England* in pieces.

The next day after our coming hither I went forth in a little hallop (the other being then vnse together) to see how the Ice lay at *Hackluys Head-land*, and whether we might passe with our ship that way or no. Being come forth of the Harbour, we perceived, that it was very foule weather at Sea, notwithstanding I proceeded into *Fare Hauens*, where the South Harbour was then open, but much Ice lay in the *Sund* in bounden from thence to thence; otherwise we might have passed that way to *Hackluys Head-land*, betwixt the land and the *Mythe* land, we stayed here till the next morning, then the weather became to cleere vs, and we set forth to Sea againe, intending to goe without the lands: but being out of the Harbour we found the

We went forth to Sea.

We met with Ice in 75. deg. 10. minutes.

Eleven Sayles in the Ice. M. 2. & 3. & 4.

June.

We got cleere of the Ice.

We met with the *Mary Ann Sarah*.We came to the *For Land*.We proceeded to the Northward. *Madden Sound*. *Hackluys Head-land*. We anchored in *Madden Sound*.

I went forth in a hallop.

We set fyre
out of Mand-
ten Sound and
followed the
Ice.

Prince Charles
land in 78
degrees 40
minutes.
Wee flood a
gain for the
hoare.
Einen Holland
ships.
We anchored
in Sir T. Smiths
Bay.

We went forth
of Sir T. Smiths
Bay.

We were dis-
cuss backe a-
gaine into
Crosse-lead.

We set fyre
out of Crosse-
lead.

One shallop to
the Northward
The other into
Mandten Sound.

The Kings
Armes set up
in Trinitie Har-
bour.

Trinitie Har-
bour is vnder the
parallel of 70
degrees 34
minutes.

We came to an
anchor in
Fair Haven.

No Whales
were yet come
in.

foule weather to be such, as our little weak shallop was notable to endure. therefore we returned againe to our ship into Mandten Sound, where we killed two Female Morises, and rook their Teeth, Hides and Blubber.

On the tenth of Iune we set fyre out of Mandten Sound, and coasted along to the Northward, all we were past *Hackluis Head-land*, but then we saw the Ice lay before vs, extending we turned to the Westward, so that for vs to passe further that way, it was not possible: therefore layd as the Ice trened West and South-west till the thirteenth day, and keeping full star-
long it, we found it to trend north South and South South-west, we proceeded well thus far, till we came vnder the latitude of Prince Charles his land, in 78. degrees 40. minutes, being 10 eight and twentie leagues from shore, but then we altered our course, and flood in for the *Fare-land*, to goe and be helpful to the other ships there for the furthering of their Voyage according to our Instructions (as some did vnderstand them) but contrary I am sure to some of our desires. When we came neere the *Fare-land*, we saw eleuen ships of *Hollanders* vnder sayle, plying to the Southward; one of them came some towards vs, and strucke her top-laydes twice, whereby we supposed they took vs for some of their Fleet, which they wanted, but wee held on our course till into Sir Thomas Smiths Bay, where we came to an anchor the fiftenth of Iune, by the *John Anne Frances*, and the *Dejore*, the *Mary Margare* being then vnder sayle to go to the *Fare-land*.

Here was yet no need of any helpe that we could make them, for they had hitherto neyther 40 killed nor seene one Whale since their first comming in hither; therefore we thought it best not to stay here, but rather goe to *Faire Haven*, where we should be more ready to proceed on our Discouerie when the Ice would giue vs leaue, and in the meane-time we might be helpful to the two ships thither assigned for the making of their Voyage, and so much the rather wee had helpe, because we vnderstood that the *Hollanders* also set forth a ship on Discouerie.

We set fyre the sixteenth of Iune, and met with the *Proffers*, that came from *Crosse-lead*, and was going into Sir Thomas Smiths Bay, there to goe some Bricks and Lime to mend their Fort-
fence, as *Nicholas Wadenock* the Master told vs, then we went forth to Sea, and being about foure leagues from the shore, the winde began to blow so hard from the North-west, that we were forced back againe to seek Harbour, and came to an anchor the nineteenth of Iune, in *Crosse-lead*, 30 Here we stayed two dayes, much wind blowing at the North North-east till the one and twentieth of Iune, and then in the after-noon the wind came to the East and by South, and the weather was faire, therefore at a North North-west Sunne, we weighed and set sayle againe, and so did the *Thomas Domestique*, that came to an anchor by vs this morning, being also bound for *Faire Haven*.

This next day in the afternoon we were by way of *Mandten Sound*, and the weather being faire and calme, we sent a shallop to the Northward, to see what alteration there was amongst the Ice, and to seeke out some good Harbour for a ship, y^e also to set vp the Kings Armes at *Hackluis Head-land*, or some other convenient place.

When Master *Baffin* was gone from the ship in the foresaid shallop, I went presently into the 40 other shallop into *Mandten Sound*, there to set vp the Kings Armes, and also to see if there were any Morise come althowge when I was within the *Sound*, I found no Berches bare for Morises to come vpon: for Ice and Snow lay yet vnderfloored from the shore side, but I went to the Har-
bour, and there cauled a Crosse-lead to set vp, and the Kings Armes to be sayled thence; vnder which day I nayed a piece of their Lead, whereon I set the *Majestie* Companies Markes, with the day of the month and yeere of our Lord. Then cutting y^e a piece of Earth, which after-
ward I carried aboard our ship, Iooke it into my hand and laid, in the hearing of the men there present to this effect.

I take this piece of Earth, as a signe of lawfull possession (of this Countrey of King James his 50 New-land, and of the particular places, which I name Trinitie Harbour) taken on the behalfe of the Company of Merchants, called the Merchants of New Trades and Discoueries, for the vjth of our Soueraigne Lord James by the grace of God, King of great Brittain, France, y^e Ireland, whose Royal Armes are here set vp, to the end that all people who shall here arrive may take notice of his Ma-
iesties Right and Title to this Countrey, and to every part thereof. God save King James.

This is a good life harbour, and is vnder the latitude of 70. degrees 34. minutes, as I have found by good obseruation, and haue of Westerly variation 25. degrees. When I had here set vp the Kings Armes, I returned to ward our ship, which was come to an anchor at the entrance of *Faire Haven*, staying till the flood came, because that at the Tide of Ebbe, there runnes a great current out of the *Sound*; so at the next flood, we came into *Faire Haven* and anchored by the *Gamaliel* and the *Thomas Domestique*, the three and twentieth day of Iune.

Then John *Majors*, Master of the *Gamaliel*, came aboard of our ship, and I asked him if he had 60 any worke for our men, for I would cause them to come a shore to the cold me, that hitherto he had not seene a Whale come in, but his Furnaces and Coppes were already set vp, and therefore as yet he had no need of helpe, but when occasion serued he would employ them. This day about

eleuen a clocke Master *Baffin* returned in the Shallop from the Northwards: he said that he had beene at Cape Barren, which is the point of an Island three or foure leagues from *Hackluis Head-land*, but further then that he could not passe for Ice which lay close to the shore, and he had not set vp the Kings Armes in any place.

On Monday the seuen and twentieth day of Iune, I went forth againe in the Shallop to the Northward, partly to see what alteration there might be in the Ice, with the Easterly wind which had blowne hard since the Shallop last returned, but chiefly to set vp the Kings Armes in some place convenient, because there was none set vp to the Northwards of *Mandten Sound*.

We rowed to Cape Barren, where formerly Master *Baffin* had bin, and finding the Ice there 30 gone from the shore, we proceeded further to an Island which now we call the *Saddle*, in respect of the forme thereof, more then a league distant from Cape Barren. In our way thither it began to snow, and grew to be a great and vehement storme from the West North-west, therefore we halted and got to the lee side of the aforesaid Island, and there made fast our Shallop with a grapple laid vpon the Ice shore, vnder the belt meane we could with our shallops leaue to keepe vs
nall laid vpon the Ice shore, vnder the belt meane we could with our shallops leaue to keepe vs
from the extremities of so cold an harbour: We staid here eight houres, and the storme continued driving the Ice full Eastward in great abundance and with wonderful swiftnes: when the weather 30 began to cleere, I cauled the men to rowe to Leewards to another Island a league distant, which seemed then to be a Cape of the maine land, purposing there to set vp the Kings Armes; but afterwards we found it to be an Island, and to the maine we could not come for broken Ice.

This stormie weather continued from Monday night till Friday morning, during which time we had beene but eleuen leagues at the furthest from our ship, yet went we so farre as we could haue gone, had the weather beene neuer so faire; for at foure leagues distance from Cape Barren, the Ice lay firme and vnbroken two or three miles from the shore, and close againe to it lay the hartered Ice thronged together with this present storme.

On Friday morning we came backe againe to *Hackluis Headland*, and there I set the Kings 30 Armes in the like manner as at *Trinitie Harbour*: from thence we rowed towards our ship, and as we entered into *Faire-Hauen*, there came a Whale that accompanied vs into the harbour leaping and aluancing his selfe almost quite out of the water, falling headlong downe againe with great noise; we halted aboard our ship, and I sent forth both our Shallops to strike this Whale if they could, and told Master *Majors* for her comming in, who also went forth in his Shallop: but it seemed the Whale past vnder the Ice which lay yet vnbroken betwixt the North harbour and the South harbour, for they could not see her againe.

The next day there came more Whales, and *Robert Hambleton*, our Masters mate strucke two, which vnluckily escaped; the first for want of helpe; the *Gamaliel* Shallop being in chafe of another Whale, and our owne little Shallop not able to row against a head-sea to assist the other: so that at length the Whale hauing towed the Shallop forth to Sea, the harpington came out: the second was also stricken within the found, and ranne vnder the Ice, which lay yet vn-
broken at the East end of the Sound, and drew the Shallop vpon it cleare out of the water; by 40 which means the Harpington came forth. Here we remained till the fixt of Iulie, our men and Boares being helpfull at all times to further the Voyage.

The fixt of Iulie we set saile forth of *Faire-Hauen*, intending to make trial if we could get to Westward of the Ice, and so proceede to the Northwards, hauing sent away one of our Shal-
lops the day before, provided with twentie dayes Bread, to catch amongst the thore, search the Beach for Commodities, and set vp the Kings Armes at places convenient, hoping thereby to preuent the *Hollanders*, who now rid in the North harbour of *Faire-hauen*, and were ready for the first opportunitie to discouer and take possession of other harbours, hauing two Ships to goe forth onely vpon Discouery.

We sailed Westwards from *Faire-hauen* seuen leagues, and then met with a maine banke of Ice 50 which trened North & South; the Sea appeared to the Northwards to be open for vs to goe well off, therefore we plied that way; when we had run foure or eight leagues more, the Ice lay so thick on every side, that we were bound from proceeding any further; then we flood in toward the shore, and being a little to the Northwards of Cape Barren, our Shallop had sight of vs, & came rowing to vs through the broken Ice, Master *Baffin* told vs the shore to the Eastward was much perturbed with Ice, and he had set vp the Kings Armes at the entrance of a faire *Sound*, about foure leagues distant from Cape Barren.

Now the weather being faire and calme, Master *Sherwin*, Master *Baffin* and I, went in the Shallop to the place where the Kings Armes were set vp, purposing (because the syte was very cleere) to goe vpon some high mountains, from whence we might see how the Sea was perturbed 60 with Ice, and what likelihood there was of further proceeding. According to this our intent, we ascended a very high hill, and from thence we saw the Ice lay vpon the Sea so farre as we could discern, so that the Sea seemed to be wholly toured with Ice, lye onely to the Eastward; we thought that we saw the water beyond the Ice, which put vs in some hope that we should ere long get passage with our Shallops along the thore, if we could not passe with our shippe. Being thus

The shallop re-
turned from the North-
wards.
Cape Barren.

Saddle land.

A Storme.

The Whales began now to come in.

Two Whales escaped.

We came forth of *Faire-hauen*.

We met with Ice and flood to the Northward.
Our Shallop came to vs.

We played off
and on the
Ice two days.

We anchored
again in the
North Harbour.

I went to the
Eastwards in
the ship.

It was newly
frozen in Red-
cliff Sound.
I was obliged to
go once to
Point Desire.

A great snow
begin.

I could not
pass the ice.

The original
cave office at
Sea.

I went back
again to Red-
cliff.

I returned to-
wards our ship.

Point Welcome.

Westwards, and played off and on close by the Ice, till the thirteenth day at mid-night, still expect-
ing a change of the weather, that we might have made some adventure amongst the flattened
Ice, for both on the twelfth and thirteenth day, the wind blew hard at North, and the wea-
ther was cold, thick, and very winter-like with fall of snow: this wind being so contrary,
drove both the Ice and our ship to lewards towards the floare, so that we were forced to put
into Harbour again, and came to an Anchor the fourteenth day in the North Harbour of
Fair Haven, where the Fleet of *Hollanders* lately rid, at which time the *Harfjase* was there at
an Anchor.

Now was the Land both Mountaynes and Plaines wholly covered with snow, so that almost
all mens minds were possit with a desire of returning to *England*. But to prevent a sudden
resolution for a homeward Voyage without further satisfaction, I made motion that once again
we might go forth with our shallops, to see what alteration there might be found along the
shore: it fell out that I was to goe in one shallop for this purpose, so I tooke with me eight men,
and went from our ship the fifteenth day of August.

We rowed to *Red-cliff Sound*, where we passed through much Ice that was newly congeled
being thicker then an halfe Crowne piece of silver, notwithstanding we broke way through it,
and being out the *Sound*, we had a cleere Sea againe: then we proceeded to *Red-beach*, where find-
ing the shoare cleere of Ice (which at my last being there was wonderfully peffered) I concei-
ved good hope to finde passage to the furthest Land from thence in sight, bearing East halfe
point Southerly, nine, or ten leagues distant: to this end we put off from the shoare, bearing East halfe
point, and rowed a league and more in an open Sea, and then met with Ice which lay dispersed abroad,
and was no hindrance to our proceeding, so that we continued rowing the space of six houres,
in which time we had gotten more then halfe way out: but then we found the Ice to lye very
thicke through together, so that it caused vs more to alter our course, sometimes Southward
and sometimes Northwards, and even in this time, when we thought we stood in most need of
cleare weather, it pleased God to send vs the contrary, for it beganne to snow very fall, which
made the Ayre so thick that we could not see the way, nor the land likely way for vs to
passe, therefore I thought good to stay here awhile, hoping that ere long the weather would be
more agreeable to our purpose; so a Grapple being laid forth upon an Island off, to hold fast our
shallop, a Tent was made of the shallops sayle to keepe the weather from vs, and we remayned 30
here five houres, but finding no alteration in the constant weather, I willed the men to take
downe the Tent, and with faire teames perfwaded them, that notwithstanding the wet wea-
ther, it were good to be doing something, to get out to the desired shoare, where we might re-
fresh our selves, and have time to dry our wet clothes; they seemed well content with this moti-
on, and so we rowed the space of foure houres more, the Ice fell causing vs to hold a South and
South South-east course, which carried vs further into Sir *Thomas Smiths* Inlet, and put vs from
the place where we willed to be.

The thicke snowe weather continued all this time, which was very uncomfortable to vs all,
but especially to the men that rowed; and as the snow was noyme to their bodies, so did it
also begin to afflonth their mindes, as I well perceived by their speeches, which proceeded upon
this occasion. The snow having continued thus long, and filling upon the smooth water, lay in
some places an inch thicke, being already in the nature of an Ice compact, though not congealed,
and hindered sometimes our shallops way: this I saw caused some of them, not altogether
without reason to say, that if it should now freeze as it did that night when we came over *Red-
cliff Sound*, we should be in danger here to be frozen vp. Howsoever this feare might be a
means to discourage the rest, that considered not of such a thing till they had heard it spoken
of: yet true it is, that I saw no likelihood, by reason of the Ice, how to attayne my desire at
this time, and therefore I bade them row toward the shoare of *Red-beach* againe, where I intend-
ed to stay till the weather might happily be more convenient. So holding a West North-west
course, for more as the Ice would suffer vs, we came to the East-side of *Red-beach*, having bene 50
eighteen houres amongst the Ice, during all which time the snow fell, and as yet ceased not.
When we had bene here about an houre we began to cleere vp, and the wind to blow hard at East,
which rather packt the Ice close together in this place then dispersit it, so that I was now out of
hope to get any further then I had bene already: wherefore I returned toward our ship, intend-
ing as I went to make a more particular Discouerie of *Bread-bay*, and *Red-cliff Sound*, hoping
that one place or other would afford some thing worthy of the time and labour. When we were
come to the West side of *Red-beach*, it began to blow much wind, where withall the Sea grow-
ing to be great, all men aduised to passe over *Bread-bay*, whilst the wind and weather would
suffer vs to sayle, for they said it was like to be very foule weather: so I seeing that it was no con-
venient time for coasting, we came over the Bay to *Point Welcome* (which I so named because it
is a place, where we oftentimes rested, when we went forth in our shallops) it is about foure
leagues distant from the North end of *Red-beach*.

At this point the *Hollanders* rid, I saw *Prince Maurice* his Armes, nere unto a Croffe which
I had caused to be set vp about a month before, and had nayled a sixe pence thereon with
the

the Kings Armes, but the men that were with me, went (without any such direction from me)
and pulled downe the said Princes Armes, whilst I was gone up a Mountayne to looke into the
Sea, if I could see any Ice: and when I came downe againe they told me, that the sixe pence was
taken from the Croffe: that I had set vp, and there was another poit set by it, with the *Holan-
ders* Armes made fast thereon, which they had pulled downe; so, because the sixe pence was taken
away, I caused one to naye the Kings Armes call in Lead upon the Croffe: which being done
we rowed to the bottom of *Red-cliff Sound*, and as we coasted along the shoare, we leashed
two little Beaches, which had some wood on them, but nothing that we found of betteer value.

About two leagues within the *Sound* on the East side there is an Harbour where shippes may
ride in good ground Land-lockt, but if other yeeres be like this, I cannot say that it was Har-
bour fitting for shippes: because it is late in the South-west vps for ever now, thereby may
be the bottom of it, in some h, that I was forced to leave the shallop, because I could see
no passage with bef for Ice, still within two miles out the Mountaynes, with another man in my
company, I vobes furnished concerning a point of Land that flor into the Sound, whether it were
an Island or not, as by all likelihood it seemed to be: so when I came to the farthest part
of it, I saw it joyned to the mayne Land, wherefore I called it *Point Desire*, because it decei-
ved me from thence: from hence we proceeded toward our shippe, and came aboard of her in the
North Harbour of *Fair Haven*, on Friday night: being the nineteenth of August, where the
land alone, for Master *Marmaduke* was gone forth to Sea that day.

The twent second of August, *John Adolph* Master of the *Gambell*, came out from
the South Harbour for help to sayle up a Whale which had bene taken fourteen dayes, in
one hundred and twentye fathoms depth, or else to pull the Warped Harping iron out of her,
for now it was time to take her or forsake her. Master *Shewen* our Master caused our long
boats to be raiyd and went with him; when they came where the Whale was taken, they
hurdled, and then presently rose, bolting suddenly with a thundering cracke made by the
bursting of the bodies, and notwithstanding they had layen long, yet had they all their finnes
fast. Whilst this was doing, the *Harfjase* was coming into the Harbour from the North-
ward, and anchored by our ship in house after.

Here we stayed till the seven and twentieth of August, and then my lad returned, bether in
the shallop from the Eastwards, the weather had bene commonly warme, and the Moun-
taines were lowe, notwithstanding the beginning of this month, but it was quite
confused, and a greater signe of warmth and thaw was now to be observed than any time
of the yeere heretofore; namely, by the often falling of the Ice into the Sea from the huge
snowe banks, making a noise like Thunder, so that the time was very hopeful, but thus we
made use of occasion offered.

The seven and twentieth of August, it was faire and warme weather, calme till noone,
when there was a gale of wind from the South South-west, where withall we set sayle out of
the Harbour in the company of the *Harfjase*, with which we had bene in terms of comfort:
40 ship, the bottom of the South-west end of *Red-cliff Sound*, where we were to take
the *Harfjase* from vs, and South-west end of *Red-cliff Sound*, where we were to take
the *Harfjase* from vs, and South-west end of *Red-cliff Sound*, where we were to take

We proceeded till to the North-eastward, and on the eight and twentieth day, in the morn-
ing we had runne about twentye leagues from Cape *Norris* up an East North-east way by
the ordinary Compasse, being open of Sir *Thomas Smiths* Inlet, and at tenne leagues from the
shoare; at which time we were come to the Ice (that I named East South-east) and West
North-west, but the Sea being very rough, we stood off againe from the Ice; in the afternoon
it fell calme, and at night we had a gale of wind at East, and the ship was steered West, and then
South-west home towards vs.

The nine and twentieth day, the whole Easterly and easte gale, at twelve o'clock in the af-
noon *Hacklers* Head land bore vs South-east by East foure leagues distant: the *Harfjase*
50 was very warme.

The thirtieth day, the wind at North-east an easte gale, at foure o'clock in the afternoon,
Madden Point bore East North-east halfe a point Easterly about three leagues distant: the
the Evening it fell calme, the weather not cold.

The thirtieth day, faire Sunne-shine weather and calm till noone, and then we had a good
gale of wind from the North-west, being six leagues distant from the *Forland*, which bore
South-east; now we altered our course and stood to the Westward: therefore so kept vs
fill in the parallel that now we were in which was 70. degrees 8. minutes, West North-west
course, was directed, in respect of the Variation, to make good error West way.

This course we held till we had runne about twentye leagues; and then we ranne twen-
tye leagues more in a West and by North course till one o'clock on Friday morning; at which
time it fell calme; and we heard the Sea make a great noise, as if it were bene new Land,
but we rather judged it to be Ice, as indeed it proved to be, for in the morning when it
was

The Kings
Armes are set
vp againe at
Point Welcome.
I went into
Red-
cliff
Sound.

Point Desire.
I ranne aboard
our ship.

A Whale lay
further South-
west, beyond
the Cape.

The *Harfjase*
anchored by
vs.
Warne wea-
ther in the end
of August.

We set sayle
out of the
Eastward.

The *Harfjase*
returned
towards
vs.

We stood to
the westward.

was light and cleere, we saw the Ice about a league from vs, which trended Southerly; hauing now a gale at East North-east, wee steered away South and South South-east, but in the afternoon we were embayed with a long bankes of Ice, which wee could not weather, therefore wee were faine to tacke about, and the winde hauing come more Southerly then it was in the morning, wee flood off from the Ice North-east and North-east by North, and then to the Southwards againe, making furside boardes to get forth to windwards of the Ice.

The third day before noone, wee had fight againe of Ice to Westwards of vs, and at noone were vnder the parallel of 78. degrees 17. minutes, according to my Observation: then wee flood a way South to keepe cleere of the Ice, for we had a great homing Sea, although but a firtle winde; and therefore durst not be to bold to edge too nere it, especially the wind being Easterly as then it was.

On the fourth day our men saw the Ice againe from the mayne top-mast head, and therefore wee still maintayned a Southerly course; the next day it began to be foggie, and continued close weather and hazy for three dayes, so that wee had no more sight of the Ice; neyther could wee at this time receiue any further satisfaction concerning the same: therefore wee kept a Southerly course so nere as wee could, although wee had but little winde, and the fame very variable till the ninth day, but then wee had a good gale of winde at West North-west.

On the tenth day being Saturday, wee were by my reckoning little leagues distant from Low-foot, which bore from vs East South-east halfe a Point Southerly: this day the wind shifted to the South-west, and at night came to the South with much rain; then came backe againe to the West North-west and began a great storme.

This might the Master and others saw a light vpon the Fore-bonnet, which the Saylers call a *Corpo Santo*; it appeared like the flame of a Candle, and (as Sea-men observe) it always pre-
sages an ensuing storme which to verifie, this foggie weather continued the next day, and grew to be so vehement on Sunday night, that the Sea about us was raked our ship, and wee were faine to lay vry with our fore course onely, and our Mayne top-mast also broke, which last thing (as Sea-men say) is seldom done at Sea; then about one a clocke wee were forced to take in our fore course, and to lay vry-hull for foue hours.

The fourth day of October, the shippe came to *Wapping* with the whole number of men that they carryed forth (my selfe excepted that was come before) being sixe and twentie; all in perfect health.

CHAP. VII.

A true report of a Voyage Anno 1615. for Discoverie of *Sea Land* and *Islands*, to the Northwards; as it was performed by ROBERT FORT HERBERT, in a Pinnace of twentie tonnes called the *Richard* of London: for which was in charge of the Right Worshipfull Sir THOMAS SMITH, Knight, my very good Master, and Master RICHARD WICKER, Governour: and the rest of the Worshipfull Company of Merchants, called the Merchants of New Trades and Discoveries, trading into *Moscovia*, and King IAMES his New Land.

BY the providence of Almighty God I went forth of *Hamth* Harbour in the foreaid Pinnace, the twelfth of May, in the company of eight shippes of the Fleet, for King IAMES his New Land, who in foule weather out-fayled me in the Latitude 71. degrees, or thereabouts. So I proceeded alone towards King IAMES his New Land, and met with Ice in latitude 73. degrees 30. minutes. I flood North-eastwards for the waite of King IAMES his New Land, and had Endry conflicts with the Ice in haine and wet foggie weather, and had sight of Land the eleventh of June, and on the nineteenth of the same I anchored in *Faire Haven*. Here I stayed till the thirde of July, for the Pinnace had reciev'd some hurt amongst the Ice, which to amend, I was faine to hale her aground, besides divers other things necessary to be done, which decayed me longer then willingly I would have stayed there.

From hence I layed Northward, but met with Ice in latitude 79. degrees 30. minutes, being six leagues from *Hackings Head-land*; then I coasted the land in in Point and Bayes to the Westwards and South-westward, and beinge thirte leagues from the Land in latitude 79. degrees 30. minutes, I found it to trend Northward and North-westward, and coasted it to the latitude

of 79. degrees 30. minutes, but then I was embayed with Ice, and was faine to stand out againe and failed about ten leagues before I got cleere: when I was out of this Bay, I proceeded South Westwardly with the Ice on the Starboard to the latitude 78. degrees 30. minutes, where beinge fortie leagues from the shore, I was againe embayed with the Ice, and hauing halfe Perill and Sun-thine weather all the day, which made mee the boldier to stand to nere it, the weather cleipe, on a fudden fell foggie, and the wind beganne to blow hard at South, which put vs to great trouble and no small perill: but the Almighty power who hath mercifully delivered vs heretofore out of as great dangers, presented vs also from this: when wee were gotten cleere off the Ice, we had the Sea much growne, and the storme increasing, but beinge desirous still to keepe the Sea, I flood close by the wind vnder a pyrr of coarces, till the Pinnace waxt leake with bearing too much layle, and there was forced to lay vry vnder a mayne course onely: and although thee steamed South-east and South-east by South, yet was the huried violently to the North-eastwards, and by the mercifull providence of God we fell right with the *Feredad*, in latitude 79. degrees, then I flood out Sir *Thomas Smith* Bay for harbour in *Croft-road*, where I anchored the thirteenth of July being Thursday. I stayed here foure dayes, in which time my men mented the Sayles and ships tackling that had reciev'd hurt by the late storme, and made a new mayne Sayle to keepe in time of need, and on the fourteenth of July I weighed out of *Croft-road*, and layling Westwards from thence came to Ice againe in latitude 78. degrees 40. minutes, which I coasted as it lay nereest South-westward more Westwardly, but with many Points & Bayes, wherewith I was sometimes intangled, yet, God be thanked, got cleere againe, either by helpe of Oares or Sayles without any hurt. In this fort I proceeded with good satisfaction, although not with so good content, till I came to the latitude of 76. degrees, beinge about one hundred leagues from *Pointe Look-on* here then was conflict with a contrarye storme from the South-west and South South-west, which drove me to the South-eastward, till I came in the latitude of 74. degrees, and then I made my way Westward againe, so nere as I could lay, close by the winde, and out-ran the formerly supposed Land of *Groeland*, which some have layd downe in plates and extended to 75. degrees. When I came into the latitude of 73. degrees, I flood West and North-west, and fell with Ice againe in latitude 73. degrees 30. minutes, and thought indid at that time that I was nere Land by abundance of Rowle, which we saw in great flocks: but such thick fogges have continued for three or foure dayes together, that we might sooner heare the Land if any were, then see it, and so I did we first find this Ice by hearing the ror, thinking till we saw it, that it had bene Land, so that we were embayed with it, before we thought that we had bene nere it; then I flood out againe and coasted the Ice still to the Westwards Southerly, but could see no Land, as I expected to haue done, untill wee came vnder the latitude of 71. degrees thirte minutes, and then we eysed a snowie Hill very high in the cloudes, for this day was very cleere at Sea, but the fogge was not yet cleared from the Land, so that we could see no part of it, but only the top of a snowie Mountayne, which appeared very high although wee were fourteene or fifteene leagues distant from it, bearing off vs South-east and by South.

Then I flood in for the shore, supposing it had bene part of the Mayne of *Groeland*: for the fogge lay on each side of this Mount, as if there had bene a great Continente vnder it, but it proved otherwise, for as we came nearer to it, the fogge dispersed more, and when we were five leagues distant, the Land appeared in some like a Land.

When I came nearer the shore, I could find no Harbor to anchor in, Notwith standing, the weather beinge faire & calme, I hoist out my Boat & went ashore with three men more, and let vp the Kings Armes: then we searched a Sandie Beach, which was abundantly stored with drift wood, but yielded no other fruits, that we could find worth the taking vp, so I returned aboard againe, and first aloose my Boat to fetch some wood. But before the men had laid into her the little quantitie that was able to carrie, they came aboard againe, for the wind began to blow hard, and the Sea to growe loftie, so that there was no place for vs to abide any longer, wherefore I was purposed to haue searched further along the shore, but this gale of winde cominge Northerly I flood from hence to the Westwards, beinge desirous to see more Land or finde a more open Sea.

And hauing sayled about fifteene or sixteene leagues I met with Ice againe, in latitude 71. degrees, and coasted it eight or nine leagues furth Westward, and South-westward as it lay, but then the wind came to the South-west, and we flood close by it as weale to the Southwards, but findinge the gale to increase, and considering that it was the most contrarye wiske which could blow against my further proceeding (for the Ice as we found did trend nereest South-west, and besides it had bene nere any high Land, which within twentie leagues past vs, wee might perfectly haue made it, the weather was so faire and cleere. In these respects, and for the Reasons followinge, I took the benefit of this wind to returne to the North-eastwards againe, beinge now about two hundred leagues from King IAMES his New Land in latitude 71. degrees.

First, I purposed to layle along the South-east side of the Land that I had discovered, to bee better furnished what Harbours there were, and what likelihood of profit to enioy; and from thence to proceed to the place where I first fell with Ice in latitude 73. degrees when I was driven to the South-eastwards with a Westly storme, for I am yet verily persuaded, that beinge

Wee met with Ice.

We left the Ice and came for England.

A storme beganne.

A *Corpo Santo*. It is often seen at the end of stormes.

Note. Error of Groeland.

Fogges.

High Hill.

Drift wood.

Worshipfull Merchants.

Note.

God is much displeased for the blood which was left in this place, and I feare a perpetual curse left to remaine yet; God I know is all-sufficient, and may, if it please him, send a Voyage in this place. News from Faire-hauen I can write you none for as yet we have not heard from him, the reason there-of I cannot conceive; I feare his Shallop is miscarried, for certainly else we should have heard from him ere this, or some other cause there is: I pray God it be not so. I pray command me to Master John Hildam, and tell him that the Master and Pilot doe sit both their horse together, being very great friends; also I pray command me to my Cousin William Driver and Master Wilkinson, wishing them all happiness. I am in good hope that we have done some good upon the whales, not doubting but you will have judgement for your felices and to help your neighbours, the which I desire may be. Other news I have none to write you. So desiring God to bless you in your proceedings in this your Voyage, I take my leave: *Resting*

Your loving friend to command
ROBERT SALMON Jun.

Nine Ships were employed Anno 1632, of which one for Discouerie. Their disastrous success you may read before, page 469. The last Fleete Anno 1633, was set forth by the former Adventurers, under the command of Captaine William Goodlard, William Heley being Vice-admirall. Of the success thereof you may read the Letters following.

Last Doe in Faire-Hauen, the foure and twentieth
of June, 1623.

Master Heley, your health wished, as also a happy accomplishment of your pretended Voyage desired. I had written you according to order, of all matters happening since our arrival, but contrary winds and weather prevented, and therefore have taken the first opportunity offering as profuse.

We arrived at our harbour with both our Ships in safetie upon the third of this present, blessed by God, finding the years past to have bene a more overie hard season, in regard of the great quantities of Snow and Ice, but yet not very offensive to us in respect of our good harbour. Touching our proceeding upon our Voyage, by the order of this present we had killed thirteen Whales, and then were all our Shallops constrained in, by reason of some weather, till the fifteenth, sixty, and upon the fifteenth we killed two more, which being all boyled into the heads, and then estimated will hardly make up eight Tunnets, which is a very small quantity. The weather continued bad till the twentieth, and upon the twentieth we killed three more, which by prohibition will make neere seven Tunnets. And thus we dwelt one day by degrees we shall accomplish our Voyage, by the grace of God.

As touching our order for the Flemmings, we went as yesterday aboard there, supposing that we should have found the Dutches there, but they are not as yet arrived, but we found there five Sailes of Flemmings, the Admirall five hundred Tunnets, the Vice-admirall of the same burthen, the other three were two hundred each Ship, having all fifty or sixty persons among them, having foure and twenty Shallops belonging to their five Ships, and are building Houses and Tavernes to inhabit for they make new and substantiall also they told us, they expected one or two Ships more ere this, after some time we had conference concerning the order given us with the Generall Conclitts Ice, and after some time that the time granted them to fish upon King James his New Land was expired, and thereupon his Majesty hath granted to our Principalls a Commission under the broad Seale of England for the suppressing of any Interuall or Flemming whatsoeuer that we shall meete with upon this Coast: yet notwithstanding it pleased our Principalls to appoint us to go aboard to them, and in a loving manner to informe them thereof, which if you will conveniently see and assist fitting, you shall manifest your felices friends to our Principalls; if otherwise, you shall cause them to comply by force, which had rather performe by love. First which be answered that he heard of no such matter in Holland, for if there were, it should be certified by writing: to which we answered, that Sir Rowland Carroon their Agent was very ignorant, who should give information: and said he, I have a Commission from the Prince of Orange, for the making of my Voyage upon this Coast, which was procured by my Merchants for my defence: and thus it shall be gotten by words from him.

After at our first arrival, there rode two Biskie Shippes with the Flemmings, but within a day or two they weighed and stood for the Southward: but inquired of the Flemmings what part they were bound for, they answered, for the North Cape; but Master Belson is persuaded that they are at Greene-harbour, to which purpose I wrote to Master Catches, that he gave order to his Shallop that goes to Bel-found, to stand in for the harbour, to give the Captaine true information. And for present I rest, intrusting you to remember me to Master Salmon and Master John Hadland: and that controlling my fault, till the 50 weeks of my words carrie me into the Ocean of distance, here I anchor: *resting*

Your friend
NATHANIEL FANNE.

Master

Master CATCHES Letter the nine and twentieth
of June, 1623.

Master Heley, with my best love I salute you, wishing health to you with the rest of your companions. Since our departure, we have had much foul weather, and troubled with Ice before we could get into harbour, and after we came into harbour, we never let fall anchor, by reason of the Ice till the sixteenth of this month, in which time we killed five Whales at the Fore-land, which made but eighteene Tunnets, and a halfe, and since we have killed five Whales more, which I hope will make in all upwards of eighty Tunnets. We have five nine Shallops verie well, and I thank God not one of our Men fallen, save one that was lost accidentally with a Musket. I hope some of the Southerne harbours will supply our want, if there be any, which I feare there will: our harbour, manie say still, is impossible to make a Voyage, by reason that the Flemmings shed blood there, which if they Greenlanded that plague from our. For East-harbour, which I think is still the best place for the Landing of our goods, and the proceeding: but Master Sherwin writes, that not but that you shall beare the loss of your goods, if you proceed: therefore all the two Biskaines which the English now Flemminge want, after to fish, therefore they departed, and said they would goe for the North Cape; but I think they are in Greene-harbour, or gone to the Eastward; which if they be in Greene-harbour, our Shallop going to Bel-found shall touch there to see, and so certify the Captaine, and know his will what he would have done in it: I hold it not fit that they should harbour there. There are no Dutches in the Countrey as yet, &c.

Captaine WILLIAM GOODLARD'S Letter: Bel-found
this eight of July, 1623.

Our friend Master Heley, I kindly salute you, wishing health to you with the rest of your companions, praying the Lord for your good success in your fishing. To certify you of our proceeding, we have killed here in Bel-found three and twenty Whales, and left manie more by from harbour, yet I hope sufficient to fill our ships: we have boyled a hundred and eighty Tunnets, of which a hundred and thirty we heard our Ship, and make account sixtie Tunnets were sold fill our hold. Our Whales here prove verie warthy and leave, which maketh bad Oyle, and bindeth us much in boyling. This present day our Shallop came from the Fore-land, as which time they had killed fifty-five Whales, verie small, and are verie doubtful of a Voyage there; if God sendeth fish into this harbour, I will not spare till I have killed sufficient, to fill all our Carcks, to leave for them if there be weather. The store and quantity of them there was killed at Faire-hauen eighteene Whales, which young verie goodly to eat, by their estimation one hundred and ten Tunnets: having there five Flemmings well furnished, and half of five hundred Tunnets some of them, and two more expected thither ere this, which if they are will burden much our Shippes in their fishing this year, and in my judgement not to be removed from thence, for they having a Commission from the States, to fish upon this Coast: were our whole Fleet there, and could put them away, yet would they flee to one of our Southerne harbours, and so should we spend our time in following of them, and lose our Voyage, &c. There were so Dutch Ships of Saint John de Luz at Faire-Hauen which were put away by the Flemmings and our Ships, which they judge are gone for the Coast.

With a bonnie beere I write you the lamentable accident which happened here, the eighth and twentieth of June our Shallop all was in shoale, and my selfe after my brother having a Shallop lying by the Ship side, made a Whale going into the Ice by followed him and broke him, and his rope being now runne out with knicker, which overbore his Shallop, where he left his life with my Boy Becizake, being as we thought carried away with the rope (the dearest Whale to me that ever was struck in this harbour) there was never any more left, I think, went so neere my heart &c.

Many other Letters I could have added, but doubt I have already wearied you with this sixth couth Coast; whereto our English Neptunes are now so wonted, that there they have found not only Venison but Pernassie and Helewee and have melted a Masson Mountain out of the Greenland Snows and Ice Rocks. Whole Elaborate Poems have I seen of Master Heley, as also of James Prellis, there composed: but we have harsher Discoueries in hand, to which we are now shipping you. This I thought good at our parting to advertise thee, that Master Heley hath affirmed to me touching the diueritie of weather in Greenland; that one day it hath bene so cold (the winds blowing out of some quarter) that they could scarce handle the frozen faile: another day so hot, that the pitch melted off the ship, so that but day they could keepe their clothes from pollution: you be hath bene at midnight Tobacco lighted and fired by the Swaine-bonnes with a Glass. Likewise for firewood in our Whale-store, I thought good to deliver Stowes relation touching a Whale swimming differing in forme from those here usually found in Greenland: my selfe did observe it being with some diueritie observed in the winter before us, when I was in 1574. I thought best to tell you the storyes Rammegate in the Parish of Saint Peter, and there dying for hunger of his Ocean parent. Hee came on shore about five of the clocke at night, and did about five the next morning before which time he recovered

Gold and here strangely variable.

Tobacco lighted by the sun at midnight.

links against him, and would speak in his defence, if I found not an unwise fall conspiracy of all
 Hittites and Reports against him, I honour his other good parts, his *virtus*, his *learning* (perhaps
 better than almost any other *Ruſſe* in his time) his exemplary *fidelity* or *virtus* *Magnitudo*, his
Marcell skill, *induftrie*, *fortune*, whereby he ſubdued the Kingdoms of *Cafan* and *Aſſyria*, which
 alfo the *Turks* lending from *Cambranie* an Armie of three hundred thouſand to diſpoſſeſſe him
 of, *1699* beſides his hopes and helps from the *Tartars*, *yet* returned to tell their diſasters, and
 the *deſolation* of his fellowes beſides what hee got in *Siberia* and from the *Pole*, *Sweden*,
Pruſſian, extending his *Congreſſes* to *Poland*, and much more; *yet* his *memorie* is ſacrosanct
 to the *Ruſſians*, which (either for their ferule diſtinction, or for ſome ſort of *brillide* and *whip*, or
 for his long and proſperous reign, or out of diſtaſte of later *tragedies* ſince hee in little leſſe
 or putation (as I ſome have out of their experience inſtructed me) then a *Saint* is to

His love for his Nation is magnified by our Countreymen with all thankfulness, whose gainere begun by him, have made them also in some sort free to turne *Ruffin* (I know what loue or feares, as if they were fill'd thut up in *Ruffin*, & to conceale whatsoever they know of *Ruffian* occurrences) that I haue sustayned no small trouble with great paines of body vexation of minde, and triall of potent interceding friends to gett neglect and silence from some, yea almost contempt and scorn. They alleadge their thankfulness for benefits received from that Nation, and their feare of the *Dutch*, readye to take advantage thereof, and by calumniamations from hence to intenuer their Trade. This for loue to my Nation I haue infered against any Caualiers of our *Ruff* Merchants: though I must needs profite that I dislike, and almost detest that (call it *Ruff* from their knauery) of Men that neglect Gods glorie in his providence, and the Worlds instruction from their knauery, and will be wilfull to wilfully conceale the *Ruffians* Faults, will tell no- thing of their Faits; and whyles they will be wilfull to denye their Crimes, I will reuote nothing of the histories of Faith, and that in perplexed, diuersified, chances and changes as feldome the World hath in so short a space scene on one Scene. Whiles therefore they which seeme to know most, will in their *Ruffian* Relations helpe me little or nothing to labour and labour (and fru- strated hopes) I haue (besides much conference with eye witnesses) made bold to search in others such books as in diuers languages I haue read, and in such Letters and written Treatises, and in others such as my friends, or found with Master *Hajley* (as in other parts of our storie) not feigning any whit to disgrace that Nation or their Princes, but only offering that truth of things done as I see knowne, and such memorable alterations may not passe as a dreame, or be buried with the Doers. Sir *Iermoe Haylor* shall lead you from *Iunas* Graue to *Rhedores* Coronation.

* Or Theodor
Sir Jerom Her-
vey.

*The most solemn and magnificent coronation of PHEODOR IVANOVICH,
Emperour of Russia, &c. the tenth of June, in the year 1584. scene
and observed by Master IEROM HORSEY Gen-
tleman, and servant to her Majestie.*

The death of
Juan Vasilovich
1584, April 18.

Lord Boris adopted as the Emperor's third son.

[illegible]

five brothers, two towns called *Ogletz*, which has given unto her, and the young Prince her sonne, with all the Lands belonging to it in the fire, with officers of all sorts appointed, leaving allowance of apparel, jewels, diet, horse, &c. in ample manner belonging to the estate of a Princess. The time of mourning after their vbering expired called *Sarashy*, of forty or eighty days, the day of the solemnizing of this coronation, with great pomp and solemnity, being upon the tenth day of the month of *May*, the day of the coronation being the age of twelve years, the Emperor's Mother *Trom Hefsy* was orderly sent for, and placed in a room to see all the solemnity. The Emperour comming out of his Pallace, there went before him, the Metropolitan, Archbishops, Bishops, and churche Monkes, and Clergie men, with very rich Coapes and

[illegible]

world's throne, the throne of the almighty and without beginning God, which was before this world, whom we glorify in the Trinity, one only God, the Father, the Son, and the holy Ghost, maker of all things, worker of all our every day, father of all that is forth by, which will, and working, be both lords, and give life to man: that one almighty God which everlastingly enure one of his only children with his word to differne God through our Lord Iesu Christ, and the holy quacking spirits of life, now in these perillous times flabbed us to kepe the right Script, and suffer us to rage of our felax to the good profit of the land, to the seducing of the people, together with the exent, and the maintenance of vertue, And to the Murthering of thele and kill his crock: vpon this, After this, he said, And of our faith's sake of his, heity, hauing vpon his head, was adorned with precious stones of all liores orient peales of great quantity, and the crown was augmented in riches: it was in weight two hundred pound, the greatest quantity, and thereof borne vp by six Dukes, his chiefie imperiall Crowne vpon his head very precious: his raffe imperiall in his right hand of an Vnicorne's horne of three foote and a halfe in length belet with raffe iron's, bought of Merchants of *Amburg* by the old Emperour, in *Ann* 1584. and colt him 7000. Markes sterling. This Lewel Maister *Hefley* kept sometimes before the Emperour hall in his. His Scepter globe was carried before him by the Prince *Bis Pheodorus*: his rich cap belet with rich furs and peatles, was carried before him by a Duke: his five Crownes all were carried by *Demetrius Isaacovich Godonov*, the Emperours vncle, *Alekza Romanovich* the Emperours vncle, *Stephen Vasilovich*, *Gregorie Vasilovich*, *Iuan Vasilovich* his brothers of the blood royal. Thus it left the Emperour *Iohann* the first, his Church was there ready mol richly adorned, with covering of imbrodered parr and precious stones, faddell, and all furniture agreeable to it, wrought to be worth 20000. markes sterling.

There was a bridge made of a hundred & fifty fadoms in length, three manner of ways, three
 foot above ground, & two fadome broad, for him to goe from one Church to the other with his
 Princes an nobles: from the pette of the people, which were in number infinite, and some at that
 time prelfed to death with the throng. As the Emperour returned out of the Churches, they were
 50 fped under foot with cloth of Gold, the porches of the Churches with red Velvet, the Bridges
 with Scarlet, & fhamelled cloth from one Church to another, and as foon as the Emperour was
 pulled by the clove of gold, he was fent to the fupper, where he was ferved with a fupper
 60 new & curious to the pice, to referue it for a monument: fluer and gold coin, the mitted
 of pence was call among the people in great quantity. The Lord Bore *Pleudench* was
 fumptuoufly and richly attired, with his garments decked with great orient pearly beels with all
 forts of precious ftones. In like rich manner were apparelled all the family of the *Gondanates*:
 in their degrees, with the reft of the Princes and nobility, whereof one named *Kne*, *Una Michen*,
treach Glysky, whose robe, horfe and furniture, was in regifter found worth one hundred thou-
 65 fand markes Berling, by the Emperours order, the Embleme being a fower, was placed in
 the front of the traine, he alfo bore a great orient pearly beel, and rich apparell, and rich
 fupper, fithing to befall, with rich ftones, and orient Pearly beels, her crowne was placed upon
 her head, accompanied with her Principes, and Ladies of estate: then cried out the people,
 70 prelude our noble Emperrefe *Irene*. After all this, the Emperour came into the Parliament

The day of
Pheodor his co-
ronation.

house, which was richly decked: there he was placed in his royall seat adorned as before: his face crowned was first before him vpon a Table, the Bayon and Ewre royall of gold held by his knight of gard, with his men standing two on each side in white apparel of cloth of siluer, called Kindry with icepters and battle-axes of gold in their hands, the Princes and nobility were all placed according to their degrees all in their robes.

The Emperour after a short Oration, permitted every man in order to kisse his hand: which being done, he removed to a princely seate prepared for him at the table: where he was served by his Nobles in very princely order. The three out rooms being very great and large were belet with plate of gold and siluer round, from the ground vp to the vaults one vpon the other: among which plate were many barrels of siluer and gold: this solemnitie and triumph lasted a whole weeke, wherein many royall pastimes were shewed and viued: after which, the chiefe men of the Nobilitie were elected to their places of office and dignitie, as the Prince *Boris Phedorovich* was made chiefe Counsellor to the Emperour, Master of the Horse, had the charge of this person, Lieutenant of the Empire, and warlike engins, Gouernor or Lieutenant of the Empire of *Casau*, and *Astracan*, and others: to this dignitie were by Parliament, and gift of the Emperour giuen him many renewances and rich lands, as there was giuen him, and his for euer to inherit a Province called *Uagay* of three hundred English miles in length, and two hundred and fiftie in breadth, with many Townes and great Villages populous and wealthy: his yearly Reuenue out of that Province, is due and thirte thousand Markes Sterling, being not the fifth part of his yearly Reuenue. Further, he and his house of such authority and power, that in forty dayes warning, they are able to bring into the field a hundred thousand Soldiers well furnished.

The conclusion of the Emperours Coronation was a peeke of Ordinance, called a Peale royall, two miles without the Citie, being a hundred and twenty great pieces of braile of all sorts as at two miles as any can be made, these pieces were all discharged with shot against bulwarke made of purpoe: twenty thousand harquebuses standing in eight ranks two miles in length, apparelled all in velvet, coloured silke and flammels, discharged their shot also twice ouer in good order: and so the Emperour accompanied with all his Princes and Nobles, at the least fiftie thousand horse, departed through the Citie to his palace. This royall coronation would aske much time, and many leaues of paper to be described particularly as it was performed: it shall suffice, to vnderstand that the like magnificence was neuer seene in *Russia*.

The Coronation, and other triumphs ended, all the Nobilitie, officers, and Merchants, according to an accustomed order every one in his place and degree, brought rich presents vnto the Emperour, wishing him long life, and ioy in his kingdom.

The same time also Master *Ierom Horsey* aforesaid, remaining as seruant in *Russia* for the Queenes most excellent Maieste, was called for to the Emperour, as he sat in his Imperiall seat, and the also a famous Merchant of *Netherland* being newly come to *Mosco* (who gaue him selfe out to be the King of *Spaines* subiect) called *Iohn de Wale*, was in like sort called for. Some of the Nobilitie would haue preferred this subiect of the *Spaniard* before Master *Horsey* seruant to the Queene of *England*, whereunto Master *Horsey* would in no case agree, saying, he would haue his legges cut off by the knees, before he would yettel so such an indignitie offered to his Soueraigne the Queenes Maieste of *England*, to bring the Emperour a present in coule after the King of *Spaines* subiect, or any other whatsoever. The Emperour, and the Prince *Boris Phedorovich* perceiving the controuersie, sent the Lord Treasurer *Peter Iuanovich Galanov*, and *Vasili Shalkov*, both of the Council, to them, who delivered the Emperour backe Master *Horsey* speech: whereupon he was first in order (as good reason) admitted and presented the Emperour in the behalfe of the English Merchants trading thither, a present, wishing him ioy, and long to raise in tranquillitie, and so kist the Emperours hand, he accepting the present with good liking, and avouching, that for his Sisters sake, Queene *Elizabeth* of *England*, he would be a gracious Lord to her Merchants, in as ample manner as ever his Father had bene: and being dismissed, he had the same day sent him, five hundred dishes of sundry kinds of meats, with three carts laden with all sorts of drinke very bountifully. After him was the foresaid subiect of the *Spanish* King admitted with his present, whom the Emperour would be no lesse faithful & receivable vnto him, then the Queene of *England*, subiects were & had been, & then the King of *Spaines* subiects should receiue fauor accordingly.

All these things thus in order performed, prayles were sung in all the Churches. The Emperour and Emperesse very devoutly resorted on foote to many principal Churches in the Citie, and vpon Trinitie Sunday becooke themselves to a progresse in order of procession, to a famous Monastere called *Sergei* and the *Trinitie*, fixtie miles distant from the Citie of *Mosco*, accompanied with a huge armie of Noblemen, Gentlemen, and others, mounted vpon goodly Horses with furniture accordingly.

The Emperesse of leuon took this journey on foote all the way, accompanied with her Princes and Ladies, no small number: her Guard and Gunners were in number twenty thousand: her chiefe Counsellor or Attendant, was a noble man of the blood Royall her Vncle of great authority, called *Demetri Iuanovich Gokoussa*. All this progresse ended, both the Emperour and Emperesse returned to *Mosco*: shortly after, the Emperour by the direction of the Prince

Boris Phedorovich, sent a power into the Land of *Siberia*, where all the rich Sables and Fures are gotten. This power conquered in one yeere and a halfe one thousand miles. In the performance of this warre, there was taken prisoner the Emperour of the Countrey, called *Chere Siberky*, and with him many other Dukes and Noble men, which were brought to *Mosco*, with a great guard of Soldiers and Gunners, who were receiued into the Citie in very honourable manner, and due there remained to this day.

Hereupon the corrupt Officers, Judges, Justices, Captaines and Lieutenants through the whole Kingdome were remoued, and more honest men substituted in their places, with expresse commandement, vnder seuer punishment to forbear the old bribing and extortion which they had viued in the old Emperours time, and now to execute true iustice without respect of persons: and to the end that this might be the better done, their lands and yearly stipends were augmented: the great tasks, customs, and duties, which were before laid vpon the people in the old Emperours time, were now abated, and some wholly remitted, and no punishments commanded to be viued, without sufficient cause and proofe, although the crime were capital, deferring death: many Dukes and Noble men of great Houses, that were vnder displeasure, and imprisoned twenty yeeres by this Emperour, were now let at libertie and restored to their lands: all prisoners were let at libertie, and their trespasses forgiven. In summe, a great alteration vnto the government followed, and yett all was done quietly, cuilly, peaceably, without trouble to the Prince, or offence to the Subiect: and this bred great affluence and honour to the Kingdome, and all was accomplished by the wisdom especially of *Ierom* the Emperre.

These things being reported and carried to the eares of the Kings and Princes that were borderers vpon *Russia*, they grew so fearful and terrible to them, that the Monarch of all the *Seythians* called the *Crim Tartar* or great *Cas* himselfe, named *Sapher Keri Ali*, came out of his owne Countrey to the Emperour of *Russia*, accompanied with a great number of his Nobilitie well horsed, although to them that were Christians they seemed rude, yett they were personable men, and valiant: their coming was grateful to the Emperour, and their entertainment was honourable: the *Tartar* Prince hauing brought with him his wives also, receiued of the *Russe* Emperour entertainment, and Princely welcome according to their estates.

Not long after, one thousand and two hundred *Pashis* Gentlemen, valiant Soldiers, and proper men came to *Mosco*, offering their seruice to the Emperour, who were all entertained: and in like sort many *Chorkeffes*, and people of other Nations came and offered seruice, and as soone as the report of this new created Emperour was spread ouer other Kingdome of *Eurasie*, there were sent to him sundrie Ambassadors, to wish him ioy and prosperitie in his Kingdome: thither came Ambassadors from the *Turke*, from the *Persian*, the *Bagdarian*, the *Crim*, the *Georgian*, and many other *Tartar* Princes. There came also Ambassadors from the Emperour of *Almaine*, the *Pole*, the *Swedish*, the *Dane*, &c. And since his Coronation no enemy of his hath preuailed in his attempts.

It fell not long after, that the Emperour was desirous to send a message to the most excellent Queene of *England*, for which seruice he thought no man fitter then Master *Ierom Horsey*, supposing that one of the Queenes owne men and subiects would be the more acceptable to her. The summe of which message was, That the Emperour desired a continuance of the League, friendship, amitie and intercourse of traffique which was betwene his Father and the Queenes Maieste and her Subiects, with other priuate affaires besides, which are not to be made common.

Master *Horsey* hauing receiued the Letters and Requests of the Emperour, provided for his journey ouer Land, and departed from *Mosco* the first day of September, thence vnto *Orsk*, to *Tourkoo*, to great *Nomogrod*, to *Vobike*, and thence to *Nybnosse* in *Lunania*, to *Wenden*, and so to *Riga*: (where he was belet, and brought forthwith before a Cardinall, called *Reginald*, but yett suffered to passe in the end.) From thence to *Misa*, to *Gulden*, and *Lohu* in *Poland*, to *Alen*, to *Kening* *Horsh* in *Prussia*, to *Elling*, to *Danzicke*, to *Stettin* in *Pomerland*, to *Ryghet*, to *Lubek*, to *Hamborough*, to *Breme*, to *Emden*, and by Sea to *London*. Being arrived at her Maiesties Royal Court, and hauing deliuered the Emperours Letters with good fauour, and gracious acceptance, he was forthwith againe commanded to repasse into *Russia*, with other Letters from her Maieste to the Emperour, and Prince *Boris Phedorovich*, answering the Emperours Letters, and withall requesting the fauour and friendship, which his Father had yeilded to the English Merchants: and hereunto was he earnestly also solicited by the Merchants of *London* themselves of that Company, to deale in their behalfe. Being thus dispatched from *London* by Sea, he arrived in *Mosco*, the twentieth of April, 1586, and was very honourably welcomed: and for the Merchants behalfe, obtained all his Requests, being therein specially fauoured by the Noble Prince *Boris Phedorovich*, who alwayes affected Master *Horsey* with speciall liking. And hauing obtained priuiledges for the Merchants, he was recommended from the Emperour againe, to the Queene of *England* his Maieste, by whom the Prince *Boris*, in token of his honourable and good opinion of the Queenes Maieste, sent her Highnesse a Royall present of Sables,

this burthen to my shoulders, but have determined to undertake your protection with greatest fidelity, being ready to sway the Russian Scepter and Government, as farre as Gods grace shall enable mee. On the other side bee you faithful to mee and to my command, as God may you helpe. I am your most gentle King.

loyfull acclamations followed, with all protestation of their fidelity and future obedience. He entering into the Monasterie, after Prayers, received the first Benediction. The people returned full of joy, and the Bels (of which are numbered in *Moscow*, three thousand) resounded the publick Festivities. All the Magistrates and Officers, as such as received Salarie of the King, go presently to the Monasterie and carrie Gold, Silver, Precious Stones, Pearls, Bread, Salt, (after the soleimne custome) with wives of long life & all happines, and desiring to accept in good worth his: the rest they should take to themselves. Then doth hee bid them to a Feast, and presently with *Mary* his Wife, *Theodore* his Sonne of ten yeeres old, and *Artemise* his Daughter being sixteen, hee goeth out of the Monasterie with pompous Procession to the Castle. Like Prelims were offered to his Wife and Children, which accepted only the Bread and Salt, remitting the rest to the Prelaters. When he was come to the Castle, he chose his Sisters Lodging; for that of the Prince deceased, as offense by his death was destroyed, and after new built.

After Festiual entertainment of innumerable people, soleimne Oath was taken of all the Governours; those things being in action till May. Then came newes that the *Crim Tartars* had entered the borders thinking to find all things troubled with an interregne; whereupon he assembled an Armie of three hundred thousand, and went in person against them. But the *Tartars* hearing how things went, returned home and sent Embassadors to the Emperours Tents. Hee from New yeere, which enters in other places with January following) hee was publicly blessed by the Patriarke, carrying a golden Crosse in his hand, and on the fourteenth of September, before the *Knazes*, *Bisshops*, Bishops and other Orders, had the Crowne set on his head by the Patriarke, and the Scepter put in his hand, with the Solemnitie in such cases accustomed.

Twelve dayes together all Orders were feasted in the Castle, and the Magistrates and Officers had a yeeres pay given them. Merchants also of other Countries had Immunities and Priviledges granted. The Rusticks had their payments to their *Bisshops* reasonably rated, and their portions made more free. *Germane* Merchants had monies lent them to repay seven yeeres after without *Usurie*. Widowes, and Orphans, and poorer persons received much Almes. *Phœsiques* Obsequies were soleimnly performed, and the Priests richly rewarded; and that Empire which seemed dead with the death of the house of *Beale*, now was as it were revived, and received a glorious Resurrection.

Thus have we delivered you *Thomas* his report touching *Boris* manner of acquiring the Empire without publick enmie, and cunning wiping of the aspersions of *Pseudo* and *Demetrius* their deaths. And as every bodie is nourished by Aliments correspondent to the Principles of the Generation, so did hee seeke by politic wisdom to establish that which by wile Politics he had gotten. Wherein his care was not limited multiply Treasure, and as at first hee had seemed popularly prodigall, so after a small time of his Reigne, hee became presently penurious, the wonted allowances of the Court being much thinned: from that which had bene in former times, as I have received from eye-witnesses. Likewise hee was careful to hold good treaties with his Neighbouring Princes, and as well by plots at home, as by forreigne Alliance inducured to settle on his Race this new gotten Empire. He is said for this end, to have sought a Wife for his sonne out of *Spain*, and a Husband for his Daughter out of *Denmarke*. His Wife was a woman of haughtie spirit, who chooghe her too good for any *Helpe* (so they call a slave, and such she esteemed all the subjects) and on such termes she is said to have bene denied to a great man his best Souldier and Commander of his Armie.

But while his Sonne shined now in the height of his comlie, and with brightest and warrest beams of prosperitie, there arose grosse vapours out of *Demetrius* his grave, which grew quickly into a blacke darke cloud, and not only eclipsed that Imperiall glorie; but loone engendered a blonish storme, which with a flood swept away that whole Family, and over-whelmed also the whole Empire. Conspiracies for together caused the greater lustre; for which cause I will bring on the stage a Gentleman, which attended Sir *Thomas Smith* employed in Honourable Embassage from his Majestie of Great Brittain to the then flourishing Emperour *Boris*; and out of his large Relations deliver you this which followeth in his owne words (omitting the most part to our purpose not so pertinent) in the Booke printed, *Anno 1605*.

* Where the
emperor also
seemeth too
much to insult
on the his
dislike.

§. II.

Occurrents of principall Note which happened in Russia, in the time while the Honourable Sir THOMAS SMITH remayned there Embassador from his Majestie.

Sir Thomas Smith Knight, accompanied with Sir T. Chaulson and Sir W. Wyse Knights, divers Gentlemen and his owne Attendants, repayed to the Court on the tenth of June 1604, then lying at *Greenwich*, where by the Right Honourable the Earle of *Salisbury* he was brought to His Majesties presence, killed his Hand, &c. The next day he tooke leave of the Prince, and on the twelfth being furnished with his Commission, he came to *Greenwich*, and next morning went aboard the *Job* and *Francis* Admirall: and the two and twentieth of July anchored within a mile of the *Archangel*. The sixteenth of September, hee came to *Volodya*: the nine and twentieth to *Perslaw*, and there staid three dayes, and then departed to *Troites* (that faire and rich Monasterie) so to *Branslow* and *Roslaw*, five versts from the great Citie of *Moscow*. The fourth of October, the *Proffane* came and declared the Emperours pleasure that hee should come into the *Moscow* that forenoone: presently after came Master I. *Mericke* Agent, with some twentie Horses to attend his Lordship, which forthwith was performed. Then we did ride, till we came within a little mile of the many thousands of Noblemen and Gentlemen on both sides the way, attended on horsebacke to receive his Lordship. Where the Embassador alighted from his Coach, and mounted on his foot-cloth Horse, and so rode on with his Trumpets sounding. A quarter of a mile farther, met him a proper and gallant Gentleman a-foot of the Emperours table, who with Cap in hand, declared to the Embassador, that the Emperour, the young Prince, and the Master of the Horse, had so farre favoured him, as to send him a Lemet, very gorgeously trapped with Gold, Pearls, and Precious Stone; and particularly, a great Chaîne of plated Gold about his necke, to ride upon. Whereupon the Embassador alighted, embraced the Gentleman, returned humble thanks to them all, and presently mounted. Then he declared that they likewise had sent horses for the Kings Gentlemen, which likewise were very richly adorned, then for all his followers: which Ceremonie or State performed, and all being horsed, he departed, we riding orderly forward, till we were met by three great Noblemen, leuured from the rest of the multitude, and the Emperours *Tschelme* or Interpreter with them.

They being within speech, thus began that Oracion they could never well conclude: Which was, That from their Lord and Master the mightie Emperour of *Russia*, &c. they had a message to deliver his Lordship. The Embassador then thinking they would be tedious and troublesome with their viall Ceremonies; presented their farther speech with this (to them a *Spell*) That it was unjust for Subjects to hold discourse in that kind of complement, of two such mightie and renowned Potentates on horsebacke. They (heerby not only put by their Ceremonious Saddle-sitting, but out of their Paper instructions) alighted suddenly, as men fearing they were illbehooved, and the Embassador presently after them, coming very courteously all three, halting the Embassador and the Kings Gentlemen, taking them by the hands. Thus like a Scholer, too to learne by rote the *Solladame* *Esauyich* *Moscow* (which I will not write) with his Leflions before him, declared his message; which was, that he with the other two Noblemen, were sent from the Great Lord, Emperour and great Duke Boris Phœdorowitch, selfe-typholder, great Lord Emperour, and great Duke of all *Russia*, Volademer, Moskoe and Nougoud, King of *Cain* and *Altcran*, Lord of *Vobskoe*, great Duke of *Smolenskoe*, Tuer, Huder, Vghory, Perme, Viatsky, Bolgory, &c. Lord and great Duke of *Nougoud* in the Low Countreyes, of *Chernigo*, *Rezan*, *Poltosky*, *Roussoe*, *Gerallau*, *Bealozera*, *Leifland*, *Oudorskey*, *Obdorskey*, *Condinskey*, *King* of all *Syberia* and the *North Coast*, Commander of the Countreyes of *Iurisky*, *Gryfinsky*, and Emperour of *Kabardinsky*, of *Chibuksky*, and of the whole Countrey of *Garskey*, and of many other Countreyes and Kingdomes Lord and Emperour, to know of his Majesties health of *England*, the Queene and Princes. The second, being a Captaine of Gunners (the Emperours Gun) named *Kearine* *Danydewich* *Beaschew*, pronouncing the Emperour and Princes Title, said hee was sent from them to know his Lordships health and vliage, with the Kings Gentlemen. The third, was one of the Secretaries, named *Pseudo* *Boulsteme*, offering the former order did deliver what he had in command from the Emperour, Prince and Emperre, to informe the Embassador of their much fauour towards him, and the Kings Gentlemen, in providing for his Honourable entertayne and care, a faire large house to lodge in: Also that they three were sent from the Emperour, Prince, and Emperre, to be his *Proffanes*, to supply the Emperours goodness towards him, to provide his necessities, and deliver any lute it pleased the Embassador to make to the Emperour. To all which the Embassador very wisely gave answer (as they made report unto the Emperour.)

So we all presently mounted againe, the *Proffanes* on either hand of the Ambassadors his Horse and Foot-cloth being led by his Page, some small distance, his Coach behind that, and some

§. II.

some fixe choiurd Gallants after behind all: who at the Embs. Riders riding through the guard, that was made for him, very courteously bowed him selfe. Thus he was followed by thousands, and within the three wals of the Citie, many hundreds of young Noblemen, Gentlemen, and Knights, who were mounted, begirt the wayes on every side: diuers on foot also, euen to the gate of the houte where he lodged. And as he was passing through the Citie, he sawe many of the being borne com, he was brought into his Bed-chamber by the Nobles, and there he was welcomed with many thanks for their honourable paines; they were defined, beaking their milcs, where they further alleasies. The next morning came the three old *Prêtrees* with the former, to know of his will, whether he had rather have the might full: withall, that if his Lordship wanted any thing, they all, or any one of them, should be ready to doe it. And he answered them, with the Interpreter and fixe Gentlemen were most within the walls, lodged in a house close to the gate, besides he had fittie Gunners to attend, and guard vs in our going abroad.

The eight of Odoab being the fourth day after our coming to *Majlo*, the *Preſent* came to his Lordſhip to let him vnderſtand, they heard he ſhould go vp the next day : wherefore they deſired his ſpeech and Embaſſage to the Emperour : and the rather, that the Interpreter might (as they pretended) tranſlate it. To this purpoſe, very carefully at ſeveral times they made demand. The Embaſſador answered, that he was ſent from a mighty Prince, to bee his Embaſſador to their Emperour, and being ſent to their Maſter, he deemed it, not only a diſhonour to him, but a weakneſſe in them, to require that at his hands.

The Iuenth of October, his Lordship being lent for his *Professors* there waiting, leaving 20 excellent Gentlemen for him selfe, the Kings Gentlemen, and good horses for the selfe: as likewise two gallant white Paltrics to carrie or draw a rich Chariot, one parcel of the great Prefent, with his followers and the Emperours guard, carrying the selfe: on each side the streets flanking the by eiteime, many Miffengers polling his Lordship, and the Emperours *Professors*. Thus with much state, lofty riding, till we came vnto the vtmost gate of the Court, where we were met by the great Castle before: there his Lordship dismounted. Then met him a great number of *Professors Andrius Metewich Smedardenus* with certayne Gentlemen, to bring him in. So in order as we rode, we alighted thelaires and a floss Gallie, whereas each side stood many Nobles and Courtiers, in faine Costes of *Perfian Style*, Valiet, Damask, &c. At the entry to the great 30 round about the Court, we encountered the Embassadors, to condueth him through their Roome, round about which sat many of the Emperours and his Lordships appoynted Personages. Then we entered the Presence, whether being come, and making our

gallant Nobleman, named *Peter Tufmes*, deliver the Emperours Title: Then the particular of the Prefents, and some other Ceremonies: which performed, the Embassadors having libertie, delivered so much of his Embrasse, as the time and occasion then afforded: After which the Emperour arising from his Throne, demanded of the King of *England* health, the Princes, and Queenes: then of the Embassadors and the Kings Embrasse, and how they had bene viced since they entred within his Dominions: to all which with obedience wee answered as was meete. Then the young Prince demanded the *veru* Gowne.

The Embassador having taken the Kings Letter of his Gentieman Vther, went vp after his obeynace to deliuer it, which the Lord Chancellour would haue intercepted. But the Embassador gaue it to the Emperours owne hands, and his Majestie afterwards deliuered it to the Lord Chancellour: who tooke it, and shewing the superscription to the Emperour and Prince, held it

in his hand openly with the Scale towards them. Then the Emperour called the Embassadour to kille his hand, which he did, as likewise the Princes, and with his face towards them returned. Then did hee call for the Kings Gentlemen to kille his hand, and the Princes, which they after obedience made, did accordingly. Afterwards, his Majestie invited his Lordship, the Kings Gentlemen and the rest to dine with him, as likewise Master *J. Mericke* Agent by name, who gave his attendance there on the Embassadour, and was now (as divers times) very graciously v. 50

Being entered the Prefence, we might behold the excellent Majestie of a mightie Emperour, seated in a Chaire of Gold, richly embroydered with *perles* fine in his right hand hee held a golden Scepter, a Crowne of pure Gold upon his head, a Collyer of rich stones and Pearles about his necke, his outward Garments of Crimion Velvet, Embroidered with silke flowers and Pearles, Precious stones and Gold: On his right side, (on equal height) with his Throate, and a very faire Globe of beaten Gold, on a Pyramis, with a faire Croffe upon it, vnto which hee had his speake, he turned a little and croft himselfe, Nigh that, stood a faire Balcon and Ewer, which the Emperour often vied daily.

Strange request.

His; audience.

P. Baftman,

Emperours
glorie.

**Princes splen-
dour.**

Pollaxe.

And on the left hand of the Prince two other fuch, but with Silur. Pollaxes. Round about the benches at the Councell and Nobility, in Golden and *Perfian* Coats, and high blacke Foxe Caps, to the number of two hundred , the ground being covered with Cloath of Arras, or Tapistrie : The Prelates standing all the while in the Roome, within little distance of his Majestie, where he and the Prince often viewed them. Being now by our *Prefatur* and others come for to Dinner, who led vs through much preface and many Chambers to one very faire and rich Roome, where was infinite floor of malle Plate of all sorts: Towards the other end stood the Emperours Vnle, named *Seraphan Falscherich Godmoos*, Lord High Steward, being attended with many Noblemen and Gentlemen, whom my Lord in his private Lodging, which was an extraordinary countenance of good Lord, had been making one of their honourable Noels. There stood the dining Roome, where we againe viewed the Emperour and Prince, seated under two Chaires of State, ready to dine, each hauing a Scull of Pearle on their bare heads, but the Princes was but a Coropet. Alfo their Yeilments were changed.

The former Duke, that that day was the Embassadors *Preſence*, came, as commanded from the Emperor, and placed the Embaſſador at a Table, on the bench ſide, ſome twenty ſcore from the Emperor. Then the Kings Gentlemen, *Maſter Mercur*, *Maſter Edward Gyrrie*, and all the reſt were placed, ſo that our eyes were half oppoſite to the Emperor. Over againſt the Embaſſador ſat his *Preſent* vppermoſt. Alſo in this large place ſat the Prime Count. I, to the number of two hundred and twenty, ſat at ſmall Tables. In the miſt of this Hall might be ſeen (to ſtand a great ſtair, round about a wall, a great heigh ſold wonderful great pieces of Plate, very curiouſly wrought with all manner of Beaſts, Fiſhes and Fowles, beſides ſome other ordinary pieces of ſcruſible Plate.

Being thus set (some quarter of an houre as it were, feeding our eyes with that faire Piller of Plate) we beheld the Emperours Table setured by two hundred Noblemen, all in Coats of cloth of Gold. The Princes Table setured with one hundred young Dukes and Princes of *Cassan, African, Siberia, Tartaria, Cbercaffes and Russes*, none above twentie yeeres old.

Then the Emperour sent from his Table by his Noble Secretaries, to my Lord and the Kings Gentlemen, thirte Dishes of meate, and to each a loafe of extraordinary bread. Then follow'd a great number of strange and rare Dishes, some in Silver, but most of malle Gold; with boyled, baked, and roasted, being piled up on one another by halfe dozens. To make you a particular Relation, I should doe the entertainment wrong, confitting almost of innumerable Dishes: Alfo, I should over-charge my memory, as then I did mine eyes and stomacke, little delighting the Reader, because Garlick and Onions, must bewance many of my words, as then it did the most part of their Dishes.

Garlick and Onions.

For our Drinkers, they confited of many excellent kinds of Madnes,brides all sorts of Wine and Beere. Divers times by name, the Emperour feat vs Dishes : but in the midst of Dinner hee called the Embassadors vnto him, and dranke our Kings health, where the Emperour held some discourse of our King and State. But at one time (striking his hand audibly on his breast) *Oh, said hee, my deere Sister Queen Elizabeth,* whom I loued as mine owne heart, expressing this his paine at this time, that hee should see the Emperour holding the Cuppe vnto his Princesse of Wales, returned againe to the same place, where all of vs flanding, dranke the tenth draught of the faire Cup, being of faire Chirillall, as the Emperour had commanded, the Wine (as farre as my judgement gaue leave) being Alligant.

Thus passing some foure houres in banquetting, and refreshing our selves too plentifully, all being taken away, we did arise. The Embassidour and the Kings Gentleman being called by name to receiue from his Emperiall hands, a Cup (or rather as they call it a *Tendrar*) of excellent red Mead, a fauour among them neuer offered before, which Cops for they were great and the Mead very strong, we often sipped at, but without hurting our memories, we could not say *Amore vnto*: which the Emperour perceiving, commanded them to be taken away, saying, Hee was best pleased with what was most for our heales.

Thus after our low courtesies performed, we departed from his presence, riding home with the same former guard and attendance to our Lodgings where our *Professors* for that infant left vs, but shortly after they came again, to accompany a great and gallant Duke, one of them that held the Emperours golden Pollaxes, named *Knes Romana Phoderwsky Trzy Narow*, who was sent from his Majesty to make the Embassadour and the Kings Gentlemen merrie: likewise having entrusted to him to invite their Emperours, our Kings, and both the Princes, heales, and duers Princes, such as he had, to himselfe: they freely and merrily, as many of them as were could with our owne heales, there being such plenty of Meades, and other goodly pastures, haue made royle: *Bugly* haue stumbled to sleepe. Thus light-headed, and well laced especially if you take knowledge of the thirtie yard of cloth of Gold, and the two standing Copas with coars, which the Embassadour rewarded him withall, before he departed.

But vnwelcome newes within foure dayes after our audience so vnhappily came, as not only our Affaires, but any elie, except counsell against present danger, was not regarded. For this was held for currant, that one who named himselfe *Demerrie Euanewich Beale*, as the Sonne of their

Connfell and Nobilitie.

Place.

Dining room ●

Change of
Payment.

Two hundred
Nobles each

Three hundred noble
servitors.

Garlike and
Onions,
Drinkes,
Meads.

3 Memory of Q.
Elizabeth.

Giáo

News of De
me:Vine

late Emperor *Iuan Vasilovich*; hee that in the reigne of *Phedor Emmanich* his brother was in his infancie, as was thought, murdered at *Ogylens* is now returned againe, and vp in armes for his right and inheritance: whereupon presently was sent an Armie of two hundred thousand Soldiers, either to take or slay him. But he was so strengthened with *Poles, Cossacks*, &c. that a number of *Russes* yielded to his obedience.

Vpon the one and twentieth of November, the young Prince of an ancient custome going to a Church within *Moscow*, the Kings Gentlemen vpon knowledge thereof (the Ambassador being stonied) went and attended where his Excellency might see them, and they safely beheld him, who rode in a very faire and rich sled, having a gallant Palfray lead by two Grooms to draw it, many hundreds running before to sweep the snow away where he should passe, and were said to bee fables; for which I verily beleue, because certainly they were his Subjects. Then came the Prince richly appareled with two *Tartar* Princes standing before on his sled, and a young Duke behind, with two hundred sleds following him.

The eight of February, the Emperor sent vs sleds to ride abroad, and this day the rather, that we might behold a reported victorie, against the reputed Rebell *Demetrius*, &c. So we the Kings Gentlemen did behold three hundred poore Prisoners, fiftene Ensignes, and eleven Drums brought in, with more glorie then victorie. About this time returned *Peter Basman*, one of the Generals, who had performed very honourable service, and certainly, he was the man of the Countie, Nobles, Gentlemen, and Merchants, a grace never performed before to any Subject. But not without temptation of some extraordinary favour herein, and of some particular favours, bountifull rewards, and a promise he should never goe againe until the Emperor himselfe went, he was, being but a young man, made a Private Counsellor. Forthwith one thing I will you shall observe the Emperors favour, and his then noble Spirit, he making diuers times (as was thought) because they were in great danger, to goe againe to the warres, once prostrated himselfe to obayne his desire, but tilling downe too humbly, hee could not easily rise againe, himselfe vpon to raise and helpe him vp, but extraordinary Causes haue the like Effects, as hereafter you shall vnderstand.

We were lodged in the same house where the young Prince *Iohn of Denmarke*, brother to that King and our now Queene of England, did lodge, (who would haue murthered the young Prince *Oucfinia*, the Emperors only daughter, but that hee vnapprehendedly there died) but not in any of those lodgings: for it is a custome there, that where a Prince dyes (especially a stranger) not of long time after to let any other lodge there.

Now the Ambassador vnderstanding of the conuenience of his passage downe by sled-way, also fearing (as we men had cause) what the issue of these warres would be, knowing the state here vnder any furs, betwixt himselfe aduicely that it was high time, being the middle of February, to desire a second audience for his former dispatch, which he forthwith requested, and wrote a letter to that purpose vnto the Lord Chancellor.

Vpon the tenth of March, the Ambassador with the Kings Gentlemen all richly appareled, and all his followers decently attending, very honourably (as before) and with the like recourse of beholders, and guard of Gunners (but that they were said to be Citizens by reason of their warres, but in like apparell) was attended to the Court, being received with the former grace, or more, he ascended the Prefence: the Emperour and Prince holding their wonted fate, once changing their Vellments with the season, but for the riches nothing inferior.

So loone as the Ambassador and the Kings Gentlemen were come opposite to his Throne, hee commanded leates that they might sit downe: then with a Maierlike countenance, representing rather constraint then former cheerfulness, he declared, that He, his Sonne and Councill, had considered his Maiesties Letter, the Maister of King *Iames of England*, as also on whatsoeuer *England* was desired, and in token of his joyfull receipt sent him the renowned King of *England*, as with his Predecessor, he had wrote his Princely Letters to that purpose. Herewith the Chancellor from the Emperour deliuered the Ambassadors his Highnesse Letters to his excellent Maiestie. Withall vnderstanding by the Chancellor hee had some farther matter to intreat of, then in his Briefe to his Maiestie was remembered: therefore hee had appointed foure principall Counsellors to confer with him of his Requests, which was done. After, the Ambassador yielding courteous thanks for his Maiesties favour, his Lordship attended by many Nobles, proceeded to the Councill Chamber, whither presently after came foure Counsellors, and the Emperours *Tschamb*: who after salutations, we withdrew to the next chamber, where were paid away an hour in discourse, among many young Nobles, hauing the Ambassador Interpreter. In the end, after three or foure goings and returns of the Chancellor from the Emperour, we went againe before him (where after hee had commanded vs to sit downe as before) by the mouth of the Chancellor was openly deliuered a Briefe of the whole Embasie (and that dayes particular detail, according to the Ambassadors request, confirmed.) Also in good and pleasing language,

language, was declared the great desire that the Emperour had, for the continuance of peace and amitie with the renowned *Iames King of England*, as with the late Queene *Elizabeth*; withall that in due time (all accidents well ended) he would find an honourable Ambassador: for further affaires, as likewise to congratulate with our King of his happiness: in so possible coming to his Right and Inheritance. Likewise, a Grasse of a new Pyralde for the Companie, which he said should be vnder the golden Scale, &c.

Which common speech ended, the Emperour called for the Ambassador and the Kings Gentlemen to kiss his hand, and the Prince, which done, with the Emperours nod or bowing to vs, likewise the Princes, desiring the remembrance of his and the Princes commendations to his Maiestie, the Prince, and Queene of England, departed from him; but not before the Emperour said he would send home to vs. Thawed not out least leas of the Emperours Court, being more graciously and especially entertained then before, when we were any while there, hee Ambassadors were vnder which: we are honorably attended home with a Duke of great estate, named *Knae Euan Emmanich Countess*; was attended with many of the Emperours servants within our Gates: following him a stonied, (whither the Emperour by some few hundred persons, confiding of three hundred several dishes of *Kolly* (as we now call Lent) of fish, fowls, beefe, geese, and good cheer (for their number) as it would not be beleued by any report, but by a mans owne eye-sight, with infinite store of *Stands*, and Bread, in massive plate, &c.

The eighteenth of March, the Emperour sent by *Pavilly Orghymish Tolpomon*, the Rott where in was the Demands of the Ambassador, and the particulars of the whole negotiation; as there at large appears. The nineteenth, his Maiestie sent by *Amshy Baldishon*, vnder Treasurer, a royall Present to the Ambassador of many particulars, all to each of the Kings Gentlemen, being rewarded, he departed.

The twentieth of March, being honorably accompanied with the like of Gallants of each side the furies all along as we passed, the Ambassador departed from the Court of *Moscow*, with the whole numbers of horse-men still beeking vs, till we came thence to our third the Citie where we made a stand, and after some complement betwixt the Ambassador and his kinde and honourable Preface, the Duke *Poligdem*, with almost weeping on his part, the Ambassador went from the Emperours sled to his coach vpon sled, and wee departed from the Emperours sled: passages horses, and betooke our sleds to our ease and pleasant passage in sleds, each a passage as this part of the World would wonder at, in which a man though hee goe a hundred pace, may his calling reade as sleepe.

This accompanied with Master *Iohn Morley*, Master *William Ruffe*, sometimes a Agent for the Dutch, and many other Merchants, vnderstand that night to *Amshy Baldishon*, thence to the sleds. The next morning taking leave of them, we continued our journey fiftie and fiftie slews a day easily.

Within fewe dayes after we had come to the Citie of the Emperours Golden and princely death: which, considering neither the Preface, the Countess, or Bishop, had not or would not of ten dayes after take knowledge of, we might in the interim time haue doubted of, but that his Lordship had it from Master *Iohn Morley* by Letter particularly: His death was very sudden, and as it was in it selfe, very strange: for within foure or five houres after dinner; having (as hee usually had) his Duke left him in the sleds, hee fell downe in his sled, and the good made he made could winne, for hee died well, and died peacefully; though presently after as may be thought, feeling out much, hee felt himselfe not only lie, but also payed in his stomach: hee presently went into his chamber, laid himselfe vpon his bed; sent for his Doctors (which alwayes speeded) yet before they came; hee was past, being perfect dead and soone after dying. Before his death (as speedie as it was) hee would be thorne, and new chafed: what the cause was otherwise then the griefe, inward sorrow, with diuers distractions about the warres, and their bad success, fearing the warres for his part, looly God knows: yet who so remembers Gods judgments, of Princes peoples for transgressions, with mans infirmities, and considers the due with a mans eye, may be justified, if hee contented.

For the Emperours person, he was tall and well bodied, reaching out of his authorities obedience, of an excellent presence, black and chinitured, well faced, round and close shaven, strong limmed. A Prince framed betwixt thought and resolution, as being ever in labour, but neuer till death deliuered: neuer setting (though hee plotted) but in his Councill or Councill Chamber. One rather obeye then loose, being Person where hee was not feared: doublet, vpholding a true Maiestie and government in every part; but in his owne minde: that it was a wonder, whether hee were more kinde to strangers, or feareful and soft to his Subjects, his warres full and terrible to his Enemies. A father and a Prince, whose words, counsells, and policies, resolutions, and experiments, were but the life of his deare Sonne, never chiding, entertaining, no not praying without him. In all Ambassies and Negotiations, remembering his sonnes name with his owne, loving him (being looly) for that himselfe would be looly, unwilling to spare his presence, desirous to haue him at all occasions before his eyes. This Emperour

Emperor Boris
his Majesty's
Patent translated
whilst Sir Th.
Smith was
there.

*O*NE Almighty God without and before the Beginning, the Father, the Sonne, and the Holy Ghost, whom we glorifie in the Trinitie, our only God, Creator and Preserver of all things, every-where, by which we live and we work, be I beseech and give us into Man; Our only God which visiteth every one of us in the Churches, with his holy Word, through our Lord Iesus Christ, the Spirit of the Lord in this latter time, graciously to us to hold the Right Scepter, and suffer us of our felicitie to reign; for the good of the Land, and the happiness of the People, together with our Enemies, and to the doing of good.

We the great Lord Emperor and great Duke Boris Phedorovich of all Russia, late Commander of Volodimer, Molco, Nouogrod, Emperor of Cazan, King of Afracan, Lord of Vobsko, and great Duke of Smolensko, of Iwiersko, Vhorosky, Pernaskoy, Vatskoy, Bolhaskoy, and of others, Lord and great Duke of Nouogrod in the low Country of Chernoeg, Rezan, Polotskoy, Rostovskoy, Yaruslaskoy, Belzerskoy, Leticinskoy, Ovdorskoy, Obdorskoy, Condinskoy, Rostovskoy, and of Cherech, and the North parts; Lord and Commander of Everskoy Land, and Cabardinokoy Sonne Prince Phedat Borilovich of all Russia, late Commander of all Russia, with me Sir John Hart, Knight; Sir William Webb, Knight; Richard Saltanbat, Alderman; Nicolas Henrie Anderfon, John Audwart, Francis Cherie, John Merick, Anthony Marlar; We have granted and licensed them to come with their ships into our Dominion the Country of Dwina, with all manner of Commodities, to trade freely from the Sea side and within our Dominions, with all our Empire of Molco. Also there made late unto Sir John Hart, Knight, and his Companie, for their freedom to trade to our Cite of Molco, and to our Heritage of great Nouogrod and Vobsko, and all parts of our Empire, with their Commodities, and to Trade freely without custom: upon which We the great Lord Emperor and great Duke Boris Phedorovich of all Russia, with our Sonne Prince Phedat Borilovich of all Russia, have granted unto the English Merchants, Sir John Hart, Knight, Molco, and into all the rest of our Dominions, with all manner of Commodities to trade and traffick freely as their pleasure. Also we have commanded, not to take any kinde of Customs for their goods, nor any other Customs whatsoever, viz. for passing by any place by Land, nor for passing by any place by Water, nor for Customs of their Boats or Headmugs, nor for passing over Bridges and Ferries, nor for any other of Waters: as also all manner of other Customs or Duties whatsoever we command shall not be taken of them. But they shall not bring other mens goods into our Dominions, nor likewise recover any of our Subjects buy and sell for goods or from them: neither shall they keep any of our peoples goods or pannes by them to come or colour them. Likewise they shall not send any of our Subjects to any Town or Cite to buy Commodities. But what Cite they come into then they shall sell their own Commodities, and buy our Commodities. And when they shall come to our Heritage to great Vobsko and Nouogrod, or to any other Cite within our Dominions with their Commodities, that then our Gentlemen and Governours, and all other Officers shall suffer and let them passe according to this our Letter, and to take no manner of Customs of them whatsoever for any of their Commodities for passing by, nor for passage over any Bridges: neither shall they take any other Custom whatsoever in all our Dominions, and wheresoever they happen to come, and doe proceed to buy and sell; as also wheresoever they shall passe through with goods not buying of any Commodities nor selling their own, then to those Cites they shall take of them no manner of Customs whatsoever as afore said; and we have gratified and given them leave to trade in all parts of our Dominions with their goods freely without Customs. And likewise wheresoever the English Merchants shall bee desirous to buy or sell or barter their wares with our Merchants wares for wares, then shall they sell their wares whole sale, and not by retail, Cloth by the peck, and by Clothes and by remnants; and Damask, and Velvets by the Piece and not by the Yard, or otherwise, and such Commodities as is to be sold by weight, not to sell them by the small weights, that is to say by the Zolotnych. Also they shall sell Wines by the Pipe and the Hogshead, but by the Gallon, Quart or Pot or Charks, they shall not sell: moreover, they shall buy, sell and exchange their own Commodities themselves, and the Russ Merchants shall not sell or exchange for them or from them their Commodities neither shall they carry any mans goods to no manner of place under colour of their own, and which of the English Merchants would at anytime sell his Commodities at Colmogor on the Dwina, or at Volodga and at Ytrealu they may, and of all these Commodities throughout all our Cities and Dominion, our Gentlemen, Governours, and all other Officers shall take no manner of Customs according to this our Imperial Letter of favour. Also through all our Dominions, Cities, and Townes they shall have Carriers, Boats, and men to labour or rowe in the said Boats at their own will. Likewise when as the English Merchants shall desire to goe out of our Dominion into any other Kingdom, or into their own Land, and what we think it good for them to take with them from our Treasures any Commodities to sell or exchange them for us, for such Commodities as shall be fitting to our Kingdom, and to deliver them to our Treasurer, and with those their and our goods, our Gentlemen and Governours shall suffer them to passe through all Cities and Townes within our Dominions without Customs

stone at before. And when they have ended their Market, and doe desire to goe from the Mosko, then they shall appear in the Chancery to the Keeper of our Seale, the Secretarie Vasily Yacolowich Schellacou. Likewise, if there happen to the English Merchants any extremity by Sea, or that a ship be broken, and that it be neere any place of our Kingdom, then we command that all those goods shall bee brought out willingly, and bee given to the English people that shall at that time bee in our Land, or if they be not here, then to lay them up all together in one place, and when the English men come into our Land, then to deliver those goods to them. Also we have bestowed on the English Merchants the House of Yourya, in the Mosko by a Church of Saint Maxima were the Margret, to dwell in it as in former time, keeping one House-keeper a Russe, or one of their own frangers: one as follows: A House at Ytes, a House at Volodga, a House at Colmogor, and a House at Michael the Archangel, being the fipping place: these said Houses they shall keep as in former time according to this our Imperial Letter of favour, or gratified without paying any manner of Rent or any other duties whatsoever, either at Mosko, Ytrelau, Volodga, Colmogor, or at the Castle of the Archangel, neither shall they pay any tax. Also at these Houses at Ytrelau, Volodga, Colmogor, and at Archangel they shall have House-keepers of their own Country-men, or Russes of a peace first that are not Merchants, a man or two in a House: to lay up their goods in these Houses, and to make sale of their goods out of those Houses, to whom they will according to this our Imperial Letter of favour, but their Russe House-keepers in their absence shall not sell any of their Commodities. And the English Merchants shall come with their ship to their Port, as in former times they have done to unlade their goods out of their ship, and likewise to lade their own with our Russia Commodities, at their own charges of Boates and hire of men, and ferrying over the said goods from their ships to their House at the Castle of Archangel. Likewise our Officers, Customers, and Swornmen shall take a just note of all such goods as they have both of Russia and English Commodities, and the note to passe under the Merchants Firma, because it may be knowne what goods passe of the frangers and of the Russes. But they shall not take over their goods, neither unload any goods in any place, and when they shall find their own Englishmen from Archangel to our Cite of Mosko, or the said Russia Commodities into their own Land. Then all our Officers and Customers shall take them pass without delay, according to this our Letter of favour. And wheresoever the Merchants shall be desirous to send any of their own Countrymen into their own Land, or into any other Kingdom over which they shall doe it freely with our Imperial Manifests order, without carrying any Commodities over with them, and they shall have their Letters of Passe given them in the Embassadors Office. And concerning any matters of debate or controversy in Merchandise, or inwars, then they shall be judged by the Keeper of the Seale, and Secretarie Vasily Yacolowich Schellacou, duly right and justice to both parties with equitie and truth. And what cannot be found out by Law, or Inquisition, there shall be judged by Law. His Let that is taken forth, shall bee right done unto him. Likewise, in what place there is in all our Kingdom there doe happen any matter of discord in Merchandise or by inwars, then our men of authority, or Governours, and all manner of our Officers shall doe true Justice betweene them: and what cannot be sought out by Law shall be sought out by Let: his Let that is taken out shall have right done unto him as before mentioned, also they shall not take any custom or duties of them for any Law matter, not in any place in our Kingdom. Moreover, this our Imperial Letter in all our Realme and Dominion, our Officers, and all manner of our Subjects shall not disobey or break it in any point whatsoever, but there be any that shall disobey this our Imperial Letter of favour, that then those people shall be in our high displeasure, and executed to death. This our Imperial Letter of gratitude, is given at our Imperial Palace and House in our Cite of Mosko, from the year of the beginning of the World 7107, in the month of November: being underwritten as follows.

By the great Lord Emperor and great Duke Boris Phedorovich of all Russia, siffe-ephodler: his Keeper of the Seale, and Secretarie by name Vasily Yacolowich Schellacou.

¶ III.

One pretending himselfe to be DEMETRIUS, with the Popes and Poles helps attayneth the Russian Empire: his Arts, Acts, Mariage, favour to the English, and miserable end.



Being thus presented you Boris his Tragedie out of that printed Author, and his Grant to the English from a written Copie; it shall not be amiss to take more largely and mature view of this Pretender, against whom Boris his desire of secrecy (permitting none guiltie of the murder to furnish) had furnished him of Arguments. He produced a Puffe given him by his Mother with the Historie of his life after that tending him away and acknowledging another whom he was more willing to admit that bloody

with *Albanas* the Treasurer, who in November came to *Craesus*, had audience of King *Sigismund*, where he with all thankfulness acknowledged the Kings forwardness with his Nobles to recover his right; whereto God had given admirable success beyond expectation; that he deplored the *Turk*'s intolencies in *Hungary* and other parts: to vindicate which, he would willingly joyn with the *Pole*, and other *Christian* Princes: meane whiles he was willing to make an everlasting league with him, and to that end entreated his good leave to take unto himselfe a Wife out of *Poland*, namely, *Anna Maria*, the Daughter of *George Adam* the *Palatine* of *Saxony*, to whom for money, men, and endangering of his owne life, hee was so much engaged. The eighth day after, the Contract was solemnly made by the Cardinal, Bishop of *Craesus*, and the Embassador with his Parents feasted by the King. *Demetrius* had sent her and her Father, Jewels worth 200000. Crowns.

Thus farre have we followed *Thuanus*, and hee *Jacobus Margareus* a French Captayne of *Demetrius* guard of *Parisians*, which published a Booke hereof. Now let vs present you a little *English* Intelligence touching this *Demetrius* and his respect to men of our Nation in those parts, and first his Letter to Sir *Iohn Merick*.

The Copie of a Letter sent from the Emperor *Demetry Euanowich*, otherwise called *Grishco Otreapov*: the which Letter was sent to Master *Iohn Merick* Archangel, out of the Campe, as Master *Merrick* was taking his Iourne to the Sea-side, the eighth of Iune, Anno 1605.

From the great Lord Emperor and great Duke *Demetry Euanowich* of all *Russia*. To the English Merchant *Iohn Merick*, we give to understand, that by the iust judgement of God and his strong power, we are raised to our Fathers throne of *Vladimer*, *Mosko*, and of all the Empire of *Russia*: as great Duke and sole commander of all *Russia*, and of all the Empire of *Russia*: the great Lord Emperor and great Duke *Euan Vasilywch* of all *Russia*, and our Brother *Theodor Euanowich* of all *Russia*, which was bold, and kept by them and other Christian Princes, in the same forme and manner doe likewise intend, and purpose to hold and keepe *Life and amitie*: but especially, and above all others, doe we intend to send and to have love and friendship with your King James, and allyn his English Merchants: we will favour more then before. Further, as some at the ear Letter doth come to your hand, and as some as you have ended your Markets at the shipping place of *Michael Archangell*, then to come up to *Mosko* to behold our Maiesties presence. And for your polite Request I have commanded (shall be given you, and as your coming to *Mosko*, then to make your appearance in our Chancery, to our Secretary *Ofansy Vlasov* Written in our Maiesties Campe at *Tooly*, in the year of the world Anno seven thousand one hundred and thirteen.

The Copie of the translation of a Paffe given to Master *Iohn Merick*, which was given him in the time of his being in the Campe at *Molodone* with the Emperor *Demetry Euanowich*, otherwise called *Grishco Otreapov*.

From the great Lord Emperor and great Duke *Demetry Euanowich* of all *Russia*, from *Mosko* to our Cities and Castles, as also to the Castle of *Archangell* at the Shipping place and haven to our Generals, Secretaries, and all other our Officers, &c.

There did make suite unto us the English Merchant *Iohn Mericke* and his Company, that we would gratifie them by the passing by the new Castle of *Archangell*, or to the shipping place or haven, in regard of traffick of Merchandise.

Also, that if he doe send home any of his fellows and servants from the shipping place, being of the English, that then they might be suffered to passe into England. Also that to whatsoever Use of ours the English Merchant *Iohn Mericke*, and his fellows, doth or shall come unto: then allyn our Generals, Secretaries, and all other our Officers, shall suffer them to passe every where, without all delay. And as for our Customs, as for passing by or for head money, our custom of goods, you shall not take any of them nor of their servants. Likewise, when the English Merchants *Iohn Mericke* with his fellows and servants, shall come to the Castle of *Archangell*, then *Timophy Matpewich Lazarov*, and our permit the English Merchant *Iohn Mericke*, and his fellows, and his company to trade freely. Moreover, when at the shipping place they have ended and finished their Markets, and that then the said *Iohn Mericke* shall be suffered to passe into England any of his fellows or servants with goods, then likewise they shall be suffered to passe. But *Russ* people, and other strangers of *Mosko* shall not be suffered to passe further: that if *Iohn Mericke* with his fellows and servants do not goe for England: but after their Market is ended, doe purpose to come backe againe to *Mosko*; that then at the Castle of *Archangell* *Timophy Matpewich Lazarov*.

Lazarov, and our Secretary *Rohmanet Voronau*; as also as all other our Castles and Cities, our Generals, Secretaries, and all other our Officers shall let passe the English Merchant *Iohn Mericke* with his fellows and servants, without all delay or hindrance, and as for customs of them, their goods, or their servants, there shall not be any taken.

And after the Reading of this our Letter and Paffe, you shall keepe the Copie of it by you: but this you shall deliver backe againe to the said *Iohn*, and his company, Written at our Campe at *Molodone*, the year from the beginning of the World 7113. the eighteenth of Iune.

The last of Iuly 1605. at *Archangell*.

The Copie of the translation of a Commission that was sent from the *Mosko*, from the Emperor *Demetry Euanowich*, alias *Grishco Otreapov* by a Courtier named *Gavartla Samoylovich Salmanov*, who was sent down to the Castle of *Archangell*, to Sir *Thomas Smith*, then Lord Embassador: as followeth.

The great Lord Emperor, and great Duke *Demetry Euanowich* of all *Russia*, hath commanded *Gauarela Samoylovich Salmanov*, to goe to *Vologda*, and from *Vologda* to the new Castle of *Archangell*, or whosoever he shall overtake the English Ambassador, Sir *Thomas Smith*. Also when he shall overtake the Ambassador, then *Gauarela* shall send the Ambassadors his Interpreter *Richard Finch*, willing him to certifie unto the Ambassador, that the great Lord Emperor and great Duke *Demetry Euanowich*, sole commander of *Russia*, hath sent unto him one of his Courtiers, in regard of his Maiesties affaires: and after some two hours respite, *Gauarela* himselfe shall ride to the Ambassador, and deliver unto him his Maiesties speech, as followeth.

The great Lord Emperor and great Duke *Demetry Euanowich* of all *Russia*, and of many Kingdomes Lord and commander, hath commanded thee, *Thomas* the English Ambassador, to certifie unto James, King of *England*, *Scotland*, *France* and *Ireland*; that by the iust judgement of God, and his strong power, we are come and succeeded into the place of our Father and predecessors: as also we are come to the throne of the great and famous Kingdomes of *Vlodimer Mosko*, and to the Empire of *Cazan*, *Altarcen* and *Siberia*, and of all the Kingdomes of the Empire of *Russia*; being an Empire belonging to the great Lords, Emperors; and great Dukes of all *Russia*. Moreover, we calling to memorie the sending, love and amitie betwixt our Father, the great Lord and Emperor, and great Duke *Euan Vasilywch* of all *Russia*, of famous memorie: as also our Brother, the great Lord and Emperor and great Duke *Theodor Euanowich* of all *Russia*, sole commander, with their sister *Elizabeth*, Queen of *England*: in the like manner doe we purpose to have sending, and to be in love with your Lord King James, and more then hath been in former time. And in token of our said love and amitie, we doe intend to favour all his Subjects in our Land, and to give unto them more libertie then they have had heretofore; and you his Ambassador, we have commanded to dispatch without all delay or hindrance. Therefore we would have you to make knowne unto your Lord King James, our Maiesties love. And as some at God shall grant the time of our Coronation to be finished, and that we are crowned with the Imperiall crowne of our predecessors: according to our manner and worthiness; then we the great Lord Emperor, and great Duke *Demetry Euanowich* of all *Russia* sole Commander, will send our messengers to salute each other, according to the former manner. And concerning those Letters which were sent by you from *Boris Godunov*, we would have you deliver them backe againe to our Courtier *Gauarela*, and after the delivery of our speeches to returne him to the Emperor, under written by the Chancellor *Onanly Euanowich Vlasov*.

The Copie of the Translation of a new Priuiledge that was given to the Company, by the Emperor *Demetry Euanowich*, otherwise called *Grishco Otreapov*, the which Priuiledge was sent into *England* over-land by *Olyver Lysert* Merchant, and servant to the fore said Company.

GOD, the Trinitie, before, and without the beginning, the Father, the Sonne, and the holy Ghost, graciously will to build and keep our Scepter and Realm for the good of our Land, and the happiness of our people. Wee the respectful and master, and not the miserable upholder, but sole commander, the great Duke *Demetry Euanowich*, by the mercy of God, Czar and great Duke of *Russia*, and of all the Empire of *Tartaria*, and many other Kingdomes: as also of the great Monarchie of *Mosko*, Lord Emperor and Commander, Have bestowed, and gratified unto the English Merchants, viz. Sir *Thomas*

Promise of Ro-
mish Religion.

Demetrius his
Marriage.

Both crowned.

Conspicacy.

* I suppose
this should be
given: for one
Cossakov Gil-
bert I have of-
ten he is of in
this place of
fun. e. which
will also
commemorate
of the aff-
aires which
I have much
thought to little
purpose in our
Methuans
hands.

Bloodie day.

the great, and Vobsko, with all the Princes belonging to the same, with Counsellors, Gentlemen, and
Treasurers, and Priests, sitting for a Congregation, to rule and govern freely with full authority in the same
forme and manner, as if we were ruled. And my selfe to have no more right or rule nor authority in the same
two Cities of Novogrod and Vobsko: and therewith I have my selfe with this writing, and do
wibly give and deliver all on the said Lady Maryna that is contained in this writing, as for me as by God
helps me shall be married together, and therewith have given this our writing, sealed with our princely
Seale. But if by chance our wish shall not be by us children, then in those two Lordships before specified,
these shall place men in authority of her own, to govern and rule as they shall see cause, and also to be free
for the said men in authority, to give Lands and Inheritance to their own Soldiery, and to trade freely
as pleasure, as shall be best liking to them, and as though it were on their own name and Soldiery, and to trade freely
on, and to build Monasteries, and to set up the Romish Religion, and to have Latine as Romish Priestly
and Scholes. But for her selfe to abide and remaine with us. And concerning her Priestly, as she has
many as shall be usefull to be kept for her own goodly Romish Religion, without all let or hindrance
as we our selfe by the mercy of God are already inclined to the same. So will we diligently maintain
care, by all means to bring all the Kingdoms of Moico to the knowledge of the Romish Religion,
and to keep the Church of Rome. Also, if God should ever grant unto us good success, whereby this be
performed within a year: then I shall be at the pleasure of our Father to separate me and his daughter
Maryna. But if he please him to forgoe till another year, then I shall be at the pleasure of our Father to separate me and his daughter
hand writing, and therewith I have sworn my selfe, and given a vow according to the holy order, and
in this Bill to hold and keepe carefully: as also that I shall bring all the Russe people to the Latine Religi-
on. Written at Samboire the first and twentieth of May in Anno 1604. Underneath was his Prime for all
this fore said: Prince Demetriy of Owlgies.

Now let us retorne with *Thomans* into Poland, where with his Historiical eyes we see this glo-
rious Spouse, her Father Vncle, & trayne of women accompanying the *Russien* Embassador
in his retorne, whom many Merchants out of *Italy* and *Germanie* followed in hope of gain. In
this lingring journey, they continued from the end of January to the fixe and twentieth of A-
prill, before they entered *Moscow*. And the fourteenth day after, *Peter Basman* with a great troupe
of Courtiers and Nobles, attended the Spouse to the Court, where they were solemnly enter-
tained by her Husband, and thence conveyed to the Monasterie where his Mother abode. The
fourth day after, all things being prepared, there was brought into the Palace, and the next day
turned to him by the Patriarch after Evening Prayer. Both of them also, solemnly crowned, ce-
lestiall, *Demetrius* his mind being filled not with standing with cere. For a conspiracie which had
been hatching five moneths, now growing to ripenesse, terrified him: against which hee had
armed himselfe with foreigne aides. At first hee had brought a guard of *Germanes* out of *Pol-
land*, which being without example of his Predecessors, and being terrified without pay, re-
turned with the calthered *Polanders* to the borders, where they committed many outrages to the
great discontent of the *Russies*. Many of them found grievance notwithstanding, in his too
much respect to the *Poles*: and many made question of his birth. Many were suspected of con-
spicacy, and diest tortured, which was but quenching fire with oyle, the flame growing
greater. And now began *Demetrius* tormented of his halfe dissolving his guards, and began
a new Check-roll of his *Polanders* and *Germanes*, to which hee added six hundred *English* Halber-
diers and as many *Scots* (their Captaynes hee called *Marcus Cossakovs* and *Arthur Lane*)
and hundred French under *Lance* *Margaret* armed with *Panifikes*. Then also he enlarged his
pay, but too late.

Alexander Gosenko *Cosakovs* was sent Embassador from Poland with rich Presents and Let-
ters from King *Sigismund* to *Demetrius*, which because they exposed not the Title of Emperor
were not received nor opened. In excuse whereof the Embassadors yeld words vainly affable to
Russien patience, that he should goe and deprive the great *Turke* of those *Turkes*: *Demetrius* dis-
sembled notwithstanding in regard of his little experience, and hoped himselfe from the *Pole*. The
day following were spent in palmes and flesh. Saturday was solemn to the *Russians*, a feast
then happening which they prepare before Easter. The Emperor and Empresse were shewn
the Hall, and made a great Feast to their own and to *Ravagers* in which the *Pole* Embassi-
dador refused to be present, except he might sit at the Princes Table, as the *Russien* Embassi-
dador had been honoured at *Crociana*. The *Russies* denied stiffly, but *Demetrius* at length yielded.
Many peremptorie and licentious passages happened, the *Poles* carrying themselves domineering-
ly to the *Russies*, as Victors to the conquered. *Demetrius* at first over-bold, now began to feare,
and warned the *Poles* to be wary, and sent for all his guards. On Friday, the *Russies* preparing
for offence, and the *Poles* for their defence (for they and not the Prince, seemed to be then in
danger) in the Evening the Nobles command the people to arme against the next day. The Em-
perre was this while secure, and made ready a magnificent Feast against Sunday. But on Sat-
urday (the sixteenth of the Kalends of June) the Conspirators assemble early, and a great cry is
ray-

rayed to kill the *Poles* and *Demetrius*. Some greedie of spoyle runne presently to the *Poles*
Lodgings, assault them and embesle all with slaughters. Others runne to the Castle. Few of
the guard were there, delay having bred securitie in *Demetrius*, nor were any of their Captaynes
seene. *Margaret* then lay sicke as he after told me (*Thomans*), which did ease his life. Things
were done with such furie and celeritie, that many *Russies* in *Polish* attire were slain before they
were knowne.

Peter Basman came running forth half naked, & was killed by one of his own servants. *Selsky*
their Leader, carrying a Sword in one hand, a Croffe in the other, pulled the great Bell to be rung
in token of fire that *Demetrius* might be raised & come forth of his Parlor. He awaked with the
noyse, now feeling a greater danger then fire, taked a *Turkish* Sword, and suddenly slips downe
out of a window, breaking his legge with the fall, whereby he was easily taken by the people
and by *Selsky* command carried into the greater Hall, where Embassadors haue audience.
There some vphrayding his inpostures, he with his sword layd on the ground: and then de-
sired the Nobilitie to permit him to speake to the people, which was denyed. Some say that he
obtained of *Selsky*, that he might be tryed by the testimony of *Polish* his Wife, which
being brought out of the Nursery, offered before the Nobles on her oath, that her Sonnet *Demetrius*
was many yeeres before murdered by *Boris* his perdidies, which the at first fitting the people
favour, and lust reuenge on *Boris*, willingly dissembled, whereupon they ranne upon him,
and with many wounds due him. Thus writeth *Peter Paterson* of *Polish* which then was in
10 *Russia*. When they had slain him, they thrust a rope thorow his secret parts, and drew him
thorow the myre into the Market place, where he remained four dayes lying all gore and my-
rie on a board, with *Peter Basman* vnder it, and an vgly Vizar ouer it, a Bag-pipe in his mouth,
with other lascivious cruelties exercised on his dead body.

The *Palatine* *Sandomir* (or *Sandomirsky*) was blocked up in his House, and other *Pole* Hou-
ses filled, many of which not unreuenged, howsoever by numbers overcome. *Vitenichy*
after much laughter of the affrayling *Russies*, when he saw Ordinance brought, let forth a white
flagge in token of yielding, bidding his Servants call abroad his money; which whiles the
people were gathering, he and his made way with their Swords with great slaughter, & yielded to
the *Boiars* which came from the Castle. The miserable Bride was not only spoiled of in-
estimable Treasures, but of all her Apparell, and Jewels, carefull only of her Father and Vncle,
and thinking it a happy purchase, if he might take her life and recouer her Countrey. Meane-
while, without her Garment to cover her, without Bed to lye on, without securitie of life, she
expended in poore Woods the issue of the peoples furie.

Many Merchants endured like fates. *Andrius Cellar*, besides the losse of thirtie thousand
Crownes, lost his life. *Lance* *Wra* was with his own Sword beheaded: *Nathan* lost one hundred
and fiftie thousand Florens: *Nicolas Limborough* fiftie thousand. Two of *Anisberg* had lent two
hundred thousand Crownes to *Demetrius*, which now was not to pay them. *Marcellus* lost an
hundred thousand Florens. Twelve hundred *Poles* lost their liues; many were fured by the *Boiars*.
Four hundred *Russies* were layne. At night the tumult ceased. Scarcely would the people
give leaue to bury the bodies after three dayes wallowing in the dirt, in the *German*
Church-yard.

After this tempest was calmed, the *Boiars* assembled in counsell about a new Election,
where *Selsky* made speech to them, professing himselfe forsworn for that had pacted, in the
execution of a iust lease to the Imperiall Family and his Countrey, and in hatred of a cruel
Tyrant: that *Iuan Vassilovich*, how euer injuriously taxed by home, had left Kingdomes annexed
to his Inheritance as Monuments of his great spirit; by whom he had beene sent to *Stephen* King
of *Poland* to treat of peace, and euer since had forsworn himselfe in the State, that none could
justly blame him: that *Lance* being dead, *Theodore* succeeded, but another ruler, who murdered
the younger brother, and as was thought, after that payoned the other; if attaining the Empire,
which how miserable was it all this time? that *Demetrius* therefore (whoe after he was) found
friends, himselfe amongst others, but when their Religion was endangered, *Boiars* advanced
Laws violated, Exoticke fashions brought in liberties suppressed, he with food with the perill of
his life, which it grieved him to haue enjoyed, as a Theesus benefite, by his grant which had no
right to take it: yet seeing their forwardnesse in a cause so iust (would God it had not bene so
bloody) more regarding his Countreys safety then rumours and reports, hee had bene their
Captayne to doe that which God the disposer of Kingdomes by the success had approued,
so that now they were freed from a cruel Tyrant, nor had they any Sorcerer or Impostor to mock
them: that it remained now, being the Imperiall Family, was exting, they should now seeke
one of noblest blood, of wisest experience, of most religious zeale, who might otherwise his peo-
ples hearts his strongest Forts, such an one either is, or is thought to be the best man to be-
come their Prince. Thus himselfe chosen Emperor the thirteenth of the Kalends of June.
A writing was published to iustifie the killing of *Demetrius*, a runnagat *Freyer* called *Grigory*, or
Gregorie Strapp, professed in the Monasterie in the Castle (which therefore hee would neuer en-
ter lest hee should be knowne) with other aspersions of Heresie, Sorcerie, asseffation of indu-

R r

He is chosen
Emperour.

The Devil is often slandered: and by ill writers, had is made worse. And to perhaply Suiskoy's fiction was this Demetrius.

The former part of this intelligence I found in the best Histories: Papers, &c. See also Gregory's Preface to his Suiskoy's Letter following. Occasion of ambition. Boris ill government.

Demetrius Emp. pretor.

He is false.

Suiskoy Emp. pretor.

* This might be removed: Others (say) was not of the blood: very noble blood. See fit in Fletcher and Thomas. Demetrius had his person defective. Some say that he was not like Demetrius and that he found a dozen years older: but perhaps they mistake this for

cing Popery (the Popes Letters also challenging his promise produced) to give the Jesuits Temples, Colledges, and other necessities; with other overtures to the *Palatine, Sandowicz, for Smolenske, and Novogrod*; his bringing in *Poles in Russian* Rooms, his luxury, riot, pomp, refusing *Boris's* Daughter in a Nunnerie with intent of incestuous lust, having murdered her Mother and Brother, making a filial Tyrone with five Lions on each side, and other pride; abusing Nunneries to lust and lasciviousness, &c. But were I give you heretofore more authentick testimonies then this of *Thomas in Suiskoy's* Imperial Letter to his Majesty. Meaning while touching this *Demetrius* we will produce a few English Testimonies extracted out of their Letters and Relations: wherein if some circumstantial discrepance appear (in things done both so faire and so foule in tumultuous furie, where men had rather hide themselves then become witnesses, lest while they would be Spectators, they should be forced to be Actors, and have their parties asked in that bloody Tragedy) it is no marvell. I produce all Witnesses I can, in a cause of so remarkable consequence, and choole rather to bee prolix then negligent, that the Reader out of so much multitude may better weigh and examine the truth.

The late Emperor of *Russia* called by the name of *Demetrius Euanowich*, is now credibly said (as some of them say) to have bene the Sonne of a *Russe* Gentleman, named *Gregory Tsapoly*, and that in his younger yeeres he was thorne a Prier into a Monasterie: from whence he afterwards priuily got away, trauelled into *Germanie* and other Countreys, but had his most abiding in *Poland*, in which time he attayned to good perfection in Armes and Military knoweledge; with other abilities of sufficiency: Afterwards finding a conceit taken by the *Russes* of a secret conveying away of *Demetrius Euanowich*, brother and heire to *Phedorus Euanowich* Emperor; and that some other should be made away in his stead: And finding also the general dislike of the government of *Boris* then Emperor, who after a faire beginning, did in his latter yeeres uphold himselfe, and his house with oppression and crueltie: And having also many circumstances and opportunities of time and age, and such other likelihoods, to advantage and second his pretence, began first to broach his Title (as before) and by degrees found such a general acceptance of all sorts of people, that it fo daunted *Boris*, that (as it was then rumoured about) hee, first, and afterwards his Wife, and his Sonne succceding him, made themselves away by Poison. Though now it goeth for certayne, that the poisoning of them was procured by the Pretender, so to make the easier way to the Empire, which thereby he obtained, entering and continuing the same with all the State, and greatstate that such a place required: Until at length the *Russes* moved rather by other certainties, then by any thing discovered by himselfe, the first day after his marriage (which was kept with very great pompe and solemnities) being the fiftenth of May last past, taking a time when the *Poles* stood least on Guard, came to the Court with one consent of Nobilitie and Commons about three of the clocke in the morning, and murthering the Guards, drew the Emperor out of his bed from the Emperesse, and charging him that hee was not the true *Demetrius Euanowich*, but a false Pretender, he conspired the Decree, and was forthwith hewed in pieces by the multitude: *Peter Rasman* resisting was likewise slaine; and both brought into the Market place, where their bodies lay for a time to bee viewed of every man. The old Queene denied him to be her Sonne, excusing her former acknowledgement to have proceeded from her ignorance and the general acceptance which the people. As many *Poles* as made resistance, were slaine to the number of fiftene hundred. The new Emperesse her Father, his brother with the other *Poles* were committed to life keeping, to the number of eight or nine thousand.

And then proceeding to a new Election they chose Emperor *Vassile Euanowich Shokoy*, who not long before was at the Blocke to have bene beheaded, for reporting that hee had bene the true *Demetrius Euanowich* after hee was dead, and did helpe to burie him. But the Emperor did recall him, and afterwards advanced him to the chiefe place of dignitie about his person. He is the next of blood being descended of the Race of the old Emperor *Ivan Vassilowich* of the age of fiftie yeeres or thereabouts, once married, but kept vnder during *Boris's* time, a Prince of 50 great widows, and a great fauourer of our Nation, as did specially appeare by the care hee had to guard the English House from rising, when the late *Demetrius* was brought in by the *Poles*.

The late Pretender was a stature low, but well set, hard fauoured and of no pretence, howeuer otherwise of a Princely disposition, executing Iustice without partialities: And not remitting the insolence euen of the *Poles*: well seeme in martiall practises, and trying his Nobilitie to the Discipline of warre, to make them the readier against the *Tartars*, nor giuen either to women or drinke, but very liberal and bountifull, which occasioned some grieuous Exactions to maintaine the same. And to conclude, a man in the opinion of such as knew him, not unworthy of a better gotten, and longer continued Empire, which hee lost chiefly through the greatness of his minde, supposing that none of his Subjects durst attempt any such matter against his person, when as in the meane time the practice went on with such a general Coniuration, that the *Russes* were lunnoned by the ringing of a Bell to bee ready to enter the Court. And

an other after Pretender, calling himselfe the same *Demetrius*, &c. as after shall appeare, a deformed man.

to shake off that Government which would haue made them a more noble Nation then formerly they haue bene.

It is reported by some of Ours, that hee the rather was inclinable to our Nation in the respect he bare to his Majesty, having read that his worthy Worke dedicated to Prince *Henric*. Hee is said also to haue bene a resolute man of his hands, to haue delighted in fighting with the Beare; and strong. I haue likewise heard that hee gaue the command of his Guard consisting of Strangers to *Captayne Gilbert's* Son, to haue made one *Bachinsky* (a Learned and Religious Protestant) his Secretary; and otherwise to haue bene so alleviated from *Russians* manners; and so well affected to Strangers, that they conspired as aforesaid. The people are said to haue entered the Castle (which was a quadrat, having a high bricke wall of seven stories, and another of stone, and a Market place) with stones in their pockets (which are rare thereabouts) and some with weapons.

Some report from *Captayne Gilbert's* Relation, that lying on his bed not long before his death (as hee thought; awake) an aged man came to him, which fight caused him to arise and come to *Captayne Gilbert*, and his guard that watched, but none of them had seen any thing. Hereupon he returned to his Bed, but within an houre after he againe troubled with like apparition called, and sent for *Bachinsky*: telling him that he had now twice seene an aged man, who at the second coming told him, that though for his owne person hee was a good Prince, yet the injustice and oppressions of his inferior Ministers must be punished, and his Empire should be taken from him. In this perplexitie his Secretary gaue him good and holy counsel, saying till true Religion were there planted, his Officers would be lewd, the people oppressed, and God Almighty offended, who perhaps by that Dreame or Vision had admonished him of his duties. The Emperor seemed much moved, and to intend that good which that Countrey was not so happy to receive. For a few dayes after (as that Relation saith) his *Russe* Secretary came to him with a Sword, at which the Emperor started, and hee suddenly after few words speeches assaulted him, with many other *Gravities* of that Conspiracie, and (like another *Casir*) blew him, crying *Liberate*, before his guards could apprehend the danger; of which some were slaine, but the most with *Gilbert's* their *Captayne*, got to a place called *Colma*; which with the help of some *Russes* they fortified and hid for their defence. *Bachinsky* the Secretary was taken and imprisoned, the strangers murthered, the English except, who haue in all changes bene well beloved of the *Russians*; in deed they deserve, having alway done good service to the Emperours. And their interest faued the life of that worthy man *Bachinsky*, which they required with much obsequence to the succeeding Emperor *Boris*, who comes next to be spoken of; and first you shall haue his Letter to our Gracious Soueraigne:

§. IIII.

40 SVISKAY the Successor his Letter to our King, describing the former DEMETRIUS his Acts and Tragedie.

The Copie of the Translation of a Letter sent from the new Emperour: Vassily Euanowich Sheskey to the Kings Maistie by Master John Merricke.

The love and mercie of God hath guided vs in the wayes of peace, we glorifie with the Trinitie.

50 Run the great Lord Emperour and great Duke Vassily Euanowich of all *Russia*, fife Commander of Volodomer, Mosko, Novogrod, King of Cazan and Astracan, of Siberia, Lord of Vobsko, and great Duke of Smolenske, Tveritsky, Yuharsky, Pearnsky, Vatsky, Bolshankoy, and of other: Lord and great Duke of Novogrod of the Low Countrey, of Chernego, Rezansky, Polotsky, Rottosky, Yerehansky, Bealozersky, Lechansky, Owdorsky, Obdorsky, Condinsky, and Commander of all the North parts: also Lord of the Land of Euerusky, Cartainsky, and over the Empire of the Georgians of the Land of Cabardinsky, and Beharsky Land, likewise of many other Lordships, Lord and Commander.

60 To our belovd Brother James King of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland, Whom we vnderstand that Sigismund King of Poland, and great Duke of Letto, on Anno 7109, did send unto the late Emperor Boris, his Emilius named Lewis Sapaga, being Chancellor of the great Duke-dome of Poland, requesting the said Emperor Boris, that the former league and peace made and concluded upon by the great Lord Emperour and great Duke Theodore Euanowich of all *Russia*, and him

Captayne Gilbert's report of a Vision.

Stones rare about Moscow.

Captayne Gilbert's report of a Vision.

Another manner of his death reported.

Colma.

I find him called Sheskey, Suiskoy, Zinke, &c. the last translation and pronunciation being thus.

Romish Religion and Jesuites

which he brought in with him, was purposed, by a secret politick designe to have put to death the Metropolitan, Archbishops, and Bishops, and all the body and spiritual assembly, with the Nobles and Courtiers, and divers others which were of the better people, and so to have sent others into Poland and Lettonia; and to have changed the Religion, and so have established the Romish Religion, for which purpose he brought with him many Jesuites.

Large Empire of Russia

The which was the great Lord and great Duke Vasily Euanowich, of all Russia, with the Metropolitan, Archbishops, and Bishops, and with all the body spiritual assembly, and with the Nobles, Courtiers, and Commons of the Kingdoms of Molco, well considering, and perceiving what an alteration he would be to our Christian faith, with the overthrow and utter undoing to our whole Kingdom: we then that loved and defended mankind, that it would please him to deliver us, and the Common-wealth from those vile, cruel, diabolical attempts, and desires of theirs. Thus desiring the mercy of God, we all returned and stood steadfastly to our former christened and true Christian faith, against that usurper and counterfeite Grythca and his Council, with a resolution to stand in the same most justly, and even to the death, hoping and longing for the time that all people, and warlike men and Soldiers, and even to the Empire of Molco might come to gather themselves together, so that they might likewise perceive and disapprove this usurping Heretic, and his diabolical counsels, by which he did decline from the true Christian Religion. The largeness of the Kingdoms of Molco cannot be unknowne unto you our loving Brother, how farre it extendeth in selfe both to the South, and to the West, as also to other places, that is both by a great space they could not gather themselves together. But when as the power and warlike Soul, down, and all other people were gathered together, then through the merite and favour of God, this enemy of Gods Common-wealth was discomfited to all what he was. And the Emperre Mattha, being Master of the true Prince Demetrius Euanowich, did certifye unto us before the Metropolitan, Archbishops, and Bishops, and before all the body assembly, as also to the Nobles and Courtiers, and other was murdered without reason, at a place called Owglets, by appointment of Boris Godounow, that he died in heremias; yet did this Grythca justly call himselfe by the name of him that was murdered.

See before.

Also we found in the custody of this Grythca, the Copie of a writing, which was the contrail and agreement that he made between him and the Palatine, before his coming out of Poland; in which was written, that as some as he did come to the Kingdoms of Molco, that then he would take to wife the daughter of the Palatine, and would give her two Provinces, called from Nougrod and Yobiko, with compass, Couriers, Gentlemen, and Priests, sitting to a Congregation, with inferior Castles and Lands, freely in those places, to build and set up Monasteries, and also to set up the Romish Religion; And when he came to the Kingdoms of Molco, that then he should give unto the Palatine some thousand pieces of Polish Gold, which is by our Russia account, three hundred thousand Markes: and of all the best things that was in the Treasurie of the Kingdoms of Molco. Likewise, that hee the said Grythca, at his coming to Molco, would take order to bring these things to passe with all diligence, whereby he might draw all the Dominion of Molco from our true Christian Religion, and so to have turned us into the Romish Religion, and to have destroyed the holy Church of our all the Empire of Molco, and so to have built up the Religion of the Church of Rome; and for the performing of all this, the said Grythca was sworn to the Palatine Sandamersko, in the presence of the Teachers of the Land, as also, as licence, as likewise to bring all the Empire of Molco to the Romish Religion. The which covenants and agreements, the General Sandamersko himselfe hath confessed to our Maiestie, and Nobles, that the said agreements and covenants between him and the foresaid Grythca were true, and how that they trafficked one to another; moreover, the Palatine did certifye unto our Nobles, how Grythca sent him a Letter under his own hand and Seale, in which he promised to give him Smolensko, with all the Provinces belonging thereto, and another place called Secutrow, as also gave him liberty to set up Monasteries, and the Religion of the Church of Rome. Further, there was found by him Letters which were sent to him from the Pope of Rome, and the Cardinals, and Priests, to the effect, that he should remember and without be minded to take in hand if needly those matters, and business upon which he had given to Signifund, and the Cardinals his truth and word, which was, as before said, to be himselfe of the Romish Religion, as also to bring all the people of the Kingdoms of Russia into the same Romish Religion, not only them that offer themselves were willing thereto, but also others by compulsion, and to put some other good people of several Religions; and that hee should bring into the Kingdoms of Molco, as the Catholicke, and the Calvinist, them likewise he should bring into the Romish Religion with all persons. Moreover, Grythca himselfe, before us, and our Nobles, and Courtiers, and before our Commons, did acknowledge as much, and thereupon yielded himselfe to be in fault: as also that hee did all with help of the Diavell, having forsaken God.

Popes Letter.

For which these his vile actions, this Grythca, according to the true iustice received an end to his life, and was by abundance of people slain in the Molco, where he lay three dayes in the midst of the Cite, to the view of all such like usurpers, and disturbers. And because his body was tearfome unto us, we caused slaine & burnt, as it was carried out of the Cite, and there to be burnt.

view of all such like usurpers, and disturbers. And because his body was tearfome unto us, we caused slaine & burnt, as it was carried out of the Cite, and there to be burnt.

This Emperre thus having ended his life, then the Kings sonnes of divers Countries, now dwelling within our Kingdom, with the Patriarch, Metropolitan, Archbishops, and Bishops, with the Nobles, Courtiers, and the Commons, made curtesy unto us Vasily Euanowich, to reigne and govern over them and over all the Kingdoms of Molco, as their Lord, Emperre, and great Duke of all Russia. According to which curtesy made unto us by the said Kings sonnes of divers Countries, as likewise by our Nobles, Courtiers, Merchants, and all the rest of the Commons of all the Kingdoms of Molco. Wee are come to the great Kingdoms of Volodemar, Molco, Nougrod, and as also of the Kingdoms of Caucasia, Astracan, and Siberia, and over all the Provinces of the Empire of Molco: as also were the great Lord Emperre, and great Duke of all Russia, are crowned with our Imperial Crown: and for the said Kings sonnes of divers Religions, and our Nobles, Courtiers, and Soldiers, and all manner of People, doe serve our Imperial Majesty with desire and good liking voluntarily, and not by delusions and enticements, as the Poles and Lettoes were bewitched by Grythca. But we the great Lord Emperre and great Duke Vasily Euanowich, with great care stayed and refrained our People from the spoyle of the Poles and the Lettoes, defending them from death; and withall have commanded to let go many of them into Poland and Letto: but the chiefest of them that were of the Council, and that professed to bring trouble and division in the Kingdoms of Molco, are now taken. And we to doe an honour unto the dead body of the true Demetrius, have upon conference with our Metropolitan, Archbishops, and Bishops, and all the body Assembly, our Nobles and Courtiers, and all the Kingdoms of Molco) sent to the Cite of Owglets a Metropolitan, named Elarets, of Rostow and Yersallu, who was called before he was made Metropolitan, Theodor Neekete, which being one of the Nobles in times past, and with him the Archbishops of Astracan, called Ecodasia, and our Nobles the Duke Euan Michailowich Vorotinsky with the rest of his followers, commanding them to bring up with them the body of the Prince Demetrius Euanowich, who was murdered by the appointment of Boris Godounow, as we bring it to our Cite of Molco with great honour, which body shall be buried in the principall Church of Molco, called Michail the Archangel, near to his father the great Lord Emperre and great Duke Euan Vasilowich of famous memorie, and by Gods power his body shall not be touched or anyd any manner of way. Likewise will we, by the favour of God, honour the Emperre of Demetrius Euanowich with speciall solemnities, which body performeth many cures, and worketh miraculously unto them, that come to him with Faith to be cured of their diseases.

And now most loving and deere brother, wee calling well to minde the great amitie and friendship that was between the great Lord Emperre, and great Duke Euan Vasilowich, and his Sonne Theodor Euanowich, the Emperre Boris, and the great Lady Cezare, Elizabeth: the life brotherly love doe we desire to have with you, most loving and deere brother, to be established and continued betwixt us, as we wish with them during our lives. Therefore may we please you, our loving brother James, King of England, after the bearing of these great and strange dangers past, to rejoyce with us, that he hath delivered from such a vile enemy, and that he, our mercifull God, hath divided and fastened that wicked counsel, and that he hath turned their cruelty upon their own heads, to their shame and confusion. And concerning your Merchants that were in our Kingdoms, Iohn Metrick with his followers, we have graced them with our Imperiall presence; as also have given unto the said Iohn Metrick and his followers, a new privilege, and Letters of favour, by which they shall come into our Kingdom, and to traffick with all manner of goods freely, without paying any Customs what of power, and yet to them yet granted in former time, and this favour we have given them to manifest unto you our loving Brother, our brotherly love. And the reason that we have not sent to you, loving brother, our Embassadors, is, because we had not time, in regard of many our Imperiall affairs; but hereafter doe purpose to send, to visit you in your Kingdom. Written at our Imperiall palace and Cite of Molco, from the beginning of the third Anno 7114, the seventh day of Iune.

Thus is Demetrius painted out by his Enemies, which perhaps were not altogether led with simplicity of enough, but in many things made him worse, so that they might make their owne cause (bad enough) to appeare better. They tell also of great courages committed by the Poles, (like those sometimes here in England by the Danes) their proud insulting over the men, equallments of women, fetching them out of their houces and husbands homes to serve their cruelty; neither did Demetrius, as they say, punish them; one only being sentenced, and hee violently refused from execution by the Poles. They say also that Demetrius his body was plucked out of the grave and burnt, the ashes thrown into the aire, the seeds, as the fable seemed to shew, of many Demetrii after.

Wiskey is also by former reported to have bene chosen by lot in this manner. The Nobles cast lots four times to receive a Successor, as it were, by divine sentence in lot-caste: in every of which times the lot fell upon Wiskey (so as some say, there were three or four more then then hee) lot, he modestly refusing and enforced by constancy of the various lot to accept that Successor; whereof others think him as ambitious, as was modest Boris before him. However, he hath left his name and memorie written in as blacke ink as either Boris or Demetrius, if Reports be true, which

See into Merit New Patent

Ths. L. 135

Polish infolencies

Choosing by

dentiorum fidem movent propria subscriptione Regis, nostri sigilli appensione praesentes munimus. Ex
Regia nostra Stockholm die 7. Octobris, Anno Millesexiescentiesimo octavo.

Subscript. CAROLVS.

1100. Soldiers
shipped from
England.

Colonel Cal-
ais.

A tempest.

Another tem-
pest of the mu-
tinious vulgar.

They land in
Ireland.

About a fortnight before Midsummer, which was A. 1609. a companie of Volunteers, to the number of a thousand and two hundred Soldiers, were at severall times shipped from England, to passe into Sweden, to aide the King of that Countrie in his warres against the King of Denmark. To which aide divers other Nations did likewise resort, as French, high Dutch, &c. Of the English Companies that went thither, the first was commanded by one Calais a Scot; who by appointment was made Lieutenant Colonel, and chiefe of the other Captaines or the footmen.

After the first Companie was gone, a second number of three hundred men (of which I the Relator of this, was one) were put into one ship belonging to Sweden, and came from thence for vs. We were assailed with a great tempest, and were toiled so long, that all our victuals were spent: the miserie of which, threw vs into more desperate feares: now were we assaulted by double deaths (Famine and Shipwrack) what course to take for our reliefe now we distinctly knew. Continue without foode it was impossible, and as impossible was it: for vs to recover the Land in any short time, without the assured destruction of vs all. At this season, our Commanders were these: Lieutenant Baynes, Lieutenant Wadler, who was Prouost Marshall of the field; and an Ancient of the Colonels Companie. The common Soldiers vowed and refused to compell the Mariners (seeing the present miseries, and no hope promising better) to let vs all on shoare vpon the first Land that could be discovered. Our Commanders did what they could by dissuasion to alter this general resolution, because they feared it would be the losse of the greatest part of our Companies, if they came once to bee scattered: and besides, they knew that if we should redound to their dishonour and shame, if they should not discharge the trust imposed vpon them by our Captaines, which trust was to conduct vs and land vs before, whilst the Countreines remayned a while behinde in England, to take vp the rest of our Companies. Yet all this notwithstanding, Land being discovered, there was no eloquence in the world able to keep vs aboard our ship, but every man swore if the Master of the ship would not let vs on the shoare, the sailes should be taken into our owne hands, and what was refused vpon (touching present landing) should in despite of danger be effected. Vpon this the Master of the ship (touching present landing) told vs, that if we put to land in that place, we should all either perish for want of victuals, which were not to bee had in that Countrie, or else should haue our throats cut by the people. We refused rather to trie our bad fortunes on the land, and to famish there (if that kind of death must needs attend vpon vs) then to perish on the Seas, which we knew could afford vs that there was no remedie, nor force to stayne vs aboard, as fast as possibly we could. When our Officers had, but to our great comforts told it, that the Master of the ship (which thing bee his life like liuelyly openly confessed) knew both the Land and Governour thereof (as indeed we proved afterwards he did): and therefore desired they all our companies not to stirre, but behaue themselves toward the people, for that it was an Island called Intheland, vnder the Dominion of the King of Denmark, but subiect to the command of a Lord, who vnder the King (as his Substitute) was the Governour.

And that we might be the better drawne to a ciuill behauiour towards the Inhabitants, our Officers further told vs, that they would repaire to the Lord Governour of the Countrie and acquaint him with the cause of our unexpected landing there: vpon which we all promised to offer no violence to the people: neither was that promise violated, because we found the Inhabitants tractable, and as quiet towards vs, as we to them: yet the greater numbers of them ran away with feare, at the first sight of vs, because (as afterwards they reported) it could not bee remembered by any of them, that they euer either beheld themselves, or euer heard any of their ancestors report, that any strange people had landed in those places and parts of the Land: for they thought it impossible (as they told vs) that any ship should ride so neere the shoare, as ours did, by reason of the dangerous Sands.

Our Officers so soon as they were at land, went to the Governour of the Island, whilst the Soldiers (who layd behind them) ran to the houses of the Islanders, of purpose to talke with the people, and at their lands to buy victuals for a present reliefe: but when we came among them, they could neither vnderstand vs nor we them; so that the Market was spoiled, and we could get nothing for our money, yet by such signes as we could make, they vnderstood our wants pitied them, and bestowed vpon vs, freely, a little of such things as they had. In the end, a happy meanes of our reliefe was found out by a Soldier amongst vs who was a Dane by birth, but his education haue gerne in England, no man knew him to be other then an English man.

This Dane made vs of his owne native language, to the good both of himselfe and vs, certainly

lying the people (who the rather beleued him because he spake in their knowne tongue) of the cause that compelled vs to land vpon their Coast, and that we intended no mischiefe, violence, or money: to which report of his they giuing credite, stood in lesse feare of vs then before, and thereupon furnished vs with all such necessaries, as the Countrie afforded to furnish our wants. The foode which we bought of them was onely fish, and a kinde of coarse bread, exceeding cheape. Of which foode there was such plenty, that for the value of three pence we had as much fish as twentie men could eate at a meale, and yet none of the worst sorts of fish, but euen of the very best and daintiest, as Blackrells and Lobsters, and such like. In which our trading with the poore simple people, we found them so ignorant, that many, yea most of them regarded not whether you gaue them a Counter, or a Shilling: for the bigger the piece was, the more fish they would giue for it: but besides fish we could get no other sustenance from them, or at least, could not vnderstand that they had any other. But obserue what happened in the meane time that we were thus in traffique with the Islanders for victuals, our Countreines (as before is said) being gone to the Lord Governour, who lay about twelue English miles from the Sea side, the Master of our ship on a sudden hoysed vp sailes, and away he went, leaving out of his owne men at shoare, who accompanied our Officers as their guide, through the Land. The cause of the ships departure, did to much the more amaze vs, by reason it was so unexpected, and the reason thereof vnknewne to vs: But we imagined the Master of the ship and Mariners feared to receive vs into the Vessell againe, because some of our men at their being at Sea, threatened the Sayers, and offered them abuses before they could be brought to let vs on land.

On the next day following, the Lord Governour of the Island came to vs, bringing our Officers along with him, yet not being so content of vs, but that (for any thing of his dangers that might happen) he came strongly guarded with a troupe of Horse-men well armed. And (vpon his first approch) demanding where our ship was, it was told him in what strange manner it stole away and forsooke vs: he then asked what we intended to doe, to which we all answered, that we would be ruled by our Officers: hereupon he inquired of them, what they would haue him to doe in their behalfe: they requested nothing else at his hands, but only his fauourable Passé through the Countrie, and a ship to carrie vs forward into Sweden: to which request he made answer, that he could grant no such licence vntill he had made the King of Denmark acquainted with our being there, for the Island belonged to the King, he said, and he was no more but an Officer or Substitute vnder him. Yet in consideration that our ship had left vs in a strange Land, he promised to doe all that lay in his power to effect our good: but withall told vs, that the people had inward feares, and were posselt with suspitions, that our intents of landing vpon such a Coast, were not, as we our selves affirmed, only to get foode, but rather to make spoile of the poore Inhabitants. And therefore, to remouee all such feares and zelousies out of the peoples hearts, he held it most conuenient for the generall safeties of both parties, to separate our numbers, and to spreade vs abroad in the Countrie, one and one in a house, where it was agreed that we should receive both a lodging, and meate, and drinke, vntill hee had sent to the King of Denmark some of his owne men with our Officers, to vnderstand his Maiesties pleasure, and what should become of vs.

To this we all agreed, and accordingly for that purpose, were by the Lord Governour, safely by their armed hoste-men which were his guard, conducted to his owne house. To that place were all the people of the Island summoned together, they came at the appointed day to the number of five or six hundred, circling vs round with Bills, Holbarres, two-hand Swords, and diuers other weapons: And at the first sight of vs grew into such rage, that presently they would haue cut all our throats, and hewed vs to pieces, but that the authoritie of the Governour kept them from offering violence, yet was hee faine to vie the fairest meanes of perswasion to allay their furie. For they would not beleuee but that our arriual there was to destroy them. Yet the Governour shewed vnto them all our number, which was but three hundred men, and shote all vnswayed, and so consequently, neither likely nor able to undertake any mischiefe against them.

Charging the vnuly multitude, vpon paine of death, not to touch the least finger of vs, but to diuide vs equally into severall Villages, as it should seeme best vnto them, and to bestow kinde and louing entertainment vpon vs till they heard further from him, which command of his they accordingly performed.

Immediately vpon this setting of them away and in quietnesse, one of our Officers with two of the Governours men, were sent thence to the King of Denmark, to vnderstand his Highnes pleasure, which Messengers were no sooner dispatched about the business, but the Islanders growing more and more suspitious, came againe to the Governour, and neuer would cease or giue our people troubling him, vntill they had gotten him to make Proclamation (in hearing of vs all.) That if any of vs would freely discover the true cause of our landing vpon that Coast, and reueale the plots or any dangerous enterprise intended against them, he should not only be rewarded with great store of money, and haue new apparell to his backe, but also should without tortures, imprisonment, or death be free fire, and sent backe againe into his owne Countrie. This Proclamation stricke vs all with feare and astonishment, because albeit we to our selves were not guilty of any

Griffin's base
coward and
traitor to his
fellows.

A wife Govern-
our.

Two Ships.

Hard vrgs.

any plot, or villany intended to the place or people, yet wee knew this might be a means to endanger all our lives, how innocent fouler. Our suspicion of danger fell out according to our fore the Governour, and with a face counterfeiting a guiltlesse and fearefull destruction, told him that we came thither onely, and for no other purpose, then to surpris the Island, kill the Inhabitants, make spoile of their wines and goods, and having set fire to their Townes and Villages, to flye to Sea againe. Yet for all this would not the Governour beleue him, telling him it was a matter very vnlikely, that so small a number, so distressed for want of food, so weather-beaten and so disarmed, should venture vpon an enterprise so full of dangerous euent; but the villaine replied, that all those complaints of want, were but lyes to beguile the people, for that vpon the least Allarum giuen, other ships that lay hovering at Sea, and furnished both with men and arms, would on the suddaine, and that very shortly land for the same desire of spoyle, as these their fellows had done, and therefore counsell'd the Governour to prevent such imminent mischiefs betimes.

The Governour being thus farr vrg'd, presently called before him Lieutenant *Walton*, whole lodging was appointed in his house, and hauing related to him all that *Griffin* had discouered, and vitchall, demanding of Lieutenant *Walton* what he could say to this matter of treason and conspiracie: the Lieutenant at the first stood amazed, and vterly denied any such intended villany, professing by the faith of a Souldiour, that this report of the Welch-man proceeded from the rancour of a vile traitors heart, and therefore on his knees intreated the Governour, not to give credit to so base a villaine, who for the greedinesse of a little money, went about to sell all their liues, and to make all the inhabitants of the Island become murderers: The rest lay scattered about and knew nothing of the matter. But some after, iust as the traitor had told the Governour, that more ships were not farre off, but were ready to foule us vpon our arrivall, it chanced that in the very heat of this businesse, and their feares of danger whome none was, two other shippes full of armed Souldiers came to the same place of the Island where our shippes put in: These two shippes had brought Souldiours out of the low Countries (a cessation of warres being there) and were going into *Swetland*, as we were, but by crosse winds and fowle weather, lay so long at Sea, that wanting victuals, they were driven in hither for succour. Whole suddaine approach and arrivall being signified to the Lord Governour, the Welch-mans words were then thought true: so the land was presently put in Armes to resist the strength and furie of a most dangerous supposed enemy and so secretly did the Inhabitants put on Armes, that we who were kept like prisoners amongst them, knew not of their vprises. But night approaching, the Generall gave special charge that secret watch should be set, and kept over every Souldier that lodged in any mans house: which by the common people was as narrowly performed, for they did not onely watch vs as the Governour commanded, but amongst themselves a secret conspiracie was made, that in the dead of night, when wee should be fast asleepe, they should come and take vs in our beds, and there to binde vs with cords: it being an easie thing to doe if, when our company were divided one from another over the whole Island. At the house agreed vpon, the plot was put in force, for they entred our Chambers, and bound every Souldier as he lay, making them all ready like 10 many therpe marked out for the slaughter. For mine owne part, I had five men and three women binde me, who so cunningly tyed me fast with cords, whilst I slept, and felt nothing, nor deceipt of any such matter, that with a twisch only I was plucked tharke naked out of my bed, and laid vpon the cold earth vnderneath a Table, with my armes bound behinde me, so extremely hard, as four men could draw them together, my fete tyed to the force of the Table, and my necke bound to the vpper part or bord of the Table.

In these miserable tortures lay I, and all the rest (in severall houses) all that night, and the most part of the next day, our armes and legges being pinched and wrung together in such pittielesse manner, that the very blood gulshed out at the fingers ends of many. The enduring of which torments was so much the more grievous, because none knew what we had done that could increase them to this so strange and spitefull cruelty, neither could we, albeit we inquired, learne of our tormenters the cause, because we understood not their language.

Whilst thus the whole land was full of the cries of wretched men, and that every house formed a shambles, ready to have Innocents there butchered the next day, and that every Island had the office of a common cut-throate or executioner; Gods wonderfull working turned the frame of all their cruelty: For the two shippes that came out of the low Countries, and whole arrivall draue so many miserable soules almost vpon the rocks of destruction, hauing in that dolefull and ruinous night, gotten some prouision aboard, weighed Anchor, and departed towards *Swetland*. Which happy newes being sent vnto at breakfast to the Lord Governour betimes in the morning, and that the Shippes had offered no violence to the Countrey, but had paid for what they tooke: About eleven of the clocke the very same day at noone, we were all like vnto so many dead men cut downe, and bidden to stand vpon our legges, although very few had scarce legges that could stand.

Of one accident more that befell, I thinke it not amiss to take note, which began merrily, but ended

ended tragically, and in blood; and that was this: Four of our company being lodged in one house, and they being bound to the place, as you may perceive therewith; it happened that an Hostie, where one of them lay, and tipped hard, and gotten a Hostie drifke, called the Stagegers: In comes he stumbling, to the room where the poore *Englishman* was bound to the Table, and foote: with which thing the drunken Stagebeholding, drew his Hatchet, which he wore at his girdle, according to the fashion of the Countrey, and because he would be fore his prisoner should not escape, with his Hatchet he deftly tread. And thinking in that drunken murderous humour, he had done a glorious act, & my're redemption of his owne soule to that house where the other three Souldiours lay bound, where beating at the doores and windowes, and the Hostie asking what he meant: to make fight a damnable noyse: he told him so well as he could, flammering about, that the Lord Governour had sent him thither to put three *Englishmen* to death. Vpon this, the Hostie and he (hand in hand) were set in, the one standing so close at the others elbow, that he neuer left him till he had left two of their heads, that lay bound: and being their wayry (in should fence) with playing the butcher, he neuer ceased swearing and tharing, and hostie rithing with his bloody Axe about their heads, till the people of the house had hugh the third man vpon a board in the room: But they having left cussing in the Hang-mans trade, then will to practise it, tyed not the jailor forth about his necke, as a triangle him: but that after hee had lung an houre, hee was cut downe, remied againe, well well, and afterwards was slaine in *Ruffia*.

This bloody feast being thus ended, and all dornes as we well hoped, being now blowne out to our freedom, and sitting at liberty from our tormentors: on the necke of these former miseries fell a mischiefe more dangerous to vs then all the rest: for tidings were brought to the Governour, that our Auncient, who so troubled with the Governours two men to the King, had truely murdered those his guides, and then ranne away himselfe vpon this rumour, nothing but thundring and lightning flew from the capmes people: whither: there was no way now with vs but one, and that one was, to haue all our throats cut, or our heads clef with their Axes. But the Governour pitying our misfortune, laboured both by his authority, & by faire speeches, to keepe that many-headed degge (the multitude) from parking. And in the end, when hee had found nothing but the blood of vs poore *Englishmen* would satisfy their thirst, because they still held vs in suspicion and feare; he moost nobly, and like a veracious Magistrate, piowed to the inhumane Rascals (to my knowledge) his honour, all that euer he was worthy; yet, his very life vnto them, that within three dayes the messengers lent to the King, should returne home, and that during those three dayes we should be of good behauiour to the Islanders: and besides that, if they did not returne in such a time, that then he would deliuer vs vp into their hands. Our Auncient with the Governours two men, came home vpon the third day, to the Governours house, and brought from the King of *Denmarke* his licence, to carry vs not onely through the Countrey, but commanding that we should be allowed shipping also at conuenient place, to carry vs to *Swetland*, whither we were to go: And according to this Licence the Governour caused vs to be called all together the very next day: which time, *Thomas Griffin* the Welch-man, who had all this while lyeen fastening in the house of the Lord Governour, began to tremble and repent him of his villanie, begging most base forgiveness on his knees, both from the Governour, and vs his Countreymen and fellow Souldiours, protesting that what he did, came out of his feare to save his owne life. But our King (vpon seeing him speake thus) had moste adoe to keepe the companies from pulling downe the house where *Griffin* lay, because they would in that rage haue hewed the villaine in pieces.

But leaving him and all such betrayers of mens blood to the hell of their owne confciences, let vs set forward out of this unfortunate land, and not stay in any place else, till in small Boates we come by water to *Elemore* in *Denmarke*, where we joyfully got aboard once more, and are hoying vp sailles for *Swetland*. Yet euen in this sun-shine day a storme falls vpon vs: so too: for our Officers not having sufficient money to furnish vs with victuals, wee were enforced to pawne our Auncient and Lieutenant *Walton*, for the safe returne of the Shippes, with condition, that they should not be released vntill a sufficient summe of money was sent to defray all charges. So that we left our Officers behinde vs; but the King of *Swetland* did afterwards release them, and then they came to vs. But before their coming, wee hauing a good wind, landed at a place called *Norwain* in *Swene*: and from thence were carried to *Stockholme* (the Kings seate) and there was the King at the same time; betweene which two places, it was a daies march on horse backe.

Vpon this our arrivall at *Stockholme*, we met with the rest that had gone before vs, and with diuers others of our Countreymen, that came out of the low countries, as before is related. In this place we lay long, and had such poore meanes, that wanting money to buy foode, wee wanted tooke to maintaine life, and so a number of vs were starved to starve: till in the end, our miseries making vs deperate, we fell together by the eares with the *Durges* of the Towne: in which scrambling confusion and mutine, every man got one thing or other, of which he made present money to relieve his body withall: yet lay wee at the

Effects of
drunkenness

Cruell cow-
ardise and
base
sallousie.

King of De-
marke bounty

Reliance.

Stockholme.

Misery after
misery.

Sti

waltes

walles of the Citie, crying our continually for money, money, till our throates grew hoarse with bawling, but the stones of the wallies gave more comfort to vs, then the inhabitants. One day (about all the rest) we heard, that the King was to ride a Hunting; and we imagining that all the abuses, wrongs, and miseries, which we endured, proceeded from some vnder-hand dealing and packing of our Capitaines and Officers, resolved to gather about the King as he coming forth, and to cry out for money: but the King being angry (as we supposed) camelizing amongst vs, drawing his Pistol from the Saddle-bow, as it hee purposed to haue shot some of vs: but seeing none of vs to shrink from him, nor to be dismayed, hee rode backe againe, we following him, and desiring, hee would either giue vs money, or else to kill vs as our right; one amongst the rest (whose name was *William Attaine*) spake to the King aloud; thus: *I hold it honour to dye by the hands of a King, but safely to starue to death, I will neuer suffer it.* Vpon these our clamours, the King looking better vpon our necessities, sent money the next day, and immediately after giue vs a monthes means in money, and two monthes means in cloath, to make vs apparelled.

Captaines
courage.

Of the cloath we received some part, but the money being payed, was by our Capitaines sent into England to their wiuers; no part of it euer coming to the poore common Soldiours hands: for presently vpon this, we were commanded aboard the Ships, with promise that when we were aboard, we should haue our money. But being in the Ships vnder hatches, away we were carried with provision onely of one monthes victuals; when by reason of the weather, we were forced to lye eight weekes at Sea, in all which time, we had nothing but pickelled Herrings, and salt Strenglings, with some small quantitie of hard dried meates: by which ill diet, many of our men fell sicke, and dyed. In the Shippe wherein I was, we lived fouretee dayes without bread, all our best foode being salt Herrings, which we were glad to eate raw; the best of vs all having no better sustenance.

Faile.

At the last, it pleased God to send vs to a place called *Vrsafwand* in *Fynland*, where we landed, (*Fynland* being tribut to the King of *Swedenland*.) From *Vrsafwand* we were to goe to *Weybroogh*, a chiefe Towne in the Countrey of *Fynland*: where we no sooner arrived, but our Soldiours rannt some one way, and some another, so long that the Capitaines were left alone with the Ships: This running away of them, being done onely to seeke foode, so great was their hunger.

Dispersing.

By this carelesse dispersing themselves, they lost the command of the whole Countrey, which they might easily haue had, if they had beene united together; and not onely were depriv'd of that benefit, but of Horses also, which were allowed by the King for them to ride vpon. So that, what by the reason of the tedious Journey (which we were to trauell, being fourecore leagues) and what by reason of the extreme cold, being a month before Christmas, at which time the Snow fell, and neuer went off the ground vntill Whitson-tide following; but all the Raine, and all the Snow that fell, freezing continually, diuers of our men were tarr'd to death with the Frost. Some lost their fingers, some their toes, some their noses, many their lues: insomuch, that when we all met at *Weybroogh*, we could make no more but one thousand and foure hundred able men; and yet when we were landed at *Vrsafwand*, we were two thousand strong, the extremity of the cold Countrey having killed so many of our Soldiours in so little time.

Distressed by
Frost.

At our landing at *Weybroogh* we had good hopes to receive better comforts, both of money and victuals: for the Inhabitants told vs, the King had allowed it vs, and in that report they spake truth: yet contrary to our expectation, we lay there about fouretee dayes, and had nothing but a little Rice, of which we made bread, and a little butter, which was our best reliefe. Drinke had we none, nor money: our Capitaines gaue vs certaine letherne peliches, onely made of Sheepe skins, to keepe vs from the cold.

Their misfor-
tune much into
Ruffia.

At this place we received armes to defend vs against the enemy, and fix Companies that were allowed by the King for Horsemen, received Horses there. From thence we were to march into *Ruffia*, where our enemies continued. But the journey was long and uncomfortable: for we marched from *N-weyces* day vntill Whitson-tide, continually in Snow, having no rest, but onely a little in the nights. So that the miseries and mistourines which were endured vpon the borders of *Fynland*, were almost insufferable, by reason the number of them seemed infinite. For all the people had forsaken their houses long before we came, because they were euermore oppressed by Soldiours: by which means we could get neither meate nor drinke, but were glad to hunt Cares, and to kill them, or any beasts we could lay hold on, and thus we baked, and made them serue for daily sustenance. The greatest calamitie of all was, we could get no Water to drinke, it had bene so long frozen vp, and the Snow so deep, that it was hard to lay, whether we marched ouer Water, or vpon Land. So that we were compelled to digge vp Snow, and with stones peddle ice, to melt in rubbet, and then to drinke it.

Want of meate
and of Water.

This affliction continued about two or foureteen dayes, till we came into *Ruffia*. Vpon our very first entrance into *Witth Kingdom*, we marched out an arme of the Sea, that was eight leagues out, many of vs staruing to death in that passage, by the cold freezing winles that blew the same day. In which frosty journey, I saw to much bread as a man might buy for twelve pence, fold away in little bits, for the value of three fillings. But this misery ended the next day, at our setting foot into *Ruffia*, where we found plenty both of come and cattle; onely the people of the Countrey ranne away, leaving all their goods behind them, but so cunningly hidden, that the best policie of ours could hardly finde them out. By this means of the peoples running away, we were glad to play the Milles, and to grinde all our care and felues, to bake our bread, and to dress our owne victuals. They marched vs up to *Wingsrod*, a chiefe Citie in *Ruffia*, where we were to receive all our meates that rested behinde vs: payed: but our Capitaines beguiled vs, and kept it for themselves: yet to stoppe our mouths, they told vs we should goe into *Muscow*, and there all reckoning should be made euen.

Ruffia named
away.

(A Nourrod)

Wee had scarce marched about three dayes towards *Muscow*, but that newes came, how a certaine number of our enemies lay in a fconce by the way; the strength of them was not perfectly knowne, but it was thought they were not about feuen hundred, and that we might vie force (stratagem) to expell them from thence: vpon which relation, our Capitaines shew forth to the number of three hundred English footmen, and two hundred French footmen:

Poles are
dies.

that in all we were about five hundred that were appointed to set vpon the supposed foure hundred *Poles*, (our enemies) that so lay in fconce: vpon whom we went. Our chiefe Commander in that seruice was *Maister la Velle*, a French man, who so valiantly led vs off, that the enemy hearing of our coming, fled ouer a water that was by the fconce: yet not with such speed, but that wee lue to the number of foure hundred of their side, and lost onely three men of our owne: but wee took the fconce. About the fconce stood a faire Towne called *Armenia*, with a river called the *Pelge*, running through the middle, but no bridge ouer it: onely a few Boates and States (made and cut out of trees) were there, to carry the people ouer from one halfe of the Towne to the other. This fconce furnished vs not onely with great store of riches, but also with a number of *Polish* Horses, and as many armes as served to arme five hundred men: our want of that commoditie being as much as of any thing besides: for of those five hundred men that went vpon the seruice, there were hot three hundred fixed armes; yet through the hand of him that deales victories, or ouerthrowes, as it pleaseth him best, the day was ours.

Some killed
with shot of
Armes.

Our three hundred *Poles* the enemies were neuer driven before, either by the Emperor of *Ruffia*, or by the King of *Swedenland*: for which cause (as afterward we heard) the next day when they departed from the other side of the River, they burnt that halfe of the Towne on which side they were themselves, and in most bloody, barbarous, and cruel manner, made hawke both of men, women and children, albeit (not about halfe a years before) the Inhabitants on that side had revolted from their owne Emperor, and turned to them. In which tyrannical vprore, their custom was, to fill a house full of people, and then (the dores being locked vpon them, that none might goe forth) the house was fired about their eares; and oftentimes were young children taken by the heeles, and cast vpon the middle of the street. This inhumane tyrannie being practised not onely by the *Poles*, that were our enemies, but euen by those *Ruffians* that were faithful to their owne Emperor, and turned against the *Poles*, and were called *Cossacks*, whose cruelty farre exceeded the *Poles*.

Poles cruelles
most execrable

The Towne being thus burnt to the earth, all the Gatekeepers (which as I said before, stood ouer the River, out of the fconce, and were by vs supposed to be but leuen hundred) came downe in full battall on the fconce side with such force, as if precisely they and their horses would haue won ouer, to fight with vs, which being perceived, our poore five hundred stood ready to resist them. But whether they feared our numbers to be greater then they were, and that we had some other secret forces, I know not: but away they marched, the same day in which they came downe in that tyranny, not doing any thing of which, we for our parts, were not much sorry: because if the battalies had layned, wee knew how felous sure vnable to withstand them. And that was the seruice of the most newes, that we went vpon.

Two or three other fconces and Townes we took from our enemies, they not once daring to resist vs, because they knew nothing of our numbers and force. But the dishonest dealings of our Capitaines, made the whole Armie discontent; insomuch, that our Soldiours would oftentimes deny to goe forth vpon seruice, because they had bene almost a year in the Land, and had received no more but one *Rashie* (amounting to the value of ten fillings English.) So that vpon this discontent, silence, and rage, we ranne away to the enemy at one time, and discovered their strength. After which, we durst not be so bold as before we had beene. The fire of a new confederacie was likewise kindling, but it was percieued, and quenched with the blood of the conspirators, of which, the chiefe were hang'd. On this therefore we went: when

Cossack
cruel.

Fugitives

HONDIVE his Map of Muscovia.



we came within fortie leagues of *Moscow*, newes was brought, that the enemy had beleagu'd
seven thousand *Ruffes* that were our friends, and that valiant we forced the siege to breake
up, the seven thousand *Ruffes* would every man be flayed where they lay. This sad report,
(albeit we had resolved neuer to goe vpon any more seruice, whilst wee had our pay) so wrought
in our hearts, that wee much pitied the miseries of others, because wee our selues had tasted
of the like.

Our Generall (whose name was *Euerhorpe*) was a *Finlander* and with a company of *Fynland*
blades (as they bearme them) well appointed on Horsebacke, was by the King of *Swedeland*,
sent after vs, as our Connoy, vntill wee should come to *Pontus le Guard*, who was chiefe
Generall ouer the whole armie of strangers that came into the Land: so that according as he
was sent and charged by the King, hee ouerooke vs before we came to *Armas*. By the intreatie
thereof of this *Fynlander*, and the flattering promises of our owne Captaines, we were con-
uinc'd to goe vpon this seruice, and to deliuer the *Ruffes*, or to dye our selues in the action. Yet
with condition, that (as they promised to vs) we should by the way meete our chiefe Gene-
rall, *Pontus le Guard*, who with certaine numbers of *English*, *French* and *Dutch* (which
the yeare before were come into the Land) was vpon a march out of *Moscow*, not only to
serue vs, but to reioyce with vs, and pay vs all for money which remained possid: prou-
ided likewise, that so soone as eter wee should releafe the seven thousand *Ruffes*, our
money should be payed downe. On these conditions (I say) wee yielded to goe vpon the
business.

As leaugh *Pontus le Guard* met vs (according to the promise) and with him was money
brought to pay vs, and his word giuen that presently wee should receiue it. But the lamenta-
table estate, in which the poore beleagu'd *Ruffes* were (within the fence) being as the point
of death for want of food, required rather speedy execution, then deliberation: so that the
necessities of their hard fortunes craving iustie, on wee went, hauing about nineteene or twenty
thousand

thousand *Ruffes*, that were people of the same Countrey, ioyned to our Armie, to aide them in
this enterprize. But as we all were vpon a march, the enemy hauing receiued intelligence of
our approaching, let forward, to the number of eight thousand Lancers and more, to intercept
vs by the way: and being within one dayes march of the place to which wee were likewise go-
ing, they let fire vpon vs: or foure Villages hard by the place where we lay at Grate with our
Horses, for a token that they were comming. And this was done vpon Midwinter day last in
the morning, by breake of day. Then came they thundring with shouts and cries to let vpon
vs: but no sooner was the Alarm giuen, when the greatest part of those nineteene or twenty
thousand *Ruffes*, that were ioyned to vs as our aide, fled most basely before any blow was gi-
uen. This sudden cowardize of theirs somewhat amazed vs: but the hour being now come,
wherein we were not to talke of dangers, but to goe mee'te them, with our fixe companies
of *English* horse, we brauely resisted the *Polanders*, and with great hurt to them, but with little losse
vpon our part, charged them three seuerall times.

At last *Pontus le Guard* (our chiefe Generall)ooke his heels and fled too, leaving vs utterly
defectiue of all direction: which much albinthod vs, as not well vnderstanding what to doe:
for our greatest strength (being by their flight) taken from vs, none but wee strangers were left
in the field, and of vs there was not in all, about twa thousand, and of that number there were
about fix hundred French horsemen, who teeing both the Generall gone, and the *Ruffes* fled,
turned their backs vpon vs, and ranne away too most valiantly, yet not out of the field, but to
the enemy.

Then were wee not about twelue or foureteen hundred at the most left to resist eight thou-
sand at the least: vpon whom notwithstanding, our fixe companies of *English* horsemen, charged
three seuerall times, without any great losse, but with much honor: And at the fourth time, for
want of powers to second them (which the *French* should haue done) all our fixe companies were
scattered, and ouerthrowne with the losse of ouer of our colours. The Captaines ouer these fixe
companies of Horse, were these:

Captaine *Crale*, of whose company I was. Captaine *Kendrick*, Captaine *Burrow*, Captaine
Cerre, Captaine *Calburn*, Captaine *Creyton*.

Which six Captaines had not in all their companies above five hundred men. In this battail,
Captaine *Creyton* was slaine in the field; Captaine *Crale* was shot in the knee, and within a short
time after dyed of that wound: not above twelue of his companie escaping. Captaine *Kendrick*
was wounded in diuers places of the head, and dyed. Captaine *Burrow* was shot in the hand, and
wounded in the heel, and yet escaped, and liued only Captaine *Cerre* and his Cornet escaped,
but all his companie scattered and lost. Diuers other Officers were slaine, whose names I can
not remember.

Thus were all our *English* horse-men disperfed and ouerthrowne, to the number of five hun-
dred and vppwards. Our Generall *Euerhorpe* with his companies of *Finland*, or *Finnish* blades,
were also put to retreat: so that there was not left in the field above fixe or seven hundred, which
were foot-men. And of these, one halfe was *English*, one halfe *Dutch*, who kept only a cer-
tain place by a wood side, barricadoed about with wagons, hauing with them foure field pieces,
with which they did great league to the Enemy. But their number being but few, neither durst
they venture on the Enemy, nor durst the Enemy enter vpon them, but kept them still (as it
were besieged) in that place only, because they could no wayes escape. The inconuenience
of which cooping vp in so narrow a roome, being looked into, and the dangers on every side well
considered, it was held fittest for safetie, to summon the Enemy to a parley. In which parley,
the Enemy offered, that if they would yeeld, and fall to their fidelities, they should haue good quar-
ter kept. And if any man had desire to goe for his owne Countrey, hee should haue libertie
to goe with a Passport, from the King of *Poland*. Or if any would serue the King of *Poland*, hee
should haue the allowance of very good meates daily paid him. Vpon these conditions they
all yeilded, and went to the Enemy, only Captaine *Turk* and his Officers, with some few of
their Souldiers, went backe into the Countrey, and came not to the Enemy, as the rest had
done: who from thence marched vp to the *Polish* Leaguer, being ten miles distant from the
place, and there they continued. But such as desired to trauele to their owne Countreys, were
sent to the King of *Poland* Leaguer, which lay at that time at a place called *Smolensko*,
and there accordingly had their Passe, to the number of one hundred, of which number I my self
was one. What became of the rest I know not: but I with five more fled together in trauele,
vntill wee came to *Dantzicke*, a great Towne in *Prussia*, being distant from *Smolensko* one hun-
dred leagues.

To make an end of this storie of the Foxe and the Beare, the pretending *Demetrius* and con-
tending *Smuckey* is reported, that *Demetrius* seeing these perplexities of *Smuckey*, rayled a great
Armie of such *Ruffes* as voluntarily fell to him (the *Pole* hauing neuer reiected him, except Iome
Voluntaries) and againe laid siege to *Moscow*; *Zolkiewsky* for *Sigismund*, beleagred another part
thereof with fortie thousand men, whereof one thousand and five hundred were *English*, *Scottish*,
and *French*. *Smuckey* seeing no hope to withstand them, his Empire renouncing him, hee would
sceme

An. 1610.

Ruffe flight.

P. le Guard's flight.

French flee.

English honour.

* Some say Le had receiued which is contrary to credit.

Mofcowe.

Second Demetrius.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

Mofcowe.

seeme to renounce the Empire first, betaking himselfe to a Monasterie. But not the sanctitie of the place, nor sacred name of an Emperour might protect or secure him. The *Moscowites* yealed vp their Citie and his Person to the *Pole*, and the Castle was manned for *Siege*. All layne against *Demetrius*, who betaketh him to his heeles, and by a *Tartar* (as before is said) was ceased. *Siege* should obtayneth *Smolensky* also after two yeeres siege and more; in which time the *Defenders* had held out so resolutely, that the *Poles* Peeres and States (which in that Kingdom beare great sway) had called the King to their Parliament, the rather in regard of the King of *Demetrius* warring upon *Cie* (in which warring diuers thousands of our *English* voluntaries ¹⁰ afflicted the *Dane*) but he first desiring to trie his fortune, carried the Citie with two hundred pieces of Ordnance and other rich spoile. Many were slain, and diuers great persons taken, of which was the Archbishop. Many were blowne vp (as was thought) by their owne voluntarie act, by fire cast into the store-houle, in which is said to have bene (if our Author mistake not) fifteen thousand vessels of powder; whereupon returned the very Chaos, or in stead thereof a Hell into the World. It is accounted one of the strongest Forts in *Christendome*, the walls were carried two Carts meeting in the breadth. It was taken the twelfth of *July*, 1610. *Suisky* was carried into *Poland* and there imprisoned in *Waringborough* Castle, and after the life of Libertie and his Empire, exposed to scorn and manifold miseries, hee dyed in a foraine they held him prisoner before his departure from *Moscow*, they sent for many *Grander* in *Smy*. ²⁰ key name, as if he had much desired to see them before his fatal fall; forwile, to take a friendly and honourable leaue of them. They come, are entertained, and in a private place knocked on the head and throwne into the Ruer: and thus was most of the chiefe remaining Nobilitie destroyed. The *Poles* fortified two of the Forts at *Moscow*, and burnt two others, as not able to be held. But the *Moscowites* also there held them besieged till famine forced them to yield: the were slain, that their death might give life to the *Suiskies* a iust, but miserable and tragically spectacle. We shall conclude this Discourse with giving you two Letters, the one taken out of a Letter written from *Caluogre* Sept. 7. (the yeere is not dated) amidst these troubles; the other out from Captaine *Margaret* before mentioned by *Thomson*; and after them, for further illustration and profitable vie of this storie, is added part of a Letter of Doctor *Hals*.

ON Thursday morning came George Brighthouse from Moskow, he hath bene three weekes on the way, but by reason of his small staying here, I can learne but small occurrences, which is, that Moskow holdeth out, of late some of the Nobilitie issued out and gave the Enemies a small skirmish, few were slain, but many of them, took prisoners one hundred and fawente, whereof eleven Polish Gentlemen gallant men, are almost fawente in prison. *Sandomirsky* is entered the borders with a new supply of Soldiers, the which Demetrius by some in *Lan* hath long since expected. The *Crim Tartar* is returned from thence into his owne Country, hath taken more then twenty thousand prisoners captives out of *Relan* and thereabouts: *Knez* *Skozog* from *Yrallane*, he meanes to march from thence to Moskow, but by Georges speech he maketh no great hope. Bouginsky that was Secretary to Demetrius, is still under prellure with an Officer, was almost fawente with hunger, but Master Brewster doth daily releue him to his great comfort. George Brighthouse came with Volodemer, the Prince, wife to *Kuan* *Euanowich*, that was eldest sonne to the old Emperour (the to whom you gave the good entertainment to) is there at this time going and coming backe, made very much of him: he dwelt in her presence: after dinner sent him a great Present of many dishes and drinke for his sake, and often remembered you and your great kinde-nesse to her and hers; I remember T. L. and kept him so long time in her owne Cell. There is a great conspiracy still in the Moskow against the Emperour *Wladimir* *Euanowich*, only the *Moscowites* stand with him, and very few of the Nobilitie. Daily there issueth out by force to *Swedish* diuers of the Gentrie, most of the Dutch, especially the *Women* are gone out of the Moskow to the *Tartar*. It is supposed that the Emperour cannot long hold out, and Demetrius *Euanowich* is reported to be a very wise Prince.

Captaine MARGARETS Letter to Master MERICK from
Hamborough, Jan. 29. * 1612.

Right worshipfull Sir, I could not omit this commoditie without commending my service to you. ⁶⁰ My service, and also briefly to aduise you of the State of Moskow, which is not as I could wish. *Alfo* I left Master Brewster in good health at my departure: but three dayes after the Towne within the red wall was burnt with certaine fire Balls shot in by the Russians, so that there is but three houses left whole, the

the English house also being burnt. Master Brewster is constrained to haue his dwelling in a Seller on the English house der the Palace, without great friends except Mistlofsqui. The Generall Cortiquill is arrived there, but not left a sufficient number of men to keep the Castle, and the red Wall, but himselfe with his Armes is gone towards *Relan*, and he hath sent word much to doe, and upon certaine conditions, to the Ruer of *Saga* towards the Volga, to bring willall to maintaine them that are in the Castle besieged of the Multitudes. The King of *Poland* is altogether refused to see there in person the summer, and if the Russian come no further backe, as there is no appearance, no question it will come to pass, as I will tell in your Worships, that they will be forced to yield. I wrote briefly to your Worships, because I hope to take my voyage to France through England, and there to meet with your Worships; intrating your Worships to accept these few lines as a testimony of the service I haue done to your Worships, etc. and so I end in haste.

Thus haue we finished foure Acts of this Tragedie: the first, ending with the end of *Boulas* family; the second, with the name of that of *Boris*; the third, with that (whatsoever) *Demetrius*; the fourth, with this *Suisky*, attended with that shadow or ghost of another *Demetrius*. Now as I haue seenne sometimes the Spectators of Tragedies willed with discourse of a *Chorus*, or (as in our vulgar) enteracted with musicke, to remit for a time those bloodie impressions fixed in attentive mindes; so haue we represented *Phaedra*: Coronation added to the first; *Boris* his Charter to the English to conclude the second; that of *Demetrius* to the third, and for this fourth I haue here made bold with a Letter of my worthy friend (learned Doctor, and Reuerend Deane Doctor *Hals*, a Hall adorned with so rich Arras, and with all the ground, light, life, the All of these, Christian humilitie) which may serue as a Letter of commendation to my intent, as it was intended to another worke, which had it bene publicke, might haue prevented the greatest part of this: a worke of Master Samuel Sowerby, in Sir *T. Smiths* Voyage mentioned, Master *Sa*, touching those Russian occurrences which be in part saw. As a Traveller hee describeth place here, *Suisky*. And howsoever I haue neither bene so happy to see the Worke nor the Workman, yet this Epistle tells what we haue lost, and my worke easily proclaims the defect of such a Wardrobe, being (as you see) like a Beggars cloke, all of diuersified patches; so much more labour to mee, in both getting and stitching them, though I much lesse satisfaction to thee. Once, as I haue placed this long Russian storie in the midst of *Mario* Discourses, to refresh the Reader a while on Land; I amidst these tragically, harsh Relations, I thus seeke to recreate thy weary spirit with this chat of mine, and after these *Medusa* gates, inuenerally, with this Letter to villall to the present subiect, so pleasing in the file. The whole, and the next following to *Bachinsky*, the Reader may finde in his to our published Decades of Epistles.

T Russell perfect wisdom; and observation gives perfection to travel: without which, a man may please his eyes, not feed his brain; and after much earth measured, shall returne with a weary body, and an empty minde. Home is more safe, more pleasant, less fruitfull of experience: But, to a minde not working and dissembling, all becometh alike. And, as the end of travel is observation: so, the end of observation is the improving of others: for, what is our knowledge if footed in our files, so as it is not knowne, nor as it is not used? I thus, for ought, can content me with an enormous nature. You haue breasted many and cold aires, gone furth, some much, heard many, observed all. These two yeeres you haue gone in mistation of *Nabuchadnezzars* fence; concerning which, such creatures as Paul fought with at Ephesus. Alas! what a face, you what a backe of a Church haue you seen? what manners: what people? Amongst whom, ignorant Superstition struts with clef Abethem, Treachery with Cruelty, one *Demetrius* with another; while Truth and Vertue doe not so much as give any challenge of resistance. Returning once to our England after this experience, I imagine you doubted whether you were on Earth, or in Heauen. Now then (if you will beare me, whom you were wont) as you haue observed what you haue seen, and what you haue heard, I so, publish what you haue written: it shall be a grateful labour, to us, to *Pellerius*. I am deuided, if the *Wicknesse* of the Russian States, haue not yielded more memorable matter of Historie than any other in our Age, or perhaps in any Centurie of our Predecessors. How shall I thinke, but that God sent you thither before this kinde, to be the witness, the Register of so famous mutations? He loues to haue those iust ends which bee dole in one part of the World, knowne to the whole, and those ends, which men doe in the night of their desires, brought forth into the Theater of the World; that the euill of men might be compared with the euill of his punishment, may intitle his proceeding, and condemn theirs. Your worke shall thus honour him, besides your second service, in the benefit of the Church. For, while you discourse of the open Tyranny of that Russian Nero, John Basilius; the more fierce, and less bloody place of *Boris*, the ill success of a false Crowne, though set upon the head of an earnestly Sower, the bold attempt, and myrrall end of a false, yet aspiring challenge; the perfidiousness of a simple people, contrary of better Government; the misfortune of wicked Government; the contrary of better Subjects; the vniuersal expiations of men, will (though late) reuenges of God, cruelly rewarded with blood, reuer claims with overthrow, treachery with bondage; the Reader, with some secret horror, shall draw in delight, and with delight instruction: Neither know I any Relation where hee shall take out a more easie Lesson of Justice, of Loyaltie, of Thankfulness.

2

5.3

- 30 -

40

1

2

2

30

et providens prout antea salutaris fuit: nec stipendia, Tenuras, et possessiones eorum ab iis

Herodibus, Aulicis, Cubicularijs, Dapiferis, & liberis Hierum, omnibusq; Aula Imperatoria in-

3

In Arce dicta Moscovia, alijsq; Arcibus, Indicia exequi debent, & observari ut solitum; scdm-

Magnus autem Imperator Serenissimus Rex Poloniae, Magnus Dux Lithuaniae, et

Quod si autem aliquis hostium tentari impetui facere in imperium MOLDOVÆ, jussu etiam in Reg-

Ceterum, in Tartarorum finibus quod sinecessum fuerit jermare vivimq; imperij multas, cum iam

36 *mit illa fuerit. Aut si in Poloniam, vel Lithuaniam, aliâq. Imperia Moscovitici Imperij homines.*

Qui cum... impuniti facinoris... deus... in laqueis

Сарп диеб аз шојетсинаш.

40 *Рис, пшеница, лен, овес, ячмень, кукуруза, картофель, свекла.*

conjecture.

a Polonis, & Lithuanis, & contra Polonos & Lithuanos a Molcovitis : istud factum, & nunc, c

lites. Fabri tormentarii, omnesq[ue] serviles et liberi homines. Aulicorum liberi. Iaculatorum. Fabrorum.

Venerabilis pater Dominicus de S. Iustitia, ex p. adiensis germanicus praejente primo Molcovitardum impetravit

aliqui possionibus, tum extrinsecis de exordia confus. animalia natiua. dicitur. Eximissimus Immenat.

ex mera gratia sua, vestra Imperatorum cura, & diligentia, nos Imperia Molcovitico Imperatorum, & Russiarum, vobis potius commiserunt. Dabimus Varsoviae, Anno Domini 1612. 9. die Martij.

The points of the Embassage of the Russian Messenger sent to his sacred Maestie, briefly collected.

- Russick** By what manner their natural Lords ruled over them, they alleged, to wit, beginning from **Phedor Emmanuich** who was of the blood of a *Cassian Czar*, Emperour of *Rosse*, even unto the last Lord and Emperour **Phedor Emmanuich**, in whom their Race ended.
- Phedor Emmanuich** That **Baru Gudman** abiding with **Phedor Emmanuich**, was created (by his own force and power) Emperour of *Rosse*: but after a little time, the pleasing of God so working, being thrust out of the Imperial seat, departed this life shamefully, and by violent death, together with his Wife and Children.
- Gregory's Entrance** That **Christophorus Ortopny** the *Rossie*, being of base descent, under the Name which he did bear of Emperour, otherwise **Demetrius Emmanuich**, being at *Orskoff*, did fraudulently and by deceit (wherewith he deceived the common people, and others (that believed them) obtaine the Imperiall Seate by force, without the consent of the Spirituallie, and all the chiefe Bishops and Lords, and great men of the Kingdome, who durst not withstand the same, (saying the Common to yield therunto.
- Lord Palatin of Sandomera** How the excellent Lord **Palatin of Sandomera**, gave his daughter in marriage to the *Rossie*, and himselfe (many Gentlemen both of the Kingdome of *Poland*, and great Duchy of *Lithuania*, accompanying him) came into *Moscow*.
- Polish Emmanuich** Then, that **Vassil Emmanuich Smolensky**, with his brethren, and many others associated to this attempt, and stirring up other great men of the Land, did kill the *Rossie*, with many Gentlemen of *Poland*, and the great Duchy of *Lithuania*, and put the rest into divers Cities. And himselfe was made Emperour, although he were not elected by all the States. Whereupon many of our sort did not willingly acknowledge him Emperour, and many would not obey him.
- The War** How another named the *War*, did rise up at *Kashan*, and caused himselfe to be named **Demetrius**, and so accounted. Whereof when many (both *Russies* and *Poles*) heard, they assembled unto him, thinking him to be the true **Demetrius**: and the *Rossie* did so much the more willingly drive unto him, because of the murderers.
- Other Wars, or precedents** How others called *Wars*, did name and call themselves sonnes of the (aine Emperour, as *Isaac*, *Peter*, **Phedor**, and by many and divers other names: and under the same names, did confuse the State, and shed much blood.
- The King of Poland** How the Kings sacred Maestie, coming to *Smolensky*, sent his Messengers the Lord of *Przemisslaw*, and other noble men, who coming unto the Campe, the forenamed *Wars* fled away: but diuers of the *Russies* came unto his Maestie. And taking counsell with the *Wars*, at that time remaining with *Smolensky* in the chiefe Citie, we sent our Messengers to his Maestie at that time, being at *Smolensky*, viz. **Michael Salicene**, and others, requesting that his Maestie would grant vs his Sonne to be our Lord.
- Michael Salicene** How they were dispatched away, and what answer they brought from his Maestie, with conditions engroffed, and signed with his hand and seale.
- The Articles are before in Latin** How that after the deposing of *Smolensky*, the noble Lord Generall of the Kingdome, coming into *Moscow*, concluded all the said businesses and treaties: and confirmed them with the oath of himselfe, and his fellow Souldiers. And that they after that oath, likewise made their oath for the same. Then, that for the greater defence of the said principall Citie from the *Wars*, they sent Souldiers into the Citie, and sent also their Messengers from the whole Countrey *Poles*, viz. the *Metropolitane* and *Vassil Galichin*, with others, unto the Kings Maestie, and required an oath in his Maesties behalfe, of all the severall Provinces.
- Vassil Galichin** How that his Maesties Souldiers dwelled and behaved themselves in this capitall Citie of *Moscow*, before the troubles began, without injuring any man, punishing the evil according to their deserts.
- Galichin** How the *Rossie* handled other Gentlemen, and principall persons of the *Russie* Religion, although more inclined unto them: but especially the Officers and Servants of the *Wars*, as also such as had fled over.
- Hoffe a War** It followeth, how they often sent word unto the Citie of *Smolensky*, and willed them to deliver up the Citie unto his Maestie, to be vnder his prosperous government and power. As for the secret plots of their Messengers, **Galichin** and others, they said, they were ignorant, as also of some unknowne practices, handled by the *Wars* called *Hoffe*. But they said, that they had written very often to the Citie of *Smolensky*, and commanded them to doe whatsoever stood with his Maesties pleasure, and liked him, without further effusion of blood.

How

How also it befell in the chiefe Citie to *Lepin*, and *Sa. wly*, and the other Rebels, when they violated their fidelitie.

That they certified his Maesties Souldiers thereof, and that they, with them, did rise against the Rebels, and that even to this present, they doe keepe, and will keepe their oath once made, and their due obedience unto their Lord.

And, in that *Lepin* was punished of God for his treacherie, and departed this life with shamefull death, we thinke it to be for the good example of others, to reduce them into their former estate, to revoke others unto their fidelitie, and for keeping their oath already given.

- Therefore, after many circumstances, they inferred, that they would presently find their Messengers to the generall Parliament: but moved with the perswasion of the honorable Lord Generall, to wit, that his Maestie would be contented with their fidelitie once made, and performed vnder oath, and with their griefe for the same cause, and will cheerfully forgive them: and doth not refuse to give his Sonne to raigne over them. Adding withall, that many Kingdomes, to wit, the Kingdome of *Hungarie*, the Kingdome of *Schemnia*, and a great part of *Russia*, doe earnestly request, that he would receive them vnder the happy government of his Maestie: that they might enjoy the priviledges of *Poland*, and *Lithuania*, to wit, none in the whole world can be injured.

- But, because his Excellent Maestie, as a Christian Lord, reitring all other Kingdomes, and Dominions, will graciously receive vnder his Rule and government the said Dominions, and that he is sorry for their destruction: he therefore now admonisheth them, if they will be vnder his prosperous Rule, and enter into an union together with the Kingdome of *Poland*, and the great Duchy of *Lithuania*, and live friendly with them: if they will performe, and content thereto, his Excellent Maestie promitteth to remit their offence, and to receive them vnder his happy government and authoritie, and refresheth, and by no means will alter or change their laws, tenes, or builded fortification: neither will import on them any other Religion, or alter their ancient Manners, or Customs, but will bestow on them their priviledges and offices: and that the Rights and Priviledges, which the *Poles*, with the great Duchy of *Lithuania* doe enjoy, shall be conferred on them: and that they shall be equalled with the Kingdome and great Duchy of *Lithuania*, &c. which Priviledges and priviledges, in former times, their Predecessors wanted.

- For this perswasion therefore of the honorable Lord Generall, which he had in charge from his Maestie to make, they yeeld all thanks: but notwithstanding they propound, and plainly add, that their oath shall be so, that his Maesties sonnes shall succeed in their government, with certaine additions; to wit, that they will have none other over them but only his Maesties sonne, and that the whole Land doth make it knowe, and propound their ingement and sentence, by way of denunciation, that by no means, but by offering his Maesties sonne, these troubles of *Moscow* can be extinguished. Adding withall, that at that time, in the first troubles, when the honorable Lord Generall came into the Countrey of *Moscow*, and required the oath for the Kings Maesties sonne: if his Maestie had made any mention thereof, it is certaine, that the Commons and all the Nobilitie, would not have contented therunto by any means, and that greater effusion of blood had risen thereupon: And that they had taken for their Prince *Klitschinsky*, called the *War*, to whom all were not assembled, who also at that time had a great power of men, as well *Poles*, as *Russies*, and *Lithuanians*. They therefore seeing the great discord amongst the people, taking counsell, did freely choofe for their Lord and Emperour his Excellent Maesties sonne, unto whom they had a great affection, and who had a long time before layen in their hearts: assuring themselves also, that by this election of his Maesties sonne, many troubles and diffinitions would be pacified, and so reitected the aforesaid *War Klitschinsky*: As also they received into their chiefe Citie the chiefe Generall. But, when it was heard that his Excellent Maestie, would by no means give unto them his sonne for their Lord, and to rule over them, they fell into such effusion of blood and insurrection. As also the same time, the whole Countrey of *Moscow* locked and expected nothing else then his Maesties sonne. Calling to memorie, for their better advice, that it was to be feared, lest whilst his Maestie came too late with his sonne, diuers parts of the Land should choofe unto themselves severall Lords. As to the Southward the Castles *Strachen* and others, to the King of *Persia*: part of *Pomerland* and *Siberia*, to the Kings of *Denmarke* and *England*; *Novogrod*, *Plisze*, *Isanogrod*, and others, to the King of *Sweden*: and that the other Cities would choofe to themselves other Lords separate from the rest. In the meane season, they desire his Excellent Maestie, to make a speedy end of these warres, according to his Obligation and promise ratified by the oath of the honorable Lord Generall, and the whole Armie: and that his Maestie himselfe, with his sonne, would come into *Moscow*. They request also, that his Excellent Maestie would reynaine with himselfe and his Sonne, Counsellors, and Messengers of their Commonwealth, for the ordaining and concluding of perpetual Conditions. They request also, that his Maestie, in the name of his Sonne, would send unto all the Inhabitants of the Townes, and write unto the severall Cities, signifying his

T t t

com.

comming into their Dominions, and willing, that out of the severall Prouinces, all sorts of men send their Messengers, to treat and conclude of the affaires of all sorts of People, and of perpetual tranquillitie. Promising after the said Charge and Letters to all people in general, and notifying from their said Lord, that (by Gods grace) there may be throughout the whole Land of *Moscowa*, tranquillitie, peace, and securitie.

To conclude, they pray heartily vnto the Lord God, to grant vnto his Maiestie in this business begun, a prosperous and speedy end.

Ruffes inno-
bancy.

This bus was vnto these disolute resolutions, or resolute disolutenesse, men onely constant in inconstancy, resolved vpon irresolution. As we often see sicke persons turning every way, and no way eaid; in the night time longing for day, and in the day for night; such was now 10 the *Russian* sicknesse, they would and they would not, and yet would againe, and againe would not, they fearely knew what or why; fluctuating in an inward storme of diuersified hopes, feares, desires, distracted affections, no lesse then in that outward broile of State. For it was not long that they looked toward *Poland*, whether for breach of conditions of that pact, or out of inueterate hate to the *Pole*, or their Nationall ialousie and distrust of Strangers, or a naturall inconstancy; they fell off from that Prince: and their Chancellor (Father to the now raigning Emperour) employed there with others in Embassage) were detayned thereupon prisoners. It is also reported that they made secret ouertures to his Maiestie of Great *Britaine*, and that *Sir Iohn Merrick*, and *Sir William Russell* were therein employed: but the strong conclusions and sharpe ages and agonies of that State could not, or would not endure the lingering of such remote p'inkies; the wheele of Things being whirled about before such a Treatie might admit a passage of Messengers to and fro. Once that *Russian* Head grew so lewdly and giddy, that at last it bred innumerable Heads, yea the whole Body became Heads in the womb of tyrannies, a popular (government shall I say?) or confusion. Neither were *Hypocrite* heads (monstrously multiplying two for each cut off) like this: for besides so many *Wor's* after the first hure of this *Hypocrite* (which might make vp that comparison) each limbe, nay almost each and were nothing but Numbers) became so many prodigious Heads; they also like *Pharisees* leane kine denouncing the *fast*, and vpon light pretences beheading themselves in cutting off the heads and nobler Persons amongst them.

Many-headed
body.

Insolent, A. 1613.

When they had thus made away almost all the *Grandes*, and left the South parts to the spoile of the *Poles*, which once againe were drawing neere to *Moscow* to besiege it; the *Poles* also suffered some disaster, their Soldiers mutinying for want of pay, and banding themselves to returne into *Poland*, there invaded the Mines and Custome-houses, and some governments, de- 30 troying them for their pay; sending also threatening Letters to diuers Cities and Townes, forced diuers Nobles and Plebeians to composition. The *Turkey* and *Tartars* brake likewise into *Wallachia*, *Moldauia*, and *Palmira*, so that *Rusky* or *Saukeny* the Generall was forced to goe against them, of whom he made so great a slaughter, that the *Great Turkey* committed the *Pole* Embassadour at *Constantinople* to Ward, and threatened the *Poles* with insolation. These mutinous Soldiers continued meane while that and the next yeere to spoile *Poland*, doing much damage to the King and the Bishops, challenging many millions due, as they said, for pay. Yea they passed further into *Prussia*, and made spoile in every place, on the eight of November 1613, passing with a great prey to *Thurn*, being parted into three Bands, the *Sapians*, the *Slovians*, and *Smolenskyans*. Another companie of them terrified *Silesia*. The *Tartars* likewise made impression and committed great spoile in *Podolia*.

Gods prodi-
gious permit
not the vicer
ruine of *Russia*.

Strange altera-
tion of affires
by a Butcher.

Foreign cho-
sen General,
and a Butcher
Treasurer.

Baris Licia.

Thus an Arme diuided could not conserue, nor to utterly exterminate *Russia* as otherwise opportunity was offered: the *Pole* Soldiers being heren like angry Elephants which sometime recoyle vpon their owne troups and doe more spoyle then the enemy could either have effected or expected. But while the Inuaders were thus inuaded, the *Ruffes* were forward to woyke those executions on themselves, which their enemies could haue wished to them; till at last a- 30 wakened with the horror of their owne euils, some began to thinke of a better course. In the North about the *Dvina*, a bold fellow, a Butcher, raying at the Nobilities basenesse, and the Officers corruptions, said, if they would chooe a good Treasurer and pay Soldiers will, they would first chooe a worthy General, for which place he recommended to a poore maymed Gentleman, called *Pecarsky*, who had done good seruice, but being neglected, now had tryed himselfe not faire off. The multitude approved the Butchers counsaile, and chose *Pecarsky* for their Leader, and that Butcher for a Treasurer, deliuering into his hands what money they had, which he so faithfully disbursed, *Pecarsky* also discharging so well the trust reposed, that a great Army was gathered, and the siege of *Moscow* thereby rayfed. And joining with *Knei Demetri* *Moscowitch* (a kind of *Tartar* which commanded an Army of *Cossaks* in ser- 60 vice of the *Ruffes*) they tell in consultation with *Boris Licia*, the third Great Soldier of that Country, vpon choise of an Emperour. Their mindes herein disagreeing (some naming one, some another) some named *Moscowitch* himselfe, other for further securitie against the *Poles*, and

and to recompence the sufferings and imprisonment of the *Russian* Chancellor in *Poland*, named his young Sonne *Micallowich*, vnder whose Empire (hauing a good Councell appointed) they might liue happily. This was first approved by the *Coffice*, and then by the other Armies, the Butcher also was taken to become a Councillor, and those three Leaders worshiped were made Militarie Commanders for the present Emperour against the *Poles*. Embassadours also were sent to diuers Princes to mediate betwixt them and the *Pole*, and betwixt them and the *Sweden*; and by his Majesty of Great *Britaine* (wom God long preferre to reigne ouer) his countenance and intercession, there hath bene some agreement, and the young Emperour hath settled his Dominions in peace, making at last a truce for fourteen yeeres with the *Poles*, obtaining 10 also in that Treatie his Father the Chancellour his libertie and returne out of *Poland*, who since is consecrated Patriarke of *Russia*.

Micallowich
Sonne to the
Chancellor
choien.

Our Kings me-
diation.
His Fathers
returne and
Patriarship.

His Embassadour to the Emperour came to *Lince*, in December 1613, and thence was conueighed by the Emperours Officers to the Court, where he had solemn audience, where after rich presents of Fures and his Letters, he deliuered his speech, that *Michael Phidrawitch* was now by unanimous consent advanced to the *Russian* Emperour, and willing to entertaine and con- 15 tinue the ancient confederacie betwixt both Empires: desiring the Imperiall Maiestie to deliuer the *Pole* from his vniult attempts, to deliuer the *Ruffe* Captiues, and not againe to infect the recouered *Moscow*, but to enter into peace, and abstayne from Christian bloodshed. Likewise to send an Embassadour to his Court, &c. This mediation *Cesar* promised, and gaue the Embassadour 20 liberal entertainment, and gentle dispatch.

Not long after in May 1614, the *Russian* Embassadour had audience with the States of the Vniued Prouinces at *Hage*, and before that in *England*, I was present both at his arrival at *Grandford*, and his honourable entertainment into *London*, and saw him also presently after the running at Tilt at White-hall, the foure and twentieth of March, admitted to his Maiesties presence, performing that *Russian* Rite of bowing with his face downe to or neere the ground, &c.

Anno 1615, The *Turkish* Embassadour treated with the *Casarean* Maiestie about the mediati- on betwixt the *Pole* and the *Muscowites*, who employed to that purpose *Erasmus Hendel* and the Baron of *Dobna*. The *Pole* notwithstanding sent an Army in his Sonnes challenge (who was 30 shortly to follow to *Smolensky*) into *Muscowia*, *Pentus Telogard* the *Sweden* Commander inflicting also the *Russians* at the same time. But the next yeere 1616, *Sir Iohn Merrick* Knight, a man of great experience in those Northerne parts, was employed his Maiesties Embassadour to negotiate betwixt those two Great Princes, the *Muscowites* and the *Sweden*, the Articles of whose composition I obtained by the mediation of *Sir Thomas Smith* (my ancient Benefactor in kind) and haue here communicated to thee, but in another Chapter as being now past our Tra- 40 gicke Thunders: as also the following *Russo-China* Newses, that you may see not only the face of *Russia* washed from her bloody pollutions, but her hands further then euer extended (fortunate in treaty of Commerce) as far as *China*: likewise the *Ruffe* Patent to the *Engliffe* Sweet is the name of Peace, and the thing it selfe a Heauen vpon Earth. BLESSED ARE THY PRACMA- 50 XERS (His Maiesties word else where, here his deed) for they shall be called (said the only begotten Sonne) the Children of God, when the God of peace will make them his heres of Heauen, which (mould of Duty) seeks to establish the peace of God vpon Earth. And let it not seeme tedious here to present these His Majesties Trauels, amongst other Trauellers, but in a more glorious manner (I ker to God vnumerable which moutheth all things) who hath not only bene our Sunne, and with lightsome heate and influence filled our *British* Hemisphere, but hath dispersed his bright rayes of Light, and warmed with sweet & picking beams of heat, those remoter frozen Climates of *Sweden* and *Russia* (not to mention, or but to mention the quarrels of *Denmarke* and *Sweden*) and after their long frostie Night (such is the nature, such was the state of those States) to reduce the faire day-light of Peace, the warmth wherof hath thawed the Ice hardened hearts 50 of Enmity and filled all things with sweets, and whereof a returning Spring. *Nexia salus bello, pacem te postremo omni.*

Sir I. Merrick
negotiation.
Sir Dudley Diggs
was also sent
Embassadour in
a troublesome
time, when he
could not win
his peace with
the *Russians*, in
the fift yeere
of *Micallowich*.

to be restrained from robberies. 21. For ending of quarrels, if any happen. 23. 24. Confirmation of former contracts, of *Tamsha* and *Wiburge*. 25. No private or publick practice to be dours of both sides. 27. Honorable conuoy for Ambassadors on either part. 28. And also for Interpreters free passage.

29. Item, It is agreed and concluded, that if by the permission and pleasure of God, there happens an alteration of government in Sweden or Russia, then that Prince which shall newly come to his government first, shall reuocate by his Ambassador to the other Prince from himselfe, and after that the other shall write him by his Ambassador.

30. Item, If it shall one at any time that both sides the Princes, as our great Lord, &c. & their great Lord King Guttavus Adolphus shall send one to the other their great Ambassadors, to confer of good matters, then these said great Ambassadors upon the borders shall meet without all controuersie or strife, sitting for them on both sides on the middle of the diuision of the borders, where they shall thinke most good matter in friendly and louing way, either by the Princes Commission or other commandment, as they shall thinke.

31. Item, If it happens that the Emperours Maiesties Subsellts and Merchants, their Boates, Ladies, and Merchants Voyages shall goe Reuell, Wybourgh, or other Townes and Castles of Swethen, Fynland or Lithuania, or ships and other Voyages, whereupon the Emperours Maiesties Ambassadors and Messengers shall beging to the Emperours Maiesties, to the Pope, to the Emperours Ambassadors done, by the Kingdom of Swethen, or coming backe againe bee call away and brought to the Swethen, thither upon the Salt Sea or the Lake of Lodiga, by tempest or other means, such people shall haue free liberty without hindrance to goe from thence with all the goods they can take or haue gotten with the Kings Maiesties Guttavus Adolphus, in like manner if it happen with the Kings Maiesties Guttavus Adolphus of Swethen, &c. Subsellts, and Merchants Boats, and Boares upon the Ladiga or Plecko Lake then these people shall haue free liberty to goe away with all their goods which they can take or haue gotten to be taken without fee or hindrance, and the Emperours Maiesties people shall helpe them to saue their goods.

32. Item, It is concluded and agreed, that our great Lord, &c. shall not ayde or assist against the Kings Maiesties of Sweden Guttavus Adolphus, and the Crowne of Swethland, the Kingdoms of Poland and Lettow, nor the Some Ladislaus and the Crowne of Poland, and the Dukedome of Lettow, nor all the Dominions of Poland and Lettow, nor shall helpe him with men or treasure, nor stand for him as one himselfe, nor any other Prince for him shall not practise or seeke any thing against the King of Sweden. These Lords and Castles which belong to the Kingdom of Sweden of old or those which now the Emperours Maiesties hath yielded to the Kings Maiesties by this conclusion of peace, he shall not seeke to get them under him, or haue possession of them. In like manner the Kings Maiesties of Sweden shall not stand against the Emperours Maiesties &c. to assist the King of Poland and Lettow, and all the Dominions of Poland and Lettow, neither with men nor treasure, and not to be with him as one, neither shall the Kings Maiesties by himselfe or other Princes and Governours seeke any practise against the Emperours Maiesties and his Lands and Castles which belong to the Emperours of Russia, he shall not seeke to get under him or possesse the same. It is also agreed and concluded betweene vs, that the Ambassadors which the Emperours Maiesties shall send to the Kings Maiesties, and the Kings Maiesties to the Emperours Maiesties, for the confirmation of this conclusion of peace, shall haue full authority to conferre betweene the Emperours Maiesties and the Kings Maiesties of Swethland for a union and ioynt assistance against Sigismund King of Poland, and the Crowne of Poland, and the great Dukedome of Lettow in such manner as shall be thought fit and requisite by both the Princes.

33. And for more certaine and firme assurance, that all this here hath been concluded, and agreed on betweene vs the above said Emperours Maiesties, and Kings Maiesties great, ample, and powerful Ambassadors, in his presence, this conclusion is made, established, and finished, and shall by our great Lord, and great Duke M.F. of all Russia, Sam. and by his successours, and hereafter being great Lords, Emperours, and great Dukes, be kept faithfully, firmly, and uncommenceable, and shall be followed in all parts, and finished without all falshood or deceipt: and our great Lords, Emperours, and great Dukes, &c. by his commandment, was his great Commissioners, Ochobchuev and Namestinncke of Sullall Knief Danyll Euanowich Metzskietz, I the Emperours Maiesties Duke, Micholich and Namestinncke of Shatsky Olexey Euanowich Zuzen. The Emperours Maiesties Duke, Micholich and Namestinncke tein Nouokleno. I the Emperours Maiesties Duke, Dobrenia Semson, haue confirmed this conclusion of peace, with the kissing of the Crosse, and thereunto set our hands and Seales: also the Kings Maiesties great Brittaines great Ambassadors, Sir Iohn Merricke Knight, Gentleman of his Maiesties private Chamber, for the more witnessing of the same, that this is also concluded here betweene vs, both firm with his own hand and Seale, with his obligations, and a confirmation, which were the Emperours Maiesties ample Ambassadors, haue given to the Kings Maiesties great Commissioners; and against that we haue taken the like writing of confirmation, from the Kings Maiesties great Ambassadors

Place of Ambassadors meeting.

Cafe of Shipwracke.

Neither party to aide the Pole &c.

Confirmation.

Names of the Commissioners.

dours. Written at Seaboo, in the years from the creation of the world 7125, the second hundred and ninth day of February.

Having here presented the fruits of his Maiesties mediation betweene the Ambassadors and Sweden: I thought good also to add this other testimony of Peace, in the peaceable fruits of his endeouours betwix the said King of Sweden and the King of Denmark, after many waies betwix them, in which the English Ambassadors were to grant a Part: of whom (if I mistake not) you haue thoughtfull the Dane, under the command of the right honorable the Lord Walsingham. The Articles of agreement betwix them are these, concluded January 16. 1619. translated out of the Danish Copie, Printed at Copenhagen first, and after at Amsterdam.

1. That the King of Sweden shall haue againe the Citie of Calmar, with all that belongeth vnto it, excepting Artillery, which shall be offered to the King of Denmark, or to be sold for his profit.
2. That the King of Denmark shall haue Elfsbooth and Oriland, with all the fortifications and strength of Arensborch, to possesse for the space of twelke yeeres ensuing, for the sum of fiftyfoure Ton of Gold; the which sum of money the King of Sweden shall paye unto the King of Denmark within the foresaid twelke yeeres, at certain times, in consideration of his charges during the said warres.
3. That the Navigation and passages by Seas and Land to Norway shall be used free without any hinderance of these of Sweden.
4. That Lapland shall be free without giuing of any contribution.
5. That the King of Denmark shall haue Gronelaud free without paying of any contribution vnto the King of Sweden.
6. That the King of Denmark shall haue the three Crowns without any giuing, saying, or contradiction of the King of Sweden (which was the first and principall cause of these foresaid bloody and vniuersally warres, and continuall irruptions.) Both Kings subscribe hereto.

CHAP. III.

Relation of two Russe Collichs translated, but of Siberia to Catay, and other Countreies adioyning thereto. Also a Copie of the last Letter from the Muscovite. A Copie of a Letter written to the Emperour from his Governour of Siberia.

Our Lord Emperour and great Duke Micholich, Exalted of all Russia, your Maiesties Vassals, Enns Karaman and Enns Karaman, the knockes their heads, &c. Lord this present 7127 yeeres (or 1619) we wrote your Maiesties by a Copie of Tobolsky, Glemens Oshkine, that there were come to Tobolsky Ambassadors out of the Dominions of Catay, and from the King of Altay, with the people of Tobolsky, English Pettin, and Ambassadors Madegone: And with them together due to you great Lord Ambassadors of Lohing and the Altay Choy, from Skopou with presents, the which we dispatch to your Maiesties, with Burgh Nigume, the first of July and before them were dispatched to your Maiesties English Pettin and Enns Karaman, by whom we last wrote your Maiesties a Letter from Tobolsky, King of Catay, and a Copie of the King Altay's Letter translated, with a Card and description of the places, which way English Pettin, &c. Ambassadors Madegone, passed from the Castle of Tuman, into the Dominions of Catay, as also in what other Dominions they were. The Letter it selfe which came from Altay Choy, Labachaphos doth carrie to your Maiesties: but as for the Letter out of Catay, these 15 names in Tobolsky to translate it.

The Copie of the Altay Chars, or golden Kings Letter to the Emperour of Russia.

To the Lord Emperour and great Duke: The golden King received your Letter. In former times (Lord) it came to my hearing, that your Princely good Ambassadors, did seeke a way or passage to come to me, since which time it is now thirtie yeeres, but then the people

Ambassadors from Catay and from the King of Altay, See page 169, 170, 171.

Note able to translate the Altay Chars.

Cattiff, or Pa-
triarcks.Lobes, or Friers
Communities
flaunting.Three King-
doms.
Oran.

Talguth.

Shir.

Blacke Magals,
or Cara Catay.
Streights in
Catay.
Walls of Catay.

Tower becoms

Cara Catay.

But five gates
in the wall.
Shirocalga.

Short Ord.

Tara.

Togh.

owne fashion. They have no Horses, only Mules & Asses in abundance; they till and plough their ground with great and small ploughes, as we doe in *Siberia* at *Tobolske*. Their *Cattiffs* are in our Language Patriarcks, and both in *Magalla* and *Catay* are but two *Cattiffs*; the one was aboute us twentye, and the other thirtie yeeres of age. Within the Churches are made for them high places with seats whereupon they sit: the King doth honour them with bowing downe before them. Their *Lobes* are in our Language Friers, which are shorne aboute twentie yeeres of age, and know no women from their Mothers wombe, they eat flesh continually every day, and have both Beards and Mustaches: their Garments are of Damask of all sorts and colours, and their Hoods yellow, they say that their Religion and ours are all one, only the *Ruffe* Monkes are blacke, and theirs white.

Beyond the Land of *Magalla* are three other Countreyes or Dominions, stretching towards *Beyher*, the one called *Oran*, the Kings name there is *Enaken*, the Citie is offstone, and the Kingdome rich.

The other is called Dominions of *Talguth*, the Kings name is *Samelanche*, his Citie are also of stone, and his Kingdome rich.

The third Countrey where the chiefe Citie is, is called *Shir*, and the King thereof is called *Zellewney*, or Iron King, his Kingdome is rich, and not farre from *Beyher*. From this Iron King come Diamonds, and all these three Kingdomes are vnder the South, and on the other side of the blacke *Magalla* are the yellow *Magalla*, stretching all along the Sea, aswell Townes as walking people, with their Families and Herds.

From the Countrey of *Magalla*, where the Dutcheffe *Manchaka* dwelleth, to the Citie of *Shirocalga* in *Catay*, is two dayes trauell on horsebacke; and the bordering or frontier wals stand vnder the South towards *Beyher*, two moneths trauell, all made of Bricke of fiftene fathome high, whereupon they told about a hundred Townes in sight, on both sides of them, but towards *Beyher*, and towards the Sea, the Townes are not to be nummied, and every Towre standeth from another about a right shot distant. The said wall stretcheth downe towards the Sea four moneths trauell. The people of *Catay* say, that this wall stretcheth along from *Beyher* to the Sea, and the Townes vpon it stand very thicke; it was made, as they say, to be a border betwene *Magalla* and *Catay*. The Townes vpon it are to the end, that when any enemy appeareth, to kindle fire vpon them, to give the people warning to come to their places where they are appointed vpon the wall. At the entering without the wall dwell the blacke *Magals*; and within is the Countrey and Citie of *Catay*. In the wall to *Catay* are five gates, both low, and straight there is no more in all the wall; there all manner of people passe into the Citie of *Shirocalga*.

Within the borders or wall is a Citie or Castele of people passe into the Citie of *Shirocalga*. The Governour thereof is called Duke *Shim*, who is sent thither for a time from *Tamboo King of Catay*, the Castele is very high walled and artificially built; the Townes are higher after the manner of *Mafso* Castele, in the Loops-holes or Windowes are Ordnance planted, as also vpon the Gates or Townes their Ordnance is but short, they have also great store of small shot, and the Watchmen every-where vpon the Gates, Townes, and Wals, well appointed; and as soon as they perceiue the Sunne rising downe, the Watch dishcergeth their Peeces of Ordnance thrice, as also at the break of day in the morning, they dishcer their pieces thrice, and doe not open the Castele Gates till the first going downe of the day. Within the Castele are shops built of stone, and painted cunningly with diuers colours, wherein they have all manner of Merchandizes, as Veluets, Damaskes, Dorogoes, Taffates, Cloth of Gold, and Tissue of diuers colours, sundry sorts of Sugars, Cloues, &c. in the Governours house is a strong Watch of *Parfaw* and Halberds, and their Drummes made like great Barrells. When the Governour goeth abroad, they carry a Canope ouer him, and make way before him with Rods, as before our Emperour in *China*.

And from *Shirocalga* to the Citie *Tara* is three dayes trauell: this Citie is large, built of stone, and the circuit of it is two dayes trauell, with many Townes, and four Gates to come in at, the Markets in the Citie are well and richly accommodated, with Jewels, Merchandizes, Groceries, or Spices, the Citie well inhabited having no place void or waste in it. The houses and shops are built with stone, with streets betwene; the Governours here are called Duke *Shim* and Duke *Lachaka*, these they have Post Stages as we, their Markets have a very odoriferous smell with Spices.

And from this Citie, to a Citie called *Togh*, is three dayes journey, it is built of stone, large, and high walled, & is in compasse two daies trauel about, at the first coming to it are five gates barred and belted with iron, very thicke and close, fastned with Nails; the houses and shops, or Ware-houses are all built of stone, wherein are all manner of Merchandizes, Spices, or Groceries, and precious things more abundant then in the afore said Citie, they have Tauernes or Drinking houses fastned with all manner of Drinckes, as *Aquana*, Meade, and Wines from beyond Seas in abundance, there they have also their Watch, Ordnance, and Munition in great sort; the Governours of this place are one Duke *Toga*, and the other Duke *Zemio*, there were five *Siamon*, Annifeeds, Apples, Artubozes, Melons, Cucumbers, Onions, Garlicke, Radish, Carrets,

Parfaw.

Parlenips, Turnops, Cabbage, Limons, Poppleeds, Nutmegs, Rice, Almonds, Pepper, Rubarbey, & many other Fruits, which we know not, so that they want nothing whatsoever groweth in the World; the shops are within the Citie, stored of all manner of Commodities as is said, as also victualling and drinking Houses, stored with all manner of Drinckes, where they have also Diccers and Whores, as with vs. Their Prisoners in the Citie are of stone, for the chiefe they hang the Diccers, and for Robberie or Murther they take the Murtherers, or else head them.

And from *Shirocalga* to a Citie of *Catay*, called *Shiroan* is a dayes journey; this Citie is built of stone high walled, and large in compasse, it is a dayes trauell, it hath twelve Townes; whereupon, as also on the Citie Gates is planted Ordnance and small shot great store, with a continuall Watch or Guard, night and day at the first coming are five Gates well furnished with Ordnance and Warlike Munition; and from one Gate to the other through the Citie is halfe a dayes going. The Governour of this place is called Duke *Samuk*. For Victuals and Merchandizes, here is more then in the Citie mentioned, all their shops very full, and the Citie so populous, that one can hardly passe the streets for the throng of people. The Ambassadors Houses are also faire built of stone, their Walls couered with Brasse, so that this Citie is adorned more with precious things then the former mentioned, and much more populous.

Now from the Citie of *Togh*, to a Citie called *White Castele*, is two dayes trauell: this Citie is built of white stone, and thereof hath his name, it is high walled and large, being in compasse or circuit three dayes trauell, the first entry it hath three Gates vnder one Towre, the Gates are high and wide with strong Iron barres; and the Gates fastned with Iron Nayles whitened with Tine, it hath great Ordnance in the Gates and Townes: two Peeces carrying forth of two Poole weight, the shops within the Citie reach from Gate to Gate, and between the streets paved with stone, all their shops and houses are built of stone before their shops. They have greatest painted cunningly, with all manner of colours, flowers and such like, and vpon the Gates are the houses painted cunningly with Pictures and flowers in diuers colours, and the painting within is vpon Pavement adorned with Damask and flowers; here is more abundance of Riches and Commodities then in any of the Cities afore mentioned. The Governours names here were Duke *Togman*, and Duke *Salen*.

From this white Citie, or Castele, to the greatest Citie of all *Catay*, called *Catay*, is two dayes journey, where the King himselfe dwelleth, it is a very great Citie, built of white stone four square, and in compasse it is four dayes journey, vpon every corner thereof are very great Towers high built, and white, and along the wall are very faire and high Townes, like with white and intermingled with Blue or Azure, vpon the Gates, Wall, and Townes, the Loops-holes or Windowes are well furnished with Ordnance, and a strong Watch. In the midst of this white Citie (lantheth a Castele built of *Magnet*, or Load-stone, wherein the King himselfe dwelleth, called *Tamboo*; this Castele standeth so in the midst of this Castele, that every way you have halfe a dayes going to it from the Gates, through the streets which hath stone shoppes on both sides with all manner of Merchandizes; vpon their shops they have their houses built of stone, cunningly painted more then the former Citie. The Castele of *Magnet* is curiously set forth with all manner of artificiall and precious devices, in the midst thereof standeth the Kings Palace, the top whereof is all gilt with white Gold, and the King would not admit vs to come before their King without Presents, saying, it was not the manner of *Catay*, to come before their King without some Present, and though (said they) your white Emperour had but sent with his first Ambassadors to our King some thing of no great value, our King would have sent him many precious things, and dismissed you his Ambassadors honourably, and have sent his Ambassadors with you: but now hee only sendeth his Letter to your Emperour. The Citie of *Catay*, where the King dwelleth, is built vpon an even plane ground, and is incomparable round about with a Riuert called *Toga*, which falleth into the blacke Sea, which is from the Citie *Catay* four dayes trauell, so that there come no ships neerer the Citie *Catay*, then seven dayes trauell off, but all things are transported in small Vessels and ship-boats. The Merchandizes the King doth fend into all parts of his Dominions of *Catay*, and from thence are carried out the borders, into the Land of *Magalla*, to the King *Almo*, to the blacke *Kolmeki*, to the Iron King, into *Beyher* and other Dominions, their Patriarcks and Friers, trauell with the Commodities, as Veluets, Sattens, Damaskes, Siluer, Leopard Skins, Turkeffies, and blacke Zenders, for which they buy Horses, and bring them into *Catay*, for in *Catay* they are but few horses, only Mules and Asses, and Clot: they have none, their Horses and Siluer goeth into strange Countreyes, or as they say, *Nemsky*, the Siluer is made in Bricks, which they call *Krisp*, valued each *Krisp* at three two Rubles, their Apparell they wear with long broad hanging leenes, like the Gentlewomens Summer-coats of *Letting* in *Russia*, the people are very faire but not warlike, timorous & soft their endour is in great and rich traffick. They told vs that not long

before our coming, the people of *Magalla* had taken two Casteles from them by deceit, also themselves of their journey admit not. Perhaps this chiefe Citie was but the chiefe of that Province where the Vice-roy resided, and they were willing to make the most of their travels *Russia* side. Yet the needfull of the Sea, there also caught (I suppose) rather than these Russes entered *China* but a little way, and recouered the Vice-roys Letter only (there obtained with Regall Rites) and had much by Reason, of distastle which they tell. How can I haue offered this to my view as more iudiciall to vs, they

more iudgment.

Vuu 2

they

shall suffer them to pass with their goods in and out, without doing them any manner of hindrance.

And whosoever any of the said English Merchants or Factors shall have occasion to find outland, one of our Dominions, any of other people, or Servants, into their own Countries overseas, they shall pass by this our special command, and they are to take a passe letter from our Chancellour of the Office of Embassie.

And whosoever in any of our Cities, shall have any matter against the English Merchants, by way of contention, we command that none of our Governours, nor others of our Officers, the Judges, the English Merchants, their Factors or people, neither shall they find Officers, for them, except by the order of our Council, and that all suits to be done, but by themselves, and that they shall not be troubled by the English Merchants, their Factors and people, shall only have trial, and be judged in our Trustable City of Moscow, and no other place in Russia, and he who takes their cause, and is true justice between both parties, according to equity and right; and where the truth cannot be found out by Law, it shall be referred to a suit and lot, and in whom favour the lot falls, to him shall the right be adjudged.

And if any of the English Merchants, in any of our Cities within our Kingdoms, do complain of any wrong offered them by our people, for debts growing by trade or otherwise: we command our Governours, and all other our credible people, that they perfectly minister true justice unto them. And for any wrong or other matter of contention to the English Merchants, that come against any of our Subjects, our Governours and other our authorized people upon their complaint, for all controversies (matters of debt excepted) shall give our Subjects no offending upon justice, setting them down to appear at Moscow, to answer the same with the English Merchants, face to face, before our Chancellour in the Office of Embassie; and in these matters, our Chancellour shall truly examine the business, and minister true justice: and when by examination cannot be found, as before, to each and to the Judges, and justices through our Dominions shall take no knowledge of the English Merchants, for their matters of Law.

We will and command, that these our Imperiall gracious Letters of privilege, be strictly observed in all points in all parts of our Dominions, and by all our Subjects, Governours, Secretaries, and other Officers, without disobeying in any thing.

And whosoever shall not obey this our Privilege and gracious Letters of privilege, but shall offer wrong to the English Merchants, whose our Subjects shall be with us in our high displeasure.

These our gracious Letters of privilege, are sealed with our Imperiall Seal of Gold in our Princely Palace of our Imperiall City of Moscow, in the year from the Worlds creation 7129, in the month of May, the eleventh day.

Subscribed by our Imperiall Majesty Chancellour of our Office of Embassie, and our princely Chancellour Eitan Corbacevich Gramotin.

It is in now high time to leave Russia, and all the Barbarous shores of Smootes and Tartars, and they will borrow help of some Barbarians, to stoppe vs: thence to Sea. And although Finch, Courdon, and others have in the former Booke informed vs great feare: yet seeing Master Math hath entered-40
tained at our guides, we will take Sea by Ob, and thence for forth on further discoveries.

CHAP. XII.

Notes concerning the discovery of the River of Ob, taken out of a Roll, written in the Russian tongue, which was attempted by the means of ANTONIE MARKSH, a chiefe Factor for the Moscovite Company of England, 1584. with other notes of the North-east.



If he wrote a Letter from the Citie of Mosco, in the year 7092, after the Russe accompt, which after our accompt was the year 1584. unto four Russe that wold to trade from Colomo to Pebera, and other parts Eastward: whose answer was:

By writings received from thee, as also by reports, we understand thou wouldest have vs: take out the mouth of the River Ob, which we are content to chimeas, or companies; and each Cochima must have ten men: and we must goe by the River Pebera upwards in the Spring, by the side of the Ice, as the Ice swimmeth in the River, which will take a fortnightes time; and then we must fall into Onow River, and fall downe with the stream before we come to Ob, a day and a night in the Spring. Then it will hold vs eight dayes to swimme downe the River Ob, before we come to the mouth: therefore send vs a man that

How to find
out Ob from
Pebera River.

can write; and assure thy selfe the mouth of Ob is deepe. On the Russe side of Ob, Sitouane Samouds, called Ogarikal & Siberskie Samouds; and on the other side dwell another kinde of Samouds, called Mongani, or Mongolitsky Samouds. We must passe by five Castles that stand on the River of Ob. The name of the first is Tefan Goryedok, which standeth upon the mouth of the Ruer Pava. The second small Castle is Neforo Goryedok, and it standeth hard by the side of Ob. The third is called Nieboien-gesky. The fourth is Charemadna. The fifth is Nefedjeda, that is to say, The Castle of comfort, or trise, and it standeth upon the River Ob, lowermost of all the former Castles toward the Sea.

Heretofore your people have bin at the said River of Ob mouth with a Ship, and there was to make shipwracke, and your people were slaine by the Samouds, which thought that they came to rob and subdue them. The Treesthat grow by the River are Firres, and a kinde of white, soft and light Firre, which we call Tilk. The banks on both sides are very high, and the water not swift, but still and deepe. Fish there are in it as Sturgeons, and Cheri, and Pidle, and Nelm, a dainty fish like white Salmones, and Moucou, and Sipi, and Sterid; but Salmones there are none. Nor furre distant from the mine, at the mouth of Ob, there is an Island, whereon resort many wilde beasts, as white Bayres, and the Muskbeard fish like. And the Samouds kill what is in the winter season, they occurrins, fide the River teeth. If you would have vs travell to decke the mouth of Ob by Sea, we must goe by the Isles of Vagay, and Noma Zembla, and by the Land of Marphome, that is, by Mathewes Land. And assure thy selfe that from Vagay, to the mouth of Ob by Sea, is but a small matter to sayle. Written at Pebera, the year 7092, the twenty one of February.

Master MARKSH also learned the distances of places from Caninos to Ob by Sea.

From Caninos to the Bay of Mademsky (which is somewhat to the East of the River Pebera) is seven dayes sayling. The Bay of Mademsky is ouer a day and a halfe sayling. From Mademsky to Caravans, is sixe dayes sayling. From Caravans Bay to the farthest side of the River Ob, is nine dayes sayling. The Bay of Caravans is from side to side, a day and a nights sayling.

He learned another way by Noma Zembla and Marphome Tar to Ob, more North-westward. From Caninos to the land of Vagay, is a day & a nights sayling. From Vagay to Noma Zembla are two dayes sayling. There is a great Ofera or Lake upon Noma Zembla, where wonderful store of Geese and Swannes doe breede, and in moulting time call their feathers, which is about Saint Peters day; and the Russe of Calowg repair thither yearly, and our English men venter thither with them severall faires in money they bring home great quantitie of Douce Feathers, dried Swannes, and Geese, Beares skintes, and Fish, &c. From Narvsky Roca or River to Marphome Tar, is sixe dayes sayling. From Marphome Tar to the Perovskiy Temple, that is to say, To the warme pillage-cour-loud, coming of sayling round about the Sands, is thirteene dayes sayling: And there is upon the Sands a full Sea, seven fathomes water, and two fathomes at a low water. The occasion of this highing of the water, is the falling into the Sea of the three Rivers, and the meeting of the two Seas, to wit, The North Sea, and The East Sea, which make both high water and great Sands. And you must beware that you come not with your Shippes neere unto the land by the River Ob. From Marphome Tar to this land, is five dayes sayling. Marphome Tar is in some parts fortie Versts out, and in some parts not paxix Versts out.

The aforesaid Antonie Marthe sent one Bodan his man, a Russe borne, with the aforesaid four Russe, and a young youth, a Samoud, which was likewise his Servant, upon the discovery of the River of Ob, by Land, through the Countrie of the Samouds, with good store of commodities to trade with the people. And these his Servants made a rich Voyage of it, and had bartered with the people about the River of Ob, for the value of a thousand rubles in fables, and other fine Fures. But the Emperour having intelligence of this Discovery, and of the way that Bodan returned home by, by one of his chiefe Officers lay in waite for him, apprehended him, andooke from him the aforesaid thousand Markes worth of Sables, and other Merchandises, and delivered them into the Emperours Treasurie, being sealed up, and brought the poor fellow Bodan to the Citie of Mosco, where he was committed to prison, and whipped, and there detained a long while after, but in the end released. Moreover, the Emperours Officers asked Antonie Marthe, how he durst presume to deale in any such enterprise? To whom he answered, that by the priviledges granted to the English Nation, no part of the Emperours Dominions were exempted from the English to trade and traffike in: with which answer, they were not so strickled, but that they gave him a great cheque, and forfeited all the aforesaid thousand Markes worth of goods, charging him not to proceede any further in that action: whereby it seemeth they

Whith and Siberskie

An Island at the mouth of Ob.

The way to find out Ob by Sea is Mathewes Land after our file 1584.

Caninos, Mademsky, Caravans, Ob.

Caninos, Calowg, Noma Zembla.

Narvsky, Marphome Tar.

The Sands.

The two Seas that is, the North and the East Sea. The bignes of the Cliffe or Ile of Marphome.

Antonie Marthe intended of his men upon the discovery of Ob by land with four Russe. Bodan Marthe Marthe his man brought to Mosco.

Russe ielousie of discovery.

they are very jealous that any Christian should grow acquainted with their Neighbours that border to the North-east of their Dominions, for that there is some great secret that way, which they would reserve to themselves only. Thus much I understood by Master Christopher Helme.

The report of Master FRANCIS CHERRY a Moscow Merchant, and Master THOMAS LYNDE touching a warme Sea to the South-east of the River Ob, and a Neit of FRANCIS GAYLLE.

After Francis Cherry, one of the chief Merchants of the *Moscow Company*, which was the Emperour Ivan Basilovich his Interpreter, and hath resided in peregrino into Persia farre to the East in *Russia*, saith, That he hath eaten of the Sturgeon fish caught out of the River of Ob. And that in those parts it is a common received speech of the *Russis* that are great travellers, that beyond Ob to the South-east there is a warme Sea. Which they ascribe in these words in the *Russe* tongue; *Za Ob yeca moria Tsupla*, that is to say, *Beyond the River Ob is a warme Sea*. Furthermore, Master Thomas Lynde an honest and discreet *Englishe* Merchant, which hath likewise lived many yeeres in those parts of *Moscow*, saith, That this Sea beyond Ob, is by the report of the *Russis*, that are travellers, of warme, that all kinde of Sea fowles live there as well in the Winter as in the Summer, which report argueth, that this Sea pierceth farre into the South parts of *Asia*.

A warme Sea beyond Ob.

Master Thomas Lynde.

Third Volume of *Englishe Voyages*, page 44.

Francis Gaylle that passed the Ocean between *Japane* and *Nova Hispania*, in the Latitude of 37. degrees and a halfe, writeth thus. Prouing a great Sea to come from the North-east parts of *Tartaria*; running thus East and East by North about three hundred leagues from *Japane*, we found a very hollow water, with the streame running out of the North and North-west, with a full and very broad Sea, without any trouble or hindrance in the way that we pass. And what while fouer blue, the Sea continued all in one fort with the same hollow water and streame, untill we had passed seven hundred leagues. About two hundred leagues from the Coast of *New Spaine* we began to lose the said hollow Sea, whereby I perswade my selfe that there you shall finde a Channell or strait passage betwene the firme Land of *New Spaine* and the Countrie of *Asia* and *Tartaria*. We found all this way Whales, Tunnies, Bonusses, which are fishes that keepe in Channells, Straits, and running Waters, there to disperse their seede, which further confirmeth me in that opinion.

See of these voy. see. Hist. Tom.

But seeing thus we are stopped from *Russia*, and have againe taken Sea; which hee permitted us to Stephen Burrough, Pet and Lackman, nor others, *Englishe* and *Dutch*; which have attempted that North-east passage; and that which Master Babo said to us, that if he might have employment, he would adventure to discover from the Coast of China and Japan to the North of *Asia* backward; all this shall be suddenly permitted to our Brother and vnsuspected thoughts, to set us in a new discovery by *Danish* and *Englishe* assistance for a North-west passage; often, not so fortunately attempted, as by *Russians* is seemeth probable and almost certain, especially that way where Sir Th. Button and Nelson left. But we will discover these Discoveries more methodically and bettering to you; that you may see the *Englishe* ancient right, as I may say, to those parts of the new World.

CHAP. XIII.

Discoveries made by *Englishe* men to the North-west: *Voyages of Sir Sebastian TIAN CABOT, Master THORNE, and other Ancients: and of Master WYEMOUTH.*



Where before given some light of the North-west, in *Hindost* and other mens Voyages. The desire of Riches in some of Knowledge in others, hath long tempted mens industry, to find out a more compendious way to the East Indies, by a shorter cut then the vintall passage, which in going to the places of principall Trade there, and the returning thence by enforced compassings, is made no lesse a Voyage for time, cost, danger and labour, then the immediate compassing of the whole Globe, as in Master *Candlishes* circumnavigation (not to mention others) is evident. But if either by the North-east, or North-west, or North, a passage be open, the fight of the Globe (the Image of the site of the World) easily sheweth with how much ease, in how little time and expence the same might be effected, the large Lines or Meridians vnder the Line containing fixe hundred miles, con-

contracting themselves proportionably as they grow neerer the Pole, where that vast Line and Circumference it selfe becomes (as the whole Earth to Heaven, and all earthly things to heavenly) no Line any more, but a Point, or Nothing, but Vanitie. Hence such laborious searches from *Columbus* first discovery (that also occasioned by a conceit of finding the East by the West, whereupon he named *Hispaniola* *Ophir*, thinking he had then arrived at the East Indies) especially the *Englishe*, started commodiously for that discovery, and to reigne over the Northern and Western Ocean, have herein bene more then industrious.

Doctor Powell in his historie of *Males* saith, that *Males* some of Owen Guyneth left the Land in contention betwixt his brethren, and prepared certaine Ships with men and munition, and sought about 10 centuries by Sea, saying West, and leaving the Coast of Ireland for *farre North*, that hee came once a Land unknown, where he saw many strange things. There hee lived many of his people *an. 1170.* and returned for more of his owne Nation and Friends to inhabit that large Countrey, going the second time dither with ten sailles. This western Land is like to be some part of the West Indies, though the vniuersall languages of those parts make it questionable where. But hee which teach how some of our *Englishe* in small time have growne wilde in Ireland, and become in language and qualities *Irish*, few of whom doe in exchange become ciuillized and *Englishe* (even as healthfull men are easier infected in a contagious aire, then sick men recovered in that which is wholesome and found) will not wonder that in so many Ages the halfe ciuillized *Welsh*, amongst *Barbarians*, without succcession of Priests and entrecoore of ciuile parties, might wholly put on fennish. *Mervell* 20 *an Rife a Wells* Poet, which lived before *Columbus* had begun his discovery, hath thus verities.

Some think that the *Mexican King* (the last professed that they were *Spanishe*) were descended.

Males vsq; mythe wold, leon Geron, Owen Gwyned
Ni, sinnum dir, fy enaid oidd Na da Mawr, and y mervell. that is.

Males I am the sonne of *Owen Gwyned*, With stature large and comely grace adorned,
No lands at home nor store of wealth me please, My mind was whole to search the Ocean fenn.

Columbus also lent his brother *Barthelemy* to King *Henrie* the seventh, to make offer of his service in the New-Worlds discovery, which fell by the way into the hands of *Pinza*, whereupon poetrie assaulted him with tickleness in a forsaie Countrey, so that hee was forced to get some what about him by making of Maps: one whereof had this more ancient then elegant inscription.

Lousa cui patria est, nomen cui Bartholomeus
Columbus de Terra Rubra, opus dedit istud
Indulgenti An. Domini 1480. oct. 15. inferius anno
Octavo decimo, die cum terra mensis
Februarii, Landas Christi centener abunde.

Whole Countrey *Gennas* is, whose name *Barthelemy*
Colom de Terra Rubra, this worke set forth new
At *London*, A thousand four hundred eightie
Februaire thirteenth, sing praise to *Christ* on height.

One of these Maps hee presented to King *Henrie* with the said offer, who cheerfully accepted the same, and sent to call his brother into *England*, who before hee could effect it, was employed 40 by the Kings of *Castile*.

Columbus his fortunes awakened others industrie, amongst the rest *John Cabota a Venetian*, and his three times *Lewis, Sebastian, and Saucini*, who obtained a Patent of King *Henrie* the seventh for discovery with five ships with *Englishe* Masters, Mariners, and Colours; also, the lame to erect in whatsoeuer Lands unknowne before to Christians, to hold the same to them and their Heires *Sec Hist. tom. 3.* as Vassals and Lieutenants to the Crowne of *England*, paying the fifth part of their gaine at *Windsor*, 8cc.

In the yeere 1497. *John Cabot* a Venetian, and *Sebastian his sonne* (these are the wordes of the great Map in his Maiesties prime Gallerie, of which *Sebastian Cabot* is often therein called the Author, and his Picture is therein drawne, with this Title, *Effigies Sebasti. Caboti Angli, filij Jo. Ca. 50* *Venetiani, Militis Auaris, &c.*) discovered that Land which no man before had attempted *Inv. 24.* about five in the morning. This Land he called *Prima vista* (primum vium, or first (seeing) because some say, was taken out of *Sir John Cabots* Land, because on that first day it was discovered. The Inhabitants were beastes skins and as much as seemed them, as we doe garment; most precious. In their warret, they use Bowes, Arrows, *Tricks*, *Darts*, Clubs of wood and Slings. The felle is barren in fruit, and yett little fruit, but it is full of white Beares and Slings, and small creatures. It aboundeth with Fishes and the great, in *Seals* and *Salmons*; *Sales* also are alle long. Especially there is great store of these fishes which they call commonly *Bacallas*. There breed also *Hawkes* as blacke as *Ravens*, *Partridges* and blacke Eagles.

Thus wee see *New-found Land* discovered by *Englishe* Ships, Mariners and jurisdiction. *Sir Sebastian Cabot*, for his *Englishe* breeding, conditions, affection and advancement, termed an *Engl. Rans/Town*. *Englishe* man, thus reported of this voyage; That upon occasion of the admiration of *Columbus* his voyage into the East, where Spices grew, by the West, to rise then in the Court of King *Henrie* *Sec Hist. tom. 3.* the seventh, there arose in his heart a great desire to attempt some notable thing. And wonder. 1497. (standing

All the Coast
to Florida dis-
covered by the
English: from
67. deg. 30. mi.
as he writ to
Ramusio, R. 17.
fat. Tom. 3.
as likewise he
was cause of
the Russian and
Greenland dis-
coveries.

See *sup.*, 1, 2, c, 3.

W. P. Bridges.

Thorn and Elie
first finders of
America.

Master Robert Thornecotes, that his Father and Alfather *High English*, have been, were the fitt discoverers of New-found Land: so that the Mariners would have seen, and followed their Pilots minde, the West Indes had beene ours: so that it seemeth this Discourse was before that of *Columbus*. Master *Hackys* hath published the particulars of these things to which I referre the Reader; and no lesse for the North-west of *Stir Humphry* *High English* and others parts: three by *Stir Martin Freshbery*, in the yeres 1576, 77, and 78. *Stir Estaine Land* 30 *Danier*, in 86, and 87, that of *Mater Hore*, An. 1516, that of *Stir Humphry* *High English* 88; that of *Mater Charles Leigh* to *Ramea*, An. 1597, and before in 1593; that of *George Drury*, with those of *Jacques Carier*, and others divers. My purpose is not to steale *Mater Hackys* labour, but by this Index to instruct men where they may have feallible *Roots* to follow, and to give them new thoughts. Such are to the World, these that you had before in *Hudsons* voyage, that I have new thoughts of *Greenland*: and such are those of *Weymouth*, *Knights*, *Bay*, *Raffin*, &c. And first, as for man of our Q. self, we will give you *Stir Humphry Gilberts* Letter, written with his owne hand from *New-found*, and wherof he tooketh forth publick use to the Crowne of England, and was as a voyage, and a greater in one of longer life, his was *for George Perleham* (a great Adventurer in that 40 *Mater Hackys* third Time) and I have here inserted, it being labour unpriuced, and the use of both their words; and after it (though in time before) we will recreate you with a plaine Mariners Letter endorsed in homely phrase, To the Honourable Kings Grace of England, here (as the first of *George Perleham* Originall. I have also another written to Cardinall *Wolf* toucht touching the voyage in Latin, *Stir Martin Freshbery*, *Stir Estaine Land*, *Stir George Drury*, for the antiquitie, rather than any remarkable vertue, worthy here to be mentioned.

St George, I departed from Plymouth on the eleventh of June with five ships, and on the thirteenth the Barke Rawley ran from me by fire and clear weather, bearing a large wind. I pray you forgive my brother Rawley to make him the ruler of all Knees. On the third of August we arrived at a Port called Saint Johns, and will put in for some time, (God willing) so soon as our ships will be ready. Of the New-Found Land I will say nothing, until I have written the Letters. Be of good cheer, for there were no better expectation, it was a very rich country, the Country being very good and full of all sorts of vittuals, as fish both of the fresh water and Sea-fish, Deer, *Phasian*, *Pheasant*, *Partridges*, *Swallows*, and *sniers* *Fowls* etc. I am in halfe, you shall by every Messenger bring more at large. On the fifth of August, I entered here on the right of the Crown of England; and have engraven the Arms of En. Land, *divers* Spaniards, Portugals, and other Strangers, watching the same. I can say no longer; fare ye well from my good Lady; and be of good cheer, for I have comforted my self, unfavourable to all my hopes. From Saint Johns in the New-Found Land, the 8 of August, 1583.

Yours wholly to command, no man more

HVM. GILBART.

19

[illegible]

By your servant *John Rat*, to his vttermost
of his power.

I have by me also *Alberto de Prato's* original Letter, in Latin stile, almost as harsh as the former *Englishe*, and bearing the same date, and was indorset, *Remised*, in *Christo Patris Dominici*, *Dominio Cardinali* & *Dominio Legato Anglie*; and began, *Reuerendissimi in Christo Patris Saluati*, *Reuerendissimi* (since *Pater* placet: *Reuerendissimi* *paternitatis* *uocatio*, *fide*, *De* *suauitate* *persequens* *eximius* *a* *Plenius* *quo* *fuit* *x*. *lunij* *q*. (the fullness is the same with the former, and therefore omitted) *Datum* *apud* *de* *Baya* *Saint* *Iobani* *in* *Terris* *Nouis*, *die* *x*. *Augusti*, *1527*. *Reuer. P. atr.* *uof.* *humiliss.* *seruus*, *Albertus de Prato*. (the name written in the lowest corner of the sheet.)

50 *The voyage of Captain GEORGE WREYMOUTH, intended for the
discovery of the North-west Passage toward China,
with two fine Boats.*

ON Sunday the second day of May, 1602, in the afternoon, I weighed anchor and set sail from Redcliffe with two Fly-boats, the one called the *Discovery*, of fourteen Tunnage, and the other called the *Godspeed*, of sixtie Tunnage, to discover the North-west passage, hauing in my ships five and thirtie men and boyes, thoroughly vidual and abundantly furnished with all necessities for a year and an halfe, by the right Worshipfull Merchants of the *Majestie and Twelve Companies*: where for the better facilitie the Voyage promised me of a great traualler and soldier, the honorable Sir *Robert Cecil*, my Lord *Chancery*. The latter was called the *Godspeed*, and was commanded by *William Cobergh*, a skillfull man in his profession; and in the *Godspeed*, one *John Drewe*, and Mate in the said ship one *John Lane*.

The first of June, we descried *Bughanmes* in the Latitude of 57. degrees. The second day we saw the Point of *Bughanmes* North-west from us, being a very smooth land; and the land

*Most. and Tur-
kie Compa-
nies.*
Master *Car-
wright* had bin
in *Persia* and
Turkie. See the
former Tome,
Buquhannet.

Mutinie.

The same night following, all our men conspired secretly together, to bear up the helme for England, while I was asleep in my Cabin, and there to have kept me by force, & until I had sworn unto them, that I would not offer any violence unto them for so doing. And indeed they had drawn in writing, the causes of their bearing up of the helme, and thereunto set their hands, and would have left them in my Cabin; but by good chance I understood their pretence, and prevented them for that time.

The twentieth day, I called the chieft of my Company into my Cabin, before Master *Carver*, our Preacher, and our Master, *William Cole*, to hear what reason they could alledge for the bearing up of the Helme, which might be an overthrow to the Voyage, seeing their reasons in writing.

Concluding, that although it were granted, that we might winter between 60 and 70 degrees of latitude, with latitude of our lues and Vessels, yet it will be May next before we can dislodge them, to launch out into the Sea. And therefore if the Merchants should have purpose to proceede on the discovery of these North-west parts of America; the next year you may be in the foresaid latitudes for England, by the first of May, and so be furnished better with men and victuals, to pass and proceede in the foresaid season.

Seeing then that you cannot assure us of a safe harbour to the Northward, we purpose to bear up the Helme for England; yet with this limitation, that if in your wisdom you shall thinke good to make any discovery, either in 60 or 57 degrees, with this faire Northwesterly wind, so we yield our lues with your selfe, to encounter any danger. Thus much we thought needful to signify, as a matter builded upon reason, and not proceeding upon feare or cowardise.

68. deg. 55. min.

Then, we being in the latitude of 68. degrees and 55. minutes: the next following, about cleven of the clocke, they bare up the Helme, being all so bent, that there was no means to perwade them to the contrary. At last understanding of it, I came forth of my Cabin, and demanded of them, who bare up the Helme? They answered me, One and All. So they hoisted up all the sayles they could, and directed their course South and by West.

They returned to the North.

Mutinie punished.

The two and twentieth, I sent for the chieft of the ship, to see the cause of the bearing up of the Helme, and punished them severely, that this punishment might be a warning to them afterward for falling into the like mistake. In the end, upon the intreatie of Master *Carver*, our Preacher, and the Master, *William Cole*, upon their submission, I remitted some part of their punishment. At twelve of the clocke at noone, we came hard by a great Island of Ice: the Sea being very smooth and almost calme, we hoisted out the Boates of both our Shippes: being in want of fresh water, and went to this land to get some Ice to make us fresh water. And as we were breaking off some of this Ice (which was very painefull for us to doe; for it was almost as hard as a Rocke;) the great Island of Ice gave a land began to overthrow, which was like to have sunk both our Boates, if we had not made good haste from it. But thanks be to God, we escaped this danger very happily, and came aboard with both our Boates, the one halfe laden with Ice. There was great store of Sea-Foule upon this land of Ice.

A great Island of Ice cracked like a thunder clap and was overthrowne. Great store of Sea-Foule upon the Ice.

An Inlet 61. degrees & 40. minutes.

The five and twentieth and six and twentieth, the wind being East, did blow a hard gale, and our course was West and by South, with fogge. This day in the afternoon I did reckon my selfe to be in the entering of an Inlet, which standeth in the latitude of 61. degrees and 40. minutes.

The seven and twentieth, the wind was at South South-east, and blew very hard, our course was West. The eight and twentieth and nine and twentieth, our course was West and by South, the wind blowing very hard by the West North-west, with fogge and raine. The thirtieth, the wind came up in a howle by the West North-west, blowing so hard, that we were forced to put a Shippe cleave, we thought it good to returne with great heed, and many of our men in both a passage of more perillousitie, then through the Straight of *Danis*: because I found it too much pelted with Ice, and to be a straight of fower leagues broad. Alas I found an hundred leagues West and by South, within this Inlet; and there I found the variation to be 35. degrees to the Westward, and the needle to decline, or rather incline 83. degrees and an halfe.

The returne out of the Inlet.

The variation 35. degrees Westward.

The fifth of August (the wind all that while Westerly) we were cleare of this Inlet againe. The sixth the wind was at East South-east with fogge. The seventh, eighth, and ninth, we passed by many great Islands of Ice. The ninth day at night, we defied the land of America, in the latitude of 55. degrees, and 30. minutes. This Land was an Island, being both low land and very smooth: then the night approaching, and the weather being something foggy and darke, we were forced to stand to the Northward againe. This night we passed by some great Islands of Ice, and some bigge peeces which did breake from the great Islands: and we were like

An Island on the coast of America in 55. deg. & 30. min.

to strike some of them two or three times: which if we had done, it might have endangered our Shippes and lues. Our comfort, the *Godspeed*, broke a little piece of Ice, which they thought had founded their Shippes; but thanks be to God they received no great hurt, for our Shippes were very strong.

The *Godspeed* broke upon a piece of Ice.

The tenth day, the wind was at North-east and by North, with fogge and raine; and our course was to the South-eastward: for we could by no means put with the shoare, by reason of the thicknesse of the fogge, and that the wind blew right upon the shoare, so that we were forced to bear faile to keepe our felues from the land, until it pleased God to send vs a cleare, which God knoweth we long wanted. At fixe of the clocke in the afternoon, it was calme; and then I judged my selfe, by mine account, to be neere the Land: for I founded, and had ground in 160. fathomes, and fine grey Olie Sand: and there was a great land of Ice, a ground within a league of vs, where we founded, and within one houre it pleased God to send vs a cleare. Then we saw the land some fower leagues South-west and by South from vs. This land lyeth East and by Southward-West and by North, being good high land, but all lands as far as we could discern. This calme continued until fower of the clocke in the afternoon of the eleventh day: the weather being very cleare, we could not discern any Current to goe at all by the Land. This day the Sea did let vs in about a league neerer the Land, so that we judged our felues three leagues off. Here we counted againe, and had but eightie fathoms.

The variation of the Compass was found to be 25. degrees and 10. minutes Westward. At five of the clocke there sprung up a fine gale of wind, at East South-east, and being so neere night, we stood to the Southward, thinking the next day to seeke some harbour. But it pleased God, the next day, being the twelfth, to send vs a storme of foule weather, the wind being at East and by South, with fogge: so that we could by no means get the shoare. Thus we were forced to bear up and downe at Sea, until it should please God to send vs better weather.

The variation 25. degrees to West.

A Storme.

The fourteenth, I thought good to stand to the Westward to search an Inlet, in the latitude of 64. degrees. I have good hope of a passage that way, by many great and probable reasons.

The fifteenth the wind continued at the South, with exceeding faire weather, and our course was West. We were this day in the latitude of 55. degrees and 31. minutes. I found the variation to be 17. degrees and 15. minutes to the Westward. And about seven of the clocke at night, we descried the Land againe, being tenne leagues off to the Eastward of this Inlet. This Land did beare from vs South-west by North eight leagues off: and about nine of the clocke the same night, the wind came to the West, which blew right against vs for purpose to bring into this Inlet.

68. deg. 55. min. Variation 17. deg. 15. min.

They descried the land againe.

The sixteenth, the wind was at West North-west, and was very faire weather, and our course South-west: about nine of the clocke in the forenoone, we came by a great land of Ice; and by this land we found some peeces of Ice broken off from the first land: And being in great want of fresh water, we hoisted out our Boates to both Shippes, and loaded them twice with Ice, which made vs very good fresh water. This day at noone we found our felue to be in the latitude of 55. degrees and twentie minutes: when we had taken in our Ice and Boates, the weather being very faire and cleare, and the wind at West North-west, we bent our course for the Land; and about three of the clocke in the afternoon, we were within short feighe of the shoare. As is very plain to see Land, but all lands; and goodly founts going by the shore, toward the South-west. This Land doth stand in the latitude of 55. degrees; and I found the variation to be to the West 18. degrees and 15. minutes. This coast is made of Ice, y^ellefie it be some great Islands of Ice, that come from the North, and so by windes may be driven upon this coast. Also we did kinde the ayre in this place to be very temperate. Truly there is in three severall places great hope of a passage, betweene the latitudes of 55. and 56. degrees; if the fogge doe not hinder it, which is all the feare I have. At fixe of the clocke, we were becalmed by the shoare, there appeared unto vs a great ledge of rocks, betweene vs and the shoare, though the Sea did dye oute with a great heigh. As we all beheld it, with an awe, upon the shoare, a sudden in a twinkling clean away, which seemed very strange unto us. And to the Eastward of vs, fower leagues, we saw a great Rocke, lying like three leagues off the Land: we then supposing it to be a shoale water, by this broken ground, counted, but could get no ground in one hundred and fixtie fathoms. About seven of the clocke there sprung up a gale of wind, by the South South-east, which was a very good wind to coast this Land.

55. deg. 31. min. Variation 17. deg. 15. min.

A plain low land, being all Islands.

55. degrees.

The variation 18. deg. and 15. min. Westward.

Temperate ayre.

Order of the rocks.

A passage.

A great Rocke.

But the leuenteenth in the morning, the wind being at the South, it began to blow so extremely, that we durst not stay by the shoare, for it was like to be a great storme: then our course was East North-east, to get vs Sea-rooms. At thre of the clocke, our felues were in the Sea. About twelve of the clocke at noone, this day there rose up a great shoare in the West, and presently the wind came out of this Quarter with a white, and making up the Sea into the ayre, and blew so extremely, that we were forced always to rubbe before the Ship, to

treame, they durst not stay by the shoare, for it was like to be a great storme: then our course was East North-east, to get vs Sea-rooms. At thre of the clocke, our felues were in the Sea. About twelve of the clocke at noone, this day there rose up a great shoare in the West, and presently the wind came out of this Quarter with a white, and making up the Sea into the ayre, and blew so extremely, that we were forced always to rubbe before the Ship, to

A White wind in the Sea.

ever the wind did blow. And within twelve hours after this storme beganne, the Sea was so much growen, that we thought our *bye Boates* would not have bene able to have endured it.

The eighteenth, the wind was at North-west, and the storme increased more extreme, and lasted untill eight of the clocke in the morning of the nineteenth day, so furious, that to my remembrance, I neuer felt a greater: yet when we were in our greatest extremities, the Lord delivred vs by his worthy servants. And if the wind, with so great a storme, had bin either Northerly, or Southerly, or Easterly but one day, we had all perished against the Rocks, or the Ice: for we were entred thirty leagues within a Head-land of an Inlet, in the latitude of 56 degrees. But it pleased God to send vs the wind so faire, as we could desire, both to cleare the felues of the Land and Ice. Which opportunite caused vs for this time to take our leave of the coast of *America*, and to hugge our coasts for England.

The fourth, in the morning, we departed the Island of *Sisy* North-east and by East, some four leagues off vs. Then we directed our course East and by North: and untill ten of the clocke in the forenoon, we decried the Lands end, and next day were forced so put into *Dartmouth*.

CHAP. XIV.

JAMES HALL his Voyage forth of Denmark for the discovery of Greenland, the year 1605, abbreiviati.



May 1605.

The Captain's name.

John Knight of whom above.

Flemish.

Variation observed.

Race of the tide.

Variation observed.

The name of God Amen, we set saile from *Copenhagen* in Denmark, the second day of May, in the year of our redemption 1605, with two Shoppes and a Pinace: The Admirall, called the *Swiss*, a Shippe of the burthen of thirty or forty tuns, wherein was Captain, and chiefe commander of the whole Fleet, Captain *Iohn Cunningham*, a Scottish Gentleman, servant unto the Kings Maiestie of Denmark, my selfe being principall Pilot. The *Lyon* Viceadmirall, being about 30 Streemen of the line, one *Peter Kjellon* of *Sveinsholm* burien. The Pinace, a Barke of the burthen of twelve last, or thereabouts: wherein was Streemen or commander, one *Iohn Knight*, my Countre-man. So getting saile from *Copenhagen*, with a faire gale of wind Easterly, we came unto *Ellflore*, where we anchored, to take in our water.

The third day we took in our water, at which time, the Captaine, my selfe, with the Lieutenants, and the other Streemen, did thinke it convenient to see downe certaine Articles, for the better keeping of company one with another, so which Articles or covenants were were all severally sworn, setting thereunto our hands.

The fixt we came to *Floerua*, into which harbour, by Gods helpe, we came at two a clocke in the afternoon. The seventh day we supplied our wants of wood and water. The eighth day, about two a clocke in the afternoon, we set saile forth of the harbour of *Floerua* about six a clocke it fell calme, till about eight, about which time, the *Narve* of *Norway* by the *Danish* men called *Lyncke-wat*, bare next hand North-west of vs. five leagues off, at which time I directed my course West North-west, finding the compass varied 7. degrees to the Eastward of the true North.

The thirtieth, we had sight of the Head of *Faire Ile*, and also of the South-head of *Sheland*, called *Sveinsholm* head, which are high Lands: at noone, the Island of *Faire Ile* bearing West halfe a point Northerly: four leagues off. I made observation, and found vs in the latitude of 59. degrees 30. minutes. This night about seven a clocke, we came about an English league to the Northward of the North-west end of *Faire Ile*, we met with a great race of a tide, as race, I directed my course West and by North, hugging the wide North-east and by North: this evening *Faire Ile* bearing East South-east four leagues: *Sveinsholm* head, North-east and by North eight leagues: the Island of *Faire*, North-east and by East, four leagues. I found by exact observation, the compass to be varied to the East-ward of the true North 60. degrees to minutes.

The fourteenth in the morning, the wind came to the East South-east, we steering West and by North away: this morning the Island of *Faire Ile* did show in my sight to be about ten leagues off, at which time we did decrie some of the Westermost Islands of *Orény*, which did show South-west and by South.

This evening, the widest North-westward by West, we had in view South-west and by West, and four leagues South-west. This day at noone we were in the Latitude of 58. degrees 40. minutes.

40. minutes. The nineteenth day, the wind at South-west and South-west by West, we lying as the night before, being at noone in the Latitude of 59. degrees and a halfe. The fourth and twentieth day, the wind at North-east and by East, we steering still with a fresh gale West South-west, this evening we looked to have seen *Buff* Island, but I doe verily suppose the same was to be placed in a wrong Latitude in the *Barnes* Charts. The five and twentieth at noone, we were in the latitude of 57. degrees 45. minutes. The thirtieth day in the morning between seven and eight, the weather began to cleere, and the Sea and wind to waxe leile, we looking for the *Lion* and the *Pinnace*, could have no sight of them, we supposing them to be atterre off vs, we standing still vnder our courses. This day the wind came to the North-east and by East, being very cold weather, we lying North North-west away. Making my observation at noone, I found vs in the latitude of 59. degrees 15. minutes, our way North North-west forty leagues. This afternoon between one and two a clock we decried *Land*, it bearing North North-west off vs about ten leagues off North-east by North off vs about ten leagues, it being a very high rugged land, lying in the latitude of 59. degrees 50. minutes, lying along South-east and by South, and North-west and by North.

This Head-land we named after the Kings Maiesties of Denmark, because it was the first part of *Greenland*, which we did see. This afternoon about one a clock, bearing in for the shoare we saw an Island of Ice, which bore West South-west of vs three leagues off, so hailing the wind at East South-east, we bore in for the shoare, where we found so much Ice that it was impossible either for vs or any other ship to come into the shoare without great danger: yet we put our felues into the Ice as we were thought convenient, being incumbered and compassed about with the same in such sort, as the Captaine, my selfe, the Boatswaine with another of our companie, were forced to goe overboard upon an Island of Ice, to defend it from the ship, at which time I thought it convenient to stand off into the Sea againe, and to being cleere of the Ice, to double Cape *Defolation* to the North-westward, which I doubted not but to find a cleer coast, so standing away all this night West South-west, to cleere vs of the Ice, which lay farre from the shoare, being very thicke towards the Land with great Islands of Ice that it is wonderful. This evening, the Cape *Christen* bearing North-east and by East five leagues, I found the Compass varied 12. degrees 15. minutes to the North-westward. Moreover, standing to Seaward from the foresaid Cape, we came in blacke water, as thicke as though it had beene puddle water, we sayling in the same for the space of three hours.

The one and thirtieth in the morning faire weather, with the wind somewhat variable, we steering away North-west and by West, between four and five in the morning we had sight of the *Lion* againe, but not of the Pinnace. They being a Sea-bird off and having epied vs, they stood with vs, at which time the Captaine, Lieutenant, and Streemen came aboard vs, earnestly intreating mee to bestow a Sea Chart of the Steerns, and to give him directions if by tempestuous weather they should lose vs, they protesting and swearing that they would never leave vs as long as wind and weather would permit them to keepe companie with vs. By whose speeches I being perswaded did give them a Sea Chart for those Coasts, telling them also: If they would follow mee, that by Gods assistance I would bring them to a part of the Land well without peller of Ice, and also harbour the ships in good Harbour, by Gods helpe, they protesting and protesting, that they would follow mee so long as possibly they could, with which civill and faire speeches I satisfied satisfied, thinking they had thought as they had sworn, but it fell out otherwise. So having made an end with vs about noone, they went aboard againe, we being this day in the latitude of 59. degrees 45. minutes, hailing good all the night before, and this forenoon also, so high the shoare as we could for Ice, the Cape *Christen* South South-east and North North-west, and from the Cape to Cape *Defolation*, the Land lyeth East and by South, and West and by North about fifty leagues. This day between one and two a clocke, the Vice-admirals Boat, being newly gone aboard, it fell very huse and thicke, so that we could not see one another by reason of the fogge, therefore our Captaine caused to shoote off certaine Klunkers with a great peece of Ordnance, to the intent the *Lion* might leave vs, which heard of them they presently stood with vs, at which time the fogge began somewhat to cleere, we hailing sight one of another and so stood along the shoare, as high as we could for Ice.

The first of June, we had a fresh gale of wind at West South-west, we steering North-east and by North into the shoare, about three in the morning there fell a mightie fogge, so that we were forced to lye by the lee, for the *Lion* playing upon our Drum to the intent for them to heare vs, and to keepe companie with vs, they answering vs againe with the shooting of a Klunker, we trimming our sails, did the like to them, and so stood away North-east and by East: at Harbour tacke aboard halfe a galle, when we were hard incumbered amongst mightie Islands of Ice, being very high like huge Mountaines, so I caused to cast about and land to the Westward North-west and by West. About twelve of the clocke this night it being still calme, we found our felues suddenly compassed round about with great Islands of Ice, which made such a hideous noise as was most wonderful, so that by no means we could double the same to the Westward: wherefore we were forced to stand it away to the Southwards, South South-West, item.

Xxx 3 mung

Buff Island wrong placed.

First sight of Greenland.

Cape Christen.

The shoare full of Ice.

Cape Defolation.

Compass varied.

Black water.

Sight of the Lion.

June 1605.

Islands of Ice.

Mightie incumbrance of Ice.

A mightie noise sent North.

Of the other
fort of Boats.
There is one
of the Boats
in Sea T. Smith
Hall.

The manner
of killing of
great fish
or Seales.

Their com-
ing to our
ships.

Observation
of the tides.
Observation
of the tides.

Our departing
in the Pinnace
from the Ship.

The Saugues
begin to sing
songs at vs.

They sing
songs againe.

Also the other sorts of their Boats are such as Captaine *Frølyher*, and Master *Iohn Dani* brought into England, which is but for one man, beinge cleane covered ouer with Seale skins artfully dried except one place to let in being with in for out with certaine little ribs of Timber, wherein they vie to row with one Oare more swiftly, then our men can doe with ten, in which Boats they fish being disguised in their Coates of Seale skins, whereby they deuote the Seales, who take them rather for Seales then men; which Seales or other fish they kill in this manner. They shoot at the Seales or other great fish with their Darts, vnto which they vie to type a bladder, which doth buy vp the fish in such manner that by the said means they catch them. So coming aboard our ships hauing left certaine tridles behind vs in their Tents, and taking nothing away with vs, within halfe an houre after our coming aboard, the Saugue to whom we had giuen the Knife with three others, which we did suppose to be them which we saw first, came rowing to our ships in their Boats, holding vp their hands to the Sunne, and striking of their breasts, crying *Tae*. We doing the like, they came to our shippe or Captaine: giuing them bread and Wine, which, as it did seeme, they made little account of, yet they gave vs some of their dried fishes, at which time there came foure more, who with the other barew their Coats, and some Seale skins, with our folke for old Iron Nalles, and other trifles as Pinnes and Needles, with which they seemed to be wonderfully pleased, and hauing so done, holding their hands towards the Sunne they departed.

The thirteenth, there came foureteen of them to our ship, bringing with them Seale skins, White Pinnes, with certayne of their Darts and Weapons, which they bartered with our people, as before. This day I made obseruation of the latitude, and found this Roadsted in the latitude of 66. degrees 25. minutes, and the mouth of this Bay or Sound, lyeth in the latitude of 66. degrees 30. minutes. Also here I made obseruation of the tydes, and found an East and West Moone to make a full Sea, vpon the Full and Change, more it floweth, three fathome and an halfe water, right vp and downe.

The fourteenth and fiftenth dayes we rode fill, the people coming to vs, and bartering with vs for pieces of old Iron, or Nalles, White Pinnes, Seales Skins, Morfe Teeth, and a kind of Horne which we doe suppose to be Vnicorne Horne, at which time the Captaine went with our Boat, to the place where we had sene their Tents, but found them removed, and the other fish and the Seale fish lying fill a drying: the Captaine taking a quantitie of the Sea fish into the Boat, caused some of the Mariners to boyle it aloft, the Saugues helping our men to doe the same, the Captaine wing them very friendly, they hauing made about a barrell and an halfe of Oyle, leaving it alone all night, thinking to bring the same aboard in the morning. But the Saugues the same night let the same forth. Yet notwithstanding, the Captaine shewed no manner of discontent towards them.

The sixteenth day, I went into the Pinnasse, to discouer certaine Harbours to the Northwards, the wind being at East South-east, I looked and felt saile, but instantly it fell calme, and so continued about an houre. When the wind came opposite at the West North-west a still gale, we spending the tide till the flood being come, I put rowe againe, and came to an Anchor a little from the *Fryg* in twelve fathomes landie ground. About one in the afternoon, the *Fryg* departed from vs further vp the Bay, which we did suppose to be a Ruet, promising to abide our returne two and twentie dayes.

The seventeenth day, the wind continuing at the West North-west blowing very hard, wee rode fill, the people coming and bartering with vs.

The eighteenth day, the winde and weather as before, wee riding fill. This forenoone there came to the number of thirte of them, and bartered with vs as they had done before, which done, they went aloft at a certaine point about a flight-shot off vs, and there vpon a sudden began to throw stones with certaine Slings which they had without any injury offered at vs; yea, they did sling so fiercely, that we could scarce stand on the hatches. I seeing their brutish dealing, caused the Gunner to shoot a Falcon at them, which lighted a little ouer them, at which time they went to their Boates, and rowed away. About one a clocke in the afternoon, they came againe to vs crying in their accustomed manner. *Zim*, they being fixtie three in number, the slipper inquired of me whether they should come to vs or not. I willed him to haue all things in a readinesse, they coming in the meane time night to the Pinnasse, I did perceiue certaine of them to haue great bagges full of stones, they whispering one with another began to sling stones vnto vs. I presently shot off a little Piffol which I had for the Gunner, and the rest of the folke to discharge, which indeed they did, but whether they did hurt or kill any of them or not, I cannot certainly tell, but they rowed all away making a howling and hideous noise: going to the same point, whereas in the forenoone they had beene, being no founer come on Land, but from the fish they did assault vs with stones, with their things, that it is incredible to report, in such sort that no man could stand vpon the hatches, till such time as I commanded for to lofe fallies and bonnets two men heighe, to flieid vs from the force of the stones, and alid hid vs in our tent; their fight; so that we did ply our Muskets and other Peeces such as we had at hand: yet their subtiltie was such, that as loone as they did fire gun to the Peeces, they would suddenly

ducke downe behind the Cliffes, and when they were discharged; thus fling their stones fiercely at vs againe. Thus hauing continued there till foure a clocke, they departed away. The nineteenth day in the morning, about foure a clocke it being calme, I departed from this Roadsted, for causing our men to row along the shore, till the tide of the ebbe was full; at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by West, we turning downe till about two a clocke, when the tide of flood being come: when I came to an Anchor in a excellent Haven, on the South side of *Cummiplum*: *Almo*, which for the goodnesse thereof I named *Drammoy*: *Hauen*.

The twentieth day, in the morning the weather being very calme with a little easterly wind, I looked and caused to row forth of the foreward Harbour, and causing forth to ride the lands and the maine, the people being as it seemed looking for vs, stood vntill such time as we came within shot, at which time they gathered together about threethree three Black men rowing to vs. I seeing them, thought best to present the word, because we were so long higher againe therefore to discipline the matter; I thought it best to enter into battle with them for some of their Darts, Bowes and Arrows, wee sending every one of them to be furnished, namely furnished therewith so rowing forth on Sea among the lands, there fiftie came into Boats to the number of one hundred and threety persons, they still rowing by vs, I made them to go to anchor amongst some of the lands: but I presenting their deuice, made certayne Skonies of them from vs rowing to certain lands, to which they did think we would come, causing no more but about ten men and Boats about vs, who rowed along the space of an houre with vs, making signes of friendship to vs. Askeing perceiving, that we were not minded to goe forth amongst these lands, vpon which the rest of their folke were, they threw certayne stiles and tridles into the Boat, making signes and tokens to fetch them, the which my Boy called *William Hamer* did. He being in the Boat, they presently shot him through the buttocks with a Dart, at which time they rowed from vs, they murthering vpon the lands to the number of three hundred persons, leaving themselves far enough from our danger. About fixe a clocke this Evening it began to blow againe by North, we getting off the land all this night North and by East along the land.

A Topographical Description of the Land as it did first first the same.

Now hauing proceeded for the description of the Coast and Harbours, to make a better description of the same, according as by my short experience I found the same to be.

The Land of *Greenland* is a very high, rugged and mountainous Country, being all along the Coast broken lands, making very goodly Sounds and Harbours, being all in the Land very many good Rivers and Bayes, into the mouth of which is intermingled by the same the peace of the Country. The Land also in all places whereof I came, seemed to be very fertile, according to the Climate wherein it lyeth; for betwixt the Mountains was many pleasant Plaines and Valleys, in such sort as if I had not sene the same, I could not haue believed, that such a fertile Land in the world could be in these Northern Regions. There is also in the same great store of Fowle, as Ravens, Crows, Partridges, Pheasants, Sea-mewes, Gulls, with other fowle. Of Beasts I haue not sene any, except Blacke Beasts, of which there are very many. Also as I doe suppose there are many Deer, because their continuing to certain places where the people had their Tents, we found very many Harts Horne, with the bones of other beasts found about the same. Also going vp into the Land wee saw the footing and dunging of diuers beasts, which we did suppose to be deere, and other beasts also, the footing of one which we found to be eight inches ouer, yet notwithstanding we did see none of them: for going some two or three miles from the Pinnasse we returned againe to goe aboard. Moreover, in the Rivers we found sundry sorts of Fishes, as Seales, Whales, Salmon, with other sorts of fishes in great abundance. As concerning the Coast, all along it is a very good and faire Land, being very faire shoaling of the Water for boats, the *Fryg* lay off the same, I found very faire shoaling in fiftene fathome, and coming out the same foureteen, twelue, and tenne fathomes very faire sandie ground. As concerning the people, they are (as I doe suppose) a kinde of *Samiets*, or wandering Nation, travelling in the Summer time in Companies together, first to one place, and hauing stayed in that place a certaine time in hunting and fishing for Deere and Stales with other fish, straight they remove themselves with their Tents and baggage to another. They are men of a reasonable stature, being brown of colour, very like to the people of the East and West Indies. They are very active and warlike, as we did perceiue in their skirmishes with vs, in using their Slings and Darts very nimble. They eat their meate raw, or a little

Denmark: Har-
bour.
The people of
it come againe.

The subtiltie
of the Saugues

My Boy shot
with a Dart.

Small
boats.

The description
of the land
of Greenland.

Of the fertility
of the Coun-
try.

Store of fowle.

Blacke Beasts.

Fishes.

Of the Coast,

of the water.

Of the people.

The colour of
the people.
The people
very active.

East, we being with North-west away, till about nine a clock, when we had a *shrike* of the Land which was the *Water gate of Mads*, we steering along the Land, We came to an anchor in *Thyge*, where we were to make and take in wood and water.

The 10th of June we weighed, and came forth of the Harbour of *Fluorice* about five in the morning, having a fresh gale at East North-east. About eleven at noon, I let the *Nase* of *Nymer*, it bearing North North-west four leagues off. The fourth day in the morning about two a clock, we were fair by the high Land of the *Troades*, I calling to call about flood to the Southward, West and by South and sometimes West. This day at noon, I found my self in the latitude of 57 degrees 45 minutes, the *Nase* of *Nymer* bearing East North-east two and twenty leagues off. This day at noon also I call about and flood to the Northward, lying North with the *flamme*, having the wind at North North-west. This afternoon I had one of our *Greenlanders*, called *Oxe*. All this evening, and the night following, the wind at bore, we lying at North with little wind.

The 16th day, the wind at South-west and by South and South South-west, we steering West and West and by North. This day at noon we were in the latitude of 58 degrees 40 minutes. The tenth day about four in the morning, it began to blow a fresh gale at East and by South, at which time we flood along the Land to the Southward, till I had brought the South Head of *Sheland*, called *Swinburne Head*, North-west and by North about three leagues off; and *Fare* the next hand South-west and by South eight leagues off, at which time I directed my course away West with a fresh gale at East South-east about half an hour to three. I let the South head of *Sheland* in bearing North-east eight leagues off, *Fare* the next hand South-east four leagues off, four next hand North four leagues, we still steering away West with a fresh gale at East South-east. All this afternoon and the night following it was very thick and rainy weather, the wind continuing as before. This night at midnight dyed the *Greenlander* which we had aboard vs, named *Omg*.

The fourteenth day, the wind at bore the night before a fair gale, we steering as we did before, with havy weather having a *shrike*, at noon I found vs in the latitude of 58 degrees 40 minutes, having made a West and by South way Southerly two and thirty leagues, differing to the Westward from the Meridian of the *Nase* 19 degrees 45 minutes. This afternoon we had a fair gale at East South-east with thick weather, we steering away West.

The fifteenth day, the wind as before, we steering away West, being by my imagination in the latitude of 58 degrees 40 minutes. The three and twentieth day, the wind at the North-east a fair gale, we steering between the West North-west, and the West and by North, being at noon in the latitude of 56 degrees 10 minutes, having by reason of a Northerly current contrary to my expectation, made a West way Southerly two and twenty leagues. The Compasse also as I doe suppose, being varied more then a foot of the Westwards.

The first of July we saw low Land being eight leagues off, with a great banke of Ice lying off South-west, we setting our tack aboard and left East and by South and East North-east, to double the same, about two a clock, having doubled the same, we went away West and by South all this evening and night following. This Land I did suppose to be *Buffe* Land; it lying 40 more to the Westwards then it is placed in the Marine Charts.

The second day thick weather with the wind at North North-west, we steering West and by North. This afternoon we were in a great Current setting South South-west. The which I did suppose to set between *Buffe* Land and *Frisland* our way *America*; we steering West North-west with a fair gale at North. This night about nine a clock, the *Pinnace* came fole of the Vice-admirall, where with her anchor here tore out a foot of a plank a little above water, and broke downe the beakes head.

The sixth making observation, I found vs in the latitude of 58 degrees 50 minutes, contrary to my expectation, whereby I did see the Southerly Current to be the principall cause. The 16th day, the wind at North and by East, we lying West North-west, being at noon in the latitude of 59 degrees 40 minutes, our way North-west two and twenty leagues. This evening I found the North Point of the Compasse to be varied 12 degrees 5 minutes, to the Westward of the true North.

The eight day, the wind came vp more Southerly between the South-west and the South-west and by West with an eare gale, we steering away North-west and by West; being at noon in the latitude of 59 degrees 30 minutes, having by reason of the Current and Variation made a West way Southerly about ten leagues.

The ninth day close weather, it being calme all the forenoon, we perceiving by our ships which lay becalmed, a violent Current setting South-west. This day at noon, we were in the latitude of 59 degrees 40 minutes. The tenth about four in the morning, the wind came vp to the North North-west, I calling about flood to the Westwards, lying West with the *flamme*, being in the latitude of 60 degrees 16 minutes. We saw the coast of *America* about nine leagues off, at which time I made observation of the variation, and found the Needle varie 24 degrees to the Westwards of the true North.

The 11th day, the wind at South-west, we steering away South-west, we were in the latitude of 59 degrees 40 minutes. The tenth about four in the morning, the wind came vp to the North North-west, I calling about flood to the Westwards, lying West with the *flamme*, being in the latitude of 60 degrees 16 minutes. We saw the coast of *America* about nine leagues off, at which time I made observation of the variation, and found the Needle varie 24 degrees to the Westwards of the true North.

The 12th day, the wind at South-west, we steering away South-west, we were in the latitude of 59 degrees 40 minutes. The tenth about four in the morning, the wind came vp to the North North-west, I calling about flood to the Westwards, lying West with the *flamme*, being in the latitude of 60 degrees 16 minutes. We saw the coast of *America* about nine leagues off, at which time I made observation of the variation, and found the Needle varie 24 degrees to the Westwards of the true North.

The Hill tops were covered with snow, and the shore to the Northwards full with Ice, but to the Southwards it seemed cleere; Here I found a great Current to set West into the shore, which about midnight did bring vs to ice incumbered with very many lands of Ice, having much to do to get clear of the same without danger: but by Gods help it being fair weather with a fresh gale at South-west, we got cleere of the same, standing East South-east and South-east and by East.

The fourteenth in the morning being cleere of the Ice, I went away East North-east and North-east and by East till eight a clock, when I directed my course North-east and by North, being at noon in the latitude of 59 degrees, the Cape or Head land which we saw that night bearing West South-west sixteen leagues off. All this afternoon and night following it was the clearest and fairest weather; this evening I found the variation 33 degrees 55 minutes.

The sixteenth day we were with a fresh gale at East South-east, our course as before, being in the latitude of 60 degrees 20 minutes, the ships way North and by North northerly twenty leagues. This afternoon a squall bore down the wind as before, we steering full North-east and by North.

The eighteenth a hallo thicke weather, being forced to stand away North North-west to double a great banke with great Mountains of ice almost incredible to be reported, yet by the helpe of God we passed the same, lying all this day by great and huge mountainous lands of Ice, with the wind at South-west and by South, being at noon in the latitude of 63 degrees 45 minutes. We did ice our talons before round about with mightie bankes of Ice, being forced to make more sail, and to lye to and againe all this night to keepe vs cleere of great and small about wiles. We were many times we were in such danger, that we did looke for no other thing then present death, if God had not beene mercifull unto vs and sent vnder weather, where by his assistance we kept our selves very hardly and with great difficultie cleere of the Ice.

The nineteenth day in the morning cleere weather with a fresh gale at South-west, we lying amongst the Ice to see if we could get a gale to get cleere of the same, at which time we saw the Land of *America* about the latitude of 64 degrees, it lying next hand South and by North, being high ragged Land covered with snow; the shore being all beset with Ice. So lying off and on a night we were where we went through, and flood South-east away, coming still by many lands of Ice. Here I did find both by my course and reckoning (the variation all of the Compasse respected) that we were carried with a mightie Current to the Westwards, as both now and afterwards we did probably prove and see the same. For I setting my course from the coast of *America* in the latitude of 58 degrees and a half for the coast of *Greenland* North North-east with a compasse, whole wayers were placed more then two third parts of a Point to the Eastwards of the North, the variation being 23 degrees 30 minutes North-west and 24 degrees, as by observation I found between the latitude of 58 and a half and 54 degrees, yet I did finde my self carried almost to mine own, or to any of these expectations which was in the Fleet wish mee, carried almost four Point with the Current to the Westwards over our imaginations.

The twentieth, we still layed to the Eastwards by many great Bankes and lands of Ice, being still compassed in, we being forced to stand to the Southwards to get cleere, where being sometimes becalmed, we did plainly see and perceive our selves carried into the Ice to the Westward very violently. This Current setteth West North-west. The twentieth in the evening I found the Compasse varied 23 degrees.

The one and twentieth day in the morning faire weather, we eysed a gale through the Ice, it seeming cleere to the Southwards of the same, where bearing into the same about noon we were cleere of all the Ice by the mercifull providence of God. Here I observed the latitude, it being 63 degrees 23 minutes. Now having the one and twentieth day at afternoon caused the Admirall to call the other Captaines and Steermens aboard, with whom we might conferre, and having shewed briefly my reckoning with the other euent, which contrary to my expectation had happened, the cause whereof at that instant they did plainly see and perceive: They confesseing, the Current as they did now plainly see, to be the cause of the same. So having done, I gave to the other Steermens directions, that being cleere of the Ice they should goe betweene the East and the East and by North over the coast of *Greenland* and nor to the Northwards of the East and by North, because of the former euent. And now at this instant, by Gods helpe, being cleere I called to them, giving the same directions. This afternoon and the night following it was calme. This evening I found the Compasse varied 23 degrees 25 minutes.

The two and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The three and twentieth faire weather, the ayre very cold, as with vs in the month of January, the wind variable betweene the East North-east, and the South-east and by East, being at noon in the latitude of 63 degrees, having made a South-east and by South way.

The four and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The five and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The six and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The seven and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The eight and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The nine and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The tenth and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The eleventh and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The twelfth and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The thirteenth and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The fourteenth and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The fifteenth and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The sixteenth and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The seventeenth and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The eighteenth and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The nineteenth and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The twentieth and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes.

The two and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The three and twentieth faire weather, the ayre very cold, as with vs in the month of January, the wind variable betweene the East North-east, and the South-east and by East, being at noon in the latitude of 63 degrees, having made a South-east and by South way.

The four and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The five and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The six and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The seven and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The eight and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The nine and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The tenth and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The eleventh and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The twelfth and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The thirteenth and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The fourteenth and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The fifteenth and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The sixteenth and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The seventeenth and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The eighteenth and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The nineteenth and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes. The twentieth and twentieth day at noon I found vs in the latitude of 63 degrees 40 minutes.

rine Chart. For the southermost part described therein is not in the latitude of 60. degrees, and we being now in the latitude of 59. degrees ten minutes, Cape Desolation bearing West North-west half North about sixtie four leagues, and Cape Christian which was the next known part of Greenland North-west and by West westerly eight and thirte leagues, so holding our course East South-east away, about foure clocke we had sight of Land, being very high Land, it lying along East South-east about sixteen leagues; the westermost part seemed either to fall away East North-east, and the southermost point being East northerly, fell away East and by North. This Land is very high, having the Hills covered with snow, the shore being very thicke with ice: this place betwixt I knew not whether it was of the Mayne or Greenland; I named *Frost Land*, after the name of the ship.

Sight of Land.

Frost Land.

Variation ob-
served.

The first of September at noon, I made observation, and found us in the latitude of 58. degrees, having made a South-east and by South way fourtie six and twentie leagues. This day at noon I directed my course East and by South. This afternoon about six a clocke it fell calme, and we continued all the night following. This evening I found the variation 10. degrees south of North-westing.

The fourth day the wind at Evening by South, we lying South-east by East, making a thirte of the funne about noon, I did supple vs in the latitude of 57. degrees 20. minutes, having made a South-east and by South way fourtie about ten leagues; all this day and the night following we lay before.

A great Sou-
thern Sea.
Variation ob-
served.

The eight day fair weather, the wind as before, it being almost calme, we going away as before, being at noon in the latitude of 58. degrees 36. minutes, having made an East North-east way northerly twentie leagues by reason of the great southerly Sea. All this afternoon and the night following it was for the most part calme. This evening I found the Compasse was not about two degrees 35. minutes north-westing.

The ninth day all faire weather, the wind southerly a fresh gale, our course fell East, being at noon in the latitude of 58. degrees 40. minutes, our way East and by North easterly twelve leagues. This afternoon the wind came up to the South or South and by East with raine. This night about midnight the weather with raine, the wind coming to the South-east, we lying East North-east and North-east and by East with the tempe.

A Red Coast.
Variation ob-
served to the
North-east.

The tenth day about two in the morning, the wind came up to the South South-west, we so steering our course East, being at noon in the latitude of 59. degrees 10. minutes, having made an East and by North way easterly about fourtie leagues, we having a fresh gale westerly. This day we saw one of the Fowls the which are on the land of *Bair* in *Scotland*, called *Bai Grouse*. This evening I found the variation 1. degree 4. minutes north-easting.

Sight of Farro.

The eighteenth, this forenoon about nine a clocke, we espied land, rising somewhat ragged, the Eastermost point of the same bearing South-east and by South, and the Westermost part South and by West about eight leagues. These lands by my account and observation; I found to be the lands of *Farro*; being at noon in the observation of 62. degrees 5. minutes.

The fire-
under the
lands of Farro.

The nineteenth, we did see the fire under the Northwards. This fire came forth under the lands of *Farro* next hand East and West. So calling about we stood at the well-wards, lying West South-west and sometimes West and by South, and sometimes South-west, it being very rainy weather, about midnight it fell calme and so continued all night unto the morning.

Temp.

The twentieth, we did see the fire under the Northwards. This fire came forth under the lands of *Farro* next hand East and West. So calling about we stood at the well-wards, lying West South-west and sometimes West and by South, and sometimes South-west, it being very rainy weather, about midnight it fell calme and so continued all night unto the morning.

The first of October in the afternoon about foure of the clocke, we had sight of *The Hammer*. The second day, we steered away South-east and by South and South South-east for *The Cal*. And about eight of the clocke this night we came into *Torres*, where we rode all the day following. The third day at night the wind came to the North-east; so we weighed and came into *Elfenor Road*. The fourth day, by the providence of God, we arrived in our desired Port *Cape Haven*, 1666.

The severall burthens and numbers of men employed in the ships of the
Fleet aforesaid, were as followeth.

The *Trull* being Admirall, was of sixtie tunnes, had eight and fortie men. The *Low Vice-Admirall*, was of seavente tunnes, had eight and fortie men. The *Prin or Eagle* Rear-Admirall, of one hundred tunnes, had fiftie men. The *Gilliflowe* was of fortie tunnes, had sixteen men. The *Pinnace* called the *Cat*, was of twentie tunnes, had twelve men. *Breda's Ford* is south Northerly, *Commanche's Ford* is next in sixtie fower degrees and odd minutes. The *Ford* whereon they saw the *Towne* ten leagues up the same, is two leagues to the South of *Commanche's Ford*. The *Kings Ford* is in sixtie six degrees and an halfe.

William

William Hamstris of *Stamborn* in *Turkey*, thir, is Master *Hall* his man, and is allowed thirte pound by the yeere of the King of *Denmarke*, for his skill in Navigation.

I have also Master *Kalls Voyages* of the next years 1667, to *Greenland* from *Denmarke*, written, and with representations of Land-right curiously delineated by *Joſias Hubert* of *Hull*, how the *Danes* (whom perhaps the glory of the *Discovery* might be attributed to the English) after the *Land* (whereof *Hamstris*, and in fine forced the ship to returne for *Illand*, for which cause I have omitted the period.

10

CHAP. XVI.

The Voyage of Master *JOHN KNIGHT*, (which had beene at *Greenland* since before 1605. Captaine of a *Pinnace* of the King of *Denmarke*) for the *Discovery* of the *North-west Passage*, began the eighteenth of *April* 1606.

20

Set saile from *Grænland* in a Barke of furrie tunnes, called the *Hope-well*, well victualled and manned at the cost of the Worshipfull Companies of *Malgina*, and the *East India* Merchants, for the *Discovery* of the *North-west Passage* the eighteenth of *April* 1606. and arrived the fixe and twentieth of the same month in the Ile of *Orkney*, in a Sound called *Pentle-frith*. Here we were stayed with contrary winds at West and North-west, and with much storme and foule weather about a fortnight. In which meane space, I entertained two men of this Country, which are both lillie fellows at Sea and Land, and are well acquainted with all the Harbours of these North parts of *Scotland*. These men brought vs into a very good Harbour, called *Saint Margarites Hope*, where we had the Sea open to vs for all winde that are good for vs to proceede on our Voyage. In this Country we found little worthy of Relation. For it is poore, and hath no wood growing vpon it. Their Corne is *Barley* and *Oats*. Their fire is *Turfe*, their houses are low and vntemely without, and as homely within.

30

Vpon Monday the twelfth of May, I set saile from *Saint Margarites Sound* or *Hope* in *Orkney*, at nine of the clocke in the morning, our course being West and by South: and at eight of the clocke at night, the Hill called *Hope*, did beare West Southerly eleven or twelve leagues, and the *Strack* South and by East Easterly three leagues and an halfe, the wind being at East South-east.

40

This day was for the most part calme, and sometimes we had a fresh gale of winde: our course was West and by South, halfe a point Southerly. This day I passed by two small Islands. The one of them is called the *Glen*, and the other the *Ham*. They are distant foure leagues the one from the other. The course betweene them is South-west and North-east. The Southermost is called the *Blind-head*, seven leagues: and the course betwixt them is North-west and South-east. Also this *Blind-head* is distant from the *Ferro Head*, of the *Ireland* of *Scotland* West and by North halfe a point Westerly, and is distant seaventeene leagues. Also the course betwixt *Blind-head* and the North-west part of *Lewis*, is West and by South halfe a point Westerly, and faire low Land without Wood. There is good riding all along the shore, the wind being off the Land, and in some places are very good Harbours for all winde. From eight to twelue at night, we ran fixe leagues West South-west.

50

This morning we had a fresh gale of wind at East North-east: our course was South-west and by West two houres five leagues. From two to ten South-west, and by South 20. leagues. From ten to twelue West South-west fixe leagues. The latitude at noon was 58. degrees 27. minutes. Fifty eight day.

60

From Wednesday at noon till Thursday at noon, was for the most part raine and fogge, the wind at North-east and by East: our course was West halfe a point Southerly: our latitude at noon being Thursday, 58. degrees 23. minutes. From Thursday at noon till Friday at noon, being the sixteenth, our way was West Southerly about twentie leagues: the latitude at noon was 58. degrees 19. minutes. This night the wind was sometimes variable betwixt the South and by West and South-east, with faire weather, the Magneticall Declination 18. degrees: the height of the Pole was 58. degrees 10. minutes. Also in the morning the Sunne being tenne degrees above the Horizon, was distant from the East to the North-wards of the East twentie two degrees.

70

From Friday at noon vntill midnight was little wind Southerly, and sometimes calme, and from midnight till twelue at noon the next day a fittle gale of wind at East North-east. This foure and twentie houres I judged our way to be made good West, something Southerly thirte leagues.

Yyy 3

leagues. The latitude at noone was 58. degrees 10. minutes. Also the sunne did rise fiftie degrees to the Northward of the East.

From Saturday at noone being the fiftenth, till Sunday at noone being the eighteenth, our course was West and by South a fiftie gale of wind fiftie leagues, being close weather, we made no observation of latitude.

From Sunday at noone till Monday at noone I steered away West and West and by South, having a storme at East and by North, our course was West and Southerly fiftie leagues.

From Monday at noone till midnight, our course was West and Southerly and from that time till noone West and by North and West among. I judged we layed fortie leagues these foute and twentie hours, being for the most part foggy. The latitude at noone was 57. degrees 50. minutes.

A current to the Northward

From Tuesday at noone till noone on Wednesday, our course was West and by North fortie leagues, being foggy weather without observation. Here we had a current, which I judge fetterh to the Northward.

From Wednesday at noone till Thursday at noone, being the two and twentieth, our course was West and by North fiftie leagues with much foggy and close weather, and much wind at North-east and by East.

Many Gulls: and much Rock-weed.

A current to the North-east ward.

From Thursday at noone till midnight, our course was West and by North. Then the wind came to the North: we took in our mayne course, and I spooned away with our fore-faile till Friday, the wind being at North North-east, I judged our way West South-west, the 30 twelve hours that I spooned about fiftie leagues, the other twelve hours West North-west fife and twentie leagues. This three and twentieth day, we saw many Gulls and much Rock-weed.

The variation 13. degrees Westward.

From Friday at noone till Saturday at noone, I judged our way to be made South-west, and by West, but it proved West and by South, rather Westerly, twentie leagues by reason of a current, that I judge fetterh to the North-eastward. The latitude at noone was 57. degrees 33. minutes. The variation of the Compass was about a point to the Westward. This forenoon and all night the wind was at North a very hard gale; we spooned with our fore-faile. All this forenoon, we saw much Sea Tange and Rock-weed.

An Owle.

The variation 14. degrees and an halfe to the West.

Fifty eight degrees of latitude.

White fowles, Dead Cowes.

The variation of the Compass 14. degrees North-west.

June 1.

Many blacke wild fowles.

From Saturday at noone till Sunday at noone, our course was Southward about twentie leagues, the wind being Northerly. This day we saw much Rock-weed and Drift-wood. The latitude was fiftie fuen degrees. The variation was to the Westward thirteenth degrees or thereabout. The sunne being five degrees high in the morning, was twentie fure degrees to the Northward of the East.

From Sunday at noone till two of the clocke the next day in the morning, being Monday, our course was West North-west, we made our way West and by North twentie leagues, having a fresh gale at South-east and by East: it fell calme till four of the clocke: then it blew an easie gale at West South-west, we stemming North-west, &c. betweene that and North North-east the wind being variable. The wind freshed toward noone. This morning we saw an Owle.

The latitude at noone the eight and twentieth, was 57. degrees 57. minutes. The variation of the Compass was fourteen degrees and an halfe to the West. This day we had blacke water, and many over-falls, streame leeches, and sets of currents, as it seemed to the Northward, and some to the Westward.

The thirtieth, we found our latitude to be fiftie eight degrees. Here it seemed that we were in a tyele gate, which I judged to be North and South, or that it was the Eddie of the currents, which we law the other day. Also we saw few white Fowles, which cheeped like Spar-hawkes. Also we saw driving many dead Cowes.

The one and thirtieth, the funne being fiftie degrees above the Horizon, I found it to be twentie fuen degrees to the Eastward of the South: againe in the afternoon, the funne being fiftie degrees high, it was distant from the South to the Westward fiftie one degrees: at noone 30 it was 55. degrees 6. minutes, the height of the Pole was 58. degrees 3. minutes. The variation of the Compass was twentie fure degrees toward the North-west. Our way made these twentie fure hours was not above fife leagues West, being little wind for the most part.

From Saturday at noone till two of the clocke it was calme: then it began to blow an easie gale at North. At night I observed the funne setting, and found it to set twentie one degrees to the Westward of the North, the wind continuing variable betweene the North and the West North-west till noone, being the fift of June. Then I found my selfe by observation to be in the latitude of 57. degrees 35. minutes. I judged our way from noone to noone West and by South or thereabout thirteenth leagues.

From Sunday at noone till ten of the clocke the same Evening, it was calme. Then it began 60 to blow a fiftie gale of wind at South South-east. Our course was West till noone, the next day being Monday, twentie three leagues. This day we saw many blacke Fowles like Wilcocks flying in flocks together.

The fourth my latitude at noone, was 56. degrees 40. minutes: The latitude next day at noone

noone was fiftie five degrees. The variation of the Compass by the Scale was twentie degrees, and by my other Instrument twentie fure degrees to the West. The funne was twentie two degrees and an halfe high, and to the North of the West thirte degrees by the Instrument, and twentie fife degrees by the Scale.

Our latitude at noone the thirteenth, was fiftie eight degrees. And at night the funne did set fourteen degrees to the Westward of the North, and did rise fiftie degrees to the Eastward of the North.

The thirteenth, the Ice seemed to be dispersed thinner with the wind of some other accident: then I set saile with our two cutters, but was forced to tucke them in againe; and we were bound to the great Land of Ice, about one mile and a half from the shore. Here three fiftie fone (that is) more than three fiftie fone of Ice, about one mile and a half from the shore, was visible between the Southward, and the other small Ice which was some distance with the wind, was visible between the North-west and the North. Here we were in fight of Land, which bore West South-west from vs, (showing in some parts like Islands. Our latitude at noone was 57. degrees 50. minutes.

From Friday at noone till eight of the clocke at night, we were compassed in about the ice-faile: then it fell calme, and I looked and saw the ice with an easie gale of wind till eight of the clocke the next morning. Then we rowed and layed with an easie gale of wind till eight of the clocke the next morning being Saturday. Then it began to blow a fresh gale Easterly, and we compassed the ship among the ice with our Oares till noone. Our latitude was fiftie eight degrees.

From Saturday at noone till midnight we guided our ship to the Westward among the ice with our Oares, hoping to get thorough: but we were suddenly compassed about with many great lands of Ice, and continued so distressed with a fore storme of wind at South-east, being foggy and chicke weather: we were so bruised betweene mightie great lands of Ice, that we were in danger every minute to be crushed in pieces: with force of the heaving and setting of the said Ice with the great Sea that the wind made, had not God of his mercie provided for vs for our owne endeavours did little auaile to our helpe, though we employed all our indolence to the uttermost of our power.

The nineteenth, we descried the Land of America, which lieth like eight Islands: the Northemmost part of it did bore North and by West about fiftie leagues from vs. I observed the 50 latitude, and found my selfe to be in 56. degrees and 48. minutes. The variation of the Compass was twentie fife degrees to the Westward. All this Coast shewed like broken Land or Islands, and the tyde of flood cometh from the Northward.

Tuesday the four and twentieth all the morning, there blew a storme Northerly, and such a fuffe of the Sea, and so much Ice came in, that our last barket that was fast on shore, and our Rudder was driven from our itern with the force of mightie lands of Ice: that we were forced to hale close into the bottom of the Cote to save our clothes, furniture and vessels: was did our best, but before we had done, our ship was halfe full of water: the night coming upon vs being wearie, we took a little rest.

On Wednesday, we went hard to worke when the ship was on ground, to get the water out of her, and to stop to many of her leakes as we could come by, and to save so much of our bread as we could; and some went to building our shallop. Also I caused our Boate to be launched onto the land; and sent my Mate Edward Garrell, with three others, to seek for a better place where to bring our ship on ground, if it were possible, to mend her againe. But they returned without any certaintie reason of the abundance of Ice, which choked every place. They found wood growing on the shore.

Thursday being faire weather, [Here Master John Knight ended writing in this Journal. On this Thursday the five and twentieth of June in the morning, our Master caused some of our men to goe aboard our ship, to see what things they could. And hee and Edward Garrell our Mate, and his brother, and three more of our Company took the Boate, carrying with them four Pistols, three Muskets, five Swords, and two halfe Pikes for to goe onto a great Land, which was not above a mile from our ship, to looke if they could find any Harbour or any Cote, to get our ship into for to mend her. Also hee carried an Equinoctiall Diall with him, and paper to make a Draught of the Land. When they were passed over to the other side, our Master, his Mate, and his brother, and one more went on shore, leaving two of vs in the Boate with our Musket, one Sword, and an halfe Pike to keepe it; which two layed in the Boate from ten of the clocke in the morning, untill cleave of the clocke at night, but could heare no newes of them after their departure up into the top of the Hill. Then did the Trumpeter sound two or three times, and the other did charge his Musket two or three times, and so they came away to the other side to the West of the Company, where the ship was: there they were watching for our comming; who seeing vs two coming and no more, they marraled where the rest of the company were. When we came on shore, they enquired for our Master and the rest of our company. But we could tell them no newes of them after their departure out of the Boat, but that we did fee them goe up to the top of the Land. Which report did strike all our men into a great

Latitude 56. degrees.

Variation 24. degrees Westward.

Fifty eight degrees of latitude.

A small current to the South-west.

Sight of Land like Islands.

The Land of America descried in 56. degrees 48. minutes.

America here sheweth like broken Islands.

Edward Garrell, the Master's Mate.

M. John Knight with five more passed over to a great Land, where hee and three of his company seem to be in sight intercepted by the Sauges.

Their Trumpet.

Their Shallops
not sufficient
They could
not pass under
the Rudder
Ice.

great fears to think in what extremity we were, because we did want our Master and three of our best men, and our Ship lay funk; and we had nothing to trust to but our Shallops, which were not at that time half finished. This night lying in the ice in our Tent, which was between two Rocks, we kept very good watch, for fear of any peoples sudden assaulting us; or if our Master and his company had been so farre, that they could not come againe that night, and we would shoot a Musket, that we might hear them. But they came not at all.

The next day being Friday, and the tenth and twentieth of June, we consulted to goe over sea of vs with our Boate, to try if we could ice or leave any newes of our Master, or any of our men; so we were afraid that they were either surpris'd by the Savages of the Country, or else decouered by the wilde Beasts. So weooke with vs seven Muskets, and Swords, and Targetts, and such pieces as we had in the Ship, and went downe to the Sea-side, but we could not get out for Ice: At length we returned, with much adoe to get on shore, and went to our Ship, to see what things we could all that day.

On Saturday the eighth and twentieth, we did likewise see what things we could; and gave all our things out of our Ship, and made her cleane in hold, having faire weather; hoping in God to save her, and to meet all things, as well as we could for the lay upon hard rocks: wherefore we kept her as light as we could, for beating and breaking of her hull: That night about nine of the clocke, it began to raine very fore, and so continued all night: and about one of the clocke at night, our Boate-Swaine and our Steward being at watch, and their watch almost out, the Steward went aboard the Ship to pump, leaving the Boate-Swaine at watch some Musket shot length from our Tent: while he was in pumping, there came one the rocks a great force of the Country people toward the place where the Boate-Swaine was: who when they saw him, they shot their arrowes at him, running toward him as fast as they could. Whereupon he discharged his Musket at them, and fled to our Tent as fast as he could, thinking they had befe vs, they were so many of them in fight. The Steward hearing his Musket goe off, came out of the Ship, and as he was coming, saw the Savages running to our Shallop, and cryed out to vs that were asleep in our Tent, to come to rescue the Boate-Swaine, and the Shallop. We made what haste we could; when we came towards them, and saw so many of them in our Shallop, we were afraid we were betrayed. At this time it rained very fore, yet calling our wits together, we sent two of our men backe vnto our Tent, the rest of vs made toward them, and shot at them some three or four Muskets: who when they saw vs shoot, they stood in our Shallop, and held vp their hands vnto vs, calling one to another. Then thought we with our felles, that we were better to dye in our defence in pursuing of them, then they vs, being but eight Men and a great Dogge. When they saw vs marching toward them so fiercely, our Dogge being foremost, they name away: but we durst not pursue them any further, for it was in the night, and they were in fight about fifty men. Thus we recovered our Shallop. Then we sent some more of our men to our Tent to keep it; and the rest followed toward the place whither they fled. But before we could overtake them, they were gotten into their Boates, and were rowing away through the Ice; which was so thicke, that they could not passe away, but stucke fast; for their Boates were very great: we seeing them stucke fast in the Ice, some setting with Oares, and some rowing, came so neere them, as we could, and shot at them from downe shot, before they could get cleere: which caused them to cry out very fore one to another: for their Boates were full of men. As farre as we could indge, they were very little people, tawny coloured, thin or no beard, and flat nosed, and Man-eaters.

On Sunday the nine and twentieth, all day long we got such things as we could aboard our Ship, for feare they should come out with more men, and befe vs, our Ship lying betwene two great Rocks, and all without to full of Ice, that we could not passe any way to Sea, nor with a Boate. That day, two of our men kept watch upon the Rocks, to give vs warning, if they did come our with Boats. Then did our Carpenter make what shift hee could with our Shallop, and did tence her in some places, but neither calked her, nor pitched her. Then did we take her, and bring her downe close to the Shippe, and there shee did stand all night.

On Monday, the thirtieth day in the morning we went to worke to cut the Ice with Axes and Pick-axes, to get our Shippe: for all about the land was nothing but Ice, and no place to ride free neither with Shippe nor Boate. That night it pleased God, that we got her out, and came away rowing with our Oares; but she was exceeding leake, and our Shallop too, and which was worke, we had neuer a Rudder to steeer our Ship withall. We rowed all that night among the Ice.

The first and second dayes of July, we continued also rowing vp and downe among the floring and driving Ice, with little hope of recouering our Country.

The third of July, we had a gale of winde at North, and a great current: setting to the Southward: Then made we fast our Ship to an Island of Ice, and went to worke, and to flow the things within board, to make her stiffe; for we had neuer a whit of balist in her. Then did our Carpenter make what shift hee could, to hang our Rudder, having nothing convenient in our Shippe

A great Current setting to South.

The fourth Voyage of JAMES HALL to Groneland, wherein he was first hurt by English adventures, Anno 1612. andaine by a Greenlanders. Written by WILLIAM BARTIN.

Ednesday, the eight of July, 1612. in the morning, I perceived the Sunne and the Moone, both very faire above the horizon, as I had done duers times before. At which time I purposed to finde out the longitude of that place by the Moones coming to the Meridian. Most part of this day I spent about finding of the Meridian line; which I did upon an Island neere the Sea, hanging at the extreames of my Meridian line two sheards with Plummetts at them, instead of an index, and sights.

Thursdai, the ninth day very early in the morning I went on shore the Island, being a faire morning,

Ship to make Godgins, nor Pintels. Then were we forced to breake open our Masters Chiefe and to take all the Iron bound off it, to make fast two Pick-axes, for two Pintels, and to binde our Rudder withall. So, as it pleased God, that night we hanged our Rudder, having but two Pintels, and a Cable through the middle of it, to keep it to with two oaks. Then were we in good hope to get cleare of the Ice, because wee had some ftearge, though it was but bad: for before, we durst bear but little layle, our Ship being so leake, and her Item so fore beaten with the rocks and Ice, and having no ftearge, but we feared to rowe with our Oares, till we were all fore and weary.

The next day about tenne of the clocke in the morning, the winde came to the West North-west, and was faire weather: so we stered away East and by North, to get vs out of the Bay. And at noone, the watch being out, which was the third watch that we had after we came out of the Country (for before, continually we did watchall, to keepe our Shippe cleare of the Ice, as there as we could) we began to Pumpe our Shippe, but could not make her sucke in a thousand strokes, if she had stood but one halfe houre vnpumped. Then were we forced to vntomage our Ship, to see if we could finde our leakes. We looke found a great many of leakes, but not that which caused vs to Pumpe so fore. At the last, we found it close about our forefoot, where her keele was splinted in two or three places, where the Sea came running in so fast, that it was not possible to keepe her free with both our Pumps, and we could not come to it to stop it; for it was under the timbers. Then did we take our maine Bonnet, and baled it with Occum, and put it outboard, right against our leake, which staid vs some foure or five hundred strokes in an houre. Then upon consultation had among our felles, we resolved to shape our course towards Newfoundland Land, to see if we could get any place to mend our Ship, hoping there to meete with some English French men. At this time we had one of our men very sicke, and another had his hand very sore splinted; and most of vs all were so fore with rowing and pumping, that we were scarce able to steeer, but that we must perforce.

The fifth of Julie, we shaped our course for New found Land, with the winde at West South-west.

The one and twentieth, the winde was at South South-west; and we fell with the Land, being nothing but broken Islands. Then we stood to the Westward, being in the latitude of 49. degrees and an halfe.

The two and twentieth was faire weather, and the winde very variable: and about fixe of the clocke at night, the winde came to the West North-west. Then we stered in among the Islands, to see if we could finde any harbour to mend our Shippe: for the was very leake. When we were come in among them, we found nothing but broken Islands, and a great current, which did set from Island to Island, and had no ground at an hundred fathoms. That night we were very fore intangled with sunken Rocks, and in great danger of casting away our Ship, having very thicke weather: wherefore we kept to and fro all that night.

The foure and twentieth of July, in the morning, we spied some dozen Shallops, which were fishing (some two leagues from vs. Then we made what way we could toward them, &c. We remained in this Bay of Fage, in repairing our Shippe, and refreshing of our felles, vntill the two and twentieth of August. Then taking our leages of our kinde and loving friends, which giving them most heartie thanks for their good will towards vs, we put forth in the Sea, and with an indifferent and reasonable good passage we arrived safely in Dartmouth in Devonshire, and sent word to London vnto our owners, of the losse of our Master and his three companions, and of the dolefull successe of our Voyage, the foure and twentieth day of September, 1606.

The rest of this Journal, from the death of Master John Knight, was written by Oliver Browne one of the Company.

CHAP. XVII.

The fourth Voyage of JAMES HALL to Groneland, wherein he was first hurt by English adventures, Anno 1612. andaine by a Greenlanders. Written by WILLIAM BARTIN.

Ednesday, the eight of July, 1612. in the morning, I perceived the Sunne and the Moone, both very faire above the horizon, as I had done duers times before. At which time I purposed to finde out the longitude of that place by the Moones coming to the Meridian. Most part of this day I spent about finding of the Meridian line; which I did upon an Island neere the Sea, hanging at the extreames of my Meridian line two sheards with Plummetts at them, instead of an index, and sights.

Thursdai, the ninth day very early in the morning I went on shore the Island, being a faire morning,

Pintels are small Iron pins made fast to the Rudder, and being the Rudder, the Steerspitt, &c.

They get out of the Bay, where they rode.

Our Shippe Mele was splinted in two or three places. They coule not touch any Land.

Broken Islands in 49. degrees and a halfe of latitude.

Many broken Islands which were the Ills. de Fage.

Twelve Shallops of Fishers men.

Some two leagues from vs.

Some two leagues from vs.

Some two leagues from vs.

Some two leagues from vs.

Some two leagues from vs.

Some two leagues from vs.

morning, and observed till the Moon came just upon the Meridian. At which very instant, I observed the Sunnes height, and found it 8. degrees, 53. minutes, North: in the declination of the Pole 65. degrees 20. minutes. By the which, working by the doctrine of spherical triangles, having the three sides given, to wit, the complement of the Poles elevation; the complement of the Altitude; and the complement of the Sunnes declination, to find out the quantity of the angle at the Pole: I say, by this working, I found it to be four of the clock, 17. minutes, and 2. seconds. Which when I had done, I found by mine Ephemerides, that the Moon came to the Meridian at London that morning at four of the clock, 15. minutes, 34. seconds: which 17. minutes, 24. seconds, subtracted from 25. 24. leaves 8. 10. of time, for the difference of longitude between the Meridian of London (for which the Ephemerides was made) and the Meridian passing by this place in Greenland. Now the Moones motion that day, was 12. degrees 7. minutes; which converted into minutes of time, were 48. minutes, 29. seconds; which working by the rule of proportion, the works is thus: if 48. minutes, 29. seconds; the time that the Moon cometh to the Meridian sooner that day, then she did the day before, give 160. the whole circumference of the earth, what shall 8. minutes 10. seconds give, to wit, 60. degrees, 30. minutes, or there there about: which is the difference of longitude between the Meridian of London, and this place in Greenland, called Cockbus Sound, lying to the Westward of London.

60. degrees 30. minutes difference of longitude between the meridian of London and Cockbus Sound in Greenland.

Objection.

Answer.

This finding of the longitude, I confess is somewhat difficult and troublesome, and there may be some small error. But if it be carefully looked unto, and exactly wrought, there will be no great error; for your Ephemerides be true. But some will say, that this kind of working is not for Mariners; because they are not acquainted to work propositions by the table of Gages, and an instrument is not precise enough to find out the hours, minute, and second. For the loss of one minute of time, is the loss of 7. degrees of longitude. I answer, that although the most part are not wick to this work, yet I know some of the better sort, which are able to work this and the like propositions exactly. And those which they yet cannot, and are desirous to learn, may in short time attain to such knowledge as shall be sufficient for such things. Anyhow necessary it is, that the longitude of places should be knowne, I leave to the judgement of all skillful Mariners, and others that are learned in the Mathematicks.

This afternoon it was agreed by the chief of our Company, that our Master, *Lance Hall*, should goe in the smaller Ship, farther to the Northward.

Cockbus Ford in 61. deg. 30. min. Variation 13. deg. 15 min.

The forelast Thursday in the evening, he departed out of the *Patience* into the *Hart-castle*, to get forth of the Harbor, which our Master called *Cockbus-ford*, in remembrance of Alderman *Cockbus* one of the Aldermen; which place, is in the latitude of 65. degrees, 30. minutes. And the variation of the compass is 12. degrees, 18. minutes, to the Westward. That evening was very calme, and we towed our Shippe forth with the Shallops and Ships Boats. But within an hour or two after we were got into the Offing; the wind being at North, it blew a great storme, which continued all that night.

Many good Rodes.

Great footing.

The fourteenth, our Master turned the Ship vp to the River againe, toward the River where the supposed mine should be. But the tyde was so farre spent, that we could not get to Sea, but were constrained to Anchor in a roade at the South side of the River, some three leagues from the *Patience*, in which place are many good Rode-steads to be found.

Thursday, the fifteenth day, the wind was at North-west, and blew in little squalls; that we could not get to Sea that day. That night, eightene of vs went into the lands to look for some Deer, but found none. But we perceived the foot-prints of some great Beare, which were supposed to be of some great Elk: the foot was as bigge as any Ox-foot.

Tuesday, the twentieth, the weather still continued in such sort, that we were could not by any means get to the River, where the supposed Myne should be. Wherefore our Master bare room for *Ramsford*, being a River Southward of another, called *Cunninghams* River, some twelve leagues. And we came to an Anchor at the entrance on the South side of the Ford, about seven of the clocke.

Ramsford River. Ramsford Hall deadly wounded by a Sausage.

Wednesday, the twenty-first day, about nine or ten of the clocke, the Sauges came to batter with vs, being about four of them, and continued about an hour and an halfe: At which time our Master *Lance Hall* being in the Boate, a Sausage with his Darts broke him dead by the right side, which our Surgeon did take did pierce his liver. We all mused that he should strike him, and offer no harme to any of the rest: unless it were, that they knew him since he was there with the *Danes*; for out of that River they carried away five of the people, whereof never any returned againe: and in the next River, they killed a great number. And it should seeme that he which killed him, was either brother, or some neere kinsman of some of them that were carried away: for he did it very reluctantly, and came within four yards of him. And for ought we could see, the people are very kinde one to another, and ready to reuenge any wrong offered to them. All that day he lay very sore pained, looking for death every houre, and resigned all his charge to Master *Andrew Barker*, Master of the *Hart-castle*, willing him to place another in his room Master of the small Ship.

Thursday

Thursday, the three and twentieth, about eight of the clocke in the morning he dyed, being very penitent for all his former offences. And after he had shrowded him, we carried him in the Shallop, to burie him in some outland, according to his owne request while he was living. After we had buried him, we went in the Shallop to seek for the mine, which we had expected to find. All that day we rowed along toward the North, passing by a Cape called *Queens Sepia* as Cape.

The death of *Lance Hall*.

Queens Sepia as Cape.

That night we staid at an Island, some three leagues forth of the River. Friday, the foure and twentieth, in the morning, we rowed along with the compass, which is on the South-side of the entrance of *Cunninghams* River: And we found divers places, where the *Danes* had digged; it was a kinde of thinne stone, which when our Goldsmith, *Lance Carle*, had tried, it was found of no value, and had no metall at all in it: but was like unto *Hyacinth* thuds, and of a glistering colour. That day after we had dyed, we rowed vp into *Ramsford* some three leagues, where divers of our company went up into the Mountains, and found a Valley more pleasant, then they had seen in the Country. That evening we returned, and came to the place where the *Danes* had digged their supposed Mine, and took some of it in our Boats to carry with vs, and returned toward our Ship. That night we rowed and sailed, and thence morning about nine of the clocke, we came to our Ship.

Cunninghams River.

The supposed Mine found to be of no value.

A Christian Valley.

Saturday, the five and twentieth, being *Sater*, *Lance Hall*'s day, in the forenoon, we came to our Shippe, lying on the South side of the River, called *Ramsford* River. And as soon as our Master found, that the people there came no more to trade with vs, he determined to depart with the Shippe into the Kings Road to the *Patience*; and rowing about the harbour, where we lay to find some better place, we went out to the Sea, we found among the lands, where many of their winter houses had been, and some of their Tents were but lately carried away. In which place we also found one of their long Boates, made of wood, and bound together for the most part, with flayers of Whales fins, and covered with Seales skines, being some two and thirtie fathoms in length, and some six fathoms broad, having tenne thoughts or fathoms in it. That day about twelve of the clocke we weighed anchor, and departed out of *Ramsford* River, which lye in the latitude of 67. degrees, and the variation of the compass is 12. degrees 16. minutes, being a very faire River, and one of the most principally, which was low in that Country, stretching in East and East by South. This night, about one of the clocke, we came to the *Patience*, lying in the Kings Road.

Many of their winter houses in Ramsford River.

The fashion of their great Boates.

Ramsford Ford in the latitude of 67. degrees.

The variation is 12. degrees 16. minutes.

Sunday, the six and twentieth, Master *Andrew Barker*, and our Merchant, Master *William*, with other of the Company, were in conference about returning home, because that since our Master wasaine, none of the Sauges would trade with vs, as they were wont.

William Hamilton Master of the *Hart-castle*.

Wednesday, the nine and twentieth, we were likewise occupied about taking in of ballast for our Shippe: very light: and that evening it was agreed, that *Andrew Barker*, Master of the *Hart-castle*, should goe Master of the *Patience*, which was fore against the mind of *William Gordon*; and *William Hume* was appointed Master of the *Hart-castle*, and *John Garside*, one of the quarters Masters of the *Patience*, was Masters mate of the *Hart-castle*.

They came out of harbour.

Thursday, the fourth of August, in the morning the wind being Northerly a very small gale we got to Sea, where the wind came to the Southward, and we tacked sometime on the one boord, and sometime on the other, making small way on our course.

Thick and foggy weather, the wind blowing South.

Monday the tenth, was raine and foule weather, as it had continued every day since we came from harbour, fuing the fourth day, the wind was somewhat faire: For commonly while the wind is South it is very thick and foule weather. We tacked sometimes on one boord, and sometimes on the other, making a South by West way, at noone five leagues.

Ramsford Cape.

Wednesday, the twelfth, it waxed calme, we being somewhat Southward of a Cape, called *Ramsford* Cape: and about three or foure of the clocke in the afternoons, the wind came to the North and by West, an easie gale, with faire weather.

Variation 13. deg. 15 min.

The eighteenth at noone we were in 58. deg. 30. min. The fourteenth day, took the variation of the compass, finding it to be 12. degrees 22. minutes, contrary to the observations of 10. then in this place. And if any doe doubt of the truth thereof, they may with a little pains prove it. The eighteenth of August, the declination of the Sunne was 5. degrees 58. minutes; for the Meridian of London. But we being almost foure houes of time to the Westward thereof, there are three minutes to be abated from the rest: and so the declination was 5. degrees 55. minutes; and his height above the horizon was 22. degrees 40. minutes in the latitude of 59. degrees 0. min. and his distance from the South to the Westward, by the compass, was 81. degrees. And for truth of the first observation, I took another shortly after, finding them not to differ about 4. minutes.

Wednesday the nineteenth, the wind still continued with thicke and hazy weather, we being at noone in the latitude of 58. degrees 30. minutes, or thereabout, making a South South-east 60 way about ten leagues.

Variation 11. deg. 10 min.

Thursday the twentieth, was faire weather, the wind at East North-east, we steered away South-east and South-east by East, making at noone a South-east and by South way, about thirte leagues, being at noone in the latitude of 57. degrees 30. minutes. This day in the afternoon, I took the variation of the compass, and found it about 12. degrees 10. minutes.

Friday,

Friday the one and twentieth, fair weather, with the wind at North and North by East, and we made an East South-east way, half South-easterly twenty four leagues, being at noon by observation, in the latitude of 56. degrees 30. minutes.

Saturday the two and twentieth, fair weather, the wind at North and North by East, we made an East way half South-easterly, some twenty two leagues, being at noon in the latitude of 56. degrees 47. minutes.

Sunday the three and twentieth, fair weather, the wind at West North-west, we making an East and East by North way about twenty four leagues. This day I took the variation of the Compass, and found it to be 7. degrees 23. minutes, being at noon in the latitude of 57. de- 10

Variation 7.
degrees 23.
minutes.

Variation 7.
degrees 30.
minutes.

The true variation
6. deg.
4. minutes.

Monday the four and twentieth, fair weather, with S. Easterly breeze; fair weather with an North North-west, we making an East North-east way, half North-easterly about twenty four leagues, and were at noon by observation in the latitude of 58. degrees 4. minutes. This day I observed and found the Compass to be varied 7. degrees 20. minutes.

Tuesday the five and twentieth, fair weather and calms: the wind at North, we made a North-east and by East way fourteen leagues, being at noon in the latitude of 58. degrees 30. minutes. This day I found the common Compass to be varied one point, and the true variation to be 6. degrees 4. minutes.

Wednesday the six and twentieth, fair weather also, with the wind North North-west, we made a North-east and by East way half about twenty two leagues, being in the height of 59. 20 degrees 10. minutes.

Thursday the seven and twentieth, indifferent fair weather, with a stiff gale of wind at the North North-west, we making a North-east way about thirty one leagues, being at noon in the latitude of 60. degrees 10. minutes.

Friday the eight and twentieth, the wind at South-east with a stiff gale, we made good about noon a North-east and by East way about twenty nine leagues. This day in the afternoon it began to grow a storm, that we were in great distress, the wind at East South-east. But about eleven of the clock it came to the North-west, and North-west by South. And we ranne home twenty leagues.

Saturday the nine and twentieth, it blew so stiff, that we could bear no more but our fore- 30

Sunday the thirtieth, all the forenoon it blew a very stiff gale, and about noon the wind came South-easterly and it blew a very great storm, which continued all that day and that night in such sort, that we could not sail at all, but all that night lay at hull.

Monday the one and thirtieth, in the morning about four of the clock, the wind came to the South-west a very stiff gale. At which time we set our fore-sail. The wind continued all this day and night, we steered away East and by South, making at noon an East North-east way about thirty four leagues.

Tuesday the fifth of September, the wind still continued at South-west, blowing a very stiff gale, we steered away East and by South, making an East way about fifty leagues. This day at 40

Wednesday the second fair weather with the wind at South-west, we made an East and by South way half a point South-easterly about twenty two leagues, being at noon in the latitude of 60. degrees 10. minutes. This day I observed, and found the Compass to be varied three degrees to the Westward.

Thursday the third day fair weather, the wind at South-west: we made an East by North way at noon about twenty leagues. This day in the afternoon, the wind being at North North-west, it blew a very stiff gale for two Watches; and toward seven or eight of the clock the storm so increased, that our ship was not able to bear any sail. And all that night we lay at hull.

Friday the fourth, the storm still continued, and we could bear no sail all that day till about four of the clock in the afternoon, at which time we set our fore course, and our main course. The night before in the storm, we lost *The Harp*. This day we made some twelve leagues East and by North. And we fell to sea-ward lying at hull four leagues South by West.

Saturday the fifth calm weather, but very thick and close all the forenoon: the wind continued still at North North-west, we making from the time we set our course, the day before, about twenty leagues East half South-easterly; being at noon in the latitude of 59. degrees 53. minutes.

They took company of their
cousin, *The Harp*.

Variation 6.
degrees to the
East.
Ground found.

Sunday the sixth, fair weather, the wind at North North-west, we steering away East North-east, and East and by North, made an East by North way, half North-easterly some 20. leagues, 60

Monday the seventh, very fair weather, the wind South-east and South-east by East, we

racked

tacked in the morning to the North-ward, and ranne East North-east and East by North until seven or eight in the afternoon: at which time we tacked up to the Southward, and went away South-west till toward twelve a clock that night twenty leagues.

Tuesday the eight, in our morning Watch I found our felus to be in 59. degrees 30. minutes: And about five of the clock I espied Land, which we supposed to be the Isles of Orkney, as afterward we found them to be the same. And toward three of the clock, we came to an Anchor in a Channell running between the Islands; where the people came to us, and brought us Hennes, Greese, and Sheepe, and telling them to vs for old clothes and shoes, desiring rather then then money. There are about eighteens of these Islands, which are called by the name of the

10 Orkneys.

Wednesday the ninth, it was thick weather, and the wind so Easterly that we could not weigh Anchor.

Thursday the tenth, fair weather, and the wind came to the North-west, and about noon we weighed Anchor, and toward five of the clock we were cleere off the Isles. The Channell for the most part lyeth North-west and South-east. All that night we stood away South-east.

Friday the eleventh, fair weather, with the wind at North North-west. And about nine of the clock in the morning, we steered away South South-east. At which time we had fight of *Baqaham-nells*: And about two of the clock we were thwart of it. The fourteenth, we came to an Anchor in *Hull Road*, for which the Lord be praised.

10 Here I think it not amiss briefly to relate the state and manners of the people of Greenland, forasmuch as I could learn: As also what likelihood there is of a passage into the Sea, which lyeth upon *Tartary* and *China*.

The North-west part of *Greenland* is an exceeding high Land to the Sea-ward, and almost nothing but Mountaynes; which are wonderful high all within the Land, as farre as we could percieve: and they are all of stone, some of one colour, and some of another, and all differing, as though they were of stone value; but indeed they are not worth any thing. For our Goldsmith *Jamus* (*Carle*) voyd very much of the Vre, and found it to be nothing worth. If there be any Metall, it lyeth so low in the Mountaynes, that it cannot be well come by. There are some Rocks in these Mountaynes, which are exceeding pure Stone, finer, 30

and whiter then Alabaster. The sides of these Mountaynes continually are covered with Snow for the most part and especially the North sides, and the North sides of the Valleys, having a kind of Mofe, and in some places Grasse with a little branch running all along the ground, bearing a little blacke Berrie, it runneth along the ground like Three-leaved Grasse here in *England*. There are few or no Trees growing, as farre as we could percieve, but in one place some forty miles within the Land, in a River, which we called *Tali River*. There I saw on the South-side of an high Mountayne, which we went up, and found (as it were) a young Grove of small Wood, some of it six or seven foot high like a Coppice in *England*, that had bene some two or three yeeres cut. And this was the most Wood that we saw growing in this Country; being some of it a kind of Willow, Juniper, and such like.

40 We found in many places much *Angelica*. We suppose the people ate the Root thereof, for some causes. For we have seene them have many of them in their Boats.

There are great flocks of Foxes in the Islands, and in the Mayne, of sundry colours: And there are a kind of Hares as white as Snow, with their furs or haire very long.

All other be Deere, but they are most commonly up within the Mayne very farre; because the people doe so much hunt them, that come neere the Sea. I saw at one time flocks of them together, which were all that we did see in the Country: But our men have bought divers Coats of the people made of Deeres skines, and have bought of their Hornes also. Besides, we have divers times seene the footstaps of some beast, whose foot was bigger then the foot of a great Ox. Furthermore, the Inhabitants have a kinde of Dogges, which they 50 keepe at their Houses, and Tents, which Dogges are almost like unto Wolves, lying by fire, as the Foxes doe. But one thing is very strange, as I thought: for the Pizzels of both Dogges and Foxes are bone.

The people all the Summer time vie nothing but fishing, drying their fish, and Seales flesh upon the Rocks for their Winter Provision. Every one both man and woman have each of them a Boate made with long small pieces of Firre-wood, covered with Seales skines very well drest, and sewed so well with sinewes or gurs, that no water can pierce them through, being some of them about twenty foot long, and not past two foot, or two foot and an half broad, in forme of a Weavers shuttle, and so light, that a man may carry many of them at once for the weight. In the fe Boates they will row so swiftly, that it is almost incredible for no ship in the World is able to keepe way with them, although they have neuer so good a gale of wind: and yet they vie but one Oare, who fitting in the middle of their Boate, and holding their Oare in the middle, being broad at each end like our Oares, will at an instant goe backward and forward, as they please.

Zzz

In

Land delayed.

The Isles of Orkney.

The lying of the Channell to Orkney.

Baqaham-nell. They arrive at Hull.

High Mountaynes of those very pure.

No profitable Vre.

Continuall Snow. Grasse. No Trees. Tali River. A Grove of small wood.

Foxes. Hares. Deere.

These be some to be Elkes, or Loebes. Dogges like Wolves. The Pizzels of Dogges and Foxes are bone: to wit, the Marbles, Pizzels, of which I have by me some of them.

The great swiftnesse of their Boats. Their Oares broad at both ends.

Salmons and
Morles, &c.
Angles and
Lines.

Their great
Boats 30, 40
long.

They worship
the Sunne.
Their saluta-
tion.

Their burials.

They burne
the weapons
and all other
Furniture of
the dead.

They vie fire.

They are not
Man-eaters.

Nails & old
Iron greatly
desired of the
Savages.
Men are not
to goe among
Savages with
our weapons.

In these Boates they catch the most part of their food, being Seales and Salmons, Morles, and other kinds of fishes. Some they kill with their Darts, and other some with Angles, having a Line made of small shivers of Whales Finnes, and an Hook of some fishes bones: with which Lines and Hookes, we also have caught very much fish.

Also they have another kind of Boate, which is very long. For we have ferre one of them thirte two foot in length, open in the topple like our Boates; having tenne fathoms in it. In which when they remove their Dwellings, they carrie their Goods or House-hold-stuff: for they remove their Dwellings very often, as their fishing doth ferre, lying in the Summer time, in Tents made of Seales skines, and in Winter in Houles some what in the ground.

We could not particularly learne their Rites or Ceremonies: but generally they worship the Sunne, as chiefe Authour of their Felicitie. At their first approach unto vs they vied with their hands to point vp to the Sunne, and to strike their hands vpon their breasts, crying *Yhom*; as who would say, I meane no harme: which they will doe very often, and will not come neere you, vnill you doe the like; and then they will come without any feare at all.

They burie their dead in the Out-lands neere the Seaside. Their manner of Buriall is this. Vpon the topple of the Hills they gather a company of stones together, and make thereof an hollow Caue or Graue, of the length and breadth of the bodie, which they intend to burie, laying the stones somewhat close like a wall, that neyther Foxes, nor other such beasts may deuoure the bodies, couering them with broad fiones, shewing staile off like a pile of fiones. And neere vnto this Graue where the bodie lyeth, is another, wherein they burie his Bow and Arrowes, with his Darts and all his other Provision, which hee vied while hee was liuing. Hee is buried in all his Apparell: and the coldnesse of the Climate doth keepe the bodie from smelling and flusking, although it lye aboue the Ground.

They eat all their Food raw, and vie no fire to dreffe their Victuals, as farre as wee could perceiue. Also wee haue ferre them drinke the Salt-water at our shippes side: But whether it bee vntoill or no, I cannot tell. Although they dreffe not their meate with fire, yet they vie fire for other things, as to warme them, &c.

Diners of our men were of opinion, that they were Man-eaters, and would haue deuoured vs, if they could haue caught vs. But I doe not thinke they would. For if they had bin so minded, they might at one time haue caught our Cooke, and two other with him, as they were filling of water at an Island, a great way from our ship. These three I lay were in the ships Boate without eyther Musket, or any other Weapon, when as a great company of the Savages came rowing vnto them with their Darts, and other Furniture, which they neuer goe without, and stood looking into the Boate for Moyles, or any old Iron, which they so greatly desire, while our men were in such a feare, that they knew not what to doe. At length our Cooke rememberd that hee had some old Iron in his pocket, and gaue each of them some, as farre as it would goe, with his Key of his Chest. And presently they all departed without offering any harme at all. But this I speake not, that I would haue men to trust them, or to goe among them vnprovided of Weapons.

CHAP. XVIII.

A true Relation of such things as happened in the fourth Voyage for the Discoverie of the North-west Passage, performed in the
yeere 1615. Written by WILLIAM
BARRETT.

The first by
Hudson in
which hee per-
formed, the se-
cond by Sir
Thomas Barre,
the third by
Captaine Gib-
bitts.



FTER three sundry Voyages towards the North-west, to the great charge of the Adventurers: the last being vnder the command of Captaine Gibbitts (in which was little or nothing performed.) Yet the Right Worships Sir Dudley Digges Knight, Master Willehelme Elquire, Master Alderman Iames, with others being not therewith discouraged, This yeere 1615 againe set forth the Discoverie, a ship of fiftie five runnes or thereabouts, which man had bene the three former Voyages on the action. The Master was Robert Bileth, a man well acquainted that way: having bene employed in the three former Voyages: my selfe being his Mate and Associate, with fouretee others and two Boyes.

The sixteenth, we weighed Anchor at Saint Katharines, and that tyde came to Blackwell, the 60 wind being at South South-west. The seventeenth, wee went downe to Greenwich, and the eighteenth to Lee, where we anchored that night.

Vpon

Vpon the first of May, we saw Land on the Coast of Greenland, on the East side of Cape Farewell: and that night we had a great storme: so we kept a Southerly course to get about the Ice which lay on that shoare, and then kept our course vntill the fourteenth day of May, all which forenoone we layed by many great Islands of Ice, some of which were about two hundred foot high above water (as I proued by one shortly after) which I found to be two hundred and fortie foot high, and if report of some men be true, which affirme, that there is but one foweneth part of the Ice above water, then the height of that piece of Ice, which I obserued was one hundred and fortie fathomes, or one thousand five hundred and eightie foot from the topple to the bottome: this proportion I knowe doth hold in much Ice, but whether it doe so in all, I know not.

This fourteenth of May, about noone we were come to the firme Ice, as one would suppose, being in the latitude of 61. degrees 26. minutes or thereabout, being the latitude of the South part of the Ile of Resolution: we comming to this Ice, our Master asked my opinion concerning the putting into the Ice. My iudgement was it would be best for vs to stand, and ply it vnto the Northwards. Hee answered, we were on the North side of the South Channell, and much Ice we must passe through, and if that we could get some two or three leagues within the Ice, it would euerie tide open, and we should get some thing onward of our way, huing all the Channell to the South-wards of vs. So with this resolution we put within the Ice, the wind being at East North-east: this first entrance I liked not very well, scarce finding any place to put in our ships head, and being neere thirte leagues from the shoare, towards Euening wee were fast amongst the Ice.

But sometimes each day the Ice would a little open, we making what way we could towards the North-west in for the shoare till the two and twentieth day, having had the wind all Southerly. Yet we plainly saw that we lete to the Southwards, for all that wee could doe.

The two and twentieth day, the wind came vp at North North-west: then our Master determined to stand forth againe. For if the wind should haue come to the North-east, it would be vnpossible for vs to fetch any part of the Channell, seeing we drew so fast to the Southwards, with Southerly winds, and hauing so farre into the shoare, wee hauing ferre the Land.

Our Master was also determined to spend some twentie, or foure and twentie daies in *Frezen Dunes*, to see what hopes would be that wayes, supposing there would be little good to be done in *Hudsons Streights* for this time limited: then we plying to get to Sea-ward, and to by eight a clock at night, the three and twentieth day, wee were cleere of the thick Ice: againe, the Lord make vs thankfull, the wind at North-west and by North faire weather: but no longer wee were forth of the Ice, but that our Master changed his opinion: and being cleere of this thicke Ice wee flood to the Northward as much as the Ice and winde would giue vs leaue, running some thirteene leagues true North-east by North, being in the latitude of 61. degrees 30. minutes. The foure and twentieth day faire weather: the five and twentieth day, also faire weather, the wind at North and by West, till fixe a clocke, we hauing made a North-east by North way, about twelue leagues and an halfe, our latitude at noone 62. degrees 20. minutes, at fixe a clocke the wind was at the North North-east. The fixe and twentieth day, all the forenoone faire weather and cold: but in the afternoon it blew very hard, being close hane weather, that about two a clocke this afternoon wee tooke in our sailes and hulled with our ship till the next morning at foure a clocke, all the time that we layed this day we past through many ledges of Ice hauing great quantitie to the Northward of vs, and hauing runne about twen to one leagues true vpon a West course. And note where I put this word *true*, I meane the true course, the variation of the Compass, and other accidents allowed.

The seven and twentieth day close foggy weather with much snow freezing on our throwds and tackling: the like we had not all this yeare before: but towards foure a clocke in the afternoon it began to cleere vp, and about fixe a clocke we saw Land, being the land of Resolution, and bearing West from vs about thirteene or fouretee leagues. This morning we let saile, and flood to and fro as the Ice would suffer vs, and at ten at night, wee moored our ship to a piece of Ice, the wind being at West.

The eight and twentieth day being Whit Sunday, it was faire weather, but the winde was at the West, and West by North all this day we were fast to the piece of Ice. Yet we plainly perceived that we set a great deale more into the Streights with the flood, then we let forth with the ebbe the nine and twentieth day, the wind was variable, and faire weather about eleven a clock we let saile and tacked to and fro along by the land. And about two a clocke the next morning, the wind came to the South South-east, but we had so much Ice that we could doe but little good with a faire wind, the wind continued all this day and night a stiffle gale: this night (or No night, so rather Euening, because it was not darke at all) we were let within the point of the land: so that now we were within the Streights.

The one & thirtieth day also faire weather, the wind for the most part at North North-west, the afternoon being cleere wee saw the point of the South shoare, called *Bassins Is.* to beare from vs due South by the Compass, which is indeed South South-east, somewhat Eastward, because the Compass is varied to the Westwards twentie foure degrees.

Zzz 2

The

Greenland,
Cape Farewell,
High Ice
Islands.

Ile of Resolution.

Variation 24
degrees.

The first of June, we had some snow in the forenoon, but very fair weather in the afternoon, the wind at West North-west. We perceiving the Ice to be more open, close aboard the shoare, made the bell we could get in, and to come to Anchor, if the place were convenient; and by seven a clock we were in a good Harbour, on the North-west side of the Island of *Refolition*, where an East South-east Moone maketh full Sea, or halfe an houre past seven on the change day, as Sea-men account the water doth rise and fall, neere four fathomes; the Compass doth vary to the West 24. degrees 6. minutes, and is in longitude West from *London* 66. degrees 33. minutes. The breadth of the South Channel, or the distance between the Island and the South shoare, is sixteen leagues, and the North Channel is eight miles wide in the narrowest place.

Vpon this Land we went on shore, but found no certaine signe of Inhabitants, but the track of Beares and Foxes, Rocks and stonie ground, hardly any thing growing thereon: it is indifferent high Land to the Northward, hauing one high Hill or Hummocke on the North-east side, but to the Southward it falleth away very low.

The second of June in the morning the wind came vp at East South-east, with much snow and fowle weather: about noone wee weighed Anchor, and stood vp along by the Island, so well as the Ice would giue vs leaue to get to the North shoare. Wee continuing our courtes to neere the North shoare, as conveniently we could, with much variable weather and windes, but steadfast in continuance among Ice, till the eighth day, hauing the wind full contrary to vs, and being somewhat neere a point of Land, or rather a company of Islands, which after wee called *Savage* 20 *Isle*, hauing a great Sound or In-draught, betweene the North shoare and them. At five a clock wee came to Anchor neere one of them, being the Eastermost fauing one. But whiles wee were furling our sailes, we heard and saw a great company of Dogges running vp and downe, with such howling and barking, that it seemed very strange. Shortly after we had moored our ship, we sent our Boat somewhat neerer the shoare, to see if they could perceive any people; who returning, told vs that there were Tents and Boats, or Canoes, with a great many Dogges, but people they saw none. After Prayer, when our men had slept, wee fitted our Boate and our felues with things convenient: then my selfe with seven others landed, and went to their Tents, where finding no people, we marched vp to the top of a Hill (being about a flight floor off) where we saw one great Canoe or Boat, which had about fourteen men in it, being on the furtherth, 30 or North-west point of the Island, and from vs somewhat more then a Musket shot. Then I called vnto them, vnto some words of *Greenlandish* speech, making signes of friendship. They did like to vs; but seeing them so fearefull of vs, and we not willing to trust them, I made another signe to them, shewing them a Knife and other Trifles, which I left on the top of the Hill, and returned downe to their Tents againe. There wee found some Whale Finnes to the number of fortie or fiftie, with a few Seale skinnies which I tooke aboard, leauing Knives, Beades, and Counters instead thereof; and amongst their houses I found a little bagge, in which was a company of little Images of men, one the Image of a woman with a child at her backe, all the which I brought away.

Among their Tents being five in number, all couered with Seales skinnies, were running vp and downe, about thirteie five or fortie Dogges most of them muzzled. They were of our mungrell Mastiffes, being of a brinded blacke colour, looking almost like Wolves, these Dogges they vie in stead of Horses, or rather as the *Lappians* doe their Deere, to draw their sleds from place to place over the Ice: their sleds are thod or lined with great bones of fishes to keep them from wearing, and their Dogges haue Collars and Furniture very fitting.

These people haue their Apparell, Boots, Tents, and other necessaries much like to the Inhabitants in *Greenland*, saying that they are not so rude and artificiall, seeming to be more rude and vnciuill, ranging vp and downe as their fishing is in season. For in most places where wee came ashore, we saw where people had beene, although not this yeere; but where their habitation or their abode in Winter is, I cannot well coniecture.

This Island lieth in the latitude of 62. degrees 30. minutes, and in longitude West from *London*, 73. degrees or neere therabouts, being sixtie leagues from the entrance of the Streights: here the Compass doth varie 27. degrees 30. minutes, and a South-east Moone four degrees East maketh a full Sea: it doth ebbe and flow almost as much water, as it doth at the *Refolition*, and here the flood commeth from the Eastward, although our Maister was of opinion to the contrary.

The tenth day in the morning, at fixe a clocke we set saile, the winde at North, which continued not, but was very variable till noone, and then it came to North-west, we hauing layed along by the shoare, about some nine leagues and an halfe North North-west, the Ice lying so thicke in the offen, that we could not well get out of it: then perceiving a good Harbour betweene two small Islands and the *Mayne*, wee went in with our ship, where wee moored her, and stayed till the twelfth day at Evening.

In this place it is high water on the change day, at nine of the clocke, or a South-east Moone maketh a full Sea: the latitude of this place is 63. degrees 40. minutes; and the flood doth come from

from the Eastward, although our Maister was perswaded otherwise, as well in this place, as at *Saluage* Islands: for being among Islands, euery point hath his severall set and eddie. But I going to the top of the Island, plainly perceived the Ice to come from the South-east, and from the North-west on the ebbe, in this place is no signe of people, as we could perceive.

The sixteenth day, lying still in the Ice, the weather being very close and hazy, as it hath benee these six dayes; and being neere a great company of Islands, in the afternoon the winde being at West North-west, we stood in amongst their Islands; and in the evening we moored our Shippe to one of them in a small cove, the better to defend her from the Ice. In this place we stayed all the seventeenth day: and vpon the eighteenth, being Sunday, about eleven a clocke we set saile, being almost calme, making the bell way we could go forth. Here are a great 10 company of Islands, each hath his severall set and eddy, that the Ice doth so runne to and fro, and with such violence, that our Shippe was in more danger further off them in this place: the latitude of the Ile we rode by is 63. degrees 26. minutes, and longitude West from *London*, neere 73. degrees 25. minutes: the Compass hath variation 27. degrees 46. minutes, and at a quarter of an houre after nine on the Change day, doth make a full Sea. This Evening, and the next morning, we had a faire flexing gale of winde at South-east, we were standing along in distance from the Ile we put laft from: which Point, I called *Broken Point*, it being indeede 20 a point of broken lles.

On the nineteenth day, by twelve a clocke at noone, we were about foure miles from the Point before named, fast inclosed with Ice, very faire weather; and well we might haue called this Point *Farewell* or *Fare Point*, for from this day till the thirtieth day, the weather was so faire, and the sea so calm, or altogether calme, that in few places elsewhere, finer weather could not be: and till the fiften and twentieth at night, we were so fast inclosed vp with Ice, that at some times one could not well dippe a pale of water by the Ship's side: while we were thus fast in the Ice, vpon the one and twentieth day, I saw both the Sunne and Moone at one time, as indeede it is viall in faire weather.

This one and twentieth, being faire weather, as afore is said, and I seeing both the Sunne and Moone so faire: I thought it a fit time to make an obseruation for the Longitude.

But the two and twentieth day being very faire and cleare, and also calme, being almost as freely as on thore: it was no neede to bid me be my Instrument of variation to take the time of the Moones coming to the Meridian, hauing also my quadrant ready to take the Sunnes altitude, it being indifferent large, as of foure footes sixe diamiter: haue taken the variation of my needle as precisely as possible I could, which was 28. degrees 30. minutes West, and if any be desirous to worke the same, they may, but my worke was as followeth.

The Sunnes altitude, at the instant when the Moone was on the Meridian, was 26. degrees 40. minutes and the Sunnes declination for that time 23. degrees 6. minutes. By which three things giuen, I found the houre to be fixe a clocke 4. minutes 23. seconds, 1. third 4. fourths, or 76. 40 meridies, the Moone came to the Meridian at *London* at foure a clocke 54. minutes, 30. seconds: and after *Orignau* the Moone came to the Meridian at foure a clocke 53. minutes, 4. seconds, at *Wittenberg* the same day. Now hauing this knowne, it is no hard matter to finde the longitude of this place sought. For according to the Moones mean motion, which is 13. degrees a day, that is in time 48. minutes; and to this account, if the be on the Meridian at twelve a clock this day, tomorrow it will be 48. min. past 12. So I hauing the time found by obseruation at this place, 54. 40. hours, 4. minutes, 23. seconds, 1. third 4. fourths: but in this I neede not come so precise: and at *London*, at 4. hours 54. minutes, 30. seconds: which subtracted from the former, leaueth 10. minutes, 13. seconds, 1. third 4. fourths, now the Moones motion that foure and twentie houres, was 23. degrees 38. minutes: which conuerred into time, is 50. minutes 25. seconds 30. thirds: then the proportion Randell thus; If 50. minutes, 25. seconds, 30. thirds, give 360. degrees, what the proportion Randell thus; If 50. minutes, 25. seconds, 30. thirds, give 360. degrees, what 50 shall 10. minutes, 23. seconds, 1. third 4. fourths give? the fourth proportional will be 74. degrees 51. minutes, which is West of *London*; because the Moone came later by 10. minutes, 23. seconds, and by the same working by *Orignau* Ephemerides, the distance is 92. degrees, 5. minutes, West of West. But whether be the true, I leave to others to iudge: in these workings may some error be committed, if it be not carefully looked vnto: as in the obseruation, and also in finding what time the Moone cometh to the Meridian, at the place where the Ephemerides is supposed to, and perchance in the Ephemerides themselves: in all which, the best iudicious may erre: yet if obseruations of this kinde, or some other, at places faire remote, as at the Cape *Barneferance*, *Bantam*, *Lapon*, *Nova Albiam* and *Magellan* Straits, if possible we should haue a true 60 Geography then we haue. And seeing I am entred to speake of celestiall obseruations, I will note another which I made the twenty sixt of April, being outward bound at Sea, by the Moones coming in a right line, with two fixed Starrs; the one was the *Lynx* beare, a Starr of the first magnitude; the other a Starr in the Lyons rumpe, of the second magnitude, as followeth: The circumference or outward edge of the Moone, being in a right or straight line, with thole

And concerning what the Shore will yield, as Beach finnes, Morfe teeth, and such like, I can little say, because we came not on to any of the places where hope was of finding them.

But here some may object and ask, why we sought that Coast no better: to this I answer, that while we were thereabout, the weather was so exceeding foule we could not, for first we anchored in Wootenholme Sound. Where presently our Ship drove with two anchors a head, then were we forced to stand forth with a full sail. The next day in Whale Sound, we lost an Anchor and Cable, and could fetch the place no more: then we came to anchor near a small Land lying between Sir Tho. Smiths Sound, and Whale Sound, but the wind came more outward, that we were forced to weigh againe: nevertheless if we had beene in a good harbour, bannig but our Ships Boat, we durst not find her farre from the Ship, bannig so few men (as fawentee was at) and some of them very weak: but the chief cause wee spent so little time to seek a Harbour, was our great desire to performe the Discoverie, bannig the Sea open in all that part, and full likelihood of a passage: but when we had coasted the Land so farre to the Southward, that hope of passage was none, then there was too farre spent, and many of our men very weak, and without having some belief that ships the next year would be sent for the killing of Whales, which might better doe it then wee.

And seeing I have briefly set downe, what hope there is of making a profitable voyage, it is not unfit your Worship should know what let or hinderance might be to the same. The chiefest and greatest cause is, that some yere it may happen by reason of the Ice, lying between 72. degrees and a halfe, and 76. degrees no minutes, that the Ships cannot come into those places, till toward the middle of July, so that want of time to stay in the Countrey may be some let: yet they may well tarry till the last of August, in which space much business may be done, and good store of Oile made: nevertheless if store of Whales come in (as no force to the contrary) what cannot be made in Oile may be brought home in Blubber, and the Faeces will arise to good profit. Another hinderance may bee, because the bottome of the Sounds will not be so close cleere as would be wished, by means thereof now and then a Whale may be lost (the same case sometime chances in Greenland) yet I am persuaded those Sounds before named, will all be cleere before the twentieth of July: for in this year were in Whale Sound the fourth day among many Whales, and might have strake them without let of Ice. Furthermore, there is little wood to be expected, either for fire or other necessities, therefore Coles and other such things must be provided at home, they will bee so much the readier there.

Thus much I thought good to certify your Worship, wherein I trust you will conceive, that much time hath not bene spent in vaine, or the business over carefully neglected, and although wee have not performed what we desired (that is, to have found the passage) yet what was promised (as to bring certaintie and a true description) truth will make manifest, that I have not much erred.

And I dare boldly say (without boasting) that more good discoverie hath not in shorter time (to my remembrance) bene done, since the action was attempted, considering how much Ice we have passed, and the difficultie of sailing so neere the Pole (upon a transe) and above all, the variation of the Compass, whose wonderful operation is such in this Bay, increasing and decreasing so suddenly and swift, being in some parts (as in Wootenholme Sound, and in Sir Tho. Smiths Sound) varied above five Points or 56. degrees, a thing almost incredible and unthought in all the world before, so that without great care, and good direction, a true description could not have bene borne had I not been assisted by my men, who are so full, I conceive them too little, to express my thankfull minde for my many favours, wherein I shall be contented to supply my other wants by my best endeavours, and ever rest at

Your Worships command,

WILLIAM BAFFIN.

A briefe and true Relation or Journall, containing ship accidents as happened in the fift voyage, for the discoverie of a passage to the North-west, set forth as the charges of the right Worshipfull Sir Tho. Smith Knights, Sir Dudley Digges Knights, Master Iohn Wootenholme Esquire, Master Alderman Tones, with others, in the good ship called the Discoverie of London; by Robert Bileth Master, and my selfe Pilot, performed in the yeere of our Lord 1616.

March 14.

In the Name of God, Amen. The forenamed ship being in full readinesse upon the twentieth tixe of March, we set sail at Grassefud, being in number twentee persons, having very fair weather, which continued till the second of April: by that time we were off Portland, then the wind comming Westward with foule weather, we kept Sea till the fourth day, then being not able to fetch Plymouth, bore round for Dartmouth, where wee staid eleven dayes, in which time was much foule weather and westerly winde.

The

The fifteenth day of April, being cleere of Dartmouth, we were forced the next day to put into Plymouth. The nineteenth day we set saile from thence, and the twentieth in the morning we past betweene the Lands end and Sisy with a faire wind. Continuing our course, as in the briefe Table or Journall is set downe, with many particulars from noone to noone, that here I need not make a tedious repetition, nothing worthy of note hapning, but that we had a good passage, and the first Land we saw was in Fram's Coast, on the coast of Greenland in the latitude of 61. degrees 20. minutes. On the fourteenth of May in the forenoone, then fixe of the people being a sailing came to vs, to whom we gave small pieces of Iron, they keeping vs companie being very ioyfull, supposing wee had intended to come to anchor: but when they saw vs stand off from thence they followed vs a while, and then went away discontented, to our fteeming.

We prosecuting our Voyage, were loth to come to anchor as yet, although the wind was contrarie, but still plyed to the Northward, until we came into 70. degrees 20. minutes: then wee came to anchor in a faire Sound (neere the place Master Davis called London Coast). The twentieth of May at evening, the people eflipping vs fled away in their Boates, getting on Rocks wounding and killing at vs, but after this night we saw them no more, leaving many Dogs running to and fro on the Land.

Men and dogs;

At this place we staid two dayes, in which time weooke in fresh water and other necessities: here we had some dislike of the passage, because the Tydes are so small as not arising above eight or nine foot, and keepe no certaine course, but the nearest time of high water on the change day is at a quarter of an hour past nine, and the Flood commeth from the South.

The two and twentieth day at a North Sonne, we set saile and plyed till Northward, the wind being right against vs, we stood off and on. Upon the fixe and twentieth day in the afternoon, we found a dead Whale, about fixe and twentie leagues from thence, hanging all her finnes. Then making our ship halt, were fitt the best means we could to get there, and with much toyle got a hundred and lxxxix that evening. The next morning the Sea went very high and the wind arising, the Whale broke from vs, and we were forced to leave her and set saile, and having not stood past three or foure leagues North-westward, came to the Ice, then were tacked and stood to the shoareward, a fore storme ensued.

By the thirtieth day in the afternoon, wee came faire by Hope Sanderfons, the farthest Land

Hope Sanderfons

Master Davis was at, lying between 72. and 73. degrees; and that evening by a North Sonne we came to much Ice, which we put into, plying all the next day to get through it.

The first of June, we were cleere of the Ice before named, and not farre from thence, the wind blowing very hard at North North-east, then we put in among divers Islands, the people fleeing vs fled away in all haste leaving their Tents behinde, and upon a small Rocks they hid two young Maides or Women. Our ship riding not farre off, we eflipped them, to whom our Master with some other of our companie went in the Boate, they making signes to be carried to the Land where their Tents were close adioyning. When they came thither, they found two old women more, the one very old, to our esteemment little lesse then fowercore, the other not so old. The next time we were on thence, there was another Woman with a child in her back, who had hid herself among the Rocks, till she heard how well we had fared them in, in giving them pieces of Iron and such like, which they highly esteemme, in change thereof they gave us Seales skinn, other riches they had none, faze dead Seales, and fat of Seales, some of which fat or blubber afterward we carried aboard, the poore women were very diligent to carry it to the water side to put into our caske, making shew that the men were over at the Mayne, and at an other small Land something more Eastward. Then making signes to them that we would then returne our ship and let them where the men were: the foure youngest came into our Boate; when they were aboard they much wondred to see our ship and furniture: we gave them of our meat, which they taking would not eat. Then two of them went on the Land, where they flippod the men to be: the other two were carried to their Tents againe. Those that were to take the men could not find them, but came as neere the ship as they could, and at evening wee set them out to the other.

Tents, Men and Women

This place we called Women's Lands; it lyeth in the latitude of 72. degrees 45. minutes: here the Flood commeth from the Southward; at nept Tydes the water ariseth but tixe or seaven foute, and a South South-east Moone maketh a full Sea. The Inhabitants very poore, living chiefly on the Belts of Seales, dried, which they clout raye, with the skinnies they cloutie themselves, and also make coverings for their Tents and Boats which they dreffe very well. The women in their apparel are different from the men, and are marked in the face with divers blacke strokes or lines, the skin being rufed with some sharpe instrument when they are young, and blacke colour put therein, that by no means it will be gotten forth.

The people doe (which) Women.

Concerning their Religion, I can little say: only they have a kinde of worship or adoration to the Sunne, which continually they will point unto and strike their hand on their breast, crying *Aman*; their dead they burie on the side of the Hills, where they lye (which is commonly on small Islands) making a pile of stones over them, yet not so close but that we might see the dead body, the aire being so piercing that it keepeth them from much stinking favour. So likewise I have seene their Dogs buried in the same manner.

Buriall of Men and Dogs; Upon

Religion.

Vpon the fourth day we let sayle from thence, hauing very faire weather, although the winde were contrary, and plyed to and fro betweene the Ice and the Land, being as it were a channell of fouen or eight leagues broad: then on the ninth day, being in the latitude of 74. degree 4. minutes, and much pelted with Ice, nere vnto three small Ilands, lying eight miles from thence, we came to anchor nere one of them.

These Ilands are vnto be frequented with people in the latter part of the year, as is stomed by the houses and places where the tents had stood: but this year as yet they were not come: here the tides are very small, especially the flood, which ariseth not above six or fix foot, yet the ebbe runneth with an indifferent streame, the cause thereof (in mine opinion) is the great abundance of Snow, melting on the Land all this part of the year.

The tenth day we let sayle from thence, and stood through much Ice to the Westward, to try if that further from the floare, we might proceede: but this attempt was soone quailed, for the more Ice we went through, the thicker it was, till we could see no place to put in the Ship head.

Seeing, that as yet we could not proceede, we determined to stand in for the floare, there to abide some few dayes, till such time as the Ice were more waffed and gone (for we plainly saw that it consumed very fast) with this resolution we stood in, and came to anchor among many Ilands, in the latitude of 73. degrees 45. minutes. On the twelfth day at night here we continued two dayes without thence or figure of any people, till on the fifteenth day in the morning, about one o'clock, then came two and fortie of the Inhabitants in their Boares or Canoes, and gaue vs Seale skines, and many peeces of the bone or bone of the Sea Vnicorne, and shewed vs diuers peeces of Sea Mors teeth: making signs that to the Northward were many of them: in exchange thereof, we gaue them small peeces of Iron, Glasse Beads, and such like: at foure several times the people came to vs, and at each time brought vs of the aforesaid commodities, by reason thereof we called this place *Horne Sound*.

Here we layed six dayes, and on the eighteenth day at night, we let sayle, hauing very little winde: and being at Sea, made the best way we could to the Northward, although the winde had bene contrary for the most part this month, but it was strange to see the Ice so much consumed in so little space, for now we might come to the three Ilands before named, and stand off to the Westward almost twenty leagues, without let of Ice, vntill we were more North (as to 74. degrees 30. minutes) then we put among much scattered Ice, and plyed to and fro all this month, still in the sight of the floare, and many times fast in the Ice, yet euery day we got something on our way, nothing worthy of note happening, but that at diuers times we saw of the fishes with long hornes, many and often, which we call the Sea Vnicorne: and here to write particularly of the weather, it would be superfluous or needlesse, because it was so variable, few dayes without Snow, and often freezing in so much, that on Midsummer day, our throwes roups and fables were so frozen, that we could scarce handle them: yet the cold is not so extreme, but it may well be endured.

The first of Iuly we were come into an open Sea, in the latitude of 75. degrees 40. minutes, which I now reuied our hope of a passage, and because the winde was contrary, we stood off twenty leagues from the floare, before we met the Ice: then standing in againe when we were nere; the Land, we let fall an anchor to see what tye went, but in that we found small comfort. Shortly after the winde came to the South-east, and blew very hard, with foule weather, thicke, and foggie: then we let sayle, and ran along by the Land: this was on the second day at night. The next morning we pass by a faire Cape, or head land, which we called *Sir Dudley Digges Cape*, it is in the latitude of 76. degrees 35. minutes, and hath a small Island close adioyning to it, the winde still increasing, we pass by a faire Sound twelue leagues distant from the former Cape, hauing an Island in the midst, which maketh two entrances. Vnder this Island we came to anchor, and had not rid two houres, but our Ship droue, although we had two anchors at the ground, then we were forced to let sayle, and stand forth: this Sound we called *Wollasholme Sound*: it hath many Inlets or smaller Sounds in it, and is a fit place for the killing of Whales.

The fourth day at one o'clock in the morning, the forme began againe at West and by South, so vehement, that it blew away our forecourse, and being not able to beare any sayle, we lay a drift: till about eight o'clock, then it cleared vp a little, and we saw our selues imbayed in a great Sound: then we let sayle and stood ouer to the South-east side, where in a little Coue or Bay we let fall an anchor, which we lost with cable and all, the winde blowing so extremely from the tops of the hills, that we could get no place to anchor in, but were forced to stand to and fro in the Sound, the bottom being all frozen ouer: toward two o'clock it began to be leffe winde, then we stood forth.

In this Sound we saw great numbers of Whales, therefore we called it *Whale Sound*, and doubtless if it had beene provided for killing of them, we might haue strooke very many. It lyeth in the latitude of 77. degrees 30. minutes. All the fifth day it was very faire weather, and we kept along by the Land till eight o'clock in the evening, by which time we were come to a great banke of Ice, it being backed with Land, which we seeing, determined to stand backe some eight leagues,

the fourth day at one o'clock in the morning, the forme began againe at West and by South, so vehement, that it blew away our forecourse, and being not able to beare any sayle, we lay a drift: till about eight o'clock, then it cleared vp a little, and we saw our selues imbayed in a great Sound: then we let sayle and stood ouer to the South-east side, where in a little Coue or Bay we let fall an anchor, which we lost with cable and all, the winde blowing so extremely from the tops of the hills, that we could get no place to anchor in, but were forced to stand to and fro in the Sound, the bottom being all frozen ouer: toward two o'clock it began to be leffe winde, then we stood forth.

In this Sound we saw great numbers of Whales, therefore we called it *Whale Sound*, and doubtless if it had beene provided for killing of them, we might haue strooke very many. It lyeth in the latitude of 77. degrees 30. minutes. All the fifth day it was very faire weather, and we kept along by the Land till eight o'clock in the evening, by which time we were come to a great banke of Ice, it being backed with Land, which we seeing, determined to stand backe some eight leagues,

leagues, to an Island we called *Hackbus Ile*, it lyeth betweene two great Sounds, the one *Whale Sound*, and the other *Sir Thomas Smiths Sound*: this last runneth to the North of twenty eight degrees, and is admirable in one respect, because in it is the greatest variation of the Compass of any part of the World known: for by diuers good Observations I found it to be aboute points or fifty six degrees varied to the Westward, so that a North-east and by East, is true North, and io of the rest. Also this Sound seemeth to be good for the killing of Whales, it being the greatest and largest in all this Bay. The cause wherefore we minded to stand to this Island, was to see if we could find any finnes or such like on the floare, and so indeed that night we came to anchor, but with such foule weather, that our Boat could not land. The next day we were forced to let sayle, the Sea was growne so high, and the winde came more outward. Two dayes we spent, and could get no good place to anchor in: then on the eighth day it cleared vp, and we seeing we were in company of Ilands lyed off from the floare twelue or thirteene Leagues, we minded to goe to *Isle*, that them, to see if there we could Anchor. When we were something nere, the winde tooke vs short; and being loth to spend more time, we tooke opportunitie of the winde and left the searching of these Ilands, which we called *Caryes Ilands*, all which Sounds and Ilands the Map doth truly describe.

So we stood to the Westward in an open Sea, with a stiff gale of wind, all the next day and till the tenth day as one or two o'clock in the morning, at which time it fell calme and very foggie, and we were nere the Land in the entrance of a faire Sound, which we called *Alderman Sound*. This afternoon being faire and cleere, we went our Boat to the floare, the ship being vnder sayle, and alosome as they were on the floare, the wind began to blow; then they returned againe, declaring that they saw many Sea Morses by the floare among the Ice, and as farre as they were, they saw no signe of people, nor any good place to anchor in along the floare. Then hauing an easte gale of wind at East North-east, we ranne along by the floare, which now trenedeth much South, and beginneth to shew like a Bay.

On the twelfth day we were open of another great Sound, lying in the Latitude of 78. degrees 30. minutes, and we called it *Sir Lame Lankers Sound*: here our hope of passage began to be leffe euery day then other, for from this Sound to the Southward, we had a ledge of Ice betweene the floare and vs, but cleare to the Sea ward, we kept close by this ledge of Ice till the sixteenth day in the afternoon, by which time we were in the latitude of 77. degrees 16. minutes, and plainly perceived the Land to the Southward of 70. degrees 30. minutes, then we hauing so much Ice round about vs, were forced to stand more Eastward, supposing to haue bene soone cleare, and to haue kept on the off side of the Ice, vntill we had come into 70. degrees, then to haue stood in againe. But this proved quite contrary to our expectation: for we were forced to runne about threefoore leagues through very much Ice, and many times forth, that we could go no wayes, although we kept our course due East; and when we had gotten into the open Sea, we kept so nere the Ice, that many times we had much adoe to get cleare, yet could not come nere the Land, till we came about 68. degrees, where indeede we saw the floare, but could not come to it by eight or nine leagues, for the great abundance of Ice. This was on the fourth and twentieth day of Iuly: then spent we three dayes more to see if conveniently we could come to anchor, to make triall of the tides, but the Ice led vs into the latitude of 65. degrees 40. minutes. Then we left off seeking to the West floare, because we were in the dradft of *Cumberland Iles*, and should know no certaintie, and hope of passage could be none.

Now being that we had made an end of our discovery, and the year being too farre spent to goe for the bottom of the Bay, to search for drift Finnes; therefore we determined to goe for the Coast of *Greenland*, to see if we could get some refreshment for our men: *Master Hares* and two more, hauing kept their Cabins about eight dayes (besides our Cooke *Richard Wynn*, which died the day before, being the twenty six of Iuly) and diuers more of our company so weake, that they could doe but little labour. So the winde fauouring vs, we came to anchor in the latitude of 65. degrees 45. minutes, at six o'clock in the evening, the eight and twentieth day, in a place called *Cankin Sound*.

The next day going on shore, on a little Land we found great abundance of the herbe called *Scourie Grasse*, which we boyled in Beere, and so dranke thereof, wing it also in Sallets, with Sorrell and Orpen, which here groweth in abundance; by means hereof, and the blessing of God all our men within eight or nine dayes space were in perfect health, and so continued till our arriual in *England*.

We rode in this place three dayes before any of the people came to vs; then on the first of August, six of the Inhabitants in their Canoes, brought vs Salmon Pease, and such like, which was a great refreshment to our men: the next day following, the same Ice came againe, but after that we saw them no more vntill the first day, when we layd vnder anchor, and were almost cleare of the harbour: then the same Ice and one more, brought vs of the like commodities, for which we gaue them Glasse Beads, Counters and small peeces of Iron; which they doe as much esteeme, as we Christians doe Gold and Siluer.

Sir Thomas Smiths Sound in 78. 49.

Variation of the compass in 78. 49. Which may make question of the truth. And is more attestation of the compass by variation toward it. Now the known compass of 78. 49. must be varied by the variation here then here there can be, and yet here is more variation then about *Ligon* or *Bruff*, *Perry*, *Sir*, *Caryes Ilands*.

This Map of the authors for this and the former Voyage with the Table of his journal and sailing, were somewhat troublesome and too costly to insert. Alderman Sound, Sir Lame Lankers Sound, They Ice Land and find them Sir Lame Lankers Sound.

Scourie Sound, Scourie Grasse.

Scourie Sound, Scourie Grasse.

Sir Thomas Smiths Sound in 78. 49.

Scourie Sound, Scourie Grasse.

Plenty of Salmon.

In this Sound we saw such great Scales of Salmon swimming to and fro, that it is much to be admired: here it floweth about eighteen fote water, and is at the highest on the change day at seven a clocke: it is a very good harbour, and easie to be knowne, having three high round hills like Pyramides close adjoining to the mouth of it, and that in the middle is lowest, and as long as this coast are many good harbours to be found, by reason that so many Islands lye off from the maine.

The sixt of August, by three a clocke in the afternoon, wee were cleere of this place, having a North North-west wind, and faire weather, and the Lord sent vs a speedy and good passage homeward as could be wished: for in nineteene dayes after, wee saw Land on the coast of *Ireland*, it being on the first and twentieth day; the tenth and twentieth at noone wee were two leagues from *Sally*, and the thirtieth day, in the morning wee anchored at *Dover* in the roads, for the which and all other his blessings the Lord make vs thankful.

CHAP. XX.

A briefe Discourse of the probability of a passage to the Westerne or South Sea, illustrated with testimonies: and a briefe Treatise and Mappe by Master BRIGGES.

I Thought good to adde somewhat to this Relation of Master *Bassin*, that learned Mathematician and Mathematician; who wanting art of words, to really employed himselfe for the study of the sciences, whereof here you see so sufficient fruits. His Mappe and Tables would have much illustrated his Voyages, if trouble, and cost, and his owne despaire of passage that way, had not made vs willing to content our selves with that Mappe following of that thrice learned (and in this argument three times thrice industrious) Mathematician, Master *Briggs*, so famous for his readings in both Universities, and this honourable Citie, that I make no further Voyage of Discovery to finde and follow the remote Passage and extent of his name. Master *Bassin* told mee, that they supposed the tyde from the North-west, about *Digges* Island was misreported, by making the boore, eight for eleven: and that he would, if hee might get employment, search the passage from *Japan*, by the coast of *Asia*, or (as *de la Perouse*) any way hee could. But in the *Indies* hee dyed, in the late Ormus buifenne, slain in fight with a shot, as hee was trying his Mathematical projects and conclusions.

Bassins death.

The King failed touching the passage.

Hubbards hope.

Now for that discovery of Sir *Thomas Button*, Thae solicited him for his Notes, and received of him gentle entertainment and kinde promises: but being then forced to stay in the Citie upon necessary and urgent affaires, hee would at his returne home, seeke and impart them. Since I heare that weightie occasions have detained him out of *England*, and I cannot communicate that which I could not receive: which if I doe receive, I purpose rather to give thee out of due place, then not at all. Once hee was very confident in conference with me of a passage that way, and said that hee had therein satisfied his Maistie, whom his discourse in private, inferred the necessity thereof. And the maine argument was the course of the tyde: for wintering in *Port Nelson* (see the following Mappe) hee found the tyde rising every twelve houres fifteen fote (whereas in the bottom of *Hudson* Bay it was but two fote), and in the bottom of *Fretum Davis* discovered by *Bassin*, but one yea and a West winde equalled the nee tydes to the spring tydes; plainly arguing the neighbourhood of the Sea, which is on the West side of *America*. The Summer following hee found about the latitude of 60 degrees a strong race of a tide, running sometimes Eastward, sometimes Westward; whereupon *Josias Hubbard* in his plat, called that place *Hubbards Hope*, as in the Map appeareth. Now if any make scruple, because this discovery was not purchased by Sir *Thomas Button*, let him consider, that being Prince *Henries* Servant, and partly by him employed (whence I thinke hee named the Country *New Heale*) the untimely death of that Prince put all out of joint; nor was hee so open, that others should have the glory of his discovery.

And if any man thinke that the passage is so farre, as the Maps vie to expresse *America*, running out into the West: it is easily answered, that either of negligence, or over-busie diligence, Maps by *Portugall* in the East, and *Spaniards* in the West, have bene falsely proceeded. Hence that fabulous trait of *Anian*, as before by *Francis Gaultes* testimonie and navigation is evident: And hence the *Portugall* to bring in the *Moluccas*, to that moity of the world agreed vpon betwixt the *Spaniards* and them, are thought to have much curtailed *Asia*, and the longitude of those Islands, giving fewer degrees to them then is just longitude is requisite. So the older Maps

of *America* make the Land from the *Magellan* Straits to the South Sea, runne much West, when as they rather are contracted somewhat Easterly from the North. The like is justly supposed of their false placing, *Ognaga*, and I know not (nor they neither) what Countries they make in *America*, to run so farre North-westward, which Sir *Francis Drake* Voyage in that Sea (his *Agua* *Adrian*, being little further Westward then *Aguaylen*) plainly evince to be otherwise. Yea the late Map of *California* found to be an Island, the Saunders discourse in all the Countries Northwards and Westwards from *Virginia*: fame whereof filled my friend *Matter Dermot* with so much confidence, that hearing of strange Ships which came thither for a kinde of Vre or earth, the men vying forke in their diet, with Caldrons to steele their meat, &c. things nothing incredible to any parts of *America*, hee supposed them to come from the East, neere to *China* or *Japan*, and therefore hee made a Voyage purposely to discover: but crossed with divers diffulties, he returned to *Virginia*, frustrate of accomplishment that year, but fuller of confidence, as in a Letter from *Virginia* hee signified to me, where death ended that his designe sooner after. But how often are the viall Chartes rectified by experience in these Navigations, in this worke recorded? Painters and Poets are not alwayes the best Oracles.

For further proofes of a passage about these parts into the West Sea (or South, as it is called from the first discovery thereof to the South, from the parts of *New Spaine*, whence it was first deliered by the *Spaniards*) there is mention of a *Ferringall* (and taken in a Carriacke in Quene *Elizabeths* dayes, of glorious memory) confirming this opinion: Sir *Martin Frelshuber* also from *Portugall* in *Guinea*, received intelligence of such a passage, hee saying hee had put it. The Pilots or *Leutenants* are (as) generally to acknowledge such a thing; and the Airmittall of *D. Garcia Goffrey Louisa* of *Ciudad Real*, in the time of *Charles the fifth*, is reported by the Coast of *Bacalan* and *Las Indias*, to have gone to the *Moluccas*. *Felco de Coronado* writ to the Emperour, that at *Cibola* hee was one hundred and fiftie leagues from the South Sea, and a little more from the North. *Antonio de Herrera*, the Kings *Coronador* *Mayor* (part of whose worke followeth) maketh with vs also, in the distances of places by him described. But to produce some authority more full, I have here presented *Thomas Cowles* a Mariner, and *Matter Michael Lock* Merchant, and after them a little Treatise ascribed to Master *Briggs*, together with his Map. And if any thinke that the *Spaniards* or *Portugall* would sooner have discovered such a passage: these will answer, that it was so neere their profit to expose their East or West Indies to *English*, *Dutch*, or others, whom they would not have flatters in those remote treasures by no means a passage. Fifth, *Thomas Cowles* saureth this much.

* This easily appeareth in observing the Youngs discovery of the Gulf of California.

Some of our Merchants are said not to be so willing for the discovery with this discovery.

I Thomas Cowles of *Bolmester*, in the County of *Somerset*, Mariner, doe acknowledge, that six years past, at my being at *Lisbon*, in the Kingdom of *Portugall*, I did heare one *Martin Chacke* a *Portugall* of *Lisbon*, made a Book of his own making, which hee had for out six years before that time, in Print, in the *Portugall* tongue, declaring that the said *Martin Chacke* had found, twelve years now past, a way from the *Portugall* Indies, through a gulf of the New found Land, which hee thought to be in 50. degrees of the elevation of the North Pole. By means that hee being in the said Indies, with four or five Ships of great burden, and hee himselfe in a small Ship of five or six hundred ton, was driven from the company of the other three Ships, with a contrary wind, after which, hee past along by a great number of Islands, which were in the gulf of the said New found Land. And after hee thought that the gulf, hee for no more fight of any other Land, would hee fall with the *Northerly* part of *Iceland*, and from thence hee took hee some benedictions, and by that means hee came to *Lisbon* five or six weeks before the other four Ships of his company that hee was separated from, as before said. And since the same time, I could never see any of those Books, because the King commanded them to be called in, and no more of them to be printed, lest in time it would be to their hindrance. In witness whereof I set to my hand and make, the ninth of April. Anno 1579.

50

A Note made by me *MICHAEL LOCK* the elder, touching the Strait of *Sea*, commonly called *Fretum Anian*, in the South Sea, through the North-west passage of *Meta incognita*.

When I was at *France*, in April 1596, happily arrived there an old man, about threescore yeeres of age, called commonly *Juan de Fuca* but named properly *Apollonius Palermos*, of Nation a *Greek*, borne in the Hand *Cephalonia*, of profession a Mariner, and an ancient Pilot of Shippes. This man being come lately out of *Spain*, arrived first at *Ligorno*, and went thence to *Florence* in *Italy*, where hee found one *Iohn Dromagis*, an *Englishman*, a famous Mariner, ready coming for *Venice*, to be Pilot of a *Venetian* Ship, named *Rafaela* for *England*, in whose company they came both together to *Venice*. And *Iohn Dromagis* being well acquainted with *Apollonius*, hee gave me knowledge of this *Greek* Pilot, and brought him to my speech: and hee long

talks and conference betwene vs, in presence of John Douglas: this Greeke Pilot declared in the Italian and Spanish languages, thus much in effect as followeth.

First he said, that he had bin in the *West Indies of Spain* by the space of fortie yeeres, and had sailed so and from many places thereof, as Mariner and Pilot, in the service of the *Spaniards*.

Also he said, that he was in the *Spanish Shippe*, which in returning from the *Ilands, Philippines and China*, towards *Nova Spania*, was robbed and taken at the *Cape California*, by Captaine *Candide Englishman*, whereby he lost fiftie thousand Duckets, of his owne goods.

Also he said, that he was Pilot of three small shipps which the Viceroy of *Mexico* sent from *Mexico*, armed with one hundred men, Soldiers, vnder a Captaine, *Spaniard*, to discover the Straits of *Anian*, along the coast of the South-Sea, and to fortifie in that Strait, to resist the passage and proceedings of the English Nation, which were feared to passe through those Straits into the South Sea. And that by reason of a mutinie which happened among the Soldiers, for the Sodomie of their Captaine, that Voyage was overthrowne, and the Ship returned backe from *California* to *Nova Spania*, without any effect of thing done in that Voyage. And that after their returne, the Captaine was at *Mexico* punished by iustice.

Also he said, that shortly after the said Voyage was so ill ended, the said Viceroy of *Mexico*, sent him out againe *Anno* 1592, with a small *Caravella*, and a *Pinnace*, armed with Mariners only, to follow the said Voyage, for discovery of the Straits of *Anian*, and the passage thence into the Sea which they call the North Sea, which is our North-west Sea. And that he followed his course in that Voyage West and North-west in the South Sea, all alongst the coast of *Nova Spania*, and *California*, and the *Indies*, now called North *America* (all which Voyage hee figured to me in a great Map, and a Sea-card of mine owne, which I laied before him) vntill hee came to the Latitude of fortie seven degrees, and that there finding that the Land trended North and North-east, with a broad Ilet of Sea, betweene 47 and 48 degrees of Latitude: hee entered thereupon, sayling therein more then twentie dayes, and found that Land trending still sometime North-west and North-east, and North, and also East and South-eastward, and very much broader Sea then was at the said entrance, and that hee passed by diuers Ilands in that sayling. And that at the entrance of this said Strait, there is on the North-west coast thereof, a great Headland or Land, with an exceeding high Pinacle, or spired Rocke, like a pillar: 30 thereupon.

Also he said, that he went on Land in diuers places, and that hee saw some people on Land, clad in Beasts skins: and that the Land is very fruitful, and rich of gold, Siluer, Pearle, and other things, like *Nova Spania*.

And also he said, that he being entred thus farre into the said Strait, and being come into the North Sea already, and finding the Sea wide enough euer where, and to be about thirtie or fortie leagues wide in the mouth of the Straits, where hee entred; hee thought hee had now well discharged his office, and done the thing which he was first to doe; and that hee not being armed to resist the force of the Saluage people that might happen, hee therefore left sayle and returned homewards againe towards *Nova Spania*, where hee arrived at *Acapulco*, *Anno* 1592. and he was rewarded greatly of the Viceroy, for this seruice done in this said Voyage.

Also he said, that after his coming to *Mexico*, hee was greatly welcommed by the Viceroy, and had great promises of great reward, but that huius fidei hee dwelt there two yeares time, and obtained nothing to his content, the Viceroy told him, that hee should be rewarded in *Spain* of the King himselfe very greatly, and willed him therefore to goe into *Spain*, which Voyage hee did performe.

Also he said, that when he came into *Spain*, hee was greatly welcommed there at the Kings Court, in wordes after the *Spanish* manner, but after long time of suite there also, hee could not get any reward there neicher to his content. And that therefore at the long hee stole away out of *Spain*, and came into *Italy*, to goe home againe and liue among his owne Kindred and Countymen, hee being very old.

Also he said, that hee thought the cause of his ill reward had of the *Spaniards*, to bee for that they did vnderstand very well, that the English Nation had now giuen oter all their voyages for discovery of the North-west passage, wherefore they need not seeke them any more to come that way into the South Sea, and therefore they needed not see his seruice therein any more.

Also he said, that in regard of this ill reward had of the *Spaniards*, and vnderstanding of the noble minde of the Queene of *England*, and of her waies maintayned so valiantly against the *Spaniards*, and hoping that her Maiestie would doe him iustice for his goods-lost by Captaine *Candide*, hee would be content to goe into *England*, and let his Maiestie in that voyage for the discovery perfectly of the North-west passage into the South Sea, and would put his life into her Maiesties hands to performe the same, if life would furnish him with onely one ship of fortie tonnes burden and a Pinnacle, and that hee would performe it in thirtie dayes time, from one end to the other of the Streights. And he willed me to write into *England*.

The mouth of the Straits where hee entered 30 or 40 leagues broad.

The first light hee discovered in 30 dayes.

And vpon this conference had twice with the said Greeke Pilot, I did write thereof accordingly into *England*, vnto the right honourable the old Lord Treasurer *Cecil*, and to Sir *William Raleigh*, and to Master *Richard Hakluyt*, that famous Cosmographer, certifying them herof by my Letters. And in the behalfe of the said Greeke Pilot, I prayed them to disburse one hundred pounds of mooney, to bring him into *England* with my selfe, for that my owne purse would not stretch so wide at that time. And I had answered heretof by Letters of friends, that this action was very well liked, and greatly desired in *England* to bee effected; but the money was not ready, and therefore this action dyed at that time, though the said Greeke Pilot perchance liueth still this day at home in his owne Countie in *Cefalonia*, towards the which place he went from me within a fortnight after this conference had at *Venice*.

And in the meane time, while I followed my owne businesse in *Venice*, being in Law suite against the Companie of Merchants of *Turkie*, and Sir *John Spencer* their Governour in *London*, to recover my pension due for my office of being their Counsell at *Algerie* in *Turkie*; which they held from me wrongfully. And when I was (as I thought) in a readinesse to returne home into *England*, for that it pleased the Lords of her Maiesties honourable Priue Councill in *England*, to looke into this Cause of my Law suit for my reliefe: I thought that I should be able of my owne purse to take with me into *England* the said Greeke Pilot. And therefore I wrote vnto him from *Venice* a Letter, dated in Iuly 1596, which is copied here-vnder.

Al Magro. Signor. Capitan IVAN DE FVCA Piloto de Indias, amigo mio charo en Zefalonia.

Muy honrado Senor, siendo yo para bueluerme en Inglaterra dentro de pocas merces, y acordandome de lo tratado entre my y V. M. en Venecia, sobre el viage de las Indias, me he parecido bien de servir esta carta a V. M. porque si tengo animo de andar con misgo, podria escribirme presto, en que manera querria confortarme. T podria volverme presto con ella mas luego que fin al Zante (sin ballas: otra cosa para mi) con el sobredito que digo, en casa del Senor Eleazar Hymmer Mercader Ingles, al tragetto de San Thomas en Venecia. Dios guarde la persona de V. M. Fecha en Venecia al primer dia de Julio, 1596: amos.

Amigo de V. M. Michael Lok Ingles.

And I sent the said Letter from *Venice* to *Zante*, in the ship *Cherubon*. And shortly after I sent a copie thereof in the ship *Adryen*. And also a third copie thereof by *Mance Orlando Paron* de *Nauie Veneciana*. And vnto my said Letters he wrote me answer to *Venice* by one Letter which came not to my hands. And also by another Letter which came to my hands, which is copied here-vnder.

Al Illmo. Signor. MICHAEL LOCH Ingles, en casa del Signor. LASAR o Merca. der Ingles, al tragetto de San THOMAS en Venecia.

Muy Illustre Signor: la carta de V. M. recivi a 20. dia del Mes de Setiembre, por loqual yo me loche V. M. me manda, en tengo animo de cumplir loche tengo prometido a V. M. y no solo yo, mas tengo veinte hombres para llevar con misgo, porche son hombres valientes; y alli estos ofreciendo, por otra carta que anse a V. M. parache me embiase los dineros que tengo ofruido a V. M. Porche bien fuese V. M. como yo vno poner, porche me glexio Capitan Candis mas de sessenta mill ducados, como V. M. bien fuese: embiandome lo dicho, ire a servir a V. M. con todos mis companeros. I no fero otra cosa mas de la voluntad de carta de V. M. I con tanto noibre Signor. Dios guarde la Illustre persona de V. M. muchos amos. De Cefalonia a 24. de Setiembre del 1596.

Amigo & seruior de V. M. Iuan Fucas.

And the said Letter came to my hands in *Venice*, the 16. day of November, 1596. but my Law suite with the Companie of *Turkie* was not yet ended, by reason of Sir *John Spencer* their suite made in *England* at the Queenes Court to the contrarie, seeking onely to haue his money discharged which I had attached in *Venice* for my said pension, and thereby my owne purse was not yet ready for the Greeke Pilot.

And neuertheless, hoping that my said suite would have shortly a good end; I wrote another Letter to this Greeke Pilot from *Venice*, dated the 20. of November, 1596, which came not to his hands. And also another Letter, dated the 24. of Ianuarie, 1596, which came to his hands. And thereof he wrote me answer, dated the 28. of May, 1597, which I received the first of August.

Aaaa 3

1597.

The Ship Santa Anna.

The Straight of Nona Spasia thirte daies journey in the Straight.

1597. by Thomas Norden an English Merchant yet living in London, wherein he promised still to goe with me unto England, to performe the said voyage for discoverye of the North-west passage into the South Sea, if I would lend him money for his charges according to his former writing, without the which money, he said he could not goe, for that he said he was undone vterly, when he was in the Ship Santa Anna, which came from China, and was robbed at California. And yet againe afterward I wrote him another Letter from Venice, whereunto he wrote me answere, by a Letter written in his Greeke language, dated the 20. of October, 1598. the which I have fill by me; wherein he promised still to goe with me into England, and performe the said voyage of discoverye of the North-west passage into the South Sea by the said streights, which he calleth the Straight of Nona Spasia, which he saith is but thirte daies voyage in the streights, if I will send him the money formerly written for his charges. The which money I could not yet send him, for that I had not yet recovered my pension owing mee by the Companie of Turkey afore said. And so of long time I stayed from any further proceeding with him in this matter.

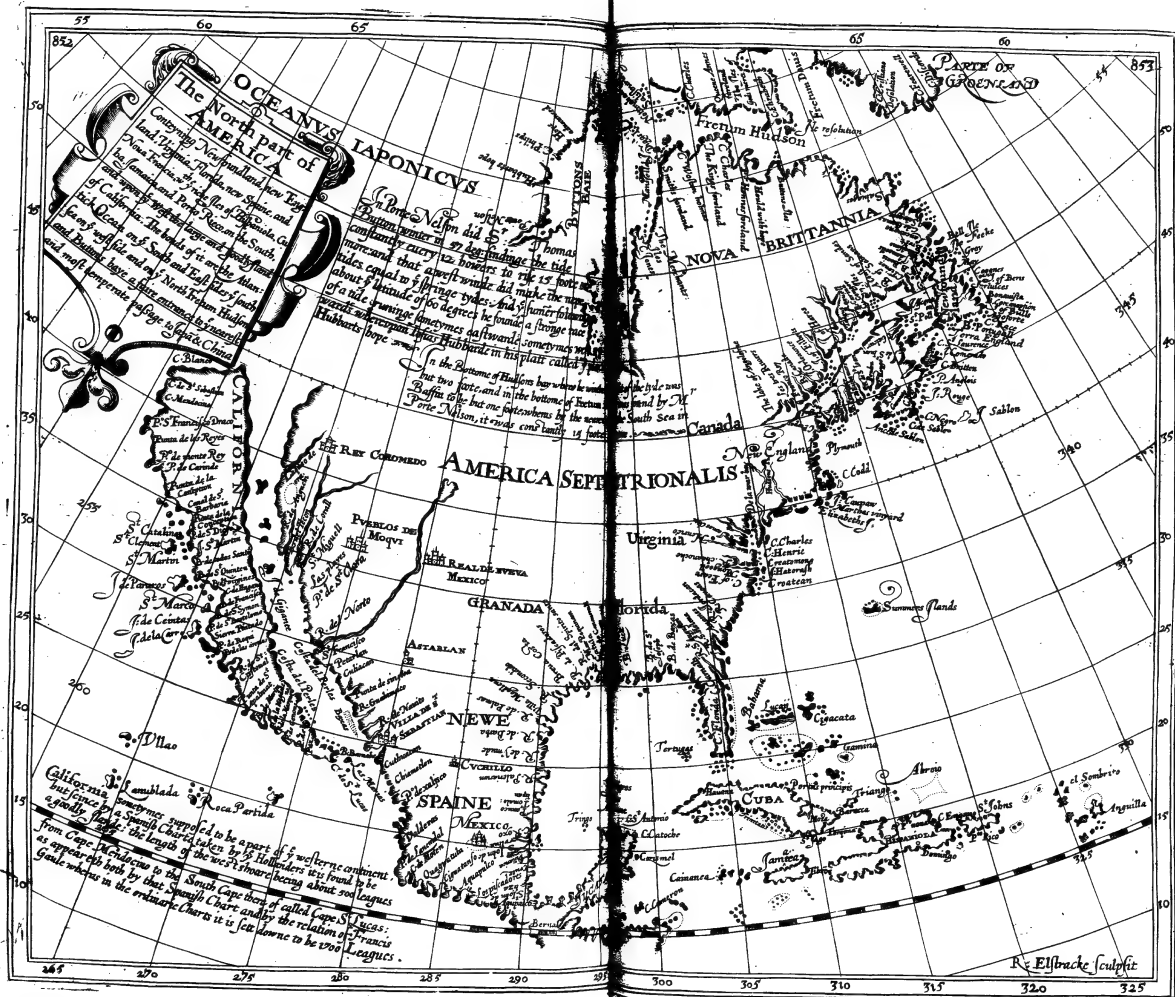
And yet lastly, when I my selfe was at Zante, in the moneth of June 1601. minding to passe from thence for England by Sea, for that I had then recovered a little money from the Companie of Turkey, by an order of the Lords of the Prive Counsell of England, I wrote another Letter to this Greeke Pilot to Cephalonia, and required him to come to me to Zante, and goe with mee into England, but I had none answere thereof from him, for that as I heard afterward at Zante, he was then dead, or very likely to die of great sicknes. Whereupon I returned my selfe by Sea from Zante to Venice, and from thence I went by land through France into England, wher I arrived at Christmas, An. 1602. lastly, I thank God, after my absence from thence ten yeeres time; with great troubles had for the Companie of Turkey; but these, which hath cost me a great summe of money, for the which I am not yet satisfied of them.

A Treatise of the North-west passage to the South Sea, through the Continent of Virginia, and by Fretum Hudson.

THE noble plantation of Virginia hath some very excellent prerogatives above many other famous Kingdomes, namely, the temperature of the aire, the fruitfulness of the soile, and the commodiousness of situation.

The aire is healthfull and free both from immoderate heate, and from extreme cold; so that both the Inhabitants and their Cattel doe prosper exceedingly in stature and strength, and all Plants brought from any other remote climate, doe there grow and fructifie in as good or better manner, then in the soile from whence they came. Which though it doe manifestly proue the fruitfulness of the soile, yielding all kinds of Graine or Plants committed unto it, with a rich and plentiful increase; yet cannot the fertilitye of the earth alone produce such excellent effects, unless the temperature of the aire be likewise so favourable, that those tender sprouts which the earth doth abundantly bring forth, may bee cherished with moderate heate and reasonable moisture, and freed both from scorching drought, and nipping frost.

These blessings are so much the more to be esteemed, because they are bestowed vpon a place situated so conveniently, and at so good a distance both from Europe, and the West Indies, that for the mutuall commerce betwixt these great and most rich parts of the habitable world, there cannot bee devided any place more convenient for the favour and refreshing of those that trade from hence thither: whether they be of our owne Nation, or of our Neighbours and Friends, the multitude of great and spacious Harbours, as it were inviting all Nations to entertaine mutuall friendship, and to participate of those blessings which God out of the abundance of his rich Treasures, hath so graciously bestowed some vpon these parts of Europe, and others no lesse desired vpon those poore people: which might still have remayned in their old barbarous ignorance, without knowledge of their owne miserie, or of Gods infinite goodness and mercy; if it had not pleased God thus graciously both to draw vs thither with desire of such wealth as those fruitful Countries afford, and also to grant vs so easie, certaine, and safe a meanes to goe unto them: which passage is in mine opinion made much more secure and easie by the commodious Harbours and refreshing which Virginia doth reach out unto vs. The coasts of Florida to the West, being as so barbarous; and of New England to the East, somewhat more out of the way, amongst so many Flats and small Harbours not so safe. Neither is the commodiousness of Virginia's situation onely in respect of this West Atlantick Ocean, but also in respect of the Indian Ocean, which we commonly call the South Sea, which lyeth on the West and North-west side of Virginia, on the other side of the Mountaines beyond our Falls, and openeth a free and faire passage, not onely to China, Japan, and the Moluccas; but also to New Spaine, Peru, Cetic, and those rich Countries of Terra Australis, not as yet fully discovered. For the Sea wherein Master Hudson did winter, which was first discovered by him, and is therefore now called Fretum Hudson, doth stretch so farre towards the West, that it lyeth as farre Westward



ward as the Cape of Florida: So that from the Falls about *Henrico* Citie, if we shape our journey towards the North-west, following the Rivers towards the head, we shall undoubtedly come to the Mountaines, which as they send diuers great Rivers Southward into our Bay of *Chesapeake*, so likewise doe they send others from their further side North-westward into that Bay where *Hudson* did winter. For so wee lie in our owne Countie, from the ridge of Mountaines continued from *Dorchester* into *Switzerland*, doe issue many great Rivers on both sides into the East *German* Ocean, and into the Westerne *Irish* Seas: in like sort from the Alpes of *Switzerland* and the *Grizani*, doe runne the *Danube* Eastward into *Pontus Euxinus*, the *Rhene* into the North *German* Ocean, the *Rhose* West into the *Mediterrane* Sea, and the *Po* South into the *Adriatick* Sea. Thus Bay where *Hudson* did winter, stretcheth it selfe Southward into 49. degrees, and cannot be in probability so farre distant from the Falls as two hundred leagues; part of the way lying by the Rivers side towards the Mountaines from whence it springeth; and the other part on the other side cannot want Rivers likewise, which will conduct vs all the way, and I hope carry vs and our piousions a good part of it. Besides that Bay, it is not vnlikly that the Westerne Sea in some other Creek or River commeth much neerer then that place: For the place where Sir *Thomas Button* did winter, lying more Westerly then Master *Hudson* Bay by one hundred and ninetie leagues in the same Sea, doth extend it selfe very neere as farre towards the west as the Cape of *California*, which is now found to bee an Island stretching it selfe from 22. degrees to 42. and lying almost directly North and South; as may appear in a Map of that Island which I haue scene here in *London*, brought out of *Holland*; where the Sea vpon the North-west part may very probably come much neerer then some doe imagine: who giuing too much credit to our vsuall Globes and Maps, doe dreame of a large Continent extending it selfe farre Westward to the imagined Streight of *Anian*, where are seated (as they fable) the large Kingdomes of *Tchada* and *Quina*, hauing great and populous Cities of ciuill people; whose houses are said to bee five stories high, and to haue some pillars of *Twerghiss*. Which relations are cunningly let downe by some vpon set purpose to put vs out of the right way, and to discourage such as otherwise might be desirous to search a passage by the way aforesaid into those Seas.

Gerardus Mercator, a very industrious and excellent Geographer, was abused by a Map sent vnto him, of foure *Euripi* meeting about the North Pole; which now are found to bee all turned into a mayne Ice Sea. One demonstration of the craftie fallhood of these vsuall Maps is this, that Cape *Mendocino* is set in them West North-west, distant from the South Cape of *California*, about fouenteene hundred leagues, whereas *Francis Drake* that was employed in those discoveries by the Vice-roy of *New Spaine*, doth in *Hugo Lincolnton* his booke set downe their distance to be only five hundred leagues.

Besides this, in the place where Sir *Thomas Button* did winter in 57. degrees of latitude, the constant great Tydes euery twelue houres, and the increase of those Tydes whensoever any strong Westerne winde did blow, doe strongly perswade vs that the mayne Westerne Ocean is not farre from thence; which was much confirmed vnto them the Summer following; when sailing directly North from that place where they wintered, about the latitude of 60. degrees, they were crossed by a strong Current running sometimes Eastward, sometimes Westward: So that if we finde either *Hudson* Bay, or any Sea more neere vnto the West, we may assure our selves that from thence we may with great ease passe to any part of the East *Indies*: And that as the World is very much beholding to that famous *Columbus* for that hee first discovered vnto vs the West *Indies*; and to the *Portugall* for the finding out the ordinarie and as yet the best way that is knowne to the East *Indies*, by Cape *Bona Speranza*: So may they and all the world be in this beholding to vs in opening a new and large passage, both much neerer, safer, and farre more wholesome and temperate through the Continent of *Virginia*, and by *Fretum Hudson*, to all those rich Countreies bordering vpon the South Sea, in the East and West *Indies*. And this hope that the South Sea may easily from *Virginia* be discovered our Land, is much confirmed by the constant report of the Sauiages, not only of *Virginia*, but also of *Florida* and *Canada*; which dwelling so remote one from another, and all agreeing in the report of a large Sea to the Westward, where they describe great ships not vnlike to ours, with other circumstances, doe giue vs very great probability (if not full assurance) that our endeours this way shall by Gods blessing haue a prosperous and happy successe, to the encrease of his Kingdome and Glorie amongst these poore ignorant *Heathen* people, the publike good of all the *Christian* world, the neuer-dying honour of our most gracious Soueraigne, the vntimable benefit of our Nation, and the admirable and speedie increase and aduancement of that most noble and hopeful Plantation of *Virginia*; for the good successe whereof all good men with mee, I doubt not, will powre out their prayers to Almighty God.

H. B.



VOYAGES AND TRAVELS TO AND IN THE
NEW WORLD, CALLED
AMERICA: RELATIONS OF THEIR
PAGAN ANTIQVITIES AND OF THE
REGIONS AND PLANTATIONS
IN THE NORTH AND SOUTH
Parts thereof, and of the Seas and
Lands adjacent.

THE FIFTH BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

A Description of the West Indies, by ANTONIO DE HAR-
RA his Maiesties Chiefe Chronicer of the Indies,
and his Chronicer of Castile.

To the Licentiate PAVO of Evora, Prefect of the Royall and
Supreme Council of the Indies.



Lhe Licentiate Iohn of Obando, Predecessor of your Lordship (to
whom the Office of chiefe Chronicer of the Indies was intru-
sted, for writing with greater authority, foundation, and truth,
the Acts of the Castellians in the New World, and to see and examine
that which the other Chronicers should write (for I finde that
almost in all them is what might be given, for ever much
diligence, whereunto I will thin as was done) has used great diligence
in gathering the most certaine Relations: they were found as well in
the Indies, as in Spaine, of that which happened in the Discoveries
of these Regiones, the foundations of those Townes and Castles of
the people. And many years being past after his death, without making
any beginning of this History, your Lordship being provided for Pref-
ect of the Royall and Supreme Council of the Indies, knowing how much it behoved, that deeds so worthy

of the Decades of the Spanish Acts in the West Indies, which gave great light to those parts, but would be too long for this Volume,

* I found this
Work transla-
ted in M. Ma-
jors Papers,
but I can cer-
tely call it Ex-
tra, it had
so much of the
Spanish galle,
in the word and
verbal affecta-
tion and obicu-
rity. I have
examined it
with the Span-
ish Original,
and compared
it also with the
Latin Transla-
tion, with great
pleasure for my
greater plea-
sure & profit,
correcting and
illustrating the
phrase and
sense, being
before very
rude, obscure and
to amend this, I could, then to translate it anew. I have seen it also in French. The Latin is exceeding full in some numbers, as
to 1000, 10000, 100000, &c. which I note for their times which reads that and buy not the Spanish I have not contracted this
will have doubt (but other Relations) because it is a little contraction of the Spanish Indian Correspondence, preserving the
Spanish Prefectures, Colonies, Townes, Offices and Government Spiritual and Temporall in the text, this Ambrothius written
in the Decades of the Spanish Acts in the West Indies, which gave great light to those parts, but would be too long for this Volume,

of memorie should no longer be buried, and that they should be written by a Royall Chronicler (seeing so much from the givens of *Alfonso*, that it exceeds by far much the *Alfonso*, at the founte, the bode, against the opinion of a modern *Writer*.) Promising all to be necessary for the life and diligence, hence from the more and more *Infirmitie*, following the opinion of *S. Augustine*, that this *History*, and the Description that followeth hath come to the present estate. And because it hath not bene of least importance to honour the *Author*, assuming him to go forward with so great a labour, conforming himselfe with the universal opinion of the much that is due to the watching, and labours of the *Writer*, placing this Office of *Chronicler* in that post and reputation that so nobly an Exercise deserves, (as the most famous men of the world have indulged it, and it is esteemed and valued of among all Nations by they never so barbarous) your Lordship shall be praised eternally, and thanked of all those are interested in it; by which is procured the making mestres of their *Authors*, and Predecessors with their Names and Country, all that hath bene possible, against the barbarous and most vaine opinion of *John Baptista Ramulio*, in the *Proemio* in the third Volume of the *Navigations*, where he saith to be a vaine thing, and ridiculous, that the Spanish *Authors* should take pains in writing the names and Country of *Indies* which served as the matters of the *Indies*. Wherein be sheweth the wrongs of the same conceits of the glorious deeds of *Isabel Catholike King*, and of the *Castilian Nation*, seeing the *Chronicler* doth seeme to honour the good, and to reprove the evil, for an example of *Isabel* to come, which could not be obtained with the opinion of this *Ramulio*, whom the saying of *Cato* against the *Grecians* doth fit. But the opinion of your Lordship hath bene according to your prudence and valour, of the which as it is said, there will be a perpetual memorie, and for that which this Nation is indebted unto you for the same, you shall be acknowledged of it eternally. God keepe your Lordship, from Vallyadolid the fifteenth of October 1601.

Chap. 1.
Of the bounds
and division
of the West
Indies.

I The Spaniards
have trafficked
all Nations of
the World in
Navigation
of ships built
ships. Remember
that a Spaniard
is a Spaniard
(*Spanish*)

Pallas, is to
say flowers, or
flowers.

m The Spaniards
did not
or would not
know any *Pallas*.

n How the degrees
of longitude
are reckoned.

The compass of the Earth is 360 degrees, which being reduced to leagues of *Castile* are 6300. and by the compass of the Earth is understood the Sea together with it, which two Elements make the Globe; whose upper face in part is Earth, and in part is Sea: The Ancients divided the Earth in three parts, and gave to every one his name. The first they called *Europe*, more celebrated then any of the other. The second *Asia*, which is greater then the rest, and containeth the great Kingdom of *China*, the third *Africa* And men being in a supposition that the World contained no more then was rehearsed, not contenting themselves with it, entered in the Art of *Navigating*, and in the invention of ships of high building, fitting them in such order that they might abide the force of the waves of the Sea, & in this Art the Spaniards have surpassed all the Nations of the World. For whiles there reigned *Ferdinando* in *Castile* and in *Lyon*, the famous Kings *Catholike Ferdinando* the Fifth, and *Isabella* most wise, prudent, and most puissant Queene; and *Don John* the Second, called the *Pelican*, reigned in *Portugal*, (see that euer will be worthy of memory) *Don Christopher Colom*, first Admiral of the *Indies*, having lived many yeeres married in *Spain*; with the counsell of *Martin de Bobemia*, a *Portugall* borne in the land of *Fogall*, a famous Astrologian; and especially a Judicarie, and of others with whom he communicated it, gave a beginning to the Discovery of that which at this day is counted the fourth part of the World, and the greatest of them all, and taking his course toward *Spain*, he sailed so much by the Ocean, that he found this great Land, which the Equinoctial Line cutteth in the middle, and is goeth so farre toward the South, that it reacheth to fiftie two degrees and an halfe, and goeth so high to the North, that it hides it selfe vnder the Pole Arctique, without w knowing any end.

The greatness of this fourth part hath set the people in great admiration, whose description shall here be handled, vnder the name of *Indies*, and firme Land of the Ocean Sea, because they are compassed with the Sea, and placed to the West, and are commonly called, the *West Indies*, and the *New World*, and comprehended within the limits of the *Kings of Castile* and of *Lyon*. Which is an Hemisphere, and halfe of the World, of 180. degrees, beginning to reckon from a Meridian Circle, which passeth by thirte nine, or by forty degrees of longitude, Occidental from the Meridian of *Toledo*, through the mouth of the River *Mejor*, and to the Orientall, through the City of *Malacca*, in so far, that at twentie leagues lying for a degree, these bounds have from the one part to the other 3900. *Castilian* leagues, every one of 3000. paces, of five foot of a *Castilian* yard, which may lay be fixtie Italian miles, from the Orient to the Occident, which the Sea-men doe call East and West. And this account of twentie leagues to a degree, is according to *Ptoleme*, and to the opinion of many curious men. It hath seemed to others that the miles of every degree are fiftentie, and that they make no more then seuentene leagues and an halfe of *Castile*, which is held for the true account.

The degrees of longitude, which are those that are reckoned by the Equinoctiall, which goeth from East to West, through the middle of the Orbe, and Globe of the Earth, have not bene able to be taken well, because there is no fixed signe in the Heauen. Degrees of latitude are those which are taken, and reckoned from the Pole which fall out certayne, because it is a fixed

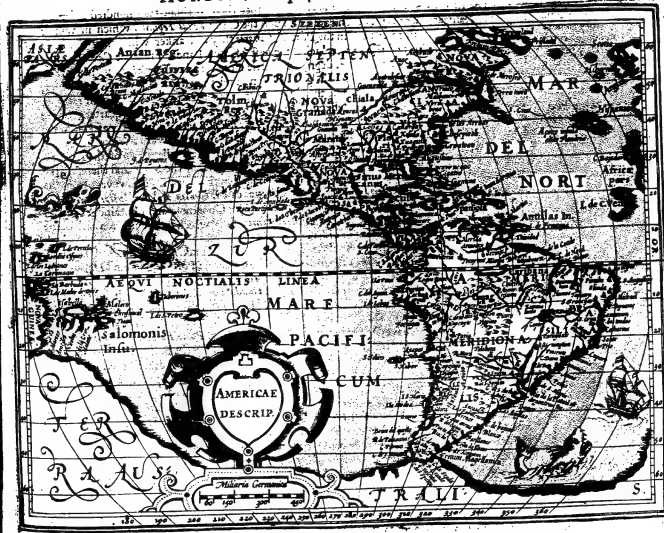
fixed point, which is the marke that is taken, by the which it shall be shewed in this description.

There is discovered, and naugated from the North to the South, from 60. degrees of Septentrional altitude, unto fiftie three Austral, which are 1977. leagues of ground, which hath in breadth, at the broadest 1300. and thence downe towards vnto eightene, which is the narrowest by 700. at the last of *Dias*, or *Portobello*, vnto *Panama*, whereby Nature divided this Land, leaving almost the halfe of it to the North, and the rest to the South. Nature divided this Land, leaving almost the third, is the Islands and firme land, that lye to the East of *Malacca*, where through passeth the Line of the partition, betwene the two Crownes of *Castile* and *Portugall*, the which although they are part of the East *Indies*, they are named of the West in respect of *Castile*, as shall bee seen in the general Map that followeth.

And because the Discouerie of all these Regions, from whence so great Riches have bene brought to these Kingdomes, is due vnto the Load-stone, I will set downe here a wonderful effect of his, discovered by *Don Antonio Officio*, a Gentleman of *Valladolid*, and it is, that it doth communicate to the Iron, more attractive verue then naturally it hath of it selfe; seeing that communicating to the Iron, more attractive verue then naturally it hath of it selfe, will be ray-sing an Iron to the part of the stone that hath most force, much more weight will bee ray-sing with the Iron, then with the stone it selfe; so it bee ioyned with it, in so far, that to a Load-stone, that weigheth no more then two pound one quarter, and hath no natural verue for to lift more then six ounces weight, it made the Iron in my presence to lift foureteen pound of 1. lift more then this verue hath not the Load-stone of *Spain*, a thing that causeth the Philosophers to muse much vpon.

The *Author* had here inserted a Table or General Map of America; the defect of which was bene supplied with this farre more complete of Hondius.

HONDIVS, his Map of AMERICA.



Navigation of
the South Sea.
Navigation of
Panama to the
City of the
Circ de la
Reyn.

Navigation of
the West In-
dies.

it, before the Summer bee ended, which is very short and full of storms, because it flands in so great a height, whereby this Navigation is very difficult.

The Navigation of the South Sea hath always been along the Coast, and because the South winds are very continuall, and the Current of the Sea is inclinable to the North. The Navigation of Panama to the City of the King, is wont to continue two monthes, and the returne less then thirtie dayes, and the time from the King to Chile, from whence to Panama are layed nine hundred leagues in less then two monthes, eight being needfull for the going, which is alwaies shorter then it was: for putting to the Sea they make better winde to performe it.

The Navigation to the Western Islands, *Maluco* and *Philippine*, from *Cebu* to the Strait of *Magellan* passeth foure thousand leagues, and so for being so long as for the difficulty of passing the Strait of *Magellan*, it is held for difficult to vie it, and from *Nova Espanna* through the Western Gulfe, which is in the South Sea. This Navigation was made from the Port of the *Nagasaki* in the Coast of *Nova Espanna*; at this time it is made from the Port of *Acapulco*, from whence to the *Maluco* and *Philippine*, they doe make a voyage of one thousand six hundred, or a thousand and seven hundred leagues, which is layed in two monthes, or two and a halfe, departing in November which is the time most free from calmes. And the returne to *Nova Espanna* is longer, because not being able to returne the way they went, it is necessary to ascend to 39. degrees, and depart in May and June, when the Brises bee lesse, and they stay foure monthes in sayling two thousand leagues that may bee in the journey.

Chap. 4.
Of the Indies
of the North.
Here was infer-
red a Map of
the North parts
of America. But
Mather says
that in the
former booke
you saw you a
fare fare bet-
ter, to which I
referre you.
Which bee the
Indies of the
North and
which of the
South.
Wherefore it
was called *Nova*
Espania.
Great passages
in *Nova Espania*.
The weather
thermost or
upper lands.

Chap. 5.
Of the bounds
of the jurisdic-
tion of the
Indies.

Chap. 6.
Of the land
Indies and
of Cuba.

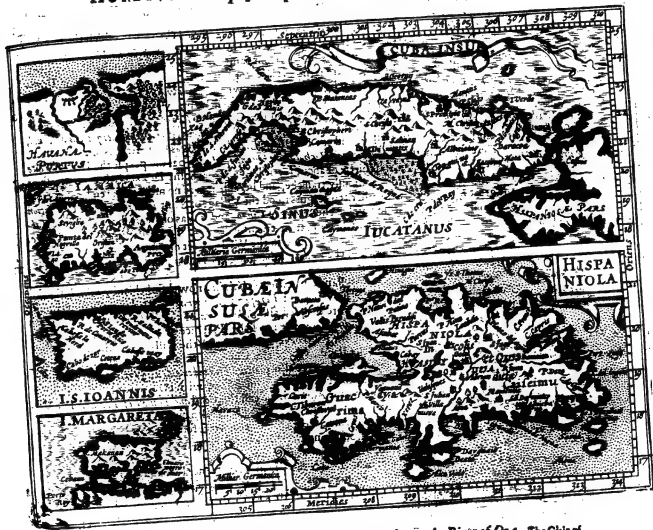
English breed,
Two Spanish
Towns.

Nature having divided these western Indies in two parts by the Isthmus or narrowness from *Panama* to *Panama*, placed the one to the North, and the other to the South; wherefore we will call them the Indies of the North and of the South. The Kings of *Castile* and *Leon*, with the advice of the supreme Councill of the Indies, have ordained, that in each place there bee a Vice-roy, Courts, and Governments, and Bishopsricks, as hereafter shall bee shewed. And first shall be entreated of the Northern Indies, which commonly they call *Nova Hispania*, because the first discoverers (which were *John Grijalva* and his Companions) having not seen in the lands houses of stone, nor other things as in *Spain*, which here they found with people apparelled, and more civil; They named it *Nova Espania*: which exceedeth the other part of the Indies in pastures, and therefore they have innumerable Cattle of all sorts: and it exceedeth also in husbandrie and fruits: it hath no wine, because generally the grapes doe not ripen with perfection, the rains of Iuly and August not suffering them to ripen. The upper lands have also great Pastures, and a pleasant prospect: for all the yeere they are greene and flourishing, with great pleasantnesse, and great *Archevices*, which are very thick Groves and Inclosures, and in the Playnes are great Lakes and Quagmires. Neither Bread nor Wine grow in them; for the great ranknesse of the ground doth not suffer it to ripen nor eare: the Rivers for the most part have gold. *Florida*, *Nicaragua*, and *Guatemala* are almost in this manner, as of all more particularly we will rehearse in their place, and in the Table following shall the bounds of these Northern Indies bee seen.

The Court of the land *Hispaniola*, which in time and place is the first, being nearest unto *Cuba*, is hath of bounds East and West foue hundred and fiftie leagues, and North and South more then three hundred, wherein are included the lands and Governments of *Hispaniola*, *Cuba*, *Saint John*, *Lançay*, *Margarita*, and the fishing of the Pearle: the Province and Government of *Venezuela*, and for themselves the Provinces of new *Andalusia*, *Guayana*, and *Florida*, with all the lands of the North Sea, which doe passe a hundred which are named, and are about six hundred great and small: and those which doe lene toward the Coast of *Terra firma*, the Mariners doe call of the *Leeward*, and the other to the *Windward*. The temperature of them all is commonly moist and exceeding hot, and although they be plentifull in Pastures and Trees, they are not so of the Seales of *Cassia*, nor of Wheat, Barly, Vines, nor Olives: but there is great store of great Cattel and small, as Kine, Mares, Swine, and Sheepe, and therefore their principall traffick is Hides and Sugar, for there is great store; and although in the most of them there is gold; it is not fought for.

The Countre-men called the land of *Hispaniola*, *Aryi* and *Quisquaya*, which signifieth *Roughnesse*, and a great *Cumtine*. The figure of it is like a Cheifur leafe: it flands in nineteene degrees and a halfe elevation of the Pole, it compasseth about foure hundred leagues and somewhat more, and hath in length East and West an hundred and fiftie, and North and South from thirtie to fixtie where it is broadest, it is very plentifull of Sugar, and Cattel, and of *Tacco*, the roots whereof maketh the *Cacahu*, the bread of the Countreimen. They have no Millet nor Wheat, although they begin to reape some in the inward parts and coldest. It is rich of Copper mynes and other metals, and some veins of Gold though but little is gotten, for want of workemen: it hath ten Spanish Townes.

H o n .



- 40 The City of *Saint Dominick* or *Domingo* neere the Coast of the South, on the River of *Oca*. The Chief of the said 19. degrees and a halfe, and 66. of Occidental longitude from the Meridian of *Saint Dominick* of *Toldeo*, from whence vnto it there may bee by direct line one thousand two hundred fortie foure leagues, it hath about five hundred households. There is resident in it the Audience or Counteys, the Officers of the Goods and Royall Treasure; a Mint house, and the Cathedral Church, And the Archbishopricke hath for Suffraganes the Bishopricks of the *Conception de la Vega* (which is united with that of *Saint Dominick*) of *Saint John*, *Cuba*, *Pinar del Rio*, *Mercuriana*, and other of *Lançay*; and in the City are Monasteries of *Dominicans*, *Franciscans*, *Mercuriana*, and the Abbots of two of Nunnes, a Grammar Schoole, with foure thousand *Pijos* of Rent, and an Hospital with the twenty thousand. The Haven which is great, and capable of many ships, is in the mouth of the River *Oca*, and hath the City on the West, which the *Deputie Don Bartholomew Colles* did build the yeere 1494. on the East side, better and wholfomer in situation, and the chiefe Knight of *Alcantara*, *Nicholas* of *Onande* being Governour of *Hispaniola*, An. 1502. removed it where it is, from the other side the River to the East, upon occasion that the City had fallen by a great Earthquake. The Village of *Saluaynes* of *Tegay*, eight and twentie leagues from *Saint Dominick* to the East, of the Archbishopricke; the Captaine, *John* of *Espania*, did people it. The Village of the *Zeybo*, twentie leagues from *Saint Dominick* to the East, toward the land of *Cuba*, the Captaine also planted it in the time of *Nicholas* of *Onande*. The Village of *Catay*, *Zeybo*, sixteen leagues from *Saint Dominick* to the North and very close in his circuit, *Roderick* *Merx* *Bl* *Catay*, founded it. The Village of *Alcama* in *Compostella*, in the coast of the South, foure and twentie leagues from *Saint Dominick* to the West, in his borders are many sugar Mills: it was peopled by the President *James Velazquez*, it was called *Compostella* by a *Galician* Knight, who carried held an Heritage at that situation, and *Alcama* is the name of the place which the *Indians* the sugar had there. The first that carried sugar Came to the *Indies*, and began to make triall of them there, was one *Alonso*, the Bachelor *Uelso*, The Village of *Taguana*, which they call

Bbb b

Santa

with the Provinces of *Derado*, to the south of this Government, wherein falleth by the Coast the Province of *Maracapan*, in the bounds of *Venezuela*, where the mouths of *Santa Fe* were inhabited, in whole Borders is the knob of *Unare*, and neere unto it a great Lake with great store of fish and falk, and the *Indians* which are called of *Paria*, twentie leagues within the Land and the *Indians Palenques*, so called for the Poles where with they fortified themselves, and the Province of *Cumana*, North and fourth with the *Margarita*, where is a Towne of *Spaniards*, which is called now *Cordoba*, which the Capayne *Gonzalo de Ovando* built, when he went to chastise the *Indians* of *Guanaco* for the destruction of the Monastery of the Religious *Franciscan*. And to the East or the Land of *Trinidad*, and the River of Saint *Joh* of the *Amaracas*, is the Province of the *Indians Aracua*, part of the *Cambila*, and all Warlike, that neuer are quiet or peaceable.

After the point of *Paria*, which stands in seven degrees, and the *Dragons Mouth* neere unto *Trinidad* (stands the point *Del Gallo*, or *Anegada*, to the South of the *Trinitie*; and the River of *Paria*, or *Orinoco*, which some call *Tuyapari*, and others will have that chiefe two, and the River of Saint *Joh*, and of *Orellana* be all one thing, and also the *Mananyas*; but in this they are deceived. There be other Rivers in the Province of the *Aracua* that are well knowne, the River of Saint *Joh*, for of *Orellana* springeth in the *Andes* of *Peru*, right against *Cumana*, from whence it runneth fiftene hundred leagues, or more, winding vnder the Equinotiall, by Countreys well inhabited, though not well discovered, till it came to run into the North Sea, whose mouth hath in breadth fiftie leagues; and in the first five hundred from the mouth upward, many Islands inhabited; and eightie or a hundred leagues more to the West, stands the River of *Maracapan*, almost in the bounds whereby passeth the Line of the Division betweene *Casile* and *Paragall*, and is great and terrible, having fiftene leagues of mouth, and the streame commeth from the parts of the South, and the Provinces of *Brasil*, and they say that the spring is vnder *Papeyas*, and the bounds of the new Kingdome of *Grenada*.

River Maracapan

The Island of Cubaga

Strange Hoggs

An earthquake in the coast of *Terra Firma*, the year 1530, whereby admittible

Margarita, Florida.

The spring which John Ponce did seeke that renewed the old mine

They of Florida knew neither Gold, Silver nor Monie

Seven leagues from *Cumana* stands the Island of *Cubaga*, where flood is was said, the new *Cadiz*, which was disinhabited because the fishing for *Perles* fayled: this Island had no water that could be drunke, nor trees, nor beasts, for all is brackish, except those Hogges that haue the Nautil in their backe-bone, and some small Conies, and haue so great inhabiting, they went seven leagues to the river of *Cumana* for water, although there was an opinion that it bred webbes in the eyes. In this River and coast, hapod in the year 1530, the first of September, the haue being cleare, the Sea did rise foure fadomes from his ordinary course, and entering into the earth it began to shake, and the fortresse which the Capitaine *Jacome de Castellon* had built by order of the Counsell of *Hispainia*, fell, and the earth did open in many places, where-out spring much salt water as blacke as ink, and did stinke of brimstone, and the mountaine of the gulfe of *Caracas* remained open with a great rife: many houses fell, many people died drowned with feare, and taken with the earth quake. *Margarita* one league from *Cubaga* a more pleasant Island, the Bachiller *Marcello de Pilechou* did people it.

The Province and Government of *Florida*, bordering on the Counsell of *Hispainia*, according to the Government of *Peter Melendez*, all that which lyeth from the River of *Palmeis*, which doth confine with the Government of *Panuco* in new *Spain*, limits of the Counsell of *Mexico*, which is neere the tropicke in 24 degrees, vnto the point of *Bacallies*, which falleth in 48 degrees, and a halfe, in the which are 1248 leagues of Coast, and from thence to 73. degrees of altitude to the North by the Coast, and within the Land all that which hee discovered. Of this hath beene coasted and discovered from the River of *Palmeis* vnto the Point of *Santa Helena*, and the River *Jordan*, which are about 600. leagues, it is a firme Land of a good climate, plentifull and well inhabited in many places, as those that went through it with *Hernando de Soto* did know it, the year 1536, and 1537, *Joh* *Pardo* borne in *Cumana*, went by Land from *Florida* to new *Spain*, in less than two yeares, and it is the nearest Europe of any part of the *Indies*, &c. from the Bay of *S. Iseph*, which is eightie leagues from *Panuco*. There is also discovered vnto New found Land, but that which is particularly taken for *Florida*, is the point that goeth into the Sea North and South, with the Island of *Cuba*, of a hundred leagues in length, and twentie leue in breadth East and West, and (when it is moit) thirtie. *Joh* *Ponce* of *Lyon* discovered it Anno 1512. on Easter day, and for this cause hee called it *Florida*; and afterward returned the year 1521. and returned wounded to *Cuba*, where hee dyed, leaving a report that hee fought the Fontaine or River which the *Indians* said that old men walking them (clue) thence, became young. This Province is according to the temperature of *Casile*, and many fruits were found there like the fruits of *Spain*, and it seemeth fit for Cattle and Corne. There is no Gould, neither seemeth that the *Indians* did know it, nor Silver: for it hath beene ferre that they have found the Cheltes with bars of it and money in their coasts, and made no account of it: yet *Hernando de Soto*, within the inward parts of the great River, found great abundance of *Perles*.

There are but two Fortresses in this Province with men in Garrison, both in the Coast that looketh to the East: the one is called *Santa Marie*, about one hundred leagues from the *Huana*, and another of *Santa Angustin*, which is the principall, because the

HONDIVS his Map of Florida.



49 the haue is good, and is neere the channell of *Baltama*. It stands about fiftie leagues from *las Marteyres*, which are many little Islands inhabited, which are neere the point of *Florida*, where-by it is yoneth moit with the Island of *Cuba*, a league and a halfe, and less; the one from the other, with a ranke of shelles with mouthes, in twentie three or twentie foure leagues, which dieth *Marteyres* haue in length: whole beginning on the West side, is called the Point of the *Marteyres*, and to the East, the Head of the *Marteyres*; and there is an Island of foureteen leagues in length, and very narrow, the Point of it is the left of *Terra Firma* to the East, in 24 degrees and a halfe, where a Towne of *Spaniards* was built, which continued not, and to the North, almost direct the River *Yagu*, and more Northward in 28 degrees, the Point of the *Cauas*, and forward the River of *Gua*; before the River of *Matama*, which is so called by that which *Peter Melendez* did to the Capitaine *Ribas* and his *Frenchmen*; and the Point of *S. Angustin* in 29 degrees three quarters, and 50 ten leagues from thence the River of *S. Matheo*, from whence the Coast turneth to the North North-east, all with the Islands and Bays leaning vnto it into the Cape, or Point of *Santa Helena*, which stands in 32 degrees and a halfe, which was discovered by chance the year 1520.

In all the rest of the Coast that be betweene the point of *Santa Helena*, by *New found Land*, and the *Bacallies*, vnto the Land of *Labrador*, which reacheth and passeth the height of *England*, there is no Towne nor Government of *Spaniards*, although by diuers times and Nations, it hath beene discovered and Naugated, and it is knowen there is about one thousand leagues iourney of Land without gold, and the more in height the worse, and lesse habitable. There be many Rivers, and Ports, that because they are not well knowen nor frequented, there is no mention made but of the River of the *Staggies*, by another name of *Santa Marie*, which is a very great, and maine River, almost in the middle of the Coast betweene the *Bacallies*, from whence the great River *Ochelega* entrench within the Land toward the West, which diuers times the strangers haue naugated, beleeuing to haue found that way passage to new *Spain*. And in the Coast of *Florida*, which looketh to the West, are the *Tortugas*, seven or eight Islands together: and the

Port, Capes, and Points of Florida.

* Or *Melquiza* Slough or of the French in Florida. See *Hist.* to 3.

The Coast of the North vnto the *Bacallies*.

* Or *Las Gamas*. The great River *Ochelega*

* *Las Tortugas*, the

ALMA
AVO

Don Sebastian
Kauwera
brought in the
breeding and
ploughing
Government
of Panto.

S. Lago de los
Valles.

The Bishop
Don Sebastian
Ramirez built
the City of
the Angels;

fire issueth, as
Etna, Hecla, &c

CHAP. I. Veracruz. Indian *Doctrines*, or *Parishes*. *Bishopricks* of Guaxaca. 873

10
fr
fr
o
g
n
v
f
r
t
f
v
r

20

30

40

56

* A kinde of Parish or Schoole diuision, Sp. *partidos de doctrina*.

Chap. 10.
Of the Bish
prickes of *Gu*
xaca Meebon
and *Tucatan*
& of the Pro
vince of *Ta*
co, which is i
rest of the
bounds des
cribed.

2- **GARYMA** Title
e, of the Mar-
d. questle of the
Valley.

of Tulepeque.

S. *Alfonso* of the *Zapoteco*.S. *Juan* of *Nuevo* *Alfonsos* *San* *ta*.

Golden Rivers

Cacao-money and Wine.

The Indians should pay no Tithes.

Rivers of *Alarida*.

Guatemala.

The Bishopric of *Atzacan*.

Pacanan.

Zimapan.

Guatemala, a *Real* *Village* of *S. Michael*. The Conception of *Salva*.The Village of *S. Philip*.

Zacatlan.

Calima.

The Treasurer *Alfonso* of *Estrada*, when he did goerne in *Mexico*, inhabited the Village of *Saint Alfonso* de la *Sapoteca*, twentie leagues from *Antequera*, toward the North-east. They live in it by Gold, Cotton-wool, and Miller, there are about thirte thousand *Indians* tributaries. It stands between high Hills. *Saint Lago de Necoac* is in the Valley of *Necoac*, twentie leagues from *Antequera* to the East, in the way of *Chiapa*, and *Guatemala*. The Village of the *Holy Ghost* in the Province of *Guacacualco*, at the Coast of the North Sea, in the Confines of *Tahuco*, is ninetie leagues from *Antequera*. *Campala* of *Sandemall* inhabited it in the yeere 1532. It hath about fiftie Townes of *Indians*, it stands on the border of the River, on the side of *Chiapa*: this River springeth in the Mountaynes of the *Mixis*, and *Chomelatan*, neere to *Tecamapueque*, and with the waters of the Neighbour Provinces of *Chiapa*, and the *Cumales*, it goeth into the North Sea, there enter into it fiftie hundred run.

In all this Bishopricke there is no River that doth not yield Gold, and the *Indians* doe live without want if they will worke, for they lacke nothing for lacke nor belly: and they have the *Cacao*, a Fruit like Almonds, which serueh for Money, and they make Wine of it, and it is eaten rosted, and is held for a great sustenance. They are whollome Countreys, and pleasant. The Silke was before nourished by the *Castilians*, with the Mulberry Trees of the Countrey, wherewith the *Indians* serued themselves, for to make Paper of the second bark: and the *Spaniards* have planted fo many of *Cassia*, that they grow infinitely: and if the *Indians* did pay tithes of it, and of other things, few Bishopricks might be made; but none doe pay tithes but the *Castilians* onely.

This Bishopricke hath three hundred and fiftie Head-ownes of *Indians*, and in them, and in three hundred Granges more than an hundred & fifty thousand tributary *Indians*; and one hundred and twentie Monasteries of *Dominicke* Friars, and the reit Schooles of Priests for Deuotion. The Coast of the North Sea of this Bishopricke, beginneth in the River of *Alarida*, that cometh from the Mountaynes of the *Zapoteco*, and betwene many other it goeth to the Province of *Chimarrila*, and crossing coertward the Mountaynes whence it sprung, goeth out into the North Sea, betwene the River of *Guacacualco*, and *Saint Iohn* of *Uina*, and there is also the River called *Aguadulco*, whose mouth may serue for a Haven; and the diuided Rocks, a point of the Land that cometh from the Mountaynes of *Saint Martine*, named by ships that have bin lost vpon a thosle fall of Rocks vnder water, which lye along the Coast right against them in the Coast of the South Sea. This Bishopricke hath the Haven of *Guantele* in fiftene degrees and an halfe, great, good, and frequented. The President *Don Peter* of *Alarida* let this Province of *Guantele* in obedience, and the Port of *Tecamapueque* neere, which also is reasonably; and the Towne is great, and there is in it a great fishing for Shrimps, and other fish which they carrie to *Guacacualco*, and in the high way of *Cayzaca* is a Myne of Chrystal-borill. *Tecamapueque* is fortie five leagues from *Antequera*, they passe by the Mountaynes of the *Cumales*, *Nizapa*, and *Mexapueque*, whitherto this Bishopricke extendeth, and hath many Townes subiect by the Coast of the Sea.

The Bishopricke of *Mexicoacan* (which is a Province betwene the Archbishopricke of *Atzacan*, and the Port of *Guadalupe*) hath in breadth by the Coast of the South Sea, about eightie leagues, and fassie within the Land, with open boundes, by the Separation betwene the Provinces of *Zacatlan*, and of *Colima*, both in the Coast of the South Sea. The Citie of *Mexicoacan*, or *Pacanan*, in little more then nineteene degrees, and fortie leue leagues from *Mexico*, of plaine way. In *Guayagaro* called *Valladolid*, is Resident the Cathedral Suffragane to *Mexico*, with two Monasteries of *Franciscans*, and *Austine* Friars. The Master of the held *Christopher* of Old built *Mexicoacan*, the Cathedral was first Resident in *Zimapan*, vnto the yeere 1544, that he removed it to *Pacanan*. The Bishop was *Don Bafio* de *Quiragan* and is hath one Monasterie of *Franciscans* another of *Austine* Friars, and it stands ten leagues from *Mexicoacan*, to the East.

The Mynes of *Guacacualco*, are twentie eight leagues from *Mexicoacan*, to the North, toward the *Zapoteco*, wherein there are about fixe hundred *Cafillans*, in two Campes * which they haue with their chiefe *Alcade* or Commissioner, and the feare and dwelling of thole that follow the Mynes is a *Real* of *Campes*. The Village of *Saint Michael*, in the Province of *Mexicoacan*, is thirtie five leagues from *Pacanan*, to the North-east, in a rough Countrey. And the Village of the Conception of *Salva*, which was built by commandement of the Vice-roy, *Don Martin Enriquez*, the yeere 1570, for so assure the way of the *Chibchucano*. The Village of *Saint Philip* fiftie leagues off *Mexicoacan*, toward the North, and fixtie two from *Mexico* to the North-west, with one Monasterie of *Antoine* Friars, in barren foyle and cold; it was built for the seruite of the way of the *Zacatlan*.

The Province and Village of *Zacatlan*, in the Coast of the South Sea, stands in more then 8 degrees, and fiftie leagues from *Mexicoacan*, to the South-west, neere the Sea; *Iohn Rodriguez* of *Villaluarre*, and *Tomas* of *Cuacua*, built it the yeere 1532, it stands ninetie leagues from *Mexico*, and the Province and Village of *Calima*, in little more then 18. degrees, in the Coast of the South Sea, and in the confines of new *Galecia*, fiftie leagues from *Mexicoacan*, to the South-west, with a chiefe

chiefe Commissioner, in a hot foyle, and plentifull of *Cacao*, and *Cassia Fittola*, with Goud, and well conditioned people. *Gonzalo* of *Sandemall* built it in the yeere 1522. All the Countrie of *Mexicoacan* is most plentifull of Wheate, Miller, and all kinde of *Spanish* Fruits, and Cattle, stored of Fish: it hath Graine, Cochinilla, and Cotton wool, and the people is industrious, and giuen to labour.

There are in this Bishopricke one hundred and thirte Townes, the ninetie foure head Townes with Schooles of Doctrie: this Bishopricke reacheth no Coast of the Sea of the North, in the border of the South Sea are many Riuer, and in the furthest Well of the Province, almost in the border of the new *Galecia*, is the Port of *Nauadid*, in the height of 15 degrees, good and frequented, from whence the Naigation is made to the *Philippines*; and more to the East, neere the Port of *Saint James*: there are very good Copper Mines in thier boundes, of the which the *Indians* make very Cronus v Cifels, for it is pleasant, and other fo hard that they digge the ground with it instead of Iron, which they could neuer doe till the *Spaniards* taught it.

The Province and Government of *Tucatan* (which took this name when the Captaine *Francisco Fernandez* discovered it, and out *Ladue* of the *Remedes*, when *Iohn* of *Grijalua* discovered *Cumacul*) was at the first held for an Island, because it was almost compassed with Sea, in fort that it may be called *Pennsula*, and it compasseth more then two hundred and fiftie leagues: it is in it length where it extends it selfe East and West, about that doth confine with the South, from the Coast that looketh to the North, vnto the part that doth confine with the Provinces of *Guatemala*, whereby it hath somewhat about fure and twentie leagues. The temperature is hot, and very moist, and though there be no Riuer, nor running water in it all the water is so neare for Wells, and they thinke so many hills of Sea-fish vnder the stones, that this and the Sea being so low, hath giuen occasion to suspect that it hath beene Sea in other times: it is not much compassed with Wood: they gather no Corne, nor feedes of *Cassia*, there is no Goud, nor any other kinde of Metall, whence is knowne the inuention (or decrit) of thole which said that there were found in this Province, when the *Spaniard* entered in it, Crosses of Latten, which was neuer found in any Province of the *Indies*: it is very plentifull of game, especially wilde Boares and Deere, they breede vp in it great flocks of Poultry: they gather much Cotton wool, and Azure, the people multieth and liueh long as man good was with that was attained to three hundred yeeres: it hath all the kinde of Cattle of *Spain*, and there Hories.

There are in this Government without that of *Tahuco*, which goeth ioyntly with it, foure *Spanish* Townes, and one Bishopricke: and the Townes are buildings of the first Governour, the President *Don Francisco* of *Atzacan*. The Citie of *Merida* is in twentie degrees height, almost in the middelt of the Province, neere to the coast of the North Sea, twelve leagues within the Land. In it are resident the Governour, the Officers of Reuenues, and treasure Royall, and the Cathedral suffragane to *Mexico*, with a Monasterie of *Franciscans* Friars, they called it *Merida*, for the great and ancient buldings that it hath like *Merida* in *Cassia*, and it causeth admiration, that hauing no kinde of Metall in the Province, foyrage Stones could be wrought, in the which were found engrauen naked men, with eare-rings, whence is inferred that they were Temples, and that it was a very famous Countrey. The Village of *Valladolid* is thirtie one leagues from *Merida*, toward the South-east with a most sumptuous Monasterie of *Franciscans* Friars, and 15000. tributary *Indians* in limits. The Village and port of *Saint Francisco* of *Campes*, in 20. degrees, in the Coast that looketh to new *Spain*, about fiftie leagues from *Merida* to the West, declining to the South, it hath a reasonable Haven, though little depth for being a Bay. *Don Francisco* of *Monteio* gave it the name. The Village of *Salamanca* the President called fo by his viscum of *Monteio* gave it the name. *Chomelatan*, twentie leagues from *Merida*, owne Countrey. In the Provinces of *Beacur*, and *Chomelatan*, twentie leagues from *Merida*, North and South, leaning to the West, and other foure from *Valladolid*, neere to the Coast of the gulfes of *Honduras*: there are in this Province Monasteries of *Franciscans*, and six Schooles of Priests for Doctrie.

The Coast of all this Province is so shallow, that in few parts ye can ride at anker at lesse then foure or five leagues from the Land, and so there is no Port but for small Shippes, and it floweth and ebbeh more in this Coast then in any other place of these Provinces of new *Spain*. The Ports that are, be these: *Cielo*, and *Tehuacan*, *Ciel*, and *Campul*: the Riuer with two mouthes, the *Campes* in the Coast that looketh to new *Spain*, and in it the small Cape from whence the Coast beginneth to winder to the East, and neere to the Point a little Land which is called *la Descomoda* or the *Unthankfull*, compassed with shelles: and to the West from thine, about eighte leagues, another which they call the *Zarza*, and the *Triangle*, which are three small Hands, close by another little Land compassed with shelles, other fixtene leagues from *Cabo Delgado*, Islands of *Armas* (of *Sander*) and the *Redde* (la *Bermiea*) and another Hand thirtie leagues from the said Cape to the North, and the *Negros*; three little Isles compassed with shelles, to the East from the *Redde*, about thirtie five leagues, and the *Scorpions* twentie leagues of the Coast North and South, with *Merida*, and the Cape of *Conceio*, the Pointe to the East of *Tucatan*, from whence goe foure little Hands, which are called *de Chagueres* of *Wamer*, leaning to the Coast in the which is the Hand of *Cumacul*, named by the famous Idol Place in it, whithir

There is much rozen made in some Mountaines of this Government, and Gums aromaticke, and other liquors which they get out of the Trees, and great quantitie of *Sanguis Draconis*, and a very fragrant balme of great vertues.

Citic of Carta-
cena.

The *Cities of Caribbea* stands near the Sea, two leagues from the Point of *Canoe*, to the West, in tenne degrees of latitude, and feutene six of longitude, one thousand four hundred and sixtie leagues from *Tulede*, of more then five hundred households, among them about two thousand women. It is it evident the Gouverneur, the Kings Officers, & treasure: Royall, and the Cathedral suffragan to use *New Realme*, with Monasteries of *Dominick* and *Franciscan* Friars. The situation affords almost like an Island, being almost all the North side, & it is a rough coast, and the walls are all of stone, the fideit hath arms of the Sea, and the South side is a Marish, which is to the Lake of *Canaque*, which ebbs & flows after the order of the Sea, at which times, when the water is low, they passe from the *Cities* to *Terra firme*, by a Bridge and a manner of a Causey, which hath about two hundred and fifty paces. The *Cities* is built on Sand, & within two fathoms they finde fresh water, though sometimes it is vnwholesome, not so much as the call of *Nombre de Dey* for the ayres in respect of the Marish are wont to cause diseases, but for the *placet* part it is wholesome. The Haven is one of the least of the *Indies*, though the great Ships doe ride farre from the *Cities*. I hath at the entrance a small Bay, called *El Estrecho* in *Caragena* of *Cadix*, whereby they call it *Caragena* of the *Indies* and woe called *Caleta* of *Caragena* of the *Indies*, because the *Caragans* in length & little more than half a league in breadth: it was wont to be inhabited with *Caragans*, & it hath no water. The first that law *Caragena*, in the year 1502, was *Roderick Buitida*, & the second, *Alonso de la Caleta* or *John* of the *Thing* went a thore, and found *Lemus Guerra*, and they say that he began the warre with the *Indians*, which were proud and boold, and both men and women fought, with venomd arrows. Afterward returned *Alonso* for *Orizaba* with *John* of the *Time* for *Pinolabaz*, & *Américo Vesputio* for *Marines*, & the year 1532, after *Gregorio* of *Orizaba* took ypon him to inhabit *Caragena*, & performed so well. The year 1534, went *Don Pedro* of *Eredia* born in *Madrid*, and inhabiting there, he made a great party of the *Indians*, with labour and cunning, because the people were very warlike, and there was a woman that before they could take her, being about eighteen yeeres old, flew with her Boy eight Spanish.

Amerlist
WOMEN.

Valiant *Virago*

Saint James of
Tolosa

The Village of
Marie.
* High Crosse.

Saint Sebastian.

The *Barranca*.
* Or *Water-*
course.

**El Dorado
Guiana,**

The Village of *Santa Ismael de Tolu*, is six leagues from the Sea to the South-west of *Cerrogu* 30
two leagues from it, part by Sea (by land it cannot be gone) and part by the Maritimes and 30
Mountains. It is a found Country, of great breedings, and cattle, and fruits of *Cafise*: the Pre-
sident *Don Peter of Heredia* peopled it. The Village of *Marin* thirte two leagues from *Cerrogu*,
to the South, is also the inhabiting of *Don Peter of Heredia*, in the year 1534. The Village of
San Juan de los Rios, is five leagues from *Cerrogu* by the Sea and River of *Moguelm*,
between wide borders it lands, & wherthey they are the way is not made, but
being among Quingures, A Captain of *Don Peter of Heredia* peopled it: in the year 1535 it was
the Bachiller *Enjor* (as hath been faithfullibly sayd, *Major*, the surnames of the *Armen*, which
is in this Government, forsaking the Village of *Santa Sebastian* of *Bona Vista*, which the late
Captain *Alonso de Ojeda* had inhabited, in the furthest place of *Verde*: & afterward the Captain
Alonso de Heredia inhabited *Santa Sebastian* againe, for the President his Brother, in certain little 40
Villages, made a league from the *Sea*, And in the year 1537, the Bachiller *Alonso de Vellido* went
to inhabit with a good number of *Soldadoz*, and pulling up any troubles, & moit rough
Mountains, & thuck woods, to come to the City of *Verde*, he was killed, and his wife was
was a Soldier that from these came to the City of *Verde* in the *Cherchez*, which 1539, year.

[illegible]

In the Provinces of the *Dardale*, or more *Ephremiade*, (which circuit pertains to the bounds of the Counsell of the *New Reine*) many Captains have entred by Sea, and by fundry parts of the Land, and have neuer found the riches (which the fame prometheth. They fall on the other side of the River of *Saint Iohn* of *Amazon*, by another name *Orellana*, (which lome erroneously will haue to be the *Maranayn*) and herein the *Critico*, and other great Rulers; and the Gulfe of *Paris* which maketh the firme land, with the Lays of the *Timitie*, & the mouthes of the *Serpent*, & the *Dragon*, which

which the first Admirall named, where he saw himselfe in great danger, for the conflict which the fresh waters make there with the salt, whereof he had yet no notice, and here beeginneth the flowing of the Sea to be very great, vnto the streight of *Magellan*, and goeth continuing through all the coast of *Peru*, and *New Spaine*. Great Tydes.

At the close of the *Reyna* of *Pera* (whose name hath extended it selfe more then it was at the beginning) *Fern. or Fern.* included all the Empire of the *Incas*; or more; for when it was won it was divided in two governments, that of *Don Francisco Pizarro*, called the *New Cuzco*, from the *Quito* vnto the *Cusco*, six leagues below the *Chimca*; and that of *Don Juan de Almagro*, called the *New Toledo*, two hundred leagues toward the Streight from *Chimca*; which governments were diuidit vnto the Council of *San Reyes* was established, and a Vice-roy provided for the Kingdomes of *Pera*, in whose government are included, the Council of *Saint Francis of the Chiles*, that of *Lima* (or *de los Reyes de la Cruz*) that of the *Chancas*, the government of *Chilo*, & countries of the Streights, the lands of *Salamanca* to the West, and for borders the Prouinces of the River of *Plata*, and what is called the *Mar del Sur*, that is, the South Sea, the East and West, that which is divided North and South from two thousand leagues vnto the South Sea, and the South Sea, that is, the South Sea, through all the Kingdomes of *Pera* North and South, that of the *Andes* from *Papayan*, and yet may be named, that from *Terra Firma* and *New Spain*, till it ends in the *Streights*, and the other where the *Quito* vnto *Chilo*, alone the *Chilo*, euen leagues distant, little more or lesse.

The two *Rovers*
of the *Indies* of
the South.
" Of *Magellan*

life, from the *Vuelta vnto Chile*, which they call the *Yndia*, by the *Audax* from *Pedra vnto Chile*; which hath nine hundred leagues in length, & one and twentie fowre of Cartage, & euerie foure league very sumptuous houses, which they call *Tambos*, where was pastured many Cows, Oxen, and Horses, and other beasts, as also some few Indians, who were made to labour to hand. The other way went through the middle of the Playnas, along the coast of fish and twentise fowle broad, between two walls of a mans height, from *Eurea vnto Chile*, where both the ways met. And it so to be noted, that all the *Indies* of the South Sea, are called *Yndias*, and the *Indians* themselves are called *Yndios*. From the North Sea, which is under the Equinoctiall Line, and runneth along *vnto Chile*, going out of the Tropicks; which may bee six hundred leagues,

The two great
ways of *India*.

Peffer.

Fish is not all
the Indies of
the South.

at Los Llanos.
he Las Sierras.

Diversity of the Fauna.

and frise in breadths, though toward the *Chappagee* there is more; and it is divided in three parts: *The Plaguer*, which has ten leagues in breadths, and in parts leffe, they are the coast of the Sea: *The Hills*, which have much more waste, and it is called some Vallies, and *Los Llanos*, and *Las Sierrras*, and *Los Cerros*; and these are most thick Groves and Woods, and in so little space as frise leagues equally dividit from the Line and Pole: there is so great diversitie, that in the one place almost it rayneth alwayes, and in the other almost never; wherein is the Coast; and it rayneth twice in the Mountains that fall in the middlem of these savannes, sometime it rayneth, and sometime no, for it hath his Summer and Winter; and in the Savanne whereof I do not sayning in the Coast, and rayne in the *Andis*, are spoken of in the beginning of the History.

Diverse kind
of nature.

The bounds of the Council region in *Quebec*, and confining Northward with that of *Panamá*, in the Port of *Bonaventura*, and on the North-coast with the *New England*, and the South-coast of *Florida*, both in length with the South-coast, which is the place where it lengthens most, about two hundred leagues from the Port of *Bonaventura*, which is in the Gulf of *Panamá*, or of *Saint Michael*, the Port of *Paysa* in the coast of *Pern*, and from thence cradle to the veterment of *Pogoyan*, more then other two hundred and fifty, the limits remaying open on the East side: is so it is included three governments, besides these which are *Panamá*, *Chagay*, *La Comilla*, and that of *Islande de Salome*, of the *Pacomey*, and *Gumfay*, divided in two Bithropicks.

El Quito.

Aire and sea
fons.

30 The Pryncesse and Countess of *Quito*, which the Councell gouerneth hath in tenth eighth leagues, from neere the Equinoctiall to the other side, and that their Townes of *Sperandee* following. The heauen and earth thereof, although it fruple vnder the Equinoctiall is like to that of *Cathago*, cleere and faire, rather cold than hot, by the parts whereof they come forth, as well as the southerly partes, which they call *Arcto*, which they the weather; and in the other months they cut their Grasse, which wheat is not long to sit for the Cattrell of *Cathago*, whereof there are great flocks; and of Which *Bartley* and gold in fine places : and in this Region they live pleasantly, for there is nothing more pleasant for humane life, then to enioy a wholesome and cleare skye, for they haue no Winter to trouble them with cold, nor Summer to molest with heat.

al Quite
live
fant.
3. 2. 9.
the
the

The Townes are, the Citty of *Saint Francisco de Asis*, where *Atahualpa* Emperour of Peru *Atahualpa* was borne, it stands in halfe a degree of height from the Equinoctiall, and eighty two from the Meridian of *Toledo*, by a greater circle one thousand six hundred eighty six leagues from it, and six score from the South Sea; it is of five hundred households: In it is resident the Council for matters of Justice, for those of the Government are at the Vice-roy his charge. There are also in this Citty the Officers of the Kings *Rentes* and treasure *Royall*, and the Cathedral of this Bishopricke,

249

and the Summer are at such times as in *Spain*: it is a healthful Countrey and of a good temper, and the first that entered in it, were the Captains *Diego de Reques*, *Philip Guzman*, and *Nicolas de Heredia*; they discovered on this side the River of *Plata* unto the Fortresse of *Gabin*.

Chap. 22.
Of the bounds
of the King-
dome of Chile.

Rio de la Sal.

DOn *Diego de Almagro* was provided the yeere 1534. in *Teledo* for Gouverneur of two hundred leagues of ground beyond the Government of the Marques *Don Francisco Pizarro*, toward the Streight of *Magellan*, intitling this part, *The new government of Teledo*. He went to pacifie this Countrey, and because he forsooke it, it was given in charge to the Marques *Don Francisco Pizarro* 1537. and he commended it 1540. to the Captaine *Peter of Valdivia*; who went thither with one hundred and fiftie *Spaniards*. All the Countreys of this Kingdoms lye to the South of the Equinoctiall, in a more Southerne altitude than the Kingdoms of *Pera*, and her Provinces within the Torrid, from the Equinoctiall unto the Tropique of *Cancer*, which passeth a Degree, which they call of *Atacama*, which is from twentie three to twentie fixe degrees, and then beginneth the Kingdoms of *Chile*, which the *Indians* call *Chile*, and before the inhabited Countrey is the River of *The Salt*, in three and twentie degrees and three quarters, which from the East side of the *Rew* of Mountains, runneth to the West into the Sea, through a very deepe Valley, and though it hath the water very cleere; all that the *Horas* are wet with it when they drinke, is congealed with the heate of the Sunne; and it is so meere salt that it cannot bee drunke, and in the borders it is congealed: the River is before the entering in the first Province of *Chile* two and twentie leagues where the *Aguyeres* are, which are Wells of water, for there is no other in the two and twentie leagues, and all the Kingdoms stand within the *Zona*, which the ancient men called *Dryete*, which is inhabited with white *Indians*; and it is located on the borders of the North Sea, which is *Mare Magnum*, which is included betwene her Coast and the Coast of *China*.

This Government taken largely unto the Streight, hath in length North and South, from the Valley of *Copaca* where it beginneth in seven and twentie degrees, five hundred leagues, and in breadth East and West, from the South Sea to the North Sea, from four hundred to five hundred of ground to be pacified, which doth frangher it selfe, till it remayneth by the Streight in ninetie or in an hundred leagues. That which is inhabited of this Government, may be three hundred along the North Sea coast, and the breadth of it twentie leagues and lesse, unto the *Rew* 30 of the *Andes*, which doe and neere the Streight, and it passeth through this Kingdom very high, and almost covered at all times with snow. All the Countrey is plaine, at the least there is no great roughnesse, except where the *Rew* of *Pera* doth reach, and doth end within two or three leagues of the Coast.

The temper and qualitie of it (though it bee not without some difference for the varieties of the heights it standeth in altogether) is of the best, and most inhabitable that is in the *Indies*, in temperature like unto *Castile*, in whole opposite altitude in health almost all, and in abundance and goodnesse of victuals, and plenty of all things, riches of Myrras and Metals, and force and vigour of the Countreymen, which for being to great warriors have always beene eall to pacifie, and there bee many out in the Mountains, and Braehes of the end of the *Rew*, the Provinces of *Arucas*, *Tucapel*, and the Valley of *Pura*, the bounds and borders betwene the Cite of the *Conception*, and *los Confines*, and *la Imperial*.

In this Government are eleven Spanish Townes, with a Gouverneur placed in the matters of the Government to the Vice-roy, and Councell of *Pera*, after the Councell that was in the Countrey was taken away; and thereois in two Bishopricks Suffraganes to the Archbishopricke of the Kings. In the Bishopricke of *Saint James* are four Townes. The Cite of *Saint James* in the time of the first inhabiting of *Chile*, founded by Captaine *Peter of Valdivia*, it stands in thirte four degrees and a quarter of altitude, leuente seven of longitude, one thousand nine hundred and eightie leagues from *Teledo* by a direct Line, fiftene from the Sea, and ten beyond the Valley of *Chile*, which they named at the first *New Extremum*. In it is the Cathedral resident 50 with Monasteries of *Dominicke*, *Franciscan*, and *Mercenarie* Friars, in a plentifull foile of wheat, Wine, and other things, and of very rich Myrras of gold, and in her iurisdiction more then eightie thousand *Indians* in fixe and twentie repartitions. This Cite is farned of the Port of *Valparaiso* at the mouth of the River *Topocalme*, which passeth nere unto it.

Captaine *Valdivia* peopled also *la Serena* in the yeere 1544. nere 30 a good Haven; it is the first Towne of *Spaniards*, at the entrie of *Chile* fixe leagues from the Cite of *Saint James*, somewhat North-west nere to the Sea in the Valley of *Cogomino*, with Monasteries of *Franciscan*, and *Mercenarie* Friars. It stayneth in it but three or four times a yeere, and in the Countrey before it is to be greater rayneth. The Port which they call of *Cogomino*, stands in two and thirte degrees, it is a good Nooke where the ships of *Pera* doe make a stay. In the Province of *Cincuenta*, which is on the other side of the *Rew* of the *Andes*, in a cold and barren Countrey, doe stand the Cite of *Mendoza*, and of *Saint Ihsac* the Frontier; for *Don Garcia de Mendoza* peopled them both. The Cite of *Mendoza* is of the same height with *Saint James*, about forty leagues from it, of a difficult way, for the snow that is in the *Andes*. The Cite of *Saint Ihsac* of the Frontier stands to the South of the Cite of *Atacama*. In

Saint James.

The Seren.

Raining Golden
and silver
Cogomino.

Mendoza.
Saint Ihsac
the Frontier.

In the Bishopricke of the Imperiall are seven Spanish Townes, which are all Cite of the *Conception* in seven and thirte degrees of height, leuente leagues to the South of the Cite of *Saint James*, nere to the Sea, *Peter Valdivia* inhabited it in the yeere 1550. The Gouvernours are resident in it, since the Councell (that was there from the yeere 1567. unto 1572) was taken away. There are Monasteries of *Dominicke*, *Franciscan*, and *Mercenarie* Friars. The Port of this Cite stands in a nooke at the shelter of an Island. The Cite of the new village of *los Infantes*, or *los Confines*; *Don Garcia de Mendoza* peopled it, and the Gouverneur *Valdivia* now village, commanded it to be called *los Confines*. It stands fixe leagues from the *Conception* to the side of the Streight, eight leagues from the *Rew* of the *Andes*, and forty from that which goeth along the Coast. It hath one Monastery of *Dominicke*, another of *Franciscan* Friars. The warlike *Indians* come to the bounds of this Cite, and the myrras *River* *Bisbio* they them, and others which doe enter into it, and the River *Natiquen*.

Peter of Valdivia peopled the Cite of the Imperiall 1571, which is in nine and thirte degrees of height, nine and thirte leagues from the *Conception* toward the Streights side, three leagues from the Sea, where the Cathedral is resident with one Monastery of *Franciscan*, another of *Mercenarie* Friars; and in her bounds are more then eightie thousand *Indians*, with many other that in her bounds are in armes. The River *Catana* passeth nere it, which is navigable to the Sea, though the Haven bee not good nor secure. Chirpant *Valdivia* peopled also the *Rioch Village*, fixe leagues from the Imperiall, about the South-eastward, and allo the *Rioch Village*, fixe leagues from the *Conception*, nere to the *Sunny Row* 3, with one Monastery of *Franciscan*, another of *Mercenarie*; in a Countrey cold and barren of Bread and Wine.

The Cite of *Valdivia* is two leagues off the Sea, and fiftie from the *Conception* to the Streight ward; peopled also by Captaine *Valdivia*, with Monasteries of *Dominicke*; *Franciscan*, and *Mercenarie*, in a plentifull Countrey of Wheat, and Seedes, and in places of good pastures for Cattel, and without Vines. The merchandise comes by the River of *Valdivia*, which passeth nere it, and the Port stands in the mouth of it in fourte degrees of *Oforno* height. The Cite of *Oforno*; *Don Garcia de Mendoza* peopled, fixe leagues or more from the *Conception* to the Port of the Streight, seven leagues from the Sea. It hath one Monastery of *Dominicke*, another of *Franciscan*, with another of Nunnas, in a cold Countrey, scarce of victuals, but of much gold, and in her bounds two hundred thousand *Indians* of repartition. The Cite of *Castro*, which was inhabited by the Licentiate *Lopo Garcia de Castro*, being *Go* Governour of the Kingdoms of *Pera*, the which is called in the *Indian* tongue *Chilne*, which is the last of the inhabited in *Chile*, in an Island of those that are in the Lake of *Atacama*, or *Chilne*, and the *Archbishop* stands in three and fourte degrees of altitude, one and fourte leagues to the South of *Oforno*, with a Monastery of *Franciscan*, with twelve thousand *Indians* of repartition in her bounds, for it is an Island of fixe leagues in length, and from two vintill nine in breadth, which the Sea made with other great ones, tearing the Land unto the *Rew* of the *Andes*. It is a mountaynous Countrey, and close, plentifull of Wheat, and of Millet, and Myrras of flying Gold, on the Strand a few fewe times, or lesse. Or *Indians* dome feene.

The Gouverneur *Valdivia* tooke away the name of the Cite which was *Capeite*, that *Don Garcia de Mendoza* inhabited, and commanded to call it *Tucapel*, and afterward dislocated it, and there is in this Government which beginneth in two and twentie degrees, the Port and River of *Copaca*, and to the South of it, the Port of *Guafo*, and another River, and the River of *Copaca* in two and thirte degrees, and past this the Port of the *Cigua* in the River, and the Port of *Quintero* at the mouth of the River of *Copaca*, before the Port of *Saint James*, or *Valparaiso*, and the Port of *Topocalme* in the River of *Mopca*; and past the River of *Mopca* the Port of the *Herradura*, at the mouth of the River *Isita*, before the Port of the *Conception* 50 in the great River of *Bisbio* to the North, the Island of *Saint Maria* right against the State of *Arucas*, and the Port of *Capeite*, and the Island of *Atacama* more to the South, and the Port of *Casen*, which is that of the *Imperiall*, and to the South the landing place and the River of *Tal* before the Port of *Valdivia*, and past this the Point of the Galley, and more to the South the great Bay or Port of *Oforno* in the River of *la Canosa*, and to the South of it about thirte leagues to the Lake of *los Coronados* the broadest River of this Realme, and at the end of this Realme the Lake of *Ancud*.

MEn doe call the Streight of *Magellans*, that which is past the River of *Plata* by the South Sea; from the last of *Chile*, unto the Streight two hundred leagues before it, from two and fourte or three or fourte degrees of altitude, two and two and fiftie and more, for although 60 men haue layed the length of the Sea diuers times, and fene people in them unto the Streight, it is felle, it hath not bene pacified, nor made inhabiting, but that which the *Reere* that *Diego Flores de Valdes* carried to the Streight left in the mouth of the Streight on the North file, in the yeere 1582. which was called the Cite of *Saint Philip*, which for being in so much altitude could

Chap. 22.
Of the Frontiers
of the
Streight.

The Assump-
tion.

Note.

Circled real.

Fallor Cata-
racts very ter-
rible.

Or God gye

Ports and
Peims of this
Coast.Hills, Port, or
cavato, Rio
Baba, and

River of Plate.

The chance of
the Captain
Salazar with
a Tigre.Tigre killd
and is killed.

bodies, and well conditioned. And the Townes are the Citie of our *Lady of the Assumption*, the first inhabiting, and the head of this Province, it stands in 25. degrees and a halfe of altitude; the Capraine *Isidor Salazar* built; the order of the Gouverneur *Don Peter Mendez*; the territory thereof was first called *Guaymabere*; it hath *Brasill* at the right hand two hundred and eighty leagues, and in this compass it hath the Citie *Royall* at eighty leagues, which the *Indians* call *Guayra*. And on the side of *Puru*, which is East and West, it hath at four hundred and eighty leagues, the Citie of *la Plata*, and at two hundred and eighty, the Citie of *Santa Cruz de la Sierra* or of the *Hill*, which *Nusco* of *Chamé* built. To the South side which is toward the Strait of *Magellan*, it hath very great and rich Countries, and this Citie stands three hundred leagues from the mouth of the River of *Plate*, built neere to the River *Paraguay*, on the East side, with four hundred *Spanish* Houholds, and more then three thousand children of those that were borne to them in the Countrey (which they call *Mestizos*) in it are resident the Gouverneur, and Officers Royall, and the Cathedral which is called the *Bishopricke of the Plate*, subject to the Archbishopricke of the *Kings*, and in her jurisdiction more then 400000. *Indians*, which doe increase daily.

Citie Royall was called by another name *Ontiveros*, built by *Rodrigus de Melgar*; it stands eighty leagues from the *Assumption* North-east, toward the Land of *Brasill*, neere to the River *Parana*; it stands in a good soyle of Vissuals, and Vines, and much good Coppert and great number of *Indians*, which also doe much increase. In this River *Parana*, neere the Citie Royall, there is a great fall, that no man dare come neere it by Land within two hundred paces, for the great noyle, and mist of the water, and by the River no Canoe, nor Boate dare come neere by a league; for the furie of the water doth carry it to the fall, which is about two hundred fathomes off a steep Rock, and is so narrow, and the water goeth so close, that it seems ye may throw one in with a dart.

Santa Cruz is a Towne which in old time was inhabited neere the place where now it is built againe, in the Province of the *Maracones*, in the borders of the River of *Plate*, in a plentiful soyle, where all things of *Castile* doe grow very well; the Gouverneur *Don Peter de Mendez* built it 1535, which caused all that which *Gaboto* forsooke to be discovered. All this Countrey is commonly plaine: for except the *Cordilleras* or *Roves* (which are on the Sea coast, and may be twenty leagues toward *Brasill* afterwards compassing all the Countrey toward the River *Marymagu* and the *Roves* of the Kingdomes of *Puru*, all is plaine, except some small hills.

There are knowne in the Coast of these Provinces from the Land of *Brasill*, unto the River of *Plate* five or six reasonable Ports; the Port of *Saint Vincent*, in 33. degrees height, right against *Buenavista*, an Island where the line of the repartition passeth; and six leagues to the South the River *Puru*, before the Port, and the land of *la Canina* in 35. degrees; and forward the River of *la Barca*, before the Port of *Baba* or River of *Saint Frontis*, and the land of *Santa Catalina* by another name the Port of *Vera*, or Port of the *Duck*; and forward the Port of *Don Rodrigo*, twenty leagues to the South from *Santa Catalina*, an Island 30. degrees, and more to the South, five leagues, *Cloffe Hauke*, and fiftene the *Inhabited River*, and as much the *Drege*; and the River *Tuqueri*, in 2. degrees and a halfe, before the Cape of *Saint Marie*, which is in 35. 40. degrees at the entrie of the River of *Plate*.

This River is called in the *Indian* language *Paranaguana*, and commonly *Parana*, hath his entrie and mouth in the South Sea, from thirte five unto thirte six degrees of altitude, between the Capes of *Saint Marie*, and Cape *Blanco*, which is from the one to the other about thirte leagues of mouth, and from thence inward other tenne leagues in breadth, with many Islands in the middle, and many very great maine Rivers, which enter into it by the East and West side, unto the Port of the *Kings*, which is a great Lake called of the *Xarages*, little lesse then three hundred leagues from the River of *Plate*, where enter many Rivers that come from the skirts of the *Andes* and they may be of those Rivers that proceede in the Provinces of the *Chiriqui* and *Casco*, which runne toward the North, whereby entrench another maine arme into the said Lake, which hath given occasion to thinke that this River doth communicate with the River of *Saint Iohn* of the *Amazon*; others say that it commeth from the Lake of the *Dorado*, which is fiftene iourneys from the Lake of the *Xarages*, though there be opinions that there is no *Dorado*.

The Captaine *Salazar* governing in these Provinces by the death of *Don Peter Mendez* in the year 1545, a *Spaniard* being in his bed and his wife by him on the out side, in the night there came a Tigre and gave the man a blow that he killed him, and carried him away, and between certain Cates he did denounce him: in the morning the Captaine *Salazar* went forth with fiftie Souldiours to seek the Tigre, and going through a wood, he went alone by a path, and as soone as hee discovered the Tigre, hee being dead, hee upon him, and at the same time hee lifted up the pawe for to strike him, the Captaine hee did the Shift out of his Cudlowe, and thrust him to the heart, and it fell downe dead: an exploit of great courage, heede and dexteritee.

The

The Provinces and Countrey of *Brasill* in the Coast of the North Sea, and *Terra firme*, is called all that which falleth to the East from the line of the repartition; from twenty nine degrees of longitude from the Meridian of *Toledo*, unto thirte nine, which are two hundred leagues from East to West, and four hundred and fiftie North and South, with two degrees of Southerne altitude, by the Cape of *Huano* or of *Smaques*, unto five and twenty, by the land of *Buenavista* or *Good-harbour*. And from the first inhabiting, unto the last of *Brasill*, there are three hundred and fiftie leagues. *Vicent Tanet Pimco* discovered first this Countrey by commandement of the Kings Catholique, and presently after him *James de Lepe*, in the year 1500, and six months after *Porlamar* Cabral, going with a *Portugall* armie to *India*, which to avoid the Coast of *Guinea* did put so much to the Sea that hee found this Countrey, and called it *Santa Cruz*, because on that day hee discovered it. All of it is very hot in Winter and Summer, and very humid, and compassed with Woods and Hills, vnhalchill, and full of venomous Wormes, plentifull in Pastures for Cattle, and not for Wheate, nor Millet; there are in it great thowes of Siluer and Gold, but as the *Portugalls* have no stocke to make any profit of the Mines, they leave them as they are.

The principall foode of this Countrey is the *Casabi* which they make of the *Tuca*, and the greatest traffike is Sugar, and Cotten Bumba, and Brasill Wood, which was it that gave it the name. There are in all the Province nine Gouvernements, which are called *Captainships*, and in them fiftene *Portugall* Townes: in it may be about three and thirte hundred houholds, and great multitude of warlike *Indians*, which have not suffered the *Portugalls* to build but on the Coast, in which are many Rivers, Landings, and many Ports, and very late, where any Ships may come in, they neuer loe bigger.

The Coluace of the first Captainship, and the most ancient is *Tamara*, the second *Pernambuco*, five leagues from *Tamara* to the South, in eight degrees of altitude, and there is a house of the Fathers of the Companie of *Iesu*; the other is, that of all *Saints*, one hundred leagues from *Pernambuco* in thirte degrees, and there the Gouverneur, the Bishop, and the Auditor general of all the Coasts are resident, and it hath a Colledge of the Companie; the fourth Captainship of the Islands is thirte leagues from the Bay of *All Saints* in fourteen degrees and two third parts, it hath a House of the Fathers of the Companie. In this Captainship is found a Tree where out they take a precious Balne. The Captainship of the *Sura-huana* is thirte leagues from the Islands in sixteene degrees and a halfe; it hath three Inhabiting, and a House of the Fathers of the Companie. The Captainship of the *Haly-Gloss* is sixteene leagues from *Puerto Seguro*, in twenty degrees, where they gather much *Brasill*, and there is one house of the Companie. The Captainship of the River of *Genere* is sixteene leagues from the *Haly-Gloss*, in twenty three degrees and one third part, with a house of the Fathers of the Companie, and they live in their jurisdiction much *Brasill* Wood; the River is very faire, with fine and profitable borders. The last Captainship is *Saint Vincent*, sixteene leagues from the River of *Genere*, in four and twente degrees; it hath a fortress in an Island for a defence against the *Indians*, in Pirates, and a house of the said Fathers, and many persons have enriched themselves with it. Their Summer is from September to February, and the Winter from March unto August; the dayes are almost as long as the nights, they increase and diminish only an houre, in the winter the winter is always at South and South-east, in Summer North-east and East North-east.

There are in this Coast eight or tenne Ports more principall then the rest, which are the River of *Saint Dominique* and *de la Urrutia* to the North-east of *Pernambuco*, and *Tamara*, which is an Island, and as it is said, the first Plantation, and before the Cape of *Saint Antio*, which stands in nine degrees, the River of *Saint Francis* in ten degrees and a halfe, which is great and mightie; the Bay of *All Saints* three leagues broad, and thirte into the Land unto *Saint Simon*, the River and Port *Trinidad*, where the Ships doe roach that goe this Voyage, and the River of *Canaum* in thirte degrees and a halfe, the River of the *Andes* or of *Saint Antio* is fourteen degrees and a halfe; and the River of the *Virginie* in sixteene. *Porto Rico* in fiftene degrees; the River of *Parana* in twente degrees, neere to *Santa Ippur*; the River of *Genere* neere to *Saint Sebastian*, and *Santa Cruz* in three and twente degrees beyond *Saint Vincent*.

The River of the West, at all the Islands and firme Land comprehended within the markes of the Groove of *Castile* and of *Lyon*, at the Occidental end of the said bounds; whiclie line as is said passeth on the other side the world, through the Citie of *Madagascar* from whence toward the East, and *New Spaine*, is a great Gulfe of infinite Islands great and small, and many pieces of Coasts, and firme Land, which are divided into the Islands of the *Spicerie*, or of the *Maldives*, *Indies Philipinas*, the Coast of *China*, Islands of the *Leguins* and *Lepidus*, Coast of the new *Guinea*, Islands

Chap. 25.
Of the Provinces
and Countrey
of Brasill.Vicent Tanet
Pimco borne
in the Village
of Paulo de
Caceres de
Brasill, and then
Discovered
de Lepe.Inhabiting of
the Coast of
Brasill.Many Iesuits
Colledges.

Porto Seguro.

Ambas.

The principall
Ports of this
Coast.

Caba Fria.

Chap. 26.
Of the Countrey
called the
Indies, which
are the Islands
Philippines, co-
lledges of the
Corte, and the
Leguins.

toward new Spain, the *Shelmas*, look how thou goest, Take away sleep, or See thou sleep not; & retire to them: the *Iland of Martine*, and *Saint Paul*, another small Iland with theles, and the *Indians* the most Eulward toward new Spain, *Alonso de Saavedra* was also in the Iland of the *Thames*, in the year 1537, returning from the Iland of *Spicerie* to new Spain.

Chap. 28.
Of the upper
Council of the
Indies, and of
the spiritual
government,
and Ecclesiasti-
cal Royall Pa-
tronage.
Council of
the Indies.

The Catholic King of *Castile*, and of *Lyon* continuing in their ancient, and Christian pietie, presently after these new Countries were discovered, and joynted with this faire Monarchie, procured to plant, and settle the Catholic Religion in them, and temporall policie, with to much care and aduice of the wisest men of these Kingdomes. For as the discoverers did increase the buisness, they formed a particular Council with President and Councillors, that by their counselles in no other thing, with more diligence they might referre to that which is much pertained to the service of our Lord God, and government of that Orbe. And because hereafter mention shall be made of the persons which from the beginning have laboured, and laboure in the supreme Council of the *Indies*, which hath carried to great a weight vnto this present buisness, that the order of that Monarchie may be vnderstood, and the rest worth the knowledges.

The first thing that these goodly Kings did charge and command the first Discoverer, and from man to man commanded the other Discoverers and Governours of that new World with very straight orders, was, that they should procure that the people which they carried, with the Christian life, and with their good customes, should give such example to the *Indians*, that they might be beglad to imitate them, and should binde them vnto it, entering first according to the Evangelicall Law, the religious men preaching it, that so rather with the sweetnesse of it, then with the force and noyle of Armes it should be admitted, and that iustice should be administered with such wnt augmening in such manner, that with the zeale of the service of God, and good of the men, hath come to such a point, that at this day there are found built and established in all that Orbe two famous *Vniuersities*, where with great learning and doctrine all the Sciences are read, more than three hundred *Manasteries* of religious *Dominicks*, *Franeyssians*, *Augustines*, *Mercenariies*, and the *Canons*, innumerable store of beneficed *Cures*, which are called *Parishes*, for to teach those new Conuerter, and *Heremites*, and *Chappels* in the high-way erected on pillars, bearing *Crosses* in them, with our Lord Iesus, all the which was begun at the charge of the Crowne, and at this day it goeth forward where there is no maintenance for it. In effect, this Catholic pietie by the cleme-ty of God goeth from good to better, augmenting with to much reuerence and honour of God, that in no place of Christendome it is done with more order or care, by the care of the supreme Council of the *Indies*. Of the which is inferred, that the *Council* of the Apostolike *Roman See* was a very great reuerence, in which our Lord God (as Hee which only is Hee that seeth, and experience that if this had beene gouerned otherwise, it had beene impracticable to have proceeded with the harmonie, and euen concert as it hath, of Religion, Iustice, and Gouernment, with so much obedience and quietnesse.

How the Ec-
clesiasticall
Patronage is
gouerned.

The Ecclesiasticall Patronage is gouerned in the same manner that in the Kingdomes of *Granada*, the Kings Cath. like presenting to the chiefe Bishop onely the Archbishops, and Bishops, that from his holy hand they may receive these Prelacies, and may dispatch their Bulls, procuring licences are procured by the King, and consultation of the supreme Council of the *Indies*, and they go not to *Rome* for Bulls: and their rents consist in tithes and first fruits which arise of the *Spanish* inhabitants. For in the most places of these *Indies* the Countrey men paie not, and where the tithes are wanting, it is supplied out of the goods royall: and touching the tithes and first fruits that are the men of each Colony, it is left it should follow her customes. And though the Kings of *Castile*, and of *Lyon* are Lords of the tithes by Apostolike concession, & might take them to himselfe, displaying where it wanteth with that which in other places doth exceede, he leaues them to the Prelates & Churches, providing of his own good Royall with the liberality of his Catholic Priuileges, to all the necessities of the poore Churches, giuing to euery one that is built anew the greatest part of that which is spent in the building, with a Chalice, Bell, and a painted Table.

* Of Images
or Pictures.

That the distribution of that which proceedeth of the tithes, and of that which is bestowed out of the goods Royall in maintenance of the Prelates, Dignities, and Canons of the Cathedral Churches, and Benefices, Cures, and persons that are occupied in the diuine Service, and instructing of the *Indians*, may be faithfully impleaded according to the holy intention of the Kings, the supreme Council hath made good ordinances. First, that all the said persons be of an approved life and customes, & especially those that doe meddle in the *Diocessary* being first examined touching learning.

See Chap.

learning, and after in the language of the *Indians*, for it would little auile, that the Duxeples should not vnderstand the Maister: and that these do continually reade: and that no Curate, or Teacher may haue two Benefices: and that those which shall from their parts passe to the *Indies* be more approved, it is commanded that no Priest doe passe without licence of his Prelate and of the King, and that if any be there found without it, presently they should send him to *Spain*.

And that the manner how the Royall Patronage is gouerned may better be vnderstood, seeing it appertaineth to this Crowne, because that it hath discovered and acquired that *New World*, and hath also built and endowed out of the goods Royall, so many Churches, & Monasteries, as by the Apostolike concession, that for no cause the said patronage nor any part of it, either by custome, or prescription, or other title may be separated from him: is ordained what care the Vice-royes, Countes, Governors, & Rulers, are to haue in it, and what penalties the transgressors should incur. First, that no Cathedral or Parish Church, Monasterie, Hospital, or vniuersitie Church, should be founded without content of the King. That when in the Cathedral Churches there are not foure Beneficed men, resident, provided by Royall presentation, & Canoniall provision of the Prelate, because the other Prebends be void, or absent for more then eight monthes (though for a lawfull cause.) The said Prelate, till such time as the King doth present, may chuse to the accomplishing of the foure Clerks (besides those that are prouided and resident) of the most sufficient of those that shall offer themselves, without that the said provision be in *Trent* (to be removablee at pleasure) & that they haue no lease in the Quire, nor voice in Council. That no Prelate may make Canoniall in-stitution, nor giue possession of any Prebend, or Benefice, without presentation Royall, & in such a case that without delay they make the prouision and command to relect with the fruits. That in all the dignities, & Prebends, the learned be preferred before the vnlearned, and those which haue serued in the Cathedral Churches of *Castile*, and haue more exercise of the seruice of the Quire, before them that haue not serued in them. That at the least there be preferred for euery Cathedral Church a graduate Lawyer, & a Diuine for the Pulpit, with the obligation that in these Kingdomes the doctore Canons, & Magistrates haue, & another learned Diuine to read the sacred Scripture and another Lawyer or Diuine for the Canonship of Penance, according to the sacred Council of *Trent*. That all the theother Benefices, Cures, and temples, secular and regular, and the Ecclesiasticall Offices this shall be void, or prouided anew. That they may be made with less delay, and the Royall patronage may be preferred, it is commanded that they be made in the forme following.

That any of the aboue said Benefices, or Offices being void, the Prelate shall command to make edicts with a competent terme, and of those that shall offer themselves haueing examined them, and being informed of their behavior, shall name of the best and the Vice-roy or Gouernor of the Province, shall chuse one and remit the election to the Prelate, that he make the prouision, Collation, and Canoniall institution by way of recommendation, and not in a perpetuall title, so that when the King doth make the presentation, and in it be expressed that the collation be made in a perpetuall title, the Canoniall institution shall be in title, and not in recommendation: and the presented by the King, & by the Vice-royes preferred before the presented by his Ministers.

That in the exarations and Townes of the *Indians*, and other places where they haue no Benefice of the time; that for the sake of the *Indians*, the Prelates shall procure there be one to teach the Doctrine, making an edict, and haueing informed himselfe of his sufficiency and goodness, he shall send the nomination to the Ministers Royall, that they do present him one of the two nominated, and if there be but one, that, and in the vertue of such a presentation the Prelate shall make the prouision, giuing him the instruction how he is to teach, and commanding him to giue notice of the fruits. That in the presentations of all the dignities, offices, and benefices, the best deserving, and that most exercised in the conseruation of the *Indians*, and the administration of the Sacraments shall be preferred, which, & those that best speak the language of the *Indians*, shall be preferred before the other. That he which shall come or send to requit his Maistie to present him to some dignity, office, or benefice, shall appear before the Ministers of the Province, and declaring his petition, he shall giue information of his kindred, learning, customes & sufficiency, and the Minister shall make another of his office, and with his opinion to send it, and that the presentant do bring also an approbation from his Prelate; for without these diligences those that come shall not be admitted. That none may obtaine two Benefices, or dignities in one, or in kindry Churches. That the preferred not appearing before the time contained in the presentation before the Prelate, it shall be void, and they may not make him a Canoniall institution.

Sec. 4. Sec. 5. Sec. 6. Sec. 7. Sec. 8. Sec. 9. Sec. 10. Sec. 11. Sec. 12. Sec. 13. Sec. 14. Sec. 15. Sec. 16. Sec. 17. Sec. 18. Sec. 19. Sec. 20. Sec. 21. Sec. 22. Sec. 23. Sec. 24. Sec. 25. Sec. 26. Sec. 27. Sec. 28. Sec. 29. Sec. 30. Sec. 31. Sec. 32. Sec. 33. Sec. 34. Sec. 35. Sec. 36. Sec. 37. Sec. 38. Sec. 39. Sec. 40. Sec. 41. Sec. 42. Sec. 43. Sec. 44. Sec. 45. Sec. 46. Sec. 47. Sec. 48. Sec. 49. Sec. 50. Sec. 51. Sec. 52. Sec. 53. Sec. 54. Sec. 55. Sec. 56. Sec. 57. Sec. 58. Sec. 59. Sec. 60. Sec. 61. Sec. 62. Sec. 63. Sec. 64. Sec. 65. Sec. 66. Sec. 67. Sec. 68. Sec. 69. Sec. 70. Sec. 71. Sec. 72. Sec. 73. Sec. 74. Sec. 75. Sec. 76. Sec. 77. Sec. 78. Sec. 79. Sec. 80. Sec. 81. Sec. 82. Sec. 83. Sec. 84. Sec. 85. Sec. 86. Sec. 87. Sec. 88. Sec. 89. Sec. 90. Sec. 91. Sec. 92. Sec. 93. Sec. 94. Sec. 95. Sec. 96. Sec. 97. Sec. 98. Sec. 99. Sec. 100.

Sec. 4. Sec. 5. Sec. 6. Sec. 7. Sec. 8. Sec. 9. Sec. 10. Sec. 11. Sec. 12. Sec. 13. Sec. 14. Sec. 15. Sec. 16. Sec. 17. Sec. 18. Sec. 19. Sec. 20. Sec. 21. Sec. 22. Sec. 23. Sec. 24. Sec. 25. Sec. 26. Sec. 27. Sec. 28. Sec. 29. Sec. 30. Sec. 31. Sec. 32. Sec. 33. Sec. 34. Sec. 35. Sec. 36. Sec. 37. Sec. 38. Sec. 39. Sec. 40. Sec. 41. Sec. 42. Sec. 43. Sec. 44. Sec. 45. Sec. 46. Sec. 47. Sec. 48. Sec. 49. Sec. 50. Sec. 51. Sec. 52. Sec. 53. Sec. 54. Sec. 55. Sec. 56. Sec. 57. Sec. 58. Sec. 59. Sec. 60. Sec. 61. Sec. 62. Sec. 63. Sec. 64. Sec. 65. Sec. 66. Sec. 67. Sec. 68. Sec. 69. Sec. 70. Sec. 71. Sec. 72. Sec. 73. Sec. 74. Sec. 75. Sec. 76. Sec. 77. Sec. 78. Sec. 79. Sec. 80. Sec. 81. Sec. 82. Sec. 83. Sec. 84. Sec. 85. Sec. 86. Sec. 87. Sec. 88. Sec. 89. Sec. 90. Sec. 91. Sec. 92. Sec. 93. Sec. 94. Sec. 95. Sec. 96. Sec. 97. Sec. 98. Sec. 99. Sec. 100.

Besides that which is rehearsed, it is prouided that they do not permit any Prebendary in the Cathedral Churches, to enioy the rents of it, except it be for seruing & being resident; and that the Benefices of the *Indians* be Cures, and not temples; and that in the new discoveries, and plantations that shall be made, there be presently an Hospital built for the poore, and sicke persons, of sicknesses that are not contagious, which shall be placed neere the Temple, and for a Cloyster of the time; that for the sicke of contagious diseases, the Hospital shall be set that no hurtfull wind passing by it doe strike in the other inhabiting, and if it be built on a high place it will be better. And because the King being informed that goods of the deceased in those parts doe not

He con-
tinue
the
govern-
ment
of the
Ecclesiasti-
cal
Patronage.

* Of Penitence

Benefice
of the
Prebends,
and Benefices

Chap. 29.
Of the
Spiritu-
all Govern-
ment,
Goods
of Mendica-
ries, & of
the
Marriage
& of the
body of
the holy
and gene-
rall
quintion.
Building of
Hospitals

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

Orders for the goods or he deceased.

come to wholly as they might, nor to come to the hands of the heires, by will of the said deceased, for many causes, whereby the heires received great damage, and the testaments were not performed: for a remedy, it was provided, that whatsoever *Spaniard* shall come to any Village, or Towne of these parts, he shall present himselfe before the Clarke of the Countie, where he shall Register the name, and surname of such a one, with the place of his abode or birth; that his death happening, it may be knowne where those that are to be his heires may be found. That the ordinary Iustice, with the most ancient Ruler, and the Clarke of the Countie shall take charge of the goods of the persons that shall dye, and shall set them in an Inventorie before a Scribe and Witnesses, and the debts that he did owe, and were owing him, and that which is in Gold & Silver, small Pearls, and other things shall be sold, and put in a Chest of three Locks, whose Keyes the three persons abovesaid shall keepe. That the goods be sold in a publicke outcry, with the Testimony of a Scribe, and that if neede be an Attorney shall be constituted. That the said Iustices do take account of all those that have charge of dead mens goods, and recover all that they are to be hidde hand without any appaell, and doe put it in the Chest of the three Keyes. That having any Will of the deceased where he dyeth, and the Heires or Executors, the Iustice shall not meddle in any thing, neither take the goods, taking only notice who be the Heires of the said deceased. That the said Iustices, Rulers, and Scribes doe send also to the *Comratation-house of Seville*, all that which they shall recover of the goods of the deceased, declaring the name, surname, and abode of every one deceased, with the Copy of the Inventory of his goods, that they may be given to his Heires, by the order that touching the same is given. That when they take account of those that have had goods of men deceased, shall be sent to the Supreme Countie of the *Indies*, with a very particular relation, and reason of all, that the Iustices doe with care enforce chemistres carefully of those, which have in possession the goods of men deceased, whether they be heretics, or any fraude, and prejudice to the goods they have had in possession, & send to the Countie some of their friends, that they may give account with payment to the Iustices abovesaid: That account be given every year, and the memoriall of the dead that have bene that yeare shall be shewed to the Governor of the Countie, & of the goods they had, that they may be sent to *Seville*, & be given to his heires, and the Testaments be fulfilled, with good account and reason that is behoofull. For in every Countie, one of the Iustices is Iudge of the goods of the deceased, the one succeeding another, from the youngest to the eldest, by their turne, which doth send his Commisaries through the bounds to take account of the holders, and there be any carelesse, the Iustices are charged therewith in the visitations which are made of them, and before when there are any Plaintiffs.

Touching married men.

Those Catholike Kings being informed that in the *Indies* were many married *Spaniards*, which had separated from their wives, of the which, besides the offence that was done to our Lord God, there followed a great inconvenience to the Plantation of those Countries, for that such not living feared in them, were not continued, neither did they attend to build, plant, breed, nor sow, nor doing other things, which the good inhabitants are wont to do, whereby the Townes do not increase, as is behoofull, and as they would do if there came inhabitants with their wives & children, as true Townsmen: being willing to remedy the abovesaid, commanded that all and every person or persons that should be found to be married, or betrothed in these Kingdomes, should come unto them for their wives, and not returne to the *Indies* without them, or with sufficient proof that they are dead. And the same order was given for all the Kingdomes of that new world, and sundry times hath bene reiterated, and commanded to be executed upon grievous penalties.

The holy Office of the Inquisition.

Proceeding from the year 1494, when the discovery of this Orbe was begun, in directing and feeling the spiritual government, as hath bene ferre, for greater perfection, and enduring of it, the Catholike King, *Don Philip* the second, called the *Prudent*, considering that among the great benefits that the *Indians* have received, their illumination to receive the Evangelicall Doctrine was the greatest, which hath extended itselfe, and considering also the singular grace which God for his mercy hath vied with them, in giving them knowledge of our holy Catholike Faith; that it was necessary to have a speciall vigilancy in the conferring of the deaconry, and reputation of the inhabitants, and *Castilians* pacifiers, which with so many labours procured the augmenting of the Religion, and exalting of the Catholike Faith (as in those parts like faithful Catholike Christians, by Catholike & Apostolike *Roman* Church, obstinate, and stubborn in their errors, and heresies, do always procure to prevent the faithful Christian, labouring to draw them to their false opinions, scattering certain damnable Books, whereof hath followed great hurt to our sacred Religion) and by using for certain experience that the best means to prevent the evils consisteth in the separating the communication of heretical persons, punishing their errors, according to the disposition of the sacred Canons & laws of these Kingdomes (which by this holy means, by the divine clemency have beene preferred from this wicked contagion, and is hoped they will be preferred hereafter) to the end that the Orbe doe not receive so much hurt, where the inhabitants of these Kingdomes have beene given to good example of Christianity, & the Country-borne have not perverted themselves with erroneous doctrines of the heretics: It seemed good to his Majesty, with the advice of the Cardinal *J.annes of Espinosa*, Bishop of *Sigüenza*, Inquisitor general in these Kingdomes, a man of great

prudence, and of many rare parts and virtues, for the which he made election of his person, to help him to beare the burden of so many Kingdomes and Lordships, and of the Countie of the holy, and general Inquisition, and of the Iupreme Countie of the *Indies* (for it belongeth to place one Countie of the holy Office in *Madrid*, for the Kingdomes of *New Spaine*, and the rest of the *Indies*, and North, and another in the Citie of the Kings, for the Kingdomes of *Firra*, and the adherents, which are called the *Indies* of the South) which the authority that the Counties of these Kingdomes have, so that as yet they should not meddle with the cases of the *Indians*, but only of the *Castilians*, & other Nations that should be found in the *Indies*, and so that the appeals should come to the Iupreme Countie that is resident in this Court, as it is done in *Spaine*, and in the accomplishing thereof, in the year 1570, the King *Don Philip* the second, called the *Prudent*, gave a general power to the Towne of *Madrid*, the 16th of August, that the Apostolike Inquisitors that should be named for the present, and for hereafter against the heretical practitioners, & Apostolice, and the Officers and Ministers necessary for this holy Office, which was commanded to be seated in the Citie of *Madrid*, and of the Kings, should exercise & vie their Offices, and royall warrants, that *Don Martin Enriquez*, and *Don Francisco de Toledo*, Viceroyes, and Captains general in the Kingdomes of *New Spaine*, and *Firra*, and the Counties, and Iustices, Gouvernours, and other persons should give all aide and fauour to the holy Office, and the Inquisitors, and Officers were nominated; as in their owne place shall be spoken more at large.

Those Catholike Kings, most wisely constituted the *Supreme Countie of the Indies*, that they might helpe them to beare so great a burden, as is already the government of the Orbe, and of the Countie consisteth in one *Prothonotary*, or more *Comptrollers*, as necessarie require, with one *Attorney*, *Secretaries*, *Clarks* of the *Chancery*, *Relators*, and other Officers, and an Office of *Accounts*, where a note is had of all the goods Royall of those parts. And that proceeding might be according to rule and order, they dedicated first that the Countie should meet three houres every day in the morning, and two in the afternoons, three dayes in the weeke that be no holy dayes, and that they should firme the Warrants that should be delivered for these Kingdomes; but that those that were for the *Indies*, should have the seale Royall: and that in those parts it should have supreme iurisdiction, and might make Lawes, and Decrees, to seend examine whatsoever Statutes, Constitutions of Prelates, Senates, Chapters, and Consuetudes of the Religious, and of the *Vice-royes*, Courts, and Counties; and that in the *Indies*, and in these Kingdomes, in matter dependant of them it should be obeyed: that the government of the *Indies* should be like this of these Kingdomes, and that more in particular the Countie Royall should occupie it selfe in the matters of these Kingdomes, and that two voyces should make a Sentence in suites of 500. *Pesos*, or vnder. That there be a Second Supplication in a scale of 1000. *Pesos*; that they deale not in the repartitions of the *Indians* in those parts, but the *Procees* well perused in the Courts according to Law, called of *Malinas* (for there it was made) they shall come to the *Supreme Countie*: touching order to be held in matters of services, that the Countie doe see them all; and in matters of rewards, that the greatest part doth determine, shall be done, and that in these there be a Supplication, and that no expedient suite be forme the third time; and that in the matters they resolve with breuitie, that the charges be given to the best deserving, and that they be not given to the eldest and kindest of them of the Countie; neither may such be Solicitors, nor Attorneys; in the proceedings of the Offices no price shall be admitted: nor that they of the Countie have any *Indians* of repartition, and they shall assist in their houses, that the Suites may find them there, when they goe not to Countie: and that due secrecy be kept in all things, and above all that the Countie have a particular care of the Conversion and good Instruction of the *Indians*, and of the spiritual government; and that of 600000. *Marmez* it paye the appoyntment of the Countie: that they may appeale from the Sentences in the due Cases of natural death, or of the Countie: that they may appeale from the Sentences, publicke house, or racking, and the appeals mayning of a member, or other bodily punishment, which are omitted for breuitie sake.

That the President being a learned man, shall have a voice in matters of Government, statutes, and fauour, visitations, and accounts, and not in suits, because he may be the more free for the government of the Countie; and being vnlearned he shall have no voice, but in matters of grace, government, and fauour, and that he may affable the Countie in his owne house, and have a noate of the businesse, and that the Countie should doe not accompany with the Sutors. And because it seemed a necessary thing that one *Fiscall* or Attorney should assist in Countie, it was commanded he should have the same sippet that the Countie should, and that they deliver him the dispatches of the Office, that he may have a care to know how that is accomplished which is provided for the *Indies*: that necessary Papers be given him for his Office, that he doe see the visitations before Countie: that he have a care to register all the capitulations that are taken with the King, and where he may set down the Attorneys Pleas: that he delay not the suites that his dismands, or those that are against him be admitted, if the Countie think it good: that he keep a booke of that which is concluded for the cases; that he have a care to know the Officers that doe come to send a relation every yeare to the Countie.

Chap. 30.

Of the forme of the government of the Iupreme Countie of the Indies, and of the Institution of the Countie, and Chancery royall of these parts.

Appeales.

Which is 1000. pound English, taking two by, as for out shilling.

Which as we account 4412. pounds 5 shilling and one; that part of a penic.

He continueth the order of the Iupreme Countie.

Institution of
 the Courts
 royall of the
Indies.

The Court of
the *Hispano's*.
* Or Ordinary
Justice, &c.

The Court of
Mexico.

The Court of
Pamona.

Wherefore it
was called *Terra
firma*.

**Court of the
Cire of the**

The Court of Guatemala

The Court of the new King

The Court of the new King.

The Court of Quilo.

The Court of the Charcoal.

**Counsell of
Parish.**

*Sc. a Soldiour.
The Count of

the Philippines.

HERN. obtained all that which appertaineth to the Counsell, which is the head of this Govern-
 ment, with many other orders which are not rehearsed for brevitie; they proceeded in order
 sending all the Prouinces of the *Indies*, in the matters of iustice, as needs required, to the Catholick
 Kings declaring the common good of that new world, that their Subjects that should possesse it,
 having a zeale to the service of our Lord God, good profit, & ease of the said Subjects, & to the peace
 & quiett of the Townes, as the King is bound unto them, and to them for to accomplish what
 the Office that he hath in earth, he thought good to command to place the Courts and Royall
 Chanceries, that (as hath bene said) are in the *Indies*, with the Statutes, and orders that hath
 bene given them, that the Ministers may doe their office, and iustice be well administered, and
 the Townes obtained the benefit pretended.

The first Court that was established, was in the Citeer of Saint *Dominique* in the Island *Hispayola*, with one Prefect: a learned man, though now because of the warre he is a Souldier, *Wylliam* Title of Captain General, and four foulties that beare rods, like an *Aleide*, and deale in crimes and criminal matters, in a degree of appeal, and in the infancie in matters of Coiry, and the Citeer of *Sancti Spiritus*, where the Court was first set up, as in *Don Antonio* *Alfaro* and the limits thereof. The second Court was established in the Citeer of *New Spain*: the first President which was *Nunyo* of *Guzman*, had no authority, for he was placed in the Court by the second Court, the Bishop *D. Sebastian Ramirez* for he was to be the Countrey *Alfaro* he had the Government of the Kingdomes, and the supreme authoritie, and kept the Court established that which belonged vnto it, and vnto iustice, as a chief president it is. The President of the Court is the Vice-roy (which now is the Earle of *Albuquerque*) there are eight judges, and one Attorney, who hath authority to see the execution of the lawes of government which the Vice-roy establisheth. There are three Iudges of criminal causes, and three Iudges of the civil causes, and two Attornies, one of criminal, another of criminal causes, and the other of civil causes: they are not referred to the King, and the other Officers which helpe of coit in relation to the actions in the limits of this Court of *Mexico*, and in that Countie of new *Galicia*.

[illegible]

The Fourth Court was established in the Province of the *Confines*, and forming its wardenly life was difficult, and the years 1790, it was established again in the City of *San James*, of the Province of *Guatemala*: in its own Province, the *Doctors of the Confine*: four Justices with two Registrars, one for civil and criminal causes, in appeals, and the first instance: in matters of Court the President, the Registrars, and the Justices of the *Indians*, promulgate the Ruler'ship, and other Offices temporal. The Fifth Court was established in the City of *Sancti Petri*, in the new *Kingdom of Granada*, with one President, which *Provincia de Sancti Petri* four Justices with rods, and one Attorney, with the same authority that the former had, and the same Registrars, and the Justices of the Province of *Galicia*, with one Regent, three chiefs, and one Registrar, and a President was placed, and the matters interesting, the State was given, and a Registrar, and a President was placed, which now is *Doctores Santiago de Vera*, and three Justices with rods, one Attorney, and the

of the Government, The tenth Court, was placed in the City of *Saint Francis de Quetz*, of the Province of *Peru*, where there was also a Regent, chief Justices with a Council, and afterwards the Court of *Peru*, established with a President (which now is the Licentiate *Aguiel de Suarez*) with three Justices, a Council, a Regent, a Secretary, and a Clerk, the government, & the rest remaining with the Vice-roy of *Peru* as above said. The eight Courts, as in the City of the *Plate*, in the Province of *Veraguas*, with a Regent and chief Justices with a Council, and afterwards the Court of *Veraguas*, where was placed a President, four Justices with a Council, a Regent, and a Secretary, and now is the Licentiate *Centurion Cepeda*, with reformation of the preceding Courts, and the rest to the Vice-roy of *Peru*. The ninth Court, is that which was established against the City of *Panama*, with a President of Sword and Cloak, became of the matters of war, which is now Don *Alonso Sotomayor*, with the title of Captain, General of *Terra Firma*: there are three Justices with a Council, which do decide in Appeals of civil and criminal cases, and at first instance in matters of War, and it hath only the Government. In the City of *Saint James*, of the Province of *Chiriqui*, there is a President, a Regent, a Secretary, and a Clerk, and it hath only the Government. In the City of *Saint James*, of the Province of *Chiriqui*, there is a President, a Regent, a Secretary, and a Clerk, and it hath only the Government.

pel, and a Governor is promulged, which depends on the Viceroy's *Breve*. In this City of the *Philippines*, called *Manila*, was a Court, and it was abolished, because it became needless: a few years since it was established again; I will give a Cripple General who is *Don Peter de Acosta* which is President, and four or five Judges, who are all Spaniards, and one of the Judges, who is called *Caspio*, what the adults of the Supreme Council of the *Indies*, he always preside with a free and full sounder, than which, I suppose no other can have. The Council has a great number of Officers, who are appointed for the preservation and augmenting of the spiritual and temporal riches of those parts, without any [rate of] expenses, or laborered every Court each according to the title of their Kingdoms, Secretaries, Relations, Sergeants, Porters, and the Officers which are necessary.

[illegible][illegible][illegible]

The Vice-royes commanded also, and likewise the Iudges, not to haue houses proper, nor to trafficke, nor contrade, nor to be leued of the *Indians*, neither haue any "Grangeries, nor to be in Armies, nor Discomfited; that they receiue no more than their due recompence abittments. That no Lawyer may please himselfe by his craft, rather than law, brother in law, cousin, or sonne is Iudge. That no Vice-roy President, Iustice, Iudge of the criminal Causes, Solicitor, nor their children may marry in the land.

60. That no Gouernours, Rulers, nor their Deputies, may buy Lands, nor haue any other lands, nor trafficke in their iurisdiction. That they may not haue any other offices, nor take any thing for waylorships, nor other offices. That they may not be chief Bayliffe, during the time of his office, nor have any other kindes of iurisdiction. That no Iudge be provided for a Ruler, neither shall he be

Chap. 31.
Of the things

The Govern-
ments which
the King pro-
vide in the
Indies.

The Ruler sheweth
that his Majesty
doth provide
the

^b Or the name
of God.

That which
forbidden th
Vice-royes,
and Iudges.
Where he
of Cattell
brede.

The Presidents, Counsellors, Secretaries, and Attorneys, which unto this present day have served, and doe serve in the Supreme Council of the Indies, from their first Discoveries.

PRESIDENTS.

Tobias Rodriguez de Esquivel, brother to the Lord of Vega and Alarjos, Archbishop of Seville, and Bishop of Burgos, being Deane of Siml, governed that which appertained to the dispatching of the Fleets and Armies of the Indies, till the Catholike King Don Fernando V. called him, to the end that in his Court he might take charge of the Indian affairs, and he did it till the Emperor came to reign, which commanded that the Doctor *Mercutio Gattinara* his great Chancellor, should be Superintendent of all the Councils, and all the dispatches passed through his hands, and intermeddled in all the Assemblies that were made.

Friar Garcia de Loaysa General of the Order of Saint Dominick, the Emperours Counsellor, Bishop of Osma, which was Archbishop of Siml and Cardinal.

Don Garcia Manrique, Earle of Osorno, which being Assessor of Siml, did gouerne till the Cardinal came from Rome.

Don Lewis Hurtado de Mendoza, Marques of Mondejar, which after was President of the Royall and supreme Council of Castile.

The Licenciado Don Francisco Tello de Sandoval, which having bene of the Council of the Indies, went for President of the Royall Chancery of Granada, and from thence came to gouerne in the Council of Indies.

The Licenciado Don Iohn Sarmiento was also of the Council of the Indies, and after went to gouerne in the Royall Chancery of Granada from whence he returned to be President of the Royall and supreme Council of the Indies.

Lewis Quiñada, Lord of Villegas, and of the Council of Warre.

The Licenciado Iohn de Obando, of the supreme Council of the holy Inquisition, did preside in the Council of the Indies, and of the goods Royall.

The Licenciado Don Antonio de Padilla, of the Royall and supreme Council of Castile, passed to be President of the Council of the Order, and after to the supreme Council of the Indies.

The Licenciado Hernando de Vega and Fonseca, of the supreme Council of the holy and general Inquisition, passed to the Council of the goods Royall, and from it to the Royall and supreme Council of the Indies.

The Licenciado Don Pedro de Mejia de Contreras, the first Inquisitor that went to Mexico for to take the holy Office in that Citie. Here was Archbishop of that Citie, and President of the supreme Council of the Indies.

The Licenciado Paul de Laguna, of the Royall and supreme Council of Castile, and of the holy and general Inquisition, passed to gouerne

in the Council of the goods Royall and Tribunals of it, and was after President of the supreme Council of the Indies: and in his time began the Royall Council of the House-hold.

COUNSELLORS.

Hernando de Vega, Lord of Grajal, which was chiefe Knight of Leon, and President of the Council of Orders. Licenciado Lewis Zapata. Licenciado Mexica. Doctor S. I. Luna. Doctor Padua Pothus. Doctor Gonsalvo Alameda which was Bishop of Coanza. Doctor Aguirre. Doctor Mora, Bishop of Badajoz. Doctor Saja. Doctor Peter Martyr of Anghia, Abbot of Iamaya. Master of Lega, of the Emperours Chamber, and of the Council of Estate. Licenciado Garcia de Padilla, of the habit of Calatrava. Doctor Beltran. Doctor Galindez de Cernajuel. Doctor Bernal. Licenciado Peter Manuel. Licenciado Redrick of the Order. Licenciado Montoya. Licenciado Merced. Licenciado Antonio de Aguilera. Licenciado Don Hernando de Salas. Licenciado Iohn Thomas. Doctor Villafraja. Licenciado Bonifacio Maldonado. Licenciado Ouelas. Licenciado Iames Gafia of Salazar. Licenciado Gamba. Doctor Gomez de Samilana. Licenciado Eshaderra. Licenciado Don Iames de Zuniga. Licenciado Lopez de Serria. Licenciado Eneas. Doctor Lopez de Bayla. Licenciado Gedeon de Tuzuela, of the habit of Saint Iames. Licenciado Villafraja. Doctor Antonio Gonsalves. Licenciado Francisco Salazar. Licenciado Medina de Sotomayor. Licenciado Don Iohn de Merced. Doctor Peter Gutierrez Flores. Licenciado Peter Dapies of Tudela. Licenciado Benito Rodriguez Valdivia. Licenciado Aspin Almorat of Toledo, and of the Chamber. Doctor Don Redrick Zapata. Licenciado Peter Bravo de Sotomayor. Licenciado Molina de Medrano of the habit of Saint Iames, & of the Chamber, Commissioner of this Historie. Licenciado Iames de Armenteros. Licenciado Alonso Perez de Salazar. Licenciado Gonsalvo de Ayape, and of the Chamber. Licenciado Don Iohn de Ove, of the habit of Calatrava. Licenciado Hernando de Saavedra. Licenciado Don Thomas Ximenes Ortiz. Licenciado Eugenio de Salazar. Licenciado Don Francisco Arias Maldonado. Licenciado Andrew of Ayala. Licenciado Benvenuto de Benavides. Licenciado Rooley of Villaguerre Chumacero.

SECRETARIES.

Otho Coloma. Michael Perez de Almaraz. Gaspar of Oriz. The Knight Lopez de Comillas. Francisco of the Cole, chiefe Commander of Leon. Iohn de Sannaco. The Commander

mander Francisco of Eraso. Antonio of Eraso. The Commander Iohn de Therra.

ATTORNEYS or SOLICITORS.

The Licenciado Francisco of Uargua. Licenciado Prado. Licenciado Martin Raygo of Agreda. Doctor Francisco Hernandez of

Licheta. Licenciado Ierome de Villa. Licenciado Gamba. Licenciado Lopez de Serrae. Licenciado Sepin Amolano. Licenciado Negrin. Doctor Valenzuela. Doctor Marcus Caro. Licenciado Benito Rodriguez of Paladano. Licenciado Alonso Pires of Salazar. Licenciado Rooley of Villaguerre Chumacero.

The Gouvernours, and Vice-royes, which have gouerned vntill this time, the Kingdomes of New Spaine, and of Peru.

In New Spaine.

Don Fernando Cortes Marques of the Valley, Gouverneur, chiefe Iustice, and Capitaine general.

The Licenciado Lewis Ponce of the House of the Duke of Aron, Iudge of the Residence with facultie to take the gouernment, and by his death the Licenciado Marcus of Aguila, natural of the Citie of Esja, was subrogated his

Deputie, and because of his death succeeded within two months; hee substituted his authorities in the Treasurer Alonso of Esfrade, borne in Citie Royall: and the death of Lewis Ponce being knowne in Castile, it was provided that Marcus of Aguila should gouerne, and in default of him, Alonso of Esfrade, till the first Court came, with order that Nunez de Guzman, Knight of Guadalupe, Gouverneur of Panceo, a President did come: and because it was convenient to take away those Iudges, others were sent in their places, and for President in the gouernment vntill fall of New Spaine, Don Sebastian Ramirez of Frontal, Bishop of Saint Dominick, and of the Conception, late President of the Court of Saint Dominick, a man of great learning, and that after many dignities vntill in Castile Bishop of Coma, and then the charge of Capitaine general was given anew to the Marques Don Hernando Cortes, that he might gouerne the matters of warre, with the aduise of Don Sebastian Ramirez.

The first that had title of Vice-roy and Capitaine general of New Spaine, was Don Antonio de Mendoza, brother of the Marques of Montez.

Don Lewis de Velasco, a Gentleman of the House of the high Constable of Castile.

Don Gaston de Peralt, Marques of Falces.

Don Martin Enriquez of Almansa, brother of the Marques of Alcaniz, the Kings Steward.

Don Laurence Xarez of Mendoza, Earle of Girona, which deceased being provided for Peru, and by his death Don Peter Moya de Contreras, Archbishop of Mexico, gouerned in the meane while.

Don Alvaro Manriquez of Zuniga, Marques of Villanueva, brother of the Duke of Rojer.

Don Lewis de Velasco, Ionne to the abodead Don Lewis de Velasco, which passed to gouerne

the Kingdomes of Peru, where at this present hee is.

Don Gaston de Zuniga and Fonseca, Earle of Monterrey, which gouerneth at this day.

In the Kingdomes of Peru.

Don Francisco Pizarro, Marques of the Chacra, Gouverneur, chiefe Iustice, and Capitaine general.

The Licenciado Vasco of Castro, of the habit of Saint Iames, of the supreme Council of Castile, carried Title of Gouverneur general.

Alonso Nuñez P. a Gentleman of Anila, was the first that carried the Title of Vice-roy and Capitaine general of the Kingdomes of Peru.

The Licenciado Iames de la Gafia, of the Council of the holy and general Inquisition, carried the Title of President of the new Court that was sent to the Citie of The Kings, and of Gouverneur general, with facultie to give the gouernment of Armes to whom hee thought best. Hee did Bishop of Siviglia, and his Funerall and Trophies are kept in the Church in Valladolid, and in his absence the gouernment remained to the Court of the Citie of The Kings.

The second that carried Title of Vice-roy and Capitaine general was Don Antonio de Mendoza, that gouerned the Kingdomes of New Spaine.

Don Andrew Hurtado de Mendoza, Marques of Compostela.

Don Iames de Zuniga and Velasco, Earle of Nunez.

The Licenciado Lopez Garcia de Castro, of the Royall and supreme Council of the Indies, carried title of President and Gouverneur general.

Don Francisco de Toledo, brother to the Earle of Orpesa, Steward to the King.

Don Martin Enriquez, from the charge of New Spaine, passed to gouerne the Kingdomes of Peru.

Don Garcia de Mendoza, Marques of Cayete. Don Lewis de Velasco, from the charge of New Spaine, passed to the Kingdomes of Peru, where now he is, and at the instant of the impression of this Worke, hee provided for Vice-roy and Capitaine general of those Kingdomes, Don Iohn Pacheco, Duke of Escalona.

Of the examination of a Iudge or Iustice, or other Officer after their time is expired, so that if any will complain of any wrong done to him in that time, and to pay the damage hee suffered by his default.

The Fleets parting from *Simi*, have more difficulty to passe the *Canaries*, for that the gulf of *Tegues* or of *Moray*, is variable, being beaten with divers winds, but having passed the *Canaries*, they sail with a Westerne wind untill they come to the burning Zone, where presently they finde an Easterly wind, and so they sail on with full wind, so as they have scant any need to touch their fails in the whole voyage: for this reason they called this great gulf, the gulf of *Damer*, for the calmesse and pleasantness thereof. Then following their course, they come to the Islands of *Guadalupe*, *Dominique*, *Desired*, *Mariguante*, and the rest, which in that place, be as it were, the Suburbs of the *Indies*. There the Fleets separate and divide themselves, whereof some (which goe to new *Spain*) take to the right hand towards *Hispaniola*; and having discovered Cape Saint *Anthony*, they passe vnto Saint *John Delma*, always vying the same Easterly winds. Those for the mayne Land, take the left hand, discovering the high mountain of *Teyre*, then having touched at *Carthagena*, they passe vnto *Nombro de Dios*, from whence they goe by Land to *Panama*, and from thence, by the South Sea to *Pera*, but when the Fleets returne to *Spain*, they make their voyage in this sort: The fleet of *Pera* discover Cape Saint *Anthony*, then they enter into the *Havana*, which is a goodly Port in the Island of *Cuba*. The fleet of new *Spain* doth likewise touch at the *Havana*, being parted from *Pera* *Cruce*, or from the Island of Saint *John Delma*, the which is not without difficulty, for that commonly Easterly winds blow there, which is a contrarie wind to goe to the *Havana*. These Fleets being joyned together for *Spain*, they seeke their height without the Tropicks, where presently they finde Westerly winds, which leaue them untill they come in view of the *Azores*, or *Terceres*, and from thence to *Simi*. So as their voyage in going, is of a full height, not above twentie degrees from the Line, which is within the Tropicks. But the returne is without the Tropicks, in eight and twentie or thirre degrees of height at the least, for that within the Tropicks, the Easterly winds continually blow, the which are fittest to goe from *Spain* to the West *Indies*, for that their course is from East to West; and without the Tropicks (which is in three and twentie degrees of height) they finde Westerly winds, the which are the more certaine and ordinate, and farther you are from the Line, and more fit to returne from the *Indies*; for that they are winds blowing from the South and West, which serve to runne into the East and North.

The like discourse is of the Naigation made into the South Sea, going from new *Spain* or *Pera*, to the *Philippines* or *China* to new *Spain*, the which is eafie, for that they sail always from East to West, neere the Line, where they finde the Easterly winds to blow in their Poope. In the yeere 1584, there went a ship from *Callao* in *Lima* to the *Philippines*, which layed two thousand and seven hundred leagues without sight of Land, and the first it discovered, was the Island of *Luffow*, where they took Port, having performed their voyage two months, without want of wind or any torment, and their course was almost continually vnder the Line; for that from *Lima* (which is twelue degrees to the South) he came to *Manila*, which is as much to the North. The like good fortune had *Alonso de Mendana*, when as he went to discover the Islands of *Salomon*, for that he had alwayes a full gale, vntill he came within view of these Islands, the which must be distant from that place of *Pera*, from whence he parted, about a thousand leagues, having runne their course alwayes in one height to the South. The returne is like vnto the voyage from the *Indies* vnto *Spain*; for that which returne from the *Philippines* or *China* to *Mexico*, so the end they may recouer the western winds, they mount a great height, untill they come right against the Islands of *Iapan*, and discovering the *Caliphornes*, they returne by the coast of new *Spain* to the Port of *Acapulco*, from whence they parted. So as it is proved likewise by this Naigation, that they sail easily from East to West, within the Tropicks, for that their Easterly winds doe raine: but returning from West to East, they must feele the Westerne winds without the Tropicks, in the height of fifteen and twentie degrees. The *Portugals* proue the like in their Navigations to the East *Indies*, although it be in a contrarie course.

Let vs now speake of that which toucheth the Question propounded, what should be the reason why vnder the burning Zone we sail easily from East to West, and not contrarie: wherein we must presuppose two certaine grounds. The one is, that the motion of the first Mouer, which they call *Diurnal*, not onely drawes and mooves with him the celestiall Sphaeres, which are inferior vnto him, as we see daily in the Sunne, the Moone, and the Starres; but also the Elements doe participate of this motion, inasmuch as they are not hindered. The Earth is not mooved, by reason of her heavinesse, which makes it immovable, being late from this first moove. The Elements of water mooves not likewise with this Diurnal motion, for that it is first mooved by the Earth and make one sphaere, so as the Earth keepe it from all circular motion. But the other two Elements of Fire and Aire, are more subtil and nearer the heavenly Regions, so as they participate of their motion, and are driven about circularly, as the same celestiall bodies. As for the Fire, without doubt it hath his sphaere (as *Aristotle* and other Philosphers have held) but for the Aire (which is no point of our sphaere) it is most certaine that it mooves with a motion *Diurnal*, which is from East to West, which wee see plainly in Comets that moove from the East vnto the West, mounting, descending, and finally turning in the hemisphere in the

page

same sort as the Starres moove in the firmament; for otherwise these Comets being in the region and sphere of the ayre, whereas they ingender, appeare confusion. It should be impossible for them to moove circularly, as they doe, if the element of the ayre doth not moove with the same motion that the first moove doth. For these elements being of a burning substance, by reason they should be fixe, without mooving circularly, if the sphere where they are did not moove; if it be not as we haue said, that some Angell or intellectuall Spirit doth walke with the Comet, guiding it circularly. In the yeere 1577, appeared that wonderful Comet (in forme like vnto a teether) from the horizon almost to the middle of heauen, and continued from the first of Nouember, vntill the eight of December: I say from the first of Nouember, for although in *Spain* it was noted but the ninth of Nouember (according to the testimonie of Writers of that time) yet at *Pera*, where I was then, I remember well, we did see it, and observe it eight dayes before, and all the time after. Touching the cause of this duration, some may delate vpon it particularly: I will onely shew, that during those fourtie dayes which it continued, we all observed (both such as were in *Spain*, and we that liued then at the *Indies*) that it mooved daily with an vniuersall motion, from East to West, as the Moone and other Planets, whereby it appeares that the sphere of the ayre, being its Region, the element it selfe must of necessity moove after the same sort. We noted also, that besides this vniuersall motion, it had another particular, by which it mooved with the planets from West to East, for every night it turned more Eastward, like vnto the Moone, Sunne, and Planets of *Venus*. We did also observe a third particular motion, whereby it mooved from the Zodiacke towards the North; for after some night this it was found neuer vnto the Septentrional lynes, And it may be thus was the reason why the great Comet was sooner seen by those that were Southerly, as at *Pera*, and later discovered by them of *Europe*: for by this third motion (as I haue said) it approached neerer the Northern Regions. Yet every one may well observe the differences of this motion, so as we may well perceiue, that many and sundry celestiall bodies, giue their impressions to the sphere of the ayre. In like sort it is most certaine, that the ayre mooves with the circular motion of the heauen, from East to West, which is the first ground before mentioned. The second is no lesse certaine, which is, that the motion of the ayre in those parts that are vnder the Line, or neere vnto it, is very swift and light, the more it approacheth to the Equinoctiall; but the farther off it is from the Line, approaching neere the Poles, the more flow and heauie this motion is. The reason herof is manifest, for that the mooving of the celestiall bodies, being the efficient cause of the mooving of the ayre, it must of necessity be more quick and light, where the celestiall bodies haue their swiftest motion.

Alonso Sanchez was of opinion that this motion of the ayre was not a wind, but the ayre mooved by the Sunne. This is learnedly spoken, yet can we not deny it to be a wind, seeing there are vapours and exhalations of the Sea; and that we sometimes see the *Brise*, or Easterly winds stronger, sometimes more weak, and placed in that sort, as sometimes they can hardly carry all their layles. We must then know (and it is true) that the ayre mooved, draweth vnto it the vapours it findes, for that the force is great, and findes no resistance, by reason whereof the Easterne and Westerne winds are continual, and in a manner alwayes alike, in those parts which are neere the Line, and almost vnder all the burning Zone, which is the course the Sun followeth betwixt the tropicks of *Cancer* and *Capricorne*.

Who lo would neere looke into what hath bin spoken, may likewise vnderstand, that going from the West to the East, in altitude beyond the Tropicks, we shall finde Westerne winds, for that the motion of the Equinoctiall being lo swift, it is a cause that the ayre mooueth vnder it according to this motion, which is from the East to West, drawing after it the vapours and exhalations that rise of either side the Equinoctiall or burning Zone, in counteruing the course of the motion of the Zone, are forced by the repercussion to returne almost to the contrary, whence grow the South-west winds (so ordinary in those parts). Even as we see in the course of waters, the which if they be incouraged by others of more force, returne in a manner backe: So it seemes to be like in vapours and exhalations, whereby it grows that the windes doe come and separate themselves from one part to another. These Westerne winds doe commonly raine in a meane altitude, which is from twenty and leuen to thirty and seven degrees, though they be not so certaine nor foregular as the *Brise* that are in a lesse altitude. The reason is, for that the South-west winds are no causes of this proper and equall motion of the heauen, as the *Brise* are, and being neere to the Line. But (as I haue said) they are more ordinary, and often more furious and tempestuous. But passing into a greater altitude, as of furtie degrees, there is a small assurance of windes at Sea as at Land; for sometimes the East or North windes blowes, and sometimes the South, or West; whereby it happeneth their navigations are more vncertaine, and more dangerous.

That which we haue spoken of windes, which blow ordinarily within and without the Zone, must be vnderstood of the maine Sea; and in the great gulphes: for at land it is otherwise, where we finde all sorts of windes, by reason of the inequality which is betwixt the Mountaines and the vallies; the great number of Riues and Lakes, and the diuers situations of Countreies, whence the grosse and thick vapours arise, which are mooved from the one part or the other, according

The Comet
1577, 1580
three dayes
before in *Pera*
then in *Spain*.

The *Brise* (or
motion of the
ayre within
the heauen) is a
wind.

Why without
the Zone
groweth al-
titude we finde
the West-
erne winds.
Chap. 7.
Bely windes.

Other excep-
tions to the
forefard Rules,
of the windes
and climes
both at Land
and at Sea.
Chap. 8.
Cause of the
variey of
windes.

Saying 1500
leagues with-
out sight of
Land in two
moneths. See
Candides voy-
age.

Cause of the
Brise.

Motion of the
Primum Mobile
stretcheth the
inferiour ayre
wind.

ording to the diuerſitie of their beginnings, which cauſe theſe diuers windes the motion of the ayre, cauſed by the heauen, hauing not power enough to draw and moue them with it. And this variētie of windes is not onely found at land, but alſo vpon the Sea coaſt, which is vnder the burning Zone, for that there are forraigne or land windes which come from the land, and many which blow from the Sea; the which windes from the Sea, are commonly more wholeſome and more pleaſant then thoſe of the land, which are contrariwiſe a troubleſome and wholeſome, alſo ſometimes they cauſe the coaſt that cauſeth this diuerſitie. For commonly the Land windes blow from mid-night to the Sunne riſing, and the Sea windes vntill Sunne riſing. Some times perhaps may be, that the earth, as a groſſe fubſtance, fumes more when as the Sunne findes not vpon it, euen as greene wood, or ſeaſie drey, ſmoakes moſt when the flame is quenched. But the Sea, which is compounded of more fubtile parts, engenders no fumes, but when it is hot, euen as ſtraw or haye, being moiſt and in ſmall quantitie, breeds ſmoake when it is burnt, and when the flame failes, the ſmoke ſuddenly ceaſeth. Whatſoeuer it be, it is certaine that the Land windes blowes by night, and that of the Sea by day. So that euen as there are often contrary, violent, and ſometimes ſudden windes at land, ſo alſo at ſea. And ſometimes there are ſome men of great experience report, that hauing ſailed many great paſſages at Sea vnder the Line, that they neuer ſee any calmes, but that they alwayes make way little or much, the ayre being moued by the celeſtiall motion, which is ſufficient to guide a Shippe, blowing in poepe, as it doth. I have already ſaid, that a Shippe of *Lima* going to *Marilla*, failed two thouſand furlong hundred leagues, alwayes vnder the Line, or not about two degrees from it, and that in the moneths of February and March, when as the Sunne is there for Zenith, and in all this ſpace they found no calmes, but ſailed a freſh ſea all the way. And ſometimes they performe this great voyage, without the burning Zone, without it, you ſhall viſually ſee ſome calmes vnder the Line, where the vapours come from the lands, or maine land. And therefore ſtormes and tempeſts, and the ſudden motions of the ayre, are more certaine and ordinary vpon the coaſts, whereas the vapours come from the Land, then in full Sea, I meane vnder the burning Zone, for without it and at Sea, there are both calmes and whirlewinds. Notwithſtanding, ſometimes betwixt the two Tropiques, yea, vnder the Line, you ſhall have great raine and ſudden ſhowers, yea farre into the Sea; for the working whereof, the vapours and exhalations of the Sea, are ſufficient, which ſeeke to riſe into the ayre, and ſometimes they are ſo ſtrongly ſtirred, that this is more ordinary neere to the Land and vpon the Land. When I ſailed from *Pera* to *ſpana*, I obſerued, that all the time we were vpon the coaſt of *Pera*, our voyage was (as it was ordinary) very calme and eaſe, by reaſon of the Southerne wind that blowes, hauing alwayes a fore wind, returning from *Spain* and *New Spain*. As we paſſed the gulph, lanching farther into the Sea, almoſt vnder the Line, we found the ſeaſon coole, quiet, and pleaſant, with a full wind, but coming neere to *Nicaragua*, and to all that coaſt, we had contrary windes, with great force of raine and fogges. All this *Nicaragua* was vnder the burning Zone: for from the ſouth ſide of the burning Zone, the ſouth eſt wind, which is called the *Quinto*, ſometimes a part of new *Spain*: and I beleue, that ſuch as have obſerued their nauigations, made vnder the burning Zone, ſhall finde what I haue ſaid, which may ſuffice for the windes which raigne at Sea, vnder the burning Zone.

It were a very difficult matter, to report particularly the admirable effects which some winds cause in diuers regions of the world, and to giue a reason thereof. There are winds, which naturally trouble the water of the Sea, and makes it greene and blacke, others cleere as Chrystal, some comfort and make glad, others trouble and breede heauinesse. Such as northw Silver-windes, have great care to shut their windowes, when as the South-west windes doe blow, and to open their eyes to the contrary windes, which they call the East-wind, and so they may be assured, that the East-wind will be better and become better with the other : and who fo will nately observe it, shall finde in himselfe, that the disturties of windes, cause notable impretions and changes in the body, principally in sicke parties and ill disposed, when they are most tender and sweeten'd. And it is no wonder if we see such notable effects of the wind, in Plants, Beastes, and Men, seeing that we see it visibly in Iron, which is the hardest of all mettals. I have seen Grates of Iron in some parts of the Indes, so fastened and so disposed, that the strong windes shake your fingers, it is said that the windes, as it is said, blowe in the East, or parthe thereof, which procure such a motion to the wind, which doth corrupt it, hauing no means to withstand it, But leauing apart many other great and notable effects, I will only make mention of two. The one, although it causeth paines greater then death it selfe, yet doth it not breede any further inconvenience. The other takes away life without feeling of it. The sickefne of the Sea, wherewith such as are troubled at first begin to goe to Sea, is a matter very ordinary : and yet if the nature thereof were unknowne to men, we should take it for the pangs of death, feeling how the afflictions which it brings vnto death last, by how much the more it is to be feared. And yet the afflictions and troubles which it brings vnto men, are in this sickefne so common and ordinary, happens vnto men by the change of the ayre and Sea. For although it be true that the motion of the Ship helpe much,

Simile.

Nerr:

Of some mi-
nute effects
of the winds,
which are in
some parts of
the Indies.
[Cap. 9.]
Silkworms
killed with
South-west
winds.
E. & C. 10. & 14.
Job 17.
Isa. 4.
O/s 13.
Dan. 3.
The like *Ling-*
stons obser-
ved in the
Turkey.

Sea sickness
whence.

Agitation and
Seayre,

CHAP. I. S. I. *Are how operative in mens bodies. At Pariacaca too subtle.* 927

[illegible][illegible]

30 her, both yellow and green; in the cold of my blood; with me Anthonie.
To conclude, if this had continued, I should undoubtedly have dyed; but I lasted but
three or four hours, and then we were come into a more comfortable situation, where
where all our companions (being fourteen or fifteen) lay down and were so weary, that
demanded confession, thinking very sorely of their sins; and it was told me, that those
were overcome with calling, and going to the flocks; and it was told me, that those
their lives there with this calling. I desired one that did but breathe against the earth, or
for the more joyful, only this pain, and trouble, more than what it endured; and
only the things of *Paradise* hath this property, but all the other things of the Mountains,
40 and in what place you please, you shall find these things.

[illegible]

ayre is subtle and piercing, going to the heart as there is no pore can make them goe forward. For
50 aye is fibile that sometimes it may be so, as there is no pore can make them goe forward. For
part I hold this that the ayre is the best of the highest parts of land in the world for we mount a
full place. And in my opinion, the Mountaine *Nevada de Spain*, the *Pirenees*, and the *Alpes*
are the ordinary hoiles, in regard of the Towers: if therefore perforce my selfe, that
element of the ayre is thine so subtil and delicate, as it is not proportionable with the
causing of man, which requires a more gentle and temperate ayre, and the coldness of the
that doth to much alter the flame, and trouble all the digestion, and the ayre is cold
taines *Nevada*, and other of *Europe*, where the ayre is cold; although the cold may be cold times,
that doth more to weare out the ayre, yet this cold doth not take away the appetite, but
meate, but contentment it provokes; neither doth it cause any cutting of the flame, but
60 by some paine in the fere and hands. Finally, their operation is upward. But that of
the ayre is cold, I speake without moulding of foot or hand, or any outward part trouble
the ayres within I; and that which is more admirable, when the Sunne is hot, which maketh
I imagine, that the griefe we feele comes from the qualitie of the ayre which we breathe
Therefore that is most subtil and delicate, whose cold is not so fenible, as piercing. All

Strange passion at Patient
by the ayre
there.

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30. 31. 32. 33. 34. 35. 36. 37. 38. 39. 40. 41. 42. 43. 44. 45. 46. 47. 48. 49. 50. 51. 52. 53. 54. 55. 56. 57. 58. 59. 60. 61. 62. 63. 64. 65. 66. 67. 68. 69. 70. 71. 72. 73. 74. 75. 76. 77. 78. 79. 80. 81. 82. 83. 84. 85. 86. 87. 88. 89. 90. 91. 92. 93. 94. 95. 96. 97. 98. 99. 100. 101. 102. 103. 104. 105. 106. 107. 108. 109. 110. 111. 112. 113. 114. 115. 116. 117. 118. 119. 120. 121. 122. 123. 124. 125. 126. 127. 128. 129. 130. 131. 132. 133. 134. 135. 136. 137. 138. 139. 140. 141. 142. 143. 144. 145. 146. 147. 148. 149. 150. 151. 152. 153. 154. 155. 156. 157. 158. 159. 160. 161. 162. 163. 164. 165. 166. 167. 168. 169. 170. 171. 172. 173. 174. 175. 176. 177. 178. 179. 180. 181. 182. 183. 184. 185. 186. 187. 188. 189. 190. 191. 192. 193. 194. 195. 196. 197. 198. 199. 200. 201. 202. 203. 204. 205. 206. 207. 208. 209. 210. 211. 212. 213. 214. 215. 216. 217. 218. 219. 220. 221. 222. 223. 224. 225. 226. 227. 228. 229. 230. 231. 232. 233. 234. 235. 236. 237. 238. 239. 240. 241. 242. 243. 244. 245. 246. 247. 248. 249. 250. 251. 252. 253. 254. 255. 256. 257. 258. 259. 260. 261. 262. 263. 264. 265. 266. 267. 268. 269. 270. 271. 272. 273. 274. 275. 276. 277. 278. 279. 280. 281. 282. 283. 284. 285. 286. 287. 288. 289. 290. 291. 292. 293. 294. 295. 296. 297. 298. 299. 300. 301. 302. 303. 304. 305. 306. 307. 308. 309. 310. 311. 312. 313. 314. 315. 316. 317. 318. 319. 320. 321. 322. 323. 324. 325. 326. 327. 328. 329. 330. 331. 332. 333. 334. 335. 336. 337. 338. 339. 340. 341. 342. 343. 344. 345. 346. 347. 348. 349. 350. 351. 352. 353. 354. 355. 356. 357. 358. 359. 360. 361. 362. 363. 364. 365. 366. 367. 368. 369. 370. 371. 372. 373. 374. 375. 376. 377. 378. 379. 380. 381. 382. 383. 384. 385. 386. 387. 388. 389. 390. 391. 392. 393. 394. 395. 396. 397. 398. 399. 400. 401. 402. 403. 404. 405. 406. 407. 408. 409. 410. 411. 412. 413. 414. 415. 416. 417. 418. 419. 420. 421. 422. 423. 424. 425. 426. 427. 428. 429. 430. 431. 432. 433. 434. 435. 436. 437. 438. 439. 440. 441. 442. 443. 444. 445. 446. 447. 448. 449. 450. 451. 452. 453. 454. 455. 456. 457. 458. 459. 460. 461. 462. 463. 464. 465. 466. 467. 468. 469. 470. 471. 472. 473. 474. 475. 476. 477. 478. 479. 480. 481. 482. 483. 484. 485. 486. 487. 488. 489. 490. 491. 492. 493. 494. 495. 496. 497. 498. 499. 500. 501. 502. 503. 504. 505. 506. 507. 508. 509. 510. 511. 512. 513. 514. 515. 516. 517. 518. 519. 520. 521. 522. 523. 524. 525. 526. 527. 528. 529. 530. 531. 532. 533. 534. 535. 536. 537. 538. 539. 540. 541. 542. 543. 544. 545. 546. 547. 548. 549. 550. 551. 552. 553. 554. 555. 556. 557. 558. 559. 560. 561. 562. 563. 564. 565. 566. 567. 568. 569. 570. 571. 572. 573. 574. 575. 576. 577. 578. 579. 580. 581. 582. 583. 584. 585. 586. 587. 588. 589. 590. 591. 592. 593. 594. 595. 596. 597. 598. 599. 600. 601. 602. 603. 604. 605. 606. 607. 608. 609. 610. 611. 612. 613. 614. 615. 616. 617. 618. 619. 620. 621. 622. 623. 624. 625. 626. 627. 628. 629. 630. 631. 632. 633. 634. 635. 636. 637. 638. 639. 640. 641. 642. 643. 644. 645. 646. 647. 648. 649. 650. 651. 652. 653. 654. 655. 656. 657. 658. 659. 660. 661. 662. 663. 664. 665. 666. 667. 668. 669. 670. 671. 672. 673. 674. 675. 676. 677. 678. 679. 680. 681. 682. 683. 684. 685. 686. 687. 688. 689. 690. 691. 692. 693. 694. 695. 696. 697. 698. 699. 700. 701. 702. 703. 704. 705. 706. 707. 708. 709. 710. 711. 712. 713. 714. 715. 716. 717. 718. 719. 720. 721. 722. 723. 724. 725. 726. 727. 728. 729. 730. 731. 732. 733. 734. 735. 736. 737. 738. 739. 740. 741. 742. 743. 744. 745. 746. 747. 748. 749. 750. 751. 752. 753. 754. 755. 756. 757. 758. 759. 760. 761. 762. 763. 764. 765. 766. 767. 768. 769. 770. 771. 772. 773. 774. 775. 776. 777. 778. 779. 780. 781. 782. 783. 784. 785. 786. 787. 788. 789. 790. 791. 792. 793. 794. 795. 796. 797. 798. 799. 800. 801. 802. 803. 804. 805. 806. 807. 808. 809. 810. 811. 812. 813. 814. 815. 816. 817. 818. 819. 820. 821. 822. 823. 824. 825. 826. 827. 828. 829. 830. 831. 832. 833. 834. 835. 836. 837. 838. 839. 840. 84

Height of Par
ata.

Water-fall.

Golden-thirf.

River of Plata,
increasing as
Nile.How they paffe
their Riuer.Haire and
Sewer Bridges.

niardi haue often failed it, pretending to discover the Lands, which by report are very rich, especially those they call *Dorado* and *Pagani*, *leas de Sabins*, the *Adelantado*, made a memorable entre, though of small effect. There is a passage which they call *Pango*, one of the most dangerous in all the world; for the Riuer being there straightened, and forced betwixt two high steep Rocks: the water falls directly downe with so great a violence, that comming *stepe downe*, it causeth such a boyling, as it seemeth impossible to passe it without drowning: yet the courage of men durst attempt to passe it, for the desire of this renowned *Dorado*: they slippe downe from the top to the bottom, thrust on with the violence and currant of the flood, holding themselves fast in their Canoes or barks: and although in falling they were turned topsie turvie, and both they and their Canoes plunged into the deepe, yet by their care and industrie they recovered themselves againe; and in this sort the whole armie escaped, except some few that were drowned. And that which is more admirable, they carried themselves so cunningly, that they neither lost their Powder nor Munition. In their returne (having suffered many troubles and dangers) they were forced, in the end, to passe backe that same way) mounting by one of those high Rocks, sticking their Ponyards in the Rocks.

Captaine *Peter d'Orjua* made another entrie by the same Riuer, who being dead in the same Voyage, and the Souldiers mutinied; other Captaines followed the enterprise, by an arme that comes into the North Sea. A religious man of our company told vs, that being then a secular man, he was present in a manner at all that enterpris, and that the tides did flow almost a hundred leagues up the Riuer, and whereas it enters into the Sea (the which is vnder the Line, or so very nere) it hath twenty leagues breadth at the mouth of it: a matter incredible, which exceeds the breadth of the Mediterranean Sea, though there be some others, who in their descriptions give it but twenty five or thirty leagues breadth at the mouth.

Next to this Riuer that of *Plata*, or *Siluer* holds the second place, which is otherwise called *Paraguay*, which runs from the Mountains of *Pera*, into the Sea, in thirty five degrees of altitude to the South: it is rich (as they say) like to the Riuer of *Nile*, but much more without comparison, and makes the fields it overflowes like vnto a Sea, for the space of three months, and after returneth againe to his course, in the which Shippes doe faile many leagues against the streame. There are many other Riuers that are not of that greatness, and yet are equal: yea they surpass the greatest of *Europe*, as that of *Magdalena*, neere to *Saint Marthe*, called the *great Riuer*, and that of *Almarado* in new *Spain*, and an infinite number of others. Of the South side, on the Mountains of *Pera*, the Riuer are not vntoally so great, for that their current is not long, and that many waters cannot ioyne together, but they are very swift, descending from the Mountaines, and haue sodaine falls, by reason whereof they are very dangerous, and many men haue perished there. They increase and overflow most in the time of heate. I haue gone out twenty and seven Riuers vpon that coast, yet did I neuer passe any one by a ford.

The *Indians* vse a thousand deuises to passe their Riuer. In some places they haue a long cord that runnes from one side to the other, and thereon hangs a basket, into the which he puts him selfe that meane to passe; and then they draw it from the banke with another cord, so as he passeth in this basket. In other places the *Indians* passe, as it were on Horse-backe, vpon a bottle of straw, and behinde him he that desireth to passe and is rowing with a peece of wood, carries him over. In other places they make a floate of gourds or pompions, vpon which they set men with their stuffe to carry over, and the *Indians* having cords fastned to them, goe swimming before, and draw this floate of pompions after them: as Horses doe a Coach; others goe behinde thrusting it forward. Having passed, they take their barke of pompions vpon their backe, and returne swimming: this they doe in the Riuer of *Saints* at *Pera*. We passed that of *Almarado* in new *Spain* vpon a table, which the *Indians* carried vpon their shoulders, and when they lost their footing, they swamme. These deuises, with a thousand other wherewith they vse to passe their Riuer, breed a terror in the beholders, helping themselves with such weak and vnsure meane; and yet they are very confident. They doe vse no other bridges but of haire or of straw. There are 50 now vpon some Riuer bridges of Stone, built by the diligence of some Gouernours, but many fewer then were needfull in such a Countrey, where so many men are drowned by default thereof, and the which yeldes so much Siluer, as not only *Spain*, but also other strange Countreies make sumptuous buildings therewith. The *Indians* doe draw from these floods that runne from the Mountaines to the Vallies and Plaines, many and great Brookes to water their Land, which they vntually doe with such industrie, as there are no better in *Mexico*, nor at *Milau* it selfe, the which is also the greatest and onely wealth of the *Plaines* of *Pera*, and of many other parts of the *Indies*.

§. III.

§. III.

Of the qualitie of the Land at the *Indies* in generall. Properties of *Pera*, and of new *Spain*, and other parts: Of Vulcanes and Earthquake.

WE may know the qualitie of the Land at the *Indies*, for the greatest part (seeing it is the fall of the three Elements, wherof we haue propounded to treat in this Booke) by the discourse we haue made in the former Booke of the burning Zone, seeing that the greatest part of the *Indies* doth lye vnder it. But to make it knowne the more particularly, I haue obserued three kindes of Lands, as I haue passed through those Regions: wherof there is one very low, another very high, and the third which holds the middle of these two extremes. The lower is that which lyeeth by the Sea coasts, wherof there is in all parts of the *Indies*, and it is commonly very hot and moist, so as it is not so healthfull; and at this day we see it less peopled, although in former times it hath bene greatly inhabited with *Indians*, as it appeareth by the histories of new *Spain* and *Pera*, and where they kept and liued, for that the soile was naturall vnto them being bred there. They liued of siling at Sea, and of fishing, drawing brooks from the Riuer, which they vsed for want of raine, for that it rained little there, and in some places not at all. This low Countrey hath many places vnhabitable, as well by reason of the Sands which are dangerous (for there are whole Mountaines of these Sands) as also for the Marishes which grow by reason of the waters that fall from the Mountaines, which finding no issue in the flat and low Lands, throwe them, and make them chiefly vnable.

And in thus the great wealth of the Sea coast is of this sort, vnto the South Decay of people: the Sea: the habitation of which coasts is at this present so wasted and contemned, that of thirty plain the *Indians* will in short time decay. Many, according to the varietie of their opinions, attribute this to diuers causes: some to the great labour which hath bene imposed vpon these *Indians*; others to the changes and varietie of meates and drinks they vse, since their commerce with the *Spaniards*: others, to their great exesse and drinking, and to other vices they haue: for my part, I hold this disorder to be the greatest cause of their decay, wherof it is not now time to discourse any more.

In this low Countrey (which I say generally is vnhealthfull, and vnfit for mans habitation) there is exception in some places which are temperate and fertile, as the greatest part of the *Plaines* of *Pera*, where there are coole vallies and very fertile. The greatest part of the habitation of the coast entrains all the traffike of *Spain* by Sea: wherof all the estate of the *Indies* dependeth. Vpon this coast there are some Towns well peopled, as *Lima* and *Truxillo* in *Pera*, *Panama* and *Carthagena* vpon the maine Land, and in the Ilands *Saint Domingo*, *Port Rico*, and *Hanana*, with many other Towns which are lesse then these, as the *True Crusse* in new *Spain*, *Yca*, *Arigua* and others in *Pera*: the Ports are commonly inhabited, although but slenderly. The second sort of Land is contrary, very high, and by consequent, cold and dry, as all the Mountaines are commonly. This Land is neither fertile nor pleasant, but very healthfull, which makes it to be peopled and inhabited. There are Pastures and great flocks of Cattle, the which, for the most part, increase, life, and by their Cattel, they supply the want they haue of Corne and Grain, by trucking and exchange. But that which makes these Lands more inhabited and peopled, is the riches of the Mines that are found there, for that all obey to Gold and Siluer, by reason of the Mines there are some dwellings of *Spaniards* and *Indians*, which are increased and multiplied, as *Potosi* and *Guanacacupa* in *Pera*, and *Catacota* in new *Spain*. There are also through all these Mountaines great dwellings of the *Indians*, which to this day are maintained; yea some will say they increase, but that the labour of the Mines doth consume many, and some generally diseaies haue destroyed a great part, as the *Cockle* in new *Spain*: yet they finde no great diminution. In this extreme of high ground they finde two commodities, as I haue said, of Pastures and Mines, which doe well counterualle the two other that are in the lower grounds along the Sea coast, that is, the commerce of the Sea, and the abundance of Wine which groweth not but in the hot Lands. Betwixt these two extremes there is ground of a meane height, the which, although it be in some parts higher or lower one then other, yet doth it not approach neere to the heate of the Sea coast, nor the intemperature of the Mountains. In this sort of soyle there groweth many kindes of Grain, as Wheate, Barley, and Mays, which groweth not at all in the high Countreies. This part is the best habitation of the three, for health and recreation; and therefore it is best peopled of any part of the *Indies*, the which I haue curiously obserued in many Voyages that I haue undertaken, and haue alwayes found it true, that the Province best peopled at the *Indies* be in this situation. Let vs looke neerely into new *Spain* (the which without doubt is the best Province the Sunne doth circle) by what part you doe enter, you mount vp; and when you haue mounted a good height, you begin to descend,

Cont grounds

Hhh 3

descend, yet very little : and that Land is alwayes much higher then that along the Sea coast.

All the Land about *Mexico* is of this nature and Citiation; and that which is about the *Pulcan*, which is the best Soyle of the *Indies*, is also in *Pera*, *Arequipa*, *Guanacay*, and *Cuzco*, although more in one than in the other. But in the end, all is high ground, although they extend into deepe Vallies, and clime up to high Mountaines: the like is spoken of *Quito*, *Santa*, and *Guayaquil*, the best of the *New Kingdom*. To conclude, I doe beleue that the wisdom and pronouncance of the Creator would have it so, that the greatest part of this Countrie of the *Indies* should be of this might of a better temperature: for being low, it had beene very hot vnder the burning Sunne, and might have bene more fruitful, if the Land I have seene at the *Indies*, is neere to the Mountaines on the one side or the other, and comes of all parts: So as I have oftentimes said there, that I would gladly see any place, from whence the horizon did shew thousand champaigne fields; yet doe I not remember that I have ever seene such a place as the *Indies*, were it in the Lands, or vpon the maine Land, although I have travelled about three hundred leagues in length. But as I have said, the nearrenesse of the Mountaines is very commodious in this region, to temper the heat of the Sunne. To conclude, the best inhabited parts of these three I have said, and generally all that Countrie abounds in Grasse, Pastures, and Fowls, contrary to what some have written of the parts which they hold. So as when we goout of *Peru* to the *Indies* we wonder to see the Land so pleasant, greene and fresh. Yet this rule hath some exceptions, and chiefly in the Land of *Pera*, which is of a strange nature among all others, wherof we will now proceede to speake.

[illegible]

CHAP. 2. § 3. *Fruitfull vallies. Indian bread. Cause of raine. Peru wine.* 937

numbers. There also they finde the herbe or tree which they call *Coca*, that is so greatly esteemed by the *Indians*, and the trafficke they make of it, is worth much money.

by which they call *Sierre*, fruitful Vallies, where as it opens, which are the best dwellings of *Pera*, as is the Valley of *Kausse* of *Abadneguay*, and *Tucuy*. In these Vallies there grows Wheat, Maize, and other sorts of fruits, but little in one then in the other. Beyond the City of *Cafre* (the ancient Court of the Lords of those Realmes) the two ridges of Mountains separate themselves one from the other, and in the middle leave a Playne and large Champaigne, which they call the Province of *Collao*, where there are many Rivers and great store of fertile Pastures: there is also that great Lake of *Titicaca*. And although it be a full lake, and in the same height and temperature, that the *Sierre*, having no more Trees nor Forests, yet the want they have of bread is counterwailed with the rootes they sow, the which they call *Papa*, and they grow in the earth. This root is the *Indian* name for drying, and making it cleave, and they make that which they call *Cafre*, which is the same with the white of those Poppees. There are other rootes and seeds, which they eat. It is a healthfull food, best peopled, and the richest of the *Indies*, for the abundance of Cattell they feede, as well of those that are in *Pera*, as in Sheepes, Neats, and Goatses, as of those of the Country, which they call *Guacaca* and *Paca*, and there are more of Partridges. Next to the Province of *Collao*, is that of *Chichu*, where there are hot Vallies very fertile, and very high Rocks, the which are very rich in silver, but in no part of the World shall you finde better nor fairer.

not in mynits, to be seen and extraordinary to see a Country where it neuer rains nor thunders ;
 for these things naturally to know the cause of this strange. The reason which some give that
 have neerly looked into it, is, that upon that Coast there lie no vapours, sufficient to engender
 rain for want of matter; but only that there bee small and light vapours, which cannot
 breake any other then mists and dewes, as wee see in *Europe*, oftentimes vapours doe rise in
 the morning, which are not turned into raie, but into mists only: the which grows from
 the substance, which is not greffe and sufficient to fall out continually from the Coast of
Peru, is, for that the Coast is a very drie, and yields no greffe vapours. The drie is knowne
 by the great abundance of Sandes, having neither Wells nor Fountaines, but of fiftene Stades
 by the great height of a man (or more f) and that is neere unto *Riuer*, the water where-
 of, piercing into the Land, gives them means to make Wells. So as it hath beene found by
 experience, that the course of *Rivers* being turned, the Wells have beene dried up, until they
 returned to their ordinarie course: and they gave the reason for a materiall cause of this effect,
 but they have another effeient; which is no lesse considerable; and that is the greynesse of
 the *Sunne*, which coming along the Coast, shadowes the *Land*, so as it doth not receive
 to blow from the Land, but that from the Sea, which finding no opposit, doth not greffe nor fraigne
 the vapours, but only waies, but that from the Sea, which finding no opposit, doth not greffe nor fraigne
 the vapours, but only waies, but that from the Sea, which finding no opposit, doth not greffe nor fraigne
 the vapours from thickning, and converts them into mist. There are some experiences agree-
 40 with this discourse; for that it raies upon some small Hills along the Coast, which are lesse
 shadowed, as the Rocks of *Araio* and *Araucana*. It hath rained in some yeeres when as the
 Northerne or Easterly windes have blowne: yea, all the time they have continued, as it happen-
 ed in twentieth eight, upon the *Lanes of Truglio*, where it rained abundantly, the which
 they had not leant in many ages before. Moreover, it raies in the same Coast in places,
 where as it is not so greffe, as in the ordinarie, as in *Guayquil*, and in places where
 it is not so greffe, as in the ordinarie, as in *Guayquil*, and in places where
 it is not so greffe, as in the ordinarie, as in *Guayquil*, and in places where
 beyond *Arauco*. Some discourse in this manner, but let every one think as he please. It is most
 certain, that coming from the Mountaines to the Vallies, they doe usually feele as it were two
 Heavens, one cleere and bright above, and the other obscure, and as it were a gray vail spread
 50 underneath, which covers all the Coast; and although it raie not, yetz this mist is wonderfully
 profitable to bring forth grasse, and to raise up the bread, yea, for almost all the use of
 the people, which they draw from the Coast, and breed it in the field. And *Heaven* hath
 given a virtue, that comes from the Earth, is breede of great commoditie and defence of
 grasse, by this dew to beaurized with grasse and flowers, as it is a pleasing and agreeable sight and
 very profitable for the feeding of Cattell, as we see in the Mountaine called *Sandis*, neere to the
 City of *Kings*.

New Spain paffeth all other Provinces in profuſſe, which breeds infinite troops of Horſe, Kine, Sheepe, and other Cattel. It abounds in fruit and all kinde of graine. To conclude, it is 60 Country that ſett furniſhed and moſt accompliſhed at the *Indies*, yet *Pera* doth furniſh it in one thing, which is Wine, for that there grows there good; and they daily multiply and increaſe, the which doth grow in very hot Vallies, where there are waterings. And although there be Vines in new Spain, yet the grape comes not to its maturity, fit to make Wine. The reaſon is, for that it raines there in July and Auguſt, when as the grape ripens: and therefore it comes

Their bread:

; The reason
t why it rains
- on the *Loam*,
t along the Sea
coast. *Chap. 21*

Of the properties of new
Spain, of the
lands, and of
other Lands.
Chap. 22.
Peru wine.

Sugar works
and Hides.

Indians walled.

Of the
known Land,
and the dis-
tance of a whole
day, betwixt
the East and
the West, Chap. 3.

not to his perfection. And if any one through curiosity would take the pains to make wine, it should be like to that of *Grena* and *Lombardie*, which is very small and sharp, having a taste like unto *Verjuice*. The lands which they call *Barlouten*, which bee *Hispavilla*, *Cuba*, *Pere River*, and others thereabouts, are beautified with many greene pastures, and abound in Cattell, as Neat, and Swine, which are become wilde. The wealth of these lands, bee their Sugar-works and Hides. There is much *Cassia fistula* and Ginger. It is a thing incredible, to see the multitude of these merchandises brought in one fleet, being in a manner impossible that all *Europe* should waste so much. They likewise bring wood of an excellent quality and colour, as Ebony, and others, which serve for building and for yewers. There is much of that wood which they call *Lignum sanctum* or *Gnagay*, fit to cure the pox. All these lands and others thereabouts, which are many, have a goodly and pleasant aspect, for that throughout the yeere, they are beautified with grasse and greene trees, as they cannot discern when it is Autumne or Summer, by reason of continuall moisture joynted to the heat of the burning Zone. And although this Land bee of a great circuit, yet are there few dwellings, for that of it selfe it engenders great *Arcahuas*, as they call them, which be Groves or very thicke Coppises: and on the Playnes there are many marishes and bogs. They give yet another notable reason, why they are so finally peopled, for that there have remayned few naturall *Indians*, through the inconsiderable and disorder of the first Conquerors that peopled it: and therefore, for the most part, they vie *Negros*, but they cost deare, being very fit to till the Land. There grows neither bread nor wine in these lands, for that the too great fertilitye and the vice of the soile, suffers them not to feede, but casts all forth in grasse, very vncqually. There are no Olive trees, at the least, they beare no Olives, but many greene leaves pleasant to the view, which beare no fruit. The bread they vie is of *Cacane*, whereof we shall hereafter speake. There is gold in the Rivers of these lands, which some draw forth, but in small quantitie. I was little lesse than a yeere in these lands, and as it hath bene told me of the mayne Land of the *Indies*, where I have not bene, as in *Florida*, *Nicaragua*, *Guatemala*, and others, it is in a manner of this temper, as I have described: yet have I not let downe every particular of Nature in their Provinces of the firme Land, having no perfect knowledge thereof. The Countrey which doth most resemble *Spain* and the Regions of *Europe*, in all the West *Indies*, is the Realme of *Chile*, which is without the generall rule of these other Provinces, being seated without the burning Zone, and the Tropicke of *Cancer*. This Land of it selfe is coole and fertile, and brings forth all kinds of fruits that bee in *Spain*; it yields great abundance of bread and wine, and abounds in Pastures and Cattell. The aire is whollome and cleare, temperate betwixt heat and cold. Winter and Summer are very distinct, and there they finde great store of very fine gold. Yet this Land is poore and finally peopled, by reason of their continuall warre with the *Americans*, and their Associates, being a rough people and friends to libertie.

There are great conjectures, that in the temperate Zone at the *Antarctic* Pole, there are great and fertile Lands: but to this day they are not discovered, neither doe they know any other Land in this Zone, but that of *Chile*, and some part of that Land which runs from *Chilipia* to the Cape of *Hond*, as hath bene said in the first Booke: neither is it knowne if there bee any habitations in the other two Zones of the Poles, and whether the Land continues and stretcheth to that which is towards the *Antarctic* or South Pole. Neither doe we know the Land that lyes beyond the Straight of *Magellan*, for that the greatest height yet discovered, is in fiftie fixe degrees, as hath bene formerly said; and toward the Arktic or Northerne Pole, it is not known how farr the Land extends, which runs beyond the Cape of *Maudslayi* and the *Calphornes*, nor the bounds and end of *Florida*, neither yet how farr it extends to the West. Of late they have discovered a new Land, which they call *New Mexico*, where they say is much people that speake the *Mexican* tongue. The *Philippines* and the following Islands, as some report that know it by experience, rune about nine hundred leagues. But to treat of *China*, *Cochinchina*, *Siam*, and other Regions which are of the East *Indies*, were contrary to my purpose, which is only to discourse of the West: may, they are ignorant of the greatest part of *America*, which lyes betwixt *Pere* and *Bresil*, although the bounds be knowne of all sides, wherein there is diversitie of opinions; some say it is a drowned Land, full of Lakes and waterie places; others affirm there are great and flourishing Kingdomes, imagining there be the *Paytis*, the *Dorado*, and the *Cajeta*, where they say are wonderfull things. I have heard one of our companie say, a man worthy of credit, that he had seen great dwellings there, and the wayes as much beaten as those betwixt *Salamanca* and *Madrid*, the which he did see, when as *Peter d'Osuna*, and after, those that succeeded him, made their entrie and discovery by the great River of *Amazon*, who beleuing that the *Dorado* which they sought, was farther off, cared not to inhabit there, and after went both without the *Dorado*, which they could not finde, and this great Province which they left. To speake the truth, the habitations of *America* are to this day unknowne, except the extremities, which are *Pere*, *Bresil*, and that part where the Land begins to straighten, which is the River of *Siluer*, then *Tucuman*, which makes the round to *Chile* and *Charcas*. Of late we have understood by Letters from some of ours which goe to Saint *Croix* in the *Sierre*, that they goe dis-

COURTING

covering of great Provinces and dwellings, betwixt *Bresil* and *Pere*. Time will reuile them, for as at this day the care and courage of men is great, to compass the World from one part to another; so we may beleue, that as they have discovered that which is now knowne, they may likewise lay open that which remaynes, to the end the Gospell may be preached to the whole World, setting the two Crownes of *Portugal* and *Cassia* have met by the East and West, joining their discoveries together, which in truth is matter to be observed, that the one is come to *China* and *Lipon* by the East, and the other to the *Philippines*, which are neighbours and almost joyning unto *China*, by the West: for from the lands of *Lusitan*, which is the chiefe of the *Philippines*, in the which is the Citie of *Manilla*, unto *Macao*, which is in the Ile of *Canton*, are but foure score or a hundred leagues, and yet we finde it strange, that notwithstanding this small distance from the one to the other, yet according to their account, there is a dayes difference betwixt them; so as it is Sunday at *Macao*, when as it is but Saturday at *Manilla*, and of the rest, those of *Macao* and of *China* haue one day advanced before the *Philippines*, hee that arrived at *Macao* the second day of May, according to their computation, and going to lay the Mass of Saint *Athanasius*, he found they did celebrate the feast of the Transiion of the holy *Crosse*, for that they did then reckon the third of May. The like happened unto him in another voyage beyond it.

Some haue found this alteration and diversitie strange, supposing that the fault proceeds from the one or the other, the which is not for: but it is a true and well observed comparison, for according to the difference of wayes where they have bene, we must necessarily say, that when they meet, there must be difference of a day; the reason is, for that sayling from West to East, they always gaine of the day, finding the Sunne rising sooner: and contrariwise, those that saile from East to West, doe always lose of the day, for that the Sunne riseth later: unto them; and as they approach neerer the East or the West, they haue the day longer or shorter. In *Pere*, which is Westward in respect of *Spain*, they are about fixe hours behind; so as when it is noone in *Spain*, it is morning at *Pere*; and when it is morning here, it is mid-night there. I have made certaine proofe thereof, by the computation of Eclipses of the Sunne and Moone. Now that the *Portugals* haue made their navigations from West to East, and the *Cassians* from East to West, when they came to Ioyne and meet at the *Philippines* and *Macao*, the one hath gayed twelve hours, and the other hath lost as much; so as at one instant, and in one time, they finde the difference of four and twenty hours, which is a whole day.

Although we finde vents of fire in other places, as Mount *Arma* and *Vesuvius*, which now they call Mount *Soma*, yet is that notable which is found at the *Indies*. Ordinarily these *Volcanes* or Vents of be Rocks or Pikes of most high Mountaines, which raise themselves about the tops of all other Mountaines; vpon their tops they haue a Playne, and in the midst thereof a pit or great mouth, which defends euen unto the foot thereof; a thing very terrible to behold. Out of these mouths there issues smoke, and sometimes fire: some call little smoke, and haue in a manner no force of *Volcanes*, as that of *Arangua*, which is of an vnmeasurable height, and almost all fard. It cannot be mounted vpon in lesse then two dayes, yet they haue not among any these of fire, but only the reliques of former times, which the *Indians* use while they were Gentiles, and sometimes it doth cause a little smoke. The *Volcan* of *Mexico* which is neere to the Village of *Angeli*, is likewise of an admirable height, whereas they mount thirtie leagues in turning: from this *Volcan* issueth not continually, but sometimes, almost every day, a great exhalation or whirle-winde of smoke, which ascends directly vpon like to the foot of a Crosse-bow, and growes after like to a great plume of feathers, vntill it ceaseth quite, and is presently converted into an obscure and darke cloud. Most commonly it riseth in the morning after the Sunne rising, and almost when it settech. Although I haue seene it breake out as at other times. Sometimes it doth cast forth great store of ashes after this smoke. They haue not yet seene any fire come from it; yet they feare it will issue forth and burne all the Land round about, which is the best of all the Kingdomes: And they hold it for certaine, that there is some correspondence betwixt this *Volcan* and the *Sierre* of *Tlaxcala*, which is neere unto it, that causeth the great thunders and lightnings they doe commonly heare and see in those parts.

Some *Spaniards* haue mounted vpon to this *Volcan*, and given notice of the myne of sulphur to make powder thereof. Cortes reports the care he had to discover what was in this *Volcan*. The *Volcan* of *Guatemala* more renowned, as well for their greatneesse and height, as those that saile in the South Sea discover asure off, as for the violence and terror of the fire it casts. The three and twentieth day of December, in the yeere 1536, almost all the Citie of *Guatemala* fell with an Earthquake, and some people flaine. This *Volcan* had then fixe moneths together, 60 day and night cast out from the top, and vomited as it were, a flood of fire, the substance falling vpon the sides of the *Volcan*, was turned into ashes like unto burnt earth (a thing passing mans iudgement, to conceiue how it could cast so much matter from its centre during fixe moneths, being accustomed to cast smoke alone, and that sometimes with small flaesches.) This was written unto me being at *Mexico*, by a Secreatarie of the Audience of *Guatemala*, a man worthy of credit.

Of the
volcan
of
Venus
of
the
Chap. 3.Terrible
earth-
quake at
Gua-
temala.

Plin. l. 33. c. 6.

Symptoms
with gold.

Plin. l. 33. c. 6.

Of the place
where they
find quick-
silver, and how
they discover
their rich
mines in Gu-
atemala.
chap. 11.

barrell of quick-silver, the which did swimme about like unto Wood or Cork upon the Water. Plinie gives an exception herunto, saying, That gold alone doth sink and not swimme about it. I have not seen the experience; but it may be this growes, by reason that quick-silver by nature doth inuiron gold, and covers it, which is one of the most important properties it is in such sort, as it doth distinguish and separate it from any other body or metall where it is mixt: for this reason such take gold as will preferre themselves from the dangers and difcommodities of quick-silver. They have viad a remedie to disiole (in whose eares they had put quick-silver, to cause them to die secretly) to put little plates of gold into their eares (for that Gold hath the vertue to draw out Mercurie) and after they drew out their plates all white with the quick-silver, it did thicke vnto them. Being one day at Madrid, I went to see the exquisite workes which *Iacomo de Treco* (a rare workman of *Millan*) made for *Saint Isidore the Royall*, it was my hap to be there one day, when as they gilded certaine pieces of a counterable of brasse, which is done with quick-silver; and for that the fume of Mercurie is mortall, he told me that the workmen preferred themselves from this venome, by swallowing a double Duckard of gold rolled vp; the which being in the stomacke, drawes vnto it all the quick-silver that enters in fume by the Eares, Eyes, Nostrils, and Mouth, and by this meanes freed themselves from the danger of quick-silver, which the gold gathered in the stomacke, and after cast out by the excrements: a thing truly worthy of admiration. After the quick-silver hath purified and purged gold from all other metalls and mixtures, hee likewise separated from the gold his friend by the heate of the fire, the which purifies it from all quick-silver. Plinie sayes, that by a certaine arte and invention they did separate gold from quick-silver. It seemes to me the Ancients had no knowledge to refine silver by quick-silver, which as this day is the greatest vice, and chiefe profit of quick-silver: for that hee sayes plainly, that quick-silver ioynes with no other metall but with gold; and when hee makes mention of refining silver, hee speaks only but of the manner of melting; whereby wee may inferre that the Ancients had no knowledge of this secret. In truth, though there be a league and simpathy betwixt gold and quick-silver, yet where as the Mercurie findes no gold, it ioynes with silver, though not in the like manner as with gold; but in the end, it doth cleme and purge it from Earth, Copper, and Lead, amongst which the silver growes, without any neede of fire to melt it: yet must they use fire to separate it from the silver, as I will shew hereafter. Quick-silver has no account of other metalls, True of Gold and Silver; but contrariwise, it doth corrupt them, force and consume them, and flyeth from them as much as may bee. The which is likewise admissible, and for this cause they put it in earthen vessels, or in beales skins. For if it bee put in vessels of Copper, of Iron, or other metall, it presently pierceth and corrupts them. And therefore Plinie calleth it the poison of all things, for that it consumes and spoiles all. We finde quick-silver in the graves of dead men, which after it hath consumed the bodies, comes forth pure and whole. There hath beene likewise found in the bones and marrow of Men and Beasts, who having received it in time by the mouth and nostrils, congeales within them and pierceth enu into the bones: Therefore it is a dangerous thing to frequent for perillous and mortall a creature. It hath another property, which is, to runne and make a hundred thousand small drops, whereof no one is lost; bee they neuer so little, but they returne every way to their liquor. It is almost incorruptible, having nothing in a manner that may consume it. And therefore Plinie calleth it the eternall liquor. It hath yet another property, that although it doth separate Gold from Copper, and all other metalls; yet they that will gild Copper, Brasse, or Silver, use quick-silver as the meanes of this vnto: for with the helpe thereof they gild metalls. Amongst all the wonders of this strange liquor that seems to mee most worthy observation, that although it bee the weightiest thing in the world, yet it is conuerted into the lightest of the world, which is smoke, and suddenly the same smoke which is so light a thing, turns againe into so heauie a substance, as is the proper liquor of quick-silver, whereinto it is dissolved; for this smoke encountering the metall on high, being a solid body, or coming into a cold Region, suddenly it thickens and is conuerted into quick-silver; and if you set him once againe to the fire, hee doth likewise returne into smoke, to be refolued againe into quick-silver.

Quick-silver is found in a kinde of stone, which doth likewise yeild Vermillion, which the Ancients called *Minium*, and at this day they call the Images of crystall *Minerals*, which are painted with quick-silver. The Ancients made great account of this *Minium* or Vermillion, holding it for a sacred colour, as Plinie reports, saying, That the *Romans* were accustomed to paint the face of *Iupiter*, and the bodies of those that triumphed in *Epiphany*; yea, their Idols and their Countenances likewise had their faces coloured with this *Minium*. And this Vermillion was so esteemed at *Rome* (which they continue there to this day) that the *Romans* suffered it not to be refined in *Spain*, lest they should steale some of it; but they carried it to *Rome*, sealed up in a masse as they drew it out of the mine, and after refined it. They did yearly bring from *Spain*, especially from

from *Andalusie* about ten thousand pound weight, which the *Romans* valued as an infinite treasure, I have reported all this out of that Author, to the end that those which doe see what pallieth at this day in *Peru*, may have the content to know what chanced in former ages among the mightiest Lords of the world. I speake for the *Inguas Kings* of *Peru*, and for the natural *Indians* thereof, which have laboured and digged long in these Mines of Quick-silver, not knowing what Quick-silver was, seeking only for *Cinnabur* or Vermillion, which they call *Limp*, the which they esteeme much, for that same effect that Plinie reports of the *Romans* and *Epiphany*; that is, to paint the face and bodies of themselves and their Idols: the like hath beene much practised by the *Indians*, especially when they went to the warres, and wile it is in this day in their feasts and dancing, which they call flubbering, supposing that their faces and villages so flubbered, did much terrifie, and at this day they hold it for an ornament and beautifying: for this cause there were strange workes of Mines in the Mountains of *Guancacilla*, which are in *Peru*, neere to the Citie of *Guamanga*, out of the which they drew this Metall: it is of such a manner, that if at this day they enter by the caves or *Succubones*, which the *Indians* made in those dayes, they looke themselves finding no passage out: but they regarded not Quick-silver, which naturally is in the same substance or metall of Vermillion, neither had they knowledge of any such matter.

The *Indians* were not alone for so long a time without the knowledge of this treasure, but likewise the *Spaniards*, who vntill the years 1566. and 1567. (at such time as the licentiate *Castro* gouerned in *Peru*) discovered not the Mines of Quick-silver, which happened in this manner. A man of iudgement called *Herrique Narvaez*, a Portugall borne, having a piece of this coloured Metall, as I haue said, which the *Indians* call *Limp*, with which they paint their faces, and he beheld it well, found it to be the same which they call Vermillion in *Cathole*; and for that hee knew well that Vermillion was drawne out of the same metall that Quick-silver was, he conuincured these Mines to be of Quick-silver, went in the place whence they drew the Metall, to make trail thereof. The which hee found true, and in this sort the Mines of *Yelco*, in the territory of *Guamanga*, being discovered, great numbers of men went thither to draw out Quick-silver, and so to carry it to *Mexico*, where they refine Silver by the meanes of Quick-silver, wherewith many are enriched. This Countie of Mines which they call *Guancacilla*, was then peopled with *Spaniards* and *Indians* that came thither, and some fill to worke in these Mines of Quick-silver, which are in great numbers, and very plentiful: but of all these Mines, that which they call *Amador de Cabrera*, or of *Sainte*, is goodly and notable. It is a Rocke of most hard Stone, interlaced all with Quick-silver, and of that greatest use, that it appears about fourefoote *Vares* or yards in length, and fourte in breadth: in which Mine they haue many pits, and ditches, of threefoote and some times deeper, so as three hundred men may well worke together, such is the capacite thereof. This Mine was discovered by an *Indian* of *Amador de Cabrera*, called *Neuquena* of the Village of *Acoria*, the which *Amador de Cabrera* caused to be registered in his name. He was in suite against the *Procurer* of the place, but the *Justitie* was adjudged to him by sentence as the discoverer. Since hee sold his interest to another, for two hundred and fiftie thousand *Ducates*; and afterwards thinking he had bin deceived in the sale, he commenced an action against the buyer, being worth, as they say, about five hundred thousand *Ducates*; yea, some hold it to be worth a Million of Gold: a rare thing to see a Mine of that wealth.

When as *Don Francisco de Toledo* gouerned in *Peru*, there was one which had bin in *Mexico*, and observed how they refined Silver with Mercurie, called *Pere Fernandez de Pallo*, who offered to refine Silver at *Potosi*, with Mercurie and having made trial thereof in the year 1571 performed it with credit; then began they to refine Silver at *Potosi* with Quick-silver, which they transported from *Guamancilla*, which was a goodly helpe to the Mines; for by the meanes of Quick-silver they drew an infinite quantitie of metall from their Mines, whereof they made no account, the which they called *Serapunga*. For as it hath beene said, the Quick-silver purifies the Silver, although it be drie, poore, and of base alloy, which cannot be done by melting in the fire. The Catholike King draws from it Quick-silver mines, without any charge or hazard, almost foure hundred thousand pieces of a Mine, the which are foureteene reals a piece, or little less, besides the rights that rise in *Potosi*, where it is employed, the which is a great price. They doe yearly one with another draw from these Mines of *Guancacilla* eight thousand quintals of Quick-silver, yea and more.

Let vs now speake how they draw out Quick-silver, and how they refine Silver therewith. They take the stone or metall where they finde the Quick-silver, the which they put into the fire in pots of earth well luted, being well beaten. So as this metall or stone coming to melt by the heate of the fire, the Quick-silver separates it selfe, and goes forth in exhalation, and sometimes euen with the smoke of the fire, until it encounters some body where it flaks and congeales, and if it passe vp higher, without meeting of any hard substance, it mounts vp until it be cold, and then congeates, it falls downe againe. When the melting is finished, they stop the pots and draw forth the metall, sometimes staying until it be very cold, for it there remained

Labyrinth.

Mines of
Quick-silver
found.The manner
how to draw
out Quick-silver,
and how
they refine
Silver.
chap. 11.

remained any flame or viour, which should encounter them that should visitoe the pots, they were in danger of death, or to be benumbed of their limbes, or at the least to loose their teeth. And for that they pented an infinite quantity of wood, in the melting of these mettals, a Miller called *Rodrigo de Torres* found out a profitable invention, which was, to gather certaine furr which grows throughout all those Mountaines of *Pera*, the which they call *Tobo*, it is like vnto a hard reede wherewith they make their fire. It is a strange thing to seee the force which this furre hath in melting mettals, as much as the melting of iron; thus fills out, as *Pámia* laces, that there is gold which melts more easily with the flame of furre, than with the flames of coales. They put the Quick-silver thus molten into skinnies, for that it keepeth best in leather, & thus they lay it into the Kings floore-heape, from whence they carrie it by Sea to *Astoria*: for thence they lay it by Land vpon their shoote. There is yearlyly pented in *Potosí* for the refining of Mettals, about fix or seven thousand quintals of Quick-silver, besides that they draw from the Places (which is the earthen droffe of the first washings of these Mettals, which are made in claudens). The which plates they burne in their furnaces, to draw out the Quick-silver which remains in them, so that they have yearlyly drawn out of the Citie of *Potosí*, and in *Tarapaca*. The quantitie of mettals which they refine, (as some men say) is about six hundred thousand Quintals amount yearlyly to about three hundred thousand quintals, from the which he made the account) doo being molte and refined, they may draw yearlyly about two thousand quintals of Quick-silver. We must vnderstand there are diuers sorts of mettals, for some yeldde much Siluer, and waste little Quick-silver: others consume much Quick-silver, and yeldde little Siluer; and there are others which consume much Quick-silver, and yelddes much Siluer; and others that consume little Quick-silver, and also yeldde little Siluer: and as men encounter in these mettals, fo they grow rich, and as they encounter in the other, they become common. The richest mettall much Siluer, and consumes much Quick-silver; and likewise the second richest mettall yeldde little Siluer, and consumes much Quick-silver; and the third richest mettall yeldde much Siluer, and consumes little Mercurie. They first beat and grinde the mettall very small, with mortars and other instruments, which beate this Stone like vnto ranne Mole, and being well beate, they force it in a copper force, making the powder as small and fine, as if they were horse hair; these forces being well fitted, doe sift thrice quintals in a day and a night; then they put the powder of the metall into the vessels vpon furnaces, whereas they anoint it and mortifie it with brine, sucking to every five quintals of powder, five quintals of Salt. And thus they doe for chat the Sile sprikes out of the end of the pipe, and the end the Quick-silver may the more easily draw the Siluer out of the stone. After they put the Quick-silver into a sumppe of Italian lead, and cast out vpon the metall, which goes forth like a dewe, alwayns turning and flaring the metall, to the end it may be well incorporated.

Before the invention of these furnaces of fire, they did often mingle their metall with Quick-Silver, in great troughs, letting it settle downe, and then they mixt it, and flir it againe, untill they thought all the Quick-silver was well incorporate with the Silver, the which continued twentie daies and more, and at the last daies daies. Since they discovered (as the desire to get diligent,) that to shorten the time fire did much helpe: to incorporate Silver the sooner with Quick-silver, they invented these furnaces, whereon they set vessels to put in their metall, 40
and therein they mingle the Quick-silver with the Silver by little and little, in furnaces made for the purpose underneath; so as in five or six daies the Quick-silver is incorporate with the Silver. And when they finde that the Mercurie hath done his part, and assembled all the Silver, leaving nothing behinde, but it is well imbued as a Sponge doth water, drawing it from the Earth, Lead, and Copper, with the which it is engendered. Then after they separate it likewise from the Quick-silver, the which they do in this sort; they put the Metall in Galldrons, and vessels full of water, where with Mercurine whorles they tune the metall round about, as if they should wash it, untill they see the Mercurine whorles are all dissolved, and the metall is all runne away: The Silver and Quick-silver as most ponderous remaining in the bottom, the which 50
which remains, is like unto Sand; then they take it out and wash it againe in great quantities of wood, or keellers full of water, till drawing the earth from it, untill they leave the Silver and Quick-silver well clefend. There flippet away also some small portion of Silver and Quick-silver with the earth and drosse, which they call *walbrag*, the which they after with againe and draw out the remainder. When the Silver and Quick-silver are clefend and begin to shine, and there remains nothing but the earth, which they put in a vessel, where with they straine out very forcibly, so as till the Quick-silver passeth out, being not incorporate with the earth, the earth remains as a loaf of Silver, like to a mark of Almonds pressed to draw oyle. And being thus pressed, the remainder contains but the foxe part in Silver, and five in Mercurie. So as if there remains a mark of threecore pounds, ten are of Silver, and fiftie of Mercurie. Of these marks they make pinnies (as they call them) like pine apples, or sugar loaves, hollow within, the which 60
they commonly make of a hundred pound weight; then to separate the Silver from the Quick-silver, they take a little of the Silver, and put it in a vessel, where with they straine out the Silver, of Sugar-loaf, or vnto a keeler or boord, the which they call *lastron*, and therein they straine out the Silver, whereby the Quick-silver exhales in smoke, the which arising against the catchon of

Dangers by
Quick-silver.
Force of Straw
Pl. n. 33 & 4.
Abundance of
Metals.

Manner of
working.

CHAP. 2. § 4. Trial and Alloy of Silver. Engines and order of working.

[illegible][illegible]

to get Silver, which is tried by depots appointed by the King. The *Affay Master*, who is to give the alloy to ensure piece, they carry the bars of Silver to the *Affay*, where he cuts a small piece of currency to every one his number, for that they carry many at a time. The *Affay* is a small vessel made of one, the which he weighs sufficiently, and puts them into a *Crafs*, which is a small vessel made of burnt bones heated; after he places every cruffle in his order in the furnace, giving them the violent fire, then the *Mettall* melteth, and that which is lead, goes into smoke, and the copper fire, then the *Affay* diffuses, the Silver remaining most fine, of the colour of fire. It is a strange thing, that being thus refined, although it be liquid and molten, yet it never flows, were the mouth of the cruffle turned downwards; and it remaineth fixed, without the loss of a droppe. The *Affay Master* knoweth by the colour and other figures, when it is refined, then doth he take the cruffles from the fire, and weighs every piece carefully, observing what every one wants of cruffles from the fire, and weighs every piece again, to know what is little, and that which is want, diminisheth much; and accordingly he weighs it, he sees what alloy he bears, according to the which he makes every cruffle equally. Their ballance and weights are false, and their graines false, so that they cannot take them up with the hand, but with a small pair of pincers; and this small scale is made by candle-light, so that aye might moue the balance. For at this little the price of the whole barrel dependeth. In truth it is a very delicate thing, and requires a great dexterity.

Fine Silver for
work must be
alloyed.

Mar. 3.
Eccles. 24
Psal. 11.

Of their En-
gins to gr nd
the Metall,
and of their
triall of Siluer
Chap. 13.

 $\partial, \gamma,$

carrie an ill taste, full of sower kernels, and are like to bite Apples. Is is a tree here esteemed vpon the firme Land and at the Ilands, for they say it smells like to the *Tamagles*. The taste and fauour of this fruit is verie grosse, and the substance vnholefome. In Saint *Dominique* and other Ilands, there are whole Mountains full of these *Guaymas*, and they say, there was no such kindes of trees before the *Spaniards* came there, but that they brought them they know not from whence. This tree hath multiplied infinitely, for that there is no Beast that will eate the kernels or the grains, so as being thus scattered on the earth being hot and moist, it multiplies in this sort. In *Pera*, the *Guaymas* differs from others, for that the fruit is not red, but white, neither hath any ill smell, but is of a verry good taste, and of what sort of *Guaymas* fouer it be, the fruit is as good as the best of *Spain*, especially of those which they call *Guaymas de Adana*, and of other little white *Guaymas*. It is a fruit reasonably holefome, and agrees with the stomach, being of a strong digestion, and cold. The *Palma* commonly are hore and delicate. The *Palma* is a great tree, and carries a large leaf, which hath a fruit like to great Peares: within it hath a great stone, and all the rest is soft meate, so as when they are full ripe, they are as it were Butter, and have a delicate taste. This fruit is most vial in *Mexico*, having a thinnish skinn, which may be pilled like an Apple; they hold it for a verry holefome meate, and as I haue said, it declines a little from hence. These *Manayes*, *Guaymas*, and *Palma*, be the *Indians* Peaches, Apples, and Peares and yet would I rather choose them of *Europe*.

Almonds.

The *Marmalad* is that which they call *Capers*, or *Chicopates*, which have a sweet taste, and neere vnto the colour of *Marmalad*. Some *Crovels* (for so they called the *Spaniards* borne at the *Indies*) say that this fruit pallish all the fruites of *Spain* in excellencie: yet am I not of that opinion. Those *Chicopates* or *Capers*, wherein there is little difference, grow in the hottest parts of new *Spain*, neither haue knowledge of any such fruit in the firme Land of *Pera*. As for the *Blackemango*, it is that *Ammon* or *Guianama*, which grows in the firme Land, which is fashioned like vnto a Pear, a little sharpe and opened, within it is white, tender and soft like Butter, sweete and of a pleasing taste: It is no white meate, though they call it *Blackemango*.

Of many sorts of fruit trees of use, Almonds of the Andes, and Almonds of the Chicopates in Peru.

There are some grosse fruites, as those which they call *Lacunes* (of which fruit they speake in a Prologue, that it is a counterfeite pear.) The *Guaymas*, *Paches*, *Hobas*, and the Nuts which they call *Impressed* (which fruites seeme to many, to be the same kind of Nuts we haue in *Spain*. I do not thinke it good to passe a way vnder silence the *Chees* or *Indian Palmes*, by reason of a verry notable proprietie it hath. I call them *Palmas*, not properly, or that it beares Dates; but that they are trees like to other *Palmes*. They are high and strong, and the higher they grow, the broader they stretch out their branches. These *Chees* yeeld a fruit which they likewise call *Chees*, whereof they commonly make vessels for drinke in, and some they say haue a vertue against poison, and to cure the paine in the side. The nutte and meate being dried, is good to eate, and some neere in taste to greene Chitsuns. When the *Chees* is tender vpon the tree, the substance within it, is as it were Milke, which they drinke for daintinesse, and to refresh them in time of heate. I haue feene of these trees in Saint *Lucas de Port Rico*, and other parts of the *Indies*, and they report a wonderful thing, that euery month or moone, this tree casts forth a new branch of this *Chees*; so as it yeeldes fruit euell times in the year, as it is written in the *Apocalypsis* and in truth this semes like vnto it; for that all the branches are of different ages, some beginning, others being ripe, and some halfe ripe. These *Chees* are commonly of the forme and bignesse of a small Melon. There is of another kinde, which they call *Caguales*, the which is a better fruit, whereof there be some in *Chile*. They are somewhat lesse then Nuts, but more round. There is another kinde of *Chees*, which haue not the kernel so oyle, but within they haue a great number of small fruites like Almonds, like vnto the grains of a Pongranate.

Almonds.

These Almonds are thuse as bigge as those of *Cassida*, and relembe them in taste, though they be more sharpe, and likewise moist and oyle. It is a good meate, they vie it also in fasting, for lacke of Almonds to make Marshpanes, and such other things. They call them *Almonds of the Andes*, for that these *Chees* grow abundantly vnto the *Andes* of *Pera*; they are so strong and hard, as to open them, they must beate them with a great stone, when they fall from the tree. If they chance to hit any one on the head, he hath no more neede of any Surgeon. It is an incredible thing, that within the hollow of these *Chees*, which are no bigger than the rest, or little more, there are such a multitude of these Almonds. But as touching Almonds and other fruites, all trees much yeelde to the Almonds of *Chicopates*, which I cannot otherwise call. It is the most pleasing, delicate and wholefome fruit of all that I haue feene at the *Indies*.

Of many and diuers flowers, and of some sweet which yeelde only a flower, as how the Indians doe give them, Chap.

The *Indians* are great louers of flowers, and in new *Spain* more then in any other part of the world, and therefore they are accustomed to make many kindes of Nosegayes, which there they call *Sauibiles*, with such prettie varietie and art, as nothing can be more pleasing. They haue a custome amongst them, that the chiefeest man offer their *Sauibiles* or nosegayes in honour to Noblemen, and to their guests; and they presented vs with such abundance as we were pleased through that Countrey, as wee know not what to doe with them; and at this day they vie

the principall flowers of *Cassida*, to that end, for that they grow better there than here, as *Gilliflowers*, *Roses*, *Iasmine*, *Viols*, *Orange flowers*; and other sorts which they haue transported out of *Spain*. The Rose tree groweth too fast in some places, so as they beate his Roses. It chanced one day that a Rose tree was burned, and the stee which sprouted out, presently bare abundance of Roses, and thereby they learned to prune them, and to cut off the superfluous branches, so as at this day they yeelde reasonable store of Roses. But besides these kindes of flowers, which haue beene transported from hence, there are many others whose names I doe not know, whereof some are red, blew, yellow, violet and white; with a thousand different colours, which the *Indians* doe vie to carry on their heads, as feathers for ornament. True it is, that many of these flowers are only pleasing to the sight, having no good fauour; either they are grosse, or else they haue none at all; and yet there be some of an excellent faine. As those which grow vpon a tree termed by them *Floropando* or carry flower, which beares no floure, but only these flowers, which are greater than the Lillie, and are like to little Bells, all white, which haue within them small threads, as we see in the Lillie; it leaues not all the yeare to beare these flowers, whose smell is wonderfull sweete and agreeable, especially in the coole of the morning. The Viceroy *Don Francisco de Toledo* sent of these trees vnto King *Philip*, as a thing worthy to be planted in royall Gardens. In new *Spain* the *Indians* esteeme much of a flower, which they call *Valdehuel*, which signifieth flower of the heart, for that it beates the forme of a heart, and is not much lesse. The flower of *Granadilla* is held for an admirable thing, and they say, it hath in it the markes of the Passion, and that therein they note the nails, the pillar, the whips, and crowne of thornes, and the wounds, wherein they are not altogether without reason, and yet to find out and observe these things, it requires some pietie to cause beleefe: but it is verry exquisite and faire to the eye, although it haue no smell, &c.

The balme which comes from the West *Indies*, is not of the same kinde of right Balme which they bring from *Alexandria* or *Cairo*, and in old time was in *India*, which *Indes* (as *Thales* writeth) did of all the world possess this greatesse, vntill the Empereur *Philip* began to reigne. It is to be founde in the Tree from whence they draw the Balme, *Rome* and into *Italy*. At the *Indies* I haue feene the Tree from whence they draw the Balme, which is as big as a Pongranate tree, and something more the fashion: and if my memorie faile me not, it hath nothing common with the Vine, although that *Sirabo* writeth, that the ancient liquors are alike, as likewise they be in their admirable smell, & in the cure and healing of wounds in colour and substance, seeing they report of other Balmes that there is some white, yermillion, greene and blacke, the which is likewise fene in that of the *Indies*. And as they drew forth the ancient in cutting and making incisions in the bark, to cause the liquor to distill out, so doe they with that at the *Indies*, although it distills in greater abundance. And as in the ancient there is one kinde which is pure, the which they call *Opodelasma*, which be the verry tears that distill, so as there is another sort which is not so exquisite, the which they draw from the bark and leaves burned and boiled on the fire, the which they call *Xiboballum*. The like is also in the *Indies* Balmes; there is one pure that distills from the tree, and others that the *Indians* draw out by straining and boiling the leaves and wood. The Apostolike Sea hath giuen liberte to giue Creame of Balme at the *Indies*, and that they should vie it in Confirmation and other ceremonies which vie.

Next to Balme, Amber holds the second place: it is another liquor which is likewise sweet and medicinall, but more thicke, and turns into a paste of a hot complexion, and a good perfume. This Amber comes from new *Spain*, which hath countenance aboute other Prouinces in Gummies, Liquors, and iuyces of Trees, whereby they haue such abundance of matter, for perfume and physicks, as is the *Amni*, whereof there comes great store, *Opal* or *Sauicopal*, which is another kinde, *Storax* and *Iacura*, which haue excellent operations and haue a verry good smell fit for fumigations. Likewise the *Tucumaca* and *Carana*, which are also verry medicinall. They bring likewise from this Prouince oils of *Affike*, which the Physicians and Painters verry much the one for plaisters, the other to vermin their pictures. They bring also for the Physicians *Cassia fistula*, the which grows plentifully in Saint *Dominique*. It is a great tree, which carries the same as his fruit. They brought in the flee wherein I came from Saint *Dominique* fortie eight Quintals of *Cassia fistula*. *Salsiparilla* is not much knowne, for a thousand remedies wherein it is vied. There came in the same flee fiftie Quintals from the same Land. There is much of this *Salsiparilla* at *Pera*, and much excellent in the Prouince of *Guayguil*, which is vnder the Line. Many goe to be cured into this Prouince, and it is chopinion of some, that the pure water one which they drinke, giues them health, for that it palliseth by rootes as I haue said, from whence it drawes this vertue, so as there needs no great cooling or garments to make a man sweat in that Countrey. The wood of *Guayac*, which they call *Lignum Santum*, or *Indian wood*, groweth abundantly in the same Ilands, as is as heaue as Iron, so as it presently sinks in the water; hereof they brought in the same flee three hundred and fiftie Quintals, and they might haue brought twentie, yea, a hundred thousand of this wood, if there were vfe for it. There came in the same flee, and from the same Land, one hundred and thirtie Quintals of *Brasil* wood, the which is

Of Balme.

Plin. lib. 12. c. 27. Chap. 25.

Sirab. lib. 16. Chap.

Of Amber, and other Oyles, Gummies, and Drugs, which they bring from the Indies Chap.

Cass. fistula. Salsiparilla.

Lignum vici.

frange Regions, although I have not read that any Fowle hath pulled by flight to greiv a Gulfe, as the *Indian Ocean*, yet hold I it not altogether impossible, seeing the common opinion of Mariners, that you shall finde there two hundred leagues and more from the Land. And as *Arctus* doth reach, that birds endure the water eafily, having little refpiration, as we fee in *Sea fowle*, which dwe and remaine long under the water. Euen so we may say, that the Fowle which be at this prefent upon the mayne Land, and in the Ilands at the *Indus*, might paffe the Sea, refing themselves in fome small Ilands, or upon fome land which they discovered by a natural instinct (as *Pliny* reports of some) or peradventure falling into the water, when they were wearie of flying, and after being their flight nigh when they had a little rested. As for the Fowles which were in the *Indus* before the deluge, I believe certainly that they paffed by one way or other to some Land. But for other birds which we finde now in the *Indus*, 10 which are not in the *Indus* now, I am not so certain. For if their flight is short, it is more credible that they came thither out of the mayne Land, either by the hole which was in the *Indus*, or by the way which was made by the *Beasts*, did, which are of the same kindes that we sawe in *Europe*. Now at the *Indus* there are great birds, very heave, as *Afridge*, whereof there are many in *Persy*; but they doe vie sometimes to terrifie the *Indus* (becey as they doe goe with their burthens,

But leaving their birds that govern themselves without the care of man, but only for *hawking*, let's now speak of tame *Powles*. I wondred at *Hennes*, seeing there were some at the *Indies* before the *Spaniards* came there, which is well approved, for they have a proper name of the Countrey, and they call it a *Hen*, and the Eggs *Henys*, and they give the name *prouber* we have in our Countrey, to the whole tribe of *Indies*. I observed that *Hennes*, do 26
report that they have fene *Hennes* there like unto ours: we may conjecture that they give the name to a *Powle*, and so profitable men might carry them with them when they passed from one place to another, as we leat at this day the *Indians* in their travel: carry their *Hen* with them, or chicken upon the burthen they have on their shoulders: and likewise they carry them easily in their Cages of reedes or wood. Finally, there be at the *Indies* many kinds of bealls and birds, such as we have in *Europe*, as I have specified, and others for which I leave to others to dif-

How it could be possible; but as the Indies there should be any forms of beasts whereof there are none where else, Chap. 3.

It were a matter more difficult, to show, and prove, what beginning many and sundrie sorts of beasts had, which are found at the *Indies*, of whole kinds we have none in this Continent. For if the Creator hath made them there, we may not then alledge *non fuisse in *Nobis* Antea*, neither was it then necessary to draw all sorts of beasts and birds, if others were to be created anew. Moreover, we could not affirm, that the creation of the World was made and finished in six days, if there were yet other new kinds to make, and specially perfit beasts, and no less excellent then those that are knowne unto vs. If we lay then that all these kinds of Creatures were

[illegible]

other Regions, at the least if they be any where else, they are knowne to be carried from thence. Seeing then these Creatures came out of the Arke, as for example, the Elephant which wee finde only in the East *Indies*, and from thence haue beene imparted to other Regions, wee may say as much of these Creatures of *Perru*, and of others of the *Indies*, which are not found in any other part of the World.

part of it. We may likewise consider well upon this fubied, whether thefe beaſts differ in kind, and eſpecially from all others, or if this difference be accidental, which might grow by diſcrep-
ancies, as we fee in the lineages of men, ſome are white, or ſome blacke, ſome Giants, others
Dwarves: and in Apes, ſome have no taile, others have: and in Sheepe, ſome are bare, others have
fleeces, ſome great and ſtrong with a long necke, as thoſe of *Peru*; others weak and ſlender,
having a ſhort necke, as thoſe of *Califfe*. But to ſpeake directly, which I would by this Diſcourſe,
ſhewing only the accidental diſcrepancies, preſent the production of beaſts as the *Indians* do,
their honour to thoſe of *Europe*, who ſhall undertake a charge but will hardly diſagree with his
honour, for it were ſhall judge the kinds of beaſts by their properties, thoſe of the *Indians*
are ſo diſcrep, as it is to call an Egge a Cheſnut, to ſeek to reduce them to the knowne kinds
of *Europe*.

Of Fowles that are proper to the Indies, and Venison.

20 There are many kinds of noble Fowles at the *Indies*, either of the fame fort that ours be, or
of different. They fit not upon the ground, but hang vpon boughs, by strings or feathers
which they haue, and doe fit themselves like Flies or ayrie things. In *Pera* there are birds which
they call *Tammines*, so small, that oftentimes I haue doubted seeing them fite, whether they
were Bees or Butter-flies; but in truth they are birds. Contrariwise, those which they call
Candores, be at an exceeding greatnesse, and of such stature, that not only they will open a sheepe
and eate it, but also a whole calf. Those which they call *Auras*, and others of the like, which
my opinion are of the kinde of *Rauens* (for they are of a strange light colour, and haue a very quick sight,
being very fit to cleane see the tops of the highest Rocks, and in the morning they come to the Cities and Townes, sitting
on the tops of the highest buildings, where they attend and prey their prey. Their young haue white fea-
thers, as they report of *Rauens*, and do change into blacke.

there, as they report of Kadoon, and those of the Pagets, and resemble them something; they are esteemed
 10 *The Guadalupeans* are very curious in the variety of feathers, which they very far and pleasing. In *Spain* there are
 abundance of birds with excellent feathers, for as there be not any found in *Europe* like some
 20 *Spain* them, as was may be by the Images of feathers they bring from thence, and which are
 (with great reason) much valued and esteemed, giving cause of admiration, that with the fea-
 30 *thers* of birds, they should make to excell a work, and to be perfectly equal, as they themselves
 properly to be the true colours of a Painter, and have so lively and pleasing a regard, as the Paint-
 40 *ers* cannot exceed it with his pencil and colour, and some have been so far, as to make the
 workmen in this art will replicate the feathers, in this point, no advantage over them. *As to painting*
 50 *the pencil*, which is the *Spanish* style, made in this point, no advantage over them. *As to painting*
 the feathers of *Spain* his Republic, have in this point, no advantage over them. *As to painting*
 60 *the feathers*, which it was to put in a *Breviary*, His Highness did send them to King Philip his father,
 the which his Majesty beholding attentively, said, that he had never seen in so small a work,
 70 a thing of so great excellency and perfection. One day as they presented to Pope Sixtus *Quinto*,
 another figure bigger than this, wherein was the figure of *Saint Francis*, and that which
 80 *him* it was made of feathers by the *Spanish* style, to make the feathers to resemble the
 90 *with his fingers*, to see if he could not judge nor discern whether they were natural colours of feathers,
 or artificial done like gold, and other fine colours do call, and beholding them another way they
 100 *seem dead colours*. They make the best and goodliest figures of feathers in the Province of *Mexico*,
Amecmanac, and in the village of *Palmaro*. The manner is with small delicate Pencils they pull the
 110 *feathers* from the dead fowls, and with a fine palette they cunningly layne them out, so that
 they make the small and delicate feathers of their feathers, which is in this manner, as they
 120 *like unto them*, which are the feathers of the birds, which are the feathers of the birds, which are the
 130 *Images*, which are the feathers of the birds, which are the feathers of the birds, which are the
 140 *Images*, which are the feathers of the birds, which are the feathers of the birds, which are the

There are also other great birds, which have excellent and fine feathers, whereof they make plumes of sundrie colours, especially when they goe to warre, enriching them with gold, and silver very artificially, which was a matter of great price. They haue the same birds still; but they are not so curious, neither doe they make so many gentill deuices as they were wont. There are other birds at the *Indies*, contrarie to these of so rich feathers, the which (besides that they are

From Rome,
Targues.

Of Peru, Gu-
inea, and In-
dia Muscovy-
Chap. 45.

Two kinds

Side Arabes is
a hundred and
fifty pounds
weight.

the *Bezar* stone they finde in them, whereof wee will intreate hereafter. There is another kinde of beasts, which they call *Targues*, which likewise are wilde, and more nimble then the *Vicungas*. They are greater of body, and more hot. They have fast eares and hanging; they goe not in troups as the *Otingues*. I haue not seene them but alone, and most commonly in high places. They also draw *Bezar* stones from these *Targues*, which are greater, and haue more operation and vertue.

There is nothing at *Peru* of greater riches and profit then the Cattell of the Country, which our men call *Indian Sheepe*, and the *Indians* in their generall language call them *Lama*. For all things well considered, it is a beast of the greatest profit and least charge of any that I know: from them they draw meate and clothing, as from the sheepe of *Spain*. Moreover, they haue the benefit to carry all things they haue need of, vying them to beare their burthens: and they haue no need either of shoes or saddles, nor yet of oates, but he serueth his Master for nothing, feeding on the grasse he findes in the fields; so as God hath furnished them of Sheepe and Mares, and all in one beast. And as it is a good Nation, so would hee in this point free them from charge, for that there is much pasture vpon the *Sierre*; and this kinde of Cattell hath no need of any other charge. There are two kinds of these Sheepe or *Lamas*, the one they call *Pacos*, or Sheepe bearing wool, and the others are bare, and haue little wool, so are they better for burthen; they are bigger then great Sheepe, and lesse then Calues, they haue a very long necke, like to a Camel, whereof they haue good need for being high of stature, they haue need of a long necke, else should they be deliuid from colour, like all white, or black, or black, some grey and some spotted, which they call *Chamores*. The *Indians* had great superstitions in choosing the beasts for sacrifices, of what colour they should be, according to the diuinitie of Season and Sacrifices. Their flesh is good, although it be hard, but that of their Lambs is the better, and the most delicate that can be eaten; yet they eate not many, for that the chiefe fruit and profit they yeild, is their wool, to make clothes, and their seruice to carry burdens. The *Indians* make fluffes of this wool wherewith they clothe themselves: the one is grosse and common, which they call *Huana*, and the other fine and delicate, which they call *Cumbi*, they make Carpets and Coverings, and other exquisite works, which last long, and haue a very faire lustre, like balis silk; and that which is most rare, is their manner of weaving their workes, being both sides alike, so as you shall not finde any end in a whole piece. The *King* of *Peru* had many chiefe workmen, to make this worke of *Cumbi*; and the which, for the most part, were resident in the Province of *Capachaco*, ioyning to the great Lake of *Titicaque*. They die this wool into diuers fine colours, with sundrie kinde of herbes, whereof they make many sorts of workes both coarse and fine. All the *Indians*, both men and women, worke in the *Sierre*, and haue their Loomes in their houses, hauing no need to buy any fluffes for their necessaries. Of the flesh of these Sheepe they make *Cushchery*, or dried flesh, the which will last very long, whereof they make great account. They are accustomed to drinke troups of these Sheepe with burthens, and to goe in bands, three hundred, five hundred, yea a thousand in a companie, with Wine, Mays, Goats, Chusos, Quick-silver, and all other kinde of merchandise, and of Silver, which is the best of all. They carry barres of Silver from *Peru* to *Ayaco*, which is three foute and ten leagues. I haue often wondered to see these troups of sheepe laden with a thousand or two thousand barres of Silver, and much more, which is about three hundred thousand ducats, without any other guard or refore then some *Indians*, which leaue onely to guide these sheepe, and to lade and vnlade them, or at the most, some few *Spaniards*; and they sheepe all night in the middle of the fields, without other guard: and yet in so long a way and to weake a guard, they neuer finde want or losse of any thing in so great a treasure of Silver, so safe is the way in *Peru*. The burthen which one of these sheepe doth commonly carry, is of four or five Arrobes: when their voyage is long they goe not above two, three, or four leagues at the most on a day. Those that guide these troups, haue their ordinarie lodgings, where they are assured to haue water and pasture, and there they vnlade and set vp their Tents, making fire, and dressing their meates, which is not painful, although it be a desperate and slow manner of trauell. When there is but one dayes journey, one of these Sheepe will beare eight Arrobes in weight, or more, and beares this burthen eight or ten leagues in a day, as the poore Souldiers were wont to doe, when they marched through *Peru*. This kinde of Cattell delights most in a cold aire, and for this cause they liue vpon the *Sierre*, and die in the *Llanos*, by reason of the heat. Sometimes these sheepe are all covered with ice and frost, and yet they continue sound and well. The bare sheepe are pleasant to behold, for they will fly vpon the way, crying vp their necks, and will looke vpon any one very wildly, and so they reman a long time, without mouing or any threat of feare, which giveth occasion of laughter, seeing them thus to stand. And yet sometimes they doe grow amazed suddenly, and runne away with their burthens, men to the highest Rocks, so as nor being able to come vnto them, they are constrained to kill them with an Harquebuse, lest they should lose their barres of Silver, which they sometimes carry. The *Pacos* will grow reafie vnder their burthens, lying down, and will endure to be cut in a thousand pieces before they will die when this humor takes them; whereof the proumberg grows in *Peru*, so say that

is reafie, to signifie, he is obtinate; for that when any of these beasts is moode, it is with excellence: the remedie they haue is, to stay it and drive by the *Paco*, making much on him, vntill the fit be past, and that he rise: and sometimes they are forced to lay two or three houres. They haue a disease like to scabs, which they call *Carache*, whereof they commonly die. The *Andians* haue a remedie, to burie them quick that had the *Carache*, lest they should infect the rest, being a very contagious disease, and goes from one to another. An *Indian* that hath one or two of these sheepe, it is not reputed poore, for one of them is worth fixe or seuen pieces of silf, and more, according to the time and place.

The *Bezar* stone is found in all these beasts before mentioned, which are proper to *Peru*. Of the *Bezar* stone, whereof some Authors of our time haue written whole bookes, which they may say that desire to haue a more particular knowledge. For the present subiect it shall be sufficient to say, that this stone which they call *Bezar*, is found in the stomacke and belly of this beast, sometimes one alone, sometimes two, three, and four. They are very different in forme, greainesse and colour, for that some are small like Filberts; and some like Walnuts; some like Red-colour, for that some are bigge as a Hen's egge; and some some like as bigge as an Orange; in some some are round, others in fashion like to Lentils, and many other formes. For their colour some are blacke, some white, some grey, darke greene, and others, as if they had beene gillour, some are blacke, some white, some grey, darke greene, and others, as if they had beene gillour. It is no certaine rule to iudge the best and most fine by the colour or forme. All these stones are made and fashioned of diuers films and skins vpon yon another. In the Province of *Lama* and 20 other Provinces of *Peru*, they finde these stones in diuers kinde of beasts, both wilde and tame, as in the *Guanacos*, *Pacos*, *Indians*, and *Targues*, some adde an other kinde, which they lay are wilde Goates, which the *Indians* call *Cypri*. These other kinde of beasts are very well known in *Peru*, whereof we haue already discoursed. The *Guanacos* or *Countrie sheepe*, or *Pacos*, haue commonly the lesser stones, and blacke, neither are they so much approued for the vfe of physick. They draw the greatest *Bezar* stones from the *Vicungas*, and they are grey, or white, or of a darke greene, which are held for the better. They esteeme those of the *Targues* for the most excellent, whereof there are some reasonable bigge: they are commonly white, inclining to grey; and they haue the stones commonly bigger and thicker then the rest.

They finde the *Bezar* stone equally both in Male and Female. All beasts that ingender it, 30 chaw the cuid, and commonly feede vpon the Snow and Rocks. The *Indians* repore and teach by tradition from their Fathers and Ancients, that in the Province of *Lama*, and in other Provinces of *Peru*, there are many herbes and venomous beasts, which poison the water and the pastures where they eate and drinke, and where they breathe: amidst which venomous herbes there is one very well knowne of the *Vicungas*, by a natural instinct, and of other beasts that ingender the *Bezar* stone, which eate this herbe, and by means thereof they preferre themselves from the poisoned waters and pastures: and they say, that of this herbe the stone is compounded in the stomacke, whence it drawes all the vertue against poison, and other wonderfull effects. This is the opinion and tradition of the *Indians*, discomured by men of great experience in the Kingdom of *Peru*, which agrees with reason, and with that which *Pirae* reports of the 40 Mountaine Goats, which are nourished and fed vpon poison without suffering any harme. The *Indians* being demanded, why the Sheepe, Kine, Goats, and Calues, such as are in *Cashile*, haue not the *Bezar* stone, saying that they feede on the same Rocks: their answer is, That they beloeue not, that the beasts of *Cashile* eate of that herbe, or that they haue found the *Bezar* stone in Stags and fallow Deere. This seems to agree with our knowledge, for that in new *Spain* they finde the *Bezar* stone, although there be no *Vicungas*, *Pacos*, *Targues*, nor *Guanacos*, but onely Stags, in some of which they finde these stones.

One thing is worthy admiration, that they grow and are fashioned vpon very strange things, as vpon the tinge of a Point, vpon a Pin, or a piece of Wood, which they finde in the centre of this stone, and yet doe they not hold it false, for that the best will swallow 50 it, and the stone thicken vpon it, and grows one vpon another, and so it increaseth. I did see in *Peru*, two stones fashioned vpon *Pigons* of *Cashile*, which made vs to wonder much, for that in all *Peru*, we had not seene any *Pigons* of *Cashile*, if they were not brought from *Spain*, which seemes to mee very extraordinary. This little may suffice touching the *Bezar* stone. They bring other physicall stones from the *Indians*, as the stone of *Hyale*, or of *Rae*, the blood stone, the stones of Milke, and of the Sea. Those which they call *Corvinae*, for the Heart, whereof there is no need to speake, hauing nothing common with the subiect of beasts, whereof wee haue intreated: which gues vs to vnderstand how the great Master and Author of all, hath imparted his benefits and wonderful secrets, to all parts of the World; for the which he is to be glorified for euer.

R Eader, I haue here added this worke, for the better and more particular knowledge of the Natural History of the West Indies. This Author Gonzalo Fernandez de Ovando did first write a Summarie to Charles the fifth (out of which the most part of this is taken) An. 1525, and after that

write this General History, emerging today to be too written before this Summer, as I shall the desire to write these Particlar first of which containing principally the Spanish Affairs, and N^o a small difference to the Islands, in the twelve Bookes, yet herein in Remission therof I have the second (in which I have beene already employed) to be written in the manner of a Relation, and to be divided into six severall Chapters, which shall be the particular Pillars of the Nations, Reells, and other Creatures of this America, and to be the great light of natural knowledge of thoe parts. As for the Spanish side we have therein sufficient written in story. But Acosta and Ovando have been deferred of the finishing of Nature, this is, of the knowledge of God in this. In the former published I have added many things translated by the Mess^{rs} Escribanos, and in this I have added some things, but concerning this, and translated by the Mess^{rs} Escribanos I shall return.

CHAP. III.

Extracts of GONZALO FERDINANDO DE OVIEDO his Summarie
and Generall Historie of the Indies.

Of the mynes of gold, and the manner of working in them.

His partur of the mynes of Gold, is a thing greatly to be noted, and I may much better speake herof then any other man, forasmuch as there are now twelue 30 yeeres past since I serued in the place of the Surveyor of the melting shops, pretending to the gold mynes of the *prime Land*, and was the Gouernour of the mynes of the Catholike King *Dons Ferdinando*, after whole departure from this life, I seru'd long in the same Riuers in the Name of your Maiestie. The myne or vne which ought to be followed, ought to be in a place which may fland to sue much of the charges of the Labourers, and for the accomministration of other necessarie things, that the charges may be recompensed by the myne. The myne which is to be followed, is that which is in the *best Water*, is the best, and holdeth somewhat of Copper: of this they make Bracelets and Chains, and the myne they clofe their Jewels which their Women are accustomed to weare, and esteemed more thenall the riches of the World. The manner how gold is gathered, is this, either of such as is found in *Zuana*, that is to say, in the Plaines and Riuer of the Champhine country being without Trees, whether the Earth be with grasse or without, or of such as is sometimes found on the Land without the Riuer in places where Trees grow, so that to come by the fame, it shall be requisite to cut downe many great and trees. But after which fouer of these two manners it is found, either in the Riuer or Breaches of waters, or else in the earth, I will then how it is found in both these places, and how it is to be searched and purged.

When the myne or vne is discovered, this shall be first by searching and digging in such a place, where the myne or vne kens doe appeare to kinchill men apt for the generation of gold, and to hold gold: and when they haue found it, they follow the myne, and labour it, whether it be in the Riuer, or in the Playne, as I haue said. And if it be found on the Playne, first they make the place very deare where they intend to digge, then they digge eight or ten fote in length, and as much in breadth: but they goe no deeper than a span or two, or more, as shall seeme best to the Master of the myne, digging equally, then they walk all the earth which they haue taken out of the said place, and if herein they finde any gold they take it, and if not, they digge a span deeper, and walk the earth as they did before, and then all so, till they haue digged to the depth of sixteene fotes, as the earth as before, vntill they come to the hard rocke or flane: and if in this digging they finde no gold there, they follow no further to leake gold in that place, but goe to another part. And it is to be vnderstood, that when they haue found the myne, they follow it indigging, in the same measure in leuell and depth, vntill they haue made an end of all the myne which that place containeth, if it appeare to be rich. This myne ought to consist of certaine fere or paces in length or breadth, according to certaine orders determined, and within that compasse of earth, it is not lawfull for any other to digge for gold: And where as endeth the myne of him that first found the gold, immediately it is lawfull for any other man that will, with a Raffe to assigne himselfe a place by the first found myne, and digge in the same manner, and as the first digger did, and take (that is, such as are found in the Playnes) ought euer to be bought nee to some Riuer or Brooke, or Spring of water, or Dike, or landing Place, to the end that the gold may be washed for the which purpose they vie the labour of certaine *Indians*, as they doe other in digging of the myne. And when they haue digged out the myne, they fill certaine Trays with that earth, which other *Indians* haue the charge immediately to recieve at their hands, and to carry those Trays of earth to the water, where it may be washed: Yet do not they diat bring it with it, but deliver it to another, putting it out of their owne Trays into theirs, which they haue because it is hard to receme it. Their Walkers for the molt part are the *Indians* women, and heade of this worke is of the *Indians* men, and then the *Indians*. Their women wash the earth, and are accustomed to sit by the water side, with their legges in the water euen up to the knees, or kiffe, as the place

Gold of India
on base.

Manner of
mynes and
searching for
gold.

Gold in
BYDGES.

Spanish came
homes for
village of
Mynce.

Water a good neighbour.

Women gold
waivers.

place forth their purple: and thus holding the *Trayes* with earth in their hands by the handles thereof, and putting the same into the water, they moue them round about after the manner of fitting, with a certain spinnell, in fish for that there stretch no more water into the *Trayes* then forth their tune, and with this selfe same spinell they drawe the same water into the *Trayes*, they moue them round about after the same doe the side of the *Vatell*, and receive the same water on the other side thereof, so that by this means by little and little, the water stretcheth the earth the lighter substance of the *Trayes*, and the *Gold* as the heavier matter resteth in the bottom of the fame, being round and hollow in the middle like unto a *Barbers* *Basin*. And when all the earth is auided, and the *Gold* hath beene gathered together in the middle, they moue the same earth which they wash continually as before.

Tray, they pursue a part, and returne to take more earth, when they want continually to beate
Furthermore it is to be noted, that for every two *Indians* that walke, it is requisite that two o-
ther serve them to bring earth from the Mine, and other two to breake the same small, and fill
their Trays therewith. Also beside these Labourers, it is necessary that there be other people in
the place where they worke and rest in the night: these are such as make their bread, and pro-
vide for victuals, and other necessities. So that to conclude, there are in all, five persons ordi-
narily assigned to every Tray of walwers.

[illegible][illegible]

60 Sometimes there are found grains of Gold of great quantity, and of great weight about the earth, and sometimes also vnder the earth: And the greatest of all other that was found to this day in the Indies, was that which was lost in the Sea about the Island Spania, which weighed three thousand and two hundred of Castellons of Gold, which are in value four thousand and hundred thirtie and eight Castellons of Gold, which weigh one Arreua and fifteen pound, or thirtie and two pound, after twelve ounces to the pound, which make threethousand and thirty Markes: And I saw in the year next 55. in the City of Mexico, a great Mass of Gold, which was worth in value six hundred and thirtie thousand pounds, which are fourteen Markes, and six hundred and thirtie thousand Castellons of Gold every Mark: the other was of ten Markes, which are five pounds of like value, and of very good Gold of two and twenty carats, and better: There are also found many other great grains, although not equally vnto these in bignesse: And forasmuch as I have spoken of Gold, I have thought good to declare somewhat how the Indians can use very excellently gold full Vessels of Copper and bafe Gold as they make: for they can

Other Labour

Five to a tray.

Gold in River
or powder,

Goldengendered on hill tops.

His reason

Some may think that coles, &c. & other *ludibrid nature*, naturally grow there.

Gold in
grain.
One huge
piece of gold.

of A' Marke is a pound of 8. ounces *summa* 16. pound weight eight ounces, alter e. 12. ounces to the pound, *Indian* golding

give them fo faire and flourishing a colour, that all the maffe which they gilt, appeared as though it were Gold of two and twentie caratts, and better. This colour they give with a certaine hearbe, as though it were wrought by the art of any Goldsmith of *Spain* or *India*, and would of them be esteemed as a thing of great riches and a secret manner of gilding. For the desire that our men have to Gold, they nothing esteeme the Copper, although there might great commodity and profit be had thereby, and also by other Metals, which they nothing regard, excepte Silver, which is found abundantly in that part of the firme land which is called *New Spain*.

Of the manner of fishing for Pearles.

The *Indians* exercise this kind of fishing for the most part in the Coasts of the North in *Guayana* and *Cumana*, and many of them which dwell in the Houses of certaine particular Lords in the Islands of *San Domingo* and *Santa Iohannis*, resort to the Island of *Chubagua*, for this purpose. Their custome is to goe fast, fixe, or seven, or more in one of their Canoas or Barques, early in the morning to some place in the Sea therabout, where it appeareth unto them that there should be great plenty of those shell fishes (which some call *Mucclis*, and some *Oysters*) wherein Pearles are ingendred, and there they plunge themselves under the water, even unto the bottome, suing one that remaineth in the Canoa or Boat, which hee keepeth still in one place as neere as he can, looking for their returre out of the water: And when one of them hath beene a good while under the water, he riseth vp, and commeth swimming to the Boat, entering into the same, and leaving there all the *Oysters* which he hath taken and brought with him (for in these are the Pearles found) and when he hath there rested himselfe a while, and eaten part of the *Oysters*, he returneth againe to the water, where hee remaineth as long as hee can endure, and then riseth againe, and swimmeth to the Boat with his prey, where hee resteth him selfe, and then continueth comf by course, as do all the other in like manner, being all most expert Swimmers and Divers: And when the night draweth nigh, they returne to the land to their houses, and present all the *Oysters* to the Master or Steward of the house of the Lord, who hath the charge of the said *Indians*, and when he hath given them somewhat to eat, he layeth vp the *Oysters* in fine custodie, untill he have a great quantitie thereof, then he causeth the same Fishermen to open them, and they find in every of them Pearles, either great or small, two, or three, or foure, and sometimes five or fixe, and many small graines, according to the beralitie of nature. They faue the Pearles both small and great which they have found, and either eat the *Oysters* if they will, or call them away, having fo great a quantitie thereof, that they in manner abhorre them. Their *Oysters* are of hard Bell, and not so pleasant in eating as are ours of *Spain*. This Island of *Chubagua*, where this manner of fishing is exercised, is in the North Coast, and is no bigger then the Island of *Zeland*. Oftentimes the Sea increaseth greatly, and much more then the Fishers for Pearles would, because whereas the place is very deepe, a man cannot naturally rest at the bottome, by reason of the abundance of siltie substances which is in him, as I have oftentimes proved. For although he may by violence and force descend to the bottome, yet is his feet lifted vp againe, so that hee can continue no time there: and therefore where the Sea is very deepe, these *Indian Fishers* vnto to tie two great stones about them with a cord, on each side one, by the weight whereof they descend to the bottome, and remaine there untill themselfe to rise againe, at which time they vnbelt the stones, and rise vp at their pleasure. But this their prompt and agilitie in swimming, is not the thing that causeth them most to marvel: But rather to consider how many of them can stay in the bottome of the water for the space of one whole houre, and some vnder or less, appearing as one is current hereunto when another. An other thing there is which seemeth to me very strange; and this is, that whereas hee oftentimes demanded of some of these Lords of the *Indians*, in the place where they are accustomed to fish for Pearles, being but little and narrow, will not in short time be venterly with out *Oysters*, if they continue them to fast: They all answered me, that although they be consumed in one part, yet if they goe a fishing in an other part, or an other Coast of the land, or at some other contrary wind, and continue fishing there also untill the *Oysters* be likewise consumed, and then returne againe to the first place, or any other place where they fished before, and emptied the same in like manner, they find them againe as full of *Oysters* as though they had never bene fished. Whereby we may iudge, that these *Oysters* either remove from one place to another, as doe other fishes, or else that they are ingendred and increase in certaine ordinarie places. This land of *Cumana* and *Chubagua*, where they fish for these Pearles, is in the twelfth degree of the part of the said Coast which inclineth toward the North. Likewise Pearles are found and gathered in the South Sea, called *Mare del Sur*, and the Pearles of this Sea are very bigge, yet not so bigge as they of the land of Pearles, called *delas Perlas*, or *Margarita*, which the *Indians* call *Torarequi*, lying in the Gulfe of *Saint Michael*, where greater Pearles are found, and of greater price, then in any other Coast of the North Sea, in *Cumana*, or any other part. I speake this as a true selftestimonie of my sight, having bene long in that South Sea, and making curious inquisition to be certainly informed of all that pertayneth to the fishing of Pearles. From this land of *Torarequi*, there was brought a Pearle of the fisher of a Peare, weighing thirte and one Carats,

Men continue
an houre vnder
water.

Naturall fac-
ciedion.

Of this read
more largely
in the Decade.

Large Pearle.

Carats, which *Petrus Arias* had among a thousand and so many pounds weight of other Pearles, which he had when Captaine *Gaspar Morales* (before *Petrus Arias*) piloted to the said land in the year 1515, which Pearle was of great price. From the said land also, came a great and very round Pearle, which I brought out of the Sea, this was as bigge as a small pellet of a Stone-throw, and of the weight of twentie and fixe Carats: I bought it in the Citie of *Panama*, in the Ilea of *Sor*, and paid for it four hundred and fiftie times the weight thereof of good Gold, and as I retorne youres in my custodie, and after my returre into *Spain*, sold it to the Earle of *Nueva Marquessa* of *Senetas* great Chamberlaine to your Maiestie, who gave it to the Marquess his Wife, the Ladie *Mencia de Mendoza*. I thinke verily that this Pearle was the greatest, fairest, and roundest that hath beene seene in those parts. For your Maiestie ought to vnderstand, that in the Coast of the Sea of *Sor*, there are found a hundred great Pearles round after the fashion of a Peare, to one that is perfectly round and great.

Of the familiaritie which certayne of the Indians haue with the Deuill, and how they receive answer of him of things to come, and other Superstitions.

When the *Indians* beginne their batraille, or goe to any combate, or attempt any other great matter, they haue certaine eldest men, whom they reuerently esteeme, and call them *Teguas*, which in their tongue is as much to say as Masters: notwithstanding that they call every man, that is cunning in any Science, by the same name, as Fishers, Fowlers, Hunters, or makers of Nets. These *Teguas* therefore, they call the Masters of their answers, because they speake with *Teyra*, that is, the *Deuill*, and bring them answer what he faith, either as touching such things as they haue to doe, or shall chaunce to them the day following, or many dayes to come. For the *Deuill*, being fo ancient an Astronomer, knoweth the times of things, and seeth how they are naturally directed and inclined, and maketh them beleue that they come fo to passe by his ordinance, as though he were the Lord and mouer of all that is and shall be: and that he giueth the day light, and rain, causeth tenpest, and ruleth the fluxions of times, giuing life, or taking away life, at his pleasure: By reason whereof, the *Indians* being deceived of him, and seeing also such effects to come certainly to passe as he hath told them before, beleue him in all other things, and honour him in many places with Sacrifices of the blood and lyes of men, and odorous Spices: And when God disposeth the contrary to that which the *Deuill* hath spoken in Oracle, whereby he is proued a Lye, because the *Teguas* to perswade the people that he hath changed his mind and sentence for some of their sins, ordealeth some such lye as liketh him best, being a skilfull Master in such subtil and craftie devices, to deceiue the simple and ignorant people, which hath small defence against so mightie, and craftie an Adversarie. And as they call the *Deuill* *Teyra*, so doe they in many places call the Christians by the same name, thinking that they greatly honour them thereby, as indeed it is a name very fit and agreeable to many of them, having laid apart all honestie and vertue, liuing more like Dragons then men, among their simple people.

Before the Inhabitantes of the land of *Hispavilla* had receiued the Christian Faith, there was among them a Sect of men, which liued follooly in the Deserts and Woods, and led their life in Silence and Abstinence more strictly then euer did the Philosophers of *Pythagoras* or *S. G. Pictus*, obtaining in like manner the eating of all things that liue by blood, contented only with such Fruits, Herbes, and Trees, as the Deserts and Woods ministered vnto them to eat: The Professors of this Sect were called *Pagans*. They gaue themselfe to the knowledge of naturall things, and vied certayne secret Magick Operations and Superstitions, whereby they had familiaritie with Spirits, which they shewed into their owne bodies, as such times as they would take vpon them to tell of things to come, which they did in manner as followeth. When any of the Kings had occasion to call any of them vnto the Deserts for this purpose, their custome was to send them a portion of their fine Bread of *Casabi* or *Mato*, and with humble request and suite to desire them to tell them of such things as they would demand. After the request granted, and the place as day appointed, the *Paues* commeth with two of his Disciples waiting on him, where the one bringeth with him a Vessel of a secret Water, and the other a little Silver Bell. When hee commeth to the place, hee sitteth downe on a round stone made for him of purpose: after hauing his Disciples also one standing on the one hand, and the other on the other, euen the presence of the King and certaine of his Nobles (for the common people are not admitted to these Mysteries) and turning his face toward the Desert, he becometh his Inchantment, and calleth the Spirit with loud voyce by certaine names, which no man vnderstandeth but hee and his Disciples. After hee hath done thus a while, if the Spirit yet dete his coming, hee drinketh of the said Water, and therewith wazeth hot and fume, and inwardly turneth his Inchantment, and letteth himselfe blood with a thorne, naturally turning himselfe, as we read of the furious Syds, not ceasing untill

By the compa-
sation of the
net, faure
graines make
a Carat.

Deuill Impos-
ture.

Pythagoras
S. G.

Indies contin-
ence or con-
sultations.

Adders.

I have also fence in the firme Land a kinde of Adders, very small, and of seven or eight foot long; these are so red, that in the night they appeare like burning coles, and in the day seeme as red as blood, these are also venomous, but not so much as the Vipers. There are other much lesse and shorter, and blacker it they come out of the Rivers, and wander sometimes farre on the Land, and are likewise venomous. There are also other Adders of a russet colour: these are somewhat bigger then the Viper, and are hurtfull and venomous. There are likewise another sort of many colours, and very long of the selfe law one in the year of Christ 1515 in the Island of Hispaniola, neere unto the Sea coasts, at the foote of the Mountaines called *Pedernales*. When this Adder was slain, I measured her, & found her to be more then twenty foot long, and somewhat more then a mans fist in bignesse: and although the had three or foure deadly wounds with a Sword, yet dyed she not, nor stunk the same day, in so much that her blood continued warme all that time. There are also in the Marishes and deserts of the firme Land many other kinds of Lizards, Dragons, and diuers other kinds of Serpents, whereof I intend not here to speake much, because I have more particularly entreated of these things in my general Historie of the West Indies. There are also Spiders of marvellous bignesse, and I have seene some with bodie and legges bigger then a mans hand extended every way, and I once saw one of such bignesse, that only her body was as bigge as a Sparrow, and full of that Launce whereof they make their webbes: this was of a darke russet colour, with eyes greater then the eyes of a Sparrow, they are venomous, and of terrible shape to behold. There are also Scorpions, and diuers other such venomous worms. Furthermore in the firme Land, there are many Toades, being verie noxious and hurtfull by reason of their great multitude: they are not venomous, they are seene in great abundance in *Dereena*, where they are so big that when they die in the time of drought, the bones of some of them (and especially the ribs) are of such greatnesse, that they appeare to be the bones of Cats, or of some other beasts of the same bignesse. But as the waters diminish, & the moisture consumeth in the time of drought (as I have said) they also consume themselves, until the year next following when the rain and moisture returne, at which time they are seene againe. Nevertheless, at the present there is no such quantitie of them, as was wont to be, by reason that as the Land is better cultivated by the Christians, as well by the sowing of Woods and Shrubs, as also by the Plucking of Kine, Horles, and other beasts, so it appeares that this poison diminisheth daily, whereby that region becometh more holefome and pleasant. These Toades sing after three or foure sort, for some of them sing pleasantly, other like ours of *Spanne*, some also whistle, and some make another manner of noise: they are likewise of diuers colours, as some greene, some russet or gray, and some almost blacke, but all of sorts they are great and filthie, and noisive by reason of their great multitude, yet are they not venomous, as I have said.

Dragons.

Spiders huge.

Toades.

Their renning.

Singing.

Crabs or rather Tomatoes.

Serpents called *Jaunais*.

There are also a strange kinde of Crabbes, which come forth of certaine holes of the earth, that they themselves make: the head and bodie of these make one round thing, much like to the hood of a Faulcon, having foure feete coming out of the one side, and as many out of the other: they have also two mouthes, like unto a paire of small Pincers, the one bigger then the other, wherewith they bite, but doe no great hurt, because they are not venomous: their skin and bodie is smooth, and thinn, as is the skin of a man, fauing that it is somewhat harder; their colour is russet, or white, or blew, and walke indolent, they are verie good to be eaten, in so much that the Christians traouling by the firme Land, haue beene greatly nourished by them, because they are found in manner euerie where: in shape and forme they are much like unto the Crabbe which we paint for the signe Cancer, and like vnto those which are found in *Spain* in *Andalusia* in the River *Guadalupe*, where it entereth into the Sea, and in the Sea coasts there about, fauing that these are of the water, and the other of the land: they are sometimes hurtfull, so that they eat of them dye, but this chanceth only when they haue eaten any venomous thing, or of the venomous apples wherewith the Canniball archers poison their arrowes, whereof I will speake hereafter, and for this cause the Christians take heede how they eat of these Crabbes, if they finde them neere vnto the said apple trees. Furthermore in the *Indies*, as I say in the firme Land, as in the Islands, there is found a kinde of Serpents, which they call *Taunais*, which some call *Jaunais*, these are terrible and fearefull to fight, and yet not hurtfull, they are verie delicate to be eaten, and it is not yet knowne whether they be beasts of the land, or filthes, because they lye in the water, and wander in the woods, and on the land: they haue foure feete, and are commonly bigger then Conies, and in some places bigger then Otters, with tail like *Lysards* or *Eures*: their skinn is spotted, and of the same kinde of smoothnesse or barenesse, although of diuers colours: vpon the ridge of their backes, they haue many long prickles, their teeth are very sharpe, and especially their fangs or dogge teeth, their throates are long and large, reaching from their beards to their breasts, of the like skinn to the residue of their bodies: they are dumble, and haue no voice, or make any noise, or cry, although it they be kept tied to the foote of a chett, or any other thing, for the space of twentie or thre and twentie daies, without say any thing to eat or drinke, except they give them now and then a little of the bread of *Cacado*, or some such other thing: they haue foure feete, and their fore-feete as long as a mans finger, with clawes like the clawes of a bird, but weaker, and such as cannot grasp or take hold of any thing.

thing: they are much better to be eaten then to behold, for few that see them, will haue desire to see of them, by reason of their horrible body, except such as haue beene accustomed to the beasts of these regions, which are more horrible and fearefull, as this is not, but only in appearance: their flesh is of much better taste then the flesh of Conies, and more holefome, for it rence: their flesh is of much better taste then the French porke, in so much, that if they haue beene hurtht none but only such as haue had the French poxe, in so much, that if they haue beene touched of that infirmities, although they haue beene whole of long time, neuertheless they feel hurt, and complaint of the eating of these *Jaunais*, as hath beene oftentimes proued by experience.

There are found in the firme Land certaine birds, so little, that the whole bodie of one of them is no bigger then the top of the biggest finger of a mans hand, and yet is the bare body without feathers not halfe so bigge: This Bird, beside her lirtleness, is of such valdine and swiftnesse as flying, that who so seeth her flying in the aire, cannot see her fly or heare her wings after she is flying, that she who so seeth her flying in the aire, cannot see her fly or heare her wings after she is flying: there is no man that my other then those doe the Dorees, or humble Bees, or Bees: so that there is no man that seeth her fly, that would thinke her to be any other then a Dove: they make their nest as herding to the proportion of their bignesse, and I haue seene that one of these Birds with her nest full in a paire of gold weights altogether, hath waied no more then 2 *Tamais*, which are in poise 24 graines, when I consider the finenesse of the blawes and feete of these Birds, I know not And doubtlesse, when I consider the finenesse of the blawes and feete of these Birds, I know not whither I may better liken them, then to the little birds which the Lynners of bookes are accustomed to paint on the margent of Church Bookes, and other Bookes of Diuine Service, their Feathers are of manie faire colours, as golden, yellow, and greene, beside other variable colours: their beaks is verie long for the proportion of their bodie, and as fine and iebek as a sowing needle: they are verie haely, so that when they fly in the eyes, coming, going, and returning haue their necks, they flye at his face, and strike him in the eyes, coming, going, and returning with such swiftnesse, that no man would lightly beleue it, that hath not seene it: and certainly these birds are so little, that I durst not haue made mention hereof, if it were not that diuers of them which haue seene them as well as I, can beare witness of my saying: they make their nests of sticks and cotton, whereof there is great plenty in these regions, and fructu well for their purpose. But as touching the Beasles, Foxes, and Beasles of these *Indies*, because they are innumerable, both little and great, I intend not to repeat much here, because I haue spoken more largely hereof in my general Historie of the *Indies*. There is another kinde of Beasles seene in the firme Land, which seemeth very strange and monstrous: seene in other parts of the world: these Beasles are called *Beasles*, and are found footed, having their tails and all the rest of their bodies covered only with a skin like the coperture of a barbed horse, or the chequerd skin of a Lizard: Crocodile of colour betwene white and russet, looking somewhat more so white. This Beasle is of forme and shape much like to a barbed horse, with his barbes and Sankets in all points, and from vnder that which is the barbe and coperture, the tale cometh forth, and the feete in their place, the necke also and the eares in their parts, and in all things in like sort as in a barbed horse: they are of the bignesse of one of these common Dogges, they are not hurtfull, they are filthie, and haue their habitation in certaine hillcockes of the earth, where digging with their feete, they make their dens verie deepe, and the holes thereof, in like manner as doe Conies: they are very excellent to be eaten, and are taken with nets, and some also killed with Crobbes, or to renew the herbage for Kine and other Beasles. I haue oftentimes eaten of these Beasles, which seemeth to me of better taste then Kidneyes, and holefome to be eaten. And if these Beasles had euer beene seene in these parts of the world, where the best barbed Horses had their originall, no man would iudge but that the forme and fashion of the coperture of Horses furnished for the warres, was first deuised by the fight of these Beasles.

There is also in the firme Land another beast, called *Oryz Phagivora*, that is, the *Ante-beare*. This beast in haire and colour, is much like to the Beasle of *Spain*; and in manner of the same making, haue that he hath a much longer snout, and is of much higher: they are oftentimes taken only with flues, without any other weapon, and are not hurtfull: they are also taken with Dogges, because they are not naturally armed, although they be somewhat stout. For in the most part about and neere to the hillcockes where are great abundance of Antes, in these Regions is ingendered a certaine kind of Ante, very little and blacke: in the Fields and Plaines whereas growe no Trees, where by the multitude of Nature these Ante separate them selves to ingendere out of the Woods for feare of their Beasles, the which be cause they are fearefull, vile, and vnusued (as I haue said) they keepe euer in places full of Trees, vntill very famine and necessity, or the great desire that they haue to feele the Antes, take them out of the Woods to hunt for them: these Ante make a hillcocke of earth, the which cometh out of the Woods more or lesse, and as bigge as a great Chett, and sometimes as bigge as a man, or somewhat more or lesse, so that they seeme as though they were Beasles, for they are as a Hoghead, and as hard as a stone, so that they seeme as though they were Beasles, for they limit the ends and confines of certaine Lands. Within these hillcockes, made of such hard earth,

Beasles or diu madillas: a kinde of Boar.

Beare.

Antes.

Good against
the wind and
stone Collick.

Great Trees.

Great Canoes.

A marvellous
Tree.

when the meate of this fruit is taken from the Vessell thereof, the vessell remaineth as faire and neate as though it were polished, and is without of colour inclining toward black, and thence or glistreth very faire, and is within of no lesse delicatenesse. Such as haue accustomed to drinke in these Vessels; and haue bene troubled with the Difease called the fretting of the guts, say that they haue by experience found it a marvellous remedie against that Difease, and that it breaketh the stone, and prouoketh vrinne. This fruit was called *Coca*, for this cause, that when it is taken from the place where it cleauesth fall to the Tree, there are fene two holes, and aboute them two other natural holes, which altogether doe represente the gesture and figure of the Cattes called *Mammou*, that is, Monkeyes, when they cry, which cry the *Indians* call *Coca*, but in very deed, this Tree is a kind of Date Tree, and hath the same effect to heale fretting of the guts, that *Pinus* describeth all kinde of Date trees to haue. There are furthermore in the firme Land, Trees of such bignesse that I dare not speake thereof, but in place where I haue so many witness which haue bene the same as well as I. I say therefore, that a league from *Dariena* or the Citie of *Santa Maria Antigua*, there passeth a Riuer very large and deepe, which is called *Cusi*, ouer the which the *Indians* build a great Tree, fo trauesing the same, that it was in the stead of a bridge, the which I my selfe with diuers other that are at this present in your Maiesties Court, haue oftentimes passed ouer. And forasmuch as the said Tree had yeen long there, and by the great weight thereof was to shunke downeward, and partly covered with water, that none could passe ouer it, but were wet to the knee, I being then in the yeere 1522, the official of Iustice in that Citie at your Maiesties appointment, caused another great Tree to be build in that place, which in like manner trauesed the Riuer, and reached more then fiftie foute ouer the further side: This Tree was exceeding great, and rested above the water more then two Cubits, in the fall, it call downe all such other Trees as were within the reach thereof, and discovered certaine bynes, which were so laden with blacke Grapes of pleasant taste, that they fastisted more then fiftie persons which ate their fill thereof. This Tree, in the thickest part thereof, was more then fiftie foute fathoms high, and was nerertheless but a little in respect of many other trees which are found in this Prouince. For the *Indians* of the Coast and Prouince of *Carthagena*, make Barks or Boates thereof (which they call *Canoes*) of such bignesse, being all one whole Tree, that some containe a hundred men, some a hundred and thirte, and some more, hauing nerertheless such void space within the same, that there is left sufficient roome to passe to and fro throughout all the *Canoes*. Some of these are so large, beside the length, that they contene more then tenne or twelue spannes in breadth, and laile with two failes, as the Maister saile and the trinckle, which they make of very good Cotton. The greatest Trees that I haue seene in these parts, or in any other Regions, was in the Prouince of *Guatara*, the King whereof rebelling from the obedience of your Maiestie, was pursued by me, and taken Prisoner: at which time I with my company, passed ouer a very high Mountaine, full of great Trees, in the top whereof, we found one Tree, which had three roots, or rather diuisions of the roote about the Earth, in forme of a Triangle, or Triquet, so that betwene euery foot of this Triangle or three feet, there was a space of twentie foot betwene euery foot, and this of such height above the Earth, that a laden Cart of clothe wherewith they are accustomed to bring home Corne in time of Haruest in the Kingdom of *Toledo* in *Spain*, might easily haue passed thorough any of those partitions or windoors which were betwene the three feet of the said Tree. From the Earth vpward to the trunk of the Tree, the open places of the diuisions betwene these three feet, were of such height from the ground, that a Footman with a lauelin was not able to reach the place where the said feet ioyned together in the trunk or bodie of the Tree, which grew of great height in one piece, and one whole bodie, or euer it spread in branches, which it did not before it exceeded in height the Towres of *Saint Romane* in the Citie of *Toledo*: from which height and vpward, it spread very great and strong branches. Among certaine *Spaniards* which climbed this Tree, I my selfe was one, and when I was ascended to the place where it begonne to spread the branches, it was a marvellous thing to behold a great Country of such Trees toward the Prouince of *Abrama*. This Tree was easie to climbe, by reason of certaine *Basachi*, (whereof I haue spoken before) which grew wreathed about the Tree, in such sort that they seemed to make a scaling Ladder. Euery of the fore said three feet which bore the bodie of the Tree, was twentie spannes in thickness, and where they ioyned together about the Trunk or bodie of the Tree, the principall Trunkle was more then fortie and five spannes in circuite. I named the Mountaine where these Trees grow, the Mountaine of three ioyned Trees. And this which I haue now declared, was fene of all the company that was there with mee when (as I haue said before) took King *Guatara* Prisoner in the yeere 1522. Many things more might here be spoken as touching this matter, as also how there are many other excellent Trees found of diuers sort and difference, as sweet Cedar Trees, blacke Date Trees, and many other, of the which some are so heauie that they cannot float about the water, but sinke immediately to the bottome, and other againe as light as a Corke. As touching all which things I haue written more largely in my general Historie of the *Indes*.

And for as much as at this present I haue entred to entreate of Trees, before I passe any further

ther to other things, I will declare the manner how the *Indians* kindle fire, only with Wood Kindling of and without fire, the manner whereof is this. They take a peece of wood, of two spannes in length, as bigge as the least finger of a mans hand, or as an arrow well pulled, and of a strong kinde of wood which they keepe only for this purpose: and where they intend to kindle any fire, they take two other peeces of wood, of the driest and lightest that they can finde, and binde them fast together one with another, as close as two fingers ioyned: in the middle or betwene them, they put the point of the first little flake made of hard and strong wood, which they hold in their hands by the top thereof, and turne or rubbe it about continually in one place betwene the two peeces of wood which ly bound together vpon the earth, which by that vtter here to speake somewhat of such things, as come to my remembrance of certaine Trees which are found in this Land, and sometime also the like haue bene fene in *Spain*. These are certaine putrified trunks, which haue ben long rotting on the earth, that they are very white, and shute in the night like burning firebrands, and when the *Spaniards* finde any of this wood, and intend priuily in the night to make warre and invade any Prouince, when case fo requireth that it shall be necessarie to goe in the night, in such places where they know not the way, the formost Christian man which guideth the way, afflicke with an *Indian* to direct him therein, taketh a little farse of the said wood, which he putteth in his cap, hanging behinde on his shoulders, by the light whereof he that followeth next to him, directeth his journey, who also in like manner beareth another farse behinde him, by the shining whereof the third followeth the same way, and in like manner doe all the rest, so that by this meane none are left or flange out of the way. And for as much as this light is not fene very faire, it is the better police for the *Christians*, because they are not thereby disclosed before they invade their enemies. Furthermore, as touching the natures of Trees, one particular thing seemeth worthy to be noted, whereof *Plinius* maketh mention in his naturall Historie, where he saith that there are certaine Trees which continue euere greene and neuer loose their leaues, as the Bay-tree, the Cedar, the Orange-tree, and the Olive-tree, with such other, of the which I altogether heare not putt first or last. To this purpose, I say, that in the Islands of these *Indes*, and also in the firme land, it is a thing of much difficultie to finde two Trees that lofe or cast their leaues at any time for although I haue diligently searched to know the truth hereof, yet haue I not seene any that lose their leaues, either of them which we haue brought out of *Spain* into these regions, as Orange-trees, Limons, Cedars, Palmes, or Date-trees, and Pomegranate-trees, or of any other in their regions, except only *Cassia*, which loseth his leaues, and hath a greater thing appropriate to it selfe only: which is, that whereas all other Trees and Plants of *Indes* spread their rootes no deeper in the earth then the depth of a mans height, or somewhat more, not defending any further into the ground, by reason of the great heat which is found beneath that depth, yet doth *Cassia* perire further into the ground, until it finde water: which by the Philosophers opinion should be the cause of a thinne and watery radical moisture to such things as draw their nourishment thereof, as fat and vntuous grounds with temperate heate, yeldeth a soft and firme moisture to such things as grow in them, which is the cause that such Trees lose not their leaues, as the said thinne and watery moisture is cause of the contrarie, as appeareth by the said effect which is seene only in *Cassia*, and no other Tree or Plant in all these partes.

Of Reedes or Canes.

IN the firme land there are many sorts of Reedes, so that in many places they make their houses thereof, covering them with the tops of the same, and making their walls of them in like manner, as I haue said before: and among these kinde of Reedes, there is one fo great, that the Canes thereof are as bigge as a mans legge in the knee, and three spanns in length from ioyn to ioyn, or more, in so much that euery of them is of capacite to containe a little bucket of water. In this kinde, there are found more greater, and some lesse, of the which some they vfe to make quouers for arrows. There is found another kinde, which surely is marvellous, being little bigger then a lauelin, the Canes whereof are longer then two spannes: these Reedes grow one farte from another, as sometimes twenty or thirty paces, and sometimes also two or three leagues: they grow in manner in all Prouinces in the *Indes*, and grow neere to very high Trees, whereunto they leane, and creepe vp to the top of their branches, which they embrace, and defende againe downe to the earth. Their Canes are full of most cleare water, without any manner of taste or sauour, either of the Canes, or of any other thing, and such as if it were taken out of the freshest Spring in the world, nor yet is it knowne that euer it hurt any that drinke thereof. For it hath oftentimes beene shewed, that as the *Christians* here haue travelled in these regions in deluge water, where for lacke of water they haue bene in great danger to dye with thirst, they haue escaped that perill by reason that they found the said Reedes, of the water of which Canes they haue drunke a great quantity, without any hurt thereof ensuing. Therefore when they finde them in any place, they make water vessels of the Canes thereof, and carry

M m m 3

Purified wood
finning in the
night.

Plinius

Almold Illu-
dian trees con-
tinue euer
greene.

Cassia.
Euen bor low-
er then a fife-
doose.
A creeping
Radical moisture.

Reed-springs
or fountains
of water.

Oxe, with also like eyes, and hath in the place of armes, two great stumps wherewith he swimmeth: It is a very gentle and tame beast, and cometh oftentimes out of the water to the next shoore, where if he finde any herbes or grasse, he feedeth thereof. Our men are accustomed to kill many of these, and divers other good fishes, with their Croffe-bowes, pursuing them in Barkes or Canoes, because they swim in manner above the water: the which thing when they fee, they draw them with a hooke tyed at a small corde, but somewhat strong: As the fish leeth away, the Archer leaeth goe, and prolongeth the corde by little and little, until he have let it goe many fathoms: at the end of the corde, there is tyed a corke, or a piece of light wood, and when the fish is gone a little way, and hath coloured the water with his blood, and feedeth himselfe to faim and draw toward the end of his life, he resorteth to the shoore, and the Archer followeth, gathering vp his corde, wherof while he yet remaine fixe or eight fathoms, or somewhat more or lesse, he draweth it toward the Land, and draweth the fish therewith by little and little, as the wayes of the Sea helpe him to doe it the more easily: then, with the helpe of the rest of his company, he lifteth this great beast out of the Water to the Land, being of such bignesse, that to convey it from thence to the Citie, it shall be requisite to have a Cart with a good yoke of Oxen, and sometimes more, according as these fishes are of bignesse, some being much greater then other some in the same kinde, as is seene of other beasts: Sometimes they lift these fishes into the Canoe or Barke, without drawing them to the Land as before, for as soone as they are laime, they float about the water: And I beleue verily that this fish is one of the best in the world to the taste, and the likest vnto Rith, especially to like vnto beefe, that who so hath not seene it whilste, can iudge it to be none other when he leeth it in pieces then very Beefe or Veale, and is certainly to like vnto beefe, that all the men in the world may herein be deceived: the taste likewise, is like vnto the taste of very good Veale, and lasteth long, if it be powdered: so that in fine, the Beefe of these parts, is by no means like vnto this. This *Manate* hath a certaine bone, or rather bone in his head within the braine, which is of qualitie greatly appropriate against the disease of the stone, if it be burnt and ground into small powder, and taken fasting in the morning when the paine is felt, in such quantitie as may lye vpon a penny, with a draught of good white wine: For being taken three or four mornings, it acquirith the grieve, as diuers have told me which have proued it true, and I may falsly by testimonie of sight, doe witness that I have found this stone fought of diuers for this effect.

The fish *Manate*.
A remedie against the stone.

The Sword fish.

Tunny.

Turbot.

Note.
The Sea some where fertile, somewhere barren.

Flying fishes.

There are also diuers other fishes as bigge as this *Manate*, among the which there is one called *Pinnelle*. This fish beareth in the top of his head a sword, being on euery side full of many sharp teeth: this sword is naturally very hard and strong, of four or five spans in length, and of proportion according to the same bignesse: and for this cause is the fish called *Spada*, that is, the *Sword fish*. Of this kinde some are found as little as *Sardines*, and other so great, that two yokes of Oxen are hardly able to draw them on a Cart. But whereas before I have promised to speake of other fishes, which are taken in these Seas while the ships are vnder saile, I will not forget to speake of the *Tunny*, which is a great and good fish, and is oftentimes taken and kil'd with Trout spears, and hooke, cast in the water, when they play and swim about the ships. As like manner also are taken many *Turbots*, which are very good and highly in all the Sea. And being to be noted, that in the great Ocean Sea, there is a strange thing to be considered, which all that have bene in the *Indies* affirm to be true: And thence, that like as on the Land there are some Provinces fertile and fruitful, and some barren, even so doth the like chance in the Sea: So that at some times the ships take fische, or a hundred, or two hundred leagues and more, without treading or seeing of one fish: and againe, in the selfe same Ocean in some places, all the water is teeming with the mouing of the fishes, where they are taken abundantly. It cometh further to my remembrance to speake somewhat of the flying of fishes, which is doublelike a strange thing to behold, and is after this manner. When the ships saile by the great Ocean, following their voyage, there is oftentimes on the one side or on the other, many companies of certaine little fishes, of the which the biggest is no greater then a *Sardine*, and so dimmish lesse and lesse from that quantitie, that some of them are very little: these are called *Pelagres*, that is, *flying fishes*: they rise by great companies and flocks, in such multitudes that it is an astonishment to behold them: Sometimes they rise but little from the water, and (as it chanceth) continue one flight for the space of an hundred paces, and sometimes more, or lesse, before they fall againe into the Sea, sometimes also they fall into the ships. And I remember, that on an evening when all the company in the ship were on their knees, singing *Salus Regina*, in the highest part of the Castle of the poepe, and sailed with a full winde, there passed by vs a focke of these flying fishes, and came so nere vs, that many of them fell into the ship, among the which, two of these fell hard by me, which I took alone in my hand, so that I might well perceiuaunt they were as bigge as *Sardines*, and of the same quantitie, hauing two wings or quills growing out of their finnes, like vnto those wherewith all fishes swim in Rivers: these wings are as long as the fishes themselves. As long as their wings are moist, they beare them vp in the aire, but as soone as they are drie, they can continue their flight no further then as I have said before, but fall immediately into the Sea, and so rise againe, and the as before from place to place. In the yeere 1515, when I came first to enforme

you

your Maestie of the state of the things in *India*, and was the yeere following in *Flanders* in the time of your most fortunate libertie in these your Kingdomes of *Arregon* and *Castile*, whilst at that voyage I sailed about the Island *Bermude*, otherwise called *Garcia*, being the furthest of all the Islands that are found at this day in the world, and arriving there at the depth of eight yards of water, and distant from the Land as farre as the foot of a piece of Ordinance, I determined to send some of the ship to Land, as well to make search of such things as were there, as also to leaue in the land certaine Hogs for increase. But the time not seruing my purpose by reason of contrary winde, I could bring my ship no neerer the Land, being twelve leagues in length, and fixe in breadth, and about thirtie in circuit, lying in the three and thirtieth degree of the North side. While I remained here, I saw a strife and combat betweene these flying fishes, and the fishes named *Gilt heads*, and the fowles called *Sea-mewes*, and *Cormorants*, which fowles fed vnto me a thing of as great pleasure and solace as could be desired, while the *Gilt heads* swam on the brim of the water, and sometimes lifted their shoulders above the same, to raise the flying fishes out of the water to diuine them to flight, and follow them swimming to the place where they fall, to take and cate them suddenly. Againe on the other side, the *Sea-mewes* and *Cormorants*, take many of these flying fishes, so that by this meanes they are neither safe in the Aire, nor in the water. In the selfe same perill and danger doe men lye in this mortal life, wherein is no certaine securitie, neither in high estate, nor in lowe. Which thing I fully sought to put vs in remembrance of that blessed and false setting place which God hath prepared for such as lye him, who shall acquiet and finish the troubles of this troublesome world, wherein are so many dangers, and bring them to that eternal life where they shall finde eternal securitie and rest.

Notorio here for the Pie,
Nor too low for the Crow.

Of the increase and decrease (that is) rising and falling of our Ocean Sea, and South Sea, called the Sea of Sur.

I Will now speake of certaine things which are seene in the Prouince, or at the least in the Citie of *Golden Castile*, otherwise called *Beragua*, and in the coasts of the North Sea, and of the South Sea, called the Sea of Sur, not omitting to note one singular and marvellous thing which I haue considered of the Ocean Sea, wherof hitherto no Cosmographer, Pilot, or Mariner, or any other, haue furnished me. I say therefore, as it is well knowne to your Maestie, and all such as haue knowledge of the Ocean Sea, that this great Ocean castrum from it selfe the Sea *Mediterraneanum* by the mouth of the Straight of *Gibraltar*, in the which the water, from the end and furthest part of that Sea, euen vnto the mouth of the said Straight, either in the East toward the coast commonly called *Leuante*, or in any other part of the said Sea *Mediterraneanum*, the Sea doth not so fall nor increase, as reason would iudge for so great a Sea, but increaseth very little, and a small space: Neuerthelesse, without the mouth of the Straight in the mayne Ocean, it increaseth and falleth very much, and a great space of ground, from four hours to fixe houres, as in all the coasts of *Spain*, *Brittain*, *Flanders*, *Germany*, and *England*. The selfe same Ocean Sea in the firme Land newly found, in the coasts of the same lying toward the North, doth neither rise nor fall, nor likewise in the Islands of *Hispallania* and *Cuba*, and all the other Islands of the same lying toward the North, for the space of three thousand leagues, but only in like manner as doth the Sea *Mediterraneanum* in *Italy*, which is in manner nothing, in respect to that increase and decrease which the said Ocean hath in the coasts of *Spain* and *Flanders*. But this is yet a greater thing, that also the selfe same Ocean in the coasts of the said firme Land lying toward the South, in the Citie of *Panama*, and also in the coast of that Land which lyeth toward the East and West from that Citie, as in the Island of *Panama* or *Maragante*, which the *Indians* call *Tarapacoti*, and also in *Tahaga* and *Oreaga*, and in all other Islands of the South Sea of *Sur*, the water riseth and falleth so much, that when it falleth, it goeth in manner out of sight, which thing I my selfe haue seene oftentimes. And here your Maestie may note another thing, that from the North Sea to the South Sea, being of such difference the one from the other in rising and falling, yet is the Land that diuideth them not past eighteene or twentie leagues in breadth from Coast to Coast: So that both the said Seas, being all one Ocean, this strange effect is a thing worthy greatly to be considered of all such as haue inclination and desire to know the secret workes of Nature, wherein in the infinite power and wisdom of God is seen to be such, as may allure all good Natures to reuerence and loue to diuine a Majestie.

Beragua.

The West Ocean.
The Sea *Mediterraneanum*.

Hispallania.
Cuba.
Ocean without ebbing and flowing.

The cite at *Panama* furthest two leagues or five miles.

The South Sea.

Of the straight or narrow passage of the Land lying betweene the North and South Sea, by which Spices may much sooner and easilier be brought from the Islands of Molucca into Spain by the West Ocean, then by that way wherewith the Portugals sail into the East India.

The firme Land in some parts thereof is so straight and narrow, that the *Indians* say, that from the Mountaines of the Prouince of *Essequia* or *Princa* (which are betweene the one Sea and the other) if a man ascend to the top of the Mountaines, and looke toward the North,

Essequia and *Princa*.

he

The River of
Chagre.The Island Be-
lievers.The marvell-
ous Bridge.Marvell House
Bridge.

Tigres.

Plants and
herbes.
Birds.

Men.

Sheepe.
Bulls.

Juice.

Bats.

he may see the Water of the North Sea of the Province of *Peragua*: and againe looking the con-
trary way, may on the other side (towards the South) see the Sea of *Sur*: and the Provin-
ces which confine with it, as doe the Territories of the two Lands or Kingdoms of *Peragua* and *Esquiva*.
Some measure this way in this part, to be from Sea to Sea eight leagues, which I suppose to be rather twentie, not for that it is any more by measure,
but because it is rough and difficult, as I have said, and as I have found it by experience; ha-
ving now twice passed that way by force, counting from the Port and Village of *Nomdes* to
Dios, vnto the Dominion of the *Cajique* of *Imanaga*, otherwise called *Capira*, eight leagues,
and from thence to the River of *Chagre*, other eight leagues. So that at this River, being five
leagues from the said Port, endeth the roughness of the way: then from hence to the
marvellous Bridge are two leagues, and beyond that, other two, vnto the Port of *Panama*:
So that all together, in my judgement, make twentie leagues. It is a marvellous facilitie to bring
Spices by this way which I will now declare. From *Panama* to the River of *Chagre*, are four
leagues of good and faire way, by the which Carts may passe at pleasure; by reason that the
Mountaines are but few and litle, and that the greatest part of these four leagues is a plaine
ground void of Trees: and when the Carts are come to the said River, the Spices may be carried
in Barkes and Pinnas. For this River entrench into the North Sea five or six leagues lower then
the Port of *Nomdes*, and emptieth it selfe into the Sea neere vnto an Island called *Zafametas*,
whereas is a very good and safe Port. Your Maiestie may now therefore consider, how great a
thing, and what commoditie it may be to conuey Spices this way, forasmuch as the River of
Chagre, hauing his originall onely two leagues from the South Sea, continueth his course,
and emptieth it selfe into the North Sea. This River runneth fast, and is very great, and is
commodious for this purpose as may be thought: or desired: the *marvellous* Bridge made by the
workes of Nature, being two leagues beyond the said River, and other two leagues on this side
the Port of *Panama*, so lying in the mid way betweene them both, as framed naturally in
such sort, that none which pass by this voyage doth see any such Bridge, or thinke that there
is any such building in that place, vntill they be in the top thereof, in the way toward *Panama*:
But as soon as they are on the Bridge, looking toward the right hand, they see a little Ri-
uer vnder them, which hath his Channell distant from the feete of them that walke ouer it,
the space of two furlongs length or more. The water of this River is very shallow, not passing the
depth of a mans legge to the knee, and is in breadth betweene thirte and foute paces, and fal-
leth into the River of *Chagre*. Toward the right hand, standing on this Bridge, there is no-
thing fence but great Trees. The largenesse of the Bridge containeth fiftene paces, and
the length thereof about threecore or fourecore paces: The Arch is so made of mudd stone, that
no man can behold it without admiration, being made by the High and Omnipotent Creator
of all things.

How things that are of one kinde, differ in forme and qualitie, according to the
nature of the place where they are engendered or grow, and
of the beasts called Tigres.

IN the firme Land are found many terrible beasts, which some thinke to be Tigres. Which
thing neuertheless I dare not asseme, considering what Authors doe write of the lightnesse
and agilitie of the Tigre, whereas this beast, being otherwise in shape very like vnto a Tigre,
is notwithstanding very slow. Yet true it is, that according to the maruils of the World, and
differences which natural things haue in diuers Regions vnder Heauen, and diuers constellations
of the same, vnder the which they are created, wee see that some fish Plants and Herbes
are as hurtfull in one Countreie, are harmelesse and wholesome in other Regions. And Birds
which in one Province are of good taste, are in other so vnauourable that they may not be eaten.
Men likewise which in some Countries are blacke, are in other places white: and yet are both
these and they, men. Euen so may it be, that Tigres are light in some Region, as they write
and may neuertheless be slow and heauie in these *Indies* of your Maiestie, whereof wee speake,
The Sheepe of *Arden* draw their taitles long and bigge on the ground, and the Bulls of *Egypt*
haue their hair growing toward their heads: yet are those Sheepe, and these Bulls. Men in
some Countries are hardie and of good courage, and in other naturally fearful and brutish. All
these things, and many more, which may be said to this purpose, are easie to be proued, and
worthy to be beleued, of such as haue read of the like in Authors, or trauelled the World,
whereby their owne sight may teach them the experience of these things whereof I speake. It
is also manifest that *lucca*, whereof they make their bread in the Island of *Hippaneta*, is deadly
poison if it be eaten greene with the iuyce: and yet hath it no such property in the firme Land,
where I haue eaten it many times, and found it to be a good fruit. The Bats of *Spain*, although
they be late, yet are they not venemous: but in the firme Land, many die that are bitten of them.
And in this forme may so many things be said, that time shall not suffice to write, whereas my
intent is onely to proue that this beast may be a Tigre, or of the kinde of Tigres, althought
be

be not of such lightnesse and swiftnesse, as are they whereof *Plinius* and other authors speake, *Plinius*.
describing it to be one of the swiftest beasts of the Land, and that the River of *Tigra* for the
swift course thereof was called by that name. The first *Spaniards*, which saw this Tigre in the
firme Land, did so name it. Of the kind of this, was that which *Don Diego Columbus*, the Admiral
sent your Maiestie out of *New Spain* to *Teledo*. Their heads are like to the heads of Lions, or Li-
onesses, but greater: the rest of all their bodies, and their legs are full of black spots one neere vnto
another, & diuided with a circumference, or fringe of red colour, shewing (as it were) a faire work
and correspondent picture, about their crookes or hinder parts, they haue their spots biggish
and lesse & lesse toward their bellies, legs, & heads. I haue seen some of three spans in height, and more
then five in length. They are beasts of great force, with strong legs, and well armed with nayles
and fangs, which we call Dog-teeth: they are so fierce, that in my judgement, no reall Lyon of
the biggish sort is so strong or fierce. Of these, there are many found in the firme Land, which de-
uoure many of the *Indians*, and doe much hurt otherwise: but since the coming of the *Christi-
ans*, many haue bene killed with Cross-bowes after this manner. As soon as the Archer hath
knowledge of the haunt of any of these Tigres, hee goeth teaching their trace, with his Cross-
bow, and with a little Hound or Begle, & not with a grey-hound; because this Beast would soon
kill any Dogge that would venter on him: When the Hound hath found the Tigre, he runneth
about him baying continually, and approacheth so neere him, snapping and grinning, with so
quicke flying and returning, that he hereby so molesteeth this fierce Beast, that hee drieth him
to take the next Tree, at the foot whereof hee remaineth still baying, and the Tigre grinning
and shewing his teeth, while in the meane time the Archer commeth neere, and twelue or four-
tinent, leauing the Tigre in his trauell for life and death, by the Tree and eating earth for
seruencie: then within the space of two or three houres, or the day following, the Archer re-
turneth thither, and with his Dogge findeth the place where hee lieth dead. The *Indians*
(and especially they of the firme Land in the Province which the Catholike King *Don Ferdinand*
commanded to be called *Golden Castile*) call this Beast *Oobi*. This thing is strange that chanced
of late: that whereas the Tigre whereof we haue made mention before, would haue killed
him, hee kept him in his Cage, was in few daies after made to tame, that he led her eye
only with a small cord, and plaid with her so familiarly, that I marvelled greatly to see it, yet
not without certaine beleife that this friendship will not last long, without danger of life to the
Keeper, forasmuch as surely these Beasts are not meet to be among men, for their fiercenesse and
cruell nature that cannot be tamed.

Of the manners and customes of the Indians of the firme Land,
and of their women.

THE manners and customes of these *Indians*, are diuers in diuers Provinces. Some of them
take as many Wives as them list, and other live with one Wife, whom they forsake not
without consent of both parties, which chanceth especially when they haue no children. This
Nobilitie a wel men as women, repute it infamous to ioyne with any of base Parentage or Stran-
gers, except Christians, whom they count Noblemen, by reason of their valianttie; although
they put a difference betweene the common sort and the other to which they shew obedience,
counting it for a great matter and an honorable thing, if they be beloved of any of them: in-
form that if they know any Christian man carnally, they keep their faith to him, so that hee
be not long absent from them, for their intent is not to be Widowers, or to live chaste like
religious women. Many of them haue this custome, that when they perceiue that they are
with child, they take an Hearbe wherewith they destroy that it conceived: for they say
only well aged women should beare children, and that they will not forebore their pleasures,
and deforme their bodies with bearing of children, whereby their Teates become loose and
hanging, which thing they greatly disgrace. When they are deliuered of their children, they
goe to the River and wash them, which done, their blood and purgation ceaseth immediately:
And when after this they haue a few daies abstinent from the company of men, they become lo-
freight, as they say which haue had carnal familiaritie with them, that such as vie with them, cannot
without much difficultie satisfie their appetite: They also which neuer had children, are cast as
Virgins. In some parts they wear certain little Aprons round about them before and behind,
as low as to their knees and hammes, wherewith they couer their priuy parts, and are naked all
their bodie beside. The principall men beare their Priuities in a hollow Pipe of Gold,
but the common sort haue them inclosed in the shells of certaine great Welkes, and are be-
side vtterly naked: For they thinke it no more shame to haue their Cods fence, then any other
part of their bodies: and in many Provinces both the men and women goe vtterly naked, with-
out any such couerture at all. In the Province of *Cuena* they call a man *Chay*, and a woman *Ira*,
which name is not greatly disagreeable to many of their women and of ours.

The *Indians* giue great honour and reuerence to their *Cajiques* (that is) their Kings and Ro-
NDD

The Tigre.

The hunting
of Tigres.A Tigre made
tame.The Indian
women.Vnto small ab-
ortions.
Large birth
Child-birth.The men of
India.

Parrots.

alike, but that first dyeth with them: neither are they good for any thing, except their quills to feather arrows. They are desirous to live about places inhabited to feede on Carrion. The *Parrots* are gray, as fauourie as those of *Spain*, and as great as the *Spanish* Hens: they have their browes or flesh double, one over the other. Their egges are as bigge as Hens egges, but rounder, and coloured like a fine Turkeise stone. The *Indians* making a sound like theirs, draw them to their nets. There are also a leffe kind, The *Phoebians* are not in feathers like those of *Spain*, nor so goodly, but very fauourie meate like the great *Partridges*, but are not so great; they are gray, have long legs and talles, make a loud whistling noise, and are easily shot.

Fires, and Witches, Bees, ants, &c.

Fires are not there so many as in these parts of *Europe*. Their *Witches* are greater and sting more dangerously. Their *Bees* are almost as small as *Bees*, and sting not. They have great *Hives* and Combs which hold four times as much Honie as ours: their Honie is white, *Ants* are great, many, and doe much damage to the Trees, Sugars, and other productions. There are of many sorts, some little and black (of which and the Ant-bear is spoken before) some called *Cimex* halfe Ant, halfe Worme, very hurtfull; they carry earth on their heads, and therewith on their trees, walls, or where they please build their nests, three or foure spans large, and are as hurtfull to houses as *Moths* to clothes. There are others greater of diuers sorts, some as bigge as *Bees* with vs, so payntfull that herewith the *Indians* infect their arrowes to remedie, that not foure of an hundred which are wounded escape: and if this Ant bite a Man he presently falls into a grievous feauer, and the place swellth much. There are others red, yellow, and some winged. Of *Hornes* or *Horse-flies* (*Tafani*) are many sorts, tedious to expell. There are also *Scorpions* in the firme Land. An. 1519, and two yeeres after the Ants destroyed in *Hispaniola* their *Commans*, *figula*, *Oranges*, and fruit Trees, neither in their houles could they keepe victuals for their multitudes, destroying all like the *African* Grasshoppers, in so much that *Saint Domingo* was nigh dispeopled by them.

Hornes, or Horse-flies, and infest. Cocke & Cates.

Bermeines of the fields, called.

They laugh in *India* to heare the disease called *French* by the *Italians*, and *Neapolitan* by the *French*, which may indeed be called *Indian*, where the best remedie *Lignum Sanctum*, and *Guaiacum* grow; God in judgement remembering mercy, that where our sinnes produce a punishment, he also lends a remedie. I had acquaintance with diuers which went in the first and second voyages of *Columbus*: of which was *Peter Martyr* Commentator in the second voyage, of most respect with the King and Queene, who complaynd of those plagues. Some after, in the yeere 1496, began the disease to arrest some Courtiers; but in those beginnings, it was only amongst bairer persons of small authoritie: and it was thought that they got it with hauning to doe with common women. But afterwards it extended to principall Persons, and the Physicians could not tell what to thinke of it, so that many dyed. When after this *Gonzalo Fernandez de Cordoba* was sent with a great Armie by the Catholike Kings, in behalfe of *Ferdinand*, the second King of *Naples*, against *Charles the French King*, some diseased persons went with that Armie, and by dealing with the women, and by communicating, spread the disease to the *Italians* and *French-men*, which thence got the names aforesaid, but indeed came from *Hispaniola*: where it is ordinarie, and the remedie also. Our Author, l. 1. c. 4. and Ramusio in his Preface to his third *Tome*, say, That the *Soldiers* of *Pamilo* de Nauaz, bearing the small pocks infected the *Indians*, which never before had heard of that disease: in so much that of 1600000. *Indians* in that Island there are now left, as by and by you shall heare. The *Nigra* also, creatures lesse then *Fleas*, which eate in the flesh very dangerously, are life in that Island. The people of that Island when first they were diuided amongst the *Spanish* Planters, were deemed a Million or more (some say 1600000. of which and of their posteritie in the yeere 1535, were not above five hundred left, little and great, the rest which them were there being *Slaves* brought thither from other parts. The countenaine of the *Myne-workers*, neglected Diet, change of Government growing worse and worse, caused them to prync, kill, and hate themselves, besides those which were consumed by infectious or pestilential pocks* and other diseases: Their owne vices, also *Sodomitie*, *Idolatry*, &c. provoked diuine iustice against them. No prouision could hinder their consumption. The King so first Religious men of diuers Orders, but this I know that the *Dominicans* and *Franciscans* contradicted each other, and what one approved the other disallowed, although after the other had left that opinion, the *Contradictors* would embrace it, still agreeing in disagreeing: which caused much danger not only to new *Conuerts*, but also to old *Christians*: whiles one Order would not absolve them except they franchised the *Indians*, and the other absolved them neuertheless. Much dissputation hath bene about the *Indians* sinnes amongst the *Thomists*, *Canonists*, and famous *Lawyers* and *Diuines*, but their differences have done little good to the *Indians* or the plantation; and in a short time both this Island and the three adjoining, *Saint Iohn*, *Lemania*, and *Cuba*, remayned desolate, being by the *Friars* meances (which I thinke, meant well) dispersed thorow the Land, to lessen their labours, which the Gentlemen imposed on them. I am of opinion that if a *Christian Prince* had this Island of *Hispaniola* only, he might make it as good as either *England* or *Sicily*: such is the store of Gold, the prosperous successe of things carried from *Spain*, the *Bees* (which I knew first carried thither from *Spain*) being already so multiplied that they kill them for the Hides, leaving the flesh in the fields of five hundred at once:

* The best of them mentioned under of Ramusio, Friars quarrels.

Lib. 4. c. 1.

Lib. 3. c. 11.

and *Rodrigo de Bofkada* Bishop of *Yenafuela* hath therein 16000. *Bees*, and the Treasurer *Pafanone* as many; others 8000. or more, likewise in other *Beats*, *Seeds*, *Oranges*, *Lemons*, &c. *Pomegranets*, &c.

Of their *Zones*, *Idols*, *Sepulchers*, and other things concerning their Religion, the Reader may see *Quinto* fifth enough in the ninth Booke and fourteenth Chapter of my *Pilgrimage*; and of the *Spanish* first voyage of thither in the beginning of this worke, which *Quinto* handled in his former Booke.

Their *Huracans* (so they call tempests of winde and raime together) are very excellent. An. 1508. on the third of August, all the thatched houses in *Saint Domingo* were throwne to the wind, and some also of stone; all the houset also in the Towne *Benamont*, which might thence be named *Chalampont*: in the *Laure* were like twenty Ships and Canals, a North-wind in despite of all propitiations to Sea, and the other as terribly forcing them againe to the Haven (if the losse of ships and men may permit that name) yea on Land many men were carried in the streets and fields diuers bow-shots before they could fly thence. Hell seemed to have bene opened, and the Devils to haue carried things to and fro. Yet in July following was a worse, which now are allayed and not so violent since the Blessed Sacrament hath bene placed in Churches. I haue seene the space of a Crosse-bow shot or two, all the grounds covered with Trees plucked vp by the Windes from the Rootes, and ours haue sometime by dangers of the way bene forced to climb from tree to tree over such a passage, with rents and perills

enough. The Cocks in *Spain* crow at mid-night and towards day; but here in the shutting in of the evening, or two houres within night, and two houres before day, and not at all at mid-night: some crow in the first watch and not else all night. Their Cates also vfe their lusts all the yeere and without walling noise, which in *Spain*, *France*, *Sicily*, and other places in *Europe* and *Africa* which I haue bene gone on Carter-walling only about February. In the Ile of *Namania* Weltward from *Hispaniola* in the way thence to *Lemania*, the Rocks are seene vnder the water; and amongst them a fatome and five fote vnder the salt water there ariseth a spring of good fresh water vpon the Sea, spouting vp bigger then a mans arme, higher then the salt water that it may easily be taken in. I haue not heere it, but *Stephen Roca* a person of credit testifieth this of his owne sight and taste. But I haue seene in the Land *Demonica* at the Riuer *Acquia*, twenty paces wide, and not deeper then the arme print, there is a hot spring, that if one take vp the Sands they seeme like embers in his fist, and so is the water a span deepe about the Sands, which on the top is fresh and like other water.

Quinto 8. 9. 10. and 11. Booke are of Plants and Trees in those parts. The 12. of *Crocodiles* before mentioned: the 13. of *Fishes*, in which he telleth that An. 1539. going from the Gulle of *Oraniga* to *Panama* two hundred leagues Eastward, neere the mouth of the Gulle, we sawe a Fish or great Water-monster, which at times lifted it life right vp above the Water so farre that the head and both the armes might bee seene, which seemed higher then our Caruell and all her Mats. Thus did shee rise and fall diuers times beating the water strongly, not casting any water out of the mouth. A younger or lesse of the same kinde did likewise, swimme a little distant from the greater. Some iudged it to bee a Whale with her young one, which others denied, saying, a Whale had no armes. To my iudgement each arme might be five and twenty fote long, and as bigge as a Butt or Pipe: the head fourteen or fifteen fote high, and much more in breadth; and the rest of the body larger. That of her which appeared above water was about five times the height of a mans man, which make five and twentie paces. *Lorenco* *Martinez* Canon of the Church of *Golden Castle*, *Santo di Tudela*, &c. were with me: and we were all afraid when shee came nere our small Caruell. Shee seemed to disport her selfe at a tempest approaching, which suddenly arose much to our purpose, from the West, and brought vs in few dayes to *Panama*.

In *Hispaniola* and the neighbouring Islands is a strange bird of prey, as bigge as a great *Ganis* and much like it: shee preyeth on the Land on birds, &c. and on fish in the Water, there is an insatiable footed like water-fowles and goeth like a Goose, but hath talons like Hawkes, and fastens fowle therewith on the fishes which shee eates (so taken) either in the Water or on the Rocks, or Water hawkes, as these dyeth in the Aire holding it betwene her feete. The *Christians* call them *Afari* di agudo.

What hath the Ants did in *Hispaniola*, is before mentioned, in the yeere 1519, and the next following, and the Cite of *Saint Domingo*, was almost dihabited by this great Armie of little *Greatest* harme there was, as in *Spain* a Cite was dispeopled by *Conies*, and which lately belongeth to the *Port* *Santo*; *Thessalia* (which almost fell out to the *English* Colonie in *Bermuda*) to another *Cite* by *Rats*, to the *Maritima* by *Froges*, to the *Admiralties* by *Fleas*, to the *Admiralties* by *Locusts*; Serpents, and to another part thereof by *Sparrowes*; to diuers places of *Africa* often by *Locusts*; so can the Great God arme the least creatures to the destruction of proud vngoverned men, and this miserie so perplexed the *Spaniards*, that they sought as strange a remedie as was the disease, which

Superstitious conceit of the Seracmons, it was ordaind against the Seracmons of the confite- rance, not of the waiber.

Cocke & Cates differing from the symple: wherein our English do much agree with the Indians: Strange water spout.

Sea Monster suspensious.

* 15. fift, which sometimes signifieth falcons.

Lib. 4. c. 7.

* An insatiable

Venerability of
Superfluus.

which was to chuse some Saint for their Patron against the Antes. *Alexander Gualdone*, the Bishop having sung a Mass and Pontifical Masse, after the Consecration and Eleuation of the Sacrament, and devout Prayers made by him and the people, opened a Booke in which was a Catalogue of the Saints, by lot to chuse some he or the Saint, whom God should please to appoint their Advocate against Calamities. And the lot fell vpon Saint *Saturine* whose Feast on the nine and twentieth of November: after which the Antes damage became more tolerable and by little and little diminished, by Gods merke and intercession of that Saint: I note the rather, because the Bishop and that Saint were both *Romanes*, and as that Martyr had made mute the Idols in *Tolosa*, (as is written in the Historie of his Martyrdom) so now was Idolatry (and I pray what was this?) destroyed in *Hispaniola*? Hee might have said exchanged; a pittifull case that when God beth *cut his ewne Sonne made of a woman, made under the Law, &c.* Who hath dyed for vs (yea, that Martyr) risen for our Iustificacion, *aforded on this to give gifts to men; and is there, and therefore, set downe at Gods right hand to make intercession for vs sinners*, to take possession for vs mortals, to accomplish as our *Amen*, all the promises of this life, and that which is to come, whether against Ants or Devils; and in him it hath pleased the Father that all falsefolies should dwell yee (beyond and in paradise) in him dwelleth the fulness of the Godhead bodily, and we are compleate in him, and he is all in all, yesterday, to day, the same for every which hath loved vs, and given himselfe for vs, which is *Love*, which hath incited vs, Come to me all ye that labour, which hath incited vs by all attributes: that after all this, men, Christian men should goe cast Lots for an Intercessor, and neglecting Christ, dreame of *Romane* carnall phancies, or runne mad with *Romish* superstitious phantasies wherein if the bodie be delivred, as happened to the *lusting Israelites*, with their *Quail-fleaze*, the burthen is made double to the soule, when God heareth in his anger, Such Citizenes do they digge which forsake the Fontaine of living waters, *even broken Citizenes which can hold no waters*: the best of Saints like the wife Virgins, having no more Oyle then will suffice their owne Lamps, and that also received out of another Virgins, of whose falsefolies wee all have received grace for grace; fild a principal Saint.

These are Caterpillars, which flime in the night eight or a hundred paces off, only from that part of the bodie whence the legges issue: others only have their head shining. I have seen some a panne long very fearful, but for any thing I have heard, harmlesse. Flies are lesse, but more hurtfull then in *Spaine*: but these in kindes and colours are so diversified that it is impossible to write them: and so may be said of other small creatures in those parts.

In his sixteenth Booke he declareth the Conquest of the Ile *Borichen*, or *Saint John* and the quarrels betwixt the *Spaniards*, the learning of some breeding fuch disquisitions, that not without cause (at their Author) in Golden *Cassile* and in other parts, the King forbid Law-learned men and Professors should passe thither, as men infectious by sowing strife where they ought not. In this Ile, the people and other things are as before is said of *Hispaniola*, there are more Birds in *Saint John*, rich Minerals of Gold, certain Batters which the people eat; and *Lignum Sanctum* groweth there, more excellent then the *Guaiacum* for the French Dittie and others.

In his seventeenth Booke he writeth of *Cuba*. The people and other things are much like to *Hispaniola*, in their Marriages, all the guests of the Bridegroomes ranke (as *Caciques*, if he bee a *Cacique* or Principall, or Plebeians as he is) lye with the Spouse before he himselfe may do it: after which the with her first beate comes crying with a loud voice, *Mancano, Mancano*, that is forced and full of force, as glorying in her shame. They are in vices like those of *Hispaniola*, and will be no better *Christians* then other *Indians*, what doth *Peter Martyr* writeth from *Exotic Relations*. For I have seen more *Indians* then they both, and by experience of those Nations are baptized being of age, he doth it more for some by purpose then for zeale of the faith: for there remains to him nothing but the name, which also loone after he forgets. Perhaps there are some faithful, but I beleue they are very rare.

The Creatures and Plants of *Spaine* prosper well there, as doe the naturall which are the same which are in *Hispaniola*. The people were exhauited when they first went into *New Spaine*, and with the second Armie of *Orizualda*, and with the third of *Cortez*, and with the fourth of *Pamphilo de Narbaez*, all by order of Lieutenant *Pelaflo*: whereby *Cuba* was in manner depopled, and by the former cruelties mentioned of *Hispaniola*, and by the contagion of the small Pockes which was vniuersall in all their lands: So that the Great God hath in manner wholly extinguished them for their (not without others) sinnes. They haue much Gold and Brasse: vnto fith much with the *Romers* before mentioned, as also that Wild-goose chafe. There are innumerable Cranes, such as in *Spaine*; the Boyes take infinite Egges and young ones. There are Turkes greater then in *Spaine*. Every yeare there passe from the end of *Cuba* infinite number of dozens of fowles of Birds, which come from the North of the firme Land, and croffe ouer the *Antilles* lands and *Cuba*, and flye ouer the Gulfe Southwards. I haue seen them passe ouer the *Carriacou* and *Nombre de deus* and *Panama* in diuers yeeres, in the *Firme Land*; so many that they couer

Scarcely suffi-
cient of Fowles.

the Skie: and this passage or march continueth a moneth or more about the moneth of March. I thinke they flie round about the World; for they neuer are seene to turne toward the West or North: and we see them not every yeere one after another; from morning to night the aires is couered, and some flie so high that they cannot be seene, others lower yet higher then the Mountaines tops. They come from the North-west and North to the Southwards, and then turne South-west, occupying in length more then the eye can discerne, and a great space in breadth. The lowest are Eagles and Eagles, and all seeme Birds of prey of many kinds and plumes: The higher cannot bee discerned in their plumes, but in manner of flying and quantity appeare of diuers sorts.

There haue bene Serpents killed in *Cuba*, as bigge as a mans thigh, and fute and twentieth, of thirte foot long and more. They are tame, and the *Indians* cate them, and find sometimes in their bellies fixe or seuen creatures bigger then Conies, which they swallow whole.

I am loth to lead you with this Author along with *Orizualda*, in his long Expedition from hence to *Incacatan* and other parts. Neere to *Puerto de terminis*, he found two Treasures lying by hand, standing alone, and fiftene paces off diuers Idols of Chalke. They saw two Images made of the wood *Copei*, in manner of *Sodomian* villanous joyed together; and another of Chalke with his circumcised member betwixt his hands.

Tamares was in people, vices, creatures and other things like the former: they were the Instruments of the people, fishing and Goose-catching with Gourd or Pompanons aforesaid, which sometimes they practised also with leaves and green boughs on their heads, and vnto that *Guiland*, as is before said of the Pompanons. Of *Cubagua* the Pearle land and of the Pearle-fishing is spoken before. In *Cubagua* is a bituminous Fontayne, hauing otherwise no water to drinke, nor Hearbes, nor Trees but a few of *Guaiacum*, nor any lauing creatures; though at first comming of the Christians there were a few Conies. At the East-point is the Fontayne running into the Sea with an Oily substance floating on it, profitable for Medicine there called *Poult Darg*. They that lye there, fetch their water (seuen leagues off from *Camana*, on the firme Land, and yearly: a thing not knowne that so many *Peasles* haue beate taken to so small a space, the land of *Cubagua* not compassing about three leagues. In the Gulfe of *Orizualda*, and the lands therein in the Prouince of *Nicaragua* on the South Seay, are many (bell-fishes of a long forme, some a Cubit long, some lesse, created, growing broader and broader to the end when they are opened: they haue a fihle substance within them, and (saue within as the Pearle-oysters doe) halfe their length, thence by degrees loosing that shining toward the broader end, the Pearles within them are not so fine as the other. The *Indians* vie the *Indians* to digge their looke ground, fasting the shell to a handle of wood, binding it self and looking kind of Spigs thereof.

In the yeare 1517, An *Englishman* vnto colour of *Ducocon* came with a great ship towards *Brasil* on the Firme Land, and thence trauesed to *Hispaniola*, and came neere the Hauens of *Saint Domingo*, and sent his Boat full of people on shore, and desired Trade. But the Captaine of the Fort thot from the Castle as hee came directly to the Port; and thereupon they returned to their ship. The *English* seeing this entertainment,ooke their course towards the land of *Saint John*, and entered the Port of *Saint Germain*, and there demanded victuals and provisions for their ship, complaining of the wrong done at *Saint Domingo*, comming thither for Trade, to buy with their Money, and to barter Commodities. They got some victuals for which they paid in wrought pieces of Pewter and other things: and so returned towards *Europe*, where it is likely they came not; for there was neuer any more heard of them.

The next yeare a French Pirst guided by a *Spanish* Pilot, came to trade in the land of *Peasles* to a *Portugall* Carauell which he had taken on the Coast of *Brasil*, and would haue landed his Boats full of men, but was resisted, and a Barre betwixt both parties followed, in which thirteene Frenchmen were slaine, and two of ours. Three or foure *Namurro* and *Blackberry* fled from them and said the French were Thieves and came to take the land; whereupon they went with all their strength, andooke her Boat, and the ship fled out of sight, &c.

On the twentieth Booke is of shipwrecks and disfigurements which haue happened to the *Spaniards* in those parts. One which happened 1514, is admirable, the ship sinking and vnto, to save their liues. Thus liued they twelue dayes at Sea; neither had they any thing to eate or drinke: only a young man had saved two pounds of Bisket, which being diuided amongst them, he which had most had not about an ounce and halfe. Vrine, or the Sea was their drinke. In this case they made Vowes to our *Lorde of Anticain* *Sancti*: and on the twelfth day 60 hauing made a Saile of their thirte, they came to *Silver-port* in *Hispaniola*. Their Pilot *Ante Celso* told me the storie. The same yeare in the Fleet of *Federicus de Anila* *Portugall* youth, being scoffed at, and houted by the *Spaniards*, leaped into the Sea in a fresh gale, and not without the wonder of all men was taken up by another ship alone, whom after I saw vaunting of this folly, and saying that no *Calistum* durst haue done it; which I easily beleue, as hauing more wit then this Foole.

L.17.64.5.

L.17.64.18.
Abominable
dure lous.

L.18.64.

L.19.64.
Pich Founte
taine.C.2.
Two-fish-like
Pearles.English voyage
to the W. I.
Indies, A.1517.
L.19.64.19.
He calls him
Pearle, but
describes no
recreation of that
name.

Femur.

Giants.

Mountaine where the *Tlafaletecan* had planted themselves, did not suffer them in quiet, as the rest of the *Chichimecan* had done, but they put themselves in defence to preserve their Country, and being Giants as the Historians report, they fought to expell the last Commers, but they were to a great banquet, and when they were busied in their drunkenness, there were some laid in ambush, who secretly stole away their weapons, which were great Clubs, Targets, Swords of wood, and other such armes. Then did they suddenly lie upon them, and the *Chichimecan* seeking to defend themselves, they did want their armes, so as they fled to the Mountaines and Forests adjoining, where they pulled downe Trees, as if they had bene stakes of Lettuce. But in the end, the *Tlafaletecan* being armed, and marching in order, they defeated all the Giants, not leaving one alive. We must not hold this of the Giants to be strange, or a fable; for at this day we finde dead men bones of an incredible bignesse.

Note of Giants.

When I was in *Mexico*, in the yeere 1586, they found one of those Giants buried in one of our Farmes, which we call *Sancti de Mene*, of whom they brought a tooth to bee seene, which (without augmenting) was as bigg as the fist of a man, and according to this, all the rest was proportionable, which I saw and admired at his deformed greatnesse. The *Tlafaletecan* by this victorie remayned peaceable, and so did the rest of the Linages. These sixe *Tlafaletecan* by this victorie amitie together, marrying their children one with another, and dividing their linia quietly: then they studied with an emulation to encrease and beautifie their Commonweale. The barbarous *Chichimecan*, seeing what passed, began to vie some government, and to appaile themselves, being ashamed of what had passed: for all then they had no shame. And having a things of them, building small Cottages, having some policy and government. They did also choote Lords, whom they did acknowledge for their Superiours, by meanes whereof they did in a manner quite abandon this brutish life, yet did they alwayes continue in the Mountaines divided from the rest.

Beginnings of civillitie.

Of the Mexicane departure of their country and promping the Province of Mexicane.

Deuils emulation of that worke of God in bringing Israel out of Egypt, and putting them downe the desert into Canaan. Tabernacle. Arke.

Three hundred and two yeeres after the former two Linages had left their Country, to inhabit New Spain, the Country being now well peopled, and reduced to some forme of government, Those of the fourth Cause or Line arrived, which is the *Mexicane* Nation, the which like unto the rest, left the Province of *Azules*, and *Tenuchmexican*, a politike, courtlike, and warlike Nation. They did worship the Idoll *Paztiguatl*, the Deuill that was in this Idoll placed, and governed this Nation easily. This Idoll commanded them to leave their Country, promising to make them Princes and Lords over all the Provinces which the other sixe Nations did possess, that he would give them a Land abounding with gold, silver, precious stones, feathers, and rich mantles: whereupon they went forth, carrying their Idoll with them in a Coffier of Redde, supported by foure of their principall Priests, with whom he did take and reuele unto them in secret, the successe of their way and voyage, aduising them of what should happen. He likewise gaue them Lawes, and taught them the customes, ceremonies, and sacrifices they should observe. They did not advance nor moue without commandement from this Idoll. He gaue them notice when to march, and when to stay in any place, wherein they wholly obeyed him. The first thing they did wherefoever they came, was to build a house or Tabernacle for their Idoll, which they feild alwayes in the middle of their Campe, and there placed the Arke upon an Altar, in the same manner as they have used in the holy Christian Church. This done, they fowed their land for bread and pulse, which they vsed: and they were so addicted to the obedience of their god, that if he commanded them to gather, they gathered, but if he commanded them to raise their Campe, all was left there for the nourishment of the aged, sicke, and wearie, which they left purposely from place to place, that they might people it, pretending by this meanes, that all the Land should remaine inhabited by their Nation.

Mexi the Mexi.

Mehucan.

Tijuan.

We may well iudge what this *Paztiguatl* was, for that there was neuer seene nor heard speake of customes more superstitious, nor sacrifices more cruell and inhumane, than those which he taught them. To conclude, they were invented by the enemye of mankind. The Chiefe and Capetaine whom they followed, was called *Mexi*, whence came the name of *Mexico*, and of the *Mexican* Nation. This people marching thus at leisure, as the other fixe Nations had done, peopling and tilling the Land in diuers parts, whereof there is yet some flowers and ruines: and after they had endured many travells and dangers, in the end they came to the Province of *Mehucan*, which is as much to say, as a land of fife, for there is great abundance in goodly great Lakes, where contenting themselves with the situation and temperature of the ground, they refused to stay there. Yet having consulted with their Idoll upon this point, and finding him vnwilling, they demanded license to leave some of their men to people lo good a Land, the which he granted, teaching them the meanes how to doe it, which was, that when the Men and Women should be entred into a goodly Lake called *Pajumaro*, to bathe themselves, those which remayned on Land, should feele away all their clothes, and then secretly raise their Campe, and depart without any bruit, the which was effected, and the rest which dreame not of this sweet (for the pleasure they tooke in bathing) coming forth and finding themselves spoiled of their garments,

garments, and thus mocked and left by their Companions, they remayned discontented and vexed therewith: so as to make these of the hatred they had conceived against them, they say that they changed their manner of life and their language. At the least it is most certaine, that the *Mehucan* have bene alwayes enemies to the *Mexicans*, and therefore they came to congratulate the Marquise *De Valle*, after his victorie obtained when he had conquered *Mexico*.

From *Mehucan* to *Mexico*, are about fiftie leagues, and upon the way is *Malinalco*, where it happened, that complying to their Idoll of a woman that was a notable witch, which came in their company carrying the name of their father to their god, for that with her wicked artes they did them much harme, pretending by certain meates to bee well pleased of them as their goddesse: the Idoll spake in a dreame to one of those old men that carried the Arke, commanding him to comfort the people, making them new and great promises, and that they should leave this

his sifter with her family, being cruell and bad, rayling their Campe at mid-night in great silence, leaving no shew what way they passed. So they did, and the Witch remayning alone with her family in this fort, peopled a Towne which they call *Malinalco*, the Inhabitants whereof, are held for great Sorcerers, being issued from such a mother. The *Mexicans* for that they were greatly diminished by these diuisions, and by the number of sicke and wearied persons, which they had left behinde, meant to repayre themselves, and to stay in a place called *Tula*, which signifies a place of *Ranches*. There their Idoll commanded them to stop a great River, that it might couer a great Playne, and by the meanes he taught them, they did minner a little Hill called *Cuatzipac*, making a great Lake, the which they did plant round about with Willows, Elmes, Sapiens, and other Trees. There began to breede much fish, and many birds came thither: so as it became a very pleasant place. The situation of this place, seeming pleasant unto them, and being wearied with travell, many talked of peopling there, and to passe no farther: wherewith the Deuill was much displeased, threatening the Priests with death, commanding them to re-tourne the River to their course, saying, that he would that night chastise those which had bene disobedient as they had deserved. And so to doe ill is proper to the Deuill, and that the diuine Iustice doth often suffer such to be delivered into the hands of such a Tormentor, that choote him for their god: It chanced that about mid-night they heard a great noyse in one part of the Campe, and in the morning going thither, they found those dead that had talked of staying

there. The manner of their death was, that their stomachs were opened, and their hearts pulled out. And by that meanes, this good god taught these poore miserable Creatures, the kindnes of sacrifices that pleased him, which was, in opening the stomachs, to pull out the heart, as they have since practised in their horrible sacrifices. Seeing this punishment, and that the Playne was dried, the Lake being emptied, they asked counsell of their god what to doe, who commanded them to passe on, the which they did by little and little, vntill they came to *Chapultepec*, a league from *Mexico*, famous for the pleasantnesse thereof. They did forsake themselves in their Mountaines, fearing the Nations which inhabited that Country, the which were opposite unto them, especially for that one named *Cytil*, sonne to this Sorcerer, left in *Malinalco*, had blamed and spoken ill of the *Mexicans*: for this *Cytil* by the commandment of his mother, awhile after

followed the *Mexicans* courte, labouring to incense the *Tapacates*, and other neighbours against them, euen unto the *Chichimecan*: so as they came in the strong Armie to destroy the *Mexicans*. *Cytil* in the meane space stood upon a little Hill in the middle of a Lake, called *Accepil*, attending the destruction of his Enemies, and they by the aduice of their Idoll, went against him, tooke him suddenly, and lue him, carrying his heart to their god, who commanded them to cast it into the Lake, saying that there should grow a plant called *Timan*, where since *Mexico* was built. They came to fight with the *Chichimecan* and other Nations, having chosen for their Captaine, a valiant man, called *Otinolmitl*, who in an encounter, was taken and slaine by the Enemies. But for all this, they were not discouraged, but fought valiantly: and in despite of their Enemies they brake the squadrons, and carrying their Aged, their Women, and young Children in the middle of their battaile, they passed on to *Atilacayanga*, a Towne of the *Callimexi*, whom they found solemnising of a Feast, in which place they fortified. The *Chichimecan*, nor the other Nations did not follow them, but grieved to be defeated by so small a number of men; they being in so great multitudes returned to their Townes.

The *Mexicans*, by the aduice of their Idoll, sent their Messengers to the Lord of *Callimexi*, to demand a place to dwell in, who after he had imparied to it his people, granting them the place of *Ticacapan*, which signifies *white waters*, to the end they should all perill there, being full of Vipers, Snakes, and other venomous beasts which bred in a Hill neere adjoining. But being perswaded and taught by their Deuill, they accepted willingly what was offered, and by their deuillish arte, tamed these beasts, so as they did them no harme: yea, they vsed them as meate,

eating them with delight and appetite. The which the Lord of *Callimexi* seeing, and that they had killed and lue him, he resolved to reuenge them into the City, and to contraine amitie with them. But the god whom the *Mexicans* did worship (as he is accustomed to do good, but ill) did vaild his Priests, that this was not the place where he would haue them stay, and that they must go forth making warres. Therefore they must seeke forth a Woman, and name her

Of that which happened in Malinalco, Tula, and in Chapul. Ipe. Chap. 3.

Witch forth.

Deuils proud emulation in punishing disobedience, and teaching murtherous sacrifices.

Chapultepec.

Mecanopolis.

Atilacayanga.

Of the warres the Mexicans had against them of Callimexi, Chapul. Ticacapan.

Of the
Lion made
by the King
of
Pridis

Of the
Lion made
by the King
of
Pridis

Of the foun-
dation of Mex-
ico, Chap. 7.

Eagle glorious
adored.

Temetilan.

Tabernacle
for their De-
vils Arke.

the *Goddeffe of Difcord*. Whereupon they refufed to fend to the King of *Culhuacan*; to demand his daughter to be Queene of the *Mexicans*; and mother to their god, who received this Ambafage willingly, lending his daughter prettily gorgeoufly attired and well accompanied. The next night hee armed, by order of the murderer whom they worfhipped, they killed her cruelly; and having dayed her artificially as they could doe, they did clothe a young man with her skin, and thereupon hee apparill, placing him nere their Idoll, dedicating him to a *Goddeffe* and the mother of their god, and ever after did worfhip it, making an Idoll which they called *Totey*, which is to fay, our grand mother. Not content with this cruelty, they did maliciously invite the King of *Culhuacan*, the father of the young Maid, to come and worfhip his daughter, who was now conecrated a goddeffe, who comming with great Prefents, and was accompanied with his people, he was led into a very darke Chappell where their Idoll was, that he might offer facrifice to his daughter that was in that place. But it chanced that the Incenfe that was upon the altar, according to their custome, kindled in fuch fort, as he might difcerne his daughters haire, and hauing by this means difcovered the cruelty and deceit, he went forth crying aloud, and with all his men he fell upon the *Mexicans*, forcing them to retire to the Lake, fo as they were almost drowned. The *Mexicans* defended themselves, calling certaine little darts; which they vied in the warres, wherewith they much galled their enemies. But in the end they got Land, and leaving that place, they coasted along the Lake, very weary and wet: the Women and little Children crying and making great exclamations againft them and their god that had brought them into this diftreffe. They were informed to poife a Rur that could not be waied throw, and therefore they added to make fmall Boates of their Targets and of Reeds, wherein they puffed. Then afterwards, hauing left *Culhuacan*, they arrived at *Ixtacalco*, and finally to the place where the Hermitage of *Saint Anthony* now is, at the entrie of *Mexico*, and to that quarter which they now call *Saint Paul*. During which time their Idoll did comfort them in their traulls, and encouraged them, promising great matters.

The time being now come, that the Father of Iyes should accomplifh his promise made to his people, who could no longer fuffre fo many turnings, trauels, and dangers, it happened that fome old Priests or Sorcerers, being entred into a place full of water-lilies, they met with a very faire and cleere current of water, which feemed to be fluer, and looking about, they found the Trees, Meadows, Fish, and all that they beheld to be very white: wondering hereat, they remembered a prophesie of their god, whereby he had given them that for a token of their place of rest, and to make them Lords of other Nations. Then weeping for ioy, they returned to the people with these goodnewes. The night following, *Quetzilcoatl* appeared in a dreame to an ancient Priest, faying, that they should fecke out a *Tamal* in the Lake, which grew out of a fone (which as hee told them, was the fame place where by his commandment they had caft the heart of *Copil*, fonne to the Sorceresse their enemy) and vpon this *Tamal* they should fee a goodly Eagle, which fed on certaine fmall birds. When they should fee this, they should beleuee it was the place where their Citie should be built, the which should surmount all others, and be famous throughout the World. Morning being come, the old man affembled the whole people, from the greatest to the least, making a long fpeech vnto them, how much they were bound vnto their god; and of the reuelation, which (al though yvnow by) he had received that night, concluding that all must fecke out that happy place which was promised them; which bred fuch deuotion and ioy in them all, that presently they vnderooke the enterprife, and diuiding themselves into Bands, they began to reach, following the fignes of the reuelation of the desired place. Amidst the thickest of these water-lilies in the Lake, they met with the fime colour of water they had fene the day before, but much differing, being not white, but red, like blood, the which diuided it selfe into two ftreames, whereof the one was of a very obfcure azure, the which bred admiration in them, noting fome great myfterie, as they faid. After much fearch hereabouts, the *Tamal* appeared growing on a fone, whereon was a Royall Eagle, with the wings difplayed, red towards the Sunne, reaching his beak. About this Eagle were many rich feathers, white, red, yellow, blue, and greene, of the fame fort as they make their Images, which Eagle held in his talants a goodly bird. Those which faw it and knew it to be the place foretold by the Oracle, fell on their knees, doing great worfhip to the Eagle, which bowed the head looking on every fide. Then was there great cries, demonstrations, and thanks vnto the Creator, and to their great god *Quetzilcoatl*, who was their father, and had alwaies told them truth. For this reason they called the Citie which they founded there, *Temetilan*, which fignifies *Tamal on a fone*, and to this day they carry in their Armes, an Eagle vpon a *Tamal*, with a bird in his talant, and standing with the other vpon the *Tamal*. The day following, by common confent they made an Hermitage adjoining to the *Tamal* of the Eagle, that the fcke of their god might rest there, till they might haue means to build him a fumptuous Temple: and fo they made this Hermitage of Flagges and Turfes couered with flraw. Then hauing confulted with their god, they refufed to buy of their Neighbours, Stone, Timber, Lime, in exchange of Fish, Frogs, and young Kids, and for Ducks, Water-hens, Courtlins, and diuers other kindes of Sea fowles. All which things they did fish and hunt for in this Lake, whereof there is great abundance. They went

with these things to the Markets of the Townes and Cities of the *Tapaneans*, and of them of *Teyuca* their neighbours, and with policy they gathered together by little and little, what was neceffarie for the building of their Citie: fo as they built a better Chappell for their Idoll of lime Stone Chape and ftone, and laboured to fill vp a great part of the Lake with rubbish. This done, the Idoll spake one night to one of his Priests, in these termes: Say vnto the *Mexicans*, that the *Nobles-men* diuide themselves every one with their *Knights* and *Friends*, and that they diuide themselves into foure principall quarters: about the house whiche house built for my rest, and in every quarter build four principall quarters. The which was put in execution: and thofe be the foure principall quarters of *Amexco*, which are called at this day *Saint Iean*, *Saint Mary the round*, *Saint Paul*, and *Saint Sabafian*. After this, the *Mexicans* being thus diuided into these foure quarters, their god commanded them to iudie amongst them the gods he should name to them, and that they should gve notice to every quarter, principall of the other foure parttall quarters, where their gods should bee worfhipped. So as vnder every one of these foure principall quarters, there were many life comprehended, according to the number of the Idoll which their god commanded them to worfhip, which they called *Calpatepec*, which is as much to fay, as God of the quarters. In this manner the Citie of *Mexico Temetilan* was founded, and grew great.

This diuifion being made as aforesaid, fome old Men and Ancients held opinion, that in the diuifion, they had not respected them as they deferved: for this cause, they and their Kinfolke did mutinie, and went to fecke another residence: and as they went through the Lake, they found a fmall piece of Ground or Terraffe, which they call *Tlatetel*, where they inhabited, calling it *Tlatetelco*, which fignifies *Place of a Terraffe*. This was the third diuifion of the *Mexicans*, once they left their Country. That of *Mexico* being the first, and that of *Malinalco* the fecond. Those which separated themselves and went to *Tlatetelco*, were the mous men, but of bad difpofition: and therefore they praifed againft the *Mexicans* their neighbours, all the ill neighbourhood they could. They had alwaies quarrels against them, and to this day continues their hatred and ill leagues. They of *Temetilan*, seeing them of *Tlatetelco* thus opposite vnto them, and that they multiplied, feared that in time they might turne out them: hereupon they affembled in counsell, where they thought it good to chofe a King, whom they should obey, and strike terror into their Enemies, that by this means they should bee more vained and stronger among themselves, and their Enemies not presume too much against them. Being thus refolued to chofe a King, theyooke another aduice very profitable and assured, to chofe none among themselves, for the avoiding of diffentions, and to gayne (by their new King) fome other neighbour Nations, by whom they were instructed, being destitute of all fuccours. All well confidered, both to pacifie the King of *Culhuacan*, whom they had greatly offended, hauing faine and flayed the daughter of his predecessor, and done him for a great a fomme, as also to haue a King of the *Mexican* blood, of which generation there were many in *Culhuacan*, which continued vnto this fince the time they lived in peace amongst them; they refolued to chofe for their King, a young man called *Acamapixtli*, fonne to a great *Mexican* Prince, and of a Lady, daughter to the King of *Culhuacan*. Presently they fent Ambassadors with a great Prefent to demand this man, who deliuered their Ambafage in these termes: Great Lord, we thy *Vaffals* and *Seruaunts*, place and fettle thee in the *Weedes and Reedes of the Lake*, alone, and abundance of all the Nations of the World, led onely and guided by our god to the place where we are, which falls in the iurisdiction of your limits of *Atcapualco*, and of *Telco*: Although you haue suffered vs to live and remaine there; yet will we not, neither is it reafon to live without a Head and Lord to command, correct, and gouerne vs, unfrustrating vs in the course of our life, and defending vs from our Enemies: Therefore we come to you, knowing that in your Court and House, there are Children of our generation, lucky and allied with yours, ifleak from our entrails, and yours, of our blood and yours; among the which we haue knowledge of a Grand-child of yours and ours, called *Acamapixtli*. Wee affect you therefore, to giue him vnto our Lord, we will fuffice him in bee defertes, being hee of the Lineage of the Lords of *Mexico*, and the King of *Culhuacan*.

The King hauing confulted vpon this point, and finding it nothing inconuenient to be allied to the *Mexicans*, who were valiant men, made them anfwere, That they should take his grand-child in good time, adding thereunto, that if he had been a woman, he would not haue giuen her, noting the foule fact before foken of, ending his difcource with these words, Let my grand-child goe to fcrue your god, and be his Lieutenant, to rule and gouerne his Creatures, by whom we live, who is the Lord of Night, Day, and Windes: Let him goe, and be Lord of the Water and Land, and poffeffe the Mexican Nation, take him in good time, and vnto him as my fonne and grand-child. The *Mexicans* gaue him thanks, all ioyfully desiring him to marry him with his owne hand, fo as hee gae him to wife, one of the noblest Ladies amongst them. They conducted the new King and Queene with all honor poffible, and made him a folemne reception; going all in general forth to fee the King, whom they led into Palaces which were then built meane, and hauing fated them in Royall Thrones, presently one of the Ancients and an Orator

God of the
quarters.

Of the fedition
of those of Tlatetelco
and of
the first King
the *Mexicans*
did chofe.

Acamapixtli
first King
of the
Mexicans

much esteemed amongst them, did rise up, speaking in this manner, *My Sonne, our Lord and King, thou art welcome to this poor House and City, amongst these weeds and mud, where thy brothers, Grand-fathers, and Kinsfolke, endure what is pleases the Lord of things created. Remember Lord thou comest hither to be the defence and supports of the Mexican Nation, and to be the resemblance of our god Xitlaphatz, whereupon the charge and government is given thee. Thou knowest we are not in our Country, seeing the Land we possesse at this day is another, neither know we what shall become of us to morrow, or another day: Consider therefore, that thou comest not to rest or recreate thy selfe, but rather to endure a very charge under so heavy a burden: wherein thou must continually labour, being flaine to this mud-water, which is full of thorns, and to all this neighbour people, whom thou must strive to gratifie, and give them contentment, seeing thou knowest we live upon their Land, and within their limits. And ending, he repeated these words; Thou art welcome, Thou and the Queens our Mistrie, to this your Realme. This was the speech of the old man, which with other Orationes (which the Mexican Historiies doe celebrate) the Children did vfe to learne by heart, and so they were kept by Tradition, some of them defense well to be reported in their proper termes. The King answering, thanked them, and offered them his care and diligence in their defense and aide in all he could. After they gave him the Oath, and after their manner set the Royall Crowne upon his head, the which is like to the Crowne of the Dukes of Venice: the name of *Acemaphatz* their first King, signifies a *handfull of Reeds*, and therefore they carry in their Armouries a hand holding many arrows of Reeds.*

How Orationes were kept in minime.

Crowne and coronation.

Of the strange use the Mexicans payed to them of *Acemaphatz* chips.

Garden in the water.

How made.

New Flurants and such.

Acemaphatz dyed.

The Mexicans hapned so well in the election of their new King, that in short time they grew to have some forme of a Common-weale, and to be famous among strangers; whereupon their neighbours moued with fear, practised to subdue them, especially the *Tapacanos*, who had *Acemaphatz* for their Metropolitane Cite, to whom the *Mexicans* payed tribute, as strangers dwelling in their Land. For the King of *Acemaphatz* fearing their power which increased, fought to oppresse the *Mexicans*, and having consulted with his subiects, he sent to tell King *Acemaphatz*, that the ordinarie tribute they payed was too little, and that from thenceforth they should bring Firre trees, Sappines, and Willows for the building of the Cite; and moreover, they should make him a Garden in the water, planted with diuers kinds of Herbes and Pulses, which they should bring vnto him yearly by water, dressed in this manner, without fayling; which if they did not, he declared them his enemies, and would roote them out. The *Mexicans* were much troubled at this commandment, holding it impossible: and that this demand was to no other end, but to seeke occasion to ruine them. But their god *Vitzilpachiti* comforted them, appearing that night to an old man, commanding him to say to the King his sonne in his name, that he should make no difficultie to accept of this tribute, he would helpe them and make the meanes easie, which after happened: for the time of tribute being come, the *Mexicans* carried the Trees that were required; and moreover, a Garden made and floating in the water, and in it much *Mays* (which is their Corne) already grayned and in the eare: there was also *Indian Pepper*, *Bettes*, *Tomatoes*, which is a great fappy and fauourie graine, *French Pearls*, *Eggs*, *Gourds*, and many other things, all ripe, and in their season. Such a house neuer before the Garden in the Lake of *Mexico*, in the middle of the water, will not beleue it, but will say it is an enchantment of the Deuill whom they worship. But in truth it is a matter to be done, and there hath been often fens of these Gardens floating in the water; for they cast earth vpon Reeds and Graile, in such sort it neuer waxes in the water; they sow and plant this ground, fo as the graine growes and ripens very well, and then they remove it from place to place. But it is true, that to make this great Garden easie, and to haue the fruits grow well, is a thing that makes men iudge there was the worke of *Vitzilpachiti*, whom otherwise they call *Patlatli*, specially having neuer made nor sene the like. The King of *Acemaphatz* wondered much when he saw that accomplishment which he held impossible saying vnto his subiects, that this people had a great god that made all easie vnto them, and he said vnto the *Mexicans*, that seeing their god gave them all things perfect, he would the yeere following, at the time of tribute, they should bring in their Garden a *wild Ducke*, and a *Heron*, sitting on their eggs, in such sort, that they should hatch their young ones as they should arise, without fayling of a minute, vpon paine of his indignation. The *Mexicans* were much troubled and heauie with this proud and strait command: but their god, as he was accustomed, comforted them in the night, by one of his Priests, saying, that he would take all that charge vpon him, willing them not to feare, but beleue that the day would come, when as the *Acemaphatz* should pay with their liues this deafe of new Tributes. The time being come, as the *Mexicans* carried all that was demanded of their Gardens, among the *Reeds* and *Willows* of the Garden, they found a *Ducke* and a *Heron* hatching their eggs, and at the same instant when they arrived at *Acemaphatz* measure, hee said againe to his people, that the life were more then humane things, and that the *Mexicans* began as if they would make themselves Lords ouer all thote Prouinces. Yet did hee not diminish the order of this tribute, and the *Mexicans* finding not themselves mightie enough, endured this subiection and lauerie the space of fiftie yeeres. In this time the King *Acemaphatz* died, having beautified the Cite of *Mexico* with many goodly buildings, streets, Conduits of water,

water, and great abundance of munition. He reigned in peace and rest fortie yeeres, having bene alwayes zealous for the good and increase of the Common-weale.

As he drew neere his end, he did one memorable thing, that hauing lawfull children to whom he might leave the succession of the Realme, yet would hee not do it, but contrariwise hee spake he might leave the Common-weale, that as they had made a free Election of him, so they should chioose him that should seeme fittest for their good Government, auditing them therein to haue a care to the good of the Common-weale, and seeming grieued that he left them not freed from Tribute and subiection, he dyed, having recommended his wife and children vnto them, he left all his people forrowfull for his death.

¶ II.

Of the second King *VITZILPACHITI*, and of his Successors and their Acts vntill the Reigne of *MOTETZMA* their last King.

HE Obsequies of the dead King performed, the Ancients, the chiefe of the Realme, and some part of the people assembled together, to chioose a King, where the Ancients propounded the necessitie wherein they were, and then it was usual to chioose for chioose of their Cite, a man that had none of eyes, of *Whiskers*, and Orphan, and to be a father of the Common-weale: for in very deed they should be the fathers of his eyes, and the heart of his face, that it was necessary hee were valiant, being kneeling shortly to vfe their forces, as their God had prophesied. Their resolution in the end was to chioose a sonne of the Predecessor, vnto the like good office in accepting his sonne for Successor, as hee had done to the Common-weale, relying thereon.

This young man was called *Vitzilpachiti*, which significeth a rich feather. They for the Royall Crowne vpon his head, and anointed him as they had bene accustomed to do to all their Kings, with an Ointment they call *Dumme*, being the same vntion, wherewith they did anoint their Idoll. Presently an Orator made an eloquent speech, exhorting him to arme himselfe with courage, and free them from the trouble, *flourish and miserie they suffered, being oppressed by the Acemaphatz*: which done, all did him homage. This King was not married, and his Counsell held opinion, that it was good to marry him with the Daughter of the King of *Acemaphatz*, to haue him a friend by this alliance, and to obtaine some diminution of their heauie burthen of Tributes imposed vpon them, and yet they feared lest he should disclaime to give them his Daughter, by reason they were his Vassals: yet the King of *Acemaphatz* yielded therunto, having nobly required him, who with courteous words gave them his Daughter, called *Acemaphatz*, whom they led with great pompe and toy to *Mexico*, and performed the Ceremony and Solemnities of Marriage, which was to tie a corner of the mans Cloake to a part of the womans Veile, in signe of the band of Marriage. This Queene brought forth a sonne, of whose name they demanded the advice of the King of *Acemaphatz*, and calling Lots as they had accustomed (being greatly giuen to Soothsayings, especially vpon the names of their children) he would haue his Grand-child called *Chimalpopech*, which signifies *A Target casting smoke*. The Queene his Daughter seeing the contentment the King of *Acemaphatz* had of his Grand-child, tooke occasion to intreate him to relieve the *Mexicans*, of the heauie burthen of their Tributes, seeing hee had now a Grand-child *Mexican*, the which the King willingly yielded vnto, by the advice of his Counsell, granting (for the Tribute which they paid) to bring yearly a couple of *Ducks* and some fish, in signe of subiection, and that they dwell in his Land. The *Mexicans* by this meanes remained much eased and content, but it lasted little, for the Queene their Proterrix died soone after:

50 much aged and content, but it lasted little, for the Queene their Proterrix died soone after: and the yeere following likewise *Vitzilpachiti* the King of *Mexico* died, leaving his sonne *Chimalpopech* tenne yeeres old; he reigned thirteene yeeres, and died thirtie yeeres old, or little more. He was held for a good King, and careful in the seruice of his Gods, whose Images hee held Kings to be; and that the honour done to their God, was done to the King, who was his Image. For this cause the Kings haue bene so affectionate to the seruice of their Gods. This King was careful to winne the loue of his neighbours, and to traffike with them, whereby hee augmented his Cite, exercising his men in Warrelke actions in the Lake, disposing them to that which hee prescribed, as you shall see presently.

The *Mexicans* for Successor to their deceased King did chioose his sonne *Chimalpopech*, by common consent, although hee were a child of ten yeeres old, being of opinion that it was alwayes necessary to keepe the fauour of the King of *Acemaphatz*, making his Grand-child King. They then let him in his Throne, giuing him the Ensignes of warre, with a *Bow and Armes* in one hand, and a *Sword with Rafters* (which they commonly vfe) in the right, signifying thereby

Oooo 3

Of *Chimalpopech* on the third King, and his cruel death, &c. the occasion of warre which the *Mexicans* made, Chap. 11.

Ceremonies
of defiance.

Of the battell
the Mexicani
gave to the
Tapanecans, and
of the victorie
they obtained
chap. 13.

The Battall.

Mexicans con-
quer.

Division of
spoils.

passport, yet could he not obtaine any, but that he should vie his best skill: with this he returned to Mexico, giuing his words to the guards to returne. And although the King of *Azcapotzalco* desired peace, being of a milde disposition, yet his Subjects did so incenle him, as his answer was open warre. The which being heard by the Messenger, he did all his King commanded him, declaring by this ceremony, to give arms and announcing the King with the vocation of the dead, that his King behalfe he did defend him. Having giuing goodly armes in recompence to the Messenger, wishing him not to returne by the Pallace gate, where many intended to cut him in peeces, but to goe out secretly by a little ffile Posterne that was open in one of the Courts of the Pallace. This young man did so, and turning by secret waies got away in fassette in sight of the Guards, and there debeth came, saying, Tapanecans and Azcapotzalcos, you doe your office ill, vnderstand you shall all dye, and not one Tapanecan shall remaine alive. In the meane time the Guards fell vpon him, where he behaued himselfe so valiantly, that he slew some of them: and seeing many more of them come running, he retired himselfe gallantly to the Citie, where he brought newes, that warre was proclaimed with the Tapanecans, and that he had defied their King.

The defe being knownto to the Commons of Mexico, they came to the King, according to their accustomed cowardise, demanding leaue to depart the Citie, holding their name certaine. The King did comfort and encourage them, promising to giue them libertie if they vanquished their enemies, willing them not to feare. The people replied, *And if we be vanquished, when shall we do? If we be overcome, (answered the King) we will be bound presently to geaule our felues into your hands to suffer death, eate our flesh in your dishes and be renegued of vs. It shall be so then (say they) if you loose the victorie, and if you obtaine the victorie, we doe perfectly offer our felues to be your Tributaries, to labour in your boules, to sowe your ground, to carrie your armes and baggage when you goe to the warres for a year, me and our defendants offer vs.* These accords made betwixt the People and the Nobilitie (which they did after fully performed, either willingly or by constraint, as they had promised) the King named for his Capitaine. General *Tlacaelle*: the whole Campe was put in order, and into Squadrons, giuing the places of Captaines to the most valiant of his kindfolkes and friends: then did he make them a goodly speech, whereby he did greatly encourage them, being now well prepared, charging all men to obey the commandement of the General whom he had appointed: he diuided his men into two parts, commanding the most valiant and hardie, to giue the first charge with him, and that all the rest should remaine with the King *Izcoatl*, vntill they should see the first assault their enemies. Marching then in order, they were discouered by them of *Azcapotzalco*, who presently came hauiouly forth the Citie, carrying great riches of Gold, Silver, and Armes of great value, as those which had the Emptire of all that Countrey. *Izcoatl* gave the signall to battaile, with a little Drumme he carried on his shoulders, and presently they raised a generall shout, crying, *Mexico, Mexico*, they charged the Tapanecans, and although they were farre more in number, yet did they defeat them, and force them to retire into their Citie, then advanced they which remained behinde, crying *Tlacaelle, Tlacaelle*, all sodainly entered the Citie, where (by the Kings commandement) they pardoned not any man, no not old men, women, nor children, for they slew them all, and spoiled the Citie being very rich. And not content herewith, they followed them that fled, and were retired into the craggie rocks of the *Sierres* or neere Mountains, flitting and making a great slaughter of them. The Tapanecans being retired to a Mountaine call downe their Armes, demanding their liues, and offering to serue the *Mexicani*, to giue them Lands and Gardens, Stone, Lime and Timber, and to hold them always for their Lords. Vpon this condition *Tlacaelle* retired his men and, ceased the battaile, granting them their liues vpon the former conditions, which they did solemnely sweare. Then they returned to *Azcapotzalco*, and so with their rich and victorious spoiles to the Citie of Mexico. The day following the King assembled the Nobilitie and the People, to whom he laid open the accord the Commons had made, demanding of them, if they were content to perfitt therein: the Commons made answer, that they had promised, and they had well defered it, and therefore they were content to serue them perpetually. Whereupon they tooke an oath, which since they haue kept without contradiction.

This done, *Izcoatl* returned to *Azcapotzalco* (by the advice of his Counsell) he diuided all the Lands and Goods of the conquered among the conquerours, the chieftest part fell to the King, then to *Tlacaelle*, and after to the rest of the Nobles, as they best deferved in the Battaille. They also gave Land to some Plebeians, hauing behaued themselves valiantly; to others they distributed the Pillage, making small account of them as of cowards. They appointed Lands in common for the quarters of Mexico, to couerly one part for the Seruice and Sacrifices of their Gods. This was the order which afterwards they alwayes kept, in the diuision of the Lands and spoils of those they had vanquished and subdued. By this meanes they of *Azcapotzalco* remained poore, as they had no Land left them to labour, and (which was worse) they tooke their King from them, and all power to choofe any other than him of Mexico.

Although

Although the chiefe Citie of the Tapanecans, was that of *Azcapotzalco*, yet had they others with their priuate Lords, as *Tucuba* and *Cuyoacan*. These seeing the storme passed, would gladly that they of *Azcapotzalco* had renewed the warre against the *Mexicani*, and seeing them thus danted, as a Nation wholly broken and defeated, they of *Cuyoacan* refused to make againe the Citie of *Azcapotzalco* by themselves; to the which they laboured to draw the other neighbour Nations, who would not stirre nor quarrell with the *Mexicani*. In the meane time the hatred and malice increasing, they of *Cuyoacan* began to ill intreate the women that went to their Markets, mocking at them, and doing the like to the men once whom they had power: for which cause the King of Mexico defended, that none of his should goe to *Cuyoacan*, and that they should reuene none of them into Mexico, the which made them of *Cuyoacan* reuolue wholly to warre: but first they would prouoke them by some shamefull scorn, which was, that hauing invited them to one of their tolemaie Feasts, after they had made them a goodly Banquet, and feasted them with a great dance after their manner, they sent them for their frieze, womens apparrell, forcing them to put it on, and so to returne home like women to their Citie, reproaching them, that they were cowards and effeminate, and that they durst not take arms being sufficiently prouoked. Those of Mexico lay, that for reuenge they did vnto them a foule come, lying at the gates of their Citie of *Cuyoacan* certaine things which (inoked, by meanes whereof many women were deliuered before their time, and many fell sicke. In the end, all came to open war, and there was a battaile fought, wherein they imploied all their forces, in the which *Tlacaelle*, by his courage and police in warre, obtained the victorie. For hauing led King *Izcoatl* in fight with them of *Cuyoacan*, he put himselfe in ambush with some of the most valiant Souldiers, and so turning about, charged them behinde, and forced them to retire into their Citie. But seeing their intent was to flie into a Temple which was very strong, he with three other valiant Souldiers, pursued them eagerly, and got before them, setting on the Temple and firing it, so as he forced them to flie to the fields, where he made a great slaughter of the vanquished, putting them two by two in the Countrey, vnto a little hill, where the vanquished casting away their weapons, and their armes a croffe, yielded to the *Mexicani*, and with many teares ced pardon of their outwearing folly, in vying them like women, offering to be their slaves: so as in the end the *Mexicani* did pardon them. Of this victory the *Mexicani* did carry away 30 very rich spoils of Garments, Armes, Gold, Silver, Jewels, and rich feathers, with a great number of Captiues. In this Battaille there were three of the principals of *Culhuacan* that came to aide the *Mexicani*, to win honour, the which were remarkable about all. And since being knownto to *Tlacaelle*, and hauing made prooffe of their fidelity, he gave them *Mexican* dwellings, and had them alwayes by his side, where they fought in all places very valiantly. It was so purpate that the whole victory was due to the General, and to these three; for among so many captiues taken, two third parts were women by these four, which was caldy knowne by a policie they vied: for taking a Captiue, they presently cut off a little of his haire, and gaue it to others, so as it appeared that those which had their haire cut, amounted to that number, whereby they wonne great reputation and fame of valiant men. They were honoured as Conquerours, giuing them good portions of the spoils and Lands, as the *Mexicani* had alwaies vied to doe, which giue occasion to those that did fight, to become famous, and to win reputation by Armes.

The Nation of the Tapanecans being subdued, the *Mexicani* had occasion to doe the like to the *Suchimilcos*, who (as hath bene said) were the first of the feuen Cues or lineages that Of the warre and victorie peopled this Land. The *Mexicani* fought not the occasion, although they might presume as which the *Mexicani* had against the *Suchimilcos* to extend their limits, but the *Suchimilcos* did moue them, to their owne ruine, as it happens to men of small iudgement that haue no foresight, who not preventing the mischief they imagined, fall into it. The *Suchimilcos* held opinion, that the *Mexicani*, by reason of their victories past, should attempt to subdue them, and confounded heron among themselves. Some among them thought it good to acknowledge them for superiours, and to applaud their good fortune, but the contrary was allowed, and they went out to giue them battaile: which *Izcoatl* the King of Mexico vnderstanding, he sent his General *Tlacaelle* against them, with his arme: the battaile was fought in the same field that diuides their limits, which two Armes were equal in men and armes, but very diuers in their order and manner of fighting; for that the *Suchimilcos* charged all together on a heape confusedly, and *Tlacaelle* diuided his men into squadrons with a goodly order, so as he presently brake his enemies, forcing them to retire into their Citie, into the which they entred, following them to the Temple whither they fled, which they fired, and forcing them to retire to the Mountains: in the end they brought them to this point, that they yielded with their arme a croffe. The General *Tlacaelle* returning in Temple filled 60 great triumph, the Priests went forth to receive him, with their muske of Flutes, and giuing vnto him. The chiefe Captiues vied other Ceremonies and shewes of ioy, as they had bene accustomed to doe, and the King with all the troupe went to the Temple to giue thanks to their fallie god.

The day following, the King *Izcoatl* went into the Citie of *Suchimilcos*, causing himselfe to

Of the warre
and victorie
the
Mexicani
had
against
the
Cite
of
Cuyoacan
chap. 14.

Temple.

Temple filled.

Cauferies.

Cultures.

Children in the Court.

Ceremonies.

Receives death.

Of the fitting King of Mexico, called Motecuma, the first of this name.

Griffins.

Blondy and di-
vulish influ-
tion.

Pomposity.

be sworn King of the *Sachimiles*; and for their comfort he promised to doe them good. In-
stant whereof he commanded them to make a great *Cauferies* hreaching from *Mexico* to *Sach-*
miles, which is four leagues, to the end there might be more commerce and traffike among
them. Which the *Sachimiles* performed, and in short time the *Mexican* government seemed
to goad vnto them, as they held themselves happy to haue changed their King and Common-
weale. Some neighbours pricked forward by enuie, or feare, to their ruines, were not yet made
wife by others miseries.

Cuicuilana was a Cite within the Lake: which though the name and dwelling be changed,
continually yet. They were chuse to swim in the Lake, and therefore they thought they might
much inlonge and annoy the *Mexicans* by water, which the King vnderstanding, he re-
solved to send his Armie presently to fight against them. But *Tlacaellcs* little esteeming this warre,
holding it dishonorable to lead an Armie against them, made offer to conquer them with the
children only: which he performed in this manner: he went vnto the Temple and drew out of
the Couent such children as he thought fittest for the action, from tenne to eighteen years of
age, who knew how to guide their Boates, or Canoes, teaching them certain policies. The
order they held in this warre, was, that he went to *Cuicuilana* with his children, and his
policy he pre-destined the enemy in such sort, that he made them to flye; and as he followed
ple, and by the means he layed the pursuit. The children returned with much poyle, and
many Captures for their Sacrifices, being solemnly received with a great Procession, Musike
and Perfumes, and they went to worship their gods, in taking of the earth which they did
eate, and drawing blood from the forehead of their legs with the Priests Lances, with other di-
peritions which they were accustomed to vie in like the *Solomnities*. The children were much
honored and encouraged, and the King embraced and kissed them, and his kinsmen and allies
accompanied them. The bruite of this victory ranne throughout all the Countrey, how that
Tlacaellcs had subdued the Cite of *Cuicuilana* with children: the news and consideration where-
of opened the eyes of chiefe of *Tefcoco*, a chiefe and very cunning Nation for their manner of
life: So as the King of *Tefcoco* was full of opinion, that they should subiect themselves to the
King of *Mexico*, and mure him therunto with his Cite. Therefore by the aduise of his Coun-
sell, he sent Ambassadors good Orators with honorable presents, to offer themselves vnto
the *Mexicans*, as their Subjects, desiring peace and amity, which was graciously accepted;
but by the aduise of *Tlacaellcs* he vied a Ceremony for the effecting thereof, which was, that
chose of *Tefcoco* should come forth armed against the *Mexicans*, where they should fight, and
presently yeelde, which was an act and ceremony of warre, without any effusion of blood on
either side. Thus the King of *Mexico* became Soueraigne Lord of *Tefcoco*, but heooke not
their King from them, but made him of his Prinee Countell; so as they haue alwayes main-
tained themselves in this manner vntill the time of *Motecuma* the second, during whose reign
the *Spaniards* entered. Having subdued the Land and Cite of *Tefcoco*, *Mexico* remained Lally
enjoyed this prosperitie, and reigned twelue years, dyed, leaving the Realme which had 40
beene given him, much augmented by the valour and conquest of his Nephew *Tlacaellcs*.

Forasmuch as the election of the new King, belonged to foure chiefe Elctrs, and to the
King of *Tefcoco*, and the King of *Tecuahuacan*, by especiall privilege: *Tlacaellcs* assembled thir-
te persons, as he that had the fouraine authority, and haue propounded the matter vnto
them, they made choice of *Motecuma*, the first of that name, Nephew to the late *Tlacaellcs*.
His election was very pleasing vnto them all, by reason whereof, they made most kinne teals,
and more largely then the former. Presently after his election they conducted him to the Tem-
ple, they let him in his royal throne, putting vpon him his royall ornaments. Being there, the
Priests, Ancients, and Captaines, made their Oration, all congratulating his election. They were accustomed in their elections to make great
Feasts and Dances, where they wasted many lights. In this Kings time the custom was to make great
in, that the King should goe in person to make warre in some Province, and bring Captives to
solemnize the feast of his Coronation, and for the solemn Sacrifices of that day. For this cause
King *Motecuma* went into the Province of *Chalco*, who had declared themselves his enemies:
from whence (having fought valiantly) he brought a great number of Captives, whereof he did
make a notable Sacrifice the day of his Coronation, although at that time he did not subdue all
the Province of *Chalco*, being a very warlike Nation. Alike came to this Coronation from di-
uers Provinces, as will here be shewd, to see the feast, at the which all comers were verie
bountifully entertained and clothed, especially the poore, to whom they gave new garments. For
this cause they thought that day into the Cite, the Kings ministers with a great multitude
confabulous to make Garments of all sorts, in *Cacao*, Gold, Silver, and Feathers, great bur-
thens of *Cacao*, *Cacao* beans, Junie Cuts of *Pales*, many kinds of Sea fish, and of their
wether.

warre, great store of Fruits, and Venison without number, not reckoning an infinite number of
Presents which other Kings and Lords sent to the new King. All this Tribute marched in or-
der according to the Provinces, and before them the Stewards and receivers, with diuers markes
and Ensignes, in very goodly order: so as it was one of the goodliest things of the feast, to see the
entire of the Tribute. The King being crowned, he imposed himselfe in the conquest of ma-
ny Provinces, and for that he was both valiant and victorious, he filled increased more and more,
vying in all his affaires the counsell and industrie of his Generall *Tlacaellcs*, whom he did alwayes
lose and esteeme very much as he had good reason. The warre whereon he was most troubled
of greatest difficulty, was that of the Province of *Chalco*, wherein there happened great nat-
ures, whereof one was very remarkable: which was, that they of *Chalco*, had taken a brother
of *Motecuma* in the warre, whom they refused to choole for their King, asking him verie
curiously, if he would accept of this charge. He answered after much importunitie, still per-
sisting therein: that if they meant plainly to choole him for their King, they should plant in
the Market-place, a Tree or very high stake, on the top whereof, they should make a little scaf-
fold, and meanes to mount vnto it. The *Chalcos* supposing it had bene some ceremonie to
make himselfe more apparant, presently effected it: then assembling all his *Mexicans* about
the stake, he went to the top with a garland of flowers in his hand, speaking to his men in this
manner, O valiant *Mexicans*, these men will assault me for their King, but the gods will not permit
that to be a King I should commit any treason against my Countrey, but contrariwise, I will that you
learn by me, that in beloyment of rather, to endure death, then to aide our enemies. Saying these words,
he called himselfe downe, and was broken in a thousand peeces, as which spectacle, the *Chalcos*
did so great horror and despite, that presently they fell vpon the *Mexicans* and flew them all
with their Lances, as men whom they held too proud and inexorable, flying, they had diuersified
hearts. It chanced the night following, they heard two Owles making a mournfull cry, which
they did interpret as an unfortunate signe, and a preface of their neere destruction, as it suc-
ceeded: for King *Motecuma* went against them in person with all his power, where he run-
ned, and conquered the North Sea. Then returning towards the South Sea, he subdued
many Provinces: loss he becomes mighty King: all by the helpe and counsell of *Tlacaellcs*, who
in a manner conquered all the *Mexican* Nation. Yet he held an opinion (the which was con-
firmed) that it was not behouefull to conquer the Province of *Tlacaella*, that the *Mexicans*
might haue a frontier enemy, to keepe the youth of *Mexico* in exercise and alarme: and that
they might haue numbers of Captives to Sacrifice to their Idols wherein they did waste (as hath
bene said) infinite numbers of men, which should be taken by force in the warre. The honor must
be given to *Motecuma*, or to speak truly, to *Tlacaellcs* his Generall, for the good order and policy
which he used for the number of lodges and Magistrates, being as well ordered there, as
in any Common-wealth; yet were it in the most boundling of *Europe*. This King did also great-
ly increase the Kings house, giving it great authority, and appointing many and sundry Offi-
cers, which served him with great pompe and ceremony. He was no lefse remarkable touching
the deuotion and feruor of his Idols, increasing the number of his Ministers, and instituting new
ceremonies, whereunto he carried a great respect.

He built that great Temple dedicated to their god *Yaculilic*, whereof is spoken in the o-
ther Booke. He did Science as the dedication of this Temple, a great number of men, taken in
his many victories: finally, inuoying his Empire in great prosperitie, he fell sicke, and died, having
reigned twentie six yeares, vnto his successor *Tlaco*, who did not resemble him neither
in valour, nor in good fortune.

The foure Deputies assembled in counsell, with the Lords of *Tefcoco* and *Tecuahuacan*, where *Tlaca-*
cellcs was President in the election, where by all their voices *Tlacaellcs* was chosen, as as de-
fending this charge better then any other. Yet he refused it, perfwading them by pertinent rea-
sons, that they should choole another, saying, that it was better, and more expedient to haue
another King, and so to be his instrument and assistant, as he had bene till then, and not
to lay the whole burthen vpon him; for that he held himselfe no less bound for the Common-
weale, then if he were King; seeming to him, though he were not King, yet in a manner, that
he commanded Kings, that he himselfe carry certain markes, as a *Tlaco* or ornament for
that represents the personage that imports most. In respect of his modesty, and for the re-
spect which the *Mexican* Electors bare him, they demanded of *Tlacaellcs* (that seeing he
would not raise) whom he thought most fit: Whereupon he gaue his voyce to *Sonne*
of the deceased King, who was then very young, called *Tlaco*; but they replied,
that his shoulders were very weak to beare so heauie a burthen. *Tlacaellcs* answered,
that his was there to helpe him to beare the burthen, as he had done to the deceased: by
means whereof, they took their resolution, and *Tlaco* was chosen, to whom were done all
the accustomed ceremonies.

Horrible con-
trariety.

Tlacaella 1015
the *Mexicans*, as *Chalco*
thence to Rome.

Great Temple
related to be
King, and of
dedication
and deedes of
Tlaco Chap. 17

How *Tlacaellcs*
related to be
King, and of
dedication
and deedes of
Tlaco Chap. 17

Fit similie.

Nothils pier-
ced.

They pierced his nothils, and for an ornament put an Emerald therein: and for this reason, in the *Mexican* Bookes, this King is noted by his nothills pierced. Hee differed much from his Father and Predecessor, being noted for a coward, and not valiant. He went to make warre for his Coronation, in a Province that had rebelled, where hee lost more of his owne men then hee tooke captiues; yet he returned saying, that he brought the number of captiues required for the Sacrifice of his Coronation, and so he was crowned with great solemnitie. But the *Mexicans* disconcerted to haue a King so little disposed to warre, persuaded to hasten his death by poison. For this cause he continued not above foure yeeres in the Kingdomes. But this losse was well repaired by a Brother of the deceased, who was also sonne to great *Axayacatl*, called *Axayacatl*, who was likewise chosen by the aduice of *Tlatalellcs*, wherein hee happened better then before.

Of the death
of Tlatalellcs,
and the death
of Axayacatl
the French King
of the Mexi-
can Chap. 15.

Now was *Tlatalellcs* very old, who by reason of his age, was carried in a chaire vpon mens shoulders, to sit in councill when business required. In the end he fell sicke, when as the King (who was not yet crowned) was with him often, shedding many teares, seeming to looke in him his Father, and the Father of his Country. *Tlatalellcs* did most affectionately recommend his children vnto him, especially the eldest, who had shewed himselfe valiant in the former warres. The King promised to haue regard vnto him, and the more to comfort the old man, in his presence hee gaue him the charge and ensignes of Captaine Generall, with all the preleminences of his Father; wherewith the old man remained so well satisfied, as with this content he ended his dayes.

The *Mexicans* made his Funerall as the Founder of that Empire, more sumptuous and flatel-ly, then they had done to any of their former Kings. And presently after *Axayacatl* (so appeale the sorrow which all the people of *Mexico* shewed for the death of their Captaine) resolved to make the voyage necessary for his Coronation. He therefore led his Arme with great expedition into the Province of *Tlaximacatlan*, two hundred legates from *Mexico*, where he gaue battell to a mighty Arme, and an infinite number of men assembled together, as well out of that Province, as from their Neighbourhood, to oppose themselves against the *Mexicans*. The first of his Campe that advanced himselfe, to the combat was the King himselfe, defying his enemies, from whom he made them to flye when they charged him, vntill hee had drawne them into an Ambuscado, where many Souldiers lay hidden vnder straw, who suddenly issued forth, and they which fled, turned head so as they of *Tlaximacatlan* remayned in the midst of them, whom they charged furiously, making a great laughter of them: and following their victorie, they razed their Citie and Temple, punishing all their Neighbourhood rigorously. Then went they on farther, and without any stay, conquered to *Guazacatlan*, the which is a Port at this day we well knowe in the South Sea. *Axayacatl* returned to *Mexico* with great and rich spoiles, where hee was honourably crowned, with sumptuous and flatly preparation of Sacrifices, Tributes, and other things, wherewith many came to see his Coronation. The Kings of *Mexico* received the Crowne from the hands of the King of *Tlaximacatlan*, who had the preleminence. Hee made many other Enterprises, where he obtained great victories, being alwayes the first to leade the Arme, and to charge the enemy; by the which he purchased the name of a most valiant Captaine: and not content to subdue his Neighbourhood, he also suppressed his Subjects which had rebelled, which neuer any of his Predecessors euer could doe, or durst attempt. Wee haue already shewed how some fonditions of *Mexico* had diuerged themselves from that Common-weale, and built a Citie neere vnto them, which they called *Tlatelulco*, whereas now *Saint Iago* is.

These being routed, held a faction apart, and increased and multiplied much, refusing to acknowledge the Kings of *Mexico*, nor to yield them obedience. The King *Axayacatl* sent to aduise them, not to lye diuided, but being of one blood, and one people, to ioyne together, and acknowledge the King of *Mexico*: wherupon the Lord of *Tlatelulco* made an answer full of pride and disdain, defying the King of *Mexico*, to single combat with himselfe: and presently mustred his men, commanding some of them to hide themselves in the weeds of the Lake; and the better to deceive the *Mexicans*, he commanded them to take the shapes of Raues, Geese, and other Beasts, as Frogs, and such like, supposing by this means to surprize the *Mexicans* as they should passe by the wayes and cawfers of the Lake. Having knowledge of this deceit, and of his Adversaries policy, hee diuided his Arme, giuing a part to his Generall, the former of *Tlatalellcs*, commanding him to charge this Ambuscado, in the Lake; and hee with the rest of his people, by an vnfrequented way, went and incamped before *Tlatelulco*. Presently hee called him who had defied him, to performe his promise, and as the two Lords of *Mexico*, and *Tlatelulco* advanced, they commanded their Subjects not to moue, vntill they had seene who should bee Conquerour, which was done, and presently the two Lords encountered valiantly, where hauing fought long, in the end the Lord of *Tlatelulco* was forced to turne his backe, being vnable to endure the furious charge of the King of *Mexico*. Those of *Tlatelulco* seeing their Captaine flye, fainted, and fled likewise, but the *Mexicans* following them as the bees, charged them furiously; yet the Lord of *Tlatelulco* escaped not the hands of *Axayacatl* for thinking to save himselfe, hee fled to the top of the Temple, but *Axayacatl* followed him so neere, as hee seized on him with great

Royall com-
bats.

great force, and threw him from the top to the bottome, and after let fire on the Temple, and the Citie.

Whilst this passed at *Tlatelulco*, the *Mexican* Generall was very hote in the reuenge of that which hee supposed to be done him by policy, and after hee had forced them to yield, and to cry for mercy, the Generall said he would not pardon them, vntill they had first performed the Office of those figures they represented, and therefore hee would haue them cry like Frogs and Raues, every one according to the figure which hee had undertaken, else they had no compassion: which thing hee did to mocke them with their owne policy. Feare and Necessitie bee perfect Teachers, so as they did sing and cry with all the differences of voices that were commanded them, to save their liues, although they were much grieved at the sport their enemies made at them. They say that vnto this day, the *Mexicans* vie to jast at the *Tlatelulcos*, which they beare impatiently, when they put them in mind of this singing and crying of beasts. King *Axayacatl* took great pleasure at this come and his newes, and presently after they returned to *Mexico* with great joy. This King was esteemed for one of the best that had commanded in *Mexico*. Hee reigned eleven yeeres.

Among the foure Electors that had power to choose whom they pleased to be King, there was one ended with many perfections, named *Axayacatl*. This man was chosen by the rest, and this choise was very pleasing to all the people: for besides that hee was valiant, all held him courteous and affable to every man, which is one of the chiefe qualities required in them that command, to purchase loue and respect. To celebrate the Feast of his Coronation, hee resolved to make a Voyage, and to punish the pride of those of *Quazacatlan*, a very rich and plentiful Province, and at this day the chiefe of *New Spain*. They had robbed his Officers and Strangers, that carried their Tributes to *Mexico*, and therewithall were rebeld. There was great difficulty to reduce this Nation to obedience, lying in such sort, as an arme of the Sea stoppeth the *Mexicans* passage: to passe the which *Axayacatl* (with a strange device and industry) caused an Island to be made in the water, of faggots, reeds, and other matter; by means whereof, both hee and his men might passe to the enemies; where giuing them battell, hee conquered them, and punished them at his pleasure. Then returned he vnto *Mexico* in triumph, and with great riches, to be crowned King, according to their customes. *Axayacatl* extended the limits of his Kingdome farre, by many Conquests, euen vnto *Guazacatlan*, which is three hundred leagues from *Mexico*. Hee was no lesse industrious in the building of his Palace, gathering together all the people into one place, then commanded hee teaching all the Tributes, which hee diuided among his men. To the poore he gaue Stuffs to make them apparell, and meate, and what became they had need of in great abundance, and shirts of value, as Gold, Silver, Jewels, and Beaters, were diuided amongst the Captaines, Souldiers, and Seruants of his House according to every mans merit. This *Axayacatl* was likewise a great Politician, hee pulled downe the houses ill built, and built others very sumptuous.

It seemed vnto him that the Citie of *Mexico* had too little water, and that the Lake was very muddy, and therefore hee resolved to let in a great course of water, which they of *Cuyocon* did. For this purpose hee sent a cunning man of the Citie vnto him, being a famous Sorcerer, hauing propounded his meaning vnto him: the Sorcerer without mean to be well satisfied what hee did, being a matter of great difficulty, and that hee understood, if hee drew the River out of her ordinary course, making it passe to *Mexico*, hee would drowne the Citie. The King supposed these excoles were but to frustrate the effect of his Designe, being therefore in choler, hee dismissed him home, and a few dayes after hee sent a Prouost to *Cuyocon*, to take this Sorcerer: who hauing vnderstanding for what intent the Kings Officers came, hee called them to enter his house, and then hee presented himselfe vnto them in the forme of a terrible Eagle, wherewith the Prouost and his companions being terrified, they returned without taking him. *Axayacatl* inquired hereof with great care, to whom hee presented himselfe in forme of a furious Tigre, so as they durst not touch him. The third came, and they found him in the forme of a horrible Serpent, wherewith they were much afraid. The King moued the more with these dolours, sent to tell them of *Cuyocon*, that if they brought not the Sorcerer bound vnto him, hee would razed their Citie. For feare whereof, or whether it were of his owne free will, or being forced by the people, hee suffered himselfe to be led to the King, who presently caused him to bee strangled, and then then hee put his resolution in practice, forcing a channell whereby the water might passe to *Mexico*, whereby hee brought a great current of water into the Lake, which they brought with great Ceremonies and Superstitions, hauing Priests casting Incense along the banks, others sacrificed Quails, and with the blood of them sprinkled the channell banks, others sounding of Cornets, accompanied the water with their Musick. One of the chiefe was attired in a habit like to their Goddesse of the water, and all fluted her, saying, that hee was welcome. All which things are painted in the Annals of *Mexico*: which Booke is now at Rome in the holy Library, or Vatican, where a Father of our Company, that was come from *Mexico*, and did see it, and other Histories, the which hee did expound to the Keeper of his Holiness Library, Valcan,

Tlatelulco
fired.Of the deeds
of Axayacatl
the eighth King
of Mexico Chap.
The Picture
Royall com-
bats him
Tlaximacatlan
QuazacatlanFamous Sor-
cerer, or Indian
Priest.Mexican An-
nals in the
Vatican.

taking great delight to understand this Booke, which before here could neuer comprehend. Finally the water was brought to *Mexico*, but it came in such abundance, that it had well nigh drowned the Citie, & was foretold, and in effect it did runne a great part thereof, but it was presently prevented by the industry of *Admiral*, who building an sluice to be made to draw forth the water: by which means where he repayseth the buildings that were fallen, & an exquisite work, being before but poore Cottages. Thus he left the Citie improved with water, like another *Urbine*, and very well built: he reigned eleven yeeres, & ended with the last, and greatest Successor of all the *Mexicans*.

*Of the Election of great MOTEZUMA, the last King of Mexico: his
pompe and manner of government, prodigious fore-
warnings, of his ruine, and the Spanish*

Upon the *Spaniards*, entered New Spain, being in the year of our Lord 1519. *Moteczuma*, and second of that name, was the last King of the *Mexicans*. He died the fifth of June 1520. they of *Mexico*, after his death, chose another King, yea, in the fifth of June 1520. *Texcuma*, whom they declared an enemy to his Country, as was said before. But he that succeeded him, and he that fell into the hands of the *Marquise de Culeu*, had borne names and titles of Kings, for that the Kingdom was in a manner all yielded to the *Spaniards*: so as with reason we account *Moteczuma* for the last King, and so he came to the period of this cause, and of his sad fortune. And thus I have chosen to relate unto you the knowledge of his Gospel, and the Kingdoms of Iesus Christ. I will relate moreover large the Acts of *Moteczuma*, then of herself.

[illegible]

King of Terrors.
ces Oration.

*Mexican great
necle.*

**Their opinion
of God and 9.
Heavens.**

Elegant Press
prints.

The firſt was pronounced by the King of *Tefcowa*, which bears preſentment; for that he was lately delivered, and very worthy to be heard, I will let it down word by word, and thus he ſaid: *The concordance and union of thyſelves upon thyſelfhood, is a ſufficient ſatisfaction (and ſufficient young man) of the happineſſe the Realme ſhall receive, as well deſerving to be commanded by thee, as alſo for the general applaiſe which all doe ſhow by meenes thereof. Whereby thou maye ſee great reaſon, for the Empire of Mexico doth alreadie ſo farre exceede of ſelfe, that to govern a ſteward, as in deede, and to beare ſo beare a burthen, it requireth me leſſe doctrine and courage, than that which is requiſite in thy time and callings there, nor of leſſe wiſdome and judgement thou thinke. I ſee and know plainly, that the mightie King, which thou ſeeſt, being both given understanding to chooſe what was fit, for who will not believe that a Prince, who beareth ſuch a burden, ſhould not know how to obtaine thoſe things that are neceſſary to himſelfe in people, among himſelfe with his beſt judgement giving thereunto bound by the duty and charge of a King. I will let thee ſee before thee the great courage which thou haſt alwayes valiantly ſhewed in matters of importance, and how thou art thou a maſter of greatneſſe need: who will not perſwade himſelfe but the Mexican Empire is come to the height of their Sovereignty, being the Lord of thyſe great and haughty great graces: unto thee, that with thy looke only thou beſeeſt admiration in them that behold thee: Reioyce then, O*

[illegible][illegible]

gallie were his eldred made such new of: humilitie and mildnes; seeing himselfe King; began secretly to discouer his aspiring thoughts. The first was, hee commanded that nobleman should sene in his house, nor beare any Royall Office, as his Predecessor had yed till then: commanding that he should be of more use to the people, than to the Nobles, and that he should be famous more in his Realme (tho he lived within his Palace), and exercise the Offices of his Court, and House. Whereunto an old man of great authority (who had sometimes bin his Schoolemaster) opposed himselfe, advising him, to be careful what he did, and not to thrust himselfe into the danger of a great inconvenience, in separating himselfe from the vulgar and common people, for that they should not dare to looke him in the face, seeing themselves foreseeyed by him. He answered that it was his resolution, and that he would not let the Plebeians thus to go mingled among the Nobles, as they had done, saying, that the Lawe they held, was according to their condition; so that the Kings got no reputation, and thus he continued firm in his resolution. Hee presently commanded his Council to diminish all the Plebeians from their charges and offices; as well those of his Household as of his Court, and to promote Knights, to which was done. After hee went in person to an enterprise necessary for his Coronation. At that time a Province lying farre off towards the North Ocean, was stoaled from the Crown; whether he led the flower of his people, well appointed. There he warred with such valour and dexteritie, that in the end hee obtained all the Province, and punished the Rebels severely, returning with a great number of

40 Capetins for the Sacrifices, and many other popes. All the Cities made him solemn receptions at his return, and the Lords thereof gave him water to walk, performing the offices of *Tenants*, in a thing not used by any of his Predecessors. Such was the fears and respect they bore him. In *Mexico*, he made the *Principe* and *Coronation* of the great *Emperor* of the *West-Indies*. Brought his riches, and other munitions for many years. And there came to give water of Tributes from all his Countreys, that *Principe* unknowne came to *Mexico*, and their very ceremonies reported in great numbers dignified to keele these Feats, as those of *Tlafcalca*, and *Mexhuacan*: the which *Mexhuacan* having discovered, he commanded they should be lodged and gently intreated, and honoured as his owne people. He also made them goodly Galleries like unto his owne, where they might see and behold the Feats. So they centred by night to those Feats, as the King himselfe, made them the sports and Mirth of the Court. And he had the care of these *Principes*, so that he might be more perfectly understand, that the inhabitants of *Mexico*, *Tlafcalca*, and *Tepaneca*, would never yield to the *Mexicans*; but did always fight valiantly against them; yea, sometimes the *Mexicans* did vanquish the *Mexhuacans*, as also those of *Tepaneca* did. In which place, the Marquisse *Don Ferrand Cortes*, after that hee and the Spaniards were expelled *Mexico*, pretended to build their first City, the which hee called (as I well remember) *Segura de la Frontera*: But this peopling concerned little: for haunting afterwards the same place, all the Spaniards were to inhabit there. To conclude, those of *Tepaneca*, *Tlafcalca*, and *Mexhuacan*, have since this time, beene enemies to the *Mexicans*; to whose occasion they have often times, that hee did purposely forbear to labour them; to have occasion to exercise his men of warre, and to take numbers of captives.

Elegant Prose
poetry.

... (illegible) ...

How *Metaphor*
ma ordered
the service of
his house, and
of the warr
made for his
Coronation,
Chap. 21.
Pride before
the fall.

It is

*Segunda de la
Frontiera.*

Of the behaviour and

ke' g'ra'ne'fic o
ut *Adozuma*
Chap. 12.

in a Park, compassed in this notice, and the rest of the people went without the Park, embracing in on every side the new built on a garment twice, not did care or think in one, well it be with about on a fault be necessary to his accidents that which had once offered him: & so commonly they were rich and sumptuous. He was very careful to have his Lawes observed, then when he returned vnder any warre, he failed sometimes to be able to take his pleasure, and would be diligent himself, to see if his people (supposing he were absent) would on any thing of the truth or corruption. If what were any excessive debt; he checked it vigorously. And also to discipline his Kingdome the extreme their Officers, he checked it diligently himself, offering gifts and presents to the Judges, procuring them to dole justice. If they offended, they were presently punished with death, without remission or respect, were they Noblemen, or his Kingdoms: yea, his owne Brethren. He was little conversant with his people, and seldom seene, trying himselfe most constantly to care for the government of his Realme. Besides that, he was a great Iusticier and very Noble, he was very valiant and happy, by manye victories, hee obtained great victories, and came to this greatness, as is written in the *Spanish Histories*, whereon it comes needlesse to write more. I will only haue a care here after to write what the Books and Histories of the *Indies* make mention of; the which the *Spanish Writers* have not omitted, having not sufficiently understood the secrets of this Countrey, the which are things very worthy to be knowne, as we shall see hereafter.

It chanced that *Montezuma* having reigned many yeeres in great prosperitie, and to open up in his countrey, after hee called himselfe to be feared and, yea to be worshipped as a God, that the Almighty Lord began to chastise him, and also to admonish him, suffering even the very Deuils whom he worshipped, to tell him these heavy tydings of the ruine of his Kingdome, and to torment him by Visions, which had neuer bene seene; wherewith hee remayned to melancholy and troubled, as he was wont of judgement.

The Idol of these of *Chalchicomula*, which they called *Quetzacoatl*, declared, that a strange people came to possesse his Kingdome. The King of *Texcoco* (who was a great Magician, and had conference with the Deuill) came one day at an extraordinary hour to visit *Montezuma*, assuring him that his Gods had tolde him, that there were great losses preparing for him, and for his whole Realme: many Witches and Sorcerers were sent and dedicated as much, amongst which there was one, did very particularly foretell him what should happen: and as hee was with him hee told him that the pulses of his secret hande failed him. *Montezuma* troubled with these newes, commanded all those Sorcerers to be apprehended: but they vanished presently in the Prison, wherewith hee grew into such a rage that hee might not kill them; as hee put their wives and children to death, destroying those houses with flames. Seeing himselfe importuned and troubled with these aduancements, hee sought to appease the anger of his Gods: and for that cause, hee laboured to bring a huge stone, thereon to make great Sacrifices: For the effecting wherof hee sent a great number of people with Engines and Instruments: For the effecting they could by no means mooue, although (being obstinate) they did broken many Instruments. But as they streue still to raise it, they heard a voyce joyning to the stone, which said they labourd in vaine, and that they should not raise it, for that the Lord of things created would no more suffer those things to be done there. *Montezuma* understanding this, commanded the Sacrifice to be performed in that place, and they lay the voyce spake againe: *Howe I am told you, that it is not the pleasure of the Lord of things created, that it should be done: neither you may well know that it is so. I will suffer you selfe to be transported a little, then after you shall see howe true, Which happened so indeed.* So presently they carried it a small distance with great facility, then after wards they could not mooue it: till that after many Prayers, it suffered itselfe to be transported to the entry of the Citty of *Mexico*, where suddenly it fell into the Lake, where seeking for it, they could not find it, but it was afterwards found in the same place from whence they had remoued it, wherewith they remayned amazed and confounded.

At the same time there appeared in the Element a great flame of fire, very bright, in the forme of a Pyramide, which began to appeare at midnight, and went still mounting vntill the sunne rising in the morning, where it layed at the South, and then vanished away. It seemed it selfe in this sort for the space of a whole yeere, and euer as it appeared the people call forth great cries as they were accustomed, believing it was a preface of great misfortune. It happened also that fire took the Temple, when no body was within it, nor nere unto it, neither did there fill any lightning or thunder: wherupon the Guards crying out, a number of people ranne with water, but nothing could helpe, so it was all consumed; and they lay the fire seemed to come forth of pieces of timber, which kindled more by the water that was cast vpon it. There was a Comet seene in the day time, running from the West to the East, casting an infinite number of sparkles, and they lay the forme was like a long tayle, being three handes.

The great Lake betweene *Mexico* and *Texcoco*, without any wind, earthquake, or any other apparant signe, began falsely to swell, and the waues grew in such force, as all the buildings nere vnto it fell downe to the ground. They say at that time they heard many voyces, as of

wo man in paine, which said sometimes, *O my children, the time of your destruction is come:* and other whiles it said, *O my children, whither shall I carry you that ye perish one amongst you?* There appeared likewise many Moniters with two heads, which being carried before the King, Iudainly vanished. There were two that exceeded all other Moniters, being very strange; the one was the Fishers of the Lake took a Bird as bigge as a Crane, and of the same colour, but of a strange and vniuersal forme. They carried it to *Montezuma*, who at that time was in the palace of reares and mourning, which was all hanged with blacke; for as hee had many Pallores for his recreation, so had hee also others for times of affliction, wherewith he was then heauily charged and tormented, by reason of the threatening his gods had giuen him by these forewarned advertisements. The Fishers came about noon, setting this Bird before him, which had on the top of his head a thing bright and transparent, in forme of a Looking-glass, wherewith hee could behold a wretched Nation coming from the East, armed, fighting, and killing. Hee called his Divines and Astronomers (whereto there was a great number) who having seene these things, and not able to yeelde any reason of what was demanded of them, the Bird vanished away, so as it was neuer more seene: wherupon *Montezuma* remained very heauy and sorrowfull. The childe which happened, was a Laborer, who had the report of a very honest man; he came vnto him, telling him, that being the day before at his worke, a great Eagle flew towards him; and nooke him vp in his talens, without hurting him; carrying him into a certaine Caw, wherewith hee told him, *that hee might say, I have brought him whom thou hast bid me.* The Eagle pronouncing these words, *that hee might say, I have brought him whom thou hast bid me.* This Indian Laborer looked about on euery side, to whom hee spake, but hee saw no man. Then hee heard a voyce which said vnto him: *Deuill thou dost not know this man, whom thou seest lying vpon the ground? and looking thereon, hee perceived a man to lye very leauy all aspe, with royal enignes, flowers in his hand; and a staffe of perfumes burning, as they are accustomed to vse in that Countrey: whom the Laborer beholding, knew it was the great King *Montezuma*, and answered presently: *Great Lord, this resembles our King *Montezuma*.* The voyce said againe, *Thou sayest true, behold what hee is not knoweth his office, careless of the great miseries and afflictions prepared for him. It is now time that hee pay the great number of offences hee hath done to God, and that hee receiue the punishment of his crimes, and great pain, and yet thou seest him carelesse hee lies thus in his own miserie, and without any sorrow, that hee may be the better for him, and take the staffe of perfume hee holds burning in his hand, and put it to his face, that hee shall thus finde him without feeling.* The poore laborer did not approach nere him; nor doe so he was commanded, for the great feare they all had of diuinitie. But the voyce said, *Be not so feare, for I am without comparison greater than the Kingdome of the earth, and defend him, therefore what I command thee.* Wherupon the Laborer tooketh the staffe of perfume out of the Kings hand, and put it burning to his nose, but hee moued vnto it as hee was any feeling. This done, the voyce said vnto him, that seeing hee had found the King to sleepe, hee should goe awake him, and tell him what hee had seene. Then the Eagle by the same commandment, took the man in his talens, and set him in the same place where hee found him; and for accomplishment of that which hee had spoken, he came to aduertise him. They say, that *Montezuma* looking on his face, found that hee was burnt, the which hee had not felt till then; wherewith hee continued exceeding heauie and troubled.*

In the fourteenth yeare of the reaigne of *Montezuma*, which was in the yeare of our Lord 1517, there appeared in the North Sea, Shippes, and men landing, whereto the Subjects of *Montezuma* wondered much, and desirous to learne, and to be better furnished what they were, they went aboard in their Canoes, carrying many refreshments of meates and Ruffes to make apperrell vpon colour to tell them. The Spaniards receiued them into their Shippes, and in exchange of their victuals and Ruffes, which were acceptable vnto them, they gaue them chains of gold, and of silver, and yellow, which the Indians imagined to be precious stones. The Spaniards informing themselves, who was their King, and of his great power, desired them, willing them to carry those Stones vnto their Lord, saying, that for that time they could not goe to him, but they would presently returne and visite him. Those of the coast went presently to *Mexico* with this message, carrying the representation of what they had seene, painted on a cloth, both of the Shippes, Men, and Stones which they had giuen them. King *Montezuma* remained very peniue with this message, commanding them not to reuelate it to any one. The day following, hee assembled his Council, and having shewed them the painted clothes and the Chaines, hee consulted what was to be done: where it was resolved to let good watchers vpon all the Sea coasts, to give present advertisement to the King of what they should discouer. The yeare following, which was in the beginning of the yeare 1518, they discouered a Fleete at Sea, in the which was the Marquisse of *Valle Don Fernando Cortes*, with his companions, newes which much troubled *Montezuma*, and conferring with his Council, they all said, that without doubt, their great and ancient Lord *Quetzacoatl* was come, who had said, that hee would returne from the East, whither hee was gone. The Indians held opinion, that a great Prince had in times past left them, and promised to returne. Of the beginning and ground of which opinion had be spoken in another place. They therefore sent five principall Ambassadors

Montez.

Prodigious Foul.

Of the newes Montezuma receiued of the Spaniards arrivall in his Countrey, and of the Ambassadors sent him.

Relation of writings by P. P. P.

Effects of his pestiferous legions.

Cortes admits
idol worship
agreeing more
with his con-
trary deligens
then Christian
religion, which
thured there
according to
these begin-
nings.

Engilism was
Latin.

Needs must
they goe whith
Deuill diuines.

Procan flaire.

Of the Span-
ards enuie in
Mexico.
Chap. 15.

with rich presents, to congratulate his coming, saying, they knew well that their great Lord *Quetzacoatl* was come, and that his servant *Moteczuma* sent to visit him, *As if* he had accounted himself. The Spaniards vnderstood this message by the meanes of *Marina*, an Indian woman whom they brought with them which vnderstood the Mexican tongue. *Fernando de Cortes* finding this a good occasion for his entry, commanded to decke his Chamber richly, and being set in great state and pompe, he cauled the Ambassadors to enter, who omitted no shewes of humilitie, but to worship him as their god.

They deliuered their charge, saying, that his servant *Moteczuma* sent to visit him, and that he held the Country in his names his Lieutenant, that he knew well it was the *Topilem* which had bene promised them many yeeres since, who should returne againe vnto them. And therefore they brought him such Garments as he was wont to weare, when he did come among them, beseeching him to accept willingly of them, offering him many presents of great value. *Cortes* receiving the presents, answered, that he was the same they spake of, wherewith they were greatly satisfied, seeing themselves to be courteously received and intreated by him. To conclude, the day after this Ambassage, all the Captaines and Commanders of the Fleet, came vnto the Admirall, where vnderstanding the matter, and that this Realme of *Moteczuma* was mighty and rich; it seemed fit to gaine the reputation of brave and valiant men among this people, and that by this meane (although they were few) they should be feared and respected into *Mexico*. To this end they dilapidated all their Artillery from their Shippes, which being a thing the *Indians* had neuer heard, they were amazed, as if heauen had fallen vpon them. Then the Spaniards beganne to desire them to fight with them: but the *Indians*, not daring to hazard their selues, they did beat them and intreat them ill, fliewing their Swords, Lances, Petticoats, and other armes, wherewith they did terrifie them much. The poore *Indians* were by reason hereof so fearefull and amazed, as they changed their opinion, saying, that their Lord *Topilem* came not in this troupe, but they were false gods (their enemies) came to destroy them. When as the Ambassadors returned to *Mexico*, *Moteczuma* was in the house of audience; but before he would heare them, this miserable man commanded a great number of men to be sacrificed in his presence, and with their blood to sprinkle the Ambassadors (supposing by this ceremony) which they were accustomed to doe in solemn Ambassages) to recieve a good answer. But vnderstanding the report and information of the manner of their Shippes, Men, and Armes, he stood perplexed and confounded: then taking counsell thereon, he found no better meane, then to labor to stop the entry of these strangers, by Coniurations and Magicke Arts. They had accustomed often to use this meane, hauing great conference with the Deuill, by whose helpe they sometimes obtained strange effects. They therefore assembled together all the Sorcerers, Magicians, and Inchanters, who being persuaded by *Moteczuma*, theyooke it in charge to force this people to returne vnto their Country. For this consideration, they went to a certaine place which they thought fit for the invocation of their Deuils, and practising their Arts (a thing worthy of consideration) They wrought all they could; but seeing nothing could preuaile against the *Christian*, they went to the King, telling him that they were more then men, for that nothing might hurt them, notwithstanding all their Coniurations and Inchantments. Then *Moteczuma* assailed him of another policie, that fasting to be very well contented with their coming, he commanded all his Countries to seue these rebellious gods that were come into his Land. The whole people was in great heauinesse and amazement, and often neuer came that the Spaniards inquired for the King, of his manner of life, of his house and meane. He was exceedingly vexed herewith: some of the people and other Negromancers assailed him to hide himselfe, offering to place him whereso no creature should euer finde him. This seemed base vnto him, and therefore he refused to attend them, although it were dying. In the end he left his Houses and royall Pallices to lodge in others, leaving them for their gods as he said.

I pretend not to intreate of the Spaniards, who conquered New Spaine, nor the strange adventures which happened vnto them, nor of the courage and invincible valour of their Captaine *Don Fernando Cortes*: for that there are many Histories and Relations thereof, as those which *Fernando Cortes* himselfe did write to the Emperour *Charles the first*, although they be in a plaine stile, and farre from arrogancy, the which doe giue a sufficient testimony of what did passe, wherein he was worthy of eternall memory, but only to accomplish my intention: I am to relate what the *Indians* report of this action, the which hath not to this day bene written in our vulgar tongue. *Moteczuma* therefore, hauing notice of this Captains victories, he aduanced for his conquest, that he was confederate and ioyed with them of *Tlaxcala*, his capital enemies, and that he had (secretly) punished them of *Cholula* his friends, he studied how to deceiue him, or else to try him in sending a principal man vnto him, attyred with the lake ornaments and royall enignes, the which should take vpon him to be *Moteczuma*, which fiction being discovered to the Marquise by them of *Tlaxcala* (who did accompany him) he sent him backe, after a mild and gentle reprehension, in seeking so to deceiue him: wherupon *Moteczuma* was so confounded, that for the feare thereof he returned to his first imaginations

and practices, to force the *Christians* to retire, by the invocation of Coniurers and Witchel. And therefore he assembled a greater number then before, cheareing them, that if they returned without effecting what he had giuen them in charge, not any one should escape, wherunto they all promised to obey. And for this cause, all the Deuils offered to the way of *Cholula*, by the which the Spaniards should passe, when mounting to the top of a hill, *Tlaxcala*, one of their principal gods, appeared vnto them, as coming from the South side of the hill, in the habit of a *Cholula*, who had his paps bound about his necke with a cord of reedes, he came like a man beside himselfe, out of his wits and drunke with rage and furie. Being come to this troupe of Witchel and Coniurers, he flayed, and spake to them in great choller, *Why come you hither? what doth Moteczuma desire to doe by your vncleanes? He had aduised himselfe too late for it is now determined, that his Kingdom and house shall be taken from him, with all that be possibill, for punishment of the great tyrannies he hath committed against his Subjects, hauing gouerned not like a Lord, but like a traitor and tyrant.* The Inchanters and Coniurers hearing these words, knew it was their Idol, and humbling themselves before him, they presently built him an Altar of Stone in the same place, censing it with flowers which they gathered thereabouts, but he contrariwise, making no account of these things, began againe to chide them, saying, *Why come you hither to doe, O ye traitors? Returne presently and aduise Mexico to behold it, they did see it flaming on fire.* Then the Deuill, that returning towards Mexico to behold it, they did see it flaming on fire. Then the Deuill, that returning towards Mexico to behold it, they did see it flaming on fire.

10 And they all vanished away, and they not daring to passe any farther, gave notice thereof to *Moteczuma*, wherewith he remained long without speaking, looking heauily on the ground; so that he said, *What shall we doe if god, and our friends leave us, and contrariwise, they helpe and fauour our enemies? I am verie wofull, and we ought all to resolve in this point, that happen what may, we must not flye nor hide our selues, or shew any signe of cowardise. I only patie the aged and infants, who haue neither force nor hands to defend themselves.* Hauing spoken this, he held his peace, being transported into an extasie. In the end, the Marquise approaching to Mexico, *Moteczuma* refused to make of necessity a verres, goinge thre or foure leagues out of the Citie to recieue him with a great manly, carried upon the shoulders of foure Noblemen, vnder a rich Canopy of Gold and Feathers. When they met, *Moteczuma* defended, and they flanted one another very courteously. *Don Fernando Cortes* said vnto him, that he should not care for any thing, and that he came not to take away his Realme, nor to diminish his authority. *Moteczuma* lodged *Cortes*, and his companions in his royall Palace, the which was very faste, and he himselfe lodged in other private houses. This night the Souldiers for ioy discharged their Artillery, wherewith the *Indians* were much troubled, being vnaccustomed to heare such Musicke. The day following, *Cortes* cauled *Moteczuma* and all the Nobles of his Court to assemble in a great Hall, where being set in a high Chaire, he laid vnto them, that he was seruant to a great Prince, who had sent them into these Countries to doe good workes, and that hauing found them of *Tlaxcala* to be his friends (who complained of wrongs and grieuances done vnto them daily by them of Mexico) he would vnderstand which of them was in the blame, and reconcile them, that hereafter they might no more offend and warre one against another: and in the meane time, he and his brethren (which

20 were the Spaniards) would remaine still there without hurting them: but contrariwise, they would helpe them all they could. He laboured to make them all vnderstand this discourse, vying his Interpreters and truchmen. The which being vnderstood by the King and the other *Mexican* Lords, they were wonderfully well satisfied, and shewed great signes of loue to *Cortes*, and his company. So it is, that by some occasions, many complaints, griefes, and ieaousies grew on either side. The which *Cortes* finding, & that the *Indians* mindes began to be distracted from them, he thought it necessary to assure himselfe, in laying hand vpon King *Moteczuma*, who was seized on, and his legges fettered. Truly this act was strange vnto all men, and like vnto that other of his, to haue burnt his Shippes, and shut himselfe in the midst of his enemies, there to vanquish or to dye. The mischief was, that by reason of the vnexpected arrivall of *Pamphilo Narvaez* at the trece crosse, drawing the Country into mutiny, *Cortes* was forced to abscind himselfe from Mexico, and to leave poore *Moteczuma* in the hands of his companions, who wanted discretion nor had not moderation like vnto him: so as they grew to that diffension, as that there was no meane to pacifie it.

30 When *Cortes* was absent from Mexico, that remained his Lieutenant, resolved to punish the *Mexicans* severely, causing a great number of the Nobilitie to beaine at a maske, which they made in the Palace, the which did so farre exceed, as all the people mutined, and in a furious rage, tooke Armes to be reuenged and to kill the Spaniards. They therefore besieged them in the Palace, pressing them so neere, that all the butt the Spaniards could doe with their Artillery and Crosse-bowes, might not terrifie them, nor force them to retire from their enter-
40 prise, where they continued many dayes, stopping their vituals, not suffering any one to enter or issue forth. They did fight with Stones, and cast Darts after their manner, with a kind of Lances like vnto Arrows, in the which there are foure or fixe very sharpe Razors, the which are such (as the Histories report) that in these warres, an Indian with one blow of these Razors, almost cut off the necke of a Horse, and as they did one day fight with this resolution and furie,

Trepedius a
Deuill-god.

Good fighting
in troubled
waters.

Good fighting
in troubled
waters.

Cortes his two
brange at
tempes.

Of the death
of Moteczuma,
and the Spaniards
departing
out of Mexico.
Chap. 16.

Indian armies
the

the Idoll, to whom he should be sacrificed, and apparelled him with the same ornaments like their Idoll, saying, that he did represent the same Idoll. And during the time that this representation lasted, which was for a year in some Feasts, in others six months, and in others it lasted: they reuerenced and worshipped him in the same manner, as the proper Idoll, and in the same time he did eat, drinke, and was merry. When he went through the streets, the people came forth to worship him, and every one brought him an almes, with children and sicke folkes, that he might cure them, and blesse them, suffering him to doe all things at his pleasure, onely he was accompanied with ten or twelue men left he should vie. And he (to the end he might be reuerenced as he passed) sometimes founded upon a small Flute, that the people might prepare to worship him. The feast being come, and he growne old, they killed him, and ate to him, making a cleane sacrifice of him. It folloves that we treat of their Religion, or rather Superstition, which they vie in their Sacrifices, Temples, Ceremonies, and the rest.

That which God by his wisdom had decreed for his honour and fruit, and for the good and health of man, the Deuill strives to imitate and to pervert, to be honored, and to cause man to be damned: for as we see the great God hath Sacrifices, Priests, Sacraments, Religious Prophets, and Ministers, dedicated to his diuine Service and holy ceremonies: so the Deuill hath his Sacrifices, Priests, his kindes of Sacraments, his Ministers appointed, his secluded and fained holiness, with a thousand sorts of false Prophets.

Beginning then with their Temples, even as the great God would have a house dedicated, to where his holy name might be honoured, and that it should be particularly vowed to his service; even to the Deuill, by his wicked practices, persuaded Indians, to build him proud Temples, and particular Oratories and Sanctuaries. In every Province of Peru, there was one principall *Guaico*, or house of adoration; and besides it, there was one General throughout all the Kingdoms of the *Incas*; among the which there hath beene two famous and notable, the one which they called *Pachamama*, is foure leagues from *Lima*, where at this day they see the ruines of a most ancient and great building, out of the which *Francis Pizarre* and his people drew infinite treasure, of vessels and pots of Gold and Siluer, which they brought when theyooke the *Incas* of *Atahualpa*. There are certaine memories and discourses which say, that in this Temple the Deuill did speake visibly, and gave answers by his Oracle, and that sometimes so they did see a spotted Snake; and it was a thing very common and approved at the *Indies*, that the Deuill spake and answered in these false Sanctuaries deceuening this miserable people. But where the Gospel is entered, and the Crosse of Christ planted, the father of lies becomes mute, as *Plinius* writes of his time, *Cur cessauerit Prius fauere oracula*: and *Isidore Martyr* treats amply of the silence which Christ imposed to Deuils, which spake by Idols, as it had beene before much prophesied in the holy Scripture. The manner which the Infidell Ministers and Inchanters had to confute with their gods, was as the Deuill had taught them, it was commonly in the night, they entred backward to their Idoll, and to went bening their bodies and head, after an vgly manner, and so they consulted with him. The answer he made, was commonly like vnto a fearful hissing, or a grathing which did terrifie them; and all that he did aduise, or command them, was but the way to their perdition and ruine. There are few of these Oracles found now, through the mercy of God, and great power of Iesus Christ. There hath beene in Peru another Temple and Oratory, most esteemed, which was in the Citie of *Cusco*, where at this day is the Monastery of Saint *Dominique*. We may see it hath beene a goodly and a stately worke, by the pavement and stones of the building, which remaine to this day. This Temple was like to the *Parthenon* of the *Romans*, for that it was the house and dwelling of all the gods; for the Kings *Incas* did there behold the gods of all the Nations and Provinces they had conquered, every Idoll hauing his priuate place, whether they of that Province came to worship it with an excessive charge of things which they brought for his seruice, And thereby they supposed to keepe safely in obedience, those Provinces which they had conquered, holding their gods, as it were in hostage. In this same house was the *Pachacas*, which was an Idoll of the Sunne, of most fine Gold, wrought with great riches of Stones, the which was placed to the East, with to great Art, as the Sunne at his rising did cast his beames thereon: and as it was of most fine metall, his beames did reflect with such a brightnesse, that it seemed another Sunne. The *Incas* did worship this for their god, and the *Pachacas*, which signified the Creator of *Heauen*. They say, that at the spoile of this so rich a Temple, a Soldier had for his part this goodly plate of gold of the Sunne. And as play was then in request, he lost it all in one night at play, whence came the proverbe they haue in Peru for great gamesters, saying, that they play the Sunne before it is set.

The Superstitions of the *Mexicans*, haue without comparison beene greater then the rest, as well in their ceremonies, as in the greatnesse of their Temples, the which in old time the *Spaniards* called by this word *Cu*, which word might be taken from the Ilanders of Saint *Dominique*, or of *Cuba*, as many other words that are in vie, the which are neither from *Spain*,

nor from any other language nor viall among the *Indians*, as is *Maya*, *Chica*, *Vaquiano*, *Chapaton*, and other like. There was in Mexico, this *Cu*, the famous Temple of *Uitzilpaztli*, it had a very great circuit, and within a faire Court. It was built of great stones, in addition of Snakes tyed one to another, and the circuit was called *Cuapaztli*, which is, a circuit of Snakes: vpon the top of every Chamber and Oratorie where the Idols were, was a fine Pillar wrought with small stones, blacke as iasp, set in goodly order, the ground rayed up with white and red, which belowe gave a great light. Vpon the top of the Pillar were battlements very artificially made, wrought like Snakes, supported by two *Indians* of stone, flitting, holding Candle-sticks in their hands, the which were like Croissants garnished and enriched at the ends, with yellow and Greene 10 feathers and long fringes of the same. Within the circuit of this Court, there were many Chambers of religious men, and others that were appointed for the seruice of the Priests and *Popes*, for they call the fouragene Priests which fence the Idoll. This Court is so great and spacious, as eight or ten thousand persons did dance easily in round, holding hands, the which was an viall custome in that Realme, although it seeme to many incredible.

There were foure Gates or Entries, at the East, West, North, and South: at every one of these Gates began a faire Cawley of two or three leagues long. There was in the midst of the Lake where the Citie of Mexico is built, foure large Cawleys in crosse, which did much beautifie it: vpon every Portall or Entrie, was a God or Idoll, hauling the vialge turned to the Cawley, right against the Temple gate of *Uitzilpaztli*. There were thirtie steps of thirtie fathom long, and they descended from the circuit of the Court by a street that went betwixt them: vpon the top of these steps there was a walke of diuers foot broad, all playstered with challee, in the midst of which walke was a Pallisado artificially made of very high Trees, planted in order a fathome one from another. These Trees were very bigge, and all pierced with small holes from the foote to the top, and there were rods did run from one Tree to another, to the which were chayned or tyed many dead mens heads. Vpon every rod were twentie Skulls, and their rankes of Skulls continue from the foote to the top of the Tree. This Pallisado was full of dead mens Skulls from one end to the other, the which was a wonderfull mournfull sight and full of horror. These were the heads of such as had beene sacrificed; for after they were dead, and had eaten the flesh, the head was deliuered to the Ministers of the Temple, which they tyed them in this fort: vntill they 30 fell off by morsels: and then had they a due to feede them in their places. Vpon the top of the Temple were two Stones or Chappels; and in them were the two Idols, which I haue spoken of, *Uitzilpaztli*, and his companion *Tlaloc*. These Chappels were carved and graven very artificially, and so high, that to ascend vnto it, there was a steepe of sixscore steps. Before these Chambers or Chappels there was a Court of foure hundred square in the midst whereof was a high stone of six hand breadth, pointed in fashion of a Pyramid, it was placed there for the sacrifici- 40 ing of men; for being laid on their backs, it made their bodies to bend, and so they did open them and pull out their hearts, as I shall shew hereafter. There were in the Citie of Mexico, eight or nine other Temples, the which were ioyned one to another within one great circuit, and had their priuate Sacerdotes, their Courts, their Chambers, and their Dorsoires. The entree of some were to the East, some to the West, others to the South, and some to the North. All these Temples were curiously wrought, and compassed in with diuers forts of Battlements and Pictures, with many figures of stones, being accompanied and fortified with great and Large Spottes or Plat-forms. They were dedicated to diuers gods: but next to the Temple of *Uitzilpaztli*, was that of *Tzotzilpaca*, which was the god of Penance and of Punishments, very high and well built.

There were four steps to ascend on the top was a Flat or Table of sixscore foot broad, and ioyning vnto it was a Hall, hangd with Tapistrie and Curtins of diuers colours and workes. The Doore thereof being low and large, was alwayes covered with a vail, and none but the Priests might enter in. All this Temple was beautified with diuers Images and Pictures most curiously; 50 for that their two Temples were as the *Cathedral Churches*; and the rest in respect of them as *Parishes* and *Hermities*; they were so spacious, and had so many Chambers, that there were in them places for the Ministers, Colleges, Schooles, and Houses for Priests, whereof wee will intreat hereafter.

The Deuill counterfeiting the vie of the Church of God, hath placed in the order of his Priests, some greater or superiours, and some lesse, the one as *Archbishops*, the other as *Leuites*, and that which hath made me not so wonder, was, that the Deuill would vnto himselfe the seruice of God; yea, and vie the same name: for the *Mexicans* in their ancient tongue call their high Priests *Papas*, as they should say *Sovereigne Bishops*, as it appeares now by their Histories. The Priests of *Uitzilpaztli* succeeded by Linages of certaine quarters of the Citie, deputed for that 60 purpose, and those of other Idols came by election, or being offered to the Temple in their infancy. The daily exercise of the Priests was to cast Incense on the Idols, which was done foure times in the space of a natural day. The first at breakes of day, the second at noone, the third at Sunne setting, and the fourth at mid-night. At mid-night all the chiefe officers of the Temple did rise, and in stead of Bells, they founded a long time vpon Trumpets, Cornets, and Flutes

Of the Priests and their offices, ch. 14. The Deuill had his Popes or Vicars at Mexico for the new World, as the old and now for both. Mid-night: Mexims.

very heavily, which being ended, he that did the office that weeke, slept forth, attired in a white Robe after the *Dalmatic* manner, with a Cenfor in his hand full of coales, which hee tooke from the hearth burning continually before the Altar, in the other hand he had a Pursefull of Incense, which he cast into the Cenfor, and as he entered the place where the Idoll was, he incensed it with great reverence, then tooke he a cloth, with the which he wiped the Altar and the Curtins. This done, they went all into a Chappell, and there did a certaine kinde of rigor and austere penance, beating themselves, and drawing of blood, as I shall shew in the Treatise of Penance, which the Idoll hath taught to his Creatures; and heret they neuer sayled at these Mattins at mid-night. None other but the Priests might encommende with their sacrifices, and every one did impley himselfe according to his dignitie and degree. They did likewise preach to the people some feasts, as I will shew when we treat thereof. They had Revenues, and great Offiings were made unto them. I will speake hereafter of their Vocation in consecrating their Priests. In Peru the Priests were entertained of the Revenues and Inheritance of their god, which they called *Chacaras*, which were many, and also very rich.

Of the Monasteries of Virgins which the Idoll hath incensed for his service, Chap. 15.

Vestall Virgins, or Nuns in Peru.

There were in Peru many Monasteries of Virgins (for there are no other admitted) at the least one in every Province. In these Monasteries there were two sorts of women, one ancient, which they called *Mamamcas*, for the instruction of the young; and the other was of young Maidens, placed there for a certaine time, and after they were cravne forth, either for their gods or for the *Jagua*. They called this House or Monasterie *Achacmagi*, which is to say, the House of the Chief. Every Monasterie had his Vicar or Governour called *Apacapanca*, who had libertie and power to choose whom he pleased, of what qualitie forme, being under eight yeeres of age, if they seemed to be of a good nature and constitution.

These Virgins thus put into these Monasteries, were instructed by the *Mamamcas*, in diuers things needfull for the life of man, and in the customes and ceremonies of their gods; and afterwards they tooke them from thence, being about fourteene, sending them to the Court with fure guards, whereof some were appointed to serue the *Guaca* and Sanctuaries, keeping their Virginitie for euer: some others were for the ordinarie sacrifices that were made of Maidens, and other extraordinary sacrifices, they made for the health, death, or warres of the *Jagua*; and the rest serued for Wines and Concoctes to the *Jagua*, and vnto other his Kinsfolks and Captains, vnto whom hee gaue them, which was a great and honorable recompence: This distribution was vied every yeere. These Monasteries possided Rents and Revenues for the maintenance of these Virgins, which were in great numbers. It was not lawfull for any father to refuse his daughters when the *Apacapanca* desired them for the service of these Monasteries. Yea, many fathers did willingly offer their daughters, supposing it was a great merit to be sacrificed for the *Jagua*. If any of these *Mamamcas* or *Achacmagis* were found to have trespassed against their honor, it was an inextinguishable chastisement to burie them alive, or to put them to death by some other kind of cruel torment.

The Idoll hath euen in Mexico had some kinde of religious women, although their possession was but for one yeere, and it was in this sort: Within this great circuit whereof we haue spoken, which was in the principall Temple, there were two Houses like *Chapells*, the one opposite to the other, one of Men, the other of Women: In that of women, they were Virgins onely, of twelue or threeteene yeeres of age, which they called the *Maidens of Penance*. They were as many as the men, and liued chastely and regularly, as Virgins dedicated to the service of their god. Their charge was, to sweep and make cleane the Temple, and every morning to prepare meat for the Idoll and his Ministers, of the *Almas* the religious gathered. The foodes they prepared for the Idoll were small loaves in the forme of hands and feet, as of March-pane: and with this bread they prepared certaine forces which they call daily before the Idoll, and his Priests did eate it, as choice of *Bread*, that *Daniel* speaketh of. These Virgins had their haire cut, and then they let them grow for a certaine time: they rose at mid-night to the Idoll Mattins, when they daily celebrated, performing the same exercises the Religious did. They had their Abbots, who employed them to make cloth of diuers fashions for the ornament of their Idolls and Temples. Their ordinarie habit was all white, without any worke or colour. They did their penance at mid-night, sacrificing and wounding themselves, and piercing the top of their eares, they laid the blood which issued forth vpon their cheekes: and after (to wash off the blood) they bathed themselves in a Poole which was within their Monasterie. They liued very honestly and discreetly; and if any were found to haue offended, although but lightly, presently they were put to death without remission, saying, he had polluted the House of their god. They held it for an aigne and aduertisement, that some one of the Religious, Man, or Woman, had committed a fault, when they saw a Rat or a Mowic passe, or a Bat in the Chappell of their Idoll, or that they had gnawed any of the vases, for that they say, a Rat or a Bat would not adventure to commit such an indignitie, if some offence had not gone before, and then they began to make search of the fault, and hauing discovered the Offender or Offenders, of what qualitie soeuer, they presently put them to death.

Note were received into this Monasterie, but the daughters of one of the sixe quarters, named for

for that purpose: and this profession continued, as I haue said, the space of one whole yeere: during the which time, their fathers, and they themselves had made a vow to serue the Idoll in this manner, and from thence they went to be married.

I doe not know that in Peru there is any proper houses for men, but for the Priests and Sorcerers, whereof there is an infinite number. But it seemeth, that in Mexico the Idoll hath set a due obseruation: for within the circuit of the great Temple there were two Monasteries, as before hath beene said, one of Virgins, whereof I haue spoken, the other of young men selected of sixteen or twentie yeeres of age, which they called Religious. They wore thraue crownes, as the *Frars* in these parts, their haire a litle longer, which fell to the middle of their eare, except the hinder part of the head, which they let grow the breadth of foure fingers down to their shoulders and which they tyed vp in tresses. These young men that serued in the Temple of *Tezcuapala* liued poore and chastly, and did the Office of Leutes, ministering to the Priests and benefice of the Temple, their Incense, Lightes, & garments; they swept and made cleane the holy places, bringing Wood for a continuall fire to the hearth of their god, which was like a lampe that flamb burnt before the Altar of their Idoll. Besides these young men, there were other litle boyes, as novices, which they serued for manual vices, as to deck the Temple with boughs, roses, & reeds, gae the Priests water to wash with, gae them their rasors to sacrifice, and goe with such as begged almes to carry it. All these had their superiors, who had the government ouer them, they liued honestly as when they came in publike, where there were any women, they carried their heads very low, which they eyes to the ground, not daring to behold them: they had linnen garments and it was lawfull for them to goe into the Otie house or faxe together, to aske Almes in all quarters: when they came into the Otie house, the Master sat in the Otie house, and gathered the eares of Corn, or they gaue them none, it was lawfull to goe into the Otie house, and gather the eares of Corn, or they clutted of Mays, which they most needed, the Master not daring to speake, nor hinder them. They had this libertie, because they liued poorely, and had no other reuenues, but Almes. There might not be about fiftie lue in penance, rising at midnit to the Idoll, in his turne, left the fire before the Altar should die: they gaue the Cenfor, with the which the Priest at midnight incensed the Idoll, and also in the morning at noone, & at night. They were very humble and obedient to their superiors, and passed not any one point that was commanded them. And at midnight after the Priest had ended his censuring, they retired themselves into a secret place, apart, sacrificing, and drawing blood from the calves of their legs with sharpe bodkins with this blood they rubbed their temples, and vnder their eares: and this sacrifice finished, they presently washed themselves in a litle poole appointed to that end. These young men did not anoint their heads and bodies with any *Perum* as the Priests did: their garments were of coarse white linnen cloth they doe make there. These exercises and strictnes of penance continued a whole yeere, during which time they liued with great austeritie and solitarie.

It hath beene said that the Priests and religious of Mexico, rose at midnight, and hauing cast Incense before the Idoll, they retired themselves into a large place, where there were many Lightes; and sitting downe, every one tooke a point of *Managoy*, which is like unto an awle or sharpe bodkin, with the which, or with some other kinde of Lancets or Rasors, they pierced the calves of their legs, and drew out the bone, drawing forth much blood, with the which they anointed their temples and dyed: these bodkins or Lancets in the rest of the blood, then let them vpon the battlements of the Court, stuck in globes or bowles of straw, that all might see and know the penance they did for the people: they doe wash off the blood in a lake appointed for that purpose, which they call *Exapangue*, which is to say, water of blood.

There were in the Temple a great number of bodkins or Lancets, for that they might not vie one together. Moreover, these Priests and Religious men, vied great Fastings, of five or ten dayes together, betwixt any of their great Feasts, and they were vnto them as our foure Ember weekes: for they were so strict in continence, that some of them (not to fall into any infirmitie) did their 50 members in the midnit, and did a thousand things to make themselves vnable, lest they should offend their gods. They drunke no Wine, and slept litle, for that the greatest part of their exercises were by night, committing great cruelties and martyring themselves for the Idoll, and all to bee repared great fasters and penitents. They did vse to discipline themselves with cords full of knots, and not they onely, but the people also vied this punishment and whipping: in the procession and feast they made to the Idoll *Tezcuapala*, the which (as I haue said before) is the god of penance; for then they all carried in their hands new cordes of the thred of *Managoy* & fadome long, with a knot at the end, and with down they whipped themselves, giving great flinnes ouer their shoulders. The Priests did fast five dayes before this Feast, eating but once a day, and they liued apart from their wives, not going out of the Temple during those five dayes, they could whip themselves rigorously in the manner aforesaid.

In Peru to solemnize the feast of the *Yca*, which was great, all the people fasted two dayes, during the which, they did not accompanie with their Wives, neither did they eate any meate with Sallor Garlecke, nor drinke *Caca*. They did much vse this kinde of fasting for some time and did penance, whipping themselves with sharpe flinging Nettles, and often they strooke them-

Of the Monasteries of Religious men, that the Idoll hath incensed for his service, Chap. 16.
Indian houses of Virgins, & their fowle of sanctitie, & their houses, Chap. 17.

Of Penance & the discipline the Indians haue vied at the Death penance, Chap. 17.

The houses of the Idoll, Chap. 18.

themselves over the shoulders with certayne stones. This blind Nation, by the persuasion of the Deuill, did transport themselves into cragie & high Mountaynes, where sometimes they sacrificed themselves, casting themselves downe from some high Rocks.

Of the Sacrifices the Indians made to the Deuill, & whereof. Chap. 8. Sacrifices of things inferiour to be. Sacrifices of beasts.

We may draw all the Sacrifices the Infidels vfe into three kinds, one of insensible things; another of beasts, and the third of men. They did vfe in *Peru* to sacrifice *Caca*, which is an hearbe they esteeme much, of *Mays*, which is their Wheate, of coloured feathers, and of *Chaquira*, which otherwise they call *Melle*, of shels or Oysters, and sometimes Gold and Silver, being in figures of little beasts. Also of the fine stufte of *Cumbi*, of carued and sweet wood, and most commonly Tallow burnt. They made these Offerings or Sacrifices for a prosperous winde, and faire weather, or for their health, and to be deliuered from some dangers and mishaps. Of the second kind, their ordinary Sacrifice was of *Coyes*, which are small beasts like Rabbits, the which the *Indians* eat commonly. And in matters of importance, or when they were rich men, they did offer *Paca*, or *Indian* therpe, bare, or with Woolle, observing curiously the numbers, colours, and times. The manner of killing their Sacrifices, great or small, which the *Indians* did vfe according to their ancient Ceremonies, is the same the *Mexicans* used this day, the which they call *Alpulle*, hanging the beast by the right fore-legge, turning his eyes towards the Sunne, speaking certayne words, according to the qualitie of the Sacrifice they flue: for if it were of colour, their words were directed to *Chinquila*, and to the Thunder, that they might want no water: if it were white and smooth, they did offer it to the Sunne with certayne words: if it had a face, they did likewise offer it him with some others, that he might shine vpon them, and fauour their generation: If it were a *Coyote*, which is gray, they directed their sacrifice to *Uranacaba*. In *Cusco* they did euery year kill and sacrifice with this Ceremony, a thorne sheepe to the Sunne, and did burne it, clad in a red Waite-coate, and when they did burne it, they caft certayne small baskets of *Coca* into the fire, which they call *Uiscayma*; for which Sacrifice, they haue both men and beasts appointed which serue to no other vfe. They did likewise sacrifice small Birds, although it were not so vsual in *Peru* as in *Mexico*, where the sacrificing of Quales was very ordinary. Those of *Peru* did sacrifice the Birds of *Pana*, (for so they call the Defare when they should goe to the Warres, for to weaken the forces of their aduersaries *Cusaca*.) They called these Sacrifices *Cusacomeica*, or *Comenica*, or *Hualloca*, or *Sipacomeica*, and they did it in this manner: they tooke many kinds of small Birds of the Defare, and gathered a great deale of a thorny wood, which they call *Talli*, the which being kindled, they gathered together their small Birds. This assembly they called *Quico*, then did they caft them into the fire, about the which the Officers of the Sacrifice went with certayne round stones carued, whereon were painted many Snakes, Lions, Tades, and Tygres, vntill they saw *P. Iachum*, which signifies, *Let the victorie be giuen vnto vs*, with other words, whereby they sayd the forces of their enemies *Cusaca* were confounded. And they drew forth certayne blacke therpe, which had been kept clofe some dayes without meate, the which they called *Paca*, and in killing them they spake these words: As the hearts of these beasts be weakened, so let our enemies be weakened. And if they found in these therpe that a certayne piece of flesh behind the heart were not consumed by fasting and clofe keeping, they then held it for an ill Augure. They brought certayne blacke Dogges, and did kill them, and did cast them, casting them into a Playne, with certayne Ceremonies, calling some kinde of men to eat this flesh, the which Sacrifices they did, lest the *Ingua* should bee hurt by payson: and for this cause they fasted from morning vntill the starres were vp, and then they did glut and defile themselves like to the *Mores*. This Sacrifice was most fit for them to withstand their enemies Gods: and although at this day a great part of these customes haue ceased, yet remaynes there some Reliques, by reason of the priuate or generall quarrels of the *Indians*, or the *Caciques*, or in their Cities. They did likewise offer and sacrifice fishes of the Sea, the which they call *Melle*, and they offered them to the Fountaynes and Springs, saying, that these fishes were daughters of the Sea, the mother of all waters: They gaue vnto their fishes kindred names, according to the colour, and also they vfe them to diuers ends. They vied them in a manner in all kinde of Sacrifices, and yet to this day they put beates shels in their Cities, for a superstition. Finally, they thought it convenient to offer Sacrifices of euery thing they did low or rare vp. There were *Indians* appointed to doe these Sacrifices to the Fountayne, Springs, and Riues which passed through the Townes, or by their Churches, which are their Temples, which they did after Seed time, that they might not cease running, but alwayes water their grounds. The Sorcerers did conuise, to know what time the Sacrifice should be made, which being ended, they did gather of the contribution of the people, what should be sacrificed, and which being ended, they did gather of these Sacrifices. They made them in the beginning of Winter, as at such time as the Fountaynes, Springs, and Riues, did increase by the mouement of the weather, which they did attribute to their Sacrifices. They did not sacrifice to the Fountaynes and Springs of the Deserts. To this day continues the respect they had to Fountaynes, Springs, Pooles, Brookes, or Riues, which passe by their Cities or Churches, euen vnto the Fountaynes and Riues of the Deserts. They haue a speciall regard and reuerence to the meeting of two Riues, and there they

Sacrifices of Birds.

Blacke therpe.

Blacke Dogs.

Fasting till stars appeared.

Shel-offerings.

they wash themselves for their health, annoynting themselves first with the flower of *Mays*, or some other things, adding thereunto diuers Ceremonies, the which they doe likewise in their Bathes.

The most pittifull disaster of this poore people, is their slavery vnto the Deuill, sacrificing men vnto him, which are the Images of God. In many Nations they had vied to kill (to accompany the dead, as hath bene declared) such persons as had bene agreeable vnto him, and whom they imagined might best serue him in the other World. Besides this, they vied in *Peru*, to sacrifice young children of foure or fixe yeeres olde vnto ten: and the greatest part of these Sacrifices were for the affaires that did import the *Ingua*, as in sickness for his health: and when he went to the warres for victory, or when they gaue the wreath to their new *Ingua*, which is the mark of a King, as here the *Scripter* and the *Poet* were in. In this Solemnitie they sacrificed the number of two hundred children, from foure to ten yeeres of age, which was a cruell and inhumane practice. The manner of the Sacrifice was to drown them and bury them with certayne representations and ceremonies: sometimes they cut off their hea's annoynting themselves with the blood from one eare to another.

Of the Sacrifices they made of men, Chap. 9.

Two hundred children sacrificed.

They did likewise sacrifice Virgins, some of them that were brought to the *Ingua* from the Monasteries, as hath bene said. In this case there was a very great and generall abuse: If any *Indian* qualified, or of the common sort, were sicke, and that the Diuine told him confidently that he should dye, they did then sacrifice his *owne sonne* to the Sunne, or to *Viracocha*, dedicating him to be sacrificed with him, and that they would not deprive the father of life. This custome is like to that the holy Scripture speaks of which the King of *Mus* vied in sacrificing his first-born Sonne vpon the wall, in the sight of all *Ihud*, to whom this act seemed so mournfull, as they would not prelle him any further, but returned to their houses.

Pitticide.

Although they of *Peru* haue surpassed the *Mexicans* in the laughter and Sacrifice of their Children (for I haue not read nor vnderstood that the *Mexicans* vied any such Sacrifices) yet they of *Mexico* haue exceeded them, yea all the Nations of the World, in the great number of men which they had sacrificed, and in the horrible manner thereof. And to the end we may see the great misery wherein the Deuill holds this blind Nation, I will relate particularly the custome and inhumane manner which they haue observed: First the men they did sacrifice were taken in the warres, neither did they vfe these solemne Sacrifices but of Captiues: so as it seemes therein they haue followed the custome of the Ancients. For as some Authors say, they called the Sacrifice *Uictima*, for this reason, because it was of a conquered thing: they also called it *Hestia quasi ab hoste*, for that it was an Offering made of their enemies, although they haue applied this word to all kinds of Sacrifices. In truth the *Mexicans* did not sacrifice any to their Idols, but Captiues, and the ordinary warres they made, was only to haue Captiues for their Sacrifices: and therefore when they did fight, they laboured to take their enemies alive, and not to kill them, to enioy their Sacrifices. And this was the reason which *Moteczuma* gaue to *Marquis de Val*, when he asked of him, why being so mighty, and hauing conquered so many Kingdomes, he had not subdued the City of *Tlafcala*, which was the neerer to his City: he answered him, that for two reasons he had not conquered that Province, although it had bin ealie, if he would haue undertaken it: the one was for the exercise of the youth of *Mexico*, lest they should fall into idleness and delight: the other and the chief cause why hee had refused this Province, was to haue Captiues for the Sacrifices of their Gods. The manner they vied in these Sacrifices, was, they assembled within the Palladios of dead men Skulls (as hath bene said) such as should be sacrificed, vnto a certayne Ceremony at the foot of the Palladio, placing a great guard about them. Prentely there stood forth a Priest, attyred with a short Surplice full of bells, which hee came from the top of the Temple with an Idol made of Pale of Wheate and Mays mingled with Honey, which had the eyes made of the graines of preme glasse, and the teeth of the graines of Mays, he descended the steps of the Temple with all the people he could, and mounted on a great stone planted vpon a high Terrasse in the midst of the Court. This stone was called *Quauacalli*, which is to say, the stone of Eagle, whereon hee mounted by a little Ladder, which was in the fore-part of the Terrasse, and descended by another faire on the other side, still embracing his Idol. Then did he mount to the place where those were that should be sacrificed, shewing this Idol to euery one in particular, saying vnto them: *thus is your God*. And hauing ended his leue, he descended by the other side of the staires, and all such as should dye, went in procession vnto the place where they should be sacrificed, where they found the Ministers ready for that Office. The ordinary manner of sacrificing was, to open the stomacke of him that was sacrificed, and hauing pulled out his heart half alive, they tumbled the man downe the staires of the Temple, which were all imbrowed and defiled with blood: And to make it the more plaine, fixe Sacrificers being appointed to this dignitie, came into the place of Sacrifice, foure to hold the hands and feet of him that should be sacrificed, the fifth to hold his head, and the sixth to open his stomacke, and to pull out the heart of the sacrificed. They called them *Chal-*

Of the horrible Sacrifices of men which the *Mexicans* vied. Chap. 10.

Captiues only sacrificed. Virgins or boys.

Manner of this same (im-mortal) sacrificing.

Bloudie Riot.

Their Paps.

The other furs
Priests.Deuillish dex-
terite.
Fume of the
heart offered
to the Sunne.Of other kinds
of Sacrifices
of men which
the Mexicans
vsed. Chap. 3.
Playing Sacri-
fices.Challenge fa-
cilities.Idols. Idolat-
eritie.

chelus, which in our Tongue is as much, as the Ministers of holy things. It was a high dignitie, and much esteemed amongst them, wherein they did miserie and succeeded in a Fee-simple. The Minister who had the Office to kill, which was the last amongst them, was esteemed and honoured as the *Souereigne Priest* and *Biſhop*, whose name was different, according to the difference of times and Solemnities. Their habits were likewise diuers when they came forth to the Sacrifice, according to the diuersitie of times. The name of their chiefe dignitie was *Pope* and *Tonaxin*, their Habite and Robe was a red Cattyane after the *Dalmatike* fashion, with tulle below a Crowne of rich Feathers, greene, white, and yellow vpon his head, and at his eares like pendants of Gold, wherein were set greene flones, and vnder the lip vpon the middle of the beard he had a Pece like vnto a small Canon of an azure flone. These Sacrificers came with their faces and hands coloured with a shining blacke. The other furs had their haire much curled, and tyed vp with Laces of Leather, bound about the middle of the head; vpon their forehead they carried small Roundels of Paper painted with diuers colours, and they wore their forehead in a *Dalmatike* Robe of white, wrought with blacke. With this attyre they represented the very figure of the Deuill, so as it did strike feare and terror into all the people, to see them come forth with so horrible a representation. The Souereigne Priest carried a great Knife in his hand, of a large and sharpe flint: another Priest carried a collar of wood wrought in forme of a Snake: All fix put themselves in order, ioyning to this Pyramidall flone, wherof I haue spoken, being directly against the doore of the Chappell of their Idoll. This flone was so pointed, as the man which was to be sacrificed, being laid downe, vpon his backe, did bend in such sort, as letting the Knife but fall vpon his stomack it opened very easily in the middle. When the Sacrificers were thus in order, they drew forth such as had beene taken in warre, which were to be sacrificed at that Feast, and being accompanied with a guard of men all naked, they caused them to mount vp these large staires in ranke, to the place where the Ministers were prepared: and as every one of them came in their order, the fix Sacrificers tooke the Prisoner, one by one foute, another by the other, and one by one hand, another by the other, calling on his backe vpon this pointed flone, where the fife of these Ministers put the collar of wood about his necke, and the High Priest opened his stomack with the Knife, with a strange dexterite and nimblenes, pulling out his heart with his hands, the which he shewed smoking vnto the Sunne, to whom hee did offer this beate and fume of the heart, and presently he turned towards the Idoll and did call the heart at this face, then did they call away the body of the sacrificed, tumbling it downe the staires of the Temple, the flone being set so neere the staires, as there were not two foute space betwixt the flone and the first step, so as with one purne with their foote, they cast the bodie from the top to the botome. In this sort one after one they did sacrifice all those that were appointed. Being thus flaine, and their bodies cast downe, their Masters, or such as had taken them, went to take them vp, and carried them away: then hauing diuided them amongst them, they did eate them, celebrating their Feast and Solemnitie. There were ouer fortie or fiftie at the least thus sacrificed, for that they had men very expert in taking them. The neighbour Nations did the like, imitating the Mexicans in the Customes and Ceremonies of the Service of their Gods.

There was another kind of Sacrifice which they made in diuers feasts, which they call *Racaxpaxtla*, which is as much as the *playing of men*. They call it so, for that in some Feasts they tooke one or more flaves, as they pleased, and after they had flayed him, they with that skinn apparelled a man appointed to that end. This man went dancing and leaping thorow all the houles and Marker places of the Citie, every one being forced to offer something vnto him: and if any one flayed, he would strike him ouer the face with a corner of the skin, desiring him with the congealed blood. This inuention continued vntill the skinn did thinke; during which time, such as went, gathered together much almes, which they employed in necessary things for the Service of their Gods. In many of these Feasts they made a Challenge, betwixt him so that did sacrifice, and him that should be sacrificed thus: they tyed the flave by one foote to a Wheele of flone, giuing him a Sword and Target in his hands to defend himselfe: then presently steps forth hee that sacrificed him; armed with another Sword and Target: if hee that should be sacrificed defends himselfe valiantly against the other, and refitteth him, hee then remayned freed from the Sacrifice, winning the name of a famous Captayne, and so was reputed: but if hee were vanquished, they then sacrificed him on the flone whereunto hee was tyed. It was another kinde of Sacrifice, when as they appointed any flave to bee the representation of the Idoll, saying that it was his Picture: They euerie yeare gaue one flave to the Priests, that they might reuerent worship the lively Image of their Idoll. As his first entry vnto the Office, after he had bene well washed, they attyred him with all the ornaments of the Idoll, giuing him the same name. Hee was that while yeare reuerenced and honoured as the Idoll itselfe, and had alwayes with him twelue men for his Guard, lest he should flye, with which Guard they suffered him to goe freely and where he would: and if by chance he fled, the chiefe of the Guard was put in his place to represent the Idoll, and after to be sacrificed. This Indian

had the most honourable lodging in all the Temple, where hee did eate and drinke, and whither all the chiefe Ministers came to serue and honour him, carrying him meate after the manner of great Personages. When hee went through the streets of the Citie, hee was well accompanied with Noblemen, hee carried a litle Flute in his hand, which sometimes hee sounded, to giue them knowledge when hee passed: then presently the women came forth with their little children in their armes, which they presented vnto him, saluting him as God. All the rest of the people did the like at night they put him in a strong Prison or Cage, lest he should flye; and when the Feast came, they sacrificed him, as hath bene said.

By these and many other meanes hath the Deuill abuted and entaynted these poore wretches, and such was the multitude of those that had bene sacrificed by this infernal cruditie, as it seemes a matter incredible, for they affirme there were some dayes fife thousand or more, and that there were aboute twentie thousand sacrificed in diuers places. The Deuill to entaine this murder of men, vied a pleasant and strange inuention, which was, when it pleased the Priests of Satan they went to their Kings, telling them how their Gods dyed for hunger, and that they should remember them. Presently they prepared themselves, and advertised one another, that their Gods required meate, and therefore they should command their people to bee readie to goe to the Warre; and thus the people assembled, and the companies appointed went to field, where they mustred their forces, and all their quarrell and fight was to take one another for sacrifice, striving on either side to take what Captives they could, so as in these battells they laboured more to take, then to kill, for that all their intention was to take men alive, to giue them to their Idols to eate, for after that manner brought they their Sacrifice vnto their Gods. And wee must vnderstand, that neuer King was crowned vntill hee had subdued some Province, from the which he brought a great number of Captives for the Sacrifices of their Gods, so as it was an infinite thing to see what blood was spilt in the honour of the Deuill.

Many of these Barbarians were now wearied and tyred with such an excellent cruditie, in shedding so much blood, and with so tedious a Tribute, to bee alwayes troubled to get Captives, for the feeding of their Gods, seeming vnto them a matter insupportable: yet left they not to follow and execute their rigorous Lawes, for the great awe the Ministers of these Idols kept them in, and the cunning wherewith they abused this poore people. But inwardly they desired to be freed from so heauie a yoke. And it was a great prouidence of God: that the first which gaue them knowledge of the Law of Christ, found them in this disposition: for without doubt it seemed to them a good Law, and a good God, to bee freed in this sort. Hereupon a graue religious man in *New Spaine* told me, that when he was in that Countrey he had demanded of an ancient Indian, a man of qualitie, for what reason the Indians had so loone received the Law of Iesus Christ, and left their owne, without making any other proofe, tryall, or dispute thereon, for it seemed they had changed their Religion, without any sufficient reason to moue them. The Indian answered him, *Beloued son Father, that we haue embraced the Law of Christ so rashly as they say, for I will tell you, that we were alreadie wearied and discontented with such things as the Idols commanded vs, and were determined to leaue it, and to take another Law. But when as we found that the Religion that you preached had no cruelties in it, and that it was fit for vs, and both met and god, we vnderstood and beleued that it was the true Law, and so we receiued it willingly.* Which answere of this Indian agrees well with that we read in the first Discourse, that *Fernand Cortes* sent to the Emperour *Charles* the fift, wherein hee reports, that after hee had conquered the Citie of *Mexico*, being in *Cortez*, there came Ambassadors to him from the Province and Common-wealth of *Mexico* requiring him to send them his Law, and that hee would teach them to vnderstand it, because they intended to leaue their owne, which seemed not good vnto them, which *Cortez* granted, and at this day they are the best Indians, and the truest Christians that are in *New Spaine*. The Spaniards that saw these cruell Sacrifices, reloaded with all their power to abolish the detestable and cursed a butchering of men, and the rather, for that in one night before their eyes they saw threefore or threefore and tenne Spaniards sacrificed, which had bene taken in a battaile giuen at the Conquest of *Mexico*: and another time they found written with a Coale in a Chamber in *Tezcuico* these wordes, *Here such a miserable man was Prisoner with his Companions whom they of Tezcuico did sacrifice.*

There happened a very strange thing vpon this subiect, and yet true, being reported by men worthy of credite, which was; that the Spaniards beholding these Sacrifices, hauing opened and drawne out the heart of the litle young man, and call him from the top of the staires (as their custome was) when hee came at the botome, hee laid to the Spaniards in his Language, *Knights, they haue slaine mee*, the which did greatly moue some men to horrow and pitee. It is incredible thing, that hauing his heart pulled out, hee might speake, seeing that *Galen* reports that it hath often chanced in the Sacrifice of beasts, after they haue beene drawne out, and call vpon the Altar, the beasts haue breathed, yea, they did bray and cry out aloud, and sometimes did runne.

Incredible numbers sacrificed.

Deuill hungrie for mans blood.

How the Indians grew weary, and could not endure the crudities of Satan. Chap. 2.

Spaniards sacrificed.

A man speaks after his heart is vsu. Galen lib. de H. et v. cap. 1.

In

How the De-
will hath la-
boured to im-
itate and coun-
terfeit the Sa-
ceraments of the
holy Church.
chap. 25.
Indian Com-
munion.

In the first month, which in *Pana* they called *Wainpa*, and anfwereeth to our *December*, they made a most solemn feast, called *Apacayacu*, wherein they made many sacrifices and ceremonies, which continued many dayes : during the which no farger was suffered to beate the drum, which was in *Ucfo*. These dayes being past, they then gave a writte to strangers to enter, that they might be partakers of the feasts and sacrifices, ministring to them in this manner. *Mamacoma*, the Sunne, which were a kinde of Nunnes of the Sunne, made use of the flower of Mays, dyed and mingled with the blood of white Sheepe, which they letted out that day : then presently they commanded that all strangers should enter, who let themselves in order, and the Priests which were of a certaine Lineage, descending from *Liugunapangay*, gave to each of them a little of these small loaves, saying vnto them, that they gave them *these peeces*, to eat, and they should beare no *conscience* with the Ingua, and that they aduised them not to *speake* nor *write* any thing all against the Ingua, *because they were* some time good of *effection*, for that this piece should be a *winneth* of their intentions and will, and they did so, and they *thought*, because they were *not* to *speake* nor *write* any thing against them. They carried these small loaves, in great plates of gold and silver appointed for that vie, and all did receive and eate these pieces, thanking the Sunne infinitely for so great a fauour which hee had done them, speaking wordes and making figures of great contentment and deuotion : protesting that during their liues, they would neither doe nor write any thing against the Sunne nor the Ingua : and with this condition they received *this fode* of the *Sunne*, which they should remaine in their bodies for a winneth of their fidelitie which they offered to the Sunne, and to the Ingua their King. This manner of deuillish communicating they likewise vied in the Sunne, during the like ceremony, which was *September*, in the solemn feast which they called *Yoma*, (during the like ceremony, which is called *September* in the fellest of the winter, and is so leuallish a matter) which they did impart to all strangers that came, they did likewise send of these loaves to all their *Guacas*, *Sandarias*, *Sanctuaries*, and to all the *Guacas* of the whole Realme, and at one instant they found people of all files, which came expressly to receive of the Sunne, to whom they said (in *deuotion* and *honor*, and likewise did send them in *honor* of the *Caciques*. Some of them would hold this for a fable and a fiction : yet it is most true, that since the *Ingua* *Tupayac* (the which was the first that hath made most *Lawes*, *Coutumes*, and *Ceremonies*, as *Nama* did in *Rome*) this manner of communicating hath continued, vntill that the Gospell of our Lord Iesus Christ thrust out all of these superstitions, giuing them the right fode of life, which winnes their soules to God : who is to iudicise himselfe more amply, let him receive the Relation which the Licentiate Pablo would write.

In what man-
ner the Devill
hath laboured
in *Mexico* to
counterfai
the rest of the
holy Sacra-
ment vsed in
the Popish
Church.
Chap. 24.

T is a thing more worthy admiration, to hear speake of the Feast and solemnitie of the Communion which the Deuill himselfe, the Prince of Pride, ordained in *Mexico*, the which (although it be [somewhat long] yet shall it not be from the people to relate as it is written by me of credite. The *Mexicanen* in the month of May, the people of the principall Feast to which were *Tlaxcaltlan*, and two dayes before this Feast, the *Virgins* wherewith I have spoken (the which were shut up and secluded in the same Temple, and were as they were *Religieuses* men) did mingle a quantity of the feedes of Beetes with roasted Mays, and then they would mould it with honey, making an Idoll of that paste, in biggish like to that of wood, putting in stead of eyes, graines of greene glasse, of blue, or white; and for teeth, graines of Mays, let forth with all the ornament of furniture that I have said. This being finished, all the Noblemen came and brought it an exalced and deckt they did set it in an azure Chaire, and in a Litter to carry it on their shoulders. The morning of this feast being come, an houre before day, all the *Maidens* came forth attired in white, with new ornaments, the which I have before called the sisters of their work *Tlaxcaltlan*, they came crowned with Garlandes of Mays walled and painted, being, like unto Azahar or the flower of Orange, and about their necks they had great chains of beads, the which went baudricklike vnder their left arme. Their cheekes were dyed with Vermillion, and they came from the elbow to the wrist, were carrying red Parrots feathers. And thus attired, they took the Idoll on their shoulders, covered it into the Court, where all the young men were attired in garments of an artificial red, crowned after the same manner, like unto the women. Where as the *Maidens* came forth with the Idoll, the young men drew neere with much reverence, kissing the Leggs wherein the Idoll was, upon their shoulders, carrying it to the foote of the flaires of the Temple. And then the people did humble themselves, laying earth upon their heads, which was an ordinarie ceremonie used to be done after the chiefe featt of their gods. This ceremonie being ended, all the people were in procession with all the diligence and speede they could, going to a Mountayne which was a league from the city with all the diligence, and there they made sacrifices. Prentely they went from the City of *Mexico*, called *Chapultepec*, and to a place neere vnto it, which they called *Ahuacatlan*, wher they made much sacrifice: and from thence they went to another Burgh or Village a league beyond *Coyacan*, from whence they parted, returning to the Citie of *Mexico*, not making any other flation. From went in this sort about foure leagues in three or foure houres, calling this procession *Tlaxcaltlan*.

lypaultis. Being come to the foot of the flaires, they fild downe the Brancard or Litter with the Koll, tying great Cordes to the armes of the Brancard then with great ob'rance and reuerence, they did draw vp the Lacter with the Koll in it to the top of the Temple, some drawing aboad, and others helping below, in the meane time there was a great noyse of Flutes, Trumpets, Cornets, and Drummes. They did moue in this manner, for that they saye the Temple weree so full of men and noyse that it could scarce be heard. And thus they drew their flourede Litter they mounted vp the Koll, all the people thow in the Court with countenance and feare. Being mounted to the top, and that they had placed in a little Lodge of Roles, which they had readie, presently came the young men, which threw many flouers of fundre kinds, 10 wherewith they filled the Temple both within and without. This done, all the Virgins came in the Court, and the Countess of Cornouailles, which was the laste, and the laste, which was the same paffe therof, the Koll was made and compounded, and they were of the floure of great bones. They deliuered them to the young men, who carried them vp and laid them vp, and laid them at the Idols feete, wherewith they filled the whole place, so that it could recieue no more. They talled these moriels of paffe, the fish and bones of *Kie-paw-cid*. Having laid abroad these bones, presently came the Ancients of the Temple, *Kie-paw-cid*, which all the people called by that name, and they tooke the bones to the Idols feet, 20 hereinto there was a fridil order among them, one after another, with their valles of diuer colours and workes, every one according to his Dignitie and Office, hauing Garlands vpou their heads, and Chaines of flouers about their necks: after them came their gods and goddesses whom they worship, of diuers figures, attyred in the same luterie; then putting themselves in order about those moriels and pieces of paffe, they did certain ceremonies with singing and dancing. By the means wherof they were blessed and consoled for the fish and bones of this Koll.

This cerimonie and bleſſing (whereby they were taken for the ſheſh and bones of the Idoll) be-
ing ended, they honoured thoſe pieces in the ſame ſort as their god. Then came forth the Sacri-
ficers, who began the ſacrifice of men, in the manner as hath been ſpoken, and that day they
did ſacrifice a greater number then at any other time, for that it was the moſt glorious feaſt
of the year. The ſacrificing being done, all the people of the Idoll ſat down upon the ground
30 as they ſat before, and being ſeated in order and ranke one direclly againſt another, they
were obeyed by Drummes the which ſounded in praiſe of the Feaſt, and of the Idoll which they did
celebrate. To which long all the moſt ancient and greateſt noble-men did anſwere, dancing a-
bout them, making a great circle as their wife is, the young Men and Maides remaining away
in the midſt. All the Cite came to this goodly ſpectacle, and there was a commendment very
ſtrictly obſerved throughout all the Land, that the day of the Feaſt of the Idoll *Prasapha*
40 ſhould be kept ſo ſtrictly, that none ſhould eat nor drink any thing thereof the Idoll was ſet
up, nor ſhould be eaten at the point of day, and they ſhould drinke no water nor any other thing til
after none: they held it for an ill ſigne, yea for ſacrilege, to doe the contrarie: but after theſe
ceremonies ended, it was a ſwift for them to teate any thing. During the time of this cerimonie
they hid the water from their little children, admoniſhing all ſuch as had the uſe of reaſon, not
to drinke any water; which if they did, the anger of God would come upon them, and they
ſhould be ſtricken with death. But this day and the day following, the day of the Feaſt of the
ſacrifice ended, they went to vinclote themſelves, and the Priests and Superiors of the Temple
took the Idoll of place, which they ſpoyled of all the ornaments it had, and made many pieces
as well of the Idoll it ſelfe as of the Tronchons where were conſecrated, and then they gave
them to the Communion, beginning with the greater, and continuing unto the reſt, both Men
Women, and little Children; who received it with ſuch teares, feare, and reverence, as it was
admirable to ſee, ſaying, *Haſt thou not ſent downe a ſmall drinke of God, whoſe ſpirit they were grie-
ved with ſuch much as hath beene ſpoken of before, and carried it with great re-
verence and veneration,*

50 All such as did communicate, were bound to giue the tenth of this seede, whereof the Idoll was made. The solemnitie of the Idoll being ended, an old man of great authoritie stept vp into a high place, and with a loud voice preached their Law and Ceremonies.

The father of Iywood likewise counterfeite the *(Romish)* Sacrament of *Confession*, and in his Idolatries like to be honored with ceremonies very like to the manner of Christians. In *Peru* they hold opinion, that all diseases and adulteries came for the finnes which they had committed; for remedy whereof they are bound to confess to some Priest, who is usually, almost in all Provinces, and all *Confessors* appointed by their Superiors to that end, there were some finnes reserved for the Superiors. They received penance, yea sometimes very thrifely especially when the Offender was a poore man, and laid nothing to give his Confessor. This use of Confession was formerly used in *Venezuela*, where the *Confessors* Secretly receive the names of all *sinners* of *Confessors*, hath beene most general in the Provinces. I have heard also, that it is a *huyous* issue to conceal any thing in confession. The *Tembru*, or *Con-*

fellows discovered by lots, or by the view of some beast hides, if any thing were concealed, and punished them with many blowes with a stone vpon the shoulders, vntill they had revealed all, then after they gaue him penance, and did sacrifice. They doe likewise vse this confession, when their children, wiues, husbands, or their *Cariques* be sicke, or in any great exploit. And when their *Ingua* was sicke, all the Prouinces contended themselves, chiefly those of the Prouince of *Calan*. The Confessors were bound to hold these Confessions secret, but in certaine cases limited, to take another mans wife, to giue poyson or force to doe any harme, and then to slea, a gracious sinne, to be forgetfull in the reuerence of their *Gueues*, or Orations, and they held it to be Fealts, or to speake ill of the *Ingua*, and to disobey him. They accused not the houses of any one that comes, but according to the report of some Priests, after the Christians came into that Country, they accused themselves of their thoughts. The *Ingua* confessed himselfe to no man, but only to the *Summe*, that hee might tell them to *strachene*, and that hee might forgive them. After the *Ingua* had bene confessed, he made a certaine bath to cleanse himselfe in a running Riuer, saying these wordes: *I haue told my finnes to thy Summe, receive them, O thou Riuier, and carry them to the Sea, where they may neuer appeare more*. Others that confessed, vsed likewise these bathes, with certaine ceremonies very like to those the *Atures* vse at this day, which they call *Guadaly*, and the *Indians* call them *Opacema*. When it chanced that any mans children dyed, hee was held for a great sinner, saying, that it was for his finnes that the soules dyed before the father. And therefore those to whom this had chanced, after they were confessed, were bathed in this bath called *Opacema*, as is said before. Then some deformed *Indian*, crooke-backed, and counterfayt by nature, came to whip them with certaine Nettles. If the Sorcerers or Enchanters by their lots and diuinations, affirmed that any sicke body should die, the sicke man makes no difficultie to kill his owne sonne, though he had no other, hoping by that means to escape death, saying, *that in his place he offered his sonne in sacrifice*. And thus cruell hearts bene practised in some places, euen since the Christians came into the Country. In truth it is strange, that this custome of confessing their secret finnes, hath continued to remaine amongst them, and to doo strict penances, as, to *fast, to giue apparell, gold and silver, to remaine in the Mountaynes, and to receive many stripes vpon the shoulders*. Our men say, that in the Prouince of *Chiguira*, men at this day meet they with this plague of Confessors of *Tchurru*, where as many sicke persons repaire vnto them: but now, by the grace of God, this people begins to see clearly the effect and great benefit of our Confession, whereunto they come with great deuotion.

I will report the manner of a strange confession the Deuill hath inuented at *Iapan*, as appeares by a Lettre that came from thence, which is thus: There are in *Oenava* very great and high and steepe Rocks, which haue prickes or points on them, aboue two hundred fathom high. Amongst these Rocks there is one of these prickes or points to terribly high, that when the *Xamabus* (which be *Pilgrimes*) doe but looke vpon vnto it, they tremble, and their haire flares, so fearefull and horrible is the place. Vpon the top of this point there is a great rod of Iron of three fathom long, placed thereby by a strange deuice, at the end of this rod is a balance wheel, whereof the scales are so bigge, as a man may fit in one of them: and the *Goguis* (which be Devils in humane shape) command these Pilgrimes to enter therein one after another, not leauing one of them: then with an engine or instrument which moueth, by means of a wheele, they make this rod of Iron wherein the balance is hanged, to hang in the aire, one of these *Xamabus* being set in one of the scales of the balance. And as that wherein the man is set hath no counterpoise in the other side, it presently lengtheneth downe, and the other scale which it meets with and toucheth the rod: then the *Goguis* telleth them from the Rocks, that they must confesse themselves of all the finnes they haue committed, to their remembrance, and that with a loud voyce, to the end that all the rest may heare him. Then presently hee beginneth to confesse, whilst some of the standers by doe laugh at the finnes they doe heare; and others sigh, and at every sinne they confesse, the other scale of the balance falls a litle, vntill that hauing told all his finnes, it remains quall with the other, wherein the forrowfull penitent sits: then the *Goguis* turnes the wheele, and drawes the rod and balance vnto him, and the Pilgrime comes forth, then enters another, vntill all haue passed. A *Iapones* reported this after he was christened, saying, that hee had bene in this pilgrimage, and entered the balance foure times, where he had confessed his finnes publicly. Hee said moreover, that if any one did conceale any sinne, the empire kate, yielded not: and if hee grew obstinate after instance made to confesse himselfe, refusing to open all his finnes, the *Goguis* cast him downe from the top, where in an instant he is broken into a thousand peeces. Yet this Christian, who was called *Iain*, told vs, that commonly the feare and terror of this place is so great to all such as enter therein, and the danger they lee with their eyes, to fall out of the balance, and to be broken in peeces, that seldom there is any one but discouers all his finnes. This place is

Of the horrible
noble Vision
which the
Indians
Priests and
call by other names
wid, and of
their witch
crafts.

The Priests of the Idol in *Chicase* were anointed in this sort: they anointed the body from the nose to the head, and all the haire like hewe, which hung like tresses, or a Hoie mane, for that they applied this Vision wet and moist. Their haire grew so, as in time it

hung downe so their hannes, so heauily, that it was troublesome for them to beate it, for they haue finger, did neuer cut it, vntill they dyed, or that they were dipened with for their great age, or being sicke, employed in governments or some honorable charge in the Commonwealth. They carried their haire in tresses, of fixe fingers breadth, which they dyed blacke with the fume of Sapine, of Pure trees, or Roins: for in all Antiquitie it hath bene an offering they made vnto their Idols, and for this cause it was much esteemed and reuerenced. They were alwayes dyed with this tincture from the foot to the head, so as they were like vnto smoking *Negros*, and that was their ordinary Vision: yet when as they went to sacrifice and giue Incense in the Mountaynes, or on the tops thereof, or in any lacke and obscure Caves, where their Idols were, they vsed an other kinde of vision very different, doing certaine ceremonies to take away feare, and to giue them courage. This vision was made with diuers little venomous beasts, as Spiders, Scorpions, Palmers, Salamanders and Vipers, the which the Boyes in the Colledges tooke and gathered together, where in they were so expert, as they were alwayes furnished when the Priests called for them. The chiefe care of these Boyes was, to hunt after these beasts; if they went any other way, and by chance met with any of these beasts, they slayed to take them, with as great paine, as if their liues depended thereon. By the reason whereof the *Indians* commonly feared not these venomous beasts, making no more account then if they were not so, hauing bene all yeer in this exercise. To make an ointment of these beasts, they tooke them all together and burnt them vpon the harch of the Temple, which was before the Altar, vntill they were consumed. After this: then did they put them in Morters with much Tobacco or *Petum* (being an herbe that Nation vsesh much, to benum the flesh, that they may not feele their trauell) with the which they mingle the ashes, making them lose their force; they did likewise mingle with these ashes, Scorpions, Spiders, and Palmers alie, mingling all together, then did they put to it a certaine lede being ground, which they call *Oloabiqui*, whereof the *Indians* make a drinke to vse visions, for that the vertue of this herbe is to depriue man of sense. They did likewise grinde with these ashes blacke and hairy worms, whose haire only is venomous, all which they mingled together with blacke, or the fume of Roins, putting it in small pots, which they set before their god, saying it was his meat. And therefore they called it a *diuine meat*. By means of this ointment they became Witches, and did fee and ipake with the Deuill. The Priests being thus dabbred with this ointment, lost all feare, putting on a Spirit of cruellty. By reason whereof they did very boldly kill men in their sacrifices, going all alone in the night to the Mountaynes, and into obscure Caves, contemning all wilde beasts, and holding it for certaine and approued, that both Lions, Tigres, Serpents, and other furious beasts which breed in the Mountaynes, and Forests, fled from them, by the vertue of this *Petum* of their god.

And in truth, though this *Petum* had no power to make them sicke, yet was the Deuils picture sufficient wherein they were transformed. This *Petum* did also serue to cure the sicke, and for children: and therefore all called it the *diuine Physique*: and so they came from all parts to the Superiors and Priests, as to their Sauours, that they might apply this diuine physique, whereunto they anointed those parts that were grieved. They said that they felt hereby a notable ease, which might be, for that Tobacco and *Oloabiqui* haue this propertie of themselves, to benum the flesh, being applied in manner of an emplatyr, which must be by a stronger reason being mingled with poysons, and for that it did appease and benum the paine, they held it for an effect of health, and a diuine vertue. And therefore ran they to these Priests as to holy men, who kept the blinde and ignorant in this error, perswading them what they pleased, and making them tuncie after their inuentions and deuillish ceremonies, their authority being such, as their wordes were sufficient to induce belief as an article of their Faith. And thus made they a thousand superstitions among the vulgar people, in their manner of offering Incense, in cutting their haire, tying small flowers about their necks, and stringing with small bones of Snakes, commanding them to bathe at a certaine time; and that they should watch all night at the harch, lest the fire should die, that they should eat no other bread but that which had bene offered to their gods, that they should vpon any occasion repaire vnto their Witches, who with certain graines told fortunes, and diuined, looking into Keaders and Palles full of water. The Sorcerers and Ministers of the Deuill vsed much to enuaine themselves. There were an infinite number of these Witches, Diuiners, Enchanters, and other false prophets. There remaynes yet at this day of this infection, although they bee secret, not daring publicly to exercise their sacrilegious, deuillish ceremonies and superstitions, but their abuses and wickedness are discouered more at large and particularly in the confessions made by the Prelates of *Perna*.

There is a kinde of Sorcerers amongst the *Indians* allowed by the Kings *Iapona*, which are as it were Sooth-sayers, they take vpon them what forme and figure they please, flying far through the aire in a short time, beholding all that was done. They talke with the Deuill, who answereth them in certaine tones or other things which they reuerence much. They serue as Conjurers, to tell what hath passed in the secret parts, before any newes can come. As it hath chanced since the *Spaniards* arrived there, that in the distance of two or three hundred leagues, they haue knowne the Mutinies, Battailles, Rebellions, and Deaths, both of Tyrants, and of

those of the Kings partie, and of priuate men, the which haue bene knowne the same day they chanced, or the day after, a thing impossible by the course of nature. To worke this diuination, they thus themselves into a house, and became drunke vntill they lost their senses, a day after they answered to that which was demanded. Some affirm they vie certaine Visions. The *Indians* say, that the old women doe commonly vie this office of witchcraft, and especially those of one Province, which they call *Casullo*, and of another Towne called *Manabuy*, and of the Province of *Guacachira*. They likewise shew what is become of things stolen and lost. There are of these kindes of Sorcerers in all parts, to whom commonly doe come the *Anacoona*, and *Cyua*, which serue the *Spaniards*, and when they haue lost any thing of their *Mallars*, or when they desire to know the successe of things past or to come, as when they goe to the *Spaniards* Cities for their priuate affaires, or for the publike, they demand if their voyage shall bee prosperous, if they shall bee sick, if they shall die, or returne safe, if they shall obtaine that which they pretend: and the Witches or Sorcerers answer, Yes, or No, hauing first spoken with the Deuill, in an obscure place: so as their *Anacoona* doe well heare the found of the voyce, but they see not to whom these Coniurers speake, neither doe they vnderstand what they say. They make a thousand ceremonies and sacrifices to this effect, with the which they mocke the Deuill and grow exceeding drunke, for the doing whereof, they particularly vie an herb called *Filina*, the iuyce whereof they mingle with their *Cacha*, or take it in some other sort.

Of other Ceremonies: and Customs of the *Indians*, which are like vnto ours.

Marriage ceremony.

The *Indians* had an infinite number of other ceremonies and customs, which resembled to the ancient Law of *Moses*, and some to those which the *Moor*es vie, and some approached nere to the Law of the Gospel, as their Bathes or *Opacuna*, as they call them: they did wash themselves in water, to cleanse them from their sinnes. The *Mexicans* had also amongst them a kinde of *Baptisme*, in which they did with ceremony, cutting the eares and members of young children new borne, countenancing in some sort the Circumcision of the *Iews*. This ceremony was done principally to the sonnes of Kings and Noblemen: presently vpon their birth the Priests did wash them, and did put a little Sword in their right hand, and in the left a Target. And to the Children of the vulgar sort, they put the markes of their offices, and to their Daughters instruments to spin, knit, and labour. This ceremony continued foure dayes, being made before some Idol. They contracted marriage after their manner, whereof the Licenciats *Polo* hath written a whole Treatise, and I will speake somewhat thereon hereafter. In other things their customs and ceremonies haue some shew of reason. The *Mexicans* were married by the hands of their Priests in this sort. The Bridegroome and the Bride stood together before the Priest, who tookes them by the hands, asking them if they would marry: then hauing vnderstood their will, he tookes a corner of the vail wherewith the woman had her head couered, and a corner of the mans gowne the which he tyed together on a knot, and ioled them thus tyed to the Bridegroomes house, where there was a hard kinde, and then he caused the wife to goe ten times about the hard, and so the married couple fate downe together, and thus was the marriage contracted. The *Mexicans* were very jealous of the integrity of their wives: so as if they found they were not as they ought to bee (the which they knew either by signes or dishonest wordes) they presently gaue notice thereof to their fathers and kinsfolke of their wives, to their great shame and dishonour, for that they had not kept good guard ouer them. When they went to the house they made an Interdiction of all the men and wife brought together, of prohibition for the house, of law, of jewels and ornaments, which Inventories every father kept, for if it chanced they made any diuorce (as it was common amongst them when they agree not) they diuided their goods according to the portion that every one brought, every one hauing libertie in such a case, to marry whom they pleased: and they gaue the Daughters to the Wife, and the Sonnes to the Husband. It was defended vpon paine of death, not to marry againe together, the which they observed very strictly. And although it seeme that many of their ceremonies agree with ours, yet differ they much for the great abomination they mingle therewithall. It is common and general to haue usually one of these three things, either Cruelty, Filthinesse, or Sloth: for all their ceremonies were cruell and hurtfull, as to kill men and to spill blood: or filthy and beastly, as to eat and drinke to the name of their Idols, and also to pisse in the honour of them, carrying them vpon their shoulders, to anoint and besmeare themselves filthily, and to doe a thousand sorts of villanies, which were at the least, vaine, ridiculous, and idle, and more like the actions of children, then of men. Whereas the temporall power was greatest, there superstition hath most increased, as we see in the Realmes of *Mexico* and *Cusco*, where it is incredible to see the number of Idols they had: for within the Citie of *Mexico* there were about three hundred. *Alonso Inquis* *Tupasqui*, amongst the Kings of *Cusco*, was he that most augmented the seruice of their Idols, in offering a thousand kindes of sacrifices, feasts, and ceremonies. The like did King *Spoan* in *Mexico*, who was the fourth King. There was also a great number of superstitions and sacrifices in other Nations of the *Indians*, as in the Province of *Guatemala*, at the Islands in the new Kingdom, in the Province of *Chile*, and others that were like Commonwealths and Commonwealths. But it was nothing in respect of *Mexico* and *Cusco*, where Satan was as in *Rome*, or in his *Ierusalem*.

100. Mexican Idols. Amongst many deuotions.

The *Inquis* Lords of *Peru*, had two kinde of Feasts. Some were ordinarie, which fell out in certayne monthes of the yeere: and others extraordinary, which were for certayne causes of importance, as when they did crowne a new King, when they legatine some warre of importance, when they had any great need of water or drought, or other like things. For the ordinarie Feasts, we must vnderstand, that every month of the yeere they made Feasts, and diuers Sacrifices, and although all of them had this alike, that they offered a hundred sheepe: yet in colour, and in forme they are very diuers. In the first month which they call *Rayme*, which is the month of December, they made their first Feast, which was the principall of all others, and for that cause they called it *Capacrayme*, which is to say, *Arich* and principall Feast. In this Feast they offered a great number of sheepe and Lambes in Sacrifice, and they burnt them with fire wood, then they caused Gold and Silver to bee brought vpon cartes full of sheepe, setting vpon them three Images of the *Sonne*, and those of the *Thunder*, the *Father*, the *Sonne*, and the *Brother*. In these Feasts they dedicated the *Inquis* children, putting *Guacra*, or Eufignes vpon them, and they pierced their eares: then some old man did whip them with flings, and annoynted their faces with blood, all in signe that they should bee true Knights to the *Inquis*. No stranger might remayne in *Cusco* during this month, and this Feast, but at the end thereof they entered, and they gaue vnto them pieces of the palte of Mays with the blood of the Sacrifice, which they did eat in signe of contentation with the *Inquis*, as hath bene said before. It is strange that the Deuill after this manner hath brought a Trinitie into Idolatry, for the three Images of the Sonne called *Aymara*, *Chumana*, and *Intayrayme* which signify the *Father* and *Lord Sonne*, and the *Brother Sonne*. In the like manner they named the three Images of *Chunguilla*, which is the God that rula in the Region of the *Ayre*, where it Thunders, Raines and Snowes. I remember, that being in *Cuzco*, an honourable Priest shewed me an information, which I had long in my hands, wherein was pronounced that there was a certayne *Guacra* or Oratory, whereas the *Indians* did worship an Idol called *Tangatanga*, which they said was one in three, and three in one. Comming then to the Feast of the second month, which they called *Camay*, besides the Sacrifices which they made, they did cast the ashes into the Riuer, following five or six leagues after, praying it to carry them into the Sea, for that the *Peru* should there receive this present. In the third, fourth and fifth month, they offered a hundred blacke sheepe, speckled and grey, with many other things, which I omit for being too tedious. The sixth month is called *Huancacay* or *Aymara*, which is wortheth to May, in the which they sacrificed a hundred sheepe more, of all colours: this Moone and month, which is when they bring Mays from the fields into the house, they made a Feast, which is yet very viall among the *Indians*, and they doe call it *Aymara*. This Feast is made comming from the *Chacra* or Farme vnto the house, saying certayne Songs, and praying that the Mays may long continue, the which they call *Manacra*. They take a certayne portion of the most fruitful of the Mays that growes in their Farmes, the which they put in a certayne Granary which they doe call *Pirua*, with certayne Ceremonies, watching three nights: they put this Mays in the richest garments they haue, and being thus wrapped and dressed, they worship this *Pirua*, and hold it in great veneration, saying it is the Mother of the Mays of their Inheritances, and that by this means the Mays augments and is preferred. In this month they make a particular Sacrifice, and the Witches demand of this *Pirua*, if it hath strength sufficient to continue vntill the next yeere: and if it answers No, then they carry this *Pirua* to the Farme to burne, whence they brought it, according to every mans powerthen make they another *Pirua*, with the same Ceremonies, saying, that they renew it, to the end the Seed of Mays may not perill, and if it answers that it hath force sufficient to last longer, they leaue it vntill the next yeere. This foolish vanitie continueth to this day, and it is very common amongst the *Indians* to haue these *Piruas*, and to make the Feast of *Aymara*. The seventh month is wortheth to Iune, and is called *Ancacay* or *Intayrayme*, in it they made the Feast that is called *Intayrayme*, in the which they sacrificed a hundred sheepe called *Quacra*, and said it was the Feast of the Sonne. In this month they made many Images of *Guano* wood carued, all attired with rich garments, and they made their dances which they doe call *Capa*. At this Feast they call flowers in the high wayes, and thither the *Indians* came painted, and their Noblemen had small plates of Gold vpon their beards, and all did sing, we must vnderstand that this Feast falleth almost at the same time, when as the Christians obserue the Solemnitie of the holy Sacrament, which vnto resemble it in some sort, as in dancing, singing and representations. And for this cause there hath bene, and is yet among the *Indians* (which celebrat a Feast somewhat like to ours of the holy Sacrament) many Superstitions in celebrating this ancient Feast of *Intayrayme*. The eighth month is called *Chalua* or *Huancay*, in the which they did burne a hundred sheepe, all grey, of the colour of *Uscacha*, according to the former order, which month doth answer to Iulij. The ninth month was called *Tayagani*, in the which they burnt an hundred sheepe more, or a chestrut colour; and they doe likewise kill and burne a thousand *Cuyes*, to the end that neither the Priest, the *Ayre*, the water, nor the Sonne should hurt their Farmes: and this month doth answer vnto August. The tenth month was called *Cayarami*, in the which

Feasts celebrated by them of the *Indians*, which would imitate the mystery of the holy Trinitie.

Ind. Aymara.

Camay-feast.

Aymara-feast.

Intayrayme-feast.

Capas Christi.

other women, who had made a vow that day to forsee the Idoll. And therefore such as had made this vow, came by the point of day, offering themselves to the Deputies of the Temple, that they might command them what they would haue done, as it was admirable. This meate being ready, and the house of dinner come, all those Virgins went out of the Temple in procession, euery one carrying a little basket of bread in her hand, and in the other, dish of these meates; before they marched an old man, like to a steward, with a pleasant habit, he was clothed in a white Surples downe to the calves of his legges, vpon a doublet without sleeves of red leather, like to a iacker, he carried vnder his left arm, from the which hung broad ribbands at the which did hang in a little Caldrasse or pumpkin, which was covered with flowers, by little holes that were made in it, and within it were many superfluous things. This old man thus attyred, marched very humbly and haueily before the preparation, with his head declining: and comming nere the foot of the flaires, he made a great obeisance and reuerence. Then going on the one side, the Virgins drew nere with the meate, presenting it in order one after another, with great reuerence. This seruice prefented, the old man returned as before, leading the Virgins into their conuent, This done, the yong men and mistresses of the Temple, came forth and gathered vp this meate, the which they carried to the Chambers of the chiefe Priests of the Temple, who had fasted these dayes, eating only once a day, and they had also abstained from their wifes, nor once going out of the Temple in these these dayes. During the which they did whip themselves rigorously with cords; they did eate of this diuine meate (for so they called it) what they could, was it lawfull for any other to eate thereof. All the people hauing dined, they assembled againe in the court to see the end of the feast, whether they brought a captiue, which by the space of a whole yeare, had represented the Idoll, being attired, decked and honoured, as the Idoll it selfe, and doing all seruice vnto him, they delivered him into the hands of the sacrificers, who at instant presented themselves, taking him by the fette and hands. The Pope did open his stomacke, and pull out his heart, then did he lift vp his hands as high as he could, shewing it to the Sunne, and to the Idoll, as hath bene said. Hauing thus sacrificed him, they carried the Idoll, they went into a holy place appointed for this purpose, whither came the yong Men and Virgins of the Temple, with their ornaments, the which being put in order, they danced and sung with Drummes and other instruments, on the which the chiefe Priests did play and found. Then came all the Noblemen with ensignes and ornaments like to the yong men, who danced round about them. They did not vually kill any other men that day, but him that was sacrificed, yet euery fourth yeare they had others with him, which was in the yeare of Iubile and full pardons. After Sunne set, euery one being satisfied with founding, eating, and drinking, the Virgins went all to their conuent, they took great dishes of earth full of bread mixt with hony, couered with small panners, wrought and fashioned with dead mens heads and bones, and they carried the collation to the Idoll, mounting vp to the Court, which was before the doore of the Oratorie: and hauing fed them downe, they retired in the same order as they came, the steward going till before. Presently came forth all the yong men in order, with canes or reedes in their hands, who began to runne as fast as they could to the top of the flaires of the Temple, who should come first to the dishes of the collation. The Elders or chiefe Priests observed him that came first, second, third, and fourth, without regarding the rest. This collation was likewise carried away by the yong men, as great Relicks. This done, the foure that arrived first were placed in the midst of the Ancients of the Temple, bringing them to their chambers with much honour, praising them, and giuing them ornaments; and from thence forth they were respected and reuerenced as men of merite. The taking of this collation being ended, and the feast celebrated with much joy and noise, they dismissed all the yong men and mistresses which had fasted the Idoll; by means whereof they went one after another, as they came forth. All the small children of the Collegges and Schooles, were at the gate of the court, with botomes of rushes and heabs in their hands, which they cast at them, mocking and laughing, as of them that came from the fauice of the Idoll: they had liberty then to dispose of themselves at their pleasure, thus the Feast ended.

Of the Feast
of Marchants,
which those of
Colibri did
celebrate.

Although I haue spoken sufficiently of the seruice the *Mexicans* did vnto their gods; yet will I speake something of the feast they called *Quetzacoatl*, which was the god of riches, the which was solemnized in this manner. Fortie dayes forth the Marchants bought a louse well proportioned, without any fault or blemish, other of sicknesse or of hurt, which they did attire with the ornaments of the Idoll, that he might represent it forty dayes. Before his clothing they did cleanse him, washing him twice in a lake, which they called the lake of the god; and being purified, they attired him like the Idoll. During these forty dayes, he was much respected for his sake whom he represented. By night they did imprison him (as hath bene said) lest he should flye, and in the morning they took him out of prison, setting him vpon an eminent place, where they fettered him, giuing him exquisite meates to eate. After he had eaten, they put a chaine of flowers about his necke, and many nosegayes in his hand. He

had a well appointed guard, with much people to accompany him. When he went through the Citie, he went dancing and singing through all the streets, that he might be knowen for the resemblance of their god; and when he began to sing, the women and little children came forth of their houses to salute him, and to offer vnto him as their god. Two old men of the Ancients of the Temple, came vnto him nine dayes before the feast, and humbling themselves before him, they said with a low and submissiue voyce, *Sir, you must understand that nine dayes hence the exercise of dancing and singing doth end, and show must then dye;* and then he must answer, *In a good houre.* They call this ceremony, *Neyela Mexallitica*, which is to say, the advertisement; and when they did thus advertise him, they took very careful heede whether he were sad, or if he danced as ioyfully as he was accustomed, the which if he did not as cheerfully as they desired, they made a foolish superstition in this manner. They presently took the sacrificer rapiers, the which they washed and cleansed from the blood of men, which remained of the former sacrifices. Of this washing they made a drinke mingled with another liquor made of *Cacao* giuing it him to drinke; they said that this would make him forget what had bene said vnto him, and would make him in a manner insensible, returning to his former dancing and mirth. They said moreover, that he would offer himselfe cheerfully to death, being enchanted with this drinke. The cause why they sought to take from him this heauinesse, was, for that they held it for an ill augur, and a fore-telling of some great harme. The day of the Feast being come, after they had done him much honour, fmg, and giuen him incense, the sacrificers took him about midnight and did sacrifice him, as hath bene said, offering his heart vnto the Moon, the which they did afterwards cast againe the Idoll, letting the body fall to the bottom of the flaires of the Temple, where such as had offered him took him vp, which were the Marchants, whose feast it was. Then hauing carried him into the chiefe mans house amongst them, the body was drest with diuers fawces, to celebrate (at the break of day) the banquet and dinner of the feast, hauing first bid the Idoll good morrow, with a small dance, which they made whilst the day did breake, and that they prepared the sacrifice. Then did all the Marchants assemble at this banquet, especially those which made it a traffike to buy and sell slaves, who were bound euery yeare to offer one, for the resemblance of their god. This Idoll was one of the most honourable in all the Land: and therefore the Temple where he was, was of a great authoritie. There were three foure flaires to ascend vp vnto it, and on the top was a Court of an indifferent largeness, very finely drest and plastered, in the midst whereof, was a great round thing like unto an Ouen, hauing the entrie low and narrow: so as they must stoope very low that sh^d enter therein. This Temple had Chambers and Chappels as the rest, where there were conuents of Priests, yong Men, Maides, and Children, as hath bene said: and there was one Priest alone resident continually, the which they changed weekly: For although there were in euery one of these Temples, three or foure Curates or Ancients, yet did euery one serue his weeke without parting. His charge that weeke (after he had instructed the children) was to strike vp a Drum euery day at the Sunne-setting, to the fame end that we are accustomed to ring to Euen-song. This Drum was such as they might beare the house (drest thereof) throughout all the parts of the Citie, then euery man that vsed his merchandise, and retired vnto his house, and there was so great a silence, as there seemed to be no liuing creature in the Towne. In the morning when as the day began to breake, they began to found the Drum, which was a signe of the day beginning, so as travellers and strangers attended this signall to begin their iourneys, for till that time it was not lawfull to goe out of the Citie.

There was in this Temple a Court of reasonable greatnesse, in the which they made great dances, and pastimes, with games or comedies the day of the Idoll feast, for which purpose there was in the midst of this court a Theatre of thirty foure square very finely decked and trimmed, the which they decked with flowers that day, with all the art and inuention that might be, being inuironed round with Arches of diuers flowers and feathers, and in some places there were tied many small Birds, Conies, and other tame beasts. After dinner all the people assembled in this place, and the Players presented themselves, and played Comedies, some counterfeited the deafe, and the rheumatike, others the lame, some the blinde, and without hands, which came to seeke for cure of the Idoll, the deafe answered confusedly, the rheumatike did cough, the lame halled, telling their miseries and griefes, wherewith they made the people to laugh; others come forth in the forme of little beasts, some were attired like Snakes, others like Toades, and some like Lizards: then meeting together, they told their offices, and euery one retiring to his place, they founded on small flutes, which was pleasant to heare. They likewise counterfeited Butterflies and small Birds of diuers colours, and the children of the Temple represented these formes, then they went into a little Forrest planted there for the nonce, where the Priests of the Temple drew them forth with instruments of musike. In the meane time they vied many pleasant speeches, some in propounding, others in defending, wherewith the assistants were pleasantly intertained. This done, they made a Maske or Mummerie with all these personages, and so the Feast ended: the which were vually done in their principall Feasts.

CHAP. VI.

Civil Customs and Arts of the INDIANS taken out of ACOSTA'S 6. booke.

Of the supputation of times and of the Calender of the Mexicani Indians.

Now years day. Their Calender.

Weekes of 13. dayes or years. See this in the Mexican Chronicle in their owne figures.

New Age.

How the Kings began to count the years and months.

Better computation of times in Peru.

TWill first shew in what sort the *Mexicans* counted and diuided their yeere, their months, their kalender, their computations, their worlds and ages. They diuided the year into eighteen months, to which they gave twentie dayes, wherein the three hundred and threecore dayes are accomplished, and make the year perfect. But they did reckon them apart, and called them the *dayes of weeing*, during the which, the people did nothing, neither went they to their Temples, but occupied themselves only in visiting one another, and so spent the time: the sacrificers of the Temple did likewise cease their sacrifices. These five dayes being past, they began the computation of the year, whereof the first month and beginning was in March, when the leaves began to grow greene, although they took three dayes of February, for the first kalender, within the which ours is likewise comprehended and contained with a very ingenious Art, which was made by the ancient *Indians* that knew the first *Spaniards*. I have leene to the discourse and industrie the *Mexican Indians* had. Euerie one of these eighteen months had his proper name, and his proper picture, the which was commonly taken of the principall Feast that was made in that month, or from the diuerstie of times, which the year caused in that month. They had in this kalender certaine daies marked and distinguished for their feasts, and they multiplied vpon threene, and then began to count, one, two, &c. They did likewise make the years of these wheeles, with four figures or figures, attributing to euerie year a peculiar figure, whereof one was of a House, another of a Conie, the third of a Reede, and the fourth of a Flint. They painted them in this sort, noting by their figures the year that did runne, saying of so many Houses, of so many Flints, of such a Wheele, happened such a thing. For we weeke containing threene years, which in all made fiftie two years. In the midst of this wheele they painted a Sun, from the which went four beames or lines in crosse to the circumference of the wheele, and they made their course, even as the circumference was diuided into four equal parts, euerie one with his line, hauing a distinct colour from the rest, and the four colours were, Greene, Blew, Red, and Yellow: euerie portion of these foure had threene separations which had all their figures or particular figures, of a House, a Conie, a Reede, or a Flint, noting by euerie figure a year, and vpon the head of this figure they painted what had happened that year. And therefore I did see in the Kalender mentioned the year when the *Spaniards* entered *Mexico*, marked by the picture of a manclad in red, after our manner, for such was the habit of the first *Spaniard*, whom *Fernando Cortes* sent, at the end of the two and fiftie years, which finished the wheele. They vied a pleasant ceremony, which was, the last night they did breake all their vessels and fluffe, and put out their fire, and all the lights, saying, that the world should end at the finishing of one of these wheeles, and it might be at that time: for (said they) seeing the world must then end, what need is there to trouble me to eat, and therefore they had no further need of Vessels nor fire. Vpon this conceit they passed the night in great feare, saying, it might happen there would be no more day, and they watched verie carefully for the day when they saw the day begin to breake, they presently beat many Drums, and sounded Cornes, Flutes, and other instruments of ioy and gladnesse, saying, that God did yet prolong the time with another age, which were fiftie two years. And then began another wheele. The first day and beginning of this age they took new fire, and bought new Vessels to dresse their meate, and all went to the high Priest for this new fire, hauing first made a solemne Sacrifice, and given thanks for the coming of the day, and prolongation of another age. This was their manner of accounting their years, months, weekes, and ages.

Although this supputation of times practised amongst the *Mexicans*, be ingenious enough and certaine, for men that had no learning; yet in my opinion they wanted discourse and consideration, haue not grounded their computation according vnto the course of the Moone, nor distributed their month accordingly, wherein those of *Peru* haue farre surpassed them: for they diuided their year into a marie daies, perfectly accomplished as we doe here, and inco twelue months or Moones, in the which they impleased and confirmed the eluen daies that remaine of the Moone, as *Polo* writes. To make the computation of their year fire and certaine, they vied this industrie: vpon the Mountaine, which are about the Citie of *Cusco* (where the Kings

Kings began to hold their Court, being the greatest sanctuaries of those Realms, and as we should say another *Rome*, there were twelue Pillars set in order, and in such distance the one from the other, as euerie month one of these Pillars did note the rising and setting of the Sunne. They called them *Succaeas*, by means whereof they taught and shewed, the feasts, and the seasons fit to sowe and reape, and to doe other things. They did certaine sacrifices to these Pillars of the Sunne. Euerie month had his proper name, and peculiar Feasts. They began the year by *Incipiente* as we doe. But first a King *Agua* called *Pachacuti*, which signifies *arise from the Tomb*, began their year by December, by reason (as I conceiue) that then the Sunne returned from the cleaft point of Capricorne, which is the tropike nearest vnto them. I know not whether the one or the other haue obligated any Blixie, although some hold the contrary. The weekes which the *Mexicans* did reckon, were not properly weekes, being not of fiftie dayes, the *Incipiente* likewise made no mention thereof which is no wonder, seeing the count of the week is not grounded vpon the course of the Sunne, as that of the year, nor of the Moone, as that of the month; but among the *Hebrewes* it is grounded vpon the creation of the world, as *Moses* reporteth, and amongst the *Greekes* and *Latins* vpon the number of the seuen Planets, of whose names the daies of the weeke haue taken their determination; yet was it much for those *Indians*, being men without bookes and learning, to haue a year, seasons, and feasts, so well appointed as I haue said.

Letters were inuented to signifie properly the words we doe pronounce, euen as words (according to the Philosopher) are the figures and demonstrations of mans thoughts and conceptions. And both the one and the other (I say the letters and words) were ordained to make things knowne. The voice or such as are present, and letters for the absent, and such as are to come. Signes and marks which are not properly to signifie words, but things, cannot be called, neither in truth are they letters, although they be written, for we cannot say that the picture of the Sunne is a writing of the Sunne, but only a picture; and the like may be said of other figures and characters, which haue no resemblance to the thing, but serve only for memorie: for he that inuented them, did not ordaine them to signifie words, but only to noate the thing: neither doe they call those characters, letters, or writings, although indeede they doe not, but rather ciphers, or remembrances as those be which the Spherists of *Middelford* doe vnto, to signifie diuers signes or planets of *Mars, Venus, Iupiter, &c.*

Such characters are ciphers, and no letters: for what name fouer *Mars* may haue in *Italian, France, or Spanish*, this character doth alwaies signifie to the which is not found in letters: for although they signifie the thing, yet is it by means of words. So as they which know not the thing, vnderstand them not: as for example, the *Greekes* for the *Hebrewes*, cannot conceiue what this word *Sol* doth signifie, although they see it written: for that they vnderstand not the Latine word: so as writing and letters are only practised by them, which signifie words therewith. For if they signifie things mediately, they are no more letters nor writings, but ciphers and pictures: whereby we may obserue two notable things. The one, that the memorie of *Hillories* and *Antiquities* may be preferred by one of these three means, either by letters and writings, as hath bene vied amongst the *Latins, Greekes, Hebrewes*, and manie other Nations: or by painting, as hath bene vied almost throughout all the world, for it is said in the second *Niue*, *Comeleth, Pater noster, a Book for fowle which cannot read*: or by ciphers and characters, as the cyprian signifies the number of a hundred, a thousand and others, without noting the word of a hundred, or a thousand. The other thing we may obserue thereby, is that which is propounded in this Chapter, which is, that no Nation of the *Indies* discovered in our time, hath had the vied of letters and writings, but of the other two sorts, Images, and figures. The which I obserue, not only of the *Indies of Peru*, and New *Spain*, but also of *Jappon*, and *China*.

It is difficult to vnderstand how the *Chinnois* can write proper names in their tongue, especially of strangers, and not in their owne tongue, and able to inuent figures proper vnto them. I haue made triall thereof being in *Mexico* with the *Chinnois*, willing them to write this proposition in their language, *Isoph. Acosia is come from Peru*, and such like: whereupon the *Chinnois* was long peniue, but in the end hee did write it, the which other *Chinnois* did after readie, although they did vary a little in the pronuntiation of the proper name. For they vied this deuise to write a proper name: they seeked out some thing in their tongue, that hath resemblance to that name, and set downe the figure of this thing. And as it is difficult among so many proper names, to finde things to resemble them in the praction, so is it very difficult and troublesome to write such things. Vpon this purpose, Father *Alonso Sanchez* told vs, that when hee was in *China*, being led into diuers Tribunal Seres, from *Mandarin* to *Mandarin*, they were long in putting his name in writing in their *Caphsa*, yet in the end they did write it after their manner, and so iudicially, that they (saie) came neere to the name: and this is the fashion of Letters and Writings which the *Chinnois* vied. That of the *Japponois* approached very neere, although they affirme that the Noblemen of *Jappon* that came into *Europe*, did write all things

12. Pillars of the Sunne.

That no Nation of the *Indies* hath bene founde to haue had the vied of Letters.

Three wayes of remembrance to posterity, letters, as we haue; pictures, as the *Mexican* characters; and in *China*, as the *Chinnois* did that wile could make the *Christi* Church, in decreeing *Incipiente* for such an account: but either of writing thus is named and vnderstand.

very easily in their Language, were they of our proper names: yes, I have had some of their Writing shewed me, whereby it seems they should have some kinde of Letters, although the greater part of their Writings, bee by the Characters and figures, as hath bene said of the *Chinies*.

An *Indian* of *Peru* or *Mexico*, that hath learned to read & write, knowes more then the wisest *Mandarin* that is amongst them: for that the *Indian* with foure and twentie Letters which hee hath learned, will write all the words in the World and a *Mandarin* with his hundred thousand Letters, will be troubled to write some proper name, as of *Maria*, or *Alonso*, or with greater reason he shall bee like able to write the names of things hee knowes not. So as the writing in *China*, is no other thing but a manner of painting or ciphering.

Of the fashion
of Letters and
writings which
the *Mexicans*
used. Chap. 7.

Bookes of
leaves of trees
keepe filium
liber, or codex,
found by the side
in which the
Ancients writ.
Blind zecle.

WE find among the Nations of *New Spaine* a great knowledge and memorie of antiquities, and therefore searching by what means the *Indians* had preferred their Histories, and so many particularities, I learned, that although they were not so subtile and curious as the *Chinies*, and those of *Japan*, yet had they some kind of Letters and Bookes amongst them, whereby they preferred (after their manner) the deeds of their *Predecessors*. In the Province of *Tucatan*, where the *Bishopricke* is, which they call *de Elondan*, there were Bookes of the leaves of Trees, folded and squared, after their manner, in the which the wise *Indians* contained the distribution of their times, the knowledge of the Planets, of beasts and other natural things, with their Antiquities, a thing full of great curiositie and diligence. It seemed to some Pendant that all this was an Incantment and Magicke Arte, who did obstinately maintaine, that ought to be burnt, for as they were committed to the fire, which since not only the *Indians* found to be ill done, but also the curious *Spaniards*, who desired to know the secrets of the Countrey. The like hath happened in other things: for our men thinking that all was but Superstition, have lost many memorials of ancient and holy things, which might have profited much. This proceedeth of a foolish and ignorant zeale, who not knowing, not seeking to know what concerned the *Indians*, say prejudicially, that they are all but Witch-crafts, and that all the *Indians* are but Drunkards, incapable to know or learne any thing. For such as would be curiously informed of them, have found many things worthy of consideration. One of our company of *Jesuits*, a man very wittie and well experienced, did assemble in the Province of *Mexico*, the Ancients of *Tehuacan*, of *Tulla*, and of *Mexico*, conferring at large with them, who shewed unto him their Bookes, Histories and Kalendars, things very worthy the sight, because they had their figures and Hieroglyphicks, whereby they represented things in this manner: Such as had forme or figure, were represented by their proper Images, and such as had not any, were represented by Characters that signified them, and by this means they figured and wrote what they would. And to observe the time when any thing did happen, they had those painted Wheels, for every one of them contained an Age, which was two and fiftie yeeres, as hath bene said; and of the side of those Wheels, they did paint with figures and Characters right against the yeeres, the memorable things that happened therein. As they noted the yeere when as the *Spaniards* entered their Countrey, they painted a man with a Hat and a red Iekin, upon the figure of a Reed, which did rule then, and so of other accidents. But for that their Writings and Characters were not sufficient as our Letters and Writings be, they could not so plainly expresse the words, but only the substance of their conceptions. And forasmuch as they were accustomed to rehearse Discourses and Dialogues by heart, compounded by their Orators and ancient Rhetoricians, and many *Caphs* made by their Poets (which were impossible to learne by their Hieroglyphicks and Characters) the *Mexicans* were very curious to have their Children learne those Dialogues and compositions by heart. For the which cause they had Schooles, and as it were, Colleges or Seminaries, where the Ancients taught Children these Orations, and many other things, which they preferred amongst them by tradition from one to another, as perfectly, as if they had bene written: especially the most famous Nations had a care to have their children (which had any inclination to be Rhetoricians, and to practise the Office of Orators) to learne these Orations by heart: So as when the *Spaniards* came into their Countrey, and had taught them to read and write our Letters, many of the *Indians* then wrote these Orations, as some grave men doe wittnesse that had read them. Which I say, for that some which I happily read these long and eloquent Discourses in the *Mexican* History, will easily beleue they have bene invented by the *Spaniards*, and not really taken and reported from the *Indians*. But having knowne the certaine truth, they will give credit (as reason is) to their Histories. They did also write these Discourses after their manner, by Characters and Images: and I have seene for my better satisfaction, the *Peter* writer, *Alonso* *Maria*, and *Symbol*, or general Confeition of our Faith, written in this manner by the *Indians*.

Confeition by
picture.

And in truth whosoever shall fee them, will wonder thereat. For, to signify these words, I a *Sinner* doe confesse my selfe, as a religious man hath, as one that confesseth himselfe: and for this, *To God most high*, they painted three faces with their Crownes, like to the *Trinitie*, and *To the glorious Virgin Marie*, they painted the face of

oug

our Lady, and halfe the bodie of a little childe: and for Saint *Peter* and Saint *Paul*, heads with crownes, and a Key with a Sword: and whereas Images failed, they did fee Characters, *wherem I have sinned*, &c. whereby we may conceive the quicknes of spirit of these *Indians*, seeing this manner of writing of our Prayers and matters of Faith hath not bene taught them by the *Spaniards*, neither could they have done it, if they had not had an excellent conception of that was taught them. And I have seene in *Peru*, a confession of finnes brought by an *Indian*, written in the same sort with Figures and Characters, painting every one of the tenne Commandements, after a certayne manner, where there were certayne markes like Ciphers, which were the finnes hee had committed against the Commandements. I touching doubt but if 10 any of the most sufficient *Spaniards* were employed to make memorials of the like things by their Images and markes, they would not atcayne unto it in a whole yeere, no not in tenne.

Before the *Spaniards* came to the *Indies*, they of *Peru* had no kind of writing, either Letters, Characters, Ciphers, or Figures: like to those of *China* and *Mexico*: yet preferred they the memory of their Antiquities, and mayntaine an order in all their affaires, of Peace, Warre, and Police, for that they were careful observers of Traditions from one to another, and the young ones learned, and carefully kept, as a holy thing, what their Superiors had told them, and taught it with the like care to their Posteritie. Besides this diligence, they supplied the want of Letters and Writings, partly by painting, as those of *Mexico*, (although they of *Peru* were very grosse and blockish) and partly, and most commonly by *Quippos*. These *Quippos* are Memorials or Registers, made of Bowes, in the which there are diuers knots and colours, which doe signify diuers things, and it is strange to see what they have exprest and represented by this means: for their *Quippos* seue them instead of Bookes of *Histories*, of *Laws*, *Ceremonies*, and accounts of their affaires. There were Officers appointed to keepe these *Quippos*, the which at this day they call *Quipocamayu*, the which were bound to give an account of every thing, as *Notaries* and Registers doe here. Therefore they fully beleueed them in all things, for according to the varietie of businesse, as Warres, Policies, Tributes, *Ceremonies* and Lands, there were sundry *Quippos* or branches, in every one of the which there were so many knots little and great, and strings tyed unto them, some Red, some Greene, some Blue, some White; and finally, such diuersitie, that even as wee deriue an infinite number of words from the foure and twentie Letters, applying them in diuers sorts, so doe they draw innumerable words from their knots, and diuersitie of colours. Which thing they doe in such manner, that if at this day in *Peru*, any Commissary come at the end of two or three yeeres, to take information upon the life of any Officer, the *Indians* come with their small reckonings verified, saying, that in such a Village they giuen him so many *Egges* which he hath not payed for, in such a house a Henne in another, two burthens of grasse for his Horse, and that he hath payed but so much money and remained debtor so much. The proofs being presently made with these numbers of knots and handfuls of cords, it remaines for a certaine testimonie and register. I did fee a handful of these strings, wherein an *Indian* woman carried written a general confession of all her life, and thereby confessed her selfe, as well as I could have done it in written Paper. I asked her what those strings meant that differed from the rest she answered me, they were certayne circumstances which the sinne required to be fully confessed. Beside these *Quippos* of threads, they have another, as it were a kind of writing with small stones, by means whereof they learne punctually the words they desire to know by heart. It is a pleasant thing to see the old and the impotent (with a Wheele made of small stones) learne the *Pater noster*, with another the *Ave Maria*, with another the Creed; and to remember what stone signifies, which was conceived by the Holy Ghost, and which, Suffered under Pontius Pilate.

It is a pleasant thing to see them correct themselves when they doe erre; for all their reckoning consisteth only in beholding of their small stones. One of these *Wheeles* were sufficient to make me forget all that I doe know by heart. There are a great number of these *Wheeles* in the Church-yards for this purpose. But it seems a kind of Witch-craft, to see another kinde of *Quippos*, which they make of graines of Mays, for to call vpon a hard account, wherein a good Arithmetician would be troubled with his Penne to make a diuision: to see how much curry one must contribute: they doe draw so many graines from one side, and add so many to another, with a thousand other inventions. These *Indians* will take their graines, and place five of one side, three of another, and eight of another, and will change one graine of one side, and three of another: So as they finish a certaine account, without erring in any point: and they sooner submit themselves to reason by these *Quippos*, what curry one ought to pay; then we can doe with the Penne. Hereby we may judge if they haue any understanding, or bee brutish: for my part, I thinke they passe vs in those things, whereunto they doe apply themselves.

Of Registers
and the manner
of reckoning
which the
Indians of *Peru*
used. Chap. 8.

Quippos.

Writing with
small stones.

Accounts by
graines of
Mays.

Of the order
the Indians
hold in their
Writings. Chap.

Diuers man-
ners of writ-
ing.

Diuers forms
of govern-
ment.

Whether the
Mexican or
Peru Kingdome
was greater.

Of the govern-
ment of the
Kings and In-
guas of Peru.
Chap. II.
Inconuous
Marriages.

Diuers.

It shall be good to adde hereunto what we haue obserued, touching the *Indians* Writings: for their manner was not to write with a continued line, but from the top to the bottome, or in circle-wis. The *Laines* and *Greeces* doe write from the left hand vnto the right, which is the vulgar and common manner wee doe vie. The *Heterones* contrariwise beganne at the right to the left, and therefore their Bookes began where ours did end. The *Chimú* write neither like the *Greeces*, nor like the *Heterones*, but from the top to the bottome, for as they bee no Letters but whole words, and that euery figure and Character signifieth a thing, they haue no neede to assemble the parts one with another, and therefore they may well write from the toppe to the bottome. Those of *Mexico*, for the same cause did not write in line, from one side to another, but contrary to the *Chimú*, beginning below, they mounted upward. They vied this manner of writing, in the account of their dayes, and other things which they obserued: Yet when they did write in their Wheelles or Signes, they began from the middelt where the Sunne was figured, and so mounted by their yeeres vnto the round and circumference of the Wheelles.

By words, Pictures, and these Memorials, the Kings were often aduertised of that which passed. For this cause there were men of great spilitie, which serued as Carriers, to goe and come, whom they did nourish in this exercise of Running from their youth, labouring to haue them well breasted, that they might runne to the top of a high Hill without wearinefle. And therefore in *Mexico* they gaue the Prize to three or foure that first mounted vp the Hayres of the Temple, as hath bene said in the former Booke. And in *Cusco*, when they made their Solemne Feast of *Capaymayta*, the Nouices who could failest vp the Rocks of *Tuacani*, And the exercise of running is generally much vied among the *Indians*. When as there came chanced any matter of importance, they sent vnto the Lords of *Mexico*, the thing painted, wherof they would aduertise them, as they did when the first *Spanish* ships appeared to their sight, and when they tooke *Tenochcan*. In *Peru* they were very curious of Footmen, and the *Inguas* had them in all parts of the Realme, as ordinary Posts called *Chasquis*, wherof shall bee spoken in this place.

Many Nations of the *Indies* haue not indured any Kings, or absolute and soueraigne Lords, but lue in Comminalities, creating and appointing Captaynes and Princes, for certaine occasions only, to whom they obey during the time of their charge; then after they returne to their former estates. The greatest part of this New World (where there are no litted Kingdomes, nor established Common-weales, neither Princes nor succeeding Kings) they gouerne themselves in this manner, although there bee some Lords and principall men raised above the common sort. In this sort the whole Countrey of *Chile* is gouerned, where the *Araucans*, those of *Tucupall* and others, haue so many yeeres reigned the *Spaniards*. And in like sort all the new Kingdome of *Granada*, that of *Chusimalla*, the Islands, all *Florida*, *Bresill*, *Luson*, and other Countreies of great circuit: but that in some places they are yet more barbarous, scarcely acknowledging any head, but all command and gouerne in common, haue no other thing, but will, violence, industry and disorder, so as hee that most may most command.

They haue onely found two Kingdomes or litted Empires, that of the *Mexicans* in New *Spain*, and of the *Inguas* in *Peru*. It is not easie to be said, which of the two was the mightiest Kingdome, for that *Moteczuma*, exceeded them in *Peru*, in Buildings, and in the greatness of his Court: but the *Inguas*, did likewise exceed the *Mexicans*, in treasure, riches, and greatness of Provinces. In regard of Antiquitie, the Monarchie of the *Inguas*, hath the aduantage, although it be not certain, and in my opinion, they haue bene equal in feats of Armes and Victories. It is most certain, that these two Kingdomes haue much exceeded all the *Indian* Provinces, discovered in this New World, as well in good order and government, as in power and wealth, and much more in Superstition and Service of their Idols, haue many things like one to another. But in one thing they differed much, for among the *Mexicans*, the succession of the Kingdome, was by election, as the Empire of the *Romans*, and that of *Peru*, was hereditary, and they succeeded in blood, as the Kingdome of *France* and *Spain*.

The *Inguas* which ruled in *Peru*, being dead, his lawfull Sonne succeeded him, and so they held him that was borne of his chiefe Wife, whom they called *Coya*. The which they haue alwayes obserued since the time of an *Inguas* called *Tupac Yupanqui*, who married his sister: for these Kings held it in honour to marrie their Sisters. And although they had other Wives and Concubines, yet the succession of the Kingdome appertained to the Sonne of *Coya*. It is true, that when the King had a legitime Brother, he succeeded before the Sonne, and after him his Nephew, and Sonne to the first. The *Curacas*, and Noblemen, held the same order of succession in their goods and Offices. And after their manner they made excellent Ceremonies, and obsequies for the dead. Being dead, they presently held him for a God, making Sacrifices vnto him, Images and such like. By this means, there was infinite Treasure in *Peru*: for euery one of the *Inguas*, had laboured to haue his Oratorie and Treasure surpass that of his Predecessors. The mark or ensigne, wherby they tooke possession of the Kingdom, was a roll of *Wool*, more than nine fike, the which hung in the middelt of his forehead: and none but the *Inguas* alone might

were

were it, for that it was as a Crowne and Royall Diademe: yet they might lawfully weare a Roll hanging on the one side, neere vnto the eare; as some Noblemen did, but only the *Inguas* might carrie it in the middelt of his forehead. At such time as they tooke this Roll or Wreath, they made Iollemne Feasts, and many Sacrifices, with a great quantitie of vessell of Gold, and Silver, a great number of small formes or Images of sheepe, made of Gold and Silver, a great abundance of the fluffes of Camels, well wrought, both fine and coarser, many fowls of the Sea of all sorts, many feathers and a thousand sheepe, which must bee of diuers colours. Then the chiefe Priest tooke a young Child in his hands, of the age of sixe or eight yeeres, pronouncing these words with the other Ministers speaking to the Image of *Viracocha*, Lord we offer this vnto thee, that thou mayest maintayne vs in quiet, and helpe vs in our warres, maintayne our Lord the *Inguas* in his greatness and estate, that hee may alwayes increase, giuing him much knowledge to gouerne vs.

There were present at this Ceremonie and Oath, men of all parts of the Realme, and of all *Guacas* and Sanctuaries. And without doubt, the affection and reuerence which this people bare to their Kings *Inguas*, was very great, for it is neuer found that any one of his subjects committed Treason against him, for that they proceeded in their governments, not only with an absolute power, but also with good order and Iustice, suffering no man to bee oppressed: The *Inguas* placed Gouernours in diuers Provinces, amongst the which, some were Superiours, and did acknowledge none but himselfe, others were of lesse command, and others more particular, with goodly an order, and such grauitie, as no man durst be drunke, nor take an care of Mays from his Neighbour. These *Inguas* held it for a Maxime, that it was necessary to keepe the *Indians* alwayes in action: and therefore we see it to this day, long cawies and workes of great labour, the which they say were made to exercise the *Indians*, lest they should remayne idle. When hee conquered any new Province, hee was accustomed presently to send the greatest part, and the chiefe of that Countrey into other Provinces, or else to his Court, and they call them at this day in *Peru*, *Mitimas*, and in their places he sent others of the Nation of *Cusco*, especially the *Ouzimes*, which were as Knights of an ancient house. They punished faults rigorously. And therefore such as haue any vnderstanding hereof, hold opinion, that there can be no better government for the *Indians*, nor more assured, then that of the *Inguas*.

To relate more particularly what I haue spoken before, you must vnderstand, that the distribution which the *Inguas* made of their valles, was so exact and distinct, as hee might gouerne them all with great facilitie, although his Realme were a thousand leagues long: for hauing conquered a Province, he presently reduced the *Indians* into Townes and Comminalities, the which he diuided into bands, he appointed one to haue the charge ouer euery ten *Indians*, ouer euery hundred another, ouer euery thousand another, and ouer ten thousand another, whom they called *Huao*, the which was one of the greatest charges. Yet about all in euery Province, there was a Gouernour of the house of the *Inguas*, whom all the rest obeyed, giuing vnto him euery yeere particular account of what had passed, that is, of such as were borne, of those that were dead and of their troups and graine. The Gouernours were euery yeere out of *Cusco*, where they remained, and returned to the Court at the feast of *Rayme*, at the which they brought the tribute of the whole Realme to the Court; neither might they enter but with this condition. All the Kingdome was diuided into foure parts, which they called *Tabantinas*, the which is, *Chinchaysa*, *Collasaya*, *Andasaya*, and *Candelaya*, according to the foure wayes which went from *Cusco*, where the Court was resident, and where the general assemblies of the Realme were made. These waies and Provinces being answerable vnto them, were towards the foure quarters of the world, *Collasaya* to the South, *Chinchaysa* to the North, *Candelaya* to the West, and *Andasaya* to the East. In euery Towne and Village, there were two lots of people, which were of *Huanasaya*, and *Prinsaya*, which is as much to say, as *sheep* alone, and *sheep* below. When they commanded any worke to be done, or to furnish any thing to the *Inguas*, the Officers knew presently how much euery Province, Towne, and Family, ought to furnish: so as the diuision was not made by equal portions, but by Cotization, according to the qualities and wealth of the Countrey. So as for example, if they were to gather a hundred thousand *Fanegas* of Mays, they knew presently how much euery Province was to contribute, were it a tenth, a sixteenth, or a fit part. The like was of Townes and Villages, *Adors*, or Linages. The *Quipocamayos*, which were the Officers and Intendants, kept the account of all with their strings and knottes, without writing, setting downe what euery one had payed, euen to a Henne, or a burden of wood, and in a moment they did see by diuers Registers what euery one ought to pay.

The Houses and Buildings which the *Inguas* made in Temples, Fortresses, wayes, Countrey Houses, and such like, were many in number, and of an excellent labour, as doth appeare at this day by their ruines and remainders, both in *Cusco*, *Tupanacanca*, *Tambo*, and other places, where there are stones of an vneatable greatness: as tuen cannot conceiue how they were

still a

cut

Of the distri-
bution the
Inguas made of
their Valles.
Chap. 7.
Gouernours

Tribute yeere-
ly paid at Cusco.

Fourell
provinces
partition.

Of the Edifices
and manner of
building of the
Inguas. Chap. 11.

Nearest in
laying huge
stones.

Arches.

Bridges.

Straw Bridges.

Of the *Inguas*
revenues, and
the order of
Tributes they
imposed upon
the *Indians*,
chap. 15.

All slaves and
noble.

Lands sacred.

cur, brought and set in their places. There came great numbers of people from all Provinces, to work in these Buildings and Fortresses, which the *Inguas* caused to be made in *Cusco*, or other parts of the Realm. As these Workes were strange, and to amaze the beholders, wherein they used no Mortar nor Cement, neither any Iron, or Steele, or cut, and set the stones in worke. They had no Engines or other Instruments to carrie them, and yet were they so artificially wrought, that in many places they could not see the ioynts: and many of these stones are so bigge, that it were an incredible thing, if one should not see them. As *Tiguanaco*, I did measure a stone of thirte eight foot long, of eightene broad, and fixe thick. And in the wall of the Fortesse of *Cusco*, which is of *Mallan*, there are stones of a greater bignesse. And that which is most strange, these stones being not cut nor squared to ioyne, but contrariwise, very unquall one with another in forme and greatnesse, yet did they ioyne them together without Cement, with an incredible patience. For to ioyne one stone with another, they were forced to handle and trie many of them often, being vneuen. The *Inguas* appointed every yeere what numbers of people should labour in these stones and buildings, and the *Indians* made a division amongst them, as of other things, so as no man was oppressed. Although these Buildings were great, yet were they commonly all appointed and vsuit, almost like to the Mosquitoes or Buildings of the Barbarians.

They could make no Arches in their Edifices, nor Mortar or Cement to build them withall, when they lay Arches of wood built upon the River of *Xauxa*, the Bridge being finished, and the wood broken downe, they all began to runne away, supposing that the Bridge which was of stone should presently fall back when they found it to stand firme, and that the *Spaniards* went on it, the *Caciques* said to his companions. *It is reason we should serve these men, who in truth feare to be the children of the Sunne.* The Bridges they made were of Reeds, which they plied, which they tied the banks with great stakes, for that they could not make any Bridges of stone or wood. The Bridge which is at this day upon the current of the great Lake *Chiguito* in *Colla* is admirable; for the course of that water is so deepe, as they cannot fetle any foundation, and so broad, that it is impossible to make an Arch to passe it: so as it was altogether impossible to make a Bridge either of wood or stone. But the wit and industry of the *Indians* invented a meane to make firme and assured Bridge being only of straw, which seemeth fabulous, yet is it very true: For as we have said before, they did binde together certaine bundles of Reeds, and Weeds, which doe grow in the Lake that they call *Torana*, and being a light matter that sinks not in the water, they cast it upon a great quantitie of Reeds, then hanging over those bundles of Weeds to either side of the River, both men and beasts goe over it with ease: passing over this Bridge I have wondered, that of so common and easie a thing, they had made a Bridge, better, and more assured then the Bridge of Boates from *Senile* to *Triana*, I have measured the length of this Bridge, and as I remember, it was about three hundred foot; and they say that the depth of this Current is very great: and it seemes about, that the water hath no motion, yet they say, that at the bottoome it hath a violent and very furious course. And this shall suffice for Buildings.

The *Inguas* riches was incomparable, for although no King did inherit the riches and treasure of his Predecessor, yet had he at command, all the riches of his Realme, as well Silver and Gold, as the stuffe of *Cumbi*, and cattell, wherein they abounded, and the greatest riches of all, was their innumerable number of vassals, which were all employed as it pleased the King. They brought out of every Province what he had chosen for tribute. The *Chicas* sent him sweet and rich woods; the *Lumacans* lent Brancas to carry his Litter; the *Chumbibillas*, *Dancers*; and in the other Provinces lent him what they had of abundance, besides their generall Tribute, wherunto every one contributed. The *Indians* that were noted to that end, laboured in the Mines of Gold and Silver, which did abound in *Pera*, whom the *Inguas* entertained with all they needed for their expenses: and whatsoever they drew of Gold and Silver, was for him. By this meane there were no great treasures in this Kingdome, as it is the opinion of many, that what fell in the hands of the *Spaniards*: (although it were very much, as we know) was not the tenth part of that which they hid and buried in the ground, the which they could never discover, notwithstanding all the search countenances had taught them. But the greatest wealth of these barbarous people, was, that their vassals were all slaves, whose labour they used at their pleasure: and that which is admirable, they employed them in such sort, as it was no servitude unto them, but rather a pleasing life. But to understand the order of Tributes which the *Indians* payed unto their Lord, you must know, that when the *Inguas* conquered any Cities, he divided all the Land into three parts, the first was for Religion and Ceremonies, so as the *Pachayachaycu*, which is the *Creater*, and the *Sunne*; the *Chingilla*, which is the *Thunder*, the *Pachayachaycu*, the *degs*, and other *Guacas* and Sanctuaries, had every one their proper Lands, the fruits whereof were hooyed and consumed in Sacrifices; and in the nourishing of Ministers and Priests; for there were *Indians* appointed for every *Guaca*, and Sanctuaries, and the

the greatest part of this revenue was spent in *Cusco*, where was the universall and generall sanctuaries, and the rest in that Citie, where it was gathered: for that after the imitation of *Cusco*, there were in every Citie, *Guacas*, and Oratories of the same order, and with the same furniture, which were served after the same manner and ceremonies to that of *Cusco*, which is an admirable thing, and they have found it by proofe in about a hundred Townes, some of them distant about two hundred leagues from *Cusco*.

That which they sowed or reapt upon their Land, was put into houses, as Granaries or store-houses, built for that effect, and this was a great part of the Tribute which the *Indians* paid. I cannot say how much this part amounted unto, for that it was greater in some parts then in other, and in some places it was in a manner all; and this part was the first they put to profit. The second part of these Lands and inheritances was for the *Inguas*, wherewith he and his household were entertained, with his kinsfolks, Noblemen, Garrison and Souldiers. And therefore it was the greatest portion of these tributes, as it appeareth by the quantity of Gold, Silver, and other Tributes, which were in houses appointed for that purpose, being longer and larger then those where they keepe the revenues of the *Guacas*. They brought this Tribute verie carefully to *Cusco*, or unto such places where it was needfull for the Souldiers, and when there was store, they kept it ten or twelve yeares, untill a time of needessite. The *Indians* siled and put to profit the *Inguas* Lands, next to those of the *Guacas*: during which time they they the Land they laboured. But the old men, women, and idle folkes were refused, and exempt from this Tribute, and although whatsoever they gathered upon those Lands were for the *Inguas*, the Sunne, or the *Guacas*, yet the proprietie appertained unto the *Indians* and their successors. The third part of these Lands were given by the *Inguas* for the Communitie, and they have not yet discovered, whether this portion were greater, or lesse, then that of the *Inguas* or *Guacas*. It is most certaine they had a care and regard, it might be sufficient for the nourishment of the people. No particular man possessed any thing proper to himselfe of this third portion, neither did the *Indians* ever possess any, it was not by speciall grace from the *Inguas*: and yet might it not be engaged nor divided amongst his heires. They every yeare divided these Lands of the communitie, in giving to every one, that which was needfull for the nourishment of their persons and families. And as the familie increased or diminished, so did they encrease or decrease their portion, for there were measures appointed for every person. The *Indians* paid no tribute of that which was apportioned unto them: For all their tribute was to till and keepe in good order the Lands of the *Inguas*, and the *Guacas*; and to lay the fruits thereof in their store-houses. When the yeare was barren, they gave of these fruits thus referred to the neede, for that there is alwaies superabundance. The *Inguas* did likewise make distribution of the cattell as of the Lands, which was to number and divide them: then to appoint the pastures and limits, for the cattell belonging to the *Guacas* and to the *Inguas* and to every Town: and therefore one portion of their revenues was for religion, another for the *Inguas*, and the third for the *Indians* themselves. The like order was observed among the hunters, being forbidden to take or kill any females. The troupes of the *Inguas* and *Guacas*, were in great numbers and verie fruitful, for this cause they called them *Kapacillama*, but those of the common and publique, were few in number and of small value, and therefore they called them *Bacchallama*. The *Inguas* tooke great care for the preferation of Cattell, for that it hath bene, and is yet, all the wealth of the Countrey, and as it is said, they did neither sacrifice any females, nor kill them, neither did they take them when they hunted. If the mangle or the ferule which they call *Cacacha* take a beast, they were perfectly commanded to burie it quick, lest it should infect others. They did sheare their cattell in their season, and distributed to every one to spinne and weave. Stuffs for the service of his Family. They had *searchers* to examine if they did employ themselves in these workes, and to punish the negligent. They made Stuffs of the wool of the *Inguas* cattell, for him and for his family, one sort very fine, which they called *Cumbi*, and another groffer, which they likewise called *Abasca*. There was no certaine number of these Stuffs and garment, appointed, but what was delivered to every one. The wool that remained was put into the storehouses, whereof the *Spaniards* carried them full, and with all other things necessary for the live of man: There are few men of judgement but the admiral is excellent & well fitted to a government, seeing the *Indians* (being neither religious, nor Christians) maintained after their manner, this perfection, nor to hold any thing proper, and to provide for all their necessities, entertaining with such abundance matters of Religion, & that which concerned their King & Lord,

The *Indians* of *Pera* had one perfection, which was, to teach their children all arts and occupations necessary for the life of man; for that there were no particular Trade-men, as amongst vs, Taylers, Shoemakers, Weavers, and the rest; but every one learned what was needfull for their persons and houses, and provided for themselves. All cloth was made and made their garments, and therefore the *Inguas* furnished them with wooll to weave their clothes. Every man could till the ground, and put it to profit, without lving of any labourers. All built their own

houses

Order of
Religion.

Royall
dis-
misses.

Lands of the
common
in common.

No proprietie

Their Tributes,
what.

Cattell dis-
tributed.

Hunter lawes

Provisions for
cattell.

Negligence
punished.

Of Arts and
offices which
the *Indians* did
execute, chap. 16.
All men of all
trades.

houses, and the women, which understood most were not brought vp in delights, but served their Husbands carefully. Other Arts and Trades which were not ordinary and common for the life of man, had their proper Companies and workmen, as *Goldsmiths, Painters, Potters, Water-men, and players of Instruments*. There were also *Carriers* and workmen for exquisite works, which the Noblemen used: but the common people, as in each house had, had in their houses all things necessary, having no need to buy. This continues to this day, so as they have no need of another for things necessary: touching their person and family, as shoes and garments, and for their house, to sow and reape, and to make Iron workes, and needfull instruments. It is worthy observation, although the *Indians* be simple in their manner and habits, yet doe we see great difference among the Provinces, especially in the attire of their head, for in some places they carried a long peece of cloth, which went often about, in some places a large peece of cloth, which went but once about, in some places as it were little morters or hats, in some others it were high and round Bonnets, and some like the bottom of sacks, with a shoulde other differences. They had a straight and immoderate law, that no man might change the fashion of the garments of his Province, although he went to live in another. This the *Inga* held to be of great importance for the order and good government of his Realme, and they doe observe it to this day, though not with so great a care as they were accustomed.

Disfigure of
head-tires.

Uniformity of
habit.

Of the Pofts
and Cities
the *Indians* did
use. Chap. 17.

There were many Pofts and couriers which the *Inga* maintained throughout his Realme, whom they called *Chasquis*, and they carried commandments to the Gouvernours, and returned their aduises and advertisements to the Court. These *Chasquis* were placed at every court, which was a league and a halfe one from another in two small houses, where were four *Indians* of every Country, and they were changed monthly. Having received the packet or message, they ranne with all their force untill they had delivered it to the other *Chasquis*, such as were no runne, being ready and watchfull. They ranne fiftie leagues in a day and night, although the greatest part of that Countie be very rough. They served alfo to carry such things as the *Inga* desired to have with speed. Therefore they had alwaies Sea-fish in *Cuzco*, of two liers old or little more, although it were above a hundred leagues off. Since the *Spaniards* entered, they have vied of these *Chasquis* in time of seditions, whereof there was great need. *Don Martin* the Viceroy appointed ordinary Pofts at every foure leagues, to carry and recurre dispatches, which were very necessary in this Realme, though they run not so swiftly as the ancients did, neither are there so many: yet they are well paid, and serve as the ordinaries of *Spain*, to whom they give Letters which they carry foure or five leagues.

Of the Justice,
Lawes and pun-
ishments
which the *In-
dians* use. Chap.
18. And of
their marriage
Ceremonies.

Marriage Ceremonies.

Even as such as had done any good service in warre, or in the government of the Common-wealth were honoured and recompensed with publicke charges, with Lands given them in proper, with armes and titles of honour, and in marrying wives of the *Inga* lineage: Even so they gave severe punishments to such as were disobedient and offenders. They punished murder, theft, and adultery, with death, and such as committed incest with ascendants or descendants in direct line, were likewise punished with death. But they held it no adultery to have many wives or concubines, neither were the women subiect to the punishment of death, being found with any other, but only the that was the true and lawful wife, with whom they contracted marriage: for they had but one whom they did wedde and receive with a particular solemnitie and ceremony, which was in this manner: The Bridegroom went to the Brides house, and led her from thence with him, having first put on an *Otroya* upon her foot. They call the shoe which they use in those parts *Otroya*, being open like the *Franciscan Friars*. If the Bride were a male, her *Otroya* was of Wool, but if she were not, it was of Redden. All his other wives and concubines did honour and serve this as the lawful wife, who alone after the decease of her husband carried a mourning weede of blacke, for the space of a yeare; neither did the marry untill that time were put; and commonly he was younger then her husband. The *Inga* himselfe with his owne land gave this woman to his Gouvernours and Captaines: and the Gouvernours or Captaines, assembled all the young men and maidens, in one place of the Citie, and in this manner they contracted their marriages. If this woman were found with any other then her husband, she was punished with death, and the adulterer likewise: and although the husband pardoned them, yet were they punished, although dispensed withall from death. They inflicted the like punishment on him that did commit incest with his Mother, Grandmother, Daughter, or Grandchild: for it was not prohibited for them to marrie together, or to have of their other kinsfolke for concubines: only the first degree was defended, neither did they allow the brother to have the company of his sister, wherein they of *Peru* were very much deceived, beleaving that their *Inga* and Noblemen might lawfully contract marriage with their sisters, yea by father and mother: for in truth it hath beene alwaies held unlawful among the *Indians*, and defended to contract in the first degree; which continued untill the time of *Topa Inga Yupangui* father to *Guanacaca*, and grandfather to *Atahualpa*, at such time as the *Spaniards*

Incest forbid-
den.

entered *Peru*, for that *Topa Inga Yupangui*, was the first that brake this custome, marrying with *Atahualpa*, his sister by the fathers side, decreeing that the *Inga* might marrie with their sisters by the fathers side, and no other.

This he did, and by that marriage he had *Guanacaca*, and a daughter called *Coya Cusillimu*: finding himselfe at the point of death, he commanded his children by father and mother to marrie together, and gave permission to the Noblemen of his Countie, to marrie with their sisters by the fathers side. And for that this marriage was unlawful, and against the law of nature, God would bring to an end this Kingdome of the *Inga*, during the reign of *Guanacaca Inga*, and *Atahualpa Inga*, which was the first that sprang from this marriage. Who fo will more exactly vnderstand the manner of marriages among the *Indians* in *Peru*, let him reade the Treatise *Palo* hath written at the request of *Don Isemmio Lasca* Archbishop of *King*: which *Palo* made a very curious search, as he hath done of diuers other things at the *Indies*.

BY the commandment of *Don Philip* the Catholike King, they have made the most diligent and exact search that could be, of the beginning, customes, and priuileges of the *Inga*, the which was not so perfectly done as was desired: for that the *Indians* had no written Records: yet he hath recovered that which I shall write, by means of their *Quippos* and Registers. First there was not in *Peru* in old time, any King or Lord to whom all obeyed, but they were Communalties, as at this day there is the Realme of *Chile*, and in a manner, in all the Provinces which the *Spaniards* have conquered in those Western Indies, except the Realme of *Mexico*. You must therefore vnderstand, that they have found three manner of Governements at the *Indies*. The first and best, was a Monarchie, as that of the *Inga*, and of *Motacama*, although for the most part they were tyrannous. The second was of Communalties, where they were governed by the adulte and authority of many, which are as it were Councils. The third kind of Government, is altogether barbarous, composed of *Indians* without Law, without King, and without any certaine place of abode, but goe in troops like savage beasts. As farre as I can conceiue, the first Inhabitants of the *Indies*, were of this kinde, as at this day a great part of the *Brazilians*, *Chiriguano*, *Chunchos*, *Tijecano*, *Pilecomen*, and the greatest part of the *Floridians*, and all the *Chichimac* in new *Spain*: Of this kinde the other sort of government by Communalties was framed, by the industry and wisdom of some amongst them, in which there is some more order, holding a more staid place, as at this day those of *Araucano*, and of *Tucapel* in *Chile*, and in the new Kingdome of *Orizaba*, the *Mexicos*, and the *Otomites* in new *Spain*: and in all these there is less ferocitie and incivility, & much more quiet then in the rest. Of this kinde, by the valour & knowledge of some excellent men, grew the other government more mighty and potent, which did institute a Kingdome and Monarchie.

It appears by their Registers, that their Government hath continued above three hundred yeares, but not fully four, although their Seigneurie for a long time, was not about five or six leagues compass about the Citie of *Cuzco*: their original and beginning was in the valley of *Cuzco*: where by little and little they conquered the Lands which we call *Peru*, passing beyond *Quito*, vnto the river of *Pallo* towards the North, freeling euen vnto *Chilo*, towards the South, which is almost a thousand leagues in length. It extended in breadth vnto the South Sea towards the West, and vnto the great champaigns which are on the other side of the *Andes*: where at this day is to be seene the Citie which is called the *Pucara* of the *Inga*, the which is a fortress built for the defence of the frontie towards the East. The *Inga* advanced no farther on that side, for the abundance of water, Marshes, Lakes, and Rivers, which runne in those parts.

The *Inga* pushed all other Nations of *America*, in policie and government, and much more in valour and armes, although the *Canaries* which were their mortall enemies, and favoured the *Spaniards*, would neuer confesse it, nor yettel them this advantage: as eu as at this day, if they fall into any discorde or comparisons, and that they be a little chafed and incensed, they kill one another by thousand this quartell, which are the most wilde of men as is hath happened in *Cuzco*. The practise and means which the *Inga* had to make themselves Lords of all this Countie, was in faining that since the generall deluge (whereof all the *Indians* have knowledge) the world had bene preferred, reared, and peopled by their *Inga*, and that seven of them came forth of the Cane of *Pacacambo*, by reason whereof, all other men ought them tribute and vassalage, as their progenitors. Besides they said and affirmed, that they alone held the true religion, and knew how God should be served and honoured: and for this cause they should instruct all men. It is a strange thing, the ground they gave to their customes and ceremonies. There were in *Cuzco* above three hundred *Otroyas*, as in a holy land, and all places were filled with their murthers. As they continued in the conquests of Provinces, so they brought in the like ceremonies and customes. In all this Realme the chiefe Idols

Of the Originall of the *Inga* Lords of *Peru*, with their Conquests and Victories. Chap. 19.

Continuance of their Monarchies.

Strife twise betweene the *Inga* and *Canaries*.

400. Otroyas: in *Cuzco*.

Of the left
Successors
Inga, Chap. 13.

Pedegree of
Vincosa

Of the manner
of the Mexi-
cans Com-
monweale,
Chap. 14.

Royal Dia-
dem. See the
picture before.

House of li-
ving Caca-
muc.

His Palace.

The rest of this subject is handled at large by the *Spanish* Writers in the Histories of the *Incas*, and for that it is not my purpose, I will speake onely of the succession of the *Ingas*. *Atahualpa* being dead in *Xaxamilla*, and *Guascar* in *Cusco*, and *Francis Pizarro* with his people having ruled on the Realme, *Mangocapa* sonne to *Guaynacapa* belieged them in *Cusco* very thrashly; but in the end he abandoned the whole Country and retired himselfe to *Pilca Bamba*, where he kept himselfe in the Mountains, by reason of the rough and difficult access, and there the Successors *Ingas* remained, untill *Amara*, who was taken and executed in the market place of *Cusco*, to the *Indians* incredible griefe and sorrow, seeing justice done vpon him publicly whom they held for their Lord. After which time, they imprisoned others of the Linage of these *Ingas*. I have knowne *Don Charles*, grand-child to *Guaynacapa*, and sonne to *Pelo*, who was baptiz'd, and alwayes fauoured the *Spaniards* against *Mangocapa* his brother, when the Marquise of *Cocato* gouerned in this Country *Sarrispangua*, went from *Vilcabamba*, and came vpon assistance to the Cite of *Kingo*, where there was giuen to him the Valley of *Tucay*, and other things, to whom succeeded a daughter of his. Behold the succession which is knowne at this day of that great and rich Familie of the *Ingas*, whose raigne continued about three hundred yeares, wherein they reckon eleuen Successors, untill it was wholly extinguished. In the other Linage of *Vincosa*, which (as we haue said before) had his beginning likewise from the first *Mangocapa*, they reckon eight Successors in this sort: To *Mangocapa* succeeded *Cincobaca*, to him *Capac Tapangui*, to him *Illoqui Tapangui*, to him *Mayaca pass Tarocumam*, vnto whom succeeded his sonne, whom they name not, to this sonne succeeded *Don Jean* 20 *Tambo*, *Mayapangua*. This fourth for the originall and succession of the *Ingas*, that gouerned the Land of *Peru*, with that that I haue spoken of their Lawes, Government, and manner of Life.

Although you may see by the Historie written of the Kingdome, Succession, and beginning of the *Mexicans*, their manner of Commonweale and Government, yet will I speake briefly what I shall thinke fit in general to bee most obserued: whereof I will discourse more amply in the Historie. The first point whereby wee may iudge the *Mexican* government to bee very politique, is the order they had and kept inuoluable in the election of their King: for since their first, called *Acamapach*, vnto their last, which was *Moteczuma*, the second of that name, there came none to the Crowne by right of succession, but by a lawfull Nomination and Election. This election in the beginning was by the voice of the Commons, although the chiefe men managed it. Since the time of *Itzcoatl* the fourth King, by the advice and order of a wife and valiant man, called *Tlacael*, there were tounge certaine Electors appointed, which (with two Lords or Kings subject to the *Mexican*, the one of *Tzifoce*, and the other of *Tuacua*) had power to make this election. They did commonly chiooe young men for their Kings, because they went alwayes to the warres, and this was in a manner the chiefe cause why they desired them so. They had a special regard that they should bee fit for the warres, and take delight and glorie therein. After the election they made two kindes of feasts, the one in taking possession of the Royall Estate, for the which they went to the Temple, making great ceremonies and sacrifices vpon the *Altar*, called *Quine*, where there was a continual fire before the Altar of the Idol, and after some Rhetoricians praied therein, made many Orations and Speeches. The other feast, and the most solemn, was at his Coronation, for the which hee must first overcome in battell, and bring a certaine number of Captiues, which they must sacrifice to their gods: hee entered in triumph with great pompe, making him a solemn reception, aswell they of the Temple, who went all in procession, sounding on hundre sorts of instruments, giuing Incense, and singing like secular men, as also the Courtyers, who came forth with their deuities to receive the glorious King. The Crowne or Royall Ensigne was before like a Myter, and behinde it was cut, so as it was not round, for the forefront was higher, and did like a point. The King of *Tzifoce* had the priuilege to crown the King of *Mexico*. In the beginning when the *Mexicans* were but poor and weak, the Kings were modest in their expenses and in their Court, but as they increased in power, they increased likewise in pompe and state, untill they came to the greatness of *Moteczuma*, who if hee had had noother thing but his house of Beasts and Birds, it had beene a prodigious thing, like whereof hath not bene seene: for there was in this house all sort of fowle, birds of *Xacamaxtli*, and beastes, as in other *Nahu* Arkeys for Sea fish, there were Pooles of salt-water; and for Ruer fish, Lakes of fresh-water; birds that doe prey were fed, and likewise wilde beastes in great abundance: there were very many *Indians* employed for the keeping of these beastes: and when he found an impossibility to nourish any sort of fish, fowle, or wilde beastes, he caused the Image or likeness to be made, ridly cut in precious stones, flint, or gold, in marbles, or in stone: and for such sort of entertainments, hee had his feuerall Houses and Palaces, some of pleasure, others of sorrow and mourning, and others to treat of the sisters of the Realme. There was in this Palace many Chambers, according to the qualitie of the Noble men that seru'd him, with a strange order and distinction.

The

The *Mexicans* haue bene very curious, to diuide the degrees and dignities amongst the noble men and Lords, that they might distinguish them to whom they were to giue the greatest honor. The dignity of their four Electors was the greatest, and most honorable, next to the King, and they were chosen presently after the King's election. They were commonly brothers, or very neere kinmen to the King, and were called *Tlacateacatl*, which signifies *Prince of warre*, the which they call, being a kind of armes they vie much. The next dignity to this, was those they doe call *Tlacateacatl*, which is to say, *Councellors* or *Courtiers* of men. The third dignity was of those which they called *Ezahnacatl*, which signifies: *A shielder of blood*. All the which Titles and Dignities were exercised by men of warre. There was another, a fourth intitled, 10 *Tlacateacatl*, which is as much to say, as, *Lord of the blacke house*, or of darkness; by reason of certaine Lake wherewith the Priests anointed themselves, and did serue in their Idolatries. All these four Dignities were of the great Councell, without whose advice the King might not doe any thing of importance: and the King being dead, they were to chiooe another in his place out of one of those four Dignities. Besides these, there were other Councils and Audiencies, and some say there were as many as in *Spain*; and that there were diuers Seates and Iurisdiccions, with their Councillors and Iudges of the Court, and others that were vnder them, as *Cerregidos*, chiefe Iudges, Captaines of Iustice, Lieutenants, and others, which were yet inferior to these, with a very goodly order. All which depended on the four fift Princes that assisted the King. These four ought had authoritie and power to condemne to death, and the rest int them intromissions 20 of the Sentences they had giuen. By means whereof they gaue the King to vnderstand what had passed in his Realme.

There was a good order and settled policie for the Reuenues of the Crowne, for there were Officers diuided throughout all the Provinces, as Receiueurs and Treasurers, which received the Tributes and Royall Reuenues. And they carried the Tribute to the Court, at the least euerie month; which Tribute was of all things that doe grow or ingender on the Land, or in the water, aswell of Jewels and Apparell, as of Meat. They were very careful for the well ordering of that which concerned their Religion, Superstition, and Idolatries: and for this occasion there were a great number of Ministers, to whom charge was giuen to teach the people the custome and ceremonies of their Law. Hereupon one day a christian Priest made his complaint that the 30 *Indians* were no good Christians, and did not profit in the Law of God; an old *Indian* answered him very well to the purpose, in these termes: Let the Priest (said he) *imply as much care and diligence to make the Indians Christians, as the Ministers of Gods did to teach them their ceremonies: for much faster that care they will make us the best Christians in the world, for that the Law of Iesus Christ is much better: but the Indians learn to not for want of men to instruct them.* Wherein hee spake the very truth, to our great shame and confusion.

The *Mexicans* gaue the first place of honour to the profession of Armes; and therefore the Noble-men are their chiefe Soldiers, and others that were not noble, by their valour and reputation gotten in warre, came to Dignities and Honors; so as they were held for Noble-men. 40 They gaue goodly recompenses to such as had done valiantly, who introyd priuiledges that none else might haue, to recompense them: Their Armes were of Raders of these cutting flutes, which they set on either side of a shaft, which was so furious a weapon, as they affirmed that with one blow, they would cut off the necke of a Horse. They had strange and heauy Clubs, Lances, fashioned like Pikes, and other manner of Darts to cast, wherein they were very expert; but the greatest part of their combat was performed with Head-pieces. For defensive armes they had little Rondaches or Targats, and some kinde of Morions or Iron-pieces inuolued with feathers. They were clad in the skinnies of Tigres, Lions, and other fuaage beastes. They came presently to hands with the Enemy, and were greatly practised to runne and wrestle, for their chiefe manner of combat, was not so much to kill, as to take Captiues, the which they yielded in their sacrifices, as hath bene said. *Moteczuma* had Knight-hood in his behel full of ordery- 50 ping certaine militaire orders, as Commanders, with certaine markes and enignes. The most honorable amongst the Knights, were those that carried the crowne of their haire tied with a little red Ribband, hauing a rich plume of feathers, from the which, did hang branches of feathers vpon their shoulders, and rolls of the same. They carried to many of these rolls; as they had done worthy deeds in warre. The King himselfe was of this order, as may be seene in *Chapultepec*, where *Moteczuma* and his sonnes were attyred with those kindes of feathers, cut in the Rocke, the which is worthy the fight. There was another order of Knight-hood, which they called the *Loon* and the *Tigres*, the which were commonly the most valiant and most notable in warre, they went alwayes with their Markes and Armes. There were other Knights, as the 60 *Grey Knights*, the which were not so much respected as the rest: they had their haire cut round about the care. They went to the warre with markes like to the other Knights, yet they were not armed, but to the girdle, and the most honorable were armed all ouer. All Knights might carry gold and silver, and wear rich Cotton, vie painted and gilt vestell, and carry shoes after their manner: but the common people might vie none but earthen vestell, neither might they carry

Of the Titles
and Dignities
the *Indians* vs.
See Chap. 13.
Four Ele-
ctors.

Messengers,
Blood-shed-
gers.
Lord of darke-
ness.

Other Offi-
cers.
See the pic-
ture before.

Priests and
Teachers of
the Law.

How the *Indians* were
wide war,
and of the Or-
ders of knight-
hood, Chap. 6.

Their Armes.

Eagle-ordres.

Order of Li-
ons and Ti-
gres.
Gray Knights.

Knights priu-
iledges
carry

Master Hakloyt (then Chaplaine to the English Embassadour in France) bought the same for 20. French crownes, and procured Master Michael Locke in Sir Walter Raleighs name to translate it. It seems that none were willing to be at the cost of cutting the Pictures, and so it remained amongst his papers till his death, whereby (according to his last will in that kinde) I became possessor thereof, and have obtained with much carefullness the cutting thereof for the Presse. The rubric was I eagerly sub-
 187. Hen. Spel-
 man.
 mont herein, as being a thing desired by the most industrious & famous, judicious Scholler, Religious Gentleman, our Ecclesiastical Secular, the Churches champion, Sir Henry Spelman, Knight; whom for honour sake I name, that his name may honour our ruler lines, a name so fitting to the Man, as who which has, in regard of his wife spell and science in divine & humane learning, and is ready with mine courage and alacritie to show himselfe the Churches Man, and to exhibit himselfe in deeds whatsoever any man can spell, one of Spel-man. The commending from such a friend (let the Master impetrate pardon for so bold a name) was a commanding unto me, which here I againe command to Him and thee.

It is divided into three parts; the first being the *Athenas* and Mexican Chronicle: the second, their *Exchequer* or the *Accounts* of their *severall Tributes*: paid them from the Nations; and peoples tributary, whereby may be seen the *Naturall* riches of those parts peculiarly fortified: the third the Mexican *Oeconomie* and *Police* in *warre* and *peace*, religious, and *secular*, their private and publick rites from the *grace* of the *wombe*, to the *wombe* of the *grace*. Observe places! have explained (besides what before in *Acolla* thou hast read) comparing the translation with the original, telling many of mine owne: and perhaps there is not any one *History* of this kinde in the world comparable to this, so fully expressing so much without Letters, hardly gotten, and easily left, that thou maist here finde it.

CHAP. VII.

The History of the Mexican Nation, described in pictures by the Mexican Author explained in the Mexican language; which exposition translated into Spanish, and thence into English, together with the said Picture-historie, are here presented.

P. I.

The Mexican Chronicle.

Here beginneth the Historie and foundation of the Citie of Mexico, founded and inhabited by the *Mexicans*, who at that time were called *Mejits*, whose original beginning of being Lords, and their acts and liues are declared briefly in this Historie, according as it is signified and set out successively by the pictures and paintings following.

In the year 1394, after the coming of our Lord and Saviour Iesus Christ, the Mexican people first arrived at the place of the Citie of Mexico, and because they liked well the greatnesse and the situation of that place, after that they had traueled in their Iournies, and wandered many yeares from Countrey to Countrey, & in some of them had made their abode, for some yeares, being come from far Countreies in following their Iournies, and not being contented with the other places where they had made their abode, they came and settled themselves in the place of Mexico. The which place at that time was all drowned with water, and was covered with great bogs and banks of moorish fens and bulrushes, which they call *Tul*, and it had *Carrizales*, and great plats of dry ground covered with shrubbes, bushes, and briars like woods. And through all the face of that place there went a spring & stream of fair cleere water which was free from all legges and bulles, which water streame went through it crosswise, in manner of Saint *Andres*es crosse, as it is shewed in the picture: and about the middle of that place of that water-streame, the *Mejits* found a great rocke of stone, and growing thereon a great Tree or bush called *Tumal*, wherein a great Eagle *Candall* had her haunt and abode for her foode, so as all about that place was scattered full of bones and feathers of diuers Birds and Fowles of diuers colours. And they hauing gone throughout all that place and Countrey therabout, and finding it very fruitful and full of wilde beasts, wilde Fowles, Birds, and Fishes, and things of the water, wherewith to sustaine themselves and to profit them in their businesse in dealing with the Townes therabouts, and finding the water-courtes of that place so commodious, and that their Neighbours could not trouble nor hurt them, and for other things and causes to their good liking they determined to passe no further on their Iournies in traueling, but to settle themselves

themselves and dwell still. And according to their determination, they did settle themselves there effectually. And made themselves a strong Citie of defence with banks and walles about the waters, and on the plats of ground among the *Mejges* and *Bulles* of *Tul* and *Carrizales*. And for a beginning of that their state and habitation, it was determined by them, to giue name and title to that place, calling it *Tenultitlan*. By reason and cause of the *Tenalt* flowing out of the Rocke (for *Tenultitlan* interpreted in our *English* language, *Tenalt* is *Tenalt* and *ultitlan* is *a Rocke*.)

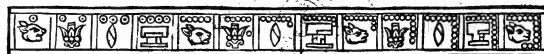
The armie of the Mexican people had with them six Chiefes, *Gouernours* ten persons named, *Ocelotlan*, *Quapan*, *Acacilli*, *Ahuacali*, *Tepalc*, *Tenacalli*, *Acacilli*, *Xicotli*, *Quicacali*, *Acacilli*, 10 as it is shewed in the Pictures. And hauing settled themselves, they did choose *Tenacalli* for their chiefe *Gouernour* and Lord to gouerne them, as a person especially chosen thereto and fit for it, hauing in him all parts and abilities to exercise Lordship. And they appointed the other chiefe *Gouernours*, that they should be *Agenses* and *Captaynes*, *Gouernours* under him.

And after some yeeres were past, and their dwelling in that place, and the people multiplied, the Citie likewise was named *Mejico*, so named and derived of the *Mejits*, calling it the place of settling of the Mexican people.

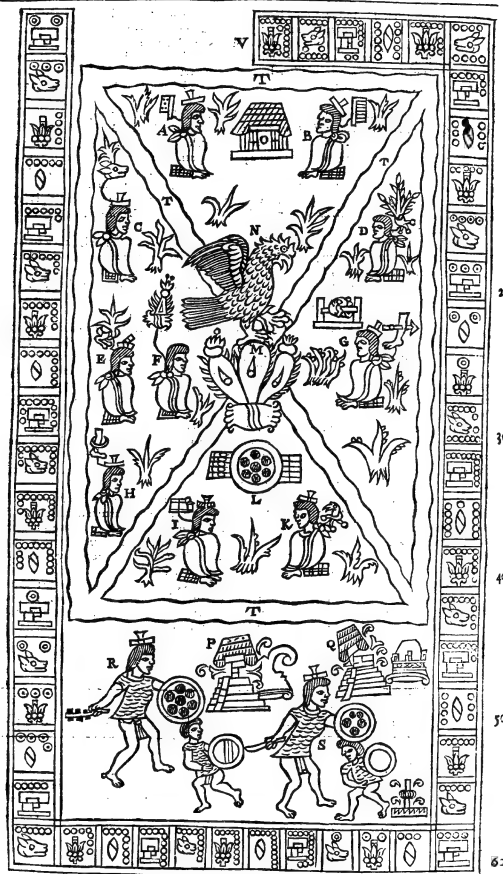
And when the people were come what multiplied like bold and warlike people, they took beginning of courageous mindes, in preuailing ouer their Neighbour, and so shewed themselves in force of armes, whereby they subdued and made tributary to them two Townes next adjoining to Mexico, named *Calhuacan*, and *Tenacalli*: as likewise is set forth in the pictures: the which doings passed in the sixe of the gouernment of the chiefe Lord *Tenacalli*, which was the place of hisie one year, at the end whereof he died.

Concerning the Pictures of shew in the margins of this Historie, it is to be vnderstood that every *seuerall* space or partition doth signify ten yeeres, and they be the numbering of 3 yeeres it is to be vnderstood that every *seuerall* space be partitioned againe the one *seuerall* yeere, and so they accounted & numbered euery yeere *seuerally*, proceeding by the number of *rundles* or *pricks* therein contained, beginning at one, and proceeding to thirtene *rundles*. And from thence they began againe at the beginning in their account from one *prick* or *rundle*, and so accordingly they did proceede in numbering againe, till they came to thirtene. And although that in 30 the partitions or spaces *seuerally* there be diuers *seuerall* figures, yet the principall account of numbering is that account of the pictures or *rundles* therein contained. And although the names of the yeeres that they giue to euery partition from the number of the first point till the thirtenth be to some purpose, yet for to aduantage the Reader thereof, here is made by a little declaration of the names, with their interpretations.

In the order and rule of the partitions which are numbered for yeeres, that partition where there is a branch with a foote like a flower, it doth signifie a bitter and vntoward yeere which the Mexican had, and did feare, saying that their predecessors time out of minde did giue them warning that such yeeres which befell euery two and sixtieth yeere were dangerous, and vntoward, and bitter yeeres, because that in such yeeres there were floods generally, and likewise of the eclipses of the Sunne, and vniuersall earthquakes. And likewise in such yeeres they made great sacrifices and ceremonies to their gods, and gave themselves to repentance, and did abstaine from all viices against the very day and houre of such a yeere. In the which day generally they put out all their lights and fire till that day were past; and being past they kindled new lights being had out of a Mountain by a Priest.

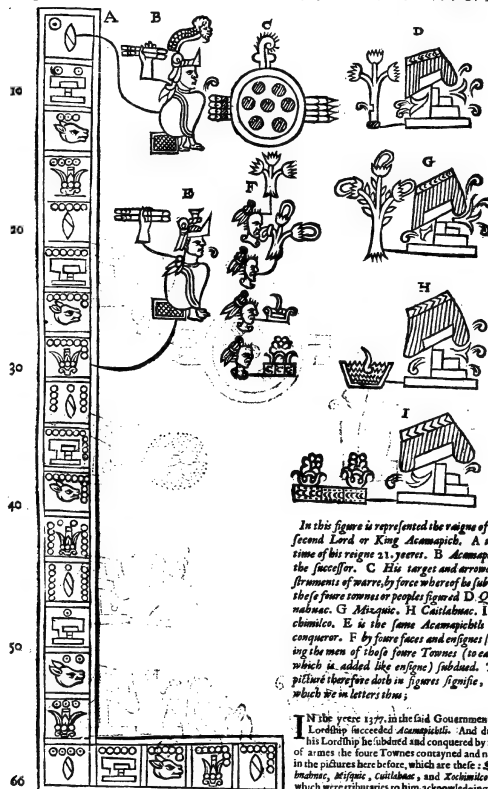


This is a weeke of yeeres after the Mexican computation (all coloured blew, the Mexican names written ouer in red) the first of which they call *Setuachiti*, that is, one *Come*; the second *Ometacali*, or two *Canes*; the third *Yeytepatli*, three *Flints*; the fourth *Maculituchiti*, which signifies foure bowes; the fifth *Ciquacemacali*, that is five *Canes*; the sixth, six *Canes*; the seventh, seven *Flints*; the eighth, eight *Houses*; the ninth, nine *Canes*; the tenth, ten *Canes*; the eleventh, eleven *Flints*; the twelfth, twelue *Houses*; the thirteenth, thirteene *Canes*.



This Picture represents the number of 51 years that is the time of Tezucba's reign: in this whole or square which, as all the like representing years are in the original picture, coloured below 17 the picture of Tezucba, the Lord or Governor before mentioned, whose names are inscribed in the original pictures, which here are met by the letters named as (C) to a following figure. A. Tezucba, B. Tezucba, C. Tezucba, D. Tezucba, E. Tezucba, F. Tezucba, G. Tezucba, H. Tezucba, I. Tezucba, K. Tezucba, L. Tezucba, M. Tezucba, N. Tezucba, O. Tezucba, P. Tezucba, Q. Tezucba, R. Tezucba, S. Tezucba, T. Tezucba, U. Tezucba, V. Tezucba, W. Tezucba, X. Tezucba, Y. Tezucba, Z. Tezucba.

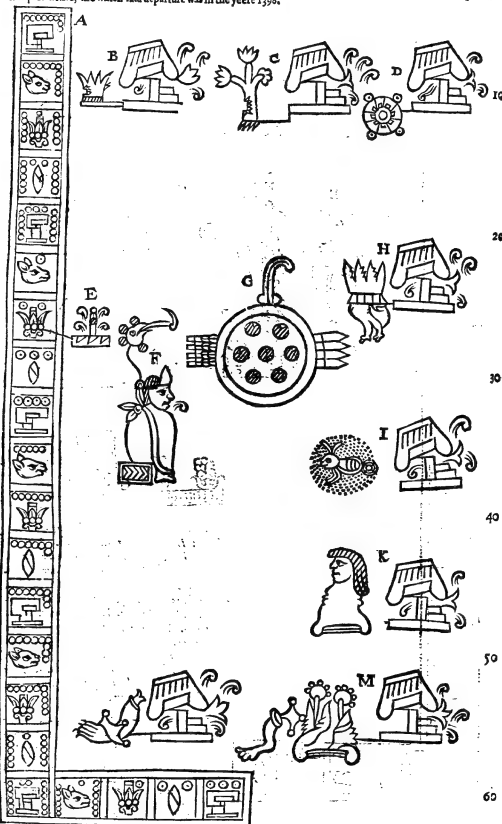
caqui, K. Acatl, L. Tezucba, representing the arms which they used in the conquest of that place, which they is inscribed in the Tezucba (painted green) growing out of a Rock, N. the Eagle, O. their sailing or navigation, P. the people of Tezucba, Q. Tezucba: both which Nations R. Tezucba conquered in force of arms, as appears S. their faithfulness in bringing under, T. is the blue square and Saint Andrew's cross. The former relation with more fully lay open the things.



In this figure is represented the reign of their second Lord or King Acamapichtli. A is the time of his reign 21 years. B Acamapichtli the successor. C His target and arrows instruments of war, by force whereof he subdued the four towns or peoples figured D Quauhnahuac, G Atlixpa, H Cuicahuac, I Xochimilco. E is the same Acamapichtli as a conqueror. F by four faces and ensignes showing the men of these four Townes (to each of which is added the ensigne) subdued. This picture therefore doth in figures signifie, that which he in letters shew.

IN the year 1377, in the said Government and Lordship succeeded Acamapichtli. And during his Lordship he subdued and conquered by force of arms the four Townes contained and named in the picture here before, which are these: Quauhnahuac, Atlixpa, Cuicahuac, and Xochimilco, the which were tributaries to him, acknowledging their subjection. In the years that the said Acamapichtli lived in the said Lordship, his inclination and will was to have many wives, the which were daughters of all the principal men of Mexico, by whom he had many sons which were the beginning and increase of many Caciques, and Capitanes, and warlike people, by means of whom the City of Mexico was enlarged and augmented in great might, as is figured hereafter in the discourses by the picture.

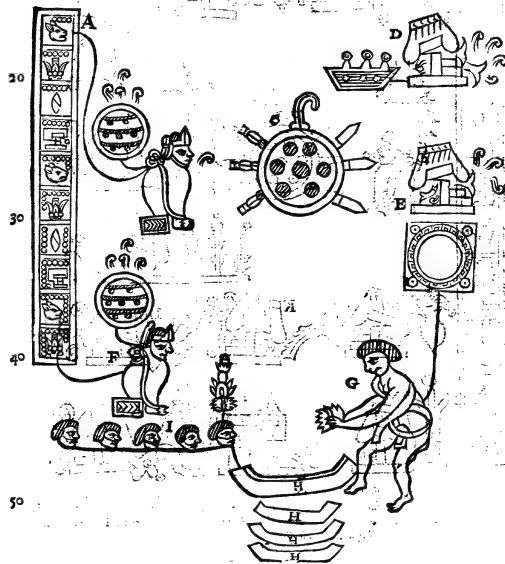
figures with their declarations. The two pictures with their titles & names of *Acamapich* be one same thing to diuers effects, for the first sheweth his beginning and succession of the said Lordship, and the second sheweth the yeere after his succession as the said Lordship, when hee began to conquer and subdue the said foure Townes. And in the said Lordship he had his course one and twentie yeeres, at the end whereof the said *Acamapich* dyed and departed this present life, the which said departure was in the yeere 1398.



A 21. yeeres. B Towne and People of Tlatilco. C Quauhtitlan. D Chalco. E Tlameimco. I Xalisco. K Otumpa. L Acotlan. M Teococco. E The Cutter bath set letters to diuers figures

whereof I can give no interpretation: and such is this, except perhaps it signifieth that in his seventh yeere he began his conquest. For I doe here interpret diuers in which the Spanis is silent, if the coniecture seeme easier. E is King Huicilbuitl. G the instruments of warre.

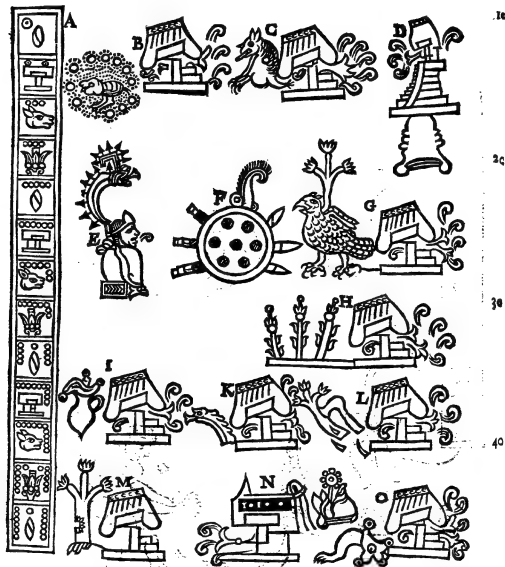
IN the yeere 1396. in the said Lordship succeeded Huicilbuitl sonne of *Acamapich*, and during the time of his reign in his Lordship, he conquered by force of armes eight Townes, which are contayned in the pictures here before, with the names of the same Townes intituled, the which were made tributarie to the Mexican Lordship acknowledging seruitude. The said Huicilbuitl was valiant in warres, and inclined to haue many wives by whom he had many sons, wherewith the power of the Mexican was augmented. The time of the Lordship and life of the said Huicilbuitl there was 27. yeeres, at the end whereof he dyed and departed this present life, according as by the pictures of blue are numbered.



A 27. yeeres. B Chimalpapuca. C Teyuca and Darts, to intimate his forcible conquest of D Teyuca and E Chalco. F sheweth his death. G the Towne of Chalco in rebellion. H the four Canas and I the five men about said of Mexico, which the Rebels slew. You see this King and every other both King and Towne distinguished by speciall Armes or Signatures, with other particulars, which here and in all the rest I leave to each Reader some industrie and search.

IN the yeere 1470. after the death of Huicilbuitl succeeded Chimalpapuca in the said Lordship of Mexico, sonne of the said Huicilbuitl, and during his time hee subdued by force of armes the Townes of Teyuca, and Chalco, which Chalco is a great Towne and acknowledging seru-

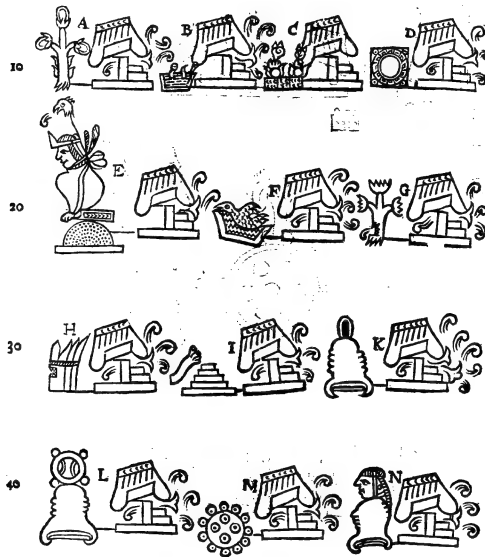
uintude: they paid tribute to the Lordship of *Mexico*, according as the pictures doe shew. And hauing the said Townes thus in subiection, at the end of certaine yeeres the said Towne of *Chalco*, being mightie, rebelled against the *Mexicans*, and in the rebellion there grew danger to the *Mexicans*, inasmuch that they slue five of them, and brake them foure Canoes, according as here is signified by the pictures. The time of the life and Lordship of the said *Chimalpappuca* was ten yeeres, at the end whereof hee dyed, according as is numbred by the blue pictures in the margent. And like wile the said *Chimalpappuca*, in the time of his life had many wiues and sons; for it was accounted a matter of reputation.



The explanation of the first Table A 23. yeeres. Yzcoatzi. F by force of Armes (signified by the Target and Dart) subdued the Townes and Territories of B *Azcapotzalco*, C *Coyacan*, D *Tecolhuacan*, E *Gueguayan*, F *Tlacopan*, G *Aztlahuacan*, H *Mixcoac*, I *Quauhtimac*, J *Quauhtimac*, K *Quauhtimac*, L *Quauhtimac*, M *Quauhtimac*, N *Quauhtimac*, O *Quauhtimac*.

In the yeere 1427. in the said Dominion of *Mexico*, after the death of *Chimalpappuca*, succeeded *Tzacoatzi*, Sonne of *Acamapich*, which had bene Lord of *Mexico*; and during his time hee conquered by force of Armes foure & twentie Townes which are here pictured, which Townes he made subiect to the Lordship of *Mexico*; at one insurrection which he made for he was a valiant and warlike in Armes as the said *Acamapich*, and was a man of good iudgement, and wise in many matters, and by his good industrie he subdued the said Townes which gaue him tribute, and did acknowledge seruitude. The said *Tzacoatzi* had many Concubines, by whom he had seuen Sonnes and Daughters and he reigned in the said Lordship thirteene yeeres at the end whereof the said *Tzacoatzi* dyed and departed this present life.

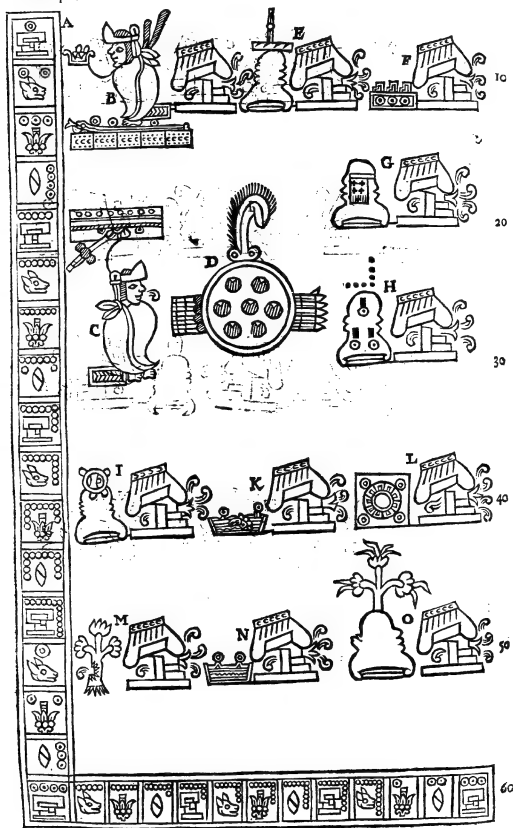
In the other Table (in the original being another Page) follow A *Mixcoac*, B *Cuicuilmac*, C *Xochimilco*, D *Chalco*, E *Quauhlan* the Lord of *Tlacatlan*; the Towne also added, F *Huicilapan*, G *Quauhlan*, H *Cuculan*, I *Caguayan*, K *Isupen*, L *Xuistepes*, M *Tolcan*, N *Tepequaculco*.



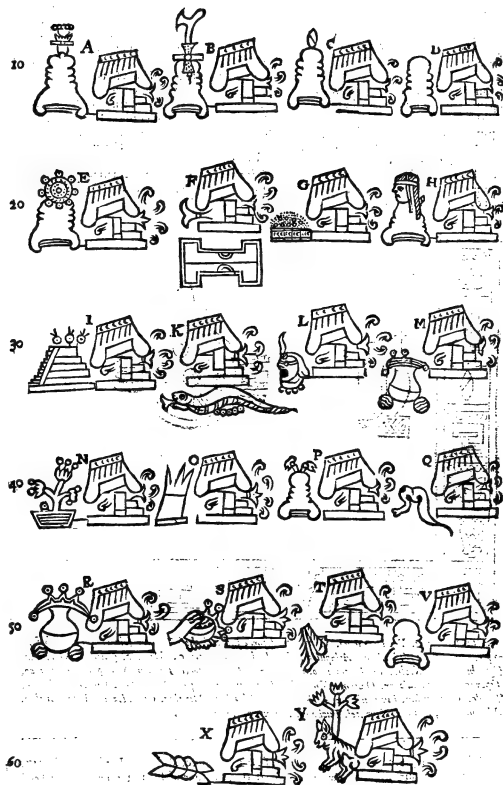
In the yeere 1440. after the death of *Tzacoatzi* succeeded *Gueguemoteguma* in the Lordship of *Mexico*, the Sonne of *Gueguemoteguma* which had bene Lord of *Mexico*; and during his time, he conquered by force of Armes three and thirte Townes according as they are pictured in that compasse where the Picture of *Gueguemoteguma* standeth. And hauing subdued them to the said Lordship of *Mexico*, they payed him tribute, acknowledging their subiection.

This *Gueguemoteguma* was a very feure and graue Lord, and giuen to vertue, and was a man of a good nature and vnderstanding, and an enemye to all euill vices: and being of a good inclination, let downe Orders and Lawes in his Common-wealth, and to all his Seruants how they ought to liue, and alio ordayned grieuous penalties for the breach of them: which penalties were executed without any remission vpon those that brake the Lawes. He was not cruell, but rather gentle, and desirous of the welfare of his Subiects, not vicious in women; hee had two Sonnes, hee was very temperate in drinking, for in all his life time hee was neuer seene to bee drunke as the naturall *Indians* which are extremely inclined to drunkenness, but rather he commanded him to be corrected and punished that committed such a fact. And by his feueritie and Justice and good example of life, hee was feared and reuerenced of all his Subiects, all his life time, which was the space of nine and twentie yeeres. At the end whereof he dyed, and passed out of this present life.

A nine and twenty years. C Huabnemactecuma. D by force of Arms subdued. B Lord Atual and his Towne Coaxitlacan. E Mammhuactec. F Tenuco. G Tetachtepec. H Chicquimbco. I Xubtepec. K Totolapan. L Chalco. M Quauhnaucan. N Atlantanca. O Huastec.



In the second Table. A Tachtepec. B Tepoztlán. C Tepaztenco. D Tacapachilán. E Toluca. F Tlaxco. G Tlaxcoatlán. H Tepicquimilco. I Quianoyan. K Chimalcatlan. L Huapachilán. M Atotonilco. N Axocapan. O Tulan. P Xiltepec. Q Tequimilco. R Atotonilco. S Tlapacoyan. T Chapulxala. V Tlaxcoquimilco. X Cuicatlán. Y Quauhnaucan.



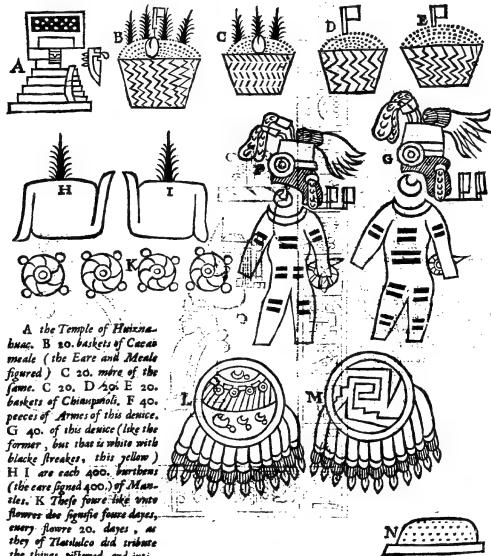
Gouernour, *Acatlhuacm*, *Tlacachitl* a Gouernour, *Huaxac*, *Tzitzeyacm*, *Coatitlan*, *Huixachilim*, *Tlacachitl* a Gouernour, *Tlacachitl* a Gouernour, *Zacolan*, *Pootepet*, *Coatitlan*, *Acotlan*, *Acotlan*, *Papatlan*, *Tzitzeyacm*, *Tlacachitl* a Gouernour, *Tlacachitl* a Gouernour, *Ocotlan*, *Atzacan*, *Atzacan*, *Ometzuc*, *Tzitzeyacm* a Gouernour, *Tzitzeyacm* a Gouernour, *Xocotlan*, *Tzitzeyacm*.

§. II.

The second part of this Booke containing the particular Tributes which every Towne subdued paid unto the Lords of Mexico.

Here follow pictured and intitled the kinds of things, that they of *Tlatilulco* (which at this day is called by the Spaniards, *Saint James*) did pay in tribute to the Lords of Mexico, and the said tribute summed here, is that which followed.

They were charged for tribute, alwayes to repaire the Church called *Huixachilim*. Item, fortye great Baskets (of the bignesse of *Italia* Bushell) of *Cacao* ground, with the Meale of Maize (which they called *Chicampulco*) and eury Basket had fixteene hundred Almonds of *Cacao*. Item, other fortye Baskets of *Chicampulco*. Item, eight hundred burthens of great Mantels. Item, eightye pieces of Armour, of slight feathers, and as many Targets of the same Feathers, of the deuices & colours as they are pictured. All the which tribute, except the said armes and targets they gaue eury 24. dayes, and the said armes and targets they gaue for tribute but once in the whole yeece. The said tribute had his beginning since the time of *Quauhtlaton* and *Moquibux*, which were Lords of *Tlatilulco*. The Lords of Mexico, which first enjoyed to thole of *Tlatilulco*, to pay tribute, and to acknowledge their subdued, were *Tzitzeyacm* and *Atzacan*.



A the Temple of *Huixachilim*. B 20. baskets of *Cacao* meal (the Ear and *Idole* figured) C 20. more of the same. C 20. D 20. E 20. baskets of *Chicampulco*. F 40. pieces of Armes of this deuice. G 40. of this deuice (like the former, but this is white with blacke breakers, this yellow) H I are each 400. burthens (the ears figured 400.) of Mantels. K These four: like unto flowers doe signifie foure dayes, eury foure 20. dayes, as they of *Tlatilulco* did tribute the things pictured and intitled by inuention of the Lords of Mexico. L 40. Targets of this deuice (to expresse the difference of colours)

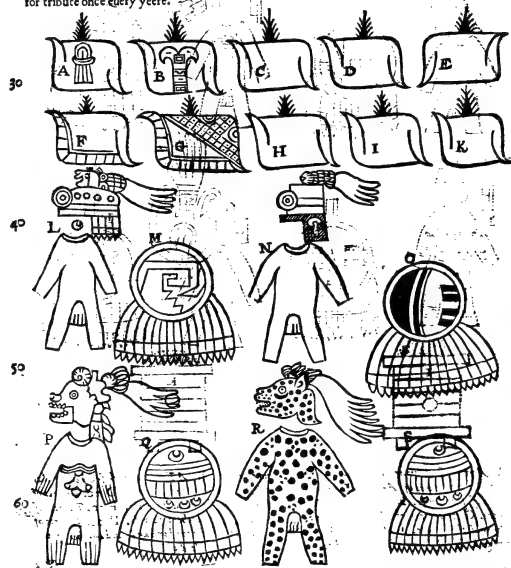
colours in each particular were too tedious.) N *Tlatilulco*. The names of *Quauhtlaton* and *Moquibux* Lords of *Tlatilulco* are added, because in their times it began; as also of *Tenexitlan*, *Tezcatlan* and *Apayacan* to intimate that these two Lords of Mexico or *Tenexitlan* subdued them. The Pictures of them (as of many Townes before) were omitted: being but such descriptions of men and Townes as you haue seene already.

The Townes pictured in the two Pieces following, and summed heere be twentie three Townes as appareth by their Titles, and they had a chiefe Gouernour appointed by the Lords of Mexico, called *Peitlacalc*, although neuerthelesse, eury Towne had his *Calpixaque*, which is at it were a Steward or Bayliffe, whose charge was to gather the Rents & tributes that the said Townes did tribute to the Dominion of Mexico, and all the said Stewards came to the said *Peitlacalc* as their Gouernour, and the things and kinds that the said Townes did tribute, are these which follow: 1400. burthens of great Mantels of twified Yarne. Eight hundred burthens of little Mantels, rich attyre, of the colours as they are pictured. Four hundred burthens of *Maxtlat*, which served for little clothes. Four hundred burthens of *Huipiles* and *Naguas*, all the which they gaue for tribute eury sixe monethes.

Item, They gaue five pieces of Armour, of rich Feathers, and as many Targets of the colours and deuices as they are pictured.

Item, They did tribute seuentie pieces of Armour of Feathers of small account, and as many Targets of the colours and deuices as they are pictured.

Item, They tributed one *Troxe* of *Huipiles*, and another *Troxe* of *Chicm*, and another *Troxe* of *Mayz*, and another of *Guanis*, which is the seed of *Bleis*. All the which things of the said Armour and Targets, and *Troxes* of *Huipiles*, and the other feeds the said Townes did pay for tribute once eury yeece.





white and black. *Item*, Eight hundred burdens of great Mantels of twisted Yarn. *Item*, Four hundred burdens of Chalk; all the which they did tribute every six months. *Item*, they did tribute two pieces of Armour garnished with rich Feathers, and two Targets, as appeareth by the deuces and pictures. *Item*, Fortie pieces of Armour, and as many Targets garnished with light Feathers, as appeareth by the pictures, deuces and titles. *Item*, Four great Traxes of wood, of the bignesse of those before, the one full of *Maize*, another of *Frijoles*, another of *Chian*, and another of *Guaniti*; all of the which they did tribute once a yeare. The Townes are *Atonilco*, *Guapaculo*, *Quacalmacan*, *Acocotl*, *Tehuacan*, *Otlaxpan*, *Xalac*.

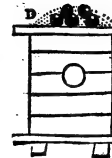
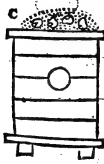
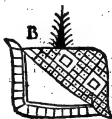
A 400. burdens of Chalk or Lime: the marks on the top signifie 400, the figure is the forme of their burthen. Other figures needs not be presented.



The number of the Townes following, are nine, according as they be pictured and named. And they paid tribute as followeth.

First, four hundred burdens of Mantels of rich workes, which 20 the Lords and *Cajigal* put on. *Item*, Four hundred burdens of white Mantels, with their edge of white and blacke. *Item*, eight hundred burdens of white Mantels of *Eneque*. *Item*, Four hundred Pots of thicke Honie of *Maguac*. All the which they tributed every six months. *Item*, Two pieces of Armour, and as many Targets, garnished with rich Feathers, of the colours and deuities as they be pictured and intitled. *Item*, three score pieces of Armour, and as many Targets, garnished with light Feathers, of the colours and deuities as they be pictured and intitled. *Item*, Four great Traxes of wood, of the bignesse of those before, full of *Maize*, another of *Frijoles*, another of *Chian*, and another of *Guaniti*. All the which they tributed once a yeare. The Townes are *Huapochila*, *Xalac*, *Tepic*, *Tepehuan*, *Acacochila*, *Ameyacan*, *Atzacapan*, *Tehuacan*, *Atzacapan*.

A 400. Pots of Honie of *Maguac*, paid every six months.



The number of the Townes following be fix: and they paid tribute as followeth.

First, Eight hundred burdens of rich Mantels apperatt the Lord of Mexico did cloath themselves with, as appeareth in the said side by the pictures and titles. *Item*, One thousand six hundred burdens of white Mantels of *Eneque*; all the which they did tribute to the Lords of Mexico every six months. *Item*, Four pieces of Armour, and as many Targets, garnished with rich Feathers of the colours and deuities as they are pictured and intitled. *Item*, Four great Traxes of wood, of the bignesse of those before, full of *Maize*, *Frijoles*, *Chian*, and *Guaniti*. All the which they did tribute once a yeare. The Townes are *Atonilco*, *Acacochila*, *Xuacacacayan*, *Huapochila*, *Atzacapan*, *Tepehuan*, *Ameyacan*, *Tehuacan*.

A Four hundred burdens of rich Mantels of this worke. B Four hundred burdens of rich Mantels of this worke. C Two traxes, one of *Maize*, the other of *Frijoles*. D Two traxes, one of *Frijoles*, the other of *Guaniti*. Other pictures are omitted, being like the former.

The

The number of the Townes are seven: and they paid tribute as followeth. First, 400. burdens of very rich *Maguac* and *Huapochila*, which is apperall for women. *Item*, 400. burdens of rich Mantels, Lords apperall. *Item*, 400. burdens of rich small Mantels. *Item*, 400. burdens of Mantels drawne through the middle with red: all the which they tributed every six months.

Item, A living Eagle, two, three, or more, according as they could finde them. *Item*, two pieces of Armour and two Targets, garnished with rich feathers, of the deuce and colour as they are pictured. *Item*, Four great Traxes of wood, full of *Maize*, *Frijoles*, *Chian*, and *Guaniti*: all the 30 which they tributed once a yeare. The townes names are *Xilotepic*, *Tlacoch*, *Tehuacan*, *Ameyacan*, *Tepehuan*, *Acacochila*, *Tehuacan*.



A 400. burdens of very rich *Maguac* and *Huapochila*. B 400. burdens of rich Mantels of this worke. C 400. burdens of *Maguac* of this worke. D 400. burdens of rich Mantels of this worke. E 400. burdens of rich Mantels of this worke. F A live Eagle that they brought in every tribute sometimes three, other times four, and other times more or lesse.

The number of the Townes following are thirteene. And they payed tribute as followeth.

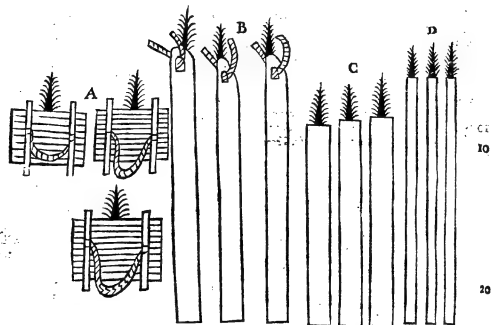
First, 800. burdens of rich small Mantels of this worke, as they be pictured. *Item*, 800. burdens of small, of *Eneque*: all the which they did tribute every six months.

Item, A piece of Armour and a Target garnished with rich feathers. *Item*, Fortie pieces of 50 Armour and as many Targets garnished with light feathers: the which Armour they tributed once a yeare.

Item, Four great Traxes of wood of the bignesse aforesaid, full of *Maize*, *Frijoles*, *Chian*, and *Guaniti*, which likewise they tributed once a yeare.

Item, 1200. burdens of wood, which they tributed every four days. *Item*, 1200. great Beames of Timber, which they tributed every four days. *Item*, 1200. great Boards or Planks, which they tributed every four days. The Townes are, *Quahuacan*, *Tepehuan*, *Chetepoleyan*, *Tlalatlaco*, *Atzacochila*, *Ameyacan*, *Otlaxpan*, *Huapochila*, *Atzacapan*, *Tepehuan*, *Ameyacan*, *Tehuacan*, *Atzacapan*, *Tehuacan*.

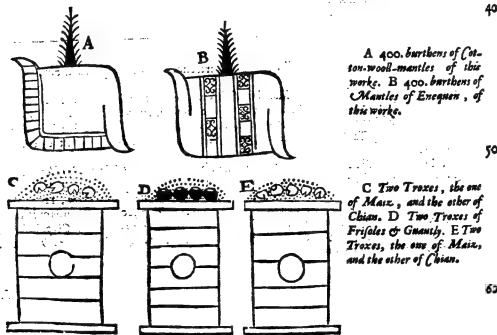




A 400. burthens of wood. A 400. burthens of wood. A 400. burthens of wood. B 400. great beams, or pieces of timber. B 400. great beams. B 400. great beams. C 400. great planks of timber. C 400. great planks of timber. C 400. great boards of timber. D 400. quarters of timber. D 400. quarters of timber. D 400. quarters of timber.

The number of the townes pictured are twelve. And they tributed as followeth. First, 400. burthens of Cotton-wool. Mantles white with an edge of Greene, Yellow, Red, and Olive colour. Item, 400. burthens of Mantles of *Enequen*, wrought and spotted, with Red, White and Blacke. Item, 1200. burthens of white Mantles of *Enequen*: all the which they tributed every six moneths. Item, two pieces of Armour, and as many Targets garnished with rich feathers of the colours and devices as they are pictured. Item, twenty pieces of Armour, with as many Targets, garnished with flight feathers of the colours and devices as they are pictured. Item, six great *Troxes* of wood of the bignesse aforelaid, full of *Frisles*, *Maiz*, *Chian*, and *Guanaty*: All the which they tributed once a yeere.

The townes names are *Tulula*, *Calixtlahuacan*, *Xicaltepec*, *Tepetl*, *Motzintlan*, *Atlixco*, *Capulucan*, *Pan*, *Atlixco*, *Cacalahuacan*, *Calixtlahuacan*, *Totenance*, *Zepanahuacan*, *Ziquitlan*.



A 400. burthens of Cotton-wool-mantles of this worke. B 400. burthens of Mantles of *Enequen*, of this worke.

C Two *Troxes*, the one of *Maiz*, and the other of *Chian*. D Two *Troxes* of *Frisles* & *Guanaty*. E Two *Troxes*, the one of *Maiz*, and the other of *Chian*.

The

The number of the townes incircled and pictured, are fixe. And they paid tribute as followeth.

First, they did tribute 800. burthens of rich Mantles of *Enequen*, of the workes as they be pictured A.

Item, 400. burthens of Cotton-wool Mantles rich of the workes as they be pictured. B.

Item, 400. rich Mantles of *Enequen*, of this worke pictured. C.

Item, 2000. Loaves of fine white Silt refined & made in long moulds, as letter D each of which

figure 400. (as the Ear above declares.) It was spent only for the Lords of Mexico, all the which they tributed every sixe moneths.

Item, a piece of Armour with a Target of rich feathers, of the colours and devices as they be pictured.

Item, Twenty pieces of Armour, and as many Targets garnished with flight feathers of the devices and colours as they are pictured. Item, Four great *Troxes* of wood, of the bignesse of those before full of *Maiz*, *Frisles*, *Chian*, and *Guanaty*. All the which they tributed once a yeere.

The Townes, *Ocuilac*, *Tenamincan*, *Tegualtepec*, *Tenatimbo*, *Cotacpac*, *Zucuarac*.

The Townes, *Ocuilac*, *Tenamincan*, *Tegualtepec*, *Tenatimbo*, *Cotacpac*, *Zucuarac*.

The number of the townes pictured are three. And they paid tribute as followeth. First, 1200. burthens of great white Mantles of *Enequen*, A B C.

Item, 400. burthens of wrought Mantles of *Enequen*, all the which they tributed every sixe moneths.

Item, They tributed once a yeere eight great *Troxes* of wood, of the bignesse aforelaid, two of *Maiz*, two of *Frisles*, two of *Chian*, and two of *Guanaty*. The townes were *Atlixco*, *Zampahuacan*, *Xicaltepec*.

The number of the Townes following are ten, of a hot Countrey, and they paid tribute as followeth.

First, 400. burthens of rich Mantles made of Cotton-wool, of the workes as they be pictured. Item, 400. burthens of *Naguan* and *Huipiles*. Item, 1200. burthens of white Mantles of smooth and late *Enequen*, All the which they did tribute every six moneths.

Item, 400. burthens of rich Mantles made of Cotton-wool, of the workes as they be pictured. Item, 400. burthens of *Naguan* and *Huipiles*. Item, 1200. burthens of white Mantles of smooth and late *Enequen*, All the which they did tribute every six moneths.

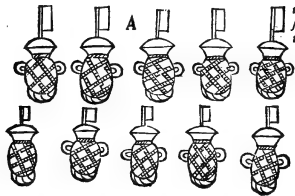
Item, 400. burthens of rich Mantles made of Cotton-wool, of the workes as they be pictured. Item, 400. burthens of *Naguan* and *Huipiles*. Item, 1200. burthens of white Mantles of smooth and late *Enequen*, All the which they did tribute every six moneths.

Item, 400. burthens of rich Mantles made of Cotton-wool, of the workes as they be pictured. Item, 400. burthens of *Naguan* and *Huipiles*. Item, 1200. burthens of white Mantles of smooth and late *Enequen*, All the which they did tribute every six moneths.

Item, 400. burthens of rich Mantles made of Cotton-wool, of the workes as they be pictured. Item, 400. burthens of *Naguan* and *Huipiles*. Item, 1200. burthens of white Mantles of smooth and late *Enequen*, All the which they did tribute every six moneths.

Item, 200. pots of Bees Honey. Item, 1200. *Xicaras* varnished Yellow. Item, 400. Baskets of white *Copale* for perfumes. Item, 8000. lumps of vntrefined *Copale*, wrapt in the leues of a Palme tree. All the which they tributed every 400. dayes. Item, Two pieces of Armour, and as many Targets garnished with rich feathers, of the deuce and colour as they are pictured. Item, Two great *Traxes* of wood of the bignesse of thole after said, full, the one of *Mais*, and the other of *Chian*. All the which they doe tribute once a yeere.

The Townes are, *Tlaxica*, *Acampulahuacan*, *Chontalcoatlán*, *Tetipac*, *Nechitpac*, *Totlaxicacán*, *Tlamaracapan*, *Tepexahualco*, *Tlaxcapulco*, *Totenanco*.



A 200. pots of Honey, the marks over each pot signify the number of twenty.



B 400. Baskets of Copal refined.



C 8000. lumps of Copal vntrefined, wrapped in the leues of a Date Tree: the upper Figure signifieth the Copal, the later (the a Par-se with three Tassels) Targets annexed, is the Character of eight thousand, as before in the sheets of Paper is seen.

The number of the Townes of the hot Country pictured, are foueteene Townes. And they paid tribute as followeth,

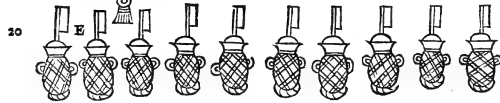
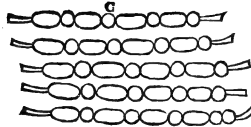
First, 400. burthens of quilted Mantles. Item, 400. burthens of Mantles striped with blacke and white. Item, 400. burthens of rich Mantles. Item, 400. burthens of *Naguas* and *Hupiles*. Item, 400. burthens of white Mantles. Item, 1600. burthens of great Mantles. All the which they did tribute every fixe moneths.

Item, They tributed 100. Hatchets of Copper. Item, 1200. *Xicaras* of yellow varnish. Item, 200. pots of Bees Honey. Item, 400. little baskets of white *Copale* for Perfumes. Item, 8000. lumps of *Copale* vntrefined, which was spent likewise for Perfumes. All the which they tributed every four dayes.

Item, Two pieces of Armour, with their Targets garnished with rich feathers of this deuce, as they be pictured. Item, Twentie pieces of Armour with their Targets, garnished with light feathers.

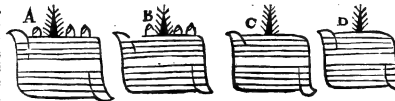
Item, Five strings of rich Bead-stones, which they call *Chalcidimit*. Item, Four great *Traxes* of wood, of the bignesse of thole before full of *Mais*, *Frijoles*, *Chian*, and *Guanity*; all the which they tributed once a yeere.

The Townes names are *Tepexacuilco*, *Chilapan*, *Obnapan*, *Huixtlan*, *Tlaximalacac*, *Totlan*, *Cocolan*, *Arenasco*, *Chilacachipan*, *Tetlapopan*, *Oxtoma*, *Tlaxitapan*, *Alahuiztlan*, *Cuicapan*.



A The Hatchets, the same below, the number above, each signifying 10. B 400. little Baskets of white Copal. C Five strings of Bees. D 8000. lumps of Copal vntrefined. E 200. Pots of Honey.

The number of the Townes of the hot Countreies pictured, and intitled in the next diuision, are twelue. And they paid tribute as followeth.



First, sixteene hundreded burthens of great Mantles, litted with Orange-tawnie, as is seene in the letters A B C D each marked

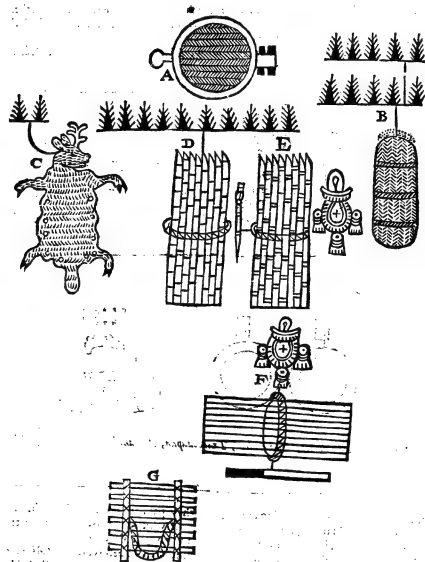


400. Item, 1400 burdens of great Mantles of twisted yarne. Item, 400. burthens of

Cacas of brown colour as in letter E. Item, 400. packes of Cotton-wooll, marked Letter F. Item, 400. *Conchas*, which are red shells of the Sea, (marked G H. each 400.) after the fashion of *Veneras*, all the which they tributed every fixe moneths.



X x x x 2 The



A. A Target and Club which they used for a Sword, garnished with Reas points. B 4000. burthens of Lime. C 800. Deere skins. D 4000. burthens of Cane Staves. E 8000. burthens of Cane Staves to make Darts. F 8000. burthens of Arayeti. G 200. Cacaciles.

The number of the Townes of the warme and temperate Countries pictured and intituled in the next figures are eleven: and that which they did tribute followeth.

First, 400. burthens of quilted Mantels of rich worke. Item, 800. burthens of Mantels striped red and white. Item, 400. burthens of Mantels striped red and black.

Item, 400. burthens of *Maxicatl*, which served the *Indians* for little clothes, or girdles.

Item, 400. burthens of *Guipiles*, and *Nagras*. All the which they tributed to the Lords of Mexico every six months.

Item, They tributed two pieces of Armour, and as many Targets, garnished with rich Feathers, of the colours and devises as they are pictured; letter A.

Item, Two fringes of the Bead-Stones of *Chalchamilt*; rich Stones, green; letter B. Item, 800. hands full of large and rich green Feathers, which they call *Quacaly*; letter D. Item, A piece of *Talpi* of rich Feathers, which served for a royall Banner, of the fallow picture; letter E.

Item, Forty sacks of Graine, which they call the Graine of *Cochimila*; Letter C. Item, Twenty *Xacrus* of Gold in dust, of the insect; letter E. All the which they tributed once a yeare.

Cochimila
Gold.

The

The Townes names are *Cuicacila*, *Tecapala*, *Tamagolatan*, *Zacaculatan*, *Tepaculatan*, *Nochistlan*, *Xalapa*, *Tamagolatan*, *Milian*, *Coacimila*, *Cuicacila*.



The number of the Townes of warme and temperate Countries, pictured and entituled in the next division, are eleven Townes: And they tributed as followeth.

First, They did tribute 400. burthens of quilted Mantels of rich worke. Item, 800. burthens of great Mantels, the which they tributed to the Lords of Mexico every six months.

Item, They tributed four great *Troxes* of wood, of the bignesse of those affected, full, two of them with *Maize*, another with *Erises*, and another with *Chen*.

Item, Twenty plates of fine Gold, of the bignesse of a middle dish, and an inch thicke; letter A. Item, Twenty

sacks of Graine of *Cochimila*; letter B. All the which they did tribute once a yeare.

The Townes are *Cuicacila*, *Etilan*, *Quacaculatan*, *Coacimila*, *Capotlan*, *Tacaculatan*, *Quacacimila*, *Otilan*, *Tecapala*, *Tlacuachimilatan*, *Ma-*

chilcochic.

Item, They tributed a piece of Armour with a Target, garnished with rich Feathers of the colours pictured.

Item, Twenty *Xacrus* full of fine Gold in powder; letter A. Item, Five

Sacks of Graine of *Cochimila*; letter D. Item, 400. hands full of rich green Feathers, which they call *Quacaly*; letter C.

All the which they tributed once a yeare.

The Townes of warme Countries are three Townes in the warme Countries. And the things which they did tribute to the Lords of Mexico, are thiese that follow.

First, A bundle of great Mantels, which they did tribute every six months.

Item, They tributed a piece of Armour with a Target, garnished with rich Feathers of the colours pictured.

Item, Twenty *Xacrus* full of fine Gold in powder; letter A. Item, Five

Sacks of Graine of *Cochimila*; letter D. Item, 400. hands full of rich green Feathers, which they call *Quacaly*; letter C.

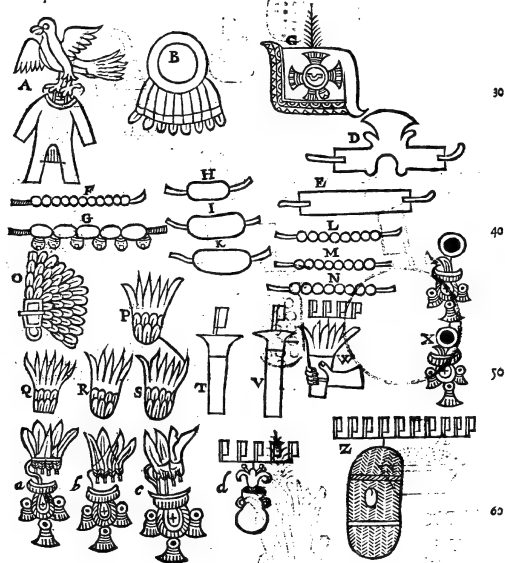
All the which they tributed once a yeare.

The

Target of
gold.Emerald
stones.
Amber.
Criftall.

The number of the Townes of warme and temperate Countreys, pictured and intitled in the next figure, are two and twentieth. And the things which they did tribute to the Lords of *Mexico*, are these that follow.

First, they did tribute 1600. burthens of rich Mantels, apparell which the Lords and *Casique* did wear. *Item*, 800. burthens of Mantels listd with red, white, and greene. *Item*, 400. burthens of *Naguar* and *Huipiles*: all the which they tributed every fixe moneths. *Item*, They tributed a piece of Armour with a Target garnished with rich feathers, with this device of a Bird and colours as are pictured letter *A*. *Item*, a Target of gold, letter *B*. *Item*, a device for Armour like a wing of rich yellow feathers, letter *O*. *Item*, a Diadem of gold of the fashion as is pictured letter *D*. *Item*, a border of gold for the head of a hand breadth, and of thicke as parchment, letter *E*. *Item*, two strings of Beades, and a collar of gold *F* *G*. *Item*, three great rich stones of *Chalchihuitl* *H* *I* *K*. *Item*, three strings of round beades rich stones of *Chalchihuitl*. *L* *M* *N*. *Item*, four strings of beades of *Chalchihuitl*, rich Stones. *Item*, twenty *Beques* of cleere Amber garnished with gold, letter *T*. *Item*, other twenty *Beques* of Beriles or cristall *P*. *Item*, 80. handfulls of greene rich feathers, which they call *Quecally W*. *Item*, four pieces of greene rich feathers like hands full, garnished with yellow rich feathers *P* *Q* *R* *S*. *Item*, 8000. hands full of rich Turquesed feathers *a*. *Item*, 8000. hands full of rich red feathers *b*. *Item*, 8000. hands full of rich greene feathers *c*. *Item*, 100. Pots or Cauters of fine liquid Amber *d*. *Item*, 200. burthens of *Cacao*, letter *Z*. *Item*, 1600. round lumps like balls of *Oy*, which is a gumme of trees, and calling the said balls on the ground, they doe clepe ye very high, letter *X*. all the which they tributed once a yeere. The Townes are *Techique*, *Kayaco*, *Olelilan*, *Cayamantlan*, *Mexican*, *Michapan*, *Ayotlan*, *Michlan*, *Texlan*, *Oxulan*, *Tzucacatlan*, *Tototlan*, *Chimulan*, *Ayotlan*, *Ayotlan*, *Cuicacatlan*, *Pueylan*, *Tzucacatlan*, *Tzucacatlan*, *Ayulan*, *Tuxlan*, *Tzucacatlan*.



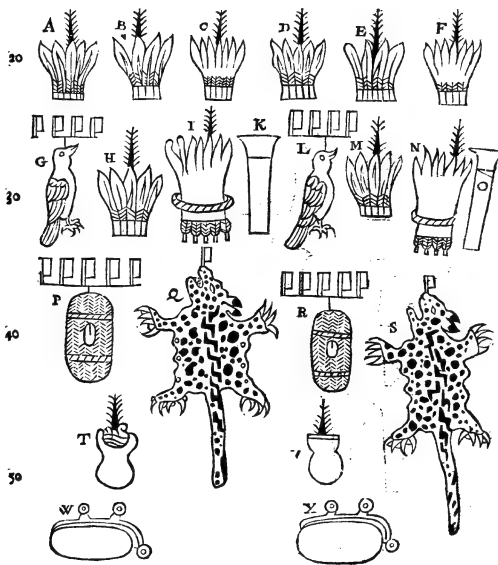
The

The number of the Townes of the warme Countreys, pictured and intitled in the next partition are eight. And the things which they tributed to the Lords of *Mexico*, are these that follow.

First, two great strings of *Chalchihuitl* rich stones. *Item*, 1400. handfulls of rich feathers blue, red, greene, turked, red and greene, as they are pictured in six handfulls, *A* *B* *C* *D* *E* *F*. *Item*, Four whole skinnies of birds of rich turked feathers, with murrey beades, of the colours as they are pictured *G*. *Item*, other four whole skinnies of the said birds *L*. *Item*, 800. handfulls of rich yellow feathers *H* *M*.

Item, 800. hands full of large rich greene feathers, which they call *Quecally I N*. *Item*, Two *Beques* of cleere Amber garnished with gold *K O*. *Item*, 200. burthens of *Cacao* *P R*. *Item*, Four *Tigres* skinnies *Q S*. *Item*, 800. rich *Tecomates* wherein they drinke *Cacao* *T V*. *Item*, Two great pieces of cleere Amber of the bignesse of a bricke *W X*. All which they tributed every fixe moneths.

The Townes names are *Xucumochco*, *Oyulan*, *Coyacan*, *Mapachitlan*, *Mazatlan*, *Huicatan*, *Acapitlan*, *Huicatan*.

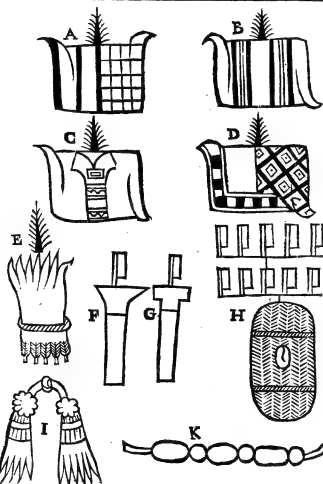
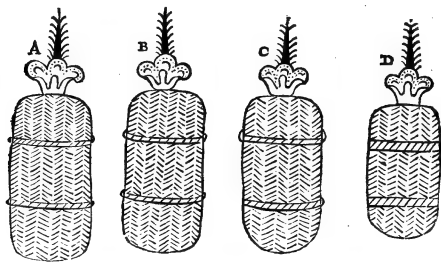


The number of the Townes of warme and temperate Countreys in the next picture, are seven. And the things that they tributed to the Lords of *Mexico*, are these that follow.

First, 400. burthens of great Mantels, which they tributed every fixe moneths. *Item*, Twenty burthens of *Cacao*.

Item,

Cotton wooll. Item, 1600. Packs of Cotton wooll (represented *A B C D*, each marked foure hundred) all the which they tributed once a yeere. The Townes are *Quauhquechilco*, *Tenchticapa*, *Tototlan*, *Tuehco*, *Amulyapau*, *Quauhquechilco*, *Tzetzoycan*.



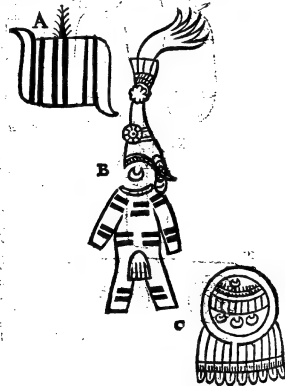
feathers, according as they are pictured. Item, A string of *Chalchihuitl* rich stones *K*. Item, 400. handfull of rich large green feathers, which they call *Quapaly* *E*. Item, Twentie *Begones* of *Dezules* or Crisfall (shadowed blue, and set in gold) *F*. Item, Twentie *Begones* of rich green feathers of *Quapaly*, which served to the Lords of *Mexico* for a Royall Ensigne, of the making as it is pictured *I*. All the which they tributed once a yeere.

Crisfall.
Amber.

The Townes are *Quauhquechilco*, *Amulyapau*, *Quauhquechilco*, *Tzetzoycan*, *Oxican*, *Acapulco*, *Tehuacan*.

The number of the Townes, contained, pictured, and intituled in the next digression, are seven Townes. And the things which they tributed to the Lords of *Mexico*, are these that follow.

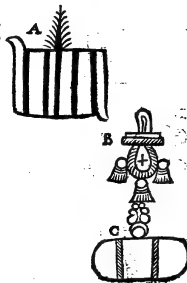
First, 400. burthens of Mantels lifted blacke and white *A*. Item, 800. burthens of great white Mantels, the which they tributed every sixe moneths; Item, They tributed once a yeere two pieces of Armour with their Targets, garnished with rich feathers of the deuce and forty as they are pictured. *B* Armour. *C* Shields. The Townes are *Tlapacayan*, *Salamanca*, *Xochimilco*, *Tuctlan*, *Cuacan*, *Acapulco*, *Acapulco*.



The number of the Townes pictured next are six. Item. And the things which they tributed to the Lords of *Mexico*, are these that follow. First, 1600. burthens of Mantels lifted blacke and white *A*. Item, 8000. loaves or lumps of liquid Amber for perfumes, which they call *Xochimilco* (*B* is 8000. *C* the lump of Amber) all which they tributed every sixe moneths.

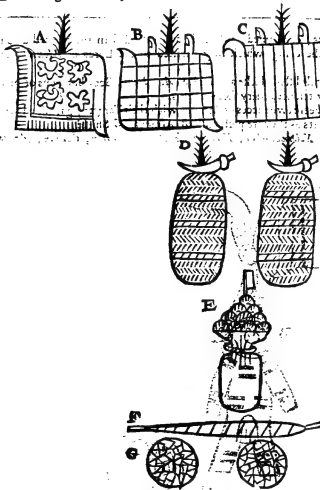
Item, They tributed two pieces of Armour with their Shields, garnished with rich feathers, of the fashion as they are pictured, which they tributed once a yeere.

The Townes are *Tlaxcala*, *Atlixco*, *Atlixco*, *Tehuacan*, *Amulyapau*, *Quauhquechilco*, *Tzetzoycan*, *Acapulco*, *Acapulco*.



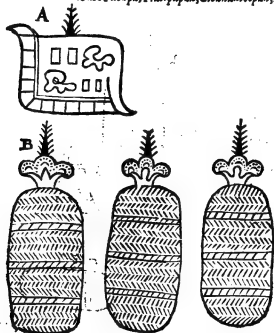
The

The number of the Townes pictured and entituled in the next side are many Townes. And the things which they tributed to the Lords of Mexico, are these which follow.



First, 400. burdens of Mantels like nets of black and white. Item, 400. burdens of rich Mantels wrought, red and white. Lords apparell. A. Item, 400. burdens of Mantels, which served for small clothes. Item, 400. burdens of great white Mantels of four bracas a peece. Item, 800. burdens of Mantels of eight bracas a peece, lifted orange tawny and white. Item, 400. burdens of great white Mantels, of eight bracas a Mantell. Item, 400. burdens of Mantels lifted, with greene, yellow, and red, letter C. Item, 400. burdens of Naguas & Guipiles. Item, 240. burdens of rich Mantels wrought with red, white & black; very curious, wherewith the Lords and Chisques were clothed, all the which apparell they tributed every six moneths. Item, They tributed two pieces of Armour, with their Targets, garnished with rich Feathers of the fashion as they are pictured.

red, Item, 800. burdens of dry Axes, or West Indian Pepper. D. Item, 20. fackes of small white Fraters wherewith they trimmed Mantels. E. Item, Two strings of Chaidolimi rich Stones. Item, One string of Beades of rich Turkey Stones. F. Item, Two pieces like Platters decked or garnished with rich Turkey stones. G. All the which they tributed once a year. The towns names are Tschapa, Tlatzapán, Cichmancapan, Papantla, Ocelotepec, Michmancapá, Miltla.



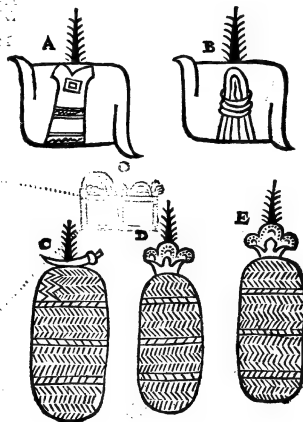
Axi and Tezcapitlan take up the next division, which they did tribute to the Lords of Mexico. First, 800. burdens of rich Mantels wrought red and white, with an edge of green, red, yellow, and blew. A. Item, 400. burdens of Mantels. Item, 400. burdens of Mantels, of four bracas a Mantell: all the which they tributed every six moneths. Item, They tributed once a year 1200. packages of Cotton Woll, letter B.

The

The Towne of Oxtipan, did tribute to the Lords of Mexico. First, 2000. burdens of great Mantels of two bracas a Mantell. Item, 800. burdens of great Mantels; lifted with yellow, blew, red, and greene, of four bracas a Mantell. All the which apparell they tributed every six moneths. Item, They tributed 400. burdens of Axi, which is their Pepper. A. Item, A liue Eagle, and sometimes two or three, as they could catch them. B. All the which they tributed once a year.



C. Tlatonco, Molacco, Cichmancatlan, Tezcapitlan, and Tezcapitlan, paid these tributes to the Lords of Mexico. First, 400. burdens of white Mantels with their edge of red, blew, greene and yellow. Item, 400. burdens of Mantels, which are lettered clothe. B. Item, 800. burdens of great white Mantels of three bracas every Mantell. Item, 400. burdens of Naguas and Huipiles, which is womans apparell. A. All the which they tributed every six moneths. Item, they tributed two pieces of Armour with their Shields decked with rich Feathers of the fashion that they are pictured. Item, 800. packages of Cotton, D. E. All the which they tributed once a year. Item, 400. burdens of Axi dried C.



Yyyy

p. III.

p. III.

The third part of this Booke containeth the private behaviour in Mariages, education of Children, and Trades; with the Martiall, Ecclesiastike, and Civill policies of the MEXICAN people.

A Relation of the manner and custome that the naturall *Mexicans* had when either a Boy or Girl was borne *vivo* them. The vie and ceremonies in giuing names to their children, and afterwards to dedicate and offer them either to the Church, or life to the warres, according as by the pictures is signified, and briefly declared.

A kinde of Baptisme with the naming of their children.

The Woman being delivered, they laid the child in a Cradle, according as is pictured, & four dayes after the birth of the child the Midwife tooke it in her armes naked, & brought it forth to the yard of the child's wifes house, and in the yard were prepared Bulrushes or Sedges, which they call *Tule*, and they lay upon them a little pan of water, wherein the said Midwife washed the said child: after it is washed, three Boyes, which are lay by the said Bulrushes, eating tosted *Mase*, mingled with folded *Prisoles*, which they called *Tecme* food, the which food made



A The woman that is delivered. **B** These four Roses signifie four dayes wherein the Midwife brought forth the child that was lately borne to wash. **C** The cradle with the child. **D** The Midwife. **E** The signes, instrument, and the band (Shield and Darts): **F** **G** **H** the three Boys which name the child. **I** The Bulrushes with the pan of water. **J** The Broom. **K** The Spindle and the Distaff. **L** The Basket. **M** The high Priest. **N** The child in his cradle which his Parents offer in the Temple. **P** The Master or Teacher of boyes and young men. **Q** The child's Father. **R** The child's Mother.

ready

greedy, was set in a little pan before the said Boyes, that they might eat it. And after the said bathing or washing, the said Midwife advertised the said Boyes, that they should with a loud voice give a new name vnto the child that he had so washed, and the name that they gave it was that which the Midwife would impose.

When the child was brought forth to wash, if it be a man child they bring him forth with his signe in his hand, and the signe is the Instrument wherewith his Father did exercise himselfe, as well in the Military art, as other arts, as of a Goldsmith, a Grauer, or any other office whatsoever: And after they had done all the aforesaid, the Midwife brings the child to his Mother. And if it be a woman-child, the signe wherewith they bring her to wash is a Distaff, a Spindle, a Basket, and a handful of Broome; which are the things wherewith the should exercise her selfe, being of age thereto.

And the bond of the Manchild with a Shield and Darts for a signe which he brings with him when they bring him for to wash; they offer it to that part and place where are likely to happen warres with his enemies, where they burie it vnder ground. And so likewise of the Woman-child, her bond they buried vnder the *Mase*, which is a stone to grinde Cakes upon.

And after the aforesaid, at the end of twenty dayes, the child's Parents went with the child to the Temple or *Mixquit*, which they called *Calmeac*, and in the presence of the Priests they presented the child with his offering of Mantels, and *Mastelles* and some meate: And after the child being brought up by his Parents, and being of age, they committed the child to the high Priest of the said Temple, because there he might be taught that hereafter he might be a Priest.

And if the child's Parents were determined that he (being of age) should serve in warlike affaires, then straight way they offered him to the Master thereof, making him a promise of him (the Master of Boyes and young men they called *Tenacachi* or *Tepalcates*) which offering was made with his present of meate and other things for the celebrating thereof. And the child being of age, they committed him to the said Master.

Presentation in the Temple

The declaration of the pictures contained in the deuision following, wherein is declared at what age, and in what manner the naturall Parents did give counsell to their children, how they ought to live, as successively is pictured in four partitions, and so the foure partitions of this fide are declared in order which are these that follow.

1 The first partition, wherein is declared how that the Parents corrected their children, in giuing them good counsell when they were three yeares of age; and the portion of meate that they gaue them every meale was halfe a cake of bread.

2 The second partition wherein is pictured in what things the Parents did instruct their children when they were of the age of four yeares, and how they began to exercise them to serve in small things. And the portion of meate which they gaue them at a meale, was a whole Cake.



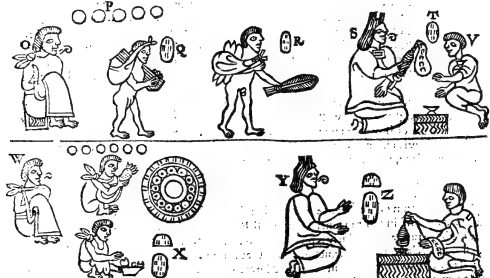
A The Boy his Father. **B** Three yeares of age. **C** The Boy. **D** Halfe a Cake. **E** The Girl her Mother. **F** Halfe a Cake. **G** A Girl of three yeares of age. **H** The Father of the Boy. **I** A Boy of four yeares of age. **K** A Cake. **L** The Mother of the Girl. **M** A Cake. **N** A Girl of four yeares of age. **A** Spindle with a locke of cotton wool lying on a Mat.

Yyy 2

The

3 The third partition, wherein is shewed that the Parents did exercise their children in bodily labour at five yeeres of age, in loding their Sonnes with Wood and other things in small burdens, of small weight, and to carry packes of small weight to the *Tyngues*, or Market place. And they exercise their Daughters of that age, in shewing them how they should handle the spinell and Distaffe to spin. And their allowance of meate was a whole Cake of Bread.

4 The fourth partition, wherein is pictured how the Parents instructed their children of six yeeres old, and exercised and occupied them in bodily service, that they might profite their Parents in some thing, as in the *Tyngues*, which are Market-places that they might gather from the ground, the cornes of *Mais*, and *Frijoles* that were sowed there by him, and other small things that the buyers and others had left and spilt there. And this was the Boies worke. But the Girles were put to spinne and to doe other profitable services, because in time to come, by means of the said services and occupations, they should not spend their time idly, and should avoid cull vices that are wont to grow through idleness. And the allowance of meate that they gave to their children was a Cake and a halfe of Bread.



O The Father of the Boies. P Two Boies of five yeeres of age. Q A Cake. R A Cake. S The Mother of the Girle holding the Spinell and Rocks. T A Cake. V A Girle of five yeeres old. W The Father of the two Boies. Two Boies of six yeeres old. X A Cake and a halfe. Y The mother of the Girle. Z A Cake and a halfe. A Girle of six yeeres old spinning Cotton wool.

A Declaration of the figure following, wherein is shewed, at what age and in what things the naturall people of Mexico did instruct their children, and in what manner they corrected them, that they should avoid all idleness, and alwayes should be exercised in some profitable things, as likewise is pictured in four partitions.

1 The first partition, wherein is pictured how the Parents vie their children of seven yeeres old that is the men children they applied them in giuing them their fishing Nets. And the Mothers did exercise their Daughters in spinning and in giuing them good counsell that they should alwayes apply and occupy their time in doing some thing for to avoid idleness. And the allowance of meate that they gave to their children at every meale was a Cake and a halfe of Bread.



A The Father of the Boies. B These seven spots of blew signifie seven yeeres. C F A Cake and a halfe. D A Boy of seven yeeres old, whose Father sheweth him how he should fish with the net he has in his hand. E The mother of the children. G A Girle of seven yeeres old, whose mother is teaching her to spinne.

2 The

2 The second partition: Wherein is pictured, how the Parents did chasten their children of the age of eight yeeres, in laying before them with respect and feare the thornes of *Mague*, that is being negligent and disobedient, so that their Parents they should bee chastised with the said thornes, and to be very feare they were to see the pictures of this partition is figured. And their allowance was a meale, which they gave them by measure, year a Cake and a halfe.

3 The third partition, wherein is pictured, how the parents punished their children of nine yeeres of age, when they were disobedient and rebellious to their fathers, they did chastise them with the said thornes of *Mague*, binding them naked hand and foot, they thrust the said thornes into their body and shoulders. And they pricked only the wrists and hands of the Girles with the said thornes. And in the said partition is pictured. And their allowance every meale was a Cake and a halfe of bread.

4 The fourth partition, wherein is pictured, how the parents chastised their children of ten yeeres of age, when being rebellious they did chastise them in beating them with a small stick, and threatening them otherwise, as the fourth partition is pictured. And the allowance which they had given them at a meale, was a Cake and a halfe.



H The father of the children contained in this row. I These eight spots signifie eight yeeres. K N a cake and a halfe. L A Boy of eight yeeres old, whose father is threatening him that he be not unchaste, because he will chastise him in thrusting thornes of *Mague* into his body. M The mother of the children contained in this row. N O Thornes of *Mague*. P A Girle of eight yeeres old, whom her mother doth chastise with the thornes of *Mague*, that she be not unchaste. Q The father of the children contained in this side. R W A Cake and a halfe. S These nine spots signifie nine yeeres. T A Boy of nine yeeres old, because he is unchaste, his father thrusteth thornes of *Mague* into his body. V The mother of the children contained in this row. X A Girle of nine yeeres old, that for her negligence and idleness, her mother did chastise her in pricking her hands with thornes of *Mague*. Y These ten spots signifie ten yeeres. Z The father of the children contained in this row. A A Cake and a halfe. B The mother of the children contained in this row. C A Boy of ten yeeres old, whom his father is chastising with a small staffe. D A Girle of ten yeeres, whom her mother is chastising in beating her with a twelfth staffe.

A Declaration of the first partition of the picture following. The Boy or Girle of eleven yeeres old, which would not be reformed with wordes nor stripes, their parents did chastise, giuing them into the Noe the smoke of *Axi*, which was a grievous and cruel torment, to the intent they should be reformed and not be vicious perions and vagabonds, but should em- ploy and spend their time in profitable things. And to the children of that age they gave bread, which are cakes, by measure, only a cake & a halfe at a meale, because they should not be gluttons.

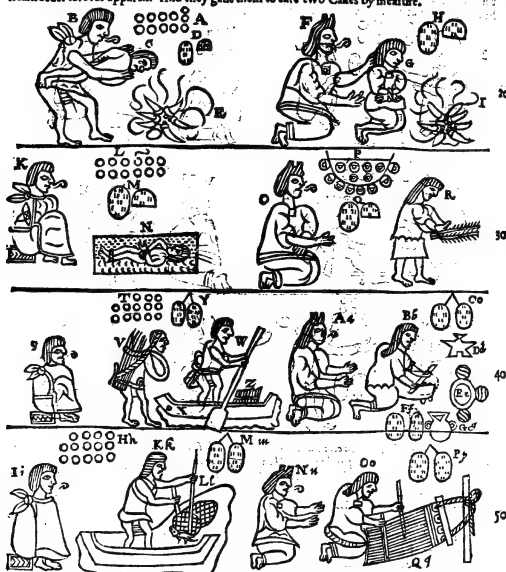
Yyy y

11

3. In the second partition; The Boy or Girl of the age of twelve yeeres, which would not receive quietly counsel nor correction at their Fathers hands; the Father took him to a dirty wet place, where he lay for a whole day, because he should be chastised and fowled thereby. And the Girl of that age, his Mother made her serve, so that in the night before it were day she should sweep all the house and the street, and that always she might be occupied in bodily service. And so likewise their Parents gave them meat by measure a Cake and a half every meal.

3. In the third partition, the Boy or Girl of thirteen yeeres old, their Fathers employed in bringing wood from the Mountaine, and with a Canoe-boat to bring bought and other herbs for the service of the house. And the Girlis should grind and make Cakes and other meats for their Parents. And they gave their children meat by measure, two Cakes every meal.

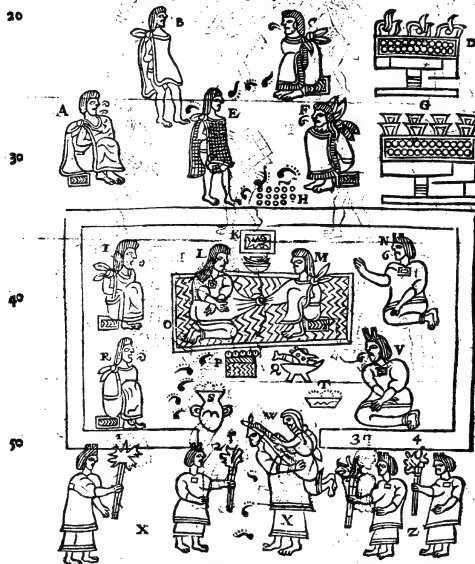
4. In the fourth partition; The Boy or Girl of fourteen yeeres old, their Parents did employ in fishing in Lakes and Rivers with his Canoe. And the Girl was set to weave yams of whatsoever sort for apparel. And they gave them to eat two Cakes by measure.



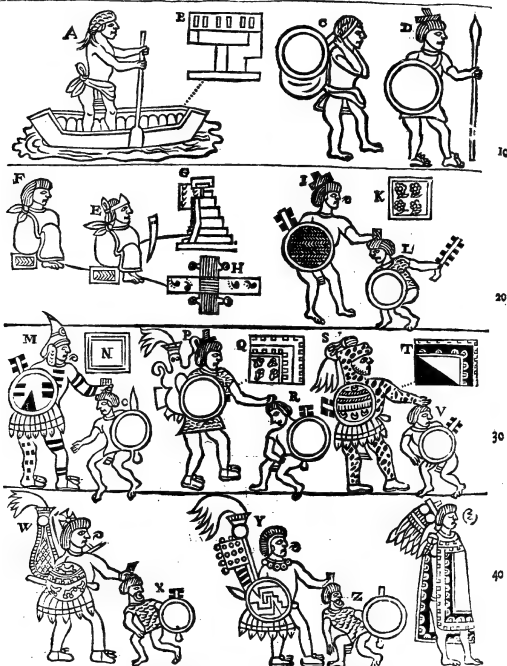
A These eleven years of blue signify eleven yeeres. B The father of the children. C A boy of eleven yeeres old, whose father is chastising him, looking him at the Night with his dried. D A cake and a half. E A man and a woman. F The mother of the children. G A girl of eleven yeeres old, whose mother is chastising her, looking her at the Night with her. H A cake and a half. I A man and a woman. J A man and a woman. K A man and a woman. L A man and a woman.

That which is pictured in the first partition, doth signifie that the Father having two sonnes young men, of yeeres able to serve, brought them to the two houses that are pictured, either to the Masters house that did teach and instruct young men, or else to the Temple, according as the youths were inclined, and so committed them either to the high Priests, or else to the Master of Boyes to the end they might be taught; the youths being fifteen yeeres of age.

In the second partition is pictured, the manner and law they had and kept in their Marriages that they made lawfully. The celebration thereof was, that an *ordalio* (which is a Broker) carried the Bride on her back at the beginning of the night, and there went with them four women with Torches of Pine-tree refined burning, where with they lighted her. And to being come to the Bridegroom's house, the Parents of the Bridegroom came out to the Courtyard of the house to receive her, and they carried her into a Hall of some place where the Bridegroom was married for her. And the betrothed folks were set on a Mat with their feet near a pan of fire, and they tied the one to the other with a cord of their apparel, and made a perfume of *Copale* to their gods; and two old men and two old women were present as witnesses. Then the married folks dined, and afterwards the old folks. And when dinner was done, the old men and women separated the married folks by themselves, giving them good counsel how they should behave themselves and live, and how they should manage the charge and calling they had taken upon them, that they might live with quietness.



A The father of the two youths. B A youth of fifteen yeeres old committed to an high Altar or Priest. C The mother of the youth, which is an high Priest. D A Temple or Altar, which they called Calamaca. E A youth of fifteen yeeres, whose father put him in a Master to be taught. F The mother of the youth, which is an high Priest. G A youth of fifteen yeeres, whose father put him in a Master to be taught. H A youth of fifteen yeeres, whose father put him in a Master to be taught. I A youth of fifteen yeeres, whose father put him in a Master to be taught. J A youth of fifteen yeeres, whose father put him in a Master to be taught. K A youth of fifteen yeeres, whose father put him in a Master to be taught. L A youth of fifteen yeeres, whose father put him in a Master to be taught.

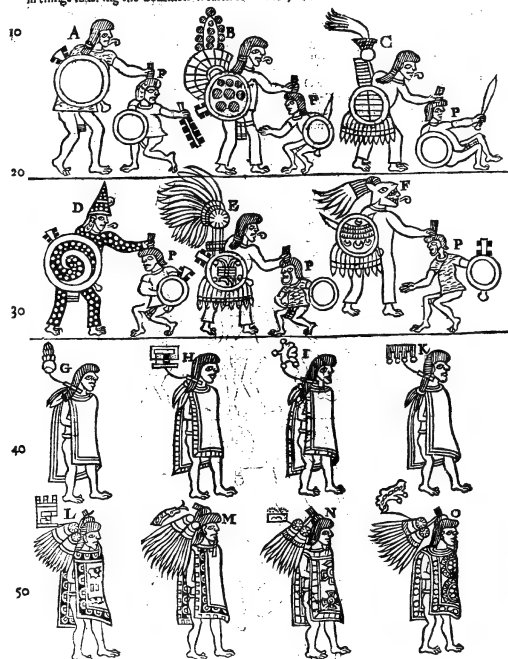


This Picture expresseth the Priests employments. A A novice Priest occupied in carrying of bones in his Canoe, for the reversion of the Temple. B The Temple called Ahuacahual. C A novice Priest that goes to the warre with a chiefe Priest carrying in package. D A chiefe Priest that goes to warre, for to enforce and leaden the Warriors, and to see other Ceremonies in the Warre.

Their Armes, which figures of Armes were made of more auboritie from degree to degree, according as the worthinesse of the man of warre was knowne, and the number of the Captives that they tooke. As is shewed sufficiently in the Pictures with their figures and Armes, and fashions of attire, and the degrees whereby they came to be valiant men in Warre. The first degree.

E Tecuylas, comfable and lazie of the Lords of Mexico. F An Officer that followeth the Tecuylas, as his Sergeant, G A Temple called Ahuacahual. H The high way or street with a bridge of wood. I A young man, who if he take any Prisoner in the Warre, they gave him for reward a mantle of the fashon, of the quadrant with his followers, in token of the valiantes off. K The same said Tecuylas, in this Picture signifie, that he is occupied in preparing the streets and bridges that go to the Temple. L A Captive. M This valiant man all in red, because he took two enemies, they rewarded him with the fashon of Armes he hath on, black and white. N The figure denoteth Orange colour with a red tinge, in token of his valiantes off. O A Captive. P This valiant Champion with a reward of the essence he hath on, and the (Q) Mantle of red cloth for a token that he took three enemies in the Warre. R A Prisoner. S This valiant Champion with the device he hath on, and the figure Mantle. T Of yellow cloth in Warre and Orange colour with a tinge, in token that he had taken some enemies in the Warre. V A Captive. W This valiant man with the device of a square, that he hath on, and he found some Enemies for his valiantes off, and because he took five or six enemies in the Warre, he which valiant man is he that is auboritie, who had his beginning of any enemy he took on the Mers, and is from degree to degree, he hath come to this degree. X A Captive. Y This valiant man called Quacahual with the device of Armes that he hath on, in token that he had taken five at the Warre of Guero, besides that in other Warre he took many of his enemies. Z A Captive. a and this valiant man named Tlacatecatl, with the fashon of the apparel he hath on, and his staff and device of such fashon, do show that he had done all the valiantes off of his picture and declared, and is knowne to have more rule of valiantes off of person than are pictured, 10

The chiefe Priests did exercise warlike affaires, & according as they proved in valiant acts, and as the number of the Captives were that they tooke, to the Lords of Mexico gave them titles of honour, and Blasons of Armes with devices of their valiantes off, as is shewed by the Pictures, and by the Armes they have on. In the third partition are the titles of honour, which they obtained by the exercise of war, whereby they came to a higher degree, the Lord of Mexico making them Captains and Generals of the Soldiers. And those of the one side served for Mefengers and Executioners of that which the Lords of Mexico determined and commanded, as in things touching the Common-wealth of Mexico, as also in other townes of their dominions.

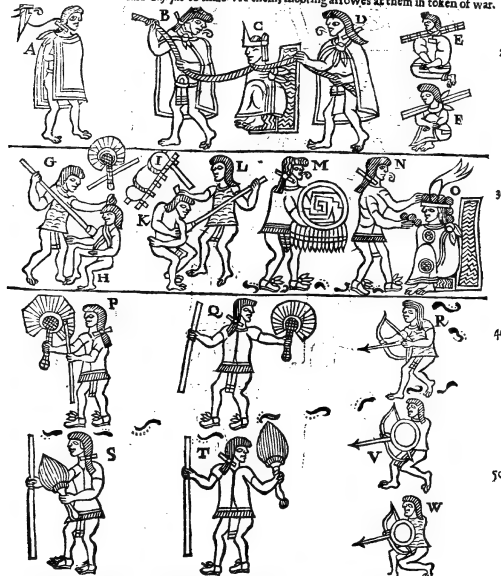


A A Priest that captured one enemy in the warre. B The same Priest after said, because he took two enemies in the warre, he is rewarded with the device of Armes he hath on. C The Priest called Priest, because through his valiantes off he took three enemies, he is rewarded with the device of Armes he hath on. D P P Captives. E The same Priest after said, because he took four enemies in the warre, for a token of his valiantes off, he is rewarded with the device of Armes he hath on, black and white. F The same Priest because he took five of his enemy in the warre, for a token of his valiantes off, he is rewarded with the device of Armes he hath on, all red. G The Priest's for that he took six enemies in the warre, for a token of his valiantes off, the Lord of Mexico rewarded him with the device of Armes he hath on. H A priest with a staff and a shield. I A priest with a staff and a shield. J A priest with a staff and a shield. K A priest with a staff and a shield. L A priest with a staff and a shield. M A priest with a staff and a shield. N A priest with a staff and a shield. O A priest with a staff and a shield. P A priest with a staff and a shield. These figures on this were of valiant men in warre, and Captains of the Armies of the Mexicans and people which executed the charge of Generals over the Mexicans Armes.

The *Cafique* (that is, a Lord of a Towne) because hee rebelled against the Lordship of *Mexico* by the Executioners afore containyd, had a rope cast about his necke wherewith for his rebellion, he was condemned by the Lords of *Mexico* to die, and his wife and children to be taken and brought prisoners to the Court of *Mexico*. And for the accomplishing of the condemnation the officers are executing the penalties wherein he was condemned, as is signified by the pictures.

2 He together with his servants and townes are condemned to be destroyed. And for the Executioners, by the commandment of the Lords of *Mexico*, are giving him to understand of the said condemnation, in token whereof they marke him with the signes that they put on his head, and the Target that they present him with, because he should not be ignorant of his destruction. And the pictures of men with mortall wounds, doe signifie that they were Merchants and Occupiers of *Mexico*, which came with things to the Countrey and Towne of the said *Cafique*; and the servants of the *Cafique* assaulted them on the high-way, killing them and taking away the merchandise they carried, which was the occasion of the destruction of the Towne.

3 In the third partition: The four Officers or Ambassadors of the Lords of *Mexico*, doe signifie that they have warned the said *Cafique* containyd in the second partition before this, as is above laid, at the returning of the Executioners towards *Mexico*, there came out to the high-way certaine servants of the said *Cafique* to misse-vse them, shooting arrowes at them in token of warre.

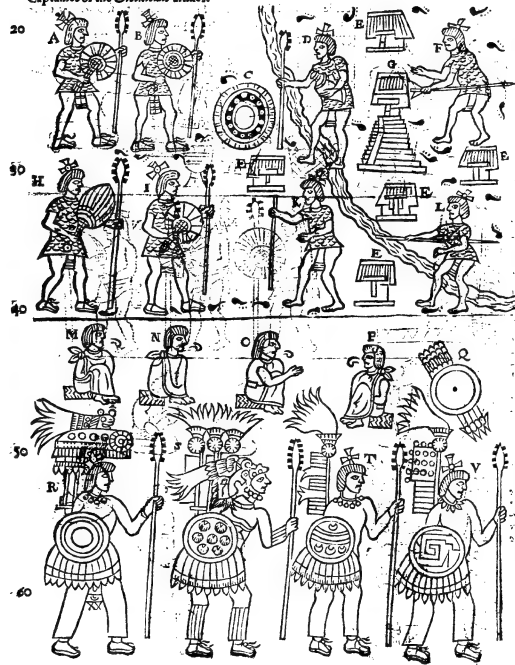


A Huastabustlan officer and executioner as a Sergeant. B Executioner. C *Cafique*. D Executioner. E The wife of the *Cafique* imprisoned with a yoke of Iron about her necke. F The same of the *Cafique* taken prisoner with a yoke of Iron. G The servant of the *Cafique*. H The merchant. I A bundell of merchandise. K The merchant. L The servant of the *Cafique*. M Executioner. N Executioner. O *Cafique*. P An Executioner or Ambassador of the Lord of *Mexico*. Q An Executioner or Ambassador of the Lord of *Mexico*. R A servant of the *Cafique*. S An Executioner or Ambassador of the Lord of *Mexico*. T An Executioner or Ambassador of the Lord of *Mexico*. V A servant of the *Cafique*. W A servant of the *Cafique* which boweth at the Ambassadors of the Lords of *Mexico*, for more occasion of warre.

1 The *Tequichna* signifieth Spies, sent to the Towne of the *Cafique* by the Lords of *Mexico*, that in the night time they might goe and walke secretly unknowne to their enemies, to aduertise and give warning unto the Souldiers, where they should enter with the battaile. And so the *Tequichna* goe round about the Towne, Houses, Market place, and Church, at the time that they of the Towne are asleep and at rest, for to finde a place where they may give the onset with the lesse trouble and resistance.

2 A description of the pictures in the second partition. The *Mexicans* that is pictured and at his house. 3 A Target and Darts, both signifie the *Mexicans* being moved to destroy a certaine Towne by warres, because they had rebelled against the Lordship of *Mexico*. And the other three that are pictured and set over against the *Mexicans* are servants of the *Cafique*, which doe signifie that the whole Towne of the *Cafique* being afraid of the warres and destruction that the *Mexicans* would bring upon them, they come to *Mexico* to entreat a peace, submitting themselves for servants of *Mexico*, and protesting to acknowledge the Lordship, by means whereof they receive them in friendship and for their servants, laying aside that which was determined by their council.

The four valiant men pictured and intitled, with their Spears in their hands, and made ready for the warres, and the devices of Armour that they have on, doe signifie that they are Captaines of the *Mexicans* armies.



A *Tequichna*. B *Tequichna*. C *Tequichna*. D *Tequichna*. E *Tequichna*. F *Tequichna*. G *Tequichna*. H *Tequichna*. I *Tequichna*. J *Tequichna*. K *Tequichna*. L *Tequichna*. M *Tequichna*. N *Tequichna*. O *Tequichna*. P *Tequichna*. Q *Tequichna*. R *Tequichna*. S *Tequichna*. T *Tequichna*. U *Tequichna*. V *Tequichna*. W *Tequichna*. X *Tequichna*. Y *Tequichna*. Z *Tequichna*.

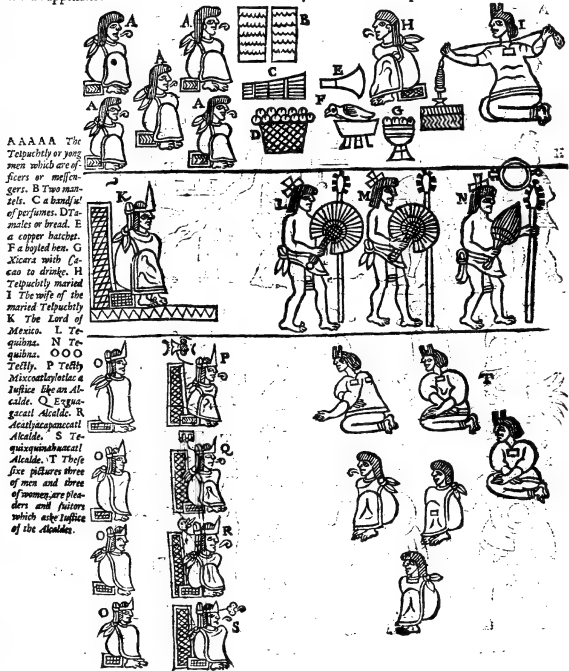
Zzzz

He

1 **H** E that is let and at his backe a woman spinning, signifieth that it is his wife new married, and because he had taken the state of matrimony upon him, having been a Messenger with the rest that are pictured before him, which are thus named *Telpachty*, which are Messengers in like sort. The married man giveth them a reason why he leaveth the charge of a Messenger by reason of his marriage, and that he will rest and leave off his truce pay. And to please them more, and that they should grant his request, he maketh them a banquet in giving them well to eat and drinke, and moreover the present that bee giueth them is a handfull of perfumes, a copper Hatchet and two Mantels, as by the pictures of these things are intitled. And by this solemnitie the married man is free from the said Office.

2 In the second partition: Here that is set downe and intitled, doth signifie the Lord of Mexico, that when any Messenger *Telpachty* pictured in the partition before this had given a good account of his office, and having taken upon them the state of marriage, the Lords of Mexico from that they were but Messengers, did promote them to a better title and degree, in so much that he made them *Teguibna*, which is signified by the pictures and titles of *Teguibna*, with their Spears and Fannes, giving them authority to bee his Ambassadors and Officers in the warres, which they hold for an office of great honour.

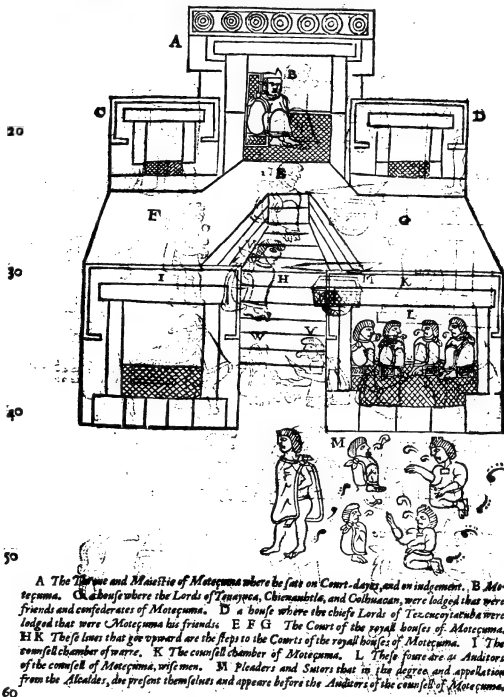
3 The *Alcaldes* doe signifie Justices, appointed by the Lords of Mexico, that they should heare matters as well Ciuill as Crimall. And the pictures of men and women which are before them, are Pleaders and Suitors which doe aske iustice. And the four pictures that are intitled *Teoth*, that are behind the *Alcaldes*, are principall young men that ioyne with the *Alcaldes* in their audience, to learne and instruct themselves in matters of iudgement, and afterwards to succede in the Offices of the *Alcaldes*. From these *Alcaldes*, there was an appellation before the counsell Chamber of *Motepuma*, as hereafter is pictured.



AAAAA The *Telpachty* or young men which are officers or messengers. B Two mantels. C A handfull of perfumes. D Mantles in bread. E A copper hatchet. F A boyed hen. G A house with a can to drinke. H *Telpachty* married. I The wife of the married *Telpachty*. K The Lord of Mexico. L *Teguibna*. N *Teguibna*. O O *Teoth*. P *Teoth* Miscontented. Q A Justice like an *Alcalde*. R *Alcalde*. S *Teguibna*. T These five pillars three of men and three of women, are pleaders and suitors which aske justice of the *Alcaldes*.

T He fashion of the Councill Chambers of the Lord or King of Mexico, and of his Royall Houses and Courts, and the steps where they entred in, and the Throne and Seate of *Motepuma*, and in the spaces of every thing is declared and intitled what they signifie, and so in this declaration it is not repeated. But that in one Councill Chamber, when that by way of offence they were agrieved, and having a iust cause not being sentenced and determined by the *Alcalde*, then by degree of appellation they appealed from the *Alcalde* before the Councill. And if it were a matter of importance they appealed from the Councill Chamber before *Motepuma*. As the King himselfe, where the matter was concluded.

In the Chamber, that is intitled, The Councill Chamber of warre, were prouided Capitaines and Armes for the warres, as was appointed by *Motepuma*.



A The *Throne* and *Minister* of *Motepuma* where he sits on Court-days and on iudgements. B *Motepuma*. C A house where the Lords of *Tenayuca*, *Chicamabilla*, and *Colhuacan*, were lodged that were friends and confederates of *Motepuma*. D A house where the chiefs Lords of *Tenayuca* were lodged that were *Motepuma* his friends. E F G The Courts of the royal houses of *Motepuma*. H K The steps that go upward are the steps to the Courts of the royal houses of *Motepuma*. L The counsell chamber of warre. M The counsell chamber of *Motepuma*. N These five are the *Alcaldes* of the counsell of *Motepuma*, wise men. O Pleaders and Suitors that in this degree, and appellation from the *Alcaldes*, doe present themselves and appeare before the *Alcaldes* of the counsell of *Motepuma*.

T He father and the sonne that sit against each other face to face, signifie that the father giueth his sonne good counsell, that he be not vicious, laying before him for example, that those which come to vertue come afterwards in credit with the Lords and *Alcaldes*; In that they giue

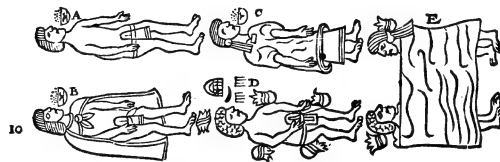
them honest offices, and doe vsic them to be their Messengers, and they doe admit Musicians and Singers vnto their feasts and weddings for the credit they beare.

2 The pictured in the house, where they meane to talke and prouide for publicke affaires, and the Steward that sitteth therein, doth signifie that there are before him weeping, because it hath happened vnto them to be occupied in bodily labour, that the *Coad* and *Guacader* doe represent. And the Steward is giuing them good counsell, and exhorting them to flee idleneffe, is the cause that they come to be Theeues and players at the Ball, and players at *Patol*, after the manner of Dice, from which Games doe spring their thirst for to satisfye and fulfill such vices.

3 The Carpenter, Lapidarie, Painter, Gold-smith, and garnisher of feathers, signifie that those Artificers teach their sonnes their occupation from their childhood, that when they are men they might follow their Trade, and spend their time in things of vertue, giuing them counsell that of idleness commeth all vices, and so euill tongues, tale-bearing, drunkennesse, and theuerie, and many other euill vices.



A *Meßwenger*. B *CD* The father commends his sons to apply himself to all virtue. E *One* having a wife, marryeth to a *Musican*. FG I a house where they now forsaking attend. H *The* *Prædicator*. KM *Con* and *Gude*, LN *Tombes*. O *accompany*. P *player* at the ball. Q *Thief*. R *a player* at *Fidd* or *Dice* after their manner. S *Carpenter*. T *The Carpenter*. Verses 7 & 8 *Lapidary*. W *The Lapidary* songs. X *Painter* Y *The Painters* songs. Z *a Goldsmith*. & *The Goldsmiths* songs. A *An ill ranged man* and *late* *traveller*. BB *The* *perjuried* *murderer*. CC *The* *murderer* *murderer*. D *a* *murderer* *murderer*. E *a* *murderer* *murderer*. F *the* *murderer* *murderer*. G *the* *murderer* *murderer*. H *the* *murderer* *murderer*. I *the* *murderer* *murderer*. J *the* *murderer* *murderer*. K *the* *murderer* *murderer*. L *the* *murderer* *murderer*. M *the* *murderer* *murderer*. N *the* *murderer* *murderer*. O *the* *murderer* *murderer*. P *the* *murderer* *murderer*. Q *the* *murderer* *murderer*. R *the* *murderer* *murderer*. S *the* *murderer* *murderer*. T *the* *murderer* *murderer*. U *the* *murderer* *murderer*. V *the* *murderer* *murderer*. W *the* *murderer* *murderer*. X *the* *murderer* *murderer*. Y *the* *murderer* *murderer*. Z *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AA *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AB *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AC *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AD *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AE *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AF *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AG *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AH *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AI *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AJ *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AK *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AL *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AM *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AN *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AO *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AP *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AQ *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AR *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AS *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AT *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AU *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AV *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AW *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AX *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AY *the* *murderer* *murderer*. AZ *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BA *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BB *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BC *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BD *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BE *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BF *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BG *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BH *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BI *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BJ *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BK *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BL *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BM *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BN *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BO *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BP *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BQ *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BR *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BS *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BT *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BU *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BV *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BW *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BX *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BY *the* *murderer* *murderer*. BZ *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CA *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CB *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CC *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CD *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CE *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CF *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CG *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CH *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CI *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CJ *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CK *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CL *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CM *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CN *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CO *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CP *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CQ *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CR *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CS *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CT *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CU *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CV *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CW *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CX *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CY *the* *murderer* *murderer*. CZ *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DA *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DB *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DC *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DD *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DE *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DF *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DG *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DH *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DI *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DJ *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DK *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DL *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DM *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DN *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DO *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DP *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DQ *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DR *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DS *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DT *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DU *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DV *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DW *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DX *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DY *the* *murderer* *murderer*. DZ *the* *murderer* *murderer*. EA *the* *murderer* *murderer*. EB *the* *murderer* *murderer*. EC *the* *murderer* *murderer*. ED *the* *murderer* *murderer*. EE *the* *murderer* *murderer*. EF *the* *murderer* *murderer*. EG *the* *murderer* *murderer*. EH *the* *murderer* *murderer*. EI *the* *murderer* *murderer*. EJ *the* *murderer* *murderer*. EK *the* *murderer* *murderer*. EL *the* *murderer* *murderer*. EM *the* *murderer* *murderer*. EN *the* *murderer* *murderer*. EO *the* *murderer* *murderer*. EP *the* *murderer* *murderer*. EQ *the* *murderer* *murderer*. ER *the* *murderer*



A These two Pillars signifie that the young men that were drunke with Wine, dyed for that according to the Law. B A young man that was drunke. C And young women if they were drunke with Wine was killed here according to the Lawes of Mexico. D A Thefe, they fland, how to death according to the Lawes of the Lords of Mexico. E These two Pillars layd & covered with clothes, doe shew that if any man had carnall dealing with a married woman, they fland them both to death, according to the Lawes of the Lords of Mexico. F An old man of 50 therefore and foule yeeres, hath comen to drinke Wine and to be drunke fully publicly as formerly because it is tolde, and hath Sinne and Netheris: hee is now 70 yeeres old, and yett hee is so drunke, that hee cannot see his owne face, nor can hee be without, had pride to be drunke as well as her Husband, because I haue had children, and childrens children, and to all the of the age, drunkenness was not forbidden them.

Mans Greafe, of such as had bene slain in the Warres. For so the *Indians* vied, to take out the Greafe of their Sacrifices. *Cortes* had here nine hundred *Spaniards*, of which fourecore and six were Horse-men, three catt peeces of Iron, fifteen small peeces of Brasse and a thousand weight of Powder, and 100000 *Indian* Soldiers on his side. He made a flote or trench about twelue foot broad, and two fathome deepe, halfe a league long, in which 40000. men wrought fifty dayes. He lancht his Vessels, and soone ouercame all the Canoes of the Lake, of which were reckoned in all three thousand. The *Spaniards* brake the Conduits of sweet water, wherewith the City was wont to be suted.

Quahutimoc, now the new King of Mexico, receiving incouragement from the Deathfull O. racle, caused to beake downe the Bridges, and so to exercise whatsoever wit or strength could doe in defence of his Citie, sometimes conquering, sometimes (as is doubtfull chance of warre) conquered. *Cortes* had in *Tlacotal* obtained a new King, a Christian *Indian*, of the royall blood, who much assisted him in this siege. The *Spaniards* being Lords of the Lake, and of the Cauleys, by helpe of their Gallies and Ordinance, they fired a great part of the Citie. One day the *Mexicans* had gotten some aduantage, and thereupon celebrated a Feast of Victory. The Priests went vp into the Towers of *Tlatelco*, their chiefe Temple, and made there perfumes of sweet Gums, in token of victory, and sacrificed forty *Spaniards* (which they had taken captiues, opening their breasts, and plucking out their hearts) sprinkling their blood in the Ayre; their fellows looking on, and not able to reuenge it. They flew likewise many *Indians*, & foure *Spaniards* of *Alvarado's* companie, whom they sawe in the open sight of the Army. The *Mexicans* danced, drant themselves drunke, made benefices, brucke vp their Drums, and made all solumne exprestings of ioy. Dread, Disfaime, and all the Furies that Passion or Compassion could contriue vpon, had now filled the *Spaniards* hearts and their *Indian* partakers: and *Cortes*, that hitherto had hoped to reuerse some part of the Citie, now did the vtmost that Rage and Reuenge could effect, helped no less with in with Famine and Pestilence, then with Sword and Fire without. At last *Mexico* is razed, the Earth and Water lining betwixt them what the Fire had left, and all which had sometime challenged a lofty inheritance in the Ayre. Their King also was taken; all that mightie State subuerbed. And as the *Mexicans* before had prophesied, That the *Tlacotal*'s should againe build the Citie, if conquered, for them; if conquerors, for the *Spaniards*: It was re-built with a hundred thousand houses, fairer and stronger then before. The Siege lasted three Moneths, and had therein two hundred thousand *Indians*, nine hundred *Spaniards*, fourecore Horses, seutene Peeces of Ordinance, thirtene Gallies, and like thousand Canons. Fiftie *Spaniards* were slaine, and sixe Horses: of the *Mexicans*, a hundred thousand, besides those which died of Hunger and Pestilence.

This was effected *August 1521*. on the thirteenth day of August, which for that cause is kept festiuall every year. For the Description of the Country wherein *Mexico* is situate. *Cortes* in his second Narration to the Emperor saith, it is enuironed with hills: (He telleth of some hills also in his journey, wherein diuers of his people died with cold) in the middest is a plaine of 30. leagues compasse, and therein two Lakes which extend the circuit of 50. leagues: the one salt, which ebboeth and floweth (an argument for *Parricid* his opinion, that saltnesse is a chiefe cause of that vicissitude of ebboing and floweing, in the Ocean) the other fresh: When the water of the Salt Lake increaseth, it runneth 'till a violent streame into the fresh Lake, which when it decreaseth, it repaireth againe by the like issue of this into the former.

b N. & G.
of *Am.* vol. 1.

e Lit. P. *Alvarado*
dis. *Dis.*
Godey ap. *Am.*
vol. 1.
d *Relat.* del *Tl.*
mexico an.

Nuño de Guzman hath writtens his expeditioun into *Mechico* and other Countries of New *Spain* 1530. subduing and taking possession for the Emperor: He found some of them Sodomites, others Sacrificers of mens flesh, and some clofly practising this bheretie after they had professed them selues Christians: none of them which durst looke a Horse in the face; but were so afraid that that Beast would eate them. The feareful peoples by him reckoned, would here be te of the Austere *Mexicans*: one of *Cortes* his Gentlemen hath writtens a Treatise of *Customs* *musica*, wherein are described their Citie, Temples, Rites of Sacrifice, and the like; as after followeth out of him and others.

CHAP.

60

CHAP. IX.

Larger Relations of things most remarkable observed by the Spaniards at their first coming: Cholollas bolies; Popocatepecs after. Mutezumus multiforme magnificence and maiestic. Mexican Citie and Temple, with other antiquities gathered out of the Third part of the Historie of Francis Lopez de Gomara.

10



Hololla is a Citie as *Tlacotal*, and hath but one person who is Gouernour and generall Capitaine, chosen by the content of all the Citizens. It is a Citie of twenty thousand households within the walls, and in the suburbs as much more. It is the weth outwardly very beautifull, and full of Towers, for there are so many Temples as dayes in the yeare, and eury Temple hath his Towers. Our men counted four hundred Towers. The men and women are of good disposition, well fauoured, and very wittie. The women are Goldsmiths and also Caruers, the men are warriors, and light fellows, and good Maisters for any purpose: they goe better apparelled then any other *Indians* yett seene. They weare for their vpper garment, clothes like vnto Monks, but after another sort. All the Country round about them is fruitfull and ennable ground, well watered, and so full of people, that there is no waite ground, in respect whereto, there are some poore which begge from doore to doore. The *Spaniards* had not seene any beggers in that Country before they came thither.

Chololla is a Citie of most deuotion and religion in all *India*, it is called the Sanctuary, or holy place among the *Indians*, and thither they trauelled from many places farre distant in Pilgrimage, and for this cause there were so many Temples. Their Cathedral Temple was the best and highest of all the New *Spain*, with a hundred and twenty steps vpon it. The greatest Idol of all their gods was called *Quetzalcoatl*, God of the Aire, who was (say they) the founder of their Citie, being a Virgin of holy life, and great piensse. He instituted fasting, and drawing of blood out of their eares and tongues, and left a precept, that they should sacrifice but onely Quails, Doves, and other fowle. He neuer wore but one garment of Cotten, which was white, narrow, and long, and vpon that a mantle beset with certaine red crosses. They haue certaine Greene Stones which were his, and those they keepe for reliques. One of them is like an Apes head. Here they abode twenty dayes, and in this meane while there came so many to buy and sell, that it was a wonder to see. And one of the things that was to be seene in those times, was the earthen vessell, which was exceeding curious and fine.

The hill called Popocatepec.

There is a hill eight leagues from *Chololla*, called *Popocatepec*, which is to say, a hill of smoke, for many times it casteth out smoke and fire. *Cortes* sent thither ten *Spaniards*, with many *Indians*, to carry their victuall, and to guide them in the way. The ascending vay was very troublesome, and full of craggy rocks. They approached to high the top, that they heard such a terrible noise which proceeded from thence, that they durst not goe vnto it, for the ground did tremble and shake, and great quantity of ashes which disturbed the way: but yett two of them who seemed to be most hardie, and desirous to see strange things, went vp to the top, because they would not returne with a feeble answer, and that they might not be accounted cowards, leaving their fellows behinde them, proceeding forwards. The *Indians* said, what meane these men? for as yett neuer mortall man tooke such a journey in hand.

Two or three valiant fellows passed through the Deface of Ashes, and at length came vnder a great smoke very thicke, and standing there a while, the darkenesse vanished partly away, and then appeared the vulcan and concauity, which was about halfe a league in compasse, out of the which the ayre came abounding, with a great noise, very thrill, and whistling, in such sort that the whole hill did tremble. It was to be compared vnto an Ouen where Glasse is made. The smoke and heate was so great, that they could not abide it, and of force were constrained to returne by the way that they had ascended: but they were not gone farre, when the vulcan began to lath out flames of fire, ashes, and smokes, and at the last, flames of burning fire: and if they had not chosen to take a Rocke, where vnder they shadowed themselves, vndoubtedly they had there bene burned. When with good tokens they were returned where they left their fellows, the other *Indians* kissed their garments as an honour due vnto gods. They presented vnto them such things as they had, and wondred much at their sight.

The simple *Indians* thought, that that place was an infernall place, where all such as gotten need not well, or viol tyrannie in their offices, were punished when they died, and also beleued, that after their purgation, they passed into glory. This Vulcan is like vnto the Vulcan of *Sicilia*.

* This part of Lopez was long since translated and published by Th. Nicols. I haue here in diuers places amended it by the Italian translation of Agostino de Craxie; for the Spanish original I haue not.

Purgatory
15

is high and round, and neuer wanteth snow about it, and is sene as farre off in the night, it flasheth out flames of fire. There is nere about this Hill many Cities, and *Mutezumaz* is one of the night. In tenne yeeres passeth this strange hill of working did expell no vapour or smoke: but in the yeare 1540, it began againe to burne, and with the horrible noyse thereof the Neighbourhood that dwelt towne leagues from thence were terrified, for the especiall strange smokes that then were sene, the like to their Predecessors had not bene fene. The ashes that proceeded from thence came to *Mutezumaz*, *Quelacopan*, *Tepeacas*, *Quahuquechella*, *Chololla*, and *Tlacatlan*, which standeth ten leagues from thence, yea some say, it extendede fiftene leagues distant, and burned their heabes in their Gardens, their Fieldes of Corne, Trees, and cloathes that lay a drying.

He left the way that the *Mexicans* had perswaded him to come, for it was both euill and dangerous, as the *Spaniards* which went to the Vulcan had sene, he went another plainer way, and neerer. He ascended vpon a Hill couered with snow, which was five miles of height, where the great cold: and from the top of that Hill, they discouered the Land of *Mexico*, and the great Lake, with his Villages round about, which is an exceeding goodly sight. But when *Cortes* saw that beautiful thing, his joy was without comparison.

There came twelue Lords from *Mexico*, among whom was *Cacamas*, Nephew to *Mutezumaz*, who was Lord of *Tezcuca*, a young man of five and twentie yeeres of age, whom the *Indians* did much honour: he was carried vnder his shoulder, and when they set him downe, one went before with a Broome to sweepe the dust out of his way. In this order he came to *Iscapallapan*. Every two houres came messengers betwixt *Cortes* and *Mutezumaz*, then came *Cuauilnac* Lord of that Towne, with the Lord *Cuauilnac* his Kinsman to receive him, who presented vnto him his robes, garments, and feathers, and to the value of foure thousand Duckets in Gold. *Mutezumaz* received all the *Spaniards* into his owne house, which hath very faire Lodgings all of stone, and Carpenters worke, exceeding well wrought, with high and low roomes, with all kind of seruice: The chambers were langed with cloth of Cotton very rich, after their manner. There were faire Gardens replenished with many sweet flowers, and sweet trees garnished with Networke, made of Ganes, and couered with Roles and other fine heabes, with founteyne of sweeter water. There was another Garden very beautiful of all sorts of fruits and heabes, with a great pond walled with lime and stone, and was full of diuers kinde of fishes, and many kind of water Birds, which sometimes covered the pond, as Gulls, and *Mewes*, and such like. *Iscapallapan* is a Towne of 10000. households, and is planted in a Lake of Salt-water, the one halfe of the Towne built on the water, and the other on the Land.

From *Iscapallapan* to *Mexico* is two leagues all vpon a faire Calley, vpon the which eight Horfemen may passe on ranke, and so directly straight as though it had bene made by line. And whosoever hath good eye-sight might discern the gates of *Mexico* from thence. *Coyacan* is a Towne of sixe thousand dwellers, *Tezcuca* is of five thousand. These Townes are planted in the Lake, and are adorned with many Temples, which have many faire Towres, that doe bestraw exceedingly the Lake. There is great contraband of Salt, which was made there, and from thence is carried abroad to Fairies and Markets, which thing was great rent to *Mutezumaz*. Vpon this Calley are many drawne Bridges built vpon faire arches, that the water passeth thorow.

Cortes passed this Calley with 400. *Spaniards*, and 6000. *Indians* his friends: their passage was with much ado, by reason of the great multitude of *Indians*, which came to see him, and coming nere the Citie, there alioyed another Calley with a broader passage; where standeth a strong Bulwarke of stone, of the height of two fathome with two Towres on each side, and two gates very strong. Here at this Port came three thousand Courtiers and Citizens to receive him, and every of them touched the ground with his right hand and kissed it, and passed forwards in the order as they came. Their salutations endured an houre and more. From the Bulwarke the Calley lyeth directly, and before the entrance into the street there is another drawne Bridge made of timber ten paces broad, vnder the which the water passeth too and fro: At this Bridge came *Mutezumaz* to receive *Cortes* vnder a Canopie of greene feathers and gold, with much Argentery hanging therat, which Canopie foure Noble-men did carrie. And the two Princes *Cuauilnac* and *Cacamas* his Nephewes, did leade him by each arme; all three were rich apparelled and all of one fashion, except *Mutezumaz*, which had a paire of shooes of gold beat with precious Stones, and the foles were tyed to the upper part with Latchets, as is painted of the Antikes. His Gentlemen went by two and two, laying downe and taking vp Mantles and Couersles vpon the ground, because his feet should not touch the faine: then followed him an Procecion, 60. Noblemen bare-footed, with garments of a richer Linnen than the fifteth thousand. *Mutezumaz* came in the middle of the street, and the others came behind him as nigh the wall as they might, their faces towards the ground, for it was a great offence to looke him in the face. *Cortes* alighted from his Horse, and according to our vie went to embrace him, but the Princes who led him

The filence
pompe where
with *Cortes* was
recounted into
Mexico.

Mutezumaz
the vnder Ma-
istrie.

him by the armes, would not suffer him to come so nigh, for they held it far too much to touch him, but yet saluted each one the other.

Cortes put about *Mutezumaz* his necke a collar of Margarites, Diamonds, and other stones all of glasse. *Mutezumaz* receiued it thankfully, and went before with one of the Princes his Nephewes, and commanded the other to leade *Cortes* by the hand: next after him in the midst of the street: and proceeding forward in this order, then came the Gentlemen in the richest Livery to welcome him, one by one, touching the ground with their hands, and after returned to their standing. And if the *Spaniards* had come to they requested, all that day would not haue ferred for salutations. The collar of glasse pleased well *Mutezumaz*, and because he would not

take without giuing a better thing, as a great Prince, he commanded to be brought two collars of red Prawns, which are there much esteemed, and at every one of them hanged eight Shrimps of gold, of excellent workmanship, and of a finger length every one, he put these collars with his owne hands about *Cortes* his necke, the which was esteemed a most great fauour, yea and the glory *Indians* marvelled at it. At this time they were come to the street end, which was almost a mile long, broad, straight, and very faire, and full of houses on each side, in whose doores, windows and tops, was such a multitude of *Indians* to behold the strangers, that now not who wondered most, you men to see such a number of them, or else they to see our men, their Ordnance and Horis, a thing so strange vnto them. They were brought vnto a great Court or house of Idols, which was the Lodging *Ascanac*, at the doore whereof, *Mutezumaz* tooke *Cortes* by the hand, and brought him into a faire hall, and placed him vpon a rich Carpet, saying vnto him, Sir, now are you in your owne house, ease and take your rest and pleasure: for I will shortly come and visit you againe. Such (as you heare) was the receiving of *Hernando Cortes* a most mightie King, into his great and famous Citie of *Mexico*, the eight day of November, 1519.

The house where the *Spaniards* were lodged was great and large, with many faire chimneys sufficient for them all: it was neat, cleane mended, and langed with Cloth of Cotton, and Feathers of many colours, pleasant to behold. When *Mutezumaz* was departed from *Cortes*, hee beganne to let his house in order and placed the Ordnance at his doore, and hauing all his things in good sort, he went to a sumptuous Dinner that was prepared for him. Assoone as *Mutezumaz* had made an end of his Dinner, hearing that the Strangers were risen from the Table, and repofed a while, then came hee to *Cortes*, saluting him, and fate downe by him. He gaue vnto him diuers Jewels of Gold Plate, Feathers, and many Garments of Cotton, both rich, well wouen, and wrought of strange colours; a thing comely, that did manifest his greatnesse, and also confirme their imagination. This gift was deliuered honourably, and then beganne his talke as followeth: Lords and Gentlemen, I doe much reioyce to haue in my house such valiant men as ye are, for to see you with courtesie, and intimate you with honour, according to your desires and my estate. And wherefore therefore I desired that you should not come hither, the only cause was, my people had a great feare to see you, for your gestures and grimme beards did terrifie them, yea, they reported that ye had such beards as swallowed men, and that your coming was from Heaven, bringing with you Lightning, Thunder, and Thunder-bolts, wherewith you made the Earth to tremble and to shake, and that ye slew therewith whom ye pleased. But now I doe see and know that you are mortall men, and that ye are quiet and hurt no man: also I haue seene your Feares, which are but your Seruants, and your Gunner like vnto shooting Trunkets. I doe now hold all for Feares and Gun which haue bene reported of you, and I doe also desire you for my meere Kinsmen. My Father told mee that hee had heard his forefathers say, of whom I doe descend, that they held opinion how they were the naturall of this Land, but came hither by chance, in company of a mightie Lord, who after while that hee had abode here, they returned to their naturall soyle: After many yeeres expired, they came againe for those whom they had left beind behind them, but they would not goe with them, because they had bene imbrued, and had Wines and Children, and great government in the Land. Now these mightie Lords seeing that they were for fearesome, and would not returne with them, departed from them fore displeased, saying, that hee would faine his Children that should both rule and gouerne them, in Justice, Peace, and ancient Religion. And for this consideration, we haue alwayes suspected and believed, that such a people should come to rule and gouerne us, and considering from whence you come, I doe thinke that they are they whom we looked for, and the notice which the great Emperour Charles had for vs, who hath now sent you hither. Therefore Lord and Captaine, bee well assured, that we will obey you, if there be no feyred or deceitful matter in your dealings, and will also diuide with you and yours all that we haue. And although thus which I haue said were not only for your vertue, fame, and deede of valiant Gentlemen, I would yet doe it for your worthinesse in the battailes of Taulico, Teocuzco, and Chololla, being so farr to overcome so many.

Now againe, if ye imagine that I am a God, and the walls and roofes of my houses, and all my vessel of seruice, to be of pure Gold, as the men of Zempallan, Tlacatlan, and Huasteca haue informed you, it is not so, and I iudge you to be for soyle, that you give no credit to such Fables. You shall also note, that through your coming hither, many of my subiects haue rebelled, and are become my

Spaniards due
to Mutez.
for glasse
and gold.

The Orator
at Mutez.
to the Spa-
niards.

A strange epie
diss.

Aaaa

mer

most all enemies, but yet I purpose to break their wings. Come seele you my bodie, I am of flesh and bone, a mortall man as other are, and no God, although as a King I doe esteeme my selfe, of greater dignitie and preeminence than others. CHY howe! you doe also see, which are of timber and earth, and the principallst of Majestie works, therefore now you doe both knowe and see what odious fiers these Table-bearers were. But truth it is, that Gold, Plate, Feathers, Armes, Jewels, and other Riches, I have in the Treasury of my Forefathers: a long time preferred, as the wise of Kings is, all the which you and yours shall enjoy at all times. And now it may please you to take your rest, for I know that you are weary of your journey. Cortes with insull countenance humbled himselfe, for some teares full from Mutezumaz his eyes, saying unto him, upon the trust I have had in your clemencie, I unjustly to come both to see, and take with your Highnesse, and now I know that all are eyes which hath bene tolme. The like your Highnesse hath heard reported of vs, assure your selfe, that the Emperor King of Spaine is your natural Lord, whom you have expected, hee is the only beire from whence your League doth proceed, and as touching the offer of your Highnesse creature, I do most heartily thank you.

After all this communication, Mutezumaz demanded whether the hearsed men which came with him: were either his vassals, or his slaves, because hee would enterrayne each one according to his estate. Cortes answered, that they were all his brethren, friends, and fellows, except some that were his servants.

Then he departed, and went home to his Palace, and there informed himselfe particularly who were Gentlemen, and who were not, and according therunto, sent every one particular gift or present. To the Gentlemen he sent his reward by his Comptroller, and to the Mariners and other Servitors, by a Page of his household.

Mutezumaz was a man of a small stature, and leane, his colour tawne as all the Indians are. Hee had long blacke haire on his head, fixe little braies upon his head, as though they had bene put in with a Bodkin. His thinn beard was blacke. Hee was a man of a faire constitution, and a doer of Justice, well spoken, graue and wise, beloved and feared among his subjects. Mutezumaz doth signifie *Sadness*.

To the proper names of Kings and Lords, they doe adde this syllable *Cm*, which is for courtesie and dignitie, as we vie Lord. The Turke vleit *Zultan*. The Moore or Barbarian calleth his Lord *Mulay*, and to the Indians say *Mutezumaz*. His people had him in such reuerence, that hee permitted none to sit in his sight, nor yet in his presence to wear shoes, nor looke him in the face, except by some few Princes. Hee was glad of the conueration of the Spaniards, and would not suffer them to stand on foote, for the great estimation hee had of them, and if hee liked any of the Spaniards garments, hee would exchange his apparel for theirs. Hee changed his owne apparell foure times every day, and hee neuer clothed himselfe againe with the Garments which hee had once worn, but all such were kept in his Guardrobe, for to give in Presents to his Servants and Ambassadors, and unto valiant Soldiers which had taken any enemy Prisoner, and that was esteemed a great reward, and a title of priuilege. The costly Mantles whereof had bene diuers sent to Cortes, were of the same Guardrobe.

Mutezumaz went alwayes very neate and fine in his attire. Hee bathed him in his Hot-bath foure times every day. Hee went feldome out of his Chamber, but when hee went to his meate. Hee esteemed alwayes alone, but solemnely, and with great abundance. His Table was a Pillow, or else a couple of coloured Skianes. His Chaire was a four-footed fiddle made of one piece, and hollow in the middle, well wrought and painted. His Table-clothes, Napkins, and Towels, were made of Cotton-wool, very white and new, for hee was neuer served but once with that Napery. Foure hundred Pages brought in his meate, all fanned of great Lords, and placed it vpon a Table in his great Hall. The meate being brought in, then came Mutezumaz to behold the Dishes, and appointed those Dishes that liked him best, and Chafing-dishes were prepared to keepe that meate warme, and feldome would hee eat of any other Dish, except the Lord Steward or Comptroller should highly commend any other Dish.

Before hee late downe, came twentie of his Wines of the fairest and best esteemed, or else those that serued weekly by turne, brought in the Basin and Ewer, with great humbleness. This done, hee late him downe, and then came the Lord Steward, and drew a wooden Net before him, because none should come nigh his Table. And this Noble man alone placed the Dishes, and also took them away, for the Pages who brought in the meate, came not neere the Table, nor yet spake any worde, nor no man else.

While the Lord Mutezumaz was at his meate, except some Ieaster, they all serued him bare-footed. There assisted alwayes, somewhat a farr off, some ancient and Noblemen, vnto whom hee vied to give of the Dish that hee liked him, who received the same at his hand with great reuerence, and ate it incontinent, without looking in his face, which was the greatest humilitie that they could vief before him. Hee had musicks of Fiddle, Flute, and of a

Snail-

Snail-shell, and a Cauldron couered with a skine, and such other strange Instruments. They had very cuill voyces to sing. Alwayes at dinner time hee had Dwarfs, crooke-backed, and other deformed counterfeits, all for maelitie and to laugh at, who had their meate in the Hall among the Iesters and Idiots, which were fed with part of the meate that came from Mutezumaz his Iesters table, all the rest of the meate was given to three thousand of the guard, who attended ordinarily in the yard or Court, and therefore they say that there was brought for his Table three thousand dishes, and as many pots of wine, such as they vief, and that continually the Buttery and Pantry stood open, which was a wonder to see what was in them. The platters, dishes, and cups, were all of earth, whereof the King was fured but once, and so from meate to meate new. Hee had likewise his sermoe of Gold and Plate very rich, but hee vied not to bee fured with it (they say) because hee would not bee fured twice therewith, the which hee thought a bafe thing.

Some affirm, that young children were faine and dressed in diuers kinde of dishes for Mutezumaz his table, but it was not so, onely of mans flesh sacrificed hee fed now and then. The table being taken vp, then came againe the Gentlewomen to bring water for his hands, with the like reuerence as they vied at the first, and then went they to dinner with the other wines, so that then the Gentlemen and Pages waited at their counsell.

When his table was taken vp, and his Seruitors gone to meate, Mutezumaz late still: then came in the Iesters that had any affaires to deale with him, bare-footed, for all the persons did vief that reuerence, except some Princes his Kinsmen, as the Lords of *Tefeca*, and *Tlacopan*, and a few others: and being cold weather, they vied to wear old ragged clothes vpon their rich garments. All Iesters vied to make three or foure courtesies, not looking toward his face, and speaking vnto him their heads downwards, and in that order retired backe againe. Mutezumaz answered his Iesters very graciously, with few words, and in few words, and not all Iesters, for others his Secretaries or Counsellors that stood by, answered for him, and lausing their answers, they returned backward, not turning their tales to the Prince. After these busineses done, hee vied some recreation, hearing Iesters or Songs, wherein hee delighted much, or else to looke vpon the Players, who play with their feet, as we doe with our hands. These haue a cudgell like vn-to a Pailleur rowler, which they tolle high and low as it were a ball in the Ayre, strange to be looked on. They vief other Playes to passe the time, in such an order, that it seemed marvellous to the lookers on. Cortes brought into Spaine some of these Players. Also they vief *Matechine* in such fort they doe play, that there stand each vpon other shoulders, and hee that standeth highest, sheweth many feates. Sometime Mutezumaz did behold the Playes, who played at a game called *Pandach*, which is much like our Tables, and they play with beanes, played like Dice, which they call *Pandach*, and throw them out of both their hands vpon a matre, or else vpon the ground, where are made certain strikes, vpon which they fer downe the chance that is throwne: and at this game they play all that they haue, and many times they value their owne bodies, and play that into captiuitie, and to remysse a slave, I meane, such as are common Gamblers of small estate.

Sometimes Mutezumaz went to the Tennis Court. Their ball is called *Pilamandach*, and is made of the gumme which cometh from a tree called *Uib*. This tree groweth in a hot Countrey. The gumme being kneaded together, and so made round, is as blacke as pitch, and somewhat heauie, and very hard for the hand, but yet good and light to rebound, and better than the wind-balls. They play not at Chafes, but at Bandy, or at Chafes, that is, if the ball touch the wall it lootheth. They may strike the ball with any part of their body, but there is alwayes a penaltie if they only strike not with the buttocke or side, which is the finest play: whereof they vief a skinn vpon each buttocke. They play by many to so many for a packe of Mantles, or according to the abilitie of the Players. Also they play for gold and feathers, and sometime for their owne bodies, as they vief at *Pandach*, which is there permitted and lawful. The Tennis Court is called *Tlacach*, and is a Hall long and narrow, but wider vponwards, then downwards, and higher on the sides then at the ends, which is an insultrie for their play. The houses are white and smooth in the side-walles they haue certaine fones like vnto Millstones, with a little hole in the middle that passe in through the fone, the hole is so small, that scarcely the ball may passe through, but hee that chanceth to strike the ball into the hole, which feldometh happeneth, winneth the game, and by an ancient Law and custome among Tennis Players, he ought to haue the Cloakes of all those that stand and behold the play, on that side that the ball went in, and in some Tennis Courts, the halfe of the garments of them that stand looking on. The Winner is then bound to make certaine Sacrifice to the God of the Tennis play, and to the fone where the ball entered. The beholders of the play would say, that such a Winner should be a Thiefe and an Adulterer, or else that hee should die quickly.

They vied in the Temple of the Tennis play, two Images of the God of the Ball, which flood vpon the two lower walls. The Sacrifice was celebrat at mid-night, with many Ceremonies and Witch-crafts, and Songs for that purpose. Then came a Priest from the Cathedral Church, with other Religious persons to blesse the Sacrifice, saying certain deuillish Prayers, and throwing

Mans fish.

State ceremony.

Iesters and Players.

Games.

The Tennis play in Mexico.

God of the Ball.

The Court and
Guard of Mute-
zumna.

men, and each of them three or foure seruants, and some had twentie seruants or moe, according to his estate: and in this manner he had three thousand men attendant in his Court, and some as much more, all the which were fed in his house of the meate that came from his table. The serving men alwaies abode below in the Court all the day, and went not from thence till after Supper.

Great Vassals.

It is to be thought that his Guard was the greater, because the strangers were there, although in effect of truth it is most certaine, that all the Lords that are vnder the Mexican Emperour (as they say) are thirte persons of high estate, who are able to make each of them a hundred thousand men. There are three thousand Lords of Townes, who haue many vassals. These Noblemen did abide in Mexico certaine times of the yeare, in the Court of Mutezumna, and could not depart from thence without special licence of the Emperour, leauing each of them a sonne or brother behinde them for licence of rebellion, and for this cause they had generally houses in the Citie: And the great was the Court of Mutezumna.

Tributes and
subjection of the
Indians to their King.

There is not in all the Dominions of Mutezumna any subiect that payeth not tribute vnto him. The Noblemen pay their tribute in perforall seruice. The Husbandmen called *Maceulim*, with body and goods. In this sort they are either Tenants, or else helmes to their possessions. Those which are *herres*, doe pay one third part of all their fruite and commoditie that they doe reape or bring vp, as Dugges, Hennes, Foule, Conies, Gold, Silver, Stones, Salt, Waxe, Hone, Mantels, Feathers, Cotton, and a certaine fruite called *Cacao*, that serueth for money, and also to eat. Also all kinde of Graue, and Garden Herbes, and frutes, whereof they doe maintaine themselves.

Poverty of the
Tenants.

The Tenants doe pay monthly, or yearly, as they can agree, and because their tribute is great, they are called *Illues*, for when they may haue licence to eate Egges, they thinke it a great fauour. It was reported that they were taxed what they should eate, and all the refuse was taken from them. They went verie poorly clothed, yea, and the most of their treasures was an earthen Pot, wherein they boyled their Hearbes, a couple of Millstones to grind their Cones, and a Mat to lye vpon. They did not onely paie this Rent, and Tribute, but also serued with their bodies at all times when the great King should command. They were in such great subiection to their Prince, that they durst not speake one word although their daughters should be taken from them to be leied at pleasure. All the aforesaid rents they brought to Mexico vpon their backs, and in Boates, in the which was aspecie for the provision of the House and Court of Mutezumna, all the rest was spent among Souliers, and batted for Gold, Plate, Precious stones, and other rich Jewels, esteemed of Princes, all the which was brought to the Treasury. In Mexico was large and great Barnes and Houses to receive and keepe the Come for provision of the Citie, with Officers, and vnderofficers, who did receive the same, and keepe account thereof in Bookes of painted figures.

See complete
book.

Receivers.

And in every Towne was a Receiver, who bare in his hand a rod or a staffe of Feathers, and those gaue vp their accounts in Mexico. If any such had bene taken with deceit and falshood, death was his reward, yea, and his kindred punished with penalties, as of a linage of a traitour to his Prince. The Husbandmen, if they paid not well their Tribute, were apprehended for the same, and if they were found to be poore through sicknesse and infirmities, then they were borne withall, but if they were found to be lazie and slothfull, they should be vied accordingly: but in conclusion, if they paid it not at a day appointed, then they should be sold for slaves to pay their debt, or else be sacrificed.

Tribute of
meniall labour.

There were many other Provinces, which paid a certaine portion, and reknowledged seruice, but this Tribute was more of honour then profit. In this sort *Adenacana* had more then a sufficient to provide his house and wars, and to heape vp great store in his Treasury. Moreover, he spent nothing in the building of his houses, for of long time he had certaine Townes that paid no other Tribute, but onely to work and repaire continually his Houses at their owne proper cost, and put all kinde of workmen carrying vpon their backs, or drawing in sleds, Stone, Lime, y^e Timber, Water, and all other necessities for the worke. Likewise they were bound to provide all the firewood that should be spent in the Court, which was a great thing, and did amount to two hundred and thirty weight a day, which was five hundred mans burdens, and some dayes in the winter much more. And for the Kings Chimneys they brought the barkes of Oake trees, which was well esteemed for the light thereof, for they were great Sorcerers. Mutezumna had one hundred Cities with their Provinces, of whom he receiued Rent, Tributes, and Village, where he maintained Garrison of Souliers, and had Treasurers in each of them.

His dominion did extend from the North Sea to the South Sea, and six hundred miles in longitude within the maine Land, although in very dede there were some Townes, as *Tlaxcala*, *Michuacan*, *Panuco*, and *Tecuacan*, which were his enemies, and paid him neither Tribute nor seruice: but yet the Ransome was much, when any of them was taken. Also there were other Kings and Noblemen, as of *Tecoma*, and *Tlacopan*, which were not in subiection vnto

to him, but onely in homage and obedience, for they were of his owne linage, vnto whom Mutezumna married his Daughters.

Description of Mexico as it flourished in those times.

MEXICO at the time when Cortes entered, was a Citie of fixtie thousand houses. The Kings house, and other Noblemens houses were great, large, and beautiful, the other were small and meane, without either doores or windowes: and although they were small, yet there dwelt in some of them, two, three, yea, and ten persons by reason whereof, the Citie was wonderfully replenished with people.

This Citie is built vpon the water, even in the same order as Venice is. All the body of the Citie standeth in a great Lake of water. There are three sorts of freetrees very broad and faire, the one sort are onely water, with many Bridges: another sort of onely earth: and the third of earth and water: that is to say, the one halfe earth to walke vpon, and the other halfe for Boates to bring provision of all sorts. These freetrees are kept alwaies cleane, and the most part of the houses haue two doores, the one towards the Cawley, and the other towards the water, at the which they take Boate to goe where they list. And although this Citie is founded vpon water, yet the same water is not good to drinke, whereof there is brought by conduit water from a place called *Capulapue*, three miles distant from the Citie, which springeth out of a little hill, at the foote whereof standeth two Statues or couered Images wrought in stone, with their Targets and Lances, the one is of Mutezumna, and the other of Axacua his Father. The water is brought from thence in two Pipes or Canals in great quantity, and when the one is foule, then all the water is conueied into the other, till the first be made cleane. From this Fontaine all the whole Citie is provided, so that they goe filling the same water from freetree to freetree in little Boates, and doe pay a certaine tribute for the same.

This Citie is diuided into two freetrees, the one was called *Tlacalacal*, that is to say, a little land, and the other Mexico, where Mutezumna his dwelling and Court was, and is to be interpreted a Spring. This freetree is the fairest and most principall, and because of the Kings Palace there, the Citie was named Mexico, although the old and first name of the Citie was *Tenuchtitlan*, which doth signifie *Frame out of Stone*, for the name is compounded of *Tetl*, which is Stone, and *Nuchtlia*, which is a Fruite in *Cote* and *Hypanthia* called *Tomas*, the Tree (or to speak properly, the Thistle) that beareth this fruite, is named *Nopal*, and is nothing almost but leaves of a foot broad and round, and three inches thicke, some more, and some lesse, according to the growth, full of thornes which are venomous: the leafe is Greene, and the thorne or pricke russet. After that is planted, it increaseth, growing leafe vnto leafe, and the foote thereof cometh to be as the body of a tree, and one leafe doth onely produce another at the point, but at the sides of the same leaves proceede other leaves. In some Provinces where water is scant, they vse to drinke the iuice of these leaves. The fruite thereof called *Nuchtlia*, is like vnto Figges, and euen so with his little kernels or graines within, but they are somewhat larger, and crowned so like vnto a Meller. There are of them of sundry colours, some are Greene without, and Carnationlike within, which haue a good taste. Others are yellow, and others white, and some speckled: the best sort are the white: it is a fruite that will last long. Some of them haue the taste of Peares, and other some of Grapes: it is a cold and a fresh fruite, and best esteemed in the heate of Summer. The Spaniards doe more esteeme them then the Indians. The more the ground is laboured where they grow, the fruite is so much the better. There is yet another kinde of this fruite red, and that is not esteemed, although his taste is not euill, but because it doth colour and dye the eaters mouth, lippes, and apparel, yea, and maketh his vrine looke like pure blood. Many Spaniards at this first coming into India, and eating this fruite, were in a maze, and at their wits end, thinking that all the blood in their bodies came out in vrine: yea, and many Phisitians at their first coming were of the same belief: for it hath happened, when they haue bin sent for vnto such as haue eaten this fruite, they not knowing the cause, and beholding the vrine, by and by they ministred medicine to flanch the blood: a thing ridiculous, to fee the Phisitians so deceived. Of this fruite *Nuchtlia* and *Tetl*, which is a Stone, is compounded *Tenuchtitlan*. When this City was begun to be founded, it was placed nere vnto a great Stone that stood in the middle of the Lake, at the foote whereof grew one of these *Nopal* trees, and therefore *Mexico* giueth for armes and denise the foot of a *Nopal* tree springing from a Stone, according to the Citie name.

Mexico is as much to say, as a Spring or Fontaine, according to the property of the vowell and speech. Others doe affirme, that Mexico hath his name of a more ancient time, whole first Founders were called Mexiti, for vnto this day the Indian dwellers in one freetree of this Citie are called Mexico. The Mexiti tooke name of this principall Idoll called *Mexitli*, who was in as great veneration as *Pitalcopuhli*, god of the warre. Mexico is enuironed with sweet water, and hath three wayes to come vnto it by cawley, the one is from the West, and that cawley is a mile and a halfe long. Another from the North, and containeth three miles in length. Eastward

Three fort of
Stones.

It groweth
to an *Arum*

The name of
Mexico.

Two Lakes,
one salt, the
other fresh,
E. by 2; and
flowing by the
wind. Some
(S. by P. 2; 50)
hence wound
d. like the
clefts of the
Sea flowing
from the salt
sea.
Cause of the
floods.

100000, Ca-
noas.

The Market
place of Mex-
ico.

Order of Set-
tlers.

The divers
wards.

Indian work-
manship.

Goldsmiths
artificers.

the City hath no entree. But Southward the Cawley is six miles long, which way the water comes, entered into the City. The Lake that Mexico is planted in, although it is fresh, one, yet it is two, for the one is of water saltish, bitter, and pestiferous, and no kinde of fish liveth in it. And the other water is wholesome, good, and sweet, and bringeth forth small fish. The salt water ebboeth and floweth according to the winds that bloweth. The sweet water standeth higher, so that the good water falleth into the euill, and reuersteth not backward, as some hold opinion. The salt Lake containeth fiftene miles in breadth, and fiftene in length, and more then fife and fortie in circuit; and the Lake of sweet water containeth euen as much, in such fort, that the whole Lake containeth more then thirtie leagues, and hath about fiftie townes situated roundabout, many of which townes doe contayne five thousand households, and some ten thousand, yea and one towne called *Tzucuman*, is as bigge as Mexico. All this Lake of water springeth out of a Mountaine that standeth within sight of Mexico. The caule that the one part of the Lake is brackish or saltish, is, that the bottome or ground is all salt, and of that water great quantitie of salt is daily made.

In this great Lake are about two hundred thousand little boates, which the Indians call *Acacalles*, and the Spaniards call them *Canoas*, according to the speech of *Cuba* and *Santo Domingo*, wrought like a kneading trough: some are bigger then other some, according to the greatness of the body of the tree whereof they are made. And where I number two hundred thousand of these boates, I speake of the least, for Mexico alone hath about fiftie thousand ordinarily to carry and bring into the City victuals, provisions, and passengers, so that on the market day all the streets of water are full of them.

The Market is called in the Indian tongue *Tlanquiaz*: every Parish hath his Market place to buy and sell in: but Mexico, and *Tlatelco* only, which are the chiefest Cities, have great Faires and places fit for the same, and especially Mexico hath one place where most dayes in the yeere is buying and selling, but every fourth day is the great Market ordinarily: and the like custome is vsed throughout the Dominions of *Mtencuma*. This place is wide and large, compassed round about with doores, and is so great, that a hundred thousand persons come thither to chop and change, as a City most principal in all that Region. Wherefore the resort is from farre parts unto that place. Every occupation and kinde of merchandise hath his proper place appointed, which no other may by any meanes occupie or distube. Likewise pestiferous wares have their place accordingly (that is to say) floure, timber, lime, bricke, and all kinde of stuffe rawrough, being necessarie to build withall. Also Mats both fine and coarse of sundrie workmanship, also Coales, Wood, and all sorts of earthen vessels, glazed and painted very curiously: Deere skinned both raw and tanned in haire and without haire, of many colours, for Shoemakers, Bucklers, Targets, Jerkins, and lining of wooden Corselets: also skinned of other beasts and fowles in feathers readie dressed of all sorts, the colours and strangeness thereof was a thing to behold. The richest merchandise was Salt, and Mantels of cotton wooll of diuers colours, both great and small, some for beds, others for garments and clothing, other for tapistrie to hang houses, other coates cloth for lining breeches, shirts, table cloues, towels, napkins, and such like things.

There were also Mantels made of the leues of the tree called *Amel*, and of Palme tree, and Cony haire, which were well esteemed, being very warme, but the Courtiers made of feathers are the best: they sell threefold made of Cony haire, pieces of linnen cloth made of cotton-wooll, also skaines of threed of all colours: it is strange to see the great store of fowle, some wilde, some tame, some water fowle, and other some of rapine. All the brauerie of the Market, is the place where gold and feathers toyntly wrought is sold, for any thing that is in request is there lucily wrought in gold and feathers, and gallant colours. The Indians are so expert and perfect in this science, that they will worke or make a Butter-flie, any wild Beest, Tree, Rofe, Flowers, Herbs, Rootes, or any other thing, so liuely, that it is a thing marvellous to behold. It happeneth many times that one of these workmen in a whole day will eat nothing, only to place one feather in his due perfection, turning and tossing the feather to the light of the Sunne, into the shade or darke place, so fe where is his most natural perfection, and till his worke be finished he will neither eat nor drinke. There are few Nations of so much patience. The Art or Science of Goldsmiths, among them is the most curious, and very good workmanship engrauen with tooles made of flint, or in mold. They will cast a platter in mold with eight corners, and every corner of fullerrall metal, that is to say, the one of gold, and the other of silver, without any kind of folder: they will also found or cast a little caldron with looke handles hanging thereat, as wee vse to call a bell: they will also cast in mold a fish of metal with one scale of silver on his backe, and another of gold: they will make a Parrot or Poppinjay of metal, that his tongue shall shake, and his head moue, and his wings shatter: they will cast an Ape in mold, that both hands and feet shall stirre, and hold a spindle in his hand seeming to spin, yea and an Apple in his hand, as though he would eat it. *So Spaniards* were not a little amazed at the sight of these things. For our Goldsmiths are not to be compared unto them. They haue skill also of Amell worke, and to set any precious stone. But now as touching the Market, there is to sell Gold, Silver, Copper, Leade, Latton, and Tin, although there is but little of the three last metals mentioned. There are

pearles,

pearles, precious stones, diuers and sundrie sorts of shells, and bones, sponges and other Pedlers wares, which certainly are many and strange sorts, yea, and a thing to laugh at their Haberdasheryes and trifles. There are also many kinde of Hearbs, Rootes, and Seedes, as well to be eaten, as for medicine, for both men, women, and children, haue great knowledge in hearbs, for through poeetrie and necessity, they seeke them for their fullenance and helpe of their infirmities and diseases. They spend little among Physicians, although there are some of that Art and many Apothecaries, who doe bring into the market Ointments, Siropes, Waters, and other drugs, fit for sicke persons: they cure all diseases almost, with hearbs; yea, as much as for to kill Lice, they haue a proper hearbe for the purpose.

The fittest kinde of matters to be sold are without number, as Snakes without head and taile, little Dogs gelt, Molls, Rats, long Wares, Lice, yea and a kinde of earth, for at one feast in the yeere they haue Nets of maile, with the which they rake vp a certaine dust that is bred vpon the water of the Lake of Mexico, and that is kneaded together like unto Oas of the Sea: they gather much of this viduall, and keepe it in heapes, and make thereof Cakes like unto brick-bats: they sell not only this ware in the Market, but also send it abroad to other Cities and Markets a farre off: they eate this meate with as good stomachs as wee eate cheese, yea and they hold opinion that this skum or fatness of the water, is the cause that such great number of fowle cometh to the Lake, which in the winter season is infinite. All the Sellers pay a certaine summe for their hops or standings to the King, as a custome, and they to be preferred and defended from cheaters: and for that cause there goe certaine Sergeants or Officers vp and downe the Market to espie out malefactors. In the middle of the Market standeth a house which may be seene throughout the Faier, and there sitteth twelue ancient men for Iudges to dispatch Law matters: their buying and selling is to change one ware for another, as thus, one giueth a Hen for a bundoll of Maize, other giue Mantels for Salt, or money which is *Cacao*, and this is their order to chop and change: they haue measure and strike for all kinde of Corne, and other earthen measures for Hony and Wine, and if any Measure bee falsified, they punish the offenders, and breake their measures.

The Temple is called *Tenacalli*, that is to say, *Gods House*; *Tenel*, significth *God*; and *Calli* is the great Temple of Mexico. The Temple is a name very fit, if that house had bene of the true God. The Spaniards that vnderstand not the language, doe pronounce and call those Temples *Cues*, and the God *Vitzilicopitli*, *Pehelobol*. There are in Mexico many Churches with Towres for their Parishes and Streets, where in are Chappels and Altars where the Images and Idols doe stand, and those Chappels doe serue for buriall places of their Founders: for others are buried in the ground about some or Church-yard. All their Temples are of one fashion, therefore I shall bee now sufficient to speake of the principal Church. This Temple is square, and doth contayne euery way as much ground as a Croffe-bow can reach leuall: it is made of stone, with four doores that shutteth vpon the three Cawleys, and vpon another part of the City, that hath no Cawley but a faire street. In the middelt of this Quiddert standeth a mount of earth and stone, square likewise, and fiftie fathome high, vpon curvy way, built vponward like unto a Pyramide of Egypt, (saing the top is not sharpe, but plane and flat, and ten fathome square: vpon the West side, were steps vp to the top, in number an hundred and fourteene; which being so many, high, and made of good stone, did giue a beautiful thing. It was a strange sight to behold the Priest, some going vp, and some downe with ceremonies, or with men to be sacrificed. Vpon the top of this Temple are two great Altars, with a good space distant the one from the other, and so nigh the edge or brim of the wall, that scarcely a man may goe behinde them at pleasure. The one Altar standeth on the right hand, and the other on the left: they were but of five foot high, each of them had the backe part made of stone, painted with monstrous and foule figures, the Chappell was faire and well wrought of Mafons worke and timber, every Chappell had three lotts, one about another, fustayned vpon pillars, and the height thereof it leuved like vnto a faire Towre, and beautified the City a farre off: from thence a man may see all the City and Townes round about the Lake, which was doubtlesly a goodly prospect. And because *Ceruis* and his companie should fee the beaurie thereof, *Mtencuma* brought him thither, and showed him all the order of the Temple, euen from the foot to the top. There was a certaine plot or space for the Idol Priests to celebrate their seruice without disturbance of any. Their generall prayers were made toward the rising of the Sunne. Vpon each Altar standeth a great Idoll. Beside this Towre that standeth vpon the Pyramide, there are fourtie Towres great and small belonging to other little Temples which stand in the same circuit, the which although they were of the same making, yet their prospect was not Westward, but other ways, because there should be a difference betwixt the great Temple and them. Some of these Temples were bigger then others, and euenly one of a curuall God.

Among the which there was one round Temple, dedicated to the God of the aire, called *Quetzalcoatl*, among the which there was one round Temple, dedicated to the God of the aire, called *Quetzalcoatl*, for euen as the aire goeth round about the Heauens, euen for that consideration they made a Temple round. The entrance of that Temple had a doore, made like vnto the mouth of a Serpent, and was painted with foule and deuillish gestures, with great teeth and gums wrought, which was a thing to feare those that should enter in thereat, and especially the Christians

Forke towres.

Seuerall Temples of several gods.

A strange doore.

vnro

The buriall of
Kings in Aztec-
leo.

led then when they were on fire. Women were shrouded & for another sort. And he that suffered death for adultery, was shrouded like unto the God of lecherie, called Tlazoultécutli; he that was shrouded like unto the god of war, named Itacoe; and he that died with drunkeinesse, was shrouded like unto the god of wine, called Ometochtli. But the Souilder had an honorable shroude like unto the attire of Vitzilpuchitli, and the like order in all other sorts of deaths.

When any King of Mexico happened to fall sick, they used forthwith to put a vjlor upon the face of Tezetzilpuchi, or Vitzilpuchitli, or some other Idoll, which Offer was not taken away, until they saw whether the King did amend, or else dye: But if he chanced to dye, then word was sent throughout all his Dominion to bewaile his death, and also other peesles were sent to call the Noblemen that were his neighest kinsmen, and to warne them within foure daies to come unto his buriall.

The dead body was laid upon a fure. Man, and was watched foure nights, with great lamentation and mourning: then the body was washed, and a locke of haire cut from the crowne of his head, which was preferred as a great relick, saying that therein remained the remembrance of his soule. This done, a fine Emerald was put in his mouth, and his body shrouded in founteine rich Mantels, of colours, both rich and costly wrought. Upon the upper Mantle was set the dense or armes of Vitzilpuchitli or Tezcalipuchi, or some other Idoll, in whom the King had great confidence in his life time, and in his Temple should the body be buried. Upon his face they put a vjlor, painted with foule and Decentlie figures, beset with many small, Precious stones, and Pearles. Then they killed his slave, whose office was to light the Lampes, and make fire unto the gods in his Palace: These things done, they carried the dead body unto the Temple: some followed him with white full time, others sang the death of the King by note, for so was the custome.

The Noblemen and Gentlemen of his household carried Targets, Arrows, Maces, and Esquies to throw into the fire where the body should be burned in the Temple. The high Priest and all the Clergie received him at the Temple gate, with a sorrowfull song, and after he had said certaine words, the body was thrown into a great fire made for the purpose, with all the levells that he had about him, and all the other things which was brought to honour the buriall: also a Dogge newly strangled with an Arrow, which was to guide him by way. In the meane while that the King and Dogge were burning, the Priests sacrificed two hundred men, bound in his Ceremonie there was no ordinary tax, for sometimes they sacrificed many more: they were executed with a Bayon of flint in the breast, and their hearts taken out and thrown into the fire where the Kings body was. These miserable persons being sacrificed, and their bodies thrown into a hole; they believed assuredly that they should live for his slaves in another world: some of them were Dwarfes, monstros and deformed persons, with some women. They placed about the dead body of the King before his buriall, Roses, Flowers, and Indian dishes of meate and drinke, and no creature durst touch the same, but only the Priests, for it seemed to be an offering.

The next day following, all the altes were gathered together, and the teeth with the Emerald that was in his mouth, the things that were put into a Chest, painted on the inside with horrible figures of devils, and the locke of haire which was cut from his crowne, and another locke of haire which was preferred from the time of his birth. Then the Chest was locked, and an Image of wood made and elevated like unto the King's person, which was set on the top of the Chest. The dayes next ended foure daies, in the which the wives and daughters of the King offered great offerings at the place where his body was buried, and before the Chest and his Image.

On the fourth day after the buriall, fifteen slaves were sacrificed for his soule, and on the twentieth day other five persons were also sacrificed; likewise on the sixtie three and foure score, which was like unto the years minde.

The Kingdom of Mechucan is almost as great as the Empire of Mexico, and when any King of that Countrey happened to be visited with sickness, and brought to such extremity, that hope of life were past, according to the opinion of Physicians, then would he name and appoint which of his Sonnes should inherit the estate; and being knowne, the new King or heire, accustomed first for all the Governours, Captaines, and valiant Souilders, who had any office or charge to come unto the buriall of his Father: and he that came next, from thenceforth was held for a Traitor, and so punished, when the death of the old King was certaine, then came all degrees of Estates, and brought presents to the new King, for the approbation of his Kingdom, but if the King were not thoroughly dead, but at the point of death, then the gates were shut in, and none permitted to enter; and when his life was departed, then began a generall cry and mourning, and they were permitted to come where their dead King lay, and to touch him with their hands: this being done, the carcase was washed with sweet waters, and then a fustian put upon him, and a paire of shoes made of a Deers skynne put on his feete, and about his anckles were then certaine Beils of Gold, about his wrists of his hands were put Manillas of Turkeie, and other Bracelets of Gold, likewise about his necke they hung other collers of precious stones, and gold, and rings in his eares, with a great Turkeie in his weathor pipe. Then his body was laid upon a large beere, whereon was placed a good bed under him: on his one side lay a Bowe with a quiver of Arrows, and on his other side lay an Image made of fine Mantels of his owne stature or height, with a great tuffe of fine feathers, shoes upon his feete, with Bracelets, and a collar of gold. While his body was a doing, others were busied in washing the men and wo-

The order of
buriall of the
Kings of Me-
chucan.

men which should be stoned for to accompany him into Hell: these wretched folke that should be stoned were banqueted and filled with drinke, because they should receive their death with lesse paine. The new King did appoint those who should dye for to serve the King his Father, but yet many of them had rather have been without his service, notwithstanding some simple fancies offered that adduce death for to have the office of keppr of his limits which was not to wear, another for the office of Cup-bearer, to be his Cooke, and another to serve for Laundrie. They flew also many woman-flaues, and free maidens, for to attend upon the Gentlemen, and moreover, one of every occupation within the then they painted their faces yellow, and put garlands of sweet flowers upon each of their heads. Then they went in order of procession before the beere whereon the dead King was carried, some went playing on Instruments made of Snails shells, others played upon flutes and flutes of Sea-tur-tles, others went whistling, and the most part weeping: the Sonnes of the dead King and other Nobles towards the Temple of the god Citicauac: his kinsmen went round about the Beere, singing a sorrowfull song. The officers and household servants of the Court with other Magistrates and Masters of w-

About midnight they departed in the order afore said, out of the Kings palace, with great light of Cerse passed, attended to make cleane the streets. And when they were come to the Temple, they went foure times round about a great fire in the side of the wood of Pine tree, which was prepared to burne their dead body: then the Beere was laid upon the fire, and in the meane while that the body was burning, as they were appalled to behold the Temple.

The next day in the morning, the altes, Sonnes and levells, was gathered and laid upon a rich Mantle, the which was carried to the Temple gate, where the Priests attended to beseech the devils relicks, whereof they made a dough or paste, and thereof an Image which was apperelled like a man, with a vjlor like Idoll: then the Beere was laid upon the fire, and in the meane while that the body was burning, as they were appalled to behold the Temple.

The next day in the morning, the altes, Sonnes and levells, was gathered and laid upon a rich Mantle, the which was carried to the Temple gate, where the Priests attended to beseech the devils relicks, whereof they made a dough or paste, and thereof an Image which was apperelled like a man, with a vjlor like Idoll: then the Beere was laid upon the fire, and in the meane while that the body was burning, as they were appalled to behold the Temple.

In Mexico were twelve Judges, who were all Noblemen, grave, and well learned in the Mexican Iudges Lawes. These men lived only by the rents by the rents that properly appertaine to the maintenance of Iustice, and in any cause judged by them, it was lawfull for the parties to appeale unto any other twelve Iudges, who were of the Prince blood, and always abode in the Court, and were maintained at the Kings owne cost and charge. The inferior Iudges came ordinarily once a month to consult with the higher, and to give sentence: foure of these Iudges came the Iudges of every Province within the Mexican Empire, to consult with the Iudges of Mexico, but all doubtful causes were referred to the King, only to be judged by him, and no sentence passed above foure score daies without finall end and determination. There were in Mexico twelve Sergeants, whose office was to arrest, and to call parties before the Iudges. Their garments were painted Adwels, whereby they were knowne a farr off. The Prisons were under ground, Prisoners were kept in such a manner, that they were not to see the light of day. If any prisoner were called to take in with the order was, that he should touch the ground with one of his fingers, and then to Winckles and his fingers, taking warning thereof, of the earth which did forsake him. But some doe interpret the sentence that the prisoner should not see the light of day, but he might come to such extremity, as to eat earth. Some say that the name, and call upon the God of the crime, which cause the matter touched.

The Iudges take their bribes or gifts, as forthwith put out of his office, which was accounted a most vile and dishonourable reproach. The Indians did affirme that Neaculapichitli did hang a Iudge in Tezcalco, for having an unjust sentence, he himselfe knowing the contrary. The Murderer was executed without

Theft.

Disguise of

sex.

Duch capital.

without exception. The woman with childe that wilfully caileth her creature, suffereth death for the same. The Theefe for the first offence, was made a slave, and hanged for the second. The Traitor to the King and Common-weale, was put to death with extreme torments. The woman taken in Adultery apparrellled for the same, and likewise the Man taken in Whoredoms attire. Every one that challengeth another to fight, except in the warres, was condemned to dye. In Tezcuco the fine of Sodome was punished with death, and that Law was instituted by Necaualpincinthe, and Necaualcoio. who were Judges, which abhorred that filthy sinne, and therefore they deserved great praise, for in other Provinces that abominable sinne was not punished, although they have in those places common Stewes, as in Panuco.

The end of the fift Booke.

ENG.



AN ALPHABETICALL TABLE OF THE PRIN- CIPALL THINGS CONTAI- NED IN THE FIVE BOOKES of the third Part of PVRCBAS his Pilgrims.

THE first Number notes the Page, the second Number directs you to the number noted in the back-margin of the Pages, Right againſt which or betwixt that and the next number, the note is to be found. Obſerve, that wher-as many words may bee well written with I. or with X. the Reader is to looke to both. Obſerve alſo, that Name of Saints or Knights, are not ſet under S. but in the Alphabets of their proper Names.

A



- Baccus, is the Caphian Sea, 69.60. The largeneſſe of it, 70.1
- Abafcia, or Habafcia, is India media, 106.50. in Adage. Rich in Gold, ibid.
- Abedalcuzia, 252.60
- Abortion cauſed by an Herbe, 291.40
- Acapulco, the Promiſe and Port in the Weſt Indies; the Latitude, 271.60
- Acia or Akas; ſo the Tartars call the Alman Chriſtians, 10.10.
- Aequines to the Tartars, 12.40
- Achbaluch Mangi, which in Tartars Language is, the White Cuſtard of the Mangi, 90.1
- Accories as big as Apples, 230.50
- Accens the Chinois haue fine ſew-
rad, 384.20
- Accounts call by graines of Corne, 1053.50
- Accord betwene Poles and Ruſſes, about choſing their Emperour, 788.789
- Acquaintance the Ceremony of be-
gunning it, 374
- Acacron the Armenian Prophet, 49.50
- Acon the Citie; Arabick and Syriack underſtood there, 13.50
- Adams Sepulcher in Zeilan, 106.1
- More of it as Padia, ibid.
- Adams Apples grow in Perſia, 71.10
- Adders of India, their ſeverall ſorts and naturer, 976.1
- Adem, the Soldan of it diſcomfith, 106.50
- Admirals Iland, 474.40. Sea ber-
ſes there, 512
- Adoniam, the manner of it in Mexico, 1037.50. & 1008.1.
- & 1046.60
- Adoption praſtiſed in Ruſſia, 740.40
- Adulterie puniſhed with Death in Peru, 1058.40
- Adulteries Dowries given to poore Girdes, 270.10
- Adulterie & Witalerie, the puniſh-
ment, 183.40
- Adulterers how puniſhed in Chi-
na, 204.10
- Edget the King, his mightie Na-
me, 619.40. Emperour of the O-
cean, ibid.
- Ageland and Halgeland diſcom-
red, 212.1
- Aguiro-Riall, under it myſt and
regies, and why, 918.40. Ne
ſo be: as the Antients held it;
very cold in March, cauſe of
a 22
- the temperature; though the
Summe bee very hote; the dayes
and night equal, 920. No
Calid under the Line, 923.60.
926. The Ayre under or neareſt
ſuſtier then the Ayre about the
Poles, and why, 925.30. Es-
ſterne and Weſterne winder con-
uall under the Line, 925.40.
- See Torride Zone.
- Aequinoctiall, whether healthfull li-
uing under it, 889.10
- Ethiopian Patriarch, 227.30
- Affinitie in a different Sinne ſun-
dres not Matrimoine in China, 394.10
- Age, ſo the Saracens ſtile the Mecca
Pilgrims, 311
- Age, much honoured in China, 193.1
10. 369.20. Olde Age begins
at fiftye, 394.1
- Age of three hundred yeres atoned
from the Weſt Indies, 875.20
- Ages of the world, the Mexicans
reſpect by ſo many Sunnes,
1136.40. Their odder opinions,
thereabout, ibid.
- Agilitie of ſile Mexicans, excel-
lent, 1065.10
- Ague, a Sueraigne Ayre for the
Cure of it, 72.60
- Ajazz or Glazzo, the Heauens wher-
about, 51.40
- Aingharan the Region, 512.16
- Aini

Altar a people of Tartars, *China*, 319.30.
 Altars or Akas, they are Chris-
 tians of the Greeke Church.
 They use Greeke Bookes. They
 pray for the Dead. A simple
 people, 10.10.20
 Albania the Countrey, where, 16.
 20
 Albace or Albac, one of the King-
 domes of Georgia. Albas a Ki-
 ner of it, 656.1
 Albori or Albior the Mountaine,
 110.30
 Alcatraz, an Indian Cormorant de-
 scribed, 979
 Alchum much studied in China,
 369.30. And doted upon, 396.
 50
 Ale of Rie, 616.50
 Alehouses in Russia pay tribute,
 429.30. The wicked abuses there-
 upon, 421.40
 Aleppo women by the Tartars,
 117.1
 Alhacen his storie of Tamerlane,
 140.40
 Allaying of Silver the curiouse,
 951.40
 Allen, the Fowle in Greenland, the
 nature of it, 713.40
 Almanackes in China, 346.10
 Almshouses for the Dead in China, 274.
 1.20.50
 Almshouses the Chinois will give none,
 175.20
 Almonds of Coco Nuts, March-
 pane made of them, 958.50
 Allome in Turkie, forestalled by the
 Italians, 51.20
 Allome separates Gold from Drasse,
 942
 Alphabet of Gotish Letters, 658
 Alphabet the Chinois have none,
 384.40. nor Syllables, ibid.
 Altair the Mountaine, where all the
 Tartar Princes are buried, 78.
 20
 Altars in the Russian Church, 450.
 20.452
 Altars and Altar Cloathes in Chi-
 na, 296.30
 Altars in China revered,
 263.1
 Altar in Fort the Nestorians had,
 ibid.
 Altar of Leather, 37.40

Antea of the Sea, found a
 gaine, ibid.
 Anchorites in China, 637.40
 Ancon an Island dispeopled, 308.
 10
 Andabaylas the Province in Peru,
 the Temple of the Sunne in it,
 893.60
 Andanico and Azzao Minerals,
 where, 71.1
 Andes the Mountaines of India,
 the diversitie of their tempera-
 ture, length, Beasts, Soyle, &c.
 881.50. 887.20.30. Covered
 with Snow, where: their March,
 898
 Angaman, where Men have Dogges
 heads, 104.10
 Angle lines of bale finnes, Ang-
 le hookes of Fish bones in
 Greenland, 836.1
 Anian Straights, some fabulou
 reports of them, 848.60. & 853.
 20. A note of them by Master
 Lo ke, 849.50. Discovered by
 a Greeke Pilot for the Spini-
 ards: hopes of the North-west
 Passage that way, the ascription
 and wideness of them, 850
 Anian Island by China, the many
 Fords and Pearle-fishings there,
 905.20
 Anill or Indico, how it grows,
 957.40
 Annoynting, the King of Nor-
 way annoynted at his Coronation,
 623.30
 Annoynting of the Mexican Kings,
 1009.30
 Answer a strange one of a Mahu-
 metan, 253
 Antarcticke Starre the Indians saye
 by, and not by the Compasse, 139.
 30
 Antereda the Ile, 123.30
 Anthonie March, his diligence for
 the Discovering to the River
 Ob, 804.805
 S. Anthonies, the West of Cuba,
 858. The best way thence to
 the Port of Saint Iohn de Vlue,
 858.60
 Antigur Islands, 260.45
 Antients or Engines, of Silke in
 China, 296
 Antioch women from the Christians

Theft.

Disguise of
sexe.

Duell capital.

without exception. The woman with child that wilfully casteth her creature, suffereth death for the same. The Theft for the first offence, was made a fine, and hanged for the second. The Traitor to the King and Common-wealth, was put to death with extreme torments. The Woman taken in Mann apparelled for the same, and likewise the Man taken in Womans attire. Every one that challenges another to fight, except in the warres, was condemned to dye. In Tezcuco the fine of Sodome was punished with death, and that Law was intimated by Nequaipincintli, and Nequaico, who were judges, which abhorred that filthy sin, and therefore they deserved great praise, for in other Provinces that abominable sin was not punished, although they have in these places common Stewes, as in Panuco.

The end of the fifth Booke.

ENG.



AN ALPHABETICALL
TABLE OF THE PRIN-
CIPALL THINGS CONTAI-
NED IN THE FIVE BOOKES
of the third Part of PVRCBAS
his Pilgrims.

THE first Number notes the Page, the second Number directs you to the number noted in the back-margin of the Pages, Right against which or betwixt that and the next number, the note is to be found. Observe, that whereas many words may be well written with I. or with Y. the Reader is to looke to both. Observe also, that Name of Saints or Knights, are not set under S. but in the Alphabet of their proper Names.

A



- Bacco, in the Caspian Sea, 69.60. The largesse of it, 70.1
Abastia, or Habastia, in India, 106.50. in Marg. Rich in Gold, ibid.
Abelakuria, 593.60
Abortion caused by an Herbe, 991.40
Acapulco, the Promontory and Port in the West Indies; the Latitude, 821.60
Acias or Aias; so the Tartars call the Alutian Caribians, 10.10.
Enemies to the Tartars, 12.40
Achbaloch Mangi, which in Tartars Language is, the White Cuts of the Mangi, 90.1
Acomes as big as Apples, 510.50
Accents the Chinois have few few-rah, 324.20
Accounts call by grains of Corne, 1053.50
Accord between Poles and Russes, about changing their Emperors, 788.789
Acquaintance the Ceremony of be-
giving it, 374
Acacron the Armenian Prophet, 49.50
Acacia the Tree; Arabick and Syriack understood there, 13.50
Adams Sepulchre in Zeilan, 106.20
Mere of that Fabre, ibid.
Adams Apples grow in Persia, 71.30
Adders of India, show severall first and last, 976.1
Adem, the Souldan of it discovered, 106.50
Admirals Island, 474.40. See her-
eafter, 512
Adoration, the manner of it in Mexico, 1027.30. & 1028.1.
& 1046.60
Adoption, practised in Russia, 740.40
Adulteries punished with Death in Peru, 1058.40
Adulterers Dowries given to poore Gyles, 278.40
Adulteries & Whoredoms, the punish-
ment, 182.40
Adulterers how punished in Chi-
na, 202.10
Edgar the King, his mightie Na-
me, 619.40. Emperors of the O-
cean, ibid.
England and Halgeland discov-
ered, 212.1
Equinoctiall, under it myssil and
rayne, and why, 918.40. Not
so be: as the Antients held it;
very cold in March, causes of
the temperance; though the
Summer be very late; the dayes
and nightes equal, 920. No
Calends under the Line, 923.60.
926. The Ayre under or above
passeth then the Ayre above the
Poles, and why, 925.30. Ea-
gerne and severne winds conti-
nuall under the Line, 925.40.
See Terrible Zone.
Equinoctiall, whether deathfull li-
ning under it, 889.10
Ethiopian Parliamēt, 327.30
Affinitie in a different Sinne be-
tween Matrimons in China,
394.10
Age, so the Saracens stile the Mecca
Pilgrims, 311
Age, much honoured in China, 193.
1. & 369.20. Olde Age begins
at fiftie, 394.1
Age of three hundred yeres attained
in the West Indies, 875.20
Ages of the world, the Mexicans
represent by so many Sunnes,
1136.40. Their odd opinion,
thereabout, ibid.
Agility of the Mexicans, excel-
lent, 1065.10
Ague, a Soveraigne Ayre for the
Cure of it, 73.60
Aijax or Glazzo, the Hemon, where-
about, 514.0
Aingharin the Region, 512.10
Aini

THE TABLE.

[illegible]

THE TABLE

Bears and Sheep embroiled in
China, 176, 60. *Beaver's skin,* 277
Borichen the 17th b^y Hispaniola, 338
Boris Phedorowich, his great Of-
fices & Privileges in Russia, 752
30, Ho Prefect to Eugene Bida-
zeth, 745, 60. Ho Power, 744
40. And Polage in Income, 744
Dofey, a Noble Emperor, 749
Machoff, enjoys the Empire
Accettit, 745. His Wife, Son,
and Daughter, Corvantage, Ex-
pedition against the Grim Tar-
tars, Ho Palace, The beginning
of his Affairs, Seeks a Wife for
his Son one of England, 746
Dofoy, a Noble with King
Lamas, Dissatisfied, 749
now Chastised before his death,
751. Ho care of his Sonne; Pre-
sent, &c. 752. His Wife and Son
possessing them selves, the Daugh-
ter dies, 753, 60. His Patient to
the English Malcoine Mer-
chant, 754. Reports of his Death
spread, 755, 60. Buriall, 755
Boatmen, the course of it, 613
Boatman configned to the Libe-
rators, 621
Botta's strange head story, the Tar-
tarian women, 660, & 7.1
Boudguy sometimes Secretary to
Demetrius the Russian, how he
was taken, Related by the Rus-
sians, 675, 60. Escape into Af-
ghania, 676, 60.
Boy of City writing, and playing
tricks with a living Boy, 680
Boyes of Mexico being laid up
of Serpent, 1042, 10
Boyes put bellies to earn their li-
ving, 1095, 40
Boylng Pantheons in Greenland,
1095, 40
Boylng meaten in Greenland,
1095, 40
Boylng in a burning house to the di-
quet, 1212, 10
Boxe of curious art wrought in la-
pon, 325
Brasapicon, a Haven, 353, 20
Bramble-betwixt the Lefjivier, 37
Frames the people Lords of Ru-
la, Rich in Gold and Rubie,
169, 40
Bramenes, most true Merchants,
105, 10, 7. boy time abroad and
 fifty years, ibid. Their Displea-
sure, ibid.
Framenes are Witches. The names
of their Gods which they worship,

166, 30, 40. themselves yet a-
line are surprised for God, 166
The Tartar nation, ibid. Their
degrees of Religion many, 167
Branding of Thebes in China,
395, 20
Branding? Thief in Island, 651
10
Braile, would not grow in Venice,
104-1
Braide, Primitives, the late said, di-
versity temperate, 104
Trafique, Plantations by Portu-
giz, and their Lastinds, their
Peis, River, &c. And their La-
tyndes, 104
Brazilero in Podolia, 632, 10
Brazilero Serps, and the Ministry of
her, represented by, China,
632, 10
Brazilero, Tartaria made by, 632
Brazilero, 632, 10
Brazilero, the Chinese eat not common-
ly, 635, 40. Rice killed, instead
of it, ibid. Bread of Wheat
without yeast, found, 165, 50
Brazilero very diller in China, 130, 50
Brazilero after dinner in Oremuz, 721
Brazilero Roots and bark, 416, 10
Brazilero made of fish yel, 637, 40
Brazilero of the West Indies, 93, 50, 94
Brazilero solden in the stocks of water,
265, 50
Brazilero, from One danger, or in
Herdland, 637, 40
Brazilero, or Coracynkone in Island
646, 30
Brazilero and drinks wine, better, 255,
60
Breaking his Scutcheon, as way of
mourning, 262, 40
Breath holden half an hourgetogeter,
963-1
Breewing mixt Holy-water in Ruf-
lan, 456, 1
Bribe, in court of Justice, how
presented in China, 34, 10
Bricks preferred before Iron
in China, 34, 20
Bridge, an admirable one, 398, 30
& 299, 50. & 91, 10 & 180, 30
Bridge made with men puzelly
together, 628
Bridge of natural stone, 990, 30
Bridge of Straw, 1056, 30
Bridges of Hair and Straw, 934,
50
Bridges, 12000, in one City, 98
Bridges, few Toll, M. Bridges by Treatise about the
probabilities of the North-west
Passage, 821
Britumde every where digged in

Island, 648, 10, & 649, 30
Buttes, for East winds, 88, 30.
Bye of Transylvanian reason for
their blood, Chiefly by calling
Terra Firma, 89
Britains fishing at Island eight
hundred years since, 657, 40
Brits the River where Gold is
found, 91, 3
Brother preferred before the Sun,
in Peru, 104
Brother crying in Church to
Ruffia, saying, I was called
by you, 210, 10. She is called
by, Ducheiff, 210, 10
Brother not to be his wife more, 355, 80
C. Her gift, portion and apparel,
428
Brotherhood in Duke of Ru-
lan, 456
Bubalus bred, 456, 1
Bubalus run, 50, 60, in man-
ner, 456
Buffaloes yield in the Plough, 456
60. How they generate and feed,
ibid.
Buildings, fewer admirable in Pe-
guin, 273, 40
Buildings less light in China, 382
Buildings of Acon, 382, 50
Buildings of Ruffia, the manner,
382, 50
Buildings of Peru, how farre
China, 291, 10
Bulgaria the greater, are most ar-
restless Nations, 16, 40
Bulgarian warre by the Tartars, 114
Bulgarian Secretary in Manchu-
ria, 486, 60
Bulgarians, the Tartars
for fighting them, 486, 1
Bulgarian Gums brought by water,
393, 60
Bungo the Kingdom, 393, 60
Burke, the Japanese Tanque,
ibid.
Burners, like candles, unde-
stroyed of the Coast, 809, 30
Burnsides Land, 809, 1
Buying Mountains or Volcanos
like Islands, 875, 30. One of
them-mitted the Capter and crew
of a Calender drowned there, 880
60. The cause of the burning, 891
20
Burnle Cape in Greenland, like
Latitude and Variation there,
83, 10
Busayll, in new Shells, 270, 10
C. A Coffer, with a Treason in it, ibid.
The manner in Ruffia, 270
Buryall places of the Chinese, 168
40. Their Sepchry above the
choice of it, ibid. Nine buried

THE TABLE

another Cause, ibid.
Buriall of the Iapionians, 337.10
Buriall of the Chinois, 339.30-35
Funerals and Mourning.
Buriall of Tartars without their Cu-
stoms, 84.1
Buriall of the Grondelancers, 83.5
x. c. 836.10
Buryals the Chinois Superfluous
as, 337.10
Buryals of the Mordwit Tartar,
443.40
Buryals of the Manoules of the
land, 88.40
Buryals of the Mexicans, 1019.40
Buryals of the Wet Indian, 994.
40
Butle Island discovered, 582.10
Butle Island false place in the Coast,
815.1 c. 832.40
Butlermans robe, 218.40
Buskine wears in Russia, instead of
Steeles, 459 & 460
o Burcher in Russia, chief Lord
Treasurer, Author of his Coun-
sellors liberto, 791
Butcher-work in Tartaria, 217.50
Butter made in Russia, 217.50
phically, 560. *Kept in Ramblers*
skins, 560
Bustons like The Variation here,
827.60

—C

| | |
|---|----------------|
| Abul, a <i>Mari Town</i> , 311-90 | |
| Acacbe, a <i>Casile in Syria</i> , 123 | |
| ACRO a Well Indian tribe deformed by instead of money, and to make drake of, the tree and feast, | 95,96-97 |
| CAO Nats, of which many were made for the Indians, 874-10. The trees described, | 878-80 |
| Gaiques, the Priests of Calcar, 313 | |
| Catar, the title first assumed by the Emperors of Kuita, 760 (the falsest imitation) & 781. | 781-80, 771-10 |
| Cifra named by the Tartars from Crim Tartar, 44-20. Open the Buxine Sea, | ibid. |
| Change, or Kangtata, a people, 18. | |
| A Great Green Country, 19, 10. | |
| Caim the great City, | 96-20 |
| Calaids the Province, | 90-60 |
| Calaba, where Chamboles are made, | 89-10 |
| Caldana used for beads, and value, and price, | 410-20 |
| Colein, the people described, 312-10 | |
| Cambalgriffen, the Cat of the | 123-30 |
| Dad-3g-apo, Removed from the River, ibid. Callid Talidu, ibid. | |
| Cambaio the Kingdom, 253-20 Subject to Siam, 166, 20. The King a Bramene, ibid. Albu Sincares; defies the Priests; are Slaves, 167-10. Her search about the river, ibid. The slaves driven out by the Mogares, 15 | |
| Cambrickses and Lawner where made, | 89, 10 |
| Cathelon, see Ligatadee | |
| Cathire nes, 107-20. Sold weights for weights with Gold, 104-10 | |
| Cheche, the chief City of Tangut, ibid. | |
| Chien why the Tartarian Prince found, 14-10 | |
| Cinnamites exported by Tschia, while they were, | 661, 662 |
| Canaries, the distance from Spain, 838-20 | |
| Candle-light may sometimes take place, | 67-10 |
| Candles in the Greek Church, 20-17 | |
| Candles of Birch, | 216-40 |

Candles burning without flame, 39
a Coral Street, 799-1040
Candelmas day, *fumblings*, 130
China, 394
Candianes, the East point of the
White Sea, 485, 606 & 517, 630
see, 531-10
Cangu, the Province, *indian*
name of the place, 94-10
Cannibals or Man-eaters, 86
Cannibal life in the Well Islands
there (general names), and
trades, introduced by Man-eaters,
Cannibal Gophers a valiant man,
who left eating of men, their
defences from Saint Domingo,
869
Canoe as an *Ensign*, of *dispute* in
China, 184-10
Confucius Calfio, *what*, 313
Canton this City defurbed, 330
Canton the City defurbed, 190
Canton the City defurbed, 190
30 & 171, *etc.* The *Man-
gophers* Hanse defurbed, 171
30. Their *prudent* Hanse defurbed,
171
Canton, *the true name* of, 122
Cannots the King, *his* 66
Cannots, 611-10
Cape Cod, the Latitude, 588-10
The Soundings by it, 587, &
588
Cape Bapo, 474-10
Cape Swetinos, 532-10
Cape Comfort the latitude, and
inspired from London, 474-10
No hope of the North-west
age that way, ibid.
Cape Canby or Noun Zembla, the
latitude, 513
Cape de Bas in New-found-land,
800-1
Cape Nauw, 475-40. The latitude,
inspired from London, 474-10
Cape Taff, 476-10
Cape Deffedo, or Deffedo in the
Magellane Straights, the latitude,
901-10
Cape Christin in Gronelands, 915-10
Cape Defflation, the latitude, 816
10. Of *Queen Anne* or *Queen*
Sophia Gronelands, 915-10
Of *James* *James*, *Queen Anne*,
and of *Prince Henry*, 99-10
Cape-Kege, 232-10. Swetinos,
bid. Grace, 233-40
Caphs or Theodora in *Tasmania*,
63-6
Caphs, 10 the Tartars call *Chir-
lians*, 235, 10 & 238-10
Caphs, 239-40
Caphs, 239-40

THE TABLE

Capherite *u* *Cith*: the Sarcen
must not enter *u*, 311
Cap *on Imperial Oceanus* of Ru-
lia, 421.10
Cap *affected in China*, at *Man-
elate*, 324.10. *The fellow* of
this *Cap* or *Cable*, 394.30
Caps of their *Leaved, square*, and
round, 411.1
Cap of the *Learned* in China,
324.10
Cap of China *Scholars*, the *foli-
ous*, 329.1
Cap, *an Ensigne of dignity* in Chi-
na, 184.30. & 300.30. *Gown*
to the *Graduates*, 185.10
Caps of the *Louises* described, 429
30
Cap, *Gordian* and *Boat* of the *Cap*,
as *Officers*, 390.10
Capon, a *Philosophical* convul-
sion with, 270.30
Cappadocia, is *on the West* of Ar-
menia the *Greater*, divided from
it by the *Euphrates*, 53.60
Caphise, the *Tartarian* name for
the *Comman*, 11.1
Captives *slain*, in the *Ornaments*
of Indian *Ladies* and *so* *war-
raged*, *farreback* and *east*,
1023.1.10. & 1023.60. *The*
measur, 1045.50. &c.
Captives *why* the *Mexicans* de-
fied *to* *take*, then *to* *kill*, 1037
40
Carn in *Tartarian* *signifieth* *hale*,
840. & 14.10
Car-Cathay, 314.1 404.40
Beginning of the *Tartars* *great*,
404.50
Caracorum, a *migraite* *Cite*, 77
30
Carbocation described, 39.1
Caracorum the *Cite* of *Mongol*
Chan, 35.40. *Hu* *Præfector*
thar, *ibid*. *Hu* *Præfector*
there, 36.1. *A* *Netho-
lian* *Chow* there, 36.30. *Se-
veral* *Nations* of *Christians*:
there, 37.1
Caracorum, *two* *monesties* and
ten *days* *journey* from the *Volga*, 47
10
CARICAS, the *Province* in the *West*
Indies, 866.60. *The* *chief*
Tennes and their *diffances*, *dis-*
covered, *tributary* *Indies*, *Puris*,
Capit, *Puris*, *Lakes*, *Gulfs*,
Ruurs, *Seyls*, *Beasts*, *medici-
nab* *Stones*, *Gems*, *Ornaments*, &c.
ibid. 867.30
Caraculac, *clothe* *Kows* *Midge*, 27
40
Carambis the *Provincy*, 636.
10
Caramorum the *River*, 10
Carn the *people*, 380.90
Caranus a *mercant* *people*, 71.30
their *inhabitant*, 71.30
Carbuncle or *Rubie*, *imitating* the
Stones, 802.1
Card-pipe frequent in China, 399
10
Carandian the *Province*, 91
10
Caratius the *Cite*, the *Comman*,
the *thervatons*, 89.40
Caratena in the *West* *Indies*, the
Cite, *Seyls*, *Races*, *Gummes*,
Ralmes, &c. *Laudate* of the *Chi-
na*, and *descriptions* of it, 886.
10
Carriage the *goods* *runners* of it,
631.30
Cars with *four* *wheles*, *the*
five *hundred* *Horses*, 165.50
Carualles, in the *West* *Indies* the
distance from *Venezela*
to *hale*, 867.60
Carawood, what in *Tartarian*, 349
60
Caratzen the *Country* and *Cite*, 91
10
Caratzen *the* *City* in the *Ruurs* and
Almonates, 91.10
Caulie, now called *Alon*, 54.40, in
margin.
Calan covered by the *Raffo*, 740.
10
Calabar the *Province*, 740.40
Calabar the *Kingdom*, 322.50
Calicut in *India*, 740.10
Calicut, the *Chief*, *governor* of the
Tartarian *Province*, 84.10
Caskar a *Cite*, 240.40
Calipan Sea, or the *Hyracian*
and *whit* 54.50. *Whence* *the*
whit, 16.1
Calipan Sea is a *Lake*, the *extent* of
it, 109.60. *Hale* *several* *Gulfs*
to *Calicut*, 10.1, 161.60
Calipan Sea, with *described*, 240.
10
Calipan Sea, with *described*, 240.
How *far* *from* the *Buxine*, *ibid*.
The *water*, *both* *fresh* and *Salt*,
ibid. See also pag. 245. *French*
10
California or *Calicut*, a *Province* of
Mexico, 160.160
Calicut in *Guinea*, *ibid*. *The*
champs of the *paris*, 21.10
the *Taurica* *Cheront* (of) 53.10
Caña Fitula in the *West* *Indies*,
877.1
Caña the *tree*, *his* *roots* *farre-*
downward for *water*, 933.
30. *Where* *and* *how* is *grown*,
895.50
Cattle kind of *Sheep*, 27
10
Calfes, fine on the *Bank* of
bbb

| | |
|--|----------------------|
| Ob, | 805:1 |
| Cathro <i>Chie in Chile, the latitude,</i> | 809:10 |
| Catawus the <i>deputy in China,</i> | 809:10 |
| Catays the <i>black or Kara Cat-</i> | |
| <i>ays, fierce warriors from the</i> | |
| <i>Citays,</i> | 56:50 |
| Cathay, the <i>mightiness of</i> | |
| <i>the Kingdom,</i> | 188:40 |
| <i>They think the rest of the World</i> | |
| <i>nothing, that, Asia unwar-</i> | |
| <i>like people, build. The heath-</i> | |
| <i>ens,</i> | 188:40 |
| Cathay is China, | 383:40 |
| Catay the <i>greatest City of</i> | |
| <i>whither he Pequin in China,</i> | |
| <i>801:30 in marriage Match</i> | |
| <i>after there,</i> | 188:40 |
| Cathay described, | 33:50 |
| 311:1. <i>There is Cathay,</i> | 18:40 |
| <i>Then still in Phylis,</i> | 18:40 |
| Cathayans write with <i>Pencil, and</i> | |
| <i>in Character,</i> | 34:10 |
| Catharine of China, | 345:5 |
| Cities in the Tartarian <i>Empire in</i> | |
| <i>Land,</i> | 30:30 |
| Catchpooles in China <i>their Law</i> | |
| <i>was,</i> | 20:1 |
| Catturpa, a Town, | 20:1 |
| Caragoes the <i>River navigable and</i> | |
| <i>the Samindia Country into the</i> | |
| <i>Bay,</i> | 544:10 To see 551:10 |
| Cat a <i>mountain, cats we,</i> | 6:58 |
| Cats of Hispaniola, <i>their crowing,</i> | |
| | 297 |
| Cattle and <i>with silk,</i> | 23:30 |
| Caucchin. China the <i>Kingdom of</i> | |
| <i>50. Where, 168:20. Their man-</i> | |
| <i>neries the same with the Chinese,</i> | |
| <i>but their language is different,</i> | |
| | 168:20 |
| Caucchin China, <i>tributary to Chi-</i> | |
| <i>na, 415. The King tribute paid</i> | |
| <i>in gold, that The people differ</i> | |
| <i>from the Chinese,</i> | 168:20 |
| Ciausou the <i>Mountain,</i> | 18:10 |
| Called <i>Cocoi,</i> | 188:40 |
| Caucery, <i>where and how made,</i> | |
| | 10:6 |
| Cautillians to get <i>Money,</i> | 61:1 |
| Caucerys <i>admirable art,</i> | 71:30 |
| Cayo, China <i>Woods,</i> | 61:1 |
| Cayan the <i>Cities described,</i> | 23:10 |
| Cayan by the <i>Rifle,</i> | 439:30 |
| Ceracins <i>planted of Rice,</i> | 40:10 |
| | 35:50 |
| Crescadian Christians in <i>Tauca-</i> | |
| <i>639:60. Their Debt Appendix</i> | |
| <i>916 Tartar,</i> | 642 |
| Cedars common in the <i>West Indies,</i> | |
| | 96:10 |
| Ce | |

THE TABLE.

by his Eunuchs, or by Pettition, 392.40. His Arms or Emblems reversed, ibid. & 405. They that speak to him, cover their mouths, 392.40. & 405. His religious preference, ibid. He is yellow, and none else may be, ibid. His Robe and Palace, ibid. They reckon by his Reign, 393.1. Why he comes not abroad, 396.30. He is the High Priest, 397.10. China words.

Hiam-xan, a Mayor, 327.30. Aniam, the same that Hiam-xan, 327.30.

Hien a City, and Ci-hien Governor of a City, 327.30.

Chien a Governor of a City, 327.30.

Aitao, the Admirall, 327.50. He is Governor over all Strangers: See Strangers.

Chien, the Provincial Officer, 327.50.

Cia, yuen, the same that Chien, 327.50. & 389.60.

Ci, a Governor. So Chien, the Governor of the City, 327.30. & Ci-fu, the Governor of Siau-chin, 328.1.

Thien Chu, the Lord of Heaven, 328.30.

Lin-chi-tau, a Governor of three Provinces, 329.60.

Tutan a Vicerey, or Lord Deputy, 330.20.

Sinchi, three Waytes, 332.60.

Celut, or Scilau, the Lady of the Country of Ware: 336.10.

Neughan, The Southerne Inn, 336.10.

Sciepathau, Eighteen Streamers, 336.50.

Yamtu, the Sonne of the Sea, 337.40.

Lu Pu, the Council of Magistrates, 338.60. & 388.

Chian, the greatest River, 340.39.

Cho, a River, 340.39.

Horices, a faster sort of Ships, 341.20.

Lythe Tartars, 342.40.

Pu, or Pu, the North party, 342.40.

Sun-boly or Sain, 345.10.

Sciango, a Saint: the greatest witness to some learned in China, 344.19. & in marg.

Ly, used for N, in some Dialects, 348.10.

B, the effeme of them, 342.40.

Holy Pa, God, 345.10.

Schin mu, holy Mother, 345.10.

M, a Mother, 345.10.

Nian a Queen, 345.10.

Van van Siu, A thousand thousand years, 347.10.

Tantu, the Priests of the learned, 347.40.

Caifu, a Caravan or company of Merchants, 361.1. & 364.40.

Conduer, a Court warden, 361.39.

Colay, the Council of State, 372.39. in marg. & 386.50. & 388.

Zinzin, an Intercession of Victory, 373.20.

Pu, a Tribunal or Court, 389.30. They make B.D.R. 390.90. They and no words any Consistent but M and N.

Ciam Chu, a President of a Court, 388.50.

Cilim, an Assistant in Judgement, 388.50.

Chiohi, Magistrates extraordinary, 388.60.

Zauli, Magistrates extraordinary, 388.60.

Qin, the Court of the King: and also Nanquin signifies the Southerne Court, and Peking the Northerne Court, 389.30.

Nang-Sanb, or Sanborno, 389.30.

Pucini, and Naganzatu, Magistrates, 389.40.

Taudi, an order of Magistrates, ibid.

Yuce, Isapur of Catai, or Calcut, 390.10.

Totoqui, the Law, 397.19.

Oficini, a Set of Priests, 398.10.

Cicum, Fasters, 398.30.

Lauzu, the old Philosopher, 398.40.

Hori, Set of strange Religions, 400.20.

Fu, a Province, 402.40.

Sciandai, on the Sea, 406.50.

Xi Fui, 407.40. (So the King figure.)

Ti Cam. Pluto, 407.60.

Of China-prouerbe Emphatick, for a China-prouerbe Emphatick, 409.1.

Cre, God, 409.10.

Zo ye: a Crept, 373.30.

Payette, a paper of Visitation, 373.30.

Tham, exceeding large, 380.30.

Yu, Reil, 380.30.

Sicham, Address, ibid.

Hui, great, 380.30.

Chou, Perfected, 381.1.

Han, the many way in Heaven. Min, Splendor.

Ta-min, the Kingdom of great Splendor, 381.30.

Chum-bao, a Garden, 380.30.

Ria, a Province, 381.1.

Chou, a great City, 381.1.

Hien, a town, 381.1. & 389.40.

Mai, Sea-coale, 381.20.

Quobah, the Court Language, 384.30.

Tuhio, The Examiner or Pester, 384.40.

Siducal, the degree of Bachelor of Arts, 385.40.

Kinghi, Master of Arts, 385.40.

Quajuct, the Senior Brother at Commencement, 386.

Ciclu, Doctorship, 386.30.

Huand, Supreme Admirall, 387.50.

Lauey, or Lauey, Lord or Father, 388.10.

Chinoi, or people of China, their Persons and Habits described, 179.40. & 200. Their clothes in their Haps, ibid. They they Salute: and their common Courtesie of muting men to Visitation houses, 180.10. Their entertainments of Guests, and manner of Feasting, ibid. 30. By night, 181.10. They make no Weapons, ibid. 10. They wear no Arms and Armour, ibid. 50. & 182.1. Their women's customs, and Apparel, Painting and retouching, ibid. 182.10. Buying and selling of Men, ibid. 50. & 182.10. Magistrates with their Creation, Privileges and maintenance, 183.20. Judges, Priests, and Scholars, 184. & 203. Manner of admitting Justice, 186.10. Admirable diligence in their Services, ibid. & 187. Power of their Magistrates in the Streets, 200. & 187. & 189. The Ladies, ibid. Their manner of examination of ministers, 188. 200. Their Brothers, 186.50. & 189. The Religion of China, 195.50. & 200. They have Temples for them, and Oratories without Ships, 196. 1. Sight of their Gods, 196.10. & 197.1. How to be made Charitable, and why, 197. & 207.

Chinoi, the people of their King 198.40. & 200. 20. Their opinion of the Reward after death, 262. & 263.1. And of the burning of the world, 266.30. Silver buried with them, and why, 267.10. They give their goods to Idiots, and to have their souls: proceed for, 264.40. & 270. & 271. Religious Orders amongst them, 264.60. & 271. Several Sects, 265.50. & 272.40. Their Gods of fire, Tempest, Sea, &c. 266. Their opinion of Hell, 267.1. Some

THE TABLE.

Some Christians in Sampitay, 267.30. Chroniques and Legends of China, 267.50. Their prayers to their Gods, 267.10. And vices, 269.30. They have their idols, 319.60. They have their Priests, 319.50.

Chinoi, sometimes Lords of India, 269.50. Their infinite variety of Trades: no man must meddle with another's Trade, 270. 271. They eat Snakes, Snails, or anything, 270.30. Their extreme Superstitions, 271. Their works of Fetic, 271.30. Their Study of Tricowah, 272.1. Their Superstitions, ibid. 30. & 274.20. Sacrifices of wild Beasts and Beasts, ibid. Their fierce chief Sects, 272.60. Their inkling of the Resurrection, 274.20. Their Gods, ibid. 40. They marry and get Staves, ibid. Their knowledge of the End of Noah, 275. 40. Stern to do cruelty, 275.60. Their own people held to be for Government, 276. Their women be white, ibid. They hold the transmigration of Souls, 277.1. They are but mean Mariners, 291.1. Their Compasse, & want of the Card, ibid. 10. They worship several Images, ibid. 20. Their Customs in wearing a Hoarse, 292.10. Their Banquets described, 292.10. 293.40. & 298.30. What Musick they use, ibid. & 303.30. They are excellent Priests, 294.50. They wear no Weapons, 295.20. Their State Ceremonies, upon the knees, 296.40. & 298.20. & 300. The various layers of his State before his Supper, 297.1. He remembers to the Same, before their Feasts, 302. Their Affairs, Alliance, and Adversal discipline, 305.10. They imitate the Devil in a temple, 308. 60. & 318.10. They think it honorable to be called by their own name, 320.40. Much adiditio Achime, 322.60. & 334.10. Their manner of thieftaking, 333.50. They are apt to Learning, 335.1. How men suspected, are made to find out the parties offending, ibid. 20. the assistance of their Idolaters, ibid. 30. Their instruments of holding a man welcome, 339.40. Riding on Horseback not magnificent enough for them, 342.20. Their Language consists most of Ad-

negatives, 342.60. Their Learning not so admirable, 343.50. What is their Architecture with Linnen instruments and Beads, 345.1. Some forms of Location used by them, 344.10. and in marg. They have their forebodes to the ground in finding their Supper, 344.1. 30. Their chief Authors, ibid. 20. The province of their Women, 360.1. & 344.60. They wear not so much as Kines, ibid. 40. Their habits, ibid. Their disfiguring of themselves, ibid. 50. Their Castigles, 345.1. Their knowledge of enciphering poems or words, ibid. Tangle to writing Saints, &c. 345.10. Their opinion of Eclipses, ibid. 40. Their fine Elements and ignorance in Philosophy, ibid. 50. Their Nobility, 346.50. Their Learning reduced, 348.20. Their want of Logic, ibid. Their Philosophy hold them close against the Creator, 348.20. 30. They are greedy of precious Stones, 352.10. Their Somfing about their Burials, 357.10. They call their Kingdoms the World, and are amazed at an universal Mappe, 358.50. The hopes and limitations of their Conversion, 359. They may follow what Religion they please, 360. Their great Capacities, ibid. Their incredulity of things after this life, 359.30. They keep as many Wives as they are able, ibid. Desires of Learning, 360. 30. Their Buildings and other things at sight, 363.40. Their Shipping of their Priests, 364.10. Their Officers and feeding they are great Salt-eaters, 365. 50. They eat Horser, Mules, &c. ibid. They know not how to dress their Sides, 366.40. 18 Dyers, ibid. Their Apparel long, ibid. Their long Ears, ibid. Their Hats and Caps, ibid. & 376.1. Their persons and Complexions, ibid. 10. Their trades, ibid. None rich, nor idle, ibid. 20. They have no Nobility by descent, ibid. Their Marriages, ibid. Their Funerals, ibid. 60. & 368.80. Their Idolatry, 369.1. They are Superstitious in China, 369.60. But despise, 400.1. 10. Called Tartars in Pettit, 400.20. Some new made in China, 406

the Papacy, 375.20. Chafewen of their women, 375.50. Their apparel, ibid. Their procreation of children, 376.30. Their love, not so slow and small, 400. marg. How and why their women make their first birth, 410.60. Love long and beautiful, and with 391.10. They have worse boys, till they be twenty, 384. Their person described exactly, 394.20. Their Boys and Girls habits, ibid. The apparel of men and women, ibid. The change of their names often, 394.50.60. Their Games at Cards & Dice, &c. 395.20. Their Superstitions, &c. 395.40. & 396. Their custom to their own Children, 396.10. and clothes, ibid. Their Sects, ibid. The Jesuits hope many of them were false, ibid.

Chinchulates the Provinces, 76. 30

Chingilles an Indian belief, whose they make cloth, 366.40.

Chingis Chan, his Vision to conquer all the World, 111.20. Chai sin Emperor, ibid. His Letter, 111.50. His second Vision, 112.40. His death, 113.40.

Chingis the great King of Tartary, was a Smith, 113.50.

Chingis fight the found of Ivan, ibid.

Cingis-chau, his victories, 77.50. His conquest with his Son, 77.50. The manner of it, with a Reed, 78.1. Slaves and buried, 78.10. His Successors all buried by him, 78.20. The Tartars going to bury their Prince, kill themselves, ibid.

Cingis Chan, Ancestor to the Christian Tartars, 637.30.

Chistutai, a Chinoi much further the Jesuits in China, 335.10. &c. His Letter to his Mother Ricus, 344.10.

Chiboles Tartars, were Lituans, more Civil and comely than the other Tartars, first acknowledge the King of Polonia, and are Christianized, 402.30.

Chollia, a City gone to in Pirimery by the Indians, the description, 1120. & 1123.20.

Chiafmin Siderworne, 447.50.

Christians which Christ take upon their hand, 21.1.

Christians in China, 399.60. But decayed, 400.1. 10. Called Tartars in Pettit, 400.20. Some new made in China, 406

THE TABLE.

Christians in China, the *summe* of
their Religion, 267. 30. & 269.
50. A Christian *Martyred* in
China, 269. 50.
Christians in Cathay & Tibet, 311
1. Their habits, *Black and Red*,
ibid. All these are *famous* re-
ports, ibid.
Christians many in *Caucahina*,
410. 20.
Christians, *what manner of* ones the
West Indians are, 599. 40.
Christian *Chapels*, & *Crypts*, found
in Tartary, 262. 30. An *Armenian*
Monk in it, ibid.
Christians of the *East* will *not*
Believe, and why, 21. 4.
Questions of *Saint Thomas*, but in
one *Cite*, 110. 1.
Christianity *deceyed* in *Tauica*,
636. 20. 30.
Christianity by what means *ad-*
vanced by the letters in China,
401. 1. 10. The way to *Preach*
in China, 197. 30.
Christianity received in *Ilam*,
645. 1.
Christianity, why the *West* India
has embraced it so soon, 1039.
40.
Christall of the *Rock*, where *bad*,
246. 40.
Christall, beryl, *Mines* of it in the
West Indies, 874. 30.
Christall; day, December 25, in
Russia, 224. 40.
Chronicles of China, how written,
and by whom, 389. 10. 20.
Chronicles for the *Indies* in Spain,
855.
Chronologie of the *Mexicans*,
1090. 10. 2. And of the *Peru-*
ans, 1073. 30.
Cials the *Kingdome*, 313. 10. The
various bounds towards China,
855.
Cingala the *Cite*, 314. 50.
Circan the *Province*, where it
has divers precious *Stores*, 75.
10.
Cilicia how it came to be called
Armenia, 111. 1.
Ciment not used in the *Stone-work*
of the Indians, 1056. 10.
Cimbria, the *Etymon* of it, 661.
Cimmerian darkness, 110. 40. &
107. 10.
Cin a Title of the *Mexican*, 1126.
30.
Cinnamon tree described, 158. 40.
Cities, wonderful, 1200. in
Spain. 99. 60. with *Cervises*, ibid.
Citic mountain, on the *Water*, 270.
50.

Cities of Russia the *chiefs*, 418. 30.
3. *Clarens* Islands, 477. 40.
Clerge of Russia their *offices*, 422.
10. *Mocks* in their *Parliament*,
423. 10. 20. Called rather *Par-*
liaments in Russia, 428.
Clerge of Russia *venerable*, their
Preach but twice a year, the
substance of their *Sermon*, ibid.
They purposely keep out *Learn-*
ing, ibid.
Clerke of the *Council* in Russia,
428. 10.
Clete *Island*, and of the *Oike*, 827. 30.
Clea, the *chiefs* *Cite* of the *Ru-*
thens, 61. 40.
Cliff falling, *into* some *English*, 734.
Cloath dealers in China, 367. 1.
Cloath made of *Bark*, 94. 40. Of
Gold and Silver, ibid. 50.
Cloath made in the *West* Indies,
963. 30.
Cloath made of the *Coe* *Wax* in
the *East* Indies, 981. 30.
Cloath of *Come* *baire* & *Feathers*,
1128. 10. Of *Feathers* alone,
ibid.
Cloath made of *Earls*, which en-
dures the *Fire*, 76. 40.
Clothes *flow*, 91. 10.
Clothes, called *Lozans* in China, their
manner, 59. 40.
Clothes unknown to the *Chino*,
336. 40. They learn to keep
them, ibid. And the *learn*,
advanced, 357. 30.
Coach with one *beast* in China,
343. 10.
Cospesworne by the *Greece* *Cl-*
erge, 448. 20.
Co-pes of the *Russian* *Clerge*, 227.
30.
Cobinam a great *Cite* in *Peru*,
72. 10.
Coca Tree described, continually
cheer'd by the *Indians* of *Peru*,
the virtues, 895. 1.
Coca Trees and fruit described, 98. 1.
30. Medicinable for whom, why
called *Coca*, 982. 10.
Coca, a *Isle* of *Peru*, the effects,
they chew it continually, & use it
for money, 957.
Coco trees of the *West* Indies, like
to a *Palme*-tree, the excellency
of the *Nut*, and medicinableness
of the *Shell*, the *Nut* has *Al-*
monds in them. The Tree
bears twelve times a year, 958.
30. & 9.
Cocks of *Hispaniola*, when they
Crown, 997.
Cockins found in *Greenland*, the

distance betwixt *London* and it,
832. 10. The *Latitudes* and *Ca-*
racter there, ibid. & 847. 50.
Cochinell where, 907. 60. It
grows of *Worms*, how, 951.
Coca Intercaas an *Indian* Food,
his fighting for *Pichards*, 979.
50.
Coffins for *burial*, the *Chino* ca-
rries about them, 368. 30. 40.
Coffin of *Campbell*, preferred to
the *Cape*, 181. Cognito, is *Iconu-*
m in Armenia, 69. 40.
Cohilouzas a *Cite* in China over-
throwen with an *Earthquake*, for
Marrying a *Christian*, 269. 50.
60. & 270. 1.
Coia Acm, the *Pirar*, the *Star*, 7.
Coiat, the *Tartarian* word for their
Master of the *Ceremonies*, 12. 60.
Coiganzan the *Cite*, 96. 30.
Coillac, a *Cite* of *Merchants* in *Ca-*
lay, 568. 40.
Coyn of Russia with a *Heroism*
and *Wing*, the occasion of it,
419. 10.
Colan, the *Tartarian* name for an
Ass, 10. 50.
Colchia, the extent, *Woody* and
Mountainous, called the *Petigo-*
nen *Province*, 638. *Idolaters*,
their Customs, ibid.
Coli *entrance*, in the *westward*
of the *Terride* Zone, where it should
be hot or temperate, 896. 40.
Cold under some places of the *Tir-*
ride Zone, 920. 60. In the *mid-*
dle Region the cause, 921. 20.
Cold more in the *North* Pole, not so
violent as in 73. degrees, 702.
20.
Cold customs in *Tartary*, 27. 1.
Cold thickening the breath, 415. 1.
And freezing men dead, and
cutting off their *Noses*, *Tees*, &c.
ibid.
Cold traies blisters on men's faces,
497. 1.
Cold invincible, where, 497. 60.
When it began to relent in *Noua*
Zembla 499. And increased a-
gain, ibid. & 503. 50.
Cold of Russia, the experiment of
it, 415. 1.
Cold stronger then *Fire*, 496. 20.
498. It remedies *Stings*, ibid.
Cold freezing the *Clothes* on men's
backs, 421. 2.
Cold stopping the breath,
Cold preferred from *Purification*,
966. 50. 97.
Cold in *Noua Zembla*, makes the
Beasts

Beasts and *Foxes* and *Deere*,
Snow-white, 365. 10.
Coligence *Island*, the *Latitudes*, 533.
30. Described, 534. 10.
Colima the *Province* and *Valley* in
the *West* Indies, the *Latitude*,
and distance from the *Chozan*,
874. 60. The *Commodities*,
875. 1.
Collars worn in *Island* of *Banda*,
459. 40.
College in China, 386. 1. & 389.
30. & 398. The *grades* of the
Doctors there, ibid.
Collins Cape in *Greenland*, 571.
10.
Colmacke, the *Country*, 235. 20.
Colmans *Paint*, 592. 30.
Colmogro in Russia, 214. 10. &
223. 50.
Colours abundance in *Iapon* and
China, 354. 10.
Cola the *Tower*, 517. 50. And *Ri-*
ner, 568. 40.
Colts, what, 102. 10.
Columbus his *Proposition* in our
Henry the fourth, 807. 20. &c.
Comanans, are the *Cumani*, 53.
48. Whence they have their
name, 124. 50.
Comanians, where entirely *settled*,
310. & 12. 50. Overrun by the
Tartars, ibid. & 114. 30.
Called *Valanos* and their *Con-*
trey *Valania* by the *Dutch*,
111. 1.
Combats for *trial*, still in *Mulco-*
nia, 216. 60. See *Armenian*
fight upon the *Crucifix*, 72. 1.
Combustions about the *Succession*
in Russia, 420. 30.
Comedies of the *Mexicans*, 1049.
40. Birds, *Flyes*, *Toads*, &c.
Performed in them, 1049. 50.
Comes in China, 181. 10.
Comet comes by *Day* in *Mexico*,
1020. 60.
Comet seen in *Iapon*, June 1. 695.
326. 10.
Comet 1577, seven *seven* days *for-*
mer in *Peru* than in *Spain*, and
why, 925. 10. Its motion, 111. 1.
Comhay a *Port*, 356. 40.
Commencements in China, 300.
385. 40. 50. Their Commence-
ment *Ways*, 386. 1. The man-
ner of their *Examination*, ibid.
Common, all is amongst *Tartars*,
443. 1.
Common wealth first to be *re-*
fined, 443. 1.
Commodities of *Petchora*, *Siberia*,
Permia, *Ougoria*, and among
the *Tungulics*, 522. 40.

THE TABLE.

Commodities exported out of *Chi-*
na, 365. 10.
Communion, received but once a
year, in the *Russian* Church,
92. 1. Confession before, the
Order, first to give both in a
Spoon, and then both *kinds* *se-*
parately, 452. 10. Their *merrit*
and *fasting* after, ibid.
Comorin *Island*, 239. 30.
Comoron beautiful *Women*, 242.
50.
Composit made to give *salve* by *Iron*
Negles, 514.
Compass, the use of it, 241. 50.
Compassic *war* not in *Shotland*
Isle, 567. Nor in *Lofoots*, 581.
50. See *Variation*,
Complements in China, 291. 20.
Complement of *Ethiopia*, 257.
10.
Composition betwixt *Spain* and
Portugall, 330. 10.
Coacha in China, 100. 10.
Combures an *Indian* fruit, the
first and *condition*, 955. 10.
Combures *fresh* kept in *Poland*,
659.
Confession how extorted in *Tar-*
tary, 26. 30.
Confession Sacramental, not known
to the *Nertians* or *Armenians*,
38. 20.
Confession auricular, initiated by
the *Devil* in his *Idol* *Ceremo-*
nies, 1041. 50. See *Auricular*
Confession almost of *all* *Religi-*
ous, 1043. 50. A *short* *Story* of this,
1043. 50. The *Prince* of the *Lower*
in China, 247. 40. Honou-
red with *Holiday* *Sacrifices*,
Temple and *Musick*, ibid. &
397. 50. His *Age*, *work* and
Authority, 384. 50. & 385.
Continuance of the *Memo*, subject
in China, 206. 40. The *fa-*
per *system* of *Idol* there, ibid. & 307.
Conquerors are to *promote* the *E-*
conomy to fight suddenly, but the
Defendants to *proceed* *time*,
148. 60.
Constellations 24. numbered in
China, 346. 40.
Contagion in *Summer*, occasioned
by *Wilde* *Winters*, 572. 4.
Contomanni, a people in *Carye*,
20. 60.
Contrast *classe* for *producing* the *like*
effects, 919. 10.
Controversies ended by *Kyff* the
Conf 434. 10. The *Order* *which*
best *searc*, ibid.
Courtiers of the *Indians* by the

Spaniards, what, 1035. 20. in
Mary,
Conquited by *Law*, are fined to the
Emperor of *Ruthia*, 439. 30.
Hence, 439. 30. How *after-*
wards *used*, 454. 30.
Coolahs or *Cathys*, 30. 10.
Copien of *Patens* kept in China,
327. 30.
Copper *Mines* very hard in the
West Indies, 875. 10.
Copper *worked* by the *Indians* for
to make their *Arms*, 56.
94. 50. *disfined* *use*. Copper
mixed with *Gold* in the *Mine*,
943.
Coquimbo *River* in *Chile*, the *La-*
made, 899.
Cora the *Kingdome*, 324. 20. En-
tered in *hostile* manner by the *La-*
ponians, 325. 30. They wanted
Arms, ibid.
Coratke the *Cite* and *Kingdome*,
102. 30. *Wilde* *Learning* or
Religion, ibid.
Corchu the *Island*, 308. 1.
Cordage of *Reeder*, 97. 20.
Cordage of *Woods*, very strong, in
Spain from *pine* 986. 30. &
991. 10.
Cordage of *Wool* and *Horn* being
in *Tartary*, 6. 40.
Cordi the *Armenians* people, of
several *Religions*, 78. 10.
Corps, under the *Chino*, 209. 60.
377. 10. Initiated by the *Episco-*
pate, ibid. Subject by the *Chi-*
nese, 377. 50. A *short* *Story* of this,
377. 50. The *Prince* of the *Lower*
in China, 247. 40. Honou-
red with *Holiday* *Sacrifices*,
Temple and *Musick*, ibid. &
397. 50. His *Age*, *work* and
Authority, 384. 50. & 385.
Continuance of the *Memo*, subject
in China, 206. 40. The *fa-*
per *system* of *Idol* there, ibid. & 307.
Conquerors are to *promote* the *E-*
conomy to fight suddenly, but the
Defendants to *proceed* *time*,
148. 60.
Constellations 24. numbered in
China, 346. 40.
Contagion in *Summer*, occasioned
by *Wilde* *Winters*, 572. 4.
Contomanni, a people in *Carye*,
20. 60.
Contrast *classe* for *producing* the *like*
effects, 919. 10.
Controversies ended by *Kyff* the
Conf 434. 10. The *Order* *which*
best *searc*, ibid.
Courtiers of the *Indians* by the

THE TABLE.

co, 10. 169. *Hu Chue*, ibid.
 10. 169. *Hu Oah*, *Jablon*
de las Crowne, and *Enfiques*,
 806, 160; *Hu Amoyang*,
 109; 10. *Hu Throve* and *E-*
mages of Warte there given him,
 ibid. 60. *Oratione* made to him,
 of *hu Chue*, 1061. 1. 109. 9. 30.
 1011. 30. *Pave chieft* *Elstet*,
 1011. 30. *Hu a* had his *Chieft*
 of the continental *Flee* before
 his Coronation, *ibid.* The *Feast*
 and other Ceremonies, *ibid.* They
 must go to *Wart* before their
 Coronation, *aspects* by *Princes*
 to sacrifice to their God, at the
Inauguration, 1006. 109. 1017
 20. The King offers Incense and
 20. The King of himself with a
 Gratitude, 120. 10. 118.
 40. *Hu Raher*, and *Emmet* had
 hung in his *Negrit*, *ibid.* and
 1016. 1. *Maker*, *etc.* at their
 Coronation, 1019. 40
 Coronation of the Inquis of Peru,
 the Ceremonies, 1057. 1-10
 Corpo Santo when off steam at Sea,
 718. 20
 Corpor Christi Feast of the Pa-
 pists, 1006. 10. 10. 10. 10.
 1040. 40. 50. And in Peru
 1045. 50
 Corriente: the Cape in the West
 Indies, the distance from Es-
 quiquial, 891. 40
 Cortez the Spaniard his frange ac-
 tempts in Mexico, 1013. 40. *Hu*
Alist there, 1014. 40. *Hu va-*
ler. See also the Page, 1118.
 1119. 40
 Cofacs of Russia, 766. 777-
 40. They are Barkmen of Rus-
 sia, 243. 30. Of the Law of Ma-
 homet, 240. 40. Their Guild
 worshiped, 33. 10. Fights with the
 Tartars, ibid.
 Colin German martyred in Norway,
 when, 65. 40
 Coloma and Caracofom, a drink
 of Mars milk, here prepared by
 Tartars, 530. 40. A drink
 of Mars milk for their Princess,
 530. The effects of Coloma
 drunk by a Stranger, 910
 Coloma wineforms for a hamper-
 formed man, 40. 30
 Colons which poured out to them I-
 fusions after the Tartar, before they
 finished the fight, 4. 30. 40. 20.
 40. 30. 40. 30. 40. 30. 40. 30.
 Coloma of Mars, no more, no more
 will drink it, 830. 60. The Prince
 Sacrifices with it, on the 28. of
 August, ibid.
 Colmas, the Christians of the
 Greek Church, bid them
 Excommunicate if they drink it
 9. 50. 10. 30. And think
 themselves damned for it, 10.
 They told that and Carrion abor-
 minable, as things strangled and
 offered unto idols, 10. 10. The
 necessity of this Drink, keeps
 the Tartars from being Chris-
 tian, 30.
 Colma the Prince, 573. 40
 Cotam the Russian, where, 573.
 Coran the Kingdom, 311. 50.
 Where, 313. 20
 Cotoyan Marble or Jasper, de-
 filed in China, 363. 20
 Coffa Rica, the furthest part of the
 Wet Indies towards the North,
 the extent of its Jurisdiction, the
 Towns, houses, &c., 881
 Coiting Street, 579. 40. 1000.
 Cotton Tree described, 106. 40
 Cotton green fibre of, 70. 10
 Cotton wool grows like a apple,
 957. 50
 Cotton infinite flow in China, 381.
 60
 Coulam, 106. Christians & Jewes
 must there, The Commodities,
 ibid. 10
 Council of Wars in Tartary, 68.
 40
 Counsellors of State, established in
 Russia, 243. 1. Some of said only
 for State, and was for Council,
 247. 50. Their Names in Du-
 der Fletcher's time, *ibid.* Their
 Office, Sitting days, and commissions,
 418. 10
 Countries bordering Russia and Chi-
 na, 79. 10
 Court of the Tartarian Prince, 5.
 40
 Court of the China Kings varied
 vase, 393
 Courtiers the wife of them, 531.
 Courtship of the Tartars, 88. 60
 Courtier required, 219. 1
 Courtier in the Gold Cardboard ver-
 nicle, 393. 10
 Cowen with lamps on their backs,
 877. 20
 Cowes sung to, at milking, 47. 20
 Cow-boy Garments in Russia, 40. 30
 Cowen tale for a Present, 243. 30
 Crag, a Fortress of the Templers
 in the Holy Land, 129. 10. 10.
 Cranes afford several kinds of Food
 Crane Feathers worn, for killing
 Tatars,
 Cragware,
 248. 30

[illegible]

THE TABLE.

nests, *fubtiliter*, ibid. A *Servus*
of their deciding the Hungarians
with their own *Sole*, 440.
30. Their *Seigns*, *Stratagemas*,
and concepts of Death, ibid.,
Delires of Captives, their promi-
ses, ibid., reconcile them to Pri-
macy, ibid. *Servant*, *Seigns*,
Nobility, Dyer, and dwelling,
441. They let their Horfe bind
and drink it, ibid. Their lords
or wandering Chieft, 442.1. Their
Frontiers, *Cambroes*, *Perjures*,
Sons, *Seigns*, *Ambassadors*, *Ge-*
nity, ibid. The *fact* all, ibid.
and appellations of Tartars, ibid.,
30. They naturally hate the Ruffe,
451; 30. And that binder their
Conscience, 460-60.
Crimson, a Ciste of the Crim
Tartars, 635. The Storm of, ibid.
Criminal matters: how proceed-
ing, in Russia, 474
Crimson colour, the derivation of
the word, 447-50
Crying of Commodities about the
City, 489
Cret or Melior, Nestorian Chris-
tians in Catay
Crocodiles, see Lizards. They live
only by bare Rivers : Low Cre-
atures, their manner of feed-
ing, their battle with the Tygers:
Stories of an Indians killing a
Crocodile, 913-10
Crocodiles disposing of human
creatures, 872-70
Crozier Staff carried before the Bi-
shops of Rutia, 447-1
Croffe much used in the Greeke
Church, 455. 30. They figure
their Church, ibid. Which is
their ordinary Teaching for
Sleep, Meate, &c. and accuse
themselves with it, and accom-
ish in the chief figure of a true
Christian, ibid. They measure by it
in Conscience, ibid.
Crosses of Christ made over their
Domes on Twelfth-day, 455.
458
Croffe used at the Ordination of
Priests in the Greeke Church,
447-50
Croffe the figure used at the Bishops
Benediction, at a Coronation, 421.
10
Croffe, the Mulcousse Priests hold
within, 227. Used in Turky,
229-30
Croffe carried to Accomplish for la-
dicature, 667-90

Croffes killed to end *Conspiracy*, 434-40. *In there the Conspiracy* performed, *ibid.* This is the *Corporal at back: Oath, ibid.* See *Crucifixes*.

Croffe made by the *Nefarious* and *Armenians* without *Chrit* upon 13-50-00 32-10

Croffe, *Rubaker*, and *Holy-water*, how they cured a *Tartarian* and *Leish* 32-40

Croffe advanced for an *Engine* by a *Tartar* *Prince*: The *lows* *desideris*, and *Cubai* *Cuban* *defends* it 81-20

Croffe, the *Chinois* *express* by the *Character* of *Tart*, 400-1. *And* *renewed* *abhythm*, 269-50

Croffes of *Latium* in the *Well* *Indies*, before the *Spaniards* came *thither*, 875-20

Croffe a *Confellation* *seems* in the *Indies* *taken* by the *Indians* *to* *subvert* *the* *Empire*, *and* *the* *distance* *from* *the* *South* *Pole*, 100-20

Croffes *land* *defected*, 275-30

331-1. Croffe *landed*, 433-30

Croffe *Roed* in *Greenland*, the *Latitude*, 704-1. *And* *various* *of* the *Compasse*, *ibid.*, &c. 331-1

Croffing after the *Japonian* *Emperors*, 325-30

Crowes, *whofe* *dead* *is* *living* *warrior*, 993

Crowns *fixe* of the *Russian* *Emperors* 741-30

Crowne of the *Kings* of *Peru*, 1055-1. *Of* *stuffs* of *Mexico*, 1055-1

Crowne of the *King* of *Mexico*, *like* *that* of the *Duke* of *Venice*, 1005-10

Crucifixes *found* upon 217-1, 110. See *Croffe*.

Crucifix, the *Chinois* *suffered* *Indignation* upon 1, 355-1. The *reports* *that* *were* *abroad* of *it*, *ibid.*

Crucible made of *burnt* *boon* *beaten*, 951-40

Cruelty *Practis* against the *Tartars*, 101-1, 102-50. See *Agass*.

Cuba *land*, the first *Numer*, *first* *Discovered*, the *length* *and* *breadth*, *Latitude*, *Description*, *Mountains*, *Rivers*, *lakes*, *Trails*, *Miner*, *first* *peopling*, *Villages*, *Trails*, *Capas*, *distance* of *place* 1065

Cubagua *land*, the three *League* *removed*, 999-20. The *Pearl-fishing* *remained* *thence* *to* *Mari-*

[illegible]

THE TABLE.

Drugs, *d'au leur Carts* in Albania, 16,20
 Dagon Island, upon the *River* of Pechora, 53. See *Aspag.* 5, 8. 50. Two of that name, *ibid.* 10
 Domingo Cite in Hispaniola, described, the distance from Spain, Latitude, Villages about it, and their several distances, first preposings, Commodities, &c. 863
 St. Domingo Cite in Hispaniola, described, 993
 Dommes Hall, a Bay, 223, 20
 'Doo, a title of Honour in Lapon, 324, 20
 Dör a Cathayan King, and his *Use* Court, 89. 20. His Penance, *ibid.*
 Dolhakes or Boats in Russia, 243, 10
 Dornies great in Russia, 454, 10
 Dragon, the Armes of the King of China, 392
 Dragons in the West Indies, 976
 Dragons, the Chinoise superstition about them, 399, 60
 Drago, a title of Honour in Lapon, 324. Their Gall medecurable, *ibid.*
 Drie Sea, by the River Pechora, 533, 60
 Drink made of Rice, Mill and Honey, 4. 50. And of Mares milke, 5. 30. And of Cowes Churnes milke, 9. 10
 Drink hot in China, 366, 1
 Drink-Offertings in China, 392, 1
 Drinking-camels, 392, 30
 Drink of Rice, excellent, 25, 50. Like white wine, 27, 50
 Drink of the Mexicans in practice injudicious before Death, 1049, 10
 Drinks hot in China, good for the Stomack, and the Stone, 391. 50
 Drinking Feasts of the Tartars, 4. 30. &c. Musicks at them, 4. 60
 Drinking Feasts of the Islanders, 646, 60
 Drinking away ones selfe & Children, 225, 60
 Doina River in Russia Nanyang on the bank of miles, 744, 10
 Dronen in Norway in Nordfria. At Archibow Sea, 683, 30
 Drugs of the West Indies the kinds, and uses, 959, 40. 50. 60. 1
 Drums huge ones, 438, 1
 Drums, to make their Horses goe, 226, 1

Drummes used in stead of Bell, 1049
 Drunkards are for the Emperours service in Russia, 431. 40. Why they increase, 432, 40
 Drunkenness not painful in Tartaria, 324, 30
 Ducks going and returning, at a sound of Drumme, 270
 Ducks how fide in China, 174, 40. Artificially bred, *ibid.*
 Sir Dudley D'egges his Cape, the Latitude, 846, 40
 Duina the River, 213. 60. & 223. 50. Duina the River, 415, 40
 Duina the River, where it falls into the white Sea, 522, 20
 Duke of Brabant's Title, in the year 1221
 Dutche Russia of the fourth degree of Nobility: their descent from younger Brothers, 425. 30. They have no inheritance, glad to be Serving-men, *ibid.*
 Ding a good Commodity in China, 189, 40
 Dung, Bread baked in it, 34, 20
 Dung brought by sound of Taber, 270, 40
 Dung of Birds a strange report of it, 266
 Dutch disturbe the English at Greenland, 466. See Netherlands. And againe, 467. 1. & *ibid.* 2. The English take some of their Fun from them, *ibid.* At difference with the English there, *ibid.* 60. They Fish perforce, braves and threatens the English, and is surprised, 468. 1. 10. They returne to Greenland to drive away the English, *ibid.* 40. They assault the English, *ibid.* 40. Beate and rifle them, *ibid.* 40
 Drinke hot in China, good for the Stomack, and the Stone, 391. 50
 Drinking Feasts of the Tartars, 4. 30. &c. Musicks at them, 4. 60
 Drinking Feasts of the Islanders, 646, 60
 Drinking away ones selfe & Children, 225, 60
 Doina River in Russia Nanyang on the bank of miles, 744, 10
 Dronen in Norway in Nordfria. At Archibow Sea, 683, 30
 Drugs of the West Indies the kinds, and uses, 959, 40. 50. 60. 1
 Drums huge ones, 438, 1
 Drums, to make their Horses goe, 226, 1

digge Gold and make Armour, 20, 30
 Dutch Knights, their Alts in Prussia, 616, 637
 Dutch Fish at Greenland, 163, 30
 Forbidden, *ibid.* Withstand the English, 719, 1
 Dutch men pull downe our Kings Armes in Greenland, 727, 1. Their intollerable insolencies, 734, 10
 Dwellings all underground in Iceland, 649
 E
 Eagle found by the Mexicans by Oracle, and worshipped: the Story of it, 1004. 40. Strange story of another Eagle there, 1021
 Earthquakes in Island, 1021
 Earth in China showing the Gold, 649, 1
 Earth thought to be square, 359, 40
 Earth why it moves not above the Primus Mobile, 924, 10
 Earthquake in China, 269, 60
 Earthquakes, a Philosophical discourse of them, 940. &c. Affinities betwixt burning Mountains and them: why they happen nearest to the Sea, and why some runne a hundred leagues, *ibid.* Their effects, why they make before, when they mostly happen, 942
 Earthquakes in China, 198. 10. 20. &c.
 Earthquakes frequent in Peru, where they proceed, 895, 20
 Earthquake a prodigious one in the West Indies, 868, 10
 Earrings generally worn by the Ruffe women, 460
 East wind raises within the burning Zone, 923. 50. Heatful, called the Brise, *ibid.* Cause of the Brises, 924
 East the Russes have a Festival greater then it, 763. 50. This is about the first week or fortnight of May. Conferre the places page 762. with page, 764.
 East in Russia how kept, 227. 60. They salute and kisse one another, 228. 1. On the Eve they sleepe in the Church, 227, 50
 Eastern people generally have little Eyes, 235, 50
 Eating meate, a Tartarian Honour, 278, 30
 Eating of Man sacrificed in Mexico, 1023
 Ebb: and flow much or little, what Sea

Sea doe, and what do not, 989. 30
 Ebbing and flowing of several Seas. A great secret, 929. 930. Opinions of it.
 Eboue wood whence brought, 938
 Eclipses the Chinoise opinion of them, 345, 40. 346, 1
 Eclipses the Chinoise opinion of them, 345. 10. Bels beaten there, *ibid.*
 Edges land discovered, 732. 10
 Elenborow in Scotland more Northerly then Mosco, and yet not so cold, and why, 471. 40
 Edeffa the Cite, or Robats, 110. 50
 Eddie wood, 923, 40
 Egges at Easter given to the People, 227. 50. Dried or gilded, and carried in the hand, then, *ibid.* Exchanging them with their friends, 228, 1
 Egegia the Province, 80, 10
 Elements worshipped by the Mexicans, 1037
 Elements, five in China, 345. 50
 Elephants carrying wooden Castles, 91, 20
 Elkes or Lothes, men ride upon them, 523, 60
 Elbing the English trade for Flaxe there, 617
 Elfenore in Denmarke, how bigge, 625, 50
 Emanuel Sina his mischance, 318
 Ember-weekes of the Heathen Mexicans, 1035, 40
 Embasie of the Russian Lords to the King of Poland: the points of it, 788
 Emeralds a Myne of them where, 884. 40. & 885. 30. How they are taken, 884, 20
 Emeralds have the third place amongst Precious Stones: his value new. A prettie story of them, where in the Indies is the greatest store, and how used by the Indians: the Myes and manner of growing: greatness of some mountains and ancient, 885
 Enchanted sleep, 455. 10. Sleeps enchanted, of three dayes long, 455, 10
 Enchantments of the Islanders: how they hinder ships from sailing, 646, 30
 Engines of battery, 97, 1
 Engines of wood to two ships, 347, 1
 English aydes sent into Sweden, 772, 1
 The conditions of their entertainment, 771. 1. 10. In di-

briffe at Sea, and landed to Iutland, *ibid.* Relieved by a Dane: the ship that brought them sails away. They are belisted in several Houses, in danger of the people, 773. Falsely accused by Gulfin a Welchman, 774. 1. Bound in their beds, & bound, 774. 40. &c. Four of them slain, all in danger againe: relieved by the King of Denmarke, referred to passe their Lives, arrive in Sweden, 775. Full faith with the Burgers of Stockholm for meate, *ibid.* Relieved by the King, sent into Finland, and distressed there at Sea, by cold in Finland. Their miserable march into Russia, 776. They desire to be taken and sold, 777. They meet the Russian Army, being engaged upon an Enemy, their own Army and Generall forsakes them, their valour, their Horse defeated, the first revenue quarter, 779
 English right to the North west passage, 86, 40. Their Difficulties that way, 86, 60
 English conquests in Sweden, 621. 40. And Norway, 622. Two other places, 624, 10
 English finde America before Columbus his Voyage thither, 808, 20
 English flags advanced in the Capitan Sea, 221
 English haire in Russia, 755, 10
 English Merchants slain in a tumult at Mosco, 763, 30
 An Englishman his strange Adventures amongst the Tartars, 63, 40. His relation of them, *ibid.* Sent on the Tartars Messenger and Interpreter to Hungarie, 884, 20. His travels, 64, 10. 20. &c. English Voyages to the River Obi, 530, 40
 English Voyage to the West Indies, 999, 40
 English ships on the Coast of China, 309, 40. Spoiled by the Chinese. The Spaniards would punish them as Enemies, 310, 40
 English suffer shipwrecke in Mexico, 246, 40
 Ensigne of the Tartars, 643: 1
 Entertainments in China: the fashion, 373. 20. A particular garment for it, *ibid.*
 Entertainments in China, 392, 1
 Epithets of the several European Nations, 63, 1
 Episcopie a Monastery in Cyprus, 125, 50

Erra reckoned by in Iapon, 323, 40
 Etigall the Kingdom in Tangut, 79, 50
 Etiorland the 16: Latine spoken there, 610. Their Language, Myne of Gold, trade &c. 611. 8
 Etivages in Peru, justify the slope, 564
 Ethicks the Philosophy of China, 359, 2
 Ethicks and Politicks are the learning of Coling, 363
 Ethicks the learning of China, 384
 Eulis or Volga divides it selfe, and where, 438. 10. Fromen over, 48, 10
 Eulis or Edel in Volga, 54
 Euertalling, punishment, understood by the Indians, 1047, 10
 Eunuchies in China, and why, 183, 30
 Eunoches great men in China, 346 & 347
 Eunoches are bed-chamber men to the Tartarian Emperours, 310, 60
 Eunoches serve the Kings of China how made, &c. Their numbers and choice, *ibid.*
 Eunoches their authority in China, 349. 20. & 348. 40. Their baseness, 353. 20. And consequence, 355, 10. 20
 Euphrates the head of it, 450, 40
 Euphrates sends Southward at Cambray, 511
 Europe when first peopled, 661. 50. And whence, *ibid.*
 Europe parted from Asia, by the Don, 415
 Examination in Russia, is all by torture, 434. The cruelties, *ibid.*
 Examinations how taken in China, 188. 30. & 191. 50. & 204. 50
 Excess in luxury, dye and apparel, welcome to the Tartars, 639. 2
 Execution done by freeing to death, 373, 10
 Executions of death in Russia, 435, 1
 Exorcism in Baptisme used in the Russian Church, 431, 10
 Exorcising of Demons in China: the manner, 398
 Extreme-vnction, a Russian sacrament, 455
 Extreme-vnction, not knowne to the Nelliors or Armenians, 48, 30
 Eye-fall a prison one, 367, 50
 Eyes all the Chinoise have blacke, 367

THE TABLE.

THE TABLE.

367.10. Their opinion of grey
eyes, *ibid.*
Ezra the Cate, where, 77.20

F

Faces square, 394.20
Factions in Russia raised by the
Emperor, 434.1. The wicked
eye be made of 14, and his reason
for it, *ibid.*
Falcons what, in Chinese, 319.20
Falcon is the best in the World, 71.1
Fall of a River very terrible, where,
902.20
Famine a mighty one in Russia, 752.20
Famfur, 'a Kingdom of Iaua, 104
Fans used in China, 183.50. How
made, *ibid.* The ordinary present,
ibid.
Faria his Adventures, 252.20 to 263
Wracked and relieved by a Kite,
256. Elsewhere admirably.
Fast of the Neobrians three weeks
before Lent, 31.1. When begun
and ended, *ibid.* They eat flesh on
Fridays, *ibid.* O'her of their
Rites, *ibid.*
Fast of the Armenians, five days
before Lent, for Saint Sarkis,
31.1
Fasting from flesh not observed in
Mugila, 800.1
Fasting in China from flesh, fish,
&c., 398.20
Fasting before visitation of Sepul-
chres, 193
Fasting broken by necessity, 193
Fasting of the Mexicans in honour
of their Gods: the extreme
strictness, 1035
Fasts in time of drought in China,
400.10
Fate, all ascribed to it in China,
356.1
Faxiba Ciougendono, *despises* all in
Japan: his doing, and intended
conquest of China, 324.10. His
Letters to the Spanish Viceroy,
ibid. Vices the Japonian De-
monies, *ibid.* He forbids the Je-
suists to preach, 325.1. Calls him-
self Teicoma, 325.30. Mur-
ders his men for China, *ibid.* He
owes to his nephew, *ibid.* De-
crates the Arabian by his Levee
timate Augustine, *ibid.* Sends
20000. Japonians to subdue
Cora, *ibid.* And it yet came to
give it over, 325.60. Receives to
China Ambassadors with plate,
326. Builds most huge Palaces,
ibid. His policy to keep the Ja-

ponian Lords about him, 326.50
His buildings overthrown with
Earthquake, 326. Receives a
Crown sent by the Chinese, *ibid.*
Refuses to restore the Kingdom
of Corai, 327.1. Dyes, 327.1.
Would be made a God: His Image
and Temple, *ibid.* His posterity
ruined out, *ibid.*
Faite-foreland in Greenland, *the*
latitude, 719. Summer refractions
there, *ibid.* & 720.1
Fayre-hauen, and Whale-fishing
there, 467.1
Fayres, begun in the New Moone,
270.50
Féails, the order of the Tartar
Princes at them, 84.10. 20.30
Served on the knee, *ibid.* Mislike
what he drinks, *ibid.* They
jest every New Moone, 84.40
The Tartarian Princes give
change of Rayments when they
jest, 45.20
Féails, their festival in China, 180
30.60
Feasts in China, *vid.* Barquets.
Feats of Altimite, 349.40
Feathers, the trade for them in Ru-
ssia, 805.30
Feather-pictures, see Pictures.
Feathers rich ones as the West In-
dies, 965
Feather work of the Indians, 1132
40
Feavers gotten by the biting of an
Avis, 995.10
Feet been warmed in Groneland,
65.20
Feet, a great beauty for women to
have them little in China, and
why, 376.1. How the Chinese
make them little, 182.20
Felon goods confiscate, 429.40
Felt much used in Tartaria, 3.40
& 4.20. & 6.40. Images of it,
4.30. How made, 6.40
Ferdinandus the Isfante, recovers
Guez his goods, by eating of
Pork, 316.20
Fertile without rain, 809.20
Festival days in Peru, the occasions
of them, The Sacrifices offered,
1045. And in Mexico, 1046
Fidelity of an Infidel, 1047.60
Fight of the Indian Jontes for fish,
93.20
Finmack Coast described, 279.1
Firtre-tire, most useful for Russia,
419.20
Fishes and fishing of the West In-
dies, 986.987. The varieties,
930

Fish lined upon, 223.20
Fish used for Basket, and Beasts
meats, 106.60
Fishes fained with One dung in Chi-
na, 205.60. Pandred with Pap-
per, 206.60
Fish for feeding of Cattle, 649.40
Fish that give suck, *ibid.* 8. in
marg.
Fishes that fly, 931
Fishes strange ones, 206.60. *ibid.*
Fishes, 261.1
Fishes charmed for denouncing
Pearls-fishes, 104.40
Fishes delight in the light, 647.20
The abundance in Island, with the
manner of preserving them, *ibid.*
Fishing with a fish in India, 694.20
Fishing with a fish of time in Island,
647.20
Fishing for the 15 hals in India, the
strange manner, after seasons of
Indian Fishing, 931.50. 932.1
Fish skins for covers of books, they
use a little, 617.20. marg.
Fitty Cuffs, the Chinese and their
quarters withals, 181.50
Funga the Kingdom, 322.30
Fusing of men, and putting others
in their skins, used in Mexico,
1031.30. & 1038.40
Fluthingers Land, where, 488.20
Flutes of earth in Mexico, 104.90
It made malefactors confess their
sins, 1047.1
Floco discover: Island by Rovers,
654.50
Flokawogur, a Haven in Shet-
land, 654.40
Flood known to the Chinese, 30
Florida discovered first by the Eng-
lish, 8.8
Florida the extent of the govern-
ment of it: the altitude discover-
ed and people. A firm Land
next to Europe of all the Indies,
yours survey by Land thence in-
to Spain: a cession of the name;
false of a Spring on the shores
youth, the Aire, Sails, Flowers,
no Gold, Fruits, &c. 868. 40. &c.
The Haven, Ports distance from
Los Martyres and Cuba: cal-
litudes of places, the places where
winter Gold nor People is: the
Rivers and Isles of it. 869. Re-
gning of that Country properly
called Florida. No passage that
may out of the North into the
South Seas, 870.1, 10
Flowers the plenty in China, 381

Flowers

THE TABLE.

Flowers much esteemed in the West
Indies. Flowers of Europe thrive
better there, the varieties there,
959. 1.10
Flies infuse store, come to the fish,
203.20
Flies, wasps, &c. Of the West
Indies, 996.10
Flying fishes described, 988.50. A
flying battle betwixt them & the
Gull-heads and Cormorants,
989.10
Flying in the Aire, the Mexican
Sorcerers believe they do, 1045
Fog and the Ice, 610
Fogge proceeding from Ice, 521.10
Fogges at Sea looking like the land,
566.50
Fogo Islands the latitude, 831.30
Foolish sparrows of India de-
scribed, their admirable Nests
to keep off the Monkeys, 980
40
Foot-prints of the Indians, 1054
1058
For-doers of themselves, how buried
in China, 189.1
Fortresses extreme over, 282.50
Fortifications in China, the man-
ner, 301.50. &c.
Fortune-telling in China, 395.50
Fox Bag in Groneland, 834.50
Fount of Baptisme, the blessing,
229.30
Fount of Baptisme, wherein the Em-
perours use to be christned, kissed
& sworn upon in Russia, 783.20
1049.
Fowles a story of strange flights of
Tartary, 17.1. *Missage* after
Precepts in the Tartary, 60.1. 10
His journey into Tartary, Cy-
prus and Persia, 29.10
Fryer Matthew in China, 314.30
& 315.30
Fryer Nicolo Dauicenza, and
Fryer Guilio de Tripoli sent
for as Preachers into Tartary,
with Papal authorities, 67.20
They dare not proceed, 67.30
Fryer Martine de Herrada, a
gent into China,
Fryer unbelieve sent to the Cani-
bals, 865.49
Fryers of Mugila, a story and chaff,
800.1
Fryers quarrels in the West In-
dies, undid the Country, 906.50
Fryers of the Papacy, initiated by
the Heaten Mexicans, 1035
Fryers sent into China, 290.40
Their names and company, *ibid.*
Their kind of life in the Pop, 291
20. And at their landing in Chi-

na, 291.60. & 292. Their allow-
ance of Diet, 293.1. They are
carried on men's shoulders, 293
60. They receive Presents of
Silks, 293.30. & 294.50. Made
to kneel before the Governors of
China, 206.40. & 298.20. &
300. They divide with Omatocon
his at, 301.30. Certificates
bought at their doors, 301.40
Carried in Chaires suffered to
view the Cities, 302.50. Re-
strained, 303.10. Not permitted
to see the Viceroy, *ibid.* Not
suffered to buy Bikes of China,
303.50. Suffered for Spirits,
304.1. Discouraged, *ibid.* A
Council called concerning them,
ibid. Commanded to returne to
scatch the first Limahon, 305.1
Steps prepared for their depar-
ture, 305.50. They depart, 306
20. Provision for their Voyage,
ibid. & 307.20. A storme takes
them at Sea, 308.30. They
returne to Manila in the Phi-
lip-pines, *ibid.*
Fryers in Russia their numbers, none
admitted but he that brings them
some maintenance, 448.40. The
manner of their meeting, they
own to abstine from marriage &
flesh, their robes and exercise of
Merchandise, 448.50. 60. Their
ignorance, 449.10
Friday much observed in Russia,
422.60
Fridays fasted by them, 21.1
Except the weeks after Lent,
217.30
Fucacs Discoveries of a Passage,
830. 18 rewarded in Spain,
970.40
Funerals of the Chinese, 393.30
See Buriall and Mourning, 29
Funerals and mourning of China,
367.60. & 368.20. & 181.50
Funerals of the Norwegians, 617
Funerall Feasts of the old Indians,
664.1
Funerall Rites in Tanguth, 75.50
& 76.1. 10
Funerals of the Mexicans, 1029.50
continued ten days. Their Funer-
all Serchones, Mislike, &c.
1030.1. 10
Futongs in China, their proportion,
346.60
Furniture of the China House,
392.1
Furres great store, 107.1. & here
each best, 416.10
Furres

THE TABLE.

Purses of Rufia, 213.60. *Paid to the Emperor of Rufia*, 430.20
Furres in Greenland, 521.20
Furres and Beaver in New-Goulden land, 586.10
Furres, blacke Fye is best, 459.40
Fryslayke a *Dukedom in Norway*, 650.40
Fyre, where it is to be brought in
byre, as in other places, 74.10
Fyre as waspered in Tery, 241.50
Kouled by rubbing of fukky 983
Fyre perpetual in the Mexican Temples, 1014
Fyre put out every fifty two yeares at Mexico, 1695.40 & 1067.40
Fyres in the Eys of Iland, 643
reafon, 643
Fyres scene after a furme at Sea, 728.20
Fyre-blows of Hell, 267.1
Fyre-brands fromen, 210.60

G

Game of the Prince, the Tartars forbidden to destroy, 86.20
Ganges the Cite, where, 49.20
Gardens foynd in the waters, 1006.40
Garlike used wchd in the Russian Cookes, 457
Gardarholme, a name of Iland, 614.40
Gates are the strength of the China Cities, 301
Gau a people, the possessor of thefe that flowe Sans Thomas the Apostle they cause come, or be carried into the wth Tombe, 105.1
Gauland in Rufia, 423.1
Gears perforth red, where, 10
Therly to be Barnacles, ibid.
Greefe pryncely catcht by the Indians, 499.40
Gehennon, the place of Mulochs Sacrificers deforbed, 665.20
Geimudawda, whence so named, 674.50
Gelding of Beggars in Iland, 66.20
Gelding of themselves in Follies, where fide, 1015.50
Grye, 2.6. Naturally expended, 892.20 & in marg. See affe, p. 895.40 & 937.50
Griefe, intubus Taurica Chace, 486.20
Griefe, 615.60
Gue as in China their pompe, 293
Guerals in Rufia, properly chosen wth martiall men, and wth 416.50
How that remanded, ibid. How wth

der Officers, Maybolls, Golenets, and Captains, 10
Generals of the field, embolden in Rufia, their children were themselves Generals, 425.30. Their precedencie, ibid.
Gentils where, 232.10.30
Gentlemen their Estates in Rufia, 415.50
Gentlemen in Rufia wth 10
Soldiers, 425.20
Gentry of Norway deforbed, 631
Georgians, their name is Curgh, 49
10
Saint George is the Duke of Mulsow, 221.40
Saint Georges Armes in the Helion, 510
George Barkley, his trane, 625.50
How going into Danmarke, ibid. Iuse Pruffia, the Easterlings and Rufia, 628. Iuse Poland, 619. Iuse Bohemia, Silesia, Prusia, and backe into England, 628. Iuse 636. His other trane, 631. Dyei as Bantam, 628
Georgia called Zorizina, 69.50
The King is always called Dauid Meliz, ibid. The Inhabitants deforbed, 704
Georgians overcome by the Tartars, 112.40
Georgia divided into two Kingdomes, 110.30. Whence called Albania, or Albana, ibid. The Cimarians darkeffe in Georgia, ibid.
Geologers in China, 396.1
Germanes forbidden to winter in Iland, 650.40
Germany when first peopled, 62.40
Gets the River as the Frontier of Catana, the way thither, one of Rufia, 590.10.20
Guffia expounded at dinner time, 218.10
Giants bones found in Peru, 889.0
Giants, the Iland of the where, 40
Giants of old in Mexico, 100.1
Giants first Inhabitants of the North, 661. Their original from Canaan. Some in Norway, Denmark, Suecia, Irelanland, Iland, &c. Iuse a discourse where and when they came, one lately found fifteen Cubits long, 40
Giants deforbed, 261.20
Gizzet, the Haen wether, 51.40
Gizzas in Armenia, 66.60. The

Morehandse there, 69.40
Gizet, 311.50
Gizilidi in Rufia wome for Tartars, 444.30
Gizling the Fraince, 378.30
Gilding Gold fayer with another, 971
Gilbert a Scottish Captain, his Affairs in Rufia, 764. 275.50
Ginger where it grows, 220.50
Ginger, 101.10
Ginger, &c. How often first planted in the Ilands, 86.1
Gingow, the great Gold of Pegu, 269.00
Girdles of the Louteaux deforbed, 292.20
Girdle is an Ensigne of dygnite in the East, 184.1.10
Girdles made by the Monkes of Burfiam, 70.50
Glaife of Mulsowia, how gotten, 417
Globes first brought into China, 339
60
Globocbe in Rufia, the altitude, 545.20. Variation of the Compass, 554.50
Glowormes that women worke by their light, 993.40
Glut of fad and Tarts bland, 112.20
God sacrificed in China, 307.50
God called the Anima mundi, 397.10
God pander too with both hands, 225.20
God holden to bee the Anima mundi, 248.20
Godfathers in the Russian Church, 451
Golds of the Mexicans, were 2000. The description of their two clufe Gold, 1134. The Sacrifices in them, 67.
Goddess of the Mexicans, 1031
Godonoe, the parent Fian in Rufia, 424.4. Their aduocemes and praefies, ibid. & 425
Gocan the Iland, the Commodities 284.50. The people goe naked, ibid.
Gog and Magog shew wth motion Deiben, 30
Gog and Magog their Country, 88.20. They called themselves Yng & Mongul. (Moal perience after the Easterne pronunciation of the Hebrew Y gavin.)
Gog, called the Tartarian, 58.50
Gomel, the Eldion, ibid.
Gold exchanged for silver, 110
weight is finer, 110
Gold,

THE TABLE

Gold *filled by the Sparks* for the *Supreme Power* in the *World*, 892. 1. Several ways how it *uses* in the *Manner*, and *manner* of getting it.

Gold, *other descriptions of the finding of the Mines*, working in them, *walking the Metal*, &c. See page 970. All *the great groves* in the *Mountains*, and how to come into the *River*, *farther from the Mine* the *finer*, &c. 971

Gold *Mine* rich, 253. 40

Gold in the *Philippines*, 285

Gold *may not ordained* to be the *happiness of man*, 943. 1. *Why* *chose* *it*, *ibid.* How *of itself* it is *ordinance*, *ibid.*

Gold much to be *bought* in *China*, 366. 30. *Not used for Money*, *ibid.*

Gold, the *desires of Metals*, and *why*, the *Indians* had *great Pelf*, *Charters*, *Letters* and *Images of saints*, 943. 30

Gold *times of three sorts*, *where the best and the worst Gold* found: the *manner of refining* and the *quantity that came yearly* into *Spain* from the *Indies*, 943. 40, 45

Golden *Tables of the Tartars*, *Emperors*, 29. 40

Golden *Bell of the Tartars*, 66. 10

The *Authority of* *it*, *ibid.* 68. 30

Goldsmiths *curious* *and* *in Mexico*, 1132. They *call* *all* *the* *Creasures in Metal*, *which* *move like the life*: *it* *enamel* and *set* *stones*, *they* *excel* *ours*, *ibid.*

Gomera, the *best* of the *Canary Islands*, 878. 30

Gonsalvis *Monasteries*, 260. 10

Good-bribes, a *Story of* *it*, 4. 10

Good-Friday *how kept* in *Prussia*, 227. 50. They *let* *it* *be a* *Refuge* *there*, *ibid.*

Goten, *some* in *Tartaria*; 3. 10

They *speak* *Dutch*, *ibid.*

Gothe- *Language* *remains* *pure* in *Iland*, 66. 8

Goten & Geten *their Eyrmen*, 68. 10

Goto *Ilands*, 257. 10. *Submit* *China*, *ibid.*

Gouzi, the *City* in *Cathay*, 39. 10

Gouverneurs *received* *no Presents*, 302. 50

Gouverneurs, the *several forms* in the *West Indies*, 1054. 30

Gowries of *Dogges skins* in *Tartaria*, 971. 50

Grains of *Gold* worth 4138. *Dons* *kept*, 970. 50

Graines of *Gold* found, *weighing twelve pound* and *more*, *where*, 888. 30

Granada the *New Kingdom* in the *West Indies*, the *limits* of the *jurisdiction*, the *extent*, *natural Commodities*, *Mines*, the *discovery* from the *Spanish* and *Spain*, the *chief City* and *number of Spaniards* in *it*, &c. *Others about it*, *tributary Nations*, *style of the Country*, 884. 885

Granadine an *Indian* *Island*, *which* *has* *the* *Markes of our Saviour*: *Paffion*, *Archbishops*, *Judgements*, *and* *others*, 891. 10

Grapes *ripes* *not kindly* 89. 10

West *Indies*, and *why*, 961. 30. *Ripe* *all* *the* *years* *long*, *ibid.*

Grapes of *China* *not good*, 381. 30

Gresse *ordinance* and *battening* in *Iland*, 649

Greece, *Christians* in *Tartaria* *flourish* in the *Tartars*, *has* *been*, 639. 30

Greeks *Christians* *humble* for *misunderstanding* *Saint Paul*, 447. 60

Greeks *Christians* in *Corinthe*, 105. 40

Greece *Christian* in *Ingerme*, 670. 50. *In* *the* *Times* of *Taurica* *Cheriton*, 637

Greeks *you* *not* *off* *their* *Capit*, 34. 10

Greenland, the *elevation*, *on* *part* of *it*, 577. How *there*, *ibid.*

Greenland a *Woloughies* *land*, 579. 30

Greenland *first* *discovered*, 469. 20

The *other* *natives* of *it*, 463. 10

First *named*, *ibid.*

Greenland, *some* *lands* *in* the *East* of *it* *discovered*, 466. 60

The *Dans* *first* *coming* *to* *Greenland*, 467. 1. They *demand* *lost* of the *English* for the *selling*, *ibid.* *Mores* *Discovered* *Eastward*, *ibid.* *Discovered*.

Greenland *under* *the* *ancient* *and* *new* *people*, the *latitude*, and *why*. The *darkness* and *creatures* *there*, *ibid.* *How* *far* *discovered* the *several Harbours*: the *Map* of *Greenland*, 47. 2

Greenland, *names* of *some* *places* *along* the *Coast*, 701. The *Me-*

ridian *altitude* and *declination* of the *Sunne* *there* *calculated*, 701. 50

& 702. *Some* *creatures* *along* the *Coast*, *ibid.* *See* *How* *temperate* *there* *Cherry* *Island*, 703. 10

Whales, *See* *Seal*, 704. 10

Creatures *there*, 707. 714. 40. *Names* of *places*, 713. 40.

Greenland *attained* in *eighteen* *days*, 716. 20. *Our Kings* *advised* *to* *go* *in* *ships* *placed* *there*, 723. 725. &c. *Augment* *weather* *there*, 727. 30

Sundae *weather* *there*, *ibid.* *There* *old* *there*, 737. 50

Greene *beated* *Tartars* *or* *Isle* *bat*, 165. 30

Griffin a *Welchman* *fairy* *beasts* *in* *England* in *Ireland*, 774. 1

It *was* *very* *confirmed*, *Discovered*, *his* *defence*, 775.

Griffons *pointed*, and *reported* to be *alive* *about* *Mexico*, 1128. 30

Griffons *talors*, 1014. 50

Greenland, *called* *Defolation*, 403. 60

Greenland *not* *found* in *Norway* or *Ireland*, *the* *natural* *Commodities* *there*, 520. 40. & 321. 1

Advance *for* *Travellers*, *ibid.* 321. 1

Greenland, a *description* of the *Coasts* and *Coasts*, *Hermes*, *Crete*, &c. At *large*, 328. &c.

Cheritonite and *Bishops* *there*, 519. 30, 40

Greenland and *Greenlanders*.

Greenland *sailing* *from*, 651. 30

The *Building* *forming* *Alphonsus* *reynes*, *being* *Fortunes*, *Fancies* of *Figmas* and *Princes*, *ibid.* *Misled* in *See* *Charts*, 750. 30. The *appearing* of the *Land*. The *Habit*, *Ten*, *Dies* *of* the *Greenlanders*, 817. 50. The *pretty* *way* *to* *catch* *the* *fish*, 818. 30

The *physical* *description* of *Greenland* the *beasts*, and *fishes* *there*. The *people* *complexion*, 819. The *Diet*, *Apparel*, *Weapons* and *Religion*, 820. The *houses* and *graves*, 826. The *true* *name* of the *Greenlanders*, *their* *report* of the *King*, *they* *intercept* *some* *English* *on* *Islands*, 829. And

THE TABLE.

women marked on the face, 845
30
Groves and trees, venerated in
Curland, 628
Ground not to be shaved, 491.60
Gry-u-ar, or Tartarian Curds, 6.1
Gundlana, in the West In-
dies, the bounds of its juris-
diction; the latitude and distances
of its islands from Toledo. The
City of that name; Villages about
it, &c. 876.30
Guamanga the City in Peru, de-
scribed, 893.40. Good tempe-
rature, &c. 893.40
Guard to the Emperor of Russia,
458.50
Graham's Port, 514.50
Gualto the Haven and Province
in the West Indies, ibid. latitude,
874.30
Guatemala in the Indies, where
the Spaniards may thither, 859.
10
Guatemala Province in the West
Indies, the Inhabitation of the
Country, 877.60. The latitude,
Provinces and Languages under
it, Commodities, great Rivers,
Winds, Spanish Towns, and
their latitudes, chief City, and
distances of other Cities from it,
Peru, of it, latitudes of some of
them, 878
Guixarato Mines in the West
Indies, the Villages of Spani-
ards about them, 874
Guirco the Village and River in
Peru; the fruitful Valleys and
places about it, 895.40
Guixaca the Bishoprick and Pro-
vince in the West Indies, the
extent, the beginning of the
bounds: the Language, Silk,
Gold, situation of the City,
Arre, Towns, &c. 875.30. &c.
Other Towns and Rivers yield-
ing Gold. Indian Towns in-
terior to it, 875.30
Guyavon and Guyavilles, Fruits
of India, 935.1
Gudderi, are the Mark-cats, 90
50
Guco, the Nation, 280.20
Guet placed in the chief place, 373
20.374.10
Guefts have the chief place, 391
40
Guiana or El Dorado in the West
Indies, the great River, 886.60
Great Tydes there, and how far
they sit, 887.1
Guiana or El Dorado, the admi-
rable and dissipated passage of the

Spaniards to find it, 934.1
30
Guinea the New, where it begins
nise, it is all Lands: the extent
and latitude, 906.60. Colours
of the people, the Isles, Ports,
Rivers, &c. Of Guinea Coast,
907.10
Guinoo an Ile, 256.50
Guides of Metals, how they pre-
serve themselves from the injury
of Quicksilver, 908.10
Gulica a wall one, 103.1
Gulie of New Spain, by Florida
a miserable Country: the two
entrances of the Gulfe, with the
Currents and the Channels, 870
50
Gummes of the West Indies, 919
30
Gumme of Tabernacul, where it
grows, the use of it, 864.50. O-
ther Gummes, 878
Gunnies of China, as long as Pi-
sels, but unfermeable, 403
60
Gunnies of China but a few long,
369
Gunnies of wood, 280.60
Gun-powder much in China, 382
30
Guinea, Nole in Greenland, the
latitude, 704
Gutavus succeeds his Father
King Charles of Sweden, 780
His wars and accord with the
Russe, 791.792
Guts of beards sowed together for a
Sail to Boats in Greenland,
817.60

H

Habit of the China-Indies,
187.40
Habits and fashions of Europe, ri-
diculous to the Chinese, 406.1
Habitations how anciently shif-
ter, 662.30
Hacall a Sea-monster, the manner
of taking, 650
Hackluyts Head-land, 714.40. &c.
721.50.723
Hackluyts Headland, 464.40
Hackluyts River, 531.30
Haffensford Haven in Island, 643
40. See also, 655.1
Halappi, or Aleppo, 116.60. &c.
Halongien Province in Nor-
way, 660.1
Halusin the Russe, an Impostor, 786
60
Hamerfound in Shotland, 699
50

Hanocui in China, where, 409.10
A small large City, ibid. Aue-
nice. The delicate situation,
ibid. is higher at the Quay or
not, ibid.
Hamlet, the dark Country, 118
40
Hand and Eye for a Governor's
Enjoyment, 319.50
Hinds clapt together in salutation,
373.30
Hands joined in Marriage by the
Russe, 484
Haulin Collage in China, 389
30
Haulie Townes upon the Balliche
Sea, 462.50. Their Confraterni-
ties to keep in the Northern Na-
tions, their Privileges there-
upon, 409
Hao, a Chinese word, 186.60
Harlots, kept a Corporation at
Cambalu, 84.1. Their order,
ibid.
Harts, or Reine Dore their soft-
ness in drawing the Sleds, 480
50
Harnells two or three a year in
China, 381.30
Haudines, or a Nation of Haud-
nates or Murders in Cathay,
392.20
Hat, the Mogores and Saracins
fashion, 309
Hauticke River runs from Rul-
finward into Cathay, 545.20
Christians dwell there, 551.
30
Hawkes store in Russia, 523
30
Hawkes snow-white in Russia, 320
80
Hawkes whistled to the fift, 38
60
Hawkes the plenty, and the manner
of Hawking in Tartary, 6
20
Hawking at the Horse, 237.20
Hawking at the Bucke and Hare,
368.30
Hayre dyed yellow, 296.60
Hayre how the Indians wear it,
929.40
Hayre how the People of Mexico
wear it, and anoint it, 1043.1043
1
Hayre, let grow in Russia, by
those in disjuncture with the Em-
peror, 459.30
Hayres rained in Iapon, 326
60
Haython the Armenian, how pre-
pared to write his Story, 107.50
His Story begun, pag. 108. He
was present in the Warres which

he wrote off, 122.30. His
Story, 125.50. The
style of his Story, 125.60.
&c.
Heate beyond 80. degrees North,
571.30
Heate in Tartary, extreme in Sum-
mer time, 11.30
Heate under the Line, compared
with the cold under the North
Pole, 474.1
Heaves under the Torrid Zone,
920.921
Hearts of men to be sacrificed, pluckt
out by the Mexicans, 1031.30
The manner, 1033.30. & 1037
60.1038.1
Heart of a Man being pluckt
out, he speaks after it 1039
60
Heaven and Earth sacrificed unto
an China, 397.2
Heavens fourteen, and thirteen
Heils, by the Bramenes account,
167.1
Heavens two seen at once in Peru,
and the manner, 937.50
Hebrew Testament 600. years
old, 400.40
Heda Mountain castle out fire
against foyle weather, 507.40
Heda the burning Mountains in
Island, the fabulous reports a-
bout it, 648. Dangerous to be
approached, the Philosophical
reason of the burning. Strange
Story about it, ibid. The floating
about it, &c. 649. The Sulphu-
rous flames proved volu-
lumes, 651.10
Heights first taken by the Swede
in the West Indies, and why, 918
40
Hellicke Islands, 222.50
Hell described in China, 408.1, 10
40
Hell, thought to be in Mount He-
cla, 648. &c.
Hell, the capacity Geometrical of it,
940
Hellepont, called Saint Georges
Arme, 53.10
Hempe and Flaxe in Russia, stores
why the Trading is decayed, 417
20
Hens without feathers and barrie
like Cats, 101.20
Hennes that smell like Muske,
but dying lose their scent, 995
60
Hennes in the West Indies, the In-
dians carry every where with
them, 964.20
Henry Greene a Villano: ha-

ken into the Shippe by Hen-
rie Hudson, betrays him,
605. Slane by Savage, 607
30
Henrie Hudson his Voyage to the
East Indies by the Pole,
567. He set out, ibid. Founds
no passage between 78. degrees
and an half, & 82.572. & 573
30. His second Voyage by the
North-east, 574.10. Founds no
passage by Nova Zembla, 577
30. His third Voyage, 581.
His Voyage for the North-west
Passage, 596. Sails a hundred
leagues further than an English-
man before him, 598.20. His
last writing, and dyet at Sea,
602. Bound in his own Ship,
604.30. Turned out by his
own men into the Shallop, 605.1
Just the cause of the first mutiny,
609.30
Heraldry of the West Indians, 994
50
Herbs which eaten by beasts, make
them cast their booles, 76.60
Hermes in Russia, their birdnest
baldness, and opinion of his wisdome
449.30. Convinced for Savins
and counterfeits Muske-mo-
gers, ibid. A baldness of one
of them to the Emperor, took
well, 450.1. Sometimes secretly
murdered, ibid.
Hextal what, in Chinese, 319.50
Heices at Common Law to any
man's advantage, were in may-
tain him, if he fell into casual
beggary, in Island, 667.20.30
Hiachon the chief City of Cal-
cutta, 112. The way from thence to
Cathay, 313.50
Hiben, a people in Tartary, 220
Hietas, the River Prut, in Molda-
via, 635.1
Hielandia, misnamed Schetland,
648. &c.
Himilau, a Chinese Pyrat, why
he turned from Christianity, 255
40. His Story.
Hirace the Prentice, 70.40
Hispaniola an excellent Island, and
the Commodities of it, 993. The
Island, its situation, name, com-
modities, latitude, &c. The na-
tive name, figure, and myner,
860.40. The Village in it, ibid.
& 862. The Ports, ibid. The
chief places where the Spaniards
dwelt there, in their Indian Ne-
gations, 329.10
Histories of China for 4000.
years, 376.10
add a

THE TABLE.

Histories recorded three ways,
1051.40. How in Peru, 1053
20
Historie of the Mexicans in Pi-
lani, begins at Page 1067.
And continues to Page, 1117
Hydes of Russia, 416.50
Hydes of Kowee abundance brought
from the West Indies to Spaine,
961.50
Hyperborean Sea, 651.60
Hyrcania, where, 49.20
Hoquani, as told with three eyes,
The God of Eyes, in China,
406.1
Hocac-Chun the Tartar, 113
30
Hocktyde, when and why influ-
ent, 612.20
Hogge sacrificed in China, 307.1
& 196.20
Hogges with their names on their
backs, their description, force-
muck, and manner of burning
them, 966.10.20. & 868.30
Hohi an Indian Tree, the excel-
lent nature of it, 986.1
Hoda, the Bysses Sea of North
Island, 654
Hold with hope, the Land, where
or whether any such, 750.50
& 596. The Latitude, 598
60
Hollanders denied entrance into
China, 406.30. They take
the Jesuits Shippe of Japan,
ibid.
Holten, a Character of sed in Ar-
menia, deny from the Arme-
nian Character, 210.40
Holy-days in Tartary; how
kept, 29.50. Christian Priests
then bless the Princes Cup,
ibid.
Holy Ghost, the Greeks Heresie
about him, 452
Holy Land, the Tartans often
attempt the Recovery for the
Christians. See Pages, 116
117. 118. 119. The Defense
given ever upon the Chan
Tatars turning Saracen, 120
10. The Christians much affli-
cted by the alteration, ibid. The
Defense sit on sea againe, 422
30. &c. &c. Expedition aban-
doned, 123.20.30. And
another, 123.50
Holy water used in Russia, 455
40. Sent in the Emperors farr
and near, 457.30
Holy water, the Armenians use
Frankincense in stead of it, 50
30
Holy

THE TABLE

Images *portrayed with diverse* 36
 Image, 453. *Fainted, not earned,*
 in the Greek Church, *Cal-*
led Miracle-workers, 453.
 Image made without hands, 456.
 In agitation the strength of it, 395.
 Imperial *Effluvia* of the Ruffe,
 741, 30-30.
 Incense when it grows, 509-49.
 Inconquered by the Mexicans in
 the giving of welcome, and in Sa-
 crifices, 1004, 1010, 1013, 60, 66.
 Incessant Marriages of the Kings
 of Peru, 1054, 50. 1059, 60.
 The *Swiftness,* 1059.
 India the bounds of it, 1101.
 Indians white and fair, where, 893.
 Indies of the West, are not the West
 Indies, the Countries, which they
 containe properly, 903, 60. *m* *mar-*
gine. Their temper, colors of the
 Indians, &c. 904-1.
 Indian delays for advantage, 285.
 Indians 60000, to Guard the pa-
 ges, to Perlia, 68-30.
 Indians of the West, their *Statue*
and Complexions, 599-50.
 Ignorance of the way to Rome, and
 returne, *ought to be taken care,*
 393, 40-50.
 The *young Mother* Brother
 when he returns, The Spaniards
 settles in *Nobilitie* rather,
 87-92. And to the Philipines
 Indies, ibid. The *Seasons of*
the French Fleet, 859.
 Iniquities of the South described, 887.
 Their *excesses, Princes,* *Queens,*
and Nobles, 887-90.
 Inquisi-tion *See* *Black* *Indies* *Quere-*
na, 168, 10-30, 39-49.
 Iniquities of Aulic, how it grows,
 817-50.
 Inquisi-tion the Kingdoms, a new
 Name, 397-50.
 Inferiour, *latter* *days* *his* *State* *m-*
plified of this Superior, 197-1.
 Inferiour nations, made for the ser-
 vice of their *next* Superior, 197-1.
 Infants consigned as Oracles, 391.
 Information of all, *monthly* *given*
 in the King of China, 183-30.
 His *Spies,* ibid.
 Impermanence the Title of Sweden
 of itself, 795.
 Impermanence to the Crim Tartars,
 ruled by the Czar, 633-50.
 Inhabited by Clarks, *Clarks*
and, ibid.
 Inland-Sound, 233-10.
 Inquis the Kings of Peru, *See* *Peru*
 Their *Diadem,* *Gravels,* *Rich-*
esses, *Honours* *after* *death,* *Re-*
ligion, Their *Coronation* *cer-*
emonies, *exact* *Italy,* *Policy,* *Co-*
mones, 1059. Their *publicke* *build-*
ing, *revenues,* 1060-10. They *ban-*
ished the third part of the Land, 1061-10.
 Their *Original,* *Complexions,*
Buildings, 1059, 60. *See* *Ingen-*
ious, *to* *see* *a* *new* *Place,* *See* *1060.*
 Their Succession for, 30.
 died years together, 1062-10.
 Their *Attire,* *Dart,* *See* *1106-40.*
 Their *Step,* 1130.
 Ingulius of Norway, his *fortunes,*
 656, 657. Peoples *Island* *first*
 657. The *Story,* ibid.
 Iniquities the manner of it, 371.
 Inheritances in Peru were the
 same, 371.
 Brother and sister, 1054-50.
 Inke-making a liberal Art, 383-50.
 Innes in China, 185-50.
 Innes or Lodging in Tartarie, ne-
 cessary, 810.
 Innes in Tartarie, the *preparation*
for them, 87, 10-20. *See* *General*
Section, 1064-10. *See* *1064.*
 Inquisition, Spanish, in the
 Indies, where exercised and how,
 871, 910, 911, 871-85.
 Inquisition Spanish, *gotten into*
the West Indies, 871-50.
 Inquisition for *Religion* *new*
in Russia, 453-50.
 Instruments of riches in China, made
 all of Silke, 383-20.
 Intelligence given by Birds, & how,
 136-60.
 Inimitations the Ceremony in Ru-
 sia, 374-30.
 Inimitations to a Feast, the *pre-*
paration, 391-10.
 Iob, 31, Verse 36, interpreted, 1028.
 Iogow, the people, 109.
 Sir John Hawkins, his Judgment
 of the Magellans Strait, 901.
 John Knight slain by the
 landers, 289-40.
 Jonas Poole his Voyage, 464-60.
 Jonas Poole his Voyage to Green-
 land, 599. How *farre* *he* *dis-*
covered *him,* His *Commission*
for a second Voyage, 707. How *fast*
he *found,* 711. The *Island* *Voyage,*
 713.
 John Prince of Denmark, and
 Queen Anne's Brother, *gave*
a *moving* *into* *Russia,* *where*
he *was* *to* *be* *sent,*
 710-20.

[illegible]

THE TABLE

[illegible]

| | |
|--|------------|
| <i>Language,</i> | 23, 20. |
| Lutland, named for the Gnomes, | 661; 30. |
| Lutland under the King of Persia, | 77. |
| mark, Fifth god-chang the name, | 98-99. |
| The people's reverence of mountains, | 77. |
| An Island, the number of the | 77. |
| were there, 77; They were saved | 77. |
| at their trial, 77; The Gnomes | 77. |
| renewed its flames and Nobles | 77. |
| to the English distressed | 77. |
| there, | 77-77; 77. |
| Every Tale, written over him, | 77. |
| of China, his Country, 32-33; | 77. |
| They that break to him, just | 77. |
| before their mouths, | 77. |
| Inflicies situated in China, 184; | 77. |
| Their Place in the Circuit, | 184. |
| Inflicies over-ruled in Russia, | 421; 30. |
| Inflicies and Mercy, a pretty Em- | 77. |
| blessment of, | 47-10. |
| Inflicies to be done but must be | 77. |
| done, the Tartarian Maxims, | 77. |
| Inflicies the manner in Island, | 440-50. |
| Inflicies treated jointly in Island, | 691. |
| Inflicies exact in Peru, | 105; 10. |
| Infliciation, the Russes over-
come it, | 453; 30. |

K

| | |
|----------------------------------|-------------|
| <i>Kait Caffie,</i> | 237-40. |
| Kalendar of the Mexicans, | 105, 10. |
| the prey manner of it, 105, 10. | 105, 10. |
| for the Peruvians, | 105, 10-11. |
| Kingstree or Changle, a people, | 18. |
| Kartalla Rens in Catey, fully | 80-1. |
| to Ob, | 40-1. |
| Ken-Chum of Tartary false, | 25. |
| Renchast, a Tartarian Town, | 19. |
| Kerka the people, | 33-40. |
| Kerkia the Country, 6, 30. | 33-40. |
| Kerfusa the chief City in Ca- | 13-40. |
| ria, | 98-99. |
| Ketlwise Land, | 237-3. |
| Kidwinn in Iceland, 516, 40-5. | 531-1. |
| Kill themselves, why the Indian | 77. |
| Servants die, where their Master | 77. |
| dies, | 77. |
| King and wife in the Well in | 77. |
| the wild, kill only for their | 77. |
| body, | 77. |
| King of Armenia pulled through | 77. |
| Tartary, 47-10, Bolvare Ru- | 77. |

brigues companions, 47.50
 King of Mexico his charge, 1006
 10
 Kings carried on men's shoulders, 992.1
 Kings of Peru made Gods, *after*
death, 1015.60
 Kings, a Tartar people, 240.40
 Kings a *Thule* in Siberia, *sub-*
tect to the Russ, 798.70
who *thence* *into* *Catay,* *strongly*
the *North* *Tartar* *Country,* 799
 Kite, the Patience of Mulcown
to *kill* *the* *Empire,* 1000
 Killing an Emperor, in *Ulan,*
 647.1
 Killing *off* *in* *the* *Greek* *Church,*
 2.82
 Klutinsky the Russ *Imper,* *an*
enlight *Empress,* 789.40
Resist, 1001
 Kneeling to great Officers in Chi-
 na, 184.20
 Kneeling on one knee, *more* *due*
to *men* *and* *on* *hoy,* *to* *God,* 17.10
 Knife *first* *by* *the* *Crim* *Tartar* *to*
kill *an* *Empire,* 1011.60
to *kill,* 439.60
 Knights *in* *the* *Mulcown,* 216.1
 Knights *in* *Ulan* *in* *Gronelap,* 82
 Knighthood in Mexico, *carried*
the *mark* *of* *Armes* *of* *some* *Idols,*
 1030.10. *And* *in* *Peru,* 1045
 10
 Knighthood the *four* *all* *Orders* *in*
 Mexico, 1063.50
 Kuetland the Country, 659.50

THE TABLE.

Lumps before Tombs in China, 265 & 266.1
Land in 73. degrees North : see mentioned in any Sea Card, 368.
Land Held with Hope, 1.
A temperate Land, *ibid.* The Sun is long together above the Horizon there, 569.30
Lands set apart for sacred uses in Peru, 105.50
Lands in Peru, how the profits are distributed, according to each water-course, 105.7.30
Lungs and Solings, a Tartarian people, 23.20. *The latter, ibid.*
Languages in Noua Zembla, 474.30 & 513.1
Land-lords, Judges over their Tenants, 216.40
Language of China discomfited upon, 384
Language and writing, the same through all China, 101.50
Language of Holland, is the pure old Goth or N. w. German, 68.11
Languages forty several ones, spoken in so many Castles in Ketchikan, 1
Languages diverse, in Persian Provinces, 74
Language of Russia, different from the Polish, 761.30
Lions Stones Maons a great King, done, where, 168.20. Hath a Mark and Gold, *ibid.* Their complexion and habit, *ibid.* e. s. mighty River amongst them of a wonder of that, 169.1.10
Laplads, the length and breadth, 443.10. It hath two sorts of people, *ibid.* To whom subject, Their poor living, some are wild, and the great of witcher in the world, 444. Excellent Beemen and Gomers, their Commodities and Fairs, 444.1.10. 233.20
Lapladers their miserable living, 216.1. Their justice, 517.20
Laque a Perfume in China, 106.1
Latitudes which the Spanish Fleet observe in going and coming to the West Indies, 924. See Conferences and Negotiations.
Laua River in Russia, his mouth and fall into the Lake Lodiga, 794.40
Laulo the Island, 307.10
Laumey in China fired by the Tartars, 278.40
Law of Nature : the Infants hope, that the Chinoos were fawned by, 396.60
Law altogether studied in Chi-

na, 185.20
Laws made by Kings in China, 387.40
Law-suits in China, must about their Barial places, 268.20
Laws of Island some rehearsed, 666.60 & 67.
Laws in Russia, 435.20. None written, but all speaking Laws, *ibid.* 216. & 217
Laws of the Tartars, 443.1
Lawyer, none may plead in the West Indies, where his King's man is Judge, 913
Laws of India taken, and given to benevolent men, 276
Lawyers forbidden to go to the Spanish India, and why, 998.20
Laws of the Russes, the order, 413.40. Their several Courts and Judges, *ibid.*
Laws, unknown to the Tartars, 619.1
Saint Lawrence in Canada discovered, 183
Saint Lawrence Bay, 477.20.1. *ibid.*
Luzon, a China Sea, 398.40. Their Legends and Fables, their Traditions, *ibid.*
Lay-Commissaries to Bishops in Russia, appointed by the Emperor, 446.40. They over-rule the Clergy, *ibid.*
Lead Mine in Cherry Land, 558.50 & 564
Leaf in India, that breeds a broken Army presently, 986.40
Learning only gives Wealth, Honour, and Nobility in China, 367.40
Learning feared by Tyrants, 447.30
Lease-rates in England, 628.10
Lechias, a rare Fruit in China, 178.40
Left-hand most honourable, where, 371.20
Left-hand not used to touch their meats with it, where, 105.1
Legends and Prophecies, the effects of them, 1021
Letter of Huimfon, killing the Dragon, and flying into Heaven, 337.40
Legend of Leus, 398.40
Legs, Armes, heads, &c. Offered by sick Men to their Idols, 271.1
Lent-time to the people of the East, 34.20
Lent, the Armenians and Nestorians, eat on fish in Lent, 35.20

Lents four in a year, 217.60. & 227. They begin on Monday the end of all four, 218.1. No fish nor white-comest eaten in Lent, 218
Lents four in Russia, and when and how, 436
Leprosy is used like the Hounds, 86.50
Leprous people are Told-gatherers in Tartary, 104.0
Lequios Islands by Japan and China, rich in Gold, &c. 906.50. See Lucas.
Leigs, a Tartarian people, 12.50. Their border, 16.10
Legacy of the Tartars for their Prince, 85.10
Letters of the Islanders, 645.30
Letters of Demetrius of Russia, to the Nobility, 752. Of him to the English Agents, 758.20
Letters of Mexico, their manner, 1135.10
Letter of Almeida in Rio Sand, 330.40. Of Longboard and Tado, 343.40 & 344. Of Pantao to Layr de Guzman, 350
Letters of the Pishor of Conchoos in China, to the Governors of Philippines, 309. The answer to them, 310. Of Jerome Camare, 310.50
Letters of the Russian Emperor, 222
Letter of the Duke of Brabant, concerning the Tartars, 604.0
And of the Emperor to the King of England, 61.90
Letters of the Tartarians to the French King, 45.50. To the Pope, 59.30. Of one Tartarian Prince to another, 59.50
Letters, the West Indians gave range of them, they thought the Spanish Packets of Letters could break, 924.50
Letters about business of Greenland fishing, 731.732.733.734. 735.736.737
Letters unknown to the West Indians, 1051.40
Letter of Sir Humphrey Gilbert from New-found-Land, 808.50
Official Run a Mariner to King Henry the English, 809. Of Albert de Prato to Cardinal Wolsey, 809. Of William Baffin to Master Wolfenholme, 843
Letters of Master Locke to a Greek Priest, and their answers, 821
Letters of Suisey Emperor of Russia, to our King James, 705
Of English Merchants con-

THE TABLE.

ning Russian troubles, 780. Of Doctor Hall, 781
Letters of Xuxier the Jesuite, 318.10. Of the King of Bungo to the Pope, 322.30. Of the King of Animo to the Pope, 323.30. Of the Iaponian Tyrant, to the Spanish Secretary, 324
Lettow, in Lithuania, 624.50
Lucia Land, where, 633.10
Luconia, where, 634.40
Lufooc Islands, 213.10 & 213.10
Lewis in Orkney, 827.40
Lezards are Crocodiles.
Lampoon, where, 190.50
Lampoon a Portugal Town in China, ruled by the Chinoos, 259.50
Libanus inhabited by Christians, 122.20
Lice sold for meats in Mexico, 1133.10
Lice eating men to the bones, 614.40
Lice not false Sayers, and find them again coming to the same place, 675
Licence written on a board, 292.20. 299.20
Licotice where, described, 213.1
Lieftland now divided, between the Russes, the Swedes, and the Pole, 627.60
Light-Dogs of the Indies, his strange behaviour, described, 966.50. Sang musically, 978.
Lignum Aloe where it grows, 102.60 & 103.10
Lignum Guaiacum, or Sandum, the use, and where it grows, 938.10
Lignum Sandum, better for the French Poce than Guaiacum, 968.30
Lignum vitæ or Guayac, where brought, 959.60. See Guaiacum.
Life, much studied in China, 369.20
Lying in China is prudence, 339.10
Lima City in Peru. See Los Reyes.
Limahon a Chinese Pirate, 286.50. His Story, 287. e. s. might flye made out against him, *ibid.* How hee came to the Philippines, *ibid.* Goes to surprise the Spaniards there, *ibid.* Comes before Manila, 288.1
Burns the City, *ibid.* Sates himself on the River Pangasinan, and erects a Fort, *ibid.* 40.
The Spaniards say against

him, *ibid.* They set upon him at two several places, 289. How fleet to his Fort, they besiege him, three Months, *ibid.* His fine Stratagem to escape, 289.30 & 308.30. Omoucon the Chinese comes with Commission to take him, *ibid.*
Lime and Stone built without China, 293.10
Linciu in China, 293.60
Lima or the Fruit of Limes, his Story, 624
Linnen and napery of the Chinese trees, 1132.40
Lions caught to Hunt like Hounds, 85.20. And Leopards and Wolves, *ibid.* The manner of it, *ibid.* Lions how flayed, 94.40.50
Lions of West India see in Perce a new, ordinarly hunted by men, 962.20
Liquor the people, where, 168.1
Luets Islands in Greenland, 719.50
Literary Self of China, their fine again coming to the same place, 397
Lithuanians, their Marriages, Religion, families of One sort, and of Snakes, Hunting, &c. 659
Lithuania, what Towns the Russes have in it, 438.60. The Names destroyed, and Russes placed there, 439.1
Liturgie or Service of the Russian, 450. Read at the Altar, *ibid.* Lituanos, list to the Pole by the Russes, 438.60
Lizard or Crocodile, a strange sort of one of them, 883.20
Loate divided in the Russian Marriage, the Ceremony and meaning, 454.0
Loadstone found in the Indies, 890.50
Loadstone, a Pileus built of it, 802.30
Loadstone communicates more strength to Iron touched with it, then the Stone it selfe hath, 857.70
Lobsters in New found Land, 586.10
Lodiga Lake and Town in Russia, 794.40
Lofocon on the Coast of Finnmark, 661.10 & 681.40
Logiecke, the Chinoos name, 348.30
Lombay described, 474.40
London Castle, by Francis Daus, the Landward, 845.16
Longitude, how the Degrees are reckoned, 865.60. An ancient table reckoning, how to find Longitude of Places, how to find by Art and Instruments, 859.840
Longitude, the Degrees are longer shortened as they are farr or nearer to the Poles, 560.50
Lop, a great City where, The Desert of Lop, 755.20. Spirits dead, *ibid.*
Lor in Peits, 780.50
Lords Prayer in the beginning of the Russian Service, 310
Lords Spiritual named before the Lord Temporal in Russia, 790.20 & 784.1 & 783. & 787
Loretto in Italy, the Town, Temple and Idolatry there, described, 613.20
Los Reyes, the Archbishop and Limits, the Style now given with weapons, the native Commissioner: Latitude of the City, number of Households, excellency of the Climate, the Jesuites Missionaries, &c. 892. Number of Women and Negroes, Privileges of the Country, with their Laws, taxes, and differences of Colonization, Mines, Complexions of people, &c. 893. Demerits and Quickness, Springs, Bathes, admirable high wayes, the various Wormes, &c. 894. Full of Cities under it, a hardy people, &c. 895. The Harbours, Ports, Rivers, Cities, &c. 896.1.10. Five Ports.
Los Fryles, the City in the West Indies.
Los Tettigos the Isles in the West Indies, 868.30
Los Angeles or Thalsca, the Bishopricke in the West Indies, the story, the Commanders of the Style, and Towns thereof, the numbers of Spaniards in them 872.30.40.50. The Rivers, and Towns in it, 873.10.20
Los Martyres, the Isles by Florida, 869.40
Loit things, an Office for them, 865.1
Lots used by the Chinoos, 309.1 & 318.20.40. If the Lots be valiant, they beat their Idols, 219
Lots, the Emperor of Russia elected by them, 769. The manner, *ibid.*
Lots in China, 196. The manner, *ibid.*
Lots

THE TABLE.

Lots *determiners of Controversies*, 414-20.
 Lot: *law in Russia*, 755-30.
 Loures, *what Office*, and *how created in China*, 184, 20. & 200.
 Lowneise in Greenland, *our King's Armies* *step up there*, 717-30.
 Lowlie Lane in Island, 647-1.
 Lubbeckers *pay no Customs to Denmark*, 631.
 Lucayas *Isles of the West Indies*, *where their Names*, *Atlatz*, *Distances*, 865-10. See *Leguons*.
 Lumleys *Inlet in America*, the *Latitude*, 811-1.
 Lulus the Chinese, *his Legend*, 334-1. *See put Lice into his*, *again*, *ibid.* *Hu Shins*, 334-20.
 Lutheranism in Island, 645-10.
 Luxuria *on Island*, 256-60.
 Luzon the Kingdom, 109-10. The *Chinese* *same there by the Spaniards*, *ibid.* & 310.
 M
 Macao in China, *how farve from Malaca*, 410.
 Macos and Rods *borne before the China Officers*, 187-10.
 Magallu the great *Island*, 106-10.
 Magilene, the *River in the West Indies*, the *head*, *Current mouth*, *length*, and *Latitude*, 885-20.
 Called Rio Grande, *ibid.* *Hu Head*, 890-1.
 Magellane Straights, the Spanish *Indian Provinces in them*, *where the Straights begin*, the *Capitane*, 899-60. *The Port*, *Cape*, *Bays*, *Islands*, and *their Latitude*: *What degrees of Latitude this Straights is between*: See John Hawkins *Judgment of these Straights*, 900. *Where they had the Name of Magellanes*: *why the Navigation through it is dangerous*, the *Rivers*, *Points*, *Capes*, *Islands*, and *their Latitude by it*, 901.
 Magellane Straights, *ibid.* & 901.
 Magellanus *Martyred*, 285-50.
 Magellane Straights, the *distances and Stages of Navigation from Castile thither*, 859-50. *Difficult to pass*, 860.
 Magi *what came to Christ*. See

Tarfa.
 Magical *Image in Russia*, 757-30.
 Magicians *knarries*, 92-50.
 Magistrates called *Lords or Fathers*, 388-10. *Their immediate ad-dress to the King*, *ibid.*
 Magistrates *how honored in China*, 393-10. *Being deposed*, they *lose not all Honor*, they *have Temples*, *Altars*, and *images erected to them*, 393-20.
 Magistrates of China, the *five Chiefs*, 388-30. *Their manner of proceeding*, *ibid.* *Their In-laws and Ensigns*, 390-10.
 Magistrates of China *Sacrifice to*, 397-20.
 Magnificat, at *Evening prayer in the Russian Church*, 450-40.
 Maguey, the *wonder Tree of West India*, *described*: *it yields Water*, *Wine*, *Oyle*, *Vinegar*, *Honey*, *Syrup*, *Thresh* and *Needle*: *and how they get all these out of it*, 957-10-20.
 Mahometanism the *extant*, 327-70.
 Mahometanes in the *Moluccas* and the *Philippines*, 905-20. *How they came thither and further*, *ibid.* 30.
 Mahometanes *many in China*, 399-50. *But ignorant and con-tempted*, *ibid.* *When they came in*, *ibid.*
 Mahometanes *writing of Temples*, 334-20. *Conced* *only there*, *fore*, 335-10.
 Mahometane *difficulties for liberty to drink wine*, 71-1.
 Masters *much honored in China*, 395-10.
 Master of the *Ceremonies in China*, 300-50 & 384-20.
 Master of the *Works in Russia* *his Greenness and reverence*, 428-10.
 Malabar, called *India the Greater*, 104-30. *Four Kingdoms in it*, 104-30.
 Malaca, *how farve from Macao*, 410-20.
 Malacca *Islands*: the *Wars there between the Spaniards and the Portugals*, 282-50.
 Malacca, the *Navigation thither from Spain*, 860-10. *The distance and Stages*, *ibid.*
 Mameys *an Indian fruit* *described*, 957-10.

Mamofes, the *old people of Cui-lan*: *Idolaters*, *barbarous*, &c. *Their Rites*, *Marriages*, *Extrac-tions*, *Habits*, *Hospitalities*, &c. 638.
 Manate a *West Indian Fish* *described*, *how taken*: *hee hath a Stone good against the Stone*, 987-988.
 Manatia *a Fish that gives Juice*, 930-40. *Their description*.
 Mancheroles, the *chiefes City of the old Tartars*, 15-30. *Where they still elect their Great Chan*, *ibid.*
 Mandarines, *their houses in China*, 370-30. *Set up Flags be-fore his House*, and *Arches tri-umphal*, *ibid.* *Some examples of their Nobility*, 371. *Disposed in all Cities*, 372. *There he live of them chiefes*, 373-50.
 Mangat or Marcopia the *City*, 634-30.
 Mung *what part of China*, 404-20.
 Mung *accounted barbarous by the Chinese*, 345-1.
 Mung *built nine Places* *from the Great Tartar*, 99-10.
 Mung or China, 95-30. *The fear-ric of its fierceness*, *ibid.* *Inven-dred by the Tartars*, 95-60. *And taken*, 96-10. *The name of Mung*, *described*, 96-10. *in margin*. *And see especially page 102.*
 Mung; the *Kingdom*, 89-10. *It is the nine Southern Provinces of China*, 243-30.
 Mung Chan *his message to the King of Franks*, 20-30. *His golden Bull*, and *the authority of it*, 29-40.
 Mung *chosen Cham of Tartarie*, 25-10. *Kids Siremen*, 25-30. *His conference with Fier Wil-liam*, 27-50. *His description*, *ibid.* *His Court and Equipage*, *ibid.* 30. *His proud Ambassadors*, 28-1.
 Mung Chan *his Proclamation concerning a Disputation of Religion held before him*, 41-50. *His last discourse with Fier William*, 43. *His letters to the French King*, 45-50.
 Mung or Mango-Chan, 114-10. *Expelled*, 115-60. *Died*, 117-70.
 Mangani, *what*, 97-1.
 Mungu-Chans *Infliction done upon his wife*, 115-10. & 45-1.
 Mungulane;

Mungulane, a *Port*, 235-30. *The people described*, *ibid.*
 Mulla the *Island*, 286-10. *A Bu-bop Sea there*, *ibid.*
 Muna-hota the *River in Virgi-nia*, 599.
 Manse and Taute, *landers of Ca-thaya*, 34-10.
 Mansebeth eaten in the *Siege of Musco*, 780-20.
 Map-makers and Globe-makers, *create Lands and Islands at plea-sure*, 461-10.
 Map of China, the *best with notes*, 401-402 &c.
 Mappes of China *their Errors*, 168-10.
 Maps *purposely made false by the Spaniards*, 883-30.
 Maragon, or the *River of Amazon in the West Indies*, the *chiefest of the World*, 933-60. *Stran-gers leagues broad at the mouth*, 934-20.
 Marble a *kind of it much esteemed in China*, 315, 312-1. *Like to Jasper*, *ibid.* *Given out of the Rivers*, and *forced with Fire*, 313-1.
 Marchpane in China, 292-50 & 298-40.
 Marcopia or Mangat the *City*, 634-30.
 Marcus Paulus Venetus, *made use of Coblai Chav*, *Clerke*, 67-40. *He learned four Languages*, *ibid.* *Sent Ambassadors by him to Caraijan*, *ibid.* 50. *Writes a Journal of his travels*, *ibid.* *Continues a long time with the Great Chan*, *ibid.* *Goes to Ar-gon in India*, 68-30. *To Trebe-fonde*, *Constantinople*, *Nepo-lis*, and *to Venice againe*, *ibid.* 40. *Is here no body knew him*, *ibid.* 50-60. *Taken Pri-soner by the Genowayes*, *might not be redeemed*, 69-1. *He writes his travels*, *ibid.* *Marcus Paulus Venetus his Book*, 65-40.
 Mares *tape*, the *Tartars Ensigne*, 642-1.
 Margaria *Island in the West In-dies*: the *distance from Hispan-niols and Trinidad*, the *Villages in it*, *Pearls*, *fish*, *the* *East-Indies*, 866-20.
 Margarites *Sold in Orkney*, 847-20.
 Marjenberg by Danike, the *Lu-*

THE TABLE.

theran and Romane *Religious exercised there*, 626-20. *Build by whom*, *ibid.*
 Market-wares of Mexico, 113-2.
 Mermalades of *Well Indian fruit*, 597-60 & 98-20.
 Marriages of the *Chinese*, 587-50. *One wife*, and *many Children*, *which they buy and sell againe*: *their Children inherit*, *ibid.* *Their Marry not any of their own name*, *ibid.*
 Marriages, *publicke Pleasies for them in China*, 99-10.
 Marriages of the *Mamofes of Cur-lan*, 628. Of the *Lutians*, 628-60.
 Marriages in China, 182-30.
 Marriages of the *Chinese*, 393-60. See *Wedding*.
 Marriages of the *Mexicans*, 1009-40.
 Marriages of the *Samoieds*, 555-40.
 Marriages the *third or fourth*, *not well altered in the Greeke Church*, 435-36. *The manner of Solemnization in Russia*, 453-30. *Held unlawful without consent of Parents*, 454-1. *Large Dowries and no Legates*, *ibid.* 10. *They go on Horsebacke to Church like ours*, *ibid.* *Perfor-med at the Altar with Ring and laying of hands*, *five Lockes her Head upon his Shoulder*, and *he throws the toppe of his Garment over her*, *ibid.* *The Ceremony of the Loafe*, and *Meadle*, and *Corne flung upon them*, and the *Bride flence*, *ibid.* *The Mar-riage Feast*, and the *Bridegroom and Bride called Dais*, *ibid.* 45-61.
 Marriages of the *Crin Tartars*, *what degrees are forbidden them*, *their Dowries*, 441-30.
 Marriages of the *Well Indians*, 991-40 & 993-40 & 998-40.
 Marriages *in Mexico*, 1044-1.
 Marriages *in Mexico* of the *Kings of Peru*, 1054-50.
 Marriage Solemnities, 1058.
 Marriage Rites of Mexico, 1107-70.
 Martauan in Pegu, 281-40.
 Santa Martha *Provinces in the West Indies*, the *Extent*. *Site*, *name*, *Commanders*, *Minis*, *precious Stones*, *Laws*, *ibid.*
 Martyrs of the *Diuels* *making*, 70-50.

Maskes &c. at the *Coronation of the King of Mexico*, 1019-40.
 Masking in China, 349-40.
 Massise the *Mountain where Noahs Ark rested*, 50-20.
 Matsuga the *Island*, 285-30.
 Mathematicks *first taught in China*, 329-60. & 339-20, 30.
 The *most* of *them* *former* *all that* *but* *9*, 344-20. *Their In-strument*, 346-20.
 Matsing the *City*, *where*, 2-10.
 Matrimony, the *forms in Russia*, 219-50 & 230-1.
 Matrephone or Matthews Land, 805.
 Matulphian Yar in Russia, *the way thence to Ob*, 805-30.
 Maulden Sound in Greenland, the *Latitude*, 711-40.
 Maudy Thursday, the *Russian Emperor receives the Sacra-ment upon*, 227-50.
 May-calls and May Flowers *brought by the Indians to our Kings*, 1045-30.
 Maypole of *fun*, 493-10.
 Maypole of *fun*, *how it grows*, *diff-erences of the graine*, *how dress and eaten*, *but for Beer*, 99-3.
 It *sees for Butter*, *Bread*, *Wine*, and *Oyle*, and *for man & beast*, 554-1.
 Meani, *are Temples in China*, 301-1.
 Meades of *several parts*, 231-1.
 Meates, *some better than others in Russia*, 453. *Their superfluousness*, *ibid.*
 Meates *prepared for Idols in Mexi-co*, 104-60.
 Meate-forges of *Gold*, 242-50.
 Mechouans the *Ethiopicks of Pro-vince in the West Indies*, the *Extent*, *Altitude of the Cite*, *the Towns under it*, 874-40 & 875.
 Mechouans *foraken by their Infe-riours of Mexico*, *how*, 1002-60. *They hate the Mexicans there-fore*, 1003-1.
 Merici, or Melite, a *Tartarian people of Russia*, 79-40.
 Media, *now called Sieruan*, 245-40. *Conquered by the Turkes*, *ibid.* *Possessed by the Turkes*, 244-20.
 Mediator, the *Russian error about him*, 452.
 Medice or Merici, in *Tartaria*, 79-4.
 Mediterranean Sea, *use of notes all America*, 216-50.
 Megs;

THE TABLE.

which he meets first in the morning, *ibid.*, *Xili* has left the *harem*, *ibid.*
 M. *Mounts the Country, recites Christianity,* 332.1
 Motes, or Sea-borfe-films, 456.20. *His deſcription, and manner of killing him,* 473
 Moſes *ruins and makes a woeſſy,* 557.12. *They caſt their ſtones, ibid.*
Ther manner of fighting, 557.30. *They were not able to ſell any Ice in the ſeaſe,* 559.1. *One brought aſine into Engla. d, deſcrib,* 560.50
 Moſes teeth were taken, 214.1. *The uſe of them,* 417.49
 Mortar *conſequence to the Indians,* 1096.10
 Mortar made of Pumice ſtone, 651.20
 Motezuma King of Mexico, *he grants ſeemes to reſuſe the Kingdoms,* 1018.1. *Iſtold, his valour and extreme pride,* 1019. *His prodigality, ſincerity, and poſitive, would be overſhipped as a God: in Fretful of his ruin, his Wiſdom and Prudgient,* 1020.23. *Agon by the Spaniards,* 1023.40. *Forſaken of the ſubjects, flames,* 1025. *See alſo,* pag. 1121. & 1125. &c.
 Moſhet and her Daughters, 478.50
 Mothers kindred married with in China, 394
 M. *Moſe the City and Country,* 214.20. *Deſcribed,* 225
 Moſe the City, the way from thence to Volodga, 224. *From thence to Boghart in Baſſia,* 310
 Moſo the City, the beginning and deſcription of it. Situated in the edge of Europe and Aſia, 418.40. *Burnt by the Tartar, ibid.*
 Moſo the City, the way from thence to London, *ibid.*
 The miſerable ſpectacle at the burning, 419.50. *Clayned by the Tartar.*
 Moſo greater than London, 214.20. *Standi in 55. degrees 10 minutes,* 415
 Moſo City the government, 427.20. *Taken in by the del. Leiſt againe,* 780.1. *The way beyond Conſtance to Emden,* 429.30. *The diſtance from Volodga,* 744.1. & 747.10
 Moſoſto Ruſſia, loſes his name in the Occa, 231.30. *The Ruſſer halloved and the manner,* 455.40. *Given to ſicke ſhips,* *ibid.*
 Moſcoſia the people, 280.30
 Moſcumbia a Lake, 286.50
 Moſes ſwore Laſt Boſt, *new read in the Ruſſian Church, and why,* 453.30
 Moſul the Province, where, 69.50
 Moſul the City, now Seleucia, 110.50
 Moſurners are a trade in Ormuz, 71.60
 Moſurners have no Office in China, 327.40
 Mourning the time of forty days in Ruſſia, 345
 Morning Religions in China, 747.1
 Mourning in China, with *cuſoms ſo often next the ſky,* 182.10
 Mooring in winter, 368.1. *It holds for three years in China, and why,* 393.30. *The manner of it. They change their Habits, Uſenſils, Paper, and names, ibid.* See, pag. 393.30
 Mourning Garment in Spain is blacke Draps in China *white linne,* 368.1
 Mount Hackluyt, 730.10. *The Land and Variation, ibid.*
 Mountayne the higheſt in the world were, 712.20
 Mountayne removed by a Shipwreck, *it a Hoſpity in memory of it,* 70.40
 Mountaynes wonderfull in Iſland, 648.10. *In the middle Region per burning,* 768
 Mountaynes under the Torride Zone, *make it more temperate & habitable,* 936.1
 Moxel, a Tartarian people, *in Nubia ſeale,* *ibid.*
 Moxel or Moſul, the ſeuerall people in *the Silkes,* 70.1
 Muc a people of Catay, 214.40. *Their manners,* *ibid.*
 Muc uſed to packes in China, 295.30
 Mules for the Streets in China, 342.20
 Mulibet or Haſatins in Cathaya, 350.20
 Mollus whet, 213.30
 Multitude their inconſequence and folly, 790.10. *See &c.*
 Mummeries of the Mexicans, 1049
 Munday the Ruſſes begin Lent upon, 216.50
 Munition Houſe of the Kings of Mexico, 1129
 Muſſiliet or Moſul, the Country, 105.40
 Murthys ordinary in Ruſſia, 311.2
 Murders of the poore, not accounted for by the Nobility in Ruſſia, 433.10
 Muſſie is a Prince in Tartarian, 213.30
 Muſ, or Meridin, the Nation, 70.1
 Muſaites, a Name of the Iewes, 311.2
 Muſicke in China, and their ſeverall Inſtruments, 181.10. *Crane ibid.*
 Muſicke of China, the manner, 383.2
 Muſſie of the Chinois, *manner,* 371.1
 Muſicke of the Mexicans, 1061.1
 Muſicke to comfort the dead, 277
 Muſket *Mountaynes,* 16.2
 Muſcou Merchants, *ſirſt ſetting,* 465.20. *Their Patent,* 464.10
 Muſcou Company, their Name, Patent, and Priviledges, 464.10
 in Ruſſia, 774. & 760. *They pay no Cuſtomes, they are to ſhly money ſale, and not by retail,* *ibid.*
 To ſell their wares *theſelves, ibid.*
 Weekes in 55.50. *to be taken in the Cities, Their packes need to be opened, ſometimes becauſe them by it. Diſputers of them to be purchaſed,* 755. *See alſo,* 768
 Muſcou Aderachans their leiſes at Sea, 709. & 712
 Muſcou Aderachans, and Eaſt India Company *issue in a Voyage,* 468.30. *The Muſcou Company ſeale by it, ibid.*
 They diſpute, and diſpute over the ſeale, 469.30
 Muſcouia Company of Merchants, their ſail Patent from the Emperour, 802. &c. *Denied to trade for Furrer,* 805.50
 Muſcouſen Emperours his ſucceſſors, 217.10. *See alſo,* 231.10
 His Letters, King Edward, 221.1. *He is here granted the Leaty,* 216.10. *And & Abſolute,* 218. *ſirſt ordinarily in Juſtice,* 228.1. *Meddels not with Religion, ibid.*
 His treaſure, *ibid.*
 The broad Seale in the George, 222.40
 His Court on high days, *attended with Merchants eld place, ibid.*
 His Palace place, *ibid.*
 His Prefence Chamber and Dining Rooms, *All men there to wait, and covered, 214.*
 His Service all in Gold, *His ſonds bread to every gueſt in particular,*

THE TABLE

and the Cemetery and flag of it,
He changes by his Imperial Order
it turns a new name, 215, 10. See also
in pag. 224-40. & 235.
Served by Duke, 227. His forces
all Horjemen, no Half-and-men
nor Merchants. Their Armour,
and equipage, their hardy bodies,
their brave hardy Horses, ibid.
228, 229, 216, 1. The reason
of what, 225-60. Their food
and Suits, 216-40. Their Law, and
Trial by Combat, 216, 6.
In case of death, 217. They hang
none for the first offence, 217, 20.
Very desecrful, and unscarce
poor, ibid. Their Religion and
Superstition, 217, 30. & 219.
Half-pagans in their Greed
land, 219. Their ignorance in
the Church, Their ignorance in
the Lords Prayer, Credo and
Communion, ibid. Call us
half Christians, ibid. Their
Prayers, As both pomele, ibid.
They pray, 219. They se the Sacrament
in both kinds, ibid. & 219
Their Oblations of Candles and
Money, ibid. They have a Te-
stament like Saint Peter, ibid.
And their Coffin, 218. Their five
chief Saints, 218, 1. Their Priests
live in Lent, 218, 10. Their
Service at church three days,
218, 10. Their National virtue,
218, 10, 20. & 235. Women kept
in, ibid.
Mulcoites habit, 215, 30. & 226
1. Abstinence in Lent, 227, 1.
Their ignorance of Mosaic, 228
1. And of Israel's Law, 228, 10.
All were a Caste, 227, 10.
The Ministry, 229, 50. & 230.
They worship their Wines once a
month, 226, 20. Painted, ibid.
Ride afire, ibid. Many flayed,
230, 20. An universal people,
ibid. Disposed, ibid. Punished for
breaking Fastings days, 231, 10
They hate their Rivers, See
Russian Empire.

Mufcouis & Mulcoities, see Rus-
sia or Russia.

Muske, whence the Chinoi have it,
168, 40. What it is, ibid.
Muske, how gotten, 362, 30. The
best in the World, where, 79, 50
The Muske Cat described, ibid.
Muske Cat as bigge as a Hog, 40.
Muske-melons in Tartary or Car-
bulue, 227.
Maffiers in Russia, their manner,
472, 1, 10

Mufflers in China every New
Moone, 305, 10
Muralla, the Dominions, where, 798

Muzpinpa Tartar, 255, 20. Silence
brought thither, and where,
ibid. And other Wars, ibid.
Myones of Qiangipara, 260, 30
Of Conkinace, 263, 50
Myones of the West Indies of about
1694, 242. See leaf number in
the top, 46, 40. The best power in
muzzing a Silver Chain, 242, 1.
Darkness & damp of the Myne,
ibid.

Myones, where they are, the rest
look all blackish, 259, 1, 30. In
Virginia, ibid.

N

Nacapiara, the mother of the
Siarees, 274, 30. Her Sta-
tion, 275, 1
Nagayan Tartars, their Country,
275, 1
Nagayan Tartars border upon the
Crimys, 318, 1. They are the best
Soldiers of all those Tartar Na-
tions, but the crudest, 442, 30.
By Religion are Mohammedans,
352. All deformed, ibid.
253, 20, 40
Naum the Tartar his Rebellion,
81, 50. Overcome, 82, 10. He
is a false Christian, His Ensign
was the Cr.-d. Christ, Many Chris-
tians slaine with him, ibid.
Naenelin of the Indians, 991, 60
992, 40
Nakedness no shame in Ruttene,
629, 30
Names changed at entering of
names, 745, 50. The Armeni-
an Monks change them, 118, 50
Names, the Chinese adde make
up, 394, 50. The women have
no name, ibid.
Names of Princes hard to write in
the Chintse Language, 1051

Names, the manner of impoing
them used in Mexico, 110, 10
1101
Nancian in China, as a Pnuirific,
338, 60. Princess of the blood dis-
turbance, ibid.
Nangai-k-w-i-poon, 325, 20
Nanguin the City defcribed, 267
The Commodities, 267, 30
Nu quon or Quinqin in China de-
scribed, 265, 1. The length of the
freckles, and pauncie, ibid. Four

times as populous as Rome or
Lisbone, ibid. Called the City
of Hancow, ibid. The building is
very strong, ibid. How formed
with walls, 336, 10. 1000
ships belong there, ibid.
Nequon or Quinqin, what it figu-
rifies, when the Court was re-
turned thence to Pe-quim, 389, 20
See Quinqin.

Neprey not visible in China, 292, 40
Neriume Sea, 546, 20. & 551, 1
Nurfarkwa Haues in Hind, 654, 40

Near the River in Liffand, 629, 40.
First trade town, 250, 40.
The Ruffies error there, 439
Nafe of Norway, or the Lynx Naffe.
The Variation of the Compass
there, 814, 40
Nataldes, or Russian Baidas de-
scribd, 224, 10. Built without Iron,
ibid.
Nafficke & Tartarian Corps, 30, 10

Natigai, for Tartars God of Earthly
things, 88, 50
Naturates cast in China, 395, 50
Naturalists say first peoples of Me-
xico, their five Languages, 1001
Whence the name of Mexico
comes, 1002, 50
Native Port in the West Indies,
the Islands, 875, 40
Navigation the benefit of it, 478, 20

Navigrations from Spain to the
Indies, four hundred, 8, 8, 1, 10.
The times and cost, ibid. The
way back againe by other Coun-
tries, and why, 819, 20

Navigation from the Azua to Ca-
liffe, from the Azores to Sa-
Lucar, To the River of Plate,
to Los Reyes, or, to Porto Parana
to San Reyes, and to Chila600
Naxnan the Caffé, where, 49, 40
Somewhat the head of Arapuan,
ibid.

Nayles of Iron well shed, 284, 50
Nayman, a Christian people in Ta-
ritaro, 147, 10
Needles and thread of fiftifine, 100
finewre, 522, 50
Needles mechanism, 89 degrees and
an half, in 75. degrees and 22
minutes, 30
Needles mechanism in 89 de-
grees and an half, 576. Or in 74.
degrees 35. minutes 576, 50. A
good kind of North Cape, 578, 1
And its height, 578, 10. Its depth,
567, 10. Its distance, 55, mi-
nutes, 176. Its extent, 55,

THE TABLE.

minutes, 17.50. In 77 degrees
40. minutes, 71.90. In 61. de-
grees 10. minutes, 82.50. In 8
degrees 10. minutes, 82.50.
Netherland in former's *General*
night, 186.20
Nepes, in the Burkhness, 633
20
Nederich on Island in the River Vi-
tula, 626. 10. Escaped with
with a wall as high as Paules
Sepia, 130.0
Nether the River in Moldavia, the
Course and Fall, 633.1. Called
Tyras and Macoptolemis, ibid.
Nether an Heretic, the extent, 137
40. Disposed through all India,
138.40
Nestorian Priests in Tartary, 27
10. They use the Syrian tongue,
24.1
Nestorians in Tartary, 14.30
Great Lewis, 14.60. Some in Cal-
char, 74.40. And in Carchar,
74.50
Nestorians in Tanguth, 75.40. In
Chinchintalas, 76.30. In Suc-
cota, 76.50. In Campion, 77.1
Nestorians near M. Ibar, under
the Bishop of Succota, 106.30
Great Enchirion, ibid.
Nestorians give way to the Tatar-
ians *Successors*, 132.10
Nestorians, Siracans, and *delandars*
dwelling together in Tartary, 217
Nestorians in Erginul, 79.50. In
Esagzai, 80.10.20. In China,
97.40. & 100.40. In Chaldes,
110.50. In Carianu, 89.40.
In Iac, 91.40
Nestorian Christians many in Ca-
thy, 24.1. Their rites, 24.10. &
30.40
New Moons kept at Church, 31.1
Their fast of three weeks before
Lent called the Fast of Ionas, 31.
1. They eat no fish in Lent, 35
20
Nestorians baptize at Easter, and
baptize the Fount solemnly, 30.
40
Nestorians how they make and
consecrate the bread for the Sacra-
ment, 37.10. Their manner of giv-
ing the bread, ibid. They ba-
ptize upon Easter Eve, 37.10
Their Patriarch resides at Bal-
dach, 37.40
Nestorians sing Matens their Sa-
lemity at Church in Tartary,
20. 40. 50. The Tatarian
Emperor and Ladies come to
their Service, 30. 30.40. & 30.40
Beads, and sing their Prayers, 15

40. Know not Extreme-onion,
and Confession, 38.20
Nestorian Patriarch gives Orders
even to Infants, 58.10
Nestorian Chronicals omit the Pas-
sion of Christ, 41.30
Netherlanders, when they first
traded into Muttoua, 404.10
Forbidden by their own Sa-
vage to interrupt the English
traders, ibid. Their intercourse, 1-
bid. & 466.20. Forbidden by
the English, ibid. See Dutch.
Neutral besieged by the Tartars, 63
50
Newless in Sweden; how far from
Stockholme, 775
New Age of the Mexicans, 1050
See also, pag.
1067.40
New Birkie in the West Indies,
143.10. & 174.0
Night name at all, where, 218.60
Night name in Greenland, 1.0
May the three and twentieth, in
June the fourth, 716.40
Night name in ten weeks together,
580.30
Night one and twenty hours long,
613.20. For three months to-
gether, 617.40
Nights long in Island, 647.30
Where and when no night at all,
ibid.
Night shall be as clear as the day,
say the Chinese, 275.50
Night, for day
Nightingales sweetest in Russia, 415
10
Night-Sparrows, fight with the
Bats in the West Indies, 995
50
Nigus a small Indian *Yermian*, bites
off men's feet, &c. 975.50
Nilus in Norway, 636.60
Nine a number of *Shem* in Tas-
tary, 84.60. The reason, 113.50
113.20
Nyle-Nourogod in Russia, 231
Nixiamoo in China, taken by the
Tartars, 278.30
Noahs Ark where it rested, 50.10
The City Cmainon, or Eight,
built in memory of it, ibid. Ar-
menian Father of Isaac *Epiphani*
ibid
Noble Families decayed, relieved
by the Prince in Tartary, 28
10
Nobles of Russia oppress the people,
421.60. They exercise absolute
authority, 422.40. The privilege
lost, ibid.
Nobility of Russia their former force,
423.40. The ancient *Elites* en-
forced to marry themselves the
Empe-

Emperors Villains, ibidem.
How *Shilke* under, and maxi-
mum, 424. The Names of the
chief families, 424.50. The
second degree of Nobles, 425.1
The third and fourth degrees,
425.30
Nobility of Russia, are sometimes
made Bishops. They change their
names then 769.10. Slaves 770
780.30
Nobility and power not sufficient to
meet in Russia, 426.40
Nobility of the Grim Tartars,
their Service in the Emperors
wars with two Hosts, 444
Nobility of China, 346.50
Nocera, a Savage Island of Spain,
104.10
Nombre de Dios first peopled and
discovered, distance from Porto
bello, 883.1
Noone sacrificed unto in Mexico,
1049.20
North not always the coldest, and
why, 472.30. & 474.10
North parts of Europe, left peopled,
661.0
North-starre from about the 62-
grazual Line, is seen very low,
973.1
North-starre not seen in Iacua
Major, 103.30. Where scene a-
gaine, 106.20
North winds cause Rains in Afri-
ca, 922. Where, misty and va-
bolesome, 923.10. &c.
North winds at certain Months,
207.50. & 288.40
North Sea which, 88.1. The first
real courses of Navigation in it,
ibid. 660. The rest, 86.50
North and South Seas of the West
Indies but eight leagues distant:
why not let one into another,
where each begins, 929. The
Tides of both rise, ebb, and re-
treat at the same time, 930.20
Northern Sea and Passages, why
they were concealed: the occasion of
discovering that way, 452.40
North Cape, 223.10. The latitude,
699.60. marg.
North Cape the variation there, 574
60. The latitude, 699.60. marg.
Northern Passage beyond So-
ciety, the probability of it, but
Ship convenient to discover it,
731.10. Voyages and Observations
towards the North Pole, 699
700. &c.
North-east Passages given over,
463.20
North-east parts, the right way to

THE TABLE.

discover them, 529.40
North-west Passages attempted,
463.20. The commodity of it,
806
North-west Passages, the greatest
hopes of it, 811.1. & 813.40. &
841.30. Discovered as far as the
latitude of 69. Deg. 26. Min.
by Britin, 841.40. Hopes another
way, 843. marg. Sir Thomas
Button satisfied the King con-
cerning the hopes of the Passage,
848.40. A Discovery about the
probabilities, 848.49. Conceal-
ed by the Spaniard, 849. A
Treatise of it by M. Briggs, 853
Norus, the manner of Norway, 659
40
Norway, some of the Coasts describ-
ed, 518. Barren, 630.60
Norway, sometimes subject to Eng-
land, 631.10. Several Expeditions
of the English Kings thither,
632. The King of Norway in-
vades England, 632.10. Trafi-
ck betwixt England & Nor-
way, 632. Matthew Paris his
Voyage thither, ibid. Norwe-
gians Expedition to the Holy-
Land, ibid. Men of flesh and
Order destroyed there, and
reformed, 634. Peopled by King
Arthur one of Brittain, 634.40
Norwegian Isles peopled by Brit-
tains, 619.30. The people seized
here, ibid.
Norwegian Antiquities, some 656
40. & 661.20
Norwegians their first breaking
out, and their exploits, 644.50
Nolegyes great prisons in India,
98.60
Nolegyes of Sinaur, given for a Re-
ward, 293.30
Noua Albion of Sir Raim. Drake,
849.1
Noua Hispania, first discovered, &
why so named, it is the North
India, the Native Commodities
of it, 860.30.40
Noua Hispania called the best Coun-
try in the World, a high Land,
915.60. Rich pastures, 937.60
The temperate, Grains, Silver
Mines, &c. 870.40. The cu-
stoms of the people, 1000
Noua Zembla discovered, 463.20
The Sea frozen there, 473.50
Nothing green in it, 474.1. How
farre from the Low Countries,
474.30. Why so cold, 527.50
And why that way unpoppable,
528.1. No passage that way to
the East Indies, 577.30. See at

578.40. & 579.50. The Hol-
landers mistake it, 580.10. ibid.
Mapi, 579.40. Called Goting
Sarchy, ibid. because the Ice comes
thither, 579.10. The Elevation
and Declination of the Sun there,
and Ice there in July
and August, 477.10. Lands by
it, 478.60. The length of it, 498
60. The difference in longitude
from Venice, 530.30. The longi-
tude of Noua Zembla, ibid. The
distance from Russia, 514.50
Day and Night for many Mo-
neths together there, 494. & 505
The stretch of the Land from one
point of the Coast to another ex-
actly set down, and so farth to
Russia, 509
Nouda in China taken by Portu-
gals, 518. The rich style, 259
Noudie, China will admit none,
197.10
Nouagrade, or Gratanore, 214
10
Nouagrad in Russia, as big as
London, 418.60. The usurp-
ation defeated here by the Turks,
419.10
Noytes horrible in Island, whence,
642.1
Nunet the Infante his landing in
China, 319.40. His reports of
China, ibid.
Nunnes of the Gentle Indians,
1024.30. They were either sacri-
ficed or made Conquerors, ibid.
And in Mexico, and their Offi-
ces, ibid. By what the people,
grieved that the Nunne had him
disposed, ibid.
Nunnes of the Chinois, 274-
40
Nunneties in the Greeke Church,
449.20. Noble women thrust
into them, ibid.

O Come let us worship &c. The
Psalme said before the
Prayers for the Day, in the
Russian Service-book, as we do,
450
Oases like silver fountains, 354.20
Oathes of several Nations, 205
50
Oath of old Island, the manner,
616.10
Oath of the Chinois, 258.20
Oathes, written in China not
examined upon, and why, 188.20
201.0
Oath

THE TABLE.

Oath upon the *Crosse*, 434.10.
Upon the *Crosse* and the *Eman-
gellist*, 795.1
Oath upon the *holy Pome*, 783.
20.40. Upon *Wheat* *Barley*,
264.30
Oaths taken in *Temples*, 397.
40
Ob the *River* in the *Samoitids*
Country, 522.40. 523.50. The
Ruffes first pass it, *ibid*. The
strange creatures there, *ibid*.
They suffer the Ruffes to build
Castles upon it, 524.40. Boat
drums upon it, 526.40. Na-
vignable, two hundred leagues up,
goodly Countreys uninhabited
open it, *ibid*. The commencement
of passing by it through the *Sa-
moitids* Country, 529.30. See
also page, 539.60. A Summer
day lasting over, 543
Ob, the way and charges of discon-
ing it from the *River*. *Pechora*
in *Russia* by Land, 804.60.
The Inhabitants on each bank of
it, and the fine Castles, the
wood on it, *ibid*. it, wild beasts
frequencing it, the way to discover
it from *Pechora* by Sea, 805.
The way thither from *Canninos*
by Sea, *ibid*. A warm Sea be-
yond it, 806.10
Obedience to Parents, 344.60
Obedience of the Tartars to their
Prince and Spiritual Judges,
639.1
Obligations the *ferms* in *Russia*,
434.40. No interest mentio-
ned till the forfeiture, *ibid*.
Speedy justice upon Bonds, *ibid*.
Occa the *River*, 231.30. Falls in
to the *Volga*, *ibid*.
Occurra the *Cite*, 109.20
Ocha, a China word, 106.1
Others *Uyrgyz*, 619.30
Oculus Tacti his Elevation and
Declination in *Noxa Zembla*,
499.10
Oczacouis in *Podolia*, the *olde*
names of it, 633.10
Offenders sewed up in raw Hides,
102.50
Offerings of Paper, 106.40
Offices now Hereditary in *Russia*,
33.40
Officers of the Household to the
Emperour of *Russia*, 478.30
Officers the four chief in *Russia*,
426.1. Their jurisdictions
and Powers, *ibid*. Their Com-
mission and Under-Officers,
ibid. They put none to death,
They are of no authority, and

are often changed, *ibid*. Suffered
to *foyle*, that may be *spoiled*,
430. They come to the *Ural*,
427.1
Officers Names kept upon *Russia*,
388.10
Officers continue but three years,
390.30. The Crimes for which
they are condemned, *ibid*.
None is Judge in his own Coun-
try, *ibid*. Their Children and
Servants presented from taking
of bribes, *ibid*.
Officers of Mexicans liked to
serve their Lords in the new
World, 1019.60
Ogatha Shama, seizes the *Sove-
reigns* of *Iapon*, 387
Olus the King and Saint of
Norway where buried, 618.
10. Honoured, *ibid*. His *Sta-
ty*, 621.50
Old Testament undernarrowed,
by the Ruffes, 452
Olimets Province in *Russia* by *No-
gais*-*chan*, 794.10
Oloukhout, a *field* of Mexico, the
brenning quality of it: used in
their Devilish Oymment, 1043
20.40
Omittoffits, the Gods of China,
106.1. Their Offerings, *ibid*.
They raise on them, *ibid*.
Omithofon, *Idols*, 201.60
Omonon first carries the *Span-
ish* *Prayers* to preach in China,
290.20. He falls out with
Sinful, 304.20. They are
made *Loyties*, 307.40. Re-
turnes to the *Philippines*, 308
30
Omur the Prince of it, comes to
the *Pope*, 322
Oum Kerule, the Count of *Chin-
gis*-*chan*, 51.40. The *prop*
Country of the Tartars, *ibid*. 40
33.40
One God acknowledged by the *Me-
xicans*, 1016
Onecko the Ruffe, his *Storie*,
522. His Trading with the
Samoitids for *Furres*; and his
growing rich, *ibid*. Builds
Churches, 523. Disfours
the Secret to the Emperour,
is honoured in Court, 523.
10. The increase of his *Ho-
nours*, 524.30. Their *Lords*
ships in the *Cite* *Olioli*, &c.
524.52.5
Opobalium what properly, 959
30
Oppression publick in *Russia*, 427
40

Oppressors punished, and the op-
pressed was released, 420.30
Oracles of the Devil to the *Me-
xicans*, 1005.1. Of Peru, 1022
30. The posture in which his
Priests came to consult with
him: the manner of the *Ad-
vers*, *ibid*. See also, page, 1043
30
Orange Islands, the latitude there,
476.30. 477.1
Oranges great flow in China, 331
40
Oranges, Lemmons and *Pome-
granates* in China, 381
Oranges flow in the West In-
dies, how they first grew, 961
10
Orangei, a people in *Tartary*, 33
40
Orations made by Indians to
their Kings, 1005.40. 1006
1. 1010.40. 1011.20. 40. 1018
10
Oration of Frier William to Ma-
gis-*chan*, 27.50
Oration of the King of Mexico,
to Hernando Cortes the Spani-
ard, 1123.30
Orca the Fish, kills the Whale,
660.1
Orchards infinite in China,
295.1
Orders of Knighthood in Mexico,
their Degrees, Ensignes, and Pri-
vileges, 1065.60
Ordinance had in China, 301.60
& 305. marg. Short ones in *Cen-
ty*, 800.40
Orellana, the River in the West
Indies, the head, course, and
length thereof, 868.10. & 886.
60
Oreske Towne in *Russia*, by *Lodi-
g*, 794.40
Organs blown with the mouth, 347
40
Organan, a Country in *Catay*,
30.30. 60. The Nethorians
there still called *Organa*, for
their skill on the *Organs*, *ibid*.
Ormus, the Country and Island,
and Their Commodities, 71.30.
40. Ormus the *Cite*, is head
of *Clema*, *ibid*. The descrip-
tion, *ibid*.
Ornaments of the Mexican *Idols*,
1020.10. 1033
Orphans provided for in China,
276.1
Orus the Kingdom betwixt *Mu-
galla* and *Bactria*, 800.10
Ofusen Tartars, 637.20
Ofatches the people, where, 527.10
Otcaya,

Otcaya, or the Bride-house in
Peru, the Ceremony of it, 1058
40
Ourek a City, 243.40
Olimas of the Mountains, the
Paradise, 71.30. 40. & c. *Fenles*
Paradise, 71.40. Destroyed,
71.60. The wife made of it, 71
30
Old men that never aged, 475
much honoured in China, 333
40
Oulic River in *Russia*, 553.40.
The Rivers that fall into it,
ibid. And, 554. It falls in-
to *Pechora*, and where, 554.
30
Oufon the River, by Ob, 804
60
Oult-Zilma in *Russia*: *Furres*
there, 537.40. & 544.10. De-
scribed, 544.30
Owies used for Hawks in *Tarta-
ry*, 86.20
Owies-feathers, why the Tartars
wore, 112.10
Owies of *Russia* strange ones, 418
10
Oxen sacrificed in China, 307.1
Oxen strange ones, which draw
the Tartars houses, 23.1. 71.20
&
Oxus the River, bathed changed his
course, 236.20
Oyle in Baptisme, 239.30
Oyle in Baptisme in the *Ruffe*
Church, 451
Oyle of Olives most precious
accounted of, 108.50. For
this reason perchance a *Tarta-
rian* Prince was the more desir-
ous to have of the Oyle of the
Lamp at Jerusalem, 794.40
Oyle of B. *Alucan* in *Russia*. The
manner of fishing for them, 549
30
Oyle of Aspick whence brought,
the offer, 959.50
Oyle made of the sap of a tree, 957
40
Oyle from Apples in China, 382
40
Oyle of Seals or *Tran*-oyle, 416
50. How made, 417.10. Soap
made of it, *ibid*.
Oyle of the Lamp before Christs
Synagogue, Desired by the
Tartar Prince, 66.40. Hee
receives it reverently, 67.
40
Oymment of the *Mexicans*,
which make them: see the
Devil: made of *Peysin* and
Tobacco. Is made them.

THE TABLE.

Peare no wilde Beest, 1043
30
P Paper of diverse matters made in
China, 175.60
Papers or notes sent before in *Vili-
tines* and sending of Presents,
391.30
Paper-sacrifice of China, 369.1
Paper of *Iapon*, 325.10
Paper or *East* Island, whence *Calca-
da*, 657.40
Papiens skins used for clothing in
Tartary, 3618
Pappa and Pappas, what, 657
50
Paps, how the Indian women bear
them up, 992.40
Papius described, 272.20. Begged
by *Tatars*, 280.10
Paradise, the Chinois would go un-
to, 349.8
Paradise an Officer in China, 335
40
Parents honoured in China, 323
30
Parents much respected in China,
368
Parents selling or eating their own
Children, 738.40
Paracaca Mountains in the West
Indies, the strange subtilties of
the Aire there, and the admi-
rable effects. One of the highest
Lands in the World, 926.20. 30
& c.
Parishes unevenly divided, the in-
convenience, 447.60
Parity a Peace-breaker, 277.20
Parliaments their order in *Russia*,
412.30. Begun commonly on *Fri-
day*. The meeting sitting and
consulting, 423
Parrots bred on the Mountains of
Peru, 936
Parrots still fly by companies, 999
10
Parthenium the Promontory, 534
30
Partia is now called *Sachetay*,
Zagat or Sochay, 141.10
Partidges of the West Indies, de-
scribed, how taken, 996.1
Partidges white and pleny in
Russia, their Feathers sold, 536
40
Partwings flying into a Ship, 247
50
Parum, the bounds of the *Mogores*
Demission towards *Catay*, 318
1
Pecatrice, speaks the Hungarian
tongue, 18.50. Their trades and
business, *ibid*. The Hunnes came
out of, *ibid*.
Pat-

THE TABLE

| | |
|---|--------|
| Patriarch, <i>that is</i> , Hungary's greater, | 630 |
| Palcha, <i>a Confusion</i> between Meniz, found in Tartary, | 38 |
| Patiss the <i>definite his travels</i> , | 311 |
| His <i>formless and death</i> , | 331 |
| Piproot in Hill, | 406,30 |
| Pillage by the Pole, the hope, | 79 |
| Pitfalls probably between Spain, and Asia or Tartary, | 806,30 |
| Pleasure a City, | 311,40 |
| Puff for Translators, the form of in Russia, | 78,40 |
| Platanos the people and Kingdom, | 106,50 |
| Purching of clothes, from Christian merchants, the reason, | 443,10 |
| Potent bearing in Judges, | 201,1 |
| Patriarch of Constantinople negotiates a league against the Turk, | 445 |
| A league between Spaine and Molocova: That was broken off, bid, His colourably religious his Patriarchate, to the Obsequious of Moscow, bid, Does not | 445,10 |
| Patriarch of Mosco, the Emperor Father confirm to be, | 791,10 |
| Patriarch of Mosco, figure Fattah with the Emperour, &c. | 802,10 |
| Patriarch of Russia made to play on a Bagpipe, 739,40. Crowns the Emperour, | 743,10 |
| Patriarch of Mosko, which made <i>Abbas</i> , His translation from the Russian Church, &c. | 445,10 |
| A <i>chibghygher</i> , &c., 445,30. His revenues, 445,50. He belid, his wife, The Emperour holds his wife beside, | 456,10 |
| Pining web Price, | 199,40 |
| Pynting upon Fall-Boon in Ca-tay, | 800,10 |
| Pynting in China, without damage, | 371,10 |
| Pynting in China, 371,10, &c. | 371,10 |
| Pynting of their bodies, sold by the Indians, | 992,10 |
| Pynting sold by the Ruffe women, they have allowance from their Husbands to buy their clothes, | 459,30 |
| Pynted women, | 230,30 |
| Peacocks of the West Indies de- | 99,30 |
| Peace mediated between the Russes and Poles, and the Ruiles and Sweden, and by whom, 791 | 791 |
| Peace between the Russes and Swedes, | 791 |

den, 799. The conditions of the
 accord as follows. *Forgelne-
 gne* *immar*, 2. The Swedes
 yields up the *Älfles* before taken,
 3. Sweden was to restore Church
 Ornaments & Bells, 4. *Perfons*
 and goods to be freed on both
 sides, 5. *Throne* for Sweden
 delivery of the *Tunns*, 6. *Swedes*,
 6. *Loftin* *Älfles* to be recovered,
 and Odoro to remain; *Caustery*,
 7. *Swedes* to yield, 7. *Swedes*
 to yield his brother his clayne
 to Nougord, 8. *Wh* place
 the *Rulte* yields to Sweden,
 9. *And* what money, 10. Sweden
 to keep the *Ordance* which Sweden
 yielded, 11. *Swedes* to retain
 the *Caustery* of Corolla, 12.
 Where the *Caustery* yields
 his are to meet, determine
 of the bounds, and confirm the
Articles, 13. The *Rulte* give the
 ruler his title to *Liedland* the titles
 of both Princes to be agreed upon,
 14. Commerce of trade to con-
 tinue, 15. Merchants on both
 sides to have free exerceise of
 trade, 16. *Personall* reward,
 17. *Swedes* to yield, 18. *Swedes*
 ordered, 19. *Swedes* to yield,
 20. *Articles*, 20. *Articles* where
 21. *Swedes* to yield, 22. *Swedes*
 to take of each other's Subjects,
 23. *Neither* party to yield the
Peble, but to treat of a *loyal* league
 after law, 23. The *Confirma-
 tion*, and names of the *Commis-
 sioners*. All which is acknow-
 ledged to be effected by the mediation
 between Denmark and
 Sweden: and the Conditions,
 797.10
 carries weighing two pounds a
 piece, 95.1
 carries weighing ten pound apiece,
 98.30
 carries weighing largely defcribed,
 97.7.
 The Oyler they are found
 in, much, whether they are
 where they are found or measure
 where; where the *bell* *Peasies*
 are found, *Ind*. *Admition* of
 great and round *Peasies*: *moil*
 are *fastened* like a *Pears*, 97.1
 1.10
 carries, found in *Isle*, two *filence*
 of one *beagle*: *Stories* of *one*
Peasie, where *Ind*, *Ind* are
 found, *Ind*, *Ind*, *Ind*, *Ind*,
 The manner of doing it, *Ind*,
 95.1
 carries *filence* in *Mazur* *Isle*, 866

20. *And in Florida,* 868, 69.
 20. *Found in two Jewell old*
filter, and which is best, 390
 20. *And there,* 390
 Pearles *good wine,* 91, 21
 Pearles *whence they came,* 70, 20
 Pearle-fishing, 554, 556. *Ships of*
Strangers' home, that come there,
 390
 Pearles *the fishing for them, and*
the manner, a long story, 174
 Ready to pay you, 390
 Pechiniam *Monastery,* 223, 20
 Pechiniam in Lapland, 587, 10
 Pechoa, the *trade for Earth,* 390
 546. *The way thence over-land*
 10 Ob, 531, 60. *And the*
and course of the River, 552, 21
The Rivers that fall into it,
 552. *The way thence to Tumen-*
 552
 in Tartary, 536, 20
 Pechoa, 530. *It hath 22*
 533, 1. *The Rules that trade*
thence, 534, 20. *The Commen-*
ties there to be had, 535, 30. *Com-*
mencement of transformation, 536.
The Indians' Trade to trade
with Strangers, 536. *The way*
from Iboeto to Mongolozey, 536
 542
 Pechoa *the Towne described, and*
how they live there, 536, 20
 546. *They live in August, 546. Summ-*
er as Christmas' scarce here,
 546
 Pechoa *near by the Ruffe,* 549
 20. *The waye diuers from*
 the Ruffe, 549
 Pechoa *the River, & commerce,* 549
 550
 Peibou *the Lake in Lapland,* 628
 550
 Peim, *their adulterous liberty*
and
customs, 767
 Penance of the Mexicans, 103, 1
 Pencils of *hairs, hair for writing,*
 388
 People *deceyved in the Indies by the*
Spaniards, 959, 97, 30
 People, *ways of from unfor-*
unately made men, 981, 10
 Pentle-frish Sound in Orkney, 870
 870
 Pentlow-frish in Orkney Land,
 the Latitude, 713. *The comf and*
sydes there, 713
 People infinite *there of,* 101, 1
 101
 Pepper *the daily expence in one Ci-*
ty, 78, 10
 Pepper *Trade decribed,* 138
 Pepper of *Weld India, the*
fruit, qualities and of, 95, 20
 60. *Salt corrols the ill quality*

THE TABLE.

of 1595, *l.* The common *Syn-*
and *force* of India, *ibid.*
Pequim China, *in* *Cambalaj* 140
Pequin, *other* *names* of *it*, 301-50, 302
Pequin *in* *China*, *is* *in* *a* *barren*
soyle, 341, *They* *born*, *ibid.*, *In*
400, *Degree*, 341-50, *The* *way*
from *thence* *to* *Nanquin* *and*
Canton, *ibid.*, *How* *discovered* *and*
conquered *with* *Qumlay*, 342
occupied *and* *dirty*, *ibid.*, *Almen*
ride *the* *fires*, *in* *Yofay*, *ibid.*
They *burn* *Sau-cane* *into* *three* *Beds*
made *with* *Bricks*, *like* *Swans*, *ibid.*
The *people* *dread* *the* *beare*,
ibid.
Pequin *is* *Cimbali*, *the* *Elmyen* *of*
it, 342, 361-60, *It* *is* *now*
hundred *leagues* *from* *Macao*,
361-50, *It* *ben*, *why* *and* *by* *whom*,
the *Coast* *is* *remained* *thither*
from *Nanquin*, 389-30
P-equin, *is* *the* *Northern* *Coast*,
ibid., *The* *King* *swore* *to* *refuse*
there, 375-1
Pericopia, *inhabited* *by* *the* *Indians*,
Tartars, 633, *The* *old* *Rames*,
ibid.
Perfumes *burn* *in* *the* *Sacrifices* *to*
the *Dea* *in* *China*, 364-50
Pernia *is* *named* *by* *the* *Ruffe*, 439-20
Of *Tartarian* *origin*, 443-10
Pernia *contains* *eight* *Kingdoms*,
The *names* *of* *them*, 70-50, *The*
Compendium, *ibid.*
Pernia *women* *by* *the* *Tartars*, 116-1
Pernia, *first* *traded* *into* *by* *English*,
250-30
Pernian *Artificers* *work*, 70-50
Pernian *are* *names* *redda* *Turkans*,
166-1
Pernian *Queen* *overlives* *the* *Turks*
284-30
Pernian *trade* *into* *Syria* *and* *into*
Iran, 243, *Why* *the* *trade* *is*
small, *ibid.*, *English* *Clash* *there*,
ibid.
Pero, *the* *strange* *properties* *of* *the*
Lund, *one* *made* *one* *time*, *and*
the *nature* *of* *it* : *no* *Tumple*
may *move* *the* *Coff*, *but* *terrible* *one*
by *the* *Hills*, *and* *in* *Rames* *con-*
tinued *to* *the* *Mountain* *of* *the*
Region *of* *the* *Rames*, 337-20
It *is* *in* *Pernu*, *why*, *ibid.*, *The* *taffe*,
98-1
Pernu, *the* *boats* *kept* *off* *there* *with*
shawe *Adat* : *the* *Nights* *are* *so*
fo *there* *that* *is* *in* *Spain*, 521-50,
It *is* *near* *Rames* *there* *It* *is* *bad*
always *the* *same* *Winds*, 523-10

Pearl, the jewelled portion of it,
and the trinket which set upon
paper, 1055, 49. *Lure* in *Cremorne*
there, 1057, 20. *Emerald* men
love it of all Trade-stuff. Their
Lures, rewards for justice
Servants; & *Magnanimous*,
610, 8. Compared by the Spaniards
with those they had found rare,
1065, 60.

Pearls in the West India, the dis-
tinction of the *Jarvis*, 161, 1.
Antiquary, *Dictionary*, Pronounced
it, *Anatomical*, two great
Hedge-moles, Poets for Letters
agree upon them,

Percegracende used at the Indies
of the *South*, *Ameras*, at the
Equinox, 759, 20. *Percegracende*
into three parts, 887, 10. The
grape kinds of *Pears*, 924, 10. See
Nice Rovers.

Perennate a Term, the significa-
tion in *Ruffs*, 243

Perilence in the North of the
World, 718, 30.

Peter Balmis a *Ruffian* *Dancer*,
248, 38. *History* of him, *Conquer*, 759,
20. Sent the first time to *Spain*.
Dependent, he was sent, 757;
757, 30. Where the king gave
himself in Court, 760, 20. *Slaves*.

Peripetres in *Tavities*, see *Christians*,
619, 30.

Peripotes Promises at *Colchis*,
616, 30.

Pertition in China, a form of re-
quest, 407, 10. See the King's request
for aid, 718, 30.

Pertition was offered, being forced
to yield, 354, 67. 358, 30.

Pettoria River, the head and fall,
525, 50.

Petum, fish Toberacha.

Pharoahs Rites, their furies, 1071,
10. See *Hugues* *Pharoahs*,
these 3 *Chances* *Pharoahs*, 96, 40.

Plumans exceeding great, 90

Phleasantes these are great, 90

Phoodia lunimuch, Empress of
Russia, 740, 40. The promise of
fame in the English, 742, 40.

His good beginning, 743, 10. His
unhappy Princes failed as long
was him, and so did his Kingdom
of England, 743. His facility
in Death, 745, 10.

Philippines, the *Navigate* thence
from Spain, 802, 10. The
distance, and *famines*, ibid.

Philippines Islands, 282. First di-
covered by Magellane, *Ibid*. The
second Voyage thither, *Ibid*. The
third Voyage thither, 283, 30.

Caulwerces in the lands, indig.
Concealed and the King
 Philip, indig. *They rescue him*
 indig. 283.60.4.283.40. *They*
marry the Spanes and Moors,
 283.2. *The Franciscans give*
them, & all the Dominicks &
leaves, 283.2. *They Priests*
were sent to Mexico, indig.
They would not go to Mexico, because
of the Spanes, indig.
1. The Indians of the Spanes, 283.2.
2. The Indians of the Spanes,
 283.2. *The first Edition*
therein, indig. *They understand*
the Malayan Tongue, 283.60. *The*
distance from China, 281.10.
Add from Mexico, 281.10.
 Philippines called the Kingdom
 of Luzon, by the Chinese, 309.2.
 1. The Spanes, 309.2. *Sometimes*
they go to China, 309.2.
 Philippines, the *coast* there
 from Lima to Peru, a *river* under
 the Line, 924.30.
 Philippines Islands, the latitude &
 distance from Spain. *Distance*
and Nature considered, the
 place of them, 904. *There* has
 been 11000 of them, many *Christi-*
ans there and *Malaysians* there.
 Philosophy little known in
 China, 343.60. & 345.30. & 346.30.
 Philosophical Differences of
 the Spanes, 919.60. & 921.60.
 indig. 191.10.
 Philosophers sacrificed upon, 347.
 Physicians of Mexico
 Hearst, 339.30.
 Physicians in the West Indies, 339.30.
 Physicians taught in India, 646.
 177.30.
 Physicks not much esteemed in
 China, 385.30. *Dignity* taken
 up by the Spanes, 385.30.
 Physicks *taught* (or *disputed*) by
 the Spanes, 1049.
 Placets, or Indian *Amphitheatres*,
 Life and Art, 973.40. *These*
death and true *confer* to the
 Spaniards, 974.40.
 Plants the Cure, 89.21.
 Pictures of *Brave* Creatures and
 precious *Minerals* or *Gold*, in Mexico,
 974.40.
 Pictures of Excrement of *Indians*,
 terrible *Prisones*, 271.60.
 Pictures the King of China
 of 356. *He thought* these *all*,
 271.60.
 Pictures of Feathers the Art of
 making them, and their *various*
 uses, 965.40.

THE TABLE.

Pacificar, that is, Hungaria the greater, 630
 Palcha, a Christian Woman of Menz, found in Tartary, 28
 Palfus the Jesuits his travels, 331
 His fortunes and death, 322-1
 Passport to Hall, 496-30
 Passage by the Pole, the hopes, 703
 30
 Passage probable betwixt New Spain, and Asia or Tartary, 806-30
 Passur a City, 311-40
 Pass for Travellers, the form used in Russia, 758-49
 Patanes the people and Kingdoms, 169-50
 Patching of closter, one of Tartarian Commandments, the reason, 443-10
 Patient bearing in Judges, 203-1
 Patriarch of Constantinople negotiates a league against the Turk, 445
 A league betwixt Spain and Moscow: That how broken off, ibid. He colourably resigns his Patriarchate, to the Metropolitan of Moscow, ibid. Goes away enriched, ibid.
 Patriarch of Moico, the Emperours Father chosen to be, 791-10
 Patriarch of Moico, signs Patents with the Emperour, &c. 802-20
 30
 Patriarch of Russia made to play on a Bagpipe, 739-40. Crowns the Emperour, 743-10
 Patriarch of Moico, when first made, 445. His jurisdiction over the Russian Metropolitans, & Archbishops, &c. 446-30. His revenues, 445-60. His habit, 447
 1. The Emperour holds his horse bridle, 456-10
 Paving with Pitch, 199-40
 Paynting upon Pash-board in Catta, 800-10
 Paynting in China, without shadowing, 371-1
 Paynting in China, 357-1, 10, 20
 Paynting of their bodies, used by the Indians, 992-10
 Paynting used by the Ruffe women, they have allowance from their Husbands to buy their Colours, 459-30
 Paynted women, 230-30
 Peacocks of the West Indies described, 995-50
 Peace mediated betwixt the Russes and Poles, and the Russes and Sweden, and by whom, 791
 Peace betwixt the Russes and Swe-

den, 792. The conditions of the accord as followeth. Forgetfulness of injuries, 2. The Sweden yields up the Castles before taken, 3. Sweden was to restore Church Ornaments, & Bells, 4. Persons and goods to be freed on both sides, 5. The time for Sweden's delivery of the Townes, set downe, 6. Lidia Castle to be restored, and Odora to remain Constantine to Sweden, 7. Sweden not to ayde his brother in his claims to Novogrod, &c. 8. What places the Russes yields to Sweden, 9. And what money, 10. Sweden to keep the Ordinance which he had taken, 11. Sweden to restore the Signory of Corcia, 12. Where the Commissioners on both sides are to meet, a determination of the bounds, and confirm the Articles, 13. The Russes to give over his title to Liefland, the titles of both Princes to be agreed upon, 14. Commerce of trade to continue, 15. Ambassadors on both sides to have free exercise of Religion, 16. Personal wrangle, &c. And Ambassadors, how to be ordered: From the 16, to the 29. Article, 30. Ambassadors where to meet, 31. Vreck by Sea not to be taken of each others Subjects, 32. Neither parties to ayde the Pole, but to treat of a league league against him, 33. The Confirmation, and names of the Commissioners, 34. Which is acknowledged to be effected by the mediation of our King James, 35.
 Peace betwixt Denmark and Sweden: and the Conditions, 797-10
 Peaches weighing two pounds a piece, 95-1
 Peaces weighing ten pounds apiece, 98-30
 Pearle-fishing largely described, 972
 The Oyster they are found in, sought, whether they grow where they are found or remote thither; where the best Pearles are found, ibid. Mention of great and round Pearles: most are followed like a Poore, 973
 1, 10
 Pearles, found in Isles, two fold one of a kind: Stories of some Pearles, Where in the Indies are the most and best, 952-50, 60. The manner of dining for them, 953-1
 Pearle-fishing in Margarita, 866

20. And in Florida, 868-60
 Pearles found in two finer all Shells, and which is best, 999
 30
 Pearles great store, 972
 Pearles whither they come, 70-20
 Pearle-fishing, 254-50. Shops of Strangers inure, that come then, ibid.
 Peasles the fishing for them, and the manner, 1-10, 40. Vfsdike Reads to pray upon, ibid.
 Pechinow Manufactory, 223-20
 Pechingo in Lapland, 558-10
 Pechora, the trade for Furs there, 546. The way thence over-land to Ob, 551-60. And the head and course of the River, 552-1
 The River, that falls into it, 553
 554. The way thence to Tumen in Tartary, 556-20
 Pechora, 550. It hath 22, mouths, 553-1. The Russes that trade thither, 554-20. The Commodities there to be had, 555-30. Convenience of transportation, ibid.
 The Inhabitants seeme to trade with Strangers, 561. The way from thence to Mongozey, 559
 543
 Pechora the Towne deserted, and how they live there, 556. Frost there in August, 542-30. Summe at Christmasse scarce snow.
 Pechora women by the Russes, 439
 20. Their Language differs from the Russes, ibid.
 Pechora the River, discovered, 463
 20
 Peibus the Lake in Liefland, 628
 40
 Peim, their adulterous liberty and customs, 75-1
 Penance of the Mexicans, 1035
 40
 Pencils of hairs, haire for writing, 385
 People decoyed in the Indies by the Spaniards, 935 & 938-10
 Penions taken away from unfixable men, 216-10
 Pentle-frith Sound in Orkney, 827-30
 Pentlow-frith in Orkney Land, the latitude, 713. The course and tide there, ibid.
 Pepper infinite store of, 101-30
 Pepper the daily expence in one City, 98-50
 Pepper Tree described, 118-50
 Pepper of West India, the severall sorts, qualities and uses, 955-50, 60. Salt corrects the ill quality of

of it, 956-1. The common Spice and force of India, ibid.
 Pequim China, Cambalu, 314-40
 Pequim, other names of it, 391-50. & 302
 Pequim in China, is in a barren soyle, 341. Very hot, ibid. In 40. Degrees, 341-50. The way from thence to Nanquin and Canton, ibid. Well described and compared with Quinsay, 342. unpaved and dirty, ibid. All men ride the greatest in Foyles, ibid. They burne Sea-coale: their Beds made with Bricks, like Stones, ibid. The people desire here, ibid.
 Pequim is Cambalu, the Etymon of it, 342. & 361-60. It is five hundred leagues from Macao, 361-50. When, why and by whom, the Court was removed thither from Nanquin, 389-30
 Pequim, is the North-east Corner, ibid. The King sworne to reside there, 375-1
 Pericopia, inhabited by the Grim Tartars, 633. The old Names, ibid.
 Perfumes burnt in the Sacrifices to the Dead in China, 364-50
 Permia name by the Russes, 439-20
 Of Tartarian Originall, 443-10
 Peria contains eight Kingdoms, The names of them, 70-50. The Commodities, 71-1
 Peria women by the Tartars, 116-1
 Peria, first traded into by English, 250-30
 Persian Artificers good, 70-60
 Persians wear redde Turbans, 166-1
 Persian Queen overbore the Turks, 249-20
 Persian trade into Syria and the Levant, 342. Why the trade is small, ibid. English Cloub there, ibid.
 Peru, the strange properties of the Land, one Wind only there, and the nature of it: no Tempests there the Coast, but terrible met by the Hills, and it Rains continually on the Mountains, 936
 Reason of the Raines, 937-20
 How in Peru, why, ibid. The taste, 938-1
 Peru, the heat kept off there with thicke Mists: the Nights are so hot there as in Spain, 921-50
 It never Rains there: It hath always the same Winds, 923-20

Peru, the fourfold partition of it, and the tribute which each part payes, 1055-40. Lands in Common there, 1057-20. Every man there is of all Trades ibid. Their Lawes, rewards for speaking Service, &c. Marriage solemnities, &c. 1058. Conquered by the Spaniards when they had Civil wars, 1061-60
 Peru in the West Indies, the extent, division of the Jurisdiction, taken againe, Discovery, Promises, warlike, Advantages, two great signs there, Poets for Letters against them, 1061-60
 Peruc comprehends not all the Indies of the South, begins at the Equinotiall, the Canton, Division into three parts, 887-10. The proper bounds of Peru, 892-10. See Los Reyes.
 Peru looks a Traine, the significance in Russes, 243
 Resilience in the North of the World, 728-30
 Peter Bafman a Russian Duke, 728-30. A brave General, 750
 Peter, the second time against Demetrius, he resists, 752-1
 757-30. Where the way Emperors Court, 762-20. Slaves, 762-20
 Perigorens in Tartaria, are Christians, 639-50
 Perigorens Promises, or Colours, 636-30
 Perition in China, a form of one, 407-10. How the King keeps it, ibid.
 Perition not answered, is granted for denied, 354-1 & 358-30
 Petiora River, the head and fall, 525-20
 Petum, for Tobacco, 107-1
 Pharaohs Rats, their furre, 107-1
 Pharaohs are bigger than Pharaohs, and there a Great, 96-40
 Phantasies exceeding great, 80
 Phantasies three a great, 89-40
 Phedore lunowich, Emperour of Russia, 740-40. His promise of favour to the English, 742-40. His good beginning, 743-10. His neighbour Princes desire a league with him, and be with the Queen of England, 743. His simplicity and death, 745-10
 Philipinas, the Navigation thence from Spain, 860-10. The distance, and seasons, ibid.
 Philipinas Islands, 382. First discovered by Magellane, ibid. The second Voyage thither, 283-30.

Civil wars in the Islands, ibid. Conquered, and named by King Philip, ibid. They receive Baggage, 282-50, & 283-40. They worship the Sonne and Moone, 283-1. The Spaniards goe thither, & also the Dominicks & Indians, 283-10. Their Priests were formerly idle, ibid. They would not goe to heaven, because the Spaniards were thither, 284-1. The shape of the Islands, 10 & 285-1. The first Plantation thither, they understand the Mayan Tangu, 285-60. The distance from China, 392-10. And from Mexico, ibid.
 Philipinas called the Kingdoms of Luzon, by the Chinoes, 390-30. & 310. Sometimes tripartite in China, 377-30
 Philipinas, the course thence from Lima in Peru, is a slender Line, 924-30
 Philipinas Islands, the latitude & distance from Spain, Description of Native Commodities of some of them, 904. There be 11000. of them; many Constitutions there and Advantages, 905
 Philosophy little knowne in China, 343-60 & 345-50 & 346-1
 Philosophicall Differences of heate and cold, 919-920-921-92. Of the Winds, 922-923
 Philosophers sacrificed unto, 347
 40-359-50
 Physicians of Mexico cure all with Herbes, 1133-1
 Physicians in the West Indies, 960-1
 Physicke little used in Island, 646-30
 Physicke not much esteemed in China, 385-20. Degrees taken in the Art, ibid.
 Physicke divine (or diabolical) of the Mexicans, 1043
 Piace, or Indian Magicians, their dress and true answers to the Spaniards, 97-4, 1
 Pianto the Cure, 89-20
 Pictures of strange Creatures cut in precious stone or Gold, in Mexico, 1062-50
 Pictures of Execution of Justice, to terrifie Prisoners, 271-60
 Pictures the King of China afraid of, 356. He thought them alive, ibid.
 Pictures of Feathers the Art of making them, and their curiosty, 965-40
 Pictures

THE TABLE.

Paying 500, years old in China,
382.60. *The manner of it,*
Pinnas, or a triangular Glass ad-
miral in China, 321.50
Prima deately priced, 343.30
Prison a gallant one, 273.30
Probair miter, Proclaurer, Prail-
ful & Praprat praitr metri, the
Bamases Gods, 166.40
Procellions solemnly visit, 166.40
Mexicans, 1046.1047.
Procellions vnto the Coast of
Mangu-Chan, etc., 31.20
Procellions in China, 406.10
Prodigies before the ruine of the
Mexican Empire by the Spani-
ards, 1020.1021.
Proclamations, the Emprer's of
Ruffia fess and her bewome name,
429.20
Proper name for a man to speeke in,
in the lowest complement in Chi-
na, 391.
Prophecying legends, their efficit,
1031.60
Prophets once read in the Russian
Church, 453
Profession a President, 62.1
Profusion of riches, the desire to
the Dutch Knights, 62.1
Prot or Hertz, a Ruler of Molda-
ua, 632.1
Puteni, Cardual, Luonij, Elio-
nij, Semgildj, & Leucunij, all
Pagans, 54.20
Protum-Techins, a Fort of the
Turkes in Walachia, 632.1
Ptochys, a City, 416.1
Purgatory of Herfo-shlo eaten by
the Tangens, 510
Pylhangen, a River in Tartary,
510
Puile Quimim, 296
Pulse-Hinhor, 259
Pulse-Cambin a River, where, 253
Pulse-Champellou an Island, 254
Pumice-stones built withall, 651
Pumps for Ships, that goe with the
feet, 176.10
Punas Admantyne in the West In-
diantes, the Ayre of it like Passif-
gers, 926.10
Punnus rebabris Island, and gives
them Lawes, 520.50
Purse, not insittie quarrell'd at
Quarrels, 432.10
Purgatory Adamantyne of the
Indians, 1120.50 The descrip-
tion, 1123.40
Purgatory, a circumstance of it

China, 398.1
Pultozers, the way from thence to
Colmogro by Sea, 545.546. By
land, 547
Pultozers take the Towne, upon the Ri-
ver of Pechora in Russia, 533
30. Nerre Ruffia, bus not in it,
543.60. The altitude, 544
Pyramides covered with Gold, 93
Pyramid of fire scene at Mexico,
1020

Q
Qabaconand, a surges in
Iapon, 323.50. What his
name signifies, 324.20. 325.30.
Made to cut out his owne heu-
mors, 325.40
Quequeparu a City, 255.30
Quaily taken by the Tartars, 278.1
Quon the Iaponian God, 323.60
Christian Festivals of state him-,
324.1
Quarrels in China, 370.10. Some
ended in China, 370.40
Quill, drew up Muscovia, 218.10
& 228. How made, 459.1
Quayles sacrificed in Mexico, 1047
Querene of France furres her Sonnes
against the Tartars, 61.30
Queen of Heaven in China, 214.30
Queenzanfu the City, the Commo-
dities there, 89.50
Querzcollot, the Mexicans God of
riches, honoured by the Mercen-
taris, 1048 His Festival cere-
monies, 1049
Quantin the great River, 1049
Quickliver Myces, the manner
of them, How it grows and is
gathered, 89.10. 10. Where,
109.10
Quickliver refuses that Metall,
which first comes 944.10 & 947
40. A Philosophical Discourse
of Quickliver, 947.048. At
what time the Germans have
its sympathy with Gold, refusing
with it to combine to the Alcu-
ants it is the portion of all Met-
tals but Gold and Silver: strange
properties of it, Places where it is
found, 948. Found in Vermilion,
948. How the Myces were first
discovered : Richness of one
Myce, how it was once used of
the Myces, 949. The danger of sit-
ting in, melted with Strake, kept
best in Leather-manner of vessels.

his, a bow after refusing it
separated from Silver, 950
Quinquaginta Sunday is the
second Lent time, to all the people
of the East, 34.10
Quintay called Nanquin, defended
338. Not comparable to the Eu-
ropean buildings, the chiefs of
China, how fortified, ibid.
Times more or about, ibid.
Quintay defensible, 162.20. The
King who keeps richer than
others in your times, 162.60
Quintay a dissolution whether in bur-
Hametu, or no, 409.50. The tri-
butes it payes, 100.50
Quintay is the City of Heanen, 97.
50. Defended, 98.1, 10. 20. 20.
The Citizens defended, 98.60.
The commodities of it, 99.1
20. The Trade and wine, 99.1
40. 50. It hath a Garrison of
30000.
Quippos or Registers of Peru, modes
of keats, 1033.30
Quitala, what in Chinese, 106.
30
Quitman the Kingdom, 253.30
Quto in the West Indies, the im-
pression under it, under the Es-
quimaux, under the Arabs, Saffians,
and Tamaris, 88.40. 90. The
under it, Heards of Cattle,
Ruins wonderful at, Ports of their
latitude, high ways admirable,
Ruins and how the Indians pay
there, 888. Emeralds, Ports,
Isles, Paints, Taxes of Giamti,
889
Quira false placed in the Map,
889
Quixos and Canela, Primitives in
the West Indies, the Spanish
Tomes make it, the style, etc. 891
50
Quaman, where, 256.40. Silver
there.
Quao, a Yes, in Chinese, 187.1
Quecum, the Nobility of China,
346.50

R
R, the Chinois cannot pro-
nounce it they call the Tar-
tars Tatos, 170.20 & 319.30
Racke, the Indian word for drinke
of Rice, 27.50. January.
Rambo a Fish that cleaves to the
Sharkes their despiration, 223.1
Ramds Ford in Gronelanj, 11

R

R. *the Chinois cannot pronounce: they call the Tartars Tatos, 170.20. & 319.20*
Racke, the Indian word for drink of Rice, 27.50. in marg.
Rambos & Fish that cleaves to the Sharks their description, 930. 931. &
Ramels Food in Groneland: the
Law

THE TABLE

Latitude and variation there, 831:30
Rambulus razed and destroyed, 866
Rapes (four word of *Poetry*) the
Egmont, 666:30 & 666:10, 50
 o 667
Rafers flame upon Darts by the
MEXICANS, the danger of the
weapon, 1023:60. *Vid.* they them
 o 1023:40
Rains (see *see* of Nonth *Arks*)
first one of a *State* is different
 Land, 554:50. *Id.* 555:10
 Rainsake of these Rivers,
 655:10
Ray Fifth the Gronelandian find,
 836:30
Razementa formed in, in China,
 298:40
Raine, the Chinese fable of it, 274:
 30 *Id.* God. *Arms*, *ibid.*
Raine where feldoms, or near, 896:
 30
Raine, the sick in Peru to keep it
 off, or to procure it, 1045:6
 1046:10, 20. *Regulations* for it,
 1047:20
Raine nor Hayle, where it near does
 881: *Origin* by the *Mau-*
 rine, 529:30. *And* where it is
 not distinctly, *ibid.*
Raine very felding here, *ibid.*
Raines, the reason of much or little
 under the *E*-*Quene*land, *Tor-*
 ride Zone, within or without the
 Tropic, 918:40. *Why* under the
 Torride Zone in the *Affer-*
 none, and at the full *Moon*, *is*
 some *Polyspherical* *discur* *is*
 here, 918:40, 50, 60, 60, 60
Raine where wall lines under the
 Torride Zone, 919:40. *They*
 away *below* the *Torride* Zone,
 921:1
Raining of *Es*, *Frages*, &c., the
 reason, 922:10. *How* caused by
 Northerne *wind*, *ibid.*, *and* by
 10 *Westerly*, 925:50
Raine where with each, where, 925:
 70
Raine with both ends, *ibid.*, 925:
 30
Rainbow the fable of it, 275:40
Rainbow Darts bayonet on, 517:20
They feed upon water *Miles*, 518:
 10. *The* *chiefs* *cries* of the *S*-
 mot, *ibid.*, 515
Reasons of a *Northwell* *Peage*,
 849:40
Rebaptization *used* by the *Ruffs*,
 451: & 786:40. *Their* *Cate-*
 chizing *and* *other* *Ceremonies*,
 ibid.
Rebat the *Kyrdams*, 211:1

THE TABLE.

S
S^aboath in China every forty-
right, 345.1
Sabbaths of the Clinois, 397.1
35
Saboth of the Mexicans every
fourth day in the Wars, 1024
10
Sables the best where, 416
Sables, the Furs of the best Rom-
an do, 107.1
Seacunto Province in the West
Indies, the extent of the Turf-
dunes, bounds and Rivers, 878
60
Sacotora, 235.60
Sacraenta three in the Russian
Church, 413
Sacrament by Bread, in both kinds,
217. The Russia, spirit, and given
with a Spoon.
Sacrament of the Communion De-
liberately limited by the Mexi-
cans, 1020.10 & 1047.40 &
in Peru, 1046.1
Sacrament in both kinds, 217.40
Sacramental Bread, how made by
the Nestorian, 77.10 They put
Salt in new Breads of Leaven
ibid. The signifi- of their Bread.
ibid.
Sacrifices of old Egypt, 665.1
Of Men, 665.1
Sacrifices of the Mexicans, 103.1
30, 50, 103.1. The American,
103.1. The three kinds of
these Sacrifices, 1036. Men-
tion of Sufferings at Birth and
Birth, with Utterance and refusal,
signifying their offering of children
to the Sun, Gr. 10.40. Hu-
man Sacrifices, and Maximilian,
1037, 1078. Five thousand men
Sacrificed near Peru, 1839.10
Sacrifices of Peru, 1045
Sacrilege robbery of the Russian
Emperors, 430.40 & 411
Sacrifice wrought by Darius
against Tartars, 8.10
Sa's the people in Curland, 618.10
10
Sackon the Circi, where, 79.40
Saddles offered up to Saturn, 250.1
Sage, a Tartaria piece of Gold, 33.
40
Salamanca where, 764.10
Salmandracos where, 764.10
Sagging a Grammatical rule of a Rus-
sian Emperor, 130.30
Sayles made of Mats of Polono-
ry leaves, 300.10
Sayles not admitted to be mixed,
where, 105.10
Saints in Russia, for every day in the
week, 457.1
Scapellera, where fire and gold-
en - the Cures it does, 959.50
Salmons, peace a piece, 537.1
A great trade for them, ibid.
Salmona fure in Russia, 215.50
Salomon and Salmon Pease in
Circelam, 187
Salomon's Woods in the Welt It
differs, discovered there, Latitudes
distance from Peru, many and
great, oftened rich. Colors of the
people, the chiefest of them
named, their graveless, diffusen-
ce, 907.30
Salomensis Town in Russia, where,
794.50
Salt, naturally made by the Sea, 47
Salted meat in Ciangras, 95.1
Salt made of water without boiling,
933
Salt hanging upon Flowers that
denote of the River of Salt, 898.10
Salt-Lakes in Tartaria, 636.50
Salt-Springs Metall from Drifts,
905.1. Caves in Refractory salts,
905.1. Copper, 905.1. Iron,
905.1. A camp of the aborigines,
and flowing of the Sea, 1122.40
Salt-pits exceeding rich ones in Tar-
tarie, 330
Salomonstainers, 73.10
Salt the best in the world, ibid. 20
Silkettens the fashion in China,
180.10
Samogit Samog, a great City,
103.10
Samara the Kingdom, 103.50
Same the River, 233.1
Samorochs, the great City, where,
79.40
Samorach so Parthia where Ta-
nistane was borne, the situation,
142.40
Samorach a City of Tatars, where,
103.10
Sandak, where they grow, 138.40
Sanguis Oriental in Japon, 236.30
Sanguis Orientalis where grows,
286.1
Saravalia, their Affinity, manners,
Manners, Religion, and Econo-
my, 535.7. Their judgments,
Ghosts' People, Dominion,
People and the hardness of their
government, 556
Saravaliens people, 280.50
Saravich their trade with Russia with
Furres, their manufactures, 922.

[illegible]

THE TABLE.

heads like Dogges, 104-10.
Siam *fields and rivers*, 632-30.
Sacra, a Tartarian Land, 5-10.
Swanza, or Swana, 630-10.
Scalistera *rig up* in China, 333
90.
Scallum the City in Persia, 73-30.
Schelandia *mufonised* for Hie-
landia, 614-40.
Schollers *more married* than Sol-
diers in China. The King more
admirer with them, 330-30. They
beate and overball the Captives, 330-
30.
Schools of China, *the manner*?
381-30.
Scholars in China, *gave whole books*
by heart, 339-10.
Schollers, *how encouraged or puni-*
shed in China, 184-50. & 188-10.
The great Officers *understand* their
own system, 184-50.
As the Kings change, 188-10.
Siachian in Chi, a *deified*, 406-50.
So the tribute it pays the King,
ibid., 406-50.
Soin miao, in Japan, 334-60.
Scintamari, *the people came out of*.
Sarmatia, 433-30.
Scitaphy called Fame or Glory, *the*
signification inferred by Ita-
lians, ibid.
Scitaphians *where first peopled*, 663-
30.
Scitaphian *senses* of Russia, *differ-*
ent from those of Poland, 761-
30.
Scitaphian *revenue comes from* the
Russians, 463-30.
Scitaphs *fined in marriage* cases, 761-
30.
Scioldan, Ptolemy's error in the
Longitude, 643-30.
Scores bill at Island, 800 years
since, 667-30.
Scourge, *not less interpreted by* the
Cl. Jews, Church Councils, &c.
E. rule, 462-30.
Scurvey, *great curative* for venery,
and the Scurvey, 114-10.
Scurvey-garrier in Greenland, *the*
bounty of it as Sea, 847-30.
Sea by than Cliefdoms, *what*, 633-
30.
Scythia *extends from Danubius,*
near to the Tarr, 38-10. ibid.
Sea Turtles, *are taken* yearly, 38-10.
Sea Cattle, *near Siam*, 879-30.
Sea-coals in Cathay, 88-10-30.
Sea-coals *vapor stiles*, 406-40.

Sea coales, *best waters*, 893-60.
Sea-fowles *sweetened by the fresh*, 358-
30.
Sea-frogs, 47-60.
Sea Frogs, *and puffed out with*
Slime, 133-60.
Sea-Kytes, *relieving of Portugals*,
258-30.
Sea blackie, *blue and green*, 976-
30.
Sea-blackie *whence caught*, 976-
30.
Sea fourmole barren, *and some-*
where fertile, as the Land, 888-
30.
Sea-horfishes *endanger our lives*, 144-
30.
Sea-horses, *in England*, 793-30. They *Habit* towards in
England, 709-30.
Sea the newness of it in the Toole
ride Zone; *repear the boats*,
911-10.
Sea-monsters in Island, 649-00-30.
Sea, General description of
them, 38-40.
Sea of Spout, 38-40.
Sea of Spout, *called the great Sea*,
38-40. The length of it, *ibid.* Two
Promontories of Synopolis and Cal-
faria in it, ibid.
Sea the newness is it, *definites*
Some and computes number, 724-
30. France in *which Latitude*,
477-30.
Sea-water good against pyrexia, 663-
30.
Sea-bore or Morie *decried*, 476-
30-40. Their *causes are* their yoke,
and course to revenge her self.
Their teeth as good as saws, i-
bid. 67-30.
Seascales in Greenland, 709-60.
Seals *belong to the classification of*
benefits of Greenland, 837-00-30.
Fishes *can't in Scat-*
schicket, *thatching the Fifths*,
818-10.
Seales in China, *the fashions*, 383-
30. Not improved in Wax, but
with lead, *Chi can in several*
ways, ibid.
Seals of China, *Megasthenes says*,
Kepi as marly as our Lead Kex,
ibid.
Seals fish *how hunted for*, 416-60.
Their *material quality to break*
the ice, 417-10.
Seale, the Mufcootes in the
George, 211-60. *Qordun in*
India, ibid.
Seals *of the substance of sea*
with Fleets from the Indies, 89-
30.
Seals of women known from the
males, 395-30.

Sebastian de Guetaria his *Ungues*, 283
Sebastian Cabot, *Governor for*
Discoveries, 249-50
Sebastian Cabot, his *Mapas* as
evidence that, his attempt to discover
west, 807. *His comings* on
English ships, the occasion why
King Henry the Eighth neglected
himself, 810
Sebastian, the King of Portugal, his
Spain, a discoverer the Ruler of
Spain. *Admiral Grand Pilot of*
England and Portugal, 808
Sebastian the City, in Attenuation
of Life
Sebastian's sacrifice, the Royal Com-
missioners to examine the life, 690-2
Sebastian, the true name of, Christ-
ian, 825-10
Secretaries of Treasuries in Russia,
1435-50. Their authority, 426
Segin a City of Cathay, and in China
Serrano's Biography, 24-1
Serrano the New, in the West Inland,
its description, *Plagues*,
Parts, etc., 881-1
Self-empowerment, a Title of the Rus-
sian Emperors, 735-40
Selizars the City, now Blahki, 130
Selizars a *Café*, 236
Sentence of Justice given to the
King of China, the *Torons* as large
397-9, 194-6
Sentence the refusal one in China,
a *Whipping*, 372-10
Serpentine-shaped Sunday is the *Emblem*
of the *Chinese*, 37-10
Serpent-headed the Chim Kung
flood, 392-16
Serpent-headed the Chinese, 393
Seres the people of Cathay, the *great-
est*, whence came the Sericium or
Silk, 33-40
Sergeants as *Arms* in China, 33-40
Sericium or Silk, whence derived,
33-40
Serpents delicate make where, 976
Serpents denouncing what *Stagger*,
140-40. *Art* of tale of one of them,
ibid.
Serpents wounded in the *Chinese*
their use, 1061-10
Serpents always in China and why,
369-20
Serpents in Russia killed, and use

THE TABLE

[illegible]

Syrian

THE TABLE

Syrian tongue *used by the* 24.
 Syrians in Cathaya, 30.
 Syntagmae *few in China, etc.* 394
 Syzannes, *not above 300* 30
 in All China, 307. 40. *All of use-
 ful,* *ibid.* *None marries any of
 his own Syzannes,* 307. 50
 Skerleghens *people* Groatland, 1
 Skiflands, *a Bay in* Greenland, 614-30
 skins *of three men come off,* *by*
cutting the Liver of a Bear, 306
 Skuls *of the Indians extremely thick*
and hard, 993. 40. 994. 10
 Skuls *found in China, and only,* 371
 Skumme *of the water eaten for*
meat in Mexico, 1133. 10
 Skutneife *in Norway,* 707. 20
 The *Leizende, vermination and De-*
clamation is in 716. 10. 720. How
 the *land lies about it, etc.* 720
 Slaves *to the Tartars, their miserie,*
 641. The Tartars *enjoyed it to*
redeem his own subjects, 642
 Slaves *of Scythia rubbing* *perished*
with the fight of their Masters
Weapons, 419. 10
 Slaves *the Indians are no longer to*
the Spaniards, 914. 60
 Slaves *of Peru, pleased with their*
own servitude, 1056. 50
 Slavery *in Russia to Creators,* 434
 Slavery *in China, how it comes,* 182
 50. *Those that are taken in*
Warre were dead Capt, 183. 10
 10. 194. 40
 Sleds *much used in* Russia, 219. 50
 They *carry (Corns)* 1000, *their*
load, 226. 10. *Their formation,*
ibid. *Not used in Summer,* 330
 30. *Called Telegas,* 225. 50
 Sleds *in Russia, a great number to be*
taken up into a Noblemen,
 523. 20. *Some drawn by Dogs,*
 524. 1
 Sleds, *an ease and commodious tra-*
vel, 751. 20
 Slobas *a Town in Mexico,* 547. 30
The elevation, ibid. 548. 30
the trade there, 547. 30
 Sliding *upon the Ice with bones like*
Sparres, 235. 50
 Sluttery *a Fast-breaker,* 156. 20
 Smiths Bay, 405. 10
 Smolensko *in Russia taken by the*
Poles, 780. 10. *Burnt to the*

ground, 780. 60
 Snakes *worshipped in Lithuania,* 1
 a *story of that,* 629. 40
 Snakeheads *promontory in* Eng-
 land, 654
 Snelands, *a name of* Irland, 654
 Snow *extreme,* 49. 10
 Snow *higher than the* Hwells, 498
 Snows *fall in the end of* April, 30
 Snow *in August in* Greenland, 727. 30. 350. 30
 Snow *happens the Spring,* 415. 10
 Snow *prefers from* patri-faction,
 647. 30
 Snorting *in their sleep, off* *enline*
to the Tartars, 82. 60
 Sogomans *in* Russia, 243. 40
 Sogomambers *Can, the God of the*
 Tartars *Idols* 28. 30. 373. 40
 Idol. *fancier,* 106. 1
 Sogor *a boat in* Tartary, 610
 Sogor *the River,* 515. 40
 Solangs, *a Tartarian people,* 23
 Soldans *the Cities where,* 2. Greece
 spoken *here,* 950. 10. *is* Christen,
 951. 10
 Soldan *of Egypt* *contributed by*
Christians and Tartars, 119
 Soldan *of Turkey* *his Country,* 50
 Soldin, Christians *in* Corlaime *of*
the Greek Church, 109. 40
 Soldan *the Power in the West In-*
land, the distance from the
eastward, 891. 40
 Sonas *a name for* China, 78. 50
 Soncaras *in* China, 70. 50
 Sonas *of the* Sun, *the King of*
China *his,* 354. 50. 356. 1
 Sonas *conferred by the* *Fathers*
bestow, 1037. 20. 1042. 30
 Soldiers *in* Tartary, *their Ma-*
terial travels, 81. The *Mat-*
ing and Sacrifices to the
Idols, 81. 10. *Their Misfortunes,*
Shewings, Afflictions, Habits,
and other Customs, 81. 10. 30.
 Sore *of* *straine* *Cole,* 417. 10
 Sorcery *of four* *Swords* *in* Tar-
 tars, 33. 10
 Sorcery *of the* *lewes,* *a story of,*
 10. 10
 Sorceries *of the* *West Indians,*
 1043. 60. *Things done* *surro-*
undeth by them, *ibid.* *And*
things like, and to come, 1044
 Sorcery *of Mexico* *turns* *thun-*
der *frange* *Planes* *the* *Story of*

low, 1017. 40. *And so* *in* Peru,
 1045. 10
 Saint Sorkis *the greatest* *Angel*
an Saint, 31. 3
 Sortafius, *a Tartarian* *Idol,* 83
 30
 Soldiers *all Gentlemen in* Russia,
 415. 20. *And their Children*
also, ibid. *Land* *after* *their*
the *invention of* *Idols,* *ibid.*
They kept *from* *Reflected* *in*
Soldiers *Idols,* *rebellious* *to*
 350. 40
 Soldiers *of* *Mexico* *their* *Prayer,*
 1047. 4
 South *Pole; built no* *fixed* *Stars*
to mark it, 40. *the North* *hath,* 918
 30
 South *Sea* *which,* 88. 1. *The* *se-*
veral *courses* *of* *Navigations* *in*
it, ibid. *They* *are* *not* *used* *by*
 100. 1
 South *Sea,* *the* *ebbing* *and* *flowing*
there; the *distance* *from* *the* *North*
Sea, 989. 30
 Soule *the* *Chinese* *opinion of it,* 201
 50. *The* *Tartars* *opinion of it,* 88
 50
 Soules *immortality* *the* *Chinese* *or*
points of, 397
 Soule *of* *the* *World,* 380. 1
 Soules *immortality* *acknowledged*
by the *Indians,* 189. 10
 Soules *immortality* *and* *transmigration,*
 277. 1
 Soyles *of* *the* *West* *Indies, the*
consequences, 935. *Where* *the* *best* *are,*
 936. 19. 937. 10
 Spain *in* *Perlia,* 70. 50
 Spaniards *but* *20000* *Chinese* *in*
400. And makes *Galley* *off* *a*
thrift *ibid.* *They* *flow* *in* *la-*
gon *to the* *Chinese,* 310. 40
 Spaniards *best in* *the* *Philippi-*
nas, 238
 Spaniards *brave,* *and* *their*
falls *Sea* *Cards,* 843. 20. 848
 30
 Spaniards *in* *Peru* *offered* *an* *am-*
phora *from* *God* *called* *Vitico-*
cha, 1061. 50
 Spaniards *so* *firmly* *enrolled* *in* *Me-*
xico, 1023. *They* *are* *de-*
mitted *into* *the* *City,* *they* *fell* *in*
the *King* *are* *defeated* *by* *the* *Indians*
in *the* *Castle,* 1023. *Driven* *out*
of *the* *Castle,* 1023. *The* *foolish* *be-*
liefs <

THE TABLE

their conquest of Mexico, for
1519-1521. & 1526. &c.
Silver carried by China,
310.30
Spain's pretensions to Green-
land, forbidden by the English,
466.40
Spanish plants, where taken in
Spain, and the Indian, where in
Spain, 660.96
Spanish Curriers curious rather
to let denote the Names of their
great Nacion Alenturers in the
History, than of the Birds, Birds,
866
Spanish reports of a Vision, 283
Spawes of Fifteen taken, and bred
in Guernsey in China, 179.10
Spoke a man did, after his heart
was cut, 1039.60
Spelling by Strings, Knots, and Col-
ours in Peru, as we do by Letters,
1053.30
Sperma Ceti, 710.20
Sperma Ceti, or Permele, where
taken, 471. It lies in the Isles
of the
Sphere in China, 246.30
Spices of China, 384.40
Spice the first and store in the Mo-
lucas and Philippines, 902
904.90. &c. The best way to
bring them from the Molucas
into Spain, 900.10
Spoke a big as a Sparrow, full
of gold, 976.10
Spoke for our duty: taken in
China, 489.50
Spitsbergen, in Greenland, 489
10
Spodio and Tutia, where and how
made, 72.10
Spoke, the Russian Nobility wear
at their Girdle, 459.40
Spoke, like sense in the via lita-
tione, 918.40
Spring of water, which converts it
into a stone, &c. like that
described in, 894.20. Another
Spring converted into white Salt,
ibid.
Spring of fresh water in the sea, 997
30. On the top of a hot Spring,
ibid.
Spring of several virtues, 933.20
&c. Some conveying its name
into its place. Others sending
forth Fish. Others communicating
good Salt. Some good for the
French Pox, and other. Another
turning into snake, some of the
Colours of Ink or Blood, 933
Spring of water, 930.1
Spring why it comes on a sudden in
very cold Countries, 143.50
Squirrel, their flies, 148.1
Stacia Neway, 518. The latitude,
521.30
Staffe falling: this way of that way,
Why of old accounted a direction,
657.30
Stanew barometer where, 121.10
Starrs begotten of the Gods, 279
30. They die when Starrs fall
ibid. Several Starrs worshipped
by the Mexicans: their oddness
of them, 1027.40. More
and greater in our Northern
Heavens: then in the Indies, 918
20
Starrs continually seen in the day
time, where and when, 498.50
Start: dead one of the Ostriches,
810.10. The latitude,
478.1. & 481.30
Many Hares there, ibid. The Sea
frozes there, 482.10
Straling one of the eight Common-
diments among the Tartars, 443
10
Stealing how punished amongst
them, 796.30
Stetic glasses, where made, 72
Strophantia, or Isth. the chief
Towns of Walachia, 651.1
Sticks, instead of meat, for the
180
201.30
Stock-fish instead of Money, 616
48
Stone in Greenland, to make paper,
which the first cannot burn, 520.1
Stones mighty ones in a Bridge 394
40
Stones round and hollow, and found
lugged in them, 600.1
Stone-workers of the Indians, 1056
1.10
Stones cast out of burning Moun-
tains in Greenland, 610.40
They make Lime and walls inde-
structible, ibid.
Stone, a distillate, where in China,
391.0
Stone (Dissolv) a remedy for it,
988.10. China good for it, 953
60
Stones medicinal for the Spleen,
Milk, Kidneys and Bladder, where,
867.50
Stones where it grows, 959.40
Stones in Tilled, the manner, 663.1
And in Greenland, 651.40
Strangers made Slaves in Tartary,
443.10
Strangers not willingly suffered in
Russia, 435.10

Strangths provided against in Chi-
na, 197.20. Why not admitted
into China, 268.10. The ex-
treme of China, concerning them,
197.20
Strangers in China: how a Com-
mon-law, 559.50. Why so suffered
there, 559.30
Strangers of what sort: are ad-
mitted China, 599. Being ad-
mitted, must not see one another,
ibid.
Stratagem a few times of distressed
Tartars, 102.40. Of distressed
Tartars to find the way to the
darkness, 167.30
Stratagem of the Tartars against
the Soldan, 122.60
Stratagem of the Cim Tartars
against the Hungarians, and
the other more terrible, 460.30
Of Experiments, the Russian to
win a fight, 757.10. Of the Span-
ish to follow one another in the
dark, unknown to their Enemies,
982.20. Of the Mexicans, 1016
50. A first story upon them,
1017.1
Strep of Rivers, first above, and
first at the bottom, 1056.30
Streptopod, and not fixed, 419
10
Streight of land but eight leagues
between the North and South
Seas. Strights Magellane are
not Streights but broken Islands.
Streights of Florida, the imagi-
nation, 929
Streight of Mecca, or the Red Sea,
252.50. in marg.
Strom one of the Islands of Faife,
182.10
Students free from tribute, 385.10
Sturgeons, store and cheap in Rus-
sia, 231.10. & 233.30
Style of the Russian Emperor, his
and his Subjects pride in it,
Quarrels for not repeating it all,
241.40.50
Style ridiculous of the great Chans
Letters, 455.0. & 46
Style of the King of China, 554.40
& 246.1. & 258.40. & 260
20
Su-moal, 40
So, in Tartarian water,
Subo the land, 285.50. Christian,
ibid.
Sacana Rivers, 2147
Success the City destroyed, 164.30
Success in China, another Venice,
243.10. Destroyed, ibid.
Success in China, the incredible
na-

trading there, and tribute in
pay, 361.20
Suen & Hiberi, the people in Ta-
taria, not subject to the Tartars,
210
Sugar cheap in China, 365.10. &
great there, 411.10
Sugar-mout in China, 270.20
Sugar how refined, 101.10
Sugarcane, first carried to the
West Indies, 860.60
Sunsley the Rule, takes part against
Demetrius the Impeller, & his
son and persecutor him, 757.40
Conspiracies against Demetrius, &
his son, 765.10. His Oration to
the Lords, his chosen Emperor
of Russia, 765.10. 764.40. His
case of the English, ibid. His let-
ters to King James, defending his
Practices, 765.10. His marriage
of his son, ibid. in marg.
Sun, in his own right, the King
of Poland, & 766.767
Cale himselfe Vasil Bannow-
ich, 766.10. Crowned, ibid.
Chosen by lot, and the manner of
it, 769.60. Adieu away the No-
bility, and transfer with respect,
Sends an Embassage into Persia,
to comply, and to becom, &
decided by the English and Sweden,
770. & 771. A second Impeller
Demetrius set up against him,
770. Forseen, he renounces the
Europe, is given into the hands of
the Poles, who imprison him in
Poland, where he dies, 780
Sumbereles of old in China, 394
40
Summer, or Afracan, the Chil-
lage upon Volga, in 45. degrees
of latitude 48. marg.
Sumhepadan a River, 240.50
Summer and winter when they be-
gins and end, in Brazil, 903
40
Summer and Autumne not differ-
ent in the lands of Barloisotte
and why, 938.10
Sunne and Moone used for En-
signes by the Tartars, 82.1.40
Sunne in the Chinese phisic Diet,
148.20. The King likes himselfe
Lord of the World, and Child of
the Sunne, & 22.40. The Ceremo-
nies performed to it by the Chi-
nese, before their Feast, 302.20
Sunne worshipped in Greenland,
820.10. Adored by the Mexi-
cans, 1057.10. Proudly denied by
an Indian, 1028.40. His Image,
1051

THE TABLE

Sunne seems both night and day in
Nova Zembla, where it begins
to do so, 505.1
Sunne five Degrees, 35. Minutes
in an hour, 574. & seven
degrees high, is what height of
the Pole, 575.20. & 576.40. 580
Sunne going downe North, and ris-
ing North North-east, where
and when, 596.30
Sunne but little above the Horizon
in Winter, where and when, 494
20.50. Where it rises and set-
s there, ibid. When it appeared
no more there, ibid. The Moone
after that scene continually, ibid.
When the Sunne began to appear
again, 499.60. A philosophical
account upon it, 500
Sunne three & four Rain-bowes,
at once, 481.10
Soothsaying in Persia, 70.40
Supererrogation, believed in Chi-
na, 271.10
Superstitious Religion best great
with tyrannical government, 422
10
Surgons Tunn upon the River
Ob: what Nations trade thi-
ther, 552.10. The Russian
Emperours Customs of Mer-
chants there for six years, ibi-
dem, 44.20.50. &c.
Surprise, the Priests in Russia,
assaulted with it as their Orda-
tion, 447.50. And worse in
Serence time at Church, 448
Swallows found in the bottom of
the sea, which swam at the fire,
626.1
Sweet Villages, 531.10. 787
Sellers Tenants Daughters for
Salt, 31.60
Sweetness admirable in some Tar-
tars, 31.50
Swords of wood with edges of steel,
116.40. Their strength and
make, ibid.
Sword-third destroyed, 988.30
T
TAbab a Primitive River, 526
1
Tabaco Promises in the West In-
dies, the tribute of Cacopand
from Nuan Zambila, & 141.1.
His Father Ob borne in Sche-
thy or Parthia, his person de-
scribed, He was lame, the sig-
nification of his Name, 141.10
20.10. &c. His first Battle a-
gainst the Muskovites, the order
of it, ibid. His wound receiv-
ed by him, and the Victory, 142.
1.10. His Marriage with the
Great Chans Daughter, 143.
40. He was of all Religions, ibid.
His
Tahnetaculo, the tree yielding
Gumme: the use of that
h h h

THE TABLE.

Hu Armie against China, 143
130. Calix his Conspiracie against him in his absence, 143-40 And 144. 10. *Hu Armie*, ibid.
Tamerlane turns back to fight with him, 144. 50. *Axilla*, a General of Tamerlanes Captaynes, takes Calix Prisoner.
Tamerlanes Victory, 145. 1.
Tamerlane pardons Cathaya, 145 10. Gets the opinion of Clemency, ibid. Hee is saluted Emperor by his Souldiers, ibidem. & 146. 20. *Hu Oration to his Army*, and returns towards China, 146. 20. *Hu March* and coming to his Residence, ibid. Hee gives a Lord Master of China to his party, 146 60. That Lords Oration unto Tamerlane, Hee offers to lead fifty thousand Tartars into China, besides the wall, 147. 10. 20. Calix advance up to the Emperor, ibid.
Tamerlane keeps his own resolution ferret, 147. 60. He delivers fifty thousand Men to the Prince of Thania and the Chinese Lord, to pass the Mountains, whilst himselfe and his Army make show of assaulting the wall, 148. 10. The Chinese overthrew, and the wall prove at once, 148. 30. The Chinese afflictment, and new Army, ibid.
Tamerlane rewards the Chinese Lord, and beats down the wall, ibid. Master Axalla General of the Force, 149. 1. O mar great March of fifty miles a day.
Tamerlane advances with his Army further up the Country, ibid. Belegers the Caie Pagunouf, 149. 10. The Country thereabouts results to him, ibid. Axalla winnes a Suburb of Pagunouf, the site of the Towne, ibid. Battered, the wall was lodged upon by the Tartars, 150. 1. The Governor flues. The Towne yielding, both faire quarter given it, 150. 10. Axalla refuses the Government, the Prince of Thania accepts it, with the Title of Vice-Ray, ibidem. The Chinese Armie advances the Golden Magnificence of it.

Tamerlane chooses the place of battle, 150. 40. 50. &c. The Chinese disorderly March, 151. 20. The fight.
Tamerlanes Vanguard overthrew, Olmar re-enters the fight, 151. 40. Axilla and Tamerlane press upon the King of Chinoos Chitai, wound him and take him Prisoner. The Victory, 152. 1. 10. The King of Chinoos Brother rallies some Horse together. Hee takes in Paniliu. The Modesty of Tamerlane, and the proude Speech of the King of China to Tamerlane, 152. 40. The Chinese fortifie Quantouu, 153. 1. Which Tamerlane besieges. The Chinese thicket to release it by a Bridge of Boates, which the Tartars burne with Wild Fire, and kill fifty thousand Enemies, 153. 20. 30. The Towne is yielded, ibid. A Peace treated and concluded between Tamerlane and the Chinese, the conditions, 154. 1. 10. 20. 30. &c. The bounds of Tamerlanes Conquests. Hee commands one God to be worshipped. He returns home, 154. 50. Hee honours and rewards Axilla, and is welcomed home by the Great Chan, at Canbala, 155. 10. 20.
Tamerlane adjusts Buziaz the Great Turke, to forsake meddling with Greece, 155. Hu notable Seizing, and Dreams, his preparations against the Turke, 156. 1. 10. Hu March by Molcouie to Trepliond and Georgia, ibid.
Tamerlane still begins with Prayers, ibid. Hu Martial Discipline, ibid. Hee musters 100000. Horse and 500000. Foot, 156. 50. 60. Hu Residence at Gianich, 157. 1. His Strategem to delude Buziaz, ibid. What Tamerlane used to do before a Battle, 157. 40. The Armes meet, but discontinue for the fight, ibid. Hee over the charge, 148. 30. The Victory gotten by his wome Wifedome, ibid. 60. The number of the flame, 159. 1. He gets Buziazs Children, 159. 30. Sends Buziazs Sword to the Great Chan, 160. 10. Hu Modesty and demeanour after Victory,

He returns to Samarcand, 160. 30. Hu Vow to God. Hu flouds to increase the place of his Birth, 160. 50. Rewards the Souldiers, 161. 1. Gives new Conditions of Peace to the Chinese, Buziaz the Great Chan, 161. 30.
Tamerlane made Chief Emperor, 161. 40. He would have his Sonne goe bare-headed and why, 162. 30. His notable Sayings concerning his Successor, and his owne Recreations, 162. 40. 50. He publicly sit in Justice thrice a Week, 163. 50. Souldiers changed his Souldiers, ibidem. His death, 164. 1.
Tania the River, divideth Asia from Europe, 11. 60. Breath of it, 11. 60. It is the limit of the East part of Russia, 12. 1. The head of it, ibid. The length of it, it falls into the Caspian Sea, ibid. Riquiqui Sarge concerning it, 12. 1. in margin.
Tania head in the Riparian Mountains, 54. 30.
Tania in Don, parts Europe from Asia falls into Mexico, 41. 40. Passage by it to Constantinople, &c. ibid.
Tania called the Don, 233. 10. Falls into the Euxine, ibidem. Whereabouts, 210. & 211.
Tanaquiqui a River, 255. 1. Portuguese fight with the Prats there, ibid.
Tanampura in laus, 253. 40.
Tandoia the Ile, 285. 10. And Cite.
Tangarsen the Ile, 10. 70.
Tangutha the Province, where 68. 40.
Tanning with Milk checked and salted, in Tartary, 7. 40.
Tapers burne by commanded persons, 435. 1.
Taprobana the Island, now called Zellan or Celan, 110. 10.
Tartar made of the Fir-tree, 117. 40.
Taria the Kingdom, where the three Kings or Wifemen came to worship one Saviour, 109. Hence the Tartars pretend to invade Christendome to fetch home those three Kings from Cullen. Their Race are not Idolaters but Christians, ibid. Tartar Emperor married a Daughter of theirs, 115. 50. & 117. 40. Tar-

Tartaria, the Carriages used there, 2. 40. And 10. 40. None comes to their Prince without a Present, 2. 60. & 9. 20. &c.
Tartars their true and natural place of beginning, 15. 10.
Tartars the vulgar Error concerning their Originall, 60. 40. & in margin, & 61. 30. They invade Poland, Bohemia and Hungary, and win, 60. 60. & 61. 1. 10. The Crusades present against them, 61. 1. Eulists Prayer and Alms for them against them, 61. 10.
Tartars invade Scythia, 3. 30. Confine upon Persia, 74. & 75. Sept.
Tartars Dominions in Persia, 78 & 79. On both sides the Danubius, 220. & 330.
Tartars of the East, the names of their Countries, 78. 1. 10. 20. 30. 40. 50. 60. 70. 80. 90. 100. 110. 120. 130. 140. 150. 160. 170. 180. 190. 200. 210. 220. 230. 240. 250. 260. 270. 280. 290. 300. 310. 320. 330. 340. 350. 360. 370. 380. 390. 400. 410. 420. 430. 440. 450. 460. 470. 480. 490. 500. 510. 520. 530. 540. 550. 560. 570. 580. 590. 600. 610. 620. 630. 640. 650. 660. 670. 680. 690. 700. 710. 720. 730. 740. 750. 760. 770. 780. 790. 800. 810. 820. 830. 840. 850. 860. 870. 880. 890. 900. 910. 920. 930. 940. 950. 960. 970. 980. 990. 1000.
Tartars beyond the River Villula, their Inroads upon Poland, 619 50. Their Customs, Malcomians, ibid.
Tartars hold themselves Lords of the World, 59. 50. & 64. 30. They command the Pope to doe personal homage to them, 59. 40. Their first Expedition, and the miracle wrought by them by the Sea, 113. 60. & 114. 1. They send three Armies to conquer Asia, 113. 40. Overcome the Georgians, 113. 40. And the Turkes, 114. 1. And India the Lege, 114. 40. And Persia, 116 1. And Baluch, 116. 20. And Aleppo, 117. 1.
Tartars their Originall, 77. 30.
Tartars Princes despotic, 78. 10.
Their first Habitation, 111. 10. Why they were called Mosl, and not Tartars, 57. 20.
Tartars, their warfare, 79. 10. The Officers of their Armies, their promotions, numbers, and buries, ibid.
Tartars their Taxes, 81. 40. Stronger in the armes then others, 8. ibid. Excellent Archers, & 10. 10. & 40. 50. Their slaughter made in Comina, and of the Ruthenians and Hungarians, 61. 40. 50. The Hungarians require aide in

THE TABLE.

gainst them, 61. 60. They divide their Army into three parts, 62. 1. Their persons described, 62. 10. 20. 30. Their dispositions, 64. 30. 40. 50.
Tartars passe Rivers upon Skins sewed together, and blowe full of wind, 62. 10. How they live in the winter, 63. 10. Their Space in Christendome, 63. 30. The Pope suspects them for up to the Emperor, 63. 30. The Emperor flours up Christendome against them, 63. 10.
Tartars, the Civil warres betwixt them, 117. 40. They and the Christians fall out in the Holy Land, 117. 50. Reason out of the Holy Land by the Saracens, 117. 60. The Soldan of Egypt somewhat discord amongst the Tartars, 118. 20.
Tartars have made floure of iron, 118. 20. 30. When they be, 118. 30. 40.
Tartars Ensignes are the Sonne and Moon, 82. 40. And Castles, 82. 40. 50. Two Tartars overthrew, 60. 20. When they be, ibid. 1. Their Conquests in Europe, 60. 30. They flee from the Christian Army, 64. 1. Their Foulders they sell God, 64. 30. And Sonnes of God, 64. 30. Their Foulders for them, 64. 30. The fouldness of their Expositions, 64. 50. Their resolutions, ibid. Their pretences to invade Christendome, 64. 60. & 65. 1. Despatch news Damascus, by opening the Sieges, 122. 30. 40.
Tartars their Manners and Ceremonies of Drinking and Feasting, 40. 30. 40. 50. &c. They in Food and Rayment, 40. 50. 60. 70. 80. 90. 100. 110. 120. 130. 140. 150. 160. 170. 180. 190. 200. 210. 220. 230. 240. 250. 260. 270. 280. 290. 300. 310. 320. 330. 340. 350. 360. 370. 380. 390. 400. 410. 420. 430. 440. 450. 460. 470. 480. 490. 500. 510. 520. 530. 540. 550. 560. 570. 580. 590. 600. 610. 620. 630. 640. 650. 660. 670. 680. 690. 700. 710. 720. 730. 740. 750. 760. 770. 780. 790. 800. 810. 820. 830. 840. 850. 860. 870. 880. 890. 900. 910. 920. 930. 940. 950. 960. 970. 980. 990. 1000.
Tartars their Warfare, 79. 10. The Officers of their Armies, their promotions, numbers, and buries, ibid.
Tartars their Taxes, 81. 40. Stronger in the armes then others, 8. ibid. Excellent Archers, & 10. 10. & 40. 50. Their slaughter made in Comina, and of the Ruthenians and Hungarians, 61. 40. 50. The Hungarians require aide in

Tartars true ones, 107. 1. Their impudent begging of Strangers, 8. 40. & 9. 20. Their ingratitude, 9. 1. They hold themselves Lords of the Men, 9. 1. They are sold there, 10. 40. Their bestiality, 11 30.
Tartars dealing with Travellers, 25. 40. Their Pride, 26. 1. They subvert the Bars fortified by them, as they had bene Masters, 26. 20. Their leasens of Strangers, 27. 30. Their Apparel, Armes, Pallies, Obsequies, and Religion, 78. 50. &c. Their 14th Naigins, ibid. Their Fornice, 3. 30.
Tartars flinke a Horse, 168 60. And 170. 1. Arrows themselves with blood, and why, ibid. Their Fabric, 170. 30. Their manner of building, 6. 40. 50. &c.
Tartars confesse nothing by torture, 63. 10. Their Chewing, ibid. Their Tributes where they conquer, 61. 30. & 62. 60.
Tartarians take it ill, if their Gifts be not accepted, 48. 40. Their Customs, 48. 40. Their Religion, 48. 40. 50. 60. 70. 80. 90. 100. 110. 120. 130. 140. 150. 160. 170. 180. 190. 200. 210. 220. 230. 240. 250. 260. 270. 280. 290. 300. 310. 320. 330. 340. 350. 360. 370. 380. 390. 400. 410. 420. 430. 440. 450. 460. 470. 480. 490. 500. 510. 520. 530. 540. 550. 560. 570. 580. 590. 600. 610. 620. 630. 640. 650. 660. 670. 680. 690. 700. 710. 720. 730. 740. 750. 760. 770. 780. 790. 800. 810. 820. 830. 840. 850. 860. 870. 880. 890. 900. 910. 920. 930. 940. 950. 960. 970. 980. 990. 1000.
Tartars their Warfare, 79. 10. The Officers of their Armies, their promotions, numbers, and buries, ibid.
Tartars their Taxes, 81. 40. Stronger in the armes then others, 8. ibid. Excellent Archers, & 10. 10. & 40. 50. Their slaughter made in Comina, and of the Ruthenians and Hungarians, 61. 40. 50. The Hungarians require aide in

THE TABLE.

why, 74, 75. The Bridge-
 street, his wife, 75-50
 Tartarian women's suit [with], 71
 20. Obsequies and indolence,
 78, 30, 40. Their Marriages,
 78, 20, 30. They marry their
 dead children that they com-
 mend, 79, 1. Their women fat
 and stout, bold, 79, 7. They
 graze their faces, ibid. They
 associate them with black Opi-
 um, 9, 40. They lie not, af-
 ter Child-birth, ibid. They
 ride abroad, ibid. Their
 works and Duties to milk
 Kows, as the mens, to milk
 the Mares and to churn Col-
 ome, 7, 20, 30. Their flannels,
 7, 20, 30
 Tartarian Ladies loose, 10
 their 30
 Tartars their general Rule, 44
 1. Their Lawes and Justice, 7
 60. What offences punish with
 death, 80, 1
 Tartars how they chuse their Em-
 perours, 58, 50. Prince's chuse
 Palace at Gansgaur, 80, 1
 Tartarian Court their order, 30
 style long, 8, 60, 20. Their
 principal Princes, of them, are
 subject to their Great Chan,
 12, 10. His Residence in
 Cathay, at long, or long. The
 power of these Princes, 126, 20.
 30, 60.
 Tartarian Princes for upon beds, 27
 Tartarian Princes keeps correspondence
 with, 47, 60
 Tartarian resources to their Prince
 Court, 40, 1. They get their
 victuals under colour of peace,
 40, 10
 Tartarians meet their Prince with
 feasts, with Bread and Drink
 as Methuselah did to Abraham;
 as the Germans do to Au-
 gustus, 120, 1. They give
 before them, 2, 40, 20. They
 present out of the Princes tribute
 bed, 17, 1. 31, 30. Rubru-
 quis compares King Prefecture
 for Amuking at 30, 17, 40, 1
 32, 30
 Tartarian Prince's Fleet of six
 teene thousand, 30, 1
 Tartars 90
 Tartars furnish letters to the Pope,
 30, 1
 Tartars, twelve Officers of Re-
 quest, 8, 4
 Tartars, the renouance of the

For drinks, 550. *See* *And* and
Bread, 5. *See* *Their* *struck*
with Rammes and *rhens*, 61.3
with apparel, 10.20
Tartars trade for Furres into the
world, 526.10
Tartars never begins February,
the first, 84.30
Tartarian dayness, is, throughout
and four miles English, 534.0
in margin,
Tartarians questions about Po-
Images, 70.50
Tartars admirable sentence up-
on the negligent Chian, 70.
Tartars,
Theodore of these English, 478
1. A Catalogue of ecclesiastical
titles, Scaling Ladders, and war-
like Engines, 478.50
Tartarian Complements, 478.50
or 279.1. State of their Kingdom
Royal, 479.1. *Their* *Cung*
State, and Tributary Kingdom,
279.30. *His* *Habit* *Royal*, 479.30.
His *wearing* *at* *the* *beginning* *of*
the *world*, 479.30. *His* *King*
of China, 280.1. *Their* *Monks*
and *their* *Opium* *of* *Chaffin*,
281.10. *Their* *Opinion* *of* *the*
Refraction, 281.10. *Their* *King*
Burial *place*, 281.20. *Their*
treasures *in* *the* *Barbery*, 281.
60. *Their* *Confiance* *to* *create*
up *the* *Good* *of* *Stranger* *dis-
ful*, 312.1. 316.10. *What*
they *conquer* *China* *and*
the *world* *by* *the* *land*, *and*
low *expedient*, 316.10.
Tartars, vide Cim Tartars. Na-
gayan Tartar, Mondvi Tar-
tars, Chinese Tartars, Chi-
renemic Tartars, &c.
Tatami, are Japanease Mat, 236.
Taurica Obsequiosa, vide Chios.
Taurus Cherifonius, vide Chios.
from page 51, 52. 63. *The*
length *of* *the* *hanks* *63*, *The*
style, 636.50. *The* *Swamp*,
Soyle, *Bownd*, *Original*, *Pen-
ces*, *Oct*, 537. *Pari* *belong*
to *the* *Turke*, *and* *to* *the*
Turke, *and* *to* *the* *Turke*,
Tatmonsee also Chios, where, 4.
Tauris in Persia, *the* *Merced*
of *it*, 70.40
Tauris and Manse, *lands* *of* *Ch*
thaya, 34.11
Taych Chien Catay, 800.50. *Di*
ferish, 800.50.

| | |
|---|------------|
| Tebeth the Province, <i>now a Pash-</i> | |
| <i>daroffe, 90.10. How Tra-</i> | |
| <i>veliers palls it. Ibid. They</i> | |
| <i>draw Strangers to take their</i> | |
| <i>Daughters Mayden-beds, 90</i> | |
| <i>40. "They are great Nego-</i> | |
| <i>matians, 90. 60. And 91</i> | |
| Tebet, a Tartarian people, <i>that</i> | |
| <i>for fifty years their Dead Pa-</i> | |
| <i>rents, 23. 1. They make Caps</i> | |
| <i>of their Skulls, 23. 10. 30.</i> | |
| <i>They have much Gold, 23.</i> | |
| | 10 |
| Teeth covered with Gold, 92 | |
| | 30 |
| Teeth, the fumes of Quick-filver | |
| <i>make them fall out,</i> | |
| Telegas, or Wag-gans in the Ruffian, | |
| | 24. 12. 10 |
| Temple of the Sun in the Indies, | |
| 895.60. Converted into a Mo- | |
| nastery, 895.60 | |
| Temple and Statue erected to a Co- | |
| nnovator, 238 | |
| Temple, a mystic name, 138 | |
| 1. with gold Styrpes, 267.10 | |
| | 267.10 |
| Temple of Peru, 1042. Of Me- | |
| xico described, 1033. & 1133 | |
| | 40 |
| Temple of Mexico described, | |
| 113. 350. Their Musicians kept | |
| in them, 1134.1 | |
| Temples of the Mexicans have | |
| Cylinders and Columns, 1049 | |
| Temples yearly in China, and | |
| strange ones, 108. 139.60 | |
| Temples cruel ones in the | |
| Mountains of Cathay, 36.10 | |
| | 36.10 |
| Temples extreme ones in Hi- | |
| malio, 597.1 | |
| Temples of wall at the New Pa- | |
| ris, 241. 241. 246 | |
| Temples raised by the Devil, 974 | |
| | 60 |
| Tendich the Promises of the Tar- | |
| tarian: Presbyter John, 710. | |
| | 20 |
| Tentative in the West-Indies, the | |
| few and different from Santa | |
| Martin, <i>Alonso Alvar, 80. 20.</i> | |
| <i>See 885. 40. Ibid. the</i> | |
| Tentative tales of the Mexicans, | |
| the fallow of it, 1127. 40 | |
| | 30 |
| Tents, the Lords of Heaven and all | |
| in Babylon, 324.10. They are as | |
| Flours appear, 325.40 | |
| Tents of the Splees, due to the | |
| Prince of the Cam Tartarian, 64 | |
| | 10 |
| | Tenth |

THE TABLE

Tenets of *Wail*, the great Chian
 bab, 88, 121
 Tenets, the huge number and rich-
 ness of the Tatarian Trinity 86, 10
 Tenets to Capite in Russia, 84-10
 10
 Tepheli or Tiliis, the Georgian
 chlofe Cite, 51-53
 Terms for *Wail* *Jaite* in *Wail* 65
 65-66
 Terza, the Armenian *Chirjahan*
 Peria, 400
 Tettonial in the Ruffes *Copie*,
 218, 1
 Tezcalpote, the Mexican *Land*
 of the great *Finalist* the *Land* and
maner, 1047
 Thuen or Tharian the *Cille*,
 where, 73, 30
 Thabet, Chefim, *Senis*,
 and Bach, *orders of Senis*, *orders*
 in Tataric, 81, 1-10
 Theues, *new* *Thoumes* *cut*, 264, 1
 Thircus *her* *passive* in China 204-10
 Theues all the way between the
 Dominion of the Mogores and
 Cathay, 311, 312-313
 Theueric, *Germania* in *Polye*,
 315-40
 These *disposed* *will* 315-40
 These *disposed* *will* the Sacrament, 37,
 38
 Theodora or Capra the Cite in
 Tataric, 66, 2-10 *Christians*
de *ayed* there, *ibid*, *How far*
from *Constantinople*, *ibid*,
 37
 Theodorus of the Chinese, 397
 Theodorus of *Accon* his *style* *me*
lage to *Margu-Chan*, 39, 10
 10
 Thillits *will* *Staltes* *four* *inches*
square, in the Indies, 89, 7-6
 Tholoman the *Province*, *Gold* *plenti*
ful there, 94-30
 Thomas Edge his *Oratory*, 404-60
 Thomas, *pre*, 404-60
 Thomas Edge his *Oratory* and
Communion, 70, 10
 Thomas Edge his *Land*, *ibid*,
 his *Oratory*, *ibid*, *ibid*, 405
 Thomas, 468-30 *Antier*, 465
 10
 Thomas *pre* *Ambofou* in
 China, 465, 467-30
 Thomas, *the* *Butcher*, 467-30
 finds the *Northwest* *style*, 54, 8
 40
 in Thomas Smith *Embodiment*
 into Russia, 747, The *flutes* in
 entertainment, 301 the *flutes* in

[illegible]

Tiftin the *Metropolitan City* of the
Georgians, 49:10
Tiger denounces a man, a story of, 902:10
Tigers their battels with the Co-
caine, 931
Tigers of the West Indians, can di-
stinguish an Indian from a Span-
nard, 963:30
Tigers of India described, *how killed*
a Tiger named, 99
Tigris the head of, 49:30
Timber how Island is supplied
with, 706
Timochaim in Persia, 70:50 &
72:30
Tingcoff the people described, 527
3055:1,40. *Speaks like Turkish*
Caucasians, ind. Nations beyond
the sea, 10:10 Their dexterity
to take Emile, Fifth, and Persian,
ibid., See also, 533:30, Neere
to Cuina, 543:600
Tingui the City, 960
Tinguiqui the Cuzc, *Drunkennes*
and overcares there, 97:40
Tinnis the chief City of the Rufines
in the Samoitie Countreys, 526:
10
Tinnis a River, 257:30
Tipnary in Lapland, 560:10
Tides in the Sea, where none, 518:
10
Tides a deformity of them, 920:1
10,30,50
Tids their Cause comes from the
North, 492
Tides the chief Argument of the
Tribunal of justice, 288,40
Tide-mark in Norway is true, 499:
55,57
Time of the day finely described, 749:
30
Tyrras, the River Nestor in Molda-
via, 630:1
Tribes payed in Groneland, 523:1
Tribes payed in the West Indies, 908,50
Triticea Lake, the Great, the foun-
tains of the water, *sorts of the fish*
in, and Ewiles, and the Lake
of them, 972:30
Title of the King of Sweden, 771:
Of the Emperour of Russia, See
Russian Emperour, or Emperour
of Russia, of the King of Poland,
783:1
Titles the Chinese Ambition of
them, 391:1
Titles a great Merchandise in the
East, 324:10
tubon, the Cuzc, 291:30
Tucacelle, a wataun Mexican Ge-
nerall,

THE TABLE.

[illegible]

176.50. *And all Slaves*, 182.
40. *An Officer fit our time*,
libid.
Whoredoms *are multiplied in Rome*,
460.
Whoredome *is a vessel of Bread*,
645.40. *Scars punished in Rome*,
libid.
White, the Tartars *bud for a figne*
off good looks, 84.50
White, the *Refined Colour of the*
Mukoon, 214. *The mourning*
colour in China, 368.1.165.
White Creatures *in Gold Country*,
649.50.
White people *under the Torrid*
Zone, 898.20
White men *rarely born in Mexico*
1118.30
White Cells, *a Cite in California*,
801.1
White Sea, 515.40. *The breadth*
is 400 leagues, 823.1
Whicings, *are Praxies*, 630.1
Which in Russia, *made habitable*,
170.50. *The protectors of it*,
170.50.
Whickles the River, *the Samarra*,
112.10.
made by its Run, 112.10.
The bend, 358.50
Widows in Tartarie *Marynny*,
and why, 740
Widows *continuing to be rewarded*
in China, 343.50. *And how*,
393.1
William Baffin *his Voyages*,
Greenland, 716
William Helye *his Voyages*
in Greenland, 468.45.66.
William Barents *his first Voyage*,
274.20. *Retires into Holland*,
478.10. *Retires into again*,
483.10. *Retires*, 483.10. *Dye* by
Noun Zembla,
William Bouchet *a French Gold*
smith found in Tartary, 28.40.
His curious Voyages, 35.50
of 37.40. *How he came back*
ther, 39.20
Williams Land, *the heights of it*,
are high, 474.60
Willoughbys *Voyage to Greenland*,
780.1
Willoughbie Land, 456.50.40
and 215.50. *is in Greenland*, 579
Widowed *first made in the Ruffes*
of beaver, 662
Winter *ens Months long in*
Greenland, 691.50. of 609
Winter *not known from the*
of the Indies, 521.60. little

THE TABLE

[illegible][illegible]

THE TABLE.

[illegible]